Oxygen XML Author Eclipse Plugin 28.1

User Guide

Contents

Chapter 1. Introduction **16**

Chapter 2. Getting Started **17**

What is Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin 17

Getting Familiar with the Interface 17

Resources to Help You Get Started Using Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin 19

Your First Document or Project 21

Your First XML Document 21

Getting Started with DITA 26

Creating a New Project 34

Chapter 3. Installation **36**

Installing Oxygen as an Eclipse Plugin 37

Site-Wide Deployment 38

Licensing 39

License Types 40

Installing License Servers 47

Managing License Servers 54

Common Problems: License Server Errors 59

Upgrading 60

Upgrading Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin on Windows/Linux 60

Upgrading Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin on macOS 61

Uninstalling 62

Chapter 4. Configuration **63**

Preferences 63

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin License 64

Archive Preferences 64

CSS Validator Preferences 66

Custom Editor Variables Preferences 66

Data Sources Preferences 67

DIFF Preferences 73

DITA Preferences 74

Document Templates Preferences 80

Document Type Association Preferences ... 81
Editor Preferences ... 110
Fonts Preferences ... 164
Markdown Preferences ... 165
Network Connection Settings Preferences ... 165
Scenarios Management Preferences ... 167
View Preferences ... 167
XML Preferences ... 168
XML Structure Outline Preferences ... 195
Configuring Options ... 196
Customizing Default Options ... 196
Importing/Exporting/Resetting Global Options ... 198
Configuring a Dark Color Theme ... 198
Import/Export Transformation or Validation Scenarios ... 199
Editor Variables ... 199
Custom Editor Variables ... 209
Custom System Properties ... 209
Localizing of the User Interface ... 214
Chapter 5. Perspectives ... 215
Oxygen XML Perspective ... 215
Oxygen DB Perspective ... 217
Chapter 6. Editing Modes ... 220
Text Editing Mode ... 220
Grid Editing Mode ... 220
Author Editing Mode ... 221
Chapter 7. Working With Documents ... 222
Creating, Opening, Saving, and Closing Documents ... 222
Creating New Documents and Templates ... 222
Opening Documents ... 235
Saving Documents ... 236
Closing Documents ... 236
Working with Remote Documents ... 236
Open URL ... 237

WebDAV over HTTPS....238
HTTP Authentication Schemes....241
Contextual Menu of the Current Editor Tab....241
Viewing File Properties....242
Simple Text Editor....242
Using Projects to Group Documents....243
Creating a New Project....243
Project Explorer View....245
Contextual Project Operations Using 'Main Files' Support....253
Search and Find/Replace Features....256
Find All Elements Dialog Box....256
Regular Expressions Syntax....258
Spell Checking....259
Spell Check Dictionaries and Term Lists....261
Learned Words....267
Ignored Words (Elements)....268
Automatic Spell Check....268
Spell Check Multiple Files....269
AutoCorrect Misspelled Words....270
Add Dictionaries for the AutoCorrect Feature....272
Working with Special Characters and Encoding....272
Unicode Support....274
Opening and Saving Documents with Unsupported Characters....274
Unicode Fallback Font Support....274
Inserting Special Characters with the Character Map....276
Handling Read-Only Files....279
Viewing Status Information....279
Editor Highlights....279
Chapter 8. Editing Supported Document Types....281
Editing XML Documents....281
Editing XML Documents in Text Mode....282
Editing XML Documents in Grid Mode....333
Editing XML Documents in Author Mode....343

Validating XML Documents....523
XML Quick Fixes....560
Associating a Schema to XML Documents....563
Working with XML Catalogs....573
Modular Contextual XML Editing Using 'Main Files' Support....576
Search and Refactoring Actions for IDs and IDREFS....577
XML Referenced/Dependent Resources View....579
Combining XML Content Using DTD Entities and XInclude....582
Refactoring XML Documents....587
Applying All Default Quick Fix Proposals....603
XML Digital Signatures....605
Editing CSS Stylesheets....612
Validating CSS Stylesheets....612
Content Completion in CSS Stylesheets....613
Syntax Highlighting in CSS Files....614
CSS Outline View....614
Folding in CSS Stylesheets....615
Formatting and Indenting CSS Stylesheets (Pretty Print)....615
Minifying CSS Stylesheets....615
Editing XLIFF Documents....616
Editing JavaScript Documents....617
JavaScript Editing Actions....617
Validating JavaScript Files....619
Content Completion in JavaScript Documents....619
Syntax Highlighting in JavaScript Documents....620
JavaScript Outline View....621
Editing HTML Documents....622
HTML Editor....622
HTML Validation....624
HTML Content Completion Assistant....625
Syntax Highlighting in HTML Documents....626
Folding in HTML....626
Minifying HTML Documents....627

HTML Outline View ... 627
Querying HTML Documents with XPath ... 628
Associating a CSS with an HTML Document ... 628
Editing Markdown Documents ... 628
Markdown Editor ... 629
Creating New Markdown Documents ... 631
Actions Available in the Markdown Editor ... 632
Syntax Highlighting in the Markdown Editor ... 635
Automatic Validation in Markdown Documents ... 636
Working with Markdown Documents in DITA ... 637
Markdown Editor Syntax Rules and Specifications ... 639
Other Supported Document Types ... 652
Chapter 9. Built-in Frameworks (Document Types) ... 654
DocBook 4 Document Type (Framework) ... 654
DocBook 4 Author Mode Actions ... 656
Inserting an Olink in DocBook Documents ... 672
DocBook 5 Document Type (Framework) ... 675
DocBook 5 Author Mode Actions ... 677
Inserting an Olink in DocBook Documents ... 693
DocBook Assembly (5.1 and Later) ... 697
DocBook Topic (5.1 and Later) ... 698
DocBook Targetset Document Type (Framework) ... 699
DITA Topics Document Type (Framework) ... 699
DITA Topic Author Mode Actions ... 701
DITA Map Document Type (Framework) ... 724
DITA Map Author Mode Actions ... 725
S1000D® Document Type (Framework) ... 737
XHTML Document Type (Framework) ... 740
XHTML Validation ... 741
XHTML Author Mode Actions ... 742
TEI P5 Document Type (Framework) ... 754
TEI P5 Author Mode Actions ... 755
How to Install a TEI Framework with the Latest Schema and Stylesheets ... 766

TEI ODD Document Type (Framework)....767
TEI ODD Author Mode Actions....768
jTEI Document Type (Framework)....779
JATS Document Type (Framework)....780
JATS Author Mode Actions....781
EPUB Document Type (Framework)....792
Chapter 10. Additional XML Editing Frameworks (Document Types)....795
Chapter 11. Publishing....796
Transformation Scenarios....796
Built-in Transformation Scenarios....797
Creating New Transformation Scenarios....828
Editing a Transformation Scenario....931
Duplicating a Transformation Scenario....933
Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios....933
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box....934
Batch Transformations....939
Sharing Transformation Scenarios....940
Transformation Scenarios View....940
WebHelp Output Customization....944
WebHelp Responsive Output for DITA....944
DITA to PDF Output Customization....1162
CSS-based PDF Customization....1162
XSL-FO to PDF Customization....1437
DocBook to PDF Output Customization....1449
Chapter 12. Working with XPath Expressions....1451
XPath Builder View....1451
XPath Expression Results View....1455
XPath and XML Catalogs....1456
XPath Prefix Mapping....1457
Chapter 13. Working with Archives....1458
Browsing Archives....1458
Working with Archive Files....1460
Creating an Archive....1462

Editing and Saving Files Inside an Archive....1462
Migrating Archives to DITA or TEI....1462
Chapter 14. Databases and SharePoint....1464
Working with Databases....1464
Data Source Explorer View....1464
Table Explorer View....1466
Database Connection Support....1468
WebDAV Connections....1509
SQL Execution Support....1512
Integration with Microsoft SharePoint....1514
How to Configure a SharePoint Connection....1515
SharePoint Contextual Menu Actions....1518
Chapter 15. Importing Data....1521
Import from Text Files....1521
Import from MS Excel Files....1523
Import Database Data as an XML Document....1526
Import from HTML Files....1529
Import Content Dynamically....1530
Chapter 16. Framework (Document Type) and Author Mode Customization....1533
Creating and Configuring Custom Frameworks....1533
Creating a Framework Using the Configuration Dialog Box....1533
Creating a Framework Using an Extension Script....1534
Author Mode Customization....1547
Content Completion Assistant....1595
Transformation Scenarios....1619
Validation Scenarios....1621
Document Templates....1630
XML Catalogs....1631
Localization....1632
Java Extensibility Guide....1634
Sharing a Framework....1691
Making Changes to an Existing Framework (Document Type)....1692
Basic Framework Customization Tutorial....1693

Overview....1693
Creating and Configuring a Custom Framework....1699
CSS Support in Author Mode....1709
Associating a CSS with an XML Document....1710
Handling CSS Imports....1711
Displaying Processing Instructions from Other XML Editors....1712
Specifying Media Types in the CSS....1712
CSS At-Rules....1713
Standard W3C CSS Supported Features....1715
CSS Extensions....1736
Debugging CSS Stylesheets....1813
Chapter 17. Extension Points for the Oxygen Eclipse Plugin....1814
How to Use a Custom View with the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Distribution....1815
Chapter 18. Plugins....1817
Chapter 19. Tools....1818
XML Refactoring....1818
Built-in Refactoring Operations....1821
Storing and Sharing Refactoring Operations....1833
Localizing XML Refactoring Operations....1834
Applying All Default Quick Fix Proposals....1834
Canonicalize....1836
Sign....1837
Verify Signature....1839
Comparison Tools....1839
File Comparison Tool....1839
AI Positron Overview....1844
Chapter 20. Troubleshooting....1845
Getting Help....1845
Help Menu....1845
Performance Problems and Solutions....1848
Out of Memory on External Processes....1848
Performance Issues with Large Documents....1848
Misc Problems and Solutions....1849

Address Family Not Supported by Protocol Family..... 1849
Application Takes Several Minutes to Start..... 1850
Blank Window is Shown When Starting the App Over an RDP Connection on Linux..... 1850
Cannot Open Files from Desktop/Downloads/OneDrive on macOS..... 1851
Compatibility Issue Between Java and Certain Graphics Card Drivers..... 1852
Damaged File Associations on macOS..... 1852
Details to Submit in a Request for Technical Support Using the Online Form..... 1853
Dialog Boxes Cannot Be Resized on Mac..... 1854
DITA Map Transformation Fails (Cannot Connect to External Location)..... 1854
DITA Map WebHelp Transformation Fails (Duplicate Topic References Found)..... 1855
DITA-OT Transformation Takes a Long Time to Process..... 1855
DITA PDF Transformation Fails..... 1856
DITA PDF Processing Common Errors..... 1857
DITA PDF CSS-based Processing Common Errors..... 1859
DITA to CHM Transformation Fails - Cannot Open File..... 1859
DITA to CHM Transformation Fails - Compilation Failed..... 1859
Eclipse Error Messages..... 1860
Error After Switching Oxygen Products in Eclipse..... 1860
Format and Indent Fails..... 1861
Hunspell Spell Checker is Unusable on Your Platform Error..... 1861
High Resolution Scaling Issues..... 1862
Images Appear Stretched Out in the PDF Output..... 1862
Increasing the Memory for the Ant Process..... 1863
JPEG CMYK Color Space Issues..... 1864
Mac Touch Bar Function Keys Do Not Work..... 1864
Server Signature Mismatch Error..... 1864
Navigation to a Web Page is Canceled when Viewing CHM on a Network Drive..... 1865
References Outside the Main DITA Map Folder..... 1866
Syntax Highlights Not Available in Eclipse Plugin..... 1866
TocJS Transformation Does not Generate All Files for a Tree-Like TOC..... 1867
Text Rendering Issues on macOS..... 1868
Chapter 21. DITA Authoring..... 1869
Getting Started with DITA..... 1870

Working with Projects in DITA....1878
Working with DITA Maps....1878
DITA Maps Manager....1880
Creating a Map....1897
Managing DITA Maps....1900
Chunking DITA Topics....1926
DITA Map Validation and Completeness Check....1926
DITA Map Author Mode Actions....1932
Opening a DITA Map With Topic Content Resolved....1943
Working with DITA Topics....1944
Creating a New DITA Topic....1946
Fast Create Multiple DITA Topics....1949
Editing DITA Topics....1952
Converting DITA Topics to Another Type....1955
Changing the Look of DITA Documents in Author Mode Using the Styles Menu....1958
Working with Images in DITA Topics....1960
Adding Video, Audio, and Embedded HTML Resources in DITA Topics....1963
Working with Image Maps in DITA....1967
Adding Tables in DITA Topics....1973
Adding MathML Equations in DITA Topics....1987
Adding LaTeX Equations in DITA Topics....1988
DITA Questions and Answers Topic Type....1989
DITA Topic Author Mode Actions....1989
Working with Markdown Documents in DITA....2012
Working with DITA-Compatible Documents....2015
Working with Keys in DITA....2016
Working with a Glossary of Terms in DITA....2018
Reusing DITA Content....2020
Reusing DITA Topics in Multiple Maps....2023
Working with Content References....2025
Working with Code References....2041
Working with the Conref Push Mechanism....2042
Working with Reusable Components....2044

Working with Variable Text in DITA.....2047
Working with DITA 1.3 Key Scopes.....2049
Working with DITA 1.3 Branch Filtering.....2050
DITA Reusable Components View.....2051
Linking in DITA.....2059
Hierarchical Linking in DITA Maps.....2060
Linking in DITA Topics.....2061
Linking with Relationship Tables in DITA.....2067
Content Completion in DITA.....2069
Publishing DITA Output.....2070
Built-in DITA Map Transformation Scenarios.....2071
Built-in DITA Topic Transformation Scenarios.....2095
Running a DITA Transformation Scenario.....2096
Creating or Editing a DITA-OT Transformation.....2096
Customizing DITA Transformations.....2111
Publishing with a DITA-OT Project File.....2116
Dynamic Word, Excel, OpenAPI, HTML, Markdown to DITA Conversion.....2118
Troubleshooting DITA Transformation Problems.....2119
DITA Profiling / Conditional Text.....2126
Creating and Editing Profiling Attributes in DITA.....2127
Applying Profiling Attributes in DITA.....2130
Creating and Editing Profiling Condition Sets in DITA.....2132
Applying Profiling Condition Sets in DITA.....2134
Showing and Filtering Profiled Content in DITA.....2136
Customizing Colors and Styles for Rendering Profiling in Author Mode.....2139
Conditional Profiling Attribute Groups.....2141
Customizing Profiling Values with a Subject Scheme Map.....2143
Filtering Profiling Values with a DITAVAL File.....2148
Styling the Rendering of Profiled Content Using a DITAVAL File.....2150
Publishing Profiled DITA Content.....2151
Conditional Processing to Generate Multiple Deliverables.....2152
DITA Open Toolkit Support.....2152
DITA-OT Plugins.....2152

Using an External DITA Open Toolkit in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin....2163
DITA Open Toolkit Project....2163
DITA Specialization Support....2169
Integrating a DITA Specialization....2169
Editing DITA Map Specializations....2171
Editing DITA Topic Specializations....2172
Translating DITA Projects Overview....2172
Main Files Support in DITA....2174
DITA Referenced/Dependent Resources View....2176
Search and Rename Actions for IDs in DITA....2179
Metadata....2180
Migrating MS Office Documents to DITA....2180
Migrating Various Document Formats to and from DITA....2182
How to Count Words in DITA Topics or Maps....2184
DITA 1.3 Support....2184
DITA 2.0 Support....2186
Chapter 22. Scripting Oxygen....2188
DITA Validate and Check For Completeness....2188
Transform....2189
Validate....2190
XML Refactoring....2194
DITA Translation Package Builder....2195
Batch Converter....2197
Compile Framework Script....2198
XSLT Stylesheets Documentation....2199
XML Schema Documentation....2200
JSON Schema Documentation....2200
OpenAPI Documentation....2202
WSDL Documentation (Deprecated)....2204
XML Instance Generator....2205
Flatten XML Schema....2206
Compare Directories....2206
Compare Files....2213

Providing Arguments to Comparison Scripts via a Configuration File.... 2218
Merge Files with Change Tracking Highlights....2221
Merge Directories with Change Tracking Highlights.... 2223
Format and Indent Files....2226
Chapter 23. Glossary....2228
Active Cell....2228
Alternate CSS Style....2228
Anchor....2228
Apache Ant....2228
Block Element.... 2228
Bookmap....2228
Callout....2229
Canonicalize.... 2229
Content Completion Assistant....2229
Dockable.... 2229
Document Fragment.... 2229
Document Type Association....2229
DITA Map....2230
DITA Open Toolkit....2230
DITA-OT-DIR.... 2230
Foldable Element.... 2230
Framework....2231
IDML....2231
Inline Element....2231
Java Archive....2231
Key Space....2231
Keystore.... 2231
Main CSS Style.... 2231
Main File....2232
Perspective....2232
Plugin.... 2232
Pretty-Print....2233
QName....2233

Quick Fix/Assist....2233
Quick Fix....2233
Root Map....2234
Space-Preserved Element....2234
Subject Scheme Map....2234
Track Changes....2234
WebHelp Output Directory....2235
Working Set....2235
XML Catalog....2235
Index....a
Copyright....aq

1.
Introduction

Welcome to the User Manual of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin 28.1.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is a cross-platform application designed to accommodate all of your XML editing, authoring, developing, and publishing needs. It is the best XML editor available for document development using structured mark-up languages such as XML, XSD, Relax NG, XSL, DTD. It is a comprehensive solution for authors who want to edit XML documents visually, with or without extensive knowledge about XML and XML-related technologies. The WYSIWYG-like editor is driven by CSS stylesheets associated with the XML documents and offers many innovative, user-friendly authoring features that make XML authoring easy and powerful.

It offers developers and authors a powerful **Integrated Development Environment** and the intuitive **Graphical User Interface** of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is easy to use and provides robust functionality for content editing, project management, and validation of structured mark-up sources. Coupled with *XSLT* and *FOP* transformation technologies, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers support for generating output to multiple target formats, including: *PDF*, *PS*, *TXT*, *HTML*, *JavaHelp*, *WebHelp*, and *XML*.

This user guide is focused on describing features, functionality, the application interface, and to help you quickly get started. It also includes a vast amount of advanced technical information and instructional topics that are designed to teach you how to use Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to accomplish your tasks. It is assumed that you are familiar with the use of your operating system and the concepts related to XML technologies and structured mark-up.

2.
Getting Started

This section provides a variety of resources to help you get the most out of the application. Typically, the first step of getting started with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin would be to install the software. For detailed information about that process, see the Installation chapter *(on page 36)*.

After installation, when you launch Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for the first time, you are greeted with a **Welcome** dialog box. It presents upcoming events, useful video demonstrations, helpful resources, the tip of the day, and also gives you easy access to recently used files and projects and to create new ones.

What is Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is the best XML editor available and is a complete XML development and authoring solution. It is designed to accommodate a large number of users, ranging from beginners to XML experts. It is the only XML tool that supports all of the XML schema languages and provides a large variety of powerful tools for editing and publishing XML documents.

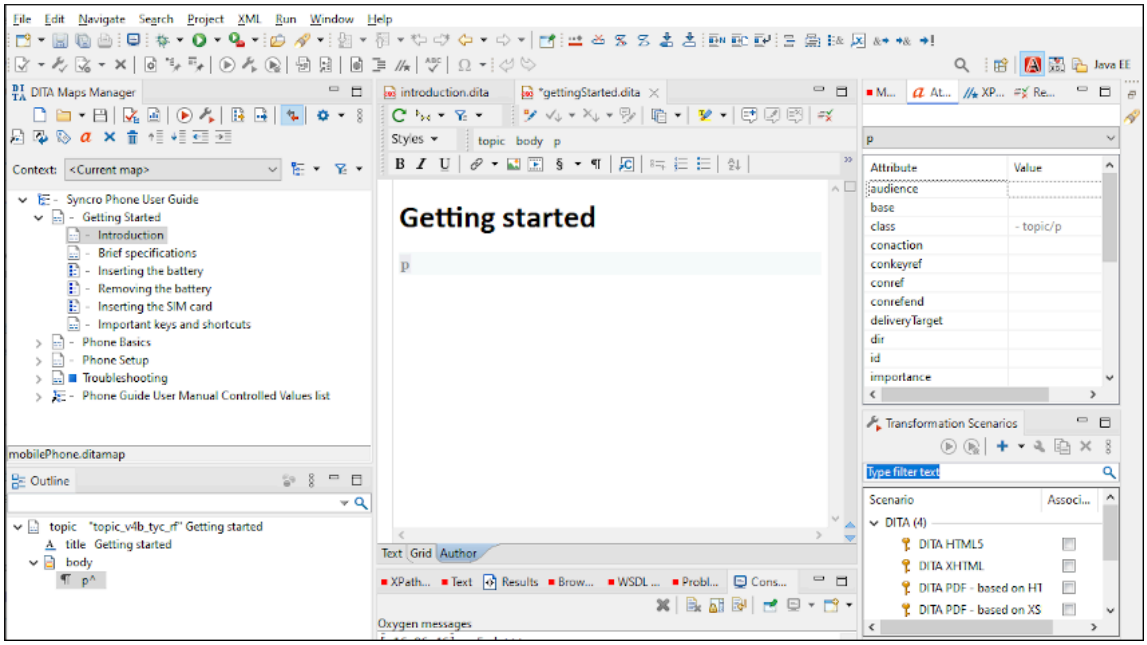
You can use Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to work with most XML-based standards and technologies. It is a cross-platform application available on all the major operating systems (Windows, macOS, Linux, Solaris) and can be used either as a standalone application or as an Eclipse plugin.

For a list of many of the features and technologies that are included in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the Oxygen Website.

Getting Familiar with the Interface

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes several *perspectives (on page 2232)* and editing modes *(on page 220)* to help you accomplish a wide range of tasks. Each *perspective* and editing mode also includes a large variety of helper views, menu actions, toolbars, and contextual menu functions.

Figure 1. Clickable Image Map of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Interface



1. Menus *(on page 18)*
2. Toolbars *(on page 18)*
3. Left-side Helper Views *(on page 18)*
4. Right-side Helper Views *(on page 18)*
5. Editor Pane *(on page 19)*
6. Perspectives *(on page 19)*
7. Editing Modes *(on page 220)*

Regardless of the *perspective (on page 2232)* or editing mode that you are working with, the default layout consists of the following areas:

Menus

Menu-driven access to all the features and functions available in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. Most of the menus are common for all types of documents, but Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes some context-sensitive and *framework*-specific menus and actions that are only available for a specific context or type of document.

Toolbars

Easy access to common and frequently used functions. Each icon is a button that acts as a shortcut to a related function. Some of the toolbars are common for all *perspectives*, editing modes, and types of documents, while others are specific to the particular *perspective* or mode. Some toolbars are also *framework*-specific, depending on the type of document that is being edited.

Helper Views

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a large variety of *dockable (on page 2229)* views to assist you with editing, viewing, searching, validating, transforming, and organizing your

documents. Many of the views also contain useful contextual menu actions, toolbar buttons, or menus. The most commonly used views for each *perspective* and editing mode are displayed by default and you can choose to display others to suit your specific needs.

Editor Pane

The main editing area in the center of the application. Each editing mode provides a main editor pane where you spend most of your time reading, editing, applying markup, and validating your documents. The editor pane in each editing mode also includes various contextual menu actions and other features to help streamline your editing tasks. Each file that has been opened has a tab at the top of the editing pane.

Perspectives

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes several different *perspectives (on page 215)* that you can use to work with your documents. The **Oxygen XML** *perspective* is the most commonly used *perspective* used for displaying and editing the content of your XML documents, and it is the default *perspective* when you start Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for the first time. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes a **Database** *perspective* that allows you to manage databases.

Resources to Help You Get Started Using Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

Configuring Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

There are numerous ways that you can configure Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to accommodate your specific needs.

See the Configuring Oxygen section *(on page 63)* for details on the various ways that you can configure the application and its features.

Video Tutorials and Webinars

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website includes numerous video demonstrations and webinars that present many of the features that are available in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and show you how to complete specific tasks or how to use the various features.

Go to the **Oxygen Videos** page to see the list of video tutorials.

Go to the **Oxygen Events** page to see all the upcoming and past webinars, conferences, and other events.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Documentation

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin documentation includes a plethora of sections and topics to provide you with a variety of information, ranging from basic authoring tasks to advanced developer techniques. You can, of course, search through the documentation using standard search mechanisms, but you can also place the cursor in any particular position in the interface and use the **F1** key to open a dialog box that presents a section in the documentation that is appropriate for the context of the current cursor position. Aside from the

other topics in this *Getting Started* section, the following are links to other sections of the documentation that might be helpful for your specific needs:

- **Text Editing Mode Section *(on page 220)*** - Provides information about the **Text** editor.
- **Author Editing Mode Section *(on page 221)*** - Provides information about the visual WYSIWYG-like **Author** editing mode.
- **Editing Specific Document Types Chapter *(on page 281)*** - Includes information about editing numerous different types of documents.
- **DITA Authoring Chapter *(on page 1869)*** - Provides information about using DITA to edit and structure your content.
- **Publishing Chapter** *(on page 796)* - Provides information about the various ways that you can publish content.
- **Importing Data Chapter *(on page 1521)*** - Provides information about importing data from text files, MS Excel files, database data, and HTML files.
- **Tools Chapter** *(on page 1818)* - Details about the various built-in tools that are available in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Sample Documents

Your installation of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a large variety of sample documents and projects that you can use as templates to get started and to experiment with the various features and technologies. They are located in the **samples** folder that is located in the installation directory of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. You will find files and folders for various types of documents, including the following:

- **Sample project file (`sample.xpr`)** - A sample project file that will allow you to experiment with how projects can be structured and used. When you open this project file, you will be able to see all the sample files and folders in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*.
- **Sample files *(personal.xml, etc.)*** - A collection of interrelated sample files that will allow you to experiment with the structure and relationship between files, stylesheets, and schemas.
- **Various document type folders** - The various folders contain sample files for numerous document types, such as CSS, DITA, DocBook, ePub, TEI, XHTML, and many others.

Other Resources

The following list includes links to various other resources that will help you get started using the features of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:

- See the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Blog Site for a large variety of current and archived blogs regarding numerous features, requests, and instructional topics.
- Take advantage of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Forum to see various announcements and learn more about specific issues that other users have experienced.
- If you are using DITA, see the incredibly helpful DITA Style Guide Best Practices for Authors.
- To learn about the WebHelp features in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the Publishing DITA to WebHelp section of the website.

- For more information about various additional tools that are integrated into Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the Tools section *(on page 1818)*.
- See the External Resource Page for links to various other helpful resources, such as discussion lists, external tutorials, and more.
- See the Oxygen SDK section for details about the SDK that allows you to extend and develop Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *frameworks (on page 2231)* and *plugins (on page 2232)*, and to integrate Eclipse plugins.
- For a list of new features that were implemented in the latest version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the What's New Section on the website.

Your First Document or Project

This section includes several topics that will help you get started with your first document or project.

Your First XML Document

To create your first XML document, select **File > New > Other > Oxygen** or click the **New** button on the toolbar. The **New** document wizard *(on page 222)* is displayed:

You can either create a new XML document from scratch by choosing one of the available types in the wizard. You can also create one from a template by selecting **File > New > New from Templates** and choosing a template from the **Global templates** or **Framework templates** folders. If you are looking for a common document type, such as DITA or DocBook, you can find templates for these document types in the **Framework templates** folder. If your company has created its own templates, you can also find them there.

For some document types, you may find a lot of different templates. For example, there are numerous templates for DocBook documents, and DITA topic types and maps. Choose the template that best meets your needs.

Writing Your First Document

Depending on the type of document you choose, the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin interface changes to support editing that document type. This may include new menus, toolbar buttons, and items in the contextual menus.

Also, depending on the type of document you choose, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin may open your document in **Text** *(on page 220)* or **Author** *(on page 221)* mode. **Text** mode shows the raw XML source file, while **Author** mode shows a graphical view of the document.

The availability of **Author** mode for your document type depends on the type you choose and if there is a CSS stylesheet available to create the **Author** mode. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes default **Author** mode views for most of the document types it supports. If your company has created its own document types, **Author** mode stylesheets may have also been created for that type. However, if you create a plain XML file, or one based on a schema that is not included in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin built-in support, you need to edit it in **Text** mode or create your own **Author** mode CSS *(on page 1709)* for it.

You can switch back and forth between **Author** mode and **Text** mode at any time by clicking the buttons at the bottom left of the editor window. You do not lose any formatting when switching from **Author** to **Text** mode. **Text** and **Author** modes are just different views for the same XML document.

There is also a **Grid** mode *(on page 220)* available that displays all content in an XML document as a structured grid of nested tables. This is useful for certain kinds of documents, particularly those that are structured like databases. You can also use it when you want to display XML content in a table-like manner (for example, if you need to extract XML content to a spreadsheet *(on page 342)*).

If you use **Author** mode, you might find that it is similar to word processors that you are used to. Likewise, the **Text** mode is similar to many other typical text editors. If you are new to XML, the biggest difference is that XML documents have a particular structure that you have to follow. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin assists you with a continuous validation of the XML markup.

Structuring Your First Document

Each XML document type has a particular structure that you have to follow as you write and edit the document. Some document types give you a lot of choices, while others give you very few. In either case, you need to make sure that your document follows the particular structure for the document type you are creating. This means:

- At any given location in the document, there are only certain XML elements allowed. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin helps you determine which elements are allowed. In **Author** mode, when you press **Enter**, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin assumes that you want to enter a new element and shows you a list of elements that can be created in this location. Keep typing until the element you want is highlighted and press **Enter** to insert the element. If you want to view the overall structure of a document and see what is allowed (and where), you can use the **Model** view *(on page 307)* (**Window > Show View > Model**).
- When you create certain elements, you may find that your text gets a jagged red underline and you get a warning that your content is invalid. This is usually because the element you have just created requires certain other elements inside of it. Your document will be invalid until you create those elements. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin helps you with this. If there is only one possible element that can go inside the element you just created, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin creates it for you. However, if there is more than one possibility, you have to create the appropriate elements yourself. In many cases, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin presents XML *Quick Fixes (on page 560)* that help you resolve errors by offering proposals to quickly fix problems such as missing required attributes or invalid elements.

Editing Your First Document

Once you have completed the first draft of your document, you may need to edit it. As with any editor, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides the normal cut, copy, and paste options as well as drag and drop editing. However, when you are editing an XML document, you have to make sure that your edits respect the structure of the XML document type. In fact, you are often editing the structure as well as the content of your document.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides many tools to help you edit your structure and to keep your structure valid while editing text.

The Document Breadcrumbs

Across the top of the editor window (in **Text** mode), there is a set of breadcrumbs that shows you exactly where the insertion point is in the structure of the document. You can click any element in the breadcrumbs to select that entire element in the document.

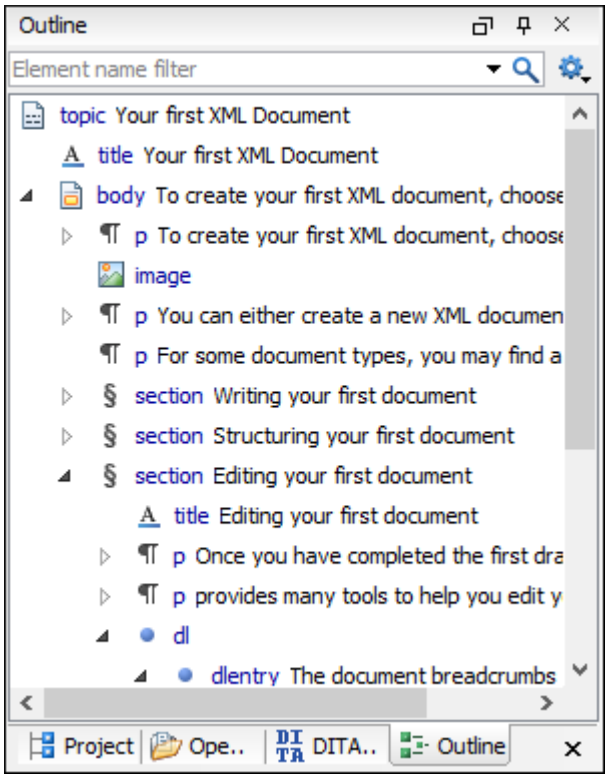
Showing Tags

To see exactly where you are in the structure of the document, you can show the tags graphically in the **Author** view. There are several levels of tag visibility that you can choose using the **Tags Display Mode** drop-down menu *(on page 348)* on the toolbar (the button may look a little different than this, as it changes to reflect the level of tags currently displayed).

Outline View

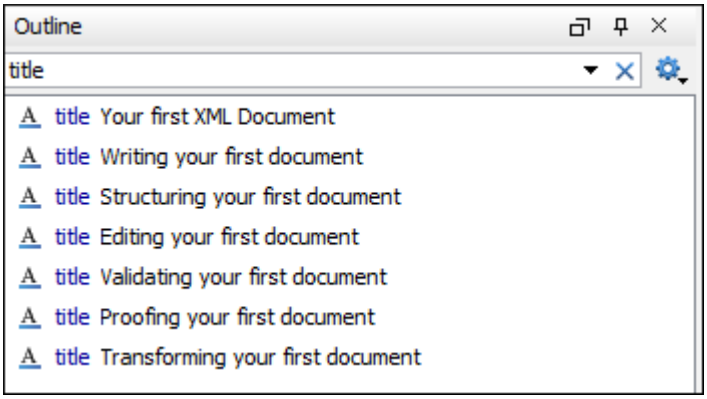
The **Outline** view *(on page 301)* shows you the structure of your document in outline format. You can use it to select elements, or to move elements around in the document.

Figure 2. Outline View



You can configure the **Outline** view to determine what is shown, such as element names, attributes, and comments. Certain choices may work better for particular document types. You can also filter the **Outline** view to show only elements with a certain name.

Figure 3. Outline View Filtered to only Show Element Names



Cut and Paste, Drag and Drop

You can cut and paste or drag and drop text, just as you would in any other editor. However, when you do this in **Author** view, it is important to remember that you are actually moving blocks of XML. When you cut and paste or drag and drop a block of XML, the result has to be valid both where the content is inserted, and where it is removed from.

A big part of doing this correctly is to make sure that you pick up the right block of text in the first place. Using the breadcrumbs or **Outline** view, or showing tags and using them to select content, can help ensure that you are selecting the right chunk of XML.

If you do try to paste or drop a chunk of XML somewhere that is not valid, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin warns you and tries to suggest actions that make it valid (such as by removing surrounding elements from the chunk you are moving, by creating a new element at the destination, or by inserting it in a nearby location).

If you are using **Author** mode, you can also switch to **Text** mode to see exactly which bits of XML you are selecting and moving.

Refactoring actions

You can perform many common structure edits, such as renaming an element or wrapping text in an element, using the actions in the **Refactoring** menu of the contextual menu. More advanced refactoring operations are also available using the **XML Refactoring** tool *(on page 587)* that is available in the **XML Tools** menu.

Validating Your First Document

Validation is the process of making sure that an XML document abides by the rules of its schema. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin knows how to find the schema, it validates the document for you as you type. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin finds the schema automatically for most of the document types created from templates. However, in some cases, you may have to tell it how to find the schema *(on page 525)*.

When Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin validates as you type, there is a small bar at the right edge of the editor that shows you if the document is invalid and where errors are found. If the indicator at the top of that bar is green, your document is valid. If the document is invalid, the indicator turns red and a red flag shows you

where the errors are found. Click that flag to jump to the error. Remember that sometimes your document is invalid simply because the structure you are creating is not yet complete.

In addition to problems with the validity of the XML document itself, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also reports warnings for a number of conditions, such as if your document contains a cross reference that cannot be resolved, or if Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin cannot find the schema specified by the document. The location of these warnings is marked in yellow on the validation bar. If the document contains warnings, but no errors, the validity indicator turns yellow.

You can also validate your document at any time by selecting the **Validate** action from the **Validation** toolbar drop-down menu or the **XML** menu. When you validate in this manner, if errors are found, the validation result opens in a new pane at the bottom of the editor that shows each validation error on a separate line. Clicking the error takes you to the location in your document where the error was detected.

Note:
Be aware that the problem is sometimes in a different location from where the validator detects the error. To get more information about a validation error, right-click a validation error message, and select **Show Message**.

Proofing Your First Document

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an automatic (as-you-type) spell checking feature *(on page 268)*, as well as a manual spell checking action. To check the spelling of your document manually, use the **Check Spelling** action on the toolbar.

Transforming Your First Document

An XML document must be transformed to be published. Transformations are specific to the particular type of document you have created. For example, a DITA transformation cannot be used on a DocBook file, or vice versa. A single document type may have many multiple transformations that produce different kinds of outputs. For some document types, such a DITA, many different content files may be combined together by a transformation. You need to locate and launch a transformation that is appropriate for your document type and the kind of output you want to generate.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses transformation scenarios *(on page 796)* to control the transformation process. Depending on the document type you have created, there may be several transformation scenarios already configured for your use. This may include the default transformation scenarios supplied by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin or ones created by your organization.

To see the list of transformations available for your document, select the **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu. A list of available transformation scenarios is displayed. Choose one or more scenarios to apply, and click **Apply associated**. Exactly how your transformed content appears depends on how the transformation scenario is configured.

Getting Started with DITA

The information in this topic is meant to be a very basic starting point for those who are just getting started using DITA in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin makes it easy to create, edit, manage, and publish DITA content, but it requires at least some basic DITA knowledge. To truly get the most out of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and all of its DITA-related features, you should explore resources in the online DITA community to acquire knowledge of its concepts and uses.

Understanding DITA Topics

It is important to understand the role that a DITA topic plays in a DITA project. A DITA topic is not associated with a single published document. It is a separate entity that can potentially be included in many different books, help systems, or websites. Therefore, when you write a DITA topic you are not writing a book, a help system, or a website. You are writing an individual piece of content. This affects how you approach the writing task and how Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin works to support you as you write.

Most of your topics are actually related to other topics, and those relationships can affect how you write and handle things such as links and content reuse. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin helps you manage those relationships. Depending on how your topics are related, you can use the tools provided in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, along with the features of DITA, in a variety of ways.

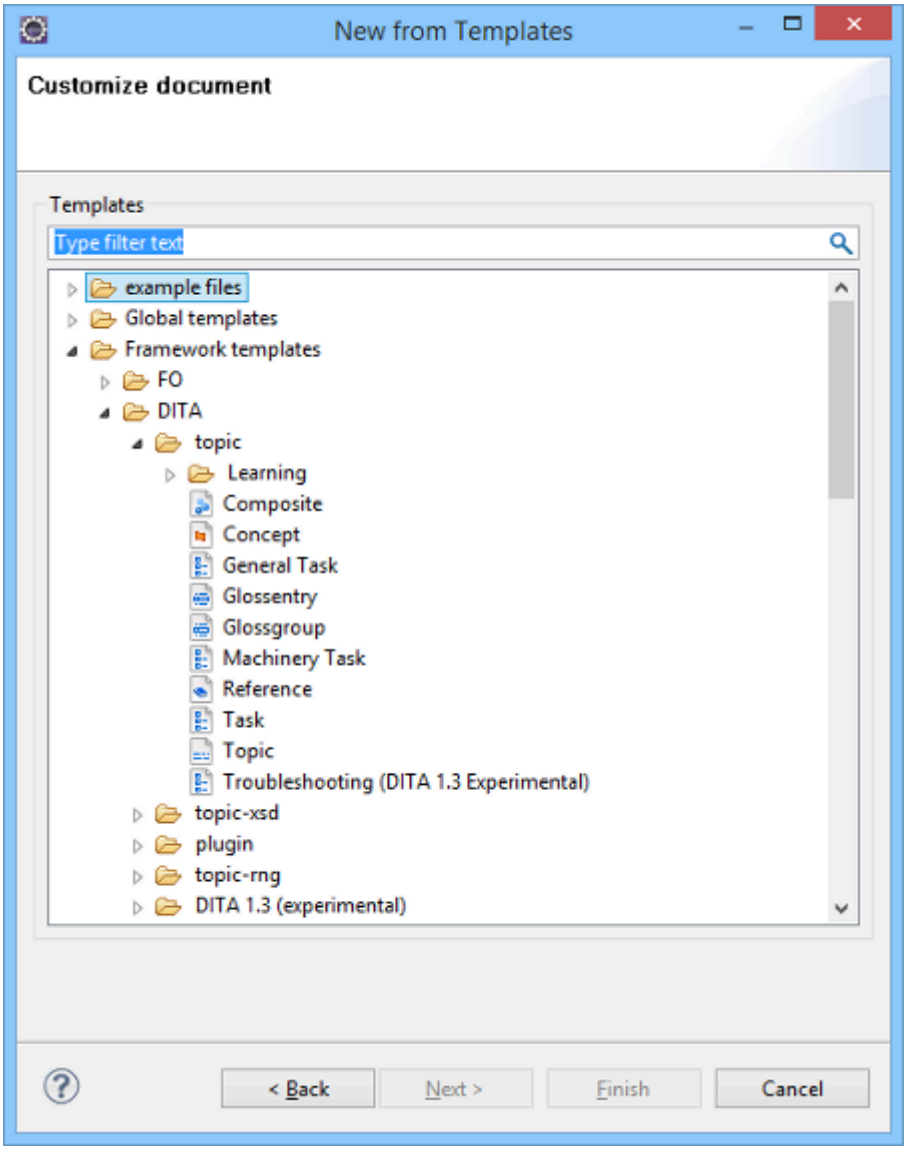
Creating a DITA Topic in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

To create a DITA topic *(on page 1946)*:

1. Select **File > New > Other > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin**, or click the **New** button on the toolbar, and select **New from Templates**.

   Step Result: The **New from Templates Wizard** *(on page 222)* is displayed:

Figure 4. New DITA Document from Templates Wizard



2. Go to **Framework templates > DITA > topic** and select the type of topic that you want to create, then click **Next**.

> **Note:**
> If your organization has created DITA customizations, the appropriate template files may be in another location, and various types of topics may be provided for your use. Check with the person who manages your DITA system to see if you should be using templates from another directory.

3. Select a file path where it will be saved.
4. Click **Finish**.

Result: Your document is opened in the editor. Eventually, you will need to add a reference to it in your DITA map *(on page 29)*.

Your DITA topic is an XML document, thus all the editing features that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides for editing XML documents *(on page 21)* also apply to DITA topics. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also provides additional specific DITA-related support for working with DITA topics *(on page 1944)*, their associated *DITA maps (on page 1878)*, and for creating DITA output *(on page 2070)*.

Role of Maps

The basic method that DITA uses to express the relationship between topics is through a *DITA map (on page 2230)*. Other relationships between topics, such as cross references, generally need to be made between topics in the same root map. DITA uses maps to determine which topics are part of any output that you create. While customized DITA solutions can use other mechanisms, generally DITA is not used as a way to publish individual topics. Output is created from a map and includes all the topics referenced by the map.

A publication is not always represented by a single map. For instance, if you are writing a book, you might use a submap to create each chapter and then organize the chapters in a main root map to create the book. This helps you to manage your content, offers the possibility of reusing submaps, and segregates content to support multiple people working on the same project.

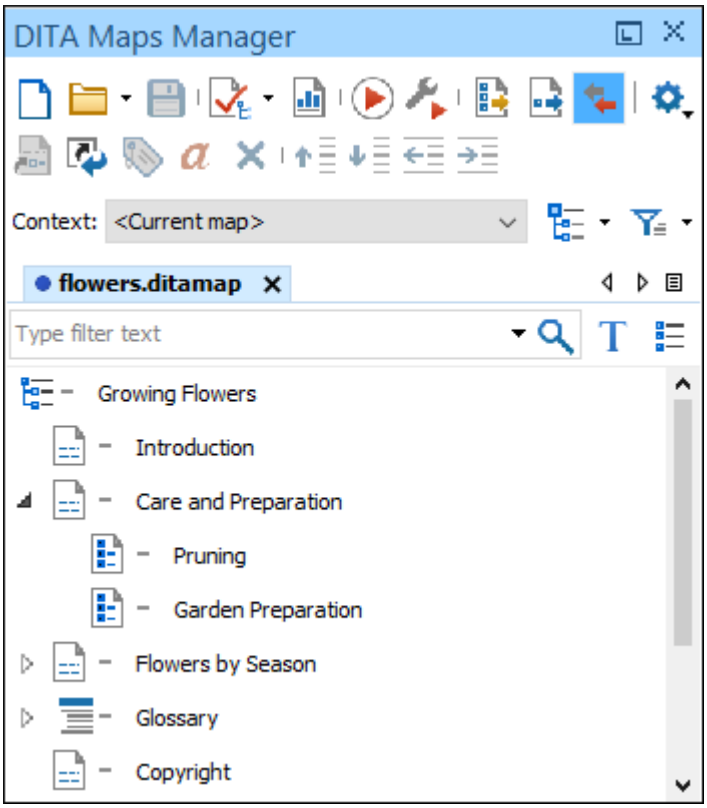
Creating a Map in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

To create a map *(on page 1897)*:

1. Select **File > New > Other > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin**, or click the **New** button on the toolbar, and select **New from Templates**.
2. Go to **Framework templates > DITA Map > map** and select the type of map you want to create.

3. Choose whether you want to open the map in the **Editor** or in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*. Usually, opening it in the **DITA Maps Manager** is the best choice. The **DITA Maps Manager** presents a view of the *DITA map* that is similar to a table of contents.

Figure 5. DITA Maps Manager View



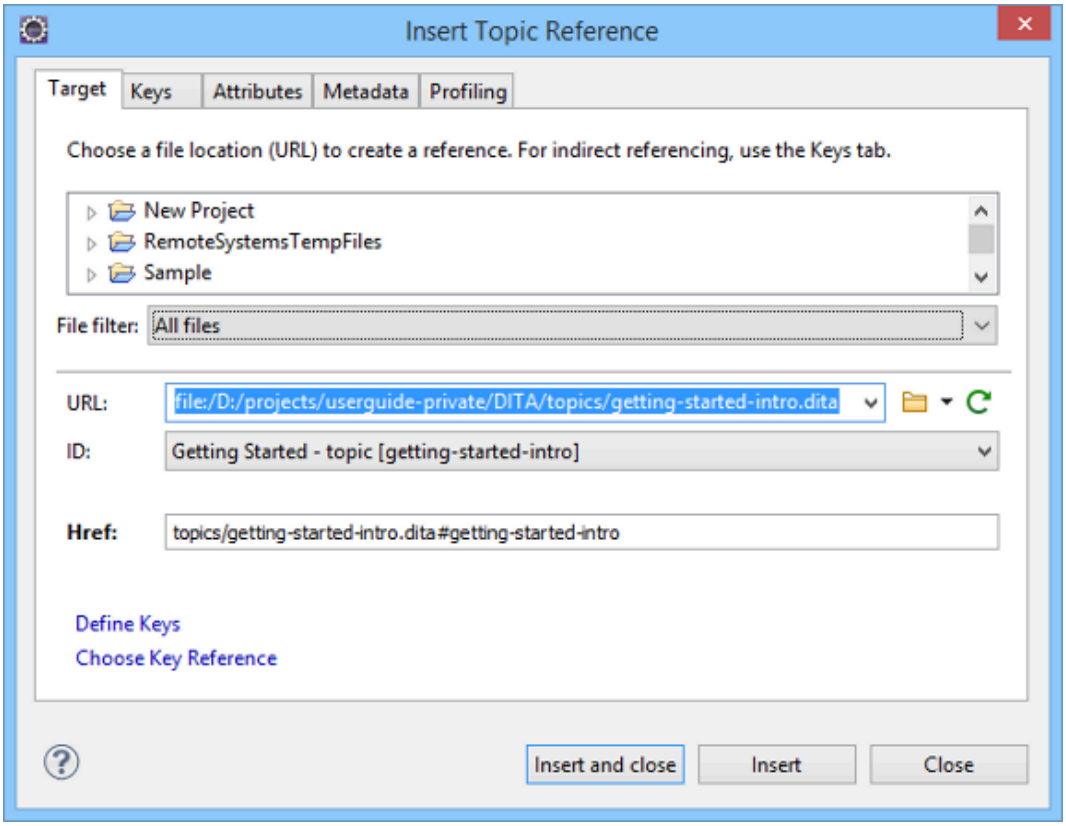
Adding Existing Topics to a Map in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

There are several ways to add a topic reference to a map *(on page 1901)*. Perhaps the easiest method is to add a reference to a topic that is already open in the editor:

1. Open the DITA topic in the main editing window.
2. Right-click the *DITA map* in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* and choose **Reference to the currently edited file** from the **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, or **Insert After** submenu.

   Step Result: This opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* with all of the required fields already filled in for you.

Figure 6. Insert Reference Dialog Box



3. You can fill in additional information in the various tabs in this dialog box or add it to the map later.
4. Select **Insert and close** to add a reference to your topic in the map.
5. Save the *DITA map*.

Adding New Topics to a Map in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

As you add topics to your map, you may want to create a new topic as a child or sibling of another topic. This is usually done at the map level.

To add a new topic to a map *(on page 1901)*, follow these steps:

1. In the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, right-click the node in the current map where you want to add the new topic.
2. Select one of the following actions:
   - **Append Child > New** - Select this action to insert the new topic as a child of the selected node. This action opens a **New** file dialog box *(on page 1947)* that allows you to select the type of document and assists you with naming it. After you have configured your new topic, click **Create**.
   - **Insert Before > New** - Select this action to insert the new topic as a sibling to the current node, before it. This action opens a **New** file dialog box *(on page 1947)* that allows you to select the type of document and assists you with naming it. After you have configured your new topic, click **Create**.

- **Insert After > New** - Select this action to insert the new topic as a sibling to the current node, after it. This action opens a **New** file dialog box *(on page 1947)* that allows you to select the type of document and assists you with naming it. After you have configured your new topic, click **Create**.
- **Duplicate** - Select this action to create a copy of the selected topic and insert it as a sibling. This action opens a dialog box that allows you to choose the file name and location for the newly created copy of the topic. After you have selected the name and path for your new topic, click **OK**.

> **Note:**
> The value of the root ID is generated taking the *Use the file name as the value of the root ID attribute* option from the **DITA > Topics** preferences page *(on page 79)* into account. When the option is deselected, a unique ID is generated.

Step Result: The new topic is now referenced (as a `<topicref>`) in the *DITA map* at the location where you inserted it and the new topic is opened in the editor.

3. Save the *DITA map*.

You can also change the order and nesting of topics in the **DITA Maps Manager** view by doing either of the following:

- Select the topic to move while holding down the **Alt** key and use the arrow keys to move it around.
- Use the mouse to drag and drop the topic to the desired location.

The way your parent and child topics are organized in any particular output depends on both the configuration of those topics in the map and the rules of the output transformation that is applied to them. Do not assume that your topics must have the same organization for all output types. The map defines the organization of the topics, not the topics themselves. It is possible to create a variety of maps, each with different organization and configuration options to produce a variety of outputs.

Adding Submaps in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

If you have a large set of information, such as a long book or extensive help system, a single map can become long and difficult to manage. To make it easier to manage, you can break up the content into smaller submaps *(on page 1898)*. A submap might represent a chapter of a book, a section of a user manual, or a page on a website. To build a publication out of these smaller maps, you must add them to a map that represents the overall publication.

To add a child map to the current map *(on page 1898)*:

1. Right-click the parent *DITA map* in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* and choose **Append child > Map reference**.

   Step Result: This opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* with all of the required fields already filled in for you.
2. You can fill in additional information in the various tabs in this dialog box or add it to the map later.
3. Select **Insert and close** to add a reference to your submap in the main map.
4. Save the main *DITA map*.

Validating a Map in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

Just as it is with your individual topics, it is important to validate your maps *(on page 1926)*. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a validation function for *DITA maps* that does more than simply validating that the XML is well-formed. It also does the following:

- Validates all of the relationships defined in the maps.
- Validates all of the files that are included in the map.
- Validates all of the links that are expressed in the files.

Validating the map that describes your entire publication validates all the files that make up the publication and all of the relationships between them.

To validate a map:

1. Click the **Validate and Check for Completeness** button in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*.

   Step Result: This opens the **DITA Map Completeness Check** dialog box *(on page 1927)*.
2. Select any of the various options you want to check.
3. Click **Check** to run the validation process.

Publishing Your Topics in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

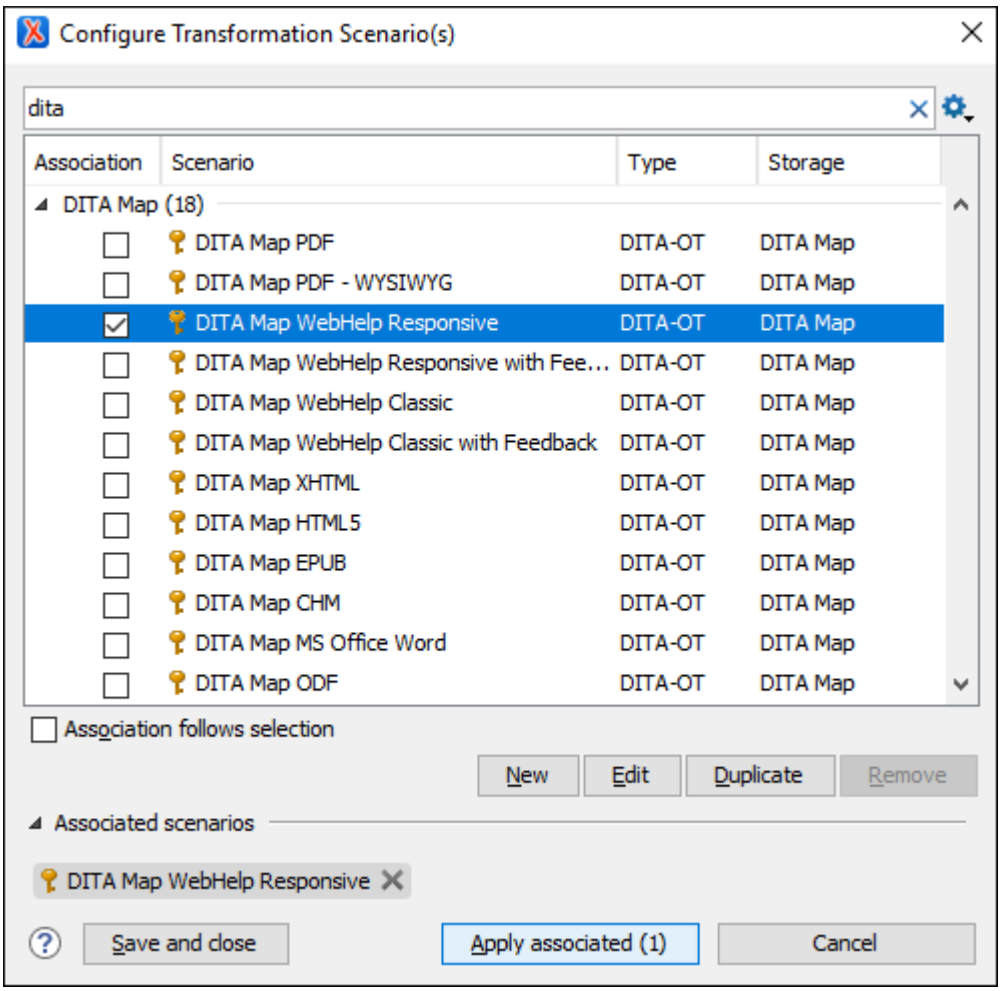
As noted previously, in DITA standards you usually do not publish output from an individual topic. Instead, you create published output *(on page 2070)* by running a DITA transformation on a map. This collects all the topics that are referenced in the map, organizes them, and produces output in a particular format. By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the transformations provided by the **DITA Open Toolkit** for publishing to various output formats (such as PDF, WebHelp or EPUB). Your organization may have created various custom transformations or modified the built-in **DITA Open Toolkit** transformations. In either case, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin manages them by using transformation scenarios.

To publish output for a map:

1. Click the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** button in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*.

   Step Result: This opens the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

Figure 7. Configure Transformation Scenarios Dialog Box



2. Select the appropriate transformation depending on the type of output you desire.
3. To change or view the configuration or storage options for a transformation scenario, select the transformation and click **Edit**.
4. Click **Apply associated**.

Result: Depending on the configuration of the transformation scenario, when the transformation is finished, your output may automatically be opened in the appropriate application.

Resources

For more information about getting started with DITA and how to work with DITA in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see our compiled collection of DITA-related webinars that are meant to help you with your journey into working with DITA: Webinars: Working with DITA in Oxygen.

Related information

DITA Authoring *(on page 1869)*

Editing XML Documents in Author Mode *(on page 343)*

https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/

Webinars: Working with DITA in Oxygen

Doctales - DITA Introduction

Creating a New Project

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to organize your files into projects. Projects help you manage and organize your files and allow you to perform batch operations (such as validations and transformations) over multiple files. Use the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* to manage projects, and the files and folders contained within.

Creating a New Project

To create a new project, select **New > XML Project** or **New > Sample XML Project** from the contextual menu or **File** menu.

This opens a dialog box that allows you to create and customize a new project and adds it to the structure of the project in the **Project Explorer** view.

You can either create a new XML document from scratch by choosing one of the available types in the wizard. You can also create one from a template by selecting **File > New > New from Templates** and choosing a template from the **Global templates** or **Framework templates** folders. If you are looking for a common document type, such as DITA or DocBook, you can find templates for these document types in the **Framework templates** folder. If your company has created its own templates, you can also find them there.

Adding Items to the Project

To add items to the project, select the desired document type or folder from the **New** menu of the contextual menu, when invoked from the **Project Explorer** view (or from the **File** menu). You can also create a document from a template by selecting **New > New from Templates** from the contextual menu.

Using Linked Folders (Shortcuts)

Another easy way to organize your XML working files is to place them in a directory and then to create a corresponding linked folder in your project. If you add new files to that folder, you can simply use the **Refresh (F5)** action from the project contextual menu and the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* will display the existing files and subdirectories. If your files are scattered among several folders, but represent the same class of files, you might find it useful to combine them in a logical folder.

You can create linked folders (shortcuts) by dragging and dropping folders from the Windows Explorer (macOS Finder) to the project tree, or by using the contextual menu from the location in the project tree

where you want it added and selecting **New > Folder > Advanced**. The linked folders presented in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* are marked with a special icon. To create a file inside a linked folder, use the contextual menu and select **New > File** (you can use the **Advanced** button to link to a file in the local file system).

Note:
Files may have multiple instances within the folder system, but cannot appear twice within the same folder.

For more information on managing projects and their content, see Project Explorer View *(on page 245)*.

Related information
Using Projects to Group Documents *(on page 243)*

3.
Installation

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is available on Windows, Linux, and macOS and there are a variety of methods and options for installing and running Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin on your system or server. This section also includes information about registering, transferring, or releasing licenses, upgrading, and uninstalling.

Choosing How Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Runs

You can install Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to run in several ways:

- As a desktop application (running standalone or as an Eclipse plugin) on Windows, Linux, or macOS.
- As a desktop application (running standalone or as an Eclipse plugin) on a Unix or Linux server or on Windows Terminal Server.

Choosing an Installer

You also have a choice of several different installers:

- The native installer for your platform (Windows, Linux, or macOS).
- On Windows and Linux, the native installer can also run in unattended mode.
- The Update Site installer *(on page 37)*.
- The Zip archive installer *(on page 38)*.

Choosing a License Option

You must obtain and register a license *(on page 40)* to run Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

You can choose from two types of licenses:

- A named-user license, which can be used by a single person on multiple computers.
- A floating license, which can be used by different people at different times. Only one person can use a floating license at a time.

Upgrading, Transferring, and Uninstalling.

You can also upgrade *(on page 60)* Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, transfer a license *(on page 42)*, or uninstall *(on page 62)* Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Getting Help With Installation

If you need help, email support at: support@oxygenxml.com.

Installing Oxygen as an Eclipse Plugin

System Requirements

Operating Systems

- Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 10, Windows 11, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012
- macOS version 10.11 64-bit or later
- Any Unix/Linux distribution with an available Java SE Runtime Environment version 11 from Oracle

CPU

- Minimum - 1 GHz processor
- Recommended - Dual-core class processor

Memory

- Minimum - 2 GB of RAM
- Recommended - 4 GB of RAM

Storage

- Minimum - 400 MB free disk space
- Recommended - 1 GB free disk space

Java

Java 21 from Oracle.

On Eclipse, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the same Java Virtual Machine as the copy of Eclipse it is running in.

Eclipse

The following Eclipse versions are officially supported: 4.5-4.39.

Update Site Method

To install the Eclipse plugin using the *Update Site* method, follow this procedure:

1. Start Eclipse.
2. Go to **Help > Install New Software > Available Software**.
3. Click **Add** in the **Available Software** dialog box.
4. Enter `https://www.oxygenxml.com/InstData/Author/Eclipse/site.xml` into the **Location** field of the **Add Site** dialog box.
5. Click **OK**.

6. Select the **Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin** checkbox.
7. Click **Next** and continue with the rest of the installation wizard.
8. Restart Eclipse when prompted.
9. Verify that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is installed correctly by creating a new XML Project. Go to **File > New > Other** and choose **Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin > XML Project**.
10. When prompted for a license key, enter the license information received in the registration email.

> **Note:**
> If you already have a native version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installed on your computer, you will not be prompted for a license key for the Eclipse version. The existing license key will be used automatically.

Zip Archive Method

To install the Eclipse plugin using the *Zip Archive* method, follow this procedure:

1. Download the zip archive with the Eclipse plugin.
2. Unzip the downloaded zip archive in the `dropins` subdirectory of the Eclipse installation directory.
3. Restart Eclipse.
4. Verify that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is installed correctly by creating a new XML Project. Go to **File > New > Other** and choose **Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin > XML Project**.
5. When prompted for a license key, enter the license information received in the registration email.

> **Note:**
> If you already have a native version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installed on your computer, you will not be prompted for a license key for the Eclipse version. The existing license key will be used automatically.

Eclipse Marketplace

It is also possible to install Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin from the Eclipse Marketplace. Simply search for **Oxygen** and use the **Install** button that has instructions when you hover over the button.

Site-Wide Deployment

If you are deploying Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for a group, there are various things you can do to customize Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for your users and to make the deployment more efficient.

Creating custom default options

You can create a custom set of default options *(on page 196)* for Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. These will become the default options for each of your users, replacing the normal default settings. Users can still set options to suit themselves in their own copies of Oxygen

XML Author Eclipse plugin, but if they choose to reset their options to defaults, the custom defaults that you set will be used.

Creating default project files

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin project files *(on page 243)* are used to configure a project. You can create and deploy default project files *(on page 243)* for your projects so that your users will have a preconfigured project file to begin work with.

Using floating licenses

If you have a number of people using Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin on a part-time basis or in different time zones, you can use a floating license *(on page 44)* so that multiple people can share a license.

Licensing

This section contains information about licensing Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, including details about the types of licenses that are available, managing licenses, using a license server to manage licences for an organization, and information about managing license servers.

Installing a License Server to Manage Licenses

If you are using floating licenses or a large number of user-based licenses (20 or more) for **Oxygen XML Editor/Author/Developer**, you must set up an Oxygen License Server *(on page 47)*.

Registering License Keys

To help you comply with the **Oxygen** EULA (terms of licensing), all floating or named-user licenses must be registered. This means that the license key will be locked to a particular license server deployment and no multiple uses of the same license key are possible.

During the activation process, a code that uniquely identifies your deployment of the license server is sent to the **Oxygen** servers. The servers will then sign the license key.

Splitting or Combining License Keys to Work with Your License Servers

A license server can only manage one license key. If you have multiple license keys for the same version of **Oxygen XML Editor/Author/Developer** and you want to have all of them managed by the same server, or if you have a multiple-user floating license and you want to split it between two or more license servers, contact the Oxygen support team and ask for a new license key.

You can obtain a license key for Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin in one of the following ways:

- You can purchase one or more licenses from the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website at https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy.html or through one of the authorized resellers. A license key will be sent to you by email.
- If your company or organization has already purchased licenses, contact your license administrator to obtain a license key or configuration details to connect to a license server.

- If you purchased a subscription and you received a registration code, you can use it to obtain a license key from https://www.oxygenxml.com/registerCode.html. A license key will be sent to you by email.
- If you want to evaluate the product, you can obtain a trial license key for 30 days from the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website at https://www.oxygenxml.com/register.html.

License Types

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is not free software. To activate and use Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, you need a license.

The following license types are available:

- A **Named-User License** *(on page 40)* may be used by a single *Named User* on one or more computers. Named-user licenses are not transferable to a new *Named User*. If you order multiple named-user licenses, you will receive a single license key good for a specified number of *named users*. It is your responsibility to keep track of the *named users* that each license is assigned to.
- A **Floating License** *(on page 44)* may be used by any user on any machine. However, the total number of copies of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin in use at one time must not be more than the number of floating licenses available. A user who runs two different distributions of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (for example, Standalone and Eclipse Plugin) at the same time on the same computer, consumes a single floating license.
- A **Subscription** license that allows you to use the application for a specific period of time (either 6 months or 1 year). This type of license is user-based and is covered by a Support and Maintenance Pack, which means that during the subscription period you will get free upgrades to all major and minor releases and priority technical support.

For demonstration and evaluation purposes, a time-limited license is available upon request at https://www.oxygenxml.com/register.html. This license is supplied at no cost for a period of 30 days from the date of issue. During this period, the software is fully functional, enabling you to test all its functionality. To continue using the software after the trial period, you must purchase a permanent license.

For definitions and legal details of the license types, consult the End-User License Agreement available at https://www.oxygenxml.com/eula_author.html.

Named-User Licenses

A **Named-User License** can be used by a single *Named User* on one or more computers. Named-user licenses cannot be transferred to another *named user*. If you purchase multiple named-user licenses, you will receive a single license key that is valid for a specified number of *named users*. It is your responsibility to keep track of which *named users* are assigned to each license.

Registering a Named-User License

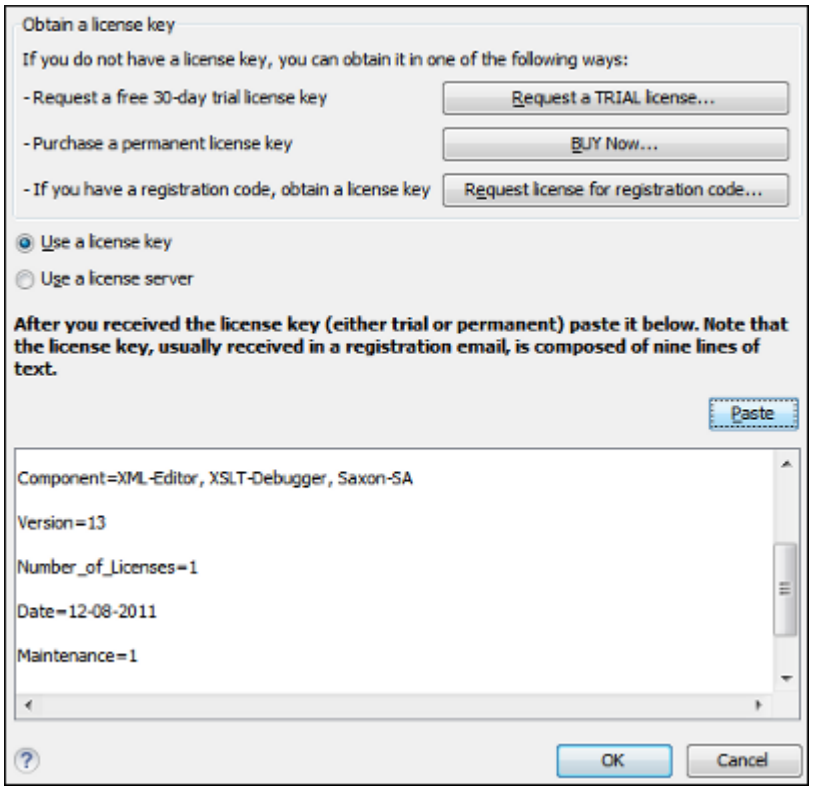
To register a *Named-User License* on a machine owned by the *Named User*, follow these steps:

1. Purchase a license from the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website. You will receive an email that contains your license key.

2. Save a backup copy of your email message that contains the new license key.

3. Open an XML document in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
   If this is a new installation of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, the registration dialog box is displayed. If the registration dialog box is not displayed, go to **Window** (**Eclipse** on macOSX) and choose **Preferences > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin** and click the **Register** button.

   Figure 8. License Registration Dialog Box

4. Select **Use a license key** as the licensing method.

   > **Note:**
   > If your license key has 20 or more licenses, you must use a license server *(on page 39)* instead.

5. Paste your license key into the registration dialog box. The license key is composed of nine lines of text between two text markers.

6. Click **OK**.

Related information

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin End-User License Agreement

Transferring a License Key

If you want to transfer your Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin license key to another computer (for example, if you are disposing of your old computer or transferring it to another person), you must first unregister your license. You can then register your license on the new computer in the normal way.

To unregister a license, prior to transferring it, follow this procedure:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and click **Register**.
   The license registration dialog box is displayed.
2. Make sure the **Use a license key** option is selected.
3. The license key field should be empty (this is normal). If it is not empty, delete any text in the field.
4. Click the **Remove** button at the bottom-right corner of the dialog box.
   A confirmation message is displayed asking if you want to remove your license key.
5. Select between:
   - **Yes** - Removes your license key from your user account on the current computer.
   - **No** - Falls back to your previous license key, if applicable.

Subscription Licenses

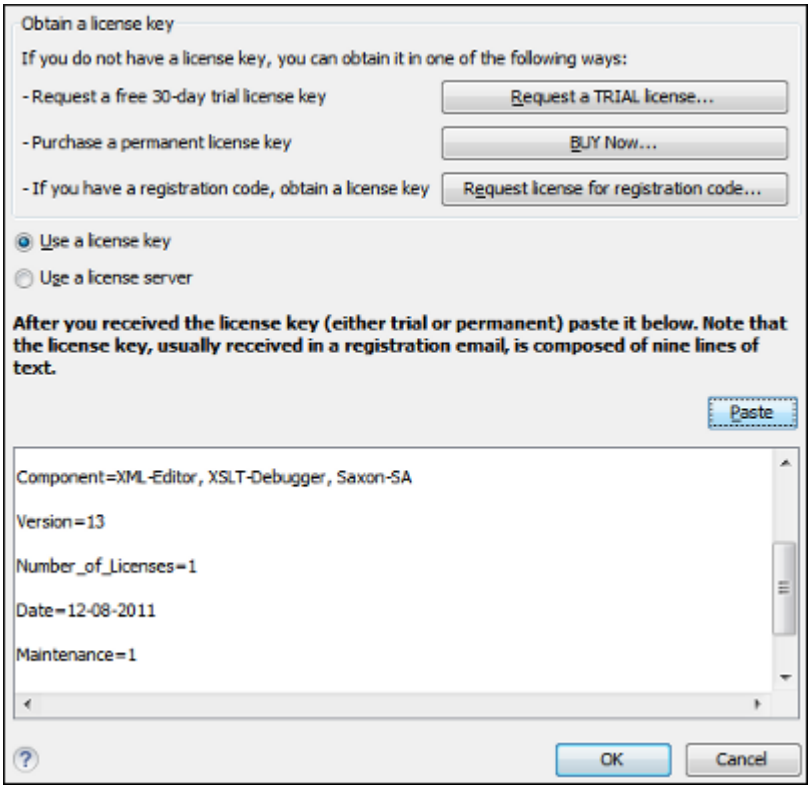
A **Subscription** license that allows you to use the application for a specific period of time (either 6 months or 1 year). This type of license is user-based and is covered by a Support and Maintenance Pack, which means that during the subscription period you will get free upgrades to all major and minor releases and priority technical support.

Registering a Subscription License

To register a *Subscription License*, follow these steps:

1. Purchase a license from the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website. You will receive an email that contains your license key.
2. Save a backup copy of your email message that contains the new license key.
3. Open an XML document in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
   If this is a new installation of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, the registration dialog box is displayed. If the registration dialog box is not displayed, go to **Window** (**Eclipse** on macOSX) and choose **Preferences > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin** and click the **Register** button.

Figure 9. License Registration Dialog Box



4. Select **Use a license key** as the licensing method.

   > **Note:**
   > If your license key has 20 or more licenses, you must use a license server *(on page 39)* instead.

5. Paste your license key into the registration dialog box. The license key is composed of nine lines of text between two text markers.

6. Click **OK**.

Related information

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin End-User License Agreement

Automatic Check for Subscription Renewal

The **Oxygen License Server** has a mechanism that tries to detect when you purchase a renewal of your current subscription and automatically updates the license key.

To determine that a license key you purchased is a renewal of the license key you have currently installed in the License Server, it uses the **Previous order reference number** if you inserted it in the checkout process.

This automatic renewal mechanism makes an HTTP request to *https://oxygenxml.com/subscription_management/check_renewal.php* and passes the following as parameters:

- The SGN field of the existing license key.
- The server signature that uniquely identifies the License Server installation.

This request is made by the License Server automatically (or manually by pressing the **Check now** link).

This mechanism can be disabled by deselecting the **Automatically check for subscription renewal** checkbox.

Floating Licenses

The floating license type is commonly used by organizations that have a large number of infrequent users who do not require simultaneous access to the application. Instead of each user having their own individual license key, a pool of licenses is available for use on demand, one at a time.

To use floating licenses, a license server is required and the license key needs to be activated. Your system administrator will most likely be responsible for setting up the license server *(on page 47)*. Then you will need to request a floating license from the server *(on page 44)*. This process is designed to ensure compliance with the *Oxygen End-User License Agreement (EULA)*. This means that the license key will be locked to a particular license server deployment, and the same license key cannot be used with any other license server.

For information about releasing and returning a floating license to the pool for other users, see Releasing a Floating License *(on page 45)*.

For information about reserving (or locking) a floating license so that it does not get returned to the pool, see Reserving a Floating License *(on page 46)*.

Requesting a Floating License from a License Server

How to Request a Floating License

To request a floating license from an HTTP license server, follow this procedure:

1. Contact your server administrator to make sure the license server has already been set up and get network address and login details for the license server.
2. Start the Eclipse platform.
3. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and click **Register**.

   Step Result: The license registration dialog box is displayed.
4. Choose **Use a license server** as licensing method.
5. Select **HTTP/HTTPS Server** as server type.
6. In the *URL* field, enter the address of the license server. The URL address has the following format: `http://hostName:port/oXygenLicenseServlet/license-servlet`.
7. Complete the *User* and *Password* fields.
8. Click the **OK** button.

Result: If a floating license is available, it is registered in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To display the license details, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*. If a floating license is not available, you will get a message listing the users currently using floating licenses.

How to Register Floating Licenses for Multiple Users

If you are an administrator and you want to register floating licenses for multiple users without having to open Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin on each machine to manually configure the registration details one by one, you can use the following procedure:

1. Reset the registration details in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:
    a. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and click **Register**.
    b. Click **OK** without entering any information in this dialog box.
    c. Click **Reset** and restart the application.
2. Register the license using one of the floating license registration procedures *(on page 44)*.

    Step Result: A `license.xml` file is created.
3. Copy the `license.xml` file from the `preferences` directory *(on page 64)* and place it in the `lib` subfolder of the installation directory (e.g. `[ECLIPSE-INSTALL-DIR]\plugins\com.oxygenxml.author_22.1.0.v*\lib`).

Related information
Installing License Servers *(on page 47)*

Releasing a Floating License

The floating license you are using will be released and returned to the pool if any of the following occur:

- The connection with the license server is lost.
- The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will consume one license from the server's pool of licenses if at least one *Oxygen* editor window is opened (not necessarily focused). In other words, if a user wants to release a license, all *Oxygen* editor windows must be closed.
- You exit the application running on your machine, and no other copies of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin running on your machine are using your floating license.
- You register a *Named User* license with your copy of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, and no other copies of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin running on your machine are using your floating license.
- Your computer idles for more than 2 hours.
- Your system administrator manually revokes the license *(on page 54)*.

Tip:
To prevent your floating license from being released, you can use the **Lock floating license** action available in the **Preferences** dialog box (go to **Window** (**Eclipse** on macOS) and choose **Preferences >**

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. You can use the same action to unlock the license. Note that your system administrator can also unlock your license *(on page 55)*.

To release a floating license on demand, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and click **Register**.
   The license registration dialog box is displayed.
2. The license key field should be empty (this is normal). If it is not empty, delete any text in the field.
3. Make sure the **Use a license key** option is selected.
4. Click **OK**.
   A dialog box is displayed asking if you want to reset your license key.
5. Select between:
   - **Use the last one** - Falls back to your previous license key. Use this option if you want to release a floating license and revert to a *Named User* license.
   - **Reset** - Removes your license key from your user account on the current computer.

   The **Reset** button erases all the licensing information. To complete the reset operation, close and restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Reserving a Floating License

There may be times when you need to reserve or lock a floating license. For example, you could lock a floating license if you want to use your floating license offline while traveling.

To reserve/lock a floating license, follow these steps:

1. **Important:** The license server must be configured by the server administrator to allow license locking. See License Server Management and Statistics - Configuration *(on page 54)*.
2. Select **Lock floating license** from the **Preferences** dialog box (go to **Window** (**Eclipse** on macOSX) and choose **Preferences > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin**.
3. Click **OK**.
   Your floating license is now locked. You can use the same action to unlock the license or you can contact your system administrator to unlock it.

   Note:

   A locked floating license uses one license from the license pool for the entire period it remains locked.

Registering Floating Licenses for Multiple Users

If you are an administrator and you want to register floating licenses for multiple users without having to open Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin on each machine to manually configure the registration details one by one, you can use the following procedure:

1. Reset the registration details in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:
    a. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and click **Register**.
    b. Click **OK** without entering any information in this dialog box.
    c. Click **Reset** and restart the application.
2. Register the license using one of the floating license registration procedures *(on page 44)*.

    Step Result: A `license.xml` file is created.
3. Copy the `license.xml` file from the `preferences` directory *(on page 64)* and place it in the `lib` subfolder of the installation directory (e.g. `[ECLIPSE-INSTALL-DIR]\plugins\com.oxygenxml.author_22.1.0.v*\lib`).

Related information
Requesting a Floating License from a License Server *(on page 44)*
Installing License Servers *(on page 47)*

Installing License Servers

If you are using floating licenses or a large number of user-based licenses (20 or more) for **Oxygen XML Editor/Author/Developer**, you must set up an **Oxygen License Server**.

The HTTP License Server is available in several distributions, tailored for covering various deployment configurations:

- **Windows installer** - Easy-to-use Windows installation wizard. Requires elevated permissions to run it.
- **All-platform distribution** - Script-based deployment that does not require elevated permissions to run it. Provides scripts for Windows, macOS, and Linux.
- **Web Archive (WAR) distribution** - Provides more flexibility in your deployment configuration, but it requires an existing HTTP server (such as Apache Tomcat).

HTTP License Server System Requirements

Table 1. Minimum Requirements

Hardware	Specification
CPU	1 core
RAM	512 MB/Linux OS, 1 GB/Windows OS (256 MB available memory)

Table 1. Minimum Requirements (continued)

Hardware	Specification
Hard Disk Space	500 MB
Network Requirements	**Network interfaces stay unchanged (static MAC addresses) after activation**
Server OS Requirements	• Linux • Windows (Server 2022 is supported)
Antivirus and Firewall Requirements	Allow access to the configured TCP port (default 8080)

Note:
Oxygen XML Editor/Author/Developer version 17 or higher requires a license server version 17 or higher. License servers version 20.1 or higher can be used with any version of a floating or named-user license key.

Restriction:
The floating license server does not work with *Docker* containers.

License Activation

The activation process involves binding your license key to a unique license server deployment. Once the process is complete, you cannot activate the license key with another license server deployment.

To activate the license key directly from License Server's UI, you need to access it from a browser with internet access.

Note:
During this process, the activation signature, provided license key, and any configured public URLs are sent to `oxygenxml.com`.

Activation Signature

The default signature calculation is *"Use machine signature (MAC, etc.)"* where the *activation signature* of the License Server instance is computed from various machine IDs.

The **Use the public URL of the License Server** option offers a more flexible activation signature, as you can choose where you provide the exact URL that *Oxygen* applications will use to request a license (the URL should be in the format of: `http(s)://my-domain:port/context-name/license-servlet`). This reduces number of machine IDs used to compute the *activation signature*.

Note:
The public server URL does not have to be accessible from outside your network. It should not be a local URL (e.g. `localhost` and `127.0.0.1`) as they are not supported.

Manual License Activation Procedure

If you cannot access the License Server administration page from a browser that has internet access (therefore, the license cannot be activated automatically during the installation), you can manually activate the license by following these steps:

1. Access the HTTP license server management page in a web browser.
2. Copy the machine signature code.

   Note:
   The machine signature is displayed on the page as long as the license key has not yet been activated. If you are trying to update/replace an already activated license key, the machine signature can be found by clicking on **Remove/Replace License**, then selecting **Replace** on the next page.

3. Go to the activation page at: http://www.oxygenxml.com/activation/.
4. Enter or paste the machine signature code and the license key, then click **Activate**.

   Step Result: The activated license key is displayed on-screen.
5. Copy the activated license key and paste it in the license registration page of the HTTP server.

Backup License Server Information

If you want to use a backup license server, the setup instructions are the same as the procedures for a main license server, but it requires its own separate license key. Contact the Oxygen support team to find out more details about the backup license pricing and availability.

Related information
Troubleshooting: Server Signature Mismatch Errors *(on page 59)*

Installing the License Server Distribution for Windows

1. Download the HTTP license server installer from the HTTP License Server website.
2. Run the installer and follow the on-screen instructions.
3. You must configure two sets of credentials:
   a. **Administrator credentials** - Used for accessing the **Oxygen** license server administrative interface.
   b. **Standard user credentials** - Used by an **Oxygen** application to connect to the license server.

4. You can choose to change the default 8080 port the server runs on. If you need to change the port after the installation, you can edit the following *vmoptions* file: `oXygen HTTP License Server\Windows Service\oXygenHTTPLicenseServer.vmoptions`.
5. Optionally, you can choose to install the server as a Windows service. In this case, you can choose the name of the Windows service.

Tip:
In case you run into issues, the license server log file is located in: `[Installation_Directory]\work\logs\oXygenLicenseServlet.log`.

HTTPS Support

The All-Platform Distribution of the HTTP License Server do not provide the means to use HTTPS (TLS). If you need HTTPS, you should install the HTTP License Server WAR Distribution *(on page 51)* on Tomcat (preferably 9.x). See the WAR Distribution HTTPS Support *(on page 53)* section for more details.

Installing the License Server All-Platform Distribution

1. **[Prerequisite]** Java 11 or later must be installed.
2. Download the HTTP license server all-platform archive from the HTTP License Server website.
3. Unpack the archive.
4. Run the license server scripts suitable for your operating system (`licenseServer.bat` for Windows or `licenseServer.sh` for Linux and macOS).

   Note:
   To specify a port other than the default 8080, you can pass a new port number as an argument to the scripts (for example, `licenseServer.bat 8082`). You can also change the port by editing the *vmoptions* file located at `oXygen HTTP License Server\Windows Service\oXygenHTTPLicenseServer.vmoptions`.

5. On the first run, you are prompted to set two sets of credentials:
   a. **Administrator credentials** - Used for accessing the **Oxygen** license server administrative interface.
   b. **Standard user credentials** - Used by an **Oxygen** application to connect to the license server.

      Tip:
      If you want to manually install, start, stop, or uninstall the server as a Windows service, run the following scripts from a command line as an Administrator:
      - `installWindowsService.bat [serviceName]` - Installs the server as a Windows service with the name *serviceName*. The parameters for the license key folder and the server port can be set in the `oXygenLicenseServer.vmoptions` file.
      - `startWindowsService.bat [serviceName]` - Starts the Windows service.

- `stopWindowsService.bat [serviceName]` - Stops the Windows service.
- `uninstallWindowsService.bat [serviceName]` - Uninstalls the Windows service.

If you do not provide the `serviceName` argument, the default name *oXygenLicenseServer* is used.

If the license server is installed as a Windows service, the error messages are redirected to the `errLicenseServer.log` file in `oXygen HTTP License Server\work\Windows Service` folder.

HTTPS Support

The All-Platform Distribution of the HTTP License Server do not provide the means to use HTTPS (TLS). If you need HTTPS, you should install the HTTP License Server WAR Distribution *(on page 51)* on Tomcat (preferably 9.x). See the WAR Distribution HTTPS Support *(on page 53)* section for more details.

Installing the License Server WAR Distribution

1. Make sure that you have Java Servlet Container installed on the server you have selected to be the license server. Apache Tomcat 5.5 through 9.x is recommended (available at http://tomcat.apache.org). Tomcat 9.x is officially supported.

   Note:
   Tomcat 10.x and later will not work with the license server.

   Important:
   By default, the license server stores the statistics database and other data in the Java Servlet Container's temporary directory. If you are not using Apache Tomcat, this directory may be deleted when the server is stopped or restarted. However, you can set the `oxygen.license.server.work.dir` system property to specify a different path for the directory where the database is stored.

2. Download the HTTP license server **Web Archive** (**.war**) from the HTTP License Server website.

3. Configure three user roles in your installation of the Java Servlet Container (such as Apache Tomcat):
   a. One user with the role *user*, used by an **Oxygen** application to connect to the license server. In the subsequent example, this user name is **John**.
   b. Another user with the role *admin*, used for accessing the HTTP License Server administrative interface and the management interface. In the subsequent example, this user name is **Mary**.
   c. Another user with the role *manager-gui*, used for accessing the Apache Tomcat Web Application Manager. In the subsequent example, this user name is **tomcat**.

For example, in Apache Tomcat, a typical way to achieve this is to edit the `tomcat-users.xml` file from your Tomcat installation (if using a Tomcat **zip**/**tar.gz** distribution, by default this configuration file is found in the `/TomcatInstallFolder/conf/` directory). After adding the three users, the configuration file might look like this:

```
<tomcat-users xmlns="http://tomcat.apache.org/xml"
              xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
              xsi:schemaLocation="http://tomcat.apache.org/xml tomcat-users.xsd"
              version="1.0">
  <!-- ... other user and role definitions ... -->
  <role rolename="user"/>
  <role rolename="admin"/>
  <role rolename="manager-gui"/>
  <user username="John" password="user_pass" roles="user"/>
  <user username="Mary" password="admin_pass" roles="admin"/>
  <user username="tomcat" password="s3cret" roles="manager-gui"/>
</tomcat-users>
```

4. Deploy the WAR file.

   For example, in Apache Tomcat, go to the Web Application Manager page and log in with the user you configured with the *manager-gui* role (*tomcat* in the example above). In the **WAR file to deploy** section, choose the WAR file and click the **Deploy** button. The `oXygenLicenseServlet` application is now up and running, but the license key is not yet registered.

5. Go to the HTTP License Server administration page. By default, the address of this page is `http://<server-address>/oXygenLicenseServlet`. In Apache Tomcat, you can also open this page by clicking the `oXygenLicenseServlet` link in the manager page.

   You need to authenticate with the user configured with the `manager-gui` role (*tomcat* in the example above).

6. **Activate the license key**. This process involves binding your license key to your license server deployment. The browser used in the activation process needs to have Internet access.

   > **Note:**
   > If you cannot access the internet during the deployment, you can manually activate the license key.

   Once the process is completed you cannot activate the license on another license server. Follow these steps to activate the license:

a. Paste your license key into the form and click **Register/Activate**.

Step Result: You will be redirected to an online form hosted on the **Oxygen** website. This form is pre-filled with an activation code that uniquely identifies your license server deployment, and your license key.

b. Click **Register/Activate**.

If the activation process is successfully completed, your license server is running. Follow the on-screen instructions to configure the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin client applications.

7. The application's log file location is specified by the `log4j.appender.R2.File` property from the `WEB-INF/lib/log4j.properties` configuration file.

   For example, in Apache Tomcat, the configuration file is located at: `TomcatInstallDir/webapps/oXygenLicenseServlet/WEB-INF/lib/log4j.properties` and the default log file location is `TomcatInstallDir/logs/oxygenLicenseServlet.log`.

HTTPS Support

If you need HTTPS, you should install Tomcat (preferably 9.x) and follow its respective documentation regarding enabling and configuring TLS support.

Important:
If you use HTTPS, you will need an SSL certificate that is issued by a trusted authority. Self-signed certificates (or certificates issues by a local authority) are not accepted by the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin application (client side).

Installing Multiple Instances of WAR Distribution on a Tomcat Web Server

For organizations that have multiple sets of licenses (for example, an integrator with multiple clients might host a different license server for each client), use this procedure to install multiple instances of the *Oxygen License Servlet* on a Tomcat web server:

1. Rename the license server WAR file according to your needs. For example, you could use the customer name and a number (e.g. *client23415*).
2. Go to your Tomcat license server manager (e.g. `http://my.tomcatserver.com:port/manager/`) and enter your credentials.
3. Scroll to **WAR file to deploy** and press **Browse** button.
4. Locate the WAR file from step 1 and press the **Open** button.
5. Press the **Deploy** button.
6. Check that the newly deployed license server is running (it must be in the **Applications** table).

Managing License Servers

This section includes information about managing the your license server.

License Server Management and Statistics Pages

A system administrator can manage and access information about the license server at: `http://hostName:port/oXygenLicenseServlet`.

This page provides access to several statistics reports and management tasks. It also displays the current status of the server and provides additional instructions for using the license server with **Oxygen XML Editor/Author/Developer**.

This page includes the following links for accessing statistics or managing tasks:

- **Current Allocated Licenses** - Opens the **Allocated License Report** page *(on page 54)*.
- **Usage Statistics** (Available only for floating licenses) - Opens the **License Usage Statistics** page *(on page 55)*.
- **View License Key** - Use this link to open a page where you can see details about the license key.
- **Replace/Remove License Key** - Use this link if you need to replace or remove the current license key *(on page 57)*.
- **Configuration** - Opens a page where you can configure notification settings and set up the mail server used for sending emails whenever license requests from users are rejected. This page also contains a **Allow users to lock licenses** option. Enabling this option allows the users to lock/reserve a floating license *(on page 46)*.
- **Users management** (Available only for named-user licenses) - Opens a page where you can manage the list of users who are entitled to use the license key.
- **Allowed users list** (Available only for named-user licenses) - Opens a page where you can see the allowed users list (if one has already been configured), along with instructions for configuring one.

Allocated License Report Page

This report page provides a system administrator the ability to revoke or unlock current running instances of licenses and includes the following information:

- **License load** - A graphical indicator that shows how many licenses are available.
- **License server status** - General information about the license server status, such as start time, license counts, rejected and acknowledged requests, average usage time, license refresh and timeout intervals, location of the license key, and the server version.
- **Current running instances** - Lists all currently acknowledged users, including user name, date and time when the license was granted, IP and MAC address of the computer where **Oxygen** runs, and lock status.

- **Revoke** - A system administrator can click on the **Revoke** icon next to a user name to release that particular license and return it to the pool.
- **Unlock** - If a user has locked their license, the system administrator can also unlock it from this page.

Note:
This report is also available in XML format at: `http://hostName:port/oXygenLicenseServlet/license-servlet/report-xml`.

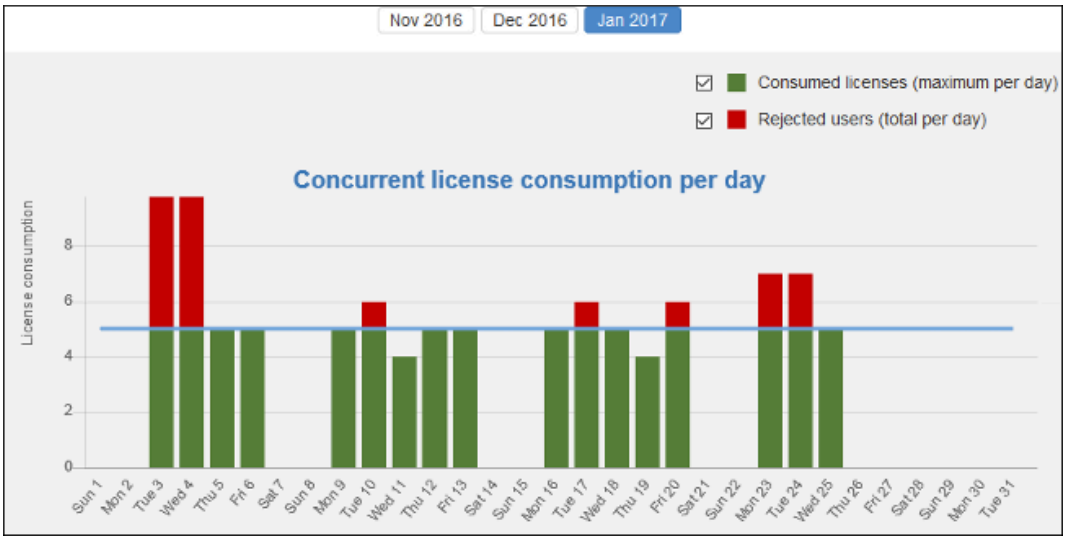
License Usage Statistics Page (Floating License Only)

This report page provides some usage statistics for the floating licenses. It is helpful for determining the number of licenses that are needed and monitoring times when licenses are consumed. It includes the following information:

- **Maximum number of concurrent licenses** - Shows the maximum number of floating licenses that can be consumed at any given time.
- **Concurrent license consumption per day** - A chart that shows the peak number of licenses that were consumed and the total number of users that were rejected, on a daily basis. This chart can be used to detect the amount of concurrent licenses that are needed to avoid having rejected users.

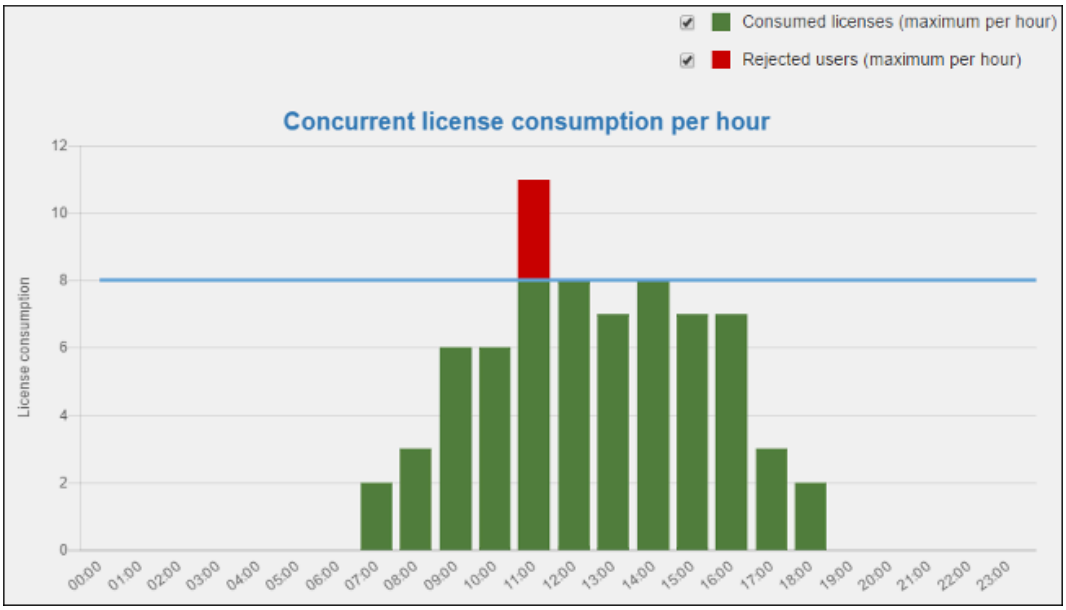
Tip:
You can click on any bar to see the license consumption per hour for that particular day.

Figure 10. Concurrent License Consumption per Day Chart



- **Concurrent license consumption per hour** - A chart that shows the peak number of licenses that were consumed per hour throughout that particular month. This is useful for identifying the time of day when the most licenses were consumed.

Figure 11. Concurrent License Consumption per Hour Chart



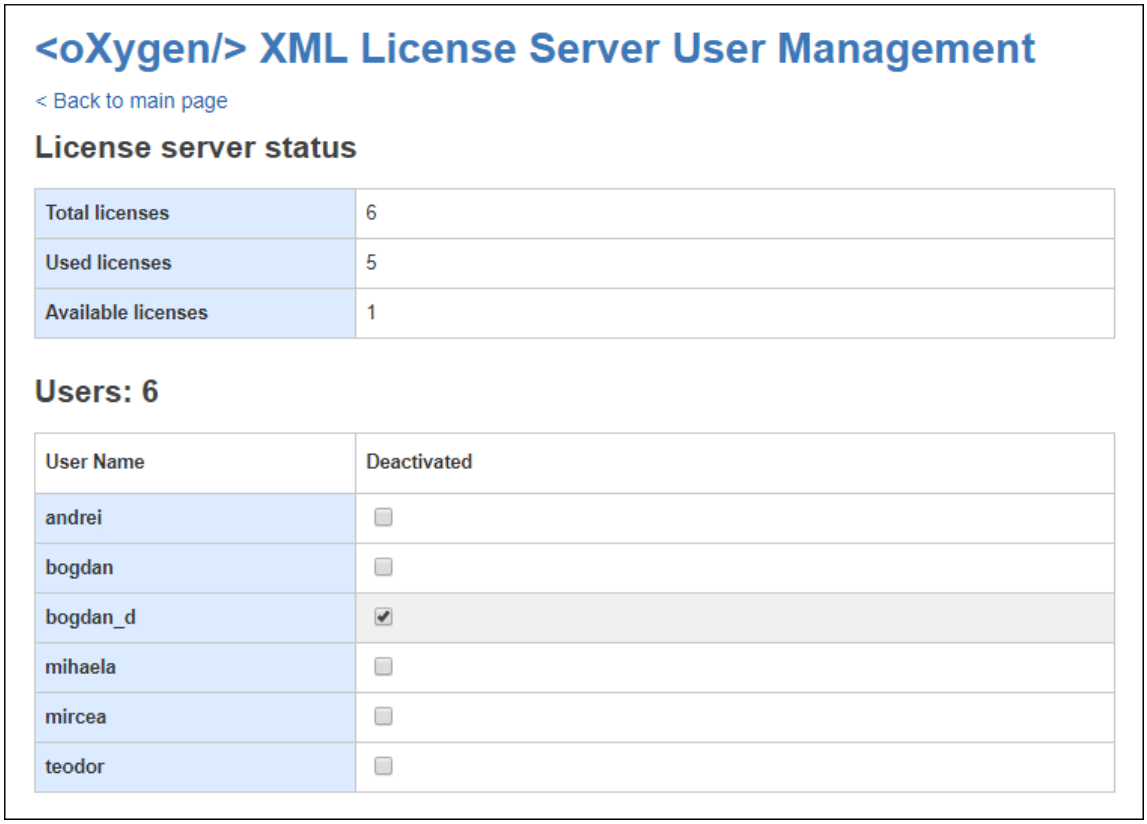
Users Management Page (Named-User License Only)

When a named-user license key is used, the license server allocates available licenses in the order they are requested until the maximum number is reached. Any additional users attempting to obtain a license key will be rejected.

This page provides access to the list of registered users and allows the server admin to:

- Revoke a user's right to use a license.
- Reactivate a previously deactivated user.

Figure 12. Users List Management Page



Replacing or Removing a License Key in an HTTP License Server

The following procedure assumes that your HTTP license server contains a previously activated license key and provides instructions for replacing it with another one or removing it completely.

This is useful if, for instance, you want to upgrade your existing license to the latest version or if you receive a new license key that accommodates a different number of users *(on page 39)*.

Replacing a License Key

To replace a license key that is activated on your HTTP license server with a new one, follow these steps:

1. Access the license server by following the link provided by the Tomcat Web Application Manager page and log in using your **admin** credentials.
2. Click the **Replace/Remove license key** link. This will open a page that contains details about the license currently in use.
3. Click the **Replace** button.
4. Paste the new license key in the displayed form.
5. Click **Register/Activate**. The browser used in the process needs to have Internet access.

Step Result: You will be redirected to an online form hosted on the **Oxygen** website. This form is pre-filled with an activation code that uniquely identifies your license server deployment and your license key.

> **Note:**
> If you cannot access the online activation form, you can manually activate the license key *(on page 49)*.

Result: If the activation process is completed successfully, your license server is now running using the new license key. You can click **View license key** to inspect the key currently used by the license server.

Removing a License Key

To remove a license key that is activated on your HTTP license server, follow these steps:

1. Access the license server by following the link provided by the Tomcat Web Application Manager page and log in using your **admin** credentials.
2. Click the **Replace/Remove license key** link. This will open a page that contains details about the license currently in use.
3. Click the **Remove** button to begin the license deletion procedure.
4. Click the **Remove** button in the confirmation page.

> **Important:**
> The removal process is irreversible. Once the process is complete, you cannot restore the license key.

Upgrading Your HTTP License Server

The goal of the following procedure is to help you minimize the downtime when you upgrade the HTTP License Server to its latest version:

1. Access the license server by following the link provided by the Tomcat Web Application Manager page. If prompted for authentication, use the **admin** credentials.
2. Click the **View license key** link and copy the displayed license key to a file for later use.
3. Go to the Tomcat Web Application Manager page, log in with the user you configured with the **admin** role, and *Undeploy* the license server.
4. Download the Web Archive (WAR) distribution of HTTP license server.
5. Deploy the downloaded license server.
6. Access the license server by following the link provided by the Tomcat Web Application Manager page. If prompted for authentication, use the credentials configured for the **admin** user.
7. Paste your license key into the form and register it.

Configuring a License Server to Only Allow Certain Users

A system administrator can configure the license server to only allow specific users to request a license. This is available only for named-user licenses (not floating licenses) and is managed using an *Allowed Users List*.

To configure an *Allowed Users List*:

1. Create a text file named **allowed-users.txt**.
2. Enter the user name for each allowed user on a separate line.
3. Save the file in the license server work directory. You can go to the license server management page, and under *Management Tasks*, click the **Allowed users list** link to open a page where you can see the exact directory where it needs to be stored.

> **Note:**
> If the `allowed-users.txt` file is present but it is empty, all users are allowed to request a license.

In the license server management page, there is a link to the **Allowed users list** under *Management Tasks*. Also, in the **Current Allocated Licenses** page, there is a **Show allowed users** button. Both of them direct you to a page where you can see the *Allowed Users List* (if one has already been configured), along with instructions for configuring one. The list updates automatically between license requests every 30 seconds if the file is changed.

Common Problems: License Server Errors

This section includes some common problems that may appear when setting up a license server.

Server Signature Mismatch Error

Problem

I receive an error indicating that *the current license was already activated on a License Server* or that the *License Server's Signature does not match*.

During the license activation process, the license key becomes bound to a particular license server deployment. This means that a code that uniquely identifies your license server deployment (called *Server Signature*) is sent to the **Oxygen** servers, which in turn will sign the license key. The *Server Signature* is computed from the list of network interfaces of the server where you deployed the license.

When starting the license server, if you receive an error stating that your *Server Signature* does not match, there are several possible causes:

Possible Cause 1

The license key was moved to a new server that hosts your license server.

Solution

Revert to your previous configuration.

Possible Cause 2

A new network interface was changed, added, or activated in the server that hosts your license server.

Note:
A specific example of when this could happen is if the Bluetooth or the WiFi module is activated/deactivated.

Solution

If reverting is not possible, contact the Oxygen support team.

Possible Cause 3

The license server was restarted from a different location as the previous restart. For example, some server configurations will have the Apache Tomcat server installed in a versioned folder (`/usr/local/apache-tomcat-V.V.V`) with a symbolic link to the typical folder (`/usr/local/tomcat`). The server can be restarted from either location, but it is recommended to always restart from the typical folder (`/usr/local/tomcat`) and always restart from the same location.

Solution

The server simply needs to always be restarted from the same location.

Upgrading

From time to time, upgrades and patch versions of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin are released to provide enhancements that fix problems and add new features.

Upgrading Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin on Windows/Linux

What is Preserved During an Upgrade?

When you install a new version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, some data is preserved and some is overwritten. If there is a previous version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin already installed on your computer, it can coexist with the new one, which means you do not have to uninstall it.

If you install over a previously installed version:

- All the files from its install directory will be removed, including any modification in *framework (on page 2231)* files, XSLT stylesheets, *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)*, and templates.
- All global user preferences are preserved in the new version.

- All project preferences will be preserved in their project files.
- Any custom *frameworks (on page 2231)* that were stored outside the installation directory (as configured in **Document type associations > Locations** *(on page 83)*) will be preserved and will be found by the new installation.

If you install in a new directory:

- All the files from the old install directory will be preserved, including any modification in *framework (on page 2231)* files, XSLT stylesheets, *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)*, and templates. However, these modifications will not be automatically imported into the new installation.
- All global user preferences are preserved in the new version.
- All project preferences will be preserved in their project files.
- Any custom *frameworks (on page 2231)* that were stored outside the installation directory (as configured in **Document type associations > Locations** *(on page 83)*) will be preserved and will be found by the new installation.

How to Upgrade Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin on Windows or Linux

1. Uninstall the current version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *(on page 62)*.
2. Download and install the new version according to the instructions for your platform and the type of installer you selected.
3. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
4. If you are upgrading from a minor version to a major version (for example, from 16.1 to 17.0) and you did not purchase a Maintenance Pack that covers the new major version, you will need to enter a new license for the new version into the registration dialog box that is displayed when the plugin is started.

Upgrading Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin on macOS

What is Preserved During an Upgrade?

When you install a new version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, first you need to remove or rename the old installation directory. By renaming the directory, it can coexist with the new installation and the following data will be preserved:

- All the files from the old install directory will be preserved, including any modification in *framework (on page 2231)* files, XSLT stylesheets, *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)*, and templates. However, these modifications will not be automatically imported into the new installation.
- All global user preferences are preserved in the new version.
- All project preferences will be preserved in their project files.
- Any custom *frameworks (on page 2231)* that were stored outside the installation directory (as configured in **Document type associations > Locations** *(on page 83)*) will be preserved and will be found by the new installation.

How to Upgrade Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin on macOS

1. Uninstall the current version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *(on page 62)* or rename the installation directory.
2. Download and install the new version in an empty folder according to the instructions for your platform and the type of installer you selected.
3. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
4. If you are upgrading from a minor version to a major version (for example, from 16.1 to 17.0) and you did not purchase a Maintenance Pack that covers the new major version, you will need to enter a new license for the new version into the registration dialog box that is displayed when the plugin is started.

Uninstalling

How to Uninstall Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

CAUTION:
The following procedure will remove Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin from your system. It will not remove the Eclipse platform. If you want to uninstall Eclipse, refer to its uninstall instructions.

1. Choose the menu option **Help > About > Installation Details**.
2. Select Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin from the list of plugins.
3. Choose **Uninstall**.
4. Accept the Eclipse restart.
5. If you want to remove the user preferences:
   - **Windows** - Remove the directory: `%APPDATA%\com.oxygenxml.author`. Note that the `AppData` directory is hidden. If you cannot locate it, type `%APPDATA%` in the File Explorer address bar and click `ENTER` (`%APPDATA%` expands to `[user-home-dir]\AppData\Roaming`).
   - **macOS** - Remove the directory: `Library/Preferences/com.oxygenxml.author` of the user home folder.
   - **On Linux**, remove the directory: `.com.oxygenxml.author` from the user home directory.

4.

Configuring Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

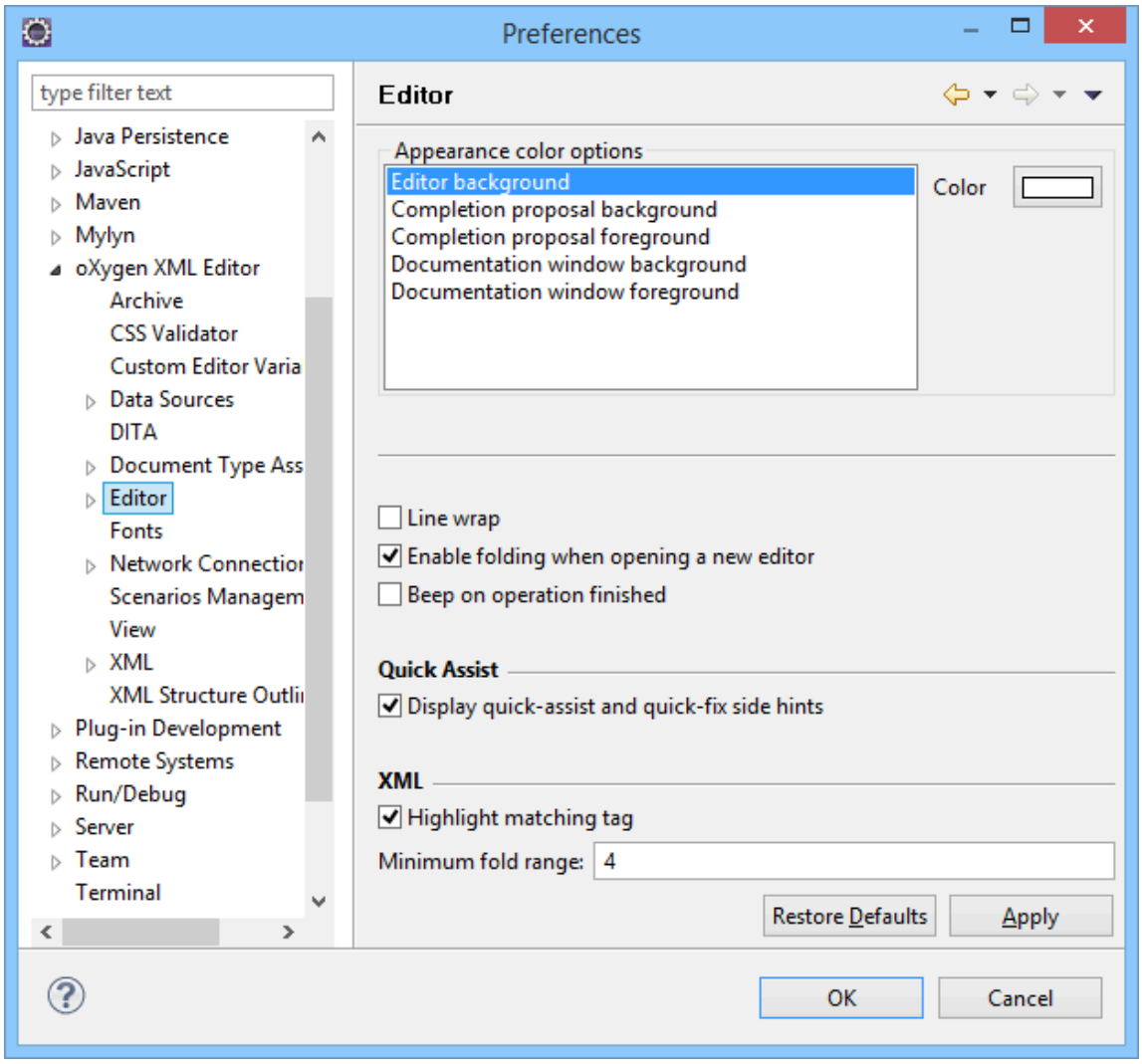
This chapter presents all the user preferences and options that allow you to configure various features and aspects of the application itself. It also includes information about storing and sharing options, importing and exporting options or scenarios, customizing system properties, setting startup parameters, and the editor variables *(on page 199)* that are available for customizing user-defined commands.

Preferences

You can configure Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin options using the **Preferences** dialog box.

To open the preferences dialog box, go to go to **Window** (**Eclipse** on macOSX) and choose **Preferences > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin**.

Figure 13. Eclipse Preferences Dialog Box

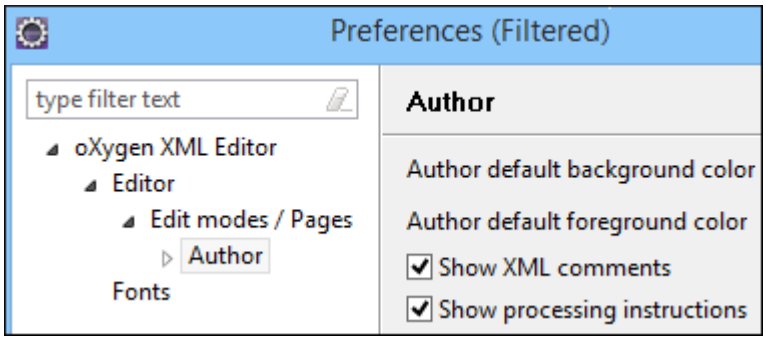


Click the icon or press **F1** for help on any preferences page.

You can restore options to their default values by pressing the **Restore Defaults** button, available in each preferences page.

A filtered version of the **Preferences** dialog box is available by selecting **Options** from the contextual menu in the editor. It displays an appropriate preferences page according to the context where the action was invoked and filters the tree on the left according to where the preference page is located in the hierarchy.

Figure 14. Eclipse Preferences Dialog Box - Filtered Version



Preferences Directory Location

A variety of resources (such as global options, license information, and history files) are stored in a preferences directory (`com.oxygenxml`) that is in the following locations:

- **Windows (7, 8, 10)** - `[user_home_directory]\AppData\Roaming\com.oxygenxml.author`
- **macOS** - `[user_home_directory]/Library/Preferences/com.oxygenxml.author`
- **Linux/Unix** - `[user_home_directory]/.com.oxygenxml.author`

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin License

To configure the license options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*. This preferences page presents the details of the license key that enables the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin plugin, such as registration name, category and number of purchased licenses, encrypted signature of the license key. Clicking the **Register** button opens the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **License** dialog box that allows you to insert a new license key.

Archive Preferences

To configure *Archive* options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Archive**.

The following options are available in the **Archive** preferences page:

Archive backup options

Controls if the application makes backup copies of the modified archives. The following options are available:

- **Always create backup copies of modified archives** - When you modify an archive, its content is backed up.
- **Never create backup copies of modified archives** - No backup copy is created.
- **Ask for each archive once per session** - Once per application session for each modified archive, user confirmation is required to create the backup. This is the default setting.

> **Note:**
> Backup files have the name `originalArchiveFileName.bak` and are located in the same folder as the original archive.

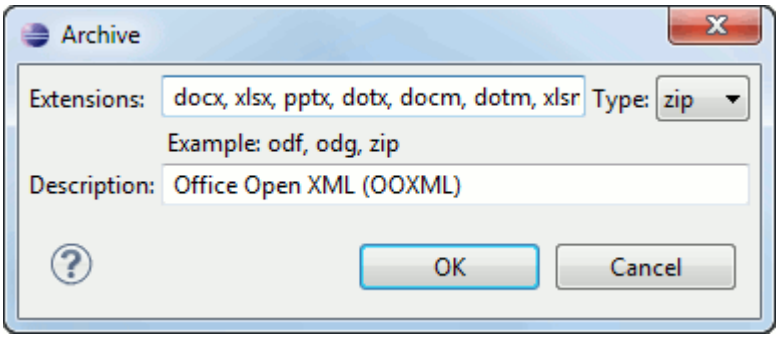
Show archive backup dialog box

Select this option if you want to be notified for backup when modifying in archives. The last backup option you chose will always be used as the default one.

Archive types

This table contains all known archive extensions mapped to known archive formats. Each row maps a list of extensions to an archive type supported in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. You can use the **Edit** button at the bottom of the table to edit an existing mapping or the **New** button to create a new one and associate your own list of extensions to an archive format.

Figure 15. Edit Archive Extension Mappings



> **Important:**
> You have to restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin after removing an extension from the table for that extension to not be recognized as an archive extension.

Store Unicode file names in Zip archives

Use this option when you archive files that contain international (non-English) characters in file names or file comments. If this option is selected and an archive is modified in any way, UTF-8 characters are used in the names of all files in the archive.

CSS Validator Preferences

To configure the **CSS Validator** preferences, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **CSS Validator**.

You can configure the following options for the built-in **CSS Validator** of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:

- **Profile** - Selects one of the available validation profiles: **CSS 1**, **CSS 2**, **CSS 2.1**, **CSS 3**, **CSS 3 + SVG**, **CSS 3 with Oxygen extensions**, **SVG**, **SVG Basic**, **SVG Tiny**, **Mobile**, **TV Profile**, **ATSC TV Profile**.
  The **CSS 3 with Oxygen extensions** profile includes all the CSS 3 standard properties plus the CSS extensions specific for Oxygen *(on page 1736)* that can be used in Author mode *(on page 221)*. That means all **Oxygen**-specific extensions are accepted in a CSS stylesheet by the built-in CSS validator *(on page 612)* when this profile is selected.
- **Media type** - Selects one of the available mediums: **all**, **aural**, **braille**, **embossed**, **handheld**, **print**, **projection**, **screen**, **tty**, **tv**, **presentation**, **oxygen**.
- **Warning level** - Sets the minimum severity level for reported validation warnings. Can be one of: **All**, **Normal**, **Most Important**, **No Warnings**.
- **Ignore properties** - You can type comma separated patterns that match the names of CSS properties that will be ignored at validation. The following vendor extensions are specified as ignored by default: **-ro-*** (*PDFreactor*), **-ah-*** (*Antenna House*), **prince-*** (*Prince*). As wildcards you can use:
  - ***** to match any string.
  - **?** to match any character.
- **Recognize browser CSS extensions (also applies to content completion)** - If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin recognizes browser-specific CSS properties (no validation is performed). The *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* lists these properties at the end of its list, prefixed with the following particles:
  - **-moz-** for *Mozilla*.
  - **-ms-** for *Edge*.
  - **-o-** for *Opera*.
  - **-webkit-** for *Safari/Webkit*.

Custom Editor Variables Preferences

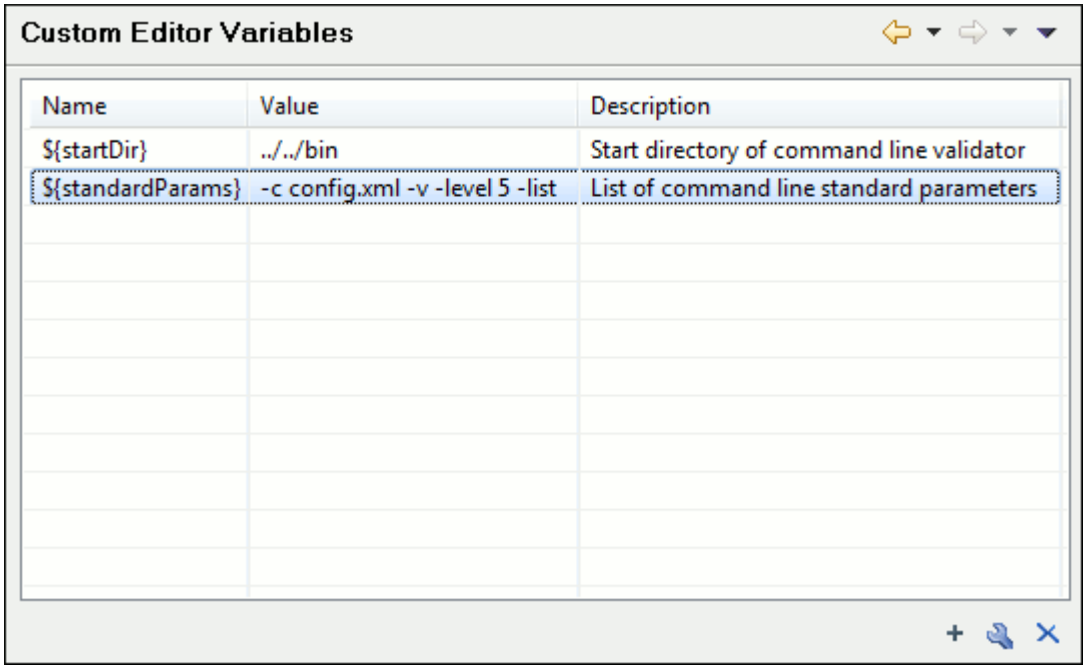
An editor variable *(on page 199)* is useful for making a transformation scenario, validation scenario, or other tool independent of its file path. An editor variable is specified as a parameter in a transformation scenario, validation scenario, or command line of an external tool. Such a variable is defined by a name, a string value, and a text description. A custom editor variable is defined by the user and can be used in the same expressions as the built-in editor variables *(on page 199)*.

Custom editor variables are created and configured in the **Custom Editor Variables** preferences page. To access this page, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Custom Editor Variables**.

This preferences page displays a table of all the custom editor variables that have been defined. The table includes three columns for the editor variable **Name**, its **Value**, and its **Description**. The create a new variable, click the **New** button at the bottom of the table and define your custom editor variable in the subsequent

dialog box. To edit an existing custom editor variable, click the **Edit** button and configure the variable in the subsequent dialog box. You can also use the **Delete** button to remove custom editor variables that are no longer needed.

Figure 16. Custom Editor Variables Table



Data Sources Preferences

To configure the **Data Sources** preferences, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**. This preferences page allows you to configure data sources and connections to relational and native XML databases. For a list of drivers that are available for the major database servers, see Download Links for Database Drivers *(on page 72)*.

Connection Wizards Section

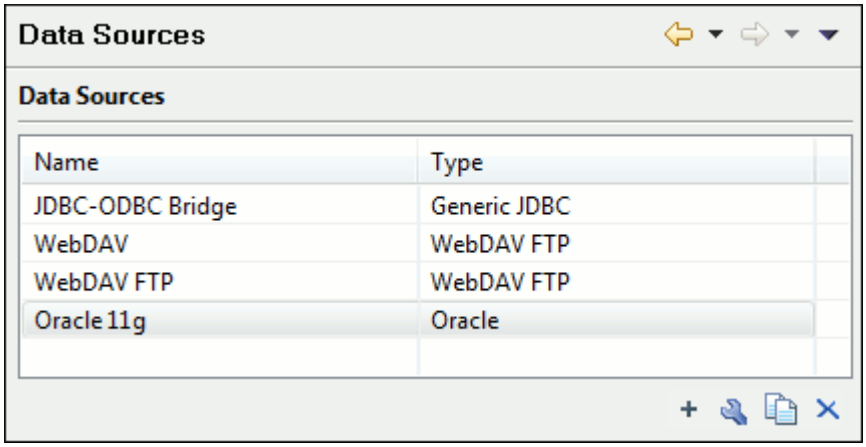
Create eXist-db XML connection

Click this link to open the dedicated **Create eXist-db XML connection** dialog box *(on page 1485)* that provides a quick way to create an eXist connection.

Data Sources Section

This section allows you to add and configure data sources.

Figure 17. Data Sources Preferences Panel

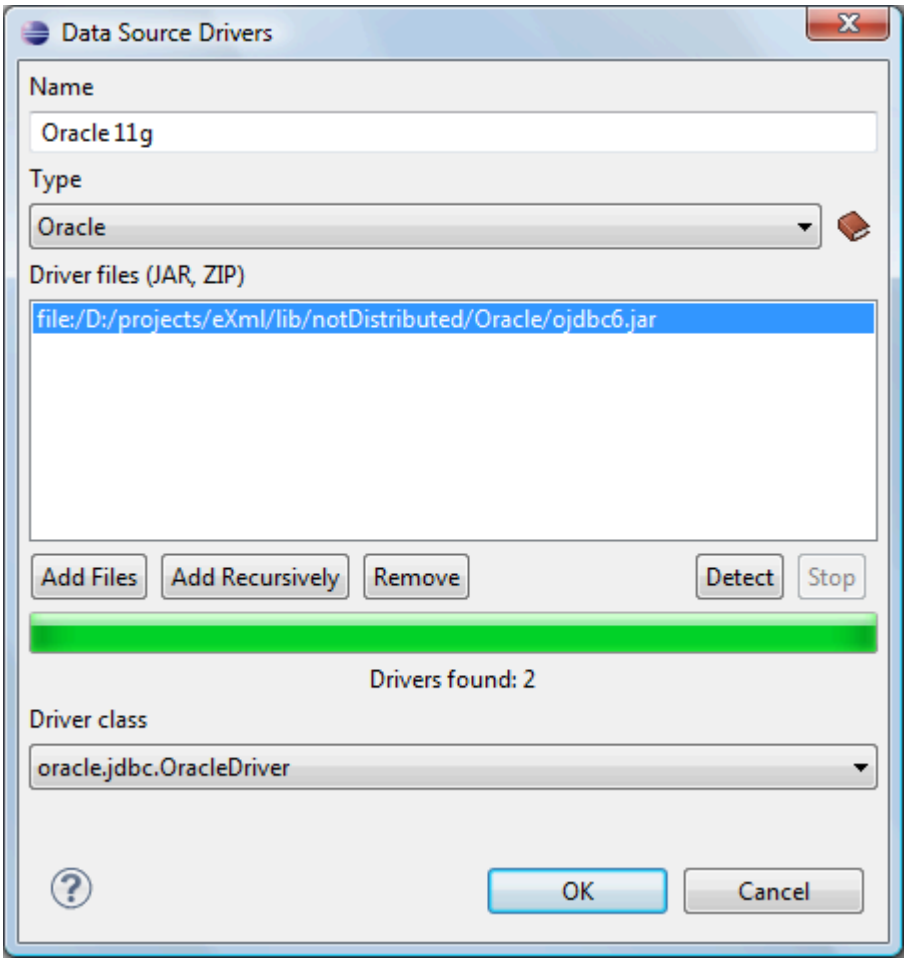


The following buttons are available at the bottom of the **Data Sources** panel:

+ New

Opens the **Data Sources Drivers** dialog box that allows you to configure a new database driver.

Figure 18. Data Sources Drivers Dialog Box



The following options are available in the **Data Source Drivers** dialog box:

- **Name** - The name of the new data source driver that will be used for creating connections to the database.
- **Type** - Selects the data source type from the supported driver types.
- **Help button** - Opens the User Manual at the list of the sections *(on page 72)* where the configuration of supported data sources is explained and the URLs for downloading the database drivers are specified.
- **Driver files (JAR, ZIP)** - Lists download links for database drivers *(on page 72)* that are necessary for accessing databases in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
- **Add Files** - Adds the driver class library.
- **Add Recursively** - Adds driver files recursively.
- **Remove** - Removes the selected driver class library from the list.
- **Detect** - Detects driver file candidates.
- **Stop** - Stops the detection of the driver candidates.
- **Driver class** - Specifies the driver class for the data source driver.

Edit

Opens the **Data Sources Drivers** dialog box for editing the selected driver. See above the specifications for the **Data Sources Drivers** dialog box. To edit a data source, there must be no connections using that data source driver.

Duplicate

Creates a copy of the selected data source.

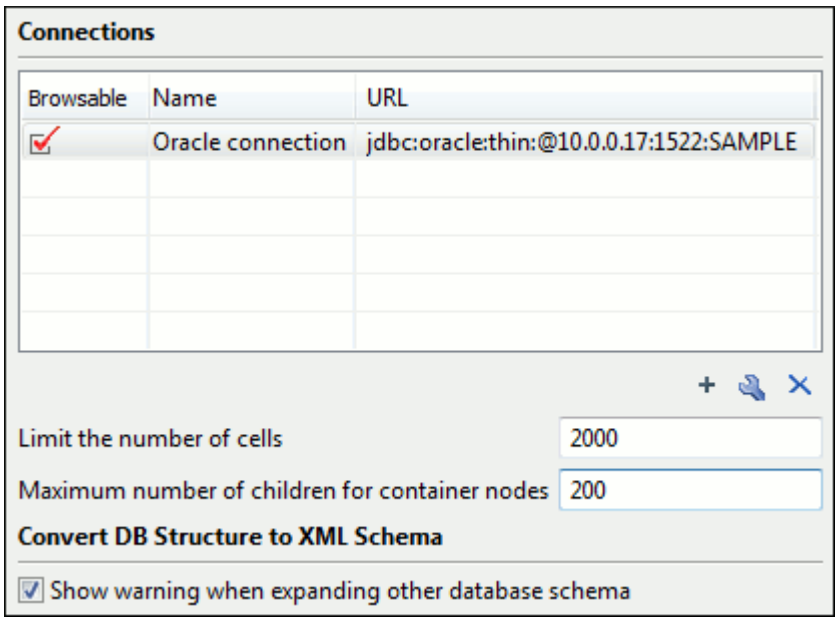
Delete

Deletes the selected driver. To delete a data source, there must be no connections using that data source driver.

Connections Section

This section allows you to add and configure data source connections.

Figure 19. Connections Preferences Panel

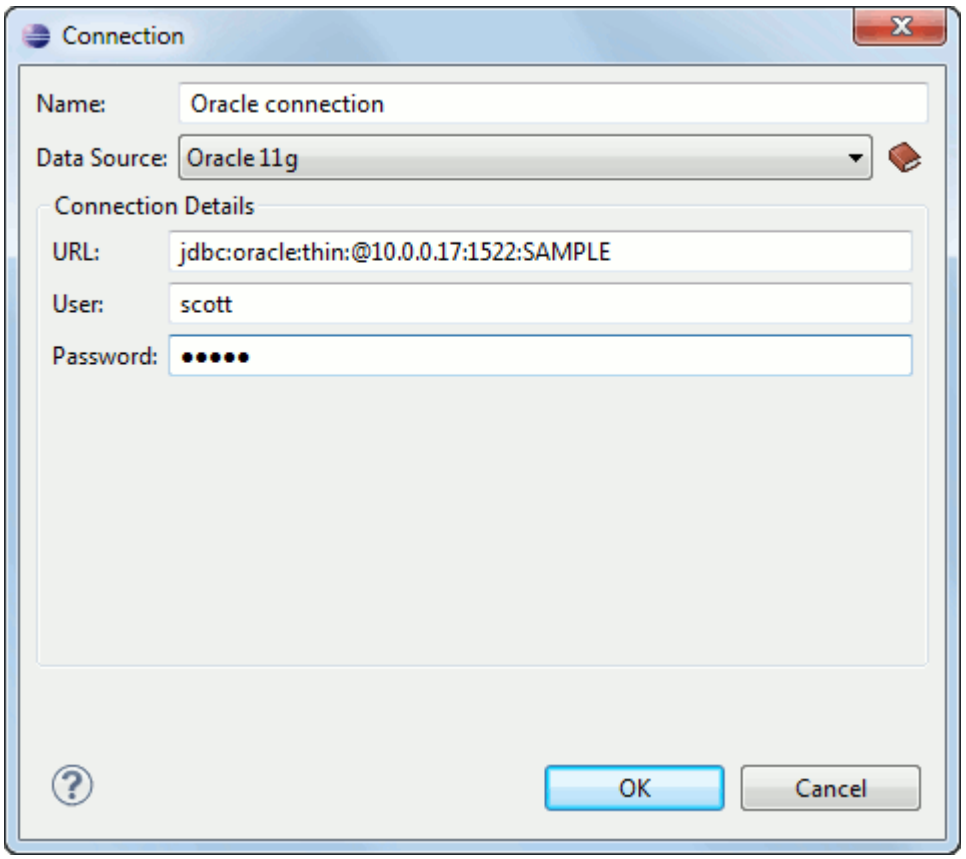


The following buttons and options are available at the bottom of the **Connections** panel:

New

Opens the **Connection** dialog box that allows you to configure a new database connection.

Figure 20. Connection Dialog Box



The following options are available in the **Connection** dialog box:

- **Name** - The name of the new connection that will be used in transformation scenarios and validation scenarios.
- **Data Source** - Allows selecting a data source defined in the **Data Source Drivers** dialog box.

Depending upon the selected data source, you can set some of the following parameters in the **Connection details** area:

- **URL** - The URL for connecting to the database server.
- **User** - The user name for connecting to the database server.
- **Password** - The password of the specified user name.
- **Host** - The host address of the server.
- **Port** - The port where the server accepts the connection.
- **XML DB URI** - The database URI.
- **Database** - The initial database name.
- **Collection** - One of the available collections for the specified data source.
- **Use a secure HTTPS connection (SSL)** - Allows you to establish a secure connection to an eXist database through the SSL protocol.

Edit

Opens the **Connection** dialog box, allowing you to edit the selected connection. See above the specifications for the **Connection** dialog box.

Duplicate

Creates a copy of the selected connection.

Delete

Deletes the selected connection.

Move Up

Moves the selected connection up one row in the list.

Move Down

Moves the selected connection down one row in the list.

Limit the number of cells

For performance issues, you can set the maximum number of cells that will be displayed in the **Table Explorer** view *(on page 1466)* for a database table. Leave this field empty if you want the entire content of the table to be displayed. By default, this field is set to 2000. If a table that has more cells than the value set here is displayed in the **Table Explorer** view *(on page 1466)*, a warning dialog box will inform you that the table is only partially shown.

Maximum number of children for container nodes

In Oracle XML, a container can hold millions of resources. If the node corresponding to such a container in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* would display all the contained

resources at the same time, the performance of the view would be very slow. To prevent this, only a limited number of the contained resources is displayed as child nodes of the container node. You can navigate to other contained resources from the same container by using the *Up* and *Down* buttons in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*. This limited number is set in the field. The default value is 200 nodes.

Show warning when expanding other database schema

Controls if a warning message will be displayed when expanding another database schema and there are tables selected in the current, expanded one. This applies to the **Select database table** dialog box in the **Import Database Data to XML** wizard *(on page 1526)*.

Table Filters Preferences

The **Table Filters** preferences page allows you to choose the types of tables to be shown in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*. To open this preferences page, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources > Table Filters**.

You can choose to display the following types of tables:

- **Alias**
- **Global Temporary**
- **Local Temporary**
- **Synonym**
- **System Table**
- **Table**
- **View**

Download Links for Database Drivers

For a list of major relational databases and the drivers that are available for them, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/database_drivers.html.

In addition, the following is a list of other popular databases along with instructions for getting the drivers that are necessary to access the databases in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:

- **IBM DB2 Pure XML database** (Deprecated) - Go to the IBM website and in the *DB2 Clients and Development Tools* category select the *DB2 Driver for JDBC and SQLJ* download link. Fill out the download form and download the zip file. Unzip the zip file and use the `db2jcc.jar` and `db2jcc_license_cu.jar` files in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for configuring a DB2 data source *(on page 1505)*.
- **eXist database** - Copy the *jar* files from the eXist database install directory to the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin install directory as described in the procedure for configuring an eXist data source *(on page 1486)*.
- **MarkLogic database** (Deprecated) - Download the MarkLogic driver from MarkLogic Community site.

- **Oracle 11g database** (Deprecated) - Go to http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database/enterprise-edition/jdbc-112010-090769.html and download the Oracle 11g JDBC driver called `ojdbc6.jar`.
- **PostgreSQL database** (Deprecated) - Go to https://jdbc.postgresql.org/download/ and download the PostgreSQL JDBC driver specific for your server version.
- **Microsoft SQL Server 2019 database** (Deprecated) - Download the appropriate MS SQL JDBC driver from the Microsoft website.

DIFF Preferences

To access the **DIFF** preferences page, go to **Window** (**Eclipse** on macOSX) and choose **Preferences > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin > DIFF**. This preferences page includes the following sections and options:

Enable file comparison in Text mode

When selected, the text-based comparison mode is available when comparing XML files.

Enable file comparison in Author mode

When selected, the visual comparison mode is available when comparing XML files.

Two-Way Diff section

Default algorithm

The default algorithm used for comparing two files. The following options are available:

- **Auto** - Selects the most appropriate algorithm, based on the compared content and its size (selected by default).
- **XML Fast** - Comparison that works well on large files or fragments, but it is less precise than **XML Accurate**.
- **XML Accurate** - Comparison that is more precise than **XML Fast**, at the expense of speed. It compares two XML files or fragments looking for identical XML nodes.

Algorithm strength

Controls the amount of resources allocated to the application to perform the comparison. The algorithm stops searching more differences when reaches the maximum allowed resources. A dialog box is displayed when this limit is reached and partial results are displayed. Four settings are available: **Low**, **Medium** (default), **High** and **Very High**.

Three-Way Diff section

Default algorithm

The default algorithm used for performing a three-way comparison. The following options are available:

- **Auto** - Selects the most appropriate algorithm, based on the compared content and its size (selected by default).
- **XML Fast** - Comparison that works well on large files or fragments, but it is less precise than **XML Accurate**.
- **XML Accurate** - Comparison that is more precise than **XML Fast**, at the expense of speed. It compares two XML files or fragments looking for identical XML nodes.

Algorithm strength

Controls the amount of resources allocated to the application to perform the comparison. The algorithm stops searching more differences when reaches the maximum allowed resources. A dialog box is displayed when this limit is reached and partial results are displayed. Four settings are available: **Low**, **Medium** (default), **High** and **Very High**.

Show pseudo conflicts

Specifies whether or not the file comparison displays pseudo-conflicts. A pseudo-conflict occurs when two users make the same change (for example, when they both add or remove the same line of code).

XML Diff section

In this section, you can choose to ignore **Namespaces**, **Prefixes**, **Namespace declarations**, and the **Attribute order**.

Appearance Preferences

To configure the appearance options for the visual file comparison tool, go to **Window** (**Eclipse** on macOSX) and choose **Preferences > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin > DIFF > Appearance**. This preferences page includes the following sections and options:

Incoming color

Specifies the color used on the vertical bar for incoming changes.

Outgoing color

Specifies the color used on the vertical bar for outgoing changes.

Conflict color

Specifies the color used on the vertical bar for conflicts between the compared files.

DITA Preferences

To access the DITA Preferences page, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **DITA**. This preferences page includes the following sections and options:

DITA Open Toolkit section

This section allows you to specify the default directory of the DITA Open Toolkit distribution (bundled with the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation) to be used for validating and publishing DITA content. You can select from the following:

Built-in Oxygen Publishing Engine (based on DITA-OT 4.x)

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with the **Oxygen Publishing Engine** (based on DITA-OT 4.4.0). By default, all defined DITA transformation/validation scenarios will run with this version. The default publishing engine directory is: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/dita/`*DITA-OT*.

Custom

Allows you to specify a custom directory for your DITA-OT distribution.

Location

You can either provide a new file path for the specific DITA-OT that you want to use or select a previously used one from the drop-down list. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Important:
Using a custom DITA Open Toolkit may disable certain features in the application. Examples of features that may not work properly:

- If the custom DITA-OT is missing certain publishing plugins, default transformation scenarios such as DITA Map WebHelp Responsive *(on page 2071)* or DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS *(on page 2086)* may no longer work properly.
- Validation of Markdown documents using Schematron may not work because it is based on a certain DITA Open Toolkit plugin.
- The DITA framework (defined in the **Preferences > Document Type Associations** page) will use the XML catalogs specified in the DITA-OT configured in the **Preferences > DITA** page to perform the validation of all DITA topic types. If this DITA-OT is different from the one that comes bundled with the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin default distribution, you might encounter validation-related issues.

CAUTION:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin support engineers do not officially offer support and troubleshooting assistance for custom DITA-OT distributions or custom installed DITA-OT plugins. If you discover any

issues or inconsistent behavior while using a custom DITA-OT or a DITA-OT that contains custom DITA-OT plugins, you should revert to the default built-in DITA-OT.

Enable DITA 2.0 editing support (Experimental)

If selected, you will have access to a **DITA 2.0** folder in the New Document Wizard *(on page 222)* where you can find new document templates for creating DITA 2.0 maps or topics based on the DITA 2.0 standard DTDs. For example, in a DITA topic based on the DITA 2.0 DTDs, you can insert an `<include>` element that is not found in the DITA 1.3 DTDs.

DITA Logging Preferences

To access the DITA Logging preferences page, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **DITA > Logging**. This preferences page includes the following sections and options:

Show console output

Allows you to specify when to display the console output log in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. The following options are available:

- **When build fails** - Displays the console output log only if the build fails.
- **Always** - Displays the console output log, regardless of whether or not the build fails.

Show the following types of messages in a new tab

This section allows you to specify which types of messages will be displayed in separate tabs in the message panel at the bottom of the editor if a DITA transformation results in errors or warnings. You can choose whether or not to display the following types of messages:

- DITA-OT errors
- DITA-OT warnings
- DITA-OT info
- FOP errors
- FOP warnings
- FOP info
- XSLT problems

DITA Maps Preferences

To access the *DITA Maps* preferences page, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **DITA > Maps**. This preferences page includes the following options:

Expand references to other maps when opening a map in Author mode

Enabling this option will improve performance (decrease the loading time) when opening maps in **Author** mode (particularly maps that contain a large amount of submaps). This option is disabled by default.

Note:
You must close and reopen the map to see the effects of enabling/disabling this option.

DITA Maps Manager section

Only display items related to currently open maps in the Context drop-down list

If selected, only the currently open maps and contexts that are relevant to the currently open maps are displayed in the **Context** map drop-down menu in the DITA Maps Manager. This is helpful if you are working with multiple DITA-OT projects and DITA maps set as *Main Files* since it helps you narrow down the relevant contexts.

Prefer using the navigation title for rendering topic references

If selected and there is a `@navtitle` attribute set on a `<topicref>`, then the `@navtitle` is used to render the title of the topic in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*.

Allow referenced submaps to be edited

If selected, all DITA maps referenced directly or indirectly in a DITA map that is open in the **DITA Maps Manager** view will be fully editable. You will be able to add new topic references, modify properties, and move topic references from one submap to another. Saving the main DITA map will also save the contents of the modified submaps.

Attention:
The documents must be reopened to apply a change to this option.

Local files only

If selected, only submaps that are located on local disk drives will be editable. As for maps located in remote locations (e.g. content management systems), the save operation might not work on all submaps. This checkbox is selected by default.

Inserting Topic References section

Always set values for the following attributes

Allows you to specify that when inserting a topic reference (using the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* and **Edit Properties** dialog box *(on page 1916)*), the values for certain attributes will always be automatically populated with a detected value (based on the specifications), even if it is the same as the default value. You can choose to always populate the values for the following attributes:

- **Format** - If selected, the `@format` attribute will always be automatically populated with a detected value.
- **Scope** - If selected, the `@scope` attribute will always be automatically populated with a detected value.

- **Type** - If selected, the `@type` attribute will always be automatically populated with a detected value.
- **Navigation title** - If selected, the `@navtitle` attribute will always be automatically populated with a detected value.

Use the file name as the value of the "keys" attribute

If selected, when inserting a topic reference into a map, the file name will be used as the value of the `@keys` attribute for the new `<topicref>`. The key is not defined on the `<topicref>` for references to DITA maps. This option has a slightly different effect depending on the method used for inserting the topic reference:

- **Drag/Drop or Copy/Paste in the DITA Maps Manager** - If you drag or copy a resource from another view (or outside Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin) and drop or paste it into the **DITA Maps Manager** and a key is already defined for that resource, a `@keyref` attribute will be inserted instead. This even works for two consecutive drag/drop or copy/paste operations without saving the file and it works for multiple selections of topic references.
- **Drag/Drop or Copy/Paste in a Map opened in Author Mode** - If you drag or copy a resource from another view (or outside Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin) and drop or paste it into a map that is open in **Author** mode and a key is already defined for that resource, a `@keyref` attribute will be inserted instead.

  Restriction:
  In this particular scenario, if you perform two identical, consecutive drag/drop or copy/paste operations without saving the file between operations, the value of the `@keys` attribute will be the same for both inserted topic references. The workaround for this limitation is to simply save the map after each drag/drop or copy/paste operation.

- **Using the Fast Create Topics or Duplicate Actions** - If you use the **Fast Create Topics** feature *(on page 1949)* or **Duplicate** action *(on page 1946)* to insert topic references, the newly created `<topicref>` elements will contain the `@keys` attribute with its value set depending on the file name.
- **Using the Insert Topic Reference Dialog Box from the DITA Maps Manager** - If you use an action in the **DITA Maps Manager** to insert topic references (e.g. **Append Child > Reference**), a `@keys` attribute will be set for each inserted topic reference and the value depends on the file name. You can see the value in the **Define keys** field from the **Keys** tab of the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* and you can change it.

Note:
This option also has an effect on image references. When inserting a reference to an image in a DITA map and this option is selected, a `<keydef>` element is created if it is allowed by the schema. If it is not allowed (or this option is deselected), a specific

topic reference element is created with the value of the `@processing-role` attribute set to **resource-only**.

Prefer adding key references to already referenced resources

If selected, when a topic reference is inserted into a map and a key is already defined for that resource, a `@keyref` attribute is inserted for the new `<topicref>`. If not selected, an `@href` attribute is inserted instead.

Dynamic conversion of specific non-DITA resources

If selected (default), non-DITA documents are dynamically converted to DITA when they are chosen in the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* and the IDs from the resulting DITA content are presented in the dialog box. If not selected, non-DITA documents (Word, Excel, Markdown, OpenAPI, and HTML) are not dynamically converted when they are chosen in the dialog box.

DITA Publishing Preferences

To access the DITA Publishing preferences page, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **DITA > Publishing**. You can also open this page by clicking the **Configure Publishing Templates Gallery** link in the **Templates** tab of the transformation scenario dialog box for **WebHelp Responsive** transformations.

You can use this preferences page to specify additional directories where custom publishing templates are stored. The templates stored in these directories will appear in the preview pane in the **Templates** tab of the transformation scenario dialog box, along with all the built-in templates.

DITA New Topics Preferences

To access the DITA New Topics preferences page, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **DITA > New Topics**. This preferences page includes the following options:

New Topics section

Use the title to generate the file name

This option (and its sub-options) pertain to the rules that will be used to generate file names in the *New DITA File dialog box (on page 1946)*. Select this option to use the text entered in the **Title** field to automatically generate a file name (the generated name can be seen in the **Save as** field). By default, the generated name will replace spaces with underscores (_), all illegal characters will be removed, and all upper case characters changed to lower case, but you can use the sub-options to change this.

Replace non-alphanumeric characters with

If selected, the file name generation mechanism will replace all non-alphanumeric characters in the title with the character entered in this option.

Lower case only

If selected, the file name generation mechanism will only use lower case letters.

Use camel case

If selected, the file name generation mechanism will convert the title to a file name using the *camel case* convention where the first word starts with a lower case letter and all subsequent words begin with upper case (for example, `myFileName`).

Upper case first letter

Select this option if you want the file name generation mechanism to convert the title to a file name using the *camel case* convention but with an upper case letter for the first word (for example, `MyFileName`).

Use the file name as the value of the root ID attribute

If selected, when creating a new topic, the file name (as seen in the **Save as** field but without the file extension) will be used as the value of the root `@id` attribute for the new topic.

Inserting Links section

Always set values for the following attributes

Allows you to specify that when a link reference is inserted (using actions in the **Link** drop-down menu), the values for certain attributes will always be automatically populated with a detected value (based on the specifications), even if it is the same as the default value. You can choose to always populate the values for the following attributes:

- **Format** - If selected, the `@format` attribute will always be automatically populated with a detected value.
- **Scope** - If selected, the `@scope` attribute will always be automatically populated with a detected value.
- **Type** - If selected, the `@type` attribute will always be automatically populated with a detected value.

Use '.' instead of the ID of the parent topic (DITA 1.3)

When addressing a non-topic element within the topic that contains the URI reference, the URI reference can use an abbreviated fragment-identifier syntax that replaces the topic ID with `"."` (`#./elementId`). For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/index.html#archSpec/base/uri-based-addressing.html.

Document Templates Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a variety of built-in document templates that make it easier to create new documents in various formats. The list of available templates is presented in the **New Document**

wizard *(on page 222)* when you create a new document (**New** toolbar button or **File > New > New from Templates**).

You can also create your own templates *(on page 229)* and share them with others. You can store your custom document templates in the existing `templates` folder in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation directory or store them in a custom directory. If you store them in a custom directory, you need to use this **Document Templates** preferences page to add that directory to the list of template directories that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin makes available in the **New Document** wizard.

To add a template directory, follow these steps:

1. open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Templates**.
2. Use the **New** button to select a location of the new document template folder.
3. You can also use the **Edit** or **Delete** buttons to manage folders in the list, and you can alter the order that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin looks in these directories by using the **Up** and **Down** buttons.

Result: This will add the folder to the list in this preferences page and it will now appear in the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)* in a category based upon the folder path you specified.

Note:
For DITA templates, they will also appear in the dialog box for creating new DITA topics from the **DITA Maps Manager**, but if you customize the template *(on page 231)*, you need to set the `type` property to **dita** in the corresponding properties file.

Document Type Association Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses *document type associations (on page 2229)* to associate a document type *(on page 654)* with a set of functionality provided by a *framework (on page 2231)*. To configure the **Document Type Association** options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association**.

The following actions are available in this preferences page:

Discover more frameworks by using add-ons update sites

Click on this link to specify URLs for *framework* add-on update sites.

Document Type Table

This table presents the currently defined *frameworks (on page 2231)* (*document type associations (on page 2229)*), sorted by priority and alphabetically. Each edited document type has a set of association rules *(on page 85)* (used by the application to detect the proper document type association to use for an open XML document).

Disable all

Disables all document types listed in the table.

New

Opens a **Document type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* that allows you to add a new *framework*.

Edit

Opens a **Document type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* that allows you to edit an existing *framework*.

Note:
If you try to edit an existing *framework* when you do not have write permissions to its storage location, a dialog box will be shown asking if you want to extend it.

Duplicate

Opens a **Document type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* that allows you to duplicate the configuration of an existing *framework*. This will create a snapshot of the *framework* in its current form. It is merely a copy of the document type and will not *evolve* along with the base document type as the **Extend** action does.

Extend

Opens a **Document type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* that allows you to extend an existing *framework*. You can add or remove functionality starting from a base document type. All of these changes will be saved as a patch. When the base document type is modified and evolves (for example, from one application version to another) the extension will evolve along with the base document type, allowing it to use the new actions added in the base document type.

Delete

Deletes the selected *framework* (document type).

Enable DTD/XML Schema processing in document type detection

When this option is selected (default value), the matching process also examines the DTD/XML Schema associated with the document. For example, the fixed attributes declared in the DTD for the root element are also analyzed, if this is specified in the association rules. This is especially useful if you are writing DITA customizations. DITA topics and maps are also matched by looking for the `@DITAArchVersion` attribute of the root element. This attribute is specified as `default` in the DTD and it is detected in the root element, helping Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to correctly match the DITA customization.

Only for local DTDs/XML Schemas

When this option is selected (default value), only the local DTDs / XML Schemas will be processed.

Enable DTD/XML Schema caching

When this option is selected (default value), the associated DTDs or XML Schema are cached when parsed for the first time, improving performance when opening new documents with similar schema associations.

Related information

Sharing a Framework *(on page 1691)*

Locations Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to change the location where *frameworks (on page 2231)* (document types) are stored, and to specify additional *framework* directories. The **Locations** preferences page allows you to specify the main `frameworks` folder location. You can choose between the **Default** directory (*`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks`*) or a **Custom** specified directory. You can also change the current `frameworks` folder location value using the `com.oxygenxml.editor.frameworks.url` system property.

A list of additional `frameworks` directories can also be specified. The application will look in each of those folders for additional document type configurations to load. Use the **Add**, **Edit** and **Delete** buttons to manage the list of folders.

A document type configuration (*framework*) can be loaded from the following locations:

- **Internal preferences** - The document type configuration is stored in the application **Internal** preferences *(on page 84)*.
- **Additional *framework* directories** - The document type configuration is loaded from one of the specified **Additional frameworks directories** list.
- **The `frameworks` folder** - The main folder containing *framework* configurations.

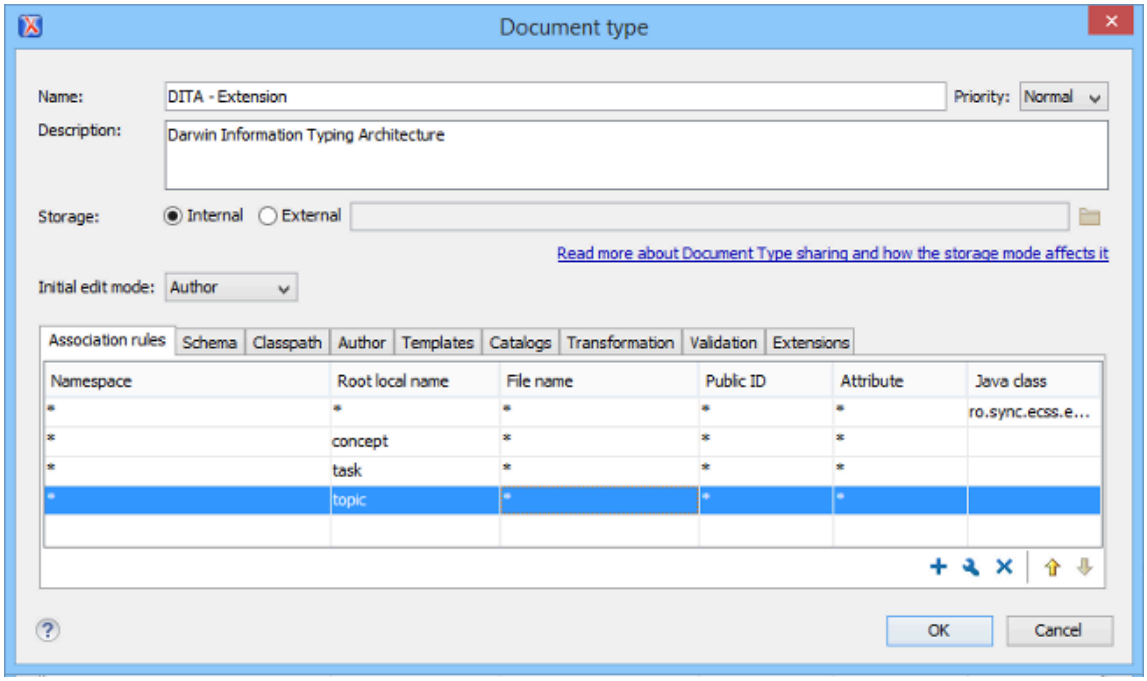
All loaded document type configurations are first sorted by priority, then by document type name and then by load location (in the exact order specified above). When an XML document is opened, the application chooses the first document type configuration from the sorted list that matches the specific document.

All loaded document type configurations are first sorted by priority, then by document type.

Document Type Configuration Dialog Box

The **Document Type Configuration** dialog box allows you to create or edit a *framework (on page 2231)* (document type). It is displayed when you use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** buttons in the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 81)* (open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association**).

Figure 21. Document Type Configuration Dialog Box



The configuration dialog box includes the following fields and sections:

Name

The name of the *framework*. This will be displayed as its name in the **Document Type** column in the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 81)*.

Priority

Depending on the priority level, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin establishes the order that the existing *frameworks* are evaluated to determine the type of a document you are opening. It can be one of the following: Lowest, Low, Normal, High, or Highest. You can set a higher priority for *frameworks* you want to be evaluated first.

Note:
The built-in document types are set to Low priority by default. *Frameworks* that have the same priority are sorted alphabetically.

Description

The document type description displayed as a tooltip in the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 81)*.

Storage

The location where the framework is saved. If you select the **External** storage option, the framework is saved in a specified file with a mandatory extension (located in a subdirectory of your current framework directory. If you select the **Internal** storage option, the framework configuration data is saved in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin internal options file.

Initial edit mode

Sets the default edit mode when you open a document for the first time: **Editor specific**, **Text**, **Author, Grid** and **Design** (available for the W3C XML Schema editor). If the **Editor specific** option is selected, the initial editing mode is determined based upon the document type. You can find the mapping between editors and edit modes in the **Edit modes** preferences page. *(on page 126)* You can impose an initial mode for opening files that match the association rules of the document type. For example, if the files are usually edited in the **Author** mode, you can set it in the **Initial edit mode** combo box.

Note:
You can also customize the initial mode for a document type in the **Edit modes** preferences page. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes**.

Configuration Tabs

The bottom section of the dialog box includes various tabs where you can configure numerous options for the *framework*.

Related information
Creating and Configuring Custom Frameworks *(on page 1533)*
Sharing a Framework *(on page 1691)*
Localizing Frameworks *(on page 1632)*

Association Rules Tab

To open the **Association Rules** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, and click on the **Association Rules** tab.

In the **Association rules** tab, you can perform the following actions:

New

Opens the **Document type rule** dialog box allowing you to create *association rules*.

Edit

Opens the **Document type rule** dialog box allowing you to edit the properties of the currently selected *association rule*.

Delete

Deletes the currently selected *association rules* from the list.

Move Up

Moves the selected *association rule* up one spot in the list.

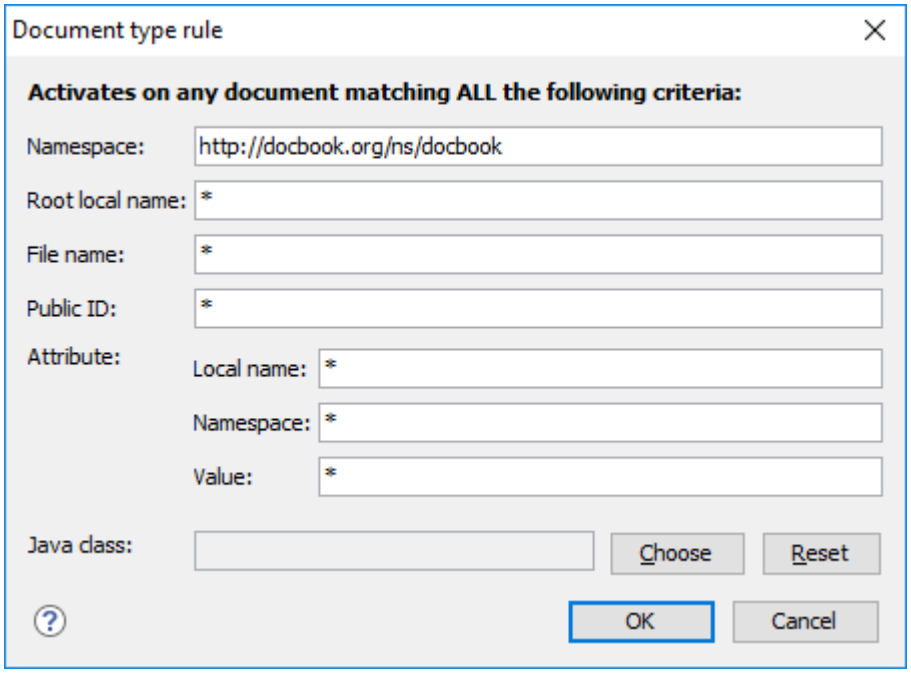
Move Down

Moves the selected *association rule* down one spot in the list.

By combining multiple association rules you can instruct Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to identify the type of a document. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin identifies the type of a document when the document matches at least one of the *association rules*. This tab gives you access to a **Document type rule** dialog box that you can use to create *association rules* that activate on any document matching all the criteria defined in the dialog box.

To create a new association rule, click the **New** button at the bottom of the **Association Rules** tab, or to edit an existing rule, click the **Edit** button.

Figure 22. Document Type Rule Dialog Box



The **Document type rule** dialog box includes the following fields and options:

Namespace

Specifies the namespace of the root element from the association rules set (* *(any)* by default). If you want to apply the rule only when the root element has no namespace, leave this field empty (remove the **ANY_VALUE** string).

Root local name

Specifies the local name of the root element (* *(any)* by default).

File name

Specifies the name of the file (* *(any)* by default).

Public ID

Represents the Public ID of the matched document.

Attribute Local name

Specifies the local name of the attributes for the root element (* *(any)* by default).

Attribute Namespace

Specifies the namespace of the attributes for the root element (* *(any)* by default).

Attribute Value

Specifies the value of the attributes for the root element (* *(any)* by default).

Java class

Presents the name of the Java class that is used to determine if a document matches the rule. This Java class should implement the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.DocumentTypeCustomRuleMatcher` interface.

Tip:
You can use wildcards (*?* and *) or editor variables *(on page 199)* in the **Document Type Rule** dialog box, and you can enter multiple values by separating them with a comma.

Schema Tab

In the **Schema** tab, you can specify a default schema for Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to use if a document does not contain a schema declaration and no default validation scenario is associated with it.

To open the **Schema** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, and click on the **Schema** tab.

This tab includes the following options for defining a schema to be used if no schema is detected in the XML file:

Schema type

Use this drop-down list to select the type of schema.

Schema URI

You can specify the URI of the schema file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Tip:
It is a good practice to store all resources in the *framework* directory and use the *${framework}* editor variable *(on page 206)* to reference them. This is a recommended approach to designing a self-contained document type that can be easily maintained and shared between multiple users.

Classpath Tab

The **Classpath** tab displays a list of folders and *JAR (on page 2231)* libraries that hold implementations for API extensions, implementations for custom **Author** mode operations, various resources (such as stylesheets), and *framework (on page 2231)* translation files. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin loads the resources looking in the folders in the order they appear in the list (from top to bottom).

To open the **Classpath** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, and click on the **Classpath** tab.

The **Classpath** tab includes the following actions:

New

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a resource to the table in the **Classpath** tab. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

> **Tip:**
> The path can also contain wildcards (for example, `${framework}/lib/*.jar`).

Edit

Opens a dialog box that allows you to edit a resource in the **Classpath** tab. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

> **Tip:**
> The path can also contain wildcards (for example, `${framework}/lib/*.jar`).

Delete

Deletes the currently selected resource from the list.

Move Up

Moves the selected resource up one spot in the list.

Move Down

Moves the selected resource down one spot in the list.

Related information

Extensions Tab *(on page 110)*
Author Tab *(on page 89)*
Localizing Frameworks *(on page 1632)*

Author Tab

The **Author** tab is a container that holds information regarding the CSS file used to render a document in the **Author** mode, and regarding *framework (on page 2231)*-specific actions, menus, contextual menus, toolbars, and content completion list of proposals.

To open the **Author** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, and click on the **Author** tab.

The options that you configure in the **Author** tab are grouped in subtabs.

CSS Subtab

The **CSS** subtab contains the CSS files that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses to render a document in the **Author** mode. In this subtab, you can set *main* and *alternate* CSS files. When you are editing a document in the **Author** mode, you can switch between these CSS files from the **Styles** drop-down menu on the **Author Styles** toolbar.

To open the **CSS** subtab, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, click on the **Author** tab, and then the **CSS** subtab.

The following actions are available in the **CSS** subtab:

New

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a CSS file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Edit

Opens a dialog box that allows you to edit the current selection.

Delete

Deletes the currently selected CSS file.

Move Up

Moves the selected CSS file up in the list.

Move Down

Moves the selected CSS file down in the list.

Enable multiple selection of alternate CSSs

Allows users to apply multiple alternate styles, as layers, over the main CSS style. This option is selected by default for DITA document types.

If there are CSSs specified in the document then

You can choose between the following options for controlling how the CSS files that are set in this subtab will be handled if a CSS is specified in the document itself:

- **Ignore CSSs from the associated document type** - The CSS files set in this CSS subtab are overwritten by the CSS files specified in the document itself.
- **Merge them with CSSs from the associated document type** - The CSS files set in this CSS subtab are merged with the CSS files specified in the document itself.

Related information

Associating a CSS with an XML Document *(on page 1710)*
Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*

Actions Subtab

The **Actions** subtab of the **Document Type Configuration** dialog box contains a sortable table with all the **Author** mode actions that are configured for the specific *framework (on page 2231)*. Each action has a unique ID, a name, a description, and a shortcut key.

To open the **Actions** subtab, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, select your framework, use the **Duplicate** or **Extend** button to create an extension of the framework (or the **Edit** button for an already extended framework), click on the **Author** tab, and then the **Actions** subtab.

The following features are available in this subtab:

Export existing actions ( )

It is possible to export existing actions to use them in other frameworks. Each exported action is extracted from the framework configuration file and exported as an individual XML file.

To export actions, the **Storage** option *(on page 84)* in the top part of the **Document Type Configuration** dialog box must be set to **External** and the external location must be a subdirectory of your current framework directory.

The **Export** action is found by right-clicking an action or a selection of multiple actions (the **Export** button is also located below the table of actions). If you choose to export a single action, a resulting dialog box will allow you to select the destination path for the new XML file that contains the configuration details of the action. If you export multiple actions, they will automatically be saved as individual XML files inside a newly created folder (it will have ***_externalAuthorActions*** at the end of the folder name) inside your current framework directory.

Result: Exported actions will display the icon in the first column in the table.

Important:
The newly created files for the exported actions will not appear on disk until you click **OK** several times to confirm your changes and exit the **Preferences** dialog box.

Tip:
If you want to create a new XML file for an action, there is a document template called **Author Actions** in the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)* to help you get started.

Note:
You can add or edit the action files outside of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, but you will need to restart the application each time to reload the changes.

For more information, see Creating or Editing Actions Using an Individual XML File for Each Action *(on page 1551)*.

Open in editor ( )

For exported actions, there is a **Open in editor** action in the contextual menu that will open the file for that action in the main editor.

Create a new action ( )

Use the **New** button (located underneath the table of actions) to open the **Action** dialog box *(on page 91)* where you can configure a new action.

Duplicate an existing action ( )

Use the **Duplicate** action (found in the contextual menu and underneath the table of actions) to duplicate the selected action.

Edit an existing action ( )

Use the **Edit** button (found in the contextual menu and underneath the table of actions) to open the **Action** dialog box *(on page 91)* where you can edit the selected action.

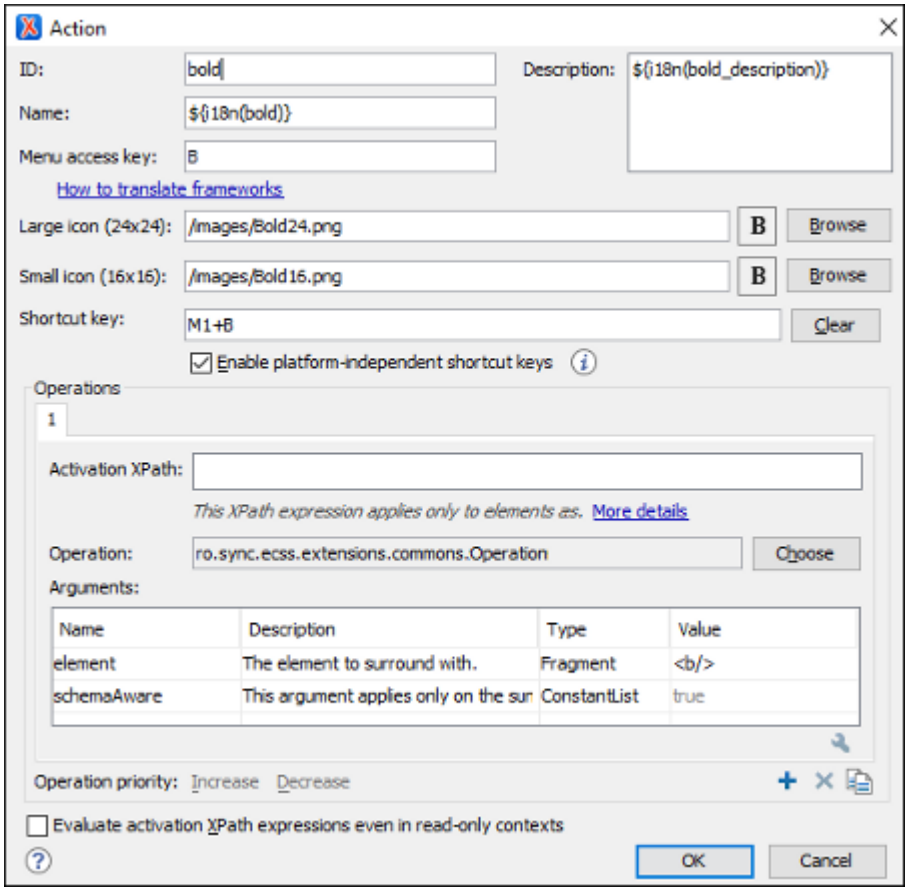
Delete an existing action ( )

Use the **Delete** button (found in the contextual menu and underneath the table of actions) to delete the selected action.

Author Action Dialog Box

To edit an existing document type action or create a new one, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, click on the **Author** tab, and then the **Actions** subtab. At the bottom of this subtab, click **New** to create a new action, or **Edit** to modify an existing one.

Figure 23. Action Dialog Box



The following options are available in the **Action** dialog box:

ID

Specifies a unique action identifier.

Name

Specifies the name of the action. This name is displayed as a tooltip or as a menu item.

> **Tip:**
> You can use the **${i18n('key')}** editor variable *(on page 207)* to allow for multiple translations of the name.

Menu access key

In Windows, you can access menus by holding down **Alt** and pressing the keyboard key that corresponds to the *letter* that is underlined in the name of the menu. Then, while still holding down **Alt**, you can select submenus and menu action the same way by pressing subsequent corresponding keys. You can use this option to specify the *letter* in the name of the action that can be used to access the action.

Description

A description of the action. This description is displayed as a tooltip when hovering over the action.

Tip:
You can use the **${i18n('key')}** editor variable *(on page 207)* to allow for multiple translations of the description.

How to translate frameworks link

Use this link to see more information about Localizing Frameworks *(on page 1632)*.

Large icon

Allows you to select an image for the icon that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses for the toolbar action.

Tip:
A good practice is to store the image files inside the *framework* directory and use the *${frameworks}* editor variable *(on page 207)* to make the image relative to the *framework* location. If the images are bundled in a *jar* archive (for instance, along with some Java operations implementation), it is convenient to reference the images by their relative path location in the *class-path*.

Small icon

Allows you to select an image for the icon that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses for the contextual menu action.

Note:
If you are using a Retina or HiDPI display, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically searches for higher resolution icons in the path specified in both the **Large icon** and **Small icon** options. For more information, see Using Retina/HiDPI Icons for the Actions from a Framework *(on page 1585)*.

Shortcut key

This field allows you to configure a shortcut key for the action that you are editing. The `+` character separates the keys.

Enable platform-independent shortcut keys

If this checkbox is selected, the shortcut that you specify in this field is platform-independent and the following modifiers are used:

- **M1** represents the **Command** key on macOS, and the **Ctrl** key on other platforms.
- **M2** represents the **Shift** key.
- **M3** represents the **Option** key on macOS, and the **Alt** key on other platforms.
- **M4** represents the **Ctrl** key on macOS, and is undefined on other platforms.

Operations section

In this section of the **Action** dialog box, you configure the functionality of the action that you are editing. An action has one or more operation modes. The evaluation of an XPath expression activates an operation mode. The first selected operation mode is activated when you trigger the action. The scope of the XPath expression must consist only of element nodes and attribute nodes of the edited document. Otherwise, the XPath expression does not return a match and does not fire the action. For more details see: Controlling Which Author Operations Gets Executed Through XPath Expressions *(on page 95)*.

The following options are available in this section:

Activation XPath

An XPath 2.0 expression that applies to elements and attributes. For more details see: Controlling Which Author Operations Gets Executed Through XPath Expressions *(on page 95)*.

Operation

Specifies the invoked operation that can be a default operation *(on page 1554)* or a custom operation *(on page 1582)*.

Arguments

Specifies the arguments of the invoked operation. The **Edit** at the bottom of the table allows you to edit the arguments of the operation.

Operation priority

Increases or decreases the priority of an operation. The operations are invoked in the order of their priority. If multiple XPath expressions are true, the operation with the highest priority is invoked.

- **Add** - Adds an operation.
- **Remove** - Removes an operation.
- **Duplicate** - Duplicates an operation.

Evaluate activation XPath expressions even in read-only contexts

If this checkbox is selected, the action can be invoked even when the cursor is placed in a read-only location.

Related information

Localizing Frameworks *(on page 1632)*

Controlling Which Author Operations Gets Executed Through XPath Expressions

An **Author** mode action can have multiple operation modes, each one invoking an Author operation *(on page 1554)* with certain configured parameters. Each operation mode has an XPath 2.0 expression for activating it.

For each operation mode of an action, the application will check if the XPath expression is fulfilled (when it returns a non-empty node set or a **true** result). Only the first operation whose XPath operation is fulfilled will be executed.

The following special XPath extension functions are provided:

- *oxy:allows-child-element() (on page 95)* - Use this function to check whether or not an element is valid child element in the current context, according to the associated schema.
- *oxy:allows-global-element() (on page 97)* - Use this function to check whether or not an element is a valid global element for the current *framework (on page 2231)*, according to the associated schema.
- *oxy:current-selected-element() (on page 98)* - Use this function to get the currently selected element.
- *oxy:selected-elements() (on page 99)* - Use this function to get the selected elements.
- *oxy:is-required-element() (on page 99)* - Use this function to check if the element returned by the given XPath expression is required (based on the rules declared in the schema).
- *oxy:platform() (on page 99)* - Use this function to get the current platform in cases where you want to enable or disable an action depending on the platform. Possible values include: *eclipse*, *standalone* and *webapp*.

oxy:allows-child-element() Function

The **oxy:allows-child-element()** function allows you to check whether or not an element that matches the arguments of the function is valid as a child of the element at the current cursor position, according to the associated schema. It is evaluated at the cursor position and has the following signature:

```
oxy:allows-child-element($childName, ($attributeName, $defaultAttributeValue, $contains?)?)
```

The following parameters are supported:

`childName`

The name of the element that you want to check if it is valid in the current context. Its value is a string that supports the following forms:

- The child element with the specified local name that belongs to the default namespace.

  ```
  oxy:allows-child-element("para")
  ```

  The above example verifies if the `<para>` element (of the default namespace) is allowed in the current context.

- The child element with the local name specified by any namespace.

```
oxy:allows-child-element("*:para")
```

The above example verifies if the `<para>` element (of any namespace) is allowed in the current context.

- A prefix-qualified name of an element.

```
oxy:allows-child-element("prefix:para")
```

The prefix is resolved in the context of the element where the cursor is located. The function matches on the element with the `para` local name from the previously resolved namespace. If the prefix is not resolved to a namespace, the function returns a value of `false`.

- A specified namespace-URI-qualified name of an element.

```
oxy:allows-child-element("{namespaceURI}para")
```

The `namespaceURI` is the namespace of the element. The above example verifies if the `<para>` element (of the specified namespace) is allowed in the current context.

- Any element.

```
oxy:allows-child-element("*")
```

The above function verifies if any element is allowed in the current context.

Note:
A common use case of `oxy:allows-child-element("*")` is in combination with the `attributeName` parameter.

`attributeName`

The attribute of an element that you want to check if it is valid in the current context. Its value is a string that supports the following forms:

- The attribute with the specified name from no namespace.

```
oxy:allows-child-element("*", "class", " topic/topic ")
```

The above example verifies if an element with the `@class` attribute and the default value of this attribute (that contains the `topic/topic` string) is allowed in the current context.

- The attribute with the local name specified by any namespace.

```
oxy:allows-child-element("*", "*:localname", " topic/topic ")
```

- A qualified name of an attribute.

```
oxy:allows-child-element("*", "prefix:localname", " topic/topic ")
```

The prefix is resolved in the context of the element where the cursor is located. If the prefix is not resolved to a namespace, the function returns a value of `false`.

`defaultAttributeValue`

A string that represents the default value of the attribute. Depending on the value of the next parameter, the default value of the attribute must either contain this value or be equal to it.

`contains`

An optional boolean. The default value is `true`. For the `true` value, the default value of the attribute must contain the `defaultAttributeValue` parameter. If the value is `false`, the two values must be the same.

oxy:allows-global-element() Function

The **oxy:allows-global-element()** function allows you to check whether or not an element that matches the arguments of the function is valid for the current *framework (on page 2231)*, according to the associated schema. It has the following signature:

```
oxy:allows-global-element($elementName, ($attributeName, $defaultAttributeValue, $contains?)?)
```

The following parameters are supported:

`elementName`

The name of the element that you want to check if it is valid in the current *framework*. Its value is a string that supports the following forms:

- The element with the specified local name that belongs to the default namespace.

  ```
  oxy:allows-global-element("para")
  ```

  The above example verifies if the `<para>` element (of the default namespace) is allowed in the current *framework*.

- The element with the local name specified by any namespace.

  ```
  oxy:allows-global-element("*:para")
  ```

  The above example verifies if the `<para>` element (of any namespace) is allowed in the current *framework*.

- A prefix-qualified name of an element.

  ```
  oxy:allows-global-element("prefix:para")
  ```

  The prefix is resolved in the context of the *framework*. The function matches on the element with the `para` local name from the previously resolved namespace. If the prefix is not resolved to a namespace, the function returns a value of `false`.

- A specified namespace-URI-qualified name of an element.

```
oxy:allows-global-element("{namespaceURI}para")
```

The `namespaceURI` is the namespace of the element. The above example verifies if the `<para>` element (of the specified namespace) is allowed in the current *framework*.

- Any element.

```
oxy:allows-global-element("*")
```

The above function verifies if any element is allowed in the current *framework*.

`attributeName`

The attribute of an element that you want to check if it is valid in the current *framework*. Its value is a string that supports the following forms:

- The attribute with the specified name from no namespace.

```
oxy:allows-global-element("*", "class", " topic/topic ")
```

The above example verifies if an element with the `class` attribute and the default value of this attribute (that contains the `topic/topic` string) is allowed in the current *framework*.

- The attribute with the local name specified by any namespace.

```
oxy:allows-global-element("*", "*:localname", " topic/topic ")
```

- A qualified name of an attribute.

```
oxy:allows-global-element("*", "prefix:localname", " topic/topic ")
```

The prefix is resolved in the context of the *framework*. If the prefix is not resolved to a namespace, the function returns a value of `false`.

`defaultAttributeValue`

A string that represents the default value of the attribute. Depending on the value of the next parameter, the default value of the attribute must either contain this value or be equal to it.

`contains`

An optional boolean. The default value is `true`. For the `true` value, the default value of the attribute must contain the `defaultAttributeValue` parameter. If the value is `false`, the two values must be the same.

oxy:current-selected-element() Function

This function returns the fully selected element. If no element is selected, the function returns an empty sequence.

Example: *oxy:current-selected-element* Function

```
oxy:current-selected-element()[self::p]/b
```

This example returns the `<b>` elements that are children of the currently selected `<p>` element.

oxy:selected-elements() Function

This function returns the selected elements from **Author** mode.

Example: *oxy:selected-elements* Function

```
oxy:selected-elements()[self::para][@audience="novice"]
```

This example would activate an action when at least one of the selected elements is a `<para>` element with the `@novice` attribute defined.

oxy:is-required-element() Function

This function checks if the element returned by the given XPath expression is required (based on the rules declared in the schema). It has only one argument, an XPath expression, and the XPath expression must be written in such a way that it returns a single element.

Example: *oxy:is-required-element* Function

```
oxy:is-required-element(.)
```

This example would check to see if the current element is required by the schema.

oxy:is-editable-element() Function

This function checks if the element returned by the given XPath expression is editable (content can be inserted in it), meaning both that the entire XML file is editable and that the current context where the element is placed is editable. For example, if the element is inside an *xi:included* section, it is not editable.

It only has one argument, an XPath expression, and the XPath expression must be written in such a way that it returns a single element.

Example: *oxy:is-editable-element* Function

```
oxy:is-editable-element(ancestor-or-self::table)
```

This example would return *true* if the cursor is placed inside a table and it is editable or *false* if it is not editable.

oxy:platform() Function

This function returns the current platform. You can use this if you want to enable or disable an action depending on the platform. The possible values are: **standalone**, **eclipse**, or **webapp**.

Example: *oxy:platform* Function

```
oxy:platform()="standalone"
```

This example would keep the action activated for the *standalone* distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, but disable it for the *Eclipse* and *Web Author* distributions.

Menu Subtab

In the **Menu** subtab, you can configure which actions will appear in the *framework (on page 2231)*-specific menu. The subtab is divided into two sections: **Available actions** and **Current actions**.

To open the **Menu** subtab, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, click on the **Author** tab, and then the **Menu** subtab.

The **Available actions** section presents a table that displays the actions defined in the **Actions** subtab, along with their icon, ID, and name. The **Current actions** section holds the actions that are displayed in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin menu. To add an action in this section as a sibling of the currently selected action, use the **Add as sibling** button. To add an image in this section as a child of the currently selected action, use the **Add as child** button.

The following actions are available in the **Current actions** section:

Edit

Edits an item.

Remove

Removes an item.

Move Up

Moves an item up.

Move Down

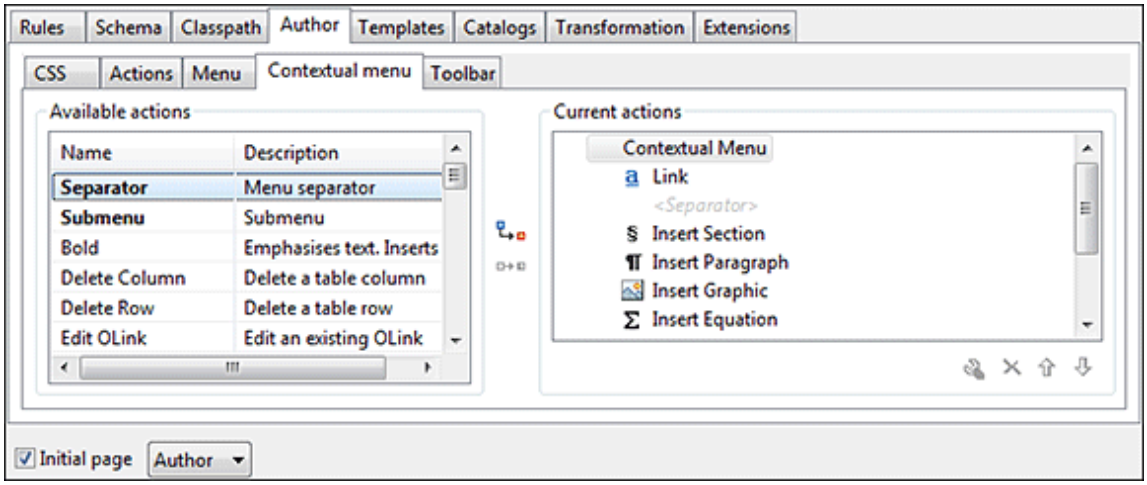
Moves an item down.

Contextual Menu Subtab

In the **Contextual menu** subtab you configure what *framework (on page 2231)*-specific action the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* proposes. The subtab is divided into two sections: **Available actions** and **Current actions**.

To open the **Contextual Menu** subtab, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, click on the **Author** tab, and then the **Contextual Menu** subtab.

Figure 24. Contextual Menu Subtab



The **Available actions** section presents a table that displays the actions defined in the **Actions** subtab, along with their icon, ID, and name. The **Current actions** section contains the actions that are displayed in the contextual menu for documents that belong to the edited *framework*.

The following actions are available in this subtab:

Add as sibling

Adds the selected action or submenu from the **Available actions** section to the **Current actions** section as a sibling of the selected action.

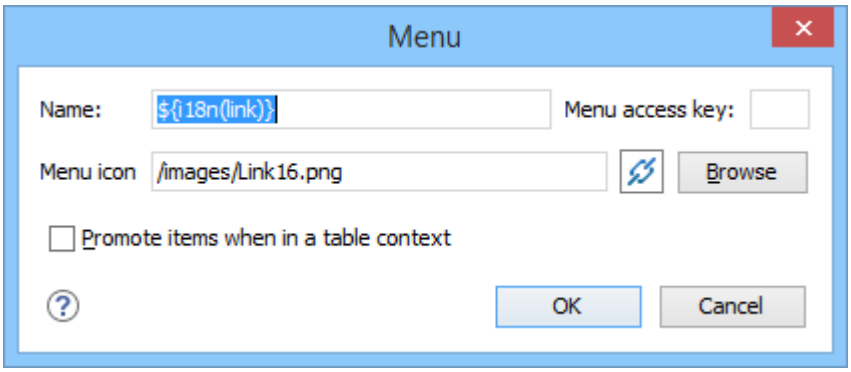
Add as child

Adds the selected action or submenu from the **Available actions** section to the **Current actions** section as a child of the selected action.

Edit

This option is available for container (submenu) items that are listed in the **Current actions** section. It opens a configuration dialog box that allows you to edit the selected container (submenu).

Figure 25. Menu Action Configuration Dialog Box



The following options are available in this dialog box:

Name

Specifies the name of the action. This name is displayed as a tooltip or as a menu item.

> **Tip:**
> You can use the **${i18n('key')}** editor variable *(on page 207)* to allow for multiple translations of the name.

Menu access key

In Windows, you can access menus by holding down **Alt** and pressing the keyboard key that corresponds to the *letter* that is underlined in the name of the menu. Then, while still holding down **Alt**, you can select submenus and menu action the same way by pressing subsequent corresponding keys. You can use this option to specify the *letter* in the name of the action that can be used to access the action.

Menu icon

Allows you to select an image for the icon that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses for the container (submenu).

Promote items when in a table context

If this option is selected, when invoking the contextual menu from within a table, all the actions in this container (submenu) will be promoted to the main level in the contextual menu. Actions and submenus that are not promoted are still available in the **Other actions** submenu when invoking the contextual menu within a table.

Remove

Removes the selected action or submenu from the **Current actions** section.

Move Up

Moves the selected item up in the list.

Move Down

Moves the selected item down in the list.

Toolbar Subtab

In the **Toolbar** subtab you configure what *framework (on page 2231)*-specific action the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin toolbar holds. The subtab is divided into two sections: **Available actions** and **Current actions**.

To open the **Toolbar** subtab, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, click on the **Author** tab, and then the **Toolbar** subtab.

The **Available actions** section presents a table that displays the actions defined in the **Actions** subtab, along with their icon, ID, and name. The **Current actions** section holds the actions that are displayed in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin toolbar when you work with a document belonging to the edited *framework*. To add

an action in this section as a sibling of the currently selected action, use the **Add as sibling** button. To add an action in this section as a child of the currently selected action, use the **Add as child** button.

The following actions are available in the **Current actions** section:

Edit

Edits an item.

Remove

Removes an item.

Move Up

Moves an item up.

Move Down

Moves an item down.

Content Completion Subtab

In the **Content Completion** subtab you configure what *framework (on page 2231)*-specific the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* proposes. The subtab is divided into two sections: **Available actions** and **Current actions**.

To open the **Content Completion** subtab, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, click on the **Author** tab, and then the **Content Completion** subtab.

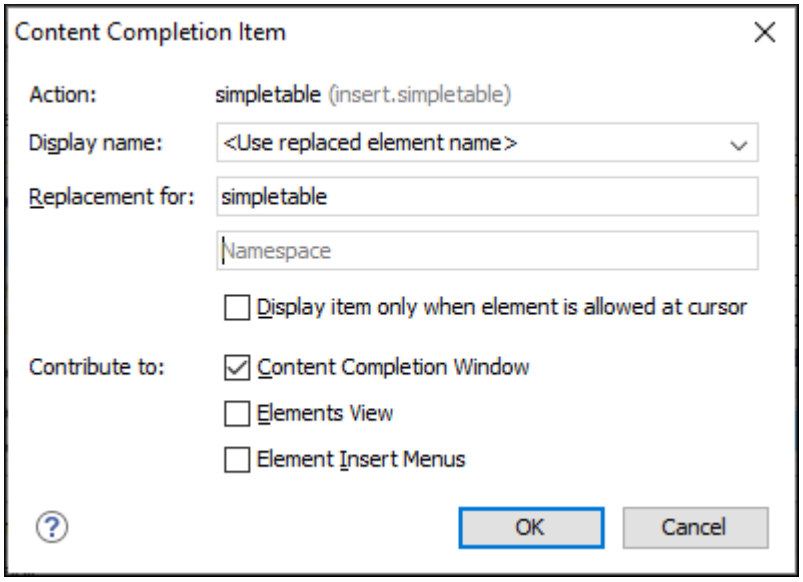
Available and Current Actions

The **Available actions** section presents a table that displays the actions defined in the **Actions** subtab, along with their icon, ID, and name. The **Current actions** section holds the actions that the *Content Completion Assistant* proposes when you work with a document that belongs to the edited *framework*.

To add the selected available action as a sibling of the currently selected action in the **Current actions** section, use the **Add as sibling** button. To add it as a child of the currently selected action, use the **Add as child** button. To edit an existing action, select it and use the **Edit** button. To remove an existing action, use the **Remove** button. You can also move items up and down the list using the **Move Up** or **Move Down** buttons.

Adding an action (or editing an existing one) opens the **Content Completion Item** dialog box.

Figure 26. Content Completion Item Dialog Box



Use this dialog box to configure the action:

Action

Displays the name of the selected action.

Display name

You can use the drop-down menu to choose between displaying the action name or the replaced element name, or you can enter another name to be displayed.

Replacement for

Use this section to replace an existing element with the configured action:

- **Element name** and **Namespace** - The name (and namespace, if needed) of the replaced element. The original element no longer needs to be excluded using the **Filter - Remove content completion items** table *(on page 105)*.
- **Display item only when element is allowed at cursor** - The configured action is contributed in the UI components selected in the **Contribute to** section only if the associated schema allows the original element at the current location in the document. This is equivalent to defining activation XPaths in the **Author Action** dialog box *(on page 91)* using the `oxy:allows-child-element()` XPath extension function. Activation XPaths for the action are still checked when the action is invoked.

Contribute to

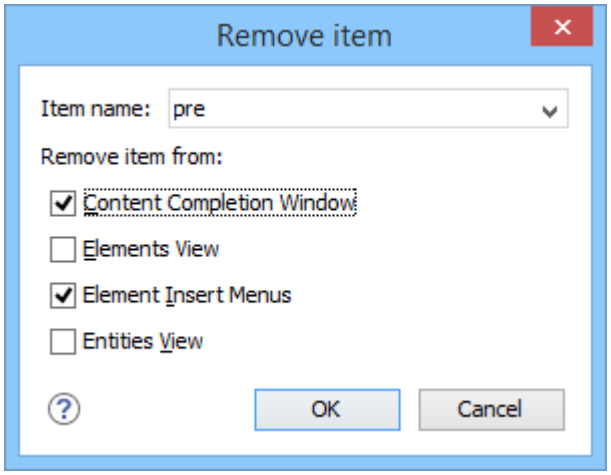
Use this section to specify where to display the configured item in the interface:

- **Content Completion Window** - The configured item will appear in the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.
- **Elements View** - The configured item will appear in the **Elements** view.
- **Element Insert Menus** - The configured item will appear in the **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, or **Insert After** menus that are available in certain contextual menus (for example, the contextual menu of the **Outline** view).

Filter Table

The **Filter** section presents a table that allows you to add elements to be filtered from the *Content Completion Assistant* or from some specific helper views or menus. Use the **Add** button to add more filters to the table, the **Edit** button to modify an existing item in the table, or the **Remove** button to remove a filtered item. The **Add** and **Edit** buttons open a **Remove item** dialog box.

Figure 27. Remove Item Dialog Box



Use this dialog box to add or configure the elements that will be filtered:

Item name

Use this text field to enter the name of the element to be filtered. The drop-down list also includes a few special content completion actions that can be filtered:

- **<SPLIT> [elementName]** - Filters split entries for elements that have the form **Split elementName** or **New elementName**.
- **<SPLIT>** - Filters split entries for all elements.
- **<ENTER>** - Filters **Insert New Line** entries that appear in elements where whitespace is significant.

The filter list can be used to remove only content completion items contributed by the schema associated to the document and it does not remove actions added to the content completion list via the framework configuration. The element name specified in the filter is not namespace aware, it matches the name of the element defined in the associated schema exactly as it would appear rendered in the content completion window.

Note:
If you try to insert an element in an invalid position (for example, using the content completion assistant), the editor will attempt to make the insertion valid. This may mean finding an alternate position for the insertion or splitting the element at the current position. If a **<SPLIT>** entry is added in the filter list for an element, the editor will never split that element.

Remove item from

You can choose to filter the element from any of the following:

- **Content Completion Window** - The element will not appear in the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.
- **Elements View** - The element will not appear in the **Elements** view.
- **Element Insert Menus** - The element will not appear in the **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, or **Insert After** menus that are available in certain contextual menus (for example, the contextual menu of the **Outline** view).
- **Entities View** - The element will not appear in the **Entities** view *(on page 309)*.

Related information
Customizing the Content Completion Assistant Using a Configuration File *(on page 1596)*

Templates Tab

The **Templates** tab specifies a list of directories where new document templates are located for this particular framework. These directories, along with the document templates that are saved inside them, will appear in the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)* inside the **Framework templates** category according to your framework and the directory path you specify in this tab.

To open the **Templates** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, and click on the **Templates** tab.

The **Templates** tab includes the following actions:

New

Opens a dialog box that allows you to specify the path to a directory that contains document templates for this framework. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

> **Tip:**
> The path can also contain wildcards. For example, using `${frameworkDir}/templates/*` would add all the template folders found inside the `templates` directory.

Edit

Opens a dialog box that allows you to edit the path of a directory that contains document templates for this framework. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

> **Tip:**
> The path can also contain wildcards. For example, using `${frameworkDir}/templates/*` would add all the template folders found inside the `templates` directory.

Delete

Deletes the currently selected template directory from the list.

Move Up

Moves the selected template directory up one spot in the list.

Move Down

Moves the selected template directory down one spot in the list.

Related information

Creating New Document Templates *(on page 229)*
Customizing Document Templates *(on page 231)*
Sharing Custom Document Templates *(on page 235)*

Catalogs Tab

The **Catalogs** tab specifies a list of *XML Catalogs*, specifically for the edited *framework (on page 2231)*, that are added to list of catalogs that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses to resolve resources.

To open the **Catalogs** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, and click on the **Catalogs** tab.

You can perform the following actions:

Add

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a catalog to the list. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Edit

Opens a dialog box that allows you to edit the path of an existing catalog.

Delete

Deletes the currently selected catalog from the list.

Move Up

Moves the selected catalog up one spot in the list.

Move Down

Moves the selected catalog down one spot in the list.

Transformation Tab

In the **Transformation** tab, you can configure the transformation scenarios associated with the particular *framework (on page 2231)* you are editing. These transformation scenarios are presented in the **Configure Transformation Scenarios** dialog box *(on page 934)* when transforming a document and you can specify which scenarios will be used by default for a particular document type.

To open the **Transformation** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, and click on the **Transformation** tab.

The **Transformation** tab offers the following options:

Default checkbox

You can set one or more of the scenarios listed in this tab to be used as the default transformation scenario when another specific scenario is not specified. The scenarios that are set as default are rendered bold in the **Configure Transformation Scenarios** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

New

Opens the **New scenario** dialog box allowing you to create a new transformation scenario for the particular document type *(on page 828)*.

Duplicate

Allows you to duplicate the configuration of an existing transformation scenario. It opens the **Edit scenario** dialog box where you can configure the properties of the duplicated scenario *(on page 933)*.

Edit

Opens the **Edit scenario** dialog box allowing you to edit the properties of the currently selected transformation scenario *(on page 931)*.

Delete

Deletes the currently selected transformation scenario.

Import scenarios

Imports transformation scenarios.

Export selected scenarios

Export transformation scenarios.

Move Up

Moves the selection to the previous scenario.

Move Down

Moves the selection to the next scenario.

Validation Tab

In the **Validation** tab, you can configure the validation scenarios associated with the particular *framework (on page 2231)* you are editing. These validation scenarios are presented in the **Configure Validation Scenarios** dialog box when validating a document and you can specify which scenarios will be used by default for a particular document type.

Note:
If a *main file* is associated with the current file, the validation scenarios defined in the *main file*, along with any Schematron schema defined in the default scenarios for that particular *framework*, are used for the validation. These take precedence over other types of validation units defined in the default scenarios for the particular *framework*. For more information on *main files*, see Contextual Project Operations Using 'Main Files' Support *(on page 253)* or Modular Contextual XML Editing Using 'Main Files' Support *(on page 576)*.

To open the **Validation** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, and click on the **Validation** tab.

The **Validation** tab offers the following options:

Default checkbox

You can set one or more of the scenarios listed in this tab to be used as the default validation scenario when another specific scenario is not specified in the validation process. The scenarios that are set as default are rendered bold in the **Configure Validation Scenarios** dialog box.

New

Opens the **New scenario** dialog box allowing you to create a new validation scenario.

Duplicate

Allows you to duplicate the configuration of an existing validation scenario. It opens the **Edit scenario** dialog box where you can configure the properties of the duplicated scenario.

Edit

Opens the **Edit scenario** dialog box allowing you to edit the properties of the currently selected validation scenario.

Delete

Deletes the currently selected validation scenario.

Import scenarios

Imports validation scenarios.

Export selected scenarios

Export validation scenarios.

Move Up

Moves the selected scenario up one spot in the list.

Move Down

Moves the selected scenario down one spot in the list.

Extensions Tab

The **Extensions** tab specifies implementations of Java interfaces used to provide advanced functionality to the document type.

To open the **Extensions** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, and click on the **Extensions** tab.

Libraries containing the implementations must be present in the *classpath (on page 88)* of your document type. The Javadoc available at https://www.oxygenxml.com/InstData/Editor/SDK/javadoc/ contains details about how each API implementation functions.

Editor Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers the possibility to configure the appearance of various components and features of the main editor. To access these options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor** (or right-click in the editor window and choose **Preferences**).

The following options are available:

Editor background

Allows you to set the background color for text editors.

Completion proposal background

Allows you to set the background color of the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

Completion proposal foreground

Allows you to set the color of the text in the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

Documentation window background

Allows you to set the background color of the documentation of elements suggested by the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

Documentation window foreground

Allows you to set the color of the text for the documentation of elements suggested by the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

Line wrap

If selected, long lines are automatically wrapped in edited documents. The line wrap does not alter the document content since the application does not use *new-line* characters to break long lines.

Enable folding when opening a new editor

If selected (default value), the vertical stripe that holds the folding markers *(on page 291)* is displayed in **Text** mode.

Beep on operation finished

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin emits a short beep when a validation, check well-formedness, or transformation action has ended.

Note:
When the validation or the transformation process of a document is successful, the beep signal has a higher audio frequency, as opposed to when the validation fails, and the beep signal has a lower audio frequency. On the Windows platform, for other operations, the default system sound (`Asterisk`) is used. You can configure it by changing the sound theme.

Display quick-assist and quick-fix side hints

Displays the *Quick Assist (on page 2233)* icon ( ) and *Quick Fix (on page 2233)* icon ( ) in the line number stripe on the left side of the editor.

Highlight matching tag

If you place the cursor on a start or end tag, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin highlights the corresponding member of the pair.

Tip:
You can configure the colors and how various types of highlights are shown from the Eclipse **Annotations** preferences page (**Window ('Eclipse' on macOSX) > Preferences > General > Editors > Text Editors > Annotations**).

Minimum fold range

You can specify the minimum number of lines in a block that will have the *folding (on page 2230)* support become active. If you modify this value, the change takes effect next time you open the editor.

Content Completion Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* that provides a list of available options at any point in a document and can auto-complete structures, elements, and attributes. To configure the **Content Completion** preferences, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Content Completion**. These options control how the *Content Completion Assistant* works.

The following options are available:

Auto close the last opened tag

When selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically closes the last open tag when you type `</`.

Automatically rename/delete/comment matching tags

If you rename, delete, or comment out a start tag, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically renames, deletes, or comments out the matching end tag.

Note:
If you select **Toggle comment** for multiple starting tags and the matching end tags are on the same line as other start tags, the end tags are not commented.

Enable content completion

Toggles the content completion feature on or off.

Consider subsequent sibling elements

When this option is selected (default), the subsequent sibling elements of the current element are taken into account when using the *Content Completion Assistant*. For example, in DITA, if you invoke the content completion before an already inserted required element (e.g. a `<title>` element), the content completion mechanism will not offer a proposal to insert a title (since it was already inserted).

Close the inserted element

When you choose an entry from the *Content Completion Assistant* list of proposals, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin inserts both start and end tags. The following additional options are available with regard to closing the element:

- **If it has no matching tag** - The end tag of the inserted element is automatically added only if it is not already present in the document.
- **Add element content** - Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin inserts the required elements specified in the DTD, XML Schema, or RELAX NG schema that is associated with the edited XML document.
  - **Add optional content** - If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin inserts the optional elements specified in the DTD, XML Schema, or RELAX NG schema.
  - **Add first Choice particle** - If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin inserts the first **choice** particle specified in the DTD, XML Schema, or RELAX NG schema.

Case sensitive search

When selected, the search in the *Content Completion Assistant* is case-sensitive when you type a character ('a' and 'A' are different characters).

Note:
This option is ignored when the current language itself is not case-sensitive. For example, the case is ignored in the CSS language.

Position cursor between tags

When selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically moves the cursor between the start and end tag after inserting the element. This only applies to:

- Elements with only optional attributes or no attributes at all.
- Elements with required attributes, but only when the **Insert the required attributes** option *(on page 113)* is not selected.

Show all entities

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays a list with all the internal and external entities declared in the current document when you type the start character of an entity reference (for example, `&`).

Insert the required attributes

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically inserts the required attributes taken from the DTD or XML Schema for an element inserted with the *Content Completion Assistant*. For ID attributes that are required, a unique value is automatically generated for each new ID.

Insert the fixed attributes

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically inserts any `FIXED` attributes from the DTD or XML Schema for an element inserted with the *Content Completion Assistant*.

Show recently used items

When selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin remembers the last inserted items from the *Content Completion Assistant* window. The number of items to be remembered is limited by

the **Maximum number of recent items shown** list box. These most frequently used items are displayed on the top of the content completion window and their icons are decorated with a small red square..

Maximum number of recent items shown

Specifies the limit for the number of recently used items presented at the top of the *Content Completion Assistant* window.

Learn attributes values

When selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin learns the attribute values used in a document.

Learn on open document

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically learns the document structure when the document is opened.

Learn words (Dynamic Abbreviations, available on Ctrl+Space

When selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin learns the typed words and makes them available in a content completion fashion by pressing **Ctrl + Space** on your keyboard;

Note:
For the words to be learned, they need to be separated by space characters.

Activation delay of the proposals window (ms)

Delay in milliseconds from the last key press until the *Content Completion Assistant* is displayed.

Related information
Configuring the Proposals for Attribute and Element Values *(on page 1606)*

Annotations Preferences

Certain types of schemas (XML Schema, DTDs, Relax NG) can include annotations that document the various elements and attributes that they define. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can display these annotations when offering content completion suggestions. To configure the **Annotations** preferences, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Content Completion > Annotations**.

The following options are available:

Show annotations in Content Completion Assistant

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the schema annotations of an element, attribute, or attribute value currently selected in the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* proposals list.

Show annotations in tooltip

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the annotation of elements and attributes as a tooltip when you hover over them with the cursor in the editing area or in the **Elements** view. If not selected, tooltips are disabled in all modes.

Show annotation in HTML format, if possible

This option allows you to view the annotations associated with an element or attribute in HTML format. It is available when editing XML documents that have associated an XML Schema or Relax NG schema. If this option is not selected, the annotations are converted and displayed as plain text.

Prefer DTD comments that start with "doc:" as annotations

To address the lack of dedicated annotation support in DTD documents, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin recommends prefixing with the `doc:` particle all comments intended to be shown to the developer who writes an XML validated against a DTD schema.

If this option is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the following mechanism to collect annotations:

- If at least one `doc:` comment is found in the entire DTD, only comments of this type are displayed as annotations.
- If no `doc:` comment is found in the entire DTD, all comments are considered annotations and displayed as such.

If not selected, all comments, regardless of their type, are considered annotations and displayed as such.

Use all Relax NG annotations as documentation

If selected, any element outside the Relax NG namespace, that is `http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0`, is considered annotation and is displayed in the annotation window next to the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* window and in the **Model** view *(on page 307)*. When this option is not selected, only elements from the Relax NG annotations namespace, that is `http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0` are considered annotations.

Code Templates Preferences

Code templates are code fragments that can be inserted at the current editing position. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a set of built-in templates for CSS, Schematron, XSL, XQuery, JSON, HTML, and XML Schema document types. You can also define your own code templates *(on page 299)* for any type of file and share them with your colleagues *(on page 300)* using the template export and import functions.

To configure **Code Templates**, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Templates > Code Templates**.

This preferences page contains a list of all the available code templates (both built-in and custom created ones) and a code preview area. You can disable any code template by deselecting it.

The following actions are available:

New

Opens the **Code template** dialog box that allows you to define a new code template. You can define the following fields:

- **Name** - The name of the code template.
- **Description** - [Optional] The description of the code template that will appear in the **Code Templates** preferences page and in the tooltip message when selecting it from the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*. HTML markup can be used for better rendering.
- **Associate with** - You can choose to set the code template to be associated with a specific type of editor or for all editor types.
- **Shortcut key** - [Optional] If you want to assign a shortcut key that can be used to insert the code template, place the cursor in the **Shortcut key** field and press the desired key combination on your keyboard. Use the **Clear** button if you make a mistake. If the **Enable platform-independent shortcut keys** checkbox is selected, the shortcut is platform-independent and the following modifiers are used:
  - **M1** represents the **Command** key on macOS, and the **Ctrl** key on other platforms.
  - **M2** represents the **Shift** key.
  - **M3** represents the **Option** key on macOS, and the **Alt** key on other platforms.
  - **M4** represents the **Ctrl** key on macOS, and is undefined on other platforms.
- **Content** - Text box where you define the content that is used when the code template is inserted. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button.

Edit

Opens the **Code template** dialog box and allows you to edit an existing code template. You can edit the following fields:

- **Description** - [Optional] The description of the code template that will appear in the **Code Templates** preferences page and in the tooltip message when selecting it from the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*. HTML markup can be used for better rendering.
- **Shortcut key** - [Optional] If you want to assign a shortcut key that can be used to insert the code template, place the cursor in the **Shortcut key** field and press the desired key combination on your keyboard. Use the **Clear** button if you make a mistake. If the **Enable platform-independent shortcut keys** checkbox is selected, the shortcut is platform-independent and the following modifiers are used:
  - **M1** represents the **Command** key on macOS, and the **Ctrl** key on other platforms.
  - **M2** represents the **Shift** key.

- **M3** represents the **Option** key on macOS, and the **Alt** key on other platforms.
- **M4** represents the **Ctrl** key on macOS, and is undefined on other platforms.

- **Content** - Text box where you define the content that is used when the code template is inserted. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button.

Duplicate

Creates a duplicate of the currently selected code template.

Delete

Deletes the currently selected code template. This action is not available for the built-in code templates.

Export

Exports a file with code templates.

Import

Imports a file with code templates that was created by the **Export** action.

You can use the following editor variables *(on page 199)* when you define a code template in the **Content** text box:

- **${caret}** - The position where the cursor is located. This variable can be used in a code template, in **Author** mode operations, or in a **selection** *plugin*.

  Note:
  The **${caret}** editor variable is available only for parameters that take XML content as values. It is replaced with the **${UNIQUE_CARET_MARKER_FOR_AUTHOR}** macro. The default Author operations process this macro and position the cursor at the designated offset.

  Note:
  The **${caret}** editor variable can be used for setting a fixed cursor position inside an XML fragment. To set the cursor position depending on the fragment inserted in the document, you can use **AuthorDocumentFilter** and inside the **insertFragment(AuthorDocumentFilterBypass, int, AuthorDocumentFragment)** method, use the **AuthorDocumentFragment.setSuggestedRelativeCaretOffset(int)** API on the given fragment.

- **${selection}** - The currently selected text content in the currently edited document. This variable can be used in a code template, in **Author** mode operations, or in a **selection** *plugin*.
- **${ask('message', type, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1'; 'real_value2':'rendered_value2'; ...), 'default_value', @id)}** - To prompt for values at runtime, use the *ask('message', type,*

('real_value1':'rendered_value1'; 'real_value2':'rendered_value2'; ...), 'default-value") editor variable. You can set the following parameters:

- **'message'** - The displayed message. Note the quotes that enclose the message.
- **'default-value'** - Optional parameter. Provides a default value.
- **@id** - Optional parameter. Used for identifying the variable to reuse the answer using the **${answer(@id)}** editor variable.
- **type** - Optional parameter (defaults to **generic**), with one of the following values:

Note:

The title of the dialog box will be determined by the type of parameter and as follows:

- For *url* and *relative_url* parameters, the title will be the name of the parameter and the value of the *'message'*.
- For the other parameters listed below, the title will be the name of that respective parameter.
- If no parameter is used, the title will be "Input".

Notice:

Editor variables that are used within a parameter of another editor variable must be escaped within single quotes for them to be properly expanded. For example:

```
${ask( 'Provide a date',generic,'${date(yyyy-MM-dd'T'HH:MM)}')}
```

Parameter	
generic (default)	**Format**: *${ask('message', generic, 'default')}*
	Description: The input is considered to be generic text that requires no special handling.
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Hello world!')}* - The dialog box has a *Hello world!* message displayed. ▪ *${ask('Hello world!', generic, 'Hello again!')}* - The dialog box has a *Hello world!* message displayed and the value displayed in the input box is *'Hello again!'*.
url	**Format:** *${ask('message', url, 'default_value')}*
	Description: Input is considered a URL. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin checks that the provided URL is valid.
	Example:

Parameter	
	▪ *${ask('Input URL', url)}* - The displayed dialog box has the name *Input URL*. The expected input type is URL. ▪ *${ask('Input URL', url, 'http://www.example.com')}* - The displayed dialog box has the name *Input URL*. The expected input type is URL. The input field displays the default value *http://www.example.com*.
relative_url	**Format:** *${ask('message', relative_url, 'default')}*
	Description: Input is considered a URL. This parameter provides a file chooser, along with a text field. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin tries to make the URL relative to that of the document you are editing. **Note:** If the *$ask* editor variable is expanded in content that is not yet saved (such as an *untitled* file, whose path cannot be determined), then Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will transform it into an absolute URL.
	Example: *${ask('File location', relative_url, 'C:/example.txt')}* - The dialog box has the name *'File location'*. The URL inserted in the input box is made relative to the currently edited document location.
password	**Format**: *${ask('message', password, 'default')}*
	Description: The input is hidden with bullet characters.
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Input password', password)}* - The displayed dialog box has the name *'Input password'* and the input is hidden with bullet symbols. ▪ *${ask('Input password', password, 'abcd')}* - The displayed dialog box has the name *'Input password'* and the input hidden with bullet symbols. The input field already contains the default **abcd** value.
combobox	**Format:** *${ask('message', combobox, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1';..-.;'real_valueN':'rendered_valueN'), 'default')}*
	Description: Displays a dialog box that offers a drop-down menu. The drop-down menu is populated with the given *rendered_value* values. Choosing such a value will return its associated value (*real_value*).

Parameter	
	Note: The list of *'real_value':'rendered_value'* pairs can be computed using *${xpath_eval()}*.
	Note: The *'default'* parameter specifies the default-selected value and can match either a key or a value.
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Operating System', combobox, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'macos':'macOS';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'macos')}* - The dialog box has the name *'Operating System'*. The drop-down menu displays the three given operating systems. The associated value will be returned based upon your selection. **Note:** In this example, the default value is indicated by the *osx* key. However, the same result could be obtained if the default value is indicated by *macOS*, as in the following example: *${ask('Operating System', combobox, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'macos':'macOS';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'macOS')}* ▪ *${ask('Mobile OS', combobox, ('ios':'iOS';'and':'Android'), 'Android')}* ▪ *${ask('Mobile OS', combobox, (${xpath_eval(for $pair in (['ios', 'iOS'], ['and', 'Android']) return '"' || $pair?1 || '":"' || $pair?2 || '";')}), 'ios')}*
editable_combobox	**Format:** *${ask('message', editable_combobox, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1';...;'real_valueN':'rendered_valueN'), 'default')}*
	Description: Displays a dialog box that offers a drop-down menu with editable elements. The drop-down menu is populated with the given *rendered_value* values. Choosing such a value will return its associated real value (*real_value*) or the value inserted when you edit a list entry. **Note:** The list of *'real_value':'rendered_value'* pairs can be computed using *${xpath_eval()}*.

Parameter	
	Note: The *'default'* parameter specifies the default-selected value and can match either a key or a value.
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Operating System', editable_combobox, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'macos':'macOS';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'macos')}* - The dialog box has the name *'Operating System'*. The drop-down menu displays the three given operating systems and also allows you to edit the entry. The associated value will be returned based upon your selection or the text you input. ▪ *${ask('Operating System', editable_combobox, (${xpath_eval(for $pair in (['win', 'Microsoft Windows'], ['macos', 'macOS'], ['lnx', 'Linux/UNIX']) return '"' || $pair?1 || '":"' || $pair?2 || '";')}), 'ios')}*
radio	**Format:** *${ask('message', radio, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1';...;'real_valueN':'rendered_valueN'), 'default')}*
	Description: Displays a dialog box that offers a series of radio buttons. Each radio button displays a *'rendered_value* and will return an associated *real_value*.
	Note: The list of *'real_value':'rendered_value'* pairs can be computed using *${xpath_eval()}*.
	Note: The *'default'* parameter specifies the default-selected value and can match either a key or a value.
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Operating System', radio, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'macos':'macOS';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'macos')}* - The dialog box has the name *'Operating System'*. The radio button group allows you to choose between the three operating systems.

Parameter	
	Note: In this example, `macOS` is the default-selected value and if selected, it would return *macos* for the output. ▪ *${ask('Operating System', radio, (${xpath_eval(for $pair in (['win', 'Microsoft Windows'], ['macos', 'macOS'], ['lnx', 'Linux/UNIX']) return '"' || $pair?1 || '":"' || $pair?2 || '";')}), 'ios')}*
textarea	**Format:** *${ask('message', textarea, 'default')}*
	Description: The input is a text area that requires no special handling.
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Hello world!', textarea, 'Hello again!')}* - The dialog box would have a *Hello world!* message displayed and the value of *Hello again!* would be displayed in the text area.

Here is an example of a complex XPath expression for constructing a radio button set:

```
${ask('Bundle for keydefs', radio, (${xpath_eval(let $family := 'utah', $bundles := doc(environment-variable('HOME')
 || '/git/dita-author-tools/resource/properties/bundle-data.xml')/*/family[@name eq $family]/*, $pairs :=
 $bundles ! concat('''',./@bundle-code, ''','':',  ''',./@map-filename,''')  return string-join($pairs, ';'))}),
 @bundle-code)}
```

- **${timeStamp}** - The timestamp, which is the current time in Unix format. For example, it can be used to save transformation results in multiple output files on each transformation.
- **${uuid}** - Universally unique identifier, a unique sequence of 32 hexadecimal digits generated by the Java UUID class.
- **${id}** - Application-level unique identifier. It is a short sequence of 10-12 letters and digits that is not guaranteed to be universally unique.
- **${cfn}** - Current file name without the extension and parent folder. The current file is the one currently open and selected.
- **${cfne}** - Current file name with extension. The current file is the one currently open and selected.
- **${cf}** - Current file as file path, that is the absolute file path of the currently edited document.
- **${cfd}** - Current file folder as file path, that is the path of the currently edited document up to the name of the parent folder.
- **${frameworksDir}** - The path (as file path) of the `frameworks` directory. When used to define references inside a framework configuration, it expands to the parent folder of that specific framework folder. Otherwise, it expands to the main `frameworks` folder defined in the **Document Type Association > Locations** preferences page.
- **${pd}** - The file path to the folder that contains the current project file (`.xpr`).
- **${oxygenInstallDir}** - Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation folder as file path.
- **${homeDir}** - The path (as file path) of the user home folder.

- **${pn}** - Current project name.
- **${env(VAR_NAME)}** - Value of the *VAR_NAME* environment variable. The environment variables are managed by the operating system. If you are looking for Java System Properties, use the **${system(var.name)}** editor variable.
- **${system(var.name)}** - Value of the *var.name* Java System Property. The Java system properties can be specified in the command-line arguments of the Java runtime as *-Dvar.name=var.value*. If you are looking for operating system environment variables, use the **${env(VAR_NAME)}** editor variable instead.
- **${date(pattern)}** - Current date. The allowed patterns are equivalent to the ones in the Java SimpleDateFormat class. **Example:** *yyyy-MM-dd*.

> **Note:**
> This editor variable supports both the **xs:date** and **xs:datetime** parameters. For details about **xs:date**, go to: http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#date. For details about **xs:datetime**, go to: http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#dateTime.

Related information
Code Templates *(on page 299)*

XPath Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides content-completion support for XPath expressions. To configure the options for the content completion in XPath expressions, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Content Completion > XPath**.

The following options are available:

- **Enable content completion for XPath expressions** - Enables the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* in XPath expressions that you enter in the `@match`, `@select`, and `@test` XSL attributes.
  - **Include XPath functions** - When this option is selected, XPath functions are included in the content completion suggestions.
  - **Include XSLT functions** - When this option is selected, XSLT functions are included in the content completion suggestions.
  - **Include axes** - When this option is selected, XSLT axes are included in the content completion suggestions.
- **Show signatures of XSLT / XPath functions** - Makes the editor indicate the signature of the XPath function located at the cursor position in a tooltip.

Document Validation Preferences

To configure document validation options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Document Validation**. This page contains preferences for configuring how a document is checked for both well-formedness and validation errors.

The following options are available:

Maximum number of validation highlights

If a validation generates more errors than the number specified in this option, only the errors up to this number are highlighted in the editor panel and on the stripe that is displayed at the right side of the editor panel. This option applies to both automatic validation and manual validation.

Include problem ID in description

If this option is selected, validation issues listed in the **Results** view or **Problems** view will include the problem ID (as provided by the validation engine) in the **Description** column.

Clear validation markers on close

If this option is selected, all the error markers added in the **Problems** view for that document are removed when the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin plugin is closed.

Enable automatic validation

This causes the validation to be automatically executed in the background as the document is modified in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Delay after the last key event (s)

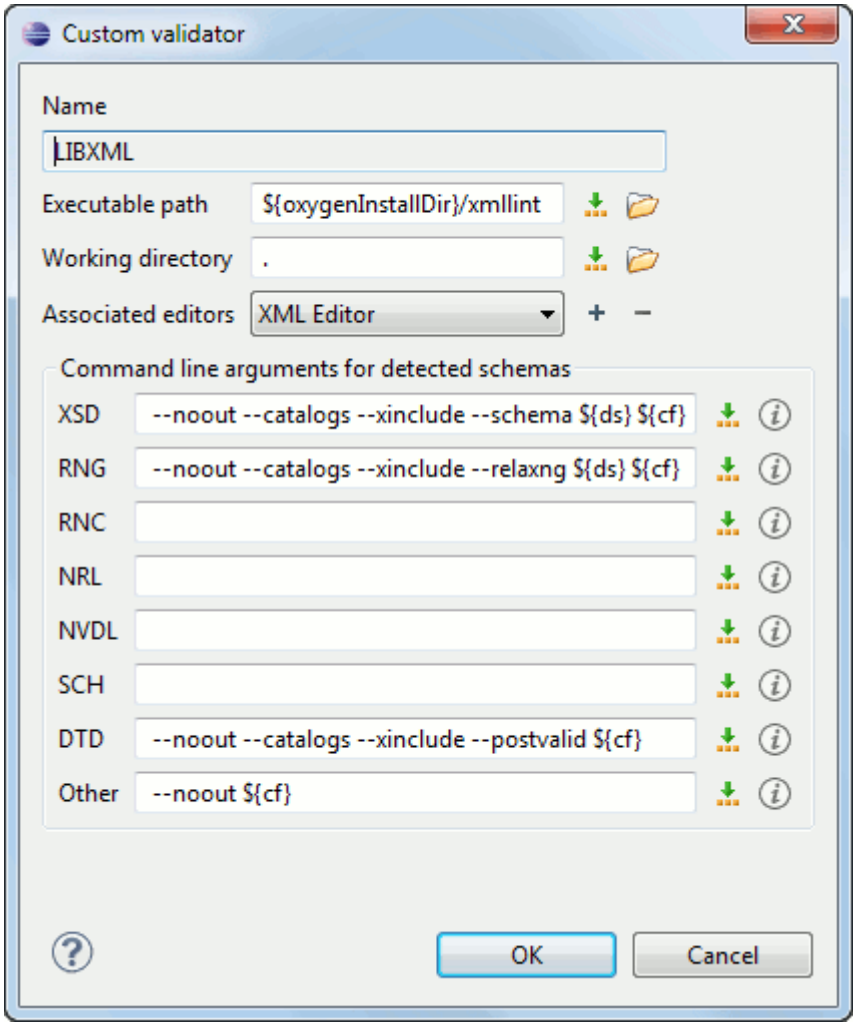
The period of keyboard inactivity before starting a new validation (in seconds).

Custom Validation Engines Preferences

As the name implies, the **Custom Validation Engines** preferences page displays the list of custom validation engines that can be associated to a particular editor and used for validating documents. To access this page, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Document Validation > Custom Validation Engines**.

If you want to add a new custom validation tool or edit the properties of an existing one, you can use the **Custom Validator** dialog box displayed by pressing the **New** or **Edit** button.

Figure 28. Custom Validator Dialog Box



The **Custom Validator** dialog box allows you to configure the following parameters:

Name

Name of the custom validation engine that will be displayed in the **Validation** toolbar drop-down menu.

Executable path

Path to the executable file of the custom validation tool. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Working directory

The working directory of the custom validation tool. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Associated editors

The editors that can perform validation with the external tool (XML editor, XSL editor, XSD editor, etc.)

Command-line arguments for detected schemas

Command-line arguments used in the commands that validate the currently edited file against various types of schema (XML Schema, Relax NG full syntax, Relax NG compact syntax, NVDL, Schematron, DTD, etc.) The arguments can include any custom switch (such as -rng) and the following editor variables *(on page 199)*:

- **${cf}** - Current file as file path, that is the absolute file path of the currently edited document.
- **${currentFileURL}** - Current file as URL, that is the absolute file path of the currently edited document represented as URL.
- **${ds}** - The path of the detected schema as a local file path for the current validated XML document.
- **${dsu}** - The path of the detected schema as a URL for the current validated XML document.

Related information
Editor Variables *(on page 199)*

Increasing the Stack Size for Validation Engines

To prevent the appearance of a **StackOverflowException** error, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **com.oxygenxml.stack.size.validation.threads** property to increase the size of the stack for validation engines. The value of this property is specified in bytes. For example, to set a value of one megabyte specify 1x1024x1024=1048576.
- **Note:**
  Increasing the value of the **-Xss** parameter affects all the threads of the application.

Edit Modes Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin lets you configure which edit mode a file is opened in the first time it is opened. This setting only applies the first time a file is opened. The current editing mode of each file is saved when the file is closed and restored the next time it is opened. To configure the options for editing modes, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit Modes** .

Allow Document Type specific edit mode setting to override the general mode setting

If selected, the initial edit mode setting set in the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* overrides the general edit mode setting from the table below.

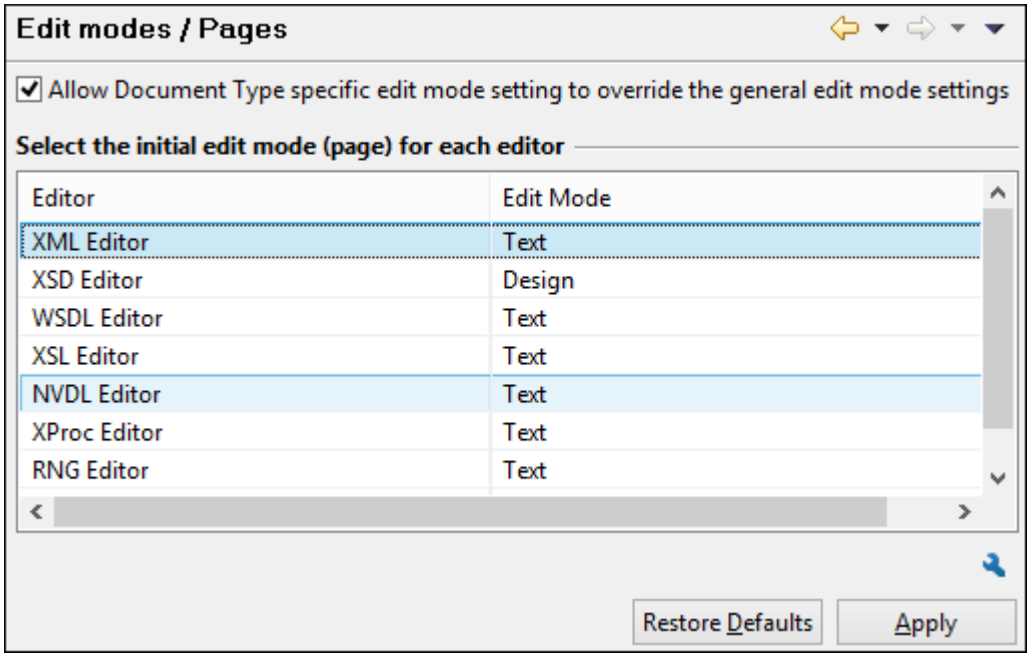
Select the initial edit mode (page) for each editor

This table specifies the default editing mode that will be opened for each type of document when the **Allow Document Type specific edit mode setting to override the general mode setting**

option is not selected. Use the **Edit** button to change the initial edit mode for each type of document (editor). The initial edit mode can be one of the following:

- **Text**
- **Author**
- **Grid**
- **Design** (available only for the XSD editor).

Figure 29. Edit Modes Preferences Page



Author Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides an **Author** editing mode that provides a configurable graphical interface for editing documents. To configure the options for the **Author** mode, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author**.

The following options are available:

Author default background color

Sets the default background color of the **Author** editing mode. The `background-color` property set in the CSS file associated with the currently edited document overwrites this option.

Author default foreground color

Sets the default foreground color of the **Author** editing mode. The `color` property set in the CSS file associated with the currently edited document overwrites this option.

Show XML comments

When this option is selected, XML comments are displayed in **Author** mode. Otherwise, they are hidden.

Show placeholders for empty elements

When this option is selected, placeholders are displayed for elements with no content to make them clearly visible. The placeholder is rendered as a light gray box and displays the element name.

Show processing instructions

When this option is selected, XML processing instructions are displayed in **Author** mode. Otherwise, they are hidden.

Show Author layout messages

When this option is selected, all errors reported while rendering the document in **Author** mode are presented in the **Results** view *(on page 310)* at the bottom of the editor.

Show doctype

When this option is selected, the **doctype** declaration is displayed in **Author** mode. Otherwise, it is hidden.

Fast text layout

In certain cases, the widths computed in the **Author** visual editing mode for lines of text may be larger than expected, leading to an incorrect visual layout. Deactivating this option will improve the computation quality for character widths in the visual editing mode, but it may hinder overall performance for very large documents.

Tip:
For macOS users, some specific examples of this type of situation can be found here: Text Rendering Issues on macOS *(on page 1868)*. Because of such problems, when an installation kit with Java 9 or newer is used on macOS, the checkbox is not selected by default.

Show floating contextual toolbar

When this option is selected (default), the *floating contextual toolbar* is displayed in the **Author** mode in certain situations. When not selected, the *floating contextual toolbar* is never displayed.

Images Section

The following options regarding images in **Author** mode are available in this section:

Auto-scale images wider than (pixels)

Sets the maximum width that an image will be displayed. Wider images will be scaled to fit.

Show very large images

When this option is selected, images larger than 6 megapixels are displayed in **Author** mode. Otherwise, they are not displayed.

Important:
If you select this option and your document contains many such images, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin may consume all available memory, throwing an **OutOfMemory error**. To resolve this, increase the available memory limit and restart the application.

Tags Section

In this section, you can configure the following options regarding tags that are displayed in **Author** mode:

Tags display mode

Sets the default display mode for element tags presented in **Author** mode. You can choose between the following:

Full Tags with Attributes

Displays full tag names with attributes for both *block (on page 2228)* and *inline elements (on page 2231)*.

Full Tags

Displays full tag names without attributes for both *block elements* and *inline elements*.

Block Tags

Displays full tag names for *block elements* and simple tags without names for *inline elements*.

Block Tags without Element Names

Displays tags for *block elements* but without element names for a more compact version of **Block Tags** mode. You can still see the element names by hovering over the tags.

Inline Tags

Displays full tag names for *inline elements*, while *block elements* are not displayed.

Partial Tags

Displays simple tags without names for *inline elements*, while *block elements* are not displayed.

No Tags

No tags are displayed. This is the most compact mode and is as close as possible to a word-processor view.

Sort attributes alphabetically for "Full Tags with Attributes"

When selected, if you choose **Full Tags with Attributes** for the **Tags Display Mode**, the attributes will be displayed in alphabetical order. Otherwise, they are displayed in the order that they appear in the XML source code.

Tags background color

Sets the **Author** mode tags background color.

Tags foreground color

Sets the **Author** mode tags foreground color.

Tags font

Allows you to change the font used to display tags text in the **Author** visual editing mode. The *default* font is computed based on the setting of the **Author** option in the **Fonts** preferences page *(on page 165)*.

Compact tag layout

If this option is not selected, the **Author** mode displays the tags in a more decompressed layout, where block tags are displayed on separate lines.

References Section

Display referenced content (external entities, XInclude, DITA conref, etc.)

When selected, the references (such as external entities, XInclude, DITA conrefs) also display the content of the resources they reference. When the option is not selected, the referenced resources are not automatically loaded and displayed, but the referenced content can be expanded on demand by using the small expansion button located next to each element that contains references. If you toggle this option while editing, you need to reload the file for the modification to take effect.

Allow referenced content to be edited

When selected, for a specific XML vocabulary that supports this feature, the content referenced from other files and presented in the **Author** visual editing mode can be edited in-place and saved. For now, if the feature is enabled and you use the **Open Map in Editor with Resolved Topics** toolbar action in the **DITA Maps Manager** view, the referenced content in the opened document becomes editable in-place. Saving the document will save all other modified topics.

Local files only

When selected (default), the **Allow referenced content to be edited (Experimental)** option only works for local files. For files located in remote locations such as a CMS, additional steps might be necessary to save all modified content because this feature might not function properly with remote resources.

Whitespaces Section

The following option is available in this section:

Foreground color

Sets the foreground color of the white spaces in the **Author** mode. To enable this option, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **General > Editors > Text Edtiors** and select **Show whitespaces characters**.

Enable mouse-wheel zooming

If selected, you can use **Ctrl + MouseWheelForward (Command + MouseWheelForward on macOS)** to increase the editor font (zoom in) or **Ctrl + MouseWheelBackwards (Command + MouseWheelBackwards on macOS)** to decrease the editor font (zoom out). It is enabled by default on Windows and Linux, while it is disabled by default on macOS, due to the way inertia affects the mouse wheel on this operating system.

Configure annotation tooltip

Click this link to open the Annotations Preferences *(on page 114)* page.

For advanced Author configuration see the Document Type Association settings

Click this link to open the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 81)*.

AutoCorrect Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an option to automatically correct misspelled words as you type in **Author** mode. To enable and configure this *AutoCorrect* feature *(on page 270)*, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit Modes > Author > AutoCorrect**.

The following options are available:

Enable AutoCorrect

When selected (default state), while editing in **Author** mode, if you type anything that is listed in the **Replace** column of the Replacements table displayed in this preferences page, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will automatically replace it with the value listed in the **With** column.

Use additional suggestions from the spell checker

If selected, in addition to anything listed in the Replacements table displayed in this preferences page, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will also use suggestions from the Spell Checker to automatically correct misspelled words. Suggestions from the Spell Checker will only be used if the misspelled word is not found in the Replacements table.

Note:
The *AutoCorrect* feature shares the same options configured in the **Language options** *(on page 160)* and **Ignore elements** *(on page 162)* sections in the **Spell Check** preferences page.

Include text-to-markup corrections based on the current document type

If selected, in addition to anything listed in the Replacements table displayed in this preferences page, the *AutoCorrect* mechanism will also include XML markup insertion rules specified in a configuration file for each document type. For example, for default DITA, DocBook, and TEI documents, entering a hyphen (-) followed by a space in an empty paragraph will automatically insert a list element with an empty list item element inside. The configuration file is located at: `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/[DOC_TYPE]/resources/structureAutocorrect.xml`.

Tip:
By default, the `structureAutocorrect.xml` file only exists for DITA, DocBook, and TEI frameworks, but it is possible to customize your own markup correction rules for your particular document type. For details, see Customizing Text-to-Markup Shortcut Patterns *(on page 1591)*.

Spell Check options link

Use this link to navigate to the Spell Check Preferences page *(on page 160)*.

Replacements Table section

The *AutoCorrect* feature uses the Replacements table to automatically replace anything that is listed in the **Replace** column with the value listed in the **With** column for each language.

Replacements for language drop-down menu

You can specify the language for the Replacements table, and for each language, you can configure the items listed in the table. The language selected in this page is not the language that will be used by the *AutoCorrect* feature. It is simply the language for the Replacements table.

Replacements Table

You can double-click on cells in either column to edit the listed items. Use the **Add** button to insert new items and the **Remove** button to delete rows from the table.

Note:
Any changes, additions, or deletions you make to this table are saved to a path that is specified in the **AutoCorrect Dictionaries** preferences page *(on page 134)*.

Smart quotes section

You can also choose to automatically convert double and single quotes to a quotation character of your choice by using the following options in the **Smart quotes** section:

- **Replace "Single quotes"** - Replaces single quotes with the quotation symbols you select with the **Start quote** and **End quote** buttons.
- **Replace "Double quotes"** - Replaces double quotes with the quotation symbols you select with the **Start quote** and **End quote** buttons.

Note:
These **Smart quotes** options are ignored for content inside any element listed in the **Ignore elements** section of the **Spell Check preferences page** *(on page 162)*.

Restore Defaults

Restores the options in this preferences page to their default values and **also deletes any changes you have made to the Replacements table *(on page 132)***.

AutoCorrect Dictionaries Preferences

To set the Dictionaries preferences for the *AutoCorrect* feature *(on page 270)*, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit Modes > Author > AutoCorrect > Dictionaries**. This page allows you to specify the location of the dictionaries that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses for the *AutoCorrect* feature and the location for saving user-defined replacements.

The following options are available in this preferences page:

Dictionaries default folder

Displays the default location where the dictionaries that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses for the *AutoCorrect* feature are stored.

Include dictionaries from

Selecting this option allows you to specify a location where you have stored *AutoCorrect* dictionaries that you want to include, along with the default ones.

Important:
Consider the following notes regarding this option:

- The *AutoCorrect* mechanism takes into account *AutoCorrect* dictionaries collected both from the default and custom locations and multiple dictionaries from the same language are merged (for example, `en_UK.dat` from the default location is merged with `en_US.dat` from a custom location).
- If you have a generic *AutoCorrect* dictionary file (one that just has a two-letter language code for its file name, such as `en.dat`) saved in either the default or custom location, the other more specific dictionaries (for example, `en_UK.dat` and `en_US.dat`) will not be merged and the existing generic dictionary will simply be used instead.

- You can use a custom suffix in the dictionary file name after the language code. For example, `en_US_synopsys.dat` or `en_synopsys.dat`.
- If the additional location contains a file with the same name as one from the default location, the file in the additional location takes precedence over the file from the default location.

How to add more dictionaries link

Use this link to open a topic in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin User Guide that explains how to add dictionaries for the *AutoCorrect* feature *(on page 272)*.

Save user-defined replacements in the following location

Specifies the target where added, edited, or deleted replacements are saved. By default, the target is the application preferences folder, but you can also choose a custom location.

Related information

Add Dictionaries for the AutoCorrect Feature *(on page 272)*

Cursor Navigation Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to configure the appearance and behavior of the cursor in the **Author** mode editor. To set cursor navigation preferences, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Author > Cursor Navigation**.

The following options are available:

Highlight elements near cursor

When this option is selected, the element that contains the cursor is highlighted. If the cursor is between two elements, both of them are highlighted. You can use the color picker to choose the color of the highlight.

Show cursor position tooltip

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses tooltips *(on page 350)* in **Author** mode to indicate the position of the cursor in the element structure of the underlying document. Depending on context, the tooltips may show the current element name or the names of the elements before and after the current cursor position.

Show location tooltip on mouse move

When this option is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays *Location Tooltips (on page 351)* when you are editing the document in certain tags display modes (**Inline Tags**, **Partial Tags**, **No Tags**) or when the mouse pointer is moved between *block elements (on page 2228)*.

Quick up/down navigation

This option is deselected by default and this means that when you navigate using the up and down arrow keys in **Author** mode, the cursor is placed within each of the underlying XML elements between two blocks of text (the cursor changes to a horizontal line when it is between blocks of text). This allows you to easily insert elements and manage the structure of your XML content. However, if this option is selected, the cursor ignores the XML structure and jumps from one line of text to another, similar to how the cursor behaves in a word processor.

Quick navigation in tables

This option is selected by default and this means that when navigating between table cells with the arrow keys, the cursor jumps from one cell to another. If this option is not selected, the cursor navigates between XML nodes when navigating between table cells with the arrow keys.

Avoid positioning the cursor between blocks after a deletion

If selected (default), the cursor will not stay between block element sentinels after a deletion is performed.

Arrow keys move the cursor in the writing direction

This setting determines how the left and right arrow keys behave in **Author** mode for bidirectional (BIDI) text. When this option is selected (default value), the right arrow key advances the cursor in the reading direction and the left arrow moves it in the opposite direction. When this option is not selected, pressing the right arrow will simply move the cursor to the right (and the left arrow moves it to the left), regardless of the text direction.

MathML Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to edit *MathML* *(on page 498)* equations and displays the results in a preview window. For a more advanced *MathML* editor, you can either install Wiris *MathType* *(on page 500)* (which is a commercial product that requires a separate license) or use an external *MathML* editor (e.g. the *LibreOffice* equation editor).

Using *MathFlow* for Editing and Rendering MathML Equations (Deprecated)

Important:
The *MathFlow* editor integration has been marked as deprecated and was replaced with a new *MathType* integration *(on page 499)*.

To configure the *MathML* editor or to enter your *MathFlow* license information, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit Modes/Pages > Author > MathML**.

You can configure the following options:

Equation minimum font size

The minimum size of the font used for rendering mathematical symbols when editing in the **Author** mode.

MathFlow installation directory

The installation folder for the *MathFlow* components product (*MathFlow* SDK).

MathFlow license file

The license file for the *MathFlow* components product (*MathFlow* SDK).

MathFlow preferred editor

A *MathML* formula can be edited in one of three editors of *MathFlow* components product (*MathFlow* SDK).

- **Structure Editor** (default selection) - Targets professional XML workflow users.
- **Style Editor** - Tailored to the needs of content authors.
- **Simple Editor** - Designed for applications where end-users can enter mathematical equations without prior training and only the meaning of the math matters.

Save special characters

Specifies how special characters are saved in the XML file.

- **As entity names** - Saves the characters in `&name;` format. It refers to a character by the name of the entity that has the desired character as its replacement text. For example, the Greek *Omega* character is saved as `Ω`.
- **As character entities** (default selection) - Saves the characters in a hexadecimal value, using the `&#xNNN` format. For example, the Greek *Omega* character is saved as `Ω`.
- **As character values** - Saves the characters as the actual symbol. For example, the Greek *Omega* character is saved as `Ω`.

More documentation is available on the Wiris *MathFlow* website.

Using an External Tool for Editing MathML Equations

External application > Command line

You can use this option to specify an external MathML application for editing MathML equations.

For example, the following commands could be used to edit MathML equations with a LibreOffice application (depending on the O.S.):

- **Windows** - `"C:\Program Files\LibreOffice\program\smath.exe" --nologo "${cf}"`
- **macOS** - `/Applications/LibreOffice.app/Contents/MacOS/soffice --math --nologo "${cf}"`
- **Linux** - `/usr/lib/libreoffice/program/smath --nologo "${cf}"`

Profiling/Conditional Text Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin lets you configure how profiling and conditional text *(on page 419)* is displayed in **Author** mode. It has built-in support for the standard conditional text features of DITA and

DocBook that you can customize for your own projects. You can also add conditional support for other XML vocabularies, including your custom vocabularies.

To configure **Profiling/Conditional Text** options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author > Profiling/Conditional Text**. There are several sub-pages in this section. This first parent page includes options for determining which types of profiled content is displayed:

Show profiling attributes

Toggles whether or not the **Show Profiling Attributes** option *(on page 429)* in the **Profiling / Conditional Text** drop-down menu is enabled by default.

Show profiling attribute name

If selected, the names of the profiling attributes are displayed with their values. If unchecked, only the values are displayed.

Show profiling colors and styles

Toggles whether or not the **Show Profiling Colors and Styles** option *(on page 429)* in the **Profiling / Conditional Text** drop-down menu is enabled by default.

Show excluded content

Toggles whether or not the **Show Excluded Content** option *(on page 429)* in the **Profiling / Conditional Text** drop-down menu is enabled by default.

Attributes and Condition Sets Preferences

To configure profiling attributes and condition sets, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author > Profiling/Conditional Text > Attributes and Condition Sets**.

Note:
Note the following when configuring these settings:

- This preferences page is used to define how profiled elements are treated in **Author** mode. It does not create profiling or conditional text attributes or values in the underlying XML vocabulary. It just changes how the editor displays them.
- This preferences page should be used for profiling / conditional text elements only. To change how other types of attributes are displayed in the text, use a CSS file.
- If you are using the DITA XML vocabulary and a DITA *subject scheme map (on page 2234)* is defined in the *root map (on page 2234)* of your document, it will be used in place of anything defined using this dialog box.

This preferences page contains the following options and sections:

Import from DITAVAL

This button allows you to import profiling attributes from DITAVAL files *(on page 2148)*. You can merge these new profiling attributes with the existing ones, or replace them completely. If the imported attributes conflict with the existing ones, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays a dialog box that contains two tables. The first one previews the imported attributes and the second one previews the already defined attributes. You can choose to either keep the existing attributes or replace them with the imported ones.

Note:
When importing profiling attributes from DITAVAL files, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically creates condition sets based on these files.

Profiling Attributes section

Allows you to specify a set of allowable values for each profiling or conditional attribute. You can use the **New** button at the bottom of the table to add profiling attributes *(on page 420)*, the **Edit** button to edit existing ones, or the **Delete** button to delete entries from the table. Use the **Up** and **Down** buttons to change the priority of the entries. If you have multiple entries with identical names that match the same document type, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the one that is positioned highest in the table.

Report invalid profiling attribute values (DITA only)

If selected, it means the following:

- In DITA, the automatic validation will display a warning when a value that is not defined is found in the document.
- In the DITA **Validate and Check for Completeness** dialog box, the Report attributes and values that conflict with profiling preferences *(on page 1931)* option is not displayed. This means that the validation will behave the same as if that option was selected and it will always report such values.

Allow contributing extra profiling attribute values

This option is selected by default, which means that users are allowed to add values that are not defined in preferences to profiling attributes. If a user inserts such a value, when invoking the **Edit Profiling Attributes** action from the contextual menu in **Author** mode (or for DITA topics, the **Edit Properties** action in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*), the **Profiling Values Conflict** dialog box *(on page 422)* will appear and it includes an **Add these values to the configuration** action that will automatically add the new value to the particular profiling attribute. If deselected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin behaves as if the **Preserve the configuration** option has been chosen in the **Profiling Values Conflict** dialog box *(on page 422)* and that dialog box will never appear.

Configure profiling colors and styles link

Use this link to open the profiling **Colors and Styles** preference page *(on page 139)*.

Profiling Condition Sets section

Allows you to specify a specific set of profiling attributes to be used to specify a particular build configuration for your content. You can use the **New** button at the bottom of the table to add condition sets *(on page 425)*, the **Edit** button to edit existing ones, or the **Delete** button to delete entries from the table. Use the **Up** and **Down** buttons to change the priority of the entries. If you have multiple entries with identical names that match the same document type, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the one that is positioned highest in the table.

Related information

Filtering Profiling Values with a DITAVAL File *(on page 2148)*

Styling the Rendering of Profiled Content Using a DITAVAL File *(on page 2150)*

Colors and Styles Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin lets you set the colors and styles used to display profiling / conditional text *(on page 136)* in the **Author** mode editor *(on page 221)*. To set Colors and Styles preferences, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author > Profiling/Conditional Text > Colors and Styles**.

The preference page includes the following options and sections:

Automatically apply colors and styles from DITAVAL files referenced in the Main Files folder

If this setting is enabled (default state is disabled) and **DITAVAL** filter files that define flagging conditions are referenced within the **Main Files** folder in the **Project** view, those conditions are automatically taken into account when the **Show Profiling Colors and Styles** option *(on page 429)* from the **Profiling / Conditional Text** toolbar drop-down menu in **Author** mode is enabled.

Import from DITAVAL

Allows you to import profiling styles from a `.ditaval` file. You can merge these new profiling styles with the existing ones, or replace them completely. If the imported styles conflict with the existing ones, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays a dialog box containing two tables. The first one previews the imported styles, while the second one previews the already defined styles. You can choose to either keep the existing styles or replace them with the imported ones. This feature works even if you use profiling attribute groups to organize the attributes into subcategories *(on page 2141)*.

Profiling Colors and Styles Table

You can use buttons below this table to set specific colors and styles for the listed profiling attribute values. The table includes two categories:

- **Defined attributes values** - Contains the styles for profiling attribute values defined in the **Profiling / Conditional Text** *(on page 136)* preferences page. Each profiling attribute value has an associated style. To ease the process of customizing styles, the **Defined attributes values** category contains by default the list of empty styles. All you have to do is to adjust the colors and decorations, thus skipping the process of manually defining the association rules (document type, attribute name, and value). This is the reason why a style from this category can only be reset *(on page 140)*, not deleted.
- **Other** - This category contains styles for attribute values that are not marked as profiling values, in the **Profiling / Conditional Text** *(on page 136)* preferences page. In this category are listed:
  - All the styles that were defined in other projects (with other profiling attribute value sets).
  - All the styles set for the profiling attributes defined in a *subject scheme map (on page 2143)*.

Automatic styling button

If you click this button, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will apply automatic styling to the profiling attribute values that do not have a style defined.

New button

Opens the **Add Profiling Style** dialog box that allows you to associate a set of coloring and styling properties to a profiling value.

Note:
You can define a default style for a specific attribute by setting the **Attribute value** field to `<ANY>`. This style is applied for attribute values that do not have a specific style associated with it.

Edit button

Open the **Edit Profiling Style** dialog box that allows you to edit the colors or style for an existing profiling value. You can also double-click the value to open this dialog box.

Clear style button

Resets the style for the selected value to its default setting (no color or decoration).

Delete button

Delete the selected style from the **Other** category.

Related information

Filtering Profiling Values with a DITAVAL File *(on page 2148)*

Styling the Rendering of Profiled Content Using a DITAVAL File *(on page 2150)*

Attributes Preferences

When the **Show Profiling Attributes** option *(on page 429)* is selected, the **Author** mode displays conditional text markers at the end of conditional text blocks. To configure the rendering of these text markers, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author > Profiling/Conditional Text > Colors and Styles > Attributes**.

The following options are available:

Background color

Sets the background color used to display the profiling attributes.

Attribute name foreground color

Sets the foreground color used to display the names of the profiling attributes.

Attribute values foreground color

Sets the foreground color used to display values of the profiling attributes.

Border color

Sets the color of the border of the block that displays the profiling attributes.

Review Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to add review comments and track changes *(on page 393)* in your documents. The **Review** preferences page allows you to control how the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin review features work. To configure these options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author > Review**.

The available options are as follows:

Author

Specifies the name to be attached to all comments and to changes made while **Track Changes** is active. By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the system user name.

Track Changes section (applies for all authors)

Initial state

Specifies whether or not the *Track Changes* feature *(on page 2234)* is enabled when you open a document. You may have the *Track Changes* feature enabled in some documents and disabled in others, or you can choose to always enable or disable the feature for all documents. You can choose between the following options:

- **Stored in document** - The current state of the *Track Changes* feature is stored in the document itself, meaning that it is on or off depending on the state the last time the document was saved. This is the recommended setting when multiple authors work on the same set of documents as it

will make it obvious to other authors that changes have been made in the document.
- **Always On** - The *Track Changes* feature is always on when you open a document. You can turn it off for an open document, but it will be turned on for the next document you open.
- **Always Off** - The *Track Changes* feature is always off when you open a document. You can turn it on for an open document, but it will be turned off for the next document you open.

Initial display mode

Specifies whether or not all tracked changes and comments are visible when you open a document in the **Author** visual editing mode. You can choose between the following options:

- **View All Changes/Comments** - All tracked changes and comments are visible in the **Author** visual editing mode.
- **View Final** - Comments are hidden, while insertion and deletion track changes are presented as if they would be accepted.

Display changed lines marker

A changed line maker is a vertical line on the left side of the editor window indicating where changes have been made in the document. To hide the changed lines marker, deselect this option.

Inserted content color

When the *Track Changes* feature *(on page 2234)* is on, the newly inserted content is highlighted with an *insertion marker* that uses a color to adjust the following display properties of the inserted content: *foreground*, *background*, and *underline*. This section allows you to customize the following color options:

- **Automatic** - If this option is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically assigns a color to each user who inserted content in the current document. The colors are picked from the **Colors for automatic assignment** list *(on page 143)*, the priority being established by the type of change (deletion, insertion, or comment) and in the order that you see in the list.
- **Fixed** - If this option is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the specified color for all insertion markers, regardless of who the author is.
- **Use same color for text foreground** - If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the color defined above (**Automatic** or **Fixed**) to render the foreground of the inserted content.

- **Use same color for background** - If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the color defined above (**Automatic** or **Fixed**) to render the background of the inserted content. A slider control allows you to set the transparency level of the background.

Deleted content color

When the *Track Changes* feature *(on page 2234)* is on, the deleted content is highlighted with a *deletion marker* that uses a color to adjust the following display properties of the deleted content: *foreground*, *background*, and *strikethrough*. This section allows you to customize the following color options:

- **Automatic** - If this option is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically assigns a color to each user who deleted content in the current document. The colors are picked from the **Colors for automatic assignment** list *(on page 143)*, the priority being established by the type of change (deletion, insertion, or comment) and in the order that you see in the list.
- **Fixed** - If this option is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the specified color for all deletion markers, regardless of who the author is.
- **Use same color for text foreground** - If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the color defined above (**Automatic** or **Fixed**) to render the foreground of the deleted content.
- **Use same color for background** - If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the color defined above (**Automatic** or **Fixed**) to render the background of the deleted content. A slider control allows you to set the transparency level of the background.

Comments color section (applies for all authors)

Sets the background color of the text that is commented on. The options are:

- **Automatic** - If this option is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically assigns a color to each user who adds a comment in the current document. The colors are picked from the **Colors for automatic assignment** list *(on page 143)*, the priority being established by the type of change (deletion, insertion, or comment) and in the order that you see in the list.
- **Fixed** - If this option is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the specified color for all changes, regardless of who the author is. A slider control allows you to set the transparency level of the background.

Colors for automatic assignment list

These are the colors that will be automatically assigned for tracked insertions, tracked deletions, and comments if the **Automatic** option is selected in any of the sections in this preferences

page. The colors are assigned in the order that you see in this list. You can use the **Add**, **Edit**, or **Remove** buttons to modify the list of colors.

Related information

Reviewing Documents *(on page 393)*

Callouts Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can display *callouts (on page 2229)* for review items such as comments and *tracked changes (on page 393)*. To customize options for review callouts, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author > Review > Callouts**.

The available options are as follows:

Show Review Callouts section

Comments

If selected, callouts are displayed for comments, including comments that are added to *tracked changes (on page 2234)*. This option is selected by default.

Track Changes deletions

If selected, callouts are displayed for *tracked change (on page 2234)* deletions and the following additional option becomes available:

Show deleted content in callout

If selected, the deleted content is also displayed in the callout.

Track Changes insertions

If selected, callouts are displayed for *tracked change (on page 2234)* insertions and the following additional option becomes available:

Show inserted content in callout

If selected, the inserted content is also displayed in the callout.

Rendering section

Show review time

When selected, timestamp information is displayed in callouts.

Show all connecting lines

When selected, lines are shown that connect the callout to the location of the change.

Initial width (px)

Specifies the initial width of the callouts each time the document is opened. The default is 250 pixels.

Text lines count limit

Specifies the maximum number of lines to be shown in the callouts. The default is 5 lines. Note that this does not limit the number of lines in the actual comment. It only limits the number of lines shown without opening or editing it. To see the full comment, right-click on the callout and select **Edit Comment** or **Show Comment**.

Schema-Aware Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can use the schema of your XML language to improve the way the **Author** mode editor handles your content. To configure the **Schema-Aware** options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author > Schema-Aware**.

The following options are available:

Schema-aware normalization, format, and indent

When you open or save a document in **Author** mode, white space is normalized using the `display` property of the current CSS stylesheet and the values of the settings *(on page 155)* for **Preserve space elements**, **Default space elements**, and **Mixed content elements**. When this option is selected, the schema will also be used to normalize white space, based on the content model (*element-only*, *simple-content*, or *mixed*). Note that the schema information takes precedence.

Indent blocks-only content

To avoid accidentally introducing inappropriate white space around *inline elements (on page 2231)*, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin does not normally apply indenting to the source of an element with mixed content. If this option is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will apply indenting to the source of mixed content elements that only contain *block elements (on page 2228)*.

Schema-Aware Editing

The options in this section determine how Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will use the schema of a document to control the behavior of the **Author** mode.

- **On** - Enables all schema-aware editing options.
- **Off** - Disables all schema-aware editing options.
- **Custom** - Allows you to select custom schema-aware editing options from the following:

Schema-Aware Actions section

Delete element tags with backspace and delete

Controls what happens when you attempt to delete an element tag. The two options are:

- **Smart delete** - If deleting the tag would make the document invalid, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will attempt to make the document valid by unwrapping the current element or by appending it to an adjacent element where the result would be valid. For instance, if you delete a bold tag, the content can be unwrapped and become part of the surrounding paragraph, but if you delete a list item tag, the list item content cannot become part of the list container. However, the content could be appended to a preceding list item.
- **Reject action when its result is invalid** - A deletion that would leave the document in an invalid state is rejected.

Paste and Drag and Drop

Controls the behavior for paste and drag and drop actions. Available options are:

- **Smart paste and drag and drop** - If the content inserted by a paste or drop action is not valid at the cursor position, according to the schema, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin tries to find an appropriate insert position. The possibilities include:
  - Creating a sibling element that can accept the content (for example, if you tried to paste a paragraph into an existing paragraph).
  - Inserting the content into a parent or child element (for example, if you tried to paste a list item into an existing list item, or into the space above or below and existing list).
  - Inserting the content into an ancestor element where it would be valid.
- **Reject action when its result is invalid** - If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will not let you paste content into a position where it would be invalid.

Typing

Controls the behavior that takes place when typing. Available options are:

- **Smart typing** - If typed characters are not allowed in the element at the cursor position, but the previous element does allow text, then a similar element will be inserted, along with your content.
- **Reject action when its result is invalid** - If selected, and the result of the typing action is invalid, the action will not be performed.

Content Completion

Controls the behavior that takes place when inserting elements using the *Content Completion Assistant* in **Author** mode. Available options are:

- **Press ENTER to show available content completion proposals** - If selected, pressing **Enter** will open the *Content Completion Assistant*. If deselected, there are three possibilities:
  - The current element will be split (if possible).
  - A new element with the same name will be inserted (if possible).
  - Otherwise, a new paragraph will be inserted.
- **Show all possible elements in the content completion list** - If selected, the content completion list will show all the elements in the schema, even those that cannot be entered validly at the current position. If you select an element that is not valid at the current position, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will attempt to find a valid location to insert it and may present you with several options.
- **Allow only insertion of valid elements and attributes** - If selected, you can only select elements in the content completion list that are valid (according to the schema) at the current position.
- **Allow only insertion of valid attribute values** - If selected, you cannot enter an attribute value that is not valid (according to the schema) in the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)* or **In-place Attributes Editor** *(on page 362)*. If the attribute has a choice of values, you can select a possible value from a drop-down list in the combo box, but you cannot enter a value manually.

Warn on invalid content when performing action

A warning message will be displayed when performing an action that will result in invalid content. Available options are:

- **Delete Element Tags** - If selected, a warning message will be displayed if the Delete Element Tags *(on page 509)* action will result in an invalid document. You will be asked to confirm the deletion.
- **Join Elements** - If selected, a warning message will be displayed if the Join Elements *(on page 509)* action will result in an invalid document. You will be asked to confirm the join.

Automatically apply the best schema-aware insertion operation

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically uses what it considers to be the best insertion solution, when there is an attempt to insert content that is not valid in a specific context. If not selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will ask the user to choose from a list of proposed solutions.

Convert external content on paste

If selected, the *Smart Paste* feature *(on page 366)* is enabled when external content is pasted in **Author** mode.

Convert even when pasting inside space-preserve elements

If selected, the *Smart Paste* feature will be used even when external content is pasted inside a *space-preserve* element (such as a `<codeblock>`).

Convert pasted URLs to links

If selected, when a URL is pasted into **Author** mode, a link will be inserted (the type of link depends on the type of document). For example, in DITA documents, an `<xref>` is inserted.

Related information

Smart Paste in Author Mode *(on page 366)*
Customizing Smart Paste Support *(on page 1593)*

Serialization Preferences

To configure the serialization options for the **Author** mode, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author > Serialization**.

The following options are available:

Format and indent

Use this option to specify what should be formatted and indented when you save a document (or switch from **Author** to **Text** mode). You can choose between the following two options:

Only the modified content

The **Save** operation only formats the nodes that were modified in the **Author** mode. The rest of the document preserves its original formatting.

Note:
This option also applies to the *DITA maps* opened in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*.

The entire document

The **Save** operation applies the formatting to the entire document regardless of the nodes that were modified in **Author** mode.

Also apply the format and indent options that are set for Text mode

If this option is selected, the result of the **Format and indent** operation will be the same as when it is applied in **Text** editing mode. Thus, the content of the document is formatted by applying the **Format and Indent** rules from the **Editor/Format** *(on page 151)* and **Editor/Format/XML** *(on page 155)* preference pages. You can use the **Format and indent options** link to navigate to those options.

Compatibility with other tools

Use this option to control how line breaks are handled when a document is serialized. This will help to obtain better compatibility with other tools. You can choose one of the following:

- **None** - Choose this option if compatibility with other tools can be ignored.
- **Do not break lines, do not indent** - Choose this option to avoid breaking lines after element start or end tags and indenting will not be used.

> **Note:**
> New lines that are added by the user in elements where the `@xml:space` attribute is set to `preserve` (such as `<pre>` elements in HTML, or `<codeblock>` elements in DITA) are still inserted. Also, selecting this option automatically disables the **Also apply the format and indent options that are set for Text mode** option *(on page 148)*, since the formatting from **Text** mode does not take the CSS styles into account.

- **Break lines only after elements displayed as blocks, do not indent** - Choose this option to instruct Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to insert new lines only after elements that have a CSS display property set to anything other than `inline` or `none` (for example, `block`, `list-item`, `table`, etc.) and indenting will not be used. When selecting this option, the formatting is dictated by the CSS.

> **Note:**
> New lines that are added by the user in elements where the `@xml:space` attribute is set to `preserve` (such as `<pre>` elements in HTML, or `<codeblock>` elements in DITA) are still inserted. Also, selecting this option automatically disables the **Also apply the format and indent options that are set for Text mode** option *(on page 148)*, since the formatting from **Text** mode does not take the CSS styles into account.

Grid Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a **Grid** view *(on page 220)* of an XML document. To configure the **Grid** mode options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Grid**.

The following options are available:

Compact representation

If selected, the *compact representation* of the grid is used: a child element is displayed beside the parent element. In the *non-compact representation*, a child element is nested below the parent.

Format and indent when passing from grid to text or on save

If selected, the content of the document is formatted and indented each time you switch from the **Grid** view to the **Text** view.

Default column width (characters)

Sets the default width (in characters) of a table column of the grid. A column may contain the following:

- Element names
- Element text content
- Attribute names
- Attribute values

If the total width of the grid structure is too large you can resize any column by dragging the column margins with the mouse pointer, but the change is not persistent. To make it persistent, set the new column width with this option.

Active cell color

Allows you to set the background color for the *active cell (on page 2228)* of the grid. The keyboard input always goes to the *active cell* and the selection always contains it.

Selection color

Allows you to set the background color for the selected cells of the grid, except the *active cell (on page 2228)*.

Border color

Allows you to set the color used for the lines that separate the grid cells.

Background color

Allows you to set the background color of grid cells that are not selected.

Foreground color

Allows you to set the text color of the information displayed in the grid cells.

Row header colors

Background color

Allows you to set the background color of row headers that are not selected.

Active cell color

Allows you to set the background color of the row header cell that is currently active.

Selection color

Allows you to set the background color of the header cells corresponding to the currently selected rows.

Column header colors

The column headers are painted with two color gradients, one for the upper 1/3 part of the header and the other for the lower 2/3 part. The start and end colors of the first gradient are set with the first two color buttons. The start and end colors of the second gradient are set with the last two color buttons.

Background color

Allows you to set the background color of column headers that are not selected.

Active cell color

Allows you to set the background color of the column header cell that is currently active.

Selection color

Allows you to set the background color of the header cells corresponding to the currently selected columns.

Format Preferences

This preferences page contains various formatting options that influence editing and formatting in both the **Text** *(on page 220)* and **Author** *(on page 221)* editing modes. To control additional options specifically for the **Author** mode editor, see Whitespace Handling in Author Mode *(on page 351)*.

Note:
These settings apply to the formatting of source documents. The formatting of output documents is determined by the transformation scenarios that create them *(on page 796)*.

To configure the **Format** options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Format**.

The following options are available:

Detect indent on open

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects how a document is indented when it is opened. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses a heuristic method of detection by computing a weighted average indent value from the initial document content. You can deselect this setting if the detected value does not work for your particular case and you want to use a fixed-size indent for all the edited documents. If this option is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects the following:

- When TAB characters are used to indent content, the size of the TAB characters is used for the indent size.
- Otherwise, the detected size of SPACE characters is used for the indent size.

Tip:
If you want to minimize the formatting differences created by the **Format and Indent** operation in a document edited in the **Text** edited mode, make sure that both the **Detect indent on open** and **Detect line width on open** *(on page 153)* options are selected.

Use zero-indent, if detected

By default, if no indent was detected in the document, the fixed-size indent is used. Select this option if all of your documents have no indentation and you want to keep them that way.

Indent with tabs

If selected, indents are created using TAB characters. If unchecked, lines are indented using space characters. Selecting this option automatically disables the **Detect indent on open** *(on page 151)* option.

Indent size

The meaning of this setting depends on the following:

- If the **Detect indent on open** option *(on page 151)* is selected and TAB characters are detected at the beginning of the line, the *indent size* is the width of a TAB character. Otherwise, the *indent size* value is ignored and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the number of detected SPACE characters.
- If the **Indent with tabs** option *(on page 152)* is selected, the *indent size* is the width of a TAB character.
- If neither of these options are selected, the *indent size* is the number of SPACE characters used for indenting the text lines.

For additional information about changing the *indent size*, see Setting an Indent Size to Zero *(on page 319)*.

For information about when this setting is used, see Where Indent Size and Line Width Settings are Used in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *(on page 153)*.

Indent on enter

If selected, when you press **Enter** to insert a line break in the **Text** editing mode, an indentation will be added to the new line.

Enable smart enter

If selected, when you press the **Enter** key between a start and an end XML tag in the **Text** editing mode, the cursor is placed in an indented position on the empty line formed between the start and end tag.

Format and indent the document on open

If selected, an XML document is formatted and indented before opening it in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

> **Note:**
> Some specialized types of XML documents do not benefit from this feature, including Relax NG, XSD, XSL, and Ant. However, the feature is available for some non-XML types of documents, such as CSS and JSON.

Detect line width on open

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically detects the line width when the document is opened.

Hard line wrap (Limit to "Line width - Format and Indent")

If selected, when typing content in the **Text** editing mode and the maximum line width is reached, a line break is automatically inserted.

Line width - Format and Indent

Defines the number of characters after which the **Format and Indent** (pretty-print) action performs hard line-wrapping. For example, if set to 100, after a **Format and Indent** action, the longest line will have a maximum of 100 characters. This setting is also used when saving XML content edited in the **Author** editing mode.

> **Note:**
> To avoid having an indent that is longer than the line width setting and without having sufficient space available for the text content, the indent limit is actually set at half the value of the **Line width - Format and Indent** setting. The remaining space is reserved for text.

For information about when this setting is used, see Where Indent Size and Line Width Settings are Used in Oxygen XML Editor *(on page 153)*.

Clear undo buffer before Format and Indent

The **Format and Indent** operation can be *undone*, but if used intensively, a considerable amount of the memory allocated for Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will be used for storing the undo states. If this option is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin empties the undo buffer before doing a **Format and Indent** operation. This means you will not be able to undo any changes you made before the format and indent operation. Select this option if you encounter out of memory problems (**OutOfMemoryError**) when performing the **Format and Indent** operation.

Where Indent Size and Line Width Settings are Used in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

The values set in the **Indent Size** and **Line Width - Format and Indent** options are used in various places in the application, including the following:

- When the **Format and Indent** action is used in the **Text** editing mode.
- When you press **Enter** to break a line in the **Text** editing mode.
- When the **Hard line wrap (Limit to "Line width - Format and Indent")** option is selected and the maximum line width is reached while editing in the **Text** mode.
- When the XML is serialized by saving content in the **Author** editing mode.

Resources

For more information about the formatting options offered by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/1plmdN0Cfso

CSS Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can format and indent your CSS files. To configure the **CSS** formatting options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Format > CSS**.

The following options control how your CSS files are formatted and indented:

Class body on new line

If selected, the *class* body (including the curly brackets) is placed on a new line. This option is not selected by default.

Indent class content

When selected (default state), the *class* content is indented.

Add space before the value of a CSS property

When selected (default state), whitespaces are added between the `:` (colon) and the value of a style property.

Add new line between classes

If selected, an empty line is added between two classes. This option is not selected by default.

Preserve empty lines

When selected (default state), the empty lines from the CSS content are preserved.

Allow formatting embedded CSS

When selected (default state), CSS content that is embedded in XML is also formatted when the XML content is formatted.

JavaScript Preferences

To configure the **JavaScript** format options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Format > JavaScript**.

The following options control the behavior of the **Format and Indent** action:

- **Start curly brace on new line** - Opening curly braces start on a new line.
- **Preserve empty lines** - Empty lines in the JavaScript code are preserved. This option is selected by default.
- **Allow formatting embedded JavaScript** - Applied only to XHTML documents, this option allows Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to format embedded JavaScript code, taking precedence over the Schema-aware format and indent *(on page 158)* option. This option is selected by default.

XML Preferences

To configure the **XML** Formatting options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Format > XML**.

The following options are available:

Format and Indent Section

This section includes the following drop-down boxes:

Preserve empty lines

The **Format and Indent** operation preserves all empty lines found in the document.

Preserve text as it is

The **Format and Indent** operation preserves text content as it is, without removing or adding any white space.

Preserve line breaks in attributes

Line breaks found in attribute values are preserved.

Note:
When this option is selected, the **Break long attributes** option *(on page 155)* is automatically disabled.

Break long attributes

The **Format and Indent** operation breaks long attribute values.

Indent inline elements

The *inline elements* are indented on separate lines if they are preceded by white spaces and they follow another element start or end tag. For example:

Original XML:

```
<root>
  text <parent> <child></child> </parent>
</root>
```

Indent inline elements selected:

```
<root> text <parent>
    <child/>
  </parent>
</root>
```

Indent inline elements not selected:

```
<root> text <parent> <child/> </parent> </root>
```

Expand empty elements

If not selected (default), the **Format and Indent** operation results in an empty XML element being serialized in a compact form (`<a atr1="v1"/>`). If selected, the same operation results in empty XML elements being serialized in expanded form (for example, `<a atr1="v1"></a>`).

Notes:

- When using the **Format and Indent** operation in **Text** mode, if the **Schema-aware format and indent** option *(on page 158)* is enabled, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will use information from the associated schema and avoid expanding tags for elements that are defined as *empty* in the schema.
- When saving a document in **Author** mode, if the **Schema-aware normalization, format, and indent** option in the **Schema-Aware** preferences page *(on page 145)* is enabled, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will use information from the associated schema and avoid expanding tags for elements that are defined as *empty* in the schema (therefore, text or other elements are not allowed inside them).

Sort attributes

The **Format and Indent** operation sorts the attributes of an element lexicographically.

Add space before slash in empty elements

Inserts a space character before the trailing / and > of empty elements.

Break line before an attribute name

When selected, the **Format and Indent** operation always breaks the line before any attribute name in an XML element. By default, the setting is not selected, which means that new lines might still be added before the attribute names but only if the line of content would overflow the maximum line width specified in the **Format** preferences page *(on page 151)*.

Element Spacing Section

This section controls how the application handles whitespaces found in XML content. You can **Add** or **Remove** element names or simplified XPath expressions in the various tabs.

The XPath expressions can accept multiple attribute conditions and inside each condition you can use *AND/OR* boolean operators and parentheses to override the priority.

You can use one or more of the following attribute conditions (default attribute values are not taken into account):

- *element[@attr]* - Matches all instances of the specified element that include the specified attribute.
- *element[not(@attr)]* - Matches all instances of the specified element that do not include the specified attribute.
- *element[@attr = "value"]* - Matches all instances of the specified element that include the specified attribute with the given value.
- *element[@attr != "value"]* - Matches all instances of the specified element that include the specified attribute and its value is different than the one given.

Example: The following is an example of how you could use multiple boolean operators and parentheses inside an attribute condition:

```
*[@a and @b or @c and @d]

*[@a and (@b or @c) and @d]
```

The following are just examples of how simplified XPath expressions might look like:

- `elementName`
- `//elementName`
- `/elementName1/elementName2/elementName3`
- `//xs:localName` Note: The namespace prefixes (such as `xs`) are treated as part of the element name without taking its binding to a namespace into account.
- `//xs:documentation[@lang="en"]`

The tabs are as follows:

Preserve space

List of elements that will have the **Format and Indent** operation preserve the whitespaces (such as blanks, tabs, and newlines).

Default space

List of elements that will have the content normalized (multiple contiguous whitespaces are replaced by a single space), before applying the **Format and Indent** operation.

Mixed content

The elements from this list are treated as mixed content when applying the **Format and Indent** operation. The lines are split only when whitespaces are encountered.

Line break

List of elements that will have line breaks inserted, regardless of their content. You can choose to break the line *before* the element, *after*, or both.

Schema-aware format and indent

The **Format and Indent** operation takes the schema information into account with regard to the *space preserve*, *mixed*, or *element only* properties of an element.

Indent Section

Includes the following options:

Indent (when typing) in preserve space elements

Normally, the *Preserve space* elements (identified by the `xml:space` attribute set to `preserve` or by their presence in the **Preserve space** tab of the **Element Spacing** list *(on page 157)*) are ignored by the **Format and Indent** operation. When this option is selected and you edit one of these elements, its content is formatted.

Indent on paste - sections with number of lines less than 300

When you paste a chunk of text that has fewer than 300 lines, the inserted content is indented. To keep the original indent style of the document you copy content from, deselect this option.

Whitespaces Preferences

When Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin formats and indents XML documents, a whitespace normalization process is applied, thus replacing whitespace sequences with single space characters. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to configure which Unicode characters are treated as spaces during the normalization process.

To configure the **Whitespace** preferences, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Format > XML > Whitespaces**.

This table lists the Unicode whitespace characters. Select any that you want to have treated as whitespace when formatting and indenting an XML document.

The whitespaces are normalized when:

- The **Format and Indent** action is applied on an XML document.
- You switch from **Text** mode to **Author** mode.
- You switch from **Author** mode to **Text** mode.

Note:
The whitespace normalization process replaces any sequence of characters declared as whitespaces in the **Whitespaces** table with a single space character (`U+0020`). If you want to be sure that a certain whitespace character will not be removed in the normalization process, deselect it in the **Whitespaces** table.

Important:
The characters with the codes `U+0009` (TAB), `U+000A` (LF), `U+000D` (CR) and `U+0020` (SPACE) are always considered to be whitespace characters and cannot be deselected.

Open/Save Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin lets you control how files are opened and saved. To configure the options for opening and saving documents, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Open/Save**.

The following options are available:

Open section

Format document when longest line exceeds

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will create line breaks if the characters in a line exceed the specified value. You can choose one of the following:

- **Always format**
- **Never format**
- **Always ask**

Save section

Check errors on save

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin runs a validation that checks your document for errors before saving it.

Save all files before transformation or validation

Saves all open files before validating or transforming an XML document. This ensures that any dependencies are resolved when modifying the XML document and its XML Schema.

Performance section

Clear undo buffer on save

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin clears its undo buffer when you save a document. Thus, modifications made prior to saving the document cannot be

undone. Select this option if you frequently encounter **out of memory** errors when editing large documents.

Spell Check Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for spell checking in the **Text** mode and **Author** mode. To configure the **Spell Check** options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Spell Check**.

The following options are available:

Automatic spell check

This option is not selected by default. When selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically checks the spelling as you type and highlights misspelled words in the document.

Select editors

You can select which editors (and therefore which file types) will automatically be spell checked. File types such as CSS and DTD are excluded by default since automatic spell checking is not usually helpful in these types of files.

Language options section

This section includes the following language options:

Default language

The default language list allows you to choose the language used by the spell check engine when the language is not specified in the source file. You can add additional dictionaries to the spell check engines *(on page 259)*.

Use "lang" and "xml:lang" attributes

When this option is selected, the contents of an element with one of the `@lang` or `@xml:lang` attributes is checked in that language. Choose between the following two options for instances when these attributes are missing:

- **Use the default language** - If the `@lang` and `@xml:lang` attributes are missing, the selection in the **Default language** list *(on page 160)* is used.
- **Do not check** - If the `@lang` and `@xml:lang` attributes are missing, the element is not checked.

XML spell checking in section

You can choose to check the spelling inside the following XML items:

- **Comments**
- **Processing instructions**
- **Attribute values**

- **Text**
- **CDATA**

Options section

This section includes the following other options:

Check capitalization

When selected, the spell checker reports detected capitalization errors.

Note:
When such problems are reported, they cannot be learned and ignored by the application as words stored in dictionaries, term lists, and the list of learned words are not handled as case-sensitive.

Check punctuation

When selected, the spell checker checks punctuation. Misplaced white space and unusual sequences, such as a period following a comma, are highlighted as errors.

Ignore mixed case words

When selected, the spell checker does not check words containing mixed case characters (for example, *SpellChecker*).

Ignore acronyms

Available only for the **Hunspell Spell Checker**. When selected, acronyms are not reported as errors.

Ignore words with digits

When selected, the spell checker does not check words containing digits (for example, *b2b*).

Ignore duplicates

When selected, the spell checker does not signal two successive identical words as an error.

Ignore URL

When selected, the spell checker ignores words recognized as URLs or file names (for example, *www.oxygenxml.com* or *c:\boot.ini*).

Allow compounds words

When selected, all words formed by concatenating multiple legal words with hyphens or underscores are accepted.

Allow file extensions

When selected, the spell checker accepts any word ending with recognized file extensions (for example, *myfile.txt* or *index.html*).

Ignore elements section

You can use the **Add** and **Remove** buttons to configure a list of element names or XPath expressions to be ignored by the spell checker. The following restricted set of XPath expressions are supported:

- '/' and '//' separators
- '*' wildcard

An example of an allowed XPath expression is: */a/*/b*.

AutoCorrect options link

Use this link to navigate to the **AutoCorrect** preferences page *(on page 131)*.

To change the color used by the spell check engine to highlight spelling errors, go to **Window** (**Eclipse** on macOSX) and choose **Preferences**. Then go to **General > Editors > Text Editors > Annotations** and change the color in the **Spell Check Annotation** option.

Spell Check Dictionaries Preferences

To set the Dictionaries preferences, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries**. This page allows you to configure the dictionaries (`.dic` files) and term lists (`.tdi` files) that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses and to choose where to save new learned words.

The following options are valid when Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the Hunspell spell checking engine:

Dictionaries and term lists default folder

Displays the default location where the dictionaries and term lists that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses are stored.

Include dictionaries and term list from

Selecting this option allows you to specify a location where you have stored dictionaries and term lists that you want to include, along with the default ones.

Important:
Consider the following notes regarding this option:

- The spell checker takes into account dictionaries and term lists collected both from the default and custom locations and multiple dictionaries and term lists from the same language are merged (for example, `en_UK.dic` from the default location is merged with `en_US.dic` from a custom location).
- If you have a generic dictionary file (one that just has a two-letter language code for its file name, such as `en.dic`) saved in either the default or custom location,

the other more specific dictionaries (for example, `en_UK.dic` and `en_US.dic`) will not be merged and the existing generic dictionary will simply be used instead.
- If the additional location contains a file with the same name as one from the default location, the file in the additional location takes precedence over the file from the default location.

How to add more dictionaries and term lists link

Use this link to open a topic in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin User Guide that explains how to add more dictionaries and term lists *(on page 262)*.

Save learned words in the following location

Specifies the target where the newly learned words are saved. By default, the target is the application preferences folder, but you can also choose a custom location.

Delete learned words

Opens the list of learned words, allowing you to select the items you want to remove, without deleting the dictionaries and term lists.

Note:
Words stored in dictionaries, term lists, and the list of learned words are not handled as case-sensitive. Therefore, you do not need to include both uppercase and lowercase versions of the words.

Related information
Adding Custom Spell Check Dictionaries *(on page 262)*
Adding Custom Spell Check Term Lists *(on page 265)*

Syntax Highlight Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports syntax highlighting in the **Text** mode editors for numerous types of documents, including XML, XHTML, JavaScript, XQuery, XPath, PHP, PowerShell, CSS, LESS, Markdown, Text, , and more.

To configure syntax highlighting, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Syntax Highlight**.

To set syntax colors for a language, expand the listing for that language in the top panel to show the list of syntax items for that type of document. Use the color and style selectors to change how each syntax item is displayed. The results of your changes are displayed in the **Preview** panel. If you do not know the name of the syntax token that you want to configure, click that token in the **Preview** area to select it.

Note:
All default color sets come with a high-contrast variant that is automatically used when you switch to a black-background or white-background high-contrast theme in your Windows operating system settings. The high-contrast theme will not overwrite any default color you set in **Editor > Syntax Highlight** preferences page.

The settings for XML documents are also used in XSD, XSL, RNG documents and the **Preview** area has a separate tab for each of them when **XML** is selected in the top pane.

The **Enable nested syntax highlight** option controls whether or not content types that are nested in the same file (such as PHP, JS, or CSS scripts inside an HTML file) are highlighted according to the color schemes defined for each content type.

Elements/Attributes by Prefix Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to specify syntax highlighting colors for elements and attributes with specific namespace prefixes. To configure the **Elements/Attributes by Prefix** preferences, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Syntax Highlight > Elements/Attributes by Prefix**.

To change the syntax coloring for a specific namespace prefix, choose the prefix from the list, or add a new one using the **New** button, and use the color and style selectors to set the syntax highlighting style for that namespace prefix.

Note:
Syntax highlighting is based on the literal namespace prefix, not the namespace that the prefix is bound to in the document.

If you only want the prefix (and not the whole element or attribute name) to be styled with a particular color, select the **Draw only the prefix with a separate color** option.

Fonts Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to choose the fonts to be used in the **Text** and **Grid** editor modes, and fonts for the **Author** mode that are not specified in the associated CSS stylesheet. To configure the font options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Fonts**.

The following options are available:

Text

This option allows you to choose the font used in **Text** mode. There are two options available:

- **Map to text font** - Uses the same font for the basic text editor as the one set in **General > Appearance > Colors and Fonts**.
- **Customize** - Allows you to configure various font-related options.

Author

Allows you to configure various font-related options that will be used in **Author** mode. However, these font-related options will be overridden by rules specified in any CSS file associated with the open document.

Note:
You must restart the application for your changes to be applied.

Markdown Preferences

The **Markdown** preferences page makes it possible to validate Markdown documents with Schematron. To access the page, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Markdown**. This preferences page includes the following options:

Validate converted HTML content

If selected, converted HTML content will be validated using the Schematron file specified in this option.

Validate converted DITA content

If selected, converted DITA content will be validated using the Schematron file specified in this option.

Note:
It is also possible to create a Schematron association for Markdown documents by adding a catalog mapping *(on page 573)* for one of the following URIs:

- **http://www.oxygenxml.com/schematron/validation/markdown-as-html**
- **http://www.oxygenxml.com/schematron/validation/markdown-as-dita**

The catalog mapping is a fallback in case the validation is disabled in this preferences page or the path to the Schematron is empty. The associations configured in this preferences page take precedence.

Network Connection Settings Preferences

This section presents the options available in the **Network Connection Settings** preferences pages.

SFTP Preferences

To configure the **SFTP** options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Network Connection Settings > SFTP**. You can customize the following options:

Encoding for FTP control connection

The encoding used to communicate with SFTP servers: either ISO-8859-1 or UTF-8. If the server supports the UTF-8 encoding, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will use it for communication. Otherwise, it will use ISO-8859-1. This section also includes a **Show hidden files** toggle option.

Public known hosts file

Specifies the file that contains the list of all SSH server host keys that you have determined are accurate. The default value is `${homeDir}/.ssh/known_hosts`.

Private key file

The path to the file that contains the private key used for the private key method of authentication of the SFTP protocol. Only *RSA* private keys in *PEM* (Base64) and *PPK* (*PuTTY*) formats are supported. Other keys (such as *OpenSSH*) are not supported.

Passphrase

The passphrase used for the private key method of authentication of the SFTP protocol.

Show SFTP certificate warning dialog

If selected, a warning dialog box will be displayed each time when the authenticity of the host cannot be established.

HTTP(S)/WebDAV Preferences

To set the **HTTP(S)/WebDAV** preferences, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Network Connection Settings > HTTP(S)/WebDAV**. The following options are available:

Enable the HTTP(S)/WebDAV Protocols

Activates the HTTP(S)/WebDAV protocols bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. Any adjustment to this option requires a restart of the application.

Read Timeout (seconds)

The period (in seconds) after which the application considers that an HTTP server is unreachable if it does not receive any response from that server.

Automatically accept a security certificate, even if invalid

When selected, the HTTPS connections that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin attempts to establish with will accept all security certificates, even if they are invalid.

Important:
By accepting an invalid certificate, you accept (at your own risk) a potential security threat, since you cannot verify the integrity of the certificate's issuer.

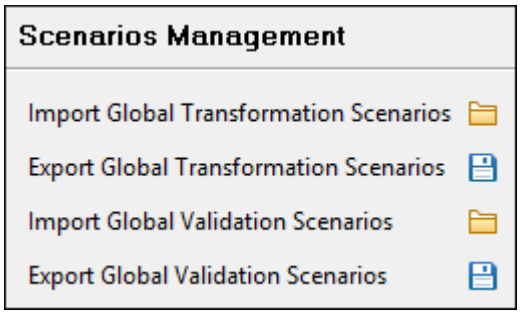
Lock WebDAV files on open

If selected, the files opened through WebDAV are locked on the server so that they cannot be edited by other users while the lock placed by the current user still exists on the server.

Scenarios Management Preferences

To configure Scenarios Management options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Scenarios Management**. This allows you to share the global transformation scenarios with other users by exporting them to an external file that can also be imported in this preferences panel.

Figure 30. Scenarios Management Preferences Panel



The actions available in this panel are as follows:

- **Import Global Transformation Scenarios** - Allows you to import all transformation scenarios from a file created with the export scenario action. The names of the imported scenarios will appear in the **Configure Transformation Scenario** dialog box followed by *(import)*. This way there are no scenario name conflicts.
- **Export Global Transformation Scenarios** - Allows you to export all global transformation scenarios available in the **Configure Transformation Scenario** dialog box.
- **Import Global Validation Scenarios** - Allows you to import all validation scenarios from a file created with the export scenario action. The names of the imported scenarios will appear in the **Configure Validation Scenario** dialog box followed by *(import)*. This way there are no scenario name conflicts.
- **Export Global Validation Scenarios** - Allows you to export all global validation scenarios available in the **Configure Validation Scenario** dialog box.

View Preferences

The **View** preferences page allows you to configure some options regarding certain views. To edit these options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **View**.

The following options are available:

Console section

Enable Oxygen consoles

If selected, various messages will be contributed to the **Console** view *(on page 279)* when certain events are triggered (such as *schema detection*, *validation*, or *transformation* events).

Fixed width console

If selected, a line in the **Console** view *(on page 279)* will be hard wrapped after the specified maximum numbers of characters allowed on a line is reached.

Limit console output

If selected, the content of the **Console** view *(on page 279)* will be limited to a configurable number of characters.

Console buffer

If the **Limit console output** option is selected, this specifies the maximum number of characters that can be written in the **Console** view *(on page 279)*.

Tab width

Specifies the number of spaces used for depicting a tab character.

Elements view section

Show only allowed items

If selected, when editing in **Author** mode, only the elements that are allowed at the current cursor position will be listed in the **Elements** view *(on page 386)*. If not selected, all elements allowed by the schema will be listed, even if they are already used.

XML Preferences

This section describes the panels that contain the user preferences related with XML.

Import Preferences

To configure importing options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > Import**. This page allows you to configure how empty values and `null` values are handled when they are encountered in imported database tables or Excel sheets. Also you can configure the format of date / time values recognized in the imported database tables or Excel sheets.

The following options are available:

Create empty elements for empty values

If selected, an empty value from a database column or from a text file is imported as an empty element.

Create empty elements for null values

If selected, `null` values from a database column are imported as empty elements.

Escape XML content

Selected by default, this option instructs Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to escape the imported content to an XML-safe form.

Add annotations for generated XML Schema

If selected, the generated XML Schema contains an annotation for each of the imported table columns. The documentation inside the annotation tag contains the remarks of the database columns (if available) and also information about the conversion between the column type and the generated XML Schema type.

Date / Time Format section

Specifies the format used for importing date and time values from Excel spreadsheets or database tables, and in the generated XML schemas. You can choose from the following format types:

- **Unformatted** - The date and time formats specific to the database are used for import. When importing data from Excel a string representation of date or time values are used. The type used in the generated XML Schema is `xs:string`.
- **XML Schema date format** - The XML Schema-specific format ISO8601 is used for imported date / time data (`yyyy-MM-dd'T'HH:mm:ss` for `datetime`, `yyyy-MM-dd` for `date` and `HH:mm:ss` for `time`). The types used in the generated XML Schema are `xs:datetime`, `xs:date` and `xs:time`.
- **Custom format** - If selected, you can define a custom format for timestamp, date, and time values or choose one of the predefined formats. A preview of the values is presented when a format is used. The type used in the generated XML Schema is `xs:string`.

Table 2. Pattern Letters

Letter	Date or Time Component	Presentation	Examples
G	Era designator	Text	AD
y	Year	Year	1996; 96
M	Month in year	Month	July; Jul; 07
w	Week in year	Number	27
W	Week in month	Number	2
D	Day in year	Number	189
d	Day in month	Number	10
F	Day of week in month	Number	2
E	Day in week	Text	Tuesday; Tue
a	Am / pm marker	Text	PM
H	Hour in day (0-23)	Number	0
k	Hour in day (1-24)	Number	24
K	Hour in am / pm (0-11)	Number	0

Table 2. Pattern Letters (continued)

Letter	Date or Time Component	Presentation	Examples
h	Hour in am / pm (1-12)	Number	12
m	Minute in hour	Number	30
s	Second in minute	Number	55
S	Millisecond	Number	978
z	Time zone	General time zone	PST; GMT-08:00
Z	Time zone	RFC 822 time zone	-0800

Pattern letters are usually repeated, as their number determines the exact presentation:

- **Text** - If the number of pattern letters is 4 or more, the full form is used. Otherwise, a short or abbreviated form is used if available.
- **Number** - The number of pattern letters is the minimum number of digits, and shorter numbers are zero-padded to this amount.
- **Year** - If the number of pattern letters is 2, the year is truncated to 2 digits. Otherwise, it is interpreted as a number.
- **Month** - If the number of pattern letters is 3 or more, the month is interpreted as text. Otherwise, it is interpreted as a number.

- **General time zone** - Time zones are interpreted as text if they have names. For time zones representing a GMT offset value, the following syntax is used:
    - **GMTOffsetTimeZone** - GMT Sign Hours: Minutes
    - **Sign** - one of + or -
    - **Hours** - one or two digits
    - **Minutes** - two digits
    - **Digit** - one of 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

  Hours must be between 0 and 23, and Minutes must be between 00 and 59. The format is locale independent and digits must be taken from the Basic Latin block of the Unicode standard.
- **RFC 822 time zone**: The RFC 822 4-digit time zone format is used:
    - **RFC822TimeZone**
    - **TwoDigitHours** (must be between 00 and 23)

PDF Output Preferences

The **PDF Output** preferences page simply includes links to sub-pages for configuring PDF output options.

FO Processors Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in formatting objects processor (Apache FOP), but you can also configure other external processors and use them in the transformation scenarios for processing XSL-FO documents.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides an easy way to add two of the most commonly used commercial FO processors: **RenderX XEP** and **Antenna House Formatter**. You can easily add *RenderX XEP* as an external FO processor if you have the XEP installed. Also, if you have the *Antenna House Formatter*, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the environment variables set by the XSL formatter installation to detect and use it for XSL-FO transformations. If the environment variables are not set for the XSL formatter installation, you can browse and choose the executable file just as you would for XEP. You can use these two external FO processors for DITA-OT transformations scenarios *(on page 854)* and XML with XSLT transformation scenarios *(on page 828)*.

To configure the options for the FO processors, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > PDF Output > FO Processors**. This preferences page includes the following options:

Apache FOP Section

In this section, you can configure options for the built-in Apache processor. The following options are available:

Use built-in Apache FOP

Instructs Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to use the built-in Apache FO processor. To see the version of the built-in XSL-FO processor for your installation, go to **Help > About > Libraries** and search for *Apache FOP*.

Use other Apache FOP

Instructs Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to use another Apache FO processor that is installed on your computer. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Enable the output of the built-in FOP

All Apache FOP output is displayed in a results pane at the bottom of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin window, including warning messages about FO instructions not supported by Apache FOP.

Memory available to the Apache FOP

If your Apache FOP transformations fail with an Out of Memory error (**OutOfMemoryError**), use this combo box to select a larger value for the amount of memory reserved for Apache FOP transformations.

Configuration file for the built-in FOP

Use this option to specify the path to an Apache FOP configuration file (for example, to render to PDF a document containing Unicode content using a special *true type* font). You can specify

the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Generates PDF/A-1b output

When selected, PDF/A-1b output is generated.

Notes:

- All fonts have to be embedded, even the implicit ones. More information about configuring metrics files for the embedded fonts can be found in Add a font to the built-in FOP *(on page 901)*.
- You cannot use the `<filterList>` key in the configuration file since the FOP would generate the following error: *The Filter key is prohibited when PDF/A-1 is active*.

External FO Processors Section

In this section, you can manage the external FO processors you want to use in transformation scenarios. You can use the two options at the bottom of the section to use the **RenderX XEP** or **Antenna House Formatter** commercial FO processors.

Add 'XEP' FO processor (executable file is needed)

If **RenderX XEP** is already installed on your computer, you can use this button to choose the XEP executable script (`xep.bat` for Windows, `xep` for Linux).

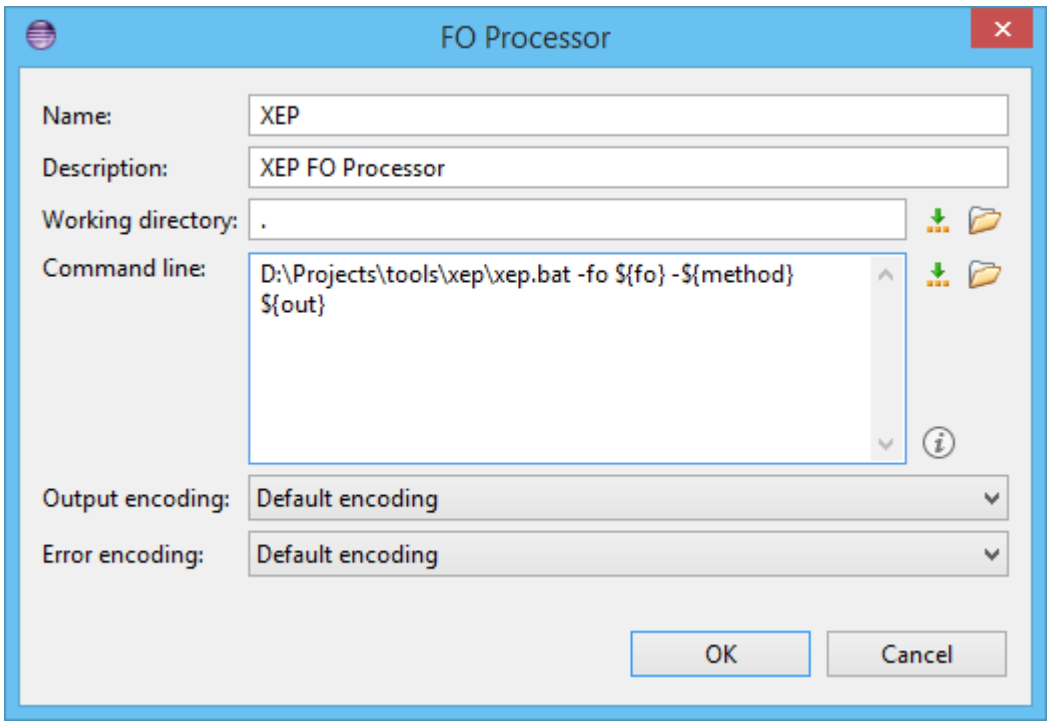
Add 'Antenna House' FO processor (executable file is needed)

If **Antenna House Formatter** is already installed on your computer, you can use this button to choose the Antenna House executable script (`AHFCmd.exe` or `XSLCmd.exe` for Windows, and `run.sh` for Linux/macOS).

Note:
The built-in **Antenna House Formatter GUI** transformation scenario requires that you configure an external FO processor that runs `AHFormatter.exe` (Windows only). In the external **FO Processor** configuration dialog box *(on page 173)*, you could use `"${env(AHF63_64_HOME)}\AHFormatter.exe" -d ${fo} -s` for the value in the **Command line** field, although the environment variable name changes for each version of the AH Formatter and for each system architecture (you can install multiple versions side-by-side). For more information, see https://github.com/AntennaHouse/focheck/wiki/focheck. A list with all AntennaHouse command line parameters can be found here: https://www.antenna.co.jp/AHF/help/en/ahf-xslcmd.html#cl-parameter.

You can also add external processors or configure existing ones. Click the **New** button to open a configuration dialog box that allows you to add a new external FO processor. Use the other buttons (**Edit**, **Duplicate**, **Delete**) to configure existing external processors.

Figure 31. External FO Processor Configuration Dialog Box



The external **FO Processor** configuration dialog box includes the following options:

Name

The name that will be displayed in the list of available FO processors on the FOP tab of the transformation scenario dialog box.

Description

A textual description of the FO processor that will be displayed in the FO processors table and in tooltips of UI components where the processor is selected.

Working directory

The directory where the intermediate and final results of the processing are stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button. You can use one of the following editor variables *(on page 199)*:

- **${homeDir}** - The path to the user home directory.
- **${cfd}** - The path of the current file directory. If the current file is not a local file, the target is the user desktop directory.
- **${pd}** - The project directory.
- **${oxygenInstallDir}** -The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation directory.

Command line

The command line that starts the FO processor, specific to each processor. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button. You can use one of the following editor variables *(on page 199)*:

- **${method}** - The FOP transformation method: **pdf**, **ps**, or **txt**.
- **${fo}** - The input FO file.
- **${out}** - The output file.
- **${pd}** - The project directory.
- **${frameworksDir}** - The path of the `frameworks` subdirectory of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation directory.
- **${oxygenInstallDir}** - The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation directory.
- **${ps}** - The platform-specific path separator. It is used between the library files specified in the class path of the command line.

Output Encoding

The encoding of the FO processor output stream that is displayed in a **Results** panel *(on page 310)* at the bottom of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin window.

Error Encoding

The encoding of the FO processor error stream that is displayed in a **Results** panel *(on page 310)* at the bottom of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin window.

CSS-based Processors Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in **XML to PDF transformation with CSS** scenario type for generating PDF output using a CSS-based processor.

To configure the options for the CSS-based processors, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > PDF Output > CSS-based Processors**. This preferences page includes the following options:

Oxygen PDF Chemistry Section

Auto-detect

If selected, the directory of the **Chemistry** processor will be automatically detected. This is based on the system's PATH environmental variable. If none is detected, it will use the path of the built-in distribution.

Custom installation directory

Use this option to select an external directory of a custom installation of the **Chemistry** processor.

Memory available to the processor (MB)

Specifies the maximum amount of memory that is available for the transformation. If your transformations fail with an Out of Memory error (**OutOfMemoryError**), you can use this option to select a bigger value for the amount of memory reserved for the process.

Generates PDF/UA-1 output

Use this option to produce output that conforms with the PDF/UA-1 accessibility standards.

Note:
This mode has some special requirements. For example, all fonts have to be embedded and the title of documents must be marked using the metadata. For more information, see Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide: Fully Accessible PDF (PDF/UA1).

Show console output

Allows you to specify when to display the console output log in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. The following options are available:

- **When build fails** - Displays the console output log only if the build fails.
- **Always** - Displays the console output log, regardless of whether or not the build fails.

XML Catalog Preferences

To configure options that pertain to *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)*, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XML Catalog**.

The following options are available:

Prefer

Determines whether public identifiers specified in the catalog are used in favor of system identifiers supplied in the document. Suppose you have an entity in your document that has both a public identifier and a system identifier specified, and the catalog only contains a mapping for the public identifier (for example, a matching public catalog entry). You can choose between the following:

- **system** - If selected, the system identifier in the document is used.
- **public** - If selected, the URI supplied in the matching public catalog entry is used. Generally, the purpose of catalogs is to override the system identifiers in XML documents, so **public** should usually be used for your catalogs.

Note:
If the catalog contains a matching system catalog entry giving a mapping for the system identifier, that mapping would have been used, the public identifier would never have been considered, and this setting would be irrelevant.

Verbosity

When using catalogs, it is sometimes useful to see what catalog files are parsed, if they are valid, and what identifiers are resolved by the catalogs. This option selects the detail level of such

logging messages of the *XML catalog* resolver that will be displayed in the **Catalogs** table at the bottom of the window. You can choose between the following:

- **None** - No message is displayed by the catalog resolver when it tries to resolve a URI reference, a SYSTEM one or a PUBLIC one with the *XML catalogs* specified in this panel.
- **Unresolved entities** - Only the logging messages that track the failed attempts to resolve references are displayed.
- **All messages** - The messages of both failed attempts and successful ones are displayed.

Resolve schema locations also through system mappings

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin analyzes both *uri* and *system* mappings to resolve the location of schema.

Note:
This option is not applicable for DTD schemas since the public and system catalog mappings are always considered.

Process "schemaLocation" namespaces through URI mappings for XML Schema

If selected, the target namespace of the imported XML Schema is resolved through the *uri* mappings. The namespace is taken into account only when the schema specified in the *schemaLocation* attribute was not resolved successfully. If not selected, the system IDs are used to resolve the schema location.

Use default catalog

If this option is selected and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin cannot resolve the catalog mapping with any other means, the default global catalog (listed below this checkbox) is used. For more information, see How Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Determines which Catalog to Use *(on page 575)*.

Catalogs table

You can use this table to add or manage global user-defined catalogs. The following actions are available at the bottom of the table:

Add

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a catalog to the list. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Edit

Opens a dialog box that allows you to edit an existing catalog. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Delete

Deletes the currently selected catalog from the list.

Up

Moves the selection to the previous resource.

Down

Moves the selection to the following resource.

Note:
When you add, delete, or edit a catalog in this table, you need to reopen the currently edited files that use the modified catalog or run a manual **Validate** action *(on page 525)* so that the changes take full effect.

You can also add or configure catalogs at *framework* level from the **Catalogs** tab *(on page 107)* in the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*.

Related information
Controlling the Catalog Resolver
Working with XML Catalogs *(on page 573)*

XML Parser Preferences

To configure the **XML Parser** options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XML Parser**.

The configurable options of the built-in XML parser are as follows:

Enable parser caching (validation and content completion)

Enables re-use of internal models when validating and provides content completion in open XML files that reference the same schemas (grammars) such as DTD, XML Schema, or RelaxNG.

Enable system parameter entity expansion in other entity definitions

This security setting controls the expansion of the DTD system parameter entities (the ones that are loaded from disk or from remote sources). This option is off by default, to protect against XXE attacks. If you enable it, make sure the XML files you are opening or processing with the application come from a trusted source.

Enable secure processing

Enables the configuration of the number of entities that are allowed to be expanded and the maximum occurrence limit for nodes.

Entity expansion limit

The maximum number of entities that are allowed to be expanded by the parser.

Nodes maximum occurrence limit

The maximum occurrence limit for XML schema nodes.

Ignore the DTD for validation if a schema is specified

Forces validation against a referenced schema (XML Schema, Relax NG schema) even if the document includes also a DTD DOCTYPE declaration. This option is useful when the DTD declaration is used only to declare DTD entities and the schema reference is used for validation against an XML Schema or a Relax NG schema.

Note:
Schematron schemas are treated as additional schemas. The validation of a document associated with a DTD and referencing a Schematron schema is executed against both the DTD and the Schematron schema, regardless of the value of the **Ignore the DTD for validation if a schema is specified** option.

Enable XInclude processing

Enables XInclude processing. If selected, the XInclude support in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is turned on for validation, rendering in **Author** mode and transformation of XML documents.

Base URI fix-up

According to the specification for XInclude, processors must add an `@xml:base` attribute to elements included from locations with a different base URI. Without these attributes, the resulting infoset information would be incorrect.

Unfortunately, these attributes make XInclude processing to not be transparent to Schema validation. One solution to this is to modify your schema to allow `@xml:base` attributes to appear on elements that might be included from different base URIs.

If the addition of `@xml:base` and / or `@xml:lang` is not desired by your application, you can deselect this option.

Language fix-up

The processor will preserve language information on a top-level included element by adding an `@xml:lang` attribute if its included parent has a different [language] property. If the addition of `@xml:lang` is not allowed by your application, you can deselect this option.

DTD post-validation

Select this option to validate an XML file against the associated DTD, after all the content merged to the current XML file using *XInclude* was resolved. If you deselect this option, the current XML file is validated against the associated DTD before all the content merged to the current XML file using *XInclude* is resolved.

Relax NG Preferences

To configure options regarding Relax NG, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XML Parser > Relax NG**.

The following options are available in this page:

Check feasibly valid

Checks if Relax NG documents can be transformed into valid documents by inserting any number of attributes and child elements anywhere in the tree.

> **Note:**
> Selecting this option disables the **Check ID/IDREF** option.

Check ID/IDREF

Checks the ID/IDREF matches when a Relax NG document is validated.

Add default attribute values

Default values are given to the attributes of documents validated using Relax NG. These values are defined in the Relax NG schema.

Ignore "data-" attributes in XHTML

This option is selected by default, which means that when XHTML documents are validated with an RNG schema, any **data-** attributes detected in the document will not be taken into account by the validation engine.

Schematron Preferences

To configure options regarding Schematron, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XML Parser > Schematron**.

The following options are available in this preferences page:

ISO Schematron Section

Optimize (visit-no-attributes)

If your ISO Schematron assertion tests do not contain the attributes axis, you should select this option for faster ISO Schematron validation.

Allow foreign elements (allow-foreign)

Enables support for `allow-foreign` on ISO Schematron. This option is used to pass non-Schematron elements to the generated stylesheet.

Use associated XML Schema to expand default attribute values

When selected (default value), if the validated XML document has an XML Schema associated that contains default values for attributes defined in the XML content, the Schematron will be able to match on those default attributes.

Use Saxon EE (schema aware) for xslt2/xslt3 query language binding

When selected, Saxon EE is used for `xslt2`/`xslt3` query binding. If this option is not selected, Saxon PE is used.

Enable Schematron Quick Fixes (SQF) support

Allows you to enable or disable the support for *Quick Fixes (on page 2233)* in Schematron files. This option is selected by default.

Restrict "Apply All" to quick fixes marked as "sqf:default-fix"

Allows you to restrict the *Schematron Quick Fixes (on page 2233)* to be applied in bulk only for those that have the `sqf:default-fix` attribute explicitly set.

Note:
If you want to bulk apply quick fixes for documents that are not validated against Schematron, this option should not be selected.

Embedded rules query language binding

You can control the query language binding used by the ISO Schematron embedded rules. You can choose between: **xslt1**, **xslt2**, or **xslt3**.

Note:
To control the query language binding for standalone ISO Schematron, you need to set the query language to be used with a `@queryBinding` attribute on the schema root element.

Message language

This option allows you to specify the language to be used in Schematron validation messages. You can choose between the following:

- **Use the language defined in the application** - The language that is specified in the application *(on page 214)* will be used and only the validation messages that match that language will be presented. You can use the **Change application language** link to navigate to the preferences page where you can specify the language to be used in the application.
- **Use the "xml:lang" attribute set on the Schematron root** - The language specified in the `@xml:lang` attribute from the Schematron root will be used and only the validation message that match that language will be presented.
- **Ignore the language and show all message** - All messages are displayed in whatever language is defined within the Schematron schema.
- **Custom** - Use this option to specify a custom language to be used and only the messages that match the specified language will be presented.

Note:
In all cases, if the selected language is not available for a validation error or warning, all messages will be displayed in whatever language is defined within the Schematron schema.

Schematron 1.5 Section

XPath Version

Allows you to select the version of XPath for the expressions that are allowed in Schematron assertion tests. You can choose between: **1.0**, **2.0**, or **3.0**. This option is applied in both standalone Schematron 1.5 schemas and embedded Schematron 1.5 rules.

Security

Disable Schematron security checks

For security reasons, several security checks are performed on Schematron files that are not located inside a *framework (on page 2231)* or *plugin (on page 2232)*. Select this option if your Schematron files are failing because of these security checks and you are unable to move them to a location recognized as safe (a framework or a plugin).

XML Schema Preferences

To configure options regarding XML Schema, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XML Parser > XML Schema**.

This preferences page allows you to configure the following options:

Default XML Schema version

Allows you to select the version of XML Schema to be used as the default. You can choose XML Schema **1.0** or XML Schema **1.1**.

Note:
You are also able to set the XML Schema version using the **Customize** option in the **New** document wizard *(on page 222)*.

Default XML Schema validation engine

Allows you to select the default validation engine to be used for XML Schema. You can choose **Xerces** or **Saxon EE**.

Xerces validation features section

Enable full schema constraint checking

Sets the *schema-full-checking* feature to `true`. This enables a validation of the parsed XML document against a schema (XML Schema or DTD) while the document is parsed.

Enable honour all schema location feature

Sets the *honour-all-schema-location* feature to `true`. All the files that declare XML Schema components from the same namespace are used to compose the validation model. If this option is not selected, only the first XML Schema file that is encountered in the XML Schema import tree is taken into account.

Enable full XPath 2.0 for alternative types

When selected (default value), you can use the full XPath support in assertions and alternative types. Otherwise, only the XPath support offered by the Xerces engine is available.

Assertions can see comments and processing instructions

Controls whether or not comments and processing instructions are visible to the XPath expression used for defining an assertion in XSD 1.1.

Saxon EE validation features section

Multiple schema imports

Forces `<xs:import>` to fetch the referenced schema document. By default, the `<xs:import>` fetches the document only if no schema document for the given namespace has already been loaded. With this option in effect, the referenced schema document is loaded unless the absolute URI is the same as a schema document already loaded.

Assertions can see comments and processing instructions

Controls whether or not comments and processing instructions are visible to the XPath expression used to define an assertion. By default, they are not made visible (unlike Saxon 9.3).

XML Refactoring Preferences

To specify a folder for loading the custom XML refactoring operations, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XML Refactoring**. The following option is available in this preferences page:

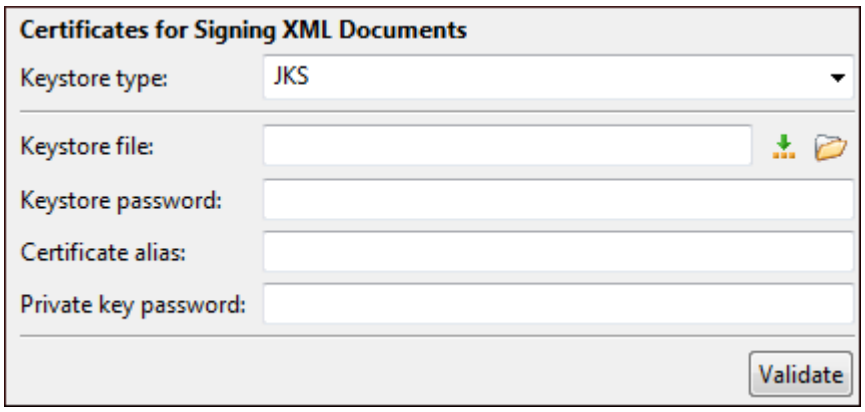
Load additional refactoring operations from

Use this text box to specify a folder for loading custom XML refactoring operations. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin looks for XML refactoring operations recursively in the specified folder, so they can be stored in descendant folders.

XML Signing Certificates Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides two types of *keystores (on page 2231)* for certificates that are used for digital signatures of XML documents: Java Keystore (**JKS**) and Public-Key Cryptography Standards version 12 (**PKCS-12**). A *keystore* file is protected by a password. To configure a certificate *keystore*, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XML Signing Certificates**. You can customize the following parameters of a *keystore*:

Figure 32. Certificates Preferences Panel



- **Keystore type** - The type of *keystore (on page 2231)* that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses (**JKS** or **PKCS-12**).
- **Keystore file** - The location of the imported file.
- **Keystore password** - The password that is used for protecting the privacy of the stored keys.
- **Certificate alias** - The alias used for storing the key entry (the certificate or the private key) inside the *keystore (on page 2231)*.
- **Private key password** - The private key password of the certificate (required only for JKS *keystores (on page 2231)*).
- **Validate** - Click this button to verify the configured *keystore (on page 2231)* and the validity of the certificate.

XProc Preferences

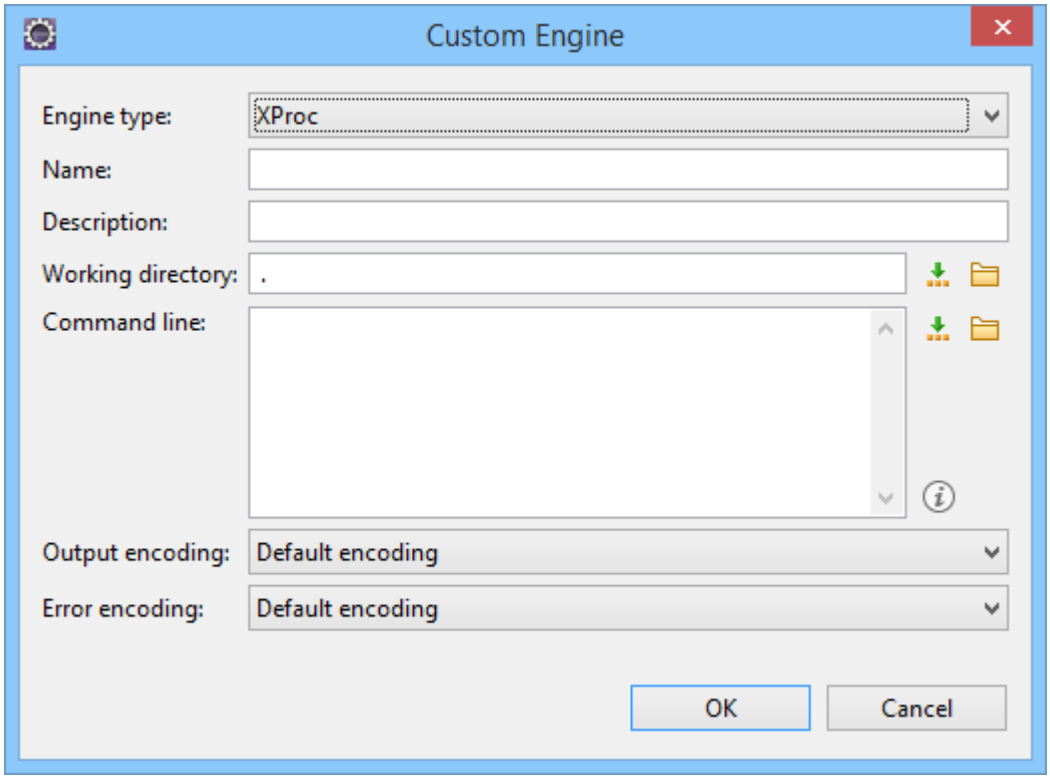
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a bundled version of the *Calabash* XProc engine that can be used for XProc transformations and validation, but you also have several ways to integrate other external XProc engines.

If the external engine is Java-based, or it has validation support, or it can receive parameters or ports passed from the transformation, you need to integrate the external XProc engine using a plugin extension procedure *(on page 914)*.

If you do not need the engine to be used for automatic validation or pass parameters/ports and it is not Java-based, you can add an external XProc engine by using the **XProc** preferences page. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XProc**.

To add an external engine, click the **New** button. To configure an existing engine, click the **Edit** button. This opens the **Custom Engine** dialog box that allows you to configure an external engine.

Figure 33. Creating an XProc external engine



The following options can be configure in this custom engine configuration dialog box:

- **Name** - The value of this field will be displayed in the XProc transformation scenario and in the command line that will start it.
- **Description** - A textual description that will appear as a tooltip where the XProc engine will be used.
- **Working directory** - The working directory for resolving relative paths. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.
- **Command line** - The command line that will run the XProc engine as an external process. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.
- **Output encoding** - The encoding for the output stream of the XProc engine, used for reading and displaying the output messages.
- **Error encoding** - The encoding for the error stream of the XProc engine, used for reading and displaying the messages from the error stream.

Note:
You can configure the built-in Calabash processor by using the `calabash.config` file. This file is located in *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`\lib\xproc\calabash\lib`. If that file does not exist, you have to create it.

The **Show XProc messages** option at the bottom of the **XProc** preferences page can be selected if you want all messages emitted by the XProc processor during a transformation to be presented in dedicated XProc **Results** view *(on page 310)*.

XSLT/XQuery Preferences

To configure options regarding XSLT and XQuery processors, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XSLT-XQuery**. This panel contains only the most generic options for working with XSLT or XQuery processors. The more specific options are grouped in other panels linked as child nodes of this panel in the tree of this **Preferences** page.

There is only one generic option available:

Create transformation temporary files in system temporary directory

It should be selected only when the temporary files necessary for performing transformations are created in the same folder as the source of the transformation (the default behavior when this option is not selected) and this breaks the transformation. An example of breaking the transformation is when the transformation processes all the files located in the same folder as the source of the transformation (including the temporary files) and the result is incorrect or the transformation fails because of this.

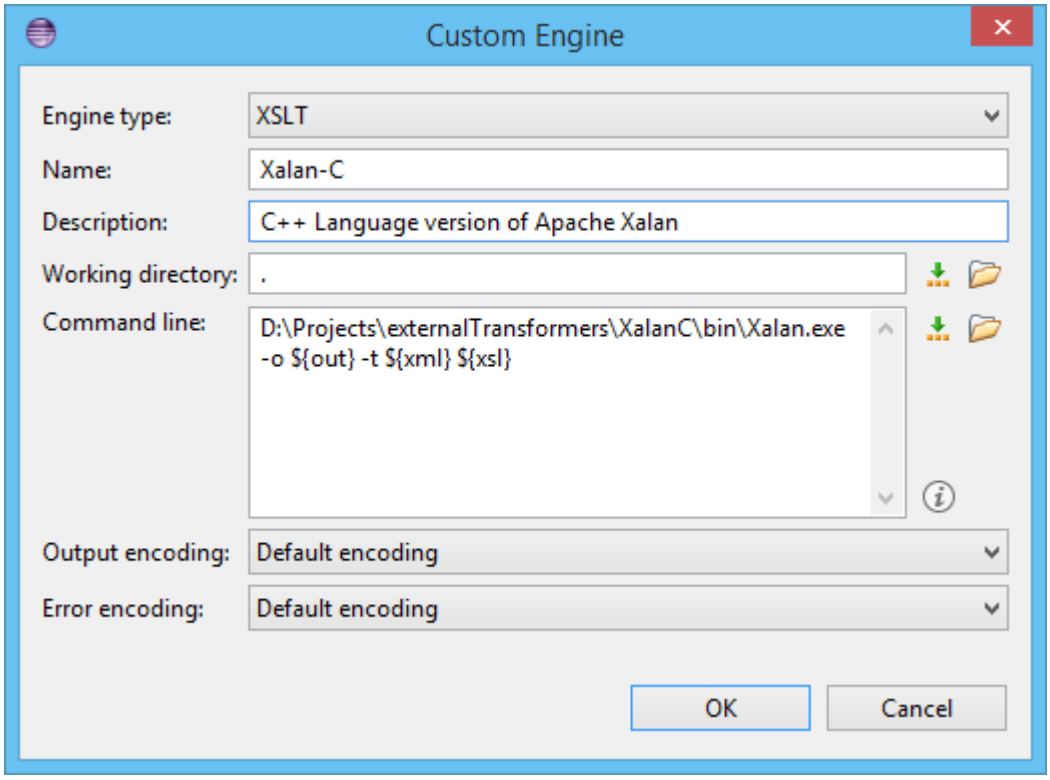
Custom Engines Preferences

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to configure custom processors to be used for running XSLT and XQuery transformations.

To configure the **Custom Engines** preferences, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XSLT-XQuery > Custom Engines**.

The table in this preferences page displays the custom engines that have been defined. Use the **New** or **Edit** button at the bottom of the table to open a dialog box that allows you to add or configure a custom engine.

Figure 34. Parameters of a Custom Engine



The following parameters can be configured for a custom engine:

Engine type

Specifies the transformer type. You can choose between XSLT and XQuery engines.

Name

The name of the transformer displayed in the dialog box for editing transformation scenarios.

Description

A textual description of the transformer.

Working directory

The start directory of the executable program for the transformer. The following editor variables *(on page 199)* are available for making the path to the working directory independent of the location of the input files:

- **${homeDir}** - The user home directory in the operating system.
- **${cfd}** - The path to the directory of the current file.
- **${pd}** - The path to the directory of the current project.
- **${oxygenInstallDir}** - The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin install directory.

Command line

The command line that must be executed by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to perform a transformation with the engine. The following editor variables *(on page 199)* are available

for making the parameters in the command line (the transformer executable, the input files) independent of the location of the input files:

- **${xml}** - The XML input document as a file path.
- **${xmlu}** - The XML input document as a URL.
- **${xsl}** - The XSL / XQuery input document as a file path.
- **${xslu}** - The XSL / XQuery input document as a URL.
- **${out}** - The output document as a file path.
- **${outu}** - The output document as a URL.
- **${ps}** - The platform separator that is used between library file names specified in the class path.

Output Encoding

The encoding of the transformer output stream.

Error Encoding

The encoding of the transformer error stream.

XPath Preferences

To configure XPath options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XSLT-XQuery > XPath**.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to customize the following options:

Unescape XPath expression

If selected, the entities of an XPath expression that you type in the **XPath/XQuery Builder** *(on page 1451)* are unescaped during their execution. For example, the expression:

```
//varlistentry[starts-with(@os,'&#x73;')]
```

is equivalent to:

```
//varlistentry[starts-with(@os,'s')]
```

XPath Default Namespace (only for XPath version 2.0)

Specifies the default namespace to be used for unprefixed element names. You can choose between the following four options:

- **No namespace** - If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin considers unprefixed element names of the evaluated XPath expressions as belonging to no namespace.
- **Use the default namespace from the root element** (default selection) - Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin considers unprefixed element names of the evaluated XPath expressions as belonging to the default namespace declared on the root element of the XML document you are querying.

- **Use the namespace of the root** - If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin considers unprefixed element names of the evaluated XPath expressions as belonging to the same namespace as the root element of the XML document you are querying.
- **This namespace** - If selected, you can use the corresponding text field to enter the namespace of the unprefixed elements.

Default prefix-namespace mappings

You can use this table to associate prefixes with namespaces. Use these mappings when you want to define them globally (not for each document). Use the **New** button to add mappings to the list and the **Delete** button to remove mappings.

XQuery Preferences

To configure the **XQuery** options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XSLT-XQuery > XQuery**.

The following generic XQuery preferences are available:

Validation engine

Allows you to select the processor that will be used to validate XQuery documents. If you are validating an XQuery file that has an associated validation scenario, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the processor specified in the scenario. If no validation scenario is associated, but the file has an associated transformation scenario, the processor specified in the scenario is used. If the processor does not support validation or if no scenario is associated, then the value from this combo box will be used as validation processor.

Size limit of Sequence view (MB)

When the result of an XQuery transformation is set as a sequence (**Present as a sequence** option *(on page 850)*) in the transformation scenario, the size of one chunk of the result that is fetched from the database in lazy mode in one step is set in this option.

Format transformer output

Specifies whether or not the output of the transformer is formatted and indented (*pretty-print (on page 2233)*).

> **Note:**
> This option is ignored if you choose **Present as a sequence** *(on page 850)* (lazy extract data from a database) from the associated transformation scenario.

Create structure indicating the type nodes

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin takes the results of a query and creates an XML document containing copies of all items in the sequence, suitably wrapped.

Note:
This option is ignored if you choose **Present as a sequence** *(on page 850)* (lazy extract data from a database) from the associated transformation scenario.

Saxon-HE/PE/EE Preferences

To configure global options for XQuery transformation and validation scenarios that use the **Saxon HE/PE/EE** engine, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XSLT-XQuery > XQuery > Saxon-HE/PE/EE**.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to configure the following XQuery options for the Saxon 12.9 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE), and Enterprise Edition (EE):

Use a configuration file ("-config")

Sets a Saxon 12.9 configuration file that is used for XQuery transformation and validation scenarios.

Enable Optimizations ("-opt")

This option is selected by default, which means that optimization is enabled. If not selected, the optimization is suppressed, which is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

Use linked tree model ("-tree:linked")

This option activates the linked tree model.

Strip whitespaces ("-strip")

Specifies how the *strip whitespaces* operation is handled. You can choose one of the following values:

- **All ("all")** - Strips *all* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source document.
- **Ignore ("ignorable")** - Strips all *ignorable* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.
- **None ("none")** - Strips *no* whitespace before further processing.

The following option is available for Saxon 12.9 Professional Edition (PE) and Enterprise Edition (EE) only:

Allow calls on extension functions ("-ext")

If selected, calls on external functions are allowed. Selecting this option is not recommended in an environment where untrusted stylesheets may be executed. It also disables user-defined extension elements and the writing of multiple output files, both of which carry similar security risks.

The options available specifically for Saxon 12.9 Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Validation of the source file ("-val")

Requests schema-based validation of the source file and of any files read using `document()` or similar functions. It can have the following values:

- **Schema validation ("strict")** - This mode requires an XML Schema and allows for parsing the source documents with strict schema-validation enabled.
- **Lax schema validation ("lax")** - If an XML Schema is provided, this mode allows for parsing the source documents with schema-validation enabled but the validation will not fail if, for example, element declarations are not found.
- **Disable schema validation** - This specifies that the source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.

Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings ("-outval")

Normally, if validation of result documents is requested, a validation error is fatal. Selecting this option causes such validation failures to be treated as warnings.

Write comments for non-fatal validation errors of the result document

The validation messages for non-fatal errors are written (wherever possible) as a comment in the result document itself.

Enable XQuery update ("-update:(on|off)")

This option controls whether or not XQuery update syntax is accepted. The default value is off.

Backup files updated by XQuery ("-backup:(on|off)")

If selected, backup versions for any XML files updated with an XQuery Update are generated. This option is available when the **Enable XQuery update** option is selected.

Saxon HE/PE/EE Advanced Preferences

To configure **Saxon HE/PE/EE Advanced** preferences, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XSLT-XQuery > XQuery > Saxon-HE/PE/EE > Advanced**.

The advanced XQuery options that can be configured for the Saxon 12.9 XQuery transformer (all editions: Home Edition, Professional Edition, Enterprise Edition) are as follows:

- **URI Resolver class name** - Allows you to specify a custom implementation for the URI resolver used by the XQuery Saxon 12.9 transformer (the -r option when run from the command line). The class name must be fully specified and the corresponding *JAR* or class extension must be configured from the dialog box for configuring the XQuery extension *(on page 831)* for the particular transformation scenario.

Note:
If your `URIResolver` implementation does not recognize the given resource, the `resolve(String href, String base)` method should return a `null` value. Otherwise, the given resource will not be resolved through the *XML Catalog (on page 573)*.

- **Collection URI Resolver class name** - Allows you to specify a custom implementation for the Collection URI resolver used by the XQuery Saxon 12.9 transformer (the -cr option when run from the command line). The class name must be fully specified and the corresponding *JAR* or class extension must be configured from the dialog box for configuring the XQuery extension *(on page 831)* for the particular transformation scenario.

XSLT Preferences

To configure the **XSLT** options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XSLT-XQuery > XSLT**.

The XSLT preferences page allows you to customize options for the default XSLT validation engines. You can also specify the engine directly in a validation scenario *(on page 547)*.

Note:
If no specific engine is specified in the validation scenario and the XSLT file has a transformation scenario associated, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will use the engine specified in the transformation scenario.

The following options are available in this page:

Saxon-HE/PE/EE Preferences

To configure global options for XSLT transformation and validation scenarios that use the **Saxon HE/PE/EE** engine, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XSLT-XQuery > XSLT > Saxon > Saxon-HE/PE/EE**.

Saxon-HE/PE/EE Options

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to configure the following XSLT options for the Saxon 12.9 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE), and Enterprise Edition (EE):

Use a configuration file ("-config")

Select this option if you want to use a Saxon 12.9 configuration file that will be executed for the XSLT transformation and validation processes. You can specify the path to the configuration file by entering it in the **URL** field, or by using the **Insert Editor Variables** button, or using the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Attention:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin does not support the `ALLOWED_PROTOCOLS` Saxon property (*http://saxon.sf.net/feature/allowedProtocols*). This feature is specific to Saxon and controls access by Saxon (but not by underlying software, such as the XML parser). For more information, see https://www.saxonica.com/documentation12/index.html#!configuration/config-features.

Enable Optimizations ("-opt")

This option is selected by default, which means that optimization is enabled. If not selected, the optimization is suppressed, which is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

Line numbering ("-l")

Line numbers where errors occur are included in the output messages.

Expand attributes defaults ("-expand")

Specifies whether or not the attributes defined in the associated DTD or XML Schema are expanded in the output of the transformation you are executing.

DTD validation of the source ("-dtd")

Specifies whether or not the source document will be validated against their associated DTD. You can choose from the following:

- **On** - Requests DTD validation of the source file and of any files read using the `document()` function.
- **Off** - (default setting) Suppresses DTD validation.
- **Recover** - Performs DTD validation but treats the errors as non-fatal.

Note:
Any external DTD is likely to be read even if not used for validation, since DTDs can contain definitions of entities.

Strip whitespaces ("-strip")

Specifies how the *strip whitespaces* operation is handled. You can choose one of the following values:

- **All ("all")** - Strips *all* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source document.
- **Ignore ("ignorable")** - Strips all *ignorable* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source

document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.
- **None ("none")** - Strips *no* whitespace before further processing.

Saxon-PE/EE Options

The following options are available for Saxon 12.9 Professional Edition (PE) and Enterprise Edition (EE) only:

Register Saxon-JS extension functions and instructions

Registers the Saxon-CE extension functions and instructions when compiling a stylesheet using the Saxon 12.9 processors.

Allow calls on extension functions ("-ext")

If selected, the stylesheet is allowed to call external Java functions. This does not affect calls on integrated extension functions, including Saxon and EXSLT extension functions. This option is useful when loading an untrusted stylesheet (such as from a remote site using `http://[URL]`). It ensures that the stylesheet cannot call arbitrary Java methods and thus gain privileged access to resources on your machine.

Enable assertions ("-ea")

In XSLT 3.0, you can use the `<xsl:assert>` element to make assertions in the form of XPath expressions, causing a dynamic error if the assertion turns out to be false. If this option is selected, XSLT 3.0 `<xsl:assert>` instructions are enabled. If it is not selected (default), the assertions are ignored.

Saxon-EE Options

The options available specifically for Saxon 12.9 Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Validation of the source file ("-val")

Requests schema-based validation of the source file and of any files read using `document()` or similar functions. It can have the following values:

- **Schema validation ("strict")** - This mode requires an XML Schema and allows for parsing the source documents with strict schema-validation enabled.
- **Lax schema validation ("lax")** - If an XML Schema is provided, this mode allows for parsing the source documents with schema-validation enabled but the validation will not fail if, for example, element declarations are not found.
- **Disable schema validation** - This specifies that the source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.

Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings ("-outval")

Normally, if validation of result documents is requested, a validation error is fatal. Selecting this option causes such validation failures to be treated as warnings.

Write comments for non-fatal validation errors of the result document

The validation messages for non-fatal errors are written (wherever possible) as a comment in the result document itself.

Saxon-HE/PE/EE Advanced Preferences

To configure the **Saxon HE/PE/EE Advanced** preferences, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XSLT-XQuery > XSLT > Saxon > Saxon-HE/PE/EE > Advanced**.

You can configure the following advanced XSLT options for the Saxon 12.9 transformer (all three editions: Home Edition, Professional Edition, Enterprise Edition):

- **URI Resolver class name ("-r")** - Specifies a custom implementation for the URI resolver used by the XSLT Saxon 12.9 transformer (the -r option when run from the command line). The class name must be fully specified and the corresponding `jar` or `class` extension must be configured from the dialog box for configuring the XSLT extension *(on page 831)* for the particular transformation scenario.
- **Collection URI Resolver class name ("-cr")** - Specifies a custom implementation for the Collection URI resolver used by the XSLT Saxon 12.9 transformer (the -cr option when run from the command line). The class name must be fully specified and the corresponding `jar` or `class` extension must be configured from the dialog box for configuring the XSLT extension *(on page 831)* for the particular transformation scenario.

Saxon6 Preferences

To configure the **Saxon 6** options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XSLT-XQuery > XSLT > Saxon > Saxon6**.

The built-in Saxon 6 XSLT processor can be configured with the following options:

- **Line numbering** - Specifies whether or not line numbers are maintained and reported in error messages for the XML source document.
- **Disable calls on extension functions** - If selected, external function calls are not allowed. Selecting this option is recommended in an environment where untrusted stylesheets may be executed. It also disables user-defined extension elements and the writing of multiple output files, since they carry similar security risks.
- **Handling of recoverable stylesheet errors** - Allows you to choose how dynamic errors are handled. One of the following options can be selected:
  - **recover silently** - Continue processing without reporting the error.
  - **recover with warnings** - Issue a warning but continue processing.
  - **signal the error and do not attempt recovery** - Issue an error and stop processing.

XSLTProc Preferences (Deprecated)

To configure **XSLTProc** options, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XSLT-XQuery > XSLT > XSLTProc**.

The following options are available in this preferences page:

- **Enable XInclude processing** - If selected, XInclude references will be resolved when XSLTProc is used as transformer in XSLT transformation scenarios *(on page 796)*.
- **Skip loading the document's DTD** - If selected, the DTD specified in the DOCTYPE declaration will not be loaded.
- **Do not apply default attributes from document's DTD** - If selected, the default attributes declared in the DTD and not specified in the document are not included in the transformed document.
- **Do not use Internet to fetch DTD's, entities or docs** - If selected, the remote references to DTD's and entities are not followed.
- **Maximum depth in templates stack** - If this limit of maximum templates depth is reached the transformation ends with an error.
- **Verbosity** - If selected, the transformation will output detailed status messages about the transformation process in the **Warnings** view.
- **Show version of libxml and libxslt used** - If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will display in the **Warnings** view the version of the **libxml** and **libxslt** libraries invoked by XSLTProc.
- **Show time information** - If selected, the **Warnings** view will display the time necessary for running the transformation.
- **Show debug information** - If selected, the **Warnings** view will display debug information about what templates are matched, parameter values, and so on.
- **Show all documents loaded during processing** - If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will display in the **Warnings** view the URL of all the files loaded during transformation.
- **Show profile information** - If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will display in the **Warnings** view a table with all the matched templates, and for each template will display: the match XPath expression, the template name, the number of template modes, the number of calls, the execution time.
- **Show the list of registered extensions** - If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will display in the **Warnings** view a list with all the registered extension functions, extension elements and extension modules.
- **Refuses to write to any file or resource** - If selected, the XSLTProc processor will not write any part of the transformation result to an external file on disk. If such an operation is requested by the processed XSLT stylesheet the transformation ends with a runtime error.
- **Refuses to create directories** - If selected, the XSLTProc processor will not create any directory during the transformation process. If such an operation is requested by the processed XSLT stylesheet the transformation ends with a runtime error.

XML Structure Outline Preferences

To configure options regarding the **Outline** view *(on page 301)*, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML Structure Outline**. It contains the following options:

Preferred attribute names for display

The preferred attribute names when displaying the attributes of an element in the **Outline** view. If there is no preferred attribute name specified, the first attribute of an element is displayed.

Enable outline drag and drop

Drag and drop is disabled for the tree displayed in the **Outline** view only if there is a possibility to accidentally change the structure of the document by such operations.

Configuring Options

A set of options controls the behavior of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, allowing you to configure most of the features. To offer you the highest degree of flexibility in customizing the application to fit the needs of your organization, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes several distinct layers of option values.

The option layers are as follows (sorted from high priority to low):

- **Global Options** *(on page 63)*

  Allows individual users to personalize Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin according to their specific needs.

- **Customized Default Options** *(on page 196)*

  Designed to customize the initial option values for a group of users, this layer allows an administrator to deploy the application preconfigured with a standardized set of option values.

  Note:
  Once this layer is set, it represents the initial state of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin when an end-user selects the **Restore defaults** *(on page 64)* or **Reset Global Options** *(on page 198)* actions.

- **Default Options**

  The predefined default values, tuned so that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin behaves optimally in most working environments.

Important:
If you set a specific option in one of the layers, but it is not applied in the application, make sure that one of the higher priority layers does not overwrite it.

Customizing Default Options

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has an extensive set of options that you can configure. When Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin in installed, these options are set to default values. You can provide a different set of default values for an installation using an XML *options file*.

Creating an XML *Options File*

To create an *options file*, follow these steps:

1. It is recommended that you use a fresh install for this procedure, to make sure that you do not copy personal or local preferences.
2. Open Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*.
3. Go through the options and set them to the desired defaults.
4. Go to back to the main preferences page and click **Export Global Options** to create an XML options file.

Configuring an Installation to Use Customized Default Options

There are several methods that you can use to configure an Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation to use the customized default options from the created XML options file.

The possible methods for using customized default options during an installation include:

- **Copy the XML Options File to the Installation Directory**

  In the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*, create a folder called `preferences` and copy the created XML options file into it (for example: *[ECLIPSE-INSTALL-DIR]*`/plugins/com.oxygenxml.author/preferences/default.xml`, or if the plugin was installed as a drop-in: *[ECLIPSE-INSTALL-DIR]*`/dropins/com.oxygenxml.author/plugins/com.oxygenxml.author/preferences/default.xml`).

  > **Note:**
  > The XML file placed in the `preferences` folder can have any name as long as it has the extension `xml` or `xpr`. If there are multiple such files in the `preferences` folder only the first one found is used.

- **Specify a Path to the XML Options File in a Startup Parameter**

  Set the path to the XML options file as the value of the `com.oxygenxml.default.options` system property in the Eclipse configuration file (*[ECLIPSE-INSTALL-DIR]*`/configuration/config.ini`). The path can be specified with any of the following:

  - A URL or file path relative to the application installation folder. For example:

    ```
    com.oxygenxml.default.options=file\:default.xml
    ```

    This will make Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin look for `default.xml` inside the installation folder (for example: *[ECLIPSE-INSTALL-DIR]*`/plugins/com.oxygenxml.author/preferences/default.xml`, or if the plugin was installed as a drop-in: *[ECLIPSE-INSTALL-DIR]*`/dropins/com.oxygenxml.author/plugins/com.oxygenxml.author/preferences/default.xml`).

  - A system variable that specifies the file path. For example:

    ```
    com.oxygenxml.default.options=file\:${system(CONFIG)}/default.xml
    ```

- An environmental variable that specifies the file path. For example:

```
com.oxygenxml.default.options=file\:${env(CONFIG)}/default.xml
```

> **Note:**
> In the Eclipse configuration file, the backslash (\) is considered a special character. Therefore, use forward slashes for separators inside the file path.

Importing/Exporting/Resetting Global Options

Actions for importing, exporting, and resetting global options are available in the preferences page of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To open this page, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*.
The export operation allows you to save global preferences as an XML options file and the import operation allows you to load the options file. You can use this file to reload the options on your computer or to share with others.

The following buttons are available at the bottom of the preferences page:

Reset Global Options

Restores the preference to the factory defaults or to customized defaults *(on page 196)*. This action also resets the transformation and validation scenarios to the default scenarios and clears recently used document templates.

Import Global Options

Allows you to import a set of *Global Options* from an exported XML properties file. You can also select a project file (`.xpr`) to import all the *Global Options* that are set in that project file. After you select a file, the **Import Global Options** dialog box is displayed, and it informs you that the operation will only override the options that are included in the imported file. You can select the **Reset all other options to their default values** option to reset all options to the default values before the file is imported.

Export Global Options

Allows you to export *Global Options* to an XML properties file. Some user-specific options that are private are not included. For example, passwords and the name of the *Review Author* is not included in the export operation.

Configuring a Dark Color Theme

The Eclipse platform supports setting a dark color theme in the **Preferences > General > Appearance** preferences page. This dark color theme mostly influences the general Eclipse toolbar.

To also use a dark theme for XML documents opened by the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, the following special experimental system property *(on page 214)* must be added in the `eclipse.ini` configuration file:

```
-Dcom.oxygenxml.eclipse.dark.color.theme=true
```

Import/Export Transformation or Validation Scenarios

You can export global transformation and validation scenarios into specialized *scenarios* files. You can import transformation and validation scenarios from various sources (such as project files, *framework (on page 2231)* option files, or exported scenario files). To access these import and export actions, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Scenarios Management**. The following actions are available:

Import Global Transformation Scenarios

Loads a set of transformation scenarios from a project file, *framework* options file, or exported scenarios file.

Export Global Transformation Scenarios

Stores a set of global transformation scenarios in a specialized *scenarios* file.

Import Global Validation Scenarios

Loads a set of validation scenarios from a project file, *framework* options file, or exported scenarios file.

Export Global Validation Scenarios

Stores a set of global validation scenarios in a specialized *scenarios* file.

The **Export Global Transformation Scenarios** and **Export Global Validation Scenarios** options are used to store all the scenarios in a separate file. Associations between document URLs and scenarios are also saved in this file. You can load the saved scenarios using the **Import Global Transformation Scenarios** and **Import Global Validation Scenarios** actions. To distinguish the existing scenarios and the imported ones, the names of the imported scenarios contain the word *import*.

Editor Variables

An editor variable is a shorthand notation for context-dependent information, such as a file or folder path, a time-stamp, or a date. It is used in the definition of a command (for example, the input URL of a transformation, the output file path of a transformation, or the command line of an external tool) to make a command or a parameter generic and re-usable with other input files. When the same command is applied to multiple files, the notation is expanded at the execution of the command so that the same command has different effects depending on the actual file.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a variety of built-in editor variables. You can also create your own custom editor variables by using the **Custom Editor Variables** preferences page *(on page 66)*.

Editor variables are evaluated and automatically expanded in many places in the application, when:

- Creating new documents from file templates *(on page 229)*.
- Inserting code templates *(on page 229)* in the **Text** or **Author** editor modes.
- Executing predefined Built-in Author Mode Operations *(on page 1554)* that have editor variables given as parameter values.
- Running validation scenarios *(on page 547)* that use editor variables inside to reference various resources.
- Executing transformation scenarios (of type ANT, DITA-OT *(on page 2104)*, XSLT *(on page 828)*, etc.) that have editor variables set as parameter values or as values for references to various resources.
- Expanding CSS imports *(on page 1711)* for editing in the **Author** visual editing mode.
- Using specific Java API `UtilAccess.expandEditorVariables(String, URL)` from plugins and framework extensions.

You can use the following editor variables in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin commands of external engines or other external tools, and in various places in the application, such as in transformation scenarios, and validation scenarios:

- **${activeConditionSet}** - Current active profiling condition set *(on page 425)* name. If there is no active condition set, the variable will be replaced with an *empty string*.
- **${af}** - The local file path of the ZIP archive that includes the currently edited document.
- **${afd}** - The local directory path of the ZIP archive that includes the currently edited document.
- **${afdu}** - The URL path of the directory of the ZIP archive that includes the currently edited document.
- **${afn}** - The file name (without parent directory and without file extension) of the zip archive that includes the currently edited file.
- **${afne}** - The file name (with file extension, for example `.zip` or `.epub`, but without parent directory) of the zip archive that includes the currently edited file.
- **${afu}** - The URL path of the ZIP archive that includes the currently edited document.

- **${answer(@id)}** - Used in conjunction with the **${ask}** editor variable. The **@id** parameter is required and identifies the answer from the **${ask}** editor variable with the same ID.

  Example:

  ```
  <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
  <!DOCTYPE topic PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DITA Topic//EN" "topic.dtd">
  <topic id="topic_lcf_1c4_tdb">
      <title></title>
      <body>
          <data name="${ask('Set a data name', String, 'name', @name)}"></data>
          <p>The name is: ${answer(@name)}</p>
      </body>
  </topic>
  ```

  Here is a more complex example of using the answer to an ask in the context of an XPath evaluation:

```
<topicref keys="${xpath_eval(tokenize('${answer(@firstTopic)}', '/')[last()]
 ! substring-before(., '.dita'))}" href="${answer(@firstTopic)}"/>
```

- **${ask('message', type, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1'; 'real_value2':'rendered_value2'; ...), 'default_value', @id)}** - To prompt for values at runtime, use the *ask('message', type, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1'; 'real_value2':'rendered_value2'; ...), 'default-value')* editor variable. You can set the following parameters:
  - **'message'** - The displayed message. Note the quotes that enclose the message.
  - **'default-value'** - Optional parameter. Provides a default value.
  - **@id** - Optional parameter. Used for identifying the variable to reuse the answer using the **${answer(@id)}** editor variable.
  - **type** - Optional parameter (defaults to **generic**), with one of the following values:

Note:

The title of the dialog box will be determined by the type of parameter and as follows:

- For *url* and *relative_url* parameters, the title will be the name of the parameter and the value of the *'message'*.
- For the other parameters listed below, the title will be the name of that respective parameter.
- If no parameter is used, the title will be "Input".

Notice:

Editor variables that are used within a parameter of another editor variable must be escaped within single quotes for them to be properly expanded. For example:

```
${ask( 'Provide a date',generic,'${date(yyyy-MM-dd'T'HH:MM)}')}
```

Parameter	
generic (default)	**Format**: *${ask('message', generic, 'default')}*
	Description: The input is considered to be generic text that requires no special handling.
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Hello world!')}* - The dialog box has a *Hello world!* message displayed. ▪ *${ask('Hello world!', generic, 'Hello again!')}* - The dialog box has a *Hello world!* message displayed and the value displayed in the input box is *'Hello again!'*.
url	**Format:** *${ask('message', url, 'default_value')}*
	Description: Input is considered a URL. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin checks that the provided URL is valid.

Parameter	
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Input URL', url)}* - The displayed dialog box has the name *Input URL*. The expected input type is URL. ▪ *${ask('Input URL', url, 'http://www.example.com')}* - The displayed dialog box has the name *Input URL*. The expected input type is URL. The input field displays the default value *http://www.example.com*.
relative_url	**Format:** *${ask('message', relative_url, 'default')}*
	Description: Input is considered a URL. This parameter provides a file chooser, along with a text field. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin tries to make the URL relative to that of the document you are editing. **Note:** If the *$ask* editor variable is expanded in content that is not yet saved (such as an *untitled* file, whose path cannot be determined), then Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will transform it into an absolute URL.
	Example: *${ask('File location', relative_url, 'C:/example.txt')}* - The dialog box has the name *'File location'*. The URL inserted in the input box is made relative to the currently edited document location.
password	**Format**: *${ask('message', password, 'default')}*
	Description: The input is hidden with bullet characters.
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Input password', password)}* - The displayed dialog box has the name *'Input password'* and the input is hidden with bullet symbols. ▪ *${ask('Input password', password, 'abcd')}* - The displayed dialog box has the name *'Input password'* and the input hidden with bullet symbols. The input field already contains the default **abcd** value.
combobox	**Format:** *${ask('message', combobox, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1';..-.;'real_valueN':'rendered_valueN'), 'default')}*
	Description: Displays a dialog box that offers a drop-down menu. The drop-down menu is populated with the given *rendered_value* values. Choosing such a value will return its associated value (*real_value*).

Parameter	
	Note: The list of *'real_value':'rendered_value'* pairs can be computed using *${xpath_eval()}*.
	Note: The *'default'* parameter specifies the default-selected value and can match either a key or a value.
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Operating System', combobox, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'macos':'macOS';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'macos')}* - The dialog box has the name *'Operating System'*. The drop-down menu displays the three given operating systems. The associated value will be returned based upon your selection. **Note:** In this example, the default value is indicated by the *osx* key. However, the same result could be obtained if the default value is indicated by *macOS*, as in the following example: *${ask('Operating System', combobox, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'macos':'macOS';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'macOS')}* ▪ *${ask('Mobile OS', combobox, ('ios':'iOS';'and':'Android'), 'Android')}* ▪ *${ask('Mobile OS', combobox, (${xpath_eval(for $pair in (['ios', 'iOS'], ['and', 'Android']) return '"' || $pair?1 || '":"' || $pair?2 || '";')}), 'ios')}*
editable_combobox	**Format:** *${ask('message', editable_combobox, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1';...;'real_valueN':'rendered_valueN'), 'default')}*
	Description: Displays a dialog box that offers a drop-down menu with editable elements. The drop-down menu is populated with the given *rendered_value* values. Choosing such a value will return its associated real value (*real_value*) or the value inserted when you edit a list entry. **Note:** The list of *'real_value':'rendered_value'* pairs can be computed using *${xpath_eval()}*.

Parameter	
	Note: The *'default'* parameter specifies the default-selected value and can match either a key or a value.
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Operating System', editable_combobox, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'macos':'macOS';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'macos')}* - The dialog box has the name *'Operating System'*. The drop-down menu displays the three given operating systems and also allows you to edit the entry. The associated value will be returned based upon your selection or the text you input. ▪ *${ask('Operating System', editable_combobox, (${xpath_eval(for $pair in (['win', 'Microsoft Windows'], ['macos', 'macOS'], ['lnx', 'Linux/UNIX']) return '"' || $pair?1 || '":"' || $pair?2 || '";')}), 'ios')}*
radio	**Format:** *${ask('message', radio, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1';...;'real_valueN':'rendered_valueN'), 'default')}*
	Description: Displays a dialog box that offers a series of radio buttons. Each radio button displays a *'rendered_value* and will return an associated *real_value*. **Note:** The list of *'real_value':'rendered_value'* pairs can be computed using *${xpath_eval()}*. **Note:** The *'default'* parameter specifies the default-selected value and can match either a key or a value.
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Operating System', radio, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'macos':'macOS';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'macos')}* - The dialog box has the name *'Operating System'*. The radio button group allows you to choose between the three operating systems.

Parameter	
	Note: In this example, `macOS` is the default-selected value and if selected, it would return *macos* for the output. ▪ *${ask('Operating System', radio, (${xpath_eval(for $pair in (['win', 'Microsoft Windows'], ['macos', 'macOS'], ['lnx', 'Linux/UNIX']) return '"' || $pair?1 || '":"' || $pair?2 || '";')}), 'ios')}*
textarea	**Format:** *${ask('message', textarea, 'default')}*
	Description: The input is a text area that requires no special handling.
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Hello world!', textarea, 'Hello again!')}* - The dialog box would have a *Hello world!* message displayed and the value of *Hello again!* would be displayed in the text area.

Here is an example of a complex XPath expression for constructing a radio button set:

```
${ask('Bundle for keydefs', radio, (${xpath_eval(let $family := 'utah', $bundles := doc(environment-variable('HOME')
 || '/git/dita-author-tools/resource/properties/bundle-data.xml')/*/family[@name eq $family]/*, $pairs :=
 $bundles ! concat('''',./@bundle-code, ''','':'',  ''',./@map-filename,''')  return string-join($pairs, ';'))}),
 @bundle-code)}
```

- **${author.name}** - Expands to the current author name that is set in the **Review** preferences page *(on page 141)*.
- **${caret}** - The position where the cursor is located. This variable can be used in a code template, in **Author** mode operations, or in a **selection** *plugin*.

Note:
The **${caret}** editor variable is available only for parameters that take XML content as values. It is replaced with the **${UNIQUE_CARET_MARKER_FOR_AUTHOR}** macro. The default Author operations process this macro and position the cursor at the designated offset.

Note:
The **${caret}** editor variable can be used for setting a fixed cursor position inside an XML fragment. To set the cursor position depending on the fragment inserted in the document, you can use **AuthorDocumentFilter** and inside the **insertFragment(AuthorDocumentFilterBypass, int, AuthorDocumentFragment)** method, use the **AuthorDocumentFragment.setSuggestedRelativeCaretOffset(int)** API on the given fragment.

- **${cf}** - Current file as file path, that is the absolute file path of the currently edited document.
- **${cfd}** - Current file folder as file path, that is the path of the currently edited document up to the name of the parent folder.
- **${cfdu}** - Current file folder as URL, that is the path of the currently edited document up to the name of the parent folder, represented as a URL.
- **${cfn}** - Current file name without the extension and parent folder. The current file is the one currently open and selected.
- **${cfne}** - Current file name with extension. The current file is the one currently open and selected.
- **${comma}** - Used to display a comma when the actual comma symbol would be considered part of some sort of instruction or delimiter.
- **${configured.ditaot.dir}** - The default directory of the DITA Open Toolkit distribution, as configured in the **DITA** preferences page *(on page 74)*.
- **${cp}** - Current page number. Used to display the current page number on each printed page in the **Editor / Print** Preferences page.
- **${currentFileURL}** - Current file as URL, that is the absolute file path of the currently edited document represented as URL.
- **${date(pattern)}** - Current date. The allowed patterns are equivalent to the ones in the Java SimpleDateFormat class. **Example:** *yyyy-MM-dd*.

  > **Note:**
  > This editor variable supports both the **xs:date** and **xs:datetime** parameters. For details about **xs:date**, go to: http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#date. For details about **xs:datetime**, go to: http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#dateTime.

- **${dbgXML}** - The local file path to the XML document that is currently selected.
- **${dbgXSL}** - The local file path to the XSL/XQuery document that is currently selected.
- **${dita.dir.url}** - A special local contextual editor variable that gets expanded only in the **Libraries** dialog box that is accessible from the **Advanced** tab of DITA transformation scenarios. The **Libraries** dialog box allows you to specify additional libraries (*JAR (on page 2231)* files or additional class paths) to be used by the transformer. This *${dita.dir.url}* editor variable gets expanded to the value of the *dita.dir* parameter from the **Parameters** tab of the DITA transformation scenario.
- **${ds}** - The path of the detected schema as a local file path for the current validated XML document.
- **${dsu}** - The path of the detected schema as a URL for the current validated XML document.
- **${env(VAR_NAME)}** - Value of the *VAR_NAME* environment variable. The environment variables are managed by the operating system. If you are looking for Java System Properties, use the **${system(var.name)}** editor variable.
- **${framework(fr_name)}** - The path (as URL) of the *fr_name* framework.
- **${framework}** - The path (as URL) of the current `framework` directory.
- **${frameworkDir(fr_name)}** - The path (as file path) of the *fr_name* framework.

Note:
Since multiple *frameworks* might have the same name (although it is not recommended), for both *${framework(fr_name)}* and *${frameworkDir(fr_name)}* editor variables Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin employs the following algorithm when searching for a given *framework* name:

- All *frameworks* are sorted, from high to low, according to their **Priority** *(on page 84)* setting from the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*. Only *frameworks* that have the **Enabled** checkbox selected are taken into account.
- Next, if the two or more *frameworks* have the same name and priority, a further sorting based on the **Storage** setting is made, in the exact following order:
  - *Frameworks* stored in the internal Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin options.
  - Additional *frameworks* added in the **Locations** preferences page *(on page 83)*.
  - *Frameworks* installed using the add-ons support.
  - *Frameworks* found in the main *framework* location *(on page 83)* (**Default** or **Custom**).

- **${frameworkDir}** - The path (as file path) of the current `framework` directory.
- **${frameworks}** - The path (as URL) of the `frameworks` directory. When used to define references inside a framework configuration, it expands to the parent folder of that specific framework folder. Otherwise, it expands to the main frameworks folder defined in the **Document Type Association > Locations** preferences page.
- **${frameworksDir}** - The path (as file path) of the `frameworks` directory. When used to define references inside a framework configuration, it expands to the parent folder of that specific framework folder. Otherwise, it expands to the main `frameworks` folder defined in the **Document Type Association > Locations** preferences page.
- **${home}** - The path (as URL) of the user home folder.
- **${homeDir}** - The path (as file path) of the user home folder.
- **${i18n(key)}** - Editor variable used only at *framework*-level to allow translating names and descriptions of **Author** mode actions in multiple actions. For more details, see Localizing Frameworks *(on page 1632)*.
- **${id}** - Application-level unique identifier. It is a short sequence of 10-12 letters and digits that is not guaranteed to be universally unique.
- **${makeRelative(base,location)}** - Takes two URL-like paths as parameters and tries to return a relative path. A use-case would be to insert content references to a certain reusable component when defining code templates.

  Example:

  ```
  ${makeRelative(${currentFileURL}, ${dictionaryURL}#gogu)}
  ```

- **${oxygenHome}** - Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation folder as URL.c
- **${oxygenInstallDir}** - Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation folder as file path.

- **${pd}** - The file path to the folder that contains the current project file (`.xpr`).
- **${pdu}** - The URL path to the folder that contains the current project file (`.xpr`).
- **${pluginDir(pluginID)}** - Each plugin has an ID specified in its `plugin.xml` file. This editor variable expands to the file path of the folder that contains the `plugin.xml` file where that specific plugin ID is located.
- **${pluginDirURL(pluginID)}** - Each plugin has an ID specified in its `plugin.xml` file. This editor variable expands to the URL path of the folder that contains the `plugin.xml` file where that specific plugin ID is located.
- **${pn}** - Current project name.
- **${ps}** - Path separator, which is the separator that can be used on the current platform (Windows, macOS, Linux) between library files specified in the class path.
- **${rootMapDir}** - Will be expanded to the current root map parent directory file path.
- **${rootMapDirURL}** - Will be expanded to the current root map parent directory URL.
- **${rootMapFile}** - Will be expanded to the current root map file path.
- **${rootMapURL}** - Will be expanded to the current root map URL. For example, if in the main DITA Map you define a key with a certain value:

  ```
  <keydef keys="test">
    <topicmeta><keywords><keyword>ABC</keyword></keywords></topicmeta>
  </keydef>
  ```

  you can modify a DITA-OT publishing parameter to have the value: `${xpath_eval(doc('${rootMapURL}')//keydef[@keys='test']/keywords/keyword/text())}`. It will be expanded to the value of that specified key name.
- **${selection}** - The currently selected text content in the currently edited document. This variable can be used in a code template, in **Author** mode operations, or in a **selection** *plugin*.
- **${system(var.name)}** - Value of the *var.name* Java System Property. The Java system properties can be specified in the command-line arguments of the Java runtime as *-Dvar.name=var.value*. If you are looking for operating system environment variables, use the **${env(VAR_NAME)}** editor variable instead.
- **${timeStamp}** - The timestamp, which is the current time in Unix format. For example, it can be used to save transformation results in multiple output files on each transformation.
- **${tp}** - Total number of pages in the document. Used to display the total number of pages on each printed page in the **Editor / Print** Preferences page.
- **${tsf}** - The transformation result file path. If the current opened file has an associated scenario that specifies a transformation output file, this variable expands to it.
- **${uuid}** - Universally unique identifier, a unique sequence of 32 hexadecimal digits generated by the Java UUID class.
- **${xmlCatalogFilesList}** - A list of file paths that point to all known XML catalog files, separated by semi-colons (;).
- **${xpath_eval(expression)}** - Evaluates an XPath expression. Depending on the context, the expression can be:

- **static** - When executed in a non-XML context. For example, you can use such static expressions to perform string operations on other editor variables for composing the name of the output file in a transformation scenario's **Output** tab.

  Example:

  ```
  ${xpath_eval(upper-case(substring('${cfn}', 1, 4)))}
  ```

- **dynamic** - When executed in an XML context. For example, you can use such dynamic expression in a code template or as a value of a parameter of an **Author** mode operation.

  Example:

  ```
  ${ask('Set new ID attribute', generic, '${xpath_eval(@id)}')}
  ```

Custom Editor Variables

An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be created and included in any user-defined expression where a built-in editor variable is also allowed. For example, a custom editor variable may be necessary for configuring the command line of an external tool, the working directory of a custom validator, the command line of a custom XSLT engine, or a custom FO processor.

You can create or configure custom editor variables in the **Custom Editor Variables** preferences page *(on page 66)*. To create a custom editor variable, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Custom Editor Variables**.
2. Click the **New** button at the bottom of the table.
3. Use the subsequent dialog box to specify the **Name**, **Value**, and **Description** for the new editor variable.
4. Click **OK** to save your configuration.

Related information

Editor Variables *(on page 199)*

Custom System Properties

A variety of Java system properties can be set in the application to influence its behavior.

com.oxygenxml.disable.http.protocol.handlers

- **Allowed Values:** `true` or `false`
- **Default Value:** `false`
- **Purpose:** By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the open source Apache HTTP Client software for HTTP(S) connections. If set to `True`, the default Java Sun HTTP(S) will be used instead. You will also lose **WebDAV** support and possibly other related features.

com.oxygenxml.present.license.reminders

- **Allowed Values:** `true` or `false`
- **Default Value:** `true`
- **Purpose:** When set to `false`, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will not display the messages that remind you to renew your Support and Maintenance Pack that covers your current license.

com.oxygenxml.enable.content.reference.caching

- **Allowed Values:** `true` or `false`
- **Default Value:** `true`
- **Purpose:** Enables content reference caching.

com.oxygenxml.eclipse.remove.grid.editing.mode

- **Allowed Values:** `true` or `false`
- **Default Value:** `false`
- **Purpose:** When set to `false`, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin does not show the Grid editing mode when opening an XML document.

com.oxygenxml.default.java.accessibility

- **Allowed Values:** `true` or `false`
- **Default Value:** `false`
- **Purpose:** System property that can be set to `true` to force the default detection of java accessibility. If *com.sun.java.accessibility.AccessBridge* cannot be loaded, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin forces the Java accessibility to be disabled.

com.oxygenxml.floating.license.timeout

- **Allowed Values:** An integer (minutes)
- **Default Value:** `120`
- **Purpose:** Stores the time interval (in minutes) before floating licenses are released in case of application's inactivity.

com.oxygenxml.language

- **Allowed Values:** Language code (for example, `en-us`)
- **Default Value:** N/A
- **Purpose:** Property that holds the language code set during installation.

com.oxygenxml.default.options

- **Allowed Values:** A URL-type relative or absolute path.
- **Default Value:** N/A
- **Purpose:** Provides the path to an XML file containing default application options. For more details, see Customizing Default Options *(on page 196)*.

com.oxygenxml.customOptionsDir

- **Allowed Values:** A file system absolute path pointing to a folder.
- **Default Value:** N/A
- **Purpose:** Sets a folder to be used by the application to load and save preference files. The default location where the options are saved varies according to the operating system. For more details, see Importing/Exporting/Resetting Global Options *(on page 198)*.

com.oxygenxml.ApplicationDataFolder **(Windows only)**

- **Allowed Values:** A file system absolute path pointing to a folder.
- **Default Value:** `%APPDATA%`
- **Purpose:** When the application runs on Windows, you can set this property to change the location where the application considers that the *APPDATA* folder is located.

com.oxygenxml.editor.frameworks.url

- **Allowed Values:** A URL-type absolute path.
- **Default Value:** `OXYGEN_DIR \frameworks`
- **Purpose:** Changes the folder where the application considers that the main *frameworks* are installed. It has the same effect as changing the custom *frameworks* directory value in the **Location** preferences page *(on page 83)*.

com.oxygenxml.editor.plugins.dir

- **Allowed Values:** The path can be specified with any of the following:
  - A URL or file path that is relative to the application's installation folder (for example: `-Dcom.oxygenxml.editor.plugins.dir=my-plugins`).
  - A system variable that specifies the file path (for example: `-Dcom.oxygenxml.editor.plugins.dir=${system(CONFIG)}/plugins`).
  - An environmental variable that specifies the file path (for example: `-Dcom.oxygenxml.editor.plugins.dir=${env(CONFIG)}/plugins`).
- **Default Value:** N/A
- **Purpose:** Specifies the directory where the application finds *plugins* to load.

com.oxygenxml.MultipleInstances

- **Allowed Values:** `true` or `false`
- **Default Value:** `false`
- **Purpose:** If set to `true`, multiple instances of the application are allowed to be started.

com.oxygenxml.xep.location

- **Allowed Values:** A file system absolute path pointing to a folder.
- **Default Value:** N/A
- **Purpose:** Points to a folder where RenderX XEP is installed. Has the same effect as configuring XEP in the **FO Processors** preferences page *(on page 171)*.

com.oxygenxml.additional.classpath

- **Allowed Values:** A list of *JAR (on page 2231)*-type resources separated by a classpath separator.
- **Default Value:** N/A
- **Purpose:** An additional list of libraries to be used in the application's internal class loader in addition to the libraries specified in the `lib` folder.

com.oxygenxml.user.home **(Windows only)**

- **Allowed Values:** A file system absolute path pointing to a folder.
- **Default Value:** `USERPROFILE` folder
- **Purpose:** Overwrites the user home directory that was implicitly detected for the application.

com.oxygenxml.use.late.delegation.for.author.extensions

- **Allowed Values:** `true` or `false`
- **Default Value:** `true`
- **Purpose:** All Java extensions in a *framework* configuration are instantiated in a separate class loader. When **true**, the *JAR* libraries used in a certain document type will have priority to resolve classes before delegating to the parent class loader. When **false**, the parent class loader will take precedence.

com.oxygenxml.stack.size.validation.threads

- **Allowed Values:** The number of bytes used for validation threads.
- **Default Value:** `5*1024*1024`
- **Purpose:** Some parts of the application (validation, content completion) that use the Relax NG parser sometimes require a larger *Thread* stack size to parse complex schemas. The default value should be more than enough.

com.oxygenxml.jing.skip.validation.xhtml.data.attrs

- **Allowed Values:** `true` or `false`
- **Default Value:** `true`
- **Purpose:** By default, the Relax NG validation was configured to skip validation for XHTML attributes that start with "data-", which should be skipped from validation according to the XHTML 5 specification.

com.oxygenxml.report.problems.url

- **Allowed Values:** User-defined URL
- **Default Value:** N/A
- **Purpose:** The URL where a problem reported through the **Report Problem** dialog box is sent. The report is sent in XML format using the **report** parameter with the POST HTTP method.

com.oxygenxml.parallel.title.computing.threads

- **Allowed Values:** Integers
- **Default Value:** `4`
- **Purpose:** The number of parallel threads that will be used to compute referenced topic titles. Increasing this value reduces the amount of time it takes to compute topic titles in the **DITA Maps Manager** view.

com.oxygenxml.prefer.plugin.classloader.context.loader

- **Allowed Values:** `true` or `false`
- **Default Value:** `true`
- **Purpose:** Used to instruct the application to use the plugin class loader when there is code that loads content (usually Xerces code) using the thread's class loader. For instance, if you have a plugin that specifies a certain Xerces version and you want to load that version instead of the one from **Oxygen's** `lib` directory.

com.oxygenxml.classic.file.output.stream.save

- **Allowed Values:** `true` or `false`
- **Default Value:** `false`
- **Purpose:** When set to `true`, the files are saved using a Java classic file output stream, which destroys the NTFS alternate data streams set on the file. However, this might prevent data loss in the rare occasions when Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin saves empty file content over shared network drives.

com.oxygenxml.format.indent.files.parallel

- **Allowed Values:** `true` or `false`
- **Default Value:** `true`

- **Purpose:** By default, when using the **Format and Indent Files** action from the **Project Explorer** view, up to four parallel threads are used by the operation, speeding up the processing when formatting very large or a large amount of documents. If the system property is set to `false`, only one thread will be used for the formatter.

com.oxygenxml.eclipse.dark.color.theme

- **Allowed Values:** `true` or `false`
- **Default Value:** `false`
- **Purpose:** Set this property to `true` to enforce a dark color theme when opening XML documents.

Localizing of the User Interface

To localize the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, you can use one of the following methods:

- **Localization through the update site:**

  Start Eclipse, go to **Help > Install New Software**. Click **Add Site** in the **Available Software** tab of the **Software Updates** dialog box. Enter https://www.oxygenxml.com/InstData/Author/Eclipse/site.xml in the location field of the **Add Site** dialog box. Click OK. Select the language pack checkbox.

- **Localization through the zip archive:**

  Go to https://www.oxygenxml.com/download.html and download the zip archive with the plugin language pack. Unzip the downloaded zip archive in the `dropins` subdirectory of the Eclipse install directory. Restart Eclipse.

If your operating system is running in the language you want to start Eclipse in (for example, you are using Japanese version of Windows, and you want to start Eclipse in Japanese), Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin matches the appropriate language from the language pack. However, if your operating system is running in a language other than the one you want to start Eclipse in (for example, you are using the English version of Windows, and you want to start Eclipse in Japanese, if you have the required operating system language support including the keyboard layouts and input method editors installed), specify the `-nl <locale>` command-line argument when you launch Eclipse. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the translation file that matches the specified `<locale>`.

You can also localize the Eclipse plugin to a different language than the initial languages in the language pack. Duplicate the `plugin.properties` file from the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin plugin installation directory, translate all the keys in the file and change its name to `plugin_<locale>.properties`.

5.
Perspectives

An Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *perspective (on page 2232)* is a layout geared towards a specific use. The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin interface uses standard interface conventions and components to provide a familiar and intuitive editing environment across all operating systems. There are several *perspectives* that you can use to work with documents in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. You can change the *perspective* by selecting the respective icon in the top-right corner of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin or by selecting the *perspective* from the **Window > Perspective > Open Perspective** menu.

Oxygen XML Perspective

The **Oxygen XML** *perspective (on page 2232)* is the most commonly used *perspective* and it is the default *perspective* when you start Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for the first time. It is the *perspective* that you will use to edit the content of your XML documents.

To switch the focus to this *perspective*, select **Oxygen XML** from the **Window > Open Perspective** menu..

The layout of this *perspective* is composed of the following components:

Menus

Provides menu driven access to all the features and functions available in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. Most of the menus are common for all types of documents. However, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes some context-sensitive and *framework (on page 2231)*-specific menus that are only available for a specific context or type of document.

Toolbars

Provides easy access to common and frequently used functions. Each icon is a button that acts as a shortcut to a related function. Most of the toolbars are common for all types of documents. However, **Author** mode also includes *framework (on page 2231)*-specific toolbars, depending on the type of document that is being edited (for example, if you are editing a DITA document, a *DITA Author Custom Actions* toolbar is available that includes operations that are specific to DITA documents).

Editor Pane

The main editing pane where you spend most of your time reading, editing, applying markup, and validating your documents.

Views

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a large variety of *dockable (on page 2229)* views to assist you with editing, viewing, searching, validating, transforming, and organizing your

documents. The most commonly used views are displayed by default and you can choose to display others by selecting them from the **Window > Show View** menu.

When two or more views are displayed, the application provides divider bars. Divider bars can be dragged to a new position increasing the space occupied by one panel while decreasing it for the other.

As the majority of the work process centers around the Editor area, other views can be hidden using the toggle controls located on the top corner of the view (▭).

Some of the most helpful views in the **Oxygen XML** *perspective* include the following:

- **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* - Enables the definition of projects and logical management of the documents they contain.
- **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* - For DITA document types, this view helps you organize, manage, and edit DITA topics and maps.
- **Outline** view *(on page 301)* - It provides an XML tag overview and offers a variety of functions, such as modifications follow-up, document structure change, document tag selection, and elements filtering.
- **Results view** *(on page 310)* - Displays the messages generated as a result of user actions such as validations *(on page 523)*, transformation scenarios *(on page 796)*, spell checking in multiple files *(on page 269)*, search operations, and others. Each message is a link to the location related to the event that triggered the message.
- **Attributes** view *(on page 305)* - Presents all possible attributes of the current element and allows you to edit attribute values. You can also use this view to insert attributes in **Text** mode. **Author** mode also includes an in-place attribute editor *(on page 383)*.
- **Model** view *(on page 307)* - Presents the currently edited element structure model and additional documentation as defined in the schema.
- **Elements view** *(on page 308)* - Presents a list of all defined elements that you can insert at the current cursor position according to the document's schema. In **Author** mode this view *(on page 386)* includes tabs that present additional information relative to the cursor location.
- **Entities** view *(on page 309)* - Displays a list with all entities declared in the current document as well as built-in ones.
- **Transformation Scenarios** view *(on page 940)* - Displays a list with all currently configured transformation scenarios.
- **XPath/XQuery Builder** view *(on page 1451)* - Displays the results from running an XPath expression.
- **Text** view *(on page 840)* - Displays the text output that is produced in XSLT transformations.
- **Browser** view *(on page 839)* - Displays HTML output from XSLT transformations.

- **Problems** view - A general Eclipse view that displays system-generated errors, warnings, or information associated with a resource.
- **Console** view *(on page 279)* - Status information generated by the Schema detection, validation, and transformation threads.

Related information

Editing Supported Document Types *(on page 281)*

Editing Modes *(on page 220)*

Oxygen DB Perspective

The **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)* allows you to manage databases. To switch the focus to this *perspective*, select **Oxygen DB** from the **Window > Open perspective** menu.

The **Database** *perspective* offers various helpful features, including:

- Support for browsing multiple connections at the same time.
- Support for both *Relational* and *Native XML* databases.
- Browsing the structure of databases.
- Viewing tables from databases.
- Inspecting or modifying data.
- Specifying XML Schemas for XML fields.
- SQL execution.
- XQuery execution.
- Data export to XML.

Supported Databases

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports numerous types of databases, including:

- eXist XML Database
- IBM DB2 (Enterprise edition only)
- JDBC-ODBC Bridge
- MarkLogic (Enterprise edition only)
- MySQL
- Oracle 11g (Enterprise edition only)
- PostgreSQL (Enterprise edition only)
- SharePoint (CMS)
- Microsoft SQL Server 2005 and Microsoft SQL Server 2008 (Enterprise edition only) **(Deprecated)**

Note:
For the databases marked with "Enterprise edition only", the XML capabilities are only available in the Enterprise edition of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. For a detailed feature matrix that compares

the Academic, Professional, and Enterprise editions of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin go to the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

Supported Capabilities

The supported non-XML capabilities are as follows:

- Browsing the structure of the database instance.
- Opening a database table in the **Table Explorer** view *(on page 1466)*.
- Handling the values from **XML Type** columns as String values.

Note:
The non-XML capabilities are available in the Enterprise, Academic, and Professional editions of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin by registering the database driver as a *Generic JDBC* type driver when defining the data source for accessing the database. For more information, see Database Connection Support *(on page 1468)*.

The supported XML capabilities are as follows:

- Displaying an XML Schema node in the tree of the database structure (for databases with an XML-specific structure) with actions for opening, editing, and validating the schemas in an Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin editor panel.
- Handling the values from **XML Type** columns as XML instance documents that can be opened and edited in an Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin editor panel.
- Validating an XML instance document added to an XML Type (column of a table, etc.)

Tip:
Connections configured on relational data sources can be used to import data to XML or to generate XML schemas.

Layout of the Database Perspective

The layout of this *perspective* is composed of the following components:

Menus

Provides menu driven access to all the features and functions available in the perspective.

Toolbars

Contains all actions needed to configure and control the debugging process.

Editor Pane

The main editing pane where you spend most of your time reading, editing, applying markup, and validating your documents.

Data Source Explorer View *(on page 1464)*

Provides browsing support for the configured connections.

Table Explorer View *(on page 1466)*

Provides table content editing support for inserting new rows, deleting table rows, editing cell values, exporting to an XML file, and more.

Related information

Working with Databases *(on page 1464)*

Data Source Explorer View *(on page 1464)*

Table Explorer View *(on page 1466)*

6.
Editing Modes

The main editing area in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes several editing modes to suit the type of editing that you want to perform. You can easily switch between modes by clicking on the desired mode at the bottom of the main editing pane. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers the following editing modes:

- **Text** *(on page 220)* - This mode presents the source of the document.
- **Grid** *(on page 220)* - This mode displays the document as a structured grid of nested tables.
- **Author** *(on page 221)* - This mode enables you to edit in a WYSIWYG-like editor.

The default editing mode that will be initially opened for each type of document can be set in two ways:

- If the **Allow Document Type specific edit mode setting to override the general mode setting** option *(on page 126)* is selected in the **Edit Modes** preferences page, then the edit mode specified in the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* is used when that particular type of document is initially opened.
- If the **Allow Document Type specific edit mode setting to override the general mode setting** option *(on page 126)* is not selected, then the edit mode specified in the table in the **Edit Modes** preferences page *(on page 126)* is used when that particular type of document is initially opened.

Text Editing Mode

The **Text** mode editor in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is designed to be a simple, yet powerful, XML source editor. It provides support to help you edit, transform, and debug XML-based documents. It is similar to other common text editors, but Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes specialized editing actions, a powerful *Content Completion Assistant*, and many other unique features.

To switch to this mode, select **Text** at the bottom of the editing area.

For more information about working with XML documents in **Text** mode and all of the details about its features, see the **Editing XML Documents in Text Mode** section *(on page 282)*.

Related information

Editing XML Documents in Text Mode *(on page 282)*

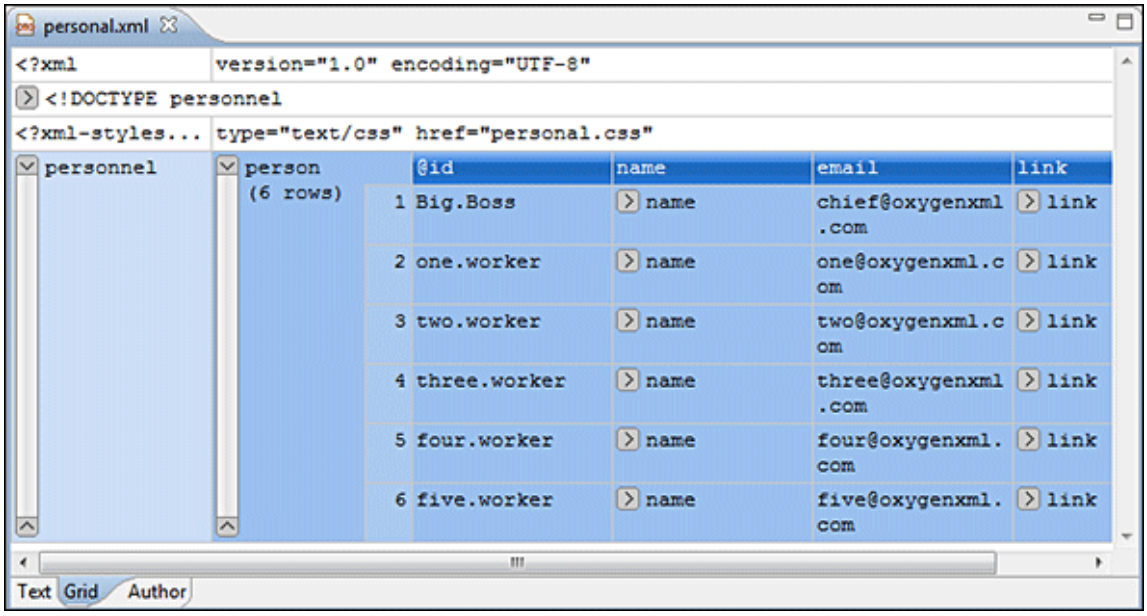
Grid Editing Mode

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Grid** editing mode displays the XML document as a structured grid of nested tables where the text content can be modified without directly interacting with the XML markup. This is helpful for non-technical users who want to edit text content without modifying the XML markup. You can

easily expand or collapse elements within the table and the document structure can be changed with simple drag/drop or copy/paste operations.

To switch to this mode, select **Grid** at the bottom of the editing area.

Figure 35. Grid Editing Mode



For more information about working with XML documents in **Grid** mode and all of the details about its features, see the **Editing XML Documents in Grid Mode** section *(on page 333)*.

Related information

Editing XML Documents in Grid Mode *(on page 333)*

Author Editing Mode

The **Author** editing mode in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to visually edit XML documents in a user-friendly interface that is similar to a WYSIWYG word processor. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for visually editing the most commonly used XML vocabularies in **Author** mode, including DITA, DocBook, TEI, and XHTML. Adding text content is as simple as doing so in a standard text editor but the content is rendered similar to how you will see it in the output. Tables, images, and media objects (such as videos) are also rendered comparable to the output.

To switch to this mode, click the **Author** button at the bottom of the editing area.

For more information about working with XML documents in **Author** mode and all of the details about its features, see the **Editing XML Documents in Author Mode** section *(on page 343)*.

Related information

Editing XML Documents in Author Mode *(on page 343)*

7.
Working With Documents

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a variety of general features that can be used when working with most types of documents. More specialized features are available when working with specific types of documents, such as the various types of XML documents, CSS *(on page 612)*, JavaScript *(on page 617)*, Markdown *(on page 628)*, and more. For details about those specialized features for specific types of documents, see Editing Supported Document Types *(on page 281)*.

This chapter includes information about how to create and work with documents, working with projects, and various general editing features.

Creating, Opening, Saving, and Closing Documents

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes various features, actions, and wizards to assist you with creating new files and working with existing files. This section explains many of these features, including information on creating new documents, opening, saving, and closing existing files, searching documents, viewing file properties, and more.

Creating New Documents and Templates

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a helpful **New Document** wizard that allows you to customize and create new files from a large list of document types and built-in templates. You can also create your own templates *(on page 229)* and share them with others *(on page 235)*.

To create a new document:

1. Click the **New** button on the toolbar or select **File > New > Other > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin**.
2. Select the type of document that you want to create.

   > **Tip:**
   > You can use the text filter field at the top of the dialog box to search for a specific template.

3. Click the **Next** button, then **Finish**.

New Document Wizard

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports a wide range of document types. The **New Document** wizard presents the default associations between a file extension and the type of editor that opens the file. The **New Document** wizard creates a skeleton document that may contain a root element, the document prolog, and possibly other child elements depending on options that are specific for each schema type. The wizard also

provides access to the **New from Templates** option *(on page 229)* that opens a wizard where you can create a document based upon built-in templates or custom templates.

New Document Wizard

To create a new document in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, follow these steps:

1. Click the **New** button on the toolbar or select **File > New > Other > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin**.

   Result: The **New Document** wizard is displayed with all the supported document types.

2. Select the type of document that you want to create. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a series of Eclipse wizards that help you create the new document based upon the type you choose.

   Tip:
   You can use the text filter field at the top of the dialog box to search for a specific template.

3. Click **Next**.

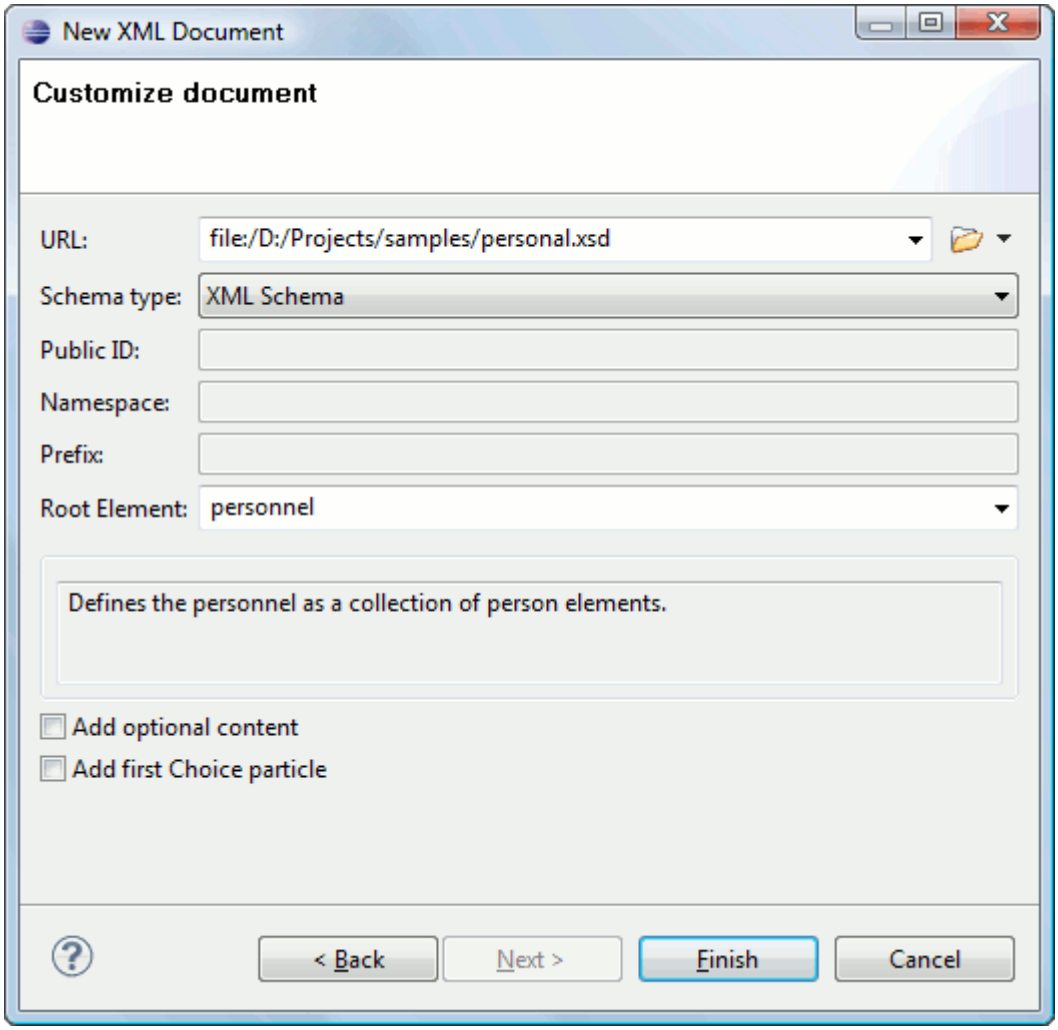
   Result: The next wizard page allows you to select a path where you want to store the new file and for some document types it includes some customization options. If you selected **XML File** or **XML Schema (XSD) File** for the type of document, you need to select the storage path and click **Next** again to reach customization options.

   Note:
   For DITA documents, the dialog box includes some additional options for generating a title, file name, and root ID attribute. For more information, see Creating a New DITA Topic *(on page 1946)*.

4. After configuring the options for the particular type of document, click **Finish** to create the file. If the **Open file for editing when done** option is selected, the new file will be opened in the appropriate editor.

New XML Document Wizard

Figure 36. New XML File Configuration Options



If you selected **XML File** for the type of document you want to create, the wizard will include the following options:

URL

Specifies the path to the schema file. When you select a file, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin analyzes its content and tries to fill in the rest of the dialog box.

Schema Type

Allows you to select the schema type. The following options are available: `XML Schema`, `DTD`, `RelaxNG XML syntax`, `RelaxNG compact syntax`, and `NVDL`.

Public ID

Specifies the PUBLIC identifier declared in the document prolog.

Namespace

Specifies the document namespace.

Prefix

Specifies the prefix for the namespace of the document root.

Root Element

Populated with elements defined in the specified schema, enables selection of the element used as document root.

Description pane

A small description of the selected document root.

Add Optional Content

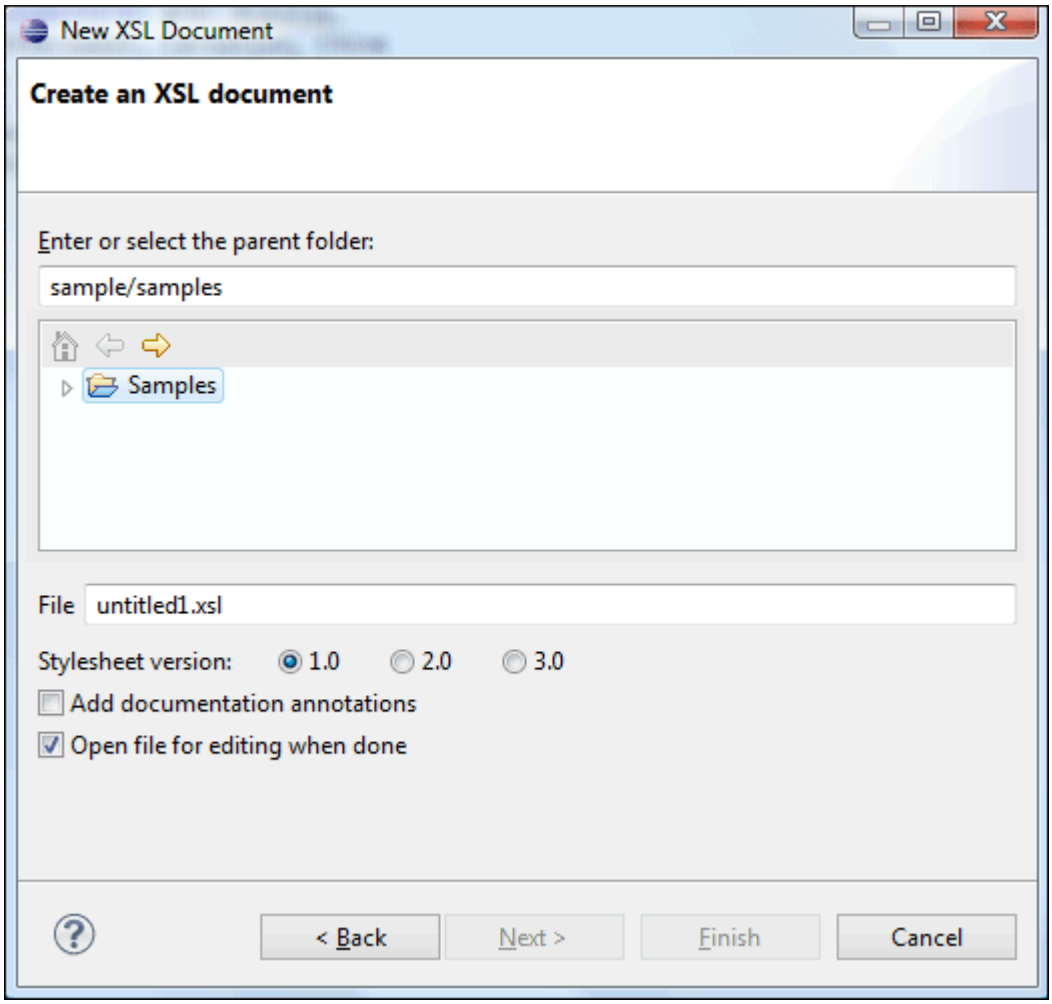
If you select this option, the elements and attributes defined in the XML Schema as optional are generated in the skeleton XML document.

Add First Choice Particle

If you select this option, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin generates the first element of an `<xs:choice>` schema element in the skeleton XML document. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin creates this document in a new editor panel when you click **Finish**.

XSL Document Wizard

Figure 37. New XSL Document Configuration Options



If you selected **Stylesheet (XSL) File** for the type of file you want to create, the wizard will include the following options:

Stylesheet version

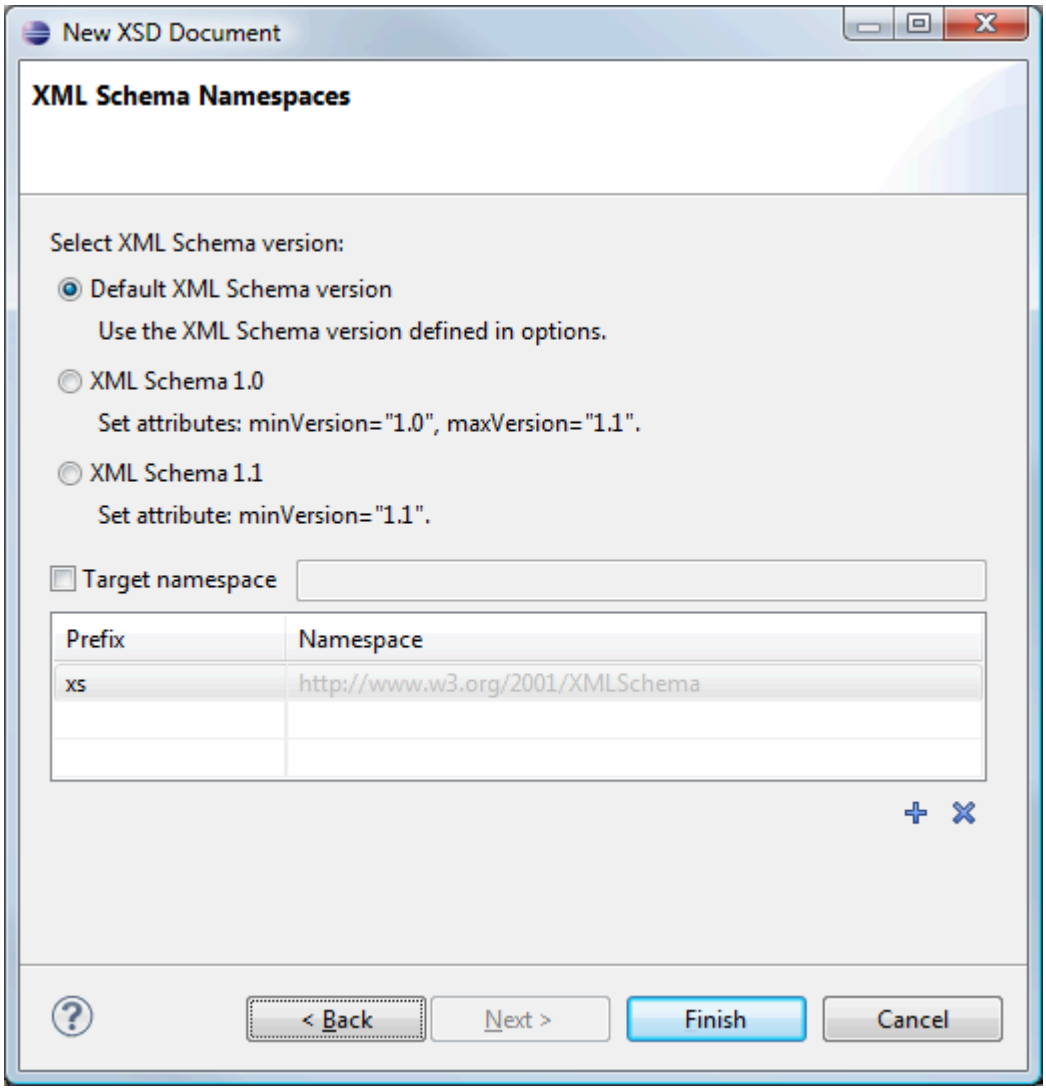
Allows you to select the **Stylesheet version** number. You can select from: `1.0`, `2.0`, and `3.0`.

Add documentation annotations

Select this option to generate the stylesheet annotation documentation.

XML Schema (XSD) Document Wizard

Figure 38. New XML Schema Configuration Options



If you selected **XML Schema (XSD) File** for the type of file you want to create, the wizard will include the following options:

Default XML Schema version

Select this option to use the XML Schema version defined in the **XML Schema** preferences page *(on page 181)*.

XML Schema 1.0

Sets the `@minVersion` attribute to **1.0** and the `@maxVersion` attribute to **1.1**.

XML Schema 1.1

Sets the `@minVersion` attribute to **1.1**.

Target namespace

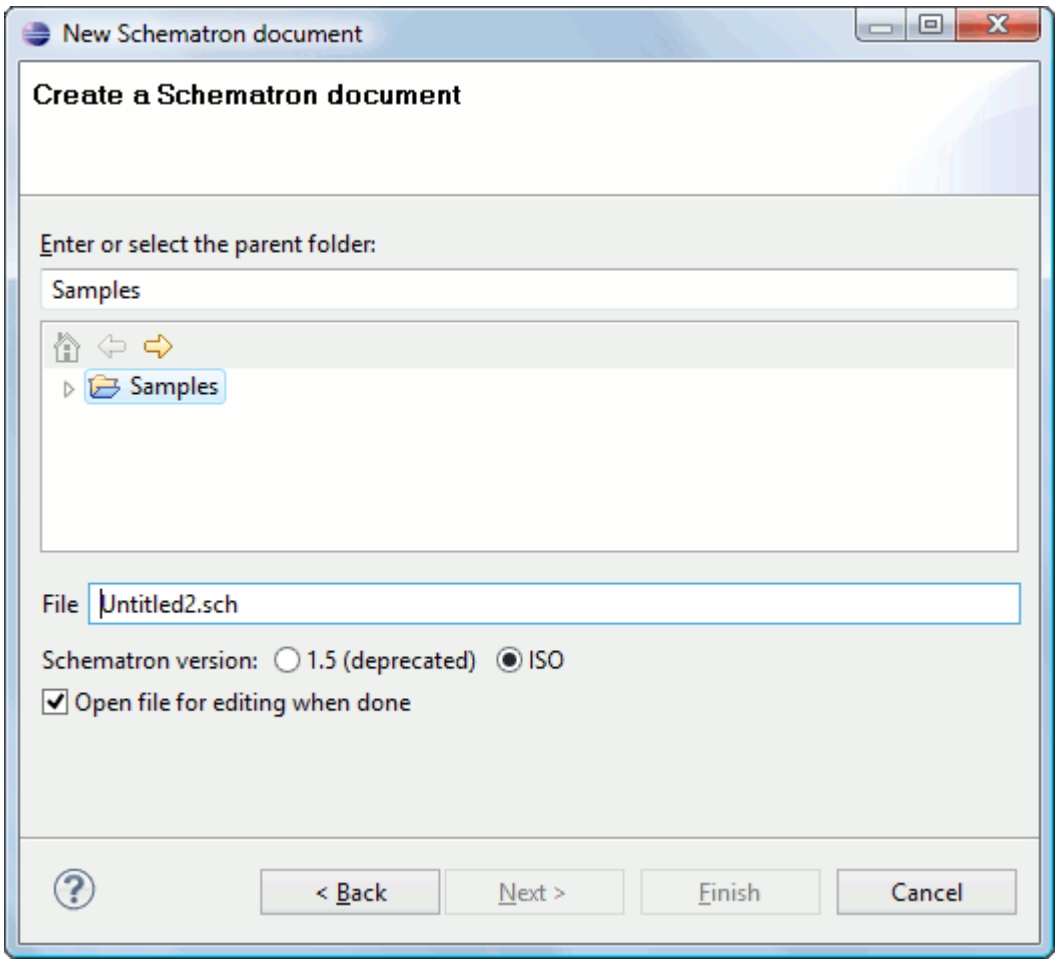
Allows you to specify the schema target namespace.

Namespace prefix declaration table

This table contains namespace prefix declarations. Table information can be managed using the **New** and **Delete** buttons.

Schematron Document Wizard

Figure 39. New Schematron Configuration Options



If you selected **Schematron File** for the type of file you want to create and selected the **Customize** option, the configuration dialog box will include the following option:

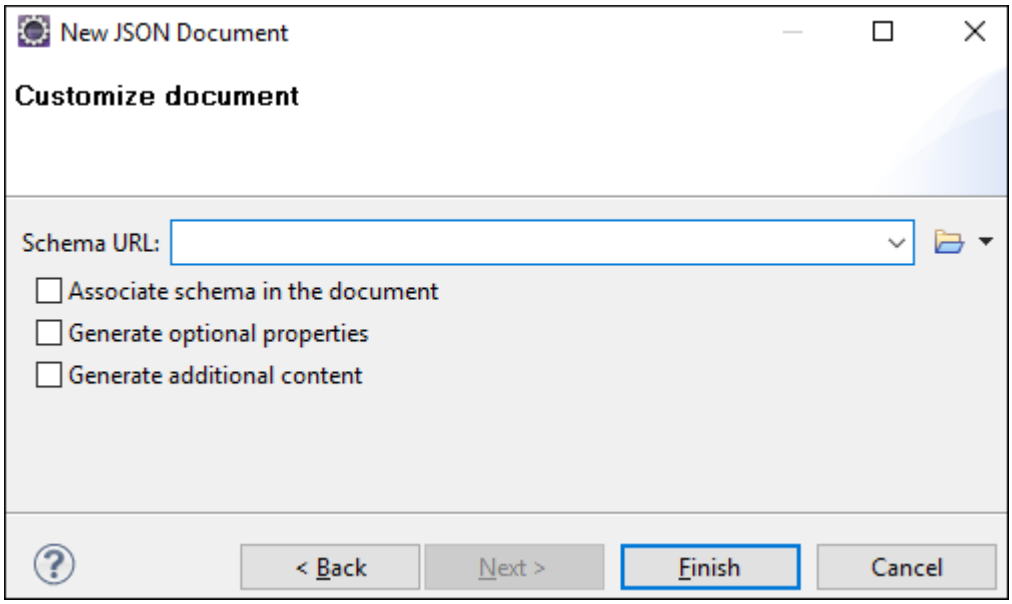
Schematron version

Specifies the Schematron version. Possible options: `1.5` (deprecated) and `ISO`.

Note:
Starting with version 16.0 of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, the support for Schematron 1.5 is deprecated. It is recommended to use ISO Schematron instead.

JSON Document Configuration Page

Figure 40. New JSON Configuration Wizard Page



If you select **JSON** for the type of file you want to create and select the **Customize** option, the configuration dialog box will include the following options:

Schema URL

Specifies the path to a JSON Schema file that will be used to generate key-value pairs.

Associate Schema in the Document

If you select this option, the JSON instance will be generated with the JSON Schema associated directly in the document.

Generate Optional Properties

If you select this option, the JSON instance will be generated with optional properties that are defined in the JSON schema. Otherwise, only the required properties will be generated.

Generate Additional Content

If you select this option, the JSON instance will be generated with additional properties that are defined in the JSON schema as `additionalProperties` and additional items that are defined as `additionalItems` (in the case of an Array).

Creating New Documents Based on Templates

The **New from Templates** wizard *(on page 222)* allows you to select built-in templates or custom templates that you or other users created in previous sessions. You can access this wizard by selecting the **New from Templates** option in the **New Document** wizard *(on page 222)*.

The categories of templates presented in the wizard include:

- **User-defined template directory** - You can add your own custom templates by creating template files *(on page 229)* in a directory and then add that directory to the list of template directories that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses in the **Document Templates** preferences page *(on page 80)*. This user-defined directory will appear in the **New from templates** wizard.
- **Global templates** - Contains a list of built-in templates as well as any user-defined custom templates *(on page 229)* that are saved in the `templates` directory of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation folder (*`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`/templates`).
- **Framework templates** - Contains the list of templates defined in the **Document Type** configuration dialog box (**Templates** tab) *(on page 106)* for each *framework (on page 2231)*.

New from Templates Wizard

To create a new document using this wizard, follow these steps:

1. Click the **New** button on the toolbar and select **New from Templates** (or select **File > New > Other > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin > New From Templates**).

   Result: The **New from Templates** wizard is displayed where you to select various types of document templates.
2. Select the type of document that you want to create and click **Next**.
3. Choose the storage path and a file name for the new document.
4. Click the **Finish** button.

   Result: The new file is created and if the **Open file for editing when done** option is selected, the new file will be opened in the appropriate type of editor.

Creating New Document Templates

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to create your own custom document templates and they will appear in the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)*.

Creating a New Document Template

To create your own custom document template and have it appear in the new document wizard, follow these steps:

1. Create a new file (whatever type of document you need) and customize it to become a starting point for creating new files of this type.

   Tip:
   You can use editor variables *(on page 199)* in the template file content and they will be expanded when the files are opened. Also, see Customizing Document Templates *(on page 231)* for other template customization tips (for example, you could add placeholders or hints *(on page 234)* to assist authors).

2. Save the new document template and reference that location in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. There are several options for doing this:
   - **Saving the new template in a specific framework's directory** - Save the new template in a directory (for example, called `templates`) within that specific framework directory (usually a custom framework *(on page 1533)*). Then open the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* for that specific framework, go to the **Templates** tab *(on page 106)*, and click the + button in the bottom-right corner to add your new directory to the list. It is recommended that the reference be made relative to the framework directory (for example, `${frameworkDir}/templates`). You can also remove any existing entries in the list that aren't applicable or won't be used in your custom framework. Click **OK** to close the configuration dialog box and then **OK** or **Apply** to save your changes.
   - **Saving the new template in the Oxygen installation directory** - Save the new template in the `templates` directory of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation directory (*`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`/templates`). Document templates saved in this directory will appear in the **Global templates** category in the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)*.
   - **Saving the new template in a custom directory** - Save the new template in any directory of your choice and then add that directory to the list of templates in the **Document Templates** preferences page *(on page 80)*. This user-defined directory will appear in the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)* along with all the new document templates that you save inside it. Click **OK** or **Apply** to save your changes.

   Tip:
   If you want to create a new template for a binary file (e.g. a zip archive), you need to add *.bin* to the end of the file name (for example, **.zip.bin* or **.epub.bin*). Otherwise, the files will be treated as XML/text documents and you will be prompted to choose the editor type.

   Attention:
   The name that you use to save the template will be the name that appears in the new document wizard, including capitalization, space, and characters (for example, `My Custom Template1.xml` will appear in the new file wizard as **My Custom Template1**). You can also configure the displayed name in a properties file by following the procedure found in the Configure the Displayed Names for Document Templates *(on page 233)* section.

3. Open the new document wizard (**New** toolbar button or **File > New > New from Templates**) and you should see your custom template in the appropriate folder.

> **Note:**
> For DITA templates, they will also appear in the dialog box for creating new DITA topics from the **DITA Maps Manager**, but if you customize the template *(on page 231)*, you need to set the `type` property to **dita** in the corresponding properties file.

Related information

Customizing Document Templates *(on page 231)*

Sharing Custom Document Templates *(on page 235)*

Customizing Document Templates

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to customize certain aspects of built-in or custom document templates. For example, you can customize the icons or specify a prefix/suffix that will be used for the proposed file name in the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)*.

Customizing the Icons for a Document Template

If you want to customize the icons to be used for document templates, use a properties file to specify the icons using the following procedure:

1. Create a new properties file or edit an existing one following these guidelines:
   a. If you want to create a new properties file, you can use the **Properties** template found in the **New Document** folder in the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)*. If you want to edit an existing template, you can find them within the subfolders in the `templates` folder for each framework (for example, the DITA topic properties file is located in: `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/frameworks/dita/templates/topic/topic.properties`).
   b. Use the same name as your custom template file except with a `.properties` extension (for example, `MyTemplate.properties`).
   c. In this properties file, specify the paths to the icons that will be used in the new file wizard. The properties file should look like this:

```
type=general
smallIcon=../icons/Article_16.png
bigIcon=../icons/Article_48.png
```

> **Tip:**
> For DITA files, the `type` property must be set to **dita**. Otherwise, the template will not appear in the dialog box for creating new DITA topics from the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*. For all other types of files, set it to **general**. The icons specified in this

properties file will only be used for the new file wizards and not in any other part of the interface.

Important:
If you created a new template and chose to use a custom directory for the new template (in step 2 of the new template procedure *(on page 230)*), make sure that the path to the icons is relative to that directory.

2. Save the properties file in the same directory as your custom template.
3. Open the new file wizard (**File > New > New from Templates**) and you should see your custom icons next to the document template in the appropriate folder.

Add a Prefix or Suffix to File Names for a Document Template

You can use a properties file for each document template to add a prefix or suffix to the file name that is proposed in certain dialog boxes when you create a new file from that template. This applies to the following new document dialog boxes:

- The new document dialog box that appears when you click the **New** button on the toolbar (or **File > New > Other > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin**). The prefix or suffix is added to the name of the file in the **File** field.
- The new document dialog box that appears when you select **New > New from Templates > [Template Name] > Next** from the contextual menu in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*. The prefix or suffix is added to the name of the file in the **File** field.
- For DITA files, it also applies to the new document dialog box that appears when you select **Append Child > New**, **Insert Before > New**, or **Insert After > New** from the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*. The prefix or suffix is added to the name of the file in the **Save as** field.
- For DITA files, it also applies to the **Fast Create Topics** dialog box *(on page 1949)* that you can use to create multiple skeleton topics at once.

To add a prefix or suffix to the file names for a document template, follow these steps:

1. Create a new properties file or edit an existing one.
   - If you create a new properties file, use the same name as the template file except with a `.properties` extension (for example, `MyTemplate.properties`). This properties file specifies the prefix/suffix that will be used to propose the file name in the new file wizards.

     When defining the prefix/suffix, the properties file should look something like this:

     ```
     type=general
     filenamePrefix=prod_
     filenameSuffix=_test
     ```

> **Important:**
> For DITA files, the `type` property must be set to **dita**. For all other types of files, set it to **general**.

- If you edit an existing template, simply define the prefix/suffix as specified above *(on page 232)*.

2. Save the properties file in the same directory as the document template.
3. Open the new document wizard (using the methods described above *(on page 232)*) and when you select the appropriate template, you should see your prefix or suffix in the file name that is proposed in that dialog box.

> **Note:**
> The `filenamePrefix` and `filenameSuffix` properties can also have editor variables *(on page 199)* that do not require user interaction (i.e. editor variables that have `${ask()}` and `${answer()}` as values cannot be used).

Configure the Displayed Names for Document Templates

To change the name that is displayed for a document template, use the following procedure:

1. Create a new properties file or edit an existing one. If you create a new properties file, use the same name as the template file except with a `.properties` extension (for example, `MyTemplate.properties`).
2. Add a `displayName` property in the properties file:

```
displayName=My Template Name
```

> **Tip:**
> The names for *framework (on page 2231)*-specific document templates (such as DITA *Topic* or DocBook *Article*, as you would see in the **Framework templates** folder in the **New** file wizard) can be translated via the internationalization support. In this case, the properties file should contain something like:
>
> ```
> displayName=${i18n(tag)}
> ```
>
> where *tag* refers to an entry in the `translation.xml` file for that specific framework (for example, `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/frameworks/dita/i18n/translation.xml` for DITA).

3. Save the properties file in the same directory as the document template.
4. Open the new file wizard (**File > New > New from Templates**) and you should see the new name for the template.

Adding Placeholders or Hints in a Document Template

If a document template contains empty elements, it may not be clear to the Author what should be inserted in them. You can define placeholders in document templates that provide hints for Authors to help them understand what type of content should be added in any particular empty element within the document. The placeholder text is specified using a processing instruction and the placeholders are removed when the Author inserts content in the corresponding element.

To define placeholders in a document template to provide authors with hints, follow this procedure:

1. Edit the document template.
2. Add placeholders in the form of processing instructions within the elements where you want hints to be displayed when an Author creates a document from the template. For example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE topic PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DITA Topic//EN" "topic.dtd">
<topic id="pi">
  <title><?oxy-placeholder content="Enter a title"?></title>
    <shortdesc><?oxy-placeholder content="Writing short descriptions
         induces the writer to clarify the main thesis of the topic.
         We recommended a 50 word limit."?></shortdesc>
  <body>
    <p><?oxy-placeholder content="A paragraph element should be a self-contained
         unit dealing with one idea or point."?></p>
  </body>
</topic>
```

> **Important:**
> The elements that contain the placeholder processing instructions cannot contain other content/text, not even whitespace used for indentation. Otherwise, the placeholder will not be rendered properly.

3. Save the template file.
4. Use the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)* to create a new document using your customized template and you should see the hints in the open document.

Resources

To see a visual demonstration of how to customize document templates and to get more ideas for other advanced customization possibilities, watch our Webinar: **Working with DITA in Oxygen - Customizing the Editing Experience**.

Related information

Creating New Document Templates *(on page 229)*

Sharing Custom Document Templates *(on page 235)*

Sharing Custom Document Templates

Your custom document templates *(on page 229)* can be shared with the other members of your team so that they all have access to the templates in the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)*. The best way to share them is by integrating them in an extended *framework (on page 2231)* (document type) configuration and then sharing the whole framework with the other users.

Sharing Custom Document Templates

To share custom document templates with other members of your team:

1. Create a custom framework by extending an existing one *(on page 1533)*, if you have not already done so.
2. Create the new document template *(on page 229)*, if you haven't already done so.
3. Save the new template in a directory (for example, called `templates`) within your custom framework directory. Then open the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* for that specific framework, go to the **Templates** tab *(on page 106)*, and click the + button in the bottom-right corner to add your new directory to the list. It is recommended that the reference be made relative to the framework directory (for example, `${frameworkDir}/templates`). You can also remove any existing entries in the list that aren't applicable or won't be used in your custom framework.
4. Click **OK** to close the configuration dialog box and then **OK** or **Apply** to save your changes.
5. All that remains is to share the entire framework with anyone who needs to have access to the custom templates. There are several methods for sharing frameworks and you can find details here: Sharing a Framework *(on page 1691)*.

Related information

Sharing a Framework *(on page 1691)*

Opening Documents

To open a document in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, do one of the following:

- Go to **File > Open File** to display the **Open File** dialog box.
- Go to **File > Open URL** to display a dialog box where you can specify a URL (defined by a protocol, host, resource path, and an optional port) or use the browsing actions in the **Browse for remote file** drop-down menu.
- Select the **Open** or **Open with** action from the contextual menu of the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*.

Opening the Current Document in a System Application

To open the currently edited document in the associated system application, use the **View in Browser/ System Application** action that is available in the **XML** menu. If you want to open XML files in a specific internet browser, instead of the associated system application, you can specify the internet browser to be used. To do so, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there. This will take precedence over the default system application settings.

Saving Documents

You can save the document you are editing with one of the following actions:

- **File > Save**.
- **File > Save As** - Displays the **Save As** dialog box, used either to name and save an open document to a file or to save an existing file with a new name.
- **File > Save All** - Saves all open documents.

Closing Documents

To close open documents, you can simply click the close icon ( ) for the particular editor tab or use one of the following actions that are available by right-clicking the current editor tab (or from the **File** menu):

Close (Ctrl + F4 (Command + F4 on macOS))

Closes the currently selected editor.

Close Others

If multiple files are opened, this action is available to close all opened editors in the current group/stack of tabs except for the one you are currently viewing.

Close All (Ctrl + Shift + F4 (Command + Shift + F4 on macOS))

If multiple files are opened, this action is available to close all opened editors in the current group/stack of tabs. If this action is selected from the **File** menu, it closes all opened editors in **all** groups/stacks of tabs.

Working with Remote Documents

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports editing remote files, using the WebDAV, or SFTP protocols. You can edit remote files in the same way you edit local files.

You can open one or more remote files in the **Open using SFTP** dialog box *(on page 237)*

A WebDAV resource can be locked when it is opened in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin by selecting the **Lock WebDAV files on open** option *(on page 166)* to prevent other users to modify it concurrently on the server. If a user tries to edit a locked file, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays an error message that contains the lock owner's name. The lock is released automatically when the editor for that resource is closed in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

To avoid conflicts with other users when you edit a resource stored on a SharePoint server, you can **Check Out** the resource.

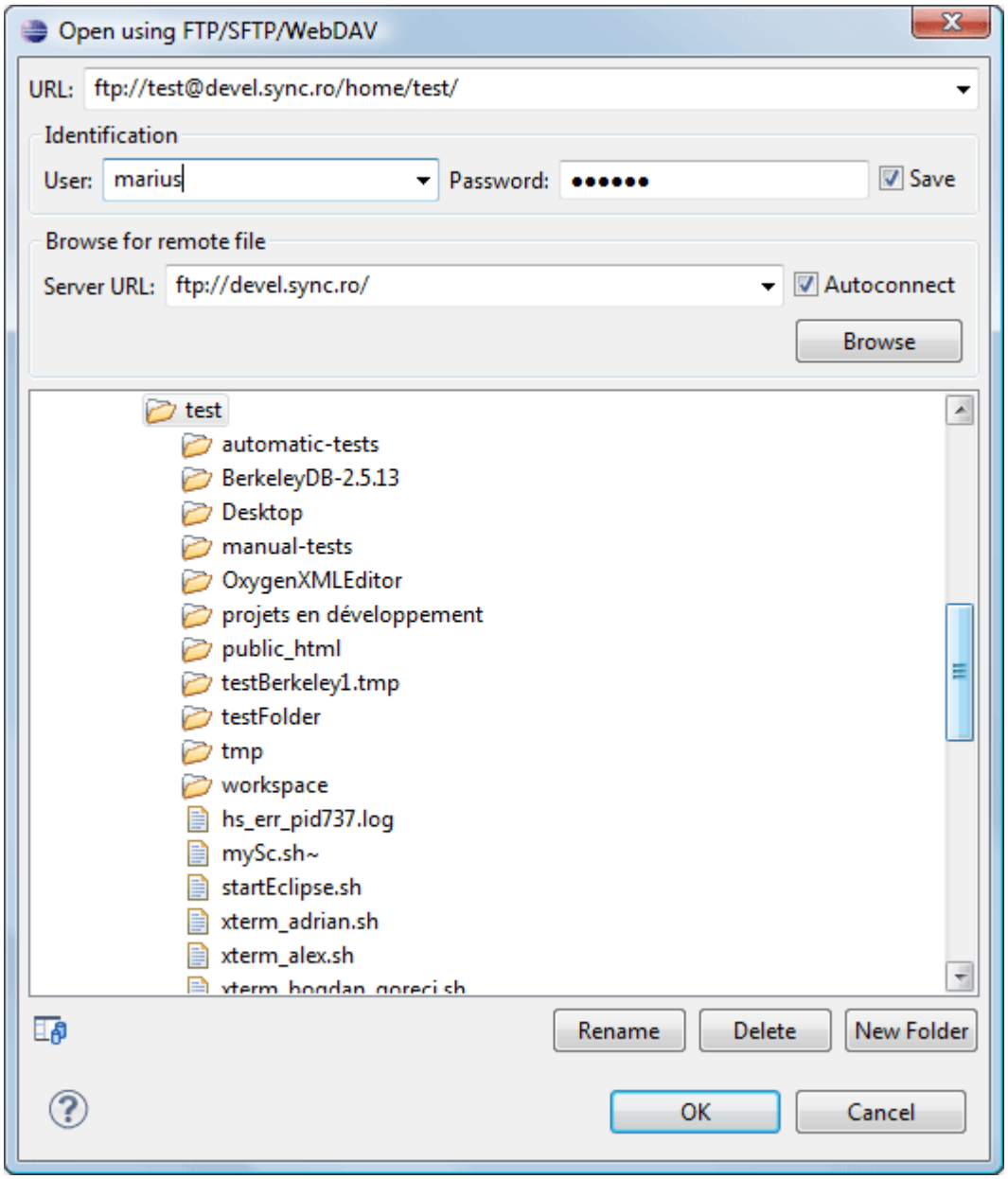
To improve the transfer speed, the content exchanged between Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and the HTTP / WebDAV server is compressed using the GZIP algorithm.

The current WebDAV Connection *(on page 1509)* details can be saved by switching to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)* and then you can browse and manage the connection in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*.

Open URL

To access the **Open using SFTP/WebDAV** dialog box, go to **File > Open URL** menu, then choose the **Browse for remote file** option from the drop-down action list.

Figure 41. Open URL Dialog Box



The displayed dialog box is composed of several parts:

- The editable **URL** combo box where you specify the URL to be opened or saved.

  This combo box also displays the current selection when you change selection by browsing the tree of folders and files on the server.
- The **Identification** section contains the access credentials. If you want to browse for a file on a server, you have to specify the user and password. This information is bound to the selected URL and is also used in opening or saving the file. If the **Save** checkbox is selected, the user and password are saved between editing sessions. The password is encrypted and kept in the options file.

  > **Note:**
  > Your password is well protected. If the options file is used on another machine by a user with a different user name the password, it will become unreadable since the encryption is user-name dependent. This is also true if you add URLs to your project that include a user and password.
- The **Browse for remote file** section contains the **Server URL** combo box and **Autoconnect** checkbox. In the **Server URL** combo box, you can specify the protocol, the server host name, or server IP.

  By pressing the **Browse** button, the directory listing will be shown in the component. When **Autoconnect** is selected, every time the dialog box is displayed, the browse action will be performed.
- The bottom part of the dialog box displays the tree view of the documents stored on the server. You can browse the directories and make multiple selections. Additionally, you can use the **Rename**, **Delete**, and **New Folder** actions to manage the file repository.

  The file names are sorted in a case-insensitive manner.

WebDAV over HTTPS

If you want to access a WebDAV repository across a non-secure network, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to load and save the documents over the HTTPS protocol (if the server understands this protocol) so that any data exchange with the WebDAV server is encrypted.

When a WebDAV repository is first accessed over HTTPS, the server hosting the repository will present a security certificate as part of the HTTPS protocol, without any user intervention. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will use this certificate to decrypt any data stream received from the server. For the authentication to succeed you should make sure the security certificate of the server hosting the repository can be read by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. This means that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can find the certificate in the key store of the Java Runtime Environment where it runs. You know the server certificate is not in the JRE key store if you get the error *No trusted certificate found* when trying to access the WebDAV repository.

Troubleshooting HTTPS

If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin cannot connect to an HTTPS-capable server and an error message appears stating that it is "unable to find a valid certification path to the requested target", the HTTPS server is most likely either configured to use a self-signed certificate or to use a certificate issued by an unknown authority that the *Java Runtime Environment (JRE)* used by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin does not trust.

Note:
For Windows, starting with version 26.0, by default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the trusted root certificates from the Windows certificate store instead of the JRE cacerts store. To trust a certificate, the root certificate should be imported in the Windows Trusted Root certificates store.

Tip:
To make Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin accept a certificate even if it is invalid, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Network Connection settings > HTTP(S)/WebDAV**, and select the **Automatically accept a security certificate, even if invalid** option.

Notice:
This **Automatically accept a security certificate, even if invalid** option does not influence the entire Eclipse workspace. It is limited to URLs that are opened directly by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

To trust a certificate, follow this procedure:

1. Export a certificate into a local file using any HTTPS-capable web browser:

   Chrome or Edge

   a. Navigate to the page that uses the certificate.
   b. Right-click the page and select **Inspect**.
   c. Select the **Security** tab.
   d. Click **View Certificate**.**Step Result:** A **Certificate** dialog box is displayed.
   e. Select the **Details** tab of the **Certificate** dialog box.
   f. Click the **Export** button.
   g. In the resulting dialog box, for the **Save as type** option, select **DER-encoded binary, single certificate (*.der)**.
   h. Save the certificate to the local file `server.der`.

   Safari

   a. Navigate to the page that uses the certificate.
   b. If there is a *"This connection is not private"* message, click **Show Details** and in the expanded panel, click **view the certificate**.

c. Otherwise, in the address bar, click the *padlock icon* on the left side of the website name and in the displayed pop-up, click **Show Certificate**.
d. Another pop-up box is displayed showing information about the **certificate**. Drag the large **certificate** icon to a *Finder* window. A `.cer` file will be created in the indicated folder from *Finder*.

2. Import the local file into the JRE running Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:
   a. Open a text-mode console with administrative rights.If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has been installed in a user's home directory and includes a bundled JRE, administrative rights are not required. In all other cases, administrative rights will be required.
   b. Go to the `lib/security` directory of the JRE running Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. You can find the home directory of the JRE in the *java.home* property that is displayed in the **About** dialog box (**Installation Details > Configuration**).

      Note:
      On macOS, for the distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin that bundles the JRE from Oracle, the JRE uses the `.install4j/jre.bundle/Contents/Home/jre/lib/security/cacerts` path within its installation directory.

   c. Run the following command:

      ```
      ..\..\bin\keytool -import -trustcacerts -file server.cer -keystore cacerts
      ```

      The `server.cer` file contains the server certificate, created during the previous step. The *keytool* requires a password before adding the certificate to the JRE *keystore (on page 2231)*. The default password is `changeit`. If someone changed the default password, then that person is the only one who can perform the import.

      Tip:
      If you need to import multiple certificates, you need to specify a different alias for each additional imported certificate with the `-alias` command-line argument, as in the following example:

      ```
      ..\..\bin\keytool -import -alias myalias1 -trustcacerts -file
      server1.cer -keystore cacerts


      ..\..\bin\keytool -import -alias myalias2 -trustcacerts -file
      server2.cer -keystore cacerts
      ```

3. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Related information
HTTP(S)/WebDAV Preferences *(on page 166)*

HTTP Authentication Schemes

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports the following HTTP authentication schemes:

- **Basic** - The *basic* authentication scheme defined in the RFC2617 specifications.
- **Digest** - The *digest* authentication scheme defined in the RFC2617 specifications.
- **NTLM** - The *NTLM* scheme is a proprietary Microsoft Windows Authentication protocol (considered to be the most secure among currently supported authentication schemes).

  Note:
  For NTLM authentication, the user name must be preceded by the name of the domain it belongs to, as in the following example:

  ```
  domain\username
  ```

- **Kerberos (Deprecated)** *(on page 241)* - An authentication protocol that works on the basis of *tickets* to allow nodes communicating over a non-secure network to prove their identity to one another in a secure manner.

Single Sign-on (Deprecated)

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin implements the *Single sign-on* property (meaning that you can log on once and gain access to multiple services without being prompted to log on for each of them), based on the **Kerberos** protocol and relies on a *ticket-granting ticket (TGT)* that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin obtains from the operating system.

Restriction:
This *Single sign-on* support is not available for SharePoint integrations.

To turn on the **Kerberos**-based authentication, you need to add the following system property in the `eclipse.ini` configuration file (on a separate line after the `-vmargs` parameter):

```
-Djavax.security.auth.useSubjectCredsOnly=false
```

Contextual Menu of the Current Editor Tab

A contextual menu is available when you right-click the current editor tab label.

The actions that are available depend on the context and the number of files that are opened. The menu includes the following actions:

Close (Ctrl + F4 (Command + F4 on macOS))

Closes the currently selected editor.

Close Others

If multiple files are opened, this action is available to close all open editors in the current group/stack of tabs except for the one you are currently viewing.

Close All (Ctrl + Shift + F4 (Command + Shift + F4 on macOS))

If multiple files are opened, this action is available to close all open editors.

Viewing File Properties

The **Editor Properties** view displays information about the currently edited document. The information includes:

- Character encoding.
- Full path on the file system.
- Schema used for content completion and document validation.
- Document type name and path.
- Associated transformation scenario.
- Read-only state of a file.
- Bidirectional text (left to right and right to left) state.
- Total number of characters in the document.
- Line width.
- Indent with tabs state.
- Indent size.

The view can be accessed from **Window > Show View > Other > Editor Properties**.

To copy a value from the **Editor Properties** view in the clipboard (for example, the full file path), use the **Copy** action available on the contextual menu of the view.

Simple Text Editor

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin specializes in XML-related technologies, you can also use it to create and edit various types of non-XML files. Non-XML files are opened in a simple text editor and many of the helpful features that are commonly used when editing XML files in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Text** editing mode are available in this simple editor.

Types of Non-XML Files That are Supported in the Simple Text Editor

The types of files that can be created and edited in the simple text editor include:

- Java
- C++
- C
- Dockerfile
- PHP

- Perl
- Properties
- SQL
- PowerShell
- Batch
- Python
- Text

Features Available in the Simple Text Editor

When editing files in the simple text editor, the features that are available include the following:

- **Project Support** - The unique features that are designed to help you work with projects *(on page 243)* are available for all types of files.
- **Shortcut Actions** - Many of the shortcut actions that are available in **Text** mode are also available in the simple text editor.
- **Drag and Drop** - The normal drag and drop support is available in the simple text editor.
- **Content Selection Features** - The content selection shortcuts *(on page 293)* that are available in **Text** mode are also available in the simple text editor.
- **Convert Hexadecimal Characters** - You can convert a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character *(on page 324)*.
- **Encoding/Decoding Actions** - Contextual menu actions are available to encode or decode Base 64, Base 32, and Hex schemes *(on page 324)*.
- **Code Templates** - You can define your own code templates *(on page 299)* for any type of file and use the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* to invoke them.
- **Syntax Highlighting** - Non-XML files also support syntax highlighting with dedicated coloring schemes. To customize them, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Syntax Highlight** *(on page 163)*. Select and expand the appropriate section in the top pane for the type of file you are editing and you can see the effects of your changes in the **Preview** pane.

Using Projects to Group Documents

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* that helps you organize your projects. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers a variety of helpful features for working with projects and makes it easy to share your projects with other members of your team. This section presents various unique features that will help you to create and work with projects.

Creating a New Project

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to organize your files into projects. Projects help you manage and organize your files and allow you to perform batch operations (such as validations and transformations) over multiple files. Use the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* to manage projects, and the files and folders contained within.

Creating a New Project

To create a new project, select **New > XML Project** or **New > Sample XML Project** from the contextual menu or **File** menu.

This opens a dialog box that allows you to create and customize a new project and adds it to the structure of the project in the **Project Explorer** view.

You can either create a new XML document from scratch by choosing one of the available types in the wizard. You can also create one from a template by selecting **File > New > New from Templates** and choosing a template from the **Global templates** or **Framework templates** folders. If you are looking for a common document type, such as DITA or DocBook, you can find templates for these document types in the **Framework templates** folder. If your company has created its own templates, you can also find them there.

Adding Items to the Project

To add items to the project, select the desired document type or folder from the **New** menu of the contextual menu, when invoked from the **Project Explorer** view (or from the **File** menu). You can also create a document from a template by selecting **New > New from Templates** from the contextual menu.

Using Linked Folders (Shortcuts)

Another easy way to organize your XML working files is to place them in a directory and then to create a corresponding linked folder in your project. If you add new files to that folder, you can simply use the **Refresh (F5)** action from the project contextual menu and the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* will display the existing files and subdirectories. If your files are scattered among several folders, but represent the same class of files, you might find it useful to combine them in a logical folder.

You can create linked folders (shortcuts) by dragging and dropping folders from the Windows Explorer (macOS Finder) to the project tree, or by using the contextual menu from the location in the project tree where you want it added and selecting **New > Folder > Advanced**. The linked folders presented in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* are marked with a special icon. To create a file inside a linked folder, use the contextual menu and select **New > File** (you can use the **Advanced** button to link to a file in the local file system).

Note:
Files may have multiple instances within the folder system, but cannot appear twice within the same folder.

For more information on managing projects and their content, see Project Explorer View *(on page 245)*.

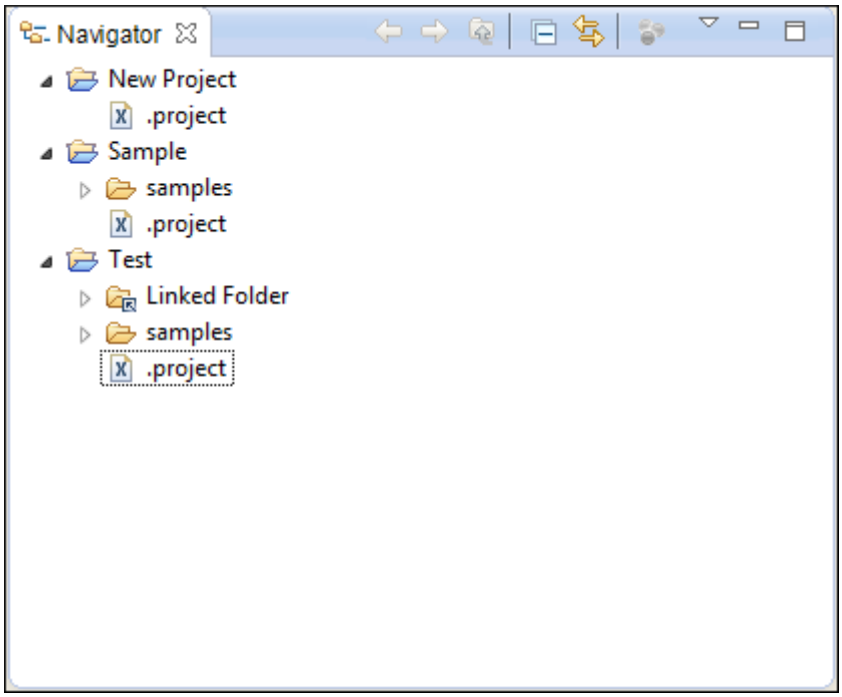
Related information
Using Projects to Group Documents *(on page 243)*

Project Explorer View

The **Project Explorer** view is designed to assist you with organizing and managing related files grouped in the same XML project. The actions available in the contextual menu and on the toolbar associated to this panel allows you to create XML projects and provide shortcuts to various operations for the project documents.

Tip:
You can also use the **Project Explorer** view for many of the same purposes as the **Project Explorer** view.

Figure 42. Project Explorer View



By default, the view is positioned on the left side of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, above the **Outline** view. If the view has been closed, it can be reopened at any time from the **Window > Show View** menu (the **Project Explorer** view is in the **Other** submenu).

Project View Toolbar

The following actions are grouped in the upper right corner:

Collapse All

Collapses all project tree folders. You can also collapse/expand a project tree folder if you select it and press the **Enter** key or **Left Arrow** to collapse and **Right Arrow** to expand.

Link with Editor

When selected, the currently edited file (from the main editor or from the DITA Maps Manager view) is highlighted in the project tree, if the file is found in the project.

View Menu

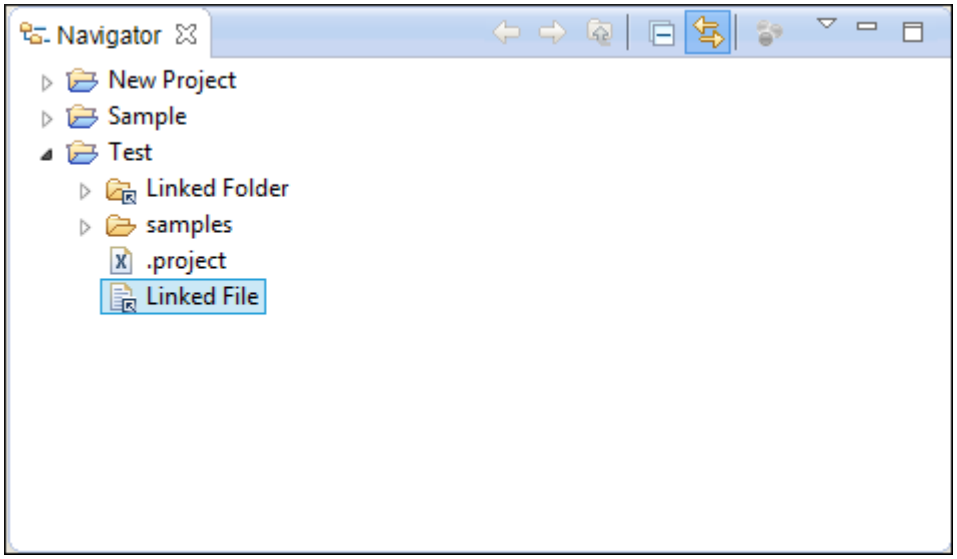
Drop-down menu that contains various settings contributed by the Eclipse plugin.

File Explorer Area

The rest of the view is basically a file explorer similar to most other commonly used file explorers. The XML project (`.xpr` file) is a logical container with a collection of resources (folders and files). The types of resources displayed include:

- **Logical folders with Linked folders/files** - This folder type is used as containers for linked resources (shortcuts). The icons for file shortcuts include a shortcut symbol ( ). The linked folders/files are added using **New > Folder > Advanced** or **New > File > Advanced**, or by dragging and dropping files/folders from the view or the system file explorer. **Delete** can be used to remove them from the project.
- **Physical folders and files** - Marked with the operating system-specific icon for folders (usually a yellow icon on Windows and a blue icon on macOS). These folders and files are mirrors of real folders or files that exist in the local file system. They are created or added to the project by using contextual menu actions (such as **New > File**, **New > Folder**, **Copy**, and **Paste**) or by dragging and dropping files/folders from the view or the system file explorer. Also, the contextual menu action **Delete** can be used to remove them from the project and local file system.

Figure 43. Project Explorer View with Both Types of Resources



Creating New Projects

The following actions are available from the **New** menu when right-clicking any item, or the **File > New** menu:

XML Project

Opens the **New XML Project** dialog box that allows you to create a new project and adds it to the project structure in the **Project Explorer** view.

Sample XML Project

Opens the **New sample XML project** dialog box that allows you to customize sample resources in a new project and adds it to the project structure in the **Project Explorer** view.

Managing Project Contents

There are various contextual menu actions, shortcuts, and ways to organize the folders and files inside the project:

Creating New Folders and Files

Right-click any item > New > File

Opens a New Document Wizard *(on page 222)* that helps you create a new file and adds it to the project structure.

Right-click any item > New > New from Templates

Opens a wizard where you can create a new document based on a template *(on page 229)* and adds it to the project structure.

Right-click any item > New > Folder

Opens a **New Folder** dialog box that allows you to specify a name for a new folder and adds it to the structure of the project.

Adding Resources

You can add resources by using drag and drop (or **Copy** and **Paste**) actions from within the **Project Explorer** view or dragging them from the system file explorer. Files may have multiple instances within the folder system, but cannot appear twice within the same folder.

Removing Folders and Files

To remove logical folders or the linked resources inside them from the project, use **Delete** from the contextual menu (or press **Delete** on your keyboard) and confirm by clicking **OK** in the resulting dialog box.

To remove folders or files from both the project and the local file system, use Delete from the contextual menu (or press **Delete** on your keyboard) and confirm by clicking **OK** in the resulting dialog box.

Moving Folders and Files

You can move the resources by using drag and drop actions from within the **Project Explorer** view.

You can also use the usual **Copy** and **Paste** actions (or the **Move** action) from the contextual menu to move resources in the project.

You can also move certain types of files (such as XML) or folders by using the **Refactoring > Move resource** action from the contextual menu. This action opens the **Move resource** dialog box that includes the following options:

- **Destination** - Presents the path to the current location of the resource you want to move and gives you the option to introduce a new location.
- **New name** - Presents the current name of the moved resource and gives you the option to change it.
- **Update references of the moved resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are moving, based upon the selected scope. You can select or configure the scope by using the button.

Renaming Folders and Files

There are several ways to rename a folder or file in the project (this works for both physical and linked resources):

- Select **Rename** from the contextual menu.
- Press **F2** on your keyboard.

You also can rename certain types of files (such as XML) or folders by using the **Refactoring > Rename resource** action from the contextual menu. This action opens the **Rename resource** dialog box that includes the following options:

- **New name** - Presents the current name of the edited resource and allows you to modify it.
- **Update references of the renamed resource** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are renaming. You can select or configure the scope by using the button.

Opening Files

There are several ways to open a file:

- Double-click the file.
- Select it and press **Enter** on your keyboard.
- Right-click the file and select **Open**.
- Drag the file from the project tree and drop it in the editor area.
- If you want to choose the application or location where to open it, you can right-click the file and select **Open with**.

Saving the Project

The project file is automatically saved every time the content of the **Project Explorer** view is saved or modified by actions such as adding or removing files and drag and drop.

Other Contextual Menu Actions

Numerous other actions are available in the contextual menu, depending on the type of file or folder where it is invoked from (some actions are available for multiple selected files):

Refactoring submenu

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes some refactoring operations that help you manage the structure of your documents. The following actions are available from the contextual menu in the **Refactoring** submenu:

Rename resource (Available for certain types of XML documents or folders)

Opens the **Rename resource** dialog box *(on page 251)* where you can change the name of a resource. It also includes an option to update the references to the renamed resource and you can choose between various scopes for the operation.

Move resource (Available for certain types of XML documents or folders)

Opens the **Move resource** dialog box *(on page 251)* where you can choose a destination and change the name of a resource. It also includes an option to update the references to the moved resource and you can choose between various scopes for the operation.

XML Refactoring

Opens the **XML Refactoring** tool wizard *(on page 587)* that presents refactoring operations to assist you with managing the structure of your XML documents.

Apply all default quick fix proposals

Opens the **Apply all default quick fix proposals** tool *(on page 603)* that can be used to apply quick fix proposals for all reported validation errors in the selected documents when one or more quick fix proposals have been detected for reported validation errors.

Show referenced resources

Opens the **Referenced/Dependent Resources** view *(on page 579)* that allows you to see the referenced resource hierarchy for an XML document.

Show dependent resources

Opens the **Referenced/Dependent Resources** view *(on page 579)* that allows you to see the resource dependencies for an XML document. When working with DITA XML projects, this action is available when right-clicking images to find direct references to them.

Refresh

Refreshes the content and the dependencies between the resources in the **Main Files** directory *(on page 253)*.

XPath in Files

Opens the **XPath/XQuery Builder** view *(on page 1451)* that allows you to compose XPath and XQuery expressions and execute them over the currently edited XML document.

Check Spelling in Files

Allows you to check the spelling of multiple files *(on page 269)*.

Format and Indent Files

Opens the **Format and Indent Files** dialog box *(on page 320)* that allows you to configure the format and indent (*pretty-print (on page 2233)*) action that will be applied on the selected documents.

HTML to XML Well-formed (Available when selecting multiple resources)

Batch converts the selected HTML documents to be XML well-formed. This means that missing end tags will be added to applicable elements, unclosed tags will be properly closed, and quotes will be added to attribute values that were missing the quotes.

Notes:

- All selected HTML files are backed up before being processed (same path/name but with the ".bak" extension added at the end).
- Any detected conversion errors are grouped and listed in a dedicated tab in the **Results** pane at the bottom of the application.
- A brief report is displayed at the end of the operation.

Transform submenu

The currently selected files associated with the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin in the **Package Explorer** view or **Project Explorer** view can be transformed in one step with one of the following actions available from contextual menu in the **Transform** submenu:

Apply Transformation Scenario(s)

Obtains the output with one of the built-in scenarios.

Configure Transformation Scenario(s)

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure pre-defined transformation scenarios.

Transform with

Allows you to select a transformation scenario to be applied to the currently selected files.

Validate submenu

The currently selected files associated with the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin in the **Package Explorer** view or **Project Explorer** view can be checked to be XML well-formed or

validated against a schema (DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG, Schematron or NVDL) with one of the following contextual menu actions found in the **Validate** submenu:

Check Well-Formedness

Checks if the selected file or files are well-formed.

Validate

Validates the selected file or files against their associated schema. For EPUB files, this action triggers an **EPUB Validate and Check for Completeness** *(on page 1460)* operation.

Validate with Schema

Validates the selected file of files against a specified schema.

Configure Validation Scenario(s)

Allows you to configure and run a validation scenario.

Clear Validation Markers

Clears all the error markers from the main editor and **Problems** view.

Properties

Displays the properties of the current file in a **Properties** dialog box.

Enable Main Files Support (Available from the project container)

Allows you to enable the **Main Files Support** *(on page 254)* for each project.

Detect Main Files (Available from the project container when Main Files Support is enabled)

Opens the **Detect Main Files** wizard *(on page 254)* that enables the automatic detection of *main files*.

Add to Main Files (Available when Main Files Support is enabled)

Adds the selected files to the Main Files folder *(on page 255)*.

Moving/Renaming Resources in the Project Explorer View

The **Refactoring** submenu in the contextual menu of the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* provides actions for moving or renaming resources in the current project while offering the option to update the references to the resources.

Moving Resources

You can move certain types of files (such as XML) by using the **Refactoring > Move resource** action from the contextual menu. This action opens the **Move resource** dialog box that includes the following options:

- **Destination** - Presents the path to the current location of the resource you want to move and gives you the option to introduce a new location.
- **New name** - Presents the current name of the moved resource and gives you the option to change it.
- **Update references of the moved resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are moving, based upon the selected scope. You can select or configure the scope by using the button.

Renaming Resources

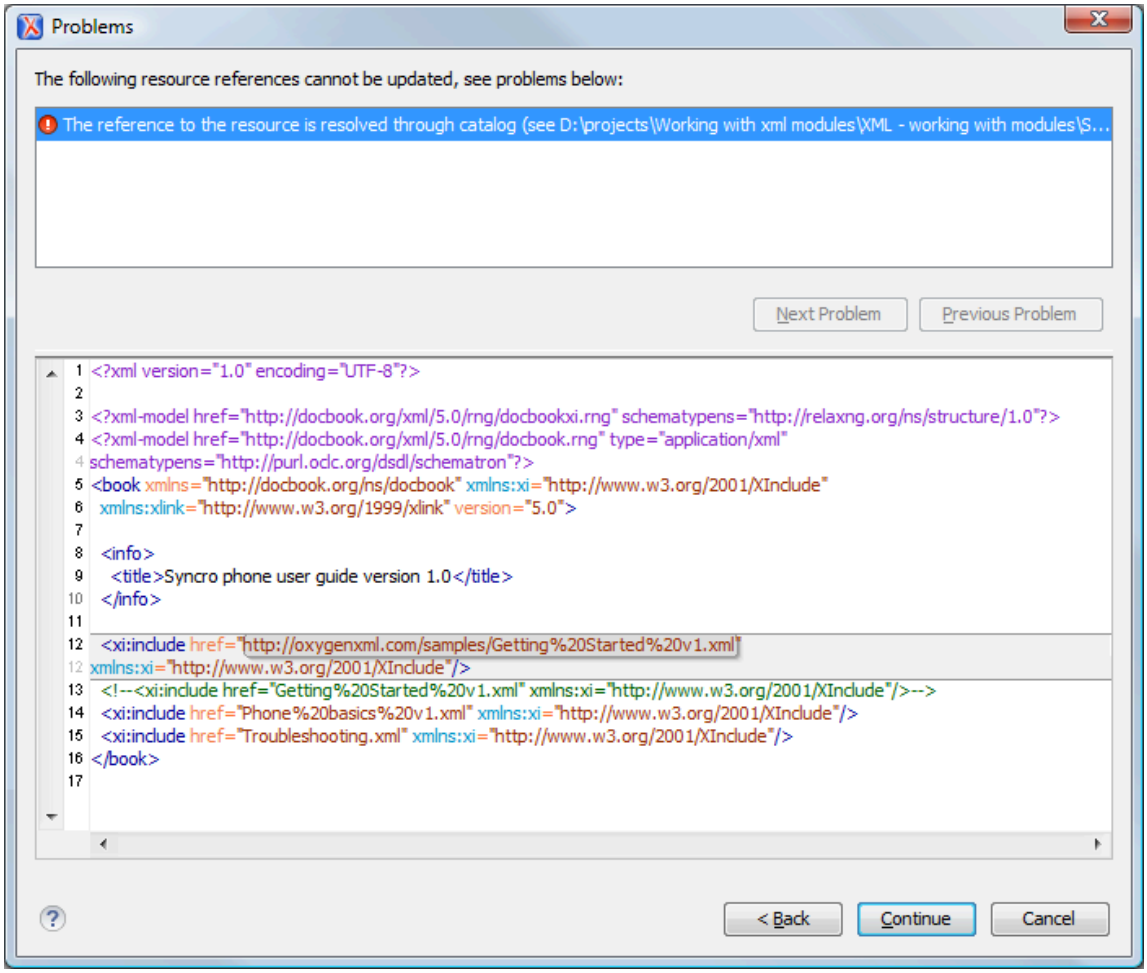
You can rename certain types of files (such as XML) by using the **Refactoring > Rename resource** action from the contextual menu. This action opens the **Rename resource** dialog box that includes the following options:

- **New name** - Presents the current name of the edited resource and allows you to modify it.
- **Update references of the renamed resource** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are renaming. You can select or configure the scope by using the button.

Problems Updating References of Moved/Renamed Resources

In some cases, the references of a moved or a renamed resource cannot be updated. For example, when a resource is resolved through an *XML Catalog (on page 2235)* or when the path to the moved or renamed resource contains entities. For these cases, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays a warning dialog box.

Figure 44. Problems Dialog Box



Contextual Project Operations Using 'Main Files' Support

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to define *Main Files (on page 2232)* at project level. These *main files* are automatically used by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to determine the context for operations such as validation, transformation, content completion, refactoring, or searches for XML modules. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin maintains the hierarchy of the *main files*, helping you to determine the editing context.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also provides unique support for using the *Main Files* support in DITA projects. In DITA, when you rename or move non-DITA resources, it allows you to update all the references to these resources in the scope of the *Main Files* (in this case the *main DITA map (root map) (on page 2234)*). For more information, see Main Files Support in DITA *(on page 2174)*.

Resources

For more information about the *Main Files* support for XML documents, watch our video demonstrations:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/e2oo4RWNxW8

https://www.youtube.com/embed/UZwg385RKNw

Related information
Modular Contextual XML Editing Using 'Main Files' Support *(on page 576)*

Main Files Benefits

Using the *Main Files* support in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes the following benefits:

- When the *main file* is validated, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically identifies the modules included in the *main file* and validates all of them.
- When the *main file* is transformed, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically identifies the modules included in the *main file* and transforms them accordingly.
- The *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* presents all the components that are collected from the *main files* for the modules they include.
- The *main files* that are defined for the current module determines the scope of the search and refactoring actions *(on page 579)*. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin performs the search and refactoring actions in the context that the *main files* determine, thus improving the speed of execution.

Enabling the Main Files Support

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin stores the *main files* in a folder located in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*, as the first child of the project root. The *Main Files Support* is disabled by default and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to enable or disable the *Main Files Support* for each project you are working on.

To enable *Main Files* support, select **Enable Main Files Support** from the contextual menu of the project root folder in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*.

Related information
Detecting Main Files *(on page 254)*
Adding or Removing Files/Folders in the Main Files Directory *(on page 255)*

Detecting Main Files

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to detect the *main files* using the **Detect Main Files** option. This action applies to the folders you select in the project.

To detect *main files* over the entire project, do one of the following:

- Right-click the root of the project and select **Detect Main Files from Project**.
- Use the **Detect Main Files from Project** option, available in the contextual menu of the `Main Files` folder.

Both of these options display the **Detect Main Files** wizard. The detected *main files* are presented in a tree-like fashion. The resources are grouped into three categories:

- **Possible *main files*** - The files presented on the first level in this category are not imported or included from other files. These files are most likely to be set as *main files*.

  > **Note:**
  > For DITA projects, only *DITA Maps (on page 2230)* are reported as possible *main files*.

- **Cycles** - The files that are presented on the first level have circular dependencies between them. Any file presented on the first level of a cycle is a possible *main file*.
- **Standalone** - Files that do not include or import other files and are also not included or imported themselves. It is not necessary to set them as *main files*.

To set them as *main files*, simply select their checkboxes. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin marks all the children of a *main file* as modules. Modules are rendered in gray and their tool-tip presents a list of their *main files*. A module can be accessed from multiple *main files*.

The next panel displays a list with the selected *main files*. Click the **Finish** button to add the *main files* in the `Main Files` folder.

You can use the **Select Main Files** option to automatically mark all *main files*. This action sets all the resources from the **Possible Main Files** category and the first resource of each **Cycle** as *main files*. The **Deselect All** button simply removes all of your selections.

> **Tip:**
> It is recommended that you only add top-level files (files that are at the root of the include/import graph) in the `Main Files` directory.

Related information
Enabling the Main Files Support *(on page 254)*
Adding or Removing Files/Folders in the Main Files Directory *(on page 255)*

Adding or Removing Files/Folders in the Main Files Directory

Adding Files/Folders to the Main File Directory

The `Main Files` directory can contain logical folders, linked folders, or linked files.

To add files in the `Main Files` directory, use one of the following methods:

- Right-click a file from your project and select **Add to Main Files** from the contextual menu.
- Drag and drop files into the `Main Files` directory.
- From the contextual menu of the **Referenced/Dependent Resources** view *(on page 579)*, use the **Add to Main Files** action.

To add folders in the `Main Files` directory, use one of the following methods:

- Right-click `Main Files` directory and select **Add Folder** from the contextual menu.
- Drag and drop folders into the `Main Files` directory.

You can view the *main files* for the currently edited resource in the **Editor Properties** view *(on page 242)*.

Removing Files/Folders from the Main Files Directory

The main files that are already defined in the project are automatically marked in the tree. To disable a main file or folder, remove it from the `Main Files` folder (for example, right-click and select **Delete**). Removing files or folders from the `Main Files` folder does NOT delete the files from disk. It just removes the logical files from that logical folder in the project.

Related information

Enabling the Main Files Support *(on page 254)*

Detecting Main Files *(on page 254)*

Search and Find/Replace Features

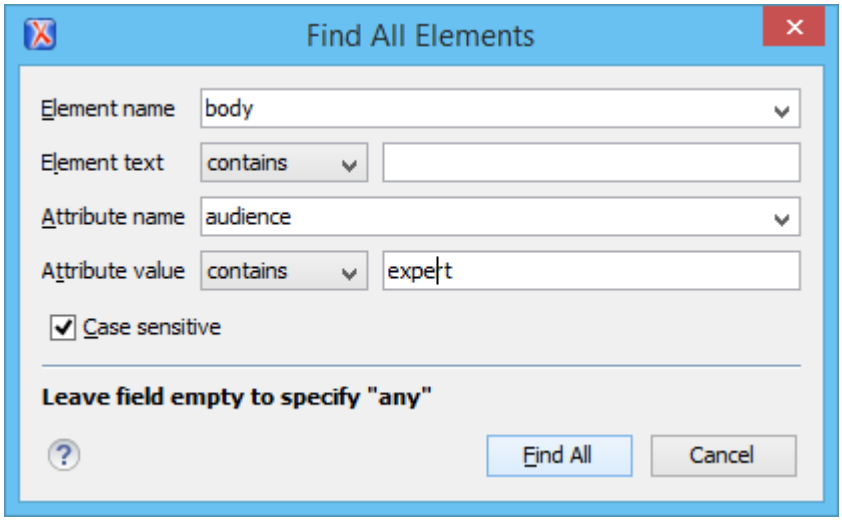
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes advanced search capabilities to help you locate documents and resources. The search features are powered by Apache Lucene. Apache Lucene is a free open source information retrieval software library. You can perform simple text searches or more complex searches using the Apache Lucene - Query Parser Syntax.

Note:
When Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin performs the indexing of resources, referenced content is not taken into account. For example, when DITA documents are indexed, the content referenced in a `@conref` or `@conkeyref` attribute is not parsed. The files that make up the index are stored on disk in the folder.

Find All Elements Dialog Box

To open the **Find All Elements** dialog box, go to **Edit > Find All Elements** . It assists you in defining XML element / attribute search operations in the current document.

Figure 45. Find All Elements Dialog Box



The dialog box can perform the following actions:

- Find all the elements with a specified name.
- Find all the elements that contain, or does not contain, a specified string in their text content.
- Find all the elements that have a specified attribute.
- Find all the elements that have an attribute with, or without, a specified value.

You can combine all of these search criteria to filter your results.

The following fields are available in the dialog box:

- **Element name** - The qualified name of the target element to search for. You can use the drop-down menu to find an element or enter it manually. It is populated with valid element names collected from the associated schema. To specify *any* element name, leave the field empty.

  Note:
  Use the qualified name of the element (`<namespace prefix>:<element name>`) when the document uses this element notation.

- **Element text** - The target element text to search for. The drop-down menu beside this field allows you to specify whether you are looking for an exact or partial match of the element text. For *any* element text, select **contains** from the drop-down menu and leave the field empty. If you leave the field empty but select **equals** from the drop-down menu, only elements with no text will be found. Select **not contains** to find all elements that do not include the specified text.
- **Attribute name** - The name of the attribute that must be present in the element. You can use the drop-down menu to select an attribute or enter it manually. It is populated with valid attribute names collected from the associated schema. For *any* or no attribute name, leave the field empty.

> **Note:**
> Use the qualified name of the attribute (`<namespace prefix>:<attribute name>`) when the document uses this attribute notation.

- **Attribute value** - The drop-down menu beside this field allows you to specify that you are looking for an exact or partial match of the attribute value. For *any* or no attribute value, select **contains** from the drop-down menu and leave the field empty. If you leave the field empty but select **equals** from the drop-down menu, only elements that have at least an attribute with an empty value will be found. Select **not contains** to find all elements that have attributes without a specified value.
- **Case sensitive** - When this option is selected, operations are case-sensitive.

When you select **Find All**, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin tries to find the items that match all the search parameters. The results of the operation are presented as a list in the message panel.

Regular Expressions Syntax

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the Java regular expression syntax. It is **similar** to that used in Perl 5, with several exceptions. Thus, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin does not support the following constructs:

- The conditional constructs `(?{X})` and `(?(condition)X|Y)`.
- The embedded code constructs `(?{code})` and `(??{code})`.
- The embedded comment syntax `(?#comment)`.
- The preprocessing operations `\l`, `\u`, `\L`, and `\U`.

When using regular expressions, note that some sets of characters from XPath/XML Schema/Schematron are slightly different than the ones used by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin/Java in the text searches. The most common example is with the `\w` and `\W` set of characters. To ensure consistent results between the two, it is recommended that you use the following constructs:

- **/w** - `[#x0000-#x10FFFF]-[\p{P}\p{Z}\p{C}]` instead of `\w`
- **/W** - `[\p{P}\p{Z}\p{C}]` instead of `\W`

There are some other notable differences that may cause unexpected results, including the following:

- In Perl, the `^` character matches at the beginning of the string, while in Java, it matches the beginning of a line.
- In Perl, the `$` character matches at the end of the string, while in Java, it matches the end of a line.
- In Perl, `\1` through `\9` are always interpreted as back references. A backslash-escaped number greater than 9 is treated as a back reference if at least that many sub-expressions exist. Otherwise, it is interpreted, if possible, as an octal escape. In this class octal escapes must always begin with a zero. In Java, `\1` through `\9` are always interpreted as back references, and a larger number is accepted as a back reference if at least that many sub-expressions exist at that point in the regular expression.

Otherwise, the parser will drop digits until the number is smaller or equal to the existing number of groups or it is one digit.

- Perl uses the `g` flag to request a match that resumes where the last match left off.
- In Perl, embedded flags at the top level of an expression affect the whole expression. In Java, embedded flags always take effect at the point where they appear, whether they are at the top level or within a group. In the latter case, flags are restored at the end of the group just as in Perl.
- Perl is forgiving about malformed matching constructs, as in the expression `*a`, as well as dangling brackets, as in the expression `abc]`, and treats them as literals. This class also accepts dangling brackets but is strict about dangling meta-characters such as `+`, `?` and `*`.

Related information

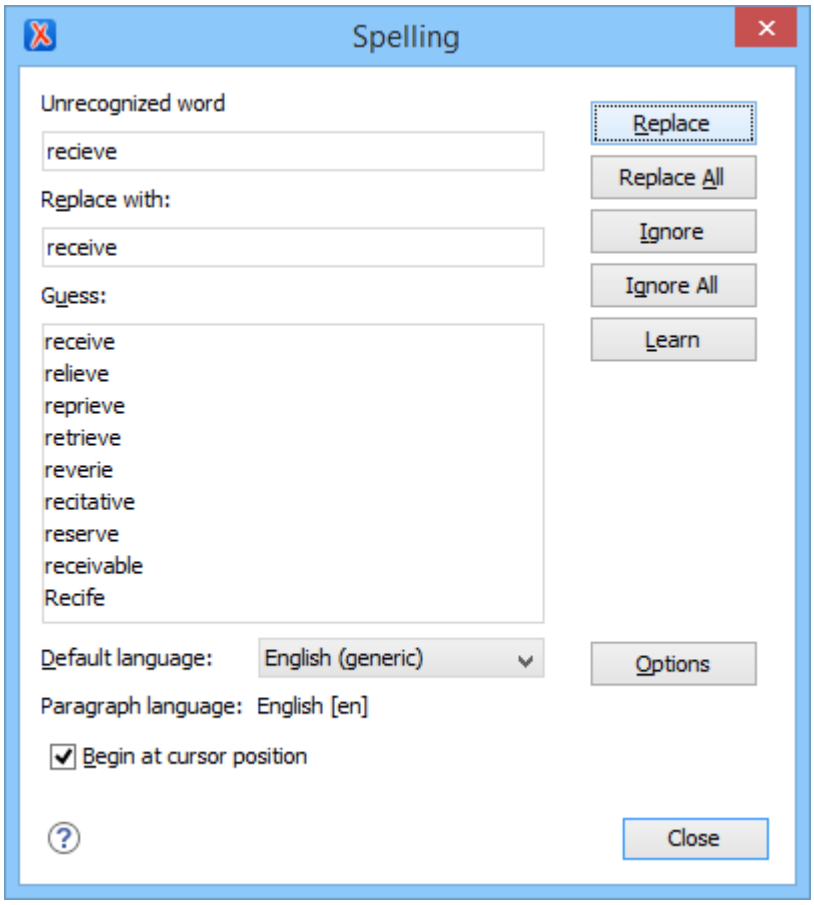
Comparison between the Java and Perl 5 regular expression syntax

Spell Checking

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an automatic (as-you-type) spell checking feature *(on page 268)*, as well as a manual spell checking action to open a **Spelling** dialog box that offers a variety of options.

To manually check spelling in the current document, use the **Check Spelling** action on the toolbar.

Figure 46. Check Spelling Dialog Box



The **Spelling** dialog box contains the following:

Unrecognized word

Displays the word that cannot be found in the selected dictionary. The word is also highlighted in the XML document.

Replace with

The character string that will replace the misspelled word.

Guess

Displays a list of suggested words to replace the unknown word. Double-click a word to automatically insert it in the document and resume the spell checking process.

Default language

Allows you to select the default language dictionary used by the spelling engine.

Paragraph language

In an XML document, you can mix content written in multiple languages. You can set the language code in the `@lang` or `@xml:lang` attribute for any particular section and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will automatically instruct the spell checker engine to apply the appropriate language dictionary for that section.

Begin at cursor position

Instructs the spell checker to begin checking the document starting from the current cursor position.

Action Buttons

Replace

Use this button to replace the unrecognized word with the selected word from the **Replace with** field.

Replace All

Use this button to replace all occurrences of the unrecognized word with the selected word from the **Replace with** field, starting from the cursor's position to the end of the document.

Note:
This action is case-sensitive.

Ignore

Ignores the first occurrence of the unrecognized word and allows you to continue checking the document. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin skips the content of the XML elements marked to be ignored *(on page 268)*.

Ignore All

Ignores all instances of the unrecognized word in the current document.

Learn

Adds the unrecognized word to the list of valid words.

Options

Opens the **Spell Check** preferences page *(on page 160)* where you can configure various options regarding the feature.

Related information

AutoCorrect Misspelled Words *(on page 270)*

Spell Check Dictionaries and Term Lists

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the **Hunspell** engine for the spell checking feature. The Hunspell spell checking engine is open source and has an LGPL license. It is designed for languages with rich morphology and complex compounding or character encoding. Each language-country variant combination have their own specific dictionaries. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes the following built-in dictionaries for the spell checker:

- English (US) [`en_US`]
- English (UK) [`en_GB`]
- French [`fr`]
- German [`de_DE`]
- Spanish [`es_ES`]

Other Hunspell Dictionaries

You can also download Hunspell dictionaries for other languages and add them to the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin spell checker. For a website that includes numerous dictionary files, see: https://extensions.openoffice.org/.

If you cannot find a Hunspell dictionary that is already built for your language, you can build the dictionary you need. To build a full Hunspell dictionary, follow these instructions and then add the dictionary to the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin spell checker by following this procedure *(on page 262)*.

Personalized Term Lists

Authoring in certain areas of expertise (for example, the pharmaceutical or automobile industries) might require the use of specific terms that are not part of the standard spell checker dictionary. To avoid marking these terms as errors, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a way of adding personalized *term lists (on page 265)* to the spell check engine. This involves creating a term list file that the spell checker will recognize and it is similar to the file Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses for storing *learned words (on page 267)*.

The term list files are specific for each language and can be specific to each domain or area of expertise (for example, *legal*, *medical*, *automotive*). They can also be used to control forbidden words.

Related information

Adding Custom Spell Check Dictionaries *(on page 262)*

Adding Custom Spell Check Term Lists *(on page 265)*

Building and Testing Hunspell Dictionaries

Adding Custom Dictionaries and Term Lists

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin spell checker allows you to add customized Hunspell dictionaries and personalized term lists. The Hunspell dictionary mechanism requires a dictionary file (with a `.dic` file extension) and an affix file (with the `.aff` file extension). The personalized term lists are custom files (with the `.tdi` file extension) that you can create to include specialized terms or specify forbidden words in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin spell checker.

You can add dictionaries *(on page 262)* and personalized term lists *(on page 265)* to the default folder where they are stored or specify your own custom locations. You can view the default storage location in the **Spell Check Dictionaries** preferences page *(on page 162)* and the **Include dictionaries and term list from** option *(on page 162)* allows you to choose a custom storage location. All the dictionaries and term lists for a particular language that are found in either location are merged and used by the spell checker in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Related information

Replacing a Spell Check Dictionary *(on page 266)*

Editing the Spell Checking Dictionaries

Adding Custom Spell Check Dictionaries

There are three possible scenarios for adding Hunspell dictionaries to the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin spell checker:

- You can download a pre-built Hunspell dictionary and add it to the spell checking mechanism.
- You can create a custom Hunspell dictionary file that defines your own list of words and add it to the spell checking mechanism.
- You can build your own full Hunspell dictionary and add it to the spell checking mechanism.

Download and Add a Pre-Built Hunspell Dictionary

To add a downloaded pre-built dictionary, follow these steps:

1. Download the files needed for your dictionary. You will need a *dictionary* file (with a `.dic` file extension) and an *affix* file (with the `.aff` file extension). If the dictionary does not include an affix file (`.aff`), you can create one and leave it empty, but it is needed for the mechanism to work properly. For a website that includes numerous dictionary files, see: https://extensions.openoffice.org/.

Important:
The name of the files should begin with a two letter prefix for the language code, followed by an underscore or hyphen, then two letters that indicate the country code, followed by another underscore or hyphen, and then a descriptive name (for example, `en_US_medical.dic` for a medical dictionary in the US version of the English language, or for a less specific English medical dictionary, you could omit the country code like this: `en_medical.dic`). For a list of language codes, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_ISO_639-1_codes.

2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries** *(on page 162)*.
3. Choose one of the following two options for adding the downloaded files.
    a. Copy both files (`.dic` and `.aff`) to the default directory displayed in the **Dictionaries and term lists default folder** option *(on page 162)*.
    b. Copy both files (`.dic` and `.aff`) to any other directory, select the **Include dictionaries and term list from** option *(on page 162)*, and select that directory. If you choose this option, make sure you read this important note *(on page 162)*.
4. Restart the application for the spell checker to start using the new dictionary.

Create a Custom Hunspell Dictionary that Defines a List of Words

To create a custom Hunspell dictionary that defines your own list of words, follow these steps:

1. Create a *dictionary* file (with a `.dic` file extension) and an *affix* file (with the `.aff` file extension). The affix file (`.aff`) can be left empty, but it is needed for the mechanism to work properly.

Important:
The name of the files should begin with a two letter prefix for the language code, followed by an underscore or hyphen, then two letters that indicate the country code, followed by another underscore or hyphen, and then a descriptive name (for example, `en_US_medical.dic` for a medical dictionary in the US version of the English language, or for a less specific English medical dictionary, you could omit the country code like this: `en_medical.dic`). For a list of language codes, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_ISO_639-1_codes.

2. In the dictionary file (`.dic` extension), add the words you want to be included in your custom dictionary. Add one word per row and the first line needs to contain the number of words, as in the following example:

```
2

parabola

asimptotic
```

Tip:
Words stored in dictionaries are not handled as case-sensitive. Therefore, you do not need to include both uppercase and lowercase versions of the words.

Note:
If you save the `.dic` file using UTF-8 encoding, then the corresponding `.aff` file should specify the encoding as a property inside it (if you do not specify the encoding, the default platform encoding will be used):

```
SET UTF-8
```

3. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries** *(on page 162)*.
4. Choose one of the following two options for saving the files.
    a. Save both files (`.dic` and `.aff`) to the default directory displayed in the **Dictionaries and term lists default folder** option *(on page 162)*.
    b. Save both files (`.dic` and `.aff`) to any other directory, select the **Include dictionaries and term list from** option *(on page 162)*, and select that directory. If you choose this option, make sure you read this important note *(on page 162)*.
5. Restart the application for the spell checker to start using the new dictionary.

Build and Add a Full Hunspell Dictionary

To build and add a full Hunspell dictionary, follow these steps:

1. Create your Hunspell dictionary. For more information on how to do this, see: Editing the Spell Checking Dictionaries.

    Step Result: You should end up with a *dictionary* file (with a `.dic` file extension) and an *affix* file (with an `.aff` file extension). The affix file (`.aff`) can be empty, but it is needed for the mechanism to work properly.

Important:
The name of the files should begin with a two letter prefix for the language code, followed by an underscore or hyphen, then two letters that indicate the country code, followed by another underscore or hyphen, and then a descriptive name (for example, `en_US_medical.dic` for a medical dictionary in the US version of the English language, or for a less specific English medical dictionary, you could omit the country code like this: `en_medical.dic`). For a list of language codes, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_ISO_639-1_codes.

2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries** *(on page 162)*.

3. Choose one of the following two options for saving the files.
    a. Save both files (`.dic` and `.aff`) to the default directory displayed in the **Dictionaries and term lists default folder** option *(on page 162)*.
    b. Save both files (`.dic` and `.aff`) to any other directory, select the **Include dictionaries and term list from** option *(on page 162)*, and select that directory. If you choose this option, make sure you read this important note *(on page 162)*.
4. Restart the application for the spell checker to start using the new dictionary.

Related information

Adding Custom Spell Check Term Lists *(on page 265)*

Editing the Spell Checking Dictionaries

Adding Custom Spell Check Term Lists

You can create personalized term lists that are used to store specialized terms or control forbidden words. They can then be added to one of the directories that store the spell check dictionaries, and the spell checker will merge them with all the dictionaries and other term lists for a particular language.

Create and Add Personalized Term Lists

To create and add a personalized term list, follow these steps:

1. Create a *term list* file (with the `.tdi` file extension). The name of the file must begin with a two letter prefix that indicates the language it should be attached to, followed by an underscore or hyphen, and then a descriptive name (for example, `en_US_myterms.tdi` for term list in the US version of the English language or `en_myterms.tdi` for a less specific English term list). For a list of language codes, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_ISO_639-1_codes.
2. In the term list file (`.tdi` extension), add the terms you want to be included in your custom dictionary. If you need to specify forbidden terms, those words simply need to be preceded by an asterisk. Add one word per row, as in the following example:

```
parabola

asimptotic

*hyperbola
```

Note:
Words stored in term lists are not handled as case-sensitive. Therefore, you do not need to include both uppercase and lowercase versions of the words.

3. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries** *(on page 162)*.
4. Choose one of the following two options for saving the file.

a. Save the file (`.tdi`) to the default directory displayed in the **Dictionaries and term lists default folder** option *(on page 162)*.
b. Save the file (`.tdi`) to any other directory, select the **Include dictionaries and term list from** option *(on page 162)*, and select that directory. If you choose this option, make sure you read this important note *(on page 162)*.

5. Restart the application for the spell checker to start using the new term list.

Related information
Adding Custom Spell Check Dictionaries *(on page 262)*

Replacing a Spell Check Dictionary

There are several possible scenarios for replacing an existing Hunspell dictionary for the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin spell checker:

- You can download a pre-built Hunspell dictionary and replace an existing dictionary with it.
- You can build your own full Hunspell dictionary and replace an existing dictionary with it.

Download a Pre-Built Hunspell Dictionary and Replace an Existing One

To replace an existing dictionary with a downloaded pre-built dictionary, follow these steps:

1. Download the files needed for your dictionary. You will need a *dictionary* file (with a `.dic` file extension) and an *affix* file (with the `.aff` file extension). If the dictionary does not include an affix file (`.aff`), you can create one and leave it empty, but it is needed for the mechanism to work properly. For a website that includes numerous dictionary files, see: https://extensions.openoffice.org/.
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries** *(on page 162)*.
3. Choose one of the following two options to replace existing files.
   a. Replace the existing files (`.dic` and `.aff`) for the particular language in the default directory displayed in the **Dictionaries and term lists default folder** option *(on page 162)*. Leave the **Include dictionaries and term list from** option deselected.
   b. Replace existing files (`.dic` and `.aff`) for the particular language in a directory specified in the **Include dictionaries and term list from** option *(on page 162)*. If you choose this option, make sure you read this important note *(on page 162)*.

   Important:
   Do not alter the naming convention. The name of the files must begin with a two letter prefix that indicates the language it should be attached to (for example, `en_US.dic` for a US English dictionary or `en.dic` for a less specific English dictionary). For a list of language codes, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_ISO_639-1_codes.

4. Restart the application for the spell checker to start using the new dictionary.

Build a Full Hunspell Dictionary and Replace an Existing One

To replace an existing dictionary with a full Hunspell dictionary that you build, follow these steps:

1. Follow these instructions: Building and Testing Hunspell Dictionaries.

   Step Result: You should end up with a *dictionary* file (with a `.dic` file extension) and an *affix* file (with the `.aff` file extension). The affix file (`.aff`) can be empty, but it is needed for the mechanism to work properly.

2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries** *(on page 162)*.
3. Choose one of the following two options to replace existing files.
   a. Replace the existing files (`.dic` and `.aff`) for the particular language in the default directory displayed in the **Dictionaries and term lists default folder** option *(on page 162)*. Leave the **Include dictionaries and term list from** option deselected.
   b. Replace existing files (`.dic` and `.aff`) for the particular language in a directory specified in the **Include dictionaries and term list from** option *(on page 162)*. If you choose this option, make sure you read this important note *(on page 162)*.
4. Restart the application for the spell checker to start using the new dictionary.

Related information

Adding Custom Dictionaries and Term Lists *(on page 262)*

Learned Words

Spell checker engines rely on dictionaries to decide if a word is spelled correctly. To instruct the spell checker engine that an unknown word is actually correctly spelled, you need to add that word to a list of learned words. There are two ways to do this:

- Invoke the contextual menu on an unknown word, then select **Learn word**.
- Click the **Learn** button from the **Spelling** dialog box *(on page 259)* that is invoked by using the **Check Spelling** action on the toolbar.

Note:
To delete items from the list of learned words, use the **Delete learned words** option in the **Editor > Spell Check > Dictionaries** preferences page *(on page 162)*.

Related information

Adding Custom Spell Check Term Lists *(on page 265)*

Ignored Words (Elements)

You may want the content of certain XML elements to always be skipped during the spell check process (for example, `<programlisting>`, `<codeblock>`, `<codeph>`, `<filepath>`, or `<screen>`). This can be done in one of several ways:

- You can skip through them manually, word by word, using the **Ignore** button in the **Spelling** dialog box *(on page 259)* that is invoked by using the **Check Spelling** action on the toolbar.
- You can automatically skip the content of certain elements by maintaining a set of known element names that should never be checked. You can manage this set of element names by using the **Ignore elements** section *(on page 162)* in the **Spell Check** preferences page.

Automatic Spell Check

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an option to automatically check the spelling as you type. Not only does it check spelling when you are typing in the main editor, but also when you are typing in a comment *(on page 404)*. This feature is disabled by default, but it can be enabled and configured in the **Spell Check** preferences page *(on page 160)*. When the **Automatic Spell Check** option *(on page 160)* is selected, unknown words are underlined and some actions are available in the contextual menu to help you correct the word or prevent the word from being reported in the future.

Tip:
You can configure the color and how spelling errors are shown from the Eclipse **Annotations** preferences page (**Window ('Eclipse' on macOSX) > Preferences > General > Editors > Text Editors > Annotations**).

Figure 47. Automatic Spell Checking in Author Mode

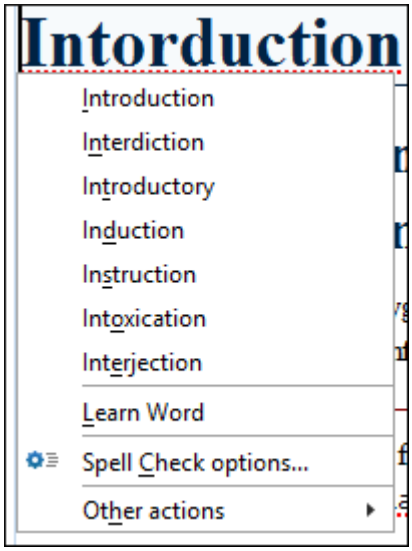
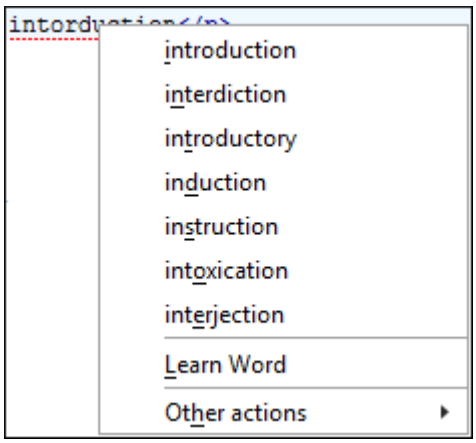


Figure 48. Automatic Spell Checking in Text Mode



The contextual menu includes the following actions:

Delete Repeated Word

Allows you to delete words that were repeated in consecutive order.

List of Suggestions

A list of words suggested by the spell checking engine as possible replacements for the unknown word.

Learn Word

Allows you to add the current unknown word to the persistent dictionary of learned words *(on page 267)*.

Spell check options (Available in Author mode only)

Opens the **Spell Check** preferences page *(on page 160)*.

Other actions

This submenu give you access to all the usual contextual menu actions.

Related information

Learned Words *(on page 267)*

Spell Check Multiple Files

The **Check Spelling in Files** action allows you to check the spelling on multiple local or remote documents. This action is available in the following locations:

-
- The contextual menu of the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*.
- The contextual menu of the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*, when editing DITA documents.

This action opens the **Check Spelling in Files** dialog box that allows you to define the scope and several other options. After you configure the settings for the operation, click the **Check All** button to check the spelling

in all specified files. The spelling corrections are displayed in the **Results** view *(on page 310)* view at the bottom of the editor and you can group the reported errors as a tree with two levels.

> **Tip:**
> If you want to instruct the spell checking engine to not report a particular word as being a spelling error in the future, use the **Learn Word(s)** action from the contextual menu in the **Results** view.

The following scopes are possible, depending on where the action was invoked:

- **All opened files** - The spell check is performed in all open files.
- **Current file directory** - All the files in the folder of the currently edited file.
- **Entire DITA map hierarchy** - Option available when the dialog is invoked from the **DITA Maps Manager** view. Checks the spelling in all references contained in the DITA map.
- **Project** - All files from the current project.
- **Selected project resources** - The selected files from the current project.
- **Specified path** - Checks the spelling in the files located at a path that you specify.

The **Options** section includes the following options:

- **File filter** - Allows you to filter the files from the selected scope.
- **Recurse subdirectories** - When selected, the spell check is performed recursively for the specified scope. The one exception is that this option is ignored if the scope is set to **All opened files**.
- **Include hidden files** - When selected, the spell check is also performed in the hidden files.
- **Spell Check Options** - The spell check processor uses the options available in the **Spell Check** preferences page *(on page 160)*.

When working with DITA documents, if you invoke the **Check Spelling in Files** action in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*, a slightly different version of the dialog box is displayed:

The following scopes are available when you check the spelling in files from the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*:

- **Entire DITA map hierarchy** - All the files referenced in the currently selected *DITA map (on page 2230)* from in the **DITA Maps Manager** view.
- **Selected DITA map references** - Checks the spelling in the selected references.
- **Specified path** - Checks the spelling in the files located at a path that you specify.

AutoCorrect Misspelled Words

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an *AutoCorrect* feature to automatically correct misspelled words, as well as to insert certain symbols or other text, as you type in **Author** mode. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a default list of commonly misspelled words and symbols, but you can modify the list to suit your needs. You can also choose to have the *AutoCorrect* feature use suggestions from the main spell

checker. The suggestions will only be used if the misspelled words are not found in the *Replacements Table (on page 132)*.

When enabled, the *AutoCorrect* feature can be used to do the following:

- Automatically correct misspelled words while you edit in **Author** mode. The actual operation of replacing a word is triggered by a space, dash, or certain punctuation characters (`, . ; : ? ! ' " ) ] }`).
- Easily insert symbols. For example, if you want to insert a ® character, you would type `(R)`.
- Quickly insert text fragments.
- Quickly insert XML fragments. For example, if you enter a hyphen (**-**) in an empty paragraph followed by a space, it will automatically be converted to a list with a list item.

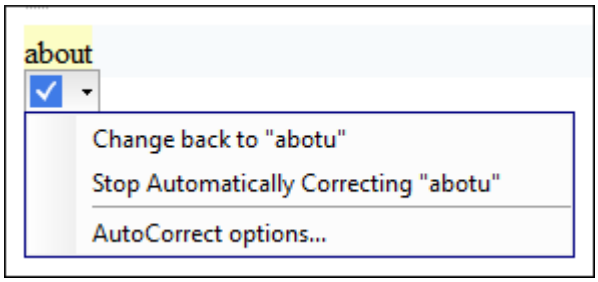
AutoCorrect is enabled by default. To configure this feature, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit Modes > Author > AutoCorrect**.

AutoCorrect Drop-down Actions

After the automatic operation of replacing a misspelled word (triggered by a space, dash, or certain punctuation characters), the affected string is highlighted. The highlight is removed upon the next editing action (text insertion or deletion). If you hover over the highlight, a small widget appears below the word. If you hover over the widget, it expands and you can click it to present a drop-down list that includes the following actions:

- **Change back to "[original word]"** - Reverts the correction back to its original form.
- **Stop Automatically Correcting "[original word]"** - This option is presented if the correction is performed based on the *AutoCorrect Replacements Table (on page 132)* and selecting it will delete the corresponding entry from the Replacements Table.
- **Learn Word "[original word]"** - This option is presented if the **Use additional suggestions from the spell checker** option *(on page 131)* is selected in the **AutoCorrect** preferences page *(on page 131)* and the correction is performed based on the *Spell Checker*. Selecting this option will add the item to the list of learned words *(on page 267)*.
- **AutoCorrect options** - Opens the **AutoCorrect** preferences page *(on page 131)* that allows you to configure the feature.

Figure 49. AutoCorrect Drop-down Actions



AutoCorrect Case-Sensitivity

The *AutoCorrect* feature results in the following types of substitutions regarding case-sensitivity:

- Words with all lower-case characters will be replaced with lower-case substitutions (for example, "*abotu*" is replaced with "*about*").
- Words with irregular-case characters will be replaced with lower-case substitutions ("*ABotU*" is replaced with "*about*").
- Words with all upper-case characters will be replaced with upper-case substitutions ("*ABOTU*" is replaced with "*ABOUT*").
- Words starting with an upper-case character will be replaced with substitutions having the same pattern ("*Abotu*" is replaced with "*About*").

Note:
The *AutoCorrect* feature also uses the list of **ignored elements from the Spell Check preferences page** *(on page 162)*. All elements (along with their descendant elements) included in this list will be ignored by the *AutoCorrect* engine.

Related information
Spell Checking *(on page 259)*

Add Dictionaries for the AutoCorrect Feature

To add new dictionaries for the *AutoCorrect* mechanism *(on page 270)*, or to replace an existing one, follow these steps:

1. Download an *AutoCorrect* dictionary file for the desired language. The file needs to have a `.dat` file extension.
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit Modes > Author > AutoCorrect > Dictionaries** *(on page 133)*.
3. Choose one of the following two options for adding the downloaded files:
    a. Copy the downloaded `.dat` file to the default directory displayed in the **Dictionaries default folder** option. *(on page 133)*. Note that if you are replacing an existing dictionary file, this is the best option.
    b. Copy the downloaded `.dat` file to any other directory, select the **Include dictionaries from** option *(on page 133)*, and select that directory. If you choose this option, make sure you read this important note *(on page 133)*.
4. Restart the application for the *AutoCorrect* mechanism to start using the new dictionary.

Working with Special Characters and Encoding

While regular characters make up the English and European alphabets and the corresponding basic set of figures and symbols, there are many other *special characters* that belong to various other language representations, such as Arabic, Indian, Japanese, Chinese, or Korean. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for special characters in various ways:

Opening and Saving Documents

The Unicode standard provides support for all the character symbols in all known languages andOxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for all Unicode characters *(on page 274)*. There are various encoding options and features to help determine how to handle documents with unsupported characters *(on page 274)*.

Fonts

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides the ability to choose the fonts to be used in the various editing modes *(on page 164)*. In some cases, changing the font may be a solution when special characters are not rendered as expected.

For special characters that are not included in any of the default fonts, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin tries to find that symbol in a *fallback* font *(on page 274)*. For the **Author** editing mode, you can specify a set of fallback fonts in the `font-family` CSS property (in the particular CSS file used for rendering your documents). For more information, see the CSS Support in Author Mode *(on page 1709)* section.

Tip:
For documents written in languages that use special characters (such as Japanese or Chinese), change the font to one that supports the specific characters (a Unicode font). For the Windows platform, *Arial Unicode MS* or *MS Gothic* is recommended. To change the font in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Fonts**. You can select a font for each editing mode in this preferences page.

Navigation and Layout

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports bidirectional text, such as Arabic, Hebrew, and certain Asian languages, or other special characters that are combined into a single glyph.

Editing

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a contextual menu action that converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character *(on page 324)*.

If you do not have a special way of inserting special characters using your keyboard, you can insert special characters using the **Character Map** feature *(on page 276)*.

For more information about working with special characters in specific editing modes, see the following sections:

- Special Character Support in Author Mode *(on page 500)*
- Special Character Support in Grid Mode *(on page 341)*

Unicode Support

Unicode is a standard for providing consistent encoding, representation, and handling of text. There is a unique Unicode number for every character, independent of the platform and language. Unicode is internationally recognized and is required by modern standards (such as XML, Java, JavaScript, LDAP, CORBA 3.0, WML, etc.).

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for the Unicode standard, enabling your XML application to be targeted across multiple platforms, languages, and countries without re-engineering. Internally, the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses 16-bit characters covering the Unicode Character set.

Note:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin may not be able to display characters that are not supported by the operating system (either not installed or unavailable).

Tip:
On windows, you can enable the support for **CJK** (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) languages from **Control Panel / Regional and Language Options / Languages / Install files for East Asian languages**.

Related information
Unicode Fallback Font Support *(on page 274)*
Inserting Special Characters with the Character Map *(on page 276)*

Opening and Saving Documents with Unsupported Characters

When loading documents, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin receives the encoding of the document from the Eclipse platform. This encoding is then used to instruct the Java Encoder to load support for and to save the document using the specified code chart.

Saving Documents with Unsupported Characters

When saving a document with UTF-16 encoding, the saved document has a Byte Order Mark (BOM) that specifies the byte order of the document content. The default byte order is platform-dependent. That means that a UTF-16 document created on a Windows platform (where the default byte order mark is *UnicodeLittle*) has a different BOM than one created on a macOS platform (where the byte order mark is *UnicodeBig*). The byte order and the BOM of an existing document are preserved when the document is edited and saved.

Unicode Fallback Font Support

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides fonts for most common Unicode ranges. However, if you use special symbols or characters *(on page 276)* that are not included in the default fonts, they will be rendered as small rectangles. A *fallback* font is a reserve typeface that contains symbols for as many Unicode characters *(on page 274)* as possible. When a display system encounters a character that is not part of the

range of any of the available fonts, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will try to find that symbol in a *fallback* font.

Example of a Scenario Where a Fallback Font is Needed

Suppose that you need to insert the wheelchair symbol (♿ - `U+267F`) into your content in a Windows operating system. By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin does not render this symbol correctly since it is not included in any of the default fonts. It is included in **Segoe UI Symbol**, but this font is not part of the default fonts that come with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To allow Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to recognize and render the symbol correctly, you can add **Segoe UI Symbol** as a *fallback* font.

Adding a Fallback Font in Windows (7 or Later)

To add a fallback font to the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation, use the following procedure:

1. Start Windows Explorer and browse to the *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`/jre/lib/fonts` directory.
2. Create a directory called `fallback` (if it is not already there).
3. Copy a font file (True Type Font - TTF) that includes the special characters into this directory.

   > **Tip:**
   > You could, for example, copy the *Segoe UI Symbol Regular* font from `C:\Windows\Fonts`.

4. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for the changes to take full effect.

Result: Whenever Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin finds a character that cannot be rendered using its standard fonts, it will look for the glyph in the fonts stored in the `fallback` folder.

Adding a Fallback Font in Other Platforms

For macOS or other platforms, you could use the following approach:

1. Use a font editor (such as FontForge) to combine multiple true type fonts into a single custom font.
2. Install the font file into the dedicated font folder of your operating system.
3. In Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Fonts**.
4. Click the **Change** button for the particular editing mode and select your custom font from the drop-down list in the subsequent dialog box.
5. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for the font changes to take full effect.

Related information

Unicode Support *(on page 274)*
Inserting Special Characters with the Character Map *(on page 276)*

Inserting Special Characters with the Character Map

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a **Character Map** for inserting special characters. It can also be used to find the decimal, hexadecimal, or *character entity* equivalent for a particular character or symbol.

Inserting Special Characters

To insert a special character at the current location within a document, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Character Map** dialog box *(on page 277)* by **Edit >** Ω **Insert from Character Map**.
2. Find the symbol you want to insert and double-click it (or select it and click **Insert**).

> **Tip:**
> The most recently used characters and some of the most common characters are listed when you click the Ω **Symbols** drop-down button so you can easily insert any of those characters by simply selecting it from the drop-down.

Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent

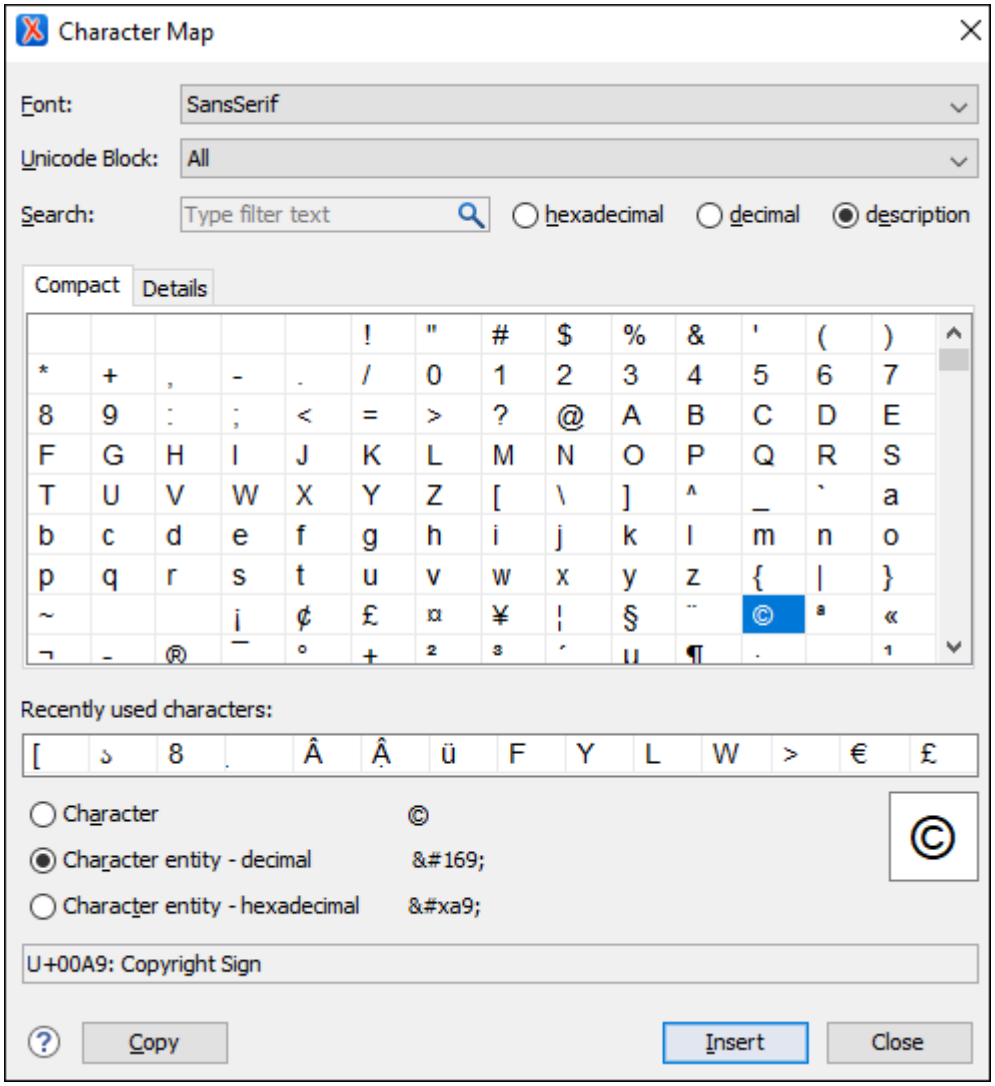
You can see the hexadecimal value for any character that is already inserted in your document by placing the cursor right after the character and you can see its value in the status bar at the bottom of the application.

For other characters, or to find the decimal equivalent, or even the *character entity* equivalent, following these steps:

1. Open the **Character Map** dialog box *(on page 277)* by **Edit >** Ω **Insert from Character Map**.
2. Find the symbol and select it. You can use the filters and the **Search** field at the top of the dialog box to narrow the search.
3. Click the **Details** tab on top of the preview window to see the decimal, hexadecimal, and description of the character. The *character entity* equivalent (both its decimal and hexadecimal values) are displayed at the bottom of the dialog box.

Character Map Dialog Box

Figure 50. Character Map Dialog Box



The **Character Map** dialog box allows you to visualize all characters that are available in a particular font, pick the character you need, and insert it in the document you are editing. It includes the following fields and sections:

Font

Use this drop-down list to choose the font that will have characters displayed.

Unicode Block

Use this drop-down list to only see a certain range of characters. This will filter the number of characters displayed, showing only a contiguous range of characters corresponding to the selected block. Unassigned characters are displayed as empty squares.

Search

Use this filter to search for a character by one of the following attributes:

- **hexadecimal**
- **decimal**

- **description**

> **Note:**
> Selecting **description** opens the **Details** tab *(on page 278)*. If you enter a character description in the **Search** field, the **description** is selected automatically.

Character Table Section

The characters that are available to be inserted are listed in two tabs:

- **Compact** - Matrix-like table that displays a visual representation of the characters.
- **Details** - Displays the available characters in a tabular format, presenting their decimal and hexadecimal value along with their description.

Recently Used Characters Section

Displays the symbols that you have used recently and you can also select one from there to insert it in the current document.

Character Mode Section

The next section of the dialog box allows you to select how you want the character to appear in the **Text** editing mode. You can choose between the following:

- **Character**
- **Character entity - decimal**
- **Character entity - hexadecimal**

You can see the character or code that will be inserted in **Text** mode next to the selections in this section and a box on the right side of the dialog box allows you to see the character that will be inserted in **Author** mode. You can also see the name and range name of a character either at the bottom of the dialog box, or in a tooltip when hovering the cursor over the character.

Click the **Insert** button to insert the selected character in the current editor at the cursor position. You will see the character in the editor if the editor font *(on page 164)* is able to render it. The **Copy** button copies it to the clipboard without inserting it in the editor.

> **Note:**
> The **Character Map** dialog box is not available in the **Grid** editor *(on page 220)*.

Related information

Working with Special Characters and Encoding *(on page 272)*

Handling Read-Only Files

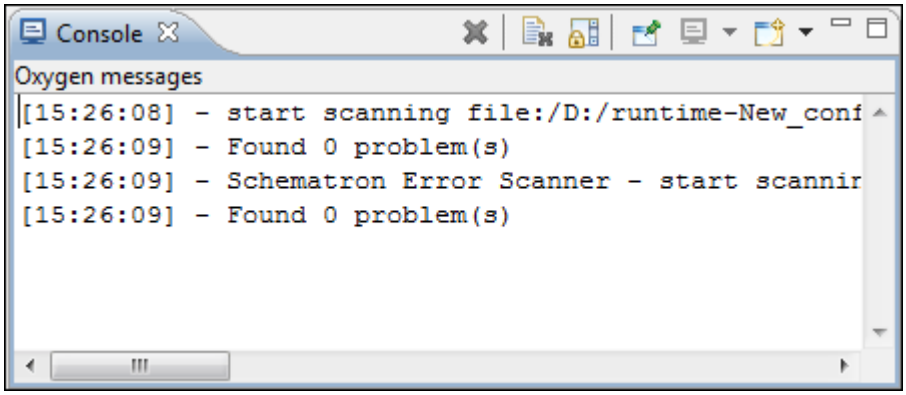
The default workbench behavior applies when editing read-only files in the **Text** mode. For all other modes no modification is allowed provided that the file remains read-only.

You can check out the read-only state of the file by looking in the **Properties** view *(on page 242)*. If you modify the file properties from the operating system and the file becomes writable, you can modify it on the spot without having to reopen it.

Viewing Status Information

Status information generated by operations such as *schema detection*, *manual validation*, *automatic validation*, and *transformations* are fed into the **Console** view, allowing you to monitor how the operation is being executed (the **Enable Oxygen consoles** option *(on page 167)* must be selected in the **View** preferences page *(on page 167)*).

Figure 51. Console View Messages



Messages contain a timestamp, the name of the thread that generated it, and the actual status information. The number of displayed messages can be controlled with the **Limit console output** option in the **View** *(on page 168)* preference page.

To make the view visible, select **Window > Show View > Console**.

Editor Highlights

An *editor highlight* is a text fragment emphasized by a colored background.

Highlights are generated in both **Text** and **Author** mode when the following actions generate results:

- **Find All Elements** *(on page 256)*
- **XPath in Files** *(on page 249)*

By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses a different color for each type of highlight (*XPath in Files*, *Find/Replace*, etc.) You can customize these colors and the maximum number of highlights displayed in a document on the **Editor** preferences page *(on page 110)*. The default maximum number of highlights is 10000.

You can navigate the highlights in the current document by using the following methods:

- Clicking the markers from the range ruler, located at the right side of the editor pane.
- Clicking the **Next** and **Previous** buttons ( ) from the bottom of the range ruler, located at the right side of the editor pane.

  Note:
  When there are multiple types of highlights in the document, the **Next** and **Previous** buttons ( ) navigate through highlights of the same type.

- Clicking the messages displayed in the **Results** view *(on page 310)* view at the bottom of the editor.

To remove the highlights, you can do the following:

- Click the **Remove all** button from bottom of the range ruler, located at the right side of the editor pane.
- Close the results tab at the bottom of the editor that contains the output of the action that generated the highlights.
- Click the **Remove all** button on the right side of the **Results** view *(on page 310)* view at the bottom of the editor.

8.

Editing Supported Document Types

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes built-in *frameworks* for the most popular XML document types (DITA, DocBook, TEI, XHTML, JATS) *(on page 654)* with a full set of features (full editing support, document templates, enhanced CSS rendering, specific actions, validation, content completion, transformation scenarios, and more). In addition, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for editing numerous other types of documents (all XML document types and even some non-XML formats).

Each type of document has unique features and options and this chapter includes a large amount of information about editing numerous types of documents and various editing features that are provided in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, including general information about editing XML documents in **Text** mode *(on page 282)*, the visual **Author** mode *(on page 343)*, and **Grid** mode *(on page 333)*.

For extensive details about the DITA editing features included in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the DITA Authoring chapter *(on page 1869)*.

List of Supported Document Types

The supported document types include the following:

- - XML documents
- - JavaScript documents
- - CSS documents
- - Markdown documents
- Additional supported document types include: Text, Java, Properties, Batch, Shell, PowerShell, Dockerfile, and PHP.

Related information
Built-in Frameworks (Document Types) *(on page 654)*

Editing XML Documents

The structure of an XML document and the required restrictions on its elements and their attributes are defined with an XML schema. This makes it easier to edit XML documents in the visual **Author** editing mode. For more information about schema association, see Associating a Schema to XML Documents *(on page 563)*.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes fully supported built-in *frameworks (on page 2231)* for the most popular XML document types (DITA, DocBook, TEI, XHTML, JATS) *(on page 654)* with a full set of features. These built-in *frameworks* are defined according to a set of rules and a variety of settings that improve editing

capabilities for its particular file type. For extensive details about the DITA editing features included in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the DITA Authoring chapter *(on page 1869)*.

This section includes information about the user interface components and actions that are available in the various editing modes and numerous features to help you edit XML documents in any mode.

Related information

Text Editing Mode *(on page 220)*
Author Editing Mode *(on page 221)*
Grid Editing Mode *(on page 220)*
Built-in Frameworks (Document Types) *(on page 654)*

Editing XML Documents in Text Mode

This section includes topics that describe how to work with XML documents in **Text** mode, including various features, actions that are available, and much more.

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Text** editing mode is designed to be a simple, yet powerful, XML source editor. You can use this mode to edit XML code, markup, and text and it provides support to help you transform, and debug XML-based documents. It is similar to other common text editors, but Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes numerous specialized editing actions, a powerful *Content Completion Assistant (on page 294)*, a helpful **Outline** view *(on page 301)*, and many other unique features.

To switch to this mode, select **Text** at the bottom of the editing area.

Navigating the Document Content in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes some useful features to help you navigate XML documents in **Text** mode.

Navigation Keyboard Shortcuts

Ctrl + CloseBracket (Command + CloseBracket on macOS)

Navigate to the next XML node.

Ctrl + OpenBracket (Command + OpenBracket on macOS)

Navigate to the previous XML node.

Ctrl + RightArrow (Command + RightArrow on macOS)

Navigate one word forward.

Ctrl + LeftArrow (Command + LeftArrow on macOS)

Navigate one word backward.

Ctrl + Home (Command + Home on macOS)

Position the cursor at the beginning of the document.

Ctrl + End (Command + End on macOS)

Position the cursor at the end of the document.

Navigating to a Modification

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes some actions to help you quickly navigate to a particular modification. They can be invoked using keyboards shortcuts or from the **Navigation** menu:

Last Edit Location (Ctrl+Q)

Navigates to the last modification in any open tab.

Back (Alt+LeftArrow (Command+OpenBracket on macOS))

Navigates to the last selected editor tab or to the last selected element/content in the current tab. You can also go back after clicking on links.

Forward (Alt+RightArrow (Command+CloseBracket on macOS))

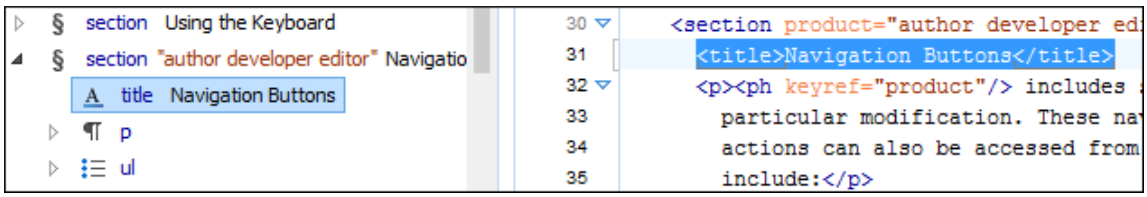
Available after you use the **Back** button at least once, and it navigates in the opposite direction as the **Back** button.

Navigating with the Outline View

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an **Outline** view *(on page 301)* that displays a hierarchical tag overview of the currently edited XML Document.

You can use this view to quickly navigate through the current document by selecting nodes in the outline tree. It is synchronized with the editor area, so when you make a selection in the **Outline** view, the corresponding nodes are highlighted in the editor area.

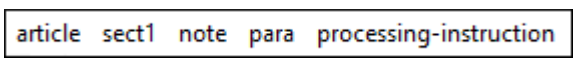
Figure 52. Outline View Navigation in Text Mode



Using the Breadcrumb to Navigate

A *breadcrumb* on the top stripe indicates the path from the document root element to the current element. It can also be used as a helpful tool to navigate to specific elements throughout the structure of the document.

Figure 53. Breadcrumb in Text Mode



The last element listed in the *breadcrumb* is the element at the current cursor position. Clicking an element from the *breadcrumb* selects the entire element and navigates to it in the editor area.

Navigating with the Go To Dialog Box

In **Text** mode, you can navigate precisely to a location in the document you are editing by pressing **(Ctrl+L (Command+L on macOS))** or selecting **Go To Line** from the **Navigation** menu.

Navigating with Bookmarks

By using *bookmarks*, you can mark positions in an edited document so that you can return to it later. This is especially helpful for navigating through large documents or while editing multiple documents.

To insert a *bookmark* in **Text** mode, right-click the desired location in the vertical stripe on the left side of the editor and select **Add Bookmark** (you can remove it by selecting **Remove Bookmark** from the same contextual menu).

To navigate to any of the *bookmarks*, click their corresponding markers in the vertical stripe on the right side of the editor.

Tip:
You can configure the color and how the *bookmarks* are shown from the Eclipse **Annotations** preferences page (**Window ('Eclipse' on macOSX) > Preferences > General > Editors > Text Editors > Annotations**).

Smart Editing in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes *smart editing* features to help you edit XML documents in **Text** mode. The following smart editing features are included:

- **Closing tag auto-expansion** - This feature helps save some keystrokes by automatically inserting a closing tag when you insert a complete start tag and the cursor is automatically placed in between the start and end tags. For instance, after entering a start `<tag>`, the corresponding closing `</tag>` is automatically inserted and the cursor is placed between the two (`<tag>`|`</tag>`.
- **Auto-rename matching tag** - When you edit the name of a start tag, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will mirror-edit the name of the matching end tag. This feature can be controlled from the **Content Completion** option page *(on page 112)*.
- **Auto-breaking the edited line** - The **Hard line wrap** option *(on page 153)* automatically breaks the edited line when its length exceeds the maximum line length defined for the format and indent operation *(on page 153)*.
- **Indent on Enter** - The **Indent on Enter** option *(on page 152)* indents the new line inserted when you press **Enter**.
- **Smart Enter** - The **Smart Enter** option *(on page 152)* inserts an empty line between the start and end tags. If you press **Enter** between a start and end tag, the action places the cursor in an indented position on the empty line between the lines that contain the start and end tag.
- **Double-click** - A double-click selects certain text, depending on the position of the click in the document:

- If the click position is on a start tag or end tag, then the element name is selected.
- If the click position is after a start tag or before an end tag, then the entire content of the element without the start and end tags is selected.
- If the click position is before a start tag or after an end tag, then the entire tag is selected, including the start and end tags, and the content in between.
- If the click position is immediately before an attribute, then the entire attribute and its value are selected.
- If the click position is immediately after the opening quote or immediately before the closing quote of an attribute value, then the entire attribute value is selected.
- Otherwise, a double-click selects contiguous text.

- **Triple-click** - A triple-click selects the entire current line of text.

Shortcut Actions in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes numerous shortcut actions to help you edit content in the **Text** editing mode.

Undo/Redo Actions

The typical undo and redo actions are available with shortcuts or in the **Edit** menu:

Undo (Ctrl + Z (Command + Z on macOS))

Reverses a maximum of 200 editing actions to return to the preceding state.

> **Note:**
> Complex operations such as **Replace All** or **Indent selection** count as single undo events.

Redo (Ctrl + Y (Command + Shift + Z on macOS, Ctrl + Shift + Z on Linux/Unix))

Recreates a maximum of 100 editing actions that were undone by the **Undo** function.

Copy and Paste Actions

The typical copying and pasting actions are available with shortcuts or in the contextual menu (or the **Edit** menu):

Cut (Ctrl + X (Command + X on macOS))

Removes the currently selected content from the document and places it in the clipboard.

Copy (Ctrl + C (Command + C on macOS))

Places a copy of the currently selected content in the clipboard.

The clipboard contains the precise node structure that is preserved when pasting to another location within the same document or to another document opened in the **Author** mode. The

copied content contains an HTML flavor that attempts to convert the copied structure to plain HTML, which can be useful for preserving the styles when pasting into editors such as MS Word.

Copy as XML

Copies the selection as a string that contains the structured XML content.

Copy as Markdown

Copies the selection as a string that contains its Markdown-converted equivalent.

Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on macOS))

Inserts the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.

Select All (Ctrl + A (Command + A on macOS))

Selects the entire content of the current document.

Moving XML Nodes

You can use the following shortcuts to move XML elements or XSLT variables up or down in **Text** mode:

Ctrl + Alt + UpArrow (Command + Option + UpArrow on macOS)

Moves the node up one line.

Ctrl + Alt + DownArrow (Command + Option + DownArrow on macOS)

Moves the node down one line.

Note:
The requirements for these node moving actions to work are as follows:

- The mechanism is designed to work without a selection. If you use these actions on a selection of content, it moves the entire selection. To make this mechanism work as intended, simply position the cursor somewhere on the line that you want to move.
- A start tag must be the first text occurrence on the line where the cursor is positioned.
- On the line where the element ends, only whitespaces are allowed after the end tag.

Miscellaneous Shortcut Actions in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes the following other miscellaneous shortcut actions in **Text** mode:

Ctrl + Delete (Command + Delete on macOS)

Deletes the next word.

Ctrl + Backspace (Command + Backspace on macOS)

Deletes the previous word.

Ctrl + W (Command + W on macOS)

Cuts the previous word.

Ctrl + K (Command + K on macOS)

Cuts to end of line.

Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on macOS) or F3

Use this shortcut to open any of the following:

- Any absolute URL (URLs that have a protocol), regardless of their location in the document.
- URI attributes such as: `@schemaLocation`, `@noNamespaceSchemaLocation`, `@href` and others.
- Open the target for DITA references (such as a `@conref`, `@conkeyref`, `@keyref`, and more). [Only **F3** works for these types of references]
- Processing instructions used for associating resources, xml-models, xml-stylesheets.

Ctrl + Shift + Y (Command + Shift + Y on macOS) (Document > Edit > Toggle Line Wrap)

Enables or disables line wrapping. When enabled, if text exceeds the width of the displayed editor, content is wrapped so that you do not have to scroll horizontally.

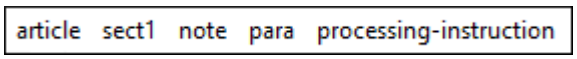
Editing XML Markup in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes some useful actions that allow you to easily edit XML markup in **Text** mode. These actions are available in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu, and many of the actions can also be done with simple keyboard shortcuts.

Using the Breadcrumb

A *breadcrumb* on the top stripe indicates the path from the document root element to the current element. It can also be used as a helpful tool to insert and edit specific elements in the document structure.

Figure 54. Breadcrumb in Text Mode



The last element listed in the *breadcrumb* is the element at the current cursor position. Clicking an element in the *breadcrumb* selects the entire element in the editor area. Also, each element provides a contextual menu with access to the following actions:

Append Child

Allows you to select an element (from a drop-down list) that is allowed by the associated schema and inserts it as a child of the current element.

Insert Before

Allows you to select an element (from a drop-down list) that is allowed by the associated schema and inserts it immediately before the current element, as a sibling.

Insert After

Allows you to select an element (from a drop-down list) that is allowed by the associated schema and inserts it immediately after the current element, as a sibling.

Edit Attributes

Opens an editing window that allows you to edit the attributes of the currently selected element.

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected element in a comment, if the element is not already commented. If it is already commented, this action will remove the comment.

Cut

Removes the selected element and copies it to the clipboard.

Copy

Copies the selected element to the clipboard.

Delete

Deletes the currently selected element.

Move Nodes

You can easily move XML nodes in the current document by using the following shortcut keys:

Alt + UpArrow (Option + UpArrow on macOS)

Moves the current node or selected nodes in front of the previous node.

Alt + DownArrow (Option + DownArrow on macOS)

Moves the current node or selected nodes after the subsequent node.

Rename Elements

You can rename elements by using the following actions in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

Rename Element

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

Rename Prefix (Alt + Shift + P (Command + Shift + P on macOS))

The prefix of the element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same prefix, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

- If you select the **Rename current element prefix** option, the application will recursively traverse the current element and all its children. *For example*, to change the `xmlns:p1="ns1"` association in the current element to `xmlns:p5="ns1"`, if the `xmlns:p1="ns1"` association is applied on the parent element, then Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will introduce `xmlns:p5="ns1"` as a new declaration in the current element

and will change the prefix from `p1` to `p5`. If `p5` is already associated with another namespace in the current element, then the conflict will be displayed in a dialog box. By pressing **OK**, the prefix is modified from `p1` to `p5` without inserting a new declaration.
- If you select the **Rename current prefix in all document** option, the application will apply the change on the entire document.
- To also apply the action inside attribute values, select the **Rename also attribute values that start with the same prefix** checkbox.

Surround Content with Tags (Wrap)

You can surround a selection of content with tags (*wrap* the content) by using the following action in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)

Allows you to choose a tag that encloses a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Surround with <![CDATA]]> (Alt + Shift + C (Command + Option + C on macOS))

Surround the selected content with a `<CDATA>` tag so that the parser will interpret it as textual data rather than markup.

Unwrap the Content of Elements

You can unwrap the content of an element by using the following action in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

Delete element tags (Alt + Shift + Comma)

Deletes the start and end tag of the current element.

Join or Split Elements

You can join or split elements in the current document by using the following actions in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

Join elements (Alt + Shift + F (Command + Option + F on macOS))

Joins the left and right elements relative to the current cursor position. The elements must have the same name, attributes, and attributes values.

Split element

Split the element from the cursor position into two identical elements. The cursor must be inside the element.

Other Refactoring Actions

You can also manage the structure of the markup by using the other specific XML refactoring actions that are available in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

Attributes Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add/Change attribute

Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

Convert attribute to element

Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

Delete attribute

Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

Rename attribute

Allows you to rename an attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

Comments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete comments

Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

Elements Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete element

Allows you to delete elements.

Delete element content

Allows you to delete the content of elements.

Insert element

Allows you to insert new elements.

Rename element

Allows you to rename elements.

Unwrap element

Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

Wrap element

Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

Wrap element content

Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

Fragments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Insert XML fragment

Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

Replace element with XML fragment

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

Related information

Refactoring XML Documents *(on page 587)*
Contextual Menu Actions in Text Mode *(on page 322)*

Folding XML Elements in Text Mode

When working with a large document, the *folding (on page 2230)* support in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can be used to collapse some element content leaving only those that you need to edit in focus. Expanding and collapsing works on individual elements. Expanding an element leaves the child elements unchanged.

Figure 55. Folding of XML Elements in Text Mode

Folding Actions in Text Mode

Element folds are marked with a small icon (/) in the left stripe. To toggle the fold, simply click the icon. Also, if you right-click the icon, the following actions are available in the **Folding** sub-menu:

Toggle Fold

Toggles the state of the current fold.

Collapse Other Folds

Folds all the elements except the current element.

Collapse Child Folds

Folds the child elements that are indented one level inside the current element.

Expand Child Folds

Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

Expand All

Unfolds all elements in the current document.

Resources

For more information about the *folding* support in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/eR9HfN_peAE

Drag and Drop in Text Mode

To move a whole region of text to other location in the same edited document, just select the text, drag the selection by holding down the left mouse button and drop it to the target location.

You can also copy content from other applications and paste it into the document.

Selecting Content in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a variety of keyboard shortcuts that allow you to select content in **Text** mode. These include numerous standard continuous selection possibilities that are common to many text editors.

Standard Continuous Selection Shortcuts

Ctrl + A (Meta + A on macOS)

Selects all content in the document.

Shift + Left/Right Arrow Keys

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it one character at a time in the direction that you press the arrow keys.

Shift + Up/Down Arrow Keys

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it one line at a time in the direction that you press the arrow keys.

Ctrl + Shift + Left/Right Arrow Keys (Meta + Shift + Left/Right Arrow Keys on macOS)

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it one word at a time in the direction that you press the arrow keys.

Shift + Home

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the beginning of the current line (on macOS, it extends to the beginning of the document).

Shift + End

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the end of the current line (on macOS, it extends to the end of the document).

Ctrl + Shift + Home

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the beginning of the document.

Ctrl + Shift + End

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the end of the document.

Shift + PageUp

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it up one screen page.

Shift + PageDown

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it down one screen page.

Double-Click

Selects certain text, depending on the position of the click in the document. See Smart Editing: Double-Click *(on page 284)* for the specifics.

Triple-Click

Selects entire regions of text, depending on the position of the click in the document. See the Smart Editing: Triple-Click *(on page 285)* for the specifics.

Right-Click > Select > Element

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

Right-Click > Select > Content

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

Right-Click > Select > Attributes

Selects all the attributes of the element at the current cursor position.

Right-Click > Select > Parent

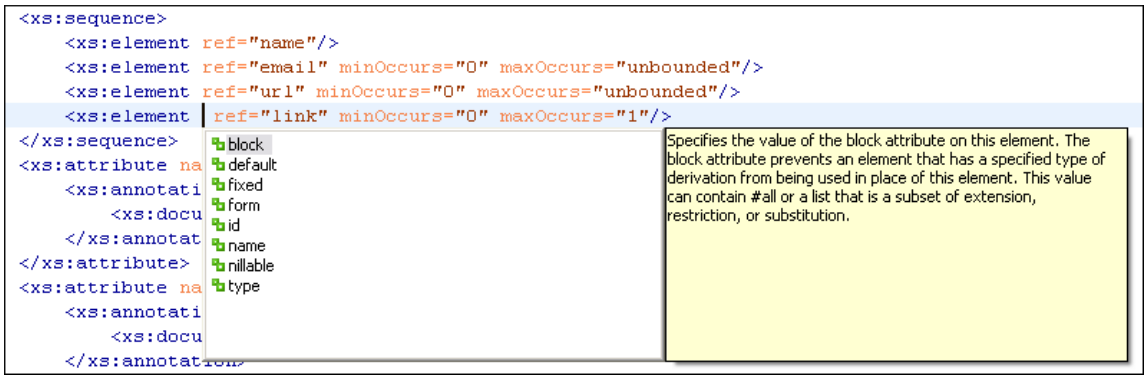
Selects the entire parent element at the current cursor position.

Content Completion Assistant in Text Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an intelligent *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* that offers proposals for inserting structured language elements, attributes, and attribute values that are valid in the current editing context.

The *Content Completion Assistant* is enabled by default. To disable it, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Editor > Content Completion**, and deselect the **Enable content completion** option *(on page 112)*.

Figure 56. Content Completion Assistant



Content Completion and the Associated Schema

The *Content Completion Assistant* feature is schema-driven and the list of proposals in the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* depend on the associated schemas (DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG, or NVDL schema). For information about the various ways to associate a schema and the order of their precedence, see the Associating a Schema to XML Documents *(on page 563)* section.

Using the Content Completion Assistant in Text Mode

The feature is activated in **Text** mode in the following situations:

- After you enter the **<** character when inserting an element, it is automatically activated after a short delay. You can adjust the activation delay with the **Activation delay of the proposals window (ms)** option *(on page 114)* from the **Content Completion** preferences page.
- After typing a partial element or attribute name, you can manually activate it by pressing **Ctrl + Space** or **Alt + ForwardSlash (Command + Option + ForwardSlash on macOS)**. If there is only one valid proposal at the current location, it is inserted without displaying the list of proposals.

You can navigate through the list of proposals by using the **Up** and **Down** keys on your keyboard. In some cases, the *Content Completion Assistant* displays a documentation window with information about the particular proposal and some of them have links to additional information (for example, DITA elements might have a link to the DITA Style Guide). You can also change the size of the documentation window by dragging its top, right, and bottom borders.

To insert the selected proposal in **Text** mode, do one of the following:

- Press **Enter** or **Tab** to insert both the start and end tags and position the cursor inside the start tag in a position suitable for inserting attributes.
- Press **Ctrl + Enter (Command + Enter on macOS)** to insert both the start and end tags and positions the cursor between the tags in a position where you can start typing content.

Note:
When the DTD, XML Schema or RELAX NG schema specifies required child elements for the newly added element, they are inserted automatically only if the **Add Element Content** option *(on page 113)* (in the **Content Completion** preferences page) is selected. The *Content Completion Assistant* can also add optional content and first choice particle, as specified in the DTD, XML Schema, or RELAX NG schema. To activate these features, select the **Add optional content** *(on page 113)* and **Add first Choice particle** *(on page 113)* options in the **Content Completion** preferences page.

After inserting an element, the cursor is positioned:

- Before the > character of the start tag, if the element allows attributes, to allow rapid insertion of any of the attributes supported by the element. Pressing the space bar displays the Content Completion list once again. This time it contains the list of allowed attribute names. If the attribute supports a fixed

set of parameters, the assistant list displays the list of valid parameters. If the parameter setting is user-defined and therefore variable, the assistant is closed to allow manual insertion. The values of the attributes can be learned from the same elements in the current document.
- After the > character of the start tag, if the element has no attributes.

Where the Content Completion Assistant is Displayed

The *Content Completion Assistant* is displayed:

- Anywhere within a tag name or at the beginning of a tag name in an XML document, XML Schema, DTD, or Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema.
- Anywhere within an attribute name or at the beginning of an attribute name in any XML document with an associated schema.
- Within attribute values or at the beginning of attribute values in XML documents where lists of possible values have been defined for that element in the schema associated with the document.

Types of Proposals Listed in the Content Completion Assistant

The following things are considered for determining the proposals that are listed in the content completion window:

Element Structure Specified in DTD or Schema

The proposals that populate the *Content Completion Assistant* depend on the element structure specified in the DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema, or NVDL schema associated with the edited document.

Note:
The *Content Completion Assistant* is able to offer elements defined both by XML Schemas version 1.0 and 1.1.

Current Cursor Position

The number and type of elements displayed by the *Content Completion Assistant* is dependent on the cursor's current position in the structured document. The child elements displayed within a given element are defined by the structure of the specified DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG (full or compact syntax) schema, or NVDL schema.

Unique ID Attribute Values

A schema may declare certain attributes as *ID* or *IDREF/IDREFS*. When the document is validated, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin checks the uniqueness and correctness of the `@id` attributes. It also collects the attribute values declared in the document to prepare the list of proposals. This is available for documents that use DTD, XML Schema, and Relax NG schema.

Values for *xml:id* Attributes

Values of all the `@xml:id` attributes are handled as `@id` attributes. They are collected and displayed by the *Content Completion Assistant* as possible values for *anyURI* attributes defined in the schema of the edited document. This works only for XML Schema and Relax NG schemas.

Links/References in DITA

When entering values for the various types of links and references in DITA (for example, values for `@href` or `@conref` elements), the *Content Completion Assistant* will propose potential targets when you use the forward slash key (*/*).

ID Values for DITA Key References

In DITA, when inserting key references (`@keyref`) or content key references (`@conkeyref`), the ID values that are defined in the key reference are presented as possible targets. The *Content Completion Assistant* will only propose targets that are valid in the current context.

Element and Attribute Values

For documents that use an XML Schema or Relax NG schema, the *Content Completion Assistant* offers proposals for attribute and element values as long as the allowed values are defined in the schema. Also, if a default value or fixed value is defined in the schema, then that value is offered in the *Content Completion Assistant*.

Related information

Customizing the Content Completion Assistant Using a Configuration File *(on page 1596)*

Schema Annotations in Text Mode

A schema annotation is a documentation snippet associated with the definition of an element or attribute in a schema. If such a schema is associated with an XML document, the annotations are displayed in:

- The *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.
- A small tooltip window shown when the mouse hovers over an element or attribute.

The schema annotations support is available if the schema type is one of the following:

- XML Schema
- Relax NG
- NVDL schema
- DTD

This feature is enabled by default, but you can disable it by deselecting the **Show annotations in Content Completion Assistant** *(on page 114)* option in the **Annotations** preferences page.

Styling Annotations with HTML

You can use HTML format in the annotations you add in an XML Schema or Relax NG schema. This improves the visual appearance and readability of the documentation window displayed when editing XML documents

validated against such a schema. An annotation is recognized and displayed as HTML if it contains at least one HTML element (such as `<div>`, `<body>`, `<p>`, `<br>`, `<table>`, `<ul>`, or `<ol>`).

The HTML rendering is controlled by the **Show annotations using HTML format, if possible** *(on page 115)* option in the **Annotations** preferences page. When this option is deselected, the annotations are converted and displayed as plain text and if the annotation contains one or more HTML tags (`<p>`, `<br>`, `<ul>`, `<li>`), they are rendered as an HTML document loaded in a web browser. For example, `<p>` begins a new paragraph, `<br>` breaks the current line, `<ul>` encloses a list of items, and `<li>` encloses an item of the list.

Collecting Annotations from XML Schemas

In an XML Schema, the annotations are specified in an `<xs:annotation>` element like this:

```
<xs:annotation>
  <xs:documentation>
           Description of the element.
  </xs:documentation>
</xs:annotation>
```

If an element or attribute does not have a specific annotation, then Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin looks for an annotation in the type definition of that element or attribute.

Collecting Annotations from Relax NG Schemas

For Relax NG schema, element and attribute annotations are made using the `<documentation>` element from the `http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0` namespace like this:

```
<define name="person" >
  <element name="person">
    <a:documentation xmlns:a="http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0">
           Information about a person. </a:documentation>
      <ref name="name"/>
        <zeroOrMore>
      <ref name="email"/>
        </zeroOrMore>
  </element>
</define>
```

However, any element outside the Relax NG namespace (`http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0`) is handled as annotation and the text content is displayed in the annotation window. To activate this behavior, select the **Use all Relax NG annotations as documentation** *(on page 115)* option in the **Annotations** preferences page.

Collecting Annotations from Relax NG Compact Syntax Schemas

For Relax NG Compact Syntax schema, annotations are made using comments like this:

```
##  Information about a person.
element person { name, email*}
```

Collecting Annotation from DTDs

For DTD, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin defines a custom mechanism for annotations using comments enabled by the **Prefer DTD comments that start with "doc:" as annotations** *(on page 114)* option in the **Annotations** preferences page. The following is an example of a DTD annotation:

```
<!--doc:Description of the element. -->
```

Content Completion Helper Views (Text Mode)

Information about the current element being edited is also available in various *dockable (on page 2229)* views, such as the **Model** view *(on page 307)*, **Attributes** view *(on page 305)*, **Elements** view *(on page 308)*, and **Entities** view *(on page 309)*. By default, they are located on the right-hand side of the main editor window. These views, along with the powerful **Outline** view *(on page 301)*, provide spatial and insight information about the edited document and the current element. If any particular view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Code Templates

Code templates are code fragments that can be inserted quickly at the current editing position. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a set of built-in code templates for CSS, Schematron, XSL, XQuery, JSON, HTML, and XML Schema document types. You can also define your own code templates for any type of file and share them with others.

Code templates are displayed with a symbol in the content completion list (**Enter** in **Author** mode or **Ctrl + Space** in **Text** mode). Also, in **Text** mode you can press **Ctrl + Shift + Space** to see a complete list of the available code templates. To enter the code template at the cursor position, select it from the content completion list or type its code and press **Enter**. If a shortcut key has been assigned to the code template, you can also use the shortcut key to enter it.

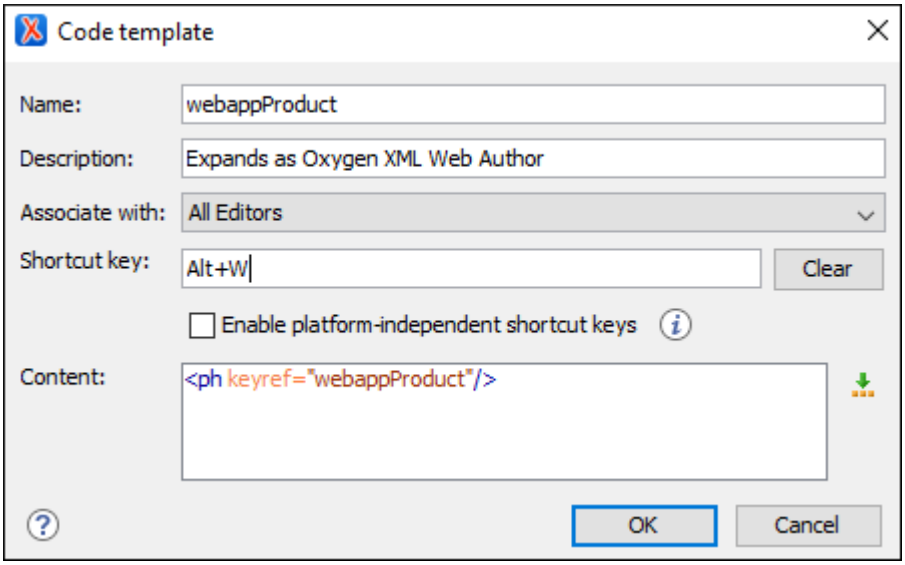
How to Create Code Templates

To create a code template, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Content Completion > Code Templates**.
2. Click **New** to open a code template configuration dialog box.

> **Tip:**
> You can use one of the existing code templates as a starting point by selecting that template and clicking **Duplicate**.

Figure 57. Code Template Configuration Dialog Box



3. Configure your template using the fields in the code template configuration dialog box:
   - **Name** - The name of the code template.
   - **Description** - [Optional] The description of the code template that will appear in the **Code Templates** preferences page and in the tooltip message when selecting it from the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*. HTML markup can be used for better rendering.
   - **Associate with** - You can choose to set the code template to be associated with a specific type of editor or for all editor types.
   - **Shortcut key** - [Optional] If you want to assign a shortcut key that can be used to insert the code template, place the cursor in the **Shortcut key** field and press the desired key combination on your keyboard. Use the **Clear** button if you make a mistake. If the **Enable platform-independent shortcut keys** checkbox is selected, the shortcut is platform-independent and the following modifiers are used:
     - **M1** represents the **Command** key on macOS, and the **Ctrl** key on other platforms.
     - **M2** represents the **Shift** key.
     - **M3** represents the **Option** key on macOS, and the **Alt** key on other platforms.
     - **M4** represents the **Ctrl** key on macOS, and is undefined on other platforms.
   - **Content** - Text box where you define the content that is used when the code template is inserted. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button.
4. Click **OK** to save your new code template.

Result: Your code template can now be selected using the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* (**Enter** in **Author** mode or **Ctrl + Space** in **Text** mode). The code templates are displayed with a symbol.

How to Share Code Templates

There are two ways to easily share all of your code templates with other members of your team:

Method 1: Export/Import

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Templates > Code Templates**.
2. Click the **Export** button to export all of your code templates into an XML file.
3. Save the XML file.
4. Share the XML file with other members of your team.
5. Instruct them to open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Editor > Templates > Code Templates**, click the **Import** button, and select the file you sent them.

   Result: The code templates will be now available in their content completion list.

Method 2: Share Project

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Templates > Code Templates**.
2. Select **Project Options** at the bottom of the dialog box. This stores the preferences in the project file (`.xpr`).
3. Share the project file with the other members of your team. For example, you can commit it to your version control system and have them update their working copy.

   Result: When they open the updated project file in their **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*, the code templates will be available in their content completion list.

Tip:
It is also possible to configure certain actions that function similar to code templates and add them to the content completion list *(on page 1596)* for a particular framework. You could then share the whole framework *(on page 1691)* with other members of your team.

Text Mode Views

There is a variety of *dockable (on page 2229)* helper views that are displayed by default in **Text** mode. There are also a large selection of additional views available in the **Window > Show View** menu. This section presents some of the most helpful views for editing in **Text** mode.

Outline View for XML Documents

The **Outline** view displays a general tag overview of the currently edited XML document. When you edit a document, the **Outline** view dynamically follows the changes that you make, displaying the node that you modify. This functionality gives you great insight on the location of your modifications in the current document. It also shows the correct hierarchical dependencies between elements. This makes it easy for you to be aware of the document structure and the way element tags are nested.

Outline View Features

The **Outline** view allows you to:

- Quickly navigate through the document by selecting nodes in the **Outline** tree.
- Insert or delete nodes using contextual menu actions.
- Move elements by dragging them to a new position in the tree structure.
- Highlight elements in the editor area. It is synchronized with the editor area, so when you make a selection in the editor area, the corresponding nodes are highlighted in the **Outline** view, and vice versa.
- View document errors, as they are highlighted in the **Outline** view. A tooltip also provides more information about the nature of the error when you hover over the faulted element.

Outline View Interface

By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

The upper part of the **Outline** view contains a filter box that allows you to focus on the relevant components. Type a text fragment in the filter box and only the components that match it are presented. For advanced usage you can use wildcard characters (such as `*` or `?`) and separate multiple patterns with commas.

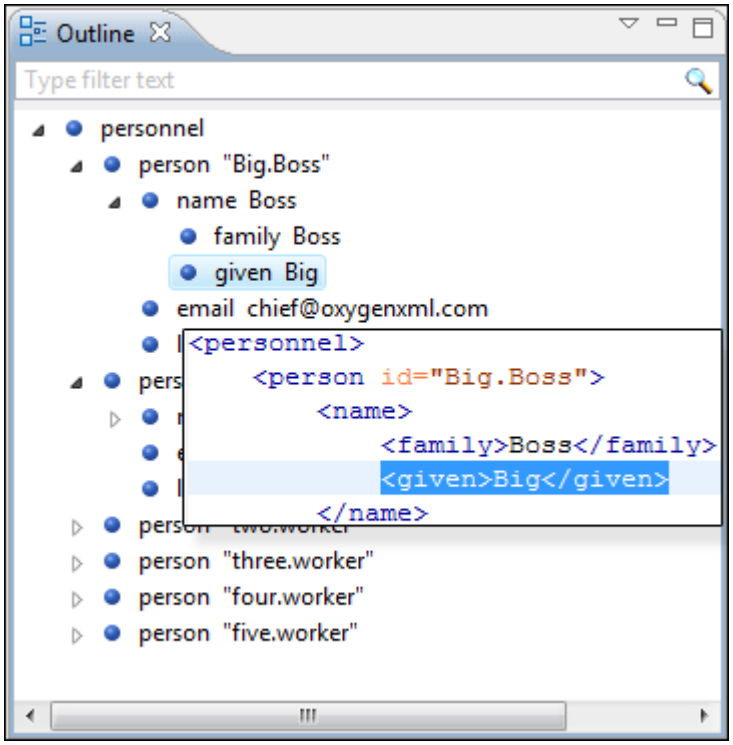
It also includes a **View menu** in the top-right corner that presents a variety of options to help you filter the view even further.

Drag and Drop Actions in the Outline View

Entire XML elements can be moved or copied in the edited document using only the mouse in the **Outline** view with drag-and-drop operations. Several drag and drop actions are possible:

- If you drag an XML element in the **Outline** view and drop it on another node, then the dragged element will be moved after the drop target element.
- If you hold the mouse pointer over the drop target for a short time before the drop then the drop target element will be expanded first and the dragged element will be moved inside the drop target element after its opening tag.
- You can also drop an element before or after another element if you hold the mouse pointer towards the upper or lower part of the targeted element. A marker will indicate whether the drop will be performed before or after the target element.
- If you hold down the **Ctrl (Command on macOS)** key after dragging, a copy operation will be performed instead of a move.

Figure 58. Outline View



Outline View Filters

The upper part of the **Outline** view contains a filter box that allows you to focus on the relevant components. Type a text fragment in the filter box and only the components that match it are presented. For advanced usage you can use wildcard characters (such as `*` or `?`) and separate multiple patterns with commas.

The following actions are available in the **View menu** of the **Outline** view:

Filter returns exact matches

The text filter of the **Outline** view returns only exact matches.

Selection update on cursor move (Available in Text mode)

Controls the synchronization between **Outline** view and source document. The selection in the **Outline** view can be synchronized with the cursor moves or the changes in the editor. Selecting one of the components from the **Outline** view also selects the corresponding item in the source document.

Flat presentation mode of the filtered results

When active, the application flattens the filtered result elements to a single level.

Show comments and processing instructions

Show/hide comments and processing instructions in the **Outline** view.

Show element name

Show/hide element name.

Show text

Show/hide additional text content for the displayed elements.

Show attributes

Show/hide attribute values for the displayed elements. The displayed attribute values can be changed from the Outline preferences panel *(on page 195)*.

Configure displayed attributes

Displays the **XML Structured Outline** preferences page *(on page 195)*.

Outline View Contextual Menu Actions

The contextual menu of the **Outline** view contains the following actions:

Edit Attributes

Displays an in-place attributes editor that allows you to edit the attributes of a selected node.

Edit Profiling Attributes (Available in Author mode)

Allows you to change the profiling attributes *(on page 419)* defined on all selected elements.

Append Child

Invokes a content completion list with the names of all the elements that are allowed by the associated schema and inserts your selection as a child of the current element.

Insert Before

Invokes a content completion list with the names of all the elements that are allowed by the associated schema and inserts your selection immediately before the current element, as a sibling.

Insert After

Invokes a content completion list with the names of all the elements that are allowed by the associated schema and inserts your selection immediately after the current element, as a sibling.

Cut, Copy, Paste, Delete common editing actions

Executes the typical editing actions on the currently selected elements. The **Cut** and **Copy** operations preserve the styles of the copied content.

Paste before (Available in Author mode)

Inserts a well-formed copied element before the currently selected element.

Paste after (Available in Author mode)

Inserts a well-formed copied element after the currently selected element.

Paste as XML (Available in Author mode)

Pastes copied content that is considered to be valid XML, preserving its XML structure.

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected element in a comment, if the element is not already commented. If it is already commented, this action will remove the comment.

Rename Element (Available in Author mode)

Invokes a **Rename** dialog box that allows you to rename the currently selected element, siblings with the same name, or all elements with the same name.

Expand All

Expands the structure tree of the currently selected element.

Collapse All

Collapses all of the structure tree of the currently selected node.

Tip:
You can copy, cut or delete multiple nodes in the **Outline** by using the contextual menu after selecting multiple nodes in the tree.

Attributes View in Text Mode

The **Attributes** view presents all the attributes of the current element determined by the schema of the document. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened from the **Window > Show View** menu.

You can use the **Attributes** view to insert attributes, edit their values, or add values to existing attributes.

The attributes are rendered differently depending on their state:

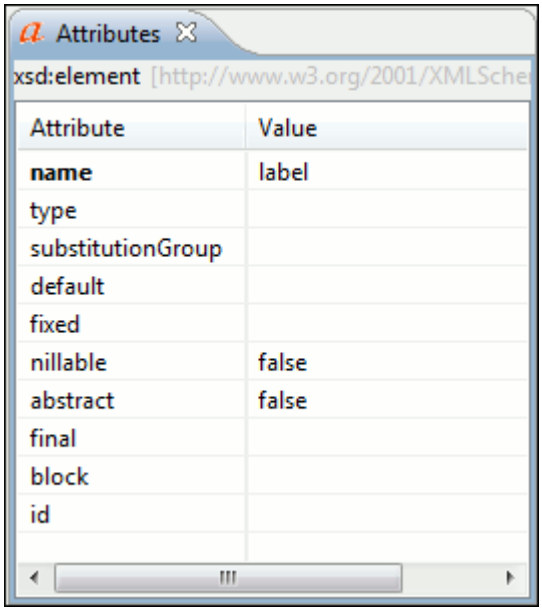
- The names of the attributes are rendered with a bold font, and their values with a plain font.
- Default values are rendered with a plain font, painted gray.
- Empty values display the text "[empty]", painted gray.
- Invalid attributes and values are painted red.

To edit the value of the corresponding attribute, double-click a cell in the **Value** column. If the possible values of the attribute are specified as `list` in the schema of the edited document, the **Value** column acts as a combo box that allows you to either select the value from a list or manually enter it.

You can sort the attributes table by clicking the **Attribute** column header. The table contents can be sorted as follows:

- By attribute name in ascending order.
- By attribute name in descending order.
- Custom order, where the used attributes are displayed at the beginning of the table sorted in ascending order, followed by the rest of the allowed elements sorted in ascending order.

Figure 59. Attributes View



Contextual Menu Actions in the Attributes View

The following actions are available in the contextual menu of the **Attributes** view when editing in **Text** mode:

Add

Allows you to insert a new attribute. Adding an attribute that is not in the list of all defined attributes is not possible when the Allow only insertion of valid elements and attributes *(on page 145)* schema-aware option is selected.

Set empty value

Specifies the current attribute value as empty.

Remove

Removes the attribute (action available only if the attribute is specified). You can invoke this action by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys.

Copy

Copies the `attrName="attrValue"` pair to the clipboard. The `attrValue` can be:

- The value of the attribute.
- The value of the default attribute, if the attribute does not appear in the edited document.
- Empty, if the attribute does not appear in the edited document and has no default value set.

Paste

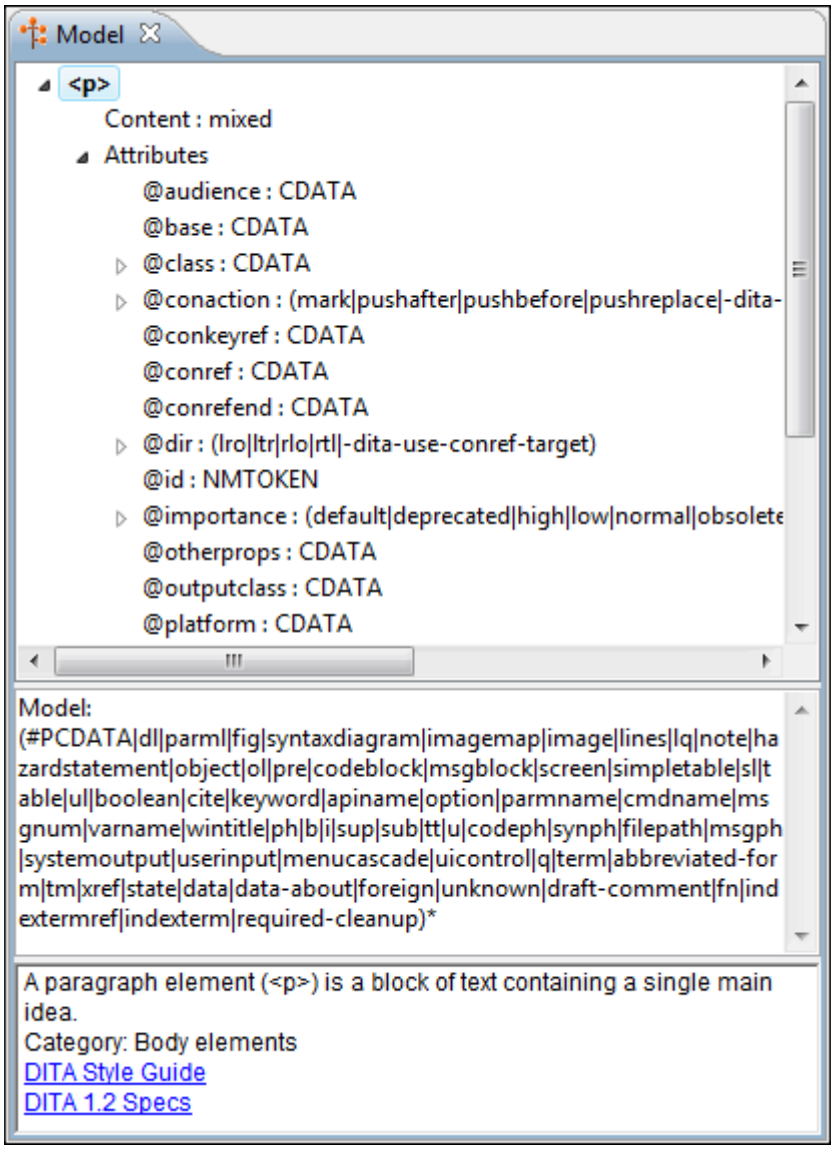
Depending on the content of the clipboard, the following cases are possible:

- If the clipboard contains an attribute and its value, both of them are introduced in the **Attributes** view. The attribute is selected and its value is changed if they exist in the **Attributes** view.
- If the clipboard contains an attribute name with an empty value, the attribute is introduced in the **Attributes** view and you can start editing it. The attribute is selected and you can start editing it if it exists in the **Attributes** view.
- If the clipboard only contains text, the value of the selected attribute is modified.

Model View

The **Model** view presents the structure of the currently selected tag, and its documentation, defined as annotation in the schema of the current document. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Figure 60. Model View

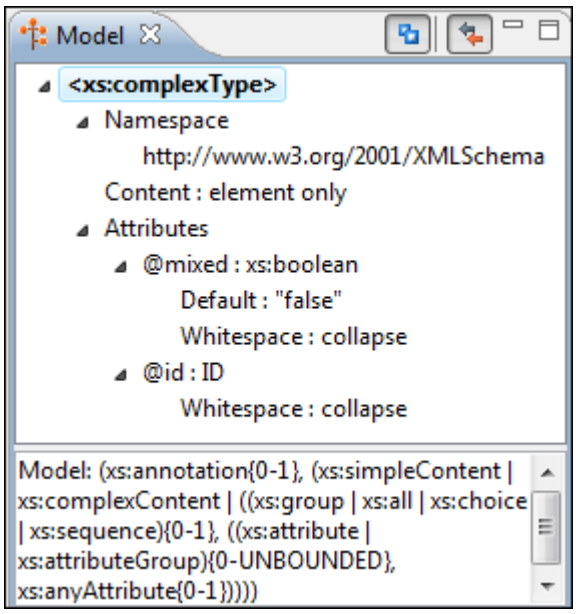


The **Model** view is comprised of two sections, an element structure panel and an annotations panel.

Element Structure Panel

The element structure panel displays the structure of the currently edited or selected tag in a tree-like format. The information includes the name, model, and attributes of the current tag. The allowed attributes are shown along with imposed restrictions, if any.

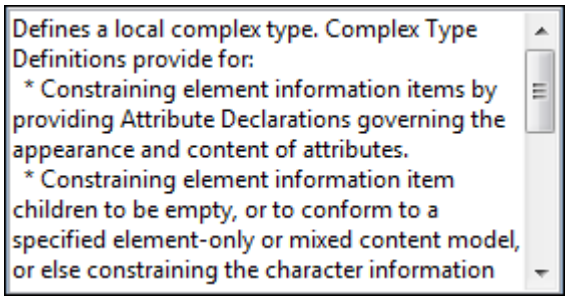
Figure 61. Element Structure Panel



Annotation Panel

The **Annotation** panel displays the annotation information for the currently selected element. This information is collected from the XML schema.

Figure 62. Annotation panel

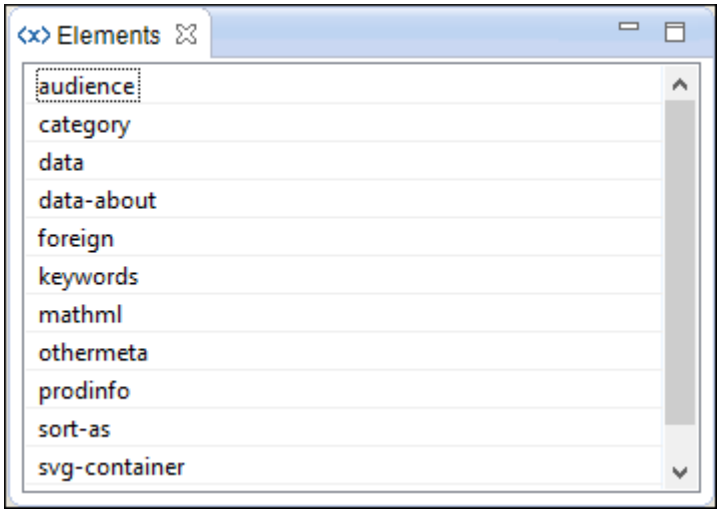


Elements View in Text Mode

The **Elements** view presents a list of all defined elements that are valid at the current cursor position according to the schema associated to the document. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Double-clicking any of the listed elements inserts that element into the edited document, at the current cursor position. Pressing **F2** with an element selected will display information about that particular element.

Figure 63. Elements View in Text Mode



Entities View

Entities provide abbreviated entries that can be used in XML files when there is a need of repeatedly inserting certain characters or large blocks of information. An *entity* is defined using the `ENTITY` statement either in the DOCTYPE declaration or in a DTD file associated with the current XML file.

There are three types of entities:

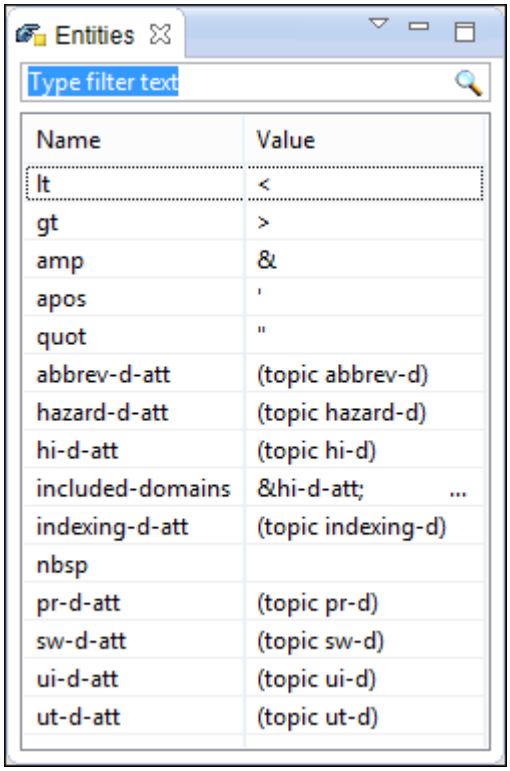
- **Predefined** - Entities that are part of the predefined XML markup (`<`, `>`, `&`, `'`, `"`).
- **Internal** - Defined in the DOCTYPE declaration header of the current XML.
- **External** - Defined in an external DTD module included in the DTD referenced in the XML DOCTYPE declaration.

Note:
If you want to add internal entities, you would need to switch to the Text editing mode and manually modify the DOCTYPE declaration. If you want to add external entities, you need to open the DTD module file and modify it directly.

The **Entities** view displays a list with all entities declared in the current document, as well as built-in ones. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Double-clicking one of the entities will insert it at the current cursor position in the XML document. You can also sort entities by name and value by clicking the column headers.

Figure 64. Entities View



The view features a filtering capability that allows you to search an entity by name, value, or both. Also, you can choose to display the internal or external entities.

Note:
When entering filters, you can use the *?* and * wildcards. Also, you can enter multiple filters by separating them with a comma.

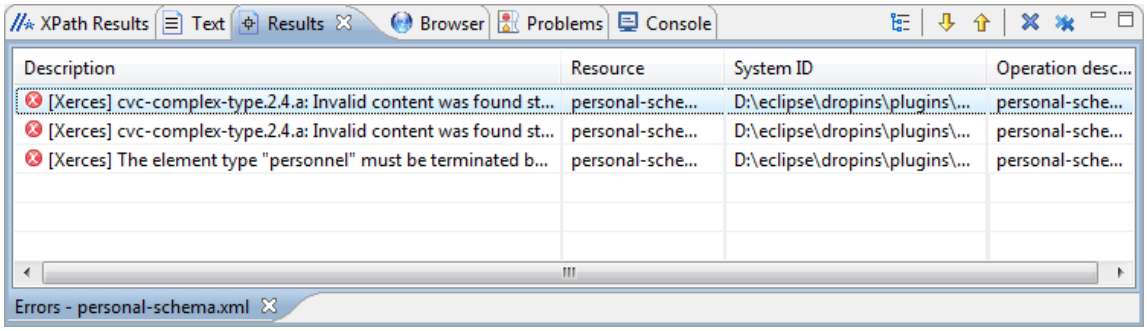
Results View

The **Results** view displays the messages generated as a result of user actions such as validations, transformations, search operations, and others. Each message is a link to the location related to the event that triggered the message. Double-clicking a message opens the file containing the location and positions the cursor at the location offset. The **Results** view is automatically opened when certain actions generate result messages. By default, the view normally opens at the bottom of the editor, but it is *dockable (on page 2229)*, so it can be moved to another UI location alongside other side views.

The actions that contribute messages to this view include:

- **Validation** actions *(on page 525)*
- **Transformation** actions *(on page 796)*
- **Check Spelling in Files** action *(on page 269)*
-
-
- SQL results *(on page 1513)*

Figure 65. Results View



Results View Toolbar Actions

The view includes a toolbar with the following actions:

Grouping Mode toggle options

You can choose to group the result messages in a **Hierarchical** or **Flat** arrangement.

Next

Navigates to the message below the current selection.

Previous

Navigates to the message above the current selection.

Remove selected

Removes the current selection from the view. This can be helpful if you want to reduce the number of messages, or remove those that have already been addressed or not relevant to your task.

Remove all

Removes all messages from the view.

Results View Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available when the contextual menu is invoked in this view:

Learn Word(s) (Available when spelling errors are reported in the Results view)

Adds the word(s) to a list of learned words to instruct the spell checker engine to not report the word(s) as spelling errors in the future.

Apply all default quick fix proposals

This action is available for the tabs in the **Results** view that displays the problems reported after a single file or batch validation operation. In the first phase, the quick fix proposals associated with the presented validation errors are automatically identified and mapped to the corresponding document (if multiple quick fix proposals are available for the same validation error, only the first one is considered). Depending on the number of quick fixes to be applied,

the next phase analyzes the impact of their application and may take some time (an operation progress tracker shows the status).

Once complete, a preview dialog box is presented that provides an overview of the content changes that will be made for each document. The comparison panel also informs you of any problems encountered. In addition, you can choose to exclude certain files from the set of files that the quick fixes will be applied to if you do not agree with the proposed changes to be made. If you do agree with the changes presented, click **Apply** to trigger the procedure of applying the quick fixes and updating the contents of the documents.

> **Important:**
> Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin does not provide an automatic means for reverting changes made by this action so make sure you agree with the previewed changed for applying them.

Remove

Removes selected messages from the view.

Remove all

Removes all messages from the view.

Copy

Copies information associated with the selected messages. For example:

- The file path of the document that triggered the output message.
- Error severity (error, warning, info message, etc.)
- Name of validating processor.
- The line and column in the file that triggered the message.

Copy Description

Copies the description values for all selected items.

Show message

Opens a dialog box that displays the details of the message.

Save Results

Saves the complete list of messages in a file in text format. For each message, the included details are the same as the ones for the **Copy** action *(on page 312)*.

Save Results as XML

Saves the complete list of messages in a file in XML format. For each message, the included details are the same as the ones for the **Copy** action *(on page 312)*.

Save Results as HTML

Saves the complete list of messages in a file in HTML format. For each message, the included details are the same as the ones for the **Copy** action *(on page 312)*.

Save Validation Report (Available for validation errors)

Unlike the **Save Results as HTML** action, where the validation results are formatted in a single table, the HTML report created by this action groups the detected errors by the system IDs of the validated documents and creates a table for each. For greater flexibility in analyzing the results, most of its columns are sortable. Also, links are provided for quickly viewing both the validated document and its associated schema, and links to additional information about the errors detected, when available.

Expand All

Available when **Hierarchical** mode is selected. Expands all the nodes of the tree, which is useful when the messages are presented in a hierarchical mode.

Collapse All

Available when **Hierarchical** mode is selected. Collapses all the nodes of the tree, which is useful when the messages are presented in a hierarchical mode.

Syntax Highlighting in XML Documents

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports syntax highlighting in **Text** mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for XML files, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*.
2. Go to **Editor > Syntax Highlight** *(on page 163)*.
3. Select and expand the **XML** section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.
5. Select the **XML** tab in the **Preview** pane to see the effects of your changes.

Tip:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also allows you to specify syntax highlighting colors for specific XML elements and attributes with specific namespace prefixes. This can be done in the **Editor > Syntax Highlight > Elements/Attributes by Prefix** preferences page *(on page 164)*.

Related Information:
Customize Syntax Highlight colors *(on page 163)*

Syntax Highlight Depending on Namespace Prefix

The syntax highlight scheme of an XML file type *(on page 163)* allows the configuration of a color per each type of token that can appear in an XML file. Distinguishing between the XML tag tokens based on the namespace prefix brings additional visual help in editing some XML file types. For example, in XSLT stylesheets, elements from various namespaces (such as XSLT, XHTML, XSL:FO, or XForms) are inserted in the same document and the editor panel can become cluttered. Marking tags with different colors based on the namespace prefix *(on page 164)* allows easier identification of the tags.

Figure 66. Example of Coloring XML Tags by Prefix

```
<xsl:template match="name">
    <fo:list-item>
        <fo:list-item-label end-indent="label-end()">
            <fo:block text-align="end" font-weight="bold">Full Name:</fo:block>
        </fo:list-item-label>
        <fo:list-item-body start-indent="body-start()">
            <fo:block text-align="start" color="red">
                <xsl:apply-templates select="*"/>
            </fo:block>
        </fo:list-item-body>
    </fo:list-item>
</xsl:template>
```

Related Information:

Changing the colors displayed in the Text Mode Editor *(on page 163)*

Formatting and Indenting XML Documents

In **Text** mode *(on page 220)*, you can decide how the XML file is formatted and indented. In the other modes, and when you switch between modes, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically formats and indents the XML.

You can trigger a format and indent operation for your XML document (in **Text** mode) using one of the following actions:

- **Format and Indent** toolbar button - Formats and indents the current document.
- **Document > Source > Format and Indent** - Formats and indents the whole document.
- **Document > Source > Indent Selection** - Indents the current selection (but does not add line breaks). This action is also available in the **Source** submenu of the contextual menu.
- **Document > Source > Format and Indent Element** - Formats and indents the current element (the inmost nested element that currently contains the cursor) and its child-elements. This action is also available in the **Source** submenu of the contextual menu.

Various settings affect how Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin formats and indents XML. Many of these settings have to do with how whitespace is handled.

Significant and Insignificant Whitespace in XML

XML documents are text files that describe complex documents. Some of the white space (spaces, tabs, line feeds, etc.) in the XML document belongs to the document it describes (such as the space between words in a paragraph) and some of it belongs to the XML document (such as a line break between two XML elements). Whitespace belonging to the XML file is called *insignificant whitespace*. The meaning of the XML would be the same if the insignificant whitespace were removed. Whitespace belonging to the document being described is called *significant whitespace*.

Knowing when whitespace is significant or insignificant is not always easy. For instance, a paragraph in an XML document might be laid out like this:

```
<p>NO Free man shall be taken or imprisoned, or be stripped of his Freedom,
or Liberties, or free Customs, or be outlawed, or exiled, or any otherwise
destroyed; nor will we not pass upon him, nor condemn him, but by lawful
judgment of his Peers, or by the <xref
href="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Law_of_the_land" format="html"
scope="external">Law of the land</xref>.
We will sell to no man, we will not deny to any man either Justice or Right.</p>
```

By default, XML considers a single whitespace between words to be significant, and all other whitespace to be insignificant. The paragraph above could have been written on one line because the XML parser would see it as exactly the same paragraph since all multiple consecutive whitespaces will be replaced with a single whitespace. Removing the insignificant space in markup like this is called *normalizing space*.

In some cases, all the spaces inside an element should be treated as significant. For example, in a code sample:

```
<codeblock>
class HelloWorld
{
   public static void main(String args[])
   {
      System.out.println("Hello World");
   }
}
</codeblock>
```

Here every whitespace character between the `<codeblock>` tags should be treated as significant.

How Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Determines When Whitespace is Significant

When Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin formats and indents an XML document, it introduces or removes insignificant whitespace to produce a layout with reasonable line lengths and elements indented to show their place in the hierarchy of the document. To correctly format and indent the XML source, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin needs to know when to treat whitespace as significant and when to treat it as insignificant.

However it is not always possible to tell this from the XML source file alone. To determine what whitespace is significant, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin assigns each element in the document to one of four categories:

Ignore space

In the ignore space category, all whitespace is considered insignificant. This generally applies to content that consists only of elements nested inside other elements, with no text content.

Normalize space

In the normalize space category, a single whitespace character between character strings is considered significant and all other spaces are considered insignificant. Therefore, all consecutive whitespaces will be replaced with a single space. This generally applies to elements that contain text content only.

Mixed content

In the mixed content category, a single whitespace between text characters is considered significant and all other spaces are considered insignificant.

Notes:

- Whitespace between two child elements embedded in the text is normalized to a single space (rather than to zero spaces as would normally be the case for a text node with only whitespace characters, or the space between elements generally).
- The lack of whitespace between a child element embedded in the text and either adjacent text or another child element is considered significant. That is, no whitespace can be introduced here when formatting and indenting the file.

For example:

```
<p>The file is located in <i>HOME</i>/<i>USER</i>/hello.

     This is a <strong>big</strong>


<emphasis>deal</emphasis>.

</p>
```

In this example, whitespace should not be introduced around the i tags as it would introduce extra significant whitespace into the document. The space between the end `<strong>` tag and the beginning `<emphasis>` tag should be normalized to a single space, not zero spaces.

Preserve space

In the preserve space category, all whitespace in the element is regarded as significant. No changes are made to the spaces in elements in this category. However, child elements may be in another category, and may be treated differently.

Attribute values are always in the preserve space category. The spaces between attributes in an element tag are always in the default space category.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin evaluates several pieces of information to assign an element to one of these categories. An element is always assigned to the most restrictive category (from Ignore to Preserve) that it is assigned to by any of the sources Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin consults. For instance, if the element is named on the **Default elements** list (as described below) but it has an `@xml:space="preserve"` attribute in the source file, it will be assigned to the preserve space category. If an element has the `@xml:space="default"` attribute in the source, but is listed on the **Mixed content** elements list, it will be assigned to the mixed content category.

To assign elements to these categories, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin consults information from the following sources:

xml:space

If the XML element contains the `@xml:space` attribute, the element is promoted to the appropriate category based on the value of the attribute.

CSS whitespace property

If the CSS stylesheet controlling the **Author** mode editor applies the `whitespace: pre` setting to an element, it is promoted to the preserve space category.

CSS display property

If a text node contains only white-spaces:

- If the node has a parent element with the CSS `display` property set to `inline` then the node is promoted to the mixed content category.
- If the left or right sibling is an element with the CSS `display` property set to `inline` then the node is promoted to the mixed content category.
- If one of its ancestors is an element with the CSS `display` property set to `table` then the node is assigned to the ignore space category.

Schema-aware formatting

If a schema is available for the XML document, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can use information from the schema to promote the element to the appropriate category. For example:

- If the schema declares an element to be of type `xs:string`, the element will be promoted to the preserve space category because the string built-in type has the whitespace facet with the value preserve.
- If the schema declares an element to be mixed content, it will be promoted to the mixed content category.

Schema-aware formatting can be turned on and off.

- To turn it on or off for **Author** mode, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author > Schema-Aware**, and select/deselect the **Schema-aware normalization, format and indent** option *(on page 145)*.
- To turn it on or off for the **Text** editing mode,open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Editor > Format > XML**, and select/deselect the **Schema-aware format and indent** option *(on page 158)*.

Preserve space elements list

If an element is listed in the **Preserve space** tab of the **Element Spacing** list *(on page 157)* in the XML formatting preferences *(on page 155)*, it is promoted to the preserve space category.

Default space elements list

If an element is listed in the **Default space** tab of the **Element Spacing** list *(on page 157)* in the XML formatting preferences *(on page 155)*, it is promoted to the default space category

Mixed content elements list

If an element is listed in the **Mixed content** tab of the **Element Spacing** list *(on page 157)* in the XML formatting preferences *(on page 155)*, it is promoted to the mixed content category.

Element content

If an element contains mixed content, that is, a mix of text and other elements, it is promoted to the mixed content category. (Note that, in accordance with these rules, this happens even if the schema declares the element to have element only content.)

If an element contains text content, it is promoted to the default space category.

Text node content

If a text node contains any non-whitespace characters then the text node is promoted to the normalize space category.

Exception to the Rule

In general, an element can only be promoted to a more restrictive category (one that treats more whitespace as significant). However, there is one exception. In **Author** mode, if an element is marked as mixed content in the schema, but the actual element contains no text content, it can be demoted to the space ignore category if all of its child elements are displayed as *blocks* by the associated CSS (that is, they have a CSS property of `display: block`). For example, in some schemas, a section or a table entry can be defined as having mixed content but in many cases they contain only *block elements (on page 2228)*. In these cases, any whitespace they contain cannot be significant and they can be treated as space ignore elements. This exception can be turned on or off using the **Schema-Aware Editing** option *(on page 145)* in the **Schema-Aware** preferences page.

How Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin formats and indents XML

You can control how Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin formats and indents XML documents. This can be particularly important if you store your XML document in a version control system, as it allows you to limit the number of trivial changes in spacing between versions of an XML document. The following preference pages include options that control how XML documents are formatted:

- **Format** preferences page *(on page 151)*
- **XML Formatting** preferences page *(on page 155)*
- **Whitespaces** preferences page *(on page 158)*

When Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin formats and indents XML

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin formats and indents a document, or part of it, on the following occasions:

- In **Text** mode when you select one of the format and indent actions (**Document > Source > Format and Indent**, **Document > Source > Indent Selection**, or **Document > Source > Format and Indent Element**).
- When saving documents in **Author** mode.
- When switching from **Author** mode to another mode.
- When saving or switching to **Text** mode from **Grid** mode, if the **Format and indent when passing from grid to text or on save** option *(on page 149)* is selected in the **Grid** preferences page.

Setting an Indent Size to Zero

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will automatically format and indent *(on page 314)* documents at certain times. This includes indenting the content from the margin to reflect its structure. In some cases, you may not want your content indented. To avoid your content being indented, you can set an indent size of zero.

Note:
Changing the indent size does not override the rules that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses for handling whitespace when formatting and indenting XML documents. Therefore, changing the indent size will have no effect on elements that require whitespaces to be maintained.

There are two cases to consider.

Maintaining zero indent in documents with zero indent

If you have existing documents with zero indent and you want Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to maintain a zero indent when editing or formatting those documents:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Format** *(on page 151)*.
2. Select **Detect indent on open**.
3. Select **Use zero-indent if detected**.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will examine the indent of each document as it is opened and if the indent is zero for all lines, or for nearly all lines, a zero indent will be used when formatting

and indenting the document. Otherwise, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will use the indent closest to what it detects in the document.

Enforcing zero indent for all documents

If you want all documents to be formatted with zero indent, regardless of their current indenting:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Format** *(on page 151)*.
2. Deselect **Detect indent on open**.
3. Set **Indent size** to `0`.

All documents will be formatted and indented with an indent of zero.

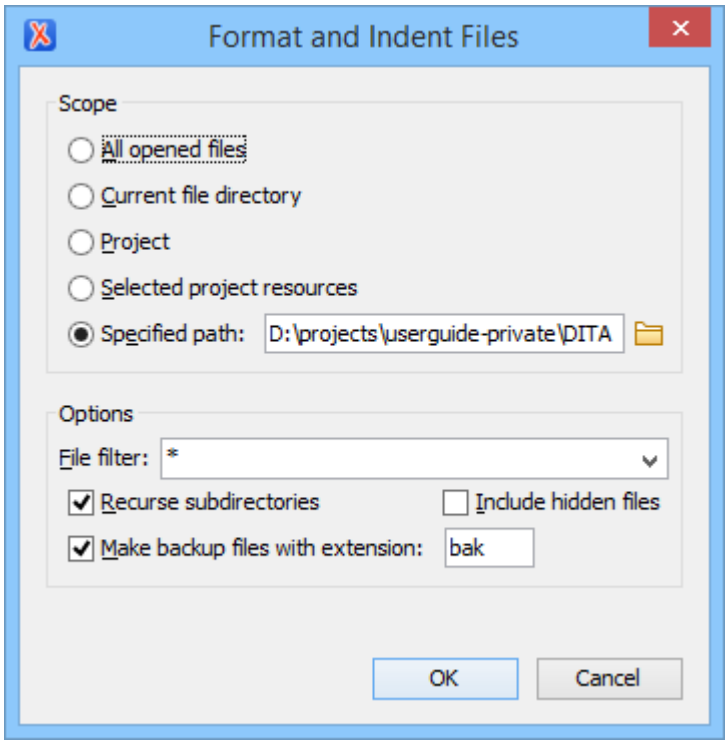
> **Warning:**
> Setting the indent size to zero can change the meaning of some file types, such as Python source files.

Format and Indent (Pretty-Print) Multiple Files

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for formatting and indenting (*pretty-print (on page 2233)*) multiple files at once. This action is available for any document in XML format, as well as for CSS, JavaScript, and JSON documents.

To format and indent multiple files, use the **Format and Indent Files** action that is available in the contextual menu of the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*. This opens the **Format and Indent Files** dialog box that allows you to configure options for the action.

Figure 67. Format and Indent Files Dialog Box



The **Scope** section allows you to choose from the following scopes:

- **All opened files** - The *pretty-print (on page 2233)* is performed in all opened files.
- **Directory of the current file** - All the files in the folder of the currently edited file.
- **Project files** - All files from the current project.
- **Selected project files** - The selected files from the current project.
- **Specified path** - the *pretty-print (on page 2233)* is performed in the files located at a specified path.

The **Options** section includes the following options:

- **File filter** - Allow you to filter the files from the selected scope.
- **Recurse subdirectories** - When selected, the *pretty-print (on page 2233)* is performed recursively for the specified scope. The one exception is that this option is ignored if the scope is set to **All opened files**.
- **Include hidden files** - When selected, the *pretty-print (on page 2233)* is also performed in the hidden files.
- **Make backup files with extension** - When selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin makes backup files of the modified files. The default extension is `.bak`, but you can change the extension as you prefer.

Quick Assist Support for IDs and IDREFS

The *Quick Assist* support *(on page 2233)* is activated automatically when you place the cursor inside an ID or IDREF in **Text** mode. To access it, click the yellow bulb help marker placed on the current line, in the line number stripe of the editor. You can also invoke the *Quick Assist* menu from the contextual menu or by pressing **Ctrl+1** (**Command+1** on macOS) on your keyboard.

The following actions are available:

Rename in

Renames the ID and all its occurrences. Selecting this action opens the **Rename XML ID** dialog box. This dialog box lets you insert the new ID value and choose the scope of the rename operation. For a preview of the changes you are about to make, click **Preview**. This opens the **Preview** dialog box, which presents a list with the files that contain changes and a preview zone of these changes.

Search Declarations

Searches for the declaration of the ID reference. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

Search References

Searches for the references of the ID. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

Change scope

Opens the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 579)* dialog box.

Rename in File

Renames the ID you are editing and all its occurrences from the current file.

Search Occurrences

Searches for the declaration an references of the ID located at the cursor position in the current document.

Related Information:

Highlight ID Occurrences in Text Mode

To see the occurrences of an ID in an XML document in the **Text** mode, place the cursor inside the ID declaration or reference. The occurrences are marked in the vertical side bar at the right of the editor. Click a marker on the side bar to jump to the occurrence that it corresponds to. The occurrences are also highlighted in the editing area.

Note:
Highlighted ID declarations are rendered with a different color than highlighted ID references.

Related Information:

Contextual Menu Actions in Text Mode

When editing XML documents in **Text** mode, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides the following actions in the contextual menu (many of them also appear in the submenus of the **Document** menu):

Cut, Copy, Paste

Executes the typical editing actions on the currently selected content.

Copy XPath

Copies the XPath expression of the current element or attribute (or property for JSON documents) to the clipboard.

Toggle Line Wrap (Ctrl + Shift + Y (Command + Shift + Y on macOS))

Enables or disables line wrapping. When enabled, if text exceeds the width of the displayed editor, content is wrapped so that you do not have to scroll horizontally.

Toggle Comment (Ctrl + Shift + Comma (Command + Shift + Comma on macOS))

Comments the current selection of the current editor. If the selection already contains a comment the action removes the comment from around the selection. If there is no selection in the current editor and the cursor is not positioned inside a comment, the current line

is commented. If the cursor is positioned inside a comment, then the commented text is uncommented.

Go to submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Go to Matching Tag (Ctrl + Shift + G (Command + Shift + G on macOS))

Moves the cursor to the end tag that matches the start tag, or vice versa.

Go after Next Tag (Ctrl + CloseBracket (Command + CloseBracket on macOS))

Moves the cursor to the end of the next tag.

Go after Previous Tag (Ctrl + OpenBracket (Command + OpenBracket on macOS))

Moves the cursor to the end of the previous tag.

Select submenu

This submenu allows you to select the following:

Element

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

Content

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

Attributes

Selects all the attributes of the element at the current cursor position.

Parent

Selects the parent element at the current cursor position.

Source submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Shift Right

Shifts the currently selected block to the right.

Shift Left

Shifts the currently selected block to the left.

Indent selection (Ctrl + I (Command + I on macOS))

Corrects the indentation of the selected block of lines if it does not follow the current indenting preferences *(on page 151)*.

Escape Selection

Escapes a range of characters by replacing them with the corresponding character entities.

Unescape Selection

Replaces the character entities with the corresponding characters.

Format and Indent Element (Ctrl + Shift + I (Command + Shift + I on macOS))

Pretty-prints (on page 2233) the element that surrounds the current cursor position.

Convert Hexadecimal Sequence to Character (Ctrl + Shift + H (Command + Shift + H on macOS))

Converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character *(on page 274)*. The action can be invoked if there is a selection containing a valid hexadecimal sequence or if the cursor is placed at the right side of a valid hexadecimal sequence. A valid hexadecimal sequence can be composed of 2 to 4 hexadecimal characters and may or may not be preceded by the `0x` or `0X` prefix. Examples of valid sequences and the characters they will be converted to:

- `0x0045` will be converted to `E`
- `0X0125` to `ĥ`
- `265` to `ŉ`
- `2190` to `←`

> **Note:**
> For more information about finding the hexadecimal value of a character, see Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent *(on page 276)*.

Base64 Encode/Decode submenu

This submenu include the following actions for encoding or decoding **base 64** schemes:

Import File to Encode and Insert

Encodes a file and then inserts the encoded content into the current document at the cursor position.

Decode Selection and Export to File

Decodes a selection of text from the current document and then exports (saves) the result to another file.

Encode Selection

Replaces a selection of text with the result of encoding that selection.

Decode Selection

Replaces a selection of text with the result of decoding that selection.

Modify All Matches

Use this option to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content (or the contiguous fragment where the cursor is located). When you use this option, a thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

Base32 Encode/Decode submenu

This submenu include the following actions for encoding or decoding **base32** schemes:

Import File to Encode and Insert

Encodes a file and then inserts the encoded content into the current document at the cursor position.

Decode Selection and Export to File

Decodes a selection of text from the current document and then exports (saves) the result to another file.

Encode Selection

Replaces a selection of text with the result of encoding that selection.

Decode Selection

Replaces a selection of text with the result of decoding that selection.

Modify All Matches

Use this option to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content (or the contiguous fragment where the cursor is located). When you use this option, a thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

Hex Encode/Decode submenu

This submenu include the following actions for encoding or decoding **hex** schemes:

Import File to Encode and Insert

Encodes a file and then inserts the encoded content into the current document at the cursor position.

Decode Selection and Export to File

Decodes a selection of text from the current document and then exports (saves) the result to another file.

Encode Selection

Replaces a selection of text with the result of encoding that selection.

Decode Selection

Replaces a selection of text with the result of decoding that selection.

Modify All Matches

Use this option to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content (or the contiguous fragment where the cursor is located). When you use this option, a thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

Join and Normalize Lines

For the current selection, this action joins the lines by replacing the *line separator* with a single space character. It also normalizes the whitespaces by replacing a sequence of such characters with a single space.

Insert XInclude

Displays a dialog box that allows you to browse and select the content to be included and automatically generates the corresponding XInclude instruction.

Note:
In the **Author** mode, this dialog box presents a preview of the inserted document as an author page in the **Preview** tab and as a text page in the **Source** tab. In the **Text** mode, the **Source** tab is presented.

Import entities list

Displays a dialog box that allows you to select a list of files as sources for external DTD entities. The internal subset of the DOCTYPE declaration of your document will be updated with the chosen entities. For instance, choosing the files `chapter1.xml` and `chapter2.xml` inserts the following section in the DOCTYPE:

```
<!ENTITY chapter1 SYSTEM "chapter1.xml">
<!ENTITY chapter2 SYSTEM "chapter2.xml">
```

Canonicalize

Opens the **Canonicalize** dialog box that allows you to select a *canonicalization (on page 2229)* algorithm to standardize the format of the document.

Sign

Opens the **Sign** dialog box that allows you to configure a digital signature for the document.

Verify Signature

Allows you to specify the location of a file to verify its digital signature.

Manage Highlighted Content submenu

This submenu is available from the contextual menu when it is invoked from a highlight after you perform a search operation or apply an XPath expression that highlights more than one result. The following options are available in this submenu:

Modify All

Allows you to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content. A thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

Surround All

Surround the highlighted content with a specific tag. This option opens the **Tag** dialog box. The **Specify the tag** drop-down menu presents all the available elements that you can choose from.

Remove All

Removes all the highlighted content.

Modify All Matches

Use this option to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content (or the contiguous fragment where the cursor is located). When you use this option, a thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are

found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

Go to Definition (Ctrl + Shift + Enter)

Navigates to the definition of the current element or attribute in the schema (DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG schema) associated with the edited XML document. If the current attribute is a *"type"* belonging to the *"http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"* namespace, the cursor is moved in the XML schema to the definition of the type referenced in the value of the attribute. For JSON documents, it navigates to the definition of the current JSON property in the associated JSON Schema.

Refactoring submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Rename Element

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

Rename Prefix (Alt + Shift + P (Command + Shift + P on macOS))

The prefix of the element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same prefix, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

- If you select the **Rename current element prefix** option, the application will recursively traverse the current element and all its children. *For example*, to change the `xmlns:p1="ns1"` association in the current element to `xmlns:p5="ns1"`, if the `xmlns:p1="ns1"` association is applied on the parent element, then Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will introduce `xmlns:p5="ns1"` as a new declaration in the current element and will change the prefix from `p1` to `p5`. If `p5` is already associated with another namespace in the current element, then the conflict will be displayed in a dialog box. By pressing **OK**, the prefix is modified from `p1` to `p5` without inserting a new declaration.
- If you select the **Rename current prefix in all document** option, the application will apply the change on the entire document.
- To also apply the action inside attribute values, select the **Rename also attribute values that start with the same prefix** checkbox.

Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)

Allows you to choose a tag that encloses a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Surround with <![CDATA]]> (Alt + Shift + C (Command + Option + C on macOS))

Surround the selected content with a `<CDATA>` tag so that the parser will interpret it as textual data rather than markup.

Delete element tags (Alt + Shift + Comma)

Deletes the start and end tag of the current element.

Split element

Split the element from the cursor position into two identical elements. The cursor must be inside the element.

Join elements (Alt + Shift + F (Command + Option + F on macOS))

Joins the left and right elements relative to the current cursor position. The elements must have the same name, attributes, and attributes values.

Attributes Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add/Change attribute

Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

Convert attribute to element

Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

Delete attribute

Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

Rename attribute

Allows you to rename an attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

Comments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete comments

Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

Elements Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete element

Allows you to delete elements.

Delete element content

Allows you to delete the content of elements.

Insert element

Allows you to insert new elements.

Rename element

Allows you to rename elements.

Unwrap element

Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

Wrap element

Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

Wrap element content

Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

Fragments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Insert XML fragment

Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

Replace element with XML fragment

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

Manage IDs submenu

This submenu is available for XML documents that have an associated DTD, XML Schema, or Relax NG schema (not available for DITA). It includes the following actions:

Rename in

Renames the ID and all its occurrences. Selecting this action opens the **Rename XML ID** dialog box. This dialog box lets you insert the new ID value and choose the scope of the rename operation. For a preview of the changes you are about to make, click **Preview**. This opens the **Preview** dialog box, which presents a list with the files that contain changes and a preview zone of these changes.

Rename in File

Renames the ID you are editing and all its occurrences from the current file.

Search References

Searches for the references of the ID. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

Search References in

Searches for the references of the ID. Selecting this action opens the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 579)*.

Search Declarations

Searches for the declaration of the ID reference. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

Search Declarations in

Searches for the declaration of the ID reference. Selecting this action opens the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 579)*.

Search Occurrences in file

Searches for the declaration and references of the ID in the current document.

Quick Fix/Assist (Ctrl + 1 (Command + 1 on macOS))

When the cursor is inside the value of an `@id` or `@idref` attribute, this action opens the *Quick Fix/Assist (on page 2233)* window with some search and refactoring actions available for the ID or IDREF. When the contextual menu is invoked on an error where Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can provide a Quick Fix *(on page 560)*, this action open the *Quick Fix/Assist (on page 2233)* window with a list of quick fix suggestions to choose from.

Apply all default quick fix proposals

This action is available when invoking the contextual menu (right-click) on a document that has one or more quick fix proposals detected for reported validation errors. If multiple quick fixes are available for the same validation error, the default quick fix defined in the Schematron validation

schema using the `sqf:default-fix` attribute is automatically selected to be applied. If no default quick fix is explicitly specified, the first quick fix proposal in the list is considered. All quick fix proposals are then automatically executed in bulk, one after the other.

Important Notes to Consider:

- To maintain the accuracy of the initially calculated error validation ranges, the quick fix proposals are applied in the reverse order of their selection.
- If two or more quick fixes act on the same "area" within the document, only one is applied (no changes can be made to changes already made).
- Quick fixes that involve "user-entered values" that normally present a dialog box to facilitate data entry will not be executed (the automatic process of applying all selected quick fixes cannot be interrupted by the presence of the respective dialog boxes).

Once the analysis of the impact of applying the quick fixes on the content is complete, a preview dialog box is presented that provides an overview of the content changes that will be made, according to the quick fixes that will be applied. If you agree with the changes presented, click **Apply** to trigger the quick fixes and update the content.

Tip:
This action is also available in the contextual menu when right-clicking the status bar at the bottom of the editor (if the currently highlighted validation issue has at least one detected quick fix suggestion available). Specific quick fix suggestions that are defined for the particular validation issue are also available in this menu.

Open File at Cursor

Opens the file at the cursor position in a new panel. If the file path represents a directory path, it will be opened in system file browser. If the file at the specified location does not exist, an error dialog box is displayed and it includes a **Create new file** button that starts the **New document** wizard. This allows you to choose the type or the template for the file. If the action succeeds, the file is created with the referenced location and name and is opened in a new editor panel.

Show referenced resources

Opens the **Referenced/Dependent Resources** view *(on page 579)* that allows you to see the referenced resource hierarchy for an XML document.

Show dependent resources

Opens the **Referenced/Dependent Resources** view *(on page 579)* that allows you to see the resource dependencies for an XML document.

Editing XML Documents in Grid Mode

This section includes topics that describe how to work with XML documents in **Grid** mode, including various features, actions that are available, and much more.

The **Grid** mode in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the XML document as a structured grid of nested tables where the text content can be modified without directly interacting with the XML markup. This is helpful for non-technical users who want to edit text content without modifying the XML markup.

To switch to this mode, select **Grid** at the bottom of the editing area.

You can easily expand or collapse elements within the table and the document structure can be changed with simple contextual menu actions, drag/drop, or copy/paste operations. The text content can be modified simply by editing the value of cells that contain the text and a useful *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* is also available to help you edit or insert XML elements.

Resources

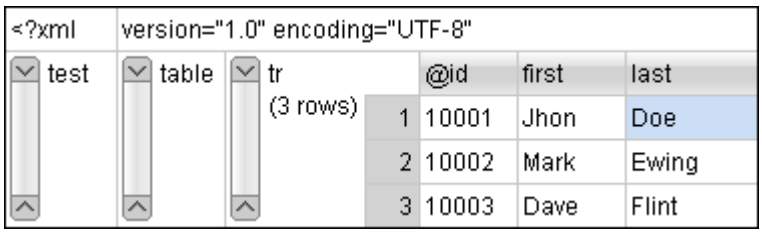
For more information about some of the features available in the **Grid** editor, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/PoYm2VqisWk

Layouts: Grid and Tree

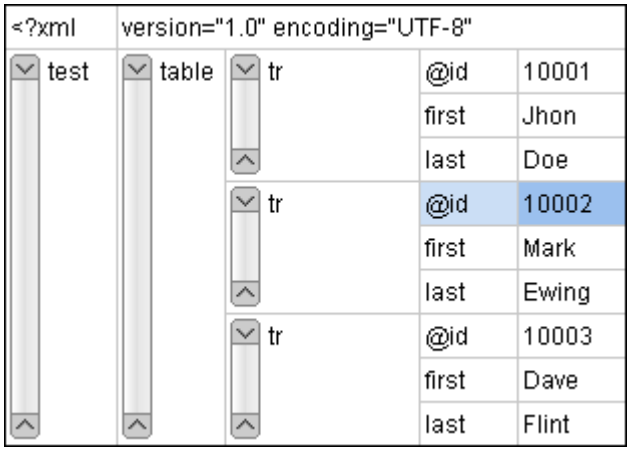
The **Grid** editor offers two layout modes. The default one is the grid layout. This smart layout detects the recurring elements in the XML document and creates tables having the children (including the attributes) of these elements as columns. This way, it is possible to have tables nested in other tables, reflecting the structure of your document.

Figure 68. Grid Layout



The other layout mode is tree-like. It does not create any tables and it only presents the structure of the document.

Figure 69. Tree Layout



To switch between the two modes, select **Grid mode/Tree mode** from the contextual menu.

Grid Mode Navigation

When you first open a document in **Grid** mode, the content is collapsed. Only the root element and its attributes are displayed. An arrow sign ( ) displayed at the left of the node name indicates that this node has child nodes. To display the children, click this arrow sign. To collapse a node, click the reverse arrow sign ( ). The expand/collapse actions can also be invoked with the **NumPad+** and **NumPad-** keys, or from the **Expand/Collapse** submenu of the contextual menu.

Expand/Collapse Submenu

The following actions are available on the **Expand/Collapse** submenu:

Expand All

Expands the selection and all its children.

Collapse All

Collapses the selection and all its children.

Expand Children

Expands all the children of the selection but not the selection.

Collapse Children

Collapses all the children of the selection but not the selection.

Collapse Others

Collapses all the siblings of the current selection but not the selection.

Keyboard Shortcuts

A variety of other keyboard shortcuts are also available in **Grid** mode:

Table 3. Shortcuts in the Grid Mode

Key	Action
Tab	Moves the cursor to the next editable value in a table row.
Shift + Tab	Moves the cursor to the previous editable value in a table row.
Enter	Begins editing and lets you insert a new value. Also commits the changes after you finish editing.
UpArrow/PageUp	Navigates toward the beginning of the document.
DownArrow/PageDown	Navigates toward the end of the document.
Shift	Used in conjunction with the navigation keys to create a continuous selection area.
Ctrl (Command on macOS) key	Used in conjunction with the mouse cursor to create discontinuous selection areas.

The following key combinations can be used to scroll the grid:

- **Ctrl + UpArrow (Command + UpArrow on macOS)** - scrolls the grid upwards.
- **Ctrl + DownArrow (Command + DownArrow on macOS)** - scrolls the grid downwards.
- **Ctrl + LeftArrow (Command + LeftArrow on macOS)** scrolls the grid to the left.
- **Ctrl + RightArrow (Command + RightArrow on macOS)** scrolls the grid to the right.

Related Information:
Editing Actions in Grid Mode *(on page 335)*

Editing Actions in Grid Mode

Since **Grid** mode presents XML content in a structured grid of nested tables, editing content in this mode can be done with a combination of the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 340)* and actions that allow you to work with the structure or content of the nested tables much like you would with any table. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides ways to edit content in the cells of the nested tables or to edit the structure of the tables.

Tip:
There are two different types of layouts available in **Grid** mode. Most people prefer to leave it on the default **Grid mode** layout, but there is also a **Tree mode** layout that presents the structure of the document in more of a vertical tree-like manner. You can switch between the two layouts to see which one works best for you particular situation from the **Document > Grid Layout** menu.

Expanding/Collapsing Nodes

An arrow sign ( ) displayed at the left of a node indicates that it has child nodes. To display the children, click this arrow sign. To collapse a node, click the reverse arrow sign ( ). The expand/collapse actions can also be invoked with the **NumPad+** and **NumPad-** keys, or from the **Expand/Collapse** submenu of the contextual menu.

To expand all child nodes, right-click the cell that contains the parent node and select **Expand All** from the **Expand/Collapse** submenu. To collapse all node, right-click any cell and select **Collapse All** from the **Expand/Collapse** submenu.

Editing Elements or Attributes

To edit elements or attributes in **Grid** mode, simply double-click the cell that contains the element or attribute (or select the cell and press **Enter**) to invoke the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 340)*. This opens a pop-up window that offers a list of proposals that are valid for that particular node.

Editing Text Content in Cells

To edit the text value of a cell, simply select the grid cell and press **Enter** (or double-click the cell), and start editing.

To stop editing a cell value, press **Enter** again.

To cancel the editing without saving the current changes in the document, press the **Esc** key.

Editing the Structure of the Nested Tables

To edit the structure of the nested tables in **Grid** mode, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides the following actions in the contextual menu (many of them also appear in the submenus of the **Document** menu, or the toolbar):

Cut, **Copy,** **Paste,** **Delete common editing actions**

Executes the typical editing actions on the currently selected elements. The **Cut** and **Copy** operations preserve the styles of the copied content.

Paste as Child

Pastes the copied content as the last child of the current selection.

Duplicate

Creates a new node by duplicating the currently selected one.

Insert Before

Offers a list of valid nodes, depending on the context, and inserts your selection before the currently selected node, as a sibling.

Insert After

Offers a list of valid nodes, depending on the context, and inserts your selection after the currently selected node, as a sibling.

Append Child

Offers a list of valid nodes, depending on the context, and appends your selection as a child of the currently selected node.

Sort Ascending, Sort Descending

The sorting result depends on the data type of the column content. It could be a numerical sorting for numbers or an alphabetical sorting for text information. The editor automatically analyzes the content and decides what type of sorting to apply. When a mixed set of values is present in the sorted column, a dialog box is displayed that allows you to choose the desired type of sorting between *numerical* and *alphabetical*.

Insert Row

Inserts a new row below the current selection. To insert a new row, you could also select the row header (the zone to the left of the row that holds the row number) and press **Enter**.

Insert Column

Inserts a column after the current selection.

Clear Content

Removes all content from the current cell.

Expand/Collapse > Expand All

Expands the selection and all its children.

Expand/Collapse > Collapse All

Collapses the selection and all its children.

Expand/Collapse > Expand Children

Expands all the children of the selection but not the selection.

Expand/Collapse > Collapse Children

Collapses all the children of the selection but not the selection.

Expand/Collapse > Collapse Others

Collapses all the siblings of the current selection but not the selection.

Refresh Selected

Forces the layout to be recomputed.

Related Information:

Grid Mode Navigation *(on page 334)*
Copy and Paste in the Grid Editing Mode *(on page 338)*

Drag and Drop in the Grid Editing Mode *(on page 338)*
Content Completion Assistant in Grid Mode *(on page 340)*

Drag and Drop in the Grid Editing Mode

You can easily arrange sections in your XML document in the **Grid** mode by using drag and drop actions.

You can do the following with drag and drop:

- Copy or move a set of nodes.
- Change the order of columns in the tables.
- Move the rows from the tables.

These operations are available for both single and multiple selections. To deselect one of the selected fragments, use **Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on macOS)**.

While dragging, the editor paints guide-lines showing the locations where you can drop the nodes. You can also drag nodes outside the **Grid** editor and text from other applications into the **Grid**.

Tip:
When using drag and drop to reorganize the document, the resulting layout can be different from what you expected. For instance, the layout can contain a set of sibling tables that can be joined together.
To force the layout to be recomputed, you can use the **Refresh Selected** action that is available in the contextual menu and in the **Document > Grid Edit** menu.

Copy and Paste in the Grid Editing Mode

Selecting content in the **Grid** mode is similar to working with any table with a little more complexity. Specifically, depending on the type of node, when you select a cell, the selection may automatically include additional cells that are implied by the currently selected node. For example, if you click a node that contains any child nodes, all cells that contain the parent and child nodes will be selected. In this case, the currently selected cell is painted with a color that is different from the rest of the selection.

You can also select discontinuous regions of nodes and place them in the clipboard with the copy action. To deselect one of the selected fragments, use **Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on macOS)**.

Pasting Content Within Grid Mode

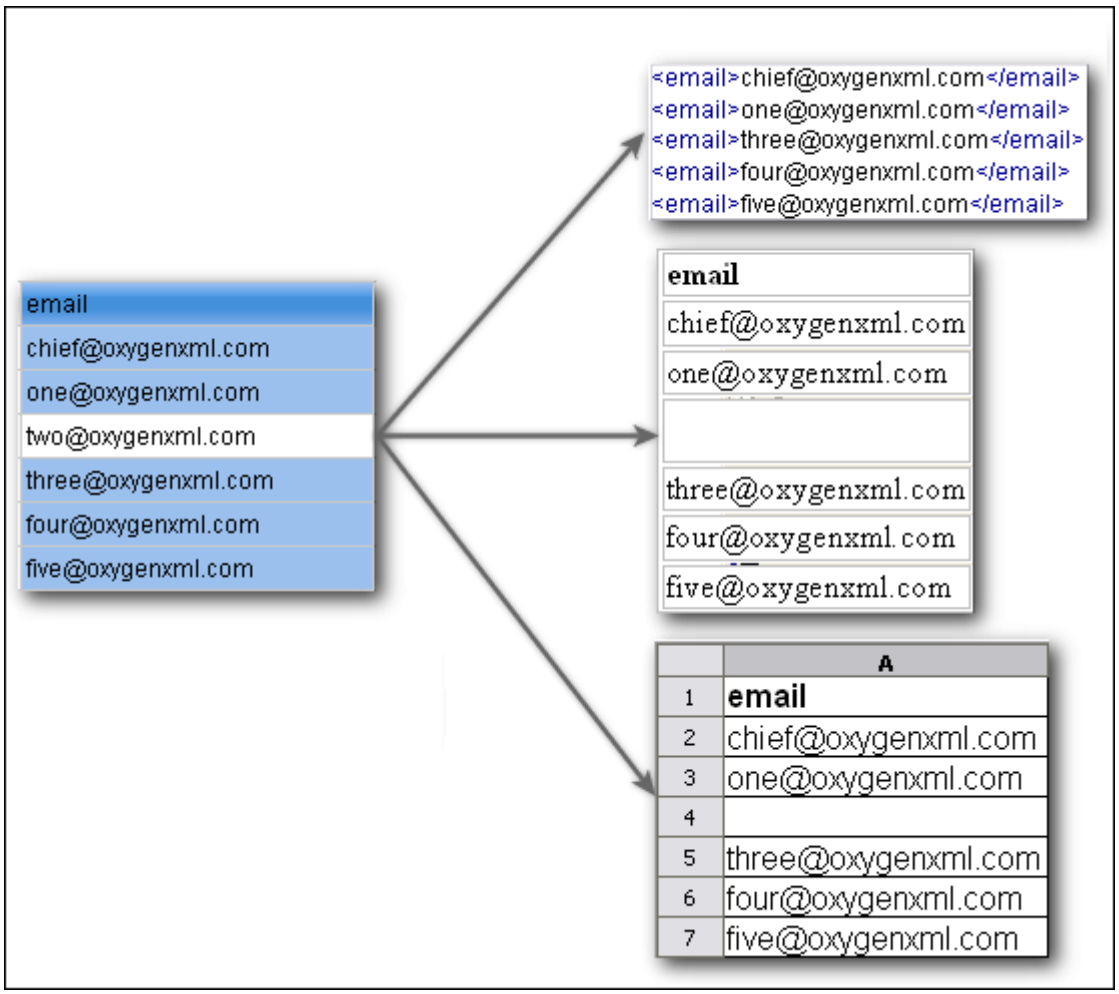
You can paste copied nodes relative to the currently selected cell using one of the following actions (available in the contextual menu):

- **Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on macOS))** - Pastes copied content, as a sibling, just below (after) the current selection.
- **Paste as Child** - Pastes copied content as the last child of the current selection.

Pasting Content from Grid Mode to Other Editors

Nodes that are copied from the **Grid** editor can also be pasted into **Text** mode or other external applications. When pasting copied content from **Grid** mode, the inserted string represents the nodes serialization. The nodes from tables can be copied using HTML or RTF in table format. The resulting cells contain only the concatenated values of the text nodes.

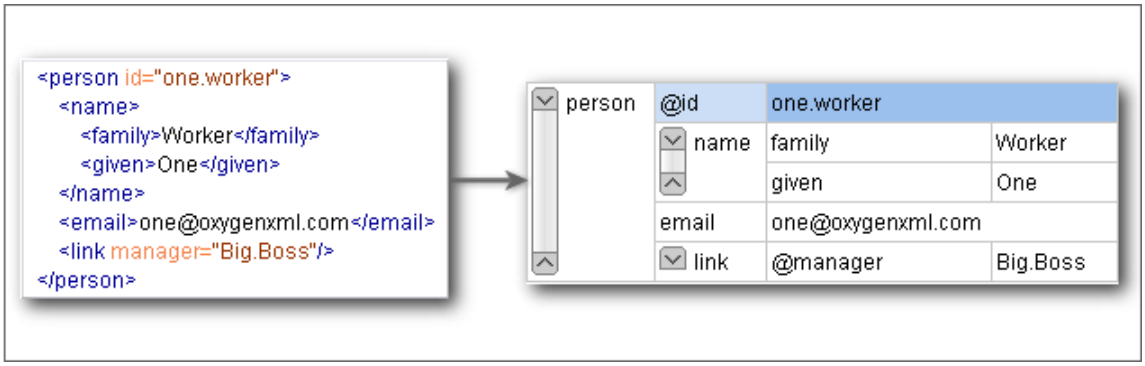
Figure 70. Copying from Grid to Other Editors



Pasting Content from Other Editors into Grid Mode

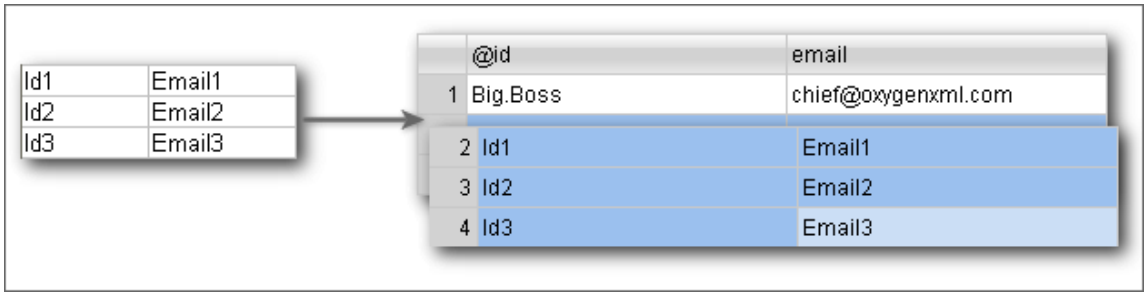
You can also paste well-formed XML content or tab-separated values from other editors into the **Grid** editor. If you paste XML content, the result will be the insertion of the nodes obtained by parsing this content.

Figure 71. Pasting XML Data into Grid



If the pasted text contains multiple lines of tab-separated values, it can be considered as a matrix of values. By pasting this matrix of values into the **Grid** editor, the result will be a matrix of cells. If the operation is performed inside existing cells, the existing values will be overwritten and new cells will be created when needed.

Figure 72. Pasting Tab-Separated Values into Grid



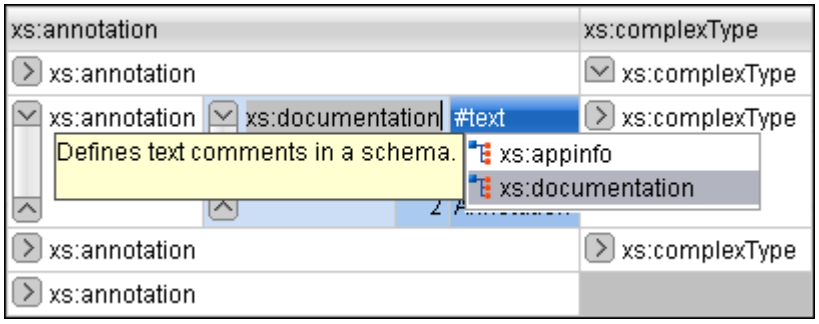
If you need to add copied content to your existing content (rather than overwriting existing cells), you need to first insert new cells by using the **Insert row** or **Insert column** actions from the contextual menu. This is useful, for example, when trying to transfer data from spreadsheet-like editors to the **Grid** editor.

Content Completion Assistant in Grid Mode

If the edited document is associated with a schema (DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG, etc.), the **Grid** editing mode offers a *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* for the names and values of elements and attributes. If you choose to insert an element that has required content, the sub-tree of needed elements and attributes are also automatically included.

To display the content completion pop-up menu, simply double-click a cell that contains an element or attribute (or press **Enter** on your keyboard).

Figure 73. Content Completion in Grid Editing Mode



Special Character Support in Grid Mode

If you are editing documents with a bidirectional text orientation or other special characters (such as combining characters), you can change the way the text is rendered and edited in the grid cells by using the **Change Text Orientation**(**Ctrl + Shift + O (Command + Shift + O on macOS)**) action that is available from the **Edit** menu in the **Grid** editing mode. Use this action to switch from the default left to right text orientation to the right to left orientation, and vice versa.

Note:
This change applies only to the text from the cells, and not to the layout of the grid editor.

Figure 74. Default left to right text orientation

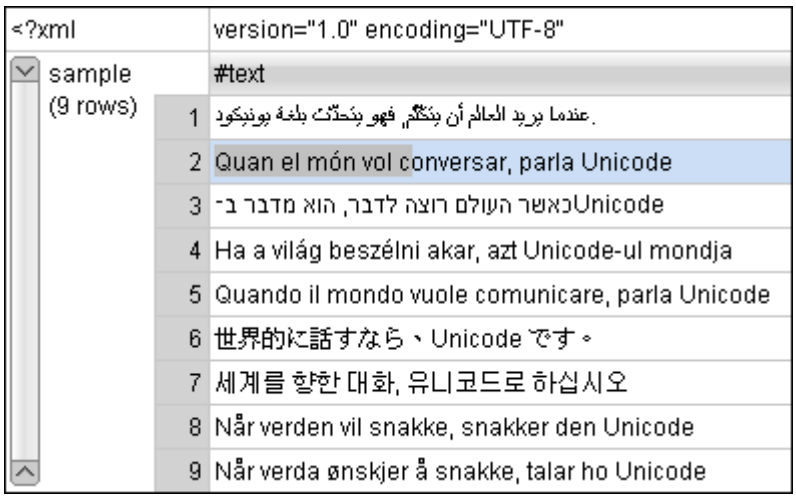
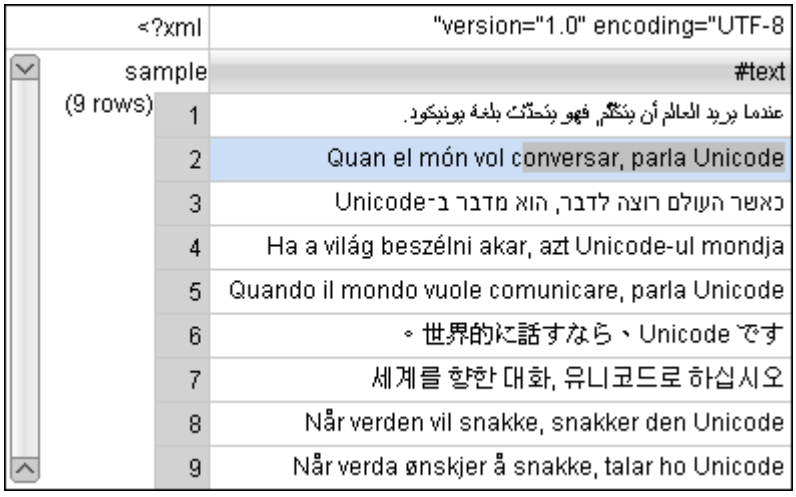


Figure 75. Right to left text orientation



Related Information:

Special Character Support in Author Mode *(on page 500)*

Inserting Special Characters with the Character Map *(on page 276)*

Exporting XML Content to Excel

For use-cases where you have XML content that needs to be exported to Excel (or any other spreadsheet application) but the content is not already in some sort of table format, **Grid** mode offers you a way to display the content of an XML document as a structured grid of nested tables and you can work with the cells in those tables much like you would with any spreadsheet application. This makes it possible to export content to Excel by copying cells that contain the specific content and then pasting the copied cells in Excel the same as you would when working with any table or spreadsheet.

To export XML content from **Grid** mode to Excel or other spreadsheet applications, follow this procedure:

1. Open the XML document in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and switch to **Grid** mode.
2. Expand the nodes *(on page 336)* to gain access to the particular nested table that contains the content you want to export.
3. Copy the cells that contain the content you want to export (**Copy** from the contextual menu or **Ctrl+C**).
4. Switch to your spreadsheet application and paste the copied cells.
5. You may need to make some manual adjustments depending on the complexity of the structure in the original XML document.

Note that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also supports the reverse scenario (copying cells from a spreadsheet application and pasting them in **Grid** mode). For more information, see Import from MS Excel Files – Grid Mode Method *(on page 1523)*.

Resources

For more information about exchanging data between Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and spreadsheet applications, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/8VwsF58zLkU

Related Information:
Import from MS Excel Files - Grid Mode Method *(on page 1523)*
Pasting Content from Other Editors into Grid Mode *(on page 339)*

Editing XML Documents in Author Mode

This section includes topics that describe how to work with XML documents in **Author** mode, including its various features, actions that are available, and much more.

The **Author** editing mode in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to visually edit XML documents in a user-friendly interface that is similar to a WYSIWYG word processor. This makes structured authoring easier for people who are not familiar with XML and it also provides easier access to the XML structure for XML experts. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for visually editing the most commonly used XML vocabularies in **Author** mode, including DITA, Doc Book, TEI, and XHTML.

Adding text content in **Author** mode is as simple as doing so in a standard text editor but the content is rendered similar to how you see it in the output. Tables, images, and media objects (such as videos) are also rendered comparable to the output. You can even play audio and video objects directly in **Author** mode and it includes an intuitive Image Map Editor *(on page 473)*. You can easily change the rendering by selecting one of the preset *main styles (on page 2231)* from the **Styles** drop-down menu *(on page 344)* (available on the toolbar) and combine multiple *alternate styles (on page 2228)* that behave like layers. You can also use the options in the **Tags Display Mode** drop-down menu *(on page 348)* to control how much XML markup is displayed in **Author** mode and there are various features and views that provide information about the XML structure based on your current location within the document.

Author mode provides numerous helpful editing actions, many of which are specific to the type of document you are editing and it includes a variety of other powerful editing features, such as keyboard shortcuts, drag and drop support *(on page 365)*, a *Smart Paste* mechanism *(on page 366)*, and an intelligent *Content Completion Assistant (on page 369)*. **Author** mode also allows you to visualize and manage profiled content *(on page 419)*, you can collaborate with others with various review features *(on page 393)* (such as the ability to add comments, track changes, or highlight content), and includes many other unique features.

To switch to this mode, click the **Author** button at the bottom of the editing area.

Resources

For more information about some of the features available in the visual **Author** editing mode, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/bnQwJZD58wY

Author Mode User Roles

There are two main types of users for the **Author** mode: *framework developers* and *content authors*.

Framework Developers

A *framework developer* is a technical person with advanced XML knowledge who defines the *framework (on page 2231)* for authoring XML documents in the visual editor. Once the *framework* is created or edited by the developer, it is distributed as a deliverable component ready to plug into the application for the content authors.

The *framework* (document type) configuration defines a type of XML document by specifying all the details needed for editing the content of XML documents in **Author** mode.

The *framework* details that are created and customized by the developer include:

- The CSS stylesheet that drives the visual rendering of the document.
- The rules for associating an XML schema with the document, which is needed for the content completion assistance and validation of the document.
- Transformation scenarios for the document.
- Configuration of *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)*.
- Custom actions available as buttons on the toolbar or in menus.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes some ready-to-use built-in document types for XML *frameworks*, such as DocBook, DITA, TEI, JATS, and XHTML.

Content Authors

A *content author* does not need to have advanced knowledge about XML markup, operations such as validation of XML documents, or applying XPath expressions to an XML document. The content author just uses the *framework* set up by the developer in the application and starts editing the content of XML documents without editing the XML tags directly.

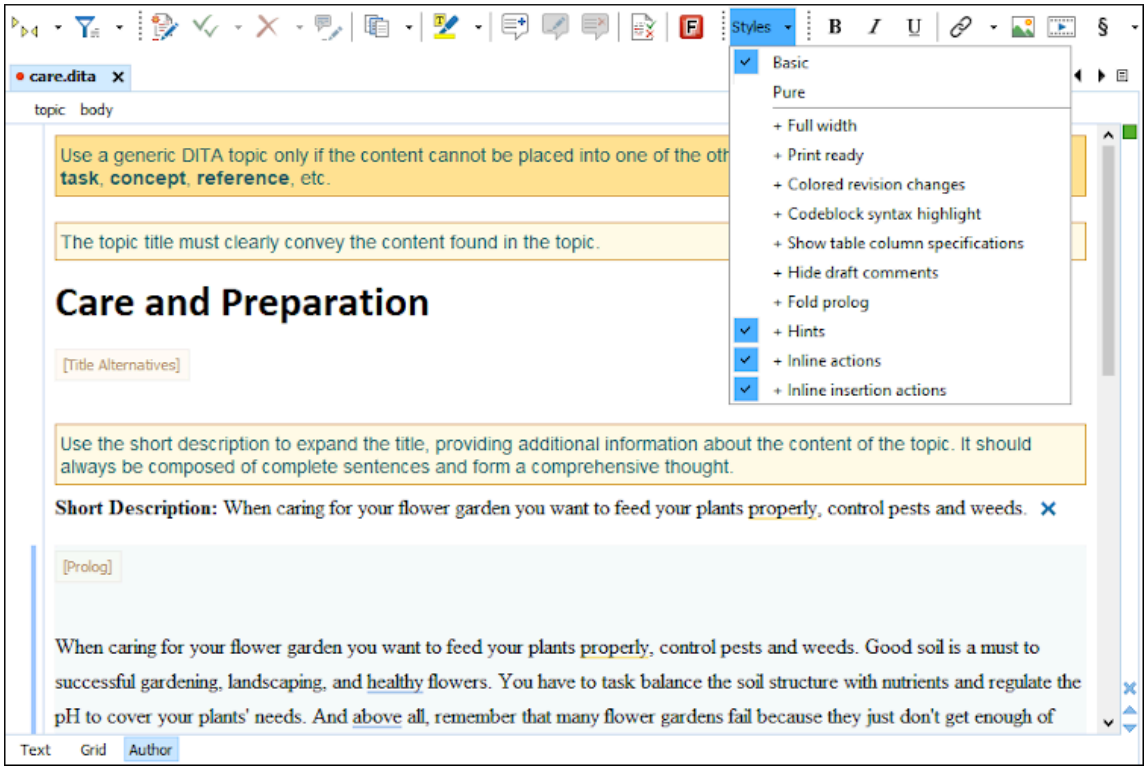
Changing the Look of Documents in Author Mode Using the Styles Menu

The **Author** mode renders the content of the XML documents visually, based on CSS stylesheets associated with the document.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a **Styles** drop-down menu on the toolbar that allows you to select one *main (non-alternate) CSS style (on page 2231)* and multiple *alternate CSS styles (on page 2228)*. This makes it easy to change the look of the document as it appears in **Author** mode.

The list of CSS styles that are available in the **Styles** menu depend on the *framework (on page 2231)* (document type).

Figure 76. Styles Drop-down Menu in a DITA Document



You can use the **Styles** drop-down menu to select a *main css style (on page 2231)* that applies to the whole document and then select one or more *alternate css styles (on page 2228)* that behave like layers and are merged sequentially with the *main style*. Each of the styles that are listed in this drop-down menu have a corresponding CSS file that defines how your documents are rendered in **Author** mode and in the output. Also, the selections from this drop-down menu are persistent, meaning that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin remembers them when subsequent documents are opened.

Main CSS Styles

The *main styles* are listed in the top section and each of their corresponding CSS files contain all the styles associated with the XML elements for the particular type of document. You can only select one main style at a time.

Alternate CSS Styles

The *alternate styles* are listed in the bottom section and their corresponding CSS files contain additional styling for certain XML elements and are merged with the selected *main styles*. You can select as many alternate styles as you wish (they are applied sequentially as layers). If you are unsure about how each of the styles with change the look of your documents based solely upon their name, there is no harm in selecting them to see the difference. You can simply deselect them to revert to the previous look.

Note:
If you deselect the **Enable multiple selection of alternate CSSs** option *(on page 89)* in the **CSS** subtab of the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*, the *alternate styles* are treated like *main CSS styles* and you can only select one at a time.

Tip:
For information about configuring the **Styles** drop-down menu, see Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*.

Related information
Associating a Schema to XML Documents *(on page 563)*
Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*

Navigating the Document Content in Author Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes some useful features to help you navigate XML documents.

Navigation Keyboard Shortcuts

Tab

Navigate to the next XML node.

Tip:
If you encounter a *space-preserved element (on page 2234)* when you navigate through a document and you do not press another key, pressing the **Tab** key will continue the navigation. However, if the cursor is positioned in a *space-preserved element* and you press another key or you position the cursor inside such an element using the mouse, the **Tab** key can be used to arrange the text.

Shift + Tab

Navigate to the previous XML node.

Ctrl + RightArrow (Command + RightArrow on macOS)

Navigate one word forward.

Ctrl + LeftArrow (Command + LeftArrow on macOS)

Navigate one word backward.

Ctrl + Home (Command + Home on macOS)

Position the cursor at the beginning of the document.

Ctrl + End (Command + End on macOS)

Position the cursor at the end of the document.

Navigating to a Modification

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes some actions to help you quickly navigate to a particular modification. They can be invoked using keyboards shortcuts or from the **Navigation** menu:

Last Edit Location (Ctrl+Q)

Navigates to the last modification in any open tab.

Back (Alt+LeftArrow (Command+OpenBracket on macOS))

Navigates to the last selected editor tab or to the last selected element/content in the current tab. You can also go back after clicking on links.

Forward (Alt+RightArrow (Command+CloseBracket on macOS))

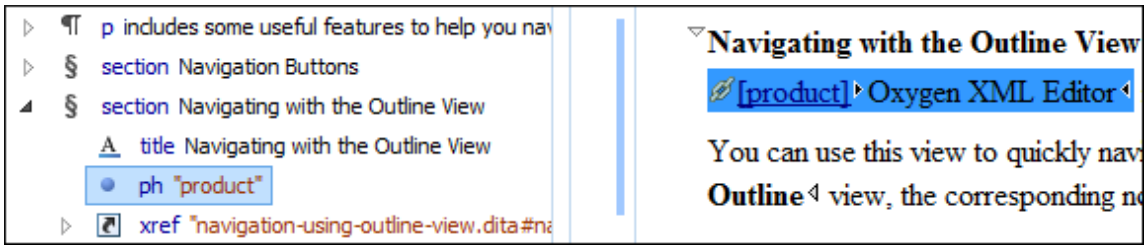
Available after you use the **Back** button at least once, and it navigates in the opposite direction as the **Back** button.

Navigating with the Outline View

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an **Outline** view *(on page 301)* that displays a hierarchical tag overview of the currently edited XML Document.

You can use this view to quickly navigate through the current document by selecting nodes in the outline tree. It is synchronized with the editor area, so when you make a selection in the **Outline** view, the corresponding nodes are highlighted in the editor area.

Figure 77. Outline View Navigation in Author Mode



Using the Breadcrumb to Navigate

A *breadcrumb* in the toolbar area at the top of the document indicates the path from document root to the current element. It can also be used as a helpful tool to navigate to specific elements throughout the structure of the document.

Figure 78. Breadcrumb in Author Mode

The last element listed in the *breadcrumb* is the element at the current cursor position. Clicking an element from the *breadcrumb* selects the entire element and navigates to it in the editor area.

Using the Linking Support

When working on multiple documents that reference each other (references, external entities, XInclude, DITA conref, etc.), the **linking support** is useful for navigating between the documents. In the built-in frameworks that are bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, links are marked with the icon (or the icon for key-based references). When hovering over the icon, the mouse pointer changes its shape to indicate that the link can be accessed and a tooltip presents the destination location. Click the link to open the referenced resource in the editor or system browser. The same effect can be obtained by pressing the **F3** key when the cursor is inside a link element.

Note:
Depending on the referenced file type, the target link will either be opened in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin or in the default system application. If the target file does not exist, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin prompts you to create it.

Displaying the Markup

You can control the amount of markup that is displayed in the **Author** mode with various levels of tag modes for both *block* and *in-line* elements.

Tags Display Mode

The following dedicated tag modes are available from the **Tags Display Mode** drop-down menu (available on the toolbar):

Full Tags with Attributes

Displays full tag names with attributes for both *block (on page 2228)* and *inline elements (on page 2231)*.

Full Tags

Displays full tag names without attributes for both *block elements* and *inline elements*.

Block Tags

Displays full tag names for *block elements* and simple tags without names for *inline elements*.

Block Tags without Element Names

Displays tags for *block elements* but without element names for a more compact version of **Block Tags** mode. You can still see the element names by hovering over the tags.

Inline Tags

Displays full tag names for *inline elements*, while *block elements* are not displayed.

Partial Tags

Displays simple tags without names for *inline elements*, while *block elements* are not displayed.

No Tags

No tags are displayed. This is the most compact mode and is as close as possible to a word-processor view.

Configure Tags Display Mode

Use this option to go to the **Author** preferences page where you can configure the **Tags Display Mode** options.

Note:
The associated CSS information is used to determine whether a tag should be considered *inline* or *block*. If the current document does not have an associated CSS stylesheet, then the **Full Tags** mode will be used.

Displaying Referenced Content

The references to external entities, XInclude, DITA conrefs, and constructs in other vocabularies with displayable referenced content *(on page 1645)* are expanded by default in **Author** mode and the referenced content is displayed. The referenced resources are loaded and displayed inside the element or entity that references them, but the displayed content cannot be modified directly in the document. You can control this behavior from the **Author** preferences page *(on page 127)*. If the **Display referenced content** option *(on page 130)* is not selected, the referenced resources are not automatically loaded and displayed, but each reference can be expanded on demand by using the small expansion button located next to each element that contains references.

If the referenced resource cannot be resolved, an error will be presented inside the element that refers them instead of the content.

If you want to make modifications to the referenced content, you must open the source where the referenced resource resides. The referenced resource can be opened quickly by clicking the link (marked with the icon, or the icon for key-based references) that is displayed before the referenced content or by using the **Edit Reference** action from the contextual menu (in this case, the cursor is placed at the precise location where the action was invoked). The referenced resource is resolved through the *XML Catalog (on page 2235)* set in the **XML Catalog** preferences page *(on page 175)*.

The referenced content is refreshed as follows:

- Automatically, when it is modified and saved from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
- On demand, by using the **Refresh references** action *(on page 503)*. This is useful when the referenced content is modified outside the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin scope.

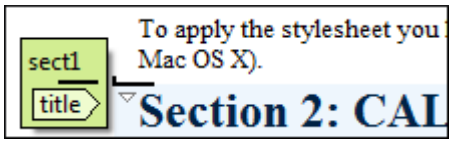
Related Information:
Configuring a Reference Resolver *(on page 1645)*

Visual Hints for the Cursor Position

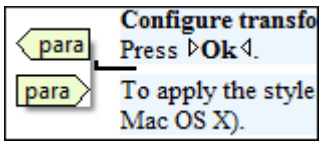
When the cursor is positioned inside a new context, a tooltip will be shown for a couple of seconds displaying the position of the cursor relative to the context of the current element.

Here are some of the common situations that can be encountered:

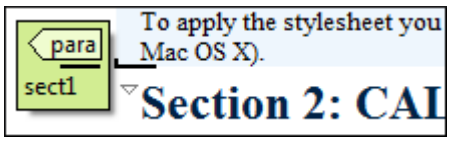
- **Before first *block*** - The cursor is positioned before the first *block (on page 2228)* child of the current node.



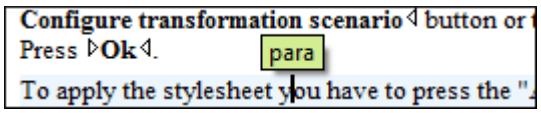
- **Between two *block elements*** - The cursor is positioned between two *block elements (on page 2228)*.



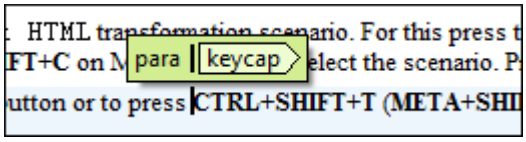
- **After last *block*** - The cursor is positioned after the last *block element (on page 2228)* child of the current node.



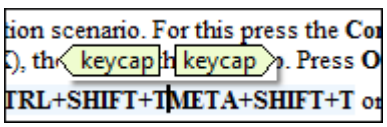
- **Inside a node** - The cursor is positioned inside a node.



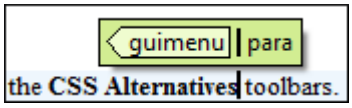
- **Before an *inline element*** - The cursor is positioned inside an element, before a child *inline element (on page 2231)*.



- **Between two inline elements** - The cursor is positioned between two *inline elements (on page 2231)*.



- **After an inline element** - The cursor is positioned inside an element, after a child *inline element (on page 2231)*.



The nodes in these cases are displayed in the tooltip window using the element names.

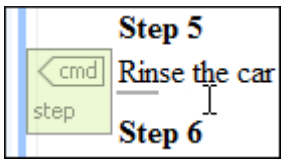
To deactivate this feature, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Author > Cursor Navigation**, and deselect the **Show cursor position tooltip** option *(on page 134)*. Even if this option is deselected, you can still display the position tooltip by pressing **Shift+F2**.

Note:
The position information tooltip is not displayed if **Full Tags with Attributes** or **Full Tags** is selected in the **Tags display mode** drop-down menu *(on page 348)*.

Location Tooltip

When editing XML documents in a visual environment, you might find it difficult to position the cursor between certain tags that do not have a visual representation. To counterbalance this, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays a transparent preview of the position information, called the **Location Tooltip**:

Figure 79. Location Tooltip



Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays a **Location Tooltip** when the following conditions are met:

- You are editing the document in one of the following tags display modes *(on page 348)*: **Inline Tags**, **Partial Tags**, **No Tags**.
- The mouse pointer is moved between *block elements (on page 2228)*.

To activate or deactivate this feature, use the **Show location tooltip on mouse move** option *(on page 134)* in the **Cursor Navigation** preferences page *(on page 134)*.

Whitespace Handling in Author Mode

When you edit a document in **Author** mode, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin must serialize the resulting document as XML. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin serializes the document when you save it or switch to another editing mode. When the document is serialized, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin formats and indents the XML document *(on page 314)* according to the current format and indent settings *(on page 151)*.

Minimizing Whitespace Differences Between Versions

When serializing a document to XML, **Author** mode will only format and indent those elements of the document that have been edited. Any element that has not been edited will be serialized exactly as it was loaded from disk. This is useful when your content is managed in a version control systems, as it avoids introducing insignificant whitespace differences between version, which in turn makes diff output easier to read.

Entering Whitespace in Author Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin controls the entry of whitespace characters in **Author** mode according the XML whitespace rules *(on page 314)*, which means it will not let you insert insignificant whitespace. This means that it will not let you insert extra line-breaks or spaces inside a typical paragraph element, for instance. (Any such whitespace would be normalized away when the document was serialized to XML, so Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is saving you from any surprises when this happens.)

Of course, you will legitimately want to enter additional spaces and returns in some cases, such as code samples. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will allow this in elements that are configured as preserve space elements according to the XML whitespace rules. For all of its built-in document types *(on page 654)*, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is correctly configured to recognize preserve space elements *(on page 155)* and to allow you to enter additional spaces in them.

If you are using a built-in document type and you are unable to enter additional whitespace, make sure that you are using an element from that document type that is intended to be a preserve-space element.

If you are using a custom document type, make sure that it is configured correctly *(on page 1533)* so that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin recognizes that the current element is a preserve-space element.

Serialization Options for Author Mode

The **Options > Preferences > Editor > Edit modes > Author > Serialization** page contains some options that control how the formatting and indenting is applied when a document is saved in **Author** mode or when switching from **Author** to **Text** mode. It also includes a **Compatibility with other tools** option *(on page 149)* that controls how line breaks are handled when a document is serialized to help obtain better compatibility with other applications.

Editing Content in Author Mode

The **Author** mode includes a large variety of user-friendly authoring features to help you work with XML content, including numerous toolbar, menu, and shortcut actions and some specialized content editing features.

Undo/Redo Actions

The typical undo and redo actions are available with shortcuts or in the **Edit** menu:

Undo (Ctrl + Z (Command + Z on macOS))

Reverses a maximum of 200 editing actions to return to the preceding state.

> **Note:**
> Complex operations such as **Replace All** or **Indent selection** count as single undo events.

Redo (Ctrl + Y (Command + Shift + Z on macOS, Ctrl + Shift + Z on Linux/Unix))

Recreates a maximum of 100 editing actions that were undone by the **Undo** function.

Copy and Paste Actions

The typical copying and pasting actions are available with shortcuts or in the contextual menu (or the **Edit** menu):

Cut (Ctrl + X (Command + X on macOS))

Removes the currently selected content from the document and places it in the clipboard.

Copy (Ctrl + C (Command + C on macOS))

Places a copy of the currently selected content in the clipboard.

The clipboard contains the precise node structure that is preserved when pasting to another location within the same document or to another document opened in the **Author** mode. The copied content contains an HTML flavor that attempts to convert the copied structure to plain HTML, which can be useful for preserving the styles when pasting into editors such as MS Word.

Copy as XML

Copies the selection as a string that contains the structured XML content.

Copy as Markdown

Copies the selection as a string that contains its Markdown-converted equivalent.

Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on macOS))

Inserts the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.

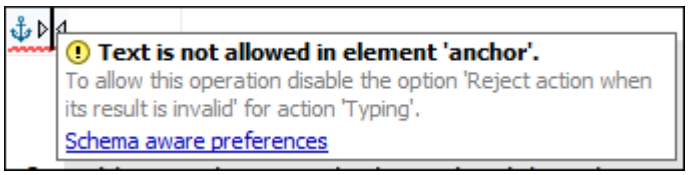
Select All (Ctrl + A (Command + A on macOS))

Selects the entire content of the current document.

Entering Text in Elements

By default, you can only enter text in elements that accept text content. If the element is declared as *empty* or *element only* in the associated schema, you are not allowed to insert text in it. Instead, a warning message is displayed.

Figure 80. Editing in empty element warning



To allow text to be inserted in these instances, go to the **Schema-Aware** preferences page and deselect the **Reject action when its result is invalid** option in the **Typing** actions section *(on page 146)*.

Editing Text Content Without Modifying the XML Markup

You can use the options in the **Tags Display Mode** drop-down menu *(on page 348)* (available on the toolbar) to control how tags are displayed in **Author** mode. This can help you to clearly see where the current cursor position is within the tag structure so that you can avoid making unintended modifications to the XML markup. You can also switch to the **Grid** editing mode *(on page 333)* to modify text content without affecting the XML tags.

Related Information:

Editing XML Markup in Author Mode *(on page 354)*
Drag and Drop in Author Mode *(on page 365)*
Smart Paste in Author Mode *(on page 366)*
Content Completion Assistant in Author Mode *(on page 369)*
Contextual Menu Actions in Author Mode *(on page 509)*

Editing XML Markup in Author Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes some useful actions that allow you to easily edit XML markup in **Author** mode. Most of these actions are available in the contextual menu and some of them have simple keyboard shortcuts.

Selecting XML Markup in Author Mode

Selecting XML tags in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is very simple with several methods for selecting entire elements:

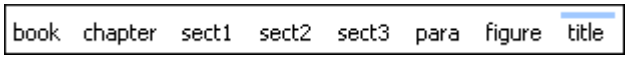
- **Breadcrumb** - Click the element (XML tag) on the breadcrumb *(on page 355)* displayed at the top of the editing window.
- **Outline View** - Click the element name in the **Outline** view *(on page 301)*.
- **Full Tags Mode** - While editing in **Full Tags** mode *(on page 348)*, click the start or end tag of the element in the editor.
- **Mouse Selection** - While editing in **Full Tags** mode *(on page 348)*, click before the start tag of the element, drag the selection, and release the mouse button after the end tag.
- **Shift + Arrow Keys** - While editing in **Full Tags** mode *(on page 348)*, place the cursor before the start tag of the element, press and hold **Shift**, and use the arrow keys to make the selection (including the end tag).

Note:
If the selection does not include the entire element (for example you do not include the end tag of the element), Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will automatically close the appropriate tags when pasting the copied selection. This ensures that the pasted content will always result in well-formed XML *(on page 523)*.

Using the Breadcrumb in Author Mode

A *breadcrumb* on the top stripe indicates the path from document root to the current element. It can also be used as a helpful tool to insert and edit specific elements in the document structure.

Figure 81. Breadcrumb in Author Mode



The last element listed in the *breadcrumb* is the element at the current cursor position. The last element is also highlighted by a thin light blue bar for easier identification. Clicking an element from the *breadcrumb* selects the entire element in the editor area and each element provides a contextual menu with access to the following actions:

Edit Attributes

Opens the in-place attributes editor *(on page 383)* that allows you to easily edit the attributes of an element.

Edit Profiling Attributes

Allows you to select the profiling attributes *(on page 419)* that apply to a certain element.

Append child

Opens a content completion list that allows you to select an element to be inserted as a child of the selected element.

Insert before

Opens a content completion list that allows you to select an element to be inserted (as a sibling) before the selected element.

Insert after

Opens a content completion list that allows you to select an element to be inserted (as a sibling) after the selected element.

Cut

Removes the selected element and copies it to the clipboard, while preserving the styles of the content.

Copy

Copies the selected element to the clipboard, while preserving the styles of the copied content.

Paste

Pastes a well-formed element from the clipboard at currently selected position in the breadcrumb.

Paste before

Insert a well-formed element (from the clipboard) before the currently selected element.

Paste after

Insert a well-formed element (from the clipboard) after the currently selected element.

Paste as XML

Inserts clipboard content that is considered to be well-formed XML content, preserving its XML structure.

Delete

Deletes the currently selected element.

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected element in a comment if the element is not commented, or removes the comment if it is commented.

Rename Element

Opens the **Rename** dialog box that allows you to rename the currently selected element and other elements with the same name.

Tip:
The tag names displayed in the *breadcrumb* can be customized with an **Author** mode extension class that implements the *AuthorBreadCrumbCustomizer* API. See the Oxygen SDK for more details.

Move Nodes

You can move XML nodes in the current document by using the following actions in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

Move Up (Alt + UpArrow (Option + UpArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes in front of the previous node.

Move Down (Alt + DownArrow (Option + DownArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes after the subsequent node.

Tip:
The easiest way to move nodes is to use the **Alt + UpArrow (Option + UpArrow on macOS)** and **Alt + DownArrow (Option + DownArrow on macOS)** shortcut keys.

Promote/Demote Nodes

You can easily promote or demote selected nodes (for example, within ordered lists or unordered lists) by using the following keyboard shortcuts:

Promote (Shift + Tab)

Promotes an entirely selected node to be a sibling of its parent node (the list item is moved to the left). It also works for selections of multiple nodes as long as all the selected nodes are siblings (on the same hierarchical level).

Demote (Tab)

Demotes an entirely selected node (the list item is moved to the right). It also works for selections of multiple nodes as long as all the selected nodes are siblings (on the same hierarchical level).

Join or Split Elements

You can join or split elements in the current document by using the following actions in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

Join Elements

Joins two adjacent *block elements (on page 2228)* that have the same name. The action is available only when the cursor position is between the two adjacent *block elements*. Also, joining two *block elements* can be done by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys and the cursor is positioned between the boundaries of these two elements.

Tip:
Specifically, the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys can be used to join *block elements* in the following situations:

- The cursor is located before the end position of the first element and **Delete** key is pressed.
- The cursor is located after the end position of the first element and **Backspace** key is pressed.
- The cursor is located before the start position of the second element and **Delete** key is pressed.
- The cursor is located after the start position of the second element and **Backspace** key is pressed.

If the element has no sibling or the sibling element has a different name, an **Unwrap** operation will be performed.

Split Element

Splits the content of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. Thus, if the cursor is positioned at the beginning or at the end of the element, the newly created sibling will be empty.

Rename Elements

You can rename elements by using the following action in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

Rename Element

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

Surround Content with Tags (Wrap)

You can surround a selection of content with tags (*wrap* the content) by using the following action in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)

Allows you to choose a tag to enclose a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Unwrap the Content of Elements

You can unwrap the content of an element by using the following action in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

Delete Element Tags

Deletes the tags of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. This operation is also executed if the start or end tags of an element are deleted by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys.

Tip:
Specifically, the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys can be used to unwrap the content of an element in the following situations:

- The cursor is located before the start position of the element and **Delete** key is pressed.
- The cursor is located after the start position of the element and **Backspace** key is pressed.
- The cursor is located before the end position of the element and **Delete** key is pressed.
- The cursor is located after the end position of the element and **Backspace** key is pressed.

If the element has no sibling or the sibling element has a different name, an **Unwrap** operation will be performed.

Remove Markup from Blocks of Content

You can remove the markup from the current element by highlighting the appropriate block of content and using the following action in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

Remove All Markup

Removes all the XML markup inside the selected block of content and keeps only the text content.

Tip:
You can use the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys to remove markup, in which case the elements in the selected block will be unwrapped or joined with their sibling, or if the current element is empty, the element tags will be deleted.

Remove Text from Selected Markup

You can remove the text from elements by highlighting the appropriate block of content and using the following action in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

Remove Text

Removes the text content of the selected block of content and keeps the markup intact with empty elements.

Other Refactoring Actions

You can also manage the structure of the markup by using the other specific XML refactoring actions that are available in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu:

DITA-related Refactoring Actions

A variety of built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to DITA documents with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Change Topic ID to File Name

Use this operation to change the ID of a topic to be the same as its file name.

Convert CALS Tables to Simple Tables

Use this operation to convert DITA CALS tables to simple tables. If you invoke this operation from a nested table (a table inside a table), only the nested table will be affected. If it is invoked on a parent table that contains nested tables, all of the contained tables will be converted.

Convert conrefs to conkeyrefs

Use this operation to convert `@conref` attributes to `@conkeyref` attributes.

Convert Simple Tables to CALS Tables

Use this operation to convert DITA simple tables to CALS tables. If you invoke this operation from a nested table (a table inside a table), only the nested table will be affected. If it is invoked on a parent table that contains nested tables, all of the contained tables will be converted.

Convert to Concept

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Concept topic type (for example, Topic to Concept).

Convert to General Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA General Task topic type (for example, Task to General Task). A DITA *General Task* is a less restrictive alternative to the *Strict Task* information type.

Convert to Reference

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Reference topic type (for example, Topic to Reference).

Convert to Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Task topic type (for example, Topic to Task).

Convert to Topic

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Topic (for example, Task to Topic).

Convert to Troubleshooting

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Troubleshooting topic type (for example, Topic to Troubleshooting).

Rename Key

Available when invoked on a key, and can be used to quickly rename a key. It also updates all references to it. Note that it does not work on DITA 1.3 key scopes.

Generate IDs

Use this operation to automatically generate unique IDs for elements.

Attributes Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add/Change attribute

Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

Convert attribute to element

Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

Delete attribute

Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

Rename attribute

Allows you to rename an attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

Comments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete comments

Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

Elements Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete element

Allows you to delete elements.

Delete element content

Allows you to delete the content of elements.

Insert element

Allows you to insert new elements.

Rename element

Allows you to rename elements.

Unwrap element

Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

Wrap element

Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

Wrap element content

Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

Fragments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Insert XML fragment

Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

Replace element with XML fragment

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

Copying XML Content in Author Mode to the Clipboard

It is possible to copy the XML structure of a document to the system clipboard. Simply select the XML content in **Author** mode (for example, by selecting an element in the breadcrumb), and select **Document > Edit > Copy as XML**. The system clipboard will now contain the corresponding XML structure.

Related Information:
Editing Content in Author Mode *(on page 352)*
Displaying the Markup *(on page 348)*
Refactoring XML Documents *(on page 587)*
Selecting Content in Author Mode *(on page 367)*
Content Completion Assistant in Author Mode *(on page 369)*
Contextual Menu Actions in Author Mode *(on page 509)*

Editing Attributes in Author Mode

You can easily edit attributes in **Author** mode by using the **Attributes View** *(on page 381)* and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also allows you to edit attribute and element values in-place, directly in the **Author** mode, using an in-place attribute editor.

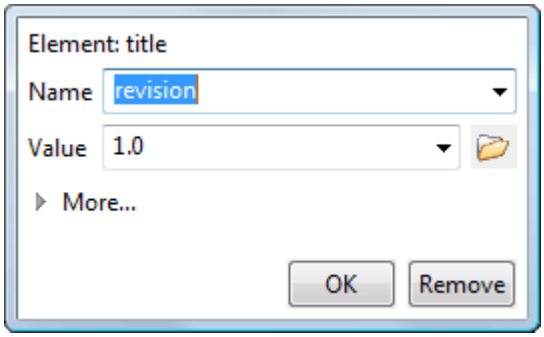
In-place Attributes Editor

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an in-place attributes editor in **Author** mode. To edit the attributes of an XML element in-place, do one of the following:

- Select an element or place the cursor inside it and then press the **Alt + Enter** keyboard shortcut.
- Double-click any named start tag when the document is edited in one of the following display modes: **Full Tags with Attributes**, **Full Tags**, **Block Tags**, or **Inline Tags**.

This opens an in-place attributes editor that contains the same content as the **Attributes** view. By default, this editor presents the **Name** and **Value** fields, with the list of all the possible attributes collapsed.

Figure 82. In-place Attributes Editor



Name Combo Box

Use this combo box to select an attribute. The drop-down list displays the list of possible attributes allowed by the schema of the document, as in the **Attributes** view.

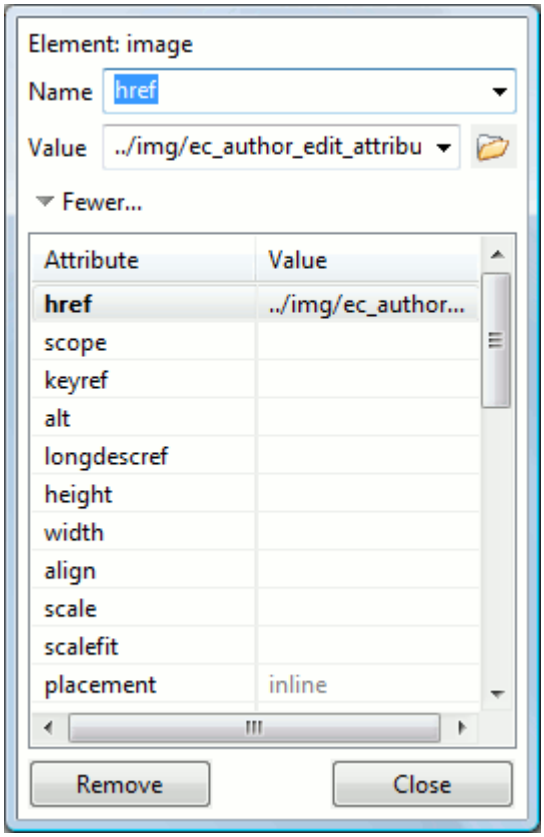
Value Combo Box

Use this combo box to add, edit, or select the value of an attribute. If the selected attribute has predefined values in the schema, the drop-down list displays those possible values. You can use the **Browse** button to select a URL for the value of an attribute. You can also press **Ctrl + Space** to open a content completion window that offers a list of possible choices and allows you to select multiple values.

Note:
For built-in frameworks, if the selected attribute in the **Name** field is an `@id` attribute, the **Browse** button is replaced by a **Generate Unique ID Value** button. Clicking this button will automatically generate a unique ID for the selected element.

If you click **More** while in the collapsed version, it is expanded to the full version of the in-place attribute editor.

Figure 83. In-place Attributes Editor (Full Version)



The full version includes a table grid, similar to the **Atributes** view, that presents all the attributes for the selected element.

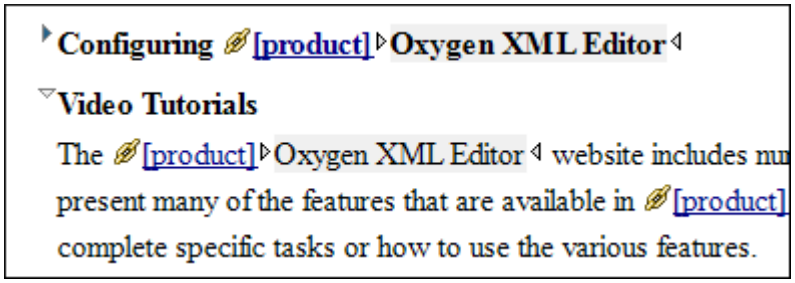
Note:
If the cursor is located inside read-only content, the attribute names and values are faded and you cannot add, edit, or remove values.

Related Information:
Attributes View in Author Mode *(on page 381)*

Folding XML Elements in Author Mode

When working with a large document, the *folding (on page 2230)* support in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can be used to collapse some element content leaving only the parts that you need to edit in focus. Expanding and collapsing works on individual elements. Expanding an element leaves the child elements unchanged.

Figure 84. Folding of XML Elements in Author Mode



Folding Actions in Author Mode

Foldable elements (on page 2230) are marked with a small triangle (/) on the left side of the editor panel. If you hover over that arrow, the entire content of the element is highlighted by a dotted border for quick identification of the *foldable* area. To toggle the fold, simply click the icon. Also, the following actions are available in the **Folding** sub-menu of the contextual menu:

Toggle Fold (or you can simply click on the / arrow)

Toggles the state of the current fold.

Collapse Other Folds

Folds all the elements except the current element.

Collapse Child Folds

Folds the child elements that are indented one level inside the current element.

Expand Child Folds

Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

Expand All

Unfolds all elements in the current document.

Resources

For more information about the *folding* support in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/eR9HfN_peAE

Related Information:
Folding Elements: -oxy-foldable / -oxy-folded / -oxy-not-foldable-child *(on page 1751)*

Drag and Drop in Author Mode

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Author** mode includes support for dragging and dropping content in XML documents.

When editing content in **Author** mode, entire sections or chunks of data can be moved or copied by using the drag and drop feature. The following situations can be encountered:

- When both of the drag and drop sources are from the **Author** mode editor, a well-formed XML fragment is transferred. The section is balanced before dropping it by adding matching tags when needed.
- When the drag source is from the **Author** mode editor but the drop target is a text-based editor, only the text inside the selection is transferred as it is.
- The text dropped from another text editor or another application into the **Author** mode editor is inserted without changes.

Related Information:
Smart Paste in Author Mode *(on page 366)*

Smart Paste in Author Mode

The **Author** editing mode includes a *Smart Paste* feature that preserves certain style and structure information when copying content and pasting it into document types that support the feature. You can copy content from various sources, including web pages, external applications (such as Office-type applications), Markdown documents, or other types of documents and then paste it into DITA, TEI, DocBook, JATS, and XHTML documents. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin preserves the original text styling (such as bold, italics, underline) and formatting (such as lists, tables, paragraphs) and considers various pasting solutions to keep the resulting document valid.

The styles and general layout of the pasted content are converted to the equivalent XML markup for the target document type while preserving certain style and structure information. For example, if you copy content that includes multiple paragraphs and then paste it in **Author** mode, the multiple paragraph structure is preserved. If you paste the content in a location where the resulting XML would not be valid, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will attempt to place it in a valid location, and may prompt you with one or more choices for where to place it.

Notes:

- When pasting text fragments formatted with the *Courier New* font, the *Smart Paste* mechanism will wrap it in an inline code element (for example, in DITA it would be wrapped in a `<codeph>` element).
- Review comments that exist in the copied Word content are intentionally ignored when pasting the content in **Author** mode.

Smart Paste Options

By default, the *Smart Paste* feature is enabled in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. There are several options in the **Schema Aware** preferences page *(on page 145)* that control the *Smart Paste* mechanism:

- **Smart paste and drag and drop** *(on page 146)* - This option determines whether or not Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will try to find an appropriate insert position when the current location is not valid for the pasted content. This option is selected by default.
- **Reject action when its result is invalid** *(on page 146)* - If you select this option, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will not let you paste content into a position where it would be invalid. This option is deselected by default.
- **Convert external content on paste** *(on page 147)* - This option determines whether or not Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will convert the styling and formatting of copied content from external sources when pasting it into a document type that supports the feature. This option is selected by default.
- **Convert even when pasting inside space-preserve elements** *(on page 148)* - If you select this option, the *Smart Paste* feature will also work when pasting external content into a *space-preserve* element (such as a `<codeblock>`). This option is deselected by default.

Smart Paste Supported Document Types

The *Smart Paste* feature is supported for the following document types (*frameworks (on page 2231)*):

- DITA
- DocBook 4
- DocBook 5
- TEI
- XHTML
- JATS

Resources

For more information about the *Smart Paste* support, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/bpiXZQwzBfA

Related Information:
Customizing Smart Paste Support *(on page 1593)*
Migrating MS Office Documents to DITA *(on page 2180)*
Oxygen Batch Converter add-on (Convert Markdown/HTML to DITA or DocBook)

Selecting Content in Author Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a variety of features and keyboard shortcuts to help you select content in **Author** mode.

Selection Shortcuts in Author Mode

Ctrl + A (Meta + A on macOS)

Selects all content in the document.

Shift + Left/Right Arrow Keys

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it one character at a time in the direction that you press the arrow keys.

Shift + Up/Down Arrow Keys

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it one line at a time in the direction that you press the arrow keys.

Ctrl + Shift + Left/Right Arrow Keys (Meta + Shift + Left/Right Arrow Keys on macOS)

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it one word at a time in the direction that you press the arrow keys.

Shift + Home

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the beginning of the current line (on macOS, it extends to the beginning of the document).

Shift + End

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the end of the current line (on macOS, it extends to the end of the document).

Ctrl + Shift + Home

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the beginning of the document.

Ctrl + Shift + End

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it to the end of the document.

Shift + PageUp

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it up one screen page.

Shift + PageDown

Begins a continuous selection at the cursor position and extends it down one screen page.

Double-Click

Selects the word at the cursor position.

Triple-Click

Selects the node at the cursor position.

Right-Click > Select > Element

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

Right-Click > Select > Content

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

Right-Click > Select > Parent

Selects the entire parent element at the current cursor position.

Intelligent Selection in Author Mode

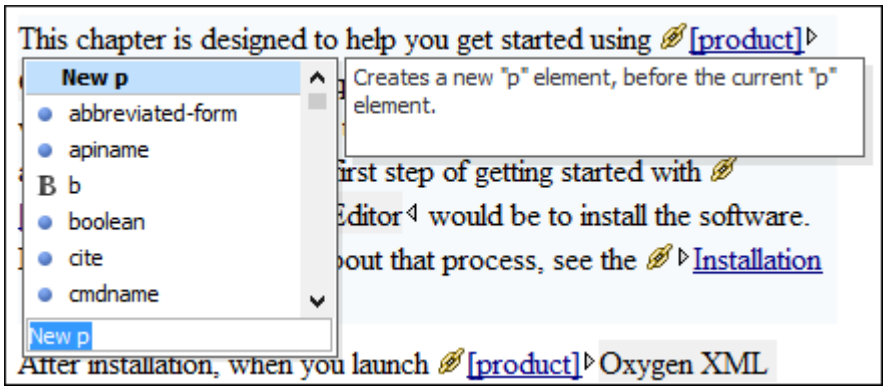
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports all usual content selection methods using the mouse or keyboard shortcuts (for example **Shift + Arrow Keys**). When selecting content in **Author** mode, there may be instances where you want to select an element (along with its content) rather than just inline text content. There are several ways to select an element, including:

- You can select an element by clicking the element name in the *breadcrumb (on page 347)*.
- You can select an element using the **Outline** view *(on page 301)*.
- If you have the **Tags Display Mode** *(on page 348)* set to any of the modes other than **Partial Tags** or **No Tags**, you can select an element directly in the main editing pane by clicking on the element's tag.
- If you have the **Tags Display Mode** *(on page 348)* set to **Partial Tags** (and the **Compact tag layout** option is enabled in the **Author** preferences page *(on page 130)*), you can still select certain block elements directly in the main editing pane by spanning the selection to the right of the end of the content that is inside a block element so that the selection includes the element's *invisible* end tag. In this mode, the end tag is normally not visible, but when your selection includes the invisible end tag, a tooltip displays the selected element name and the selection includes the whole element (along with its content).

Content Completion Assistant in Author Mode

One of the most useful features in **Author** mode is the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*. It offers a list of elements, attributes, attribute values, and other options that are valid in the current editing context.

Figure 85. Content Completion Assistant in Author Mode



The *Content Completion Assistant* is enabled by default. To disable it, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Editor > Content Completion**, and deselect the **Enable content completion** option *(on page 112)*.

Using the Content Completion Assistant in Author Mode

To activate the feature in **Author** mode, use any of the following shortcut keys:

- **Enter**
- **Ctrl + Space**
- **Alt + ForwardSlash (Command + Option + ForwardSlash on macOS)**

You can navigate through the list of proposals by using the **Up** and **Down** keys on your keyboard. In same cases, the *Content Completion Assistant* displays a documentation window with information about the particular proposal and some of them have links to additional information (for example, DITA elements might have a link to the DITA Style Guide). You can use **Tab** and **Shift + Tab** to navigate to those links and **Space** to trigger them. You can also change the size of the documentation window by dragging its top, right, and bottom borders.

To insert the selected proposal in **Author** mode, simply press **Enter**.

Types of Proposals Listed in the Content Completion Assistant

The *Content Completion Assistant* offers the following types of proposed actions depending on the current context:

- Insert allowed elements for the current context schema and the list of proposals contains elements depending on the elements inserted both before and after the cursor position.
- Insert element values if such values are specified in the schema for the current context.
- Insert new undeclared elements by entering their name in the text field.
- Insert CDATA sections, comments, processing instructions.
- Insert code templates *(on page 299)*.
- If invoked on a selection that only contains an element start or end tag (remember that you can see all element tags while working in **Full Tags** mode *(on page 348)*), it will allow you to rename the element.
- If invoked on a selection of multiple elements or other content, it will allow you to surround the content with certain tags.
- If invoked on an empty list item that is the last element of the list, it will allow you to convert the list item to a paragraph.
- If the **Show all possible elements in the content completion list** option from the **Schema-Aware** preferences page *(on page 147)* is selected, the content completion pop-up window will present all the elements defined by the schema. When choosing an element from this section, the insertion will be performed using the schema-aware smart editing features.

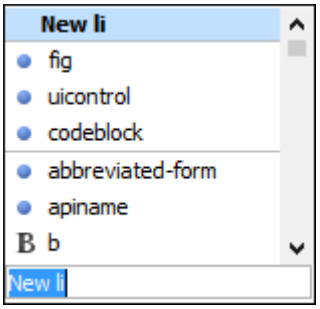
> **Note:**
> By default, you are not allowed to insert element names that are not defined by the schema. This can be changed by deselecting the **Allow only insertion of valid elements and attributes** check box from the **Schema-Aware** preferences page *(on page 147)*.

Examples of How the Content Completion Assistant Works

To illustrate how the feature works, consider the following examples of invoking the *Content Completion Assistant* in certain contexts:

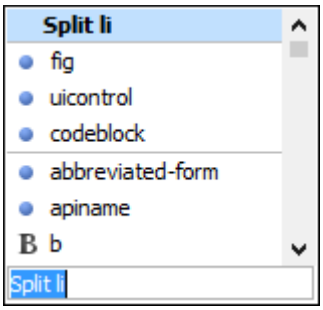
- If the cursor is positioned at the beginning or at the end of the element, the first item offered in the *Content Completion Assistant* is a **New <Element>** item. Selecting this item will insert an empty element.

  Figure 86. Example (New [Element Name])

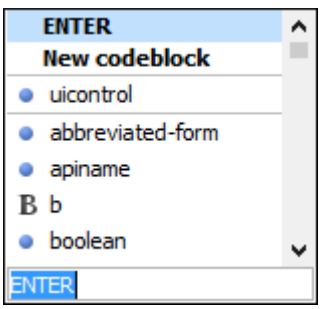
- If the cursor is positioned somewhere inside the element, the first entry in the *Content Completion Assistant* is a **Split <Element>** item. In most cases, you can only split the closest *block element (on page 2228)* to the cursor position, but if it is inside a list item, the list item will also be proposed for split. Selecting **Split <Element>** splits the content of the specified element around the cursor position.

  Figure 87. Example (Split [Element Name])

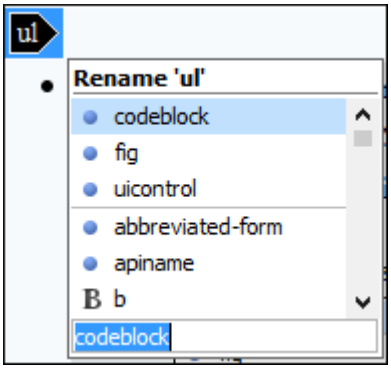
- If the cursor is positioned inside a *space-preserved element (on page 2234)* (for example, a *codeblock*), the first choice in the *Content Completion Assistant* is **Enter**, which will insert a new line in the content of the element, followed by **New <Element>**.

  Figure 88. Example ('ENTER' New Line)

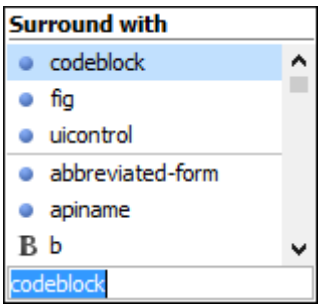
- If invoked on a selection that only contains an element start or end tag (remember that you can see all element tags while working in **Full Tags** mode *(on page 348)*), it will allow you to rename the element.

Figure 89. Example (Rename)



- If invoked on a selection of multiple elements or other content, it will allow you to surround the content with certain tags.

Figure 90. Example (Surround)



Related Information:

Customizing the Content Completion Assistant Using a Configuration File *(on page 1596)*

Set the Schema to be Used for Content Completion

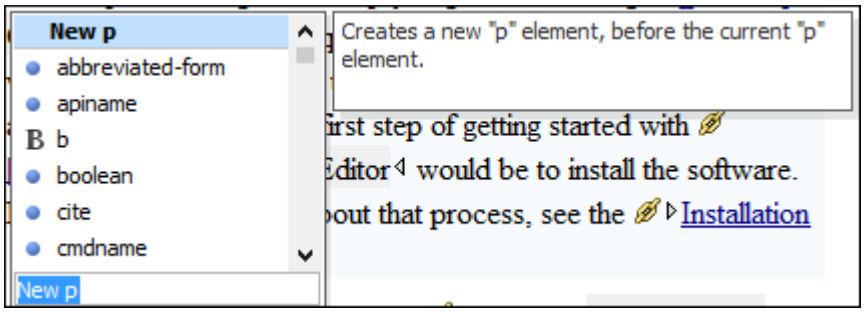
The proposals that are presented in the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* depend on the associated schemas. The DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG, or NVDL schema used to populate the *Content Completion Assistant* is specified in the following methods, in the order of their precedence:

- The schema specified explicitly in the document *(on page 570)*. In this case, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin reads the beginning of the document and resolves the location of the DTD, XML Schema, Relax NG schema, or NVDL schema.
- The default schema declared *(on page 572)* in the **Schema** tab of the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 87)* for the particular document type.

Schema Annotations in Author Mode

A *schema annotation* is a documentation snippet associated with the definition of an element or attribute in a schema. If such a schema is associated with an XML document, the annotations are displayed in the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

Figure 91. Schema Annotation in the Content Completion Assistant



The schema annotations support is available if the schema type is one of the following:

- XML Schema
- Relax NG
- NVDL schema
- DTD

This feature is enabled by default, but you can disable it by deselecting the **Show annotations in Content Completion Assistant** *(on page 114)* option in the **Annotations** preferences page.

Styling Annotations with HTML

You can use HTML format in the annotations you add in an XML Schema or Relax NG schema. This improves the visual appearance and readability of the documentation window displayed when editing XML documents validated against such a schema. An annotation is recognized and displayed as HTML if it contains at least one HTML element (such as `<div>`, `<body>`, `<p>`, `<br>`, `<table>`, `<ul>`, or `<ol>`).

The HTML rendering is controlled by the **Show annotations using HTML format, if possible** *(on page 115)* option in the **Annotations** preferences page. When this option is deselected, the annotations are converted and displayed as plain text and if the annotation contains one or more HTML tags (`<p>`, `<br>`, `<ul>`, `<li>`), they are rendered as an HTML document loaded in a web browser. For example, `<p>` begins a new paragraph, `<br>` breaks the current line, `<ul>` encloses a list of items, and `<li>` encloses an item of the list.

Collecting Annotations from XML Schemas

In an XML Schema, the annotations are specified in an `<xs:annotation>` element like this:

```
<xs:annotation>
  <xs:documentation>
            Description of the element.
```

```
  </xs:documentation>
</xs:annotation>
```

If an element or attribute does not have a specific annotation, then Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin looks for an annotation in the type definition of that element or attribute.

Collecting Annotations from Relax NG Schemas

For Relax NG schema, element and attribute annotations are made using the `<documentation>` element from the `http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0` namespace like this:

```
<define name="person" >
  <element name="person">
    <a:documentation xmlns:a="http://relaxng.org/ns/compatibility/annotations/1.0">
            Information about a person. </a:documentation>
      <ref name="name"/>
        <zeroOrMore>
      <ref name="email"/>
        </zeroOrMore>
  </element>
</define>
```

However, any element outside the Relax NG namespace (`http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0`) is handled as annotation and the text content is displayed in the annotation window. To activate this behavior, select the **Use all Relax NG annotations as documentation** *(on page 115)* option in the **Annotations** preferences page.

Collecting Annotations from Relax NG Compact Syntax Schemas

For Relax NG Compact Syntax schema, annotations are made using comments like this:

```
##  Information about a person.
element person { name, email*}
```

Collecting Annotation from DTDs

For DTD, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin defines a custom mechanism for annotations using comments enabled by the **Prefer DTD comments that start with "doc:" as annotations** *(on page 114)* option in the **Annotations** preferences page. The following is an example of a DTD annotation:

```
<!--doc:Description of the element. -->
```

Related Information:

Customizing the Rendering of Elements *(on page 1611)*
Customizing Annotations in the Content Completion Assistant *(on page 1615)*

Content Completion Helper Views (Author Mode)

Information about the current element being edited is also available in various *dockable (on page 2229)* views, such as the **Model** view *(on page 307)*, **Attributes** view *(on page 381)*, **Elements** view *(on page 386)*, and **Entities** view *(on page 309)*. By default, they are located on the right-hand side of the main editor window. These views, along with the powerful **Outline** view *(on page 301)*, provide spatial and insight information about the edited document and the current element. If any particular view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Code Templates

Code templates are code fragments that can be inserted quickly at the current editing position. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a set of built-in code templates for CSS, Schematron, XSL, XQuery, JSON, HTML, and XML Schema document types. You can also define your own code templates for any type of file and share them with others.

Code templates are displayed with a symbol in the content completion list (**Enter** in **Author** mode or **Ctrl + Space** in **Text** mode). Also, in **Text** mode you can press **Ctrl + Shift + Space** to see a complete list of the available code templates. To enter the code template at the cursor position, select it from the content completion list or type its code and press **Enter**. If a shortcut key has been assigned to the code template, you can also use the shortcut key to enter it.

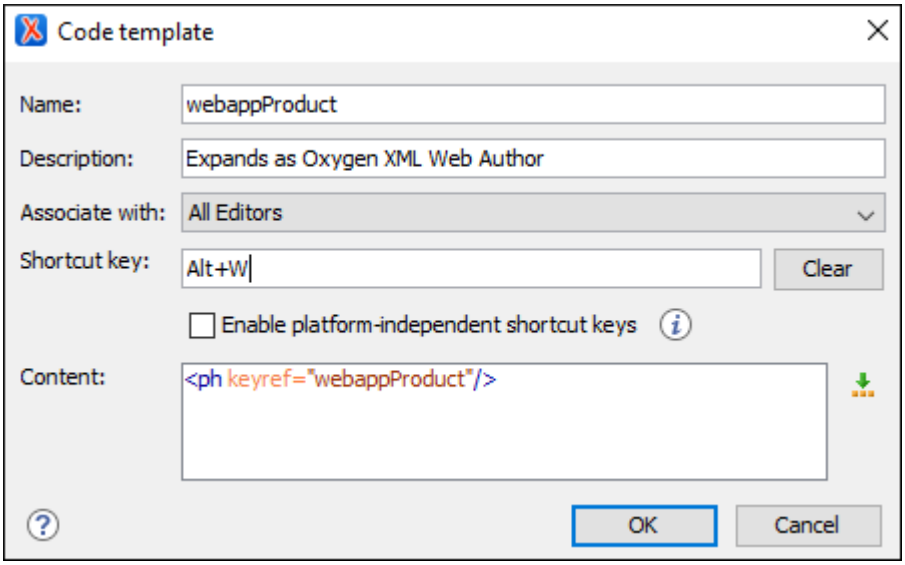
How to Create Code Templates

To create a code template, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Content Completion > Code Templates**.
2. Click **New** to open a code template configuration dialog box.

> **Tip:**
> You can use one of the existing code templates as a starting point by selecting that template and clicking **Duplicate**.

Figure 92. Code Template Configuration Dialog Box



3. Configure your template using the fields in the code template configuration dialog box:
   - **Name** - The name of the code template.
   - **Description** - [Optional] The description of the code template that will appear in the **Code Templates** preferences page and in the tooltip message when selecting it from the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*. HTML markup can be used for better rendering.
   - **Associate with** - You can choose to set the code template to be associated with a specific type of editor or for all editor types.
   - **Shortcut key** - [Optional] If you want to assign a shortcut key that can be used to insert the code template, place the cursor in the **Shortcut key** field and press the desired key combination on your keyboard. Use the **Clear** button if you make a mistake. If the **Enable platform-independent shortcut keys** checkbox is selected, the shortcut is platform-independent and the following modifiers are used:
     - **M1** represents the **Command** key on macOS, and the **Ctrl** key on other platforms.
     - **M2** represents the **Shift** key.
     - **M3** represents the **Option** key on macOS, and the **Alt** key on other platforms.
     - **M4** represents the **Ctrl** key on macOS, and is undefined on other platforms.
   - **Content** - Text box where you define the content that is used when the code template is inserted. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button.
4. Click **OK** to save your new code template.

Result: Your code template can now be selected using the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* (**Enter** in **Author** mode or **Ctrl + Space** in **Text** mode). The code templates are displayed with a symbol.

How to Share Code Templates

There are two ways to easily share all of your code templates with other members of your team:

Method 1: Export/Import

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Templates > Code Templates**.
2. Click the **Export** button to export all of your code templates into an XML file.
3. Save the XML file.
4. Share the XML file with other members of your team.
5. Instruct them to open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Editor > Templates > Code Templates**, click the **Import** button, and select the file you sent them.

   Result: The code templates will be now available in their content completion list.

Method 2: Share Project

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Templates > Code Templates**.
2. Select **Project Options** at the bottom of the dialog box. This stores the preferences in the project file (`.xpr`).
3. Share the project file with the other members of your team. For example, you can commit it to your version control system and have them update their working copy.

   Result: When they open the updated project file in their **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*, the code templates will be available in their content completion list.

Tip:
It is also possible to configure certain actions that function similar to code templates and add them to the content completion list *(on page 1596)* for a particular framework. You could then share the whole framework *(on page 1691)* with other members of your team.

Author Mode Views

The content author is supported by a variety of *dockable (on page 2229)* helper views that are displayed by default when editing in **Author** mode. These views are automatically synchronized with the current editing context of the editor panel. They present additional information about this context thus helping the author to see quickly the current location in the overall document structure and the available editing options.

There is also a large selection of additional useful views available in the **Window > Show View** menu. This section presents some of the most helpful views for editing in **Author** mode.

Outline View for XML Documents

The **Outline** view displays a general tag overview of the currently edited XML document. When you edit a document, the **Outline** view dynamically follows the changes that you make, displaying the node that you modify. This functionality gives you great insight on the location of your modifications in the current document. It also shows the correct hierarchical dependencies between elements. This makes it easy for you to be aware of the document structure and the way element tags are nested.

Outline View Features

The **Outline** view allows you to:

- Quickly navigate through the document by selecting nodes in the **Outline** tree.
- Insert or delete nodes using contextual menu actions.
- Move elements by dragging them to a new position in the tree structure.
- Highlight elements in the editor area. It is synchronized with the editor area, so when you make a selection in the editor area, the corresponding nodes are highlighted in the **Outline** view, and vice versa.
- View document errors, as they are highlighted in the **Outline** view. A tooltip also provides more information about the nature of the error when you hover over the faulted element.

Outline View Interface

By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

The upper part of the **Outline** view contains a filter box that allows you to focus on the relevant components. Type a text fragment in the filter box and only the components that match it are presented. For advanced usage you can use wildcard characters (such as `*` or `?`) and separate multiple patterns with commas.

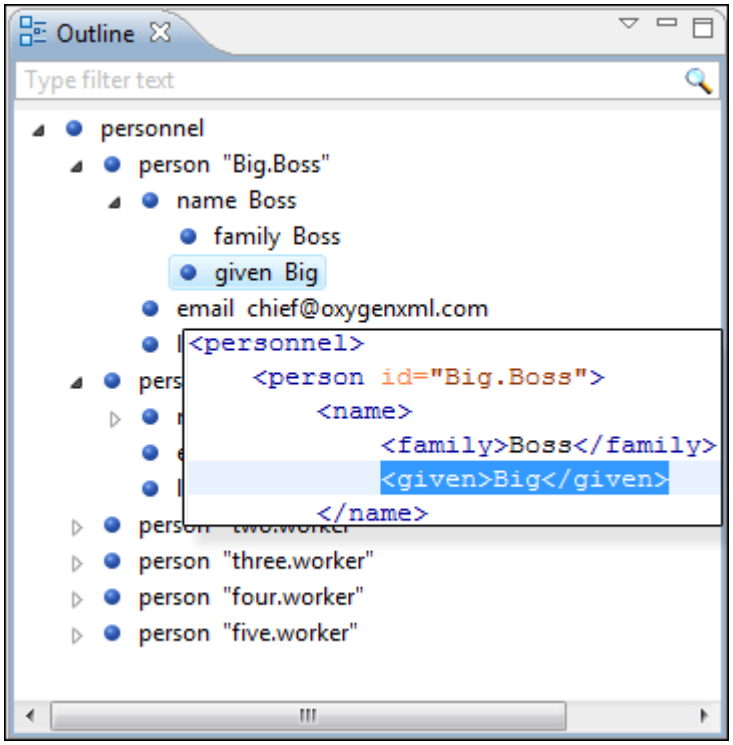
It also includes a **View menu** in the top-right corner that presents a variety of options to help you filter the view even further.

Drag and Drop Actions in the Outline View

Entire XML elements can be moved or copied in the edited document using only the mouse in the **Outline** view with drag-and-drop operations. Several drag and drop actions are possible:

- If you drag an XML element in the **Outline** view and drop it on another node, then the dragged element will be moved after the drop target element.
- If you hold the mouse pointer over the drop target for a short time before the drop then the drop target element will be expanded first and the dragged element will be moved inside the drop target element after its opening tag.
- You can also drop an element before or after another element if you hold the mouse pointer towards the upper or lower part of the targeted element. A marker will indicate whether the drop will be performed before or after the target element.
- If you hold down the **Ctrl (Command on macOS)** key after dragging, a copy operation will be performed instead of a move.

Figure 93. Outline View



Outline View Filters

The upper part of the **Outline** view contains a filter box that allows you to focus on the relevant components. Type a text fragment in the filter box and only the components that match it are presented. For advanced usage you can use wildcard characters (such as `*` or `?`) and separate multiple patterns with commas.

The following actions are available in the **View menu** of the **Outline** view:

Filter returns exact matches

The text filter of the **Outline** view returns only exact matches.

Selection update on cursor move (Available in Text mode)

Controls the synchronization between **Outline** view and source document. The selection in the **Outline** view can be synchronized with the cursor moves or the changes in the editor. Selecting one of the components from the **Outline** view also selects the corresponding item in the source document.

Flat presentation mode of the filtered results

When active, the application flattens the filtered result elements to a single level.

Show comments and processing instructions

Show/hide comments and processing instructions in the **Outline** view.

Show element name

Show/hide element name.

Show text

Show/hide additional text content for the displayed elements.

Show attributes

Show/hide attribute values for the displayed elements. The displayed attribute values can be changed from the Outline preferences panel *(on page 195)*.

Configure displayed attributes

Displays the **XML Structured Outline** preferences page *(on page 195)*.

Outline View Contextual Menu Actions

The contextual menu of the **Outline** view contains the following actions:

Edit Attributes

Displays an in-place attributes editor that allows you to edit the attributes of a selected node.

Edit Profiling Attributes (Available in Author mode)

Allows you to change the profiling attributes *(on page 419)* defined on all selected elements.

Append Child

Invokes a content completion list with the names of all the elements that are allowed by the associated schema and inserts your selection as a child of the current element.

Insert Before

Invokes a content completion list with the names of all the elements that are allowed by the associated schema and inserts your selection immediately before the current element, as a sibling.

Insert After

Invokes a content completion list with the names of all the elements that are allowed by the associated schema and inserts your selection immediately after the current element, as a sibling.

Cut, Copy, Paste, Delete common editing actions

Executes the typical editing actions on the currently selected elements. The **Cut** and **Copy** operations preserve the styles of the copied content.

Paste before (Available in Author mode)

Inserts a well-formed copied element before the currently selected element.

Paste after (Available in Author mode)

Inserts a well-formed copied element after the currently selected element.

Paste as XML (Available in Author mode)

Pastes copied content that is considered to be valid XML, preserving its XML structure.

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected element in a comment, if the element is not already commented. If it is already commented, this action will remove the comment.

Rename Element (Available in Author mode)

Invokes a **Rename** dialog box that allows you to rename the currently selected element, siblings with the same name, or all elements with the same name.

Expand All

Expands the structure tree of the currently selected element.

Collapse All

Collapses all of the structure tree of the currently selected node.

Tip:
You can copy, cut or delete multiple nodes in the **Outline** by using the contextual menu after selecting multiple nodes in the tree.

Attributes View in Author Mode

The **Attributes** view presents all the attributes of the current element determined by the schema of the document. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened from the **Window > Show View** menu.

You can use this view to edit or add attribute values. The attributes of an element are editable if any one of the following is true:

- The CSS stylesheet associated with the document does not specify a **false** value for the -oxy-editable *(on page 1750)* property associated with the element.
- The element is entirely included in a deleted *Track Changes (on page 393)* marker.
- The element is part of a content fragment that is referenced in **Author** mode from another document.

The attributes are rendered differently depending on their state:

- The names of the attributes are rendered with a bold font, and their values with a plain font.
- Default values are rendered with a plain font, painted gray.
- Empty values display the text "[empty]", painted gray.
- Invalid attributes and values are painted red.

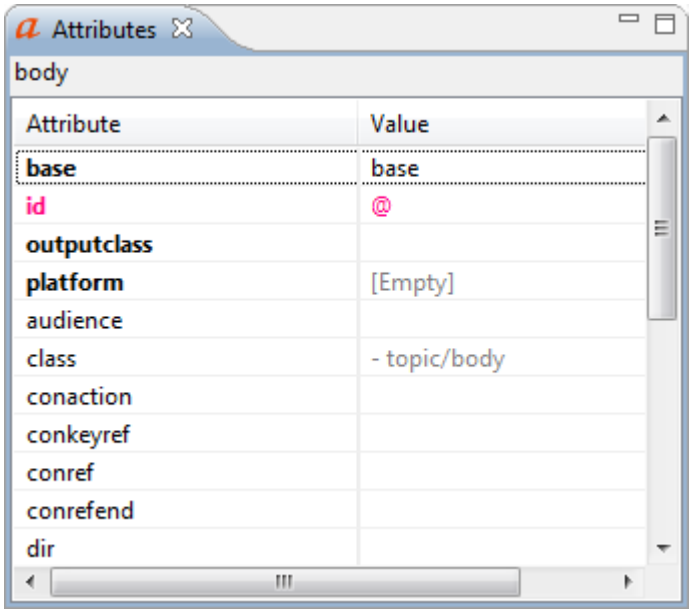
To edit the value of the corresponding attribute, double-click a cell in the **Value** column. If the possible values of the attribute are specified as `list` in the schema of the edited document, the **Value** column acts as a combo box that allows you to either select the value from a list or manually enter it.

Note:
If the cursor is located inside read-only content, the attribute names and values are faded and you cannot add, edit, or remove values.

You can sort the attributes table by clicking the **Attribute** column header. The table contents can be sorted as follows:

- By attribute name in ascending order.
- By attribute name in descending order.
- Custom order, where the used attributes are displayed at the beginning of the table sorted in ascending order, followed by the rest of the allowed elements sorted in ascending order.

Figure 94. Attributes View



A drop-down list located in the upper part of the view allows you to select the current element or its ancestors.

Contextual Menu Actions in the Attributes View

The following actions are available in the contextual menu of the **Attributes** view when editing in **Author** mode:

Set empty value

Specifies the current attribute value as empty.

Remove

Removes the attribute (action available only if the attribute is specified). You can invoke this action by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys.

Copy

Copies the `attrName="attrValue"` pair to the clipboard. The `attrValue` can be:

- The value of the attribute.
- The value of the default attribute, if the attribute does not appear in the edited document.
- Empty, if the attribute does not appear in the edited document and has no default value set.

Paste

Depending on the content of the clipboard, the following cases are possible:

- If the clipboard contains an attribute and its value, both of them are introduced in the **Attributes** view. The attribute is selected and its value is changed if they exist in the **Attributes** view.
- If the clipboard contains an attribute name with an empty value, the attribute is introduced in the **Attributes** view and you can start editing it. The attribute is selected and you can start editing it if it exists in the **Attributes** view.
- If the clipboard only contains text, the value of the selected attribute is modified.

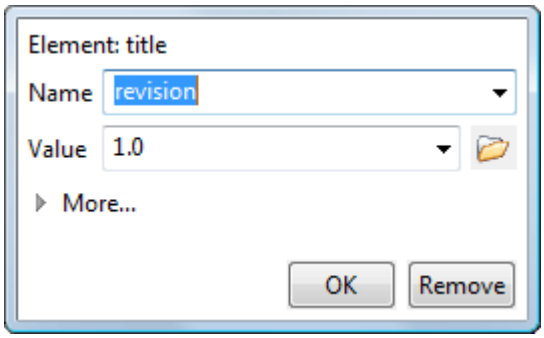
In-place Attributes Editor

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an in-place attributes editor in **Author** mode. To edit the attributes of an XML element in-place, do one of the following:

- Select an element or place the cursor inside it and then press the **Alt + Enter** keyboard shortcut.
- Double-click any named start tag when the document is edited in one of the following display modes: **Full Tags with Attributes**, **Full Tags**, **Block Tags**, or **Inline Tags**.

This opens an in-place attributes editor that contains the same content as the **Attributes** view. By default, this editor presents the **Name** and **Value** fields, with the list of all the possible attributes collapsed.

Figure 95. In-place Attributes Editor



Name Combo Box

Use this combo box to select an attribute. The drop-down list displays the list of possible attributes allowed by the schema of the document, as in the **Attributes** view.

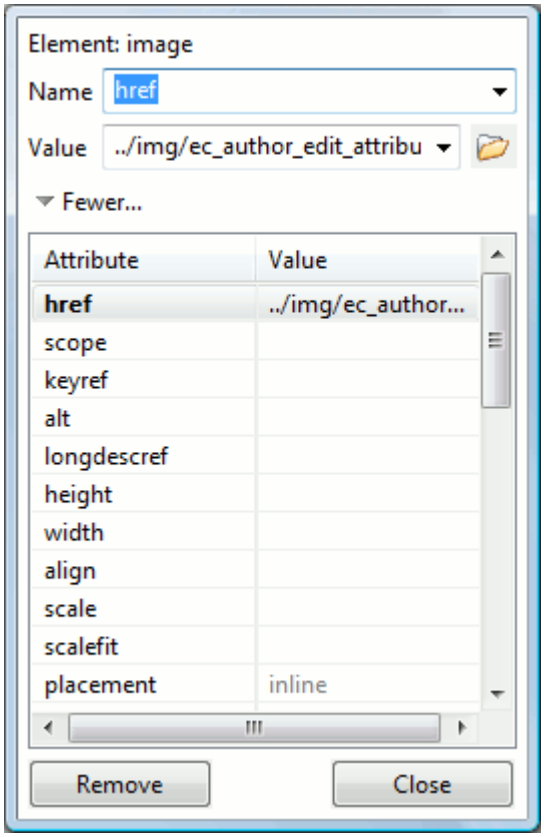
Value Combo Box

Use this combo box to add, edit, or select the value of an attribute. If the selected attribute has predefined values in the schema, the drop-down list displays those possible values. You can use the **Browse** button to select a URL for the value of an attribute. You can also press **Ctrl + Space** to open a content completion window that offers a list of possible choices and allows you to select multiple values.

Note:
For built-in frameworks, if the selected attribute in the **Name** field is an `@id` attribute, the **Browse** button is replaced by a **Generate Unique ID Value** button. Clicking this button will automatically generate a unique ID for the selected element.

If you click **More** while in the collapsed version, it is expanded to the full version of the in-place attribute editor.

Figure 96. In-place Attributes Editor (Full Version)

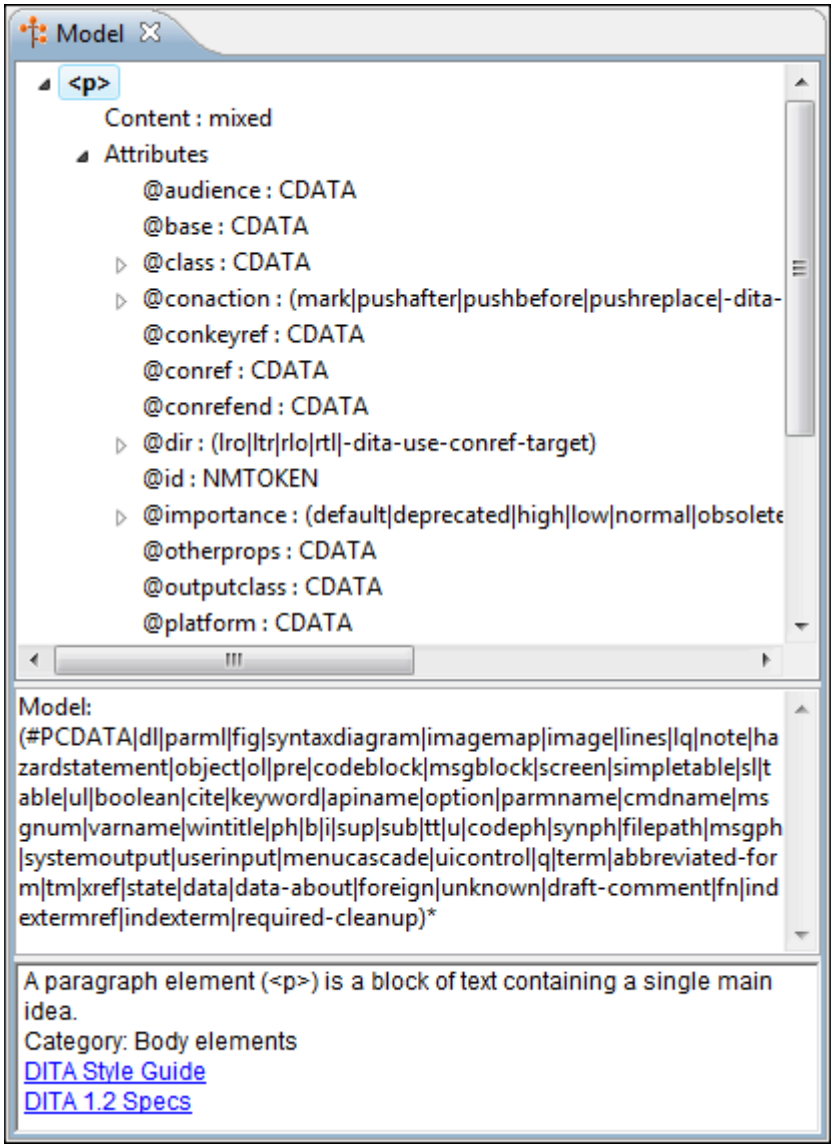


The full version includes a table grid, similar to the **Atributes** view, that presents all the attributes for the selected element.

Model View

The **Model** view presents the structure of the currently selected tag, and its documentation, defined as annotation in the schema of the current document. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Figure 97. Model View

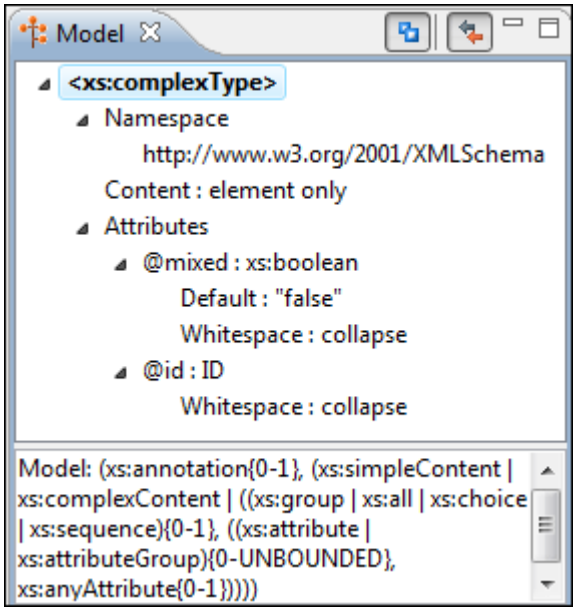


The **Model** view is comprised of two sections, an element structure panel and an annotations panel.

Element Structure Panel

The element structure panel displays the structure of the currently edited or selected tag in a tree-like format. The information includes the name, model, and attributes of the current tag. The allowed attributes are shown along with imposed restrictions, if any.

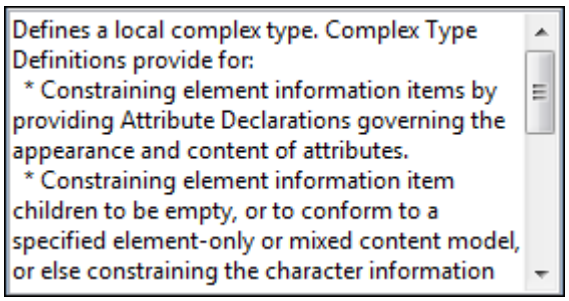
Figure 98. Element Structure Panel



Annotation Panel

The **Annotation** panel displays the annotation information for the currently selected element. This information is collected from the XML schema.

Figure 99. Annotation panel



Elements View in Author Mode

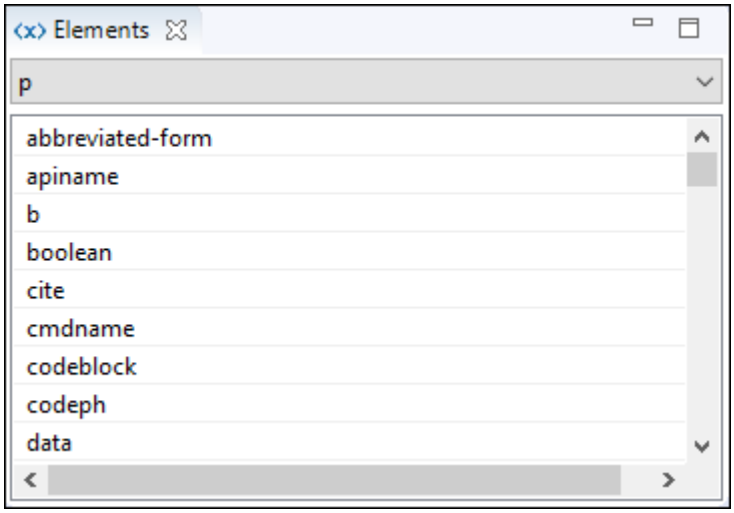
The **Elements** view presents a list of all defined elements that are valid at the current cursor position according to the schema associated to the document. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

The upper part of the view features a combo box that contains the ordered ancestors of the current element. Selecting a new element in this combo box updates the list of the allowed elements. By default, only the elements that are allowed at the current cursor position are listed. However, if the **Show only allowed items** option *(on page 168)* is not selected in the **View** preferences page *(on page 167)*, all elements allowed by the schema will be listed.

Double-clicking any of the listed elements inserts that element into the edited document at the current cursor position.

Pressing **F2** with an element selected will display information about that particular element.

Figure 100. Elements View in Author Mode



Entities View

Entities provide abbreviated entries that can be used in XML files when there is a need of repeatedly inserting certain characters or large blocks of information. An *entity* is defined using the `ENTITY` statement either in the DOCTYPE declaration or in a DTD file associated with the current XML file.

There are three types of entities:

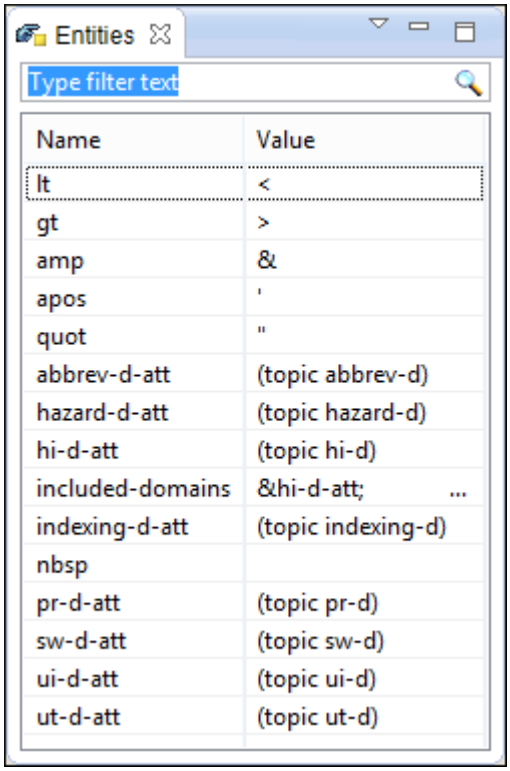
- **Predefined** - Entities that are part of the predefined XML markup (`<`, `>`, `&`, `'`, `"`).
- **Internal** - Defined in the DOCTYPE declaration header of the current XML.
- **External** - Defined in an external DTD module included in the DTD referenced in the XML DOCTYPE declaration.

Note:
If you want to add internal entities, you would need to switch to the Text editing mode and manually modify the DOCTYPE declaration. If you want to add external entities, you need to open the DTD module file and modify it directly.

The **Entities** view displays a list with all entities declared in the current document, as well as built-in ones. By default, it is located on the right side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Double-clicking one of the entities will insert it at the current cursor position in the XML document. You can also sort entities by name and value by clicking the column headers.

Figure 101. Entities View



The view features a filtering capability that allows you to search an entity by name, value, or both. Also, you can choose to display the internal or external entities.

Note:
When entering filters, you can use the *?* and * wildcards. Also, you can enter multiple filters by separating them with a comma.

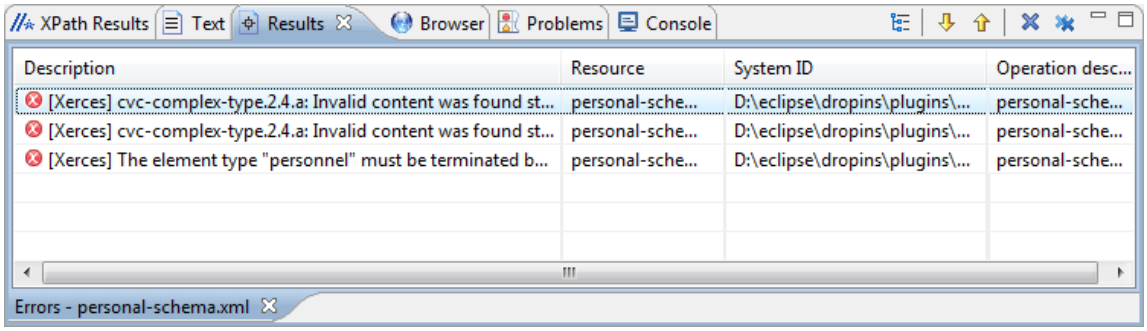
Results View

The **Results** view displays the messages generated as a result of user actions such as validations, transformations, search operations, and others. Each message is a link to the location related to the event that triggered the message. Double-clicking a message opens the file containing the location and positions the cursor at the location offset. The **Results** view is automatically opened when certain actions generate result messages. By default, the view normally opens at the bottom of the editor, but it is *dockable (on page 2229)*, so it can be moved to another UI location alongside other side views.

The actions that contribute messages to this view include:

- **Validation** actions *(on page 525)*
- **Transformation** actions *(on page 796)*
- **Check Spelling in Files** action *(on page 269)*
-
-
- SQL results *(on page 1513)*

Figure 102. Results View



Results View Toolbar Actions

The view includes a toolbar with the following actions:

Grouping Mode toggle options

You can choose to group the result messages in a **Hierarchical** or **Flat** arrangement.

Next

Navigates to the message below the current selection.

Previous

Navigates to the message above the current selection.

Remove selected

Removes the current selection from the view. This can be helpful if you want to reduce the number of messages, or remove those that have already been addressed or not relevant to your task.

Remove all

Removes all messages from the view.

Results View Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available when the contextual menu is invoked in this view:

Learn Word(s) (Available when spelling errors are reported in the Results view)

Adds the word(s) to a list of learned words to instruct the spell checker engine to not report the word(s) as spelling errors in the future.

Apply all default quick fix proposals

This action is available for the tabs in the **Results** view that displays the problems reported after a single file or batch validation operation. In the first phase, the quick fix proposals associated with the presented validation errors are automatically identified and mapped to the corresponding document (if multiple quick fix proposals are available for the same validation error, only the first one is considered). Depending on the number of quick fixes to be applied,

the next phase analyzes the impact of their application and may take some time (an operation progress tracker shows the status).

Once complete, a preview dialog box is presented that provides an overview of the content changes that will be made for each document. The comparison panel also informs you of any problems encountered. In addition, you can choose to exclude certain files from the set of files that the quick fixes will be applied to if you do not agree with the proposed changes to be made. If you do agree with the changes presented, click **Apply** to trigger the procedure of applying the quick fixes and updating the contents of the documents.

> **Important:**
> Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin does not provide an automatic means for reverting changes made by this action so make sure you agree with the previewed changed for applying them.

Remove

Removes selected messages from the view.

Remove all

Removes all messages from the view.

Copy

Copies information associated with the selected messages. For example:

- The file path of the document that triggered the output message.
- Error severity (error, warning, info message, etc.)
- Name of validating processor.
- The line and column in the file that triggered the message.

Copy Description

Copies the description values for all selected items.

Show message

Opens a dialog box that displays the details of the message.

Save Results

Saves the complete list of messages in a file in text format. For each message, the included details are the same as the ones for the **Copy** action *(on page 390)*.

Save Results as XML

Saves the complete list of messages in a file in XML format. For each message, the included details are the same as the ones for the **Copy** action *(on page 390)*.

Save Results as HTML

Saves the complete list of messages in a file in HTML format. For each message, the included details are the same as the ones for the **Copy** action *(on page 390)*.

Save Validation Report (Available for validation errors)

Unlike the **Save Results as HTML** action, where the validation results are formatted in a single table, the HTML report created by this action groups the detected errors by the system IDs of the validated documents and creates a table for each. For greater flexibility in analyzing the results, most of its columns are sortable. Also, links are provided for quickly viewing both the validated document and its associated schema, and links to additional information about the errors detected, when available.

Expand All

Available when **Hierarchical** mode is selected. Expands all the nodes of the tree, which is useful when the messages are presented in a hierarchical mode.

Collapse All

Available when **Hierarchical** mode is selected. Collapses all the nodes of the tree, which is useful when the messages are presented in a hierarchical mode.

CSS Inspector View

The purpose of the **CSS Inspector** view is to display information about the styles applied to the currently selected element. You can use this view to examine the structure and layout of the CSS rules that match the element. The matching rules displayed in this view include a link to the line in the CSS file that defines the styles. With this tool you can see how the CSS rules were applied and the properties defined, and use the link to open the associated CSS for editing purposes.

Figure 103. CSS Inspector View

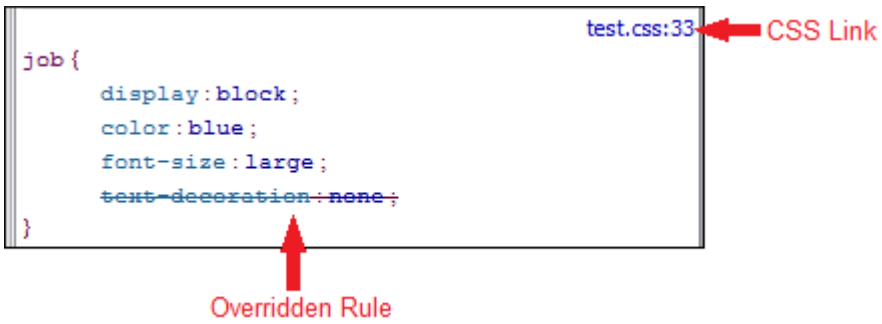
Displaying the CSS Inspector View

You can open this view by selecting the **Inspect Styles** action from the contextual menu in **Author** mode, or selecting the **CSS Inspector** view in the **Window > Show View** menu. This action makes the view visible and also initializes it for the currently selected element.

Displaying Rules

All rules that apply to the current element are displayed in sections, which are listed in order of importance (from most specific to least specific). Rules that are overridden by other rules are crossed out. If you click the link in the top-right corner of a rule Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin opens the associated CSS file at the line number where the properties of the rule are defined.

Figure 104. CSS Inspector View - Displaying Rules



The **CSS Inspector** view has six possible tabs (depending on the current context):

- **Element** - Displays the CSS rules matching the currently selected element in the **Author** page (ordered from most-specific to least-specific).
- **:marker** - Displays the rules matching the `:marker` pseudo-element.
- **:before** - Displays the rules matching the `:before` pseudo-element.
- **:after** - Displays the rules matching the `:after` pseudo-element.
- **Computed** - Displays all the styling properties that apply to the current element, as a result of all the CSS rules matching the element.
- **Path** - Displays the path for the current element, and its attributes, allowing you to quickly see the attributes on all parent elements, and allows you to copy fragments from this view and paste it into the associated CSS to easily create new rules.

The information displayed in each of the five tabs is updated when you click other elements in the **Author** editing view. The first three tabs include the link to the associated CSS source, while the other two tabs simply display the style properties that match the current element.

Each of the tabbed panes include a contextual menu with the following actions:

- **Copy** - copies the current selection
- **Select all** - selects all information listed in the pane

Also, a **Show empty rules** action is available from a drop-down menu in the toolbar of the view. This action forces the view to show all the matching rules, even if they do not declare any CSS properties. By default, the empty rules are not displayed.

Reviewing Documents

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a variety of helpful review tools that improve your ability to collaborate with other members of your team, track changes, mark content for various reasons, add comments in your content, and to manage the review features.

Tracking Document Changes

The *Track Changes* feature *(on page 2234)* is a way to keep track of the changes you make in a document. The *Track Changes* feature highlights changes that you make to the content in a document, as well as changes to attributes. Changes can be tracked for insertions and deletions. When the *Track Changes* feature is activated *(on page 395)*, insertions are rendered in **Author** mode with an underline while deletions are rendered with a strike through.

The *tracked changes* are also displayed in the **Review** view *(on page 415)* and you can also choose to present the changes in callouts *(on page 409)* by selecting the **Track Changes Deletions** *(on page 144)* and **Track Changes Insertions** *(on page 144)* options in the **Callouts** preferences page *(on page 144)*.

Adding Comments in Documents

You can associate a comment to a selected area of content. Comments can highlight virtually any content from your document, with the exception of *read-only* text. The difference between using comments and *change tracking* is that a comment can be associated to an area of text without modifying or deleting the text.

Comments are presented in callouts *(on page 409)* with persistent highlights and a colored background. The background color is assigned automatically by the application, but it can also be customized from the **Review** preferences page *(on page 141)*.

Highlighting Content

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a highlighting feature that allows you to create digital markers to emphasize important fragments of your documents. This is especially useful when you want to mark content that needs additional work or the attention of others.

Using the Review View

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a **Review** view *(on page 415)* that provides a simplified way of monitoring all the insertions, deletions, comments, and highlights in an XML document. This handy tool is especially useful for large teams that need to gather and manage all the edits from all team members who are working on the same project.

The **Review** view is also useful for managing *tracked changes* and comments in a single panel. In this view, the changes and comments are presented in a compact form, in the order they appear in the document, and they are synchronized with the changes and comments in the main editing area.

You can use this view to quickly navigate through changes, accept or reject them, or to view and manage comments or highlights. You can also search for specific changes or comments and it includes some filtering options (for example, you can filter it to only show certain types of edits or to only show edits for a particular author).

Printing Review Information

When you print a document from **Author** mode, whatever review information is shown in the main editing area will be included in the printed output. For example, *tracked changes* will be included and as long as the **Comments** option *(on page 144)* is selected in the **Callouts** preferences page *(on page 144)*, comment callouts will also be included (same with *tracked change* callouts if their corresponding options are selected in the **Callouts** preferences page *(on page 144)*.

Managing Tracked Changes

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a *Track Changes* feature *(on page 2234)* that allows you to review changes that you or other authors have made and then accept or reject them. You can also manage the visualization mode of the tracked changes, add comments to changes, and mark them as being done. These actions are easily accessible from contextual menus, the toolbar, or the **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

The *Track Changes* feature is also able to keep track of changes you make to attributes in a document and the changes are presented in the **Review** view *(on page 415)* and **Attributes** view *(on page 381)*.

Types of Tracked Changes

The types of *tracked changes* include:

- Inserting, deleting content (text or elements)
- Drag and drop content (text or elements)
- Cutting or pasting content (text or elements)
- Inserting, deleting, and changing the structure of tables
- Inserting and editing lists and their content
- Inserting and deleting entities
- Inserting and deleting element tags
- Editing attributes
- Performing a **Split** operation
- Performing a **Surround with** operation
- Changes in referenced content (for example, XInclude fragments or DITA conrefs)

Important:
If you copy content in **Author** mode that contains *tracked changes*, the changes will automatically be accepted prior to the content being copied to the clipboard. This filtering is performed only if the selection is not entirely inside a tracked change.

Activating the Change Tracking Feature

To activate the *Track Changes* feature for the current document, use any of the following methods:

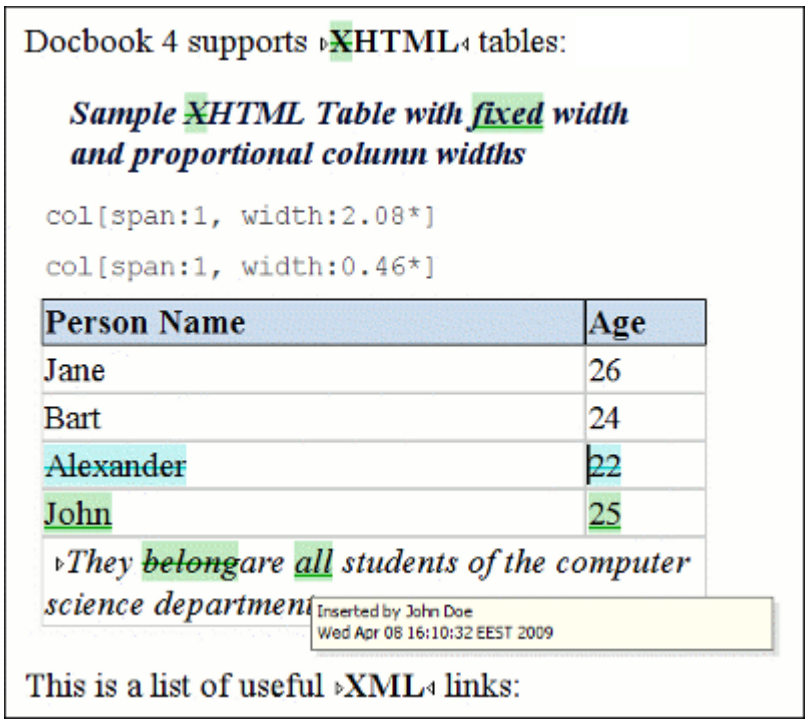
- Click the **Track Changes** button on the toolbar.
- Select **Track Changes** from the **Review** submenu of the contextual menu in the main editing area in **Author** mode.
- Select **Track Changes** from the **Edit > Review** menu.

To activate the *Track Changes* feature globally for all documents that you open in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, change the **Initial State** option to **Always On** *(on page 141)* in the **Review** preferences page *(on page 141)*.

Rendering Tracked Changes in Author Mode

When *Track Changes (on page 2234)* is enabled, your modifications are highlighted using a distinctive color. The colors can be customized from the **Review** preferences page *(on page 141)*, along with the name of the author and the initial state of the feature when you open a document. Insertions are rendered with an underline while deletions are rendered with a strike through.

Figure 105. Change Tracking in Author Mode



When hovering over a change a tooltip displays information about the author and modification time.

Change Tracking Contextual Menu Actions

You can right-click any change in **Author** mode to access the following contextual menu actions:

Accept Change(s)

Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is accepted. If you select multiple changes, all of them are accepted. For an *insertion* change, it keeps the inserted text and for a *deletion* change, it removes the content from the document.

Reject Change(s)

Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is rejected. If you select multiple changes, all of them are rejected. For an *insertion* change, it removes the inserted text and for a *deletion* change, it preserves the original content.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Change Tracking Toolbar Actions

By default, the toolbar includes the following actions and options for reviewing or *tracking changes (on page 2234)* (similar actions are also available in the **Edit > Review** menu and the **Review** submenu of the contextual menu):

Track Changes

Enables or disables the *Track Changes (on page 2234)* support for the current document.

Accept Change(s) combo box

This combo box is both a button and a drop-down menu that includes the following actions (when you select an action from the drop-down menu, that action becomes the default action for the combo box button):

- **Accept Change(s) and Move to Next** - Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is accepted.
- **Accept Change(s)** - Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection.
- **Accept All Changes** - Accepts all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Reject Change(s) combo box

This combo box is both a button and a drop-down menu that includes the following actions (when you select an action from the drop-down menu, that action becomes the default action for the combo box button):

- **Reject Change(s) and Move to Next** - Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is rejected.
- **Reject Change(s)** - Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection.
- **Reject All Changes** - Rejects all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Track Changes Visualization Modes Drop-Down Menu

This drop-down menu includes specialized actions that allow you to switch between the following visualization modes:

- **View All Changes/Comments** - This mode is active by default. When you use this mode, all tracked changes are represented in the **Author** mode.
- **View only Changes/Comments by** - Only the tracked changes made by the author you select are presented.
- **View Final** - This mode offers a preview of the document as if all tracked changes (both inserted and deleted) were accepted.
- **View Original** - This mode offers a preview of the document as if all tracked changes (both inserted and deleted) were rejected. If you attempt to edit the document in this mode, the view mode will switch to **View All Changes/Comments**.
- **Review Settings** - Opens the Review Preferences *(on page 141)* page where the **Initial display mode** setting can be configured.

> **Note:**
> If you use **View Final** mode and **View Original** mode, *callouts (on page 2229)* are not displayed for comments or changes. To display callouts, use the **View All Changes/Comments** mode.

Highlight

Enables or disables the **Highlight** tool *(on page 408)*. Use the **Highlight** drop-down menu to select a new color.

Add Comment

Inserts a comment at the cursor position. The comment appears in a callout box and a tooltip (when hovering over the change).

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Manage Reviews

Opens the **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Tracked Change Callouts

You can also choose to display insertion and deletion changes in *callouts (on page 2229)* in **Author** mode. By default, tracked changes are not displayed in callouts, but you can change this behavior by selecting the **Track Changes Deletions** *(on page 144)* and **Track Changes Insertions** *(on page 144)* options in the **Callouts** preferences page *(on page 144)*. You can also choose to display the actual content of the deletion or insertion.

By displaying the changes in callouts, you then have access to even more actions, such as the ability to reply or mark them as being done. For more information, see Author Callouts *(on page 409)*.

Tracked Changes in the Review View

The **Review** view *(on page 415)* is also useful for managing tracked changes and comments. In this view, the edits are presented in a compact form, in the order they appear in the document and each edit is marked with a type-specific icon. You can use this view to quickly navigate through changes, accept or reject them, or to add and manage comments for the changes. You can also search for specific changes and it includes some filtering options (for example, you can filter it to only show certain types of changes or to only show changes for a particular author).

For more information, see Review View *(on page 415)*.

Tracked Changes XML Source Code

The changes are stored in the document source code as processing instructions and they do not interfere with validation or transformations. For each change, the author name and the modification time are preserved.

Example - Insertion Change: The following processing instruction is an example of how an *insertion* change is stored in a document:

```
<?oxy_insert_start author="John Doe" timestamp="20090408T164459+0300"?>all<?oxy_insert_end?>
```

Example - Deletion Change: The following processing instruction is an example of how a *deletion* change is stored in a document:

```
<?oxy_delete author="John Doe" timestamp="20090508T164459+0300" content="belong"?>
```

Resources

For more information about the *Track Changes* support, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/L_ESxRMfnek

Related Information:

Managing Comments *(on page 404)*

Author Callouts *(on page 409)*

Review View *(on page 415)*

Tracked Changes Behavior

The behavior of the *Track Changes* feature *(on page 2234)* depends on the context, the type of change, and whether or not it is activated.

Inserting Content

If the *Track Changes* feature is disabled and you insert content, the following behavior is possible:

- Making an insertion in a **Delete** change results in the change being split in two and the content is inserted without being marked as change.
- Making an insertion in an **Insert** change results in the change being split in two and the content is inserted without being marked as change.
- Making an insertion in regular content results in a regular insertion.

If the *Track Changes* feature is enabled and you insert content, the following behavior is possible:

- Making an insertion in a **Delete** change results in the change being split in two and the current inserted content appears marked as an INSERT.
- Making an insertion in an **Insert** change results in the following:
  - If the original insertion was made by another user, the change is split in two and the current inserted content appears marked as an INSERT by the current author.
  - If the original **Insert** change was made by the same user, the change is just expanded to contain the inserted content. The creation time-stamp of the previous insert is preserved.
- If inserted in regular content, the current inserted content appears marked as an **Insert** change.

Surrounding Content

If the *Track Changes* feature is enabled and you surround content in a new XML element, the following behavior is possible:

- Making a surround in a **Delete** change results in nothing happening.
- Making a surround in an **Insert** change results in the following:
  - If the original insertion was made by another user, the change is split in two and the surround operation appears marked as being performed by the current author.
  - If the original **Insert** change was made by the same user, the existing change is just expanded to contain the surrounded content.
- Making a surround in regular content results in the operation being marked as a surround change.

Deleting Characters

If the *Track Changes* feature is disabled and you delete content character by character, the following behavior is possible:

- Deleting content in an existing **Delete** change results in nothing happening.
- Deleting content in an existing **Insert** change results in the content being deleted without being marked as a deletion and the INSERT change shrinks accordingly.
- Deleting in regular content results in a regular deletion.

If the *Track Changes* feature is enabled and you delete content character by character, the following behavior is possible:

- Deleting content in an existing **Delete** change results in the following:
  - If the same author created the **Delete** change, the previous change is marked as deleted by the current author.
  - If another author created the **Delete** change, nothing happens.
- Deleting content in an existing **Insert** change results in the following:
  - If the same author created the **Insert** change, the content is deleted and the **Insert** change shrinks accordingly.
  - If another author created the **Insert** change, the **Insert** change is split in two and the deleted content appears marked as a **Delete** change by the current author.
- Deleting in regular content results in the content being marked as a **Delete** change by the current author.

Deleting Selections of Content

If the *Track Changes* feature is disabled and you delete a selection of content, the following behavior is possible:

- If the selection contains an entire **Delete** change, the change disappears and the content is deleted.
- If the selection intersects with a **Delete** change (starts or ends in one), it results in nothing happening.
- If the selection contains an entire **Insert** change, the change disappears and the content is deleted.
- If the selection intersects with an **Insert** change (starts or ends in one), the **Insert** change is shrunk and the content is deleted.

If the *Track Changes* feature is enabled and you delete a selection of content, the following behavior is possible:

- If the selection contains an entire **Delete** change, the change is considered as rejected and then marked as deleted by the current author, along with the other selected content.
- If the selection intersects a **Delete** change (starts or ends in one), the change is considered as rejected and marked as deleted by the current author, along with the other selected content.
- If the selection contains an entire **Insert** change, the following is possible:
  - If the **Insert** is made by the same author, the change disappears and the content is deleted.
  - If the **Insert** is made by another author, the change is considered as accepted and then marked as deleted by the current author, along with the other selected content.
- If the selection intersects an **Insert** change (starts or ends in one), the **Insert** change shrinks and the part of the **Insert** change that intersects with the selection is deleted.

Deleting Tags

Assuming you are using any of the *Tag Display Modes (on page 348)* other than **No Tags** and the *Track Changes* feature is disabled, if you delete a start or end tag, both the start and end tag will be removed, while any content that was inside the element is preserved.

Assuming you are using any of the *Tag Display Modes (on page 348)* other than **No Tags** and the *Track Changes* feature is enabled, if you delete a start tag of an *inline element (on page 2231)*, both the start and end tag are marked as a **Delete** change by the current author, while any content that was inside the element is preserved.

Copying Content

If the *Track Changes* feature is disabled and you copy content, if the copied area contains **Insert** or **Delete** changes (or attribute edits), these are also copied to the clipboard.

If the *Track Changes* feature is enabled and you copy content, if the copied area contains **Insert** or **Delete** changes (or attribute edits), these are all accepted in the content of the clipboard (the changes will no longer be in the clipboard).

Pasting Content

If the *Track Changes* feature is disabled and you paste content, if the clipboard content contains **Insert** or **Delete** changes (or attribute edits), they will be preserved on paste.

If the *Track Changes* feature is enabled and you paste content, if the clipboard content contains **Insert** or **Delete** changes (or attribute edits), all the changes are accepted and then the paste operation proceeds according to the insertion rules.

Track Changes Limitations

There are some inherent limitations to the *Change Tracking (on page 2234)* feature. These limitations include the following:

- **Limitations to rejected changes** - Recording changes has limitations and there is no guarantee that rejecting all changes will return the document exactly to its original state.
- **Limitations to hierarchical changes** - Recorded changes are not hierarchical, a change cannot contain other changes inside. For example, if you delete an insertion made by another user, then reject the deletion, the information about the author who made the previous insertion is not preserved.
- **Limitations to using certain actions** - Some actions cannot be implemented with the *Track Changes feature (on page 2234)* enabled. For example, some table-related actions (**Delete Row(s)**, **Delete Column(s)**, **Join Cells**, **Split Cell**) ignore the *Track Changes* feature.
- **Possible Serialization Limitation** - If you have equivalent adjacent tracked changes, for example, you see two back-to-back changes in the **Review** pane that have identical properties (the same user, timestamp, content, etc.), when you save the document, it is sometimes possible for the document to only contain a single processing instruction.

DITA-Specific Track Changes Limitations

- When presenting cross references or related links in the **Author** visual editing mode, if the link target element has a title that contains change tracking, the presented link reference content is shown as if all tracked changes in the target element's title have been accepted.
- When presenting phrases with key references in the **Author** visual editing mode, if the defined key has a keyword that contains change tracking, the presented referenced keyword reference content is shown as if all track changes inside it have been accepted.

Publishing-Specific Track Changes Limitations

- **Deletion Change Tracking Limitation** - When displaying tracked changes in published outputs (for example, when enabling the `show.changes.and.comments` DITA parameter in WebHelp and PDF publications), the deleted content will be presented as plain XML with the tag names serialized as plain text. Key references and content key references are also not resolved in the presented deleted content.

Tracked Changes XML Markup

Depending on the type of edits, the following markup appears in the document source code when you activate the *Track Changes* feature *(on page 2234)*:

Edit Type	Processing Instruction Start Marker	Processing Instruction End Marker	Attributes
Insertion	`<?oxy_insert_start?>`	`<?oxy_insert_end?>`	Common Attributes *(on page 404)*
Insertion in XML comments or CDATA	`<?oxy_insert_marker?>`	Not available	Common Attributes *(on page 404)*. In addition, the `@start` and `@end` attributes are used to preserve the start and end of the change.
Split	`<?oxy_insert_start?>`	`<?oxy_insert_end?>`	Common Attributes *(on page 404)*, type="split"
Surround	`<?oxy_insert_start?>`	`<?oxy_insert_end?>`	Common Attributes *(on page 404)*, type="surround"
Deletion	`<?oxy_delete?>`	_	Common Attributes *(on page 404)*, `content`
Deletion in XML comments or CDATA	`<?oxy_delete_marker?>`	Not available	Common Attributes *(on page 404)*. In addition, the `@start` and `@end` attributes are used to preserve the start and end of the change.

Edit Type	Processing Instruction Start Marker	Processing Instruction End Marker	Attributes
Comment	`<?oxy_comment_start?>`	`<?oxy_comment_end?>`	Common Attributes *(on page 404)*, `mid`, `parentID`
Attribute Change	`<?oxy_attributes?>`	_	Attributes of the *Processing Instruction* have the name as the attribute that was changed on the *XML element*. The value is an attribute change descriptor *(on page 404)*.

If a comment intersects another, the `@mid` attribute is used to correctly identify start and end processing instruction markers.

Common Attributes

The following attributes can be added on both change tracking and comment processing instructions:

- `@id` - Used to link a reply to its parent comment or change.
- `@comment` - The comment message associated with a comment or change.
- `@timestamp` - The time when the change or comment was created.
- `@author` - The name of the author that created the change or comment.
- `@flag` - The value `done` means that the item is **Marked as Done**.

Attribute Change Descriptor

The value of the attributes for a *Processing Instruction* is an (escaped) XML element as in:

```
<change type="modified" oldValue="word" author="John" timestamp="20210520T091038+0000" />
```

Related information

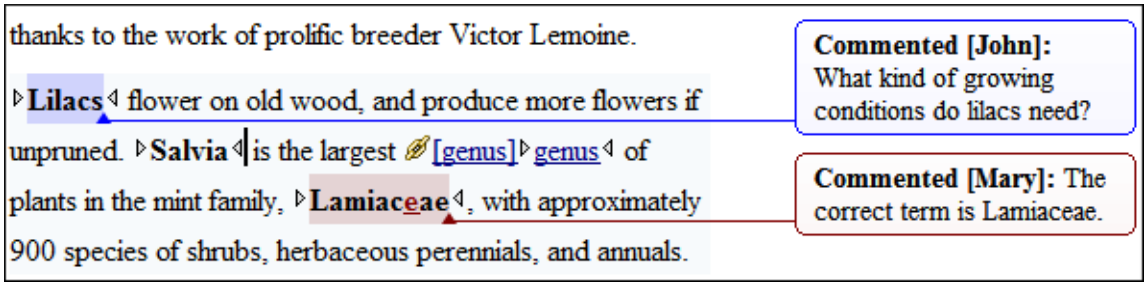
dita-classic-pdf-review - an open-source project that contains XSLT stylesheets to process the review markup

Managing Comments

You can add comments to any selected area of content within XML documents, with the exception of *read-only* content. The difference between using comments and *tracked changes (on page 2234)* is that a comment is associated to a selection without modifying or deleting the content.

By default, when you annotate your XML documents, the comments are displayed in the **Author** mode as *callouts (on page 2229)* (balloons) and they are rendered with a unique name and background for each user. If comments are not currently displayed in callouts, select the **Comments** option *(on page 144)* in the **Callouts** preferences page *(on page 144)*. Comments are also displayed in the **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Figure 106. Comments in Author Mode



Managing Comments in the Main Editor

You can insert and manage comments directly in the main editing area in **Author** mode.

Add Comment

To insert a comment at the cursor position or on a specific selection of content, select the **Add Comment** action from the toolbar (or in the **Review** submenu of the contextual menu).

> **Tip:**
> When adding or editing a comment, you can use **Enter** to insert line breaks and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will take the line breaks into account when presenting the callout. You can also use **Ctrl + Enter** to accept your changes and close the dialog box.

Show/Edit Comments

To edit an existing comment that you have added in the main editing area in **Author** mode, select the **Show/Edit Comments** action from the toolbar (or in the **Review** submenu of the contextual menu). The action opens a dialog box that allows you to see and edit your comment at the cursor position. Note that you cannot edit a comment that was added by another user, so in that case, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comments

To remove a comment at the cursor position or multiple comments in a selection, select **Remove Comment(s)** from the toolbar (or in the **Review** submenu of the contextual menu).

Copy/Paste

If you copy content that includes comments, they will be preserved when you paste it.

Managing Comments in Callouts

As long as the **Comments** option *(on page 144)* is selected in the **Callouts** preferences page *(on page 144)*, comments are also displayed in callouts *(on page 409)*. By displaying the comments in callouts, you then have access to even more actions, such as the ability to reply or mark them as being done. When you right-click a specific comment in its callout, the contextual menu includes the following actions.

Reply

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a reply to a comment or *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)*. When replying to a comment, the dialog box shows the entire conversation in the comment thread, starting with the first comment added in the particular thread, followed by all the replies. After replies are added to a comment thread, they are displayed with an indentation in the callouts and **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Mark as Done

A toggle action that marks or unmarks a comment or comment thread as being done. It is also available for *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* that are displayed in a callout. When a comment or change is marked as done, the callout is grayed out and cannot be edited unless the action is toggled to the unmarked state. The action applies to the particular comment and all of its descendents. This is useful for marking comments or changes that have been addressed, leaving only those that still need some attention.

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Callouts Options

Select this option to open the **Callouts** preference page *(on page 144)* where you can configure various callout options.

Tip:
When adding, editing, or replying to a comment, you can use **Enter** to insert line breaks and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will take the line breaks into account when presenting the callout. You can also use **Ctrl + Enter** to accept your changes and close the dialog box.

Managing Comments in the Review View

The **Review** view *(on page 415)* is also useful for managing comments. In this view, comments are presented in a compact form, in the order they appear in the document, along with tracked changes. You can also use this view to search for specific comments and it includes some filtering options (for example, you can filter it to only show comments for a particular author). When you right-click a specific comment in the **Review** view, the contextual menu includes the following actions.

Reply

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a reply to a comment or *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)*. When replying to a comment, the dialog box shows the entire conversation in the comment thread, starting with the first comment added in the particular thread, followed by all

the replies. After replies are added to a comment thread, they are displayed with an indentation in the callouts and **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Mark as Done

A toggle action that marks or unmarks a comment or comment thread as being done. It is also available for *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* that are displayed in a callout. When a comment or change is marked as done, the callout is grayed out and cannot be edited unless the action is toggled to the unmarked state. The action applies to the particular comment and all of its descendents. This is useful for marking comments or changes that have been addressed, leaving only those that still need some attention.

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Show only reviews by '<author name>'

Filters the comments to only show comments for the particular author.

Remove all Comments

Removes all comments from the document.

Comments XML Source Code

The comments are stored in the document source code as processing instructions that contain information about the author name and the comment time:

```
<?oxy_comment_start author="John Doe" timestamp="20090508T164459+0300"
 comment="Do not change this content"?>
    Important content
<?oxy_comment_end?>
```

Replies to comments are stored in the document source code as a comment (with information about the author name and time), but with a `@parentID` attribute and its value is the same as the `@id` value of the parent comment.

```
<?oxy_comment_start author="Tom" timestamp="20160217T102630+0200"
comment="We should not forget about recycling the oil and oil filter!"
parentID="vws_x4l_1v" mid="4"?>
```

Related Information:

Author Callouts *(on page 409)*

Review View *(on page 415)*

Managing Highlights

Use the **Highlight** tool to mark fragments in your document using various colors. This is especially useful when you want to mark sections that need additional editing or to draw the attention of others to particular content.

Using the Highlight Tool

You can find the **Highlight** action on the main toolbar, in the **Edit > Review** menu, or in the **Review** submenu of the contextual menu of a document. You can also choose the color to use for the highlight or choose to **Stop highlighting** from the same menus.

To highlight content, follow these steps:

1. Click the **Highlight** icon on the toolbar.

   Step Result: The highlighting mode is on and the cursor changes to a dedicated symbol.
2. Click the small arrow next to the **Highlight** icon and select the color that you want to use for the highlighting.
3. Select the content you want to highlight. To mark multiple parts of a document, press and hold **Ctrl (Meta on macOS)** and select the parts you want to highlight.
4. To exit the highlighting mode, press **Esc**, click the **Highlight** icon, or start editing the document.

To remove highlighting from a document, follow these steps:

1. Either select the text you want to remove highlighting from using your cursor, or press **Ctrl + A (Command + A on macOS)** if you want to select all of the text.
2. Click the small arrow next to the **Highlight** icon and select **No color (erase)**, or right-click the highlighted content and select **Remove highlight(s)**.
3. To exit the highlighting mode, press **Esc**, click the **Highlight** icon, or start editing the document.

Note:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin preserves the highlighting of a document between working sessions. Also, if you copy content that includes highlights, the highlighting will be preserved when you paste it.

Review View

The **Review** view *(on page 415)* is also useful for managing highlights. In this view, the highlights are presented in a compact form, in the order they appear in the document, along with *tracked changes (on page 2234)* and comments. The following actions are available in the contextual menu of each highlight in the **Review** view:

Change Color

Allows you to change the color of an existing highlight by selecting the new color from this menu.

Remove Highlight

Removes the selected highlight.

Remove Highlights with the Same Color

Removes the selected highlight and all others that have the same color.

Remove All Highlights

Removes all highlights from the document.

Highlights XML Source Code

The highlights are stored in the document source code as processing instructions that contain information about the color:

```
<?oxy_custom_start type="oxy_content_highlight" color="0,128,255"?>
  The highlights are stored<?oxy_custom_end?>
```

Resources

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Related Information:
Review View *(on page 415)*

Author Callouts

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses *callouts (on page 2229)* to present comments and *tracked change (on page 2234)* modifications that you or other members of your team have added to the document.

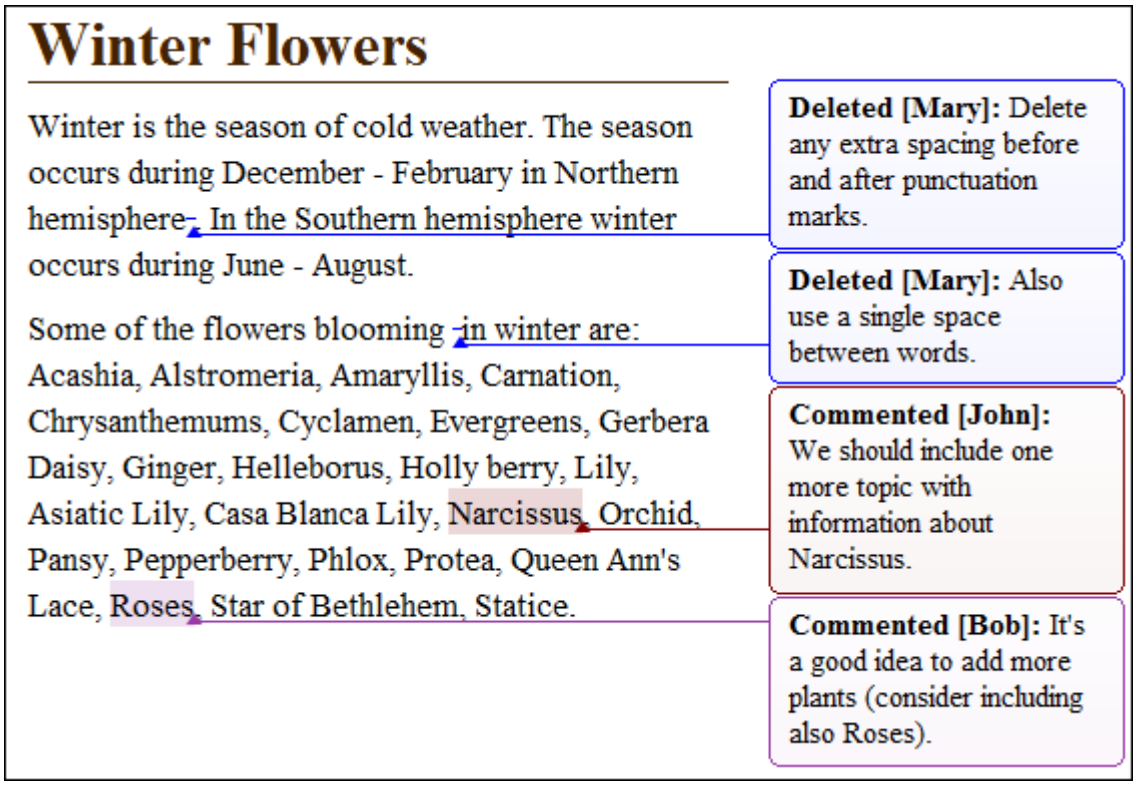
Displaying Callouts in Author Mode

The callouts are displayed in the right side of the editing area in **Author** mode. They are decorated with a colored border and also have a colored background. The background color is assigned automatically by the application depending on the user who is editing the document and the type of change, but it can also be customized from the **Review** preferences page *(on page 141)*. This preferences page allows you to configure the colors for tracked change insertions or deletions, and for comments.

You can also choose to use the same color for all changes of that particular type of change, regardless of who makes the change. To do this, select the **Fixed** option for the particular type of change and choose a color from the color box. If the **Automatic** option is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically assigns a color based upon the **Colors for automatic assignment** list *(on page 143)*.

The horizontal line that connects the callouts to their corresponding text fragments has the same color as the border. If this horizontal line is not visible, select the **Show all connecting lines** option *(on page 144)* in the **Callouts** preferences page. If you hover over a callout, it is highlighted and a tooltip is displayed that contains additional information.

Figure 107. Multiple Author Callouts

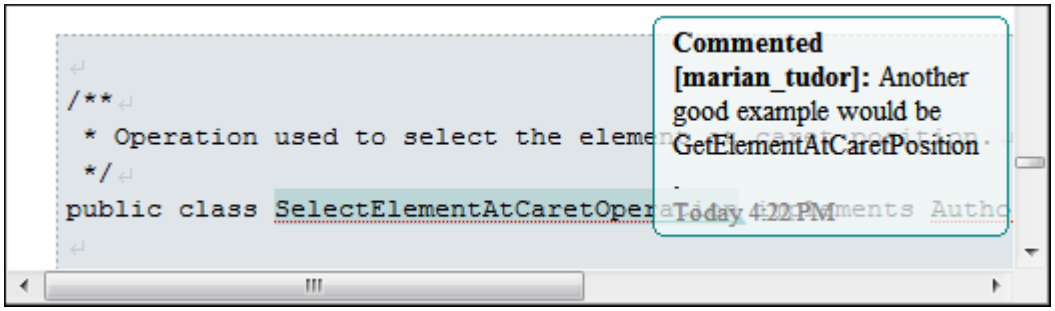


Note:

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays callouts only if **View All Changes/Comments** or **View Only Changes/Comments by** is selected in the **Track Changes Visualization Modes** drop-down menu. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin does not display callouts in **View Final** and **View Original** modes.

In some cases, the text you are editing can span into the callouts area. For example, this situation can appear for callouts associated with wide images or *space-preserved elements (on page 2234)* that contain long fragments (such as a DITA `<codeblock>` element or `<programlisting>` in DocBook). To help you view the text under the covered area, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin applies transparency to these callouts. When the cursor is located under a callout, the transparency is enhanced, allowing you to both edit the covered content and access the contextual menu of the editing area.

Figure 108. Transparent Callout



Adjusting Callout Width

To display more of the content in all the callouts in the current document, you can adjust the width by dragging the left side of any of the callouts. This will adjust the width for all comments in the current document. When you end the current editing session, the width of all callouts will revert back to the default value, which is the value of the **Initial Width** option *(on page 144)* in the **Callouts** preferences page.

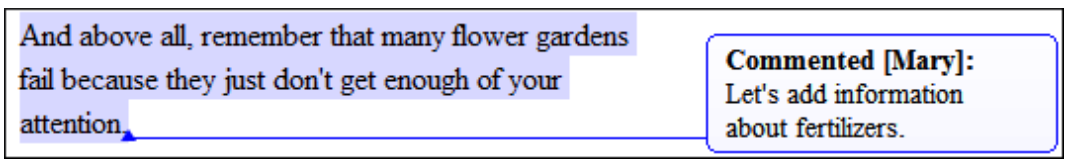
You can also adjust the maximum number of lines to be shown in the callouts using the **Text Lines Count Limit** option *(on page 145)*. Note that this does not limit the number of lines in the actual comment. It only limits the number of lines shown without opening or editing it.

Type of Callouts in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses callouts to display comments and *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* that you associate with fragments of the document you are editing. You can choose which types of edits will be shown in callouts by configuring the options in the **Callouts** preferences page *(on page 144)*. You can choose to enable the following types of review callouts:

- **Comment Callouts** - As long as the **Comments** option *(on page 144)* is selected in the **Callouts** preferences page *(on page 144)*, comments are displayed in callouts. A comment callout contains the name of the author who inserts the callout and the comment itself. You can also select the **Show review time** option *(on page 144)* to include timestamp information in the comment callouts.

  Figure 109. Comment Callouts

  There are several types of comments that can be added in **Author** mode:
  - *Author Review Comments* - Comments that you associate with specific content. To insert this type of comment, select the content and use the **Add Comment** action that is available on the toolbar (or in the **Review** submenu of the contextual menu).
  - *Comments Added to Tracked Changes* - Comments that you add to an already existing *tracked change* insertion or deletion. To insert this type of comment, right-click the change in the main editor or its callout and select **Comment Change**.

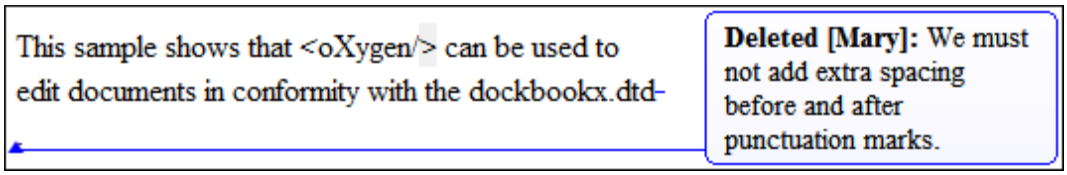
◦ *Replies to Comments* - You can use this type of comment to create discussion threads. To insert this type of comment, right-click the change in its callout and select **Reply**. A single callout is presented for a root comment or change and its replies. The replies are displayed with an indentation in the callouts and those that are on the same level are sorted depending on the timestamp.

Figure 110. Callout for a Comment with Replies

Tip:
When adding, editing, or replying to a comment, you can use **Enter** to insert line breaks and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will take the line breaks into account when presenting the callout. You can also use **Ctrl + Enter** to accept your changes and close the dialog box.

- **Tracked Change Deletion Callouts** - As long as the **Track Changes Deletions** option *(on page 144)* is selected in the **Callouts** preferences page *(on page 144)*, deletions that are made while the *Track Changes* feature is enabled are displayed in callouts. A deletion callout contains the type of callout (**Deleted**) and the name of the author that made the deletion. You can also select the **Show deleted content in callout** option *(on page 144)* to display the actual deleted content in the callout. Additionally, you can select the **Show review time** option *(on page 144)* to include timestamp information in the deletion callouts.

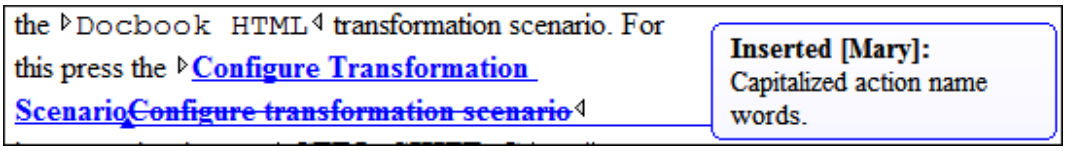
Figure 111. Deletion Callouts



- **Tracked Change Insertion Callouts** - As long as the **Track Changes Insertions** option *(on page 144)* is selected in the **Callouts** preferences page *(on page 144)*, insertions that are done while the *Track Changes* feature is enabled are displayed in callouts. An insertion callout contains the type of callout (**Inserted**) and the name of the author that inserted the content. You can also select the **Show inserted**

content in callout option *(on page 144)* to display the actual deleted content in the callout. Additionally, you can select the **Show review time** option *(on page 144)* to include timestamp information in the deletion callouts.

Figure 112. Insertion Callouts



Callout Contextual Menu Actions

Some useful actions are available when the contextual menu is invoked on a callout. The actions depend on the type of callout.

Insertion or Deletion Callout Actions

The following actions are available in the contextual menu of an insertion or deletion callout:

Reply

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a reply to a comment or *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)*. When replying to a comment, the dialog box shows the entire conversation in the comment thread, starting with the first comment added in the particular thread, followed by all the replies. After replies are added to a comment thread, they are displayed with an indentation in the callouts and **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Mark as Done

A toggle action that marks or unmarks a comment or comment thread as being done. It is also available for *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* that are displayed in a callout. When a comment or change is marked as done, the callout is grayed out and cannot be edited unless the action is toggled to the unmarked state. The action applies to the particular comment and all of its descendents. This is useful for marking comments or changes that have been addressed, leaving only those that still need some attention.

Accept Change

Accepts the tracked change, removes the callout, and moves to the next change. For an *insertion* change, it keeps the inserted text and for a *deletion* change, it removes the content from the document.

Reject Change

Rejects the tracked change, removes the callout, and moves to the next change. For an *insertion* change, it removes the inserted text and for a *deletion* change, it preserves the original content.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Edit Reference

If the fragment that contains a callout is a reference, use this option to go to the reference and edit the callout.

Callouts Options

Select this option to open the **Callouts** preference page *(on page 144)* where you can configure various callout options.

Comment Callout Actions

The following options are available in the contextual menu of a comment callout:

Reply

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a reply to a comment or *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)*. When replying to a comment, the dialog box shows the entire conversation in the comment thread, starting with the first comment added in the particular thread, followed by all the replies. After replies are added to a comment thread, they are displayed with an indentation in the callouts and **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Mark as Done

A toggle action that marks or unmarks a comment or comment thread as being done. It is also available for *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* that are displayed in a callout. When a comment or change is marked as done, the callout is grayed out and cannot be edited unless the action is toggled to the unmarked state. The action applies to the particular comment and all of its descendents. This is useful for marking comments or changes that have been addressed, leaving only those that still need some attention.

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Edit Reference

If the fragment that contains a callout is a reference, use this option to go to the reference and edit the callout.

Callouts Options

Select this option to open the **Callouts** preference page *(on page 144)* where you can configure various callout options.

Printing Callouts

When you print a document from **Author** mode, all callouts that you or other authors have added to the document are printed. For a preview of the document and its callouts, go to **File > Print Preview**.

Review View

The **Review** view *(on page 415)* is also useful for managing the information in callouts. In this view, changes and comments are presented in a compact form, in the order they appear in the document, and they are synchronized with the changes in the callouts. You can also search for specific changes or comments and it includes some filtering options (for example, you can filter it to only show certain types of edits or to only show edits for a particular author).

For more information, see Review View *(on page 415)*.

Resources

For more information about the Callouts support in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/kCCWyFqBaUM

Related information

Managing Tracked Changes *(on page 394)*
Managing Comments *(on page 404)*
Review View *(on page 415)*

Review View

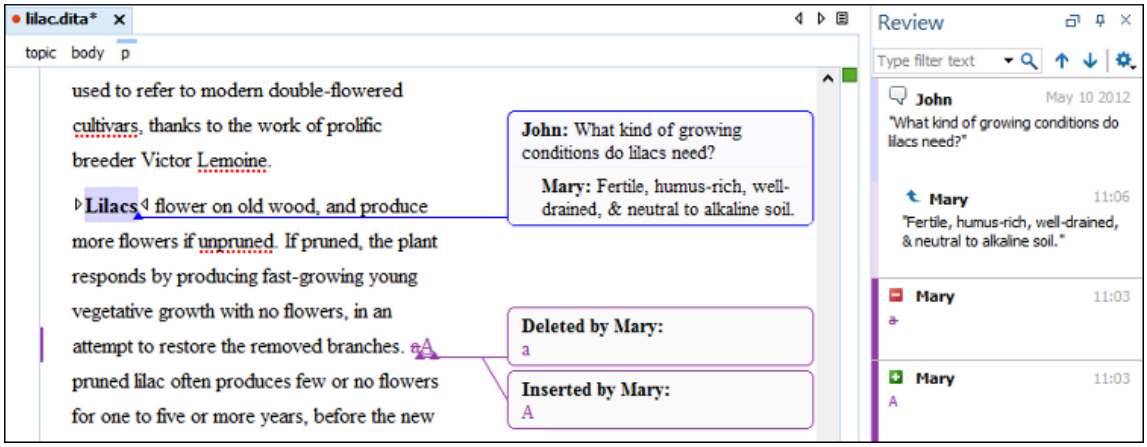
The **Review** view is an independent panel, available both for built-in and custom XML document *frameworks (on page 2231)*. It is designed to offer an enhanced way of monitoring all the changes that you make to a document. This means you can view and manage highlights, comments, and *tracked changes (on page 2234)* using a single view.

The **Review** view is useful when you are working with documents that contain large number of edits. The edits are presented in a compact form, in the order they appear in the document. Each type of edit is marked with a specific icon. This view and the editing area are synchronized. When you select an edit listed in the **Review** view, its corresponding fragment of text is highlighted in the editing area and the reverse is also true.

For example, when you place the cursor inside an area of text marked as inserted, its corresponding edit is selected in the list.

You can use this view to quickly navigate through changes and it includes some useful hover actions and contextual menu actions to help you manage changes, comments, and highlights. You can also search for specific changes or comments and it includes some filtering options (for example, you can filter it to only show certain types of edits or to only show edits for a particular author).

Figure 113. Review View



Activating the Review View

To activate the **Review** view, do one of the following:

- Click the **Manage reviews** button on the toolbar.
- Right-click anywhere in a document and select **Review > Manage reviews**.
- Open it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Review View Toolbar Actions and Settings

The upper part of the view contains a filtering area that allows you to search for specific edits. The filter field also includes a search history drop-down list. The toolbar also includes a **Settings** menu button.

Settings

The **Settings** menu includes the following options:

Show highlights

Controls whether or not the **Review** view displays the highlighting in your document.

Show comments

Controls whether or not the **Review** view displays the comments in the document you are editing.

Show track changes

Controls whether or not the **Review** view displays the inserted and deleted content in your document.

Show reviews in read-only content

Controls whether or not the **Review** view displays review items from content referenced with a `@conref` or `@conkeyref` attribute.

Show review time

Displays the time when the edits from the **Review** view were made.

Sort by date

Expands to offer the following sorting options: **Oldest to newest**, **Newest to oldest**, and **No sorting**.

Configure review options

Opens the **Review** preferences page *(on page 141)* where you can configure various options for review information.

Hover Actions in the Review View

You can use this view to easily manage changes, highlights, and comments that have been added by you or other users. The following actions are available when you hover over the changes in the **Review** view:

Remove

Available for highlights and comments presented in the **Review** view and it removes the particular highlight or comment from your document and moves to the next change.

Accept

Available for inserted and deleted content presented in the **Review** view and it accepts the particular change in your document and moves to the next change.

Reject

Available for inserted and deleted content presented in the **Review** view and it rejects the particular change in your document and moves to the next change.

Contextual Menu Actions in the Review View

Depending on the type of an edit, the following additional actions are available in the contextual menu of the **Review** view:

Reply

Opens the **Reply** dialog box where you can add a reply to comment or change. The replies are displayed with an indentation in this view.

Mark as Done

Toggles the comment or change as being done and grays it out. You can mark a whole discussion thread as being done by selecting the action on the first (parent) comment in the thread.

Show Comment

Available for comments added by other users and you can use this option to view it in a **Show comment** dialog box.

Edit Comment

Available for comments you have added and you can use this action to edit a comment.

Remove Comment

Use this action to remove the selected comment.

Show only Reviews by '<author name>'

Use this action to filter the edits to only show them for a certain author.

Remove All Comments

Use this action to remove all the comments that appear in the edited document.

Change Color

Available for highlights and it opens a palette where you can choose a new color for the highlighted content.

Remove Highlight

Available for highlights and you can use this action to remove the selected highlight.

Remove Highlights with the Same Color

Available for highlights and you can use this action to remove all the highlights with the same color from the entire document.

Remove All Highlights

Available for highlights and you can use this action to remove all the highlights in your document.

Accept Change

Accepts the selected change and moves to the next change.

Reject change

Rejects the selected change and moves to the next change.

Comment change

Available for insertions or deletions and you can use this option to add a comment for the particular change.

Accept all changes

Accepts all the changes in the current document.

Reject all changes

Rejects all the changes in the current document.

Resources

For more information about the **Review** view, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/W22jkbwlh60

Related Information:
Managing Tracked Changes *(on page 394)*
Managing Comments *(on page 404)*
Managing Highlights *(on page 408)*
Author Callouts *(on page 409)*

Publishing Tracked Changes, Comments, and Color Highlights

By default, tracked changes do not influence the published output. However, certain parameters can be enabled to display tracked changes and comments in **WebHelp Responsive** and **PDF** output:

- **WebHelp Responsive** - Enable the `webhelp.show.changes.and.comments` publishing parameter. For more details, see: WebHelp Responsive Transformation Parameters *(on page 1144)*.
- **PDF (CSS based)** - Enable the `show.changes.and.comments` publishing parameter. For more details, see: DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS Transformation *(on page 813)*.
- **PDF (XSL-FO based)** - Enable the `show.changes.and.comments` publishing parameter.

Profiling and Conditional Text

Profiling text is a way to mark blocks of text meant to appear in some renditions of the document but not in others. Conditional text differs from one variant of the document to another, while unconditional text appears in all document versions. For example, you can mark a section of a document that is to be included in a manual to be designated for *expert* users and another section for *novice* users, while unmarked sections are included in all renditions.

Profiling Attributes and Condition Sets

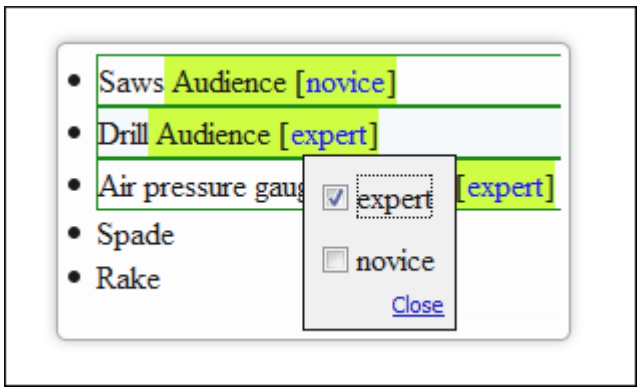
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to define values for the profiling attributes and they can be easily managed to filter content in the published output. You can switch between profile sets to see how the edited content looks like before publishing. You can also conditionally profile parts of a document so that certain parts are displayed when certain profiling conditions are set. You can even customize the colors and styling of how the profiling is displayed in **Author** mode.

You can use profiling and conditional text to help you create documentation for multiple output scenarios, including:

- Multiple outputs for a series of similar products.
- Multiple outputs for various releases of a product.
- Multiple outputs for various audiences.

This feature helps to reduce the effort for updating and translating your content and provides an easy way to customize the output for various audiences.

Figure 114. Example: Profiling Content



Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a preconfigured set of profiling attribute values for some of the most popular document types. These attributes can be redefined to match your specific needs in the **Attributes and Condition Sets** preferences page *(on page 137)*. You can also define your own profiling attributes and condition sets for each document type (*framework (on page 2231)*).

For information about creating and editing profiling attributes, see Creating and Editing Profiling Attributes *(on page 420)* .

For information about creating and editing condition sets, see Creating and Editing Profiling Condition Sets *(on page 425)* .

Related Information:
Customizing Elements that Wrap Profiled Content *(on page 1666)*

Creating and Editing Profiling Attributes

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for defining your own profiling attributes, or modifying existing ones, for each particular document type (*framework (on page 2231)*). You can then apply the profiling attributes to content in **Author** mode to see how the profiling will affect the output.

Create or Editing Profiling Attributes

To create or edit profiling attributes for a specific document type, follow these steps:

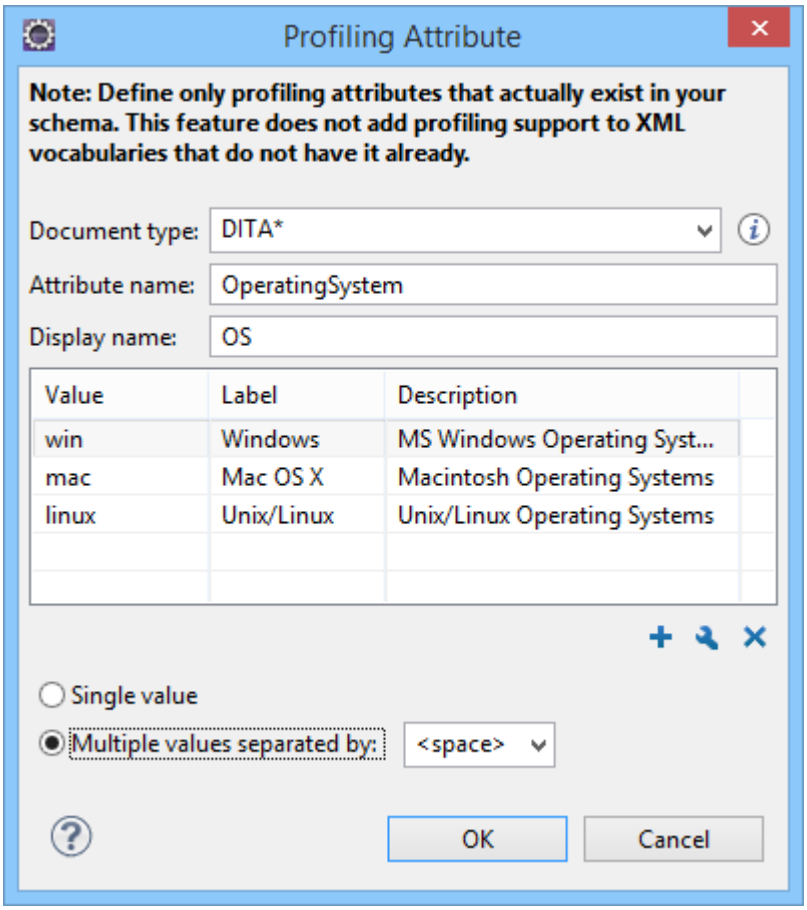
1. If you are creating a new attribute, make sure the attribute is already defined in the document DTD or schema before continuing with the procedure.
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author > Profiling/ Conditional Text > Attributes and Condition Sets**.

Information:
The **Profiling Attributes** section *(on page 138)* is used to define the attributes and their values for each document type.

3. To add new attributes and values, click the **New** button at the bottom of the **Profiling Attributes** table. To customize existing attributes and their values, select an attribute and click the **Edit** button.

   Step Result: In either case, this opens a **Profiling Attribute** configuration dialog box where you can define attributes that exist in your schema.

Figure 115. Profiling Attribute Dialog Box



The following options are available in this dialog box:

Document type

Select the document type (*framework (on page 2231)*).

Tip:
You can use the `*` or `?` wildcards in this combo box. For example, `DITA*` would match any document type that starts with *"DITA"*. You can also specify multiple document types by using commas to separate them.

Attribute name

The name of the profiling attribute.

Display name

This optional field is used for descriptive rendering in profiling dialog boxes.

Attribute Values Table

This table displays information about the values for the profiling attribute. You can configure them by using the buttons at the bottom of the table (**New**, **Edit**, **Delete**).

The columns are as follows:

- **Value** - The attribute value.
- **Label** - You can specify a label for the attribute value that will be rendered as its name in various components in **Author** mode (**Edit Profiling Attributes** dialog box *(on page 423)*, **Condition Set** dialog box *(on page 425)*, and other UI components where the profiling is shown *(on page 429)*). If the **Label** is not specified, the **Value** will be used as its rendered name.
- **Description** - A description for the attribute value that will be displayed in this table.

Single value

Select this option if you want the attribute to only accept a single value.

Multiple values separated by

Select this option if you want the attribute to accept multiple values, and you can choose the type of delimiter to use. You can choose between *space*, *comma*, and *semicolon*, or you can enter a custom delimiter in the text field. A custom delimiter must be supported by the specified document type. For example, the DITA document type only accepts spaces as delimiters for attribute values.

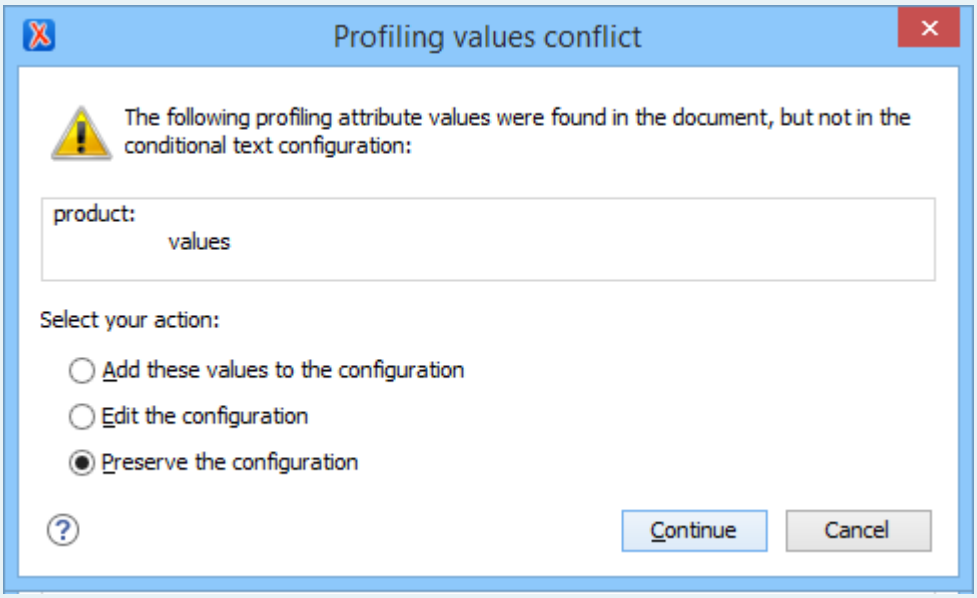
4. After defining or configuring the attributes and their values according to your needs, click **OK** to confirm your selections and close the **Profiling Attributes** configuration dialog box.
5. Click **Apply** to save the changes.

Adding Profiling Attribute Values Directly in a Document

You can add values directly to the existing profiling attributes in a document using the In-Place Attributes Editor *(on page 362)* in **Author** mode, the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)*, or in the source code in **Text** mode. However, this just adds them to the document and does not change the conditional text configuration. If you invoke the **Edit Profiling Attributes** action (from the contextual menu in **Author** mode) on the new value, the **Profiling Values Conflict** dialog box will appear and it includes an **Add these values to the configuration** action that will automatically add the new value to the particular profiling attribute. It also includes an **Edit the configuration** action that opens the **Attributes and Condition Sets** preferences page *(on page 137)* where you can edit the profiling configuration.

Note:
If the **Allow contributing extra profiling attribute values** option *(on page 138)* is not selected in the **Attributes and Condition Sets** preferences page, the **Profiling Values Conflict** dialog box will never appear, so this automatically adding value not be possible.

Figure 116. Profiling Values Conflict Dialog Box



Related Information:
Applying Profiling Attributes *(on page 423)*
Creating and Editing Profiling Condition Sets *(on page 425)*
Applying Profiling Condition Sets *(on page 427)*
Showing and Filtering Profiled Content in Author Mode *(on page 429)*

Applying Profiling Attributes

Profiling attributes are applied on element nodes. You can apply profiling attributes on a text fragment (it will automatically be wrapped into a phrase-type element), on a single element, or on multiple elements at the same time. If there is no selection in your document, the profiling attributes are applied on the element at the cursor position.

To apply a profiling attribute to content in **Author** mode, follow these steps:

1. To apply a profiling attribute to content in **Author** mode, highlight the content and select **Edit Profiling Attributes** from the contextual menu. To profile an entire element, position the cursor inside the element, right-click, and select **Edit Profiling Attributes** (you can also right-click the element in the *breadcrumb (on page 355)* or **Outline** *(on page 301)* view).

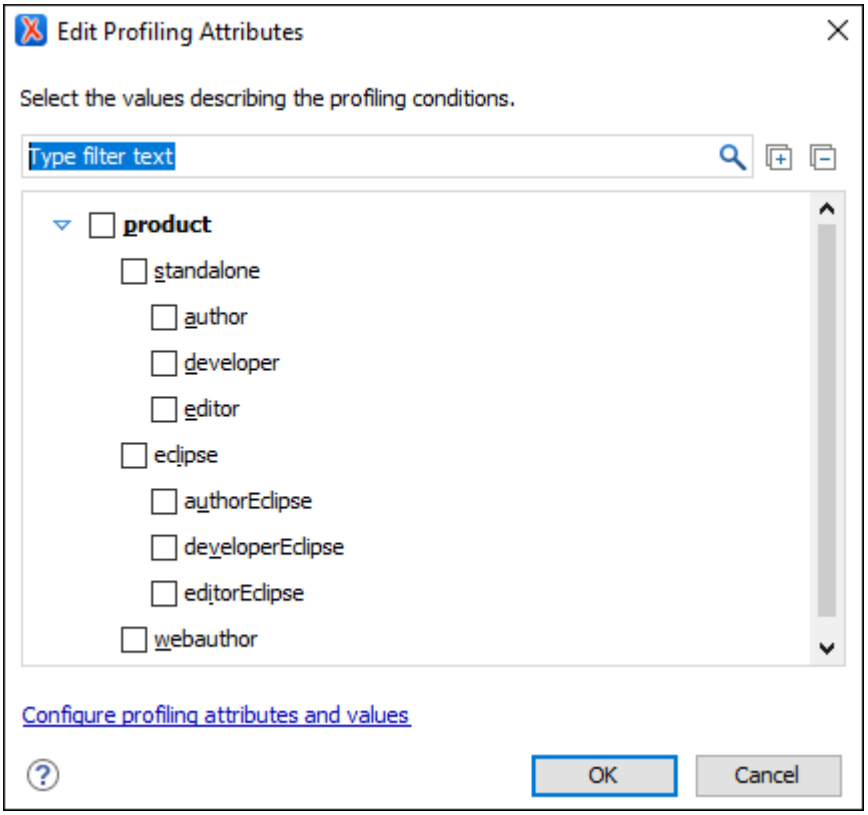
   Step Result: The **Edit Profiling Attributes** dialog box is displayed and shows all the profiling attributes and their values, as defined for the particular document type (*framework*). If you have a large list of

profiling attributes, you can use the text filter field to search for attributes or values, and you can expand or collapse attributes by using the **Expand All** / **Collapse All** buttons to the right of the text filter or the arrow button to the left of the profiling attribute name.

The attributes and values that appear in the dialog box are determined as follows:

- If you have defined profiling attribute values *(on page 420)* for the DITA document type in the **Attributes and Condition Sets** preferences page *(on page 137)*, those values are displayed in the dialog box.
- Otherwise, a generic default set of profiling attributes and values are available.

Figure 117. Edit Profiling Attributes Dialog Box



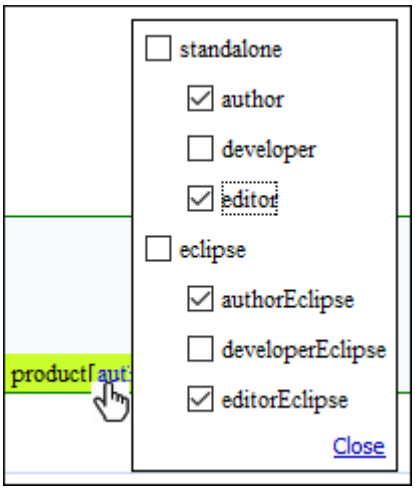
2. In the **Edit Profiling Attributes** dialog box, select the checkboxes that correspond to the attribute values you want to apply on the *document fragment (on page 2229)*.
3. Click **OK** to finish the profiling configuration.

   Result: The attribute names and values selected in the **Edit Profiling Attributes** dialog box are set on the elements contained in the profiled fragment. If you only select a fragment of content (rather than the entire element), this fragment is wrapped in phrase-type elements where the profiling attributes are set.

   If the **Show Profiling Attributes** option *(on page 429)* (available in the **Profiling / Conditional Text** toolbar menu) is selected, a green border is painted around profiled text in the **Author** mode and all profiling attributes set on the current element are listed at the end of the highlighted block. To edit the

attributes of a profiled fragment, click one of the listed attribute values. A form control pops up and allows you to add or remove attribute values.

Figure 118. Profiling Attribute Value Form Control Pop Up



Related Information:

Creating and Editing Profiling Attributes *(on page 420)*
Creating and Editing Profiling Condition Sets *(on page 425)*
Applying Profiling Condition Sets *(on page 427)*
Showing and Filtering Profiled Content in Author Mode *(on page 429)*
Customizing Colors and Styles for Rendering Profiling in Author Mode *(on page 2139)*

Creating and Editing Profiling Condition Sets

Multiple profiling attributes can be aggregated into a profiling condition set that allows you to apply more complex filters on the document content. A *Profiling Condition Set* is a very powerful and convenient tool that can be used to preview the content that goes into the published output. For example, an installation manual available in both Windows and Linux variants can be profiled to highlight only the Linux procedures for more advanced users.

Create Profiling Condition Sets

To create a new profiling condition set, follow these steps:

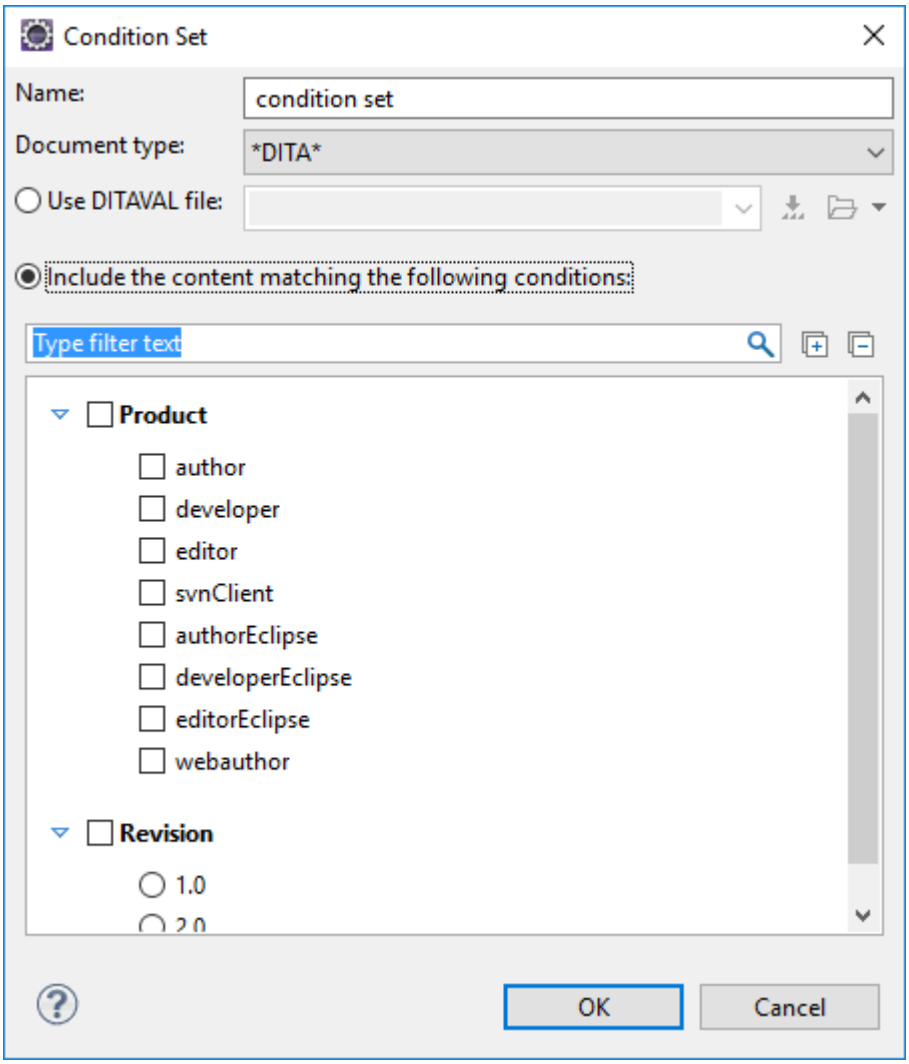
1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author > Profiling/ Conditional Text > Attributes and Condition Sets**.

   Information:
   The **Profiling Condition Sets** section *(on page 139)* is used to define condition sets.

2. To add new condition set, click the **New** button at the bottom of the **Profiling Condition Sets** table. To customize existing condition sets, select an existing condition set and click the **Edit** button.

Step Result: In either case, this opens a **Condition Set** configuration dialog box where you can define attributes that exist in your schema.

Figure 119. Condition Set Configuration Dialog Box



The following options are available in this dialog box:

Name

The name of the new condition set.

Document type

Select the document type (*framework (on page 2231)*) that has profiling attributes defined.

Use DITAVAL file

For DITA projects, select this option if you want the *Profiling Condition Set* to reference a DITAVAL file *(on page 2148)*. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Include the content matching the following conditions

You can select this option to define the combination of attribute values for your condition set by selecting the appropriate checkboxes for the values you want to be included in this particular condition set. If you have defined a lot of profiling attributes, you can use the **filter** text field to search for specific conditions.

3. After defining or configuring the condition sets according to your needs, click **OK** to confirm your selections and close the **Condition Set** configuration dialog box.
4. Click **Apply** to save the condition set.

Related Information:

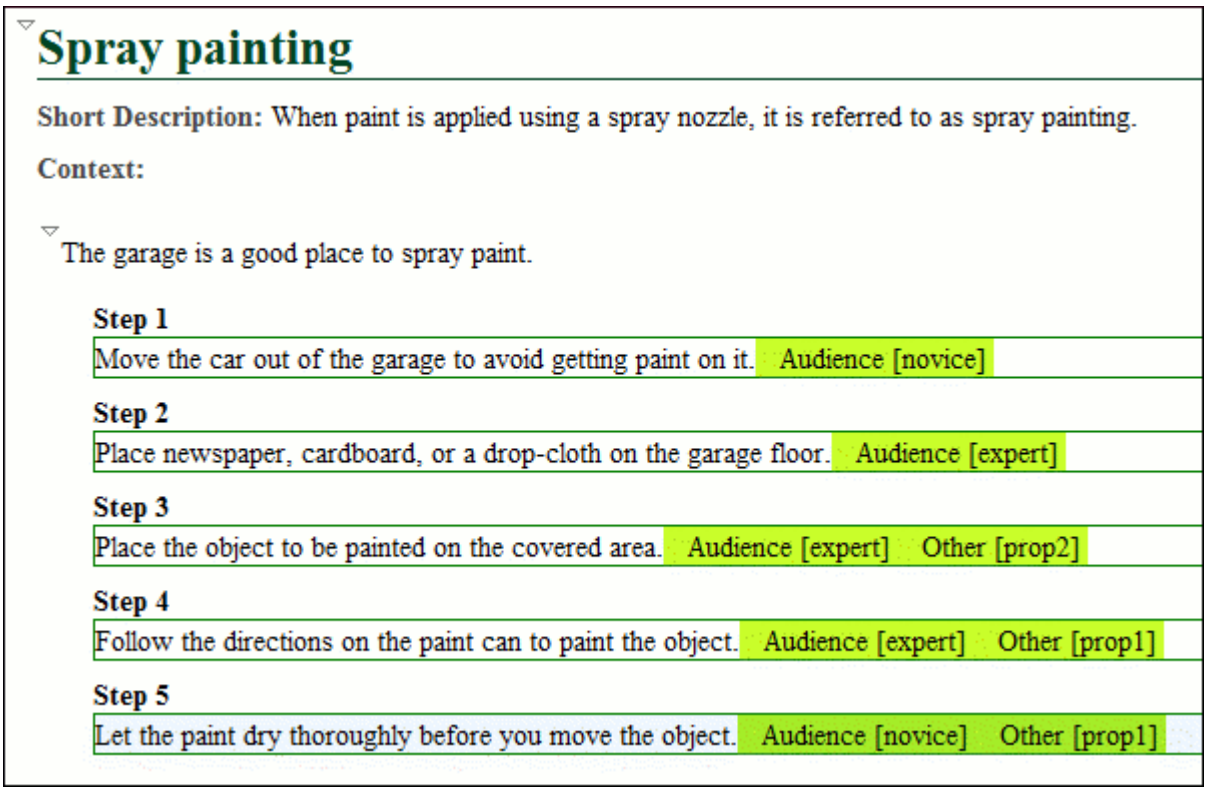
Applying Profiling Condition Sets *(on page 427)*
Creating and Editing Profiling Attributes *(on page 420)*
Applying Profiling Attributes *(on page 423)*
Showing and Filtering Profiled Content in Author Mode *(on page 429)*
Customizing Colors and Styles for Rendering Profiling in Author Mode *(on page 2139)*

Applying Profiling Condition Sets

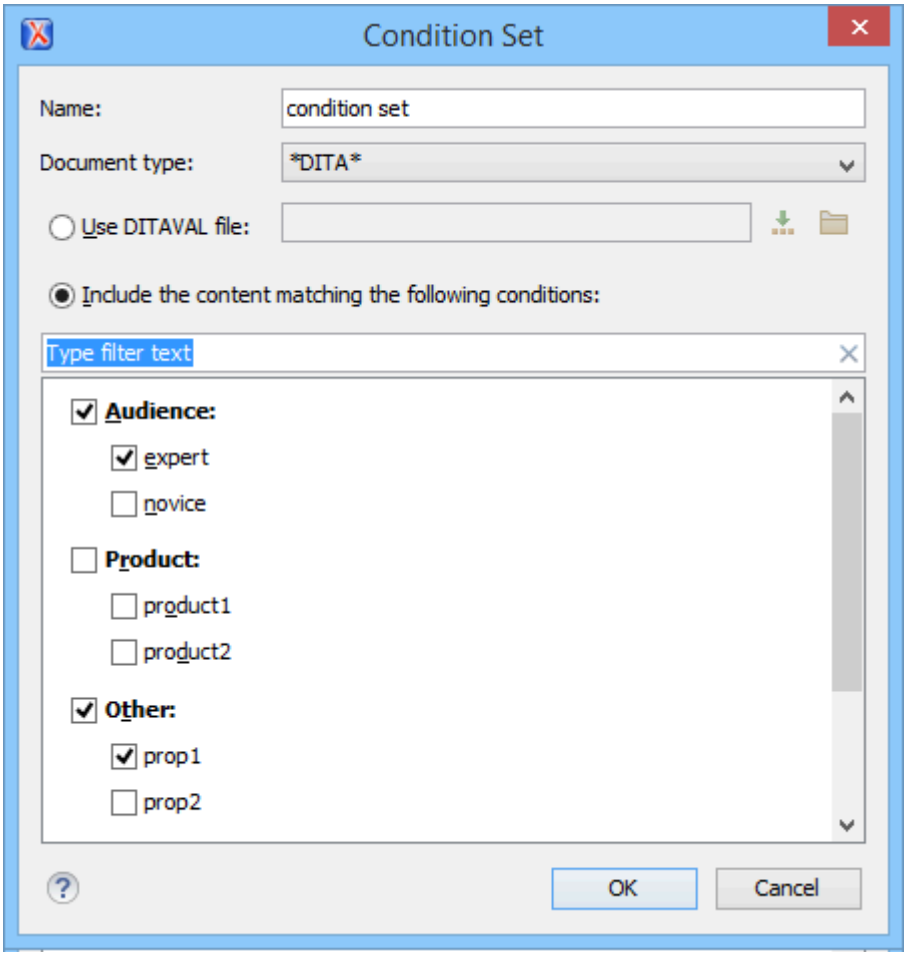
All defined Profiling Condition Sets *(on page 425)* are available as shortcuts in the **Profiling / Conditional Text** toolbar menu *(on page 429)*. Select a menu entry to apply the condition set. The filtered content is then grayed-out in the **Author** mode and **Outline** view *(on page 301)*. An element is filtered-out when one of its attributes is part of the condition set and its value does not match any of the values covered by the condition set.

EXAMPLE:

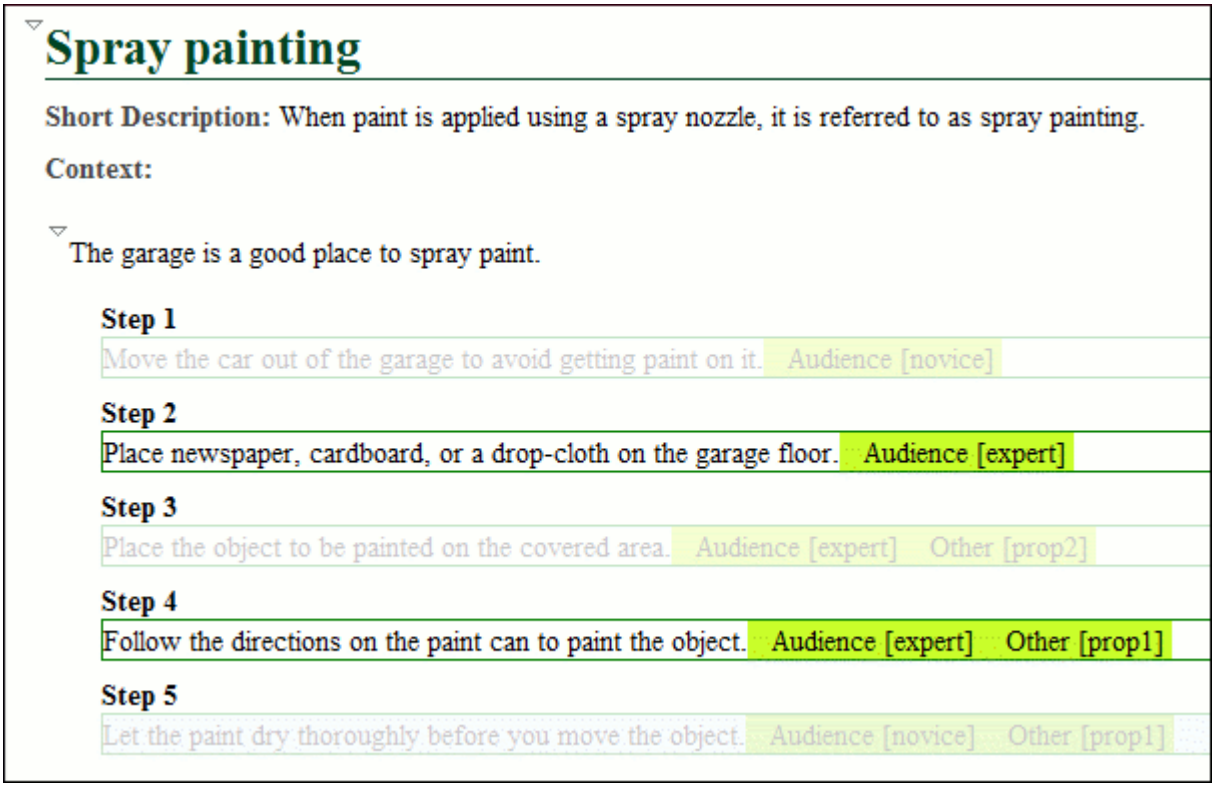
Suppose that you have the following document:



If you apply the following condition set, it means that you want to filter out the content to only include content profiled with the `expert` value for the `@audience` attribute and content that has the *prop1* value for the `@other` attribute.



This is how the document looks in **Author** mode after you apply the condition set:



Related Information:

Creating and Editing Profiling Condition Sets *(on page 425)*
Creating and Editing Profiling Attributes *(on page 420)*
Applying Profiling Attributes *(on page 423)*
Showing and Filtering Profiled Content in Author Mode *(on page 429)*
Customizing Colors and Styles for Rendering Profiling in Author Mode *(on page 431)*

Showing and Filtering Profiled Content in Author Mode

You can visualize the effects of profiled content in **Author** mode by using the options in the **Profiling/Conditional Text** drop-down menu that is located on toolbar. This drop-down menu includes the following filtering options:

Show Profiling Colors and Styles

Select this option to show colors and styles for profiled content in **Author** mode. You can configure the colors and styles or specify whether or not this option is selected by default in the **Profiling/Conditional Text > Colors and Styles** preferences page *(on page 139)*.

Show Profiling Attributes

Select this option to display the values of the profiling attributes at the end of profiled content in **Author** mode. You can specify whether or not this option is selected by default in the **Profiling/Conditional Text** preferences page *(on page 137)*.

Show Excluded Content

Controls whether the content filtered out by a particular condition set is hidden or grayed-out in **Author** mode and the **Outline** *(on page 301)* view. When this option is selected and a condition set is selected in this drop-down menu *(on page 430)*, the filtered content is grayed-out. If this option is not selected and a condition set is selected in this drop-down menu *(on page 430)*, the filtered content is hidden. You can specify whether or not this option is selected by default in the **Profiling/Conditional Text** preferences page *(on page 137)*.

Choose Condition Set (Available if more than 15 condition sets are defined)

This option is available if you have more than 15 conditions sets defined. It opens a dialog box that makes it easier to find and select condition sets that are not displayed in this drop-down menu.

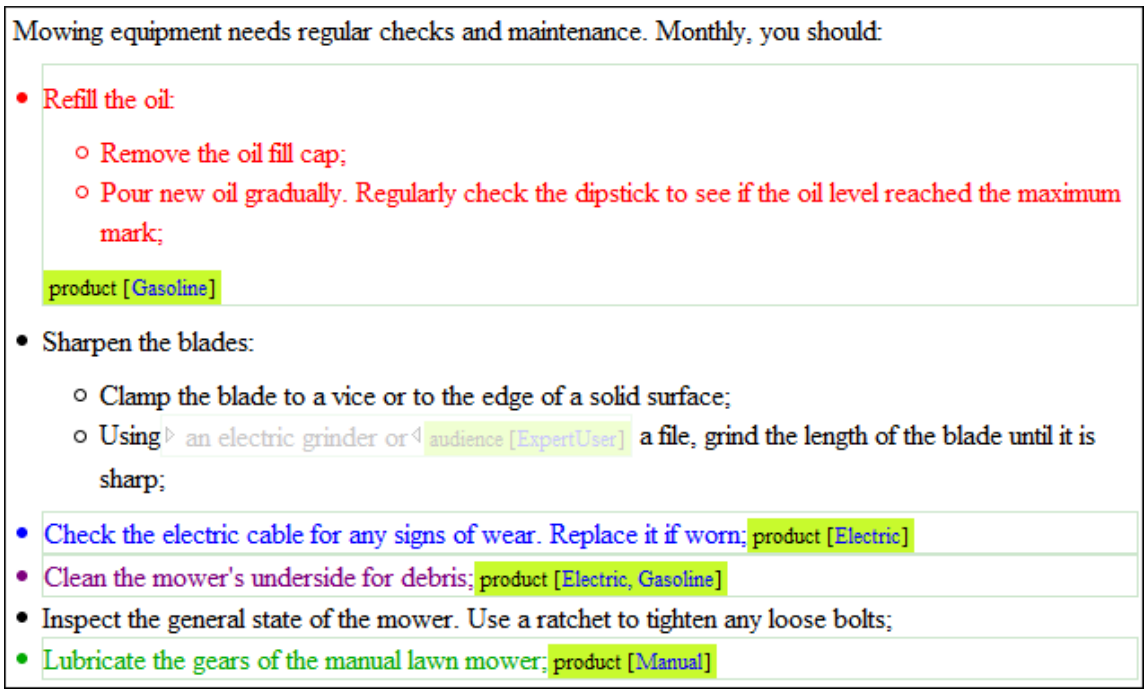
List of Defined Condition Sets

Up to 15 defined condition sets are listed and you can toggle each one of them on to filter the content in **Author** mode to only show content that will appear in the output for that particular condition set. If there are more than 15 defined condition sets, the rest of them can be accessed in the **More** submenu or by using the **Choose Condition Set** option *(on page 430)* to access a dialog box that presents all of them.

Profiling Settings

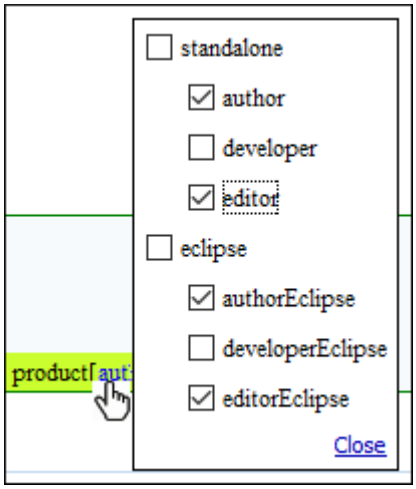
Opens the **Attributes and Condition Sets** preferences page *(on page 137)* where you can add and edit profiling attributes and condition sets.

Figure 120. Example: Profiling Controls in Author Mode



If the **Show Profiling Attributes** option is selected, a green border is painted around profiled text in the **Author** mode. Also, all profiling attributes set on the current element are listed at the end of the highlighted block and in its tooltip message. To edit the attributes of a profiled fragment, click one of the listed attribute values. A form control pops up and allows you to add or remove attribute values.

Figure 121. Profiling Attribute Value Form Control Pop Up



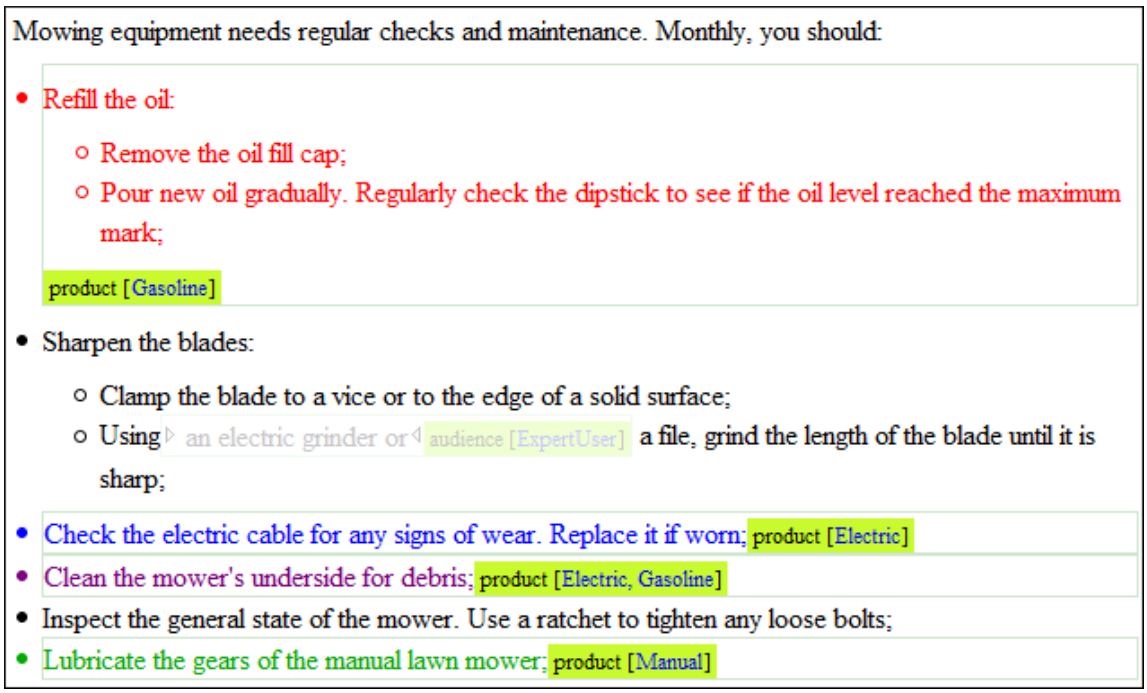
Related Information:

Creating and Editing Profiling Attributes *(on page 420)*
Applying Profiling Attributes *(on page 423)*
Creating and Editing Profiling Condition Sets *(on page 425)*
Applying Profiling Condition Sets *(on page 427)*
Customizing Colors and Styles for Rendering Profiling in Author Mode *(on page 431)*

Customizing Colors and Styles for Rendering Profiling in Author Mode

In **Author** mode, profiling colors and styles can be applied to mark profiled content. This enables the user to distinguish between multiple variants of the output and preview the content that will be published. The excluded text is grayed-out or hidden, making it easy to identify the differences.

Figure 122. Example: Profiling Colors and Styles in Author Mode



Choosing the right style for a specific profiling attribute is a matter of personal taste, but be aware of the following:

- If the same block of text is profiled with two or more profiling attributes, their associated styles combine. Depending on the styling, this might result in an excessively styled content that may prove difficult to read or work with.
- It is recommended that you only profile the differences. There is no need to profile common content, since excessive profiling can visually pollute the document.
- A mnemonic associated with a style will help you instantly spot differences in the types of content.

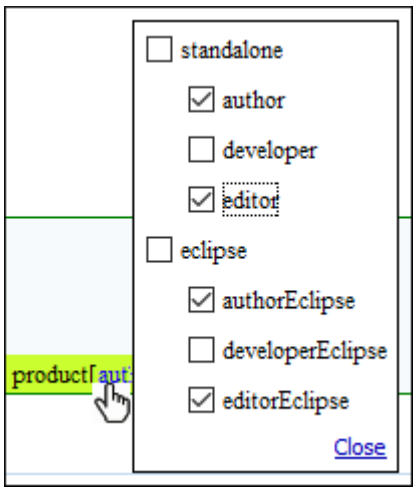
Styling Profiling Attribute Values

To set colors and styles for profiling attribute values, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Show Profiling Colors and Styles** option *(on page 429)* from the **Profiling / Conditional Text** toolbar drop-down menu.
2. Select **Profiling Settings** *(on page 430)* from the **Profiling / Conditional Text** toolbar drop-down menu. This is a shortcut to the **Attributes and Condition Sets** preferences page *(on page 137)*.
3. Go to the **Colors and Styles** preferences page *(on page 139)* to configure the colors and styling for the profiling attributes.
4. Go to the **Attributes** preferences page *(on page 141)* to configure how you want the profiling attributes to appear in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Result: The styling is now applied in the **Author** editing mode and the **Outline** view *(on page 301)*. Also, to help you more easily identify the profiling you want to apply in the current context, the styling is applied in the **Edit Profiling Attributes** dialog box *(on page 420)* and in the inline form control pop-up that allows you to quickly set the profiling attributes.

Figure 123. Profiling Attribute Value Form Control Pop Up



Related Information:

Creating and Editing Profiling Attributes *(on page 420)*

Applying Profiling Attributes *(on page 423)*

Creating and Editing Profiling Condition Sets *(on page 425)*
Applying Profiling Condition Sets *(on page 427)*
Showing and Filtering Profiled Content in Author Mode *(on page 429)*

Adding Tables in Author Mode

You can use the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or from the contextual menu to add a table in various *frameworks (on page 2231)* (DITA, DocBook, TEI, and XHTML). This opens the **Insert Table** dialog box. Each *framework* has a different set of options that are available in this dialog box for configuring the properties of the tables. In all cases, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes some general editing actions for configuring tables in **Author** mode.

This section explains those general actions and the various configuration options and layouts for tables that are inserted in the most commonly used document types.

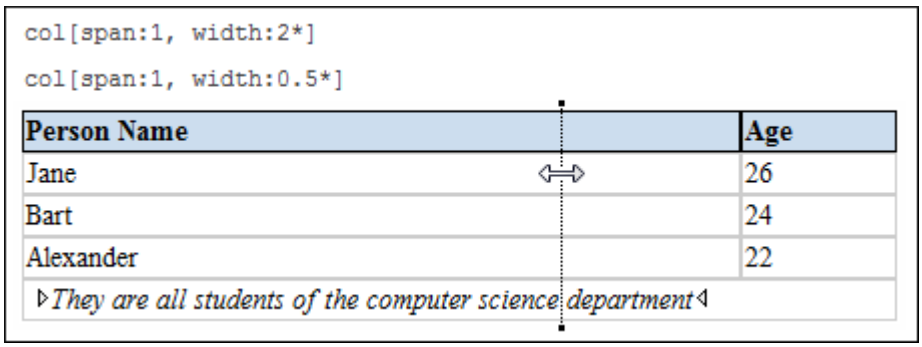
Editing Tables in Author Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for editing data in a tabular form. A variety of features and operations are available for editing tables in **Author** mode and they include the following:

Adjusting Column Width

To adjust the width of a column or table, drag the border of the column or table. The changes you make to a table are committed into the source document. You can also manage table width and column width specifications from the source document, and some types of tables include a **colspecs** section that appears above the table in **Author** mode that allows you to easily configure some column specifications (such as column width). These column width specifications are supported in fixed, dynamic, and proportional dimensions. The built-in DITA, DocBook, and XHTML *frameworks (on page 2231)* support this feature. The layout of the tables for these document types takes into account the table width and the column width specifications particular to them.

Figure 124. Resizing a Table Column in Author Mode



Selecting Columns and Rows

To select a row or a column of a table, place the mouse cursor above the column or in front of the row you want to select, then click. When hovering the mouse cursor in front of rows or above column headers, the

cursor changes to for row selection and to for column selection and that specific row or column is highlighted.

You can use the **Ctrl** and **Shift** keys to select multiple rows.

Selecting Cells

To select a cell in a table, press and hold the **Ctrl** key and click anywhere inside the cell. You can also use the **Ctrl** and **Shift** keys to select multiple cells or to deselect cells from a selection. Alternatively, you can click the left corner of a cell (right corner if you are editing an RTL document *(on page 501)*) to select it. The cursor changes to when you hover over the corner of the cell.

You can also select multiple rectangular blocks of cells by using your mouse to select a cell and drag it to expand the selection.

Drag and Drop

You can use the drag and drop action to edit the content of a table. You can select a column and drag it to another location in the table you are editing. When you drag a column and hover the cursor over a valid drop position, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin decorates the target location with bold rectangles. The same drag and drop action is also available for entire rows or columns by hovering the mouse cursor in front of rows or above column headers, then selecting the row or column and dragging them to the desired location.

Copy/Cut and Paste

In Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, you can copy/cut entire rows or columns of the table you are editing and paste the copied columns or rows inside the same table or inside other tables. You can also use the copy or cut actions for tables located in other documents. If you paste a row or column into non-table content, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin introduces a new table that contains the fragments of the copied row or column content.

For copied columns, the fragments are introduced starting with the header of the column. Also, if the copied column is from a *CALS* table (DITA or DocBook), Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin preserves column width information. This information is then used when you paste the column into another *CALS* table.

For copied cells, when pasting them into another cell without a selection (the cursor is just placed in the new cell), the copied cells are pasted while preserving their initial order and spacing. If pasting them into a selection of cells, first the content of the selected cells is deleted, then the copied cells are pasted with their initial order and spacing preserved and if there are more cells in the selection than in the copied content, the pasting will repeat the copied cells until the end of the selection.

Deleting Content

To delete the content of a cell, select the cell and press the **Delete** or **Backspace** key on your keyboard. If you press **Delete** or **Backspace** again, the selected table structure will also be removed.

To delete an entire row or column, place the cursor inside the row or column (or select it) and use the **Delete Row(s)** or **Delete Column(s)** actions from the toolbar or contextual menu. This will delete both the content and the table structure for the current row or column.

To delete a selection of multiple rows or columns, select them and use the **Delete Row(s)** or **Delete Column(s)** actions from the toolbar or contextual menu. This will delete both the content and the table structure for all rows or columns that exist in the current selection.

Navigating Cells

Along with the normal mouse navigation, you can also navigate between cells by using the arrow keys on your keyboard. By default, when using the arrow keys to navigate between table cells, the cursor jumps from one cell to another. However, if the **Quick navigation in tables** option *(on page 135)* is not selected in the **Cursor Navigation** preferences page, using the arrow keys to navigate between table cells will cause the cursor to navigate between XML nodes, rather than jumping from cell to cell.

Related information

Adding Tables in DocBook *(on page 435)*
Adding Tables in DITA Topics *(on page 1973)*
Adding Tables in XHTML Documents *(on page 459)*
Sample Plugin: Add CALS Support for any XML Document

Adding Tables in DocBook

You can use the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or from the contextual menu to add a table in a DocBook document.

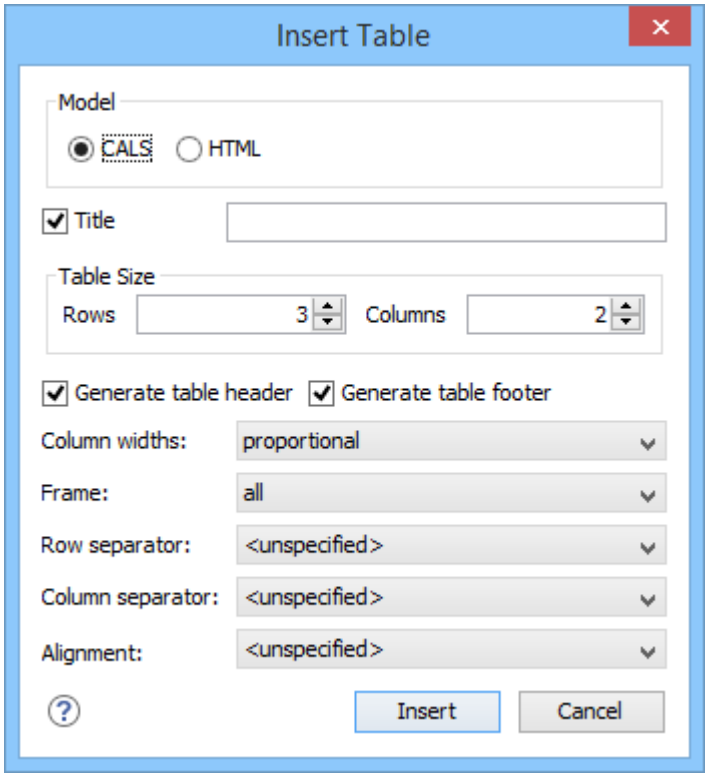
DocBook supports two types of tables:

- **CALS** table model - This is used for more advanced functionality.
- **HTML** table model - This is used for inserting a formal (captioned) HTML table.

Inserting a CALS Table Model in DocBook

To insert a *CALS* table model in DocBook documents, select the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or from the contextual menu. The **Insert Table** dialog box appears. Select **CALS** for the table **Model**. This model allows you to configure a few more properties than the *HTML* model.

Figure 125. Insert Table Dialog Box - CALS Model



The dialog box allows you to configure the following options when you select the **CALS** table model:

Title

If this checkbox is selected, you can specify a title for your table in the adjacent text box.

Table Size

Allows you to choose the number of **Rows** and **Columns** for the table.

Generate table header

If selected, an extra row will be inserted at the top of the table to be used as the table header.

Generate table footer

If selected, an extra row will be inserted at the bottom of the table to be used as the table footer.

Column widths

Allows you to specify the type of properties for column widths (`@colwidth` attribute). You can choose one of the following properties for the column width:

- **proportional** - The width is specified in proportional (relative) units of measure. The proportion of the column is specified in a `@colwidth` attribute with the values listed as the number of shares followed by an asterisk. The value of the shares is totaled and rendered as a percent. For example, `colwidth="1* 2* 3*"` causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%. When entering content into a cell in one column, the width proportions of the other columns are maintained. If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, the values of the `@colwidth` attribute are automatically changed accordingly. By

default, when you insert, drag and drop, or copy/paste a column, the value of the `@colwidth` attribute is `1*`.
- **dynamic** - If you choose this option, the columns are created without a specified width (`@colwidth` attribute). Entering content into a cell changes the rendered width dynamically. If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, a dialog box will be displayed that asks you if you want to switch to proportional or fixed column widths.
- **fixed** - The width is specified in fixed units. By default, the `pt` unit is inserted, but you can change the units in the **colspecs** (column specifications) section above the table or in **Text** mode. The following units are allowed: `pt` (points), `cm` (centimeters), `mm` (millimeters), `pi` (picas), `in` (inches).

Frame

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. There are a variety of allowed values, as specified in the DocBook CALS table specifications.

Row separator

Specifies whether or not to include row separators (`@rowsep` attribute). The allowed values are: `0` (no separator) and `1` (include separators).

Column separator

Specifies whether or not to include column separators (`@colsep` attribute). The allowed values are: `0` (no separator) and `1` (include separators).

Alignment

Specifies the alignment of the text within the table (`@align` attribute). The allowed values are:

- **left** - Aligns the text to a left position.
- **right** - Aligns the text to a right position.
- **center** - Aligns the text to a centered position.
- **justify** - Stretches the line of text so that it has equal width. Note that this value cannot be rendered in **Author** mode, so you will only see it in the output.
- **char** - Aligns text to the leftmost occurrence of the value specified on the `@char` attribute for alignment.

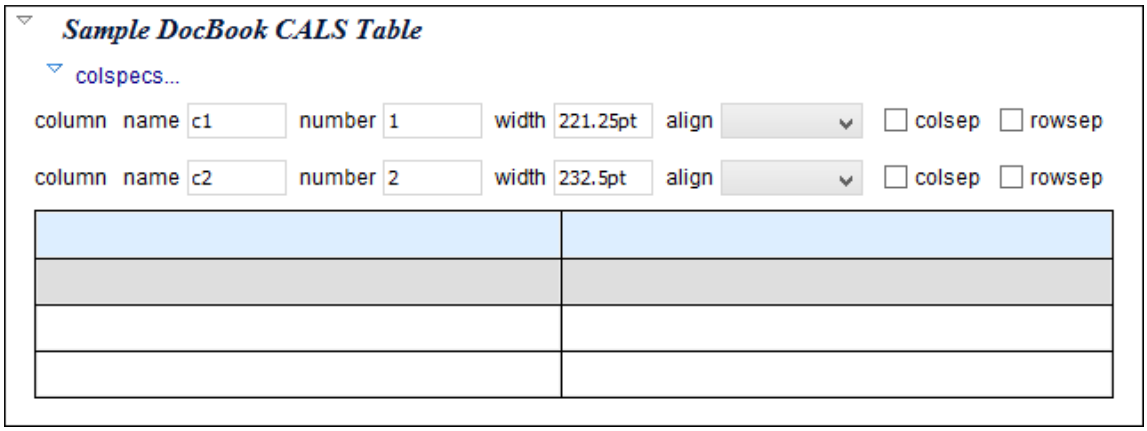
Note:
The options in the **Insert Table** dialog box for DocBook documents are persistent, so changes made in one session will carry over to another.

When you click **Insert**, a CALS table is inserted into your document at the current cursor position.

When you insert a CALS table, you see a link for setting the `<colspecs>` (column specifications) of your table. Click the link to open the controls that allow you to adjust various column properties. Although they appear as

part of the **Author** mode *(on page 221)*, the *colspecs* link and its controls will not appear in your output. They are just there to make it easier to adjust how the columns of your table are formatted.

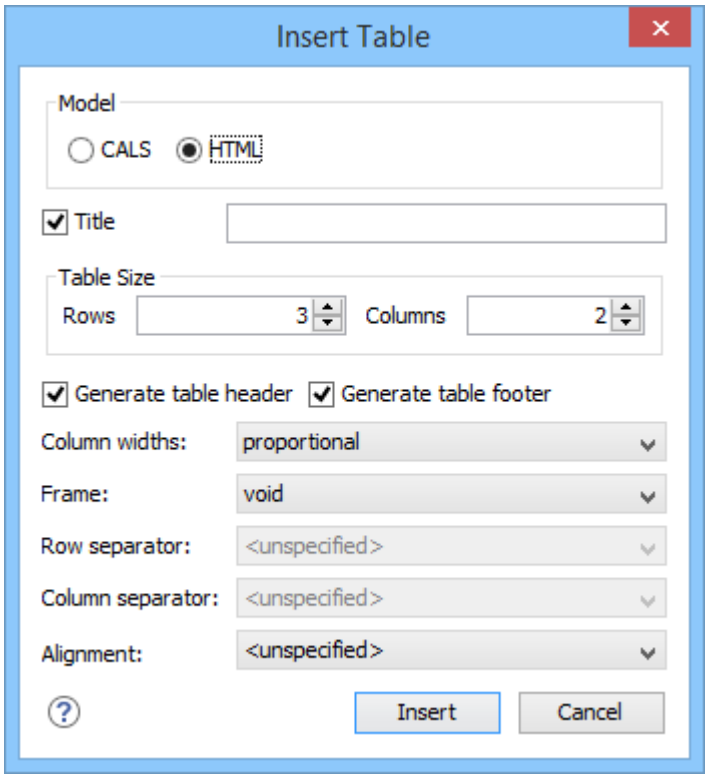
Figure 126. CALS Table in DocBook



Inserting an HTML Table Model

To insert an *HTML* table model in DocBook documents, select the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or from the contextual menu. The **Insert Table** dialog box appears. Select **HTML** for the table **Model**.

Figure 127. Insert Table Dialog Box - Simple Model



The dialog box allows you to configure the following options when you select the **HTML** table model:

Title

If this checkbox is selected, you can specify a title for your table in the adjacent text box.

Table Size

Allows you to choose the number of **Rows** and **Columns** for the table.

Generate table header

If selected, an extra row will be inserted at the top of the table to be used as the table header.

Generate table footer

If selected, an extra row will be inserted at the bottom of the table to be used as the table footer.

Column widths

Allows you to specify the type of properties for column widths (`@width` attribute). You can choose one of the following properties for the column width:

- **proportional** - The width is specified in proportional (relative) units of measure. The proportion of the column is specified in a `@width` attribute (in a `<col>` element) with the values listed as the number of shares followed by an asterisk. The value of the shares is totaled and rendered as a percent. For example, `width="1* 2* 3*"` causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%. When entering content into a cell in one column, the width proportions of the other columns are maintained. If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, the values of the `@width` attribute are automatically changed accordingly. By default, when you insert, drag and drop, or copy/paste a column, the value of the `@width` attribute is `1*`.
- **dynamic** - If you choose this option, the columns are created without a specified width. Entering content into a cell changes the rendered width dynamically. If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, a dialog box will be displayed that asks you if you want to switch to proportional or fixed column widths.
- **fixed** - The width is specified in fixed units. By default, the `pt` unit is inserted, but you can change the units in the section above the table or in **Text** mode. In addition to the standard pixel, percentage, and relative values, this attribute also allows the special form “0*” (zero asterisk), which means that the width of each column in the group should be the minimum width necessary to hold the contents.

Frame

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. There are a variety of allowed values, as specified in the DocBook HTML table specifications.

Alignment

Specifies the alignment of the text within the table (`@align` attribute). The allowed values are:

- **left** - Aligns the text to a left position.
- **right** - Aligns the text to a right position.
- **center** - Aligns the text to a centered position.

- **justify** - Stretches the line of text so that it has equal width. Note that this value cannot be rendered in **Author** mode, so you will only see it in the output.
- **char** - Aligns text to the leftmost occurrence of the value specified on the `@char` attribute for alignment.

Note:
The options in the **Insert Table** dialog box for DocBook documents are persistent, so changes made in one session will carry over to another.

When you click **Insert**, an HTML style of table is inserted into your document at the current cursor position.

When you insert an HTML table, you see a section above the table that allows you to easily configure some properties without opening the **Table Properties** dialog box. Although this section appears as part of the **Author** mode *(on page 221)*, it will not appear in your output. It is just there to make it easier to adjust how the columns of your table are formatted.

Editing an Existing Table

You can edit the structure of an existing table using the table buttons on the toolbar (or in the contextual menu) to add or remove cells, rows, or columns, and to set basic table properties. Additional attributes can be used to fine-tune the formatting of your tables by using the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)* (**Window > Show View > Attributes**).

You can also use the **Table Properties (Ctrl + T (Command + T on macOS))** *(on page 1984)* action from the toolbar or contextual menu to modify many of the properties of the table *(on page 442)*.

Also, remember that underneath the visual representation, both table models are really just XML. If necessary, you can edit the XML directly by switching to **Text** mode *(on page 220)*.

DocBook Table Layouts

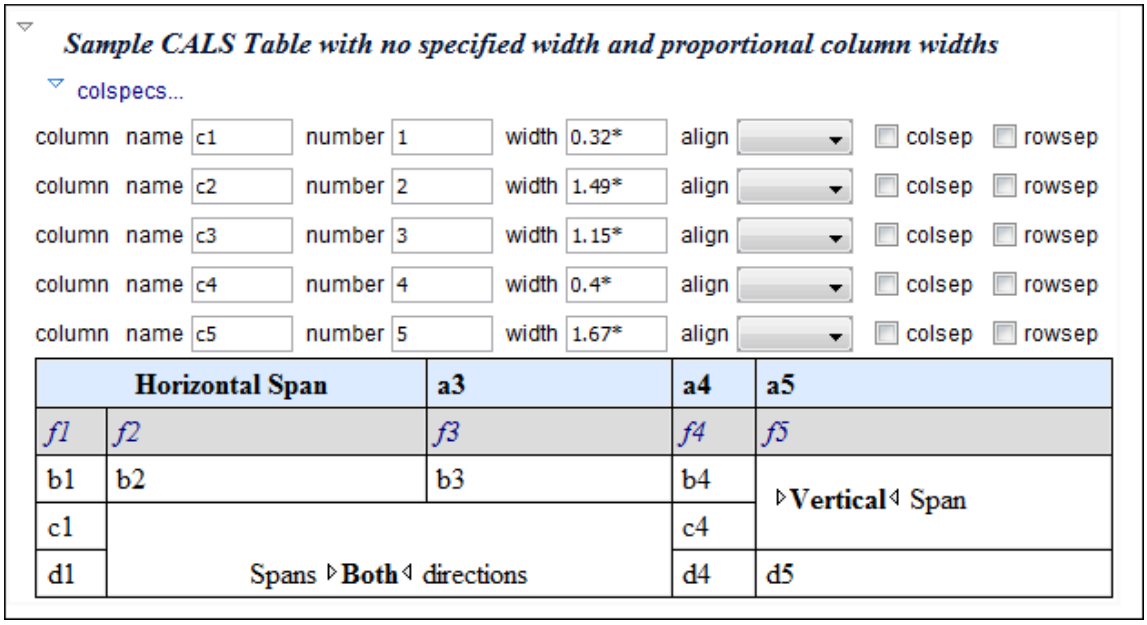
The DocBook *framework (on page 2231)* supports the following two table model layouts:

- *CALS* table model *(on page 440)*
- *HTML* table model *(on page 441)*

CALS Table Model Layout

The **CALS** table model allows for more flexibility and table customization than other models. When choosing a **CALS** table model from the **Insert Table** dialog box, you have access to more configurable properties. The layout of a **CALS** table includes a **colspecs** section that allows you to easily configure some properties without opening the **Table Properties** dialog box. For example, you can change the value of column widths (`@colwidth` attribute) or the text alignment (`@align` attribute). Although they appear as part of the **Author** mode *(on page 221)*, the *colspecs* link and its controls will not appear in your output. They are just there to make it easier to adjust how the columns of your table are formatted.

Figure 128. CALS Table in DocBook

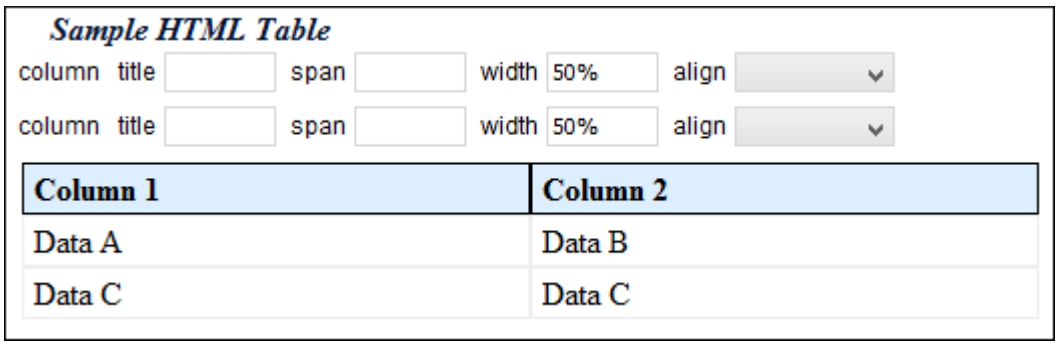


Tip:
A sample plugin is available that can be used as inspiration to add support for CALS tables in any XML document: Sample Plugin: Add CALS Support for any XML Document.

HTML Table Model Layout

Choosing an **HTML** table model from the **Insert Table** dialog box in a DocBook document inserts a formal (captioned) HTML table. The layout of an *HTML* table includes a section above the table that allows you to easily configure some properties without opening the **Table Properties** dialog box. For example, you can change the value of column widths (`@width` attribute) or the text alignment (`@align` attribute). Although these properties appear as part of the **Author** mode *(on page 221)*, they will not appear in your output. They are just there to make it easier to adjust how the columns of your table are formatted.

Figure 129. HTML Table in DocBook



Pasting Tables in DocBook

Tables that are pasted into a DocBook file are automatically converted to the *CALS* model. If you want to overwrite this behavior and instruct Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to convert them to *HTML* tables, set the `docbook.html.table` parameter to `1`. You can find this parameter in the following stylesheet:

- *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/docbook/resources/xhtml2db5Driver.xsl` for DocBook 5
- *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/docbook/resources/xhtml2db4Driver.xsl` for DocBook 4

Table Validation in DocBook

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin reports table layout problems that are detected in manual or automatic validations. The types of errors that may be reported for DocBook table layout problems include:

CALS Tables

- A row has fewer cells than the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute.
- A row has more cells than the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute.
- A cell has a vertical span greater than the available rows count.
- The number of `<colspecs>` is different than the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute.
- The number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute is different than the number of columns detected in the table structure.
- The value of the `@cols`, `@rowsep`, or `@colsep` attributes are not numeric.
- The `@namest`, `@nameend`, or `@colname` attributes point to an incorrect column name.

HTML Tables

- A row has fewer cells than the number of table columns.
- The value of the `@colspan`, `@rowspan`, or `@span` attributes are not numeric.
- A cell has a vertical span greater than the available rows count.

Editing Table Properties in DocBook

You can edit the structure of an existing table using the table buttons on the toolbar (or from the contextual menu) to add or remove cells, rows, or columns, and to set basic table properties. Additional attributes can be used to fine-tune the formatting of your tables by using the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)* (**Window > Show View > Attributes**).

You can use the **Table Properties (Ctrl + T (Command + T on macOS))** action to modify many of the properties of the table. You can also adjust some of the properties in the specification section above the table.

The **Table properties** dialog box allows you to set specific properties to the table elements. The options that are available depend on the context and location within the table where the action was invoked.

Note:
Some properties allow the following special values, depending on the context and the current properties or values:

- **<not set>** - Use this value if you want to remove a property.
- **<preserve>** - If you select multiple elements that have the same property set to different values, you can choose this value to keep the values that are already set. In some cases it can also be used to keep the current non-standard value for a particular property.

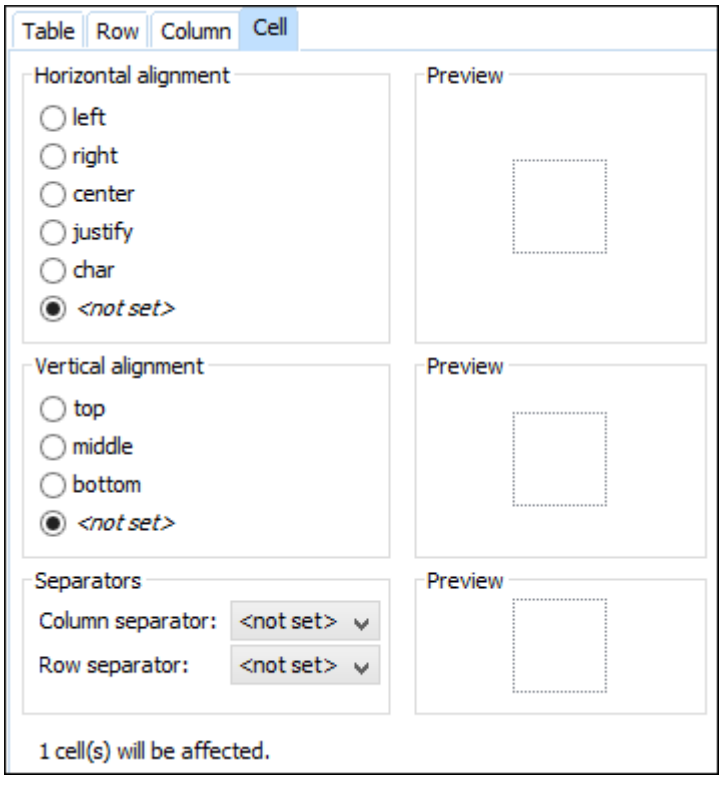
Edit Table Properties for a CALS Table Model

For a **CALS** table model, the **Table properties** dialog box includes four tabs of options:

- **Table** tab - The options in this tab apply to the entire table.
- **Row** tab - The options in this tab apply to the current row or selection of multiple rows. A message at the bottom of the tab tells you how many rows will be affected.
- **Column** tab - The options in this tab apply to the current column or selection of multiple columns. A message at the bottom of the tab tells you how many columns will be affected.
- **Cell** tab - The options in this tab apply to the current cell or selection of multiple cells. A message at the bottom of the tab tells you how many cells will be affected.

The options in four tabs include a **Preview** pane that shows a representation of the modification.

Figure 130. Table Properties Dialog Box with Cell Tab Selected (DocBook CALS Table Model)



The options in the four tabs include the following:

Horizontal alignment (Available in the Table, Column, and Cell tabs)

Specifies the horizontal alignment of text within the current table/column/cell or selection of multiple columns/cells (`@align` attribute). The allowed values are as follows:

- **left** - Aligns the text to a left position.
- **right** - Aligns the text to a right position.
- **center** - Aligns the text to a centered position.
- **justify** - Stretches the line of text so that it has equal width. Note that this value cannot be rendered in **Author** mode, so you will only see it in the output.
- **char** - Aligns text to the leftmost occurrence of the value specified on the `@char` attribute for alignment.

Vertical alignment (Available in the Row and Cell tabs)

Specifies the vertical alignment of text within the current row/cell or selection of multiple rows/cells (`@valign` attribute). The allowed values are as follows:

- **top** - Aligns the text at the top of the cell.
- **middle** - Aligns the text in a vertically centered position.
- **bottom** - Aligns the text at the bottom of the cell.

Column separator (Available in the Table, Column, and Cell tabs)

Specifies whether or not to include column separators (borders/grid lines) in the form of the `@colsep` attribute. The allowed values are: `0` (no separator) and `1` (include separators).

Row separator (Available in all four tabs)

Specifies whether or not to include row separators (borders/grid lines) in the form of the `@rowsep` attribute. The allowed values are: `0` (no separator) and `1` (include separators).

Frame

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. There are a variety of allowed values, as specified in the DocBook CALS table specifications.

Row type (Available in the Row tab only)

Allows you change the row to a header, body, or footer type of row (within a `@thead`, `@tbody`, or `@tfoot` attribute).

Edit Table Properties for an HTML Table Model

For an **HTML** table model, the **Table properties** dialog box includes four tabs of options (**Table**, **Row**, **Column**, and **Cell**) and the options include a **Preview** pane that shows a representation of the modification.

The options in the four tabs include the following:

Frame (Available only in the Table tab)

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. There are a variety of allowed values, as specified in the DocBook HTML table specifications.

Row type (Available in the Row tab only)

Allows you change the row to a header, body, or footer type of row (within a `@thead`, `@tbody`, or `@tfoot` attribute).

Horizontal alignment (Available in the Row, Column, and Cell tabs)

Specifies the horizontal alignment for the text in the current row/column/cell or selection of multiple rows/columns/cells (`@align` attribute). The allowed values are:

- **left** - Aligns the text to a left position.
- **right** - Aligns the text to a right position.
- **center** - Aligns the text to a centered position.
- **justify** - Stretches the line of text so that it has equal width. Note that this value cannot be rendered in **Author** mode, so you will only see it in the output.
- **char** - Aligns text to the leftmost occurrence of the value specified on the `@char` attribute for alignment.

Vertical alignment (Available in the Row, Column, and Cell tabs)

Specifies the vertical alignment for the text in the current row/column/cell or selection of multiple rows/columns/cells (`@valign` attribute). The allowed values are:

- **top** - Aligns the text at the top of the cell.
- **middle** - Aligns the text in a vertically centered position.
- **bottom** - Aligns the text at the bottom of the cell.
- **baseline** - Sets the row so that all the table data share the same baseline. This often has the same effect as the `bottom` value. However, if the fonts are different sizes, the `baseline` value often makes the table look better.

Related Information:
Editing Tables in Author Mode *(on page 433)*

Adding Tables in DITA Topics

You can use the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or from the contextual menu to add a table in a DITA topic. By default, DITA supports four types of tables:

- DITA *Simple* table model *(on page 1974)* - This is the most commonly used model for basic tables.
- CALS table model (OASIS Exchange Table Model) *(on page 1975)* - This is used for more advanced functionality.
- DITA *Choice* table model *(on page 1978)* - This is used within a `<step>` element in a DITA Task document to describe a series of optional choices that a user must make before proceeding.
- DITA *Properties* table model *(on page 1980)* - This is used in DITA Reference documents to describe a property (for example, its type, value, and description).

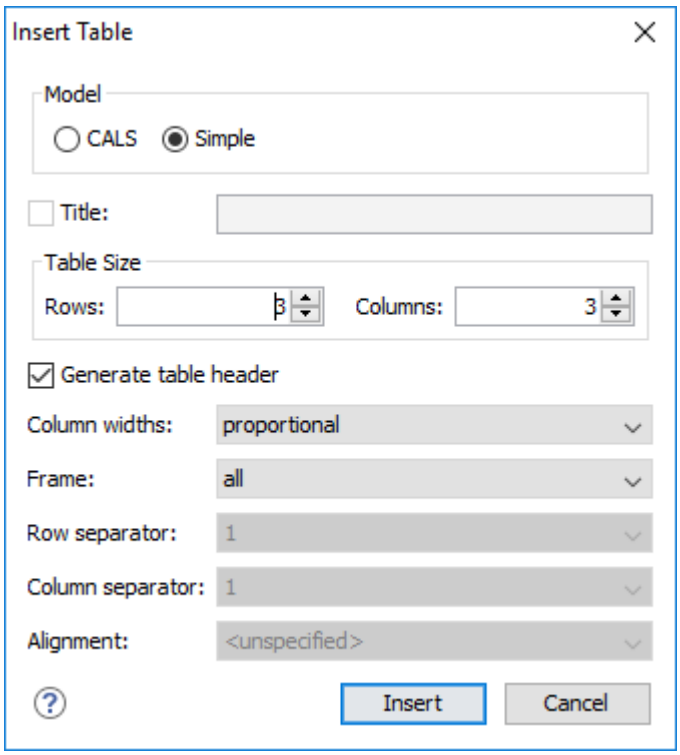
If you are using a specialized DITA vocabulary, it may contain specialized versions of these table models.

Since DITA is a structured format, you can only insert a table in places in the structure of a topic where tables are allowed. The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin toolbar provides support for entering and editing tables. It also helps to indicate where you are allowed to insert a table or its components by disabling the appropriate buttons.

Inserting a Simple Table Model

To insert a **Simple** DITA table, select the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or from the contextual menu (or the **Table** submenu from the **DITA** menu). The **Insert Table** dialog box appears. Select **Simple** for the table **Model**.

Figure 131. Insert Table Dialog Box - Simple Model



The dialog box allows you to configure the following options when you select the **Simple** table model:

Title

If this checkbox is selected, you can specify a title for your table in the adjacent text box.

Generate table header

If selected, an extra row will be inserted at the top of the table to be used as the table header.

Column widths

Allows you to specify the type of properties for column widths (`@colwidth` attribute). You can choose one of the following properties for the column width:

- **proportional** - The width is specified in proportional (relative) units of measure. The proportion of the column is specified in a `@relcolwidth` attribute with the values listed as the number of shares followed by an asterisk. The value of the shares is totaled and

rendered as a percent. For example, `relcolwidth="1* 2* 3*"` causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%. When entering content into a cell in one column, the width proportions of the other columns are maintained. If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, the values of the `@relcolwidth` attribute are automatically changed accordingly. By default, when you insert, drag and drop, or copy/paste a column, the value of the `@relcolwidth` attribute is `1*`.

- **dynamic** - If you choose this option, the columns are created without a specified width. Entering content into a cell changes the rendered width dynamically. If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, a dialog box will be displayed that asks you if you want to switch to proportional or fixed column widths.

Frame

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. The allowed values are as follows:

- **none** - No border will be added.
- **all** - A border will be added to all frames.
- **top** - A border will be added to the top frame.
- **topbot** - A border will be added to the top and bottom frames.
- **bottom** - A border will be added to the bottom frame.
- **sides** - A border will be added to the side frames.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

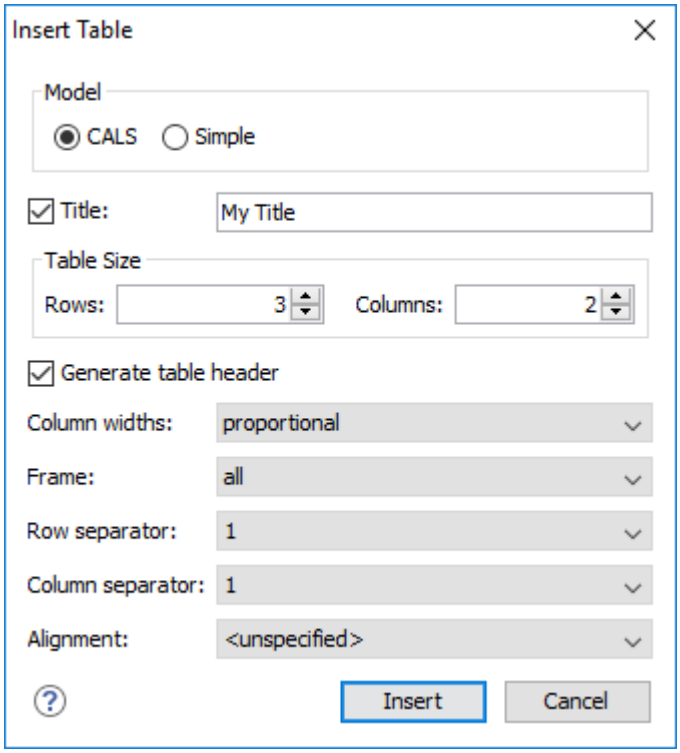
Note:
The options in the **Insert Table** dialog box for DITA documents are persistent, so changes made in one session will carry over to another.

When you click **Insert**, a simple table is inserted into your document at the current cursor position.

Inserting a CALS Table Model (OASIS Exchange Table)

To insert an OASIS Exchange Table (**CALS**), select the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or from the contextual menu (or the **Table** submenu from the **DITA** menu). The **Insert Table** dialog box appears. Select **CALS** for the table **Model**. This model allows you to configure more properties than the *Simple* model.

Figure 132. Insert Table Dialog Box - CALS Model



The dialog box allows you to configure the following options when you select the **CALS** table model:

Title

If this checkbox is selected, you can specify a title for your table in the adjacent text box.

Table Size

Allows you to choose the number of **Rows** and **Columns** for the table.

Generate table header

If selected, an extra row will be inserted at the top of the table to be used as the table header.

Column widths

Allows you to specify the type of properties for column widths (`@colwidth` attribute). You can choose one of the following properties for the column width:

- **proportional** - The width is specified in proportional (relative) units of measure. The proportion of the column is specified in a `@colwidth` attribute with the values listed as the number of shares followed by an asterisk. The value of the shares is totaled and rendered as a percent. For example, `colwidth="1* 2* 3*"` causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%. When entering content into a cell in one column, the width proportions of the other columns are maintained. If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, the values of the `@colwidth` attribute are automatically changed accordingly. By default, when you insert, drag and drop, or copy/paste a column, the value of the `@colwidth` attribute is `1*`.
- **dynamic** - If you choose this option, the columns are created without a specified width (`@colwidth` attribute). Entering content into a cell changes the rendered width dynamically.

If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, a dialog box will be displayed that asks you if you want to switch to proportional or fixed column widths.

- **fixed** - The width is specified in fixed units. By default, the `pt` unit is inserted, but you can change the units in the **colspecs** (column specifications) section above the table or in **Text** mode. The following units are allowed: `pt` (points), `cm` (centimeters), `mm` (millimeters), `pi` (picas), `in` (inches).

Frame

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. The allowed values are as follows:

- **none** - No border will be added.
- **all** - A border will be added to all frames.
- **top** - A border will be added to the top frame.
- **topbot** - A border will be added to the top and bottom frames.
- **bottom** - A border will be added to the bottom frame.
- **sides** - A border will be added to the side frames.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

Row separator

Specifies whether or not to include row separators (`@rowsep` attribute). The allowed values are: `0` (no separator) and `1` (include separators).

Column separator

Specifies whether or not to include column separators (`@colsep` attribute). The allowed values are: `0` (no separator) and `1` (include separators).

Alignment

Specifies the alignment of the text within the table (`@align` attribute). The allowed values are:

- **left** - Aligns the text to a left position.
- **right** - Aligns the text to a right position.
- **center** - Aligns the text to a centered position.
- **justify** - Stretches the line of text so that it has equal width.

Note:
The `justify` value cannot be rendered in **Author** mode, so you will only see it in the output.

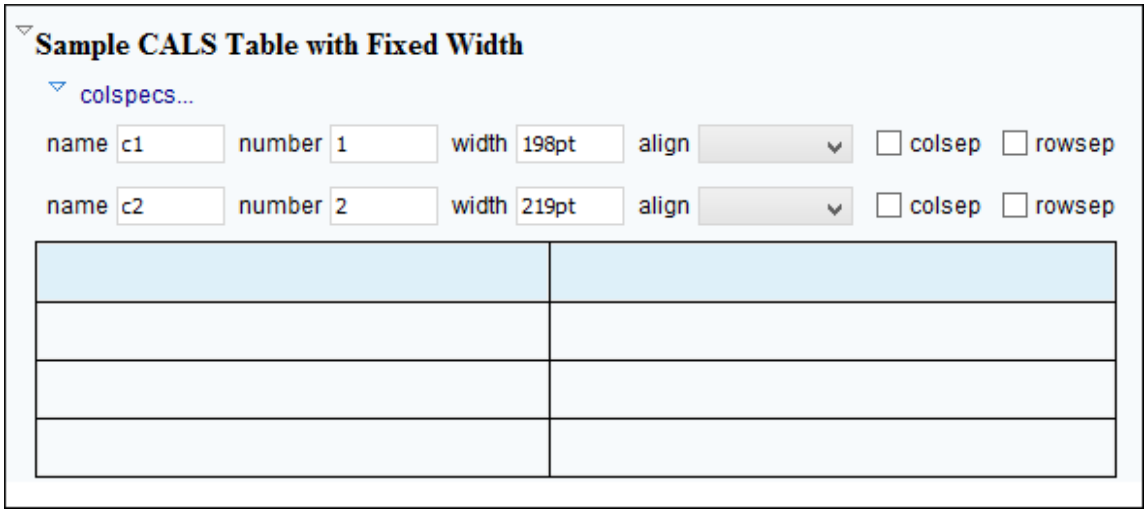
- **char** - Aligns text to the leftmost occurrence of the value specified on the `@char` attribute for alignment.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

Note:
The options in the **Insert Table** dialog box for DITA documents are persistent, so changes made in one session will carry over to another.

When you click **Insert**, a CALS table is inserted into your document at the current cursor position.

When you insert a CALS table, you see a link for setting the *colspecs* (column specifications) of your table. Click the link to open the controls that allow you to adjust various column properties. Although they appear as part of the **Author** mode *(on page 221)*, the *colspecs* link and its controls will not appear in your output. They are just there to make it easier to adjust how the columns of your table are formatted.

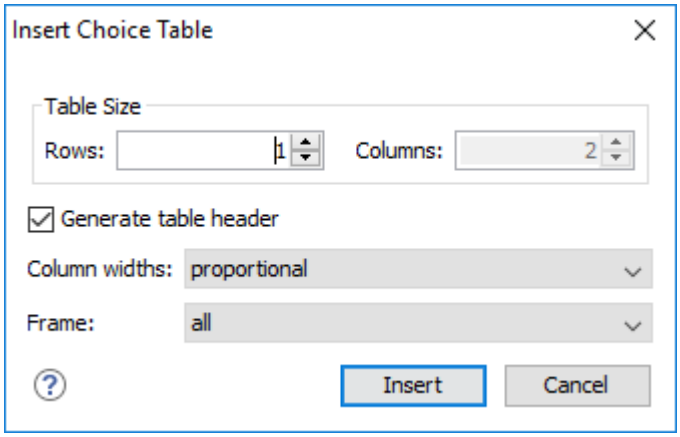
Figure 133. CALS Table in DITA



Inserting a Choice Table Model

To insert a **Choice** table within a `<step>` element in a DITA Task document, select the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or in the **Insert** submenu from the contextual menu (or the **Table** submenu from the **DITA** menu), or select **choicetable** from the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*. The **Insert Table** dialog box appears. Select **Simple** for the table **Model**.

Figure 134. Insert Table Dialog Box - Choice Model



The dialog box allows you to configure the following options when you insert a *Choice* table model within a DITA Task:

Table Size

Allows you to choose the number of **Rows** and **Columns** for the table.

Generate table header

If selected, an extra row will be inserted at the top of the table to be used as the table header.

Column widths

Allows you to specify the type of properties for column widths (`@colwidth` attribute). You can choose one of the following properties for the column width:

- **proportional** - The width is specified in proportional (relative) units of measure. The proportion of the column is specified in a `@relcolwidth` attribute with the values listed as the number of shares followed by an asterisk. The value of the shares is totaled and rendered as a percent. For example, `relcolwidth="1* 2* 3*"` causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%. When entering content into a cell in one column, the width proportions of the other columns are maintained. If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, the values of the `@relcolwidth` attribute are automatically changed accordingly. By default, when you insert, drag and drop, or copy/paste a column, the value of the `@relcolwidth` attribute is `1*`.
- **dynamic** - If you choose this option, the columns are created without a specified width. Entering content into a cell changes the rendered width dynamically. If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, a dialog box will be displayed that asks you if you want to switch to proportional or fixed column widths.

Frame

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. The allowed values are as follows:

- **none** - No border will be added.
- **all** - A border will be added to all frames.

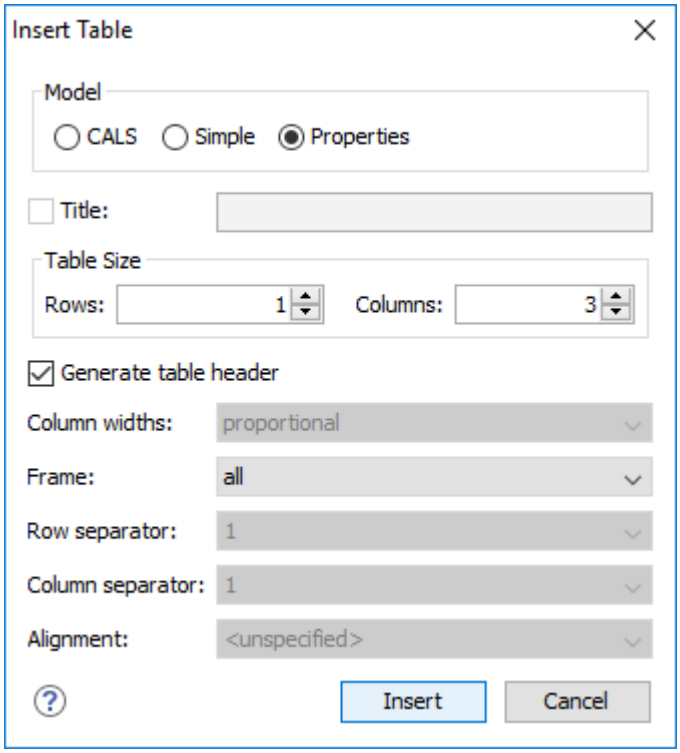
- **top** - A border will be added to the top frame.
- **topbot** - A border will be added to the top and bottom frames.
- **bottom** - A border will be added to the bottom frame.
- **sides** - A border will be added to the side frames.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

When you click **Insert**, a *Choice* table is inserted into your DITA Task document at the current cursor position (within a `<step>` element).

Inserting a Properties Table Model

To insert a **Properties** table within a `<refbody>` element in a DITA Reference document, select the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or in the **Insert** submenu from the contextual menu (or the **Table** submenu from the **DITA** menu), or select **properties(wizard)** from the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*. The **Insert Table** dialog box appears. Select **Properties** for the table **Model**.

Figure 135. Insert Table Dialog Box - Properties Model



The dialog box allows you to configure the following options when you insert a *Properties* table model within a DITA Reference:

Table Size

Allows you to choose the number of **Rows** and **Columns** for the table.

Generate table header

If selected, an extra row will be inserted at the top of the table to be used as the table header.

Frame

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. The allowed values are as follows:

- **none** - No border will be added.
- **all** - A border will be added to all frames.
- **top** - A border will be added to the top frame.
- **topbot** - A border will be added to the top and bottom frames.
- **bottom** - A border will be added to the bottom frame.
- **sides** - A border will be added to the side frames.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

When you click **Insert**, a *Properties* table is inserted into your DITA Reference document at the current cursor position (within a `<refbody>` element).

Editing an Existing Table

You can edit the structure of an existing table using the table buttons on the toolbar (or in the contextual menu) to add or remove cells, rows, or columns, and to set basic table properties. Additional attributes can be used to fine-tune the formatting of your tables by using the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)* (**Window > Show View > Attributes**). See the DITA documentation for a full explanation of these attributes.

You can also use the **Table Properties (Ctrl + T (Command + T on macOS))** *(on page 1984)* action from the toolbar or contextual menu (or **DITA** menu) to modify many of the properties of the table *(on page 1984)*.

Also, remember that underneath the visual representation, both table models are really just XML. If necessary, you can edit the XML directly by switching to **Text** mode *(on page 220)*.

You can use normal copy/paste shortcuts to move content between cells. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a *Smart Paste* feature *(on page 366)* that preserves certain style and structure information when pasting content.

Tip:
When copying a multiple selection of table cells and pasting them outside the table, a new table will be created. When pasting into space-preserved elements, the cell content will be pasted as plain text.

Related Information:
Editing Tables in Author Mode *(on page 433)*

DITA Table Layouts

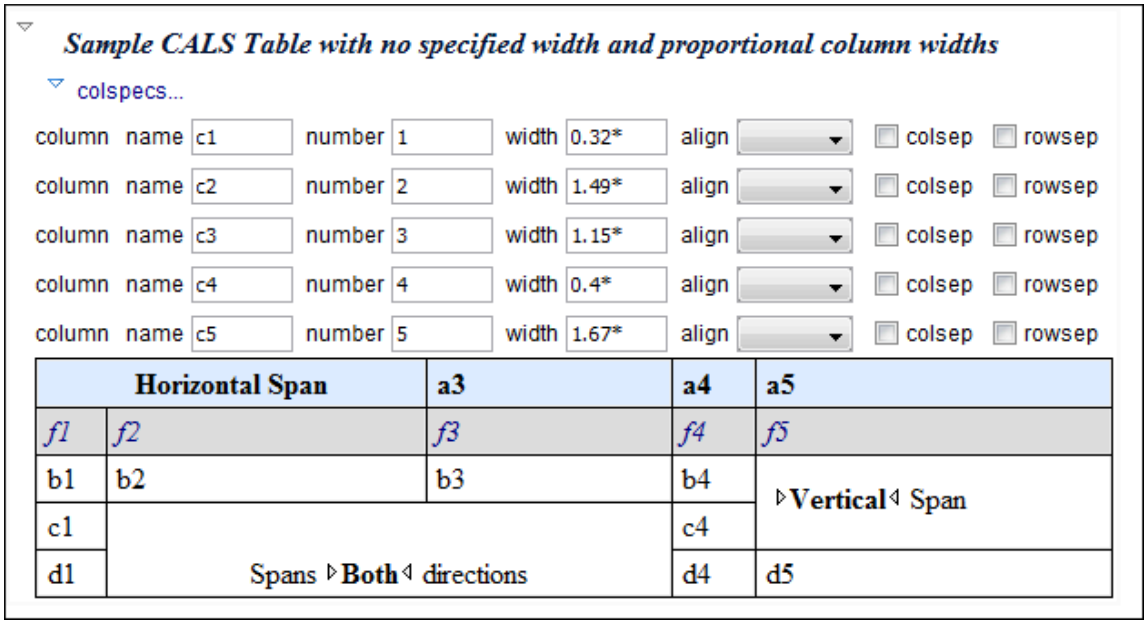
Depending on the context, DITA accepts the following table layouts:

- *CALS* table model *(on page 454)*
- *Simple* table model *(on page 454)*
- *Choice* table model *(on page 455)*
- *Properties* table model *(on page 455)*

CALS Table Model Layout

The **CALS** table model allows for more flexibility and table customization than other models. When choosing a **CALS** table model from the **Insert Table** dialog box, you have access to more configurable properties. The layout of a **CALS** table includes a **colspecs** section that allows you to easily configure some properties without opening the **Table Properties** dialog box. For example, you can change the value of column widths (`@colwidth` attribute) or the text alignment (`@align` attribute). Although they appear as part of the **Author** mode *(on page 221)*, the *colspecs* link and its controls will not appear in your output. They are just there to make it easier to adjust how the columns of your table are formatted.

Figure 136. CALS Table in DITA



Tip:
A sample plugin is available that can be used as inspiration to add support for CALS tables in any XML document: Sample Plugin: Add CALS Support for any XML Document.

Simple Table Model Layout

When choosing a **Simple** table model from the **Insert Table** dialog box, you only have access to configure a few properties. For example, you can choose the number of rows and columns, specify values for frames, and

choose from a few types of properties for the column width. The layout of this type of table is very simple, as the name suggests.

Figure 137. DITA Simple Table

Header 1	Header 2
Column 1	Column 2

Choice Table Model Layout

A **Choice** table model is used within a `<step>` element in a DITA Task document to describe a series of optional choices that a user must make before proceeding. The `<choicetable>` element is a useful device for documenting options within a single step of a task. You can insert *Choice* tables in DITA Task documents either by selecting **choicetable** from the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* (within a `<step>` element) or by using the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or from the contextual menu). The options and layout of a *Choice* table is similar to the *Simple* table model.

Figure 138. DITA Choice Table

Option	Description
Opt A	
Opt B	
Opt C	

Properties Table Model Layout

A **Properties** table model is used within a `<refbody>` element in a DITA Reference document to describe a property (for example, its type, value, and description). You can insert *Properties* tables in DITA Reference documents either by selecting **properties(wizard)** from the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* (within a `<refbody>` element) or by using the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar (or from the contextual menu) and selecting **Properties** for the **Model**. The layout of a *Properties* table is very simple. It allows for a maximum of 3 columns (typically for property type, value, and description) and the only options available are for whether or not you want a header row and for specifying frames (borders).

Figure 139. DITA Properties Table

Property Type	Property Value	Property Description
A	B	C

Table Validation in DITA

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin reports table layout problems that are detected in manual or automatic validations. When you validate a *DITA map (on page 2230)* with the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action, if the **Report table layout problems** option *(on page 1931)* is selected in the **DITA Map Completeness**

Check dialog box, table layout problems will be reported in the validation results. The types of errors that may be reported for DITA table layout problems include:

CALS Tables

- A row has fewer cells than the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute.
- A row has more cells than the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute.
- A cell has a vertical span greater than the available rows count.
- The number of `<colspecs>` is different than the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute.
- The number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute is different than the number of columns detected in the table structure.
- The value of the `@cols`, `@rowsep`, or `@colsep` attributes are not numeric.
- The `@namest`, `@nameend`, or `@colname` attributes point to an incorrect column name.

Simple or Choice Tables

A row has fewer cells than the number of table columns.

Editing Table Properties in DITA

To customize the look of a table in DITA, place the cursor anywhere in a table and invoke the **Table Properties (Ctrl + T (Command + T on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **Table** submenu of the contextual menu (or **DITA** menu). This opens the **Table properties** dialog box.

The **Table properties** dialog box allows you to set specific properties to the table elements. The options that are available depend on the context and location within the table where the action was invoked.

Note:
Some properties allow the following special values, depending on the context and the current properties or values:

- **<not set>** - Use this value if you want to remove a property.
- **<preserve>** - If you select multiple elements that have the same property set to different values, you can choose this value to keep the values that are already set. In some cases it can also be used to keep the current non-standard value for a particular property.

Edit Table Properties for a CALS Table Model

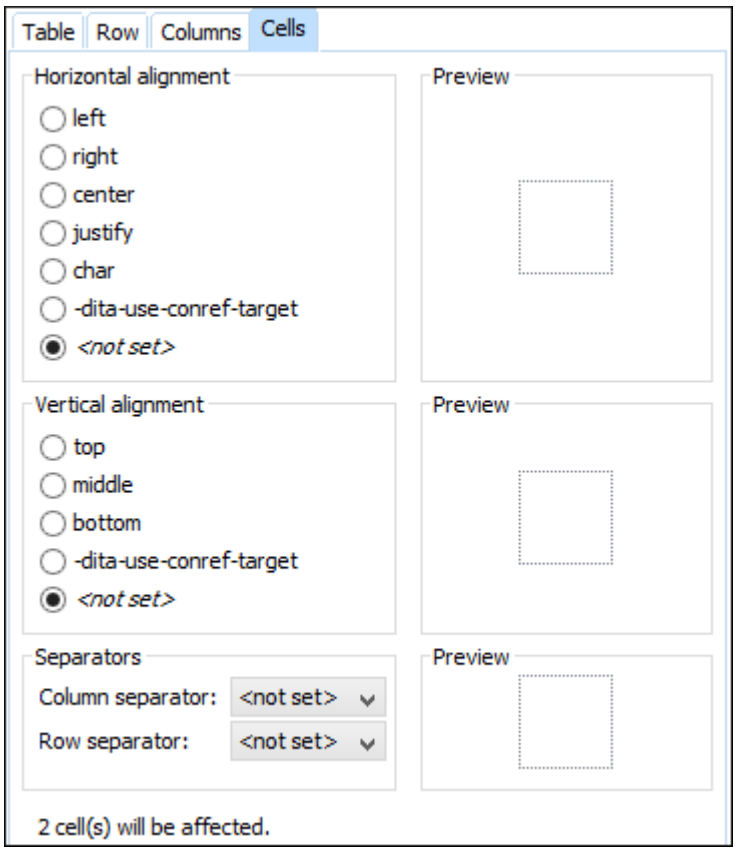
For a **CALS** table model, the **Table properties** dialog box includes four tabs of options:

- **Table** tab - The options in this tab apply to the entire table.
- **Row** tab - The options in this tab apply to the current row or selection of multiple rows. A message at the bottom of the tab tells you how many rows will be affected.

- **Column** tab - The options in this tab apply to the current column or selection of multiple columns. A message at the bottom of the tab tells you how many columns will be affected.
- **Cell** tab - The options in this tab apply to the current cell or selection of multiple cells. A message at the bottom of the tab tells you how many cells will be affected.

The options in four tabs include a **Preview** pane that shows a representation of the modification.

Figure 140. Table Properties Dialog Box with Cell Tab Selected (DITA CALS Table Model)



The options in the four tabs include the following:

Horizontal alignment (Available in the Table, Column, and Cell tabs)

Specifies the horizontal alignment of text within the current table/column/cell or selection of multiple columns/cells (`@align` attribute). The allowed values are as follows:

- **left** - Aligns the text to a left position.
- **right** - Aligns the text to a right position.
- **center** - Aligns the text to a centered position.
- **justify** - Stretches the line of text so that it has equal width.

> **Note:**
> The `justify` value cannot be rendered in **Author** mode, so you will only see it in the output.

- **char** - Aligns text to the leftmost occurrence of the value specified on the `@char` attribute for alignment.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

Vertical alignment (Available in the Row and Cell tabs)

Specifies the vertical alignment of text within the current row/cell or selection of multiple rows/cells (`@valign` attribute). The allowed values are as follows:

- **top** - Aligns the text at the top of the cell.
- **middle** - Aligns the text in a vertically centered position.
- **bottom** - Aligns the text at the bottom of the cell.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

Column separator (Available in the Table, Column, and Cell tabs)

Specifies whether or not to include column separators (borders/grid lines) in the form of the `@colsep` attribute. The allowed values are: `0` (no separator) and `1` (include separators).

Row separator (Available in all four tabs)

Specifies whether or not to include row separators (borders/grid lines) in the form of the `@rowsep` attribute. The allowed values are: `0` (no separator) and `1` (include separators).

Frame (Available only in the Table tab)

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. The allowed values are as follows:

- **none** - No border will be added.
- **all** - A border will be added to all frames.
- **top** - A border will be added to the top frame.
- **topbot** - A border will be added to the top and bottom frames.
- **bottom** - A border will be added to the bottom frame.
- **sides** - A border will be added to the side frames.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

Edit Table Properties for a Simple, Choice, or Properties Table Model

For a *Simple*, *Choice*, *Properties* table model, the **Table properties** dialog box only allows you to edit a few options.

Table tab

Frame

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. The allowed values are as follows:

- **none** - No border will be added.
- **all** - A border will be added to all frames.
- **top** - A border will be added to the top frame.
- **topbot** - A border will be added to the top and bottom frames.
- **bottom** - A border will be added to the bottom frame.
- **sides** - A border will be added to the side frames.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

Row tab (not available for *Properties* tables)

Row type

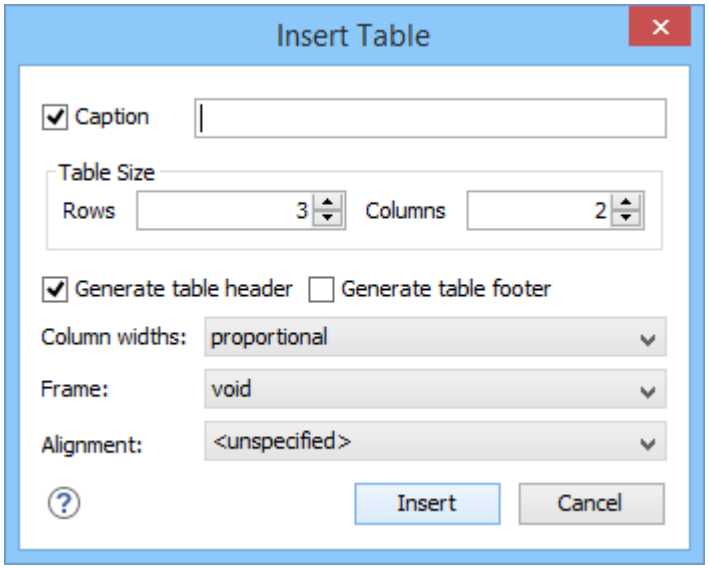
Allows you change the row to a body or header type of row.

Related Information:
Adding Tables in DITA Topics *(on page 1973)*
Editing Tables in Author Mode *(on page 433)*

Adding Tables in XHTML Documents

You can use the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or from the contextual menu to add a table in an XHTML document. This action opens the **Insert Table** dialog box.

Figure 141. Insert Table Dialog Box in XHTML



The dialog box allows you to configure the following options:

Caption

If this checkbox is selected, you can specify a title (caption) for your table in the adjacent text box.

Table Size

Allows you to choose the number of **Rows** and **Columns** for the table.

Generate table header

If selected, an extra row will be inserted at the top of the table to be used as the table header.

Generate table footer

If selected, an extra row will be inserted at the bottom of the table to be used as the table footer.

Column widths

Allows you to specify the type of properties for column widths (`@width` attribute). You can choose one of the following properties for the column width:

- **proportional** - The width is specified in proportional (relative) units of measure. The proportion of the column is specified in a `@width` attribute (in a `<col>` element) with the values listed as the number of shares followed by an asterisk. The value of the shares is totaled and rendered as a percent. For example, `width="1* 2* 3*"` causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%. When entering content into a cell in one column, the width proportions of the other columns are maintained. If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, the values of the `@width` attribute are automatically changed accordingly. By default, when you insert, drag and drop, or copy/paste a column, the value of the `@width` attribute is `1*`.
- **dynamic** - If you choose this option, the columns are created without a specified width. Entering content into a cell changes the rendered width dynamically. If you change the

width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, a dialog box will be displayed that asks you if you want to switch to proportional or fixed column widths.
- **fixed** - The width is specified in fixed units. By default, the `pt` unit is inserted, but you can change the units in the section above the table or in **Text** mode. In addition to the standard pixel, percentage, and relative values, this attribute also allows the special form "0*" (zero asterisk), which means that the width of each column in the group should be the minimum width necessary to hold the contents.

Frame

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. There are a variety of allowed values, as specified in HTML specifications.

Alignment

Specifies the alignment of the text within the table (`@align` attribute). The allowed values are:

- **left** - Aligns the text to a left position.
- **right** - Aligns the text to a right position.
- **center** - Aligns the text to a centered position.
- **justify** - Stretches the line of text so that it has equal width. Note that this value cannot be rendered in **Author** mode, so you will only see it in the output.
- **char** - Aligns text to the leftmost occurrence of the value specified on the `@char` attribute for alignment.

Note:
The options in the **Insert Table** dialog box for XHTML documents are persistent, so changes made in one session will carry over to another.

When you click **Insert**, an HTML style of table is inserted into your XHTML document at the current cursor position.

When you insert an HTML table, you see a link for setting the `<colspecs>` (column specifications) of your table. Click the link to open the controls that allow you to adjust various column properties. Although they appear as part of the **Author** mode *(on page 221)*, the *colspecs* link and its controls will not appear in your output. They are just there to make it easier to adjust how the columns of your table are formatted.

Editing an Existing Table

You can edit the structure of an existing table using the table buttons on the toolbar (or in the contextual menu) to add or remove cells, rows, or columns, and to set basic table properties. Additional attributes can be used to fine-tune the formatting of your tables by using the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)* (**Window > Show View > Attributes**). Also, remember that underneath the visual representation, the table is really just XML. If necessary, you can edit the XML directly by switching to **Text** mode *(on page 220)*.

XHTML Table Layout

When you insert a table in an XHTML document, an HTML type of table is added. The layout of an *XHTML* table includes a **colspecs** section that allows you to easily configure some properties. For example, you can change the value of column widths (`@width` attribute) or the text alignment (`@align` attribute). Although they appear as part of the **Author** mode *(on page 221)*, the `colspecs` link and its controls will not appear in your output. They are just there to make it easier to adjust how the columns of your table are formatted.

Figure 142. Table Layout in XHTML Documents

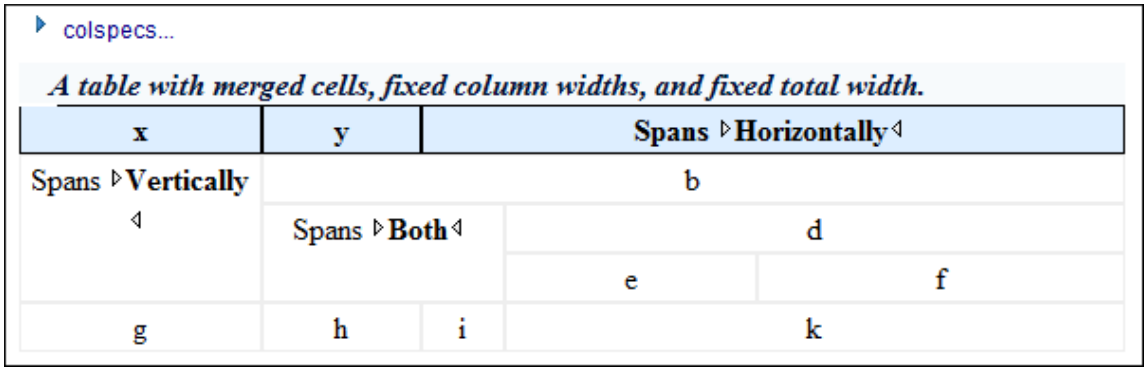


Table Validation in XHTML

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin reports table layout problems that are detected in manual or automatic validations. The types of errors that may be reported for XHTML table layout problems include:

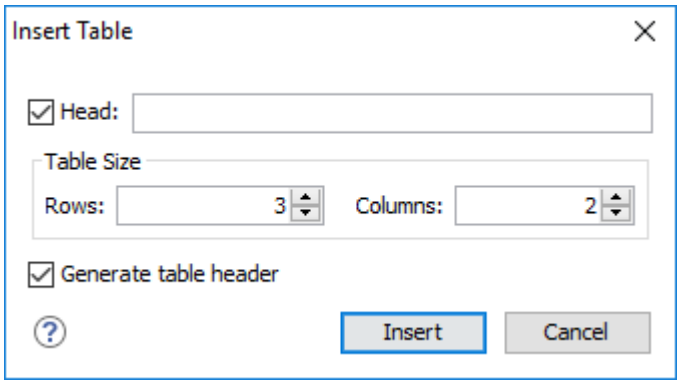
HTML Tables

- A row has fewer cells than the number of table columns.
- The value of the `@colspan`, `@rowspan`, or `@span` attributes are not numeric.
- A cell has a vertical span greater than the available rows count.

Adding Tables in TEI Documents

You can use the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or from the contextual menu to add a table in a TEI document. This action opens the **Insert Table** dialog box.

Figure 143. Insert Table Dialog Box in TEI



The dialog box allows you to configure the following options:

Head

If this checkbox is selected, you can specify a title for your table in the adjacent text box.

Table Size

Allows you to choose the number of **Rows** and **Columns** for the table.

Generate table header

If selected, an extra row will be inserted at the top of the table to be used as the table header.

Note:
The options in the **Insert Table** dialog box for TEI documents are persistent, so changes made in one session will carry over to another.

When you click **Insert**, a simple table is inserted into your TEI document at the current cursor position.

Editing an Existing Table

You can edit the structure of an existing table using the table buttons on the toolbar (or in the contextual menu) to add or remove cells, rows, or columns. Additional attributes can be used to fine-tune the formatting of your tables by using the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)* (**Window > Show View > Attributes**). Also, remember that underneath the visual representation, the table is really just XML. If necessary, you can edit the XML directly by switching to **Text** mode *(on page 220)*.

Adding Tables in JATS Documents

You can use the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or from the contextual menu to add a table in a JATS document. This action inserts a simple HTML-type table into your document at the current cursor position. Once inserted, you can edit the structure of the table using the table buttons on the toolbar (or in the contextual menu). For example you can add or remove cells, rows, and columns, or split or join cells. Additional attributes can be used to fine-tune the formatting of your tables by using the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)* (**Window > Show View > Attributes**).

Also, remember that underneath the visual representation, the table is really just XML. If necessary, you can edit the XML directly by switching to **Text** mode *(on page 220)*.

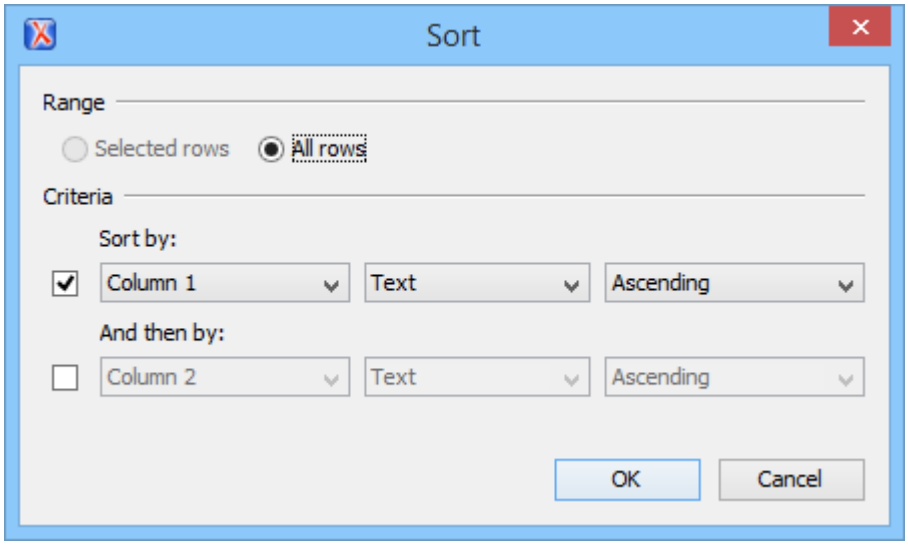
Sorting Content in Tables and List Items

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers support for sorting the content of tables and list items of ordered and unordered lists.

Sorting a Table

To sort rows in a table, select the entire table (or specific rows) and use the **Sort** action from the main toolbar or the contextual menu. This opens the **Sort** dialog box.

Figure 144. Sort Dialog Box



This dialog box sets the range that is sorted and the sorting criteria. The range is automatically selected depending on whether you sort an entire table or only a selection of its rows.

Note:
When you invoke the sorting operation over an entire table, the **Selected rows** option is disabled.

The **Criteria** section specifies the sorting criteria (a maximum of three sorting criteria are available), defined by the following:

- A name, which is collected from the column heading.
- The type of the information that is sorted. You can choose between the following:
  - **Text** - Alphanumeric characters.
  - **Numeric** - Regular integer or floating point numbers are accepted.
  - **Date** - Default date and time formats from the local OS are accepted (such as *short*, *medium*, *long*, *full*, *xs:date*, and *xs:dateTime*).
- The sorting direction (either *ascending* or *descending*).

The sort criteria is automatically set to the column where the cursor is located at the time when the sorting operation is invoked.

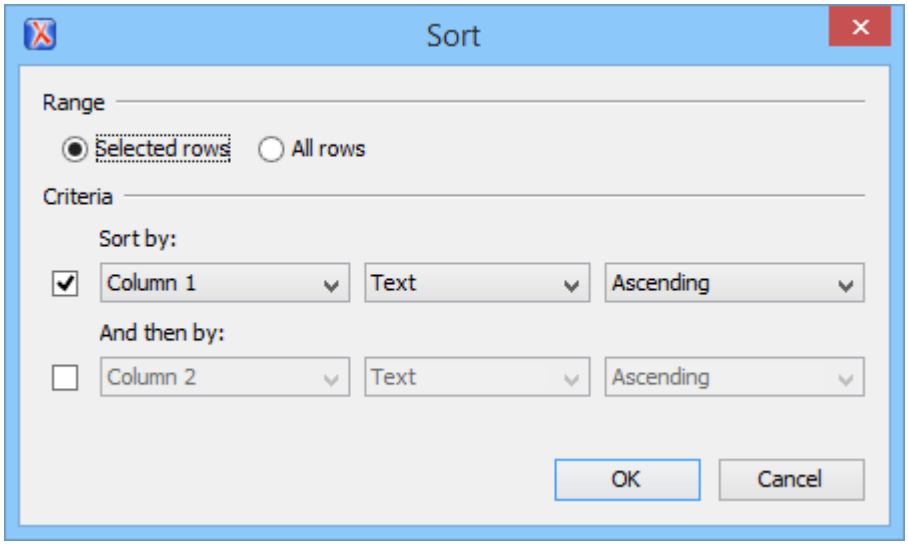
After you finish configuring the options in the **Sort** dialog box, click **OK** to complete the sorting operation. If you want to revert to the initial order of your content, press **Ctrl + Z (Command + Z on macOS)** on your keyboard.

Note:
The sorting support takes the value of the `@xml:lang` attribute into account and sorts the content in a natural order.

Sorting a Selection of Rows

To sort a selection of rows in a table, select the rows that you want to sort and either right-click the selection and choose **Sort**, or click **Sort** on the main toolbar. This opens the **Sort** dialog box.

Figure 145. Sort Selected Rows



This dialog box sets the range that is sorted and the sorting criteria. The range is automatically selected depending on whether you sort an entire table or only a selection of its rows.

The **Sort** dialog box also allows you to apply the sorting operation to the entire table, using the **All rows** option.

The **Criteria** section specifies the sorting criteria (a maximum of three sorting criteria are available), defined by the following:

- A name, which is collected from the column heading.
- The type of the information that is sorted. You can choose between the following:
  - **Text** - Alphanumeric characters.
  - **Numeric** - Regular integer or floating point numbers are accepted.
  - **Date** - Default date and time formats from the local OS are accepted (such as *short*, *medium*, *long*, *full*, *xs:date*, and *xs:dateTime*).
- The sorting direction (either *ascending* or *descending*).

The sort criteria is automatically set to the column where the cursor is located at the time when the sorting operation is invoked.

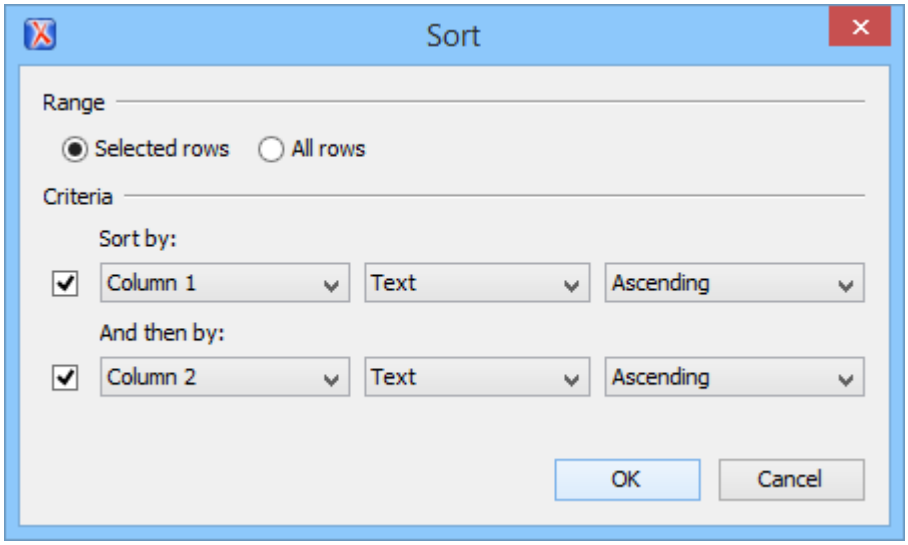
After you finish configuring the options in the **Sort** dialog box, click **OK** to complete the sorting operation. If you want to revert to the initial order of your content, press **Ctrl + Z (Command + Z on macOS)** on your keyboard.

Note:
The sorting support takes the value of the `@xml:lang` attribute into account and sorts the content in a natural order.

Sort Using Multiple Criteria

You can also sort an entire table or a selection of its rows based on multiple sorting criteria. To do so, select the rest of boxes in the **Criteria** section of the **Sort** dialog box, configure the applicable items, and click **OK** to complete the sorting operation.

Figure 146. Sorting Based on Multiple Criteria



Sorting a Table that Contains Merged Cells

If a table contains cells that span over multiple rows, you can not perform the sorting operation over the entire table. Still, the sorting mechanism works over a selection of rows that do not contain *rowspans*.

Note:
For this type of table, the **Sort** dialog box keeps the **All rows** option disabled even if you perform the sorting operation over a selection of rows.

Sorting List Items

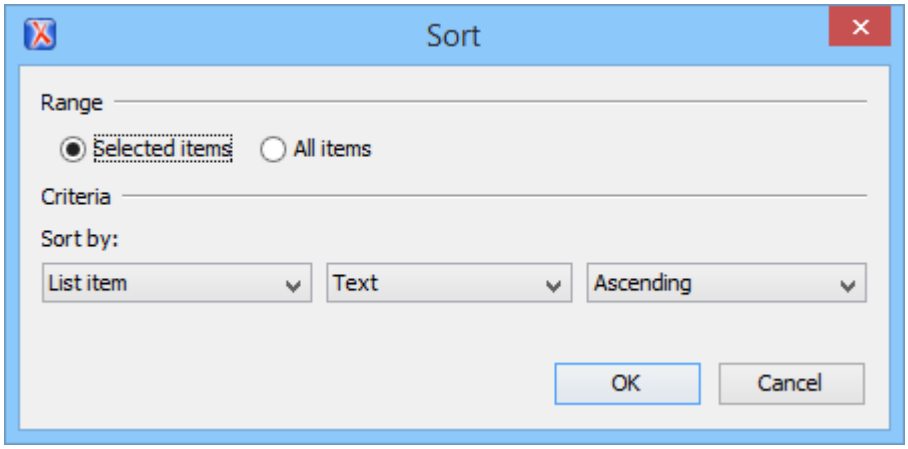
A sorting operation can be performed on various types of lists and list items. The types of lists that can be sorted in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin depend on the framework (document type), but examples of the types that can be sorted include:

- Ordered list (DITA, DocBook, XHTML, TEI)
- Unordered list (DITA, DocBook, XHTML, TEI)
- Definition list (DITA)
- Variable list (DocBook)

- Parameter list (DITA)
- Simple list (DITA)
- Required conditions (DITA Machinery Task)
- Supplies list (DITA Machinery Task)
- Spare parts list (DITA Machinery Task)
- Safety conditions (DITA Machinery Task)

The sorting mechanism works on an entire list or on a selection of list items. To sort items in a list, select the items or list and use the **Sort** action from the main toolbar or the contextual menu. This opens the **Sort** dialog box.

Figure 147. Sorting List Items



This dialog box sets the range that is sorted and the sorting criteria. The range is automatically selected depending on whether you sort an entire list or only a selection of its items.

Note:
When you invoke the sorting operation over an entire list, the **Selected rows** option is disabled.

The **Criteria** section specifies the sorting criteria, defined by the following:

- The name of the type of item being sorted.
- The type of the information that is sorted. You can choose between the following:
  - **Text** - Alphanumeric characters.
  - **Numeric** - Regular integer or floating point numbers are accepted.
  - **Date** - Default date and time formats from the local OS are accepted (such as *short*, *medium*, *long*, *full*, *xs:date*, and *xs:dateTime*).
- The sorting direction (either *ascending* or *descending*).

After you finish configuring the options in the **Sort** dialog box, click **OK** to complete the sorting operation. If you want to revert to the initial order of your content, press **Ctrl + Z (Command + Z on macOS)** on your keyboard.

Note:
The sorting support takes the value of the `@xml:lang` attribute into account and sorts the content in a natural order.

Inserting Images

To insert an image in a document while editing in **Author** mode, use one of the following methods:

- Click the **Insert Image** action from the toolbar. This opens a dialog box that allows you to choose the image file you want to insert and configure some properties. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin tries to reference the image with a path that is relative to that of the document you are currently editing. For example, if you want to add the `file:/C:/project/xml/dir/img1.jpg` image into the `file:/C:/project/xml/doc1.xml` document, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin inserts a reference to `dir/img1.jpg`. This is useful when multiple users work on a common project and they have it stored in multiple locations.

  Note:
  The **Insert Image** action is available for the following document types: DITA, DocBook, TEI, XHTML, JATS.

- Drag an image from other application and drop it in the **Author** editing mode. If it is an image file, it is inserted as a reference to the image file. For example, in a DITA topic the path of the image file is inserted as the value of the `@href` attribute in an `<image>` element:

  ```
  <image href="../images/image_file.png"/>
  ```

  Tip:
  To replace an image, just drag and drop a new image over the existing one. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will automatically update the reference to the new image.

- Copy an image file from another document or another application (such as a system file browser or web browser) and paste it into your document. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will insert it as a reference to the image file the same as the drag/drop method.
- Select an image (or part of an image) from another application (such as an image editor), copy it, and paste it into your document. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will prompt you to save it. After saving the image, a reference to that file path is inserted at the paste position.

Related Information:
Image Map Editor *(on page 473)*
Image Rendering in **Author** Mode *(on page 469)*
Adding Video, Audio, and Embedded HTML Resources in DITA Topics *(on page 1963)*

Image Rendering in Author Mode

The **Author** mode and the output transformation process might render the images referenced in an XML document differently, since they use different rendering engines.

Table 4. Supported Image Formats

Image Type	Support	Additional Information
GIF	built-in	Animations not yet supported.
JPG, JPEG	built-in	JPEG images with CMYK color profiles *(on page 1864)* are properly rendered only if color profile is inside the image.
PNG	built-in	
SVG, SVGZ	built-in	Rendered using the open-source Apache Batik library that supports SVG 1.1.
BMP	built-in	
TIFF	built-in	Rendered using a part of the Java JAI Image library.
EPS	built-in	Renders the preview TIFF image inside the EPS.
AI	built-in	Renders the preview image inside the Adobe Illustrator file.
PDF	built-in	Rendered by using the bundled Apache PDF Box library.
JPEG 2000, WBMP	plugin	Renders by installing the *Java Advanced Imaging (JAI) Image I/O Tools* plug-in *(on page 471)*.

When an image cannot be rendered, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Author** mode displays a warning message that contains the reason why this is happening. Possible causes include the following:

- The image is too large. Select the **Show very large images** option *(on page 128)*.
- The image format is not supported by default. It is recommended to install the *Java Advanced Imaging(JAI) Image I/O Tools* plug-in *(on page 471)*.

Tip:

If you are using a custom XML format and you want images to be displayed in **Author** mode, you could use a custom CSS to define the rendering.

For example, if your XML has something like this:

```
<image href="blue.png"/>
```

You can add a selector in your custom CSS like this:

```
image[href]{
    content: attr(href, url);
}
```

Scaling Images

Image dimension and scaling attributes are taken into account when an image is rendered. The following rules apply:

- If you specify only the width attribute of an image, the height of the image is proportionally applied.
- If you specify only the height attribute of an image, the width of the image is proportionally applied.
- If you specify width and height attributes of an image, both of them control the rendered image.
- If you want to scale both the width and height of an image proportionally, use the `@scale` attribute.

Note:
As a Java application, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the *Java Advanced Imaging* API that provides a pluggable support for new image types. If you have an *ImageIO* library that supports additional image formats, just copy this library to the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/lib` directory.

Rendering CGM Images

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers a few add-ons that provide support for CGM 1.0 images.
To allow the rendering of CGM images in **Author** mode, go to https://github.com/oxygenxml/oxygenxml.cgm.support.eclipse and follow the instructions.

Rendering PDF Images

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides built-in support for rendering PDF images in **Author** mode and PDF output.

Rendering PSD Images

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for rendering PSD (Adobe Photoshop) images.

To allow the rendering of PSD images in **Author** mode, follow this procedure:

1. Download the following *JAR (on page 2231)* files:
   - http://search.maven.org/remotecontent?filepath=com/twelvemonkeys/common/common-lang/3.1.0/common-lang-3.1.0.jar
   - http://search.maven.org/remotecontent?filepath=com/twelvemonkeys/common/common-io/3.1.0/common-io-3.1.0.jar
   - http://search.maven.org/remotecontent?filepath=com/twelvemonkeys/common/common-image/3.1.0/common-image-3.1.0.jar

    - http://search.maven.org/remotecontent?filepath=com/twelvemonkeys/imageio/imageio-core/3.1.0/imageio-core-3.1.0.jar
    - http://search.maven.org/remotecontent?filepath=com/twelvemonkeys/imageio/imageio-metadata/3.1.0/imageio-metadata-3.1.0.jar
    - http://search.maven.org/remotecontent?filepath=com/twelvemonkeys/imageio/imageio-psd/3.1.0/imageio-psd-3.1.0.jar
2. Copy the downloaded *JAR* libraries to the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`\lib` directory.
3. Open `OXYGEN_PLUGIN_DIR/META-INF/MANIFEST.MF` and add a reference to the *JAR* libraries in the `Bundle-ClassPath` entry.
4.

Rendering EPS and AI Images

Most EPS and AI image files include a preview picture of the content. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin tries to render this preview picture. The following scenarios are possible:

- The EPS or AI image does not include the preview picture. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin cannot render the image.
- The EPS image includes a TIFF preview picture.

  Note:
  Some newer versions of the TIFF picture preview are rendered in gray-scale.

- The AI image contains a JPEG preview picture. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin renders the image correctly.

Rendering Special Images with Java Advanced Imaging (JAI) Plugin

Certain special image types can be rendered in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin by using a Java Advanced Imaging (JAI) Image I/O Tools plugin.

How to Install JAI Image I/O Tools Plugin

To install this plugin, follow this procedure:

1. Start Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and open the **Help > About** dialog box. Click the **Installation Details** button, go to the **Configuration** tab, and look for the *java.runtime.name* and *java.home* properties. Keep their values for later use.
2. Download the JAI Image I/O kit corresponding to your operating system and Java distribution (found in the *java.runtime.name* property). A list of archived JAI distributions can be found at: http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javasebusiness/downloads/java-archive-downloads-java-client-419417.html.

> **Note:**
> The JAI API is not the same thing as JAI Image I/O. Make sure you have installed the latter.

3. Run the installer. When the installation wizard displays the **Choose Destination Location** page, fill-in the **Destination Folder** field with the value of the *java.home* property. Continue with the installation procedure and follow the on-screen instructions.

macOS Workaround

There is no native implementation of the JAI Image I/O Tools plugin for macOS 10.5 and later. However, it has a Java implementation fallback that also works on macOS. Some of the image formats are not fully supported in this fallback mode, but at least the TIFF image format is known to be supported.

Use the following procedure for this macOS workaround:

1. Download a Linux (`tar.gz`) distribution of the JAI Image I/O Tools plugin. A list of archived JAI distributions can be found at: http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javasebusiness/downloads/java-archive-downloads-java-client-419417.html.
2. In the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/lib` directory, create a directory named `endorsed` (*[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/lib/endorsed`).
3. Unpack the `tar.gz`. Copy the `clibwrapper_jiio.jar` and `jai_imageio.jar` files from its `lib` directory and paste them in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/lib/endorsed` directory.
4. Restart the application and the JAI Image I/O support will be up and running.

Retina/HiDPI Images in Author Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for Retina and HiDPI images through simple naming conventions. The higher resolution images are stored in the same images folder as the normal resolution images and they are identified by a scaling factor that is included in the name of the image files. For instance, images with a Retina scaling factor of 2 will include *@2x* in the name (for example, `myImage@2x.png`). Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the larger set of icons starting with 150% (1.5x) scaling.

You can reference an image to style an element in a CSS by using the `url` function in the `content` property, as in the following example:

```
listItem:before{
   content: url('../img/myImage.png');
}
```

This would place the image that is loaded from the `myImage.png` file just before the `<listItem>` element. However, if you are using a Retina display (on a Mac), the icon looks a bit blurry as it automatically gets scaled, or if you are using an HiDPI display (on a Windows-based PC), the icon remains at the original size, thus it will look very small. To solve this rendering problem, you need to be able to reference both a *normal* DPI image and

a *high* DPI image. However, referencing both of them from the CSS is not practical, as there is no standard way of doing this.

Starting with version 17, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin interprets the argument of the `url` function as key rather than a fixed URL. Therefore, when running on a system with a Retina or HiDPI display, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will first try to find the image file that corresponds to the retina scaling factor. For instance, using the previous example, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin would first try to find `myImage@2x.png`. If this file is not found, it defaults back to the *normal* resolution image file (`myImage.png`).

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also supports dark color themes. This means that the background of the editor area can be of a dark color and the foreground a lighter color. On a dark background, you may find it useful to invert the colors of images. Again, this can be done with simple naming conventions. If an image designed for a dark background is not found, the *normal* image is used.

Retina/HiDPI Naming Convention

Refer to the following table for examples of the Retina/HiDPI image naming convention that is used in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:

Color Theme	Referred Image File	Double Density Image File	Triple Density Image File
normal	../img/myImage.png	../img/myImage@2x.png	../img/myImage@3x.png
dark	../img/myImage_dark.png	../img/myImage_dark@2x.p-ng	../img/myImage_dark@3x.p-ng

Related Information:

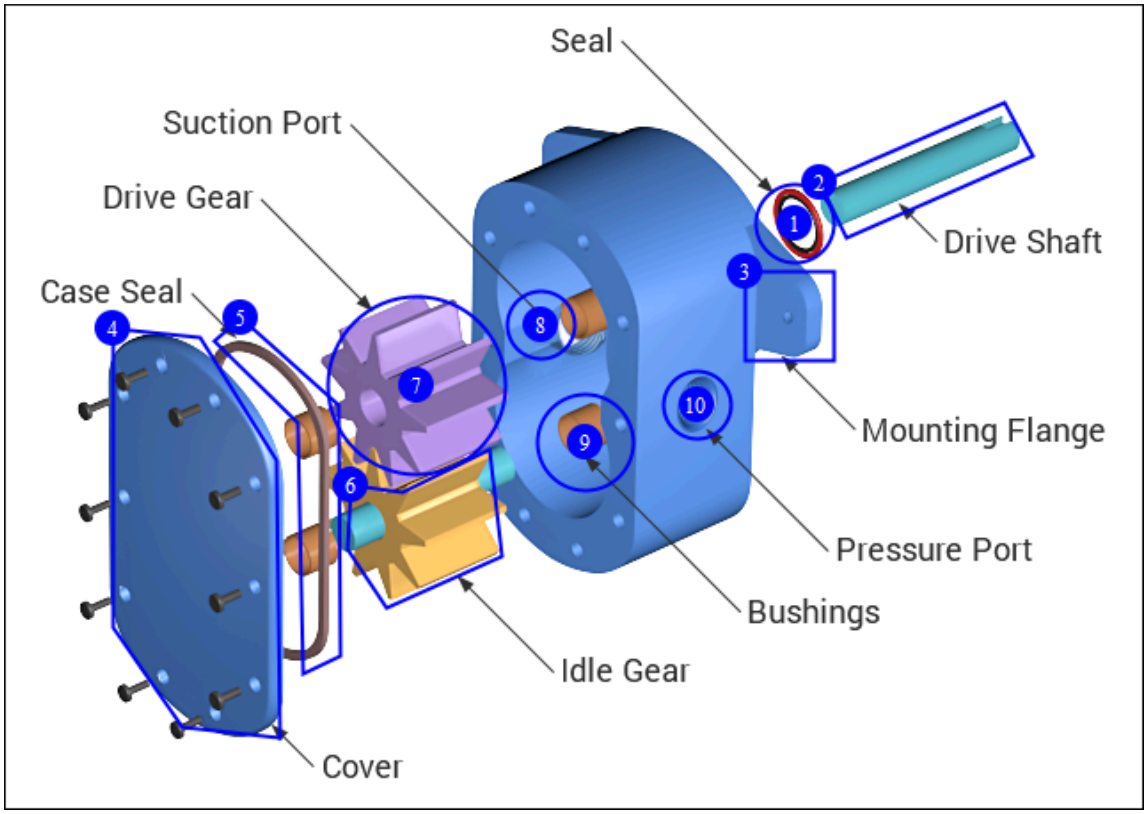
Using Retina/HiDPI Icons for the Actions from a Framework *(on page 1585)*

Image Map Editor

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an **Image Map Editor** that allows you to create hyperlinks in specific areas of an image that will link to various destinations. For example, an image that is a map of the seven continents may have a specific hyperlink for each continent that links to a resource that has information about the particular continent. The main purpose of an **image map** is to provide an easy way of linking various parts of an image without having to divide the image into separate image files.

The support for image maps in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is available for images in DITA, DocBook, TEI, and XHTML document types (*frameworks (on page 2231)*). To create an image map on an existing image and open the **Image Map Editor**, right-click the image and select **Image Map Editor**.

Figure 148. Image Map Rendered in Author Mode



Working with Image Maps in DITA

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for **image maps** in DITA documents through the use of the `<imagemap>` element. This feature provides an easy way to create hyperlinks in various areas within an image without having to divide the image into separate image files. The visual **Author** editing mode includes an **Image Map Editor** that helps you to easily create and configure image maps.

Figure 149. Image Map Editor in DITA

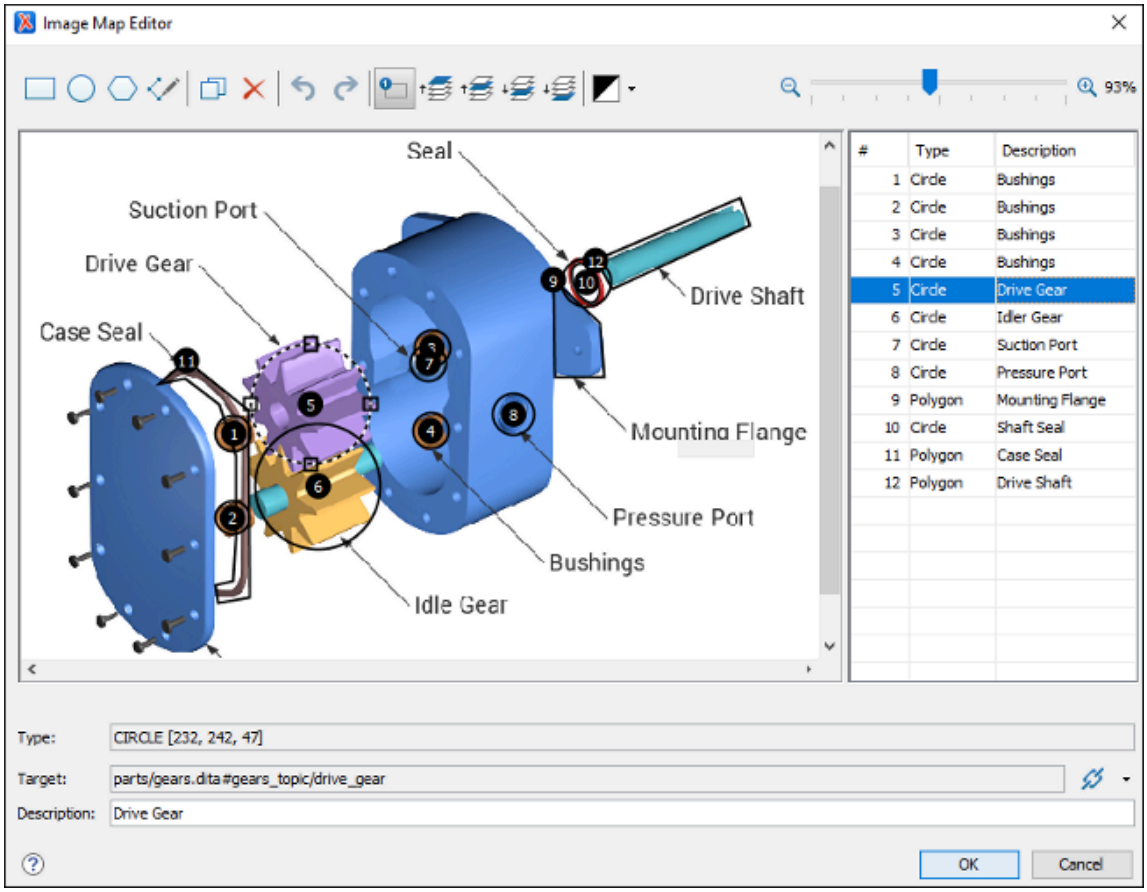


Image Map Editor Interface in DITA

The interface of the **Image Map Editor** consists of the following sections and actions:

Toolbar

New Rectangle

Use this button to draw a rectangular shape over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size and shape of the rectangle.

New Circle

Use this button to draw a circle over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size of the circle.

New Polygon

Use this button to draw a polygon shape over an area in the image. This action opens a dialog box that allows you to select the number of points for the polygon. You can drag any of the points to adjust the size and shape of the polygon.

New Free Form Shape

Use this button to draw a free form shape over an area in the image. After selecting this button, left-click anywhere in the image to place the first point of your shape.

Then move the cursor to the location of the next desired point and left-click to place the next point, and so on. To complete the shape (area), click the first point again and a line will automatically be added from the last point that was added, or simply double-click the last point to automatically add the line from the last point back to the first.

Duplicate

Use this button to create a duplicate of the currently selected shape.

Delete

Use this button to delete the currently selected shape.

Undo

Use this button to undo the last action.

Redo

Use this button to redo the last action that was undone.

Show/Hide Numbers

Use this button to toggle between showing or hiding the numbers for the shapes.

Bring Shape to Front

Use this button to bring the currently selected shape forward to the top layer.

Bring Shape Forward

Use this button to bring the currently selected shape forward one layer.

Send Shape Backward

Use this button to send the currently selected shape back one layer.

Send Shape to Back

Use this button to send the currently selected shape back to the bottom layer.

Color Chooser

Use this drop-down menu to select a color scheme for the lines and numbers of the shapes.

Zoom Slider

Use this slider to zoom the image in or out in the main image pane.

Image Pane

This main Image Pane is where you work with shapes to add hyperlinks to multiple areas within an image. The editing mechanisms that are supported in the Image Pane include the following:

Mouse Controls and Keyboard Shortcuts

- Use the mouse to select and move shapes around in the image pane. It is easy to see which shape is selected in this image pane because the border of the selected shape changes from a solid line to a dotted one.
- You can also drag any of the points of a selected shape to adjust its size and shape.
- You can hold down the **Ctrl** key to select multiple shapes and then move them simultaneously.
- You can also move shapes by using the arrow keys on your keyboard. In addition, you can hold down **Shift** while using the arrow keys to move the shape further or **Alt** to move it 1 pixel at a time.
- To zoom in or out, you can use the **NumPad +** or **NumPad -** keys respectively. Use **Ctrl + NumPad 0** to reset the zoom level to its default value.
- You can use **Ctrl + Z** to undo an action or **Ctrl + Y** to redo the last action that was undone.

Contextual Menu Actions Available in the Image Pane

You can right-click the shapes, points, or anywhere in the Image Pane to invoke the contextual menu where the following actions are available:

Add Point

Adds a point to *Polygon* or *Free Form* shapes.

Remove Point

Removes the current point from *Polygon* or *Free Form* shapes.

Duplicate

Create a duplicate of the currently selected shape.

Delete

Delete the currently selected shape.

New Rectangle

Creates a rectangular shape over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size and shape of the rectangle.

New Circle

Creates a circle over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size of the circle.

New Polygon

Creates a polygon shape over an area in the image. This action opens a dialog box that allows you to select the number of points for the polygon. You can drag any of the points to adjust the size and shape of the polygon.

Undo

Use this action to undo the last action.

Redo

Use this action to redo the last action that was undone.

Shape Table

The table at the right of the *Image Pane* is a sequential list of all the areas (shapes) that have been added in the image. It shows their number, type, and description (if one has been added). If you select one of the entries in the table, the corresponding shape will be selected in the *Image Pane*.

Properties

Type

Displays information about the selected coordinate.

Target

Allows you to choose the target resource that you want the selected area (shape) to be linked to. Select a target by using the **Link** drop-down menu to the right of the text field. You can choose between the following types of links: **Cross Reference**, **File Reference**, or **Web Link**. All three types will open a dialog box that allows you to define the target resource. This linking process is similar to the normal process of inserting links in DITA *(on page 2061)* by using the identical **Link** drop-down menu from the main toolbar.

When you click **OK** to finalize your changes in the **Image Map Editor**, an `<xref>` element will be inserted with either an `@href` attribute or a `@keyref` attribute. Additional attributes may also be inserted and their values depend on the target and the type of link. For details about the three types of links and their dialog boxes, see Inserting a Link in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *(on page 2061)*.

Description

You can enter an optional description for the selected area (shape) that will be displayed in the **Image Map Details** section *(on page 479)* in **Author** mode and as a tooltip message when the end-user hovers over the hyperlink in the output.

How to Create an Image Map in DITA

To create an image map on an existing image in a DITA document, follow these steps:

1. Right-click the image and select **Image Map Editor**.

   Step Result: This action will apply an *image map* to the current image and open the **Image Map Editor** dialog box.

2. Add hyperlinks to the image by selecting one of the shape buttons (**New Rectangle**, **New Circle**, or **New Polygon**).
3. Move the shape to the desired area in the image and drag any of the points on the shape to adjust its size or form. You can use the other buttons on the toolbar *(on page 475)* to adjust its layer and color, or to perform other editing actions.

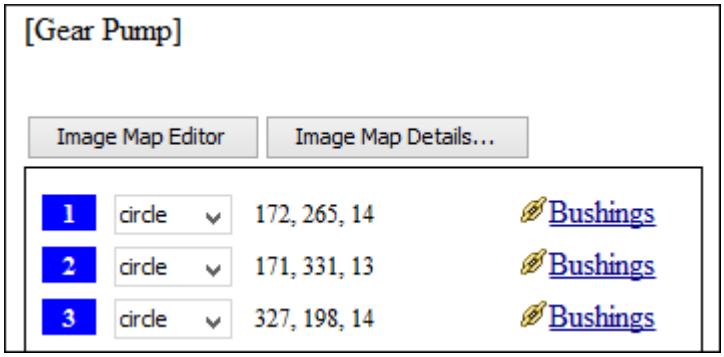
   > **Tip:**
   > You can right-click any of the points, shapes, or anywhere in the Image Pane to access various helpful contextual menu actions *(on page 477)*. For example, the easiest way to remove a point is to right-click the point and select **Remove Point**.

4. With the shape selected, use one of the linking options *(on page 478)* in the **Link** drop-down menu to select a target resource (or enter its path in the **Target** *(on page 478)* text field).
5. (Optional) Enter a **Description** *(on page 478)* for the selected area (shape).
6. If you want to add more hyperlinks to the image, select a shape button again and repeat the appropriate steps.
7. When you are finished creating hyperlinks, click **OK** to process your changes.

Result: The *image map* is applied on the image and the appropriate elements and attributes are automatically added. In **Author** mode, the image map is now rendered over the image. If the image includes an `<alt>` element, its value will be displayed under the image. The following two buttons will also now be available under the image in **Author** mode:

- **Image Map Editor** - Click this button to open the **Image Map Editor**.
- **Image Map Details** - Click this button to expand a section that displays the details of the image map and allows you to change the shape and coordinates of the hyperlinked areas. Keep in mind that if you change the shape in this section, you also need to add or remove coordinates to match the requirements of the new shape.

Figure 150. Image Map Details



How to Edit an Existing Image Map in DITA

To edit an existing image map, use any of the following methods:

- Simply double-click the image.
- Right-click the image and select **Image Map Editor**.
- Click the **Image Map Editor** button below the image.

All three methods open the **Image Map Editor** where you can make changes to the image map using the various features described above. You can also make changes to the XML structure of the image map in the **Text** editing mode.

You can also click the **Image Map Details** button below the image to expand a section that displays the details of the image map and allows you to change the shape and coordinates of the hyperlinked areas. Keep in mind that if you change the shape in this section, you also need to add or remove coordinates to match the requirements of the new shape.

Overlapping Areas

If shapes overlap one another in the **Image Map Editor**, the one on the top layer takes precedence. The number shown inside each shape represents its layer (if the numbers are not displayed, click the **Show/Hide Numbers** button on the **Image Map Editor** toolbar *(on page 475)*). To change the layer order for a shape, use the layer buttons on the **Image Map Editor** toolbar *(on page 475)* (, , ,).

If you insert a shape and all of its coordinates are completely inside another shape, the **Image Map Editor** will display a warning to let you know that the shape is entirely covered by a bigger shape. Keep in mind that if a shape is completely inside another shape, its hyperlink will only be accessible if its layer is on top of the bigger shape.

Related Information:
DITA '*imagemap*' Element Specifications
Working with Images in DITA Topics *(on page 1960)*

Image Maps in DocBook

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for **image maps** in DocBook documents through the use of the `<areaspec>` element. This feature provides an easy way to create hyperlinks in various parts of an image without having to divide the image into separate image files. The visual **Author** editing mode includes an **Image Map Editor** that helps you to easily create and configure image maps.

Figure 151. Image Map Editor in DocBook

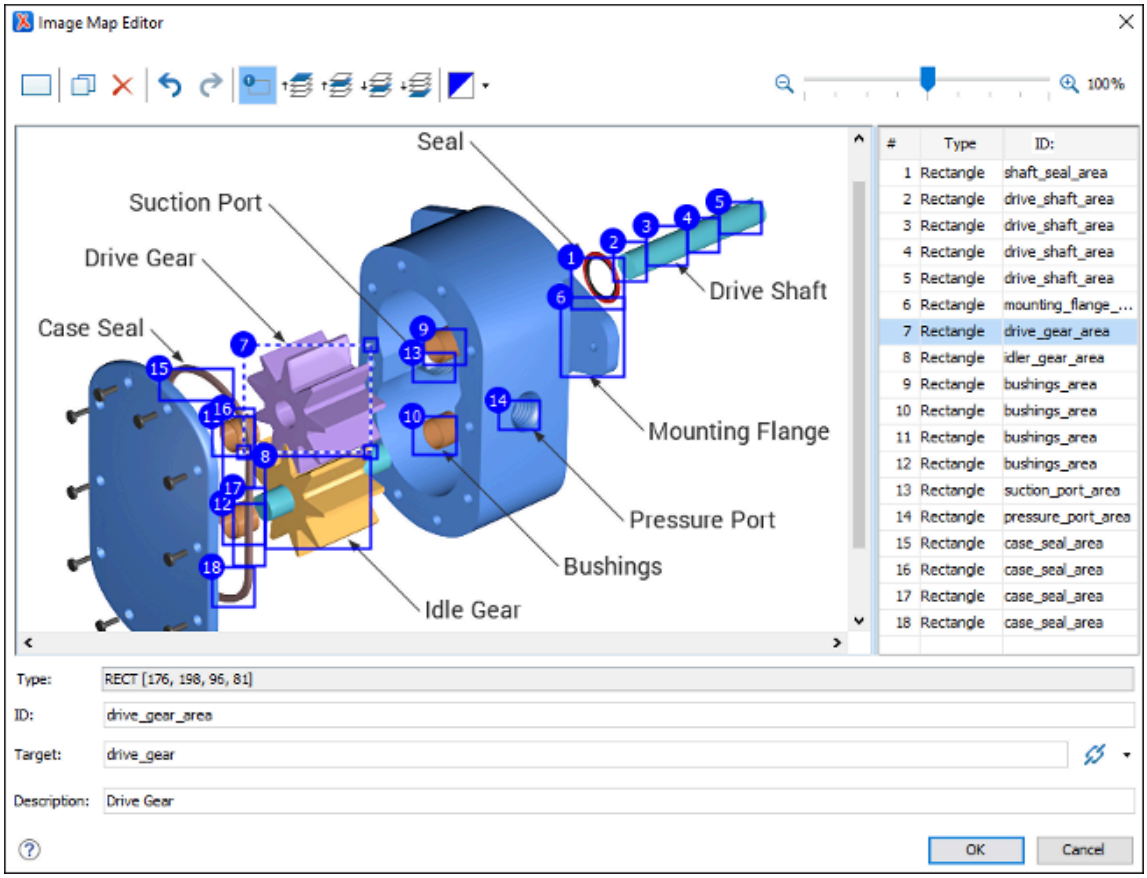


Image Map Editor Interface in DocBook

The interface of the **Image Map Editor** consists of the following sections and actions:

Toolbar

New Rectangle

Use this button to draw a rectangular shape over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size and shape of the rectangle.

Duplicate

Use this button to create a duplicate of the currently selected shape.

Delete

Use this button to delete the currently selected shape.

Undo

Use this button to undo the last action.

Redo

Use this button to redo the last action that was undone.

Show/Hide Numbers

Use this button to toggle between showing or hiding the numbers for the shapes.

Bring Shape to Front

Use this button to bring the currently selected shape forward to the top layer.

Bring Shape Forward

Use this button to bring the currently selected shape forward one layer.

Send Shape Backward

Use this button to send the currently selected shape back one layer.

Send Shape to Back

Use this button to send the currently selected shape back to the bottom layer.

Color Chooser

Use this drop-down menu to select a color scheme for the lines and numbers of the shapes.

Zoom Slider

Use this slider to zoom the image in or out in the main image pane.

Image Pane

This main Image Pane is where you work with shapes to add hyperlinks to multiple areas within an image. The editing mechanisms that are supported in the Image Pane include the following:

Mouse Controls and Keyboard Shortcuts

- Use the mouse to select and move shapes around in the image pane. It is easy to see which shape is selected in this image pane because the border of the selected shape changes from a solid line to a dotted one.
- You can also drag any of the points of a selected shape to adjust its size and shape.
- You can hold down the **Ctrl** key to select multiple shapes and then move them simultaneously.
- You can also move shapes by using the arrow keys on your keyboard. In addition, you can hold down **Shift** while using the arrow keys to move the shape further or **Alt** to move it 1 pixel at a time.
- To zoom in or out, you can use the **NumPad +** or **NumPad -** keys respectively. Use **Ctrl + NumPad 0** to reset the zoom level to its default value.
- You can use **Ctrl + Z** to undo an action or **Ctrl + Y** to redo the last action that was undone.

Contextual Menu Actions Available in the Image Pane

You can right-click the shapes, or anywhere in the Image Pane to invoke the contextual menu where the following actions are available:

Duplicate

Create a duplicate of the currently selected shape.

Delete

Delete the currently selected shape.

New Rectangle

Creates a rectangular shape over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size and shape of the rectangle.

Undo

Use this action to undo the last action.

Redo

Use this action to redo the last action that was undone.

Shape Table

The table at the right of the *Image Pane* is a sequential list of all the areas (shapes) that have been added in the image. It shows their number, type, and ID. If you select one of the entries in the table, the corresponding shape will be selected in the *Image Pane*.

Properties

Type

Displays information about the selected coordinate.

ID

The identifier for the selected area. This will become the value of the `@xml:id` attribute for the particular `<area>` element.

Target

Allows you to choose the target resource that you want the selected area to be linked to. You can enter the path to the target in the text field but the easiest way to select a target is to use the **Link** drop-down menu to the right of the text field. You can choose between the following types of links: **Cross Reference** or **Web Link**. Both types open a dialog box that allows you to select the target resource and it is inserted as the value of an `@xlink:href` attribute.

Description

You can enter an optional description for the selected area that will be displayed in the **Image Map Details** section *(on page 484)* in **Author** mode and as a tooltip message when the end-user hovers over the hyperlink in the output.

How to Create an Image Map in DocBook

To create an image map on an existing image in a DocBook document, follow these steps:

1. Right-click the image and select **Image Map Editor**.

   Step Result: This action will apply an *image map* to the current image and open the **Image Map Editor** dialog box.

2. Add hyperlinks to the image by selecting the **New Rectangle** button.
3. Move the shape to the desired area in the image and drag any of the points on the shape to adjust its size or form. You can use the other buttons on the toolbar *(on page 481)* to adjust its layer and color, or to perform other editing actions.

   > **Tip:**
   > You can right-click any of the shapes or anywhere in the Image Pane to access various helpful contextual menu actions *(on page 482)*.

4. With the shape selected, enter an **ID** *(on page 483)* and use one of the linking options *(on page 483)* in the **Link** drop-down menu to select a target resource (or enter its path in the **Target** *(on page 483)* text field).
5. (Optional) Enter a **Description** *(on page 483)* for the selected area (shape).
6. If you want to add more hyperlinks to the image, select **New Rectangle** button again and repeat the appropriate steps.
7. When you are finished creating hyperlinks, click **OK** to process your changes.

Result: The *image map* is applied on the image and the appropriate elements and attributes are automatically added. In **Author** mode, the image map is now rendered over the image. If the image includes an `<alt>` element, its value will be displayed above the image. The following two buttons will also now be available at the top of the image in **Author** mode:

- **Image Map Editor** - Click this button to open the **Image Map Editor**.
- **Image Map Details** - Click this button to expand a section that displays the details of the image map.

How to Edit an Existing Image Map in DocBook

To edit an existing image map, use any of the following methods:

- Simply double-click the image.
- Right-click the image and select **Image Map Editor**.
- Click the **Image Map Editor** button below the image.

All three methods open the **Image Map Editor** where you can make changes to the image map using the various features described above. You can also make changes to the XML structure of the image map in the **Text** editing mode.

You can also click the **Image Map Details** button above the image to expand a section that displays the details of the image map and allows you to change the coordinates and IDs of the hyperlinked areas.

Note:
If you want to link a set of related `<area>` elements, you can use `<areaset>` elements. To add `<areaset>` elements, and `<area>` elements to the *areasets*, switch to **Text** mode and insert them manually.

Overlapping Areas

If shapes overlap one another in the **Image Map Editor**, the one on the top layer takes precedence. The number shown inside each shape represents its layer (if the numbers are not displayed, click the **Show/Hide Numbers** button on the **Image Map Editor** toolbar *(on page 481)*). To change the layer order for a shape, use the layer buttons on the **Image Map Editor** toolbar *(on page 481)* (, , ,).

If you insert a shape and all of its coordinates are completely inside another shape, the **Image Map Editor** will display a warning to let you know that the shape is entirely covered by a bigger shape. Keep in mind that if a shape is completely inside another shape, its hyperlink will only be accessible if its layer is on top of the bigger shape.

Related Information:
DocBook '*areaspec*' Element Specifications

Image Maps in TEI

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for **image maps** in TEI documents through the use of the `<facsimile>` element. In TEI documents, this feature provides an easy way to create areas (using `<zone>` elements) in an image where the end-user can hover or click to retrieve more information about that particular area of the image. The visual **Author** editing mode includes an **Image Map Editor** that helps you to easily create the areas in the image.

Figure 152. Image Map Editor in TEI

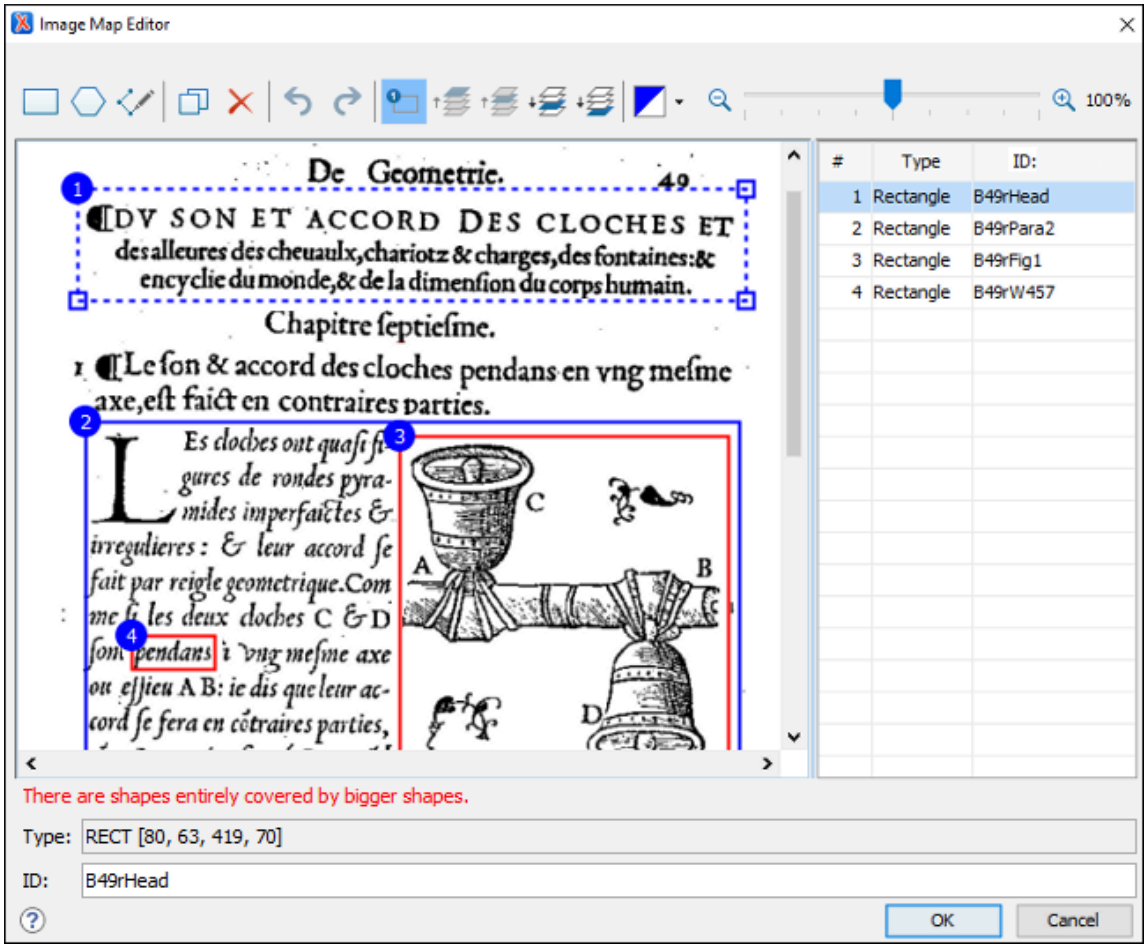


Image Map Editor Interface in TEI

The interface of the **Image Map Editor** consists of the following sections and actions:

Toolbar

New Rectangle

Use this button to draw a rectangular shape over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size and shape of the rectangle.

New Polygon

Use this button to draw a polygon shape over an area in the image. This action opens a dialog box that allows you to select the number of points for the polygon. You can drag any of the points to adjust the size and shape of the polygon.

New Free Form Shape

Use this button to draw a free form shape over an area in the image. After selecting this button, left-click anywhere in the image to place the first point of your shape. Then move the cursor to the location of the next desired point and left-click to place the next point, and so on. To complete the shape (area), click the first point again and a line will automatically be added from the last point that was added, or

simply double-click the last point to automatically add the line from the last point back to the first.

Duplicate

Use this button to create a duplicate of the currently selected shape.

Delete

Use this button to delete the currently selected shape.

Undo

Use this button to undo the last action.

Redo

Use this button to redo the last action that was undone.

Show/Hide Numbers

Use this button to toggle between showing or hiding the numbers for the shapes.

Bring Shape to Front

Use this button to bring the currently selected shape forward to the top layer.

Bring Shape Forward

Use this button to bring the currently selected shape forward one layer.

Send Shape Backward

Use this button to send the currently selected shape back one layer.

Send Shape to Back

Use this button to send the currently selected shape back to the bottom layer.

Color Chooser

Use this drop-down menu to select a color scheme for the lines and numbers of the shapes.

Zoom Slider

Use this slider to zoom the image in or out in the main image pane.

Image Pane

This main Image Pane is where you work with shapes to add hyperlinks to multiple areas within an image. The editing mechanisms that are supported in the Image Pane include the following:

Mouse Controls and Keyboard Shortcuts

- Use the mouse to select and move shapes around in the image pane. It is easy to see which shape is selected in this image pane because the border of the selected shape changes from a solid line to a dotted one.
- You can also drag any of the points of a selected shape to adjust its size and shape.
- You can hold down the **Ctrl** key to select multiple shapes and then move them simultaneously.
- You can also move shapes by using the arrow keys on your keyboard. In addition, you can hold down **Shift** while using the arrow keys to move the shape further or **Alt** to move it 1 pixel at a time.
- To zoom in or out, you can use the **NumPad +** or **NumPad -** keys respectively. Use **Ctrl + NumPad 0** to reset the zoom level to its default value.
- You can use **Ctrl + Z** to undo an action or **Ctrl + Y** to redo the last action that was undone.

Contextual Menu Actions

You can right-click the shapes, points, or anywhere in the Image Pane to invoke the contextual menu where the following actions are available:

Add Point

Adds a point to *Polygon* or *Free Form* shapes.

Remove Point

Removes the current point from *Polygon* or *Free Form* shapes.

Duplicate

Create a duplicate of the currently selected shape.

Delete

Delete the currently selected shape.

New Rectangle

Creates a rectangular shape over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size and shape of the rectangle.

New Polygon

Creates a polygon shape over an area in the image. This action opens a dialog box that allows you to select the number of points for the polygon. You can drag any of the points to adjust the size and shape of the polygon.

Undo

Use this action to undo the last action.

Redo

Use this action to redo the last action that was undone.

Shape Table

The table at the right of the *Image Pane* is a sequential list of all the areas (shapes) that have been added in the image. It shows their number, type, and ID. If you select one of the entries in the table, the corresponding shape will be selected in the *Image Pane*.

Properties

Type

Displays information about the selected coordinate.

ID

The identifier for the selected area. This will become the value of the `@xml:id` attribute for the particular `<zone>` element. When you insert a new zone, a unique ID is automatically generated and displayed in this field. However, you can change this value if you want to.

How to Create an Image Map in TEI

To create an image map on an existing image in a TEI document, follow these steps:

1. The image (`<graphic>`) must be inside a `<facsimile>` element to support the **Image Map Editor** feature.
2. Right-click the image and select **Image Map Editor**.

   Step Result: This action will apply an *image map* to the current image and open the **Image Map Editor** dialog box.
3. Add areas (zones) in the image by selecting one of the shape buttons (**New Rectangle** or **New Polygon**).
4. Move the shape to the desired area in the image and drag any of the points on the shape to adjust its size or form. You can use the other buttons on the toolbar *(on page 486)* to adjust its layer and color, or to perform other editing actions.

   > **Tip:**
   > You can right-click any of the points, shapes, or anywhere in the Image Pane to access various helpful contextual menu actions *(on page 488)*. For example, the easiest way to remove a point is to right-click the point and select **Remove Point**.
5. With the shape selected, enter an **ID** *(on page 489)*.

6. If you want to add more areas (zones) to the image, select a shape button again and repeat the appropriate steps.
7. When you are finished, click **OK** to process your changes.

Result: The *image map* is applied on the image and the appropriate elements and attributes are automatically added. In **Author** mode, the image map is now rendered over the image and the following two buttons will now be available at the bottom of the image:

- **Image Map Editor** - Click this button to open the **Image Map Editor**.
- **Image Map Details** - Click this button to expand a section that displays the details of the image map.

How to Edit an Existing Image Map in TEI

To edit an existing image map, use any of the following methods:

- Simply double-click the image.
- Right-click the image and select **Image Map Editor**.
- Click the **Image Map Editor** button below the image.

All three methods open the **Image Map Editor** where you can make changes to the image map using the various features described above. You can also make changes to the XML structure of the image map in the **Text** editing mode.

You can also click the **Image Map Details** button below the image to expand a section that displays the details of the image map and allows you to change the coordinates and IDs of the hyperlinked areas.

Restriction:
Currently, if `<zone>` elements contain additional content (such as text or comments) and you edit the image map, the **Image Map Editor** does not preserve the additional content. Therefore, if you do need to insert additional content inside the `<zone>` elements, you should do so after the image map has been created and finalized. Subsequent changes to the image map should then be done in **Text** mode.

Overlapping Areas

If shapes overlap one another in the **Image Map Editor**, the one on the top layer takes precedence. The number shown inside each shape represents its layer (if the numbers are not displayed, click the **Show/Hide Numbers** button on the **Image Map Editor** toolbar *(on page 486)*). To change the layer order for a shape, use the layer buttons on the **Image Map Editor** toolbar *(on page 486)* (, , ,).

If you insert a shape and all of its coordinates are completely inside another shape, the **Image Map Editor** will display a warning to let you know that the shape is entirely covered by a bigger shape. Keep in mind that if a shape is completely inside another shape, its hyperlink will only be accessible if its layer is on top of the bigger shape.

Warning:
PDF output is limited to rectangular shaped image map objects. Therefore, if your image contains circles or polygons, those objects will be redrawn as rectangles in the PDF output. Keep in mind that this might affect overlaps in the output.

Image Maps in XHTML

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for **image maps** in XHTML documents. This feature provides an easy way to create hyperlinks in various parts of an image without having to divide the image into separate image files. In HTML, an image (in the form of an `<img>` element) may be associated with an image map (in the form of a `<map>` element) by specifying a `@usemap` attribute on the `<img>` element. The visual **Author** editing mode includes an **Image Map Editor** that helps you to easily create and configure image maps.

Figure 153. Image Map Editor in XHTML

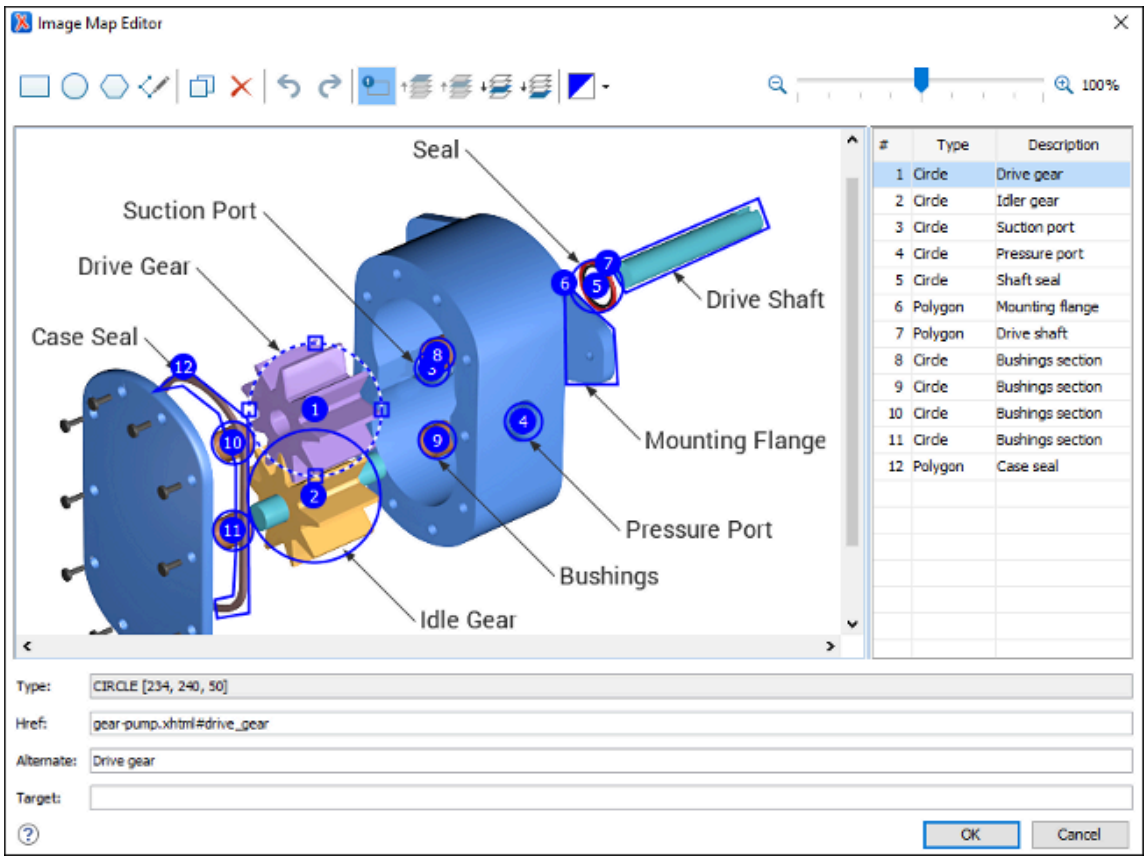


Image Map Editor Interface in XHTML

The interface of the **Image Map Editor** consists of the following sections and actions:

Toolbar

New Rectangle

Use this button to draw a rectangular shape over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size and shape of the rectangle.

New Circle

Use this button to draw a circle over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size of the circle.

New Polygon

Use this button to draw a polygon shape over an area in the image. This action opens a dialog box that allows you to select the number of points for the polygon. You can drag any of the points to adjust the size and shape of the polygon.

New Free Form Shape

Use this button to draw a free form shape over an area in the image. After selecting this button, left-click anywhere in the image to place the first point of your shape. Then move the cursor to the location of the next desired point and left-click to place the next point, and so on. To complete the shape (area), click the first point again and a line will automatically be added from the last point that was added, or simply double-click the last point to automatically add the line from the last point back to the first.

Duplicate

Use this button to create a duplicate of the currently selected shape.

Delete

Use this button to delete the currently selected shape.

Undo

Use this button to undo the last action.

Redo

Use this button to redo the last action that was undone.

Show/Hide Numbers

Use this button to toggle between showing or hiding the numbers for the shapes.

Bring Shape to Front

Use this button to bring the currently selected shape forward to the top layer.

Bring Shape Forward

Use this button to bring the currently selected shape forward one layer.

Send Shape Backward

Use this button to send the currently selected shape back one layer.

Send Shape to Back

Use this button to send the currently selected shape back to the bottom layer.

Color Chooser

Use this drop-down menu to select a color scheme for the lines and numbers of the shapes.

Zoom Slider

Use this slider to zoom the image in or out in the main image pane.

Image Pane

This main Image Pane is where you work with shapes to add hyperlinks to multiple areas within an image. The editing mechanisms that are supported in the Image Pane include the following:

Mouse Controls and Keyboard Shortcuts

- Use the mouse to select and move shapes around in the image pane. It is easy to see which shape is selected in this image pane because the border of the selected shape changes from a solid line to a dotted one.
- You can also drag any of the points of a selected shape to adjust its size and shape.
- You can hold down the **Ctrl** key to select multiple shapes and then move them simultaneously.
- You can also move shapes by using the arrow keys on your keyboard. In addition, you can hold down **Shift** while using the arrow keys to move the shape further or **Alt** to move it 1 pixel at a time.
- To zoom in or out, you can use the **NumPad +** or **NumPad -** keys respectively. Use **Ctrl + NumPad 0** to reset the zoom level to its default value.
- You can use **Ctrl + Z** to undo an action or **Ctrl + Y** to redo the last action that was undone.

Contextual Menu Actions Available in the Image Pane

You can right-click the shapes, points, or anywhere in the Image Pane to invoke the contextual menu where the following actions are available:

Add Point

Adds a point to *Polygon* or *Free Form* shapes.

Remove Point

Removes the current point from *Polygon* or *Free Form* shapes.

Duplicate

Create a duplicate of the currently selected shape.

Delete

Delete the currently selected shape.

New Rectangle

Creates a rectangular shape over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size and shape of the rectangle.

New Circle

Creates a circle over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size of the circle.

New Polygon

Creates a polygon shape over an area in the image. This action opens a dialog box that allows you to select the number of points for the polygon. You can drag any of the points to adjust the size and shape of the polygon.

Undo

Use this action to undo the last action.

Redo

Use this action to redo the last action that was undone.

Shape Table

The table at the right of the *Image Pane* is a sequential list of all the areas (shapes) that have been added in the image. It shows their number, type, and description (value of the **Alternative** property). If you select one of the entries in the table, the corresponding shape will be selected in the *Image Pane*.

Properties

Type

Displays information about the selected coordinate.

Href

Specifies the hyperlink target for the selected area. This will become the value of the `@href` attribute for the particular `<area>` element. The possible values are:

- **An Absolute URL** - A URL of another website (for example, `http://www.example.com/index.htm`).
- **A Relative URL** - A link to a file within your website (for example, `index.htm`).
- **An Element** - A link to the ID of an element within the page (for example, `#top`).

- **Other Protocols** - A specified path using other protocols (such as `https://`, `sftp://`, `mailto:`, `file:`).
- **A Script** - A link to a script (for example, `javascript:alert('Hello');`)

Alternate

The description for the selected area. The value is inserted in an `@alt` attribute in the particular `<area>` element. This is a required attribute to present a text alternative for browsers that do not display images.

Target

Specifies where to open the linked resource. The allowed values are:

- **_blank** - Opens the linked resource in a new window or tab.
- **_self** - Opens the linked resource in the same frame as it was clicked.
- **_parent** - Opens the linked resource in the full body of the window.
- **framename** - Opens the linked resource in the named frame.

How to Create an Image Map in XHTML

To create an image map on an existing image in an XHTML document, follow these steps:

1. Right-click the image and select **Image Map Editor**.

   Step Result: This action will apply an *image map* to the current image and open the **Image Map Editor** dialog box.

2. Add hyperlinks to the image by selecting one of the shape buttons (**New Rectangle**, **New Circle**, or **New Polygon**).
3. Move the shape to the desired area in the image and drag any of the points on the shape to adjust its size or form. You can use the other buttons on the toolbar *(on page 491)* to adjust its layer and color, or to perform other editing actions.

   Tip:
   You can right-click any of the points, shapes, or anywhere in the Image Pane to access various helpful contextual menu actions *(on page 493)*. For example, the easiest way to remove a point is to right-click the point and select **Remove Point**.

4. With the shape selected, specify the hyperlink target in the **Href** field *(on page 494)* and enter a description for the selected area in the **Alternate** field *(on page 495)*.
5. (Optional) Specify where the hyperlink resource will be opened in the **Target** field *(on page 495)*.
6. If you want to add more hyperlinks to the image, select a shape button again and repeat the appropriate steps.
7. When you are finished creating hyperlinks, click **OK** to process your changes.

Result: The *image map* is applied on the image and the appropriate elements and attributes are automatically added. In **Author** mode, the image map is now rendered over the image and its properties are displayed in a section below the image.

How to Edit an Existing Image Map in XHTML

To edit an existing image map, use any of the following methods:

- Simply double-click the image.
- Right-click the image and select **Image Map Editor**.
- Click the **Image Map Editor** button below the image.

All three methods open the **Image Map Editor** where you can make changes to the image map using the various features described above. You can also make changes to the XML structure of the image map in the **Text** editing mode.

In **Author** mode, the details of the image map are also displayed below the image and you can edit the description, href, shape, and coordinates of the hyperlinked areas. Keep in mind that if you change the shape in this section, you also need to add or remove coordinates to match the requirements of the new shape.

Overlapping Areas

If shapes overlap one another in the **Image Map Editor**, the one on the top layer takes precedence. The number shown inside each shape represents its layer (if the numbers are not displayed, click the **Show/Hide Numbers** button on the **Image Map Editor** toolbar *(on page 491)*). To change the layer order for a shape, use the layer buttons on the **Image Map Editor** toolbar *(on page 491)* (, , ,).

If you insert a shape and all of its coordinates are completely inside another shape, the **Image Map Editor** will display a warning to let you know that the shape is entirely covered by a bigger shape. Keep in mind that if a shape is completely inside another shape, its hyperlink will only be accessible if its layer is on top of the bigger shape.

Warning:
PDF output is limited to rectangular shaped image map objects. Therefore, if your image contains circles or polygons, those objects will be redrawn as rectangles in the PDF output. Keep in mind that this might affect overlaps in the output.

Related Information:
HTML Image Map Specifications

Adding Video, Audio, and Embedded HTML Resources

You can insert references to media resources (such as videos, audio clips, or embedded HTML frames) in your DITA, DocBook, or XHTML topics. The media resources can be played directly in **Author** mode and in all

HTML5-based outputs. There is a toolbar button ( ) that allows you to insert and configure a reference to the media resource. You can also drag media files from your system explorer or the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and drop them into your documents (or copy and paste them).

Table 5. Supported Media Types

Media	Description	Type	Supported Size Properties
mp3	Moving Picture Experts Group Layer-3 Audio	audio	Width
wav	Windows Wave	audio	Width
pcm	Pulse Code Modulation	audio	Width
m4a	Moving Picture Experts Group Layer-4 Audio	audio	Width
aif	Audio Interchange Format	audio	Width
mp4	Moving Picture Experts Group Layer-4 Video	video	Width & Height
m4v	iTunes Video File	video	Width & Height
avi	Audio Video Interleaved	video	Width & Height
embedded video (such as *YouTube*, *Vimeo*, or *Vidyard*)	Embedded Iframe Code	iframe	Width & Height

Adding a Media Resource

To insert a media resource in a document, use the following procedure:

1. Place the cursor at the location where you want the media resource.
2. Select the **Insert Media Resource** action from the toolbar. A **Chose Media** dialog box appears.

   > **Note:**
   > You can also drag media files from your system explorer or the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and drop them into your documents (or copy and paste them).

3. Select the URL for the media resource and click **Ok**.

Result in Author Mode: A reference to the specified media object is inserted and rendered in **Author** mode so that it can be played directly from there.

Attention:

- On Ubuntu 17.10, if you receive an error when trying to play videos in **Author** mode, you need to install the `libavformat57` library.

Result in Output: In the publishing stage, the media object is converted to an HTML5 element so that it can be rendered properly and played in all HTML5-based outputs.

Embedding HTML Content in DITA Topics

The DITA Open Toolkit that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a pre-installed *plugin (on page 2232)* that allows you to embed well-formed HTML content directly in a DITA topic.

For example, suppose you wanted to embed a YouTube video directly in a DITA topic.

The DITA topic would look like this:

```
....
<foreign outputclass="html-embed"><![CDATA[
                <iframe width="420" height="315"
                  src="https://www.youtube.com/embed/qepRkQxhTX"
                  frameborder="0" allowfullscreen="true">
                </iframe>
                ]]></foreign>
....
```

The converted HTML output would look like this:

```
...........
<iframe width="420" height="315" src="https://www.youtube.com/embed/qepRkQxhTX"
frameborder="0" allowfullscreen="true">
</iframe>
............
```

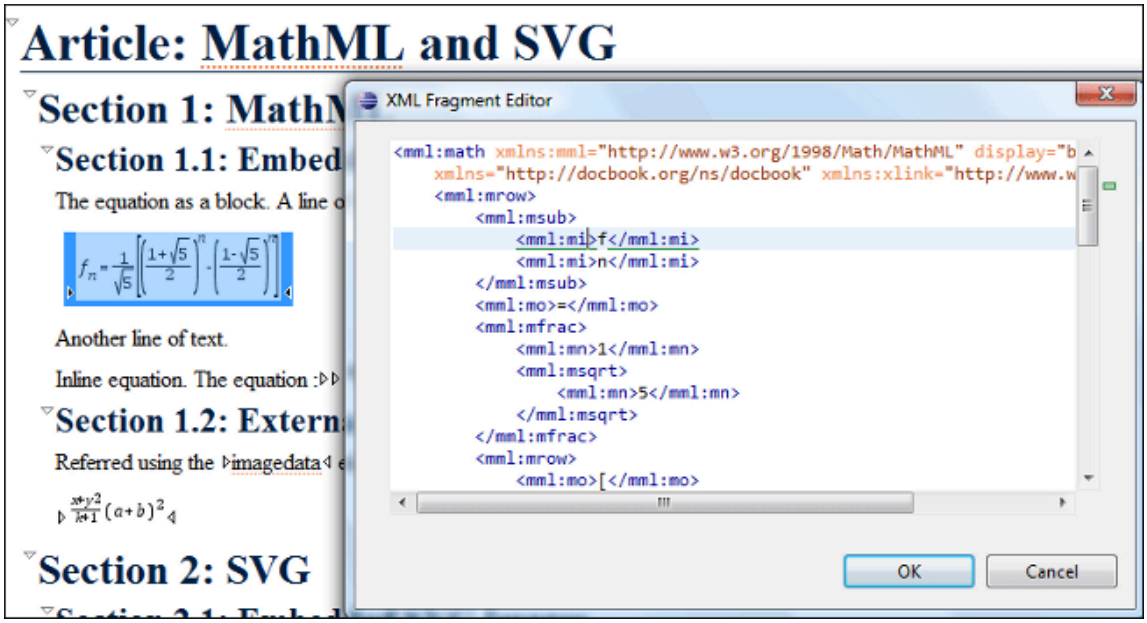
The *plugin* is also available on the *oxygenxml GitHub projects page*.

Related Information:
How to Add Video and Audio Objects in DITA WebHelp Output *(on page 1076)*

Editing MathML Notations

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in editor for *MathML* notations. To start the *MathML* editor, double-click a *MathML* notation (for embedded notations, you can also select the **Edit Equation** action from its contextual menu).

Figure 154. Default *MathML* Editor



Tip:
For editing *MathML* equations, you can also try free choices, such as Apache OpenOffice Math *(on page 499)* or LibreOffice Math *(on page 499)*.

Configuring the MathType Editor

The Wiris *MathType* integration can replace the default *MathML* editor with a specialized *MathML* editor.

Installation steps and details about purchasing the product can be found here: https://docs.wiris.com/mathtype/en/mathtype-for-oxygen-xml-author/mathtype-for-oxygen-xml-author.html.

Configuring an External MathML Editor

You can configure Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to use a third-party MathML editor (e.g. the free Libre Office equation editor) by following these steps:

1. Install the third-party application (for example, Libre Office).
2. Open the **MathML** preferences page *(on page 135)* and in the **External application > Command line** field, set the command line used to open the external application.

   For example, the following commands could be used to edit MathML equations with a LibreOffice application (depending on the O.S.):
   - **Windows** - `"C:\Program Files\LibreOffice\program\smath.exe" --nologo "${cf}"`
   - **macOS** - `/Applications/LibreOffice.app/Contents/MacOS/soffice --math --nologo "${cf}"`
   - **Linux** - `/usr/lib/libreoffice/program/smath --nologo "${cf}"`

   You can use the `${cf}` editor variable in the command line to refer to a temporary file automatically created by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin that will contain the edited MathML content.

3. Insert a new equation or double-click an existing equation. The external application starts and it should display the equation inside it. Once you save the equation and close the external application, the equation rendered in the **Author** visual editing mode will refresh its contents based on your changes. When editing and saving the equation in the started external application, do not alter the path to the saved file in any way as the file is specifically saved in a location from where the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin application will load it automatically.

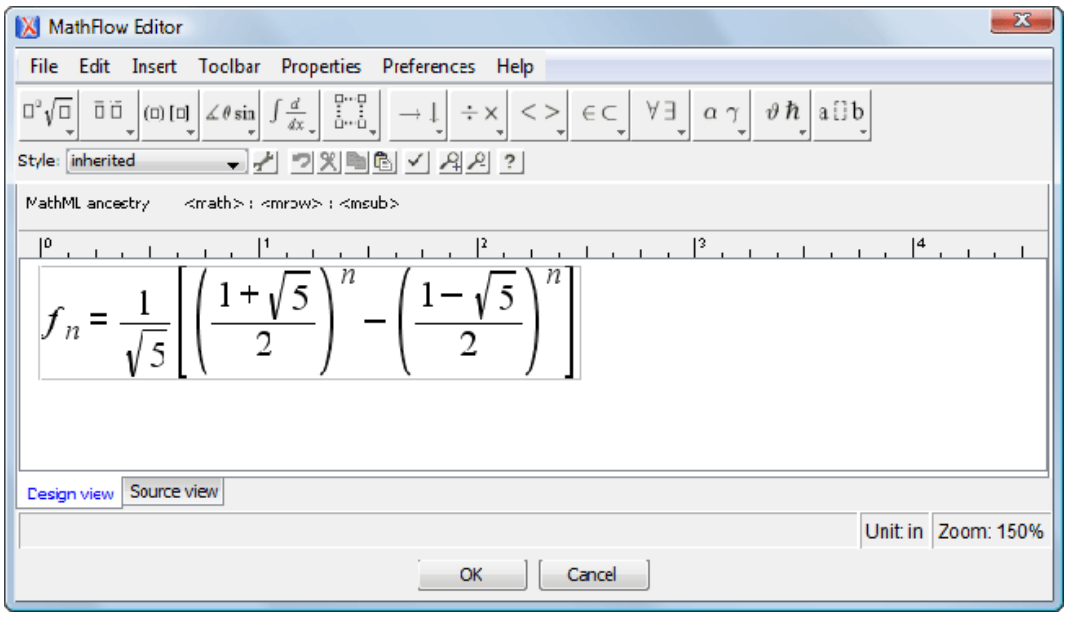
Configuring the MathFlow Editor (Deprecated)

Note:
The *MathFlow* editor integration has been marked as deprecated and was replaced with a new *MathType* integration developed by *Wiris* *(on page 499)*.

The *MathFlow* Components product can replace the default *MathML* editor with a specialized *MathML* editor. You have to purchase a *MathFlow* Component from Wiris and configure it in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin with the following procedure:

1. Install *MathFlow* by using the *Universal* installer (for versions prior to 2.1, use the *MathFlow SDK*).
2. Set the path to the *MathFlow* install folder in the **MathML** preferences page *(on page 135)*.
3. Set the path to the *MathFlow* license file in the **MathML** preferences page *(on page 135)*.

Figure 155. Default MathFlow Editor



Special Character Support in Author Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers support for bidirectional text, such as Arabic or Hebrew languages that require right-to-left scripts, certain Asian languages (such as *Devanagari*, *Bengali*, *Gurmukhi*, *Gujarati*, *Oriya*, *Tamil*, *Telugu*, *Kannada*, *Malayalam*, *Sinhala*, *Thai*, *Khmer*), or other special characters (such as combining characters). To achieve this, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the Unicode Bidirectional

Algorithm, as specified by the Unicode Consortium. The text arrangement is similar to what you get in a modern HTML browser. The final text layout is rendered according to the directional CSS properties matching the XML elements and the Unicode directional formatting codes.

By default, when navigating bidirectional text with the arrow keys in **Author** mode, pressing the right arrow key moves the cursor in the writing direction and the left arrow moves it in the opposite direction. However, if the **Arrow keys move the cursor in the writing direction** option *(on page 135)* in the **Cursor Navigation** preferences page is not selected, pressing the right arrow will simply move the cursor to the right (and the left arrow moves it to the left), regardless of the text direction.

Tip:
If you experience performance issues when editing documents that contain bidirectional text, you could try the following solution:

- You could try changing the font. For example, you could try using the*David* font in Hebrew content. If it is not already installed in your operating system, this font is available at: https://www.microsoft.com/typography/fonts/family.aspx?FID=234. To change the font in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Fonts**, and change the font using the **Author** option in the **Fonts** preferences page *(on page 165)*.

Resources

For more information about the bidirectional text support in the **Author** mode, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/IC0ahH1IS7s

Related Information:
Special Character Support in Grid Mode *(on page 341)*
Inserting Special Characters with the Character Map *(on page 276)*

Controlling the Text Direction Using XML Markup

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Supports the following CSS properties that control the direction of text:

Table 6. CSS Properties Controlling Text Direction

direction	Specifies the writing direction of the text. The possible values are **ltr** (the text direction is left to right), **rtl** (the text direction is right to left, and **inherit** (the direction property is inherited from the parent element).
unicodeBidi	Used along with the **direction** property to create levels of embedded text with different text directions in the same document. The possible values of this property are **bidi-override** (creates an additional level of embedding and forces all strong characters to the direction specified in the **direction**), **embed** (creates an additional level of embedding), **normal** (does not use

Table 6. CSS Properties Controlling Text Direction (continued)

	an additional level of embedding), and **inherit** (the value of the **unicodeBidi** property is inherited from parent element).

For instance, to declare an element as being Right to Left, you could use a stylesheet like this:

XML File:

```
<article>
  <myRTLpara>RIGHT TO LEFT TEXT</myRTLPara>
</article>
```

Associated CSS File:

```
myRTLpara{
    direction:rtl;
    unicode-bidi:embed;
}
```

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin recognizes the **dir** attribute on any XML document. The supported values are:

Values	Description
ltr	The text from the current element is Left to Right, embedded.
rtl	The text from the current element is Right to Left, embedded.
lro	The text from the current element is Left to Right, embedded.
rlo	The text from the current element is Right to Left, embedded.

The following XML document types make use of the **dir** attribute with the above values:

- DITA
- DocBook
- TEI
- XHTML

Note:
When the *inline element (on page 2231)* tags are visible, the text in the line is arranged according to the BIDI algorithm after replacing the tags symbols with Object Replacement Characters. This makes it possible to get a different text arrangement when viewing a document in the **No Tags** mode versus viewing it in the **Full Tags** mode.

Controlling the Text Direction Using the Unicode Direction Formatting Codes

These Unicode Direction Formatting Codes codes can be embedded in the edited text, specifying a text direction and embedding. However, it is not recommended to use them in XML as they are zero width characters, making it hard to debug the text arrangement.

Table 7. Directional Formatting Codes

U+202A (LRE)	LEFT-TO-RIGHT EMBEDDING	Treats the following text as embedded left-to-right.
U+202B (RLE)	RIGHT-TO-LEFT EMBEDDING	Treats the following text as embedded right to left.
U+202D (LRO)	LEFT-TO-RIGHT OVERRIDE	Forces the following characters to be treated as strong left-to-right characters.
U+202E (RLO)	RIGHT-TO-LEFT OVERRIDE	Forces the following characters to be treated as strong right-to-left characters.
U+202C (PDF)	POP DIRECTIONAL FORMAT-TING CODE	Restores the bidirectional state to what it was before the last LRE, RLE, RLO, or LRO.
U+200E (LRM)	LEFT-TO-RIGHT MARK	Left-to-right strong zero-width character.
U+200F (RLM)	RIGHT-TO-LEFT MARK	Right-to-left strong zero-width character.

To insert Unicode Direction Formatting Codes, use the **Symbols** toolbar action. To easily find such a code, you can either enter directly the hexadecimal value, or use the **Details** tab to enter the codes name.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers the support for bi-directional text in all the side views (**Outline** view *(on page 301)*, **Attributes** view *(on page 381)* and so on) and text fields.

Refreshing the Content

On occasion you may need to reload the content of the document from the disk or reapply the CSS. This can be performed by using the **Reload** (**F5**) action available on the toolbar.

To refresh the content of the referenced resources you can use the **Refresh references** action that is available in the menu for the current *framework* (for example, the **DITA** or **DocBook5** menu). However, this action will not refresh the expanded external entities. For that, you will need to use the **Reload** action.

Generating IDs for Elements in Author Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to manually assign or edit values of `id` attributes in **Author** mode by using the **Attributes View** *(on page 381)* or an in-place attribute editor *(on page 362)*. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes mechanisms to generate ID values for elements, either on-request or automatically, in DITA, DocBook, or TEI documents.

Generate IDs On-Request

You can generate ID values for specific elements on-request. To do so, select the element that will have an ID generated (or place the cursor inside the element) and select the **Generate IDs** action from the contextual menu. This action generates a unique ID for the current element. If you invoke the action on a block of selected content, the action will generate IDs for all top-level elements and elements that are listed in the **ID Options** dialog box *(on page 504)*. To open this dialog box, open an XML document that belongs to that specific document type and then select **ID Options** from the **DITA**, **DocBook**, or **TEI** main menu (depending on your document type).

Note:
The **Generate IDs** action does not overwrite existing ID values. It only affects elements that do not already have an `@id` attribute.

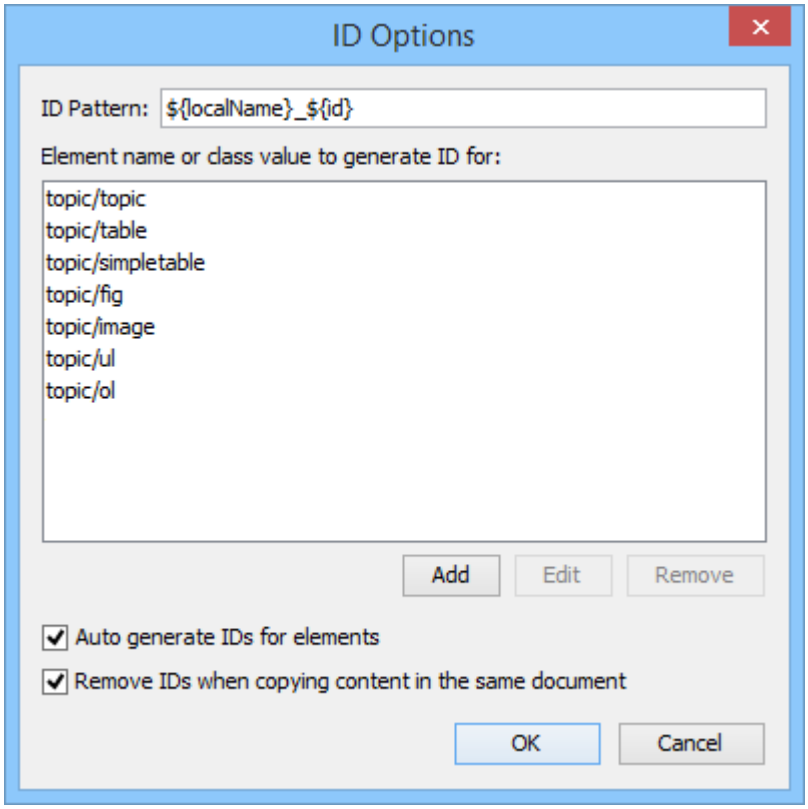
Automatically Generate IDs

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an option to automatically add unique ID values to certain elements when they are created in **Author** mode. The **Auto generate IDs for elements** option can be found in the **ID Options** dialog box *(on page 504)* that is displayed when you select the **ID Options** action from the *framework (on page 2231)*-specific menu (**DITA**, **DocBook**, or **TEI**). If this **Auto generate IDs for elements** option is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically generates unique ID values for elements that are listed in this dialog box. You can use this dialog box to customize the format of the ID values and choose which elements will have their ID values automatically generated (for example, you can customize the list of elements to include those that you most often need to identify).

ID Options Dialog Box

To configure options for generating IDs, select **ID Options** from the **DITA**, **DocBook**, or **TEI** menu (depending on your document type).

Figure 156. ID Options Dialog Box



The **ID Options** dialog box allows you to configure the following options with regard to generating ID values:

ID Pattern

The pattern for the ID values that will be generated. This text field can be customized using constant strings or any of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Editor Variables *(on page 199)*.

Element name or class value to generate ID for

The elements that will have ID values generated, specified using class attribute values. To customize the list, use the **Add**, **Edit**, or **Remove** buttons.

Auto generate IDs for elements

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will automatically generate unique IDs for the elements listed in this dialog box when they are created in **Author** mode.

Remove IDs when copying content in the same document (DITA or TEI)

When copying and pasting content in the same DITA or TEI document, this option allows you to control whether or not pasted elements that are listed in this dialog box should retain their existing IDs. To retain the element IDs, deselect this option.

Note:
This option does not have an effect on content that is *cut* and *pasted*.

Remove IDs when copying content (DocBook)

This option allows you to control whether or not pasted elements that are listed in this dialog box should retain their existing IDs in DocBook documents. If this option is not selected, IDs are always retained when you copy or cut content and paste it in the same document or other documents. If this option is selected, IDs are never retained for copied content, but if you cut the content, they are preserved for the first paste action (and not retained for any subsequent paste actions).

Duplicating Elements with Existing IDs

If you duplicate elements with existing IDs (for example, through copy/paste or drag/drop actions), all IDs are removed at the resolution of the operation. However, you can use the options in the **ID Options** dialog box to change this behavior. The options in this dialog box affect duplicated elements with existing IDs in the following ways:

- Only the elements listed in this dialog box are affected by these options. Therefore, if you want to use these options to preserve IDs or generate new ones, you must first add the elements to be duplicated to the list in this dialog box.
- If the **Auto generate IDs for elements** option *(on page 505)* is selected and you duplicate elements with existing IDs, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin assigns new, unique ID values to the duplicates.
- If the **Auto generate IDs for elements** option *(on page 505)* is not selected and you duplicate elements with existing IDs, the ID values are removed from the duplicates.
- For DITA and TEI, if the **Remove IDs when copying content in the same document** option *(on page 505)* is selected, the ID values are removed from elements that are duplicated in the same document. If it is not selected, the ID values are preserved when elements are duplicated in the same document. Selecting this option has no effect if the **Auto generate IDs for elements** option is selected and this option has no effect on elements that are duplicated in other documents.
- For DocBook, if the **Remove IDs when copying content** option *(on page 505)* is selected, the ID values are removed from any element that is duplicated. If it is not selected, the ID values are preserved when elements are duplicated. Selecting this option has no effect if the **Auto generate IDs for elements** option is selected.

Controlling the Default ID Generation Options

It is possible to configure the default ID generation options for DITA, DocBook, and TEI document types. In the `frameworks` folder for each of those document types, there is an XML configuration file called `idGenerationDefaultOptions.xml` that contains the default settings for generating IDs in each particular type of document. To configure the default settings, you can edit this file and save it back to the same directory.

The configuration file can be found in the `resources` folder within the particular *framework (on page 2231)*. For example, the configuration file for the DITA *framework* is located in: *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`/frameworks/dita/resources/idGenerationDefaultOptions.xml`.

Example with what settings can be configured in the XML configuration file:

```
?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<idGeneration>
    <autoGenerate>true</autoGenerate>
    <idAttribute>id</idAttribute>
    <idPattern>${localName}_${id}</idPattern>
    <generateForElement>elementName1</generateForElement>
    <generateForElement>elementName2</generateForElement>
    <removeIDsOnCopy>true</removeIDsOnCopy>
</idGeneration>
```

If you want to share your configured default ID generation settings with other members of your team, follow these steps:

1. Configure the `idGenerationDefaultOptions.xml` file for your *framework* according to your needs.
2. Bundle a modified version of the entire *framework* folder (for example, *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/dita/`*). To do this:
    a. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association**.
    b. Select your document type and click the **Extend** button.
    c. In the **Document type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* that is now displayed, select **External** for the **Storage** option. By default, this will save the extension in a new folder in the `frameworks` folder (for example, *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/dita-extension (1)`*), but you can also use the **Browse** button to specify a specific name and folder.
    d. In this new extension folder, create a new folder called `resources` and add your modified `idGenerationDefaultOptions.xml` file to this new `resources` folder.
    e. Go back to the **Document Type Association** preferences page, select the extended *framework*, and click **Edit**.
    f. Go to the **Classpath** tab *(on page 88)*, add a reference to your new `resources` folder, and move this reference up (using the **Move Up** button) so that it is the first one that appears in the list.
    g. Click **OK** and exit out of the preferences page.
3. Distribute your newly extended folder to other team members by using one of the methods described in Sharing a Framework *(on page 1691)*.

Note:
This particular `idGenerationDefaultOptions.xml` default configuration file can only take effect if the same options are not configured using a Customizing Default Options *(on page 196)* file.

Using Form Controls in Author Mode

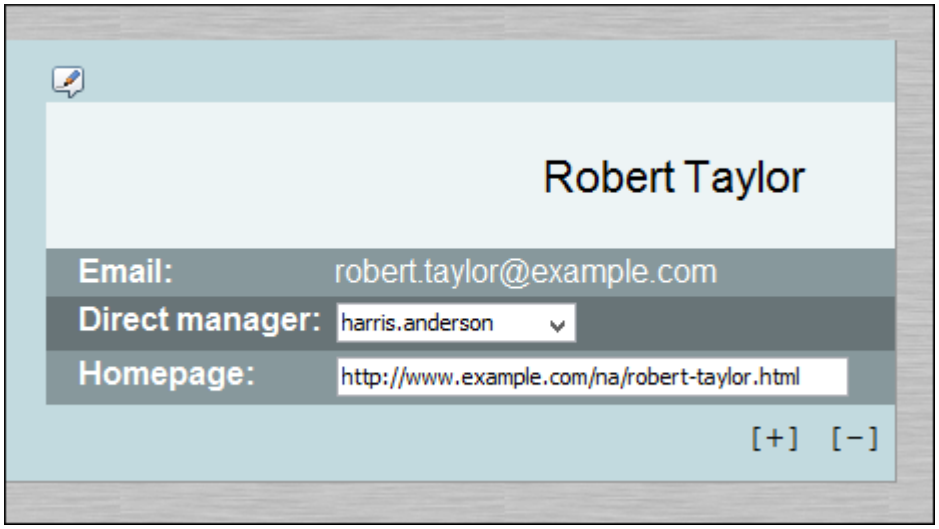
Form controls make it easier to capture, organize, and edit content. They are especially helpful for less technical users because form controls provide a way to interact with the content of a document in a graphical manner without intimidating the user with the XML structure.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a variety of built-in form controls *(on page 1777)* that can be defined in CSS stylesheets that are used to render **Author** mode *(on page 1777)*. You can also implement custom form controls *(on page 1808)* for more specific needs. The types of built-in form controls that are available include:

- Audio *(on page 1777)* - A media object that plays audio clips.
- Browser *(on page 1778)* - A media object that renders HTML frames or interact with SVG documents
- Button *(on page 1782)* - A graphical user interface object that performs a specific action.
- Button Group *(on page 1785)* - A graphical user interface group of buttons (such as radio buttons) that perform specific actions.
- Checkbox *(on page 1788)* - A graphical user interface box that you can click to select or deselect a value.
- Combo Box *(on page 1791)* - A graphical user interface object that can be a drop-down menu or a combination of a drop-down menu and a single-line text field.
- Date Picker *(on page 1793)* - A form control object that allows you to select a date in a specified format.
- HTML Content *(on page 1795)* - A graphical user interface box that is used for rendering HTML content.
- Pop-up *(on page 1797)* - A contextual menu that provides quick access to various actions.
- Text Area *(on page 1800)* - A box that allows you to enter multiple lines of text.
- Text Field *(on page 1803)* - A graphical user interface box that allows you to enter a single line of text.
- URL Chooser *(on page 1805)* - A dialog box that allows you to select the location of local or remote resources.
- Video *(on page 1807)* - A media object that plays videos.

The following image is an example of several form controls rendered in **Author** mode. The first (*Direct manager*) is a combo box with both a drop-down menu and an editable text field. This is followed by a simple text field (*Homepage*), and the **[+]** and **[-]** icons also represent button form controls that are assigned specific actions to add or delete records from the document.

Figure 157. Example of Form Controls in Author Mode



You can use your imagination to envision the multitude of ways that you can use form controls to make the editing experience for content authors easier and more efficient. As a working example, a bundled *samples* project (located in the `samples` folder inside the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation directory) contains a file called `personal.xml` that contains form controls. You can use this file, along with its corresponding `personal.css` file to experiment with an example of how form controls can be implemented in **Author** mode.

Related Information:
Form Controls *(on page 1777)*

Contextual Menu Actions in Author Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes powerful support for editing XML documents through actions included in the contextual menu. When editing XML documents in **Author** mode, the contextual menu includes *general* actions that are available for all of the recognized document types and *framework (on page 2231)*-specific actions that are configured for each document type.

General Contextual Menu Actions in Author Mode

The *general* actions that are available in the contextual menu (some of them are also available in the submenus of the **Document** menu) for all built-in document types include the following:

Quick Fix (Alt + 1 (Command + Option + 1 on macOS))

This action is available when the contextual menu is invoked on a validation error where Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can provide a *Quick Fix (on page 560)*. It displays a list of quick fix suggestions that are detected for the particular validation issue. Any detected quick fixes for the currently highlighted validation issue are also available by right-clicking the status bar at the bottom of the editor.

Apply all default quick fix proposals

This action is available when the contextual menu is invoked on a document that has one or more quick fix proposals detected for reported validation errors. It can be used to apply quick fix proposals for all reported validation errors in the document. If multiple quick fixes are available for the same validation error, the default quick fix defined in the Schematron validation schema using the `sqf:default-fix` attribute is automatically selected to be applied. If no default quick fix is explicitly specified, the first quick fix proposal in the list is considered. All quick fix proposals are then automatically executed in bulk, one after the other.

Important Notes to Consider:

- To maintain the accuracy of the initially calculated error validation ranges, the quick fix proposals are applied in the reverse order of their selection.
- If two or more quick fixes act on the same "area" within the document, only one is applied (no changes can be made to changes already made).

- Quick fixes that involve "user-entered values" that normally present a dialog box to facilitate data entry will not be executed (the automatic process of applying all selected quick fixes cannot be interrupted by the presence of the respective dialog boxes).

Once the analysis of the impact of applying the quick fixes on the content is complete, a preview dialog box is presented that provides an overview of the content changes that will be made, according to the quick fixes that will be applied. If you agree with the changes presented, click **Apply** to trigger the quick fixes and update the content.

Tip:
This action is also available in the contextual menu when right-clicking the status bar at the bottom of the editor (if the currently highlighted validation issue has at least one detected quick fix suggestion available). Specific quick fix suggestions that are defined for the particular validation issue are also available in this menu.

Open Image

Available when the contextual menu is invoked on an image. This action allows you to open an image in a default system application associated with the current image type.

Show in Explorer (Show in Finder on macOS)

Available when the contextual menu is invoked on an image. This action allows you to open the parent directory of an image in the system file explorer, and it selects the image file.

Save image as

Available when the contextual menu is invoked on a local, external, or embedded image. This action opens a dialog box where you can choose a location in the local file system where the image will be saved. It also includes an option (**Update the reference to the image**) that can be toggled to choose whether or not to update the path in existing references to the image.

Track Changes Actions

Available when the *Track Changes* feature *(on page 2234)* is enabled and the contextual menu is invoked on a change. The following options are available:

Accept Change(s)

Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is accepted. If you select multiple changes, all of them are accepted. For an *insertion* change, it keeps the inserted text and for a *deletion* change, it removes the content from the document.

Reject Change(s)

Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is rejected. If you select multiple changes, all of them are rejected. For an *insertion* change, it removes the inserted text and for a *deletion* change, it preserves the original content.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Author Callout Actions

Available when the contextual menu is invoked on a *callout (on page 2229)*. If the corresponding options in the **Show review callouts** section *(on page 144)* are selected in the **Callouts** preferences page *(on page 144)*, the callouts are displayed in **Author** mode for comments, tracked insertions, or tracked deletions.

Insertion or Deletion Callout Actions

The following actions are available in the contextual menu when invoked on an *insertion* or *deletion* callout box:

Reply

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a reply to a comment or *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)*. When replying to a comment, the dialog box shows the entire conversation in the comment thread, starting with the first comment added in the particular thread, followed by all the replies. After replies are added to a comment thread, they are displayed with an indentation in the callouts and **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Mark as Done

A toggle action that marks or unmarks a comment or comment thread as being done. It is also available for *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* that are displayed in a callout. When a comment or change is marked as done, the callout is grayed out and cannot be edited unless the action is toggled to the unmarked state. The action applies to the particular comment and all of its descendents. This is useful for marking comments or changes that have been addressed, leaving only those that still need some attention.

Accept Change(s)

Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is accepted. If you select multiple changes, all of them are accepted. For an *insertion* change, it keeps the inserted text and for a *deletion* change, it removes the content from the document.

Reject Change(s)

Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is rejected. If you select multiple changes, all of them are rejected. For an *insertion* change, it removes the inserted text and for a *deletion* change, it preserves the original content.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Edit Reference

If the fragment that contains a callout is a reference, use this option to go to the reference and edit the callout.

Callouts Options

Select this option to open the **Callouts** preference page *(on page 144)* where you can configure various callout options.

Comment Callout Actions

The following actions are available in the contextual menu when invoked on a *comment* callout box:

Reply

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a reply to a comment or *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)*. When replying to a comment, the dialog box shows the entire conversation in the comment thread, starting with the first comment added in the particular thread, followed by all the replies. After replies are added to a comment thread, they are displayed with an indentation in the callouts and **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Mark as Done

A toggle action that marks or unmarks a comment or comment thread as being done. It is also available for *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* that are displayed in a callout. When a comment or change is marked as done, the callout is grayed out and cannot be edited unless the action is toggled to the unmarked state. The action applies to the particular comment and all of its descendents. This is useful for marking comments or changes that have been addressed, leaving only those that still need some attention.

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Callouts Options

Select this option to open the **Callouts** preference page *(on page 144)* where you can configure various callout options.

Edit Attributes

Displays an in-place attributes editor *(on page 383)* that allows you to manage the attributes of an element.

Edit Profiling Attributes

Allows you to change the profiling attributes *(on page 419)* defined on all selected elements.

Insert submenu

This submenu includes insert actions that are specific to each *framework (on page 2231)*, along with the following general action:

Insert Entity

Allows you to insert a predefined entity or character entity. Surrogate character entities (range #x10000 to #x10FFFF) are also accepted. Character entities can be entered in one of the following forms:

- #<*decimal value*> - e. g. #65
- &#<*decimal value*>; - e. g. &#65
- #x<*hexadecimal value*> - e. g. #x41
- &#x<*hexadecimal value*>; - e. g. &#x41

Cut (Ctrl + X (Command + X on macOS))

Removes the currently selected content from the document and places it in the clipboard.

Copy (Ctrl + C (Command + C on macOS))

Places a copy of the currently selected content in the clipboard.

The clipboard contains the precise node structure that is preserved when pasting to another location within the same document or to another document opened in the **Author** mode. The copied content contains an HTML flavor that attempts to convert the copied structure to plain HTML, which can be useful for preserving the styles when pasting into editors such as MS Word.

Copy as XML

Copies the selection as a string that contains the structured XML content.

Copy as Markdown

Copies the selection as a string that contains its Markdown-converted equivalent.

Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on macOS))

Inserts the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.

Paste special submenu

This submenu includes special paste actions that are specific to each *framework (on page 2231)*, as well as the following general paste actions:

Paste As XML

Pastes clipboard content that is considered to be XML, preserving its XML structure.

Paste As Text (Ctrl + Shift + V (Command + Shift + V on macOS))

Pastes clipboard content, ignoring any structure or styling markup.

Select submenu

This submenu allows you to select the following:

Element

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

Content

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

Parent

Selects the entire parent element at the current cursor position.

Text submenu

This submenu contains the following actions:

To Lower Case

Converts the selected content to lower case characters.

To Upper Case

Converts the selected content to upper case characters.

Capitalize Sentences

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected sentence.

Capitalize Words

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected word. 0034

Count Words

Counts the number of words and characters (no spaces) in the entire document or in the selection for regular content and read-only content.

> **Note:**
> The content marked as deleted with *change tracking (on page 2234)* is ignored when counting words.

Convert Hexadecimal Sequence to Character (Ctrl + Shift + H (Command + Shift + H on macOS))

Converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character *(on page 274)*. The action can be invoked if there is a selection containing a valid hexadecimal sequence or if the cursor is placed at the right side of a valid hexadecimal sequence. A valid hexadecimal sequence can be composed of 2 to 4 hexadecimal characters and may or may not be preceded by the `0x` or `0X` prefix. Examples of valid sequences and the characters they will be converted to:

- `0x0045` will be converted to `E`
- `0X0125` to `ĥ`
- `265` to `ŋ`
- `2190` to `←`

> **Note:**
> For more information about finding the hexadecimal value of a character, see Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent *(on page 276)*.

Refactoring submenu

Contains a series of actions designed to alter the XML structure of the document:

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected text in a comment, or removes the comment if it is commented.

Move Up (Alt + UpArrow (Option + UpArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes in front of the previous node.

Move Down (Alt + DownArrow (Option + DownArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes after the subsequent node.

Split Element

Splits the content of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. Thus, if the cursor is positioned at the beginning or at the end of the element, the newly created sibling will be empty.

Join Elements

Joins two adjacent *block elements (on page 2228)* that have the same name. The action is available only when the cursor position is between the two adjacent *block elements*. Also, joining two *block elements* can be done by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys and the cursor is positioned between the boundaries of these two elements.

Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)

Allows you to choose a tag to enclose a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Rename Element

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

Delete Element Tags

Deletes the tags of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. This operation is also executed if the start or end tags of an element are deleted by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys.

Remove All Markup

Removes all the XML markup inside the selected block of content and keeps only the text content.

Remove Text

Removes the text content of the selected block of content and keeps the markup intact with empty elements.

DITA-related Refactoring Actions

A variety of built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to DITA documents with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Change Topic ID to File Name

Use this operation to change the ID of a topic to be the same as its file name.

Convert CALS Tables to Simple Tables

Use this operation to convert DITA CALS tables to simple tables. If you invoke this operation from a nested table (a table inside a table), only the nested table will be affected. If it is invoked on a parent table that contains nested tables, all of the contained tables will be converted.

Convert conrefs to conkeyrefs

Use this operation to convert `@conref` attributes to `@conkeyref` attributes.

Convert Simple Tables to CALS Tables

Use this operation to convert DITA simple tables to CALS tables. If you invoke this operation from a nested table (a table inside a table), only the nested table will be affected. If it is invoked on a parent table that contains nested tables, all of the contained tables will be converted.

Convert to Concept

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Concept topic type (for example, Topic to Concept).

Convert to General Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA General Task topic type (for example, Task to General Task). A DITA *General Task* is a less restrictive alternative to the *Strict Task* information type.

Convert to Reference

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Reference topic type (for example, Topic to Reference).

Convert to Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Task topic type (for example, Topic to Task).

Convert to Topic

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Topic (for example, Task to Topic).

Convert to Troubleshooting

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Troubleshooting topic type (for example, Topic to Troubleshooting).

Rename Key

Available when invoked on a key, and can be used to quickly rename a key. It also updates all references to it. Note that it does not work on DITA 1.3 key scopes.

Generate IDs

Use this operation to automatically generate unique IDs for elements.

Attributes Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add/Change attribute

Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

Convert attribute to element

Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

Delete attribute

Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

Rename attribute

Allows you to rename an attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

Comments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete comments

Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

Elements Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete element

Allows you to delete elements.

Delete element content

Allows you to delete the content of elements.

Insert element

Allows you to insert new elements.

Rename element

Allows you to rename elements.

Unwrap element

Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

Wrap element

Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

Wrap element content

Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

Fragments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Insert XML fragment

Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

Replace element with XML fragment

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

JATSKit Refactoring Actions

Available for JATS documents. Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to JATS documents with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add BITS DOCTYPE - NLM/NCBI Book Interchange 2.0

Adds an NLM 'BITS' 2.0 DOCTYPE declaration.

Add Blue DOCTYPE - NISO JATS Publishing 1.1

Adds a JATS 'Blue' 1.1 DOCTYPE declaration.

Normalize IDs

Assigned IDs are normalized and IDs are assigned to some elements that are missing them.

Processing Instructions Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to processing instructions.

Accept all tracked changes, remove all Oxygen-specific comments and highlights

Use this operation to accept all application-specific tracked changes (from elements and attributes) or remove all application-specific comments or highlights.

Delete processing instructions

Deletes the detected processing instructions.

Review submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Track Changes

Enables or disables the *Track Changes (on page 2234)* support for the current document.

Accept Change(s) and Move to Next

Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is accepted.

Accept All Changes

Accepts all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Reject Change(s) and Move to Next

Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is rejected.

Reject All Changes

Rejects all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Highlight

Enables the highlighting tool that allows you to mark text in your document.

Colors

Allows you to select the color for highlighting text.

Stop highlighting

Use this action to deactivate the highlighting tool.

Remove highlight(s)

Use this action to remove highlighting from the document.

Add Comment

Inserts a comment at the cursor position. The comment appears in a callout box and a tooltip (when hovering over the change).

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Manage Reviews

Opens the **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Manage IDs submenu

This submenu is available for XML documents that have an associated DTD, XML Schema, or Relax NG schema. It includes the following actions:

Rename in

Renames the ID and all its occurrences. Selecting this action opens the **Rename XML ID** dialog box. This dialog box lets you insert the new ID value and choose the scope of the rename operation.

Search References

Searches for the references of the ID. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 579)* dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

Search References in

Searches for the references of the ID. Selecting this action opens the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 579)*.

Search Occurrences in file

Searches for the occurrences of the ID in the current document.

Folding submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Toggle Fold

Toggles the state of the current fold.

Collapse Other Folds

Folds all the elements except the current element.

Collapse Child Folds

Folds the elements indented with one level inside the current element.

Expand Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad+ (Command + NumPad+ on macOS))

Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

Expand All

Unfolds all elements in the current document.

Inspect Styles

Opens the **CSS Inspector** view *(on page 391)* that allows you to examine the CSS rules that match the currently selected element.

Options

Opens the Author mode preferences page *(on page 127)*.

Document Type-Specific Contextual Menu Actions in Author Mode

Other *document type-specific* actions are available in the contextual menu of **Author** mode for the following document types (click the links to see the default actions that are available for each specific document type):

- **DocBook4** Author Actions *(on page 656)*
- **DocBook5** Author Actions *(on page 677)*
- **DITA** Author Actions *(on page 1989)*
- **DITA Map** Author Actions *(on page 1932)*

- **XHTML** Author Actions *(on page 742)*
- **TEI ODD** Author Actions *(on page 768)*
- **TEI P5** Author Actions *(on page 755)*
- **JATS** Author Actions *(on page 781)*

Validating XML Documents

The W3C XML specification states that a program should not continue to process an XML document if it finds a validation error. The reason is that XML software should be easy to write and all XML documents should be compatible. With HTML, for example, it is possible to create documents with lots of errors (for instance, when you forget an end tag). One of the main reasons that various HTML browsers have performance and compatibility problems is that they have different methods of figuring out how to render a document when an HTML error is encountered. Using XML helps to eliminate such problems.

Even when creating XML documents, errors are easily introduced. When working with large projects or a large number of files, the probability that errors will occur is even greater. Preventing and solving errors in your projects can be time consuming and frustrating. Fortunately, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides validation functions that allow you to easily identify errors and their location.

Related Information:

Checking XML Well-Formedness

A *Well-formed XML* document is a document that conforms to the XML syntax rules. A *Namespace Well-Formed XML* document is a document that is *Well-formed XML* and is also *Namespace-wellformed* and *Namespace-valid*.

Well-Formedness Rules

The XML Syntax rules for *Well-formed XML* include:

- All XML elements must have a closing tag.
- XML tags are case-sensitive.
- All XML elements must be properly nested.
- All XML documents must have a root element.
- Attribute values must always be quoted.
- With XML, whitespace is preserved.

The *Namespace-wellformed* rules include:

- All element and attribute names contain either zero or one colon.
- No entity names, processing instruction targets, or notation names contain any colons.

The *Namespace-valid* rules include:

- The *xml* prefix is by definition bound to the namespace name: *http://www.w3.org/XML/1998/namespace*. It MAY be declared, but MUST NOT be undeclared or bound to any other namespace name. Other prefixes MUST NOT be bound to this namespace name.
- The *xmlns* prefix is used only to declare namespace bindings and is by definition bound to the namespace name: *http://www.w3.org/2000/xmlns/*. It MUST NOT be declared or undeclared. Other prefixes MUST NOT be bound to this namespace name.
- All other prefixes beginning with the three-letter sequence *x*, *m*, *l*, in any case combination, are reserved. This means that users SHOULD NOT use them except as defined by later specifications and processors MUST NOT treat them as fatal errors.
- The namespace prefix (unless it is *xml* or *xmlns*) MUST have been declared in a namespace declaration attribute in either the start tag of the element where the prefix is used or in an ancestor element (for example, an element in whose content the prefixed markup occurs). Furthermore, the attribute value in the innermost such declaration MUST NOT be an empty string.

Check for Well-Formedness

To check if a document is *Namespace Well-Formed XML* and *Namespace-valid*:

- Select the **Check Well-Formedness (Alt + Shift + V, W (Command + Option + V, W on macOS))** action from the **Validation** drop-down menu on the toolbar (or the **XML** menu).
- A selection of files can be checked for well-formedness by selecting the **Check Well-Formedness** action from the **Validate** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*.

Result: If any errors are found, the result is displayed in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. Each error is displayed as one record in the result list and is accompanied by an error message. Clicking the record will open the document containing the error and highlight its approximate location.

Example: A non *Well-formed XML* Document

```
<root><tag></root>
```

When the **Check Well-Formedness** action is performed, the following error is displayed:

```
The element type "tag" must be terminated by the matching end-tag "</tag>"
```

To resolve the error, click the record in the resulting list and it will locate and highlight the approximate position of the error. In this case, identify the tag that is missing an end tag and insert </tag>.

Example: A non *Namespace-wellformed* Document

```
<prefix:elem></prefix:elem>
```

When the **Check Well-Formedness** action is performed, the following error is displayed:

```
The prefix "prefix" for element "prefix:elem" is not bound.
```

Example: A non *Namespace-valid* Document

```
<x:y></x:y>
```

When the **Check Well-Formedness** action is performed, the following error is displayed:

```
The prefix "x" for element "x:y" is not bound.
```

Validating XML Documents Against a Schema

A *Valid* XML document is a *Well-Formed* XML document that also conforms to the rules of a schema that defines the legal elements of an XML document. The schema type can be: XML Schema, Relax NG (full or compact syntax), Schematron, Document Type Definition (DTD), or Namespace-based Validation Dispatching Language (NVDL).

The purpose of the schema is to define the legal building blocks of an XML document. It defines the document structure with a list of legal elements.

This section contains topics that explain the automatic and manual validation possibilities in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, how validation errors are presented, and information about built-in and custom validation scenarios.

For information about how to associate a schema for the purposes of validation (and content completion), see the Associating a Schema to XML Documents *(on page 563)* section.

Automatic Validation

By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically checks for validation errors as you are editing a document. The **Enable automatic validation** option *(on page 124)* in the **Document Checking** preferences page *(on page 123)* controls whether or not all validation errors and warnings will automatically be highlighted in the editor panel.

The automatic validation starts parsing the document and marking the errors after a configurable delay *(on page 124)* from the last key typed. Errors are highlighted with underline markers in the main editor panel and small rectangles on the right side ruler of the editor panel. Hovering over a validation error presents a tooltip message with more details about the error.

Related Information:

Manual Validation Actions *(on page 525)*
Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode *(on page 527)*
Presenting Validation Errors in Author Mode *(on page 530)*

Manual Validation Actions

You can choose to validate documents at any time by using the manual validation actions that are available in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Tip:
Status information generated by certain operations (such as *validation*) are fed into the **Console** view. This could be helpful for troubleshooting problems encountered during such operations. To open this view, select **Window > Show View > Console**.

Manual Validation Actions

To manually validate the currently edited document, use one of the following actions:

Validate

Available from the **Validation** drop-down menu on the toolbar, the **XML** menu, or from the **Validate** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*.

An error list is presented in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. Markup of the current document is checked to conform with the specified DTD, XML Schema, or Relax NG schema rules. This action also re-parses the *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)* and resets the schema used for content completion.

Validate (cached)

Available from the **Validation** drop-down menu on the toolbar or the **XML** menu.

This action caches the schema, allowing it to be reused for the next validation. Markup of the current document is checked to conform with the specified DTD, XML Schema, or Relax NG schema rules.

Note:
Automatic validation also caches the associated schema.

Validate with

Available from the **Validation** drop-down menu on the toolbar, (or **XML** menu).

This action opens a dialog box that allows you to specify a schema for validating the current document *(on page 566)*.

You can use this action to validate the current document using a schema of your choice (XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, NVDL, Schematron schema), other than the associated one. An error list is presented in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. Markup of current document is checked to conform with the specified schema rules.

Validate with Schema

Available from the **Validate** submenu when invoking contextual menu in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*.

This action opens a dialog box that allows you to specify a schema for validating all selected files *(on page 567)*.

Other Validation Options

To quickly open the schema used for validating the current document, select the **Open Associated Schema** action from the toolbar (or **XML** menu).

To clear the error markers added to the **Problems** view in the last validation, select **Clear Validation Markers** from the **Validate** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in the **Project Explorer** view.

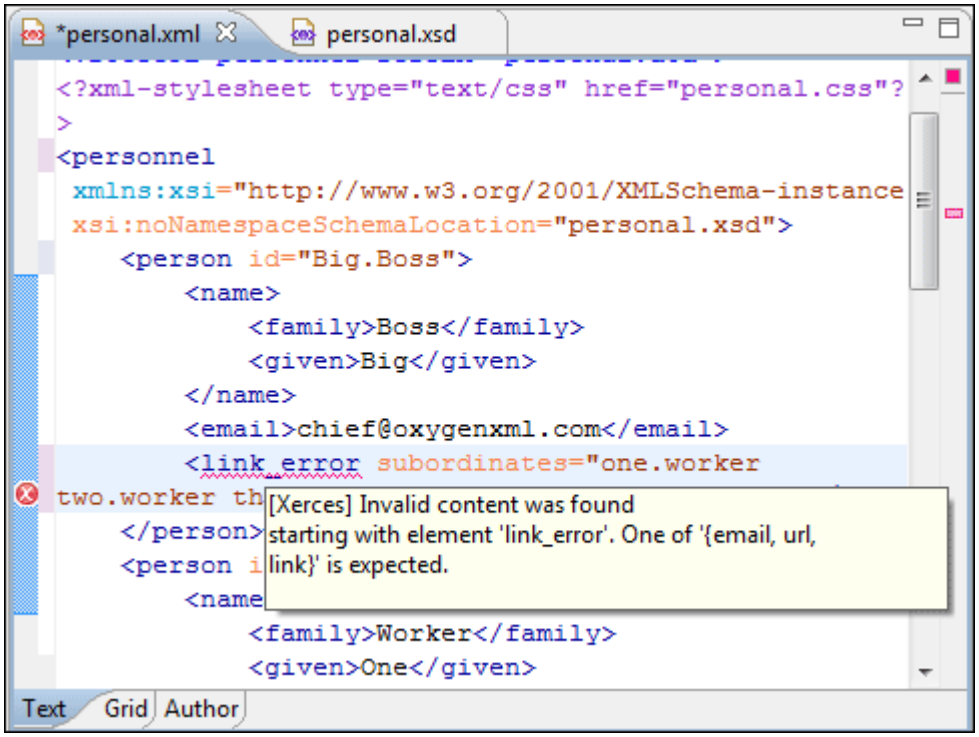
Tip:
If a large number of validation errors are detected and the validation process takes too long, you can limit the maximum number of reported errors in the **Document Checking** preferences page *(on page 123)*.

Related information
Automatic Validation *(on page 525)*
Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode *(on page 527)*
Presenting Validation Errors in Author Mode *(on page 530)*

Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode

By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically validates documents *(on page 525)* while editing in the **Text** mode, and actions are also available to manually validate documents *(on page 525)* on-request.

Figure 158. Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode



Validation Marker Locations

In **Text** mode, validation issues are marked in the following locations:

- In the main editing pane, with the issue underlined in a color according to the type of issue.
- In the right-side vertical stripe, with a marker that is colored according to the type of issue.
- For attributes with detected issues, in the **Attributes** view *(on page 305)*, with the attribute and its value colored according to the type of issue.

Validation Marker Colors

The colors for each type of issue are as follows:

- **Validation Errors** [Red] - By default, the underline in the editing pane, the marker in the right vertical stripe, and the foreground color of the attribute in the **Attributes** view are colored in red.
- **Validation Warnings** [Yellow] - By default, the underline in the editing pane, the marker in the right vertical stripe, and the foreground color of the attribute in the **Attributes** view are colored in yellow.
- **Validation Info** [Blue] - By default, the underline in the editing pane, the marker in the right vertical stripe, and the foreground color of the attribute in the **Attributes** view are colored in blue.

You can configure the colors and how the various types of validation problems are rendered from the Eclipse **Annotations** preferences page (**Window ('Eclipse' on macOSX) > Preferences > General > Editors > Text Editors > Annotations**).

Validation Markers in the Right-Side Stripe

Also, the stripe on the right side of the editor panel is designed to display the issues found during the validation process and to help you locate them in the document. The stripe contains the following:

Upper Part of the Stripe

A success indicator square will turn green if the validation is successful or only info messages are found, red if validation errors are found, or yellow if only validation warnings are found. More details about the issues are displayed in a tooltip when you hover over indicator square. If there are numerous problems, only the first three are presented in the tooltip.

Middle Part of the Stripe

Errors are presented with red markers, warnings with yellow markers, and info message with blue markers. If you want to limit the number of markers that are displayed, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Editor > Document checking**, and specify the desired limit in the **Maximum number of validation highlights** option *(on page 124)*.

Clicking a marker will highlight the corresponding text area in the editor. The validation message is also displayed both in a tooltip (when hovering over the marker) and in the message area on the bottom of the application.

Bottom Part of the Stripe

Two navigation arrows ( ) can be used to jump to the next or previous issue. The same actions can be triggered from **Document > Automatic validation > Next Error/Highlight** (**Ctrl + Period (Command + Period on macOS)**) and **Document > Automatic validation > Previous Error/Highlight** (**Ctrl + Comma (Command + Comma on macOS)**).

Hovering Over Validation Issues

Hovering over a validation issue presents a tooltip message with more details about the problem and possible *quick fixes (on page 560)* (if available for that issue). Also, when hovering over an issue, pressing **F2** will change the focus to the tooltip where you can use **Tab** and **Shift + Tab** to navigate between quick fixes and **Space** to trigger them.

Details About Validation Issues

- Information about the issue is also displayed in the message area on the bottom of the editor panel (clicking the **Document checking options** button opens the **Document Checking** preferences page *(on page 123)* where you can configure some validation options. Some validation messages have an icon ( ) and clicking it opens a dialog box with additional information and a link to specifications.
- Status messages from every validation action are logged in the **Console** view *(on page 279)* (the **Enable Oxygen consoles** option *(on page 167)* must be selected in the **View** preferences page).

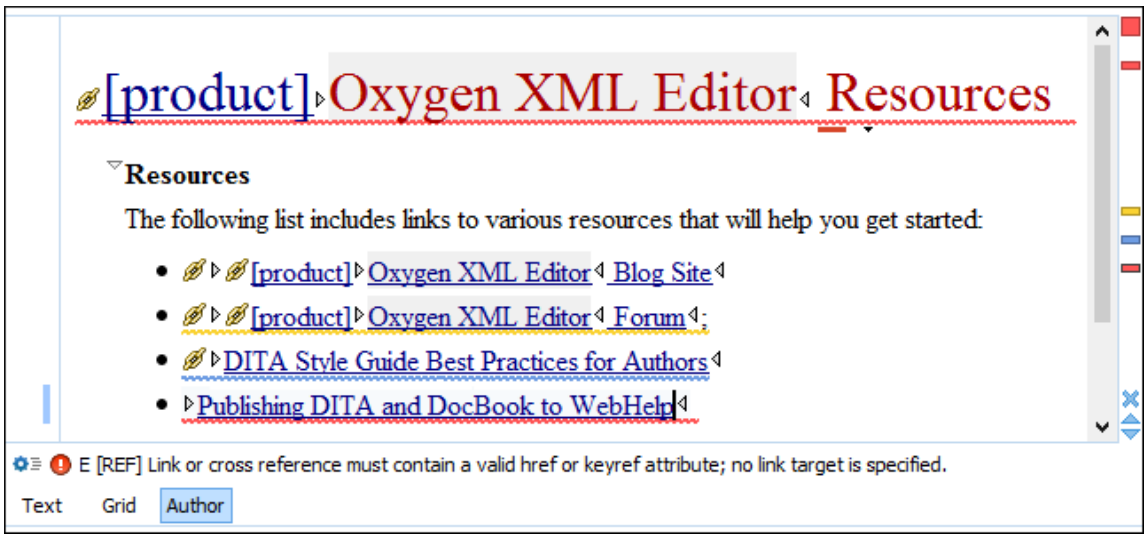
- If you want to see all the validation messages grouped in the Results view *(on page 310)*, use the **Validate** action from the toolbar or **XML** menu. This action also collects the validation messages and displays them in the **Problems** view if the validated file is in the current workspace or in a custom **Errors** view if the validated file is outside the workspace.

Related Information:
Validating XML Documents Against a Schema *(on page 525)*

Presenting Validation Errors in Author Mode

By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically validates documents *(on page 525)* while editing in the **Author** mode, and actions are also available to manually validate documents *(on page 525)* on-request.

Figure 159. Presenting Validation Errors in Author Mode



Validation Marker Locations

In **Author** mode, validation issues are marked in the following locations:

- In the main editing pane, with the issue underlined in a color according to the type of issue.
- In the right-side vertical stripe, with a marker that is colored according to the type of issue.
- For attributes with detected issues, in the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)*, with the attribute and its value colored according to the type of issue.

Validation Marker Colors

The colors for each type of issue are as follows:

- **Validation Errors** [Red] - By default, the underline in the editing pane, the marker in the right vertical stripe, and the foreground color of the attribute in the **Attributes** view are colored in red.
- **Validation Warnings** [Yellow] - By default, the underline in the editing pane, the marker in the right vertical stripe, and the foreground color of the attribute in the **Attributes** view are colored in yellow.
- **Validation Info** [Blue] - By default, the underline in the editing pane, the marker in the right vertical stripe, and the foreground color of the attribute in the **Attributes** view are colored in blue.

Validation Markers in the Right-Side Stripe

Also, the stripe on the right side of the editor panel is designed to display the issues found during the validation process and to help you locate them in the document. The stripe contains the following:

Upper Part of the Stripe

A success indicator square will turn green if the validation is successful or only info messages are found, red if validation errors are found, or yellow if only validation warnings are found. More details about the issues are displayed in a tooltip when you hover over indicator square. If there are numerous problems, only the first three are presented in the tooltip.

Middle Part of the Stripe

Errors are presented with red markers, warnings with yellow markers, and info message with blue markers. If you want to limit the number of markers that are displayed, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Editor > Document checking**, and specify the desired limit in the **Maximum number of validation highlights** option *(on page 124)*.

Clicking a marker will highlight the corresponding text area in the editor. The validation message is also displayed both in a tooltip (when hovering over the marker) and in the message area on the bottom of the application.

Bottom Part of the Stripe

Two navigation arrows ( ) can be used to jump to the next or previous issue. The same actions can be triggered from **Document > Automatic validation > Next Error/Highlight** (**Ctrl + Period (Command + Period on macOS)**) and **Document > Automatic validation > Previous Error/Highlight** (**Ctrl + Comma (Command + Comma on macOS)**).

Hovering Over Validation Issues

Hovering over a validation issue presents a tooltip message with more details about the problem and possible *quick fixes (on page 560)* (if available for that issue). Also, when hovering over an issue, pressing **F2** will change the focus to the tooltip where you can use **Tab** and **Shift + Tab** to navigate between quick fixes and **Space** to trigger them.

Details About Validation Issues

- Information about the issue is also displayed in the message area on the bottom of the editor panel (clicking the **Document checking options** button opens the **Document Checking** preferences page *(on page 123)* where you can configure some validation options. Some validation messages have an icon () and clicking it opens a dialog box with additional information and a link to specifications.
- Status messages from every validation action are logged in the **Console** view *(on page 279)* (the **Enable Oxygen consoles** option *(on page 167)* must be selected in the **View** preferences page).
- If you want to see all the validation messages grouped in the Results view *(on page 310)*, use the **Validate** action from the toolbar or **XML** menu. This action also collects the validation messages and displays them in the **Problems** view if the validated file is in the current workspace or in a custom **Errors** view if the validated file is outside the workspace.

Related Information:
Validating XML Documents Against a Schema *(on page 525)*

Customizing Assert Error Messages

To customize the error messages that the Xerces or Saxon validation engines display for the `<assert>` and `<assertion>` elements, set the `@message` attribute on these elements.

- For Xerces, the `@message` attribute has to belong to the `http://xerces.apache.org` namespace.
- For Saxon, the `@message` attribute has to belong to the `http://saxon.sf.net/` namespace.

The value of the `@message` attribute is the error message displayed if the assertion fails.

Custom Validators

If you need to validate the edited document with a validation engine that is different from the built-in engine, you can configure external validators in the Custom Validation Engines preferences page *(on page 124)*. After a custom validation engine is properly configured *(on page 124)*, it can be applied on the current document by selecting it from the list of custom validation engines in the **Validation** toolbar drop-down menu. The document is validated against the schema declared in the document.

Some validators are configured by default but there are third-party processors that do not support the output message format *(on page 533)* of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for linked messages:

- **Saxon-EE** - Included in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. It is associated to XML Editor and XSD Editor. It is able to validate XML Schema schemas and XML documents against XML Schema schemas. The validation is done according to the W3C XML Schema 1.0 or 1.1. This can be configured in Preferences *(on page 181)*.
- **LIBXML** - Not included in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and, depending on your operating system, the libraries need to be downloaded and installed separately from http://xmlsoft.org/downloads.html.

Afterward, the `PATH` environment variable needs to be updated to contain the parent folder of the `xmllint` executable. Alternatively, you can go to **Options > Preferences > Editor > Custom Validation Engines**, edit the **LIBXML** validation engine and set a custom path to the `xmllint` executable.

The LIBXML validator is associated with the XML Editor. It is able to validate the edited document against XML Schema, Relax NG schema full syntax, internal DTD (included in the XML document) or a custom schema type. Support for *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)* (the `--catalogs` parameter) and XInclude processing (`--xinclude`) are enabled by default in the preconfigured LIBXML validator. The `--postvalid` parameter is also set by default and it allows LIBXML to validate correctly the main document even if the XInclude fragments contain IDREFS to ID's located in other fragments.

For validation against an external DTD specified by URI in the XML document, add the `--dtdvalid ${ds}` parameter manually to the DTD validation command line. `${ds}` represents the detected DTD declaration in the XML document.

CAUTION:
File paths containing spaces are not handled correctly in the LIBXML processor. For example, the built-in *XML Catalog (on page 2235)* files of the built-in document types (DocBook, TEI, DITA, etc.) are not handled by LIBXML if Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is installed in the default location on Windows (`C:\Program Files`) because the built-in *XML catalog* files are stored in the `frameworks` subfolder of the installation folder and in this case, the file path contains at least one space character.

Attention:
On macOS, if the full path to the LIBXML executable file is not specified in the **Executable path** text field, some errors may occur during validation against a W3C XML Schema, such as:

```
Unimplemented block at ... xmlschema.c
```

To avoid these errors, specify the full path to the LIBXML executable file.

Linked Output Messages of an External Engine

Validation engines display messages in an output view at the bottom of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin window. If such an output message (**warning**, **error**, **fatal error**, etc) spans between three to six lines of text and has the format specified below, then the message is linked to a location in the validated document. Clicking the message in the output view highlights the location of the message in an editor panel containing the file referenced in the message. This behavior is similar to the linked messages generated by the default built-in validator.

Linked messages have the following format:

- **Type**: [F|E|W] (the string *Type:* followed by a letter for the type of the message: fatal error, error, warning). This property is optional in a linked message.
- **SystemID**: A system ID of a file (the string `SystemID:` followed by the system ID of the file that will be opened for highlighting when the message is clicked in the output message - usually the validated file, the schema file or an included file).
- **Line**: A line number (the string *Line:* followed by the number of the line that will be highlighted).
- **Column**: A column number (the string *Column:* followed by the number of the column where the highlight will start on the highlighted line). This property is optional in a linked message.
- **EndLine**: A line number (the string **EndLine**: followed by the number of the line where the highlight ends). This property is optional in a linked message.
- **EndColumn**: A column number (the string **EndColumn**: followed by the number of the column where the highlight ends on the end line). This property is optional in a linked message.

> **Note:**
> The **Line**/**Column** pair works in conjunction with the **EndLine**/**EndColumn** pair. Thus, if both pairs are specified, then the highlight starts at **Line**/**Column** and ends at **EndLine**/**EndColumn**. If the **EndLine**/**EndColumn** pair is missing, the highlight starts from the beginning of the line identified by the **Line** parameter and ends at the column identified by the **Column** parameter.

- **AdditionalInfoURL**: The URL string pointing to a remote location where additional information about the error can be found - this line is optional in a linked message.
- **Description**: Message content (the string *Description:* followed by the content of the message that will be displayed in the output view).

Example:

Example of how a custom validation engine can report an error using the format specified above:

```
Type: E

SystemID: file:///c:/path/to/validatedFile.xml

Line: 10

Column: 20

EndLine: 10

EndColumn: 35

AdditionalInfoURL: http://www.host.com/path/to/errors.html#errorID

Description: custom validator message
```

Using Saxon Integrated Extension Functions

Saxon, the transformation and validation engine used by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, can be customized by adding custom functions (called Integrated Extension Functions) that can be called from XPath.

To define such a function, follow these steps:

1. Create a file with a Java class that extends `net.sf.saxon.lib.ExtensionFunctionDefinition`. Here is an example:

```
private static class ShiftLeft extends ExtensionFunctionDefinition {
  @Override
  public StructuredQName getFunctionQName() {
    return new StructuredQName("eg", "http://example.com/saxon-extension", "shift-left");
  }

  @Override
  public SequenceType[] getArgumentTypes() {
    return new SequenceType[] {SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER, SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER};
  }

  @Override
  public SequenceType getResultType(SequenceType[] suppliedArgumentTypes) {
    return SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER;
  }

  @Override
  public ExtensionFunctionCall makeCallExpression() {
    return new ExtensionFunctionCall() {
      public SequenceIterator call(SequenceIterator[] arguments, XPathContext context)
                  throws XPathException {
        long v0 = ((IntegerValue)arguments[0].next()).longValue();
        long v1 = ((IntegerValue)arguments[1].next()).longValue();
        long result = v0<<v1;
        return Value.asIterator(Int64Value.makeIntegerValue(result));
      }
    };
  }
}
```

2. Compile the class and add it to a JAR file.
3. Add a file called **net.sf.saxon.lib.ExtensionFunctionDefinition** that contains the fully qualified name of the Java class in the `META-INF/services/` folder of the JAR file.

> **Note:**
> To add more function definitions in the same JAR file, you need to add their fully qualified names on different lines.

To enable Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to pick up your custom function definition, the JAR file should be added to the classpath of the transformer. Here are some possibilities:

- If you develop a framework, you just need to link the JAR file in the **Classpath** tab *(on page 88)*.
- In a validation scenario *(on page 537)*, you can use the **Extensions** button to open a dialog box where you can add libraries.
- In a transformation scenario, you can use the **Extensions** button in the **XSLT** tab *(on page 830)* to open a dialog box where you can add libraries.

Validation Scenarios

A complex XML document is split in smaller interrelated modules. These modules do not make much sense individually and cannot be validated in isolation due to interdependencies with other modules. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin validates the main module of the document when an imported module is checked for errors.

A typical example is the chunking of a DocBook XSL stylesheet that has `chunk.xsl` as the main module and `param.xsl`, `chunk-common.xsl`, and `chunk-code.xsl` as imported modules. `param.xsl` only defines XSLT parameters. The module `chunk-common.xsl` defines an XSLT template with the name `chunk`. `Chunk-code.xsl` calls this template. The parameters defined in `param.xsl` are used in the other modules without being redefined.

Validating `chunk-code.xsl` as an individual XSLT stylesheet generates misleading errors regarding parameters and templates that are used but undefined. These errors are only caused by ignoring the context in which this module is used in real XSLT transformations and validations. To validate such a module, define a validation scenario to set the main module of the stylesheet and the validation engine used to find the errors. Usually this engine applies the transformation during the validation process to detect the errors that the transformation generates.

You can validate a stylesheet with several engines to make sure that you can use it in various environments and have the same results. For example, an XSLT stylesheet may be applied with Saxon 12 or Saxon 6.5 engines in different production systems.

Other examples of documents that can benefit from a validation scenario include:

- A complex XQuery file with a main module that imports modules developed independently but validated in the context of the main module of the query. In an XQuery validation scenario, the default validator of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (Saxon 12) or any connection to a database that supports validation (eXist XML Database, MarkLogic version 5 or newer) can be set as a validation engine.
- An XML document where the *main file (on page 2232)* includes smaller fragment files using XML entity references.

Note:
If a *main file* is associated with the current file, the validation scenarios defined in the *main file*, along with any Schematron schema defined in the default scenarios for that particular *framework*, are used for the validation. These take precedence over other types of validation

units defined in the default scenarios for the particular *framework*. For more information on *main files*, see Contextual Project Operations Using 'Main Files' Support *(on page 253)* or Modular Contextual XML Editing Using 'Main Files' Support *(on page 576)*.

All validation scenarios that are defined in the *framework* associated with the current document are shown in the **Validation** toolbar drop-down menu. This makes it easy for the user to turn validation scenarios on or off for a document.

Tip:
Status information generated by certain operations (such as *validation*) are fed into the **Console** view. This could be helpful for troubleshooting problems encountered during such operations. To open this view, select **Window > Show View > Console**.

Related information
Validating XML Documents Against a Schema *(on page 525)*
Presenting Validation Errors in Author Mode *(on page 530)*
Presenting Validation Errors in Text Mode *(on page 527)*

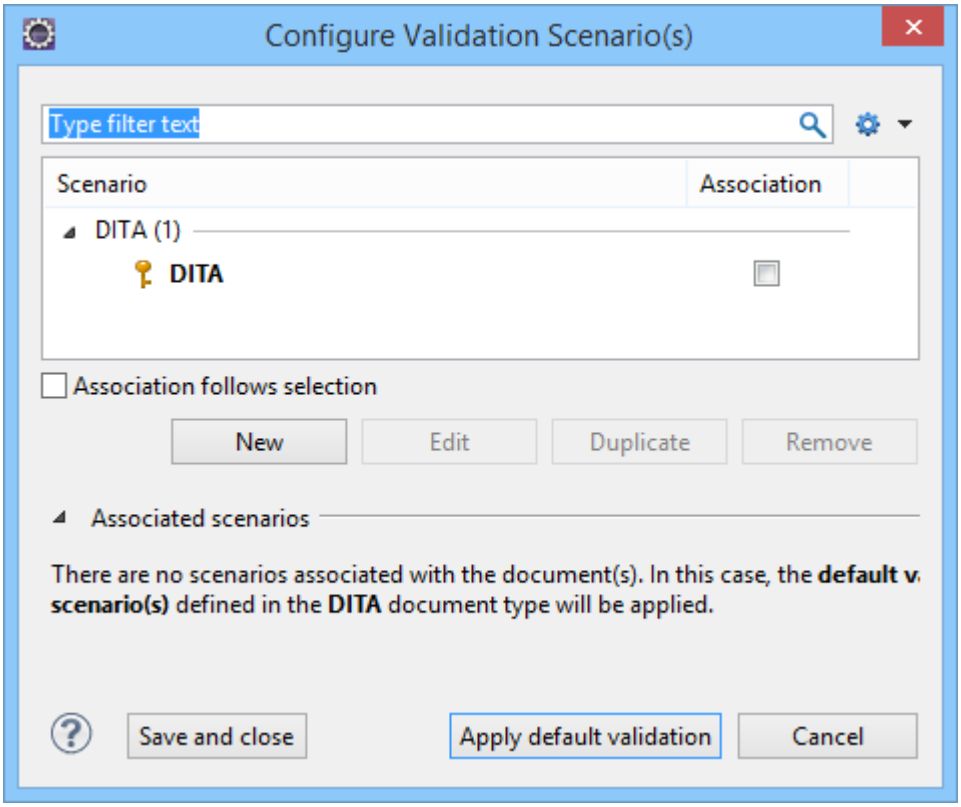
Creating a New Validation Scenario

To create a validation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** from the toolbar, or from the **XML** menu (or the **Validate** submenu when invoking the contextual menu on a file in the Project Explorer View *(on page 245)*). The **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** dialog box is displayed. It contains built-in and user-defined scenarios. The built-in scenarios are organized in categories depending on the type of file they apply to and you can identify them by a yellow key icon that marks them as *read-only*. The user-defined scenarios are organized under a single category. The default scenarios for the particular *framework (on page 2231)* are rendered in bold.

   Note:
   If a *main file* is associated with the current file, the validation scenarios defined in the *main file*, along with any Schematron schema defined in the default scenarios for that particular *framework*, are used for the validation. These take precedence over other types of validation units defined in the default scenarios for the particular *framework*. For more information on *main files*, see Contextual Project Operations Using 'Main Files' Support *(on page 253)* or Modular Contextual XML Editing Using 'Main Files' Support *(on page 576)*.

Figure 160. Configure Validation Scenario Dialog Box



The top section of the dialog box contains a filter that allows you to search through the scenarios list and the **Settings** button allows you to configure the following options:

Show all scenarios

Select this option to display all the available scenarios, regardless of the document they are associated with.

Show only the scenarios available for the editor

Select this option to only display the scenarios that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can apply for the current document type.

Show associated scenarios

Select this option to only display the scenarios associated with the document you are editing.

Import scenarios

This option opens the **Import scenarios** dialog box that allows you to select the `scenarios` file that contains the scenarios you want to import. If one of the scenarios you import is identical to an existing scenario, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin ignores it. If a conflict appears (an imported scenario has the same name as an existing one), you can choose between two options:

- Keep or replace the existing scenario.
- Keep both scenarios.

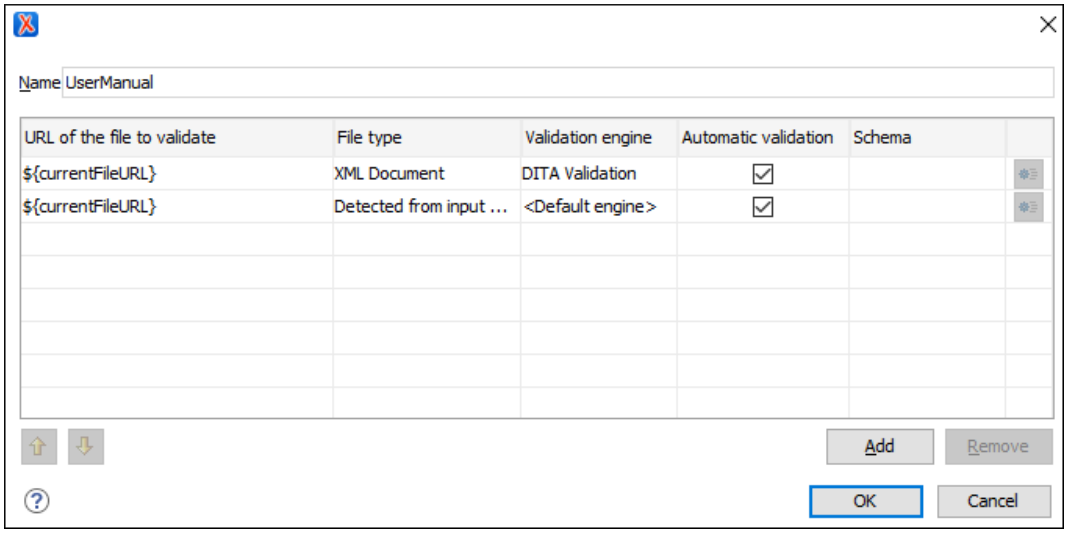
> **Note:**
> When you keep both scenarios, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin adds `imported` to the name of the imported scenario.

Export selected scenarios

Use this option to export selected scenarios individually. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin creates a `scenarios` file that contains the exported scenarios. This is useful if you want to share scenarios with others or export them to another computer.

2. To add a scenario, click the **New** button.
   A validation scenario configuration dialog box is displayed and it lists all the validation units for the scenario.

Figure 161. Validation Scenario Configuration Dialog Box



This scenario configuration dialog box allows you to configure the following information and options:

Name

The name of the validation scenario.

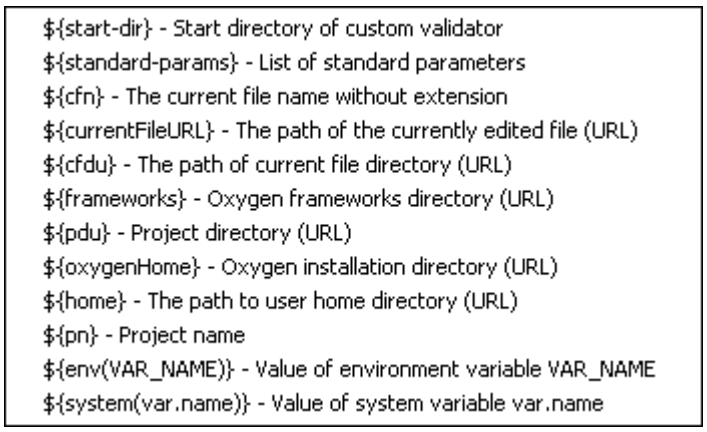
URL of the file to validate

The URL of the main module that includes the current module. It is also the entry module of the validation process when the current one is validated. To edit the URL, click its cell and specify the URL of the main module by doing one of the following:

- Enter the URL in the text field or select it from the drop-down list.
- Use the **Browse** drop-down button to browse for a local, remote, or archived file.

- Use the **Insert Editor Variable** button to insert an editor variable *(on page 199)* or a custom editor variable *(on page 209)*.

Figure 162. Insert an Editor Variable



File type

The type of the document that is validated in the current validation unit. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically selects the file type depending on the value of the **URL of the file to validate** field.

Validation engine

You can select one of the engines available in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for validation of the particular document type:

- **Default engine** - The default engine is used to run the validation for the current document type, as specified in the preferences page for that type of document (for example, XSLT preferences page *(on page 191)*, XML Schema preferences page *(on page 181)*).
- **DITA Validation** engine - Performs DITA-specific checks in the context of the specifications (it is similar to the process when using the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)* in the **DITA Maps Manager**, but for a local file rather than an entire *DITA map (on page 2230)*).
- **DITA Map Validation and Completeness Check** engine - Performs a validation process that checks the DITA map document and all referenced topics and maps (it is similar to the process when using the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)* in the **DITA Maps Manager**).
- **DITA-OT Project Validation and Completeness Check** engine - Performs a validation process that checks each context from the provided DITA-OT project file (it is similar to the process when using the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)* in the **DITA Maps Manager**).
- **Table Layout Validation** engine - Looks for table layout problems (for more information, see the Report table layout problems option *(on page 1931)*).

Automatic validation

If this option is selected, the validation operation defined by this row is also applied by the automatic validation feature *(on page 525)*. If the **Automatic validation** feature is disabled in the Document Checking preferences page *(on page 123)*, then this option is ignored, as the preference setting has a higher priority.

Schema

This option becomes active when you set the **File type** to **XML Document** and allows you to specify the schema used for the validation unit.

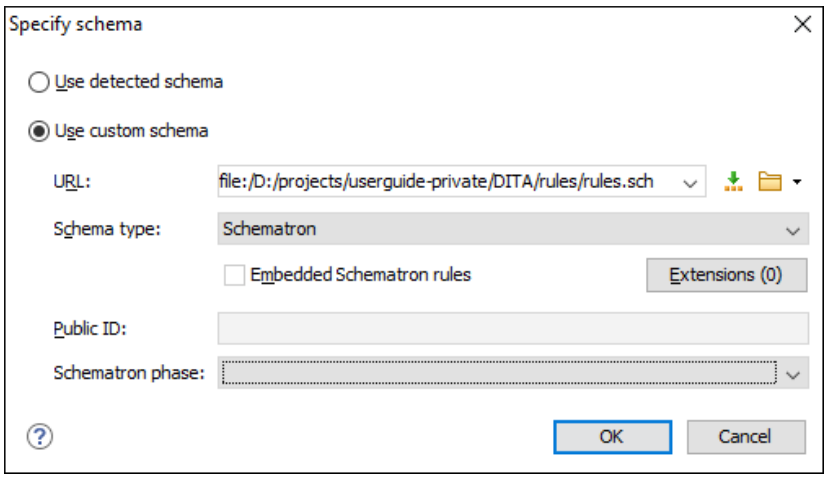
Settings

Depending on the selected validation engine, clicking the **Settings** button either opens the **Specify Schema** dialog box or the **Configure validation engine** dialog box.

- **Specify Schema Dialog Box**

  This dialog box allows you to specify a custom schema to be used for the validation process.

  Figure 163. Specify Schema Dialog Box

  The **Specify Schema** dialog box contains the following options:

  Use detected schema

  Uses the schema detected for the particular document *(on page 564)*.

  Use custom schema

  Allows you to specify the schema using the following options:

  - **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S) or SFTP. You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down,

the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

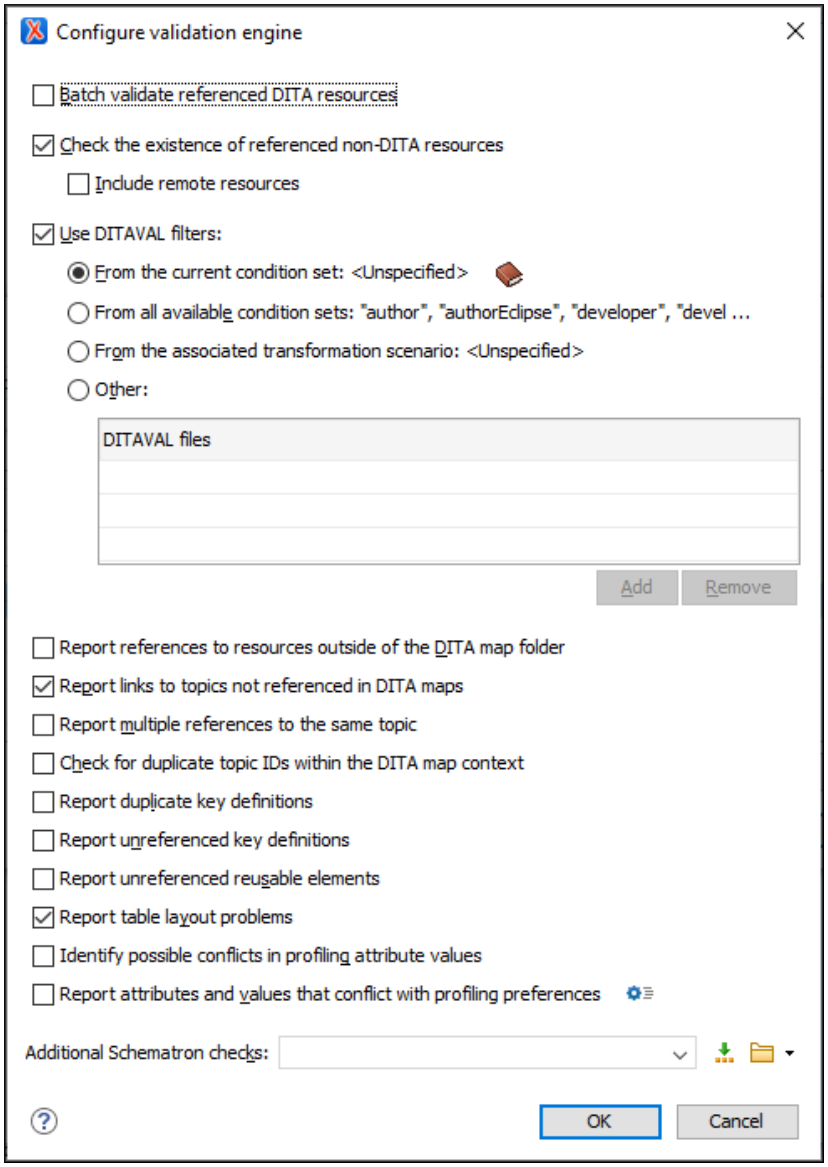
- **Schema type** - Select a possible schema type from this combo box that is populated based on the extension of the schema file that was entered in the **URL** field. The possible schema types are: XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, Relax NG Compact, Schematron, or NVDL.
- **Embedded Schematron rules** - If you have selected XML Schema or Relax NG schemas with embedded Schematron rules and you want to use those embedded rules, select this option.
- **Extensions**- Opens a dialog box that allows you to specify *Java extension JARs (on page 2231)* to be used during the validation.
- **Public ID** - Allows you to specify a public ID if you have selected a DTD.
- **Schematron phase** - If you select a Schematron schema, this drop-down list allows you to select a Schematron phase that you want to use for validation. The listed phases are defined in the Schematron document.

◦ **Configure Validation Engine Dialog Box**

This dialog box allows you to configure options for checking the DITA map document and all referenced topics and maps (similar to the process done when using the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)* in the **DITA Maps Manager**).

Note:
The options presented in the **Configure validation engine** dialog box depends on type of validation engine. For example, when configuring the **DITA-OT Project Validation and Completeness Check** validation engine, the dialog box has slightly fewer options (omitting those that are not applicable).

Figure 164. Example of the Configure Validation Engine Dialog Box



The **Configure Validation Engine** dialog box contains the following options:

Batch validate referenced DITA resources

This option specifies the level of validation that applies to referenced DITA files:

- If the checkbox is left unchecked (default setting), the DITA files will be validated using the rules defined in the DTD or XML Schema declared in the document.
- If the checkbox is selected, the DITA files will be validated using rules defined in their associated validation scenario *(on page 536)*.

Check the existence of non-DITA references resources

Extends the validation of referenced resources to non-DITA files.

Include remote resources

Select this option if you want to check that remote referenced binary resources (such as images, movie clips, ZIP archives) exist at the specified location.

Use DITAVAL filters

The content of the map is filtered by applying a profiling condition set before validation. You can choose between the following options:

- **From the current condition set** - The map is filtered using the condition set currently applied in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*. Clicking the **Details** icon opens a topic in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin User Guide that explains how to create a profiling condition set.
- **From all available condition sets** - For each available condition set, the map content is filtered using that set before validation.
- **From the associated transformation scenario** - The filtering condition set is specified explicitly as a DITAVAL file in the current transformation scenario associated with the *DITA map*.
- **Other DITAVAL files** - For each DITAVAL file from this list, the map content is filtered using the DITAVAL file before validation. Use the **Add** or **Remove** buttons to configure the list. The **Add** button opens a dialog box that allows you to select a local or remote path to a DITAVAL file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Report references to resources outside of the DITA map folder

If selected, it will report any references to DITA resources that are located outside the *main DITA map (on page 2234)* folder.

Report links to topics not referenced in DITA maps

Checks that all the topics referenced by other topics are also linked in the *DITA map*. Also reports related links defined in relationship tables whose target topics are not referenced in the DITA Map.

Report multiple references to the same topic

If selected, it will report warnings when a topic is referenced multiple times in the *DITA map*, unless a unique `@copy-to` attribute is used on the `<topicref>` element for any topic that is referenced multiple times.

For example, it will **not** report a warning if there is a topic referenced twice, but the second `<topicref>` has a `@copy-to` attribute set:

```
<topicref href="topic.dita"/>
.....
 <topicref href="topic.dita" copy-to="topic2.dita"/>
```

On the other hand, it **will** report a warning if there is a topic referenced twice and none of the reference-type elements has a `@copy-to` attribute set or both of them have the `@copy-to` attribute set to the same value:

```
<topicref href="topic.dita" copy-to="topic2.dita"/>
......
 <topicref href="topic.dita" copy-to="topic2.dita"/>
```

Check for duplicate topic IDs within the DITA map context

Checks for multiple topics with the same ID in the context of the entire map.

Report duplicate key definitions

Checks the *DITA map* for multiple key references with the same key defined for them. This is helpful because if you have two different resources with the same value for the `@keys` attribute, all references will point to the first one encountered and the other will be ignored.

Note:
This option takes *key scopes (on page 2049)* into account. For example, if you have something like this:

```
<topicref href="t2.dita" keys="k2"/>
    <topicgroup keyscope="ks">
        <topicref href="t2.dita" keys="k2"/>
    </topicgroup>
```

it will not report the "k2" key as a duplicate because it is defined in a *key scope (on page 2049)* on the second occurrence.

Report unreferenced key definitions

Checks the entire *DITA map* and reports any key definitions that are not referenced anywhere. Note that if the **Use DITAVAL filters** option is selected, this check will search for unreferenced key definitions based upon your selected filter.

Report unreferenced reusable elements

Checks the entire *DITA map* and reports any detected reusable elements that are not referenced anywhere. It looks for elements that have an *ID* specified in the following types of topic references:

- Any `<topicref>` that contains a `@processing-role` attribute set to **resource-only**.
- Any other referenced topic that contains elements that are reused elsewhere through a `@conref` or `@conkeyref`.

Report table layout problems

Looks for table layout problems. The types of errors that may be reported include:

- If a row has fewer cells than the number of columns detected.
- For a *CALS* table, if a cell has a vertical span greater than the available rows count.
- For a *CALS* table, if the number of `<colspecs>` is different than the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute.
- For a *CALS* table, if the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute is different than the number of columns detected in the table structure.
- For a *CALS* table, if the value of the `@cols`, `@rowsep`, or `@colsep` attributes are not numeric.
- For a *CALS* table, if the `@namest`, `@nameend`, or `@colname` attributes point to an incorrect column name.

Identify possible conflicts in profile attribute values

When the profiling attributes of a topic contain values that are not found in parent topic profiling attributes, the content of the topic is overshadowed when generating profiled output. This option reports these possible conflicts.

Report attributes and values that conflict with profiling preferences

Looks for profiling attributes and values that are not defined in the **Profiling / Conditional Text** preferences page *(on page 136)* (you can click the **Profiling Preferences** button to open this preferences page). It also checks if profiling attributes defined as *single-value* have multiple values set in the searched topics.

Additional Schematron checks

Allows you to select a Schematron file that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will use for the validation of DITA resources. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Advanced Tip:
Some APIs are available that retrieve information about DITA keys that are referenced within a topic. The APIs can be called from XSLT Stylesheets (including XML Refactoring operations) or Schematron schemas. For details, see API Documentation: DITAXSLTExtensionFunctionUtil.

Move Up

Moves the selected validation unit up one spot in the list.

Move Down

Moves the selected validation unit down one spot in the list.

Add

Adds a new validation unit to the list.

Remove

Removes an existing validation unit from the list.

3. Configure any of the existing validation units according to the information above, and you can use the buttons at the bottom of the table to add, remove, or move validation units. Note that if you add a Schematron validation unit, you can also select the **validation phase**.

4. Click **OK**.
   The newly created validation scenario will now be included in the list of scenarios in the **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** dialog box. You can select the scenario in this dialog box to associate it with the current document and click the **Apply associated** button to run the validation scenario.

Editing a Validation Scenario

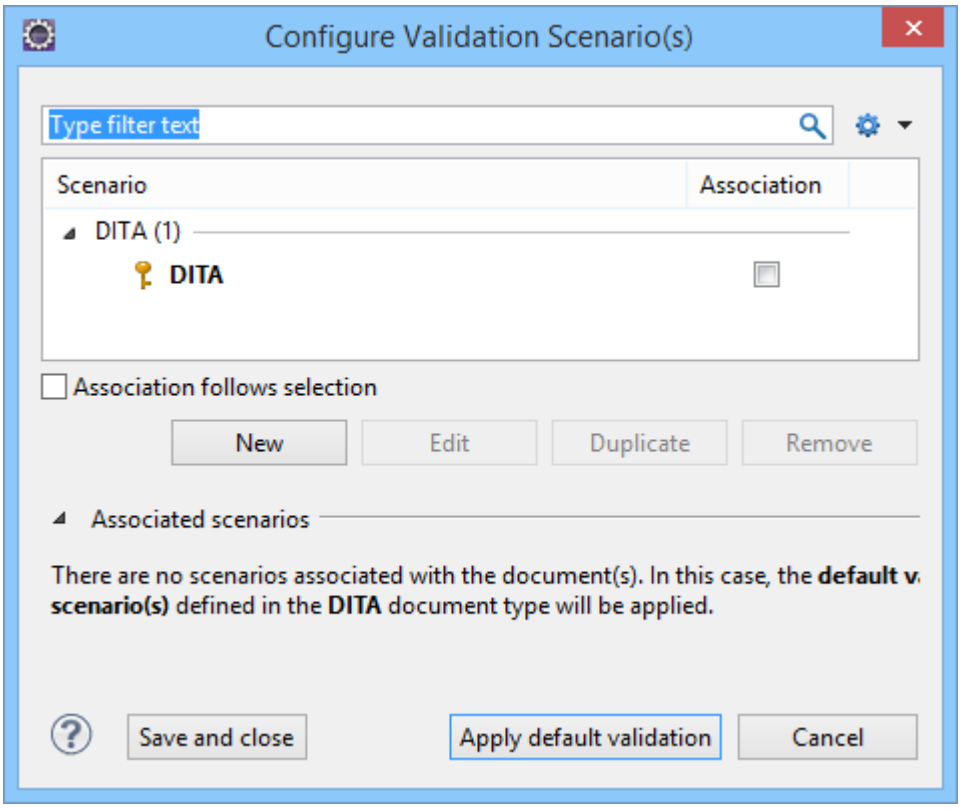
To edit an existing validation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** from the toolbar, or from the **XML** menu (or the **Validate** submenu when invoking the contextual menu on a file in the Project Explorer View *(on page 245)*).
   The **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** dialog box is displayed. It contains built-in and user-defined scenarios. The built-in scenarios are organized in categories depending on the type of file they apply to and you can identify them by a yellow key icon that marks them as *read-only*. The user-defined scenarios are organized under a single category. The default scenarios for the particular *framework (on page 2231)* are rendered in bold.

   Note:
   If a *main file* is associated with the current file, the validation scenarios defined in the *main file*, along with any Schematron schema defined in the default scenarios for that particular

framework, are used for the validation. These take precedence over other types of validation units defined in the default scenarios for the particular *framework*. For more information on *main files*, see Contextual Project Operations Using 'Main Files' Support *(on page 253)* or Modular Contextual XML Editing Using 'Main Files' Support *(on page 576)*.

Figure 165. Configure Validation Scenario Dialog Box



The top section of the dialog box contains a filter that allows you to search through the scenarios list and the **Settings** button allows you to configure the following options:

Show all scenarios

Select this option to display all the available scenarios, regardless of the document they are associated with.

Show only the scenarios available for the editor

Select this option to only display the scenarios that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can apply for the current document type.

Show associated scenarios

Select this option to only display the scenarios associated with the document you are editing.

Import scenarios

This option opens the **Import scenarios** dialog box that allows you to select the `scenarios` file that contains the scenarios you want to import. If one of the scenarios you import is identical to an existing scenario, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin ignores

it. If a conflict appears (an imported scenario has the same name as an existing one), you can choose between two options:

- Keep or replace the existing scenario.
- Keep both scenarios.

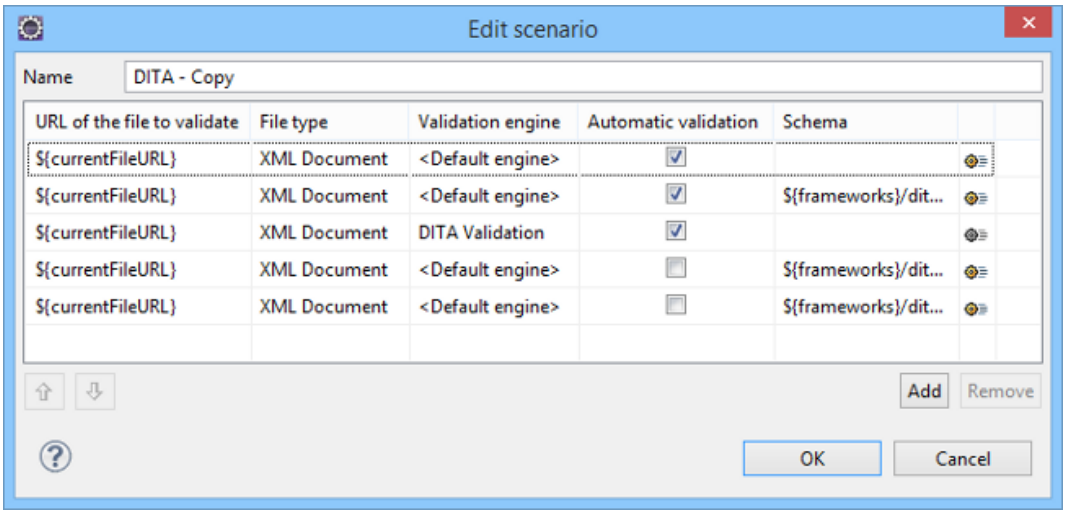
> **Note:**
> When you keep both scenarios, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin adds `imported` to the name of the imported scenario.

Export selected scenarios

Use this option to export selected scenarios individually. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin creates a `scenarios` file that contains the exported scenarios. This is useful if you want to share scenarios with others or export them to another computer.

2. Select the scenario and click the **Edit** button. If you try to edit one of the *read-only* built-in scenarios, you will receive a warning message that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin needs to creates customizable duplicate (you can also use the **Duplicate** button).
   The **Edit scenario** dialog box is displayed and it lists all the validation units for the scenario.

Figure 166. Edit Validation Scenario



This scenario configuration dialog box allows you to configure the following information and options:

Name

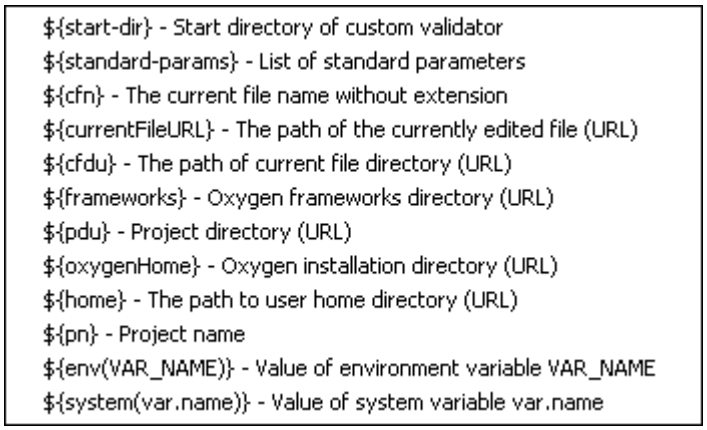
The name of the validation scenario.

URL of the file to validate

The URL of the main module that includes the current module. It is also the entry module of the validation process when the current one is validated. To edit the URL, click its cell and specify the URL of the main module by doing one of the following:

- Enter the URL in the text field or select it from the drop-down list.
- Use the **Browse** drop-down button to browse for a local, remote, or archived file.
- Use the **Insert Editor Variable** button to insert an editor variable *(on page 199)* or a custom editor variable *(on page 209)*.

Figure 167. Insert an Editor Variable



File type

The type of the document that is validated in the current validation unit. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically selects the file type depending on the value of the **URL of the file to validate** field.

Validation engine

You can select one of the engines available in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for validation of the particular document type:

- **Default engine** - The default engine is used to run the validation for the current document type, as specified in the preferences page for that type of document (for example, XSLT preferences page *(on page 191)*, XML Schema preferences page *(on page 181)*).
- **DITA Validation** engine - Performs DITA-specific checks in the context of the specifications (it is similar to the process when using the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)* in the **DITA Maps Manager**, but for a local file rather than an entire *DITA map (on page 2230)*).
- **DITA Map Validation and Completeness Check** engine - Performs a validation process that checks the DITA map document and all referenced topics and maps (it is similar to the process when using the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)* in the **DITA Maps Manager**).
- **DITA-OT Project Validation and Completeness Check** engine - Performs a validation process that checks each context from the provided DITA-OT project

file (it is similar to the process when using the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)* in the **DITA Maps Manager**).

- **Table Layout Validation** engine - Looks for table layout problems (for more information, see the Report table layout problems option *(on page 1931)*).

Automatic validation

If this option is selected, the validation operation defined by this row is also applied by the automatic validation feature *(on page 525)*. If the **Automatic validation** feature is disabled in the Document Checking preferences page *(on page 123)*, then this option is ignored, as the preference setting has a higher priority.

Schema

This option becomes active when you set the **File type** to **XML Document** and allows you to specify the schema used for the validation unit.

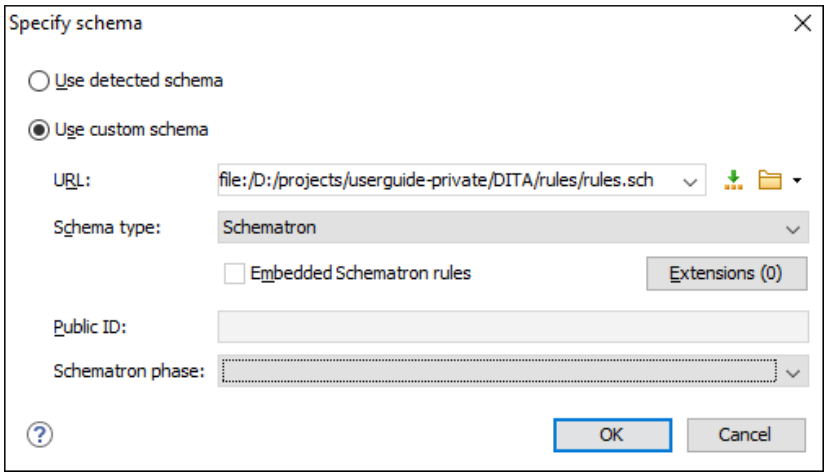
Settings

Depending on the selected validation engine, clicking the **Settings** button either opens the **Specify Schema** dialog box or the **Configure validation engine** dialog box.

- **Specify Schema Dialog Box**

  This dialog box allows you to specify a custom schema to be used for the validation process.

  Figure 168. Specify Schema Dialog Box

  The **Specify Schema** dialog box contains the following options:

  Use detected schema

  Uses the schema detected for the particular document *(on page 564)*.

  Use custom schema

  Allows you to specify the schema using the following options:

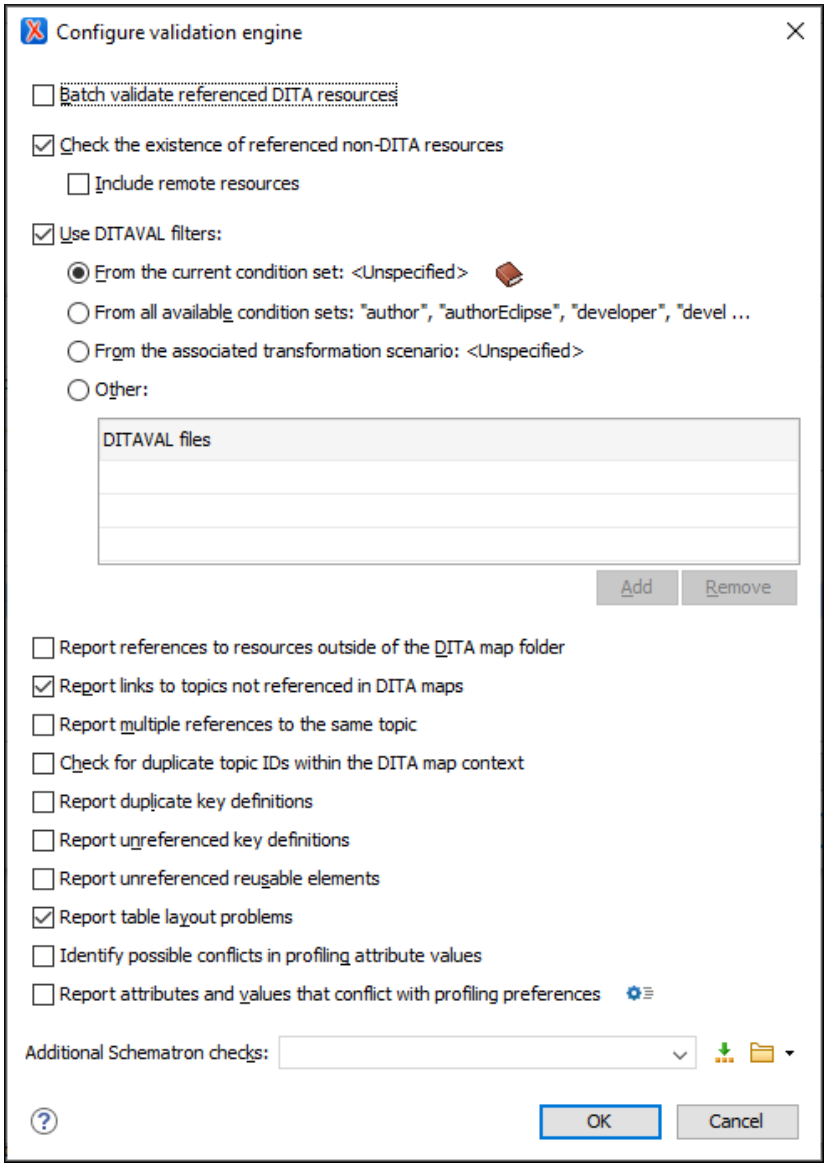
- **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S) or SFTP. You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.
- **Schema type** - Select a possible schema type from this combo box that is populated based on the extension of the schema file that was entered in the **URL** field. The possible schema types are: XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, Relax NG Compact, Schematron, or NVDL.
- **Embedded Schematron rules** - If you have selected XML Schema or Relax NG schemas with embedded Schematron rules and you want to use those embedded rules, select this option.
- **Extensions**- Opens a dialog box that allows you to specify *Java extension JARs (on page 2231)* to be used during the validation.
- **Public ID** - Allows you to specify a public ID if you have selected a DTD.
- **Schematron phase** - If you select a Schematron schema, this drop-down list allows you to select a Schematron phase that you want to use for validation. The listed phases are defined in the Schematron document.

◦ **Configure Validation Engine Dialog Box**

This dialog box allows you to configure options for checking the DITA map document and all referenced topics and maps (similar to the process done when using the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)* in the **DITA Maps Manager**).

> **Note:**
> The options presented in the **Configure validation engine** dialog box depends on type of validation engine. For example, when configuring the **DITA-OT Project Validation and Completeness Check** validation engine, the dialog box has slightly fewer options (omitting those that are not applicable).

Figure 169. Example of the Configure Validation Engine Dialog Box



The **Configure Validation Engine** dialog box contains the following options:

Batch validate referenced DITA resources

This option specifies the level of validation that applies to referenced DITA files:

- If the checkbox is left unchecked (default setting), the DITA files will be validated using the rules defined in the DTD or XML Schema declared in the document.
- If the checkbox is selected, the DITA files will be validated using rules defined in their associated validation scenario *(on page 536)*.

Check the existence of non-DITA references resources

Extends the validation of referenced resources to non-DITA files.

Include remote resources

Select this option if you want to check that remote referenced binary resources (such as images, movie clips, ZIP archives) exist at the specified location.

Use DITAVAL filters

The content of the map is filtered by applying a profiling condition set before validation. You can choose between the following options:

- **From the current condition set** - The map is filtered using the condition set currently applied in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*. Clicking the **Details** icon opens a topic in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin User Guide that explains how to create a profiling condition set.
- **From all available condition sets** - For each available condition set, the map content is filtered using that set before validation.
- **From the associated transformation scenario** - The filtering condition set is specified explicitly as a DITAVAL file in the current transformation scenario associated with the *DITA map*.
- **Other DITAVAL files** - For each DITAVAL file from this list, the map content is filtered using the DITAVAL file before validation. Use the **Add** or **Remove** buttons to configure the list. The **Add** button opens a dialog box that allows you to select a local or remote path to a DITAVAL file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Report references to resources outside of the DITA map folder

If selected, it will report any references to DITA resources that are located outside the *main DITA map (on page 2234)* folder.

Report links to topics not referenced in DITA maps

Checks that all the topics referenced by other topics are also linked in the *DITA map*. Also reports related links defined in relationship tables whose target topics are not referenced in the DITA Map.

Report multiple references to the same topic

If selected, it will report warnings when a topic is referenced multiple times in the *DITA map*, unless a unique `@copy-to` attribute is used on the `<topicref>` element for any topic that is referenced multiple times.

For example, it will **not** report a warning if there is a topic referenced twice, but the second `<topicref>` has a `@copy-to` attribute set:

```
<topicref href="topic.dita"/>
.....
 <topicref href="topic.dita" copy-to="topic2.dita"/>
```

On the other hand, it **will** report a warning if there is a topic referenced twice and none of the reference-type elements has a `@copy-to` attribute set or both of them have the `@copy-to` attribute set to the same value:

```
<topicref href="topic.dita" copy-to="topic2.dita"/>
......
 <topicref href="topic.dita" copy-to="topic2.dita"/>
```

Check for duplicate topic IDs within the DITA map context

Checks for multiple topics with the same ID in the context of the entire map.

Report duplicate key definitions

Checks the *DITA map* for multiple key references with the same key defined for them. This is helpful because if you have two different resources with the same value for the `@keys` attribute, all references will point to the first one encountered and the other will be ignored.

Note:
This option takes *key scopes (on page 2049)* into account. For example, if you have something like this:

```
<topicref href="t2.dita" keys="k2"/>
    <topicgroup keyscope="ks">
        <topicref href="t2.dita" keys="k2"/>
    </topicgroup>
```

it will not report the "k2" key as a duplicate because it is defined in a *key scope (on page 2049)* on the second occurrence.

Report unreferenced key definitions

Checks the entire *DITA map* and reports any key definitions that are not referenced anywhere. Note that if the **Use DITAVAL filters** option is selected, this check will search for unreferenced key definitions based upon your selected filter.

Report unreferenced reusable elements

Checks the entire *DITA map* and reports any detected reusable elements that are not referenced anywhere. It looks for elements that have an *ID* specified in the following types of topic references:

- Any `<topicref>` that contains a `@processing-role` attribute set to **resource-only**.
- Any other referenced topic that contains elements that are reused elsewhere through a `@conref` or `@conkeyref`.

Report table layout problems

Looks for table layout problems. The types of errors that may be reported include:

- If a row has fewer cells than the number of columns detected.
- For a *CALS* table, if a cell has a vertical span greater than the available rows count.
- For a *CALS* table, if the number of `<colspecs>` is different than the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute.
- For a *CALS* table, if the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute is different than the number of columns detected in the table structure.
- For a *CALS* table, if the value of the `@cols`, `@rowsep`, or `@colsep` attributes are not numeric.
- For a *CALS* table, if the `@namest`, `@nameend`, or `@colname` attributes point to an incorrect column name.

Identify possible conflicts in profile attribute values

When the profiling attributes of a topic contain values that are not found in parent topic profiling attributes, the content of the topic is overshadowed when generating profiled output. This option reports these possible conflicts.

Report attributes and values that conflict with profiling preferences

Looks for profiling attributes and values that are not defined in the **Profiling / Conditional Text** preferences page *(on page 136)* (you can click the **Profiling Preferences** button to open this preferences page). It also checks if profiling attributes defined as *single-value* have multiple values set in the searched topics.

Additional Schematron checks

Allows you to select a Schematron file that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will use for the validation of DITA resources. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Advanced Tip:
Some APIs are available that retrieve information about DITA keys that are referenced within a topic. The APIs can be called from XSLT Stylesheets (including XML Refactoring operations) or Schematron schemas. For details, see API Documentation: DITAXSLTExtensionFunctionUtil.

Move Up

Moves the selected validation unit up one spot in the list.

Move Down

Moves the selected validation unit down one spot in the list.

Add

Adds a new validation unit to the list.

Remove

Removes an existing validation unit from the list.

3. Configure any of the existing validation units according to the information above, and you can use the buttons at the bottom of the table to add, remove, or move validation units. Note that if you add a Schematron validation unit, you can also select the **validation phase**.

4. When you are done configuring the scenario, click **OK**.
   The modified validation scenario will now be included in the list of scenarios in the **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** dialog box. If you chose to duplicate an existing one, the modified scenario will be listed with the word *copy* at the end of its name.

Sharing Validation Scenarios

The validation scenarios and their settings can be shared with other users by exporting them to a specialized scenarios file *(on page 199)* that can then be imported.

Resolving References to Remote Schemas with an XML Catalog

When a reference to a remote schema must be used in the validated XML document for interoperability purposes, but a local copy of the schema should actually be used for performance reasons, the reference can be resolved to the local copy of the schema with an *XML Catalog (on page 2235)*.

For example, if the XML document contains a reference to a remote schema `docbook.rng` like this:

```
<?xml-model href="http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/5.0/rng/docbook.rng"
    type="application/xml" schematypens="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"?>
```

it can be resolved to a local copy with a catalog entry like this:

```
<uri name="http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/5.0/rng/docbook.rng"
    uri="rng/docbook.rng"/>
```

An *XML Catalog* can also be used to map an XML Schema specified with a URN in the `@xsi:schemaLocation` attribute of an XML document to a local copy of the schema. For example, if the XML document specifies the schema with:

```
<topic xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="urn:oasis:names:tc:dita:xsd:topic.xsd:1.1">
```

the URN can be resolved to a local schema file with a catalog entry like this:

```
<uri name="urn:oasis:names:tc:dita:xsd:topic.xsd:1.1"
    uri="topic.xsd"/>
```

Related Information:

Working with XML Catalogs *(on page 573)*

Validation Example - A DocBook Validation Error

In the following DocBook 4 document, the content of the `<listitem>` element does not match the rules of the DocBook 4 schema (`docbookx.dtd`).

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE article PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.4//EN"
     "http://www.docbook.org/xml/4.4/docbookx.dtd">
<article>
    <title>Article Title</title>
    <sect1>
      <title>Section1 Title</title>
      <itemizedlist>
        <listitem>
          <link>a link here</link>
        </listitem>
      </itemizedlist>
    </sect1>
</article>
```

The **Validate Document** action will return the following error:

```
Unexpected element "link". The content of the parent element type must match
"(calloutlist|glosslist|bibliolist|itemizedlist|orderedlist|segmentedlist|simplelist
|variablelist|caution|important|note|tip|warning|literallayout|programlisting
|programlistingco|screen|screenco|screenshot|synopsis|cmdsynopsis|funcsynopsis
|classsynopsis|fieldsynopsis|constructorsynopsis|destructorsynopsis|methodsynopsis
```

```
|formalpara|para|simpara|address|blockquote|graphic|graphicco|mediaobject|mediaobjectco
|informalequation|informalexample|informalfigure|informaltable|equation|example|figure
|table|msgset|procedure|sidebar|qandaset|task|anchor|bridgehead|remark|highlights
|abstract|authorblurb|epigraph|indexterm|beginpage)+".
```

This error message is a little more difficult to understand, so understanding of the syntax or processing rules for the DocBook XML DTD `<listitem>` element is recommended. However, the error message does offer a clue as to the source of the problem, indicating that *"The content of element type must match"*.

Fortunately, most standards-based DTDs, XML Schemas, and Relax NG schemas are supplied with reference documentation. This enables you to read about the element. In this case, you should learn about the child elements of `<listitem>` and their nesting rules. Once you have correctly inserted the required child element and nested it in accordance with the XML rules, the document will become valid.

Embedding Schematron Rules in XML Schema or RELAX NG

Schematron rules can be embedded into an XML Schema through annotations (using the `<appinfo>` element), or in any element on any level of a RELAX NG Schema (taking into account that the RELAX NG validator ignores all elements that are not in the RELAX NG namespace).

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports Schematron validation schemas and it is able to extract and use the embedded rules.

Validating XML Documents with XML Schema and Embedded Schematron

To validate an XML document with XML Schema and its embedded Schematron, you can associate the document like this:

```
<?xml-model href="percent.xsd" type="application/xml"
            schematypens="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"?>
```

Validating XML Documents with Relax NG and Embedded Schematron

To validate an XML document with RELAX NG schema and its embedded Schematron rules, you need to associate the document with both schemas like this:

```
<?xml-model href="percent.rng" type="application/xml"
            schematypens="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"?>
<?xml-model href="percent.rng" type="application/xml"
            schematypens="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron"?>
```

The second association validates your document with Schematron rules extracted from the RELAX NG Schema.

Note:
When you work with XML Schema or Relax NG documents that have embedded Schematron rules Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides two built-in validation scenarios: **Validate XML Schema**

with embedded Schematron for XML schema, and **Validate Relax NG with embedded Schematron** for Relax NG. You can use one of these scenarios to validate the embedded Schematron rules.

Example: Embedded Schematron in XML Schema

```
<xsd:appinfo>
  <sch:pattern>
    <sch:rule context="...">
      <sch:assert test="...">Message.</sch:assert>
    </sch:rule>
  </sch:pattern>
</xsd:appinfo>
```

Example: Embedded Schematron in Relax NG Schema

```
<grammar
    xmlns="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"
    xmlns:sch="http://purl.oclc.org/dsdl/schematron" >
    <sch:pattern>
      <sch:rule context="...">
        <sch:assert test="...">Message.</sch:assert>
      </sch:rule>
    </sch:pattern>
    <start>
     ..............
    </start>
</grammar>
```

XML Quick Fixes

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *Quick Fix* support *(on page 2233)* helps you resolve errors that appear in an XML document by offering *Quick Fixes* to problems such as missing required attributes or invalid elements. *Quick Fixes* are available in **Text** mode and **Author** mode

To activate this feature, hover over or place the cursor in the highlighted area of text where a validation error or warning occurs. If a *Quick Fix* is available for that particular error or warning, you can access the *Quick Fix* proposals with any of the following methods:

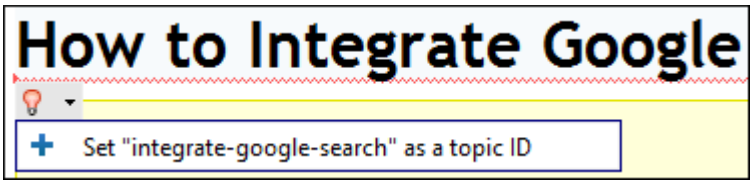
- When hovering over the error or warning, the proposals may be presented in a tooltip pop-up window and the available quick *Quick Fixes* include a link that can be used to perform the fix.

Figure 170. Quick Fix Presented in a Tooltip in Text Mode

Figure 171. Quick Fix Presented in a Tooltip in Author Mode

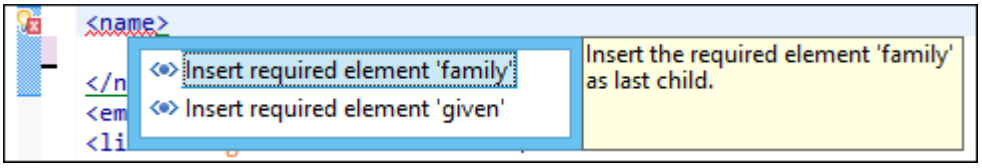
- When hovering over the error or warning in **Author** mode, a small *Quick Fix* drop-down menu is presented. You can use the drop-down menu to display a list of available *Quick Fixes* to select from for the particular error or warning.

Figure 172. Quick Fix Drop-Down Menu in Author Mode



- If you place the cursor in the highlighted area where a validation error or warning occurs, a *Quick Fix* icon ( ) is displayed in the stripe on the left side of the editor. If you click this icon, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the list of available fixes.

Figure 173. Quick Fix Menu Invoked by Clicking on the Icon



- With the cursor placed in the highlighted area of the error or warning, you can also invoke the *Quick Fix* menu by pressing **Ctrl + 1 (Command + 1 on macOS)** on your keyboard.

Tip:
If the **Oxygen AI Positron** add-on (version 7.0 or later) is installed, an **AI Positron Fix** action is also available in the **Quick Fix** menu and in the tooltip when hovering over a validation issue. You can use this action to fix the problem with assistance from the **AI Positron** platform. It will propose content in the chat pane within the **AI Positron** view that can be used to solve the problem.

Whenever you make a modification in the XML document or you apply a fix, the list of *Quick Fixes* is recomputed to ensure that you always have valid proposals.

Note:
A *Quick Fix* that adds an element inserts it along with required and optional elements, and required and fixed attributes, depending on how the **Content Completion** preferences *(on page 112)* are configured.

Quick Fixes for DTD, XSD, and Relax NG Errors

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers *Quick Fixes (on page 2233)* for common errors that appear in XML documents that are validated against DTD, XSD, or Relax NG schemas.

Note:
For XML documents validated against XSD schemas, the *Quick Fixes* are only available if you use the default Xerces validation engine.

Quick Fixes are available in **Text** mode and **Author** mode.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides *Quick Fixes* for numerous types of problems, including the following:

Problem Type	Available Quick Fixes
A specific element is required in the current context	Insert the required element
An element is invalid in the current context	Remove the invalid element
The content of the element should be empty	Remove the element content
An element is not allowed to have child elements	Remove all child elements
Text is not allowed in the current element	Remove the text content
A required attribute is missing	Insert the required attribute
An attribute is not allowed to be set for the current element	Remove the attribute
The attribute value is invalid	Propose the correct attribute values

Problem Type	Available Quick Fixes
ID value is already defined	Generate a unique ID value
References to an invalid ID	Change the reference to an already defined ID

Related Information:
Schematron Quick Fixes (SQF) *(on page 563)*

Schematron Quick Fixes (SQF)

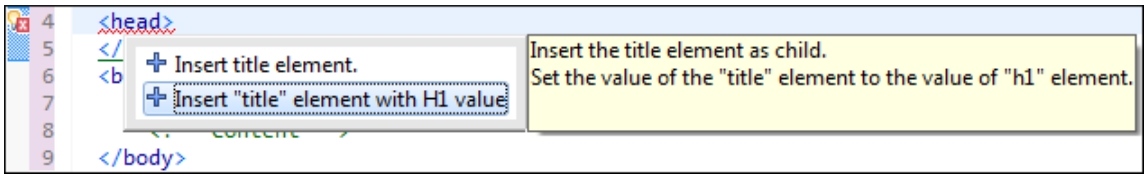
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for Schematron *Quick Fixes (on page 2233)* (SQF). They help you resolve issues that appear in XML documents that are validated against Schematron schemas by offering you solution proposals. The Schematron *Quick Fixes* are an extension of the Schematron language and they allow you to define fixes for Schematron validation messages. Specifically, they are associated with *assert* or *report* messages.

A typical use case is using Schematron *Quick Fixes* to assist content authors with common editing tasks. For example, you can use Schematron rules to automatically report certain validation warnings (or errors) when performing regular editing tasks, such as inserting specific elements or changing IDs to match specific naming conventions. For more details and examples, see the following blog post: https://blog.oxygenxml.com/topics/SchematronBCs.html.

Displaying the Schematron Quick Fix Proposals

The defined Schematron *Quick Fixes* are displayed on validation errors in **Text** mode and **Author** mode.

Figure 174. Example of a Schematron Quick Fix



Related Information:
Schematron Quick Fix Specifications

Associating a Schema to XML Documents

To provide as-you-type validation and to compute valid proposals for the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin requires a schema to be associated with the XML document. The schema specifies how the internal structure of the XML is defined.

Supported Types of Schema

The following schema types are supported:

- **W3C XML Schema 1.0 and 1.1** (with and without embedded Schematron rules) - The association with an XML Schema is added as an attribute of the root element with one of the following:
  - `@xsi:schemaLocation` attribute, if the root element of the document is in the namespace.
  - `@xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attribute, if the root element is not in the namespace.
- **DTD** - The association with a DTD is added as a `DOCTYPE` declaration.
- **Relax NG - XML Syntax** (with and without embedded Schematron rules) - The association is added as an *xml-model* processing instruction.
- **Relax NG - Compact Syntax** - The association is added as an *xml-model* processing instruction.
- **NVDL** - The association is added as an *xml-model* processing instruction.
- **Schematron** (both ISO Schematron and Schematron 1.5) - The association is added as an *xml-model* processing instruction.

Detecting the Schema(s) for Validation

For validation, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin tries to detect one or more schemas by searching multiple locations, in the following order:

1. The schema or multiple schemas referenced in validation stages from the validation scenario(s) *(on page 565)* associated with the current XML document.
2. If no validation scenario is selected to be used with the current XML document, then it falls back to the schema or multiple schemas defined in validation stages from the validation scenarios specified as default in the particular document type configuration *(on page 569)*.
3. If a schema is still not detected, then it falls back to the schema or multiple schemas associated directly in the XML document *(on page 570)*.

   Tip:
   To quickly open the schema used for validating the current document, select the **Open Associated Schema** action from the toolbar (or **XML** menu).

4. If a schema is still not detected, then it falls back to the schema defined in the **Schema** tab of a *framework* (document type) configuration *(on page 572)*.

Detecting a Schema for Content Completion

For content completion, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses just one schema and tries to detect that schema by searching multiple locations, in the following order:

1. If no schema is detected in the document, then it falls back to the highest ranking schema defined in validation stages from the validation scenario(s) associated with the current document *(on page 565)*.
2. If a schema is still not detecting, then it falls back to the highest ranking schema defined in validation stages from validation scenarios specified as default in the particular document type configuration *(on page 569)*.

3. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin determines the most appropriate or highest ranking schema that is associated directly in the XML document *(on page 570)* and uses it for content completion.
4. If a schema is still not detecting, then it falls back to the schema defined in the **Schema** tab of a *framework* (document type) configuration *(on page 572)*.

Related Information:
W3C: Associating Schemas with XML Documents

Associating a Schema Through a Validation Scenario

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the rules defined in the detected schema to report errors and warnings during automatic and manual validations that help maintain the structural integrity of your XML documents. You can specify the schema to be used for validation directly in validation scenarios *(on page 536)* and there are several methods that can be used to do so.

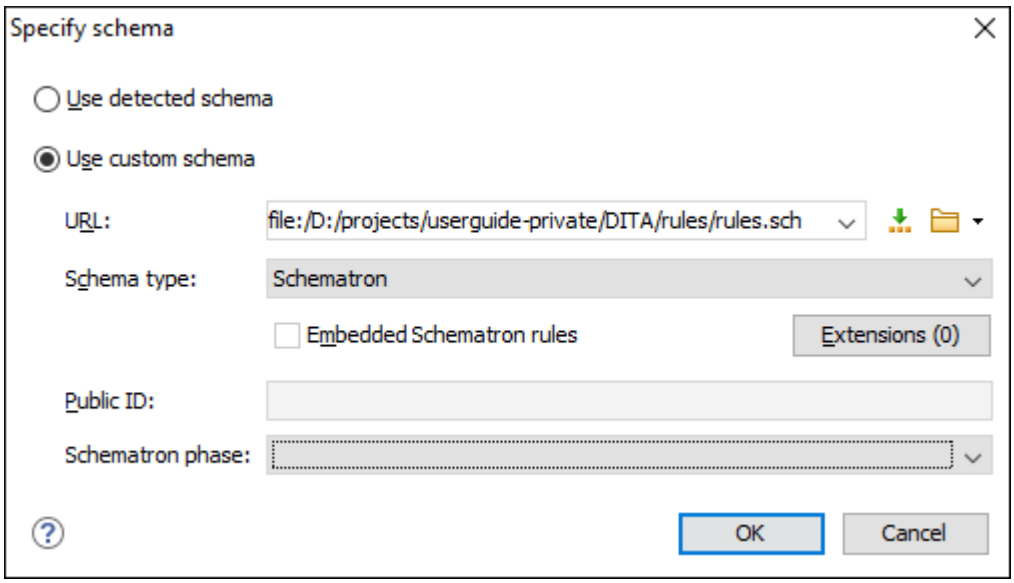
Configure a Validation Scenario and Specify the Schema

To associate a schema to a validation scenario to be used whenever the scenario is invoked, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** from the toolbar, or from the **XML** menu (or the **Validate** submenu when invoking the contextual menu on a file in the Project Explorer View *(on page 245)*).
2. Click the **New** button to create a new validation scenario or the **Edit** button to modify an existing one.
3. Add or configure validation units *(on page 549)* according to your needs and click the **Specify Schema** button.

   Step Result: The **Specify Schema** dialog box is displayed:

   Figure 175. Specify Schema Dialog Box

   The **Specify Schema** dialog box contains the following options:

Use detected schema

Uses the schema detected for the particular document *(on page 564)*.

Use custom schema

Allows you to specify the schema using the following options:

- **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S) or SFTPS. You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.
- **Schema type** - Select a possible schema type from this combo box that is populated based on the extension of the schema file that was entered in the **URL** field. The possible schema types are: XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, Relax NG Compact, Schematron, or NVDL.
- **Embedded Schematron rules** - If you have selected XML Schema or Relax NG schemas with embedded Schematron rules and you want to use those embedded rules, select this option.
- **Public ID** - Allows you to specify a public ID if you have selected a DTD.
- **Extensions**- Opens a dialog box that allows you to specify *Java extension JARs (on page 2231)* to be used during the validation.
- **Schematron phase** - If you select a Schematron schema, this drop-down list allows you to select a Schematron phase that you want to use for validation. The listed phases are defined in the Schematron document.

4. Select the schema to be associated with the validation unit and configure the rest of the options according to your preferences.
5. Click **OK** on both dialog boxes.

Result: The schema is now associated with that validation scenario whenever it is invoked.

Use the Validate with Action to Specify a Schema for Validating the Current Document

To validate the current document using a specified schema, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Validation with** action from the **Validation** drop-down menu on the toolbar (or **XML** menu).

   Step Result: The **Validate with** dialog box is displayed:

Figure 176. Validate with Dialog Box

This dialog box contains the following options:

- **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S) or SFTPS. You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.
- **Schema type** - Select a possible schema type from this combo box that is populated based on the extension of the schema file that was entered in the **URL** field. The possible schema types are: XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, Relax NG Compact, Schematron, or NVDL.
- **Embedded Schematron rules** - If you have selected XML Schema or Relax NG schemas with embedded Schematron rules and you want to use those embedded rules, select this option.
- **Public ID** - Allows you to specify a public ID if you have selected a DTD.
- **Extensions**- Opens a dialog box that allows you to specify *Java extension JARs (on page 2231)* to be used during the validation.
- **Schematron phase** - If you select a Schematron schema, this drop-down list allows you to select a Schematron phase that you want to use for validation. The listed phases are defined in the Schematron document.

2. Select the schema to be associated with the manual validation and configure the rest of the options according to your preferences.
3. Click **OK**.

Result: The current document is validated using the schema you specified.

Tip:

To quickly open the schema used for validating the current document, select the **Open Associated Schema** action from the toolbar (or **XML** menu).

Use the Validate with Schema Action to Specify a Schema for Validating all Selected Documents

To validate multiple documents using a specified schema, follow these steps:

1. Select all the documents you want to validate in the **Project Explorer** view.
2. Invoke the contextual menu (right-click) and select the **Validate with Schema** action from the **Validate** submenu.

   Step Result: The **Validate with** dialog box is displayed:

   Figure 177. Validate with Dialog Box

   This dialog box contains the following options:
   - **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S) or SFTPS. You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.
   - **Schema type** - Select a possible schema type from this combo box that is populated based on the extension of the schema file that was entered in the **URL** field. The possible schema types are: XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, Relax NG Compact, Schematron, or NVDL.
   - **Embedded Schematron rules** - If you have selected XML Schema or Relax NG schemas with embedded Schematron rules and you want to use those embedded rules, select this option.
   - **Public ID** - Allows you to specify a public ID if you have selected a DTD.
   - **Extensions**- Opens a dialog box that allows you to specify *Java extension JARs (on page 2231)* to be used during the validation.
   - **Schematron phase** - If you select a Schematron schema, this drop-down list allows you to select a Schematron phase that you want to use for validation. The listed phases are defined in the Schematron document.
3. Select the schema that you want to use to validate all selected documents and configure the rest of the options according to your preferences.
4. Click **OK**.

Result: The selected documents are validated using the schema you specified.

Associating a Schema in Validation Scenarios Defined in the Document Type

To report errors and warnings during automatic and manual validations that help maintain the structural integrity of particular XML document types, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses rules defined in the schema that is detected in the validation scenarios that are associated to each particular document type.

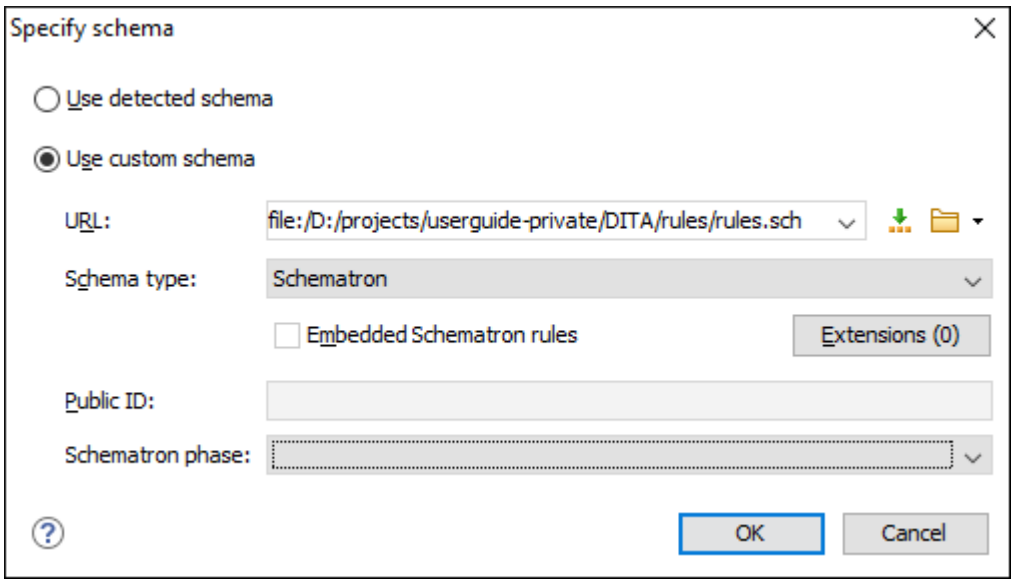
To associate a schema in validation scenarios defined in the *framework (on page 2231)* (document type) configuration, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association**.
2. Select your particular document type and click the **Edit** or **Duplicate** button to modify an existing *framework* (or use the **New** button to create a new one).

   Step Result: This opens a **Document type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*.
3. Go to the **Validation** tab *(on page 109)*.
4. Create or edit a validation scenario:
   a. To create a new validation scenario *(on page 537)*, click the **New** button.
   b. To edit the properties of an existing validation scenario *(on page 547)*, select it and click the **Edit** button (you can also use the **Duplicate** button to copy an existing scenario and edit its properties).
5. Add or configure validation units *(on page 549)* according to your needs and click the **Specify Schema** button.

   Step Result: The **Specify Schema** dialog box is displayed:

   Figure 178. Specify Schema Dialog Box

   The **Specify Schema** dialog box contains the following options:

   Use detected schema

Uses the schema detected for the particular document *(on page 564)*.

Use custom schema

Allows you to specify the schema using the following options:

- **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S) or SFTPS. You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.
- **Schema type** - Select a possible schema type from this combo box that is populated based on the extension of the schema file that was entered in the **URL** field. The possible schema types are: XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, Relax NG Compact, Schematron, or NVDL.
- **Embedded Schematron rules** - If you have selected XML Schema or Relax NG schemas with embedded Schematron rules and you want to use those embedded rules, select this option.
- **Public ID** - Allows you to specify a public ID if you have selected a DTD.
- **Extensions**- Opens a dialog box that allows you to specify *Java extension JARs (on page 2231)* to be used during the validation.
- **Schematron phase** - If you select a Schematron schema, this drop-down list allows you to select a Schematron phase that you want to use for validation. The listed phases are defined in the Schematron document.

6. Select the schema to be associated with the validation unit and configure the rest of the options according to your preferences.
7. Click **OK** on both dialog boxes.

Result: The schema is now associated with the validation scenario you just configured for that particular document type.

Associating a Schema Directly in XML Documents

The schema used by the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* and document validation engine can be directly associated with the current document by using the **Associate Schema** action. For most of the schema types, it uses the *xml-model* processing instruction, with the exceptions of:

- **W3C XML Schema** - The `@xsi:schemaLocation` attribute or `@xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attribute is used.
- **DTD** - The `DOCTYPE` declaration is used.

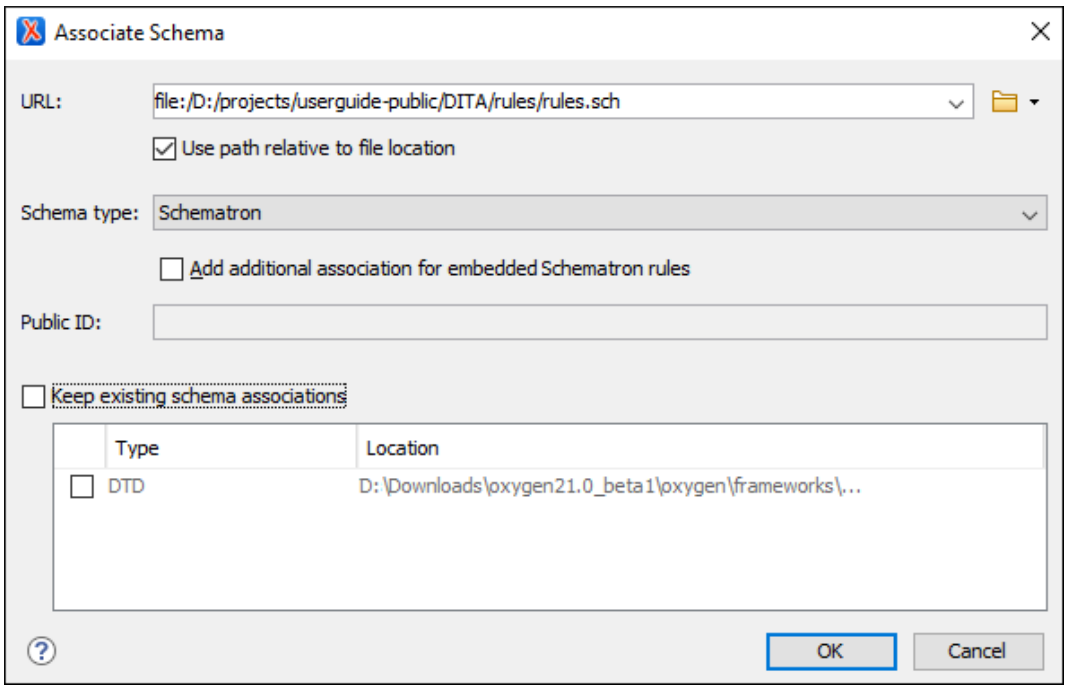
The association can specify a relative file path or a URL of the schema. The advantage of relative file path is that you can configure the schema at file level instead of *framework (on page 2231)* level.

To associate a schema to the current document, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Associate Schema** action from the toolbar (or **Document > Schema** menu).

   Step Result: The **Associate Schema** dialog box is displayed:

   Figure 179. Associate Schema Dialog Box

   This dialog box contains the following options:

   - **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S) or SFTP.
   - **Use path relative to file location** - Select this option if the XML instance document and the associated schema contain relative paths. The location of the schema file is inserted in the XML instance document as a relative file path. This practice allows you, for example, to share these documents with other users without running into problems caused by multiple project locations on physical disk.
   - **Schema type** - Select a possible schema type from this combo box that is populated based on the extension of the schema file that was entered in the **URL** field. The possible schema types are: XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, Relax NG Compact, Schematron, or NVDL.
   - **Add additional association for embedded Schematron rules** - If you have selected XML Schema or Relax NG schemas with embedded Schematron rules and you want to use those embedded rules, select this option.
   - **Public ID** - Allows you to specify a public ID if you have selected a DTD.
   - **Keep existing schema associations** - Select this option to use the existing schema associations of the currently edited document.
2. Select the schema that will be associated with the XML document and configure the rest of the options according to your preferences.
3. Click **OK**.

Result: The schema association is created based upon the specified type.

- **XML Schema** - The association with an XML Schema is added as an attribute of the root element with one of the following:
  - `@xsi:schemaLocation` attribute, if the root element of the document is in the namespace.
  - `@xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attribute, if the root element is not in the namespace.
- **DTD** - The association with a DTD is added as a `DOCTYPE` declaration.
- **Other** - The association with a Relax NG, Schematron, or NVDL schema is added as an *xml-model* processing instruction.

Tip:
To quickly open the schema used for validating the current document, select the **Open Associated Schema** action from the toolbar (or **XML** menu).

Related Information:
Validating XML Documents *(on page 523)*
Content Completion Assistant in Text Mode *(on page 294)*
Content Completion Assistant in Author Mode *(on page 369)*

Associating a Schema in a Framework (Document Type) Configuration

The schema used to compute valid proposals in the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* and by the document validation engine to report errors and warnings can be defined in each particular *framework (on page 2231)* (document type). This schema will be used only if one is not detected in the current XML file *(on page 570)*.

To associate a schema in a particular *framework* (document type), follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association**.
2. Select your particular document type and click the **Edit** *(on page 82)*, **Extend** *(on page 82)*, or **Duplicate** *(on page 82)* button to modify an existing *framework* (or use the **New** button to create a new one).

   Step Result: This opens a **Document type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*.
3. Go to the **Schema** tab *(on page 87)*.
4. Select the schema type and its URI.
5. Click **OK**.

Result: The schema is now associated with the particular document type and will be used by the *Content Completion Assistant* and validation engine if a schema is not detected in the current XML document.

Learn Document Structure When Schema is not Detected

When working with documents that do not specify a schema, or the schema is not known or does not exist, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can learn the document structure by parsing the document internally to provide an initialization source for content completion *(on page 294)* and document validation *(on page 523)*.

This feature is controlled by the **Learn on open document** option *(on page 112)* that is available in the **Editor > Content Completion** preferences page. This feature enabled by default. If you want to disable it, deselect the **Learn on open document** option.

You can choose to create a DTD from the learned structure and save it as a file using the **Learn Structure** and **Save Structure** actions.

Creating a DTD from Learned Document Structure

To create a DTD from the learned structure of an XML document, follow these steps:

1. Open the XML document that will be used to create the DTD.
2. Go to **XML > Learn Structure** (**Ctrl + Shift + L (Command + Shift + L on macOS)**). The **Learn Structure** action reads the mark-up structure of the current document. A **Learn completed** message is displayed in the application status bar when the action is finished.
3. Go to **XML > Save Structure** (**Ctrl + Shift + S (Command + Shift + S on macOS)**) and enter the file path for the DTD.
4. Click the **Save** button.

Related Information:
Detecting a Schema *(on page 563)*

Working with XML Catalogs

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)* to resolve references for validations and transformations and they are especially helpful for resolving external resources when internet access is not available or your connection is slow.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports any *XML Catalog* file that conforms to one of the following:

1. OASIS XML Catalogs Committee Specification v1.1.
2. OASIS Technical Resolution 9401:1997, including the plain-text flavor described in that resolution.

The version 1.1 of the OASIS *XML Catalog* specification introduces the possibility to map a system ID, public ID, or a URI to a local copy using only a suffix of the ID or URI used in the actual document. This is done using the catalog elements *systemSuffix* and *uriSuffix*.

Depending on the resource type, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses different catalog mappings.

Table 8. Catalog Mappings

Doc Type	Referenced Resource	Mappings
XML	DTD	*system* or *public* The **Prefer** option *(on page 175)* controls which one of the mappings should be used.
	XML Schema Relax NG Schematron NVDL	The following strategy is used (if one step fails to provide a resource, the next is applied): 1. Resolve the schema using *URI* catalog mappings. 2. Resolve the schema using *system* catalog mappings. This happens only if the **Resolve schema locations also through system mappings** option *(on page 176)* is selected (it is by default). 3. Resolve the root *namespace* using *URI* catalog mappings.
XSL	XSL/ANY	*URI*
CSS	CSS	*URI*
JSON	JSON	*URI*
XPROC	XPROC	*URI*
XML Schema	XML Schema	The following strategy is used (if one step fails to provide a resource, the next is applied): 1. Resolve schema reference using *URI* catalog mappings. 2. Resolve schema reference using *system* catalog mappings. This happens only if the **Resolve schema locations also through system mappings** option *(on page 176)* is selected (it is by default). 3. Resolve schema *namespace* using *URI* catalog mappings. This happens only if the **Process namespaces through URI mappings for XML Schema** option *(on page 176)* is selected (it is not by default).
Relax NG	Relax NG	

Creating an XML Catalog with a Template

An *XML Catalog (on page 2235)* file can be easily created in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin starting from the document template called *OASIS XML Catalog*. It is available when creating new document templates *(on page 229)*.

How Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Determines which Catalog to Use

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)* to resolve references for validations and transformations and it maps such references to the built-in local copies of the schemas associated with the various *frameworks (on page 2231)* (DocBook, DITA, TEI, XHTML, SVG, etc.)

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes default global catalogs and default catalogs for each of the built-in *frameworks*, and you can also create your own.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin looks for catalogs in the following order:

- Global user-defined catalogs that are set in the **XML Catalog** preferences page *(on page 175)*.
- User-defined catalogs that are set for each *framework (on page 2231)* in the **Catalog** tab *(on page 107)* of the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*.
- Default built-in catalogs.

Example: Using an XML Catalog to map an Absolute XML Schema Reference to an XML Schema Located Relative to the XML Catalog

An *XML Catalog* can be used to map an XML Schema specified with a URN in the `@xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation` attribute of an XML document to a local copy of the schema.

Considering the following XML document code snippet:

```
<topic xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="urn:oasis:names:tc:dita:xsd:topic.xsd:1.1">
```

The URN can be resolved to a local schema file with an XML catalog entry like this:

```
<uri name="urn:oasis:names:tc:dita:xsd:topic.xsd:1.1"
   uri="topic.xsd"/>
```

Example: Using an XML Catalog to map an Imported XML Schema Reference to an XML Schema Located Relative to the XML Catalog

An *XML Catalog* can be used to map an `xs:import` or `xs:include` XML Schema reference to a local copy of the schema.

Considering the following `xs:include` inside an XML Schema:

```
<xs:include schemaLocation="someFolder/common.xsd"/>
```

The reference can be resolved to a local schema file with an XML catalog entry like this:

```
<uriSuffix uriSuffix="someFolder/common.xsd" uri="relative/path/to/common.xsd"/>
```

Related information

XML Catalog Preferences *(on page 175)*

Resolving Schema Locations Through XML Catalogs

Schema locations can be mapped using an *XML Catalog (on page 2235)*. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin resolves the location of a schema in the following order:

- First, it attempts to resolve the schema location as a URI (`uri`, `uriSuffix`, `rewriteUri`, `delegateUri` mappings from the *XML Catalog*). If this succeeds, the process end here.
- If the **Resolve schema locations also through system mappings** option *(on page 176)* is selected in the **XML Catalog** preferences page, it attempts to resolve the schema location as a system ID (`system`, `systemSuffix`, `rewriteSuffix`, `rerwriteSystem` from the *XML Catalog*). If this succeeds, the process ends here.
- If the **Process "schemaLocation" namespaces through URI mappings for XML Schema** option *(on page 176)* is selected in the **XML Catalog** preferences page, the target namespace of the imported XML Schema is resolved through URI mappings. If the schema specified in the *schemaLocation* attribute is not resolved successfully, the namespace of the root element is taken into account. If this succeeds, the process ends here.
- If none of these succeeds, the actual schema location *(on page 564)* is used.

Related Information:
Working with XML Catalogs *(on page 573)*

Modular Contextual XML Editing Using 'Main Files' Support

Smaller interrelated modules that define a complex XML modular structure cannot be correctly edited or validated individually, due to their interdependency with other modules. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides the support for defining the main module (or modules), allowing you to edit any file from the hierarchy in the context of the *main files (on page 2232)*.

You cat set a main XML document either using the *main files* support from the Project Explorer view *(on page 253)*, or using a validation scenario.

To set a *main file* using a validation scenario, add validation units that point to the main modules. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin warns you if the current module is not part of the dependencies graph computed for the main XML document. In this case, it considers the current module as the main XML document.

The advantages of working with modular XML files in the context of a *main file (on page 2232)* include:

- Correct validation of a module in the context of a larger XML structure.
- *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* displays all collected entities and IDs starting from the *main files*.
- Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the schema defined in the *main file* when you edit a module that is included in the hierarchy through the *External Entity* mechanism.

- The *main files* defined for the current module determines the scope of the search and refactoring actions *(on page 579)* for ID/IDREFS values and for updating references when renaming/moving a resource. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin performs the search and refactoring actions in the context that the *main files* determine, improving the speed of execution.

Resources

For more information about editing modular XML files in the *main files* context, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/e2oo4RWNxW8

Related information
Contextual Project Operations Using 'Main Files' Support *(on page 253)*
XML Referenced/Dependent Resources View *(on page 579)*

Search and Refactoring Actions for IDs and IDREFS

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to search for ID declarations and references (IDREFS) and to define the scope of the search and refactor operations *(on page 579)*. These operations are available for XML documents that have an associated DTD, XML Schema, or Relax NG schema. These operations are available through the search and refactor actions in the contextual menu. In **Text** mode, these actions are also available in the **Quick Assist** *(on page 321)* menu.

The search and refactor actions from the contextual menu are grouped in the **Manage IDs** section:

Rename in

Renames the ID and all its occurrences. Selecting this action opens the **Rename XML ID** dialog box. This dialog box lets you insert the new ID value and choose the scope of the rename operation *(on page 579)*. For a preview of the changes you are about to make, click **Preview**. This opens the **Preview** dialog box, which presents a list with the files that contain changes and a preview zone of these changes.

Rename in File

Renames the ID you are editing and all its occurrences from the current file.

> **Note:**
> Available in the **Text** mode only.

Search References

Searches for the references of the ID. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 579)* dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

Search References in

Searches for the references of the ID. Selecting this action opens the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 579)*.

Search Declarations

Searches for the declaration of the ID reference. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 579)* dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

> **Note:**
> Available in the **Text** mode only.

Search Declarations in

Searches for the declaration of the ID reference. Selecting this action opens the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 579)*.

> **Note:**
> Available in the **Text** mode only.

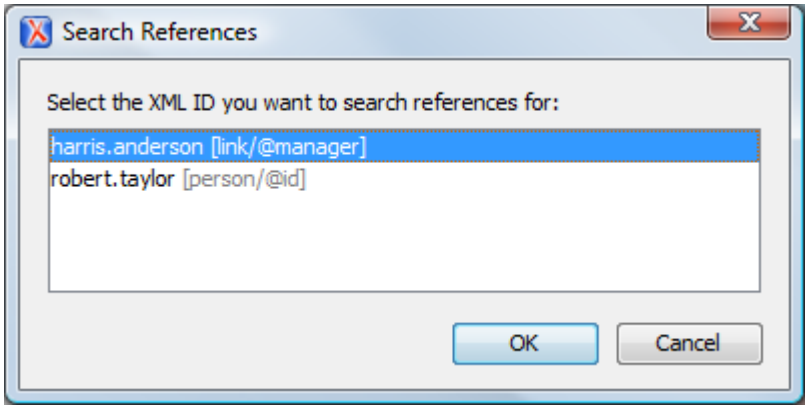
Search Occurrences in file

Searches for the declaration and references of the ID in the current document.

> **Tip:**
> A quick way to go to the declaration of an ID in **Text** mode is to move the cursor over an ID reference and use the **Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on macOS)** navigation.

Selecting an ID that you use for search or refactor operations differs between the **Text** and **Author** modes. In the **Text** mode, you position the cursor inside the declaration or reference of an ID. In the **Author** mode, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin collects all the IDs by analyzing each element from the path to the root. If more IDs are available, you are prompted to choose one of them.

Figure 180. Selecting an ID in the Author Mode

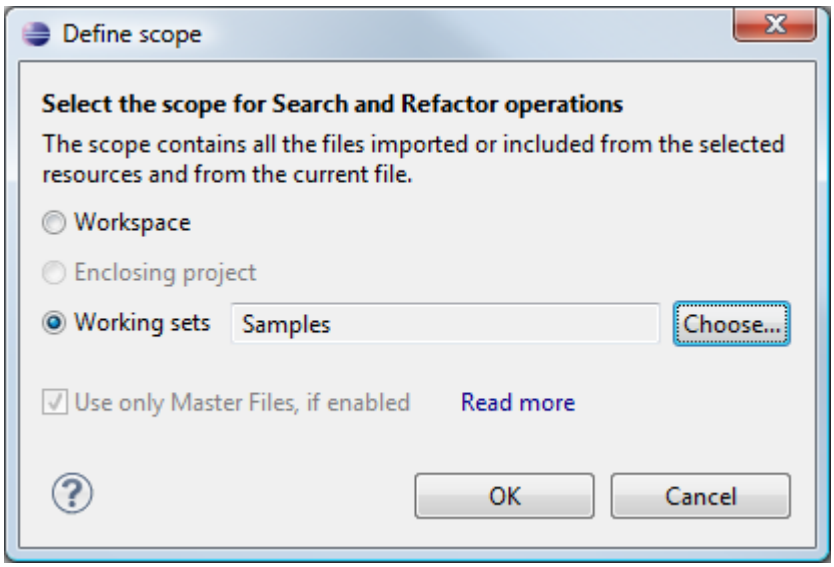


Related Information:

Search and Refactor Operations Scope

The *scope* is a collection of documents that define the context of a search and refactor operation. To control it you can use the **Change scope** operation, available in the *Quick Fix* action set or on the **Referenced/Dependent Resources** view's toolbar. You can restrict the scope to the current project or to one or multiple *working sets (on page 2235)*. The **Use only Main Files, if enabled** checkbox allows you to restrict the scope of the search and refactor operations to the resources from the **Main Files** directory. Click **read more** for details about the *Main Files* support *(on page 253)*.

Figure 181. Change Scope Dialog Box



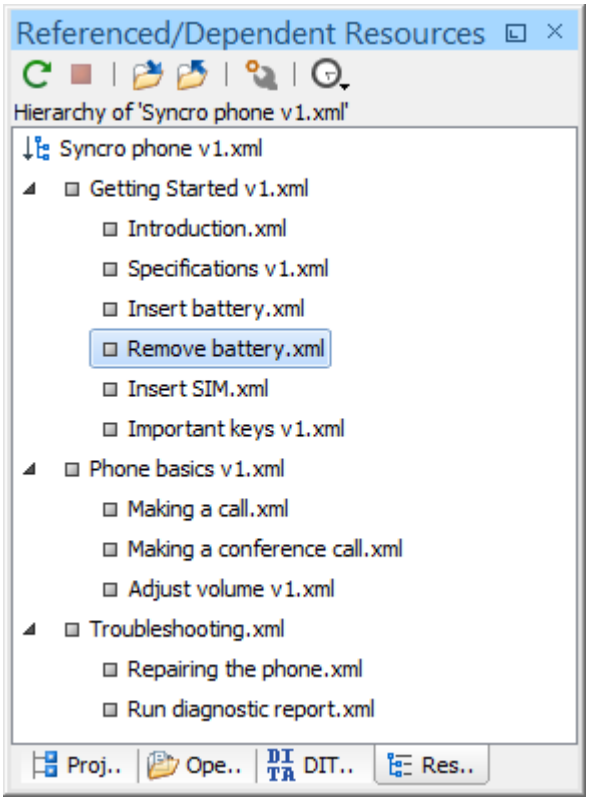
The scope you define is applied to all future search and refactor operations until you modify it. Contextual menu actions allow you to add or delete files, folders, and other resources to the *working set (on page 2235)* structure.

XML Referenced/Dependent Resources View

The **Referenced/Dependent Resources** view displays the hierarchy or dependencies for resources included in an XML document. The tree structure presented in this view is built based on the *Xinclude* and *External Entity* mechanisms. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

If you want to see the hierarchy or dependencies of an XML document, select the document in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and choose **Show referenced resources** or **Show dependent resources** from the contextual menu.

Figure 182. Referenced/Dependent Resources View



The following actions are available on the toolbar of the **Referenced/Dependent Resources** view:

Refresh

Refreshes the resource structure.

Stop

Stops the computing.

Show hierarchy for

Computes the hierarchical structure of the references for a resource.

Show dependencies for

Computes the structure of the dependencies for a resource.

Configure dependencies search scope

Allows you to configure a scope to compute the dependencies. There is also an option for automatically using the defined scope for future operations.

History

Provides access to the list of previously computed dependencies. Use the **Clear history** button to remove all items from this list.

The contextual menu for a resource listed in the **Referenced/Dependent Resources** view contains the following actions:

Open

Opens the resource. You can also double-click a resource within the hierarchical structure to open it.

Go to reference

Opens the source document where the resource is referenced.

Copy location

Copies the location of the resource.

Move resource

Moves the selected resource.

Rename resource

Renames the selected resource.

Show references resources

Shows the references for the selected resource.

Show dependent resources

Shows the dependencies for the selected resource.

Add to Main Files

Adds the currently selected resource in the **Main Files** directory.

Expand More

Expands more of the children of the selected resource from the hierarchical structure.

Collapse All

Collapses all children of the selected resource from the hierarchical structure.

Tip:
When a recursive reference is encountered in the view, the reference is marked with a special icon .

Note:
The **Move resource** or **Rename resource** actions give you the option to update the references to the resource *(on page 581)*. Only the references made through the *XInclude* and *External Entity* mechanisms are handled.

Related Information:
Search and Refactor Operations Scope *(on page 579)*

Moving/Renaming XML Resources

When you select the **Rename** action in the contextual menu of the **Referenced/Dependent Resources** view, the **Rename resource** dialog box is displayed. The following fields are available:

- **New name** - Presents the current name of the edited resource and allows you to modify it.
- **Update references of the renamed resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are renaming. A **Preview** option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting **Rename** to process the operation.

When you select the **Move** action from the contextual menu of the **Referenced/Dependent Resources** view, the **Move resource** dialog box is displayed. The following fields are available:

- **Destination** - Presents the path to the current location of the resource you want to move and gives you the option to introduce a new location.
- **New name** - Presents the current name of the moved resource and gives you the option to change it.
- **Update references of the moved resource(s)** - Select this option to update the references to the resource you are moving, in accordance with the new location and name. A **Preview** option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting **Move** to process the operation.

Combining XML Content Using DTD Entities and XInclude

When documenting large projects, it is likely that there are multiple people involved. In this case, it is usually more efficient to using a modular approach so that everyone involved in the project can work in parallel. Other advantages of modular documentation include: reusable content possibilities, smaller file units are easier to edit, and better version control.

Two possible solutions for this are to use **DTD Entities** or **XInclude** to combine XML content in a *main file (on page 2232)*. A main document can be created with references to various document parts, users can edit those documents individually, and then apply an XSLT stylesheet over the main document to obtain the output files in various formats (for example, PDF or HTML).

Combining XML Document Content Using DTD Entities

There are two conditions for including a document fragment using DTD entities:

- The main document should declare the DTD to be used, while the external entities should declare the XML fragments to be referenced.
- The referenced documents that contain the fragments cannot also define the DTD because the main document will not be valid. If you want to validate the parts separately you have to use XInclude *(on page 583)* for assembling the parts together with the *main file*.

The main document looks like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE book SYSTEM "../xml/docbookx.dtd" [
<!ENTITY testing SYSTEM "testing.xml" > ]
>
<book>
<chapter> ...
```

The referenced document (*testing.xml*) looks like this:

```
<section> ... here is the section content ... </section>
```

Note:

The indicated DTD and the element names (*section*, *chapter*) are used here only for illustrating the inclusion mechanism. You can use any DTD and element names you need.

The content from the referenced file (in the example above, it is a `<section>` in the *test.xml* file) can be inserted somewhere in the main document:

```
... &testing; ...
```

To obtain output in various formats (for example, PDF or HTML), you simply need to apply an XSLT stylesheet over the main document using a transformation scenario.

Viewing the Expanded Content in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

When a transformation scenario is applied on the *main file*, an intermediary file combines all the referenced content and it will be expanded in the final output. If you want to see how the referenced content will be expanded before applying the transformation, you can do one of the following:

- Simply switch to **Author** mode.
- Create a minimal XSLT stylesheet that simply copies the XML content, then create a new XSLT transformation scenario that applies the stylesheet over the XML. The XSLT stylesheet would look like this:

```
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns:math="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/math"
    exclude-result-prefixes="xs math"
    version="3.0">
    <xsl:template match="node() | @*">
        <xsl:copy>
            <xsl:apply-templates select="node() | @*"/>
        </xsl:copy>
    </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

Combining XML Documents and Fragments Using XInclude

XInclude is a standard for assembling XML instances into another XML document through inclusion. A *main file (on page 2232)* can be dynamically created from smaller XML documents without having to physically duplicate the content of the smaller files. The advantage of using XInclude instead of the DTD Entities

method *(on page 582)* is that each of the assembled documents is permitted to contain a Document Type Declaration (DOCTYPE). This means that each file is a valid XML instance and can be independently validated. It also means that the main document, which includes smaller instances, can be validated without having to remove or comment out the DOCTYPE (as is the case with External Entities).

Enabling XInclude Support in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

The XInclude support in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is enabled by default. It is controlled by the **Enable XInclude processing** option *(on page 178)* in the **XML > XML Parser** preferences page *(on page 177)*. When enabled, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will be able to validate and transform documents comprised of parts added using XInclude.

Example: Using XInclude to Combine Files

A chapter file (`introduction.xml`) looks like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE chapter PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.3//EN"
"http://www.oasis-open.org/docbook/xml/4.3/docbookx.dtd">
<chapter>
    <title>Getting started</title>
    <section>
        <title>Section title</title>
        <para>Para text</para>
    </section>
</chapter>
```

The main article (*main file*) looks like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE article PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML V4.3//EN"
"http://www.docbook.org/xml/4.3/docbookx.dtd"
[ <!ENTITY % xinclude SYSTEM "../frameworks/docbook/dtd/xinclude.mod">
%xinclude;
]>
<article>
    <title>Install guide</title>
    <para>This is the install guide.</para>
    <xi:include xmlns:xi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude"
                    href="introduction.xml">
      <xi:fallback>
        <para>
          <emphasis>FIXME: MISSING XINCLUDE CONTENT</emphasis>
        </para>
      </xi:fallback>
```

```
    </xi:include>
</article>
```

In this example, note the following:

- The DOCTYPE declaration defines an entity that references a file containing the information to add the *xi* namespace to certain elements defined by the DocBook DTD.
- The href attribute of the *xi:include* element specifies that the `introduction.xml` file will replace the *xi:include* element when the document is parsed.
- If the `introduction.xml` file cannot be found, the parser will use the value of the *xi:fallback* element - a *FIXME* message.

Example: Using XInclude to Combine Fragments of Files

If you want to include only a fragment of a file in the *main file (on page 2232)*, the fragment must be contained in a tag having an `@xml:id` attribute and you must use an XPointer expression pointing to the `@xml:id` value.

Notice:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports the XPointer *Framework* and the XPointer element() Scheme, but it does NOT support the XPointer xpointer() Scheme.

For example, if the *main file* is:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<?xml-model href="test.rng" type="application/xml"
        schematypens="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"?>
<test>
    <xi:include href="a.xml" xpointer="a1"
        xmlns:xi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude"/>
</test>
```

and the file (`a.xml`) is:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<test>
    <a xml:id="a1">test</a>
</test>
```

after resolving the XPointer reference, the document is:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<?xml-model href="test.rng" type="application/xml"
          schematypens="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"?>
<test>
```

```
    <a xml:id="a1" xml:base="a.xml">test</a>
</test>
```

Viewing the Expanded Content in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

When a transformation scenario is applied on the *main file*, an intermediary file combines all the referenced content and it will be expanded in the final output. If you want to see how the referenced content will be expanded before applying the transformation, you can do one of the following:

- Simply switch to **Author** mode.
- Create a minimal XSLT stylesheet that simply copies the XML content, then create a new XSLT transformation scenario that applies the stylesheet over the XML. The XSLT stylesheet would look like this:

```
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    xmlns:math="http://www.w3.org/2005/xpath-functions/math"
    exclude-result-prefixes="xs math"
    version="3.0">
    <xsl:template match="node() | @*">
        <xsl:copy>
            <xsl:apply-templates select="node() | @*"/>
        </xsl:copy>
    </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

XInclude 1.1 Features

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers partial support for XInclude 1.1 features. This includes support for fragment identifiers and attribute copying.

- **Fragment Identifiers**

  You can use `<xi:include>` to reference a text file and specify the `@fragid` value so that you only get part of that text file in the main document. For some examples and to see how the `<xi:include>` gets expanded when the `@fragid` specifies a line range or character range, see **Textual Inclusion Examples with RFC5147 Fragment Identifiers**.

- **Attribute Copying**

  Any *namespaced* attribute defined on the `<xi:include>` element will be passed to the root element of the included content.

  For example, if you have this:

```
<xi:include href="section2.xml" xmlns:xi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude"
  set-xml-id="sectInner1"/>
```

and `section2.xml` looks like this:

```
<sect2 xmlns="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook" version="5.0"
    xmlns:xlink="http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink" xml:id="section2">
    <title>FS2</title>
    <para>P2</para>
</sect2>
```

then the final processed result will have the original `xml:id="section2"` replaced with the value specified in the *xi:included* section.

For more information, see **Attribute Copying when Processing XML**. Also, to see more examples, see **Attribute Copying Examples**.

Related information

W3C Specifications: XML Inclusions (XInclude) Version 1.1

Refactoring XML Documents

In the life cycle of XML documents there are instances when the XML structure needs to be changed to accommodate various needs. For example, when an associated schema is updated, an attribute may have been removed, or a new element added to the structure.

These types of situations cannot be resolved with a traditional *Find/Replace* tool, even if the tool accepts regular expressions. The problem becomes even more complicated if an XML document is computed or referenced from multiple modules, since multiple resources need to be changed.

To assist you with these types of refactoring tasks, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a specialized **XML Refactoring** tool that helps you manage the structure of your XML documents.

XML Refactoring Tool

The **XML Refactoring** tool is presented in the form of an easy to use wizard that is designed to reduce the time and effort required to perform various structure management tasks. For example, you can insert, delete, or rename an attribute in all instances of a particular element that is found in all documents within your project.

To access the tool, select the **XML Refactoring** action from one of the following locations:

- The **XML** menu.
- The **Refactoring** submenu from the contextual menu in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*.
- The **Refactoring** submenu from the contextual menu in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*.

Note:
The built-in refactoring operations are also available from the **Refactoring** submenu in the contextual menu of **Author** or **Text** mode. This is useful because by selecting the operations from the contextual menu, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin considers the editing context to skip directly to the wizard page of the appropriate operation and to help you by preconfiguring some of the parameter values. For your convenience, the last 5 operations that were finished *(on page 590)* or previewed *(on page 590)* also appear in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu in the **DITA Maps Manager**.

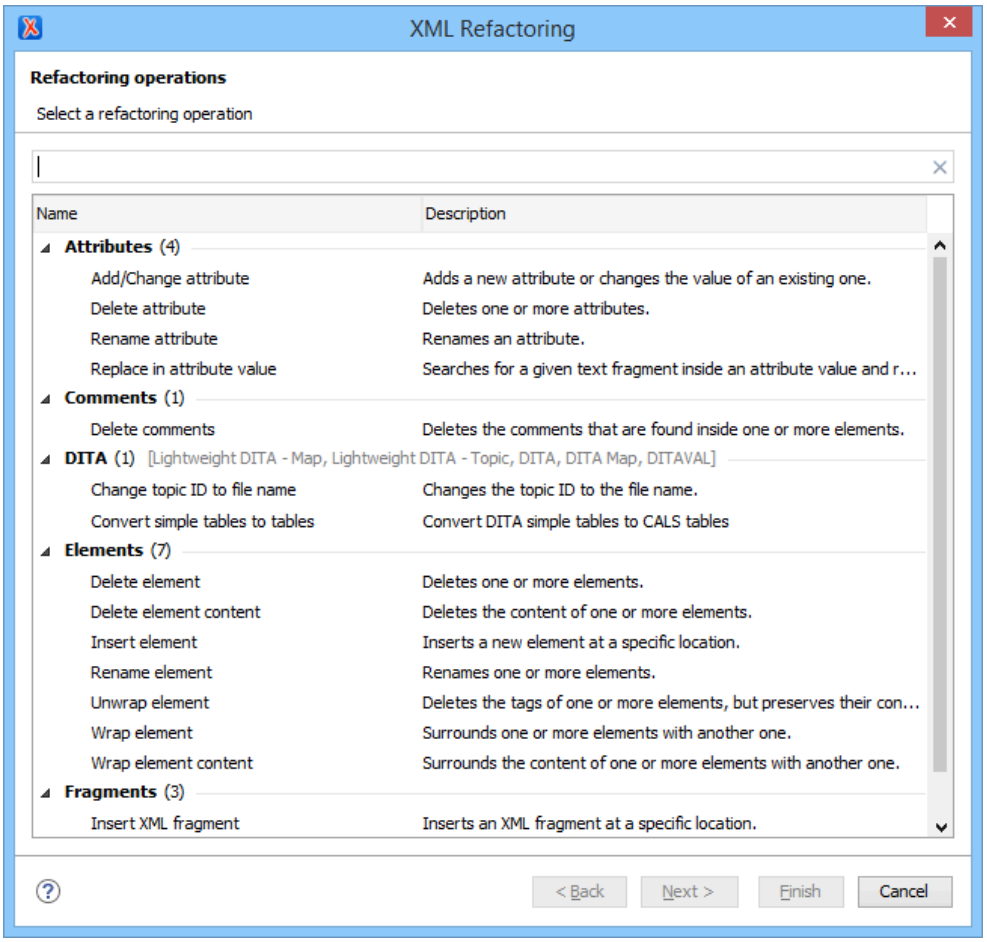
XML Refactoring Wizard

The XML Refactoring tool includes the following wizard pages:

Refactoring operations

The first wizard page presents the available operations, grouped by category. To search for an operation, you can use the filter text box at the top of the page.

Figure 183. XML Refactoring Wizard

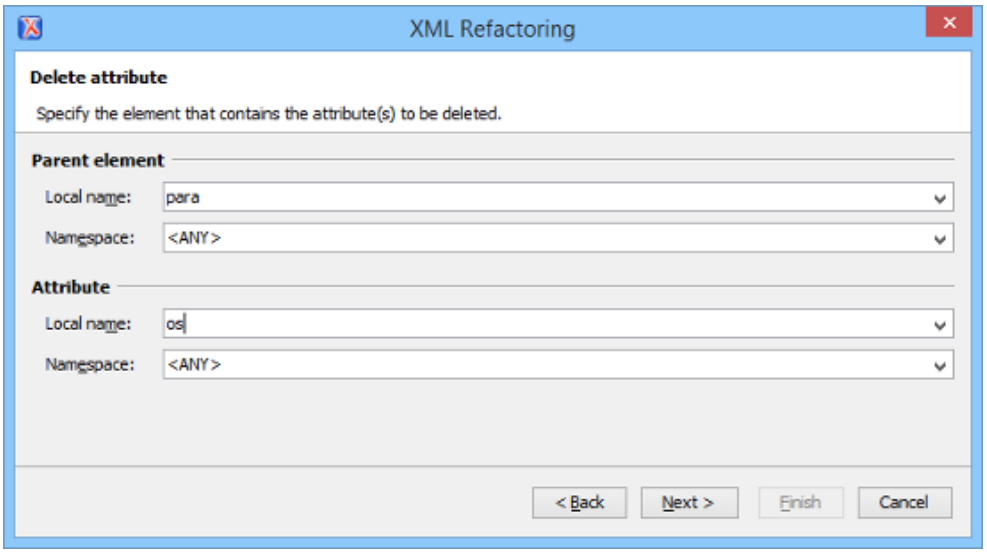


Configure Operation Parameters

The next wizard page allows you to specify the parameters for the refactoring operation. The parameters are specific to the type of refactoring operation that is being performed. For

example, to delete an attribute you need to specify the parent element and the qualified name of the attribute to be removed.

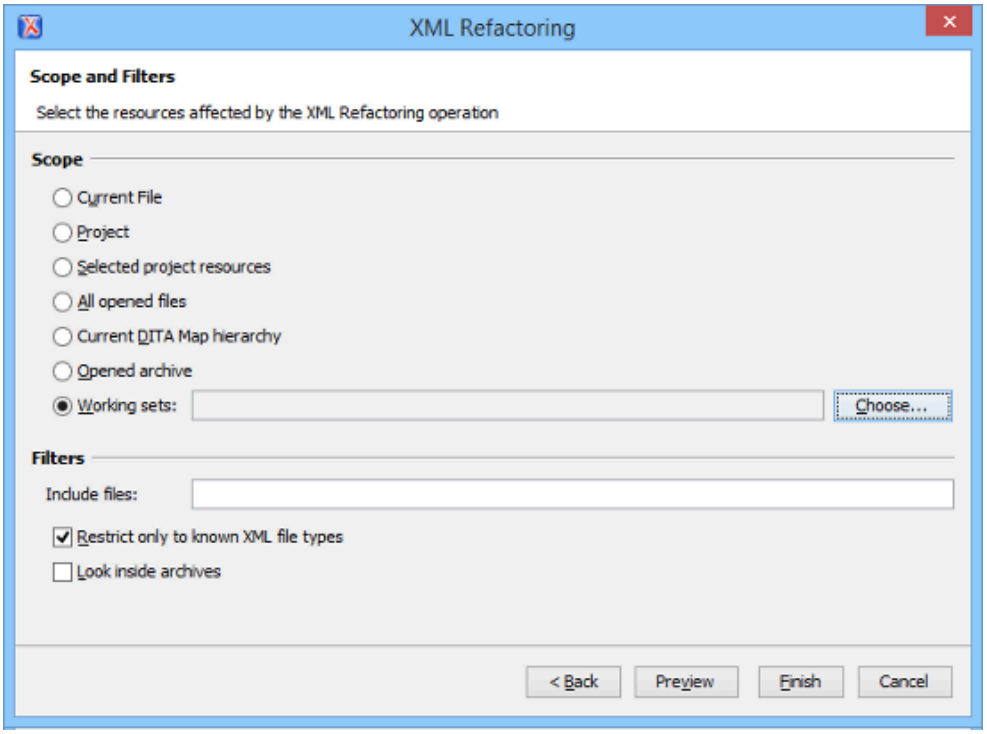
Figure 184. XML Refactoring 2nd Wizard Page (Delete Attribute Operation)



Scope and Filters

The last wizard page allows you to select the set of files that represent the input of the operation.

Figure 185. XML Refactoring - Scope and Filters Wizard Page



Scope section

You can specify the scope for the operation by selecting from predefined resource sets or you can define your own set of resources by creating a *working set (on*

page 2235) (select **Working sets** and click the **Choose** button to the right). If you select **Project**, all files attached to the current project will be used for the scope of the operation. If you select **Current DITA Map hierarchy**, the current DITA map that is open in the DITA Maps Manager along with all of its referenced topics and submaps (and topics referenced in those submaps) are used for the scope.

Filters

The **Filters** section includes the following options:

- **Include files** - Allows you to filter the selected resources by using a file pattern. For example, to restrict the operation to only analyze build files you could use `build*.xml` for the file pattern.
- **Restrict only to known XML file types** - When selected, only resources with a known XML file type will be affected by the operation.

Preview

You can use the **Preview** button to open a comparison panel where you can review all the changes that will be made by the refactoring operation before applying the changes.

Finish

After clicking the **Finish** button, the operation will be processed and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides no automatic means for reverting the operations. Any **Undo** action will only revert changes on the current document.

Troubleshooting:
If an operation fails, a notification will be displayed in the **Results** panel with some information about the error. For example, if the operation was invoked on a read-only resource, the error will indicate that a read-only file cannot be converted.

Tip:
If an operation takes longer than expected you can use the **Stop** button in the progress bar to cancel the operation.

Restriction:
XML refactoring operations cannot preserve CDATA sections. If your document contains XML CDATA sections, the refactoring operations will convert them to plain text nodes.

Built-in Refactoring Operations

The XML Refactoring tool includes a variety of built-in operations that can be used for common refactoring tasks. They are grouped by category in the **Refactoring operations** wizard page. You can also access the

operations from the **Refactoring** submenu in the contextual menu of **Author** or **Text** mode. The operations are also grouped by category in this submenu. When selecting the operations from the contextual menu, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin considers the editing context to get the names and namespaces of the current element or attribute, and uses this information to preconfigure some of the parameter values for the selected refactoring operation.

Tip:
Each operation includes a link in the lower part of the wizard that opens the **XML / XSLT-XQuery / XPath** preferences page where you can configure XPath options and declare namespace prefixes.

The following built-in operations are available:

Refactoring Operations for *Attributes*

Add/Change attribute

Use this operation to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Parent element section

Element

The parent element of the attribute to be changed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Attribute section

Local name

The local name of the affected attribute.

Namespace

The namespace of the affected attribute.

Value

The value for the affected attribute.

Options section

You can choose between one of the following options for the **Operation mode**:

Add the attribute in the parent elements where it is missing

Adds the attribute to all instances of the specified parent element.

Change the value in the parent elements where the attribute already exists

Replaces the value of the already existing attribute in all instance of the specified parent element.

Both

Adds the attributes to the instances where it is missing and replaces the value in instances where the attribute already exists.

Convert attribute to element

Use this operation to convert a specified attribute to an element. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Parent element section

Element

The parent element of the attribute to be converted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Attribute section

Local name

The local name of the affected attribute.

Namespace

The namespace of the affected attribute.

New element section

Local name

The local name of the new element.

Namespace

The namespace of the new element.

Delete attribute

Use this operation to remove one or more attributes. This operation requires you to specify the following parameters:

Element

The parent element of the attribute to be deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Attribute

The name of the attribute to be deleted.

Rename attribute

Use this operation to rename an attribute. This operation requires you to specify the following parameters:

Element

The parent element of the attribute to be renamed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Attribute

The name of the attribute to be renamed.

New local name

The new local name of the attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Use this operation to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Target attribute section

Element

The parent element of the attribute to be modified, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Attribute

The name of the attribute to be modified.

Find / Replace section

Find

The text fragments to find. You can use Perl-like regular expressions.

Replace with

The text fragment to replace the target with. This parameter can bind regular expression capturing groups (`$1`, `$2`, etc.) from the find pattern.

Refactoring Operations for *Comments*

Delete comments

Use this operation to delete comments from one or more elements. This operation requires you specify the following parameter:

Element

The target element (or elements) that will have comments deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Note:
Comments that are outside the root element will not be deleted because the *serializer* preserves the content before and after the root.

Refactoring Operations for *DITA* Topics

Change topic ID to file name

Use this operation to change the ID of a topic to be the same as its file name.

Convert CALS tables to simple tables

Use this operation to convert DITA CALS tables to simple tables.

Convert DITA 1.3 Maps and Topics to DITA 2.0

Use this operation to convert topics and maps that adhere to the DITA 1.3 standard to the DITA 2.0 standard.

- Changes DOCTYPE declarations and XML Schema/Relax NG schema references.
- DITA Map changes:
  - Removes the `@lockmeta` attribute.
  - Removes the `<topicset>` and `<topicsetref>` elements.
  - Removes the `<anchor>` and `<anchorref>` elements and the `@anchorref` attribute.
  - Migrates the `@navtitle` attribute as a `<navtitle>` element.
  - Migrates the `@title` attribute as a `<title>` element.
  - Converts the `@copy-to` attribute to a `<resourceid>` element.
  - Replaces the `@print` attribute with an `@deliveryTarget` attribute.
  - Convert topicmeta `<linktext>` to `<linktitle>`.
  - Removed `<hasInstance>`, `<hasKind>`, `<hasNarrower>`, `<hasPart>`, `<hasRelated>`, and `<relatedSubjects>` from subject scheme relationship tables in subject scheme, including `<subjectRelTable>`, `<subjectRelHeader>`, `<subjectRel>`, and `<subjectRole>`.
- DITA task changes:
  - Converts the `<substep>` element to a `<step>` element.
  - Converts the `<substeps>` element to a `<steps>` element.
- DITA topic changes:
  - Removes the `@type` attribute with the value `fastpath`.
  - Converts the `@alt` attribute to an `<alt>` element.
  - Replaces the `<index-sort-as>` element with a `<sort-as>` element.
  - Removes the `<itemgroup>` element.
  - Moves the contents of the `<titlealts>` element inside the `<prolog>`.
  - Removes the `@domains` attribute.
  - Renames `<sectiondiv>` to `<div>`.
  - Remove `@query` attribute from `<link>` element.

- Remove `@specentry` attribute from `<stentry>` element.

  Remove the `@spectitle` attribute.

Convert conrefs to conkeyrefs

Use this operation to convert `@conref` attributes to `@conkeyref` attributes. For more information and instructions for using this operation, see Converting Conrefs to Conkeyrefs *(on page 2031)*.

Convert Nested Topics to New Topics (Available from the contextual menu of editable maps/nodes in the DITA Maps Manager *(on page 1880)*)

Use this operation on topics that contain nested `<topic>` elements to convert each nested topic to a new topic. Also, the new topics are added in the **DITA Maps Manager** as the first child topics of the original topic.

Convert Sections to New Topics (Available from the contextual menu of editable maps/nodes in the DITA Maps Manager *(on page 1880)*)

Use this operation on topics that contain multiple sections to convert each section to a new topic. Also, the new topics are added in the **DITA Maps Manager** as the first child topics of the original topic.

Convert simple tables to CALS tables

Use this operation to convert DITA simple tables to CALS tables.

Convert to Concept

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Concept topic type (for example, Topic to Concept). For more information, see Converting DITA Topics to Another Type *(on page 1955)*.

Convert to General Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA General Task topic type (for example, Task to General Task). For more information, see Converting DITA Topics to Another Type *(on page 1955)*.

Convert to Reference

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Reference topic type (for example, Topic to Reference). For more information, see Converting DITA Topics to Another Type *(on page 1955)*.

Convert to Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Task topic type (for example, Topic to Task). For more information, see Converting DITA Topics to Another Type *(on page 1955)*.

Convert to Topic

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Topic (for example, Task to Topic). For more information, see Converting DITA Topics to Another Type *(on page 1955)*.

Convert to Troubleshooting

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Troubleshooting topic type (for example, Topic to Troubleshooting). For more information, see Converting DITA Topics to Another Type *(on page 1955)*.

Rename Key

Use this operation to rename a key. It also updates all references to it.

Note:
It does not work on DITA 1.3 key scopes.

Generate IDs

Use this operation to automatically generate unique IDs for elements.

Scope and Filters:

All of the DITA refactoring actions allow you to choose a scope for the operation and some filters:

Scope

Select from a variety of options to define the scope that will have resources affected by the operation. For example, you can choose to affect all resources in the **Project**, **All opened files**, **Entire DITA map hierarchy**, or just the **Current file**.

Filters section

Include files

Specifies files to be excluded from the operation. You can specify multiple files by separating them with commas and the patterns can include wildcards (such as ***** or **?**).

Restrict to known XML file types only

Excludes non-XML file types from the operation.

Refactoring Operations for *DITA* Maps

Convert DITA Bookmap to Map

Convert a DITA bookmap to a DITA map.

Convert DITA Map to Bookmap

Convert a DITA map to a DITA bookmap.

Change or remove profiling attribute value

Change or remove a value from a DITA profiling attribute. A profiling attribute can have multiple values, separated by spaces (e.g. for `platform="windows redhat"`, you can change the current `redhat` value to `linux`). Select the name of the profiling attribute, the current value to replace, and the new value. If the new value is left empty, the current value is removed from the profiling attribute. The new value is modified and reflected in DITA maps, DITA topics, and DITAVAL files.

Define keys for all topic references

This refactoring action is useful for converting links inside a DITA project from direct to indirect key-based addressing. When applied on DITA resources from your project (DITA maps and topics), this refactoring action defines keys for all of a DITA map's topic references based on the referenced file name and converts each direct reference to a key reference in each DITA topic. If a topic references already has keys defined, the action does not define new ones. Inside the DITA topics, whenever there is a link element (`<xref>` or `<link>`) with a direct reference to another DITA topic or an element with a `@conref`, the action attempts to convert them to indirect key-based addressing. The refactoring action may introduce linking errors or create duplicate keys so it is advised to run the **Validate and check for completeness** action from the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar to manually fix those problems. You can enable the **Report duplicate keys** checkbox to also report any keys that are defined more than once.

Scope and Filters:

All of the DITA refactoring actions allow you to choose a scope for the operation and some filters:

Scope

Select from a variety of options to define the scope that will have resources affected by the operation. For example, you can choose to affect all resources in the **Project**, **All opened files**, **Entire DITA map hierarchy**, or just the **Current file**.

Filters section

Include files

Specifies files to be excluded from the operation. You can specify multiple files by separating them with commas and the patterns can include wildcards (such as ***** or **?**).

Restrict to known XML file types only

Excludes non-XML file types from the operation.

Refactoring Operations for *Elements*

Delete element

Use this operation to delete elements. This operation requires you to specify the following parameter:

Element

The target element to be deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Delete element content

Use this operation to delete the content of elements. This operation requires you to specify the following parameter:

Element

The target element whose content is to be deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Insert element

Use this operation to insert new elements. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Element section

Local name

The local name of the element to be inserted.

Namespace

The namespace of the element to be inserted.

Location section

XPath

An XPath expression that identifies an existing element to which the new element is relative, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

Position

The position where the new element will be inserted, in relation to the specified existing element. The possible selections in the drop-down menu are: **After**, **Before**, **First child**, or **Last child**.

Rename element

Use this operation to rename elements. This operation requires you to specify the following parameters:

Target elements (XPath)

The target elements to be renamed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

New local name

The new local name of the element.

Unwrap element

Use this operation to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged. This operation requires you to specify the following parameter:

Target elements (XPath)

The target elements whose surrounding tags will be removed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

Wrap element

Use this operation to surround elements with element tags. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Target elements (XPath)

The target elements to be surrounded with tags, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

Wrapper element section

Local name

The local name of the *Wrapper element*.

Namespace

The namespace of the *Wrapper element*.

Wrap element content

Use this operation to surround the content of elements with element tags. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Target elements (XPath)

The target elements whose content will be surrounded with tags, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

Wrapper element section

Local name

The local name of the *Wrapper element* that will surround the content of the target.

Namespace

The namespace of the *Wrapper element* that will surround the content of the target.

Refactoring Operations for *Fragments*

Insert XML fragment

Use this operation to insert an XML fragment. This operation allows you to specify the following:

XML Fragment

The XML fragment to be inserted.

Location section

XPath

An XPath expression that identifies an existing element to which the inserted fragment is relative, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

Position

The position where the fragment will be inserted, in relation to the specified existing element. The possible selections in the drop-down menu are: **After**, **Before**, **First child**, or **Last child**.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Use this operation to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Target elements (XPath)

The target elements whose content will be replaced, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

XML Fragment

The XML fragment with which to replace the content of the target element.

Replace element with XML fragment

Use this operation to replace elements with an XML fragment. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Target elements (XPath)

The target elements to be replaced, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

XML Fragment

The XML fragment with which to replace the target element.

Refactoring Operations for *JATSKit*

Add BITS DOCTYPE - NLM/NCBI Book Interchange 2.0

Use this operation to add an NLM 'BITS' 2.0 DOCTYPE declaration.

Add Blue DOCTYPE - NISO JATS Publishing 1.1

Use this operation to add a JATS 'Blue' 1.1 DOCTYPE declaration.

Normalize IDs

Use this operation to normalize assigned IDs and assigned IDs to elements that are missing them.

All of these *JATSKit* refactoring actions allow you to choose a scope for the operation and some filters:

Scope

Select from a variety of options to define the scope for the resources that will be affected by the operation. For example, you can choose to affect all resources in the **Project**, **All opened files**, or just the **Current file**.

Filters section

Include files

Specifies files to be excluded from the operation. You can specify multiple files by separating them with commas and the patterns can include wildcards (such as ***** or **?**).

Restrict to known XML file types only

Excludes non-XML file types from the operation.

Refactoring Operations for *Processing Instructions*

Accept all tracked changes, remove all Oxygen-specific comments and highlights

Use this operation to accept all application-specific tracked changes (from elements and attributes) or remove all application-specific comments or highlights. There are several options to choose from:

Accept all tracked changes

Accepts all application-specific tracked changes (from elements and attributes).

Remove comments

Removes all application-specific comments.

Remove highlights

Removes all application-specific highlights.

Delete processing instructions

Use this operation to delete all processing instructions that have a certain target name from the processed documents. This operation requires you to specify the following parameter:

Processing instruction target

The target name of the processing instructions to delete.

Note:
Processing instructions that are outside the root element are not deleted because the *serializer* preserves the content before and after the root.

Refactoring Operations for *Publishing Template*

These operations are for those who use *Oxygen Publishing Templates* for WebHelp Responsive output customization.

Migrate HTML Page Layout Files to v21

Use this operation to convert custom HTML page layout files *(on page 1010)* that are included in a custom Publishing Template that was created in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 20.0 or 20.1 so that they will be compatible with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 21.0.

Migrate HTML Page Layout Files to v22

Use this operation to convert custom HTML page layout files *(on page 1010)* that are included in a custom Publishing Template that was created in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin versions 20.0 - 21.1 so that they will be compatible with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 22.0.

Update HTML Pages

Attention:
This operation is only used by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and should not be used manually.

Additional Notes:

- There are some operations that allow `<ANY>` for the **local name** and **namespace** parameters. This value can be used to select an element or attribute regardless of its local name or namespace. Also, the `<NO_NAMESPACE>` value can be used to select nodes that do not belong to a namespace.
- Some operations have parameters that accept XPath expressions to match elements or attributes. In these XPath expressions you can only use the prefixes declared in the **Options > Preferences > XML > XSLT-XQUERY > XPath** *(on page 187)* page. This preferences page can be

easily opened by clicking the link in the note (**Each prefix used in an XPath expression must be declared in the Default prefix-namespace mappings section**) at the bottom of the **Configure Operation Parameters** wizard page.

Storing and Sharing Refactoring Operations

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin scans the following locations when looking for XML Refactoring operations to provide flexibility:

- A folder named `refactoring`, created inside the folder of the *framework* you are customizing. In the **Classpath** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box *(on page 88)*, you need to add a reference to the `refactoring` folder specific for the framework.
- A folder that you specify in the **Load additional refactoring operations from** text box *(on page 182)* in the **XML Refactoring** preferences page *(on page 182)*.
- The `refactoring` folder from the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation directory (*`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/refactoring/`*).

Sharing Refactoring Operations

The purpose of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin scanning multiple locations for the XML Refactoring operations is to provide more flexibility for developers who want to share the refactoring operations with the other team members. Depending on your particular use case, you can attach the refactoring operations to other resources, such as *framework (on page 2231)* or projects.

After storing operations, you can share them with other users by sharing the resources.

Localizing XML Refactoring Operations

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes localization support for the XML refactoring operations.

The translation keys for the built-in refactoring operations are located in *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`/refactoring/i18n/translation.xml`.

Applying All Default Quick Fix Proposals

The **Apply all default quick fix proposals** tool can be used to apply quick fix proposals for all reported validation errors in one or more documents when one or more quick fix proposals have been detected for reported validation errors. If multiple quick fixes are available for the same validation error, the default quick fix defined in the Schematron validation schema using the `sqf:default-fix` attribute is automatically selected to be applied. If no default quick fix is explicitly specified, the first quick fix proposal in the list is considered. All quick fix proposals are then automatically executed in bulk, one after the other.

Important Notes to Consider:

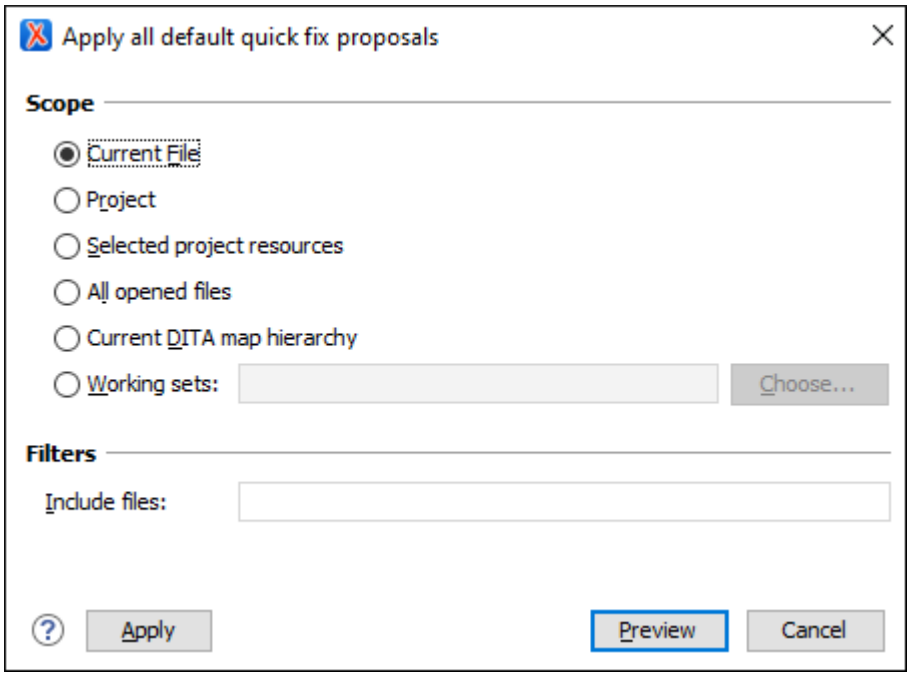
- To maintain the accuracy of the initially calculated error validation ranges, the quick fix proposals are applied in the reverse order of their selection.
- If two or more quick fixes act on the same "area" within the document, only one is applied (no changes can be made to changes already made).
- Quick fixes that involve "user-entered values" that normally present a dialog box to facilitate data entry will not be executed (the automatic process of applying all selected quick fixes cannot be interrupted by the presence of the respective dialog boxes).

The **Apply all default quick fix proposals** tool can be accessed from the following interface locations:

- **[Single Document]** The contextual menu when you right-click anywhere in **Text** mode *(on page 322)* or **Author** mode *(on page 509)* when there is a detected quick fix proposal in the current document.
- **[One or More Documents]** The **Tools** menu.
- **[One or More Documents]** The **Refactoring** submenu when you right-click one or more files in the **Project** view *(on page 245)*.
- **[One or More Documents]** The **Refactoring** submenu when you right-click one or more files in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*.

Invoking the tool opens the **Apply all default quick fix proposals** dialog box where you can choose the scope for the operation and optionally specify a filter to narrow the scope.

Figure 186. Apply All Default Quick Fix Proposals Dialog Box



The **Scope** section allows you to choose from the following scopes:

- **Current File** - The quick fix proposals are applied on the current file only.
- **Project** - The quick fix proposals are applied on the current project.
- **Selected project resources** - The quick fix proposals are applied on the selected files from the current project.
- **All opened files** - The quick fix proposals are applied on all opened files.
- **Entire DITA map hierarchy** (for DITA documents) - The quick fix proposals are applied on current DITA map along with all of its referenced topics and submaps (and topics referenced in those submaps).
- **Working sets** - The quick fix proposals are applied on a user-defined set of resources, referred to as a *working set (on page 2235)*.

The **Include files** option in the **Filters** section can be used to narrow the scope of the operation by filtering the selected resources using a file pattern. For example, to restrict the operation to only parse and update XML documents from the selected files, you could use `{*}.xml` for the file pattern.

You can click the **Preview** button to see a comparison preview that provides an overview of the content changes that will be made, according to the quick fixes that will be applied. You can preview the changes in **Text** or **Author** mode. The comparison panel also informs you of any problems encountered. While previewing the changes, you can also choose to exclude certain files from having the quick fixes be applied if you do not agree with the changes for the particular files. If you agree with the changes presented, click **Apply** to trigger the quick fixes and update the content.

Troubleshooting:
If a quick fix did not apply, a notification with some information about the error will be displayed in the **Results** view at the bottom of the application.

Tip:
If the operation takes longer than expected, you can use the **Stop** button in the progress bar to cancel the operation.

Resources

For more information about the **Apply all default quick fix proposals** tool, see our video: Introducing the Apply All Default Quick Fix Proposals Tool.

XML Digital Signatures

This chapter explains how to apply and verify digital signatures on XML documents.

Digital Signatures Overview

Digital signatures are widely used as security tokens, not just in XML. A *digital signature* provides a mechanism for assuring integrity of data, the authentication of its signer, and the non-repudiation of the entire signature to an external party:

- A *digital signature* must provide a way to verify that the data has not been modified or replaced to ensure integrity.
- The *signature* must provide a way to establish the identity of the data's signer for authentication.
- The *signature* must provide the ability for the data's integrity and authentication to be provable to a third party for non-repudiation.

A *public key system* is used to create the digital signature and it is also used for verification. The signature binds the signer to the document because digitally signing a document requires the originator to create a hash of the message and then encrypt that hash value with their own private key. Only the originator has that private key and that person is the only one who can encrypt the hash so that it can be unencrypted using their public key. The recipient, upon receiving both the message and the encrypted hash value, can decrypt the hash value, knowing the originator's public key. The recipient must also try to generate the hash value of the message and compare the newly generated hash value with the unencrypted hash value received from the originator. If the hash values are identical, it proves that the originator created the message, because only the actual originator could encrypt the hash value correctly.

XML Signatures can be applied to any digital content (data object), including XML (see W3C Recommendation, XML-Signature Syntax and Processing). An XML Signature may be applied to the content of one or more resources:

- Enveloped or enveloping signatures are applied over data within the same XML document as the signature
- Detached signatures are applied over data external to the signature element; the signature is "detached" from the content it signs. This definition typically applies to separate data objects, but it also includes the instance where the signature and data object reside within the same XML document but are sibling elements.

The *XML Signature* is a method of associating a key with referenced data. It does not normatively specify how keys are associated with persons or institutions, nor the meaning of the data being referenced and signed.

The original data is not actually signed. Instead, the signature is applied to the output of a chain of *canonicalization (on page 2229)* and transformation algorithms, which are applied to the data in a designated sequence. This system provides the flexibility to accommodate whatever "normalization" or desired preprocessing of the data that might be required or desired before subjecting it to being signed.

Since the signature is dependent on the content it is signing, a signature produced from a *non-canonicalized* document could possibly be different from one produced from a *canonicalized (on page 2229)* document. The *canonical (on page 2229)* form of an XML document is physical representation of the document produced by the method described in this specification. The *XML canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is the algorithm defined by this specification that generates the canonical form of a given XML document or document subset. *XML canonicalization* is designed to be useful for applications that require the ability to test whether or not the information content of a document or document subset has been changed. This is done by comparing the *canonical* form of the original document before application processing with the *canonical* form of the document result of the application processing.

A digital signature over the *canonical (on page 2229)* form of an XML document or document subset allows the signature digest calculations to be oblivious to changes in the original document's physical representation. During signature generation, the digest is computed over the *canonical* form of the document. The document is then transferred to the relying party, which validates the signature by reading the document and computing a digest of the *canonical* form of the received document. The equivalence of the digests computed by the signing and relying parties (hence, the equivalence of the *canonical* forms that they were computed for) ensures that the information content of the document has not been altered since it was signed.

The following *canonicalization algorithms* are used in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:

- **Canonical XML (or Inclusive XML Canonicalization)** (XMLC14N) - Used for XML where the context doesn't change.

  Inclusive Canonicalization copies all the declarations, even if they are defined outside of the scope of the signature, and all the declarations you might use will be unambiguously specified. *Inclusive Canonicalization* is useful when it is less likely that the signed data will be inserted in other XML document and it is the safer method from the security standpoint because it requires no knowledge of the data that are to be secured to safely sign them. A problem may occur if the signed document is moved into another XML document that has other declarations because the *Inclusive Canonicalization* will copy them and the signature will be invalid.

- **Exclusive XML Canonicalization** (EXCC14N) - Designed for *canonicalization* where the context might change.

  Exclusive Canonicalization just copies the namespaces you are actually using (the ones that are a part of the XML syntax). It does not look into attribute values or element content, so the namespace declarations required to process these are not copied. This is useful if you have a signed XML document that you want to insert into other XML documents (or you need self-signed structures that support placement within various XML contexts), as it will ensure the signature is verified correctly each time.

The *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method can specify whether or not comments should be included in the *canonical* form output by the *XML canonicalization* method. If a *canonical* form contains comments corresponding to the comment nodes in the input node-set, the result is called *canonical* XML with comments. In an uncommented *canonical* form, comments are removed, including the delimiter for comments outside the document element.

The three operations. **Canonicalize** *(on page 608)*, **Sign** *(on page 609)*, and **Verify Signature** *(on page 611)*, are available from the **Source** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in **Text** mode or from the **XML Tools** menu.

Related Information:

Certificates *(on page 608)*
Canonicalizing Files *(on page 608)*
Signing Files *(on page 609)*

Verifying Signature *(on page 611)*
Example of How to Digitally Sign XML Files or Content *(on page 611)*

Certificates

A certificate is a digitally signed statement from the issuer (an individual, an organization, a website or a firm), saying that the public key (and some other information) of some other entity has a particular value. When data is digitally signed, the signature can be verified to check the data integrity and authenticity. Integrity means that the data has not been modified. Authenticity means the data comes indeed from the entity that claims to have created and signed it. Certificates are kept in special repositories called *keystores (on page 2231)*.

All *keystore* entries (key and trusted certificate entries) are accessed via unique aliases. An alias must be assigned for every new entry of either a key or certificate as a reference for that entity. No *keystore* can store an entity if its alias already exists in that *keystore* and cannot store trusted certificates generated with keys in its *keystore*.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides two types of *keystores*: Java Key Store (JKS) and Public-Key Cryptography Standards version 12 (PKCS-12). A *keystore* file is protected by a password. In a PKCS 12 *keystore* you should not store a certificate without alias together with other certificates, with or without alias, as in such a case the certificate without alias cannot be extracted from the *keystore*.

To configure the options for a certificate or to validate it, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XML Signing Certificates**. This opens the certificates preferences page *(on page 183)*.

Related Information:
Digital Signatures Overview *(on page 605)*

Canonicalizing Files

You can select the *canonicalization (on page 2229)* algorithm to be used for a document from the dialog box that is displayed by using the **Canonicalize** action that is available from the **Source** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in **Text** mode.

The **Canonicalize** dialog box allows you to set the following options:

- **Exclusive** - If selected, the exclusive (uncommented) *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.

  Note:
  Exclusive Canonicalization just copies the namespaces you are actually using (the ones that are a part of the XML syntax). It does not look into attribute values or element content, so the namespace declarations required to process these are not copied. This is useful if you have a signed XML document that you want to insert into other XML documents (or you need self-

signed structures that support placement within various XML contexts), as it will ensure the signature is verified correctly each time.

- **Exclusive with comments** - If selected, the exclusive with comments *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.
- **Inclusive** - If selected, the inclusive (uncommented) *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.

Note:
Inclusive Canonicalization copies all the declarations, even if they are defined outside of the scope of the signature, and all the declarations you might use will be unambiguously specified. Inclusive *Canonicalization* is useful when it is less likely that the signed data will be inserted in other XML document and it is the safer method from the security standpoint because it requires no knowledge of the data that are to be secured to safely sign them. A problem may occur if the signed document is moved into another XML document that has other declarations because the Inclusive *Canonicalization* will copy them and the signature will be invalid.

- **Inclusive with comments** - If selected, the inclusive with comments *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.
- **XPath** - The XPath expression provides the fragments of the XML document to be signed.

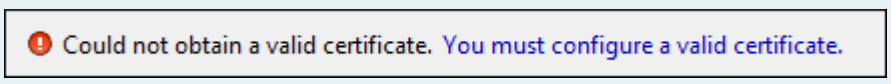
Related Information:
Digital Signatures Overview *(on page 605)*

Signing Files

You can select the type of signature to be used for documents from a signature settings dialog box. To open this dialog box, select the **Sign** action from the **Source** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in **Text** mode.

The following options are available:

Note:
If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin could not find a valid certificate, a link is provided at the top of the dialog box that opens the XML Signing Certificates preferences page *(on page 183)* where you can configure a valid certificate.



- **Transformation Options** - See the Digital Signature Overview *(on page 605)* section for more information about these options.
  - **None** - If selected, no *canonicalization (on page 2229)* algorithm is used.
  - **Exclusive** - If selected, the exclusive (uncommented) *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.

    Note:
    Exclusive Canonicalization just copies the namespaces you are actually using (the ones that are a part of the XML syntax). It does not look into attribute values or element content, so the namespace declarations required to process these are not copied. This is useful if you have a signed XML document that you want to insert into other XML documents (or you need self-signed structures that support placement within various XML contexts), as it will ensure the signature is verified correctly each time.

  - **Exclusive with comments** - If selected, the exclusive with comments *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.
  - **Inclusive** - If selected, the inclusive (uncommented) *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.

    Note:
    Inclusive Canonicalization copies all the declarations, even if they are defined outside of the scope of the signature, and all the declarations you might use will be unambiguously specified. Inclusive *Canonicalization* is useful when it is less likely that the signed data will be inserted in other XML document and it is the safer method from the security standpoint because it requires no knowledge of the data that are to be secured to safely sign them. A problem may occur if the signed document is moved into another XML document that has other declarations because the Inclusive *Canonicalization* will copy them and the signature will be invalid.

  - **Inclusive with comments** - If selected, the inclusive with comments *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.
- **XPath** - The XPath expression provides the fragments of the XML document to be signed.
- **ID** - Provides ID of the XML element to be signed.
- **Envelope** - If selected, the *enveloped* signature is used. See the Digital Signature Overview *(on page 605)* for more information.
- **Detached** - If selected, the *detached* signature is used. See the Digital Signature Overview *(on page 605)* for more information.
- **Append KeyInfo** - If this option is selected, the `<ds:KeyInfo>` element will be added in the signed document.
- **Signature algorithm** - The algorithm used for signing the document. The following options are available: **RSA with SHA1**, **RSA with SHA256**, **RSA with SHA384**, **RSA with SHA512**, **ECDSA with SHA1**, **ECDSA with SHA256**, **ECDSA with SHA384**, and **ECDSA with SHA512**.

Related Information:
Digital Signatures Overview *(on page 605)*
Verifying Signature *(on page 611)*
Example of How to Digitally Sign XML Files or Content *(on page 611)*

Verifying Signature

You can verify the signature of a file by selecting the **Verify Signature** action from the **Source** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in **Text** mode. The **Verify Signature** dialog box then allows you to specify the location of the file whose signature is verified.

If the signature is valid, a dialog box displays the name of the signer. Otherwise, an error shows details about the problem.

Related Information:
Digital Signatures Overview *(on page 605)*
Signing Files *(on page 609)*
Example of How to Digitally Sign XML Files or Content *(on page 611)*

Example of How to Digitally Sign XML Files or Content

Suppose you want to digitally sign an XML document, but more specifically, suppose you have multiple instances of the same element in the document and you just want to sign a specific ID. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a signature tool that allows you to digitally sign XML documents or specific content.

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation directory includes a `samples` folder that contains a file called `personal.xml`. For the purposes of this example, this file will be used to demonstrate how to digitally sign specific content. Notice that this file has multiple `<person>` elements inside the `<personnel>` element. Suppose you want to digitally sign the specific `<person>` element that contains the `id=robert.taylor`. To do this, follow this procedure:

1. Open the `personal.xml` file in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin in **Text** editing mode.
2. Right-click anywhere in the editor and select the **Sign** action from the **Source** submenu.
   The **Sign** dialog box is displayed.
3. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin cannot find a valid certificate, click the link at the top of the dialog box to **configure a valid certificate**. This opens the **XML Signing Certificates** preferences page *(on page 183)* that allows you to configure and validate a certificate.
4. Once a valid certificate is recognized, continue to configure the **Sign** dialog box.
   a. Select one of the **Transformation Options** *(on page 610)*. For the purposes of this example, select the **Inclusive with comments** option.
   b. Specify the appropriate **XPath** expression for the specific element that needs to be signed. For this example, type `/personnel/person` in the **XPath** text box.

c. Enter the specific **ID** that needs to be signed. For this example, type `robert.taylor` in the **ID** field.
d. Select the **Envelope** option *(on page 610)* and leave the other options as their default values.

The digital signature is added at the end of the XML document, just before the end tag. It is always added at the end of the document, even if you only sign specific content within the document.

5. You can verify the signature by choosing the **Verify Signature** action from the **Source** submenu of the contextual menu.

Related Information:
Digital Signatures Overview *(on page 605)*
Signing Files *(on page 609)*
Verifying Signature *(on page 611)*

Editing CSS Stylesheets

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in editor for CSS stylesheets. This section presents the features of the CSS editor and how these features should be used. The features of the CSS editor include:

- **Create new CSS files and templates** - You can use the built-in new file wizards to create new CSS documents or templates *(on page 222)*.
- **Open and Edit CSS files** - CSS files can be opened and edited in a source editing mode.
- **Validation** - Presents validation errors in CSS files.
- **Content completion** - Offers proposals for properties and the values that are available for each property.
- **Syntax highlighting** - The syntax highlighting in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin makes CSS files more readable.
- **Shortcut to open resources** - You can use **Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on macOS)** to open imported stylesheets or other resources (such as images) in the default system application for the particular type of resource.

Related Information:
CSS Support in Author Mode *(on page 1709)*
Supported CSS Selectors *(on page 1716)*
Supported CSS Properties *(on page 1723)*
CSS Extensions *(on page 1736)*

Validating CSS Stylesheets

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in *CSS Validator*, integrated with general validation support. This makes the usual validation features for presenting errors also available for CSS stylesheets.

The CSS properties accepted by the validator are those included in the current CSS profile that is selected in the CSS validation preferences *(on page 66)*. The **CSS 3 with Oxygen extensions** profile includes all the CSS 3

standard properties plus the CSS extensions specific for Oxygen *(on page 1736)* that can be used in Author mode *(on page 221)*. That means all **Oxygen**-specific extensions are accepted in a CSS stylesheet by the built-in CSS validator *(on page 612)* when this profile is selected.

Specify Custom CSS Properties

To specify custom CSS properties, follow these steps:

1. Create a file named `CustomProperties.xml` that has the following structure:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<css_keywords
      xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
      xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/css
 http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/css/CssProperties.xsd"
      xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/css">
      <property name="custom">
      <summary>Description for custom property.</summary>
        <value name="customValue"/>
        <value name="anotherCustomValue"/>
      </property>
</css_keywords>
```

2. Go to your desktop and create the `builtin/css-validator/` folder structure.
3. Press and hold **Shift** and right-click anywhere on your desktop. From the contextual menu, select **Open Command Window Here**.
4. In the command line, run the `jar cvf custom_props.jar builtin/` command.
   The `custom_props.jar` file is created.
5. Go to *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`/lib` and create the `endorsed` folder. Copy the `custom_props.jar` file to *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`/lib/endorsed`.

Content Completion in CSS Stylesheets

A *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*, similar to the one available for XML documents *(on page 294)*, offers the CSS properties and the values available for each property. It can be manually activated with the **Ctrl + Space** shortcut and is context-sensitive when invoked for the value of a property. The *Content Completion Assistant* also includes code templates that can be used to quickly insert code fragments *(on page 299)* into CSS stylesheets. The code templates that are proposed include form controls, actions, and **Author** mode operations.

The properties and values available are dependent on the CSS Profile selected in the **CSS** preferences *(on page 66)*. The CSS 2.1 set of properties and property values is used for most of the profiles. However, with CSS 1 and CSS 3 specific proposal sets are used.

The profile *CSS 3 with Oxygen extensions* includes all the CSS 3 standard properties plus the CSS extensions specific for Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *(on page 1736)* that can be used in **Author** mode *(on page 221)*.

Proposals for CSS Selectors - After inserting a *CSS selector*, the content completion assistance will propose a list of pseudo-elements and pseudo-classes that are available for the selected CSS profile.

Proposals for `@media` and `@import` Rules - After inserting `@media` or `@import <url>` rules, the content completion assistance will propose a list of supported media types.

Related Information:
Specify Custom CSS Properties *(on page 613)*

Syntax Highlighting in CSS Files

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports syntax highlighting in **Text** mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for CSS files, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*.
2. Go to **Editor > Syntax Highlight** *(on page 163)*.
3. Select and expand the **CSS** section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.

You can see the effects of your changes in the **Preview** pane.

Related Information:
Syntax Highlight Preferences *(on page 163)*

CSS Outline View

The **Outline** view for CSS stylesheets presents the import declarations for other CSS stylesheet files and all the selectors defined in the current CSS document. The selector entries can be presented as follows:

- In the order they appear in the document.
- Sorted by the element name used in the selector.
- Sorted by the entire selector string representation.

You can synchronize the selection in the **Outline** view with the cursor moves or changes you make in the stylesheet document. When you select an entry from the **Outline** view, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin highlights the corresponding import or selector in the CSS editor.

By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

The selectors presented in this view can be found quickly using the key search field. When you press a sequence of character keys while the focus is in the view, the first selector that starts with that sequence is selected automatically.

Folding in CSS Stylesheets

In a large CSS stylesheet document, some styles can be collapsed so that only the styles that are needed remain in focus. The same folding features available for XML documents are also available in CSS stylesheets.

Note:
To enhance your editing experience, you can select entire blocks (parts of text delimited by brackets) by double-clicking somewhere inside the brackets.

Formatting and Indenting CSS Stylesheets (Pretty Print)

If the edited CSS stylesheet becomes unreadable because of the bad alignment of the text lines, the format and indent operation available for XML documents is also available for CSS stylesheets. It works in the same way as for XML documents and is available as the same menu and toolbar action.

Minifying CSS Stylesheets

Minification (or *compression*) of a CSS document is the practice of removing unnecessary code without affecting the functionality of the stylesheet.

To minify a CSS, invoke the contextual menu anywhere in the edited document and choose the **Minify CSS** action. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin opens a dialog box that allows you to:

- Set the location of the resulting CSS.
- Place each style rule on a new line.

After pressing **OK**, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin performs the following actions:

- All spaces are normalized (all leading and trailing spaces are removed, while sequences of white spaces are replaced with single space characters).
- All comments are removed.

Note:
The CSS minifier relies heavily upon the W3C CSS specification. If the content of the CSS file you are trying to minify does not conform with the specifications, an error dialog box will be displayed, listing all errors encountered during the processing.

The resulting CSS stylesheet gains a lot in terms of execution performance, but loses in terms of readability. The source CSS document is left unaffected.

Note:
To restore the readability of a minified CSS, invoke the **Format and Indent** action from the **XML** menu, the **Source** submenu from the contextual menu, or **Source** toolbar. However, this action will not recover any of the deleted comments.

Editing XLIFF Documents

XLIFF (*XML Localization Interchange File Format*) is an XML-based format that was designed to standardize the way multilingual data is passed between tools during a localization process. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides the following support for editing XLIFF documents:

XLIFF Version 1.2, 2.0, and 2.1 Support:

- New document templates for XLIFF documents.
- A default CSS file (`xliff.css`) used for rendering XLIFF content in **Author** mode is stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/xliff/css/`.
- Validation and content completion support using local catalogs. The default catalog (`catalog.xml`) for version 1.2 is stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/xliff/schemas/1.2`, for version 2.0 in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/xliff/schemas/2.0`, and for version 2.1 in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/xliff/schemas/2.1`.

XLIFF Version 2.0 and 2.1 Enhanced Support:

Support for validating XLIFF 2.0 and 2.1 documents using modules. For version 2.0, the default modules are stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/xliff/schemas/2.0/modules` and for version 2.1, they are stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/xliff/schemas/2.1`.

Editing XLIFF Documents in Author Mode

By default, when you create a new XLIFF document from a template *(on page 229)*, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin opens it in **Text** mode. Aside from the normal editing features found in **Text** mode, you can also switch to **Author** mode where Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers some special form controls specifically for XLIFF documents. These form controls simply allow you to add or edit XLIFF attribute values and content in a visual mode.

For XLIFF version 2.0 and 2.1 documents, you can also change the style of the visual editing mode. The **Styles** drop-down menu on the toolbar offers the following styles that are specifically designed to render XLIFF 2.0 and 2.1 documents in **Author** mode:

- **Default**
- **Classic**
- **Translate**

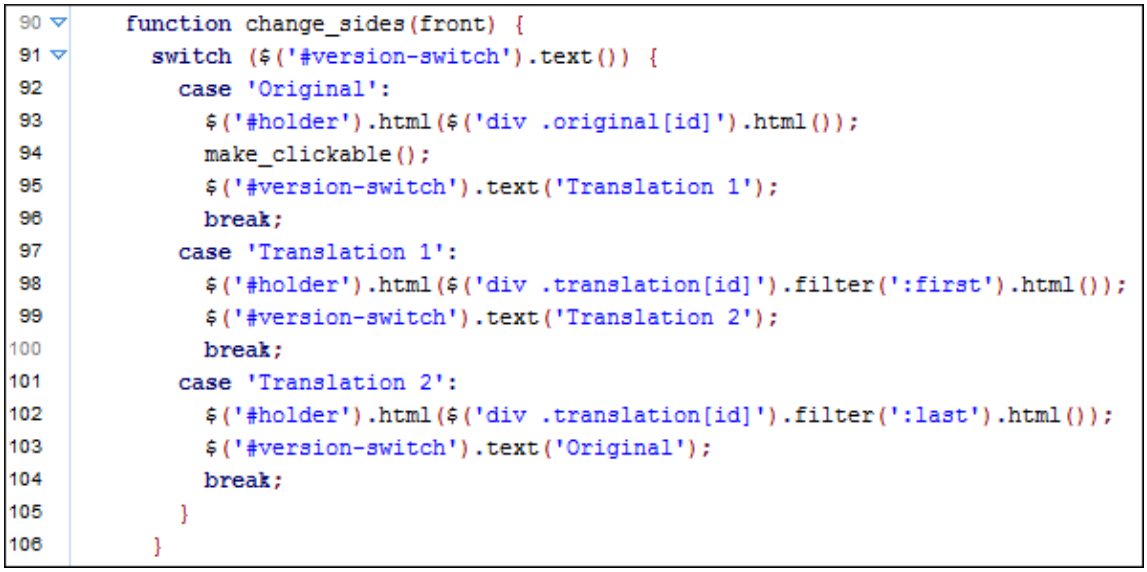
Editing JavaScript Documents

This section explains the features of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin JavaScript Editor and how you can use them.

JavaScript Editing Actions

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to create and edit JavaScript files and assists you with useful features such as syntax highlight, content completion, and outline view. To enhance your editing experience, you can select entire blocks (parts of text delimited by brackets) by double-clicking somewhere inside the brackets.

Figure 187. JavaScript Editor Text Mode



```
90  function change_sides(front) {
91    switch ($('#version-switch').text()) {
92      case 'Original':
93        $('#holder').html($('div .original[id]').html());
94        make_clickable();
95        $('#version-switch').text('Translation 1');
96        break;
97      case 'Translation 1':
98        $('#holder').html($('div .translation[id]').filter(':first').html());
99        $('#version-switch').text('Translation 2');
100       break;
101     case 'Translation 2':
102       $('#holder').html($('div .translation[id]').filter(':last').html());
103       $('#version-switch').text('Original');
104       break;
105     }
106   }
```

The contextual menu of the **JavaScript** editor offers the following actions:

Cut

Allows you to cut fragments of text from the editing area.

Copy

Allows you to copy fragments of text from the editing area.

Paste

Allows you to paste fragments of text in the editing area.

Toggle Comment

Allows you to comment a line or a fragment of the JavaScript document you are editing. This option inserts a single comment for the entire fragment you want to comment.

Toggle Line Comment

Allows you to comment a line or a fragment of the JavaScript document you are editing. This option inserts a comment for each line of the fragment you want to comment.

Go to Matching Bracket

Use this option to find the closing, or opening bracket, matching the bracket at the cursor position. When you select this option, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin moves the cursor to the matching bracket, highlights its row, and decorates the initial bracket with a rectangle.

> **Note:**
> A rectangle decorates the opening or closing bracket that matches the current one, at all times.

Source

Allows you to select one of the following actions:

To Lower Case

Converts the selection content to lower case characters.

To Upper Case

Converts the selection content to upper case characters.

Capitalize Lines

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected line.

Join and Normalize Lines

Joins all the rows you select to one row and normalizes the content.

Insert new line after

Inserts a new line after the line at the cursor position.

Modify all matches

Use this option to modify (in-place) all the occurrences of the selected content. When you use this option, a thin rectangle replaces the highlights and allows you to start editing. If matches with different letter cases are found, a dialog box is displayed that allows you select whether you want to modify only matches with the same letter case or all matches.

Open

Allows you to select one of the following actions:

- **Open File at Cursor** - select this action to open the source of the file located at the cursor position
- **Open File at Cursor in System Application** - select this action to open the source of the file located at the cursor position with the application that the system associates with the file

Compare

Select this option to open the **Compare Files** tool to compare the file you are editing with a file you choose in the dialog box.

Validating JavaScript Files

You have the possibility to validate the JavaScript document you are editing. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the Mozilla Rhino library for validation. For more information about this library, go to https://github.com/mozilla/rhino. The JavaScript validation process checks for errors in the syntax. Calling a function that is not defined is not treated as an error by the validation process. The interpreter discovers this error when executing the faulted line. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can validate a JavaScript document both on-request and automatically.

Content Completion in JavaScript Documents

When you edit a JavaScript document, the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* presents you a list of the elements you can insert at the cursor position. It can be manually activated with the **Ctrl + Space** shortcut.

For an enhanced assistance, JQuery methods are also presented. The following icons decorate the elements in the content completion list of proposals depending on their type:

- f() - function
- v - variable
- ▢ - object
- ● - property
- f() - method

Note:
These icons decorate both the elements from the content completion list of proposals and from the **Outline** view *(on page 621)*.

Figure 188. JavaScript Content Completion Assistant

The *Content Completion Assistant* collects:

- Method names from the current file and from the library files.
- Functions and variables defined in the current file.

If you edit the content of a function, the content completion list of proposals contains all the local variables defined in the current function, or in the functions that contain the current one.

Syntax Highlighting in JavaScript Documents

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports syntax highlighting in **Text** mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for JavaScript files, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*.
2. Go to **Editor > Syntax Highlight** *(on page 163)*.
3. Select and expand the **JavaScript** section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.

You can see the effects of your changes in the **Preview** pane.

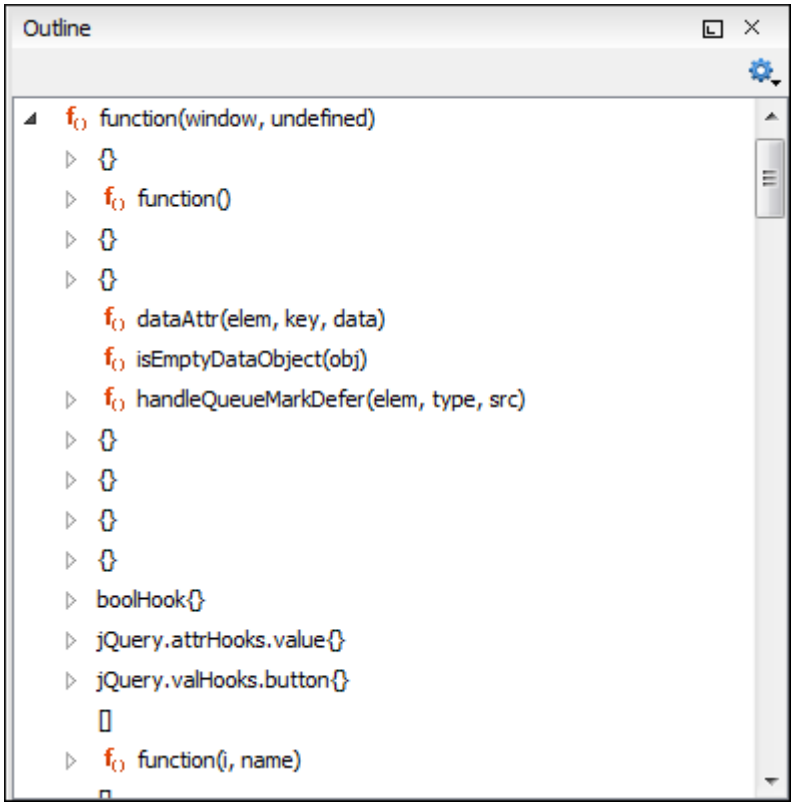
Related Information:

Syntax Highlight Preferences *(on page 163)*

JavaScript Outline View

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin present a list of all the components of the JavaScript document you are editing in the **Outline** view. By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

Figure 189. JavaScript Outline View



The following icons decorate the elements in the **Outline** view depending on their type:

- - function
- - variable
- - object
- - property
- - method

The contextual menu of the JavaScript **Outline** view contains the usual **Cut**, **Copy**, **Paste**, and **Delete** actions. From the **Settings** menu, you can select the **Update selection on cursor move** option to synchronize the **Outline** view with the editing area.

Editing HTML Documents

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a special framework for editing HTML files (*html* or *htm* file extensions) with a variety of specialized editing features, including validation, content completion, syntax highlighting, HTML-specific actions, and more. You can edit HTML documents in **Text** or **Author** mode.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes a built-in XHTML framework *(on page 740)* (files with the *http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml* namespace or with the *xhtml* or *xht* file extension) that has a full set of features (full editing support, document templates, enhanced CSS rendering, specific actions, validation, content completion, transformation scenarios, and more). Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes support for importing HTML files as an XML document *(on page 1529)*.

Resources

For more information about the HTML support in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the following resources:

- Webinar: **HTML5 Support in Oxygen**.
- Video: **HTML Support in Oxygen**.

Related information
XHTML Document Type (Framework) *(on page 740)*

HTML Editor

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a specialized HTML editor and various editing features for files that have the `html` or `htm` file extensions. The encoding is detected automatically based on the value specified in the `@charset` attribute of the `<meta>` element.

Note:
If an HTML document has an XHTML namespace, or there is an XSD schema declared, or there is a PUBLIC ID specified in a DOCTYPE, or there is a SYSTEM ID with a value other than *"about:legacy-compat"*, then the document will be opened as an XHTML file.

New Document Template

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a new document template to help you get started creating HTML content. It is available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 229)* and can be found in the **New Document** folder or by typing *html* in the search field.

Text Mode Editor

You can edit HTML files in the **Text** editing mode using all of its useful features. It includes content completion based on a special HTML schema, syntax highlighting *(on page 626)*, a specialized Outline view *(on page 627)* that presents the structure, folding support *(on page 626)*, and more.

HTML documents support formatting and indenting single or multiple documents to make them more readable. The formatting works even if the document is not XML well-formed and it also works on embedded CSS or JavaScript code. The HTML formatting details are similar to those for XML documents. For details, see Formatting and Indenting XML Documents *(on page 314)*.

Author Mode Editor

You can edit HTML files in the visual **Author** editing mode *(on page 343)*, but when opening an HTML document in **Author** mode, if it is not considered well-formed according to XML standards, you will see a warning message at the top of the editor explaining that once you make a modification, the document will be automatically converted to proper XML structure. For more details, see XML Well-Formedness Details for HTML Documents *(on page 623)*.

When editing HTML documents in **Author** mode, you have access to many of the same authoring features and actions as you have with XHTML documents *(on page 742)*. You also have the benefit of CSS rendering and you can specify a CSS file to be associated with an HTML document *(on page 628)*.

HTML-Specific Contextual Menu Actions

There are some specialized actions (available in the contextual menu when you right-click anywhere in the current HTML document) that invoke features unique to HTML documents. These contextual menu actions include:

View in Browser/System Application

Opens the HTML document in your default browser.

Minify HTML

Compresses the HTML document by removing unnecessary white spaces, without affecting the functionality of the document, but significantly reducing the loading time in Web browsers.

HTML to XML Well-formed (Available in both Text and Author modes)

Converts the currently edited HTML document to be XML well-formed. This means that unclosed tags will be properly closed, unquoted attribute values will be quoted, and more. This is helpful if, for example, you use XSLT stylesheets while applying transformations on HTML documents (since the transformation will require the HTML document to be XML well-formed).

XML Well-Formedness Details for HTML Documents

When opening an HTML document in **Author** mode, if it is not XML well-formed, you will see a warning message at the top of the editor explaining that once you make a modification, the document will be automatically converted to proper XML structure. Examples of things that are automatically converted include:

- Missing end tags are added to applicable elements.
- Empty tags are closed.

- Missing quote characters are added to applicable attributes.
- Entity references that are allowed in the HTML5 specification are converted to the corresponding character.

Tip:
It is also possible to manually convert HTML documents to be XML well-formed. There are two ways to do this, depending on whether you want to convert a single document or batch convert multiple documents at once:

- **Single Document** - To convert a single HTML document, right-click anywhere in the currently open HTML document (in the main editor) and select **HTML to XML Well-formed**.
- **Multiple Documents** - To batch convert multiple HTML documents at once, go to the **Project Explorer** view, select the documents you want to convert, then right-click and select **HTML to XML Well-formed**.

Notes:
- All selected HTML files are backed up before being processed (same path/name but with the ".bak" extension added at the end).
- Any detected conversion errors are grouped and listed in a dedicated tab in the **Results** pane at the bottom of the application.
- A brief report is displayed at the end of the operation.

HTML Validation

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in default validator used for validating HTML documents. It is based upon the W3C HTML Validator and the HTML documents are validated against the W3C HTML5 specification. The validator in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin only supports HTML5 structure. It presents the errors in the editor similar to XML documents. It also checks the embedded CSS content and the warnings and errors are presented similar to the CSS editor *(on page 612)*.

Validating HTML Against a Schematron

It is also possible to validate HTML documents against a Schematron schema. Besides the default HTML validator, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes a built-in *HTML Schematron Validator* engine. There are several ways to validate an HTML document against a Schematron:

- **Configure a Validation Scenario** - You can create or edit a validation scenario, change the **File type** column to *HTML Document*, change the **Validation engine** column to *HTML Schematron Validator*, and specify the Schematron document in the **Schema** column.
- **Manually Validate a Single Document** - You can use the **Validate with** action from the **Validation** drop-down menu on the toolbar. This opens a dialog box where you can specify the Schematron document to validate the current document against.

- **Batch Validate Multiple Documents** - You can select multiple HTML documents in the **Project Explorer** view, right-click, and use the **Validate with schema** action from the **Validate** submenu. This opens a dialog box where you can specify the Schematron document to validate the selected documents against.

Notes:

- The Schematron must use the HTML5 namespace to reference the elements from the instance.
- Implicit HTML elements (i.e. `<html>`, `<body>`, `<tbody>`) must be included in an XPath expression in the Schematron document, even if they are missing from the HTML document.

Tip:
The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation directory includes a `samples` folder that contains numerous sample files to help you learn about features, certain file types, and XML technologies. For example, inside the `samples` folder, there is an `html` folder with a `schematron` subfolder where you can find some samples that illustrate HTML validation against a Schematron schema.

Validating HTML Against Other Types of Schema

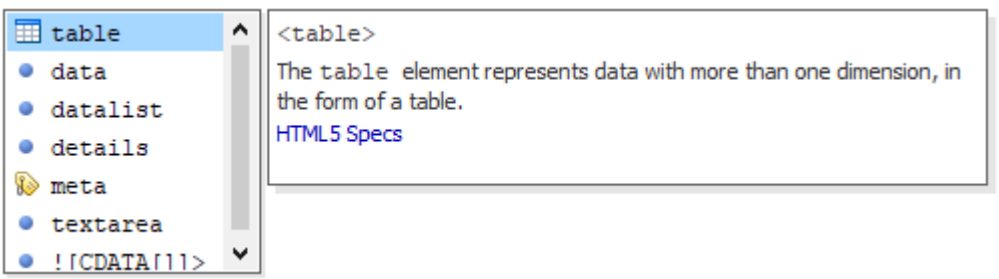
If your HTML document is XML well-formed, you could also configure a validation scenario to validate it as an XML document against other types of schemas. You would create or edit a validation scenario, make sure the **File type** column is set to *XML Document*, select the appropriate **Validation engine**, and specify the schema document in the **Schema** column.

HTML Content Completion Assistant

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an intelligent *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* that offers proposals for inserting HTML structures that are valid at the current editing location. Content completion is even available for CSS and JavaScript code that is embedded in an HTML document.

The *Content Completion Assistant* is enabled by default. To disable it, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Editor > Content Completion**, and deselect the **Enable content completion** option *(on page 112)*.

Figure 190. Content Completion Assistant in HTML



Using the Content Completion in HTML

For HTML documents, the *Content Completion Assistant* uses a built-in schema and the list of proposals depend on the RELAX NG schema specified in the HTML framework. Using the content completion feature is the same as with any other XML document. For more details, see:

- Using the Content Completion Assistant in Text Mode *(on page 295)*
- Using the Content Completion Assistant in Author Mode *(on page 369)*

Code Templates in the Content Completion

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a set of built-in code templates for HTML documents that can be selected from the *Content Completion Assistant*. The code templates are displayed with a symbol in the content completion list. You can also define your own code templates and share them with others. For more information, see Code Templates *(on page 299)*.

Content Completion for XPath Expressions

When entering XPath expressions in the **XPath Builder** view, the *Content Completion Assistant* is available as you type to help you compose query patterns.

Syntax Highlighting in HTML Documents

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports syntax highlighting in **Text** mode to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts.

For HTML documents, it handles attributes without quotes, unclosed or void elements, and it also offers highlighting for embedded CSS or JavaScript content.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for HTML files, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*.
2. Go to **Editor > Syntax Highlight** *(on page 163)*.
3. Select and expand the **XHTML** section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.

You can see the effects of your changes in the **Preview** pane.

Related Information:
Syntax Highlight Preferences *(on page 163)*

Folding in HTML

In a large HTML document, elements can be collapsed so that only the needed data remains in focus. The folding features available for XML documents *(on page 291)* are also available in HTML documents, but it also provides folding for nested elements that are not closed.

Minifying HTML Documents

Minification (or compression) of an HTML document is the practice of removing unnecessary white spaces, without affecting the functionality of the document, but significantly reducing the loading time in Web browsers. While a minified HTML document gains in terms of execution performance, it is more difficult to read.

To minify an HTML document, right-click anywhere in the editor for an HTML document that is open in **Text** mode (or right-click an HTML document in the **Project Explorer** view and select the **Minify HTML** action. This opens a dialog box with the following options:

Output file

Use this option to set the name and location of the resulting compressed/minified HTML document.

Remove comments

If selected (default), all the HTML comments and also the comments from embedded CSS or JavaScript code blocks will be removed from the resulting output file.

Compress on a single line

If selected (default), the resulting output file will consist of a single line, as all the *'new line'* characters from the source document are removed.

Open output file in editor

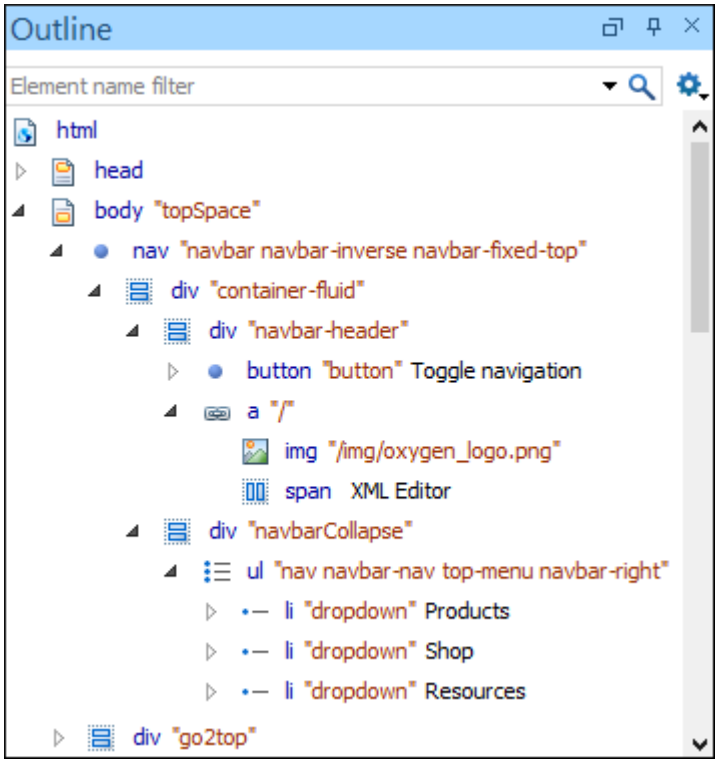
If selected (default), the resulting output file will be opened in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

When you click **OK**, the resulting HTML document is a compressed version of the original file for the purpose of enhanced performance, while losing some readability. The source HTML document is not affected.

HTML Outline View

The **Outline** view for HTML documents displays the structure of the HTML document you are editing. By default, it is displayed on the left side of the editor. In addition to the normal features available in the **Outline** view for XML documents, the HTML **Outline** view also handles void elements, elements that are not closed, or attributes without quotes, and presents the tree structure of the HTML document correctly.

Figure 191. HTML Outline View



Querying HTML Documents with XPath

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a dedicated **XPath Builder** view *(on page 1451)* that allows you to compose complex XPath expressions and execute them over HTML documents (even if they are not well-formed according to XML standards). The **XPath Builder** view offers content completion as you type to help you compose expressions.

Associating a CSS with an HTML Document

The rendering of an HTML document in the **Author** mode is driven by a CSS stylesheet that conforms to the version 2.1 of the CSS specification from the W3C consortium.

To associate a CSS with an HTML document:

1. Use the **Associate XSLT/CSS Stylesheet** action that is available on the toolbar or in the **XML** menu.
2. In the resulting dialog box, specify the URL for the CSS file and optionally a title, and click **OK**.

Result: A CSS association is added in the HTML document in a `<link>` element, as specified in the W3C stylesheet specification.

Editing Markdown Documents

Markdown was created as a lightweight markup language with plain text formatting syntax designed to provide syntax that is very easy to read and write, and to convert it to HTML and other formats. It is often used by content contributors who want a quick and easy way to write content without having to take their

fingers off the keyboard and without having to learn numerous codes or shortcuts, and it can easily be shared interchangeably between virtually any types of contributor and system.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a built-in Markdown editor that allows you to convert Markdown syntax to HTML or DITA and it includes a preview panel to help you visualize the final output. Aside from the plain text syntax that is common among most Markdown applications, the editor in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also integrates many other powerful features that content authors are accustomed to using for other types of documents. Some of these additional unique features include:

- Additional toolbar and contextual menu actions.
- Automatic validation to help keep the syntax valid.
- Dedicated syntax highlighting to make Markdown documents even easier to read and write.
- Unique features for creating Markdown documents directly in *DITA maps (on page 2230)* and converting Markdown documents to DITA topics.
- Specialized syntax rules to combine popular syntax features from several specifications.

Resources

For more information about editing Markdown documents in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see our webinar: **Oxygen Markdown Support**.

Markdown Editor

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides an intuitive, dynamic, and easy-to-use Markdown editor. It is a split-screen editor with two panels that are synchronized in real time. The left side is a simple text editor that is specially designed for writing Markdown syntax. The right side is a WYSIWYG style preview of how changes will look in the output.

Markdown Text Editor Pane (Left Side)

The left pane is a simple text editor that is refined to accept Markdown syntax. At the same time, you still have many of the actions, options, and features that you are used to when editing any other type of document in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

The features of this special editor that are unique for Markdown documents include:

- **Unique Markdown Syntax Rules** - The Markdown editor in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses an integration of rules *(on page 639)* that combine rules from common default Markdown syntax along with many of the rules used in the GitHub Flavored Markdown syntax.
- **Syntax Highlighting** - The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin syntax highlighting feature is integrated into the Markdown text editor to make it easier to read and write Markdown syntax. You can even customize the colors and styles for the syntax highlighting *(on page 635)*.
- **Automatic Spell Checking** - The Markdown editor supports the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatic spell checking feature *(on page 268)* that reports possible misspelled words as you type. You simply need to select the **Automatic spell check** option in the **Spell Check** preferences page *(on page 160)*, then click the **Select editors** button and select **Markdown Editor**.

- **Helpful Toolbar and Contextual Menu Actions** - A variety of unique actions *(on page 632)* are available from the toolbar to help you insert proper Markdown syntax. The contextual menu also includes some common editing actions, as well as unique actions to export (convert) Markdown documents to HTML or DITA.

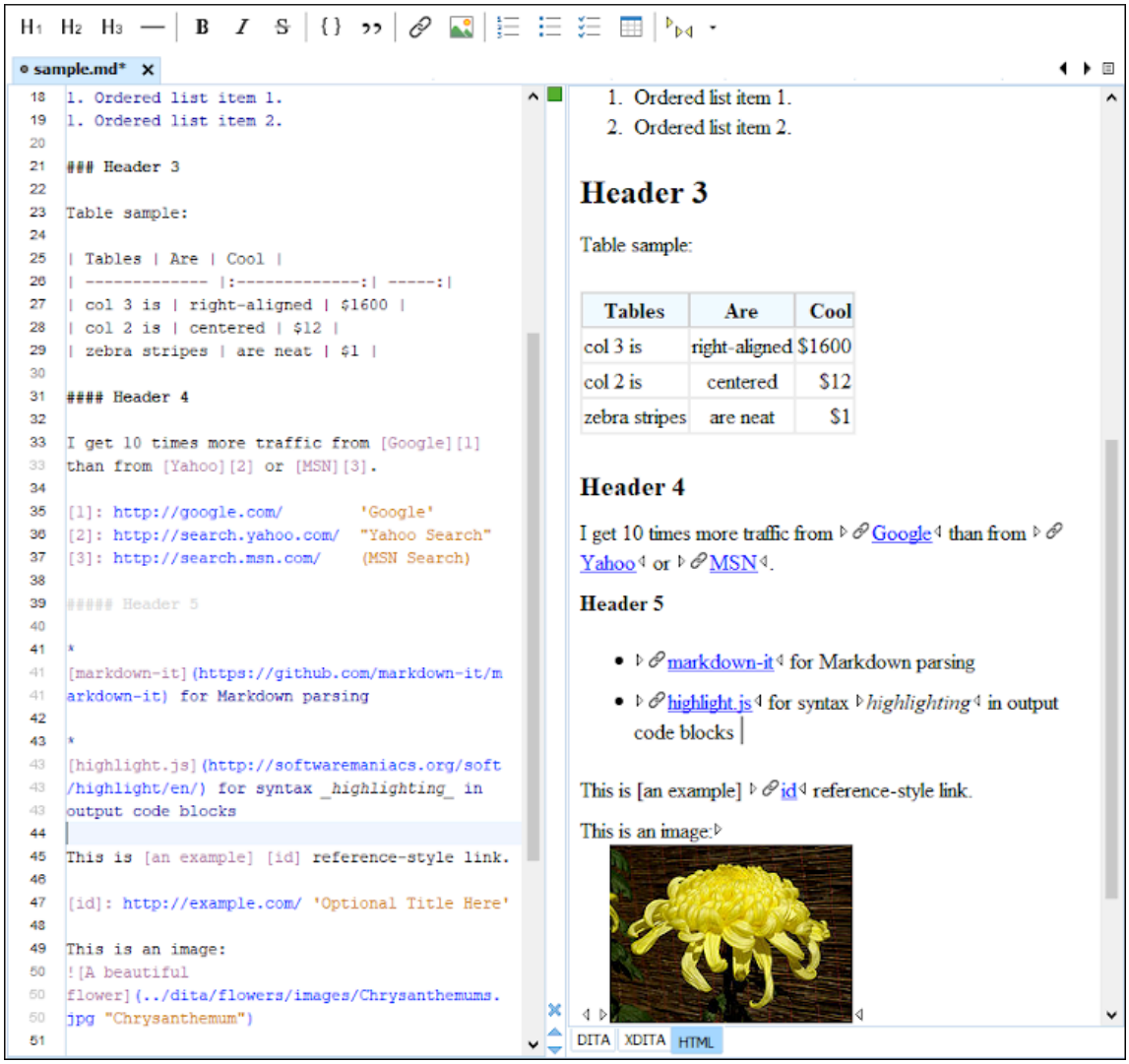
WYSIWYG Preview Pane (Right Side)

The right pane is a WYSIWYG *Preview* pane that shows a visual representation of how changes made in the left-side text editor will be converted to **HTML**, **XDITA** (Lightweight DITA XML), or **DITA** output. The changes you make in the text editor are parsed continually and they are immediately visible in the *Preview* pane. There are two tabs available in the *Preview* pane, one for visualizing DITA output and one for visualizing HTML output. You can switch between the two tabs at the bottom of the pane.

The *Preview* pane includes the following features:

- **WYSIWYG Visualization** - This pane presents the Markdown syntax from the left-side text editor in a visual WYSIWYG style interface that is automatically synchronized as you type.
- **Synchronous caret and scroll synchronization** - Moving the cursor in the editor area will display the corresponding move in the *Preview* area.
- **Export Options** - The **DITA** tab includes a contextual menu action to export (convert) the current Markdown document to a DITA topic *(on page 635)*. The **XDITA** tab includes a contextual menu action to export (convert) the current Markdown document to a Lightweight DITA topic *(on page 635)*. Similarly, the **HTML** tab includes a contextual menu action to export (convert) it to an XHTML document *(on page 635)*.
- **Automatic Validation** - As you edit Markdown documents, they are validated automatically *(on page 636)*. The conversion engine constantly tries to parse your changes and if a change results in an error that prevents the parser from converting the syntax, an error message will be displayed in the *Preview* pane or **Results** view *(on page 310)* at the bottom of the editor.
- **Print Feature** - The Markdown editor includes a **Print** action that is available in the contextual menu and it allows you to configure options for printing the current document as you see it in the *Preview* pane.
- **Preview Markup** - The Markdown editor includes a **Tags Display Mode** drop-down menu *(on page 634)* that is available on the toolbar and it allows you to control the amount of markup that is displayed in the *Preview* pane.
- **Specialized DITA Features** - The Markdown editor includes some unique, specialized features to integrate it with the powerful DITA support *(on page 2012)* in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Figure 192. Markdown Editor



Related information

Markdown Editor Syntax Rules and Specifications *(on page 639)*
Actions Available in the Markdown Editor *(on page 632)*
Working with Markdown Documents in DITA *(on page 2012)*
Creating New Markdown Documents *(on page 631)*

Creating New Markdown Documents

To create a new Markdown document in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, follow these steps:

1. Click the **New** button on the toolbar or select **File > New**.
2. Select the **Markdown** document template.
3. Click **Next**.
4. Choose the storage path and file name for the new document.
5. Click the **Finish** button.

Result: A new Markdown document is created and it is opened in the specialized Markdown Editor *(on page 629)*.

Related Information:
Markdown Editor *(on page 629)*

Actions Available in the Markdown Editor

Aside from the actions that are available in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for any type of document (such as the actions in the various menus and the common sections of the toolbar), a variety of unique actions are also available in the Markdown editor, from the toolbar and contextual menu.

Toolbar Actions

The following default actions are available on the Markdown toolbar when editing Markdown documents:

Header (1st Level)

Inserts an *atx-style* first-level header *(on page 640)* at the cursor position.

Header (2st Level)

Inserts an *atx-style* second-level header *(on page 640)* at the cursor position.

Header (3rd Level)

Inserts an *atx-style* third-level header *(on page 640)* at the cursor position.

Horizontal Rule

Inserts a horizontal rule *(on page 640)* at the cursor position.

Bold (Strong)

Marks the selected text with bold *(on page 641)*.

Italic (Emphasis)

Marks the selected text with italics *(on page 641)*.

Strikethrough

Marks the selected text with a strikethrough *(on page 641)*.

Code Block

Inserts (or surrounds selected text in) a codeblock *(on page 645)*.

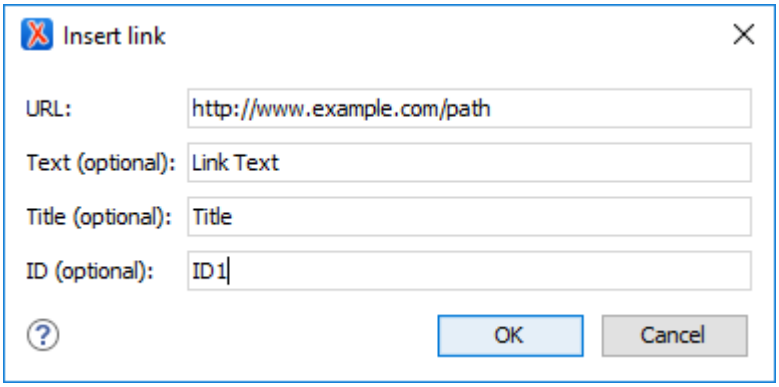
Blockquote

Inserts a blockquote *(on page 644)* at the cursor position.

Insert Link

Opens the **Insert Link** dialog box that allows you to define a link *(on page 642)* to insert at the cursor position.

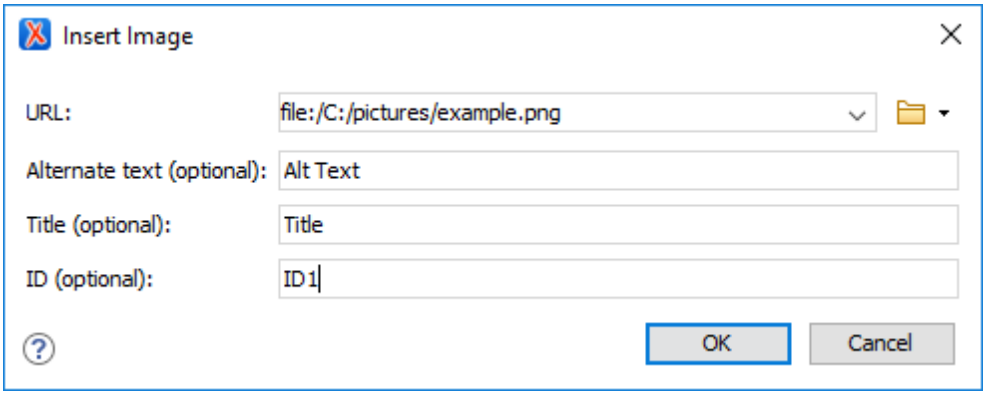
Figure 193. Insert Link Dialog Box



Insert Image

Opens the **Insert Image** dialog box that allows you to define an image *(on page 644)* to insert at the cursor position. You can type the URL of the image you want to insert or use browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down menu.

Figure 194. Insert Link Dialog Box



Insert Ordered List

Inserts an ordered list *(on page 647)* at the cursor position. Three child list items are also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected content to an ordered list.

Insert Unordered List

Inserts an unordered list *(on page 647)* at the cursor position. Three child list items are also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected content to an unordered list.

Insert Task List

Inserts a task list *(on page 649)* at the cursor position. Three child list items are also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected content to a task list.

Insert Table

Inserts a table *(on page 649)* at the cursor position.

Tags Display Mode drop-down menu

Allows you to control the amount of markup that is displayed in the *Preview* pane and offers the following choices:

Full Tags with Attributes

Displays full tag names with attributes for both *block (on page 2228)* and *inline elements (on page 2231)*.

Full Tags

Displays full tag names without attributes for both *block elements* and *inline elements*.

Block Tags

Displays full tag names for *block elements* and simple tags without names for *inline elements*.

Block Tags without Element Names

Displays tags for *block elements* but without element names for a more compact version of **Block Tags** mode. You can still see the element names by hovering over the tags.

Inline Tags

Displays full tag names for *inline elements*, while *block elements* are not displayed.

Partial Tags

Displays simple tags without names for *inline elements*, while *block elements* are not displayed.

No Tags

No tags are displayed. This is the most compact mode and is as close as possible to a word-processor view.

Configure Tags Display Mode

Use this option to go to the **Author** preferences page where you can configure the **Tags Display Mode** options.

Contextual Menu Actions

The following default actions are available in the contextual menu when editing Markdown documents:

Cut, Copy, Paste

Use these actions to execute the typical editing actions on the currently selected content.

Show/Hide Preview

A toggle action that shows or hides the *Preview* pane.

Export as DITA Topic

Converts the current Markdown document into a DITA topic.

Export as XDITA Topic

Converts the current Markdown document into a Lightweight DITA XML topic.

Export as HTML

Converts the current Markdown document into an XHTML document.

Print (Available in the *Preview* pane)

Opens a page setup dialog box that allows you to configure printing options for the current document.

Related information

Markdown Editor *(on page 629)*
Working with Markdown Documents in DITA *(on page 2012)*
Markdown Editor Syntax Rules and Specifications *(on page 639)*

Syntax Highlighting in the Markdown Editor

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports syntax highlighting in the Markdown editor to make it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of XML code in different colors and fonts.

Note:
For Markdown documents that contain code from other languages, those blocks are rendered with proper syntax highlights to make them more distinguishable. The languages that are rendered with syntax highlights within Markdown documents include JavaScript, JSON, YAML, XML, XSLT, XSD, HTML, RNG, RNC, Java, Python, and CSS.

To customize the colors or styles used for the syntax highlighting colors for Markdown documents, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*.
2. Go to **Editor > Syntax Highlight** *(on page 163)*.
3. Select and expand the **Markdown** section in the top pane.
4. Select the component you want to change and customize the colors or styles using the selectors to the right of the pane.

You can see the effects of your changes in the **Preview** pane.

Related Information:

Syntax Highlight Preferences *(on page 163)*
Markdown Editor *(on page 629)*

Automatic Validation in Markdown Documents

Markdown documents are validated automatically as you type. The conversion engine constantly tries to parse your changes to display the results in the *Preview* pane. If a change results in an error that prevents the parser from converting the syntax, an error message will be displayed in the **DITA** tab or in the **Results** view *(on page 310)* at the bottom of the editor.

Examples of the type of errors that will be reported include headers being in the wrong order or the syntax of a document begins with something other than a 1st level header.

Validating Markdown Documents with Schematron

It is possible to validate Markdown documents with Schematron rules. There are two ways to create an association between Markdown documents and Schematron files:

- You can configure an association using the **Markdown** preferences page *(on page 165)*. You can specify a Schematron file to validate converted HTML content, as well as one to validate converted DITA content.
- You can create a Schematron association for Markdown documents by adding a catalog mapping *(on page 573)* for one of the following URIs:
  - **http://www.oxygenxml.com/schematron/validation/markdown-as-html** - The obtained Schematron will be applied over HTML conversions.
  - **http://www.oxygenxml.com/schematron/validation/markdown-as-dita** - The obtained Schematron will be applied over DITA conversions.

  The catalog mapping is a fallback in case the Schematron validation is disabled in the **Markdown** preferences page *(on page 165)* or the path to the Schematron file is empty.

  Warning:
  If you are using a custom version of DITA-OT *(on page 74)*, the mapping information might not be generated properly, causing issues with the Schematron validation. For example, error locations may not be accurate or synchronization may fail.

Tip:
Inside the samples folder, there is a `schematron-validation` folder with some files you can use to see how Schematron validation can be done with Markdown files. The path of the folder is: `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/samples/markdown/schematron-validation/`.

Related Information:

Markdown Editor *(on page 629)*

Working with Markdown Documents in DITA

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has special features that make it easy to incorporate Markdown documents into a DITA project. This is particularly useful for teams with members who are familiar with Markdown syntax but want to generate their output from DITA projects. The integration between the Markdown editor and DITA includes options to export or convert Markdown documents into DITA topics, as well as a live preview of the edited Markdown content.

Preview

The changes made to the Markdown content can be previewed live in three separate tabs: **DITA**, **XDITA**, and **HTML**.

The **DITA** tab in the *Preview* pane shows how an equivalent DITA topic will look after conversion. Similarly, the **XDITA** tab shows how a Lightweight DITA topic will look after conversion. The **HTML** tab shows a previous of the HTML equivalent.

Keys that are defined in the root map are also resolved in the *Preview* pane in the **XDITA** and **DITA** tabs.

Note:

To make the content generated for preview in the **DITA** and **XDITA** preview tabs more readable and to improve the conversion of Markdown to DITA in the editor, you can add an XML catalog to the XML catalogs *(on page 573)* list. This XML catalog will help with post-processing before the content is displayed. Here is an example of an XML catalog that you can use:

```
<catalog
  xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog">
  <uri
  name="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/preview/postprocess/dita" uri="postProcessDITA.xsl"/>
  <uri
  name="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/preview/postprocess/lwdita" uri="postProcessLWDITA.xsl"/>
</catalog>
```

Export Markdown as a DITA Topic

The Markdown editor includes an option to quickly convert the current Markdown document into a DITA topic. The **Export as DITA Topic** action is available in the contextual menu.

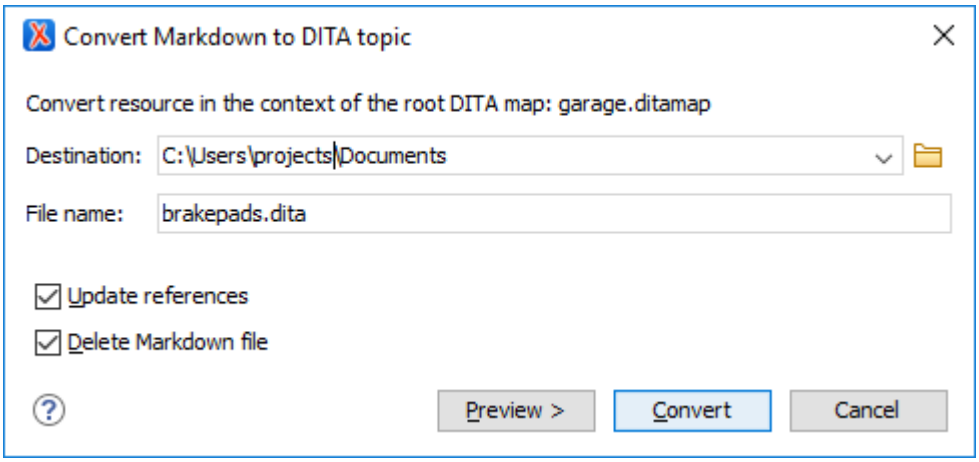
The conversion creates a new XML file that is defined as a DITA topic and opens it in the **Text** editing mode. You can then work with the document as you would with any other DITA topic, although you may need to manually correct some issues where the parser could not properly map Markdown syntax to DITA markup.

Working with Markdown Documents in the DITA Maps Manager

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has some specialized features that allow you to integrate Markdown documents directly into your DITA project using the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*. The following features are available for Markdown documents in the **DITA Maps Manager** view:

- **Insert Reference to Markdown Document** - You can use the **New**, **Reference**, and **Reference to the currently edited file** actions from the **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, or **Insert After** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in the **DITA Maps Manager** to insert a reference to a Markdown document at the selected location in the map. Markdown documents will be inserted as a topic reference (`topicref` element) with the `format` attribute set to `markdown`.
- **Validate Markdown Documents in DITA Maps** - When you use the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action from the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar to check the integrity of the structure of a *DITA map*, Markdown documents that are referenced in the *DITA map* will be converted to DITA topics in the background and validated the same as any other DITA topic.
- **Transforming DITA Maps with Markdown Documents** - When transforming *DITA maps* that have Markdown documents referenced, the transformation will convert the Markdown documents to normal DITA output without you needing to manually convert the Markdown documents to DITA topics.
- **Manually Convert Markdown Documents to DITA Topics** - If you need to use DITA semantics that are not possible in Markdown syntax (such as content references, related links, and other DITA-specific syntax), you can manually convert the Markdown document into a DITA topic. To do so, right-click the Markdown document in the **DITA Maps Manager** and select **Refactoring > Convert Markdown to DITA Topic**. This will open a dialog box that allows you to configure options for converting the document to an XML file that is defined as a DITA topic.

Figure 195. Convert Markdown to DITA Topic Dialog Box



This dialog box includes the following options:

Destination

The destination path for the new DITA topic.

File Name

Presents the current name and allows you to change it.

Update references

Select this option to update all references of the file in the *DITA map* and in the files referenced from the *DITA map*.

Delete Markdown file

If selected, the Markdown version of the file is deleted when the document is converted into a DITA file. If deselected (default value), when the document is converted into a DITA file, the original Markdown file is also preserved in its current location.

Preview

Select this button to display a preview of the changes Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is about to make.

Convert

Select this button to perform the conversion. If the Markdown file has `format="markdown"`, it will be converted to a DITA topic. If it has `format="mdita"`, it will be converted to a LightWeight DITA topic.

Tip:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes with a sample ditamap project for converting Markdown to DITA. Go to the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*, open the `sample.xpr` project, and navigate to the `dita/markdown-dita` folder.

DITA-Related Markdown Syntax

For a list of Markdown rules and syntax examples that are specific to DITA, see the Markdown DITA Syntax Reference.

Related information

Markdown Editor *(on page 629)*
Actions Available in the Markdown Editor *(on page 632)*
Markdown Editor Syntax Rules and Specifications *(on page 639)*
Automatic Validation in Markdown Documents *(on page 636)*
Markdown DITA Syntax Reference

Markdown Editor Syntax Rules and Specifications

The Markdown editor in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses rules that were integrated from the most common set of default Markdown syntax rules along with many of the GitHub Flavored Markdown rules.

This topic lists the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin implementation of the most commonly used syntax rules.

Headers

The Markdown editor supports two styles of headers, *Setext* and *Atx*.

- **Setext Style**

  Setext-style headers are underlined using equal signs (for first-level headers) and dashes (for second-level headers). Any number of equal signs or dashes will result in the same output.

  Example: *Setext* Style Headers

  ```
  First-Level Header (H1)
  ========

  Second-Level Header (H2)
  ------------
  ```

- **Atx Style**

  Atx-style headers use 1-6 hash characters at the start of the line, corresponding to header levels 1-6. Optionally, you may close atx-style headers. This is purely cosmetic and the closing hashes do not need to match the number of hashes used to open the header. It is the number of opening hashes that determines the header level.

  Example: *Atx* Style Headers

  ```
  # H1 text #
  ## H2 text
  ### H3 text ######
  #### H4 text
  ##### H5 text ###
  ###### H6 text
  ```

Horizontal Rules (for HTML output only)

You can produce a horizontal rule tag (`<hr>`) by placing three or more hyphens, asterisks, or underscores on a line by themselves (they also need to be preceded and followed by a blank line). Optionally, they can be separated by spaces.

Example: Horizontal Rules

```
* * *

*****

---------------------------------------
```

```
_ _ _ _
```

Paragraphs and Line Breaks

A paragraph is simply one or more consecutive lines of text, separated by one or more blank lines. The text at the beginning of a paragraph should not be indented with spaces or tabs. To create a new paragraph, simply insert a blank line in between them.

Important:
When converting to HTML, if you break a paragraph on multiple lines (without a blank line in between them), it will create a break tag (`<br>`. When converting to DITA, the text is kept in a single paragraph in this case and a blank line is required to break a paragraph. This behavior differs slightly from the default Markdown rules.

Example: Paragraphs

```
This is a paragraph that contains

two lines of text. (In HTML, a break tag is created in between the two lines)


This is a new paragraph.
```

Styling Text

The Markdown editor supports some syntax rules for styling text (such as bold, italic, or strikethrough).

- **Italic (Emphasis)**

  Text wrapped with one asterisk or underscore produces an italic (emphasis) tag.

  ```
  *italic*

  _italic_
  ```

- **Bold (Strong)**

  Text wrapped with two asterisks or underscores produces a bold (strong) tag.

  ```
  **bold**

  __bold__
  ```

- **Strikethrough**

  In HTML only, text wrapped with two tildes (~~) produces a strikethrough tag.

  ```
  ~~strikethrough~~
  ```

- **Underline**

  Text wrapped with two plus signs (++) produces an underline tag.

  ```
  ++underline++
  ```

Tip:
You can also combine these styling rules. For example, `**BoldText _ItalicText_ BoldText**` would produce italicized text within bold text. Also, if you surround an asterisk or underscore with spaces, it will be treated as a literal asterisk or underscore. To produce a literal asterisk or underscore at a position where it would otherwise be used as a styling delimiter, you can escape it with a backslash (for example, `\*literal asterisks\*`.

Links

The Markdown editor supports two types of links, *inline* and *reference*. In both cases, it begins with link text that is delimited by [square brackets].

- **Inline Links**

  To create an inline link, use a set of regular parentheses immediately after the closing square bracket for the link text. Inside the parentheses, put the URL where you want the link to point, and optionally a title surrounded in quotes. Also, if you reference a local resource on the same server, you can use relative paths.

  Examples: Inline Link

  With a title:

  ```
  Text with [example link text](http://www.example.com/path "Title") inline link and title.
  ```

  Without a title:

  ```
  Text with [example link text](http://www.example.com/path) inline link without a title.
  ```

  Relative path:

  ```
  Text with [example link text](/relative_path/) inline link with relative path.
  ```

- **Reference Links**

  Reference-type links use a second set of square brackets that include a label (link identifier) to reference the target for the link (link identifier may consist of letters, numbers, spaces, and punctuation and it is not case-sensitive). You can optionally use a space to separate the sets of brackets. The labels (link identifiers) are only used for creating the links and do not appear in the output.

  ```
  Text with [link text1][id 1] a reference-type link and [link text2][id_2] another one.
  ```

  Then, somewhere in the document, you need to define your link label on a line by itself. The link identifier must be within square brackets followed by a colon, then after one or more spaces the URL for the link. Optionally this can be followed by a title enclosed in single quotes, double quotes, or parentheses. Also, the link may optionally be enclosed in angle brackets (< >).

  ```
  [id 1]: http://example1.com/ "Optional Title"

  [id_2]: <http://example2.com/> "Optional Title2"
  ```

Other notes about Reference Links:

- You can put the title on a second line and use extra spaces or tabs for padding. This is useful for aesthetics when the URL is long.

```
[id]: http://example.com/long/path/to/resource/here

    "Optional Title Here"
```

- The label (link identifier) can be missing, in which case the link text (in square brackets) is used as the name.

```
[My Link][]
```

and then defined as:

```
[My Link]: http://example.com/
```

Automatic Links

The Markdown editor supports a shortcut style for creating automatic links for URLs and email addresses. You simply surround the URL or email address with angle brackets.

Note:
These automatic links only work properly in HTML conversions. The *Preview* pane may display them properly in the DITA tab, but the DITA output will not properly recognize the format.

- **URLs**

By surrounding a URL with angle brackets, you can show the actual text of the URL while also making it clickable in the output.

```
<http://example.com/>
```

For example, in HTML it is converted to:

```
<a href="http://example.com/">http://example.com/</a>
```

- **Email Addresses**

Automatic links for email addresses work similarly, except that Markdown will also perform a bit of randomized decimal and hex entity-encoding to help obscure your address from address-harvesting *spambots*.

```
<address@example.com>
```

In HTML, it is converted to something like:

```
<a href="&#x6D;&#x61;i&#x6C;&#x74;&#x6F;:&#x61;&#x64;&#x64;&#x72;&#x65;

&#115;&#115;&#64;&#101;&#120;&#x61;&#109;&#x70;&#x6C;e&#x2E;&#99;&#111;
```

```
&#109;">&#x61;&#x64;&#x64;&#x72;&#x65;&#115;&#115;&#64;&#101;&#120;&#x61;

&#109;&#x70;&#x6C;e&#x2E;&#99;&#111;&#109;</a>
```

Images

The Markdown editor uses an image syntax that is intended to resemble the syntax for two types of links (*inline* and *reference*). In both cases, the syntax for images begins with an exclamation mark, followed by `Alt` attribute text surrounded by square brackets, and then followed by a set of parentheses that contain the URL or path to the image.

- **Inline Images**

  For inline images, use a set of regular parentheses immediately after the closing square bracket for the `Alt` attribute text. Inside the parentheses, put the URL or path of the image, and optionally a title surrounded in quotes.

  Examples: Inline Images

  With a title:

  ```
  Text with ![Alt text](/path/to/img.jpg "Optional title") inline image and a title.
  ```

  Without a title:

  ```
  Text with ![Alt text](/path/to/img.jpg) inline link without a title.
  ```

- **Reference Images**

  For reference-type images, use a second set of square brackets that include a label (image identifier) to identify the image (it may consist of letters, numbers, spaces, and punctuation and it is not case-sensitive). You can optionally use a space to separate the sets of brackets. The labels (image identifiers) do not appear in the output.

  ```
  Text with ![Alt text1][id] a reference-type image.
  ```

  Then, somewhere in the document, you need to define your image label on a line by itself. The image identifier must be within square brackets followed by a colon, then after one or more spaces the URL or path of the image. Optionally this can be followed by a title enclosed in single quotes, double quotes, or parentheses.

  ```
  [id]: url/to/image "Optional Title"
  ```

Blockquotes

The Markdown editor uses email-style greater than characters (>) for *blockquotes*. You only need to put the > before the first line of a hard-wrapped paragraph, but it looks better (and is clearer) if you put a > before every line.

- **Example: Blockquotes**

```
> This is a blockquote with two paragraphs. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet,
> consectetuer adipiscing elit. Aliquam hendrerit mi posuere lectus.
> Vestibulum enim wisi, viverra nec, fringilla in, laoreet vitae, risus.
>
> Donec sit amet nisl. Aliquam semper ipsum sit amet velit. Suspendisse
> id sem consectetuer libero luctus adipiscing.
```

- **Example: Nested Blockquotes**

  Blockquotes can be nested by adding additional levels of > characters.

```
> This is the first level of quoting.
>
> > This is nested blockquote.
>
> Back to the first level.
```

- **Example: Blockquotes with Other Markdown Elements**

  Blockquotes can also contain other Markdown elements (such as headers, lists, and code blocks).

```
> ## This is a header.
>
> 1.   This is the first list item.
> 2.   This is the second list item.
>
> Here's some example code:
>
>     return shell_exec("echo $input | $markdown_script")
```

Quoting Code (Inline and Code Blocks)

The Markdown editor supports quoting code or commands inline within a sentence or in distinct blocks.

- **Inline**

  You can quote or emphasize code within a sentence (inline) with single backticks (`). The text within the backticks will not be formatted.

  Example: Inline Code Emphasis

```
This is a normal sentence with a `code` in the middle.
```

- **Code Blocks**

You can format code or text into its own distinct block by inserting a blank line before and after the content and using at least 4 spaces (or 1 tab), or by using opening and closing triple backticks (```) on separate lines.

Example: Code Block

````
This is a normal paragraph:

    This is a code block

This is a normal paragraph:

```
This is a code block
```
````

One level of indentation is removed from each line of a codeblock and it continues until it reaches a line that is not indented (or until the closing backticks).

Example: Code Block with Indentation

```
    tell application "something"
        beep
    end tell
```

For example, in HTML the result would look like this:

```
<pre><code>tell application "Foo"
    beep
end tell
</code></pre>
```

You can also add an optional language identifier to enable syntax highlighting in your code blocks. The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Markdown editor syntax highlight supports the following languages: *Java*, *JavaScript*, *CSS*, and *Python*. When publishing Markdown content as part of a DITA project, more language values are supported and produce syntax highlights in the published WebHelp or PDF outputs: How to Add Syntax Highlights for Codeblocks in the Output *(on page 1064)*.

Example: Syntax Highlighting in Code Block

````
```css
input[type="submit"] {
    color: white;
    font-weight: bold;
```
````

Inline XHTML (for HTML output only)

The Markdown editor supports writing inline XHTML. Since Markdown is just a writing format, it requires a conversion for publishing purposes. If you are using the HTML conversion, for any markup that is not covered by Markdown syntax, you can simply use XHTML syntax.

Example: Inline XHTML

```
This is a regular paragraph.


<table>

    <tr>

        <td>Col 1</td>

        <td>Col 2</td>

    </tr>

</table>


This is another regular paragraph.
```

Lists

The Markdown editor supports ordered and unordered lists. You can also insert *blockquotes (on page 644)* and *code blocks (on page 645)* inside list items. List markers typically start at the left margin, but may be indented by up to three spaces.

- **Unordered Lists**

  For unordered lists, you can use asterisks (*), plus signs (+), and hyphens (-) interchangeably.

  ```
  * List item 1

  + List item 2

  - List item 3
  ```

- **Ordered Lists**

  For ordered lists, use numbers followed by periods. The actual numbers you use have no effect on the output. It simply converts them to list items within an ordered list and the actual number of list items will determine the numbers in the output.

  ```
  1. List item 1

  8. List item 2

  5. List item 3
  ```

- **Nested Lists**

  You can create nested lists by indenting lines by three spaces.

  ```
  1. Ordered list item 1

     1. Nested ordered list item 1
  ```

```
   2. Nested ordered list item 2

      * 2nd level nested unordered list item 1

      * 2nd level nested unordered list item 2

         * 3rd level nested unordered list item 1

2. Ordered list item 2
```

- **Paragraphs Inside Lists**

  If list items are separated by blank lines, Markdown will wrap the items in a paragraph in the output.

```
* List item 1


* List item 2
```

  For both DITA and HTML output, this would result in:

```
<ul>

<li><p>List item 1</p></li>

<li><p>List item 2</p></li>

</ul>
```

- **Multiple Paragraphs Inside Lists**

  List items may consist of multiple paragraphs. Each subsequent paragraph in a list item must be indented by either 4 spaces or one tab. Optionally, you can also indent each line of a paragraph to make it look nicer.

```
1.  This is a list item with two paragraphs. Lorem ipsum dolor

    sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Aliquam hendrerit

    mi posuere lectus.


    Vestibulum enim wisi, viverra nec, fringilla in, laoreet

    vitae, risus. Donec sit amet nisl. Aliquam semper ipsum

    sit amet velit.


2.  Suspendisse id sem consectetuer libero luctus adipiscing.
```

- **Blockquotes Inside Lists**

  To put a *blockquote* within a list item, the blockquote delimiters (>) need to be indented so that they are under the first letter of the text after the list item marker.

```
*   A list item with a blockquote:

    > This is a blockquote

    > inside a list item.
```

- **Code Blocks Inside Lists**

To put a code block within a list item, insert an empty line in between the list item and the code block, and the code block needs to be indented twice (with 8 spaces or 2 tabs), or if you are using the triple backticks method, the opening triple backtick needs to be indented with 4 spaces or 1 tab.

```
*   A list item with a code block:


        This is a code block inside a list item


    ```
    This is a code block inside a list item using the backticks method
    ```
```

Task Lists

You can create task lists by prefacing list items with a hyphen followed by a space followed by square brackets (`- [ ]`). To mark a task as complete, use `- [x]`.

Example: Task Lists

```
- [ ] Unfinished task 1
- [x] Finished task 2
```

Definition Lists

You can create definition lists by using a colon plus a space for each list item.

Example: Definition Lists

```
Term 1
: Definition A
: Definition B
```

Tables

You can create tables in the Markdown editor by using pipes (`|`) and hyphens (`-`).

- **Creating a Table**

  Pipes are used to separate each column, while hyphens are used to create column headers. The pipes on either end of the table are optional. Cells can vary in width and do not need to be perfectly aligned within columns, but there must be at least three hyphens in each column of the header row.

  ```
  | First Header  | Second Header |
  | ------------- | ------------- |
  | Column 1 Row 1 Cell  | Column 2 Row 1 Cell  |
  | Column 1 Row 2 Cell  | Column 2 Row 2 Cell  |
  ```

- **Formatting Rules in Table Cells**

You can use formatting rules inside the cells of the table (such as links, inline code blocks, and text styling).

```
| First Header  | Second Header |
| --- | --- |
| `inline code`  | Content with **bold text** inside cell  |
```

- **Aligning Text in Tables**

  You can align text to the left, right, or center of a column by including colons (`:`) to the left, right, or on both sides of the hyphens within the header row.

```
| Left-aligned | Center-aligned | Right-aligned |
| :---         |     :---:      |          ---: |
| Content Cell | Content Cell   | Content Cell  |
```

- **Joining Cells (Span a Cell Over Multiple Columns)**

  You can join cells horizontally (span a cell over multiple columns) by using multiple consecutive pipe characters (`|`) to the right of the particular cell. The number of consecutive pipes indicate the number of columns the cell will span (`||` for two, `|||` for three, and so on).

```
| First Header | Second Header | Third Header | Fourth Header |
| ------------ | ------------- | ------------ | ------------- |
| Content Cell | *Cell Span Over 3 Columns* |||
```

Emoji

You can add *emoji* in the Markdown editor by surrounding the EMOJICODE with colons (`:EMOJICODE:`).

Example: Emoji

```
:smile:
:laughing:
```

The resulting emoticons will appear in the output, but they are not displayed in the *Preview* pane.

For a full list of available emoji codes, see Emoji Cheat Sheet.

Backslash Escapes

You can ignore Markdown formatting by using backslash escapes (`\`) to generate literal characters that would otherwise have special meaning in the Markdown syntax. For example, if you want to surround a word with literal asterisks (instead of an italic or emphasis tag), you can use backslashes to escape the asterisks.

```
\*literal asterisks\*
```

The Markdown editor provides backslash escapes for the following characters:

```
\   backslash
`   backtick
*   asterisk
_   underscore
{}  curly braces
[]  square brackets
()  parentheses
#   hash mark
+   plus sign
-   minus sign (hyphen)
.   dot
!   exclamation mark
```

Automatic Escaping for Special Characters

The Markdown editor includes support for automatically escaping special characters such as angle brackets (< >) and ampersands (&). If you want to use them as literal characters, you must escape them as entities, as in the table below. The exception to this is in HTML output, if the special characters for a valid tag (for example, `<b>`), they are treated as literal characters and escaping is not necessary.

Literal Character	Escaping Code
<	<
>	>
&	&

Footnotes

The Markdown editor in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports normal and inline footnotes. The following examples show the required syntax.

- **Example: Normal Footnote**

```
Here is a footnote reference,[^1]


[^1]: Here is the footnote.
```

- **Example: Normal Footnote with Multiple Blocks**

```
Here is a footnote reference,[^longnote]


[^longnote]: Here is the footnote with multiple blocks.


    Subsequent paragraphs are indented with 4 spaces or 1 tab to show that they
belong to the previous footnote.
```

- **Example: Inline Footnote**

```
Here is an inline note.^[Inlines notes are easier to write, since

you don't have to pick an identifier and move down to type the

note.]
```

Latex Mathematical Equations

Mathematical equations in Latex format can be specified either inline or as blocks.

Example of an inline equation:

```
$f(x) = x^2$
```

Such equations are automatically preserved as `<foreign>` elements when converting the Markdown content to DITA XML and with the addition of editing and publishing plugins, they can be rendered in the Markdown editor's **DITA** preview tab and when the Markdown content is published as part of a DITA map.

DITA-Related Markdown Syntax

For information about unique Markdown features for DITA projects, see Working with Markdown Documents in DITA *(on page 2012)*. Also, for a list of Markdown rules and examples for DITA, see the Markdown DITA Syntax Reference.

Related information
Default Markdown Syntax
GitHub Flavored Markdown Rules
Markdown Editor *(on page 629)*
Actions Available in the Markdown Editor *(on page 632)*
Working with Markdown Documents in DITA *(on page 2012)*

Other Supported Document Types

Along with the fully supported built-in *frameworks* (document types) *(on page 654)*, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also provides limited support (including document templates) for editing a variety of other document types. All the specialized views, editors, actions, and options are dynamic according to the type of file that is opened or created. Other document types that are supported in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin include:

- EPUB (NCX, OCF, OPF 2.0, 3.0, & 3.1) *(on page 792)* - A standard for e-book files.
- OOXML *(on page 1460)* - An XML-based file format for representing spreadsheets, charts, presentations, and word processing documents.
- ODF *(on page 1460)* - An free and open-source XML-based file format for electronic office documents, such as spreadsheets, charts, presentations, and word processing documents.
- DocBook Targetset *(on page 699)* - For resolving cross-references when using *olinks*.

- MathML *(on page 498)* - Mathematical Markup Language (2.0 and 3.0) is an application of XML for describing mathematical notations.
- XMLSpec - A markup language for W3C specifications and other technical reports.
- DITAVAL - DITA conditional processing profile to identify the values you want to conditionally process for a particular output, build, or other purpose.
- Daisy XML - A technical standard for digital audio books, periodicals, and computerized text. It is designed to be an audio substitute for print material.
- Maven Project & Settings - Project or settings file for Maven build automation tool that is primarily used for Java projects.
- Oasis *XML Catalog* - An *XML Catalog (on page 2235)* document that describes a mapping between external entity references and locally-cached equivalents.
- Other Non-XML Files *(on page 242)*- Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes a simple text editor and a variety of helpful features for creating and editing non-XML files.

External Document Types

Some document types are available to be manually installed from GitHub:

- StratML (Part 1 & 2) - Part 1 and 2 of the Strategy Markup Language specification. Available to be installed from GitHub.
- EAD - Encoded Archival Description is an XML standard for encoding archival finding aids. Available to be installed from GitHub.
- KML - Keyhole Markup Language is an XML notation for expressing geographic visualization in maps and browsers. Available to be installed from GitHub.

9.

Built-in Frameworks (Document Types)

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a variety of specialized editors, views, and features that are dynamic according to the type of document that you open or create. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes fully supported built-in *frameworks (on page 2231)* for popular XML document types (e.g. DITA, DocBook, TEI, XHTML, JATS), as well as other document types (e.g. JSON, YAML, OpenAPI, Markdown, HTML, CSS), each with a specialized set of editing features for the particular document type *(on page 281)*.

The built-in *frameworks (on page 2231)* are defined according to a set of rules and a variety of settings that improve editing capabilities for its particular file type. These settings include:

- A default grammar used for validation and content completion in both **Author** mode and **Text** mode.
- CSS stylesheets for rendering XML documents in **Author** mode.
- User actions invoked from toolbars or menus in **Author** mode.
- Built-in transformation scenarios used for publishing XML documents.
- *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)* used for mapping resources.
- New document templates to make it easy to create XML documents.
- User-defined extensions for customizing the interaction with the content author in **Author** mode.

It is also possible to create and configure your own custom *frameworks* (document types). For more information, see the Creating and Configuring Custom Frameworks *(on page 1533)* section.

For extensive details about the DITA editing features included in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the DITA Authoring chapter *(on page 1869)*.

DocBook 4 Document Type (Framework)

DocBook is a very popular set of tags for describing books, articles, and other prose documents, particularly technical documentation. DocBook provides a vast number of semantic element tags, divided into three broad categories: structural, *block-level*, and *inline*. DocBook content can then be published in a variety of formats, including HTML, PDF, and EPUB.

File Definition

A file is considered to be a *DocBook 4* document when one of the following conditions are true:

- The root element name is `<book>` or `<article>`.
- The PUBLIC ID of the document contains the string `-//OASIS//DTD DocBook XML`.

Default Document Templates

There are a variety of default *DocBook 4* templates available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 229)* and they can be found in: **Framework Templates > DocBook 4**.

The default templates for DocBook 4 documents are located in the `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/docbook/templates/Docbook 4` folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

The default schema that is used if one is not detected in the DocBook 4 file is `docbookxi.dtd` and it is stored in `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/docbook/4.5/dtd/`.

Default CSS

The default CSS files used for rendering DocBook content in **Author** mode are stored in `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/docbook/css/`.

By default, these default CSS files are merged with any that are specified in the document. For more information, see Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*.

Default XML Catalog

The default *XML Catalog (on page 2235)*, `catalog.xml`, is stored in `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/docbook/`.

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes numerous built-in DocBook transformation scenarios that allow you to transform DocBook 4 documents to a variety of outputs, such as PDF, HTML, HTML Chunk, XHTML, XHTML Chunk, and EPUB. All of them are listed in the **DocBook 4** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

For more information, see the DocBook Transformation Scenarios *(on page 825)* section.

Resources

- Oxygen Video Tutorial: Editing DocBook Documents in Author Mode
- DocBook Specifications

Related Information:
Editing XML Documents in Author Mode *(on page 343)*
Editing XML Documents in Text Mode *(on page 282)*
Adding Tables in DocBook *(on page 435)*

DocBook 4 Author Mode Actions

A variety of actions are available for DocBook 4 documents in the **DocBook4** menu, toolbar, contextual menu, and the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

DocBook 4 Toolbar Actions

The following default actions are available on the DocBook toolbar when editing in **Author** mode (by default, most of them are also available in the **DocBook4** menu and in various submenus of the contextual menu):

Bold

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with a *bold* tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Italic

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with an *italic* tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Underline

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with an *underline* tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Link Actions Drop-Down Menu

The following link actions are available from this menu:

Cross reference (link)

Opens a dialog box that allows you to select a target to insert as a hypertext link.

Cross reference (xref)

Inserts a cross reference to other parts of the document.

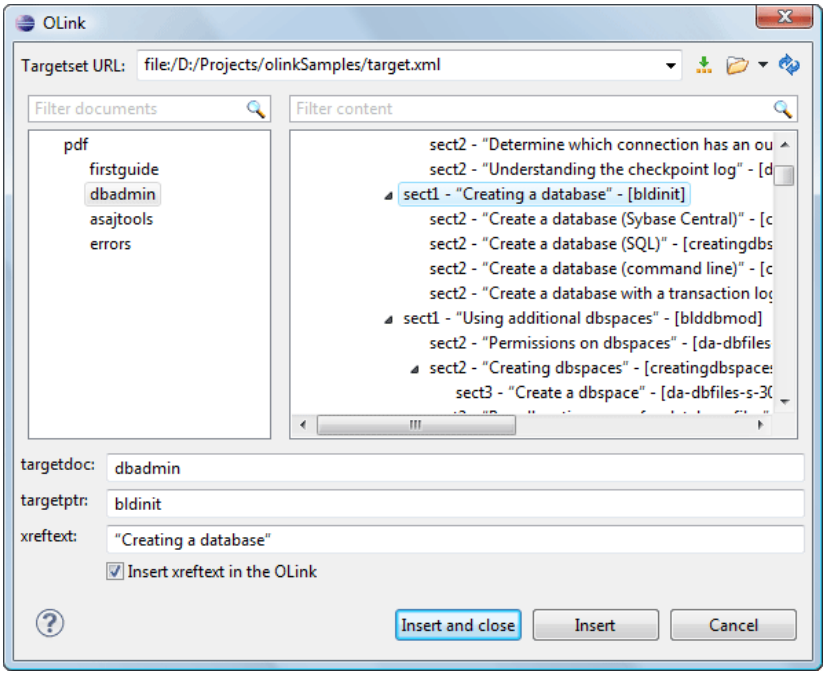
Web Link (ulink)

Inserts a link that addresses its target with a URL (Universal Resource Locator).

Insert OLink

Opens an **OLink** dialog box that allows you to insert a link that addresses its target indirectly, using the values of the `@targetdoc` and `@targetptr` attributes that are present in a **Targetset** *(on page 699)* file.

Figure 196. Insert OLink Dialog Box



After you choose the **Targetset URL**, the structure of the target documents is presented. For each target document (`@targetdoc`), its content is displayed allowing you to easily identify the `@targetptr` for the `<olink>` element that will be inserted. You can also use the search fields to quickly identify a target. If you already know the values for **targetdoc** and **targetptr**, you can insert them directly in the corresponding fields. You can also edit an `<olink>` using the **Edit OLink** action that is available on the contextual menu. The last used **Targetset** URL will be used to identify the edited target.

To insert XREF text into the `<olink>`, enter the text in the **xreftext** field and make sure the **Insert xreftext in the OLink** option is selected.

Insert URI

Inserts a URI element. The URI identifies a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) in content.

Edit OLink

Opens a dialog box that allows you edit an existing *OLink*. See the **Insert OLink** action for more information.

Insert Image

Opens a dialog box that allows you to select the path of an image to insert at the cursor position *(on page 468)*. Depending on the current location, an image-type element is inserted. If the action is invoked between two block elements (such as paragraphs), the dialog box also allows you to provide a title.

Insert Media Resource

Opens a **Choose Media** dialog box *(on page 496)* that allows you to select the URL of a media object to be inserted into a document at the cursor position. The result will be that a reference to the specified video, audio, or embedded HTML frame is inserted and rendered in **Author** mode so that it can be played directly from there.

Insert XInclude

Opens a dialog box that allows you to browse and select content to be included and automatically generates the corresponding XInclude instruction.

Section Drop-Down Menu

The following actions are available from this menu:

Insert Section

Inserts a new section or subsection in the document, depending on the current context. For example, if the current context is `<sect1>`, then a `<sect2>` is inserted. By default, this action also inserts a `<para>` element as a child node. The `<para>` element can be deleted if it is not needed.

Promote Section (Ctrl + Alt + LeftArrow (Command + Option + LeftArrow on macOS))

Promotes the current node as a sibling of the parent node.

Demote Section (Ctrl + Alt + RightArrow (Command + Option + RightArrow on macOS))

Demotes the current node a child of the previous node.

Insert Paragraph

Insert a new paragraph element at current cursor position.

Insert Equation

Opens the **XML Fragment Editor** that allows you to insert and edit MathML notations *(on page 498)*.

Insert List Item

Inserts a list item in the current list type.

Insert Ordered List

Inserts an ordered list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an ordered list.

Insert Itemized List

Inserts an itemized list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an itemized list.

Insert Variable List

Inserts a DocBook variable list. A child list item is also inserted automatically by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to a variable list.

Insert Procedure List

Inserts a DocBook `<procedure>` element. A `<step>` child element is also inserted automatically. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to a procedure list.

Sort

Sorts cells or list items in a table.

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs, lists, and inline content (mixed content, text plus markup, that is rendered inside a *block element (on page 2228)*) into a table, with the selected content inserted in the first column, starting from the first row after the header (if a header is inserted).

> **Note:**
> If the selection contains a mixture of elements that cannot be converted, you will receive an error message saying that **Only lists, paragraphs, or inline content can be converted to tables**.

Insert Row

Inserts a new table row with empty cells below the current row. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Delete Row(s)

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Insert Column

Inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Delete Column(s)

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Table Properties

Opens the **Table properties** dialog box that allows you to configure properties of a table (such as frame borders).

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

DocBook4 Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available in the contextual menu when editing in **Author** mode (most of them are also available in the **DocBook4** menu at the top of the interface):

Edit Attributes

Displays an in-place attributes editor *(on page 383)* that allows you to manage the attributes of an element.

Edit Profiling Attributes

Allows you to change the profiling attributes *(on page 419)* defined on all selected elements.

Cut (Ctrl + X (Command + X on macOS))

Removes the currently selected content from the document and places it in the clipboard.

Copy (Ctrl + C (Command + C on macOS))

Places a copy of the currently selected content in the clipboard.

The clipboard contains the precise node structure that is preserved when pasting to another location within the same document or to another document opened in the **Author** mode. The copied content contains an HTML flavor that attempts to convert the copied structure to plain HTML, which can be useful for preserving the styles when pasting into editors such as MS Word.

Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on macOS))

Inserts the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.

Paste special submenu

This submenu includes the following special paste actions:

Paste As XInclude

Allows you to create an `<xi:include>` element that references a DocBook element copied from **Author** mode. The operation fails if the copied element does not have a declared ID.

Paste as link

Allows you to create a `<link>` element that references a DocBook element copied from **Author** mode. The operation fails if the copied element does not have a declared ID.

Paste as xref

Allows you to create an `<xref>` element that references a DocBook element copied from **Author** mode. The operation fails if the copied element does not have a declared ID.

Image Map Editor

This action is available in the contextual menu when it is invoked on an image. This action applies an *image map* to the current image (if one does not already exist) and opens the **Image Map Editor** dialog box. This feature allows you to create hyperlinks in specific areas of an image that will link to various destinations.

Insert submenu

This submenu includes the following insert actions that are specific to the DocBook *framework*:

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs, lists, and inline content (mixed content, text plus markup, that is rendered inside a *block element (on page 2228)*) into a table, with the selected content inserted in the first column, starting from the first row after the header (if a header is inserted).

> **Note:**
> If the selection contains a mixture of elements that cannot be converted, you will receive an error message saying that **Only lists, paragraphs, or inline content can be converted to tables**.

Insert Image

Inserts an image reference *(on page 468)* at the cursor position. Depending on the current location, an image-type element is inserted.

Insert Media Resource

Opens a **Choose Media** dialog box *(on page 496)* that allows you to select the URL of a media object to be inserted into a document at the cursor position. The result will be that a reference to the specified video, audio, or embedded HTML frame is inserted and rendered in **Author** mode so that it can be played directly from there.

Insert Equation

Opens the **XML Fragment Editor** that allows you to insert and edit MathML notations *(on page 498)*.

Insert Paragraph

Inserts a new *paragraph* element at current cursor position.

Insert Section

Inserts a new *section* element in the document, depending on the current context.

Insert XInclude

Opens a dialog box that allows you to browse and select content to be included and automatically generates the corresponding XInclude instruction.

Insert Entity

Allows you to insert a predefined entity or character entity. Surrogate character entities (range #x10000 to #x10FFFF) are also accepted. Character entities can be entered in one of the following forms:

- #<*decimal value*> - e.g. #65
- &#<*decimal value*> - e.g. &#65
- #x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. #x41
- &#x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. &#x41

Section submenu

The following actions are available in this submenu:

Promote Section (Ctrl + Alt + LeftArrow (Command + Option + LeftArrow on macOS))

Promotes the current node as a sibling of the parent node.

Demote Section (Ctrl + Alt + RightArrow (Command + Option + RightArrow on macOS))

Demotes the current node a child of the previous node.

Link submenu

The following actions are available in this submenu:

Cross reference (link)

Opens a dialog box that allows you to select a target to insert as a hypertext link.

Cross reference (xref)

Inserts a cross reference to other parts of the document.

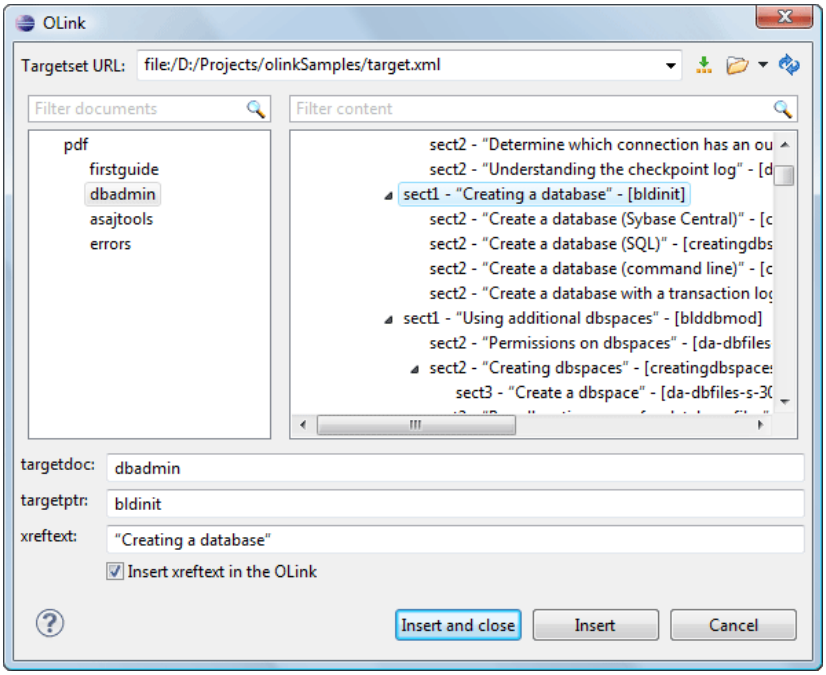
Web Link (ulink)

Inserts a link that addresses its target with a URL (Universal Resource Locator).

Insert OLink

Opens an **OLink** dialog box that allows you to insert a link that addresses its target indirectly, using the values of the `@targetdoc` and `@targetptr` attributes that are present in a **Targetset** *(on page 699)* file.

Figure 197. Insert OLink Dialog Box



After you choose the **Targetset URL**, the structure of the target documents is presented. For each target document (`@targetdoc`), its content is displayed allowing you to easily identify the `@targetptr` for the `<olink>` element that will be inserted. You can also use the search fields to quickly identify a target. If you already know the values for **targetdoc** and **targetptr**, you can insert them directly in the corresponding fields. You can also edit an `<olink>` using the **Edit OLink** action that is available on the contextual menu. The last used **Targetset** URL will be used to identify the edited target.

To insert XREF text into the `<olink>`, enter the text in the **xreftext** field and make sure the **Insert xreftext in the OLink** option is selected.

Insert URI

Inserts a URI element. The URI identifies a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) in content.

Edit OLink

Opens a dialog box that allows you edit an existing *OLink*. See the **Insert OLink** action for more information.

Table actions

The following table editing actions are available in the contextual menu when it is invoked on a table:

Insert Rows

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert any number of rows and specify the position where they will be inserted (**Above** or **Below** the current row).

Delete Row(s)

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Insert Columns

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert any number of columns and specify the position where they will be inserted (**Above** or **Below** the current column).

Delete Column(s)

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

Sort

Sorts cells or list items in a table.

Table Properties

Opens the **Table properties** dialog box that allows you to configure properties of a table (such as frame borders).

Other Actions submenu

This submenu give you access to all the usual contextual menu actions.

Generate IDs

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin generates unique IDs for the current element (or elements), depending on how the action is invoked:

- When invoked on a single selection, an ID is generated for the selected element at the cursor position.
- When invoked on a block of selected content, IDs are generated for all top-level elements and elements listed in the **ID Options** dialog box that are found in the current selection.

Note:
The **Generate IDs** action does not overwrite existing ID values. It only affects elements that do not already have an `@id` attribute.

Select submenu

This submenu allows you to select the following:

Element

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

Content

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

Parent

Selects the entire parent element at the current cursor position.

Text submenu

This submenu contains the following actions:

To Lower Case

Converts the selected content to lower case characters.

To Upper Case

Converts the selected content to upper case characters.

Capitalize Sentences

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected sentence.

Capitalize Words

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected word.

Count Words

Counts the number of words and characters (no spaces) in the entire document or in the selection for regular content and read-only content.

Note:
The content marked as deleted with *change tracking (on page 2234)* is ignored when counting words.

Convert Hexadecimal Sequence to Character (Ctrl + Shift + H (Command + Shift + H on macOS))

Converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character *(on page 274)*. The action can be invoked if there is a selection containing a valid hexadecimal sequence or if the cursor is placed at the right side of a valid hexadecimal sequence. A valid hexadecimal sequence can be composed of 2 to 4 hexadecimal characters and may or may not be preceded by the `0x` or `0X` prefix. Examples of valid sequences and the characters they will be converted to:

- `0x0045` will be converted to `E`
- `0X0125` to `ĥ`
- `265` to `ɩ`
- `2190` to `←`

> **Note:**
> For more information about finding the hexadecimal value of a character, see Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent *(on page 276)*.

Refactoring submenu

Contains a series of actions designed to alter the XML structure of the document:

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected text in a comment, or removes the comment if it is commented.

Move Up (Alt + UpArrow (Option + UpArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes in front of the previous node.

Move Down (Alt + DownArrow (Option + DownArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes after the subsequent node.

Split Element

Splits the content of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. Thus, if the cursor is positioned at the beginning or at the end of the element, the newly created sibling will be empty.

Join Elements

Joins two adjacent *block elements (on page 2228)* that have the same name. The action is available only when the cursor position is between the two adjacent *block elements*. Also, joining two *block elements* can be done by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys and the cursor is positioned between the boundaries of these two elements.

Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)

Allows you to choose a tag to enclose a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Rename Element

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

Delete Element Tags

Deletes the tags of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. This operation is also executed if the start or end tags of an element are deleted by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys.

Remove All Markup

Removes all the XML markup inside the selected block of content and keeps only the text content.

Remove Text

Removes the text content of the selected block of content and keeps the markup intact with empty elements.

Attributes Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add/Change attribute

Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

Convert attribute to element

Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

Delete attribute

Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

Rename attribute

Allows you to rename an attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

Comments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete comments

Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

Elements Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete element

Allows you to delete elements.

Delete element content

Allows you to delete the content of elements.

Insert element

Allows you to insert new elements.

Rename element

Allows you to rename elements.

Unwrap element

Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

Wrap element

Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

Wrap element content

Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

Fragments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Insert XML fragment

Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

Replace element with XML fragment

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

Review submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Track Changes

Enables or disables the *Track Changes (on page 2234)* support for the current document.

Accept Change(s) and Move to Next

Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is accepted.

Accept All Changes

Accepts all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Reject Change(s) and Move to Next

Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is rejected.

Reject All Changes

Rejects all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Highlight

Enables the highlighting tool that allows you to mark text in your document.

Colors

Allows you to select the color for highlighting text.

Stop highlighting

Use this action to deactivate the highlighting tool.

Remove highlight(s)

Use this action to remove highlighting from the document.

Add Comment

Inserts a comment at the cursor position. The comment appears in a callout box and a tooltip (when hovering over the change).

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Manage Reviews

Opens the **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Folding submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Toggle Fold

Toggles the state of the current fold.

Collapse Other Folds

Folds all the elements except the current element.

Collapse Child Folds

Folds the elements indented with one level inside the current element.

Expand Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad+ (Command + NumPad+ on macOS))

Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

Expand All

Unfolds all elements in the current document.

About Element > Go to Definition

Moves the cursor to the definition of the current element.

Inspect Styles

Opens the **CSS Inspector** view *(on page 391)* that allows you to examine the CSS rules that match the currently selected element.

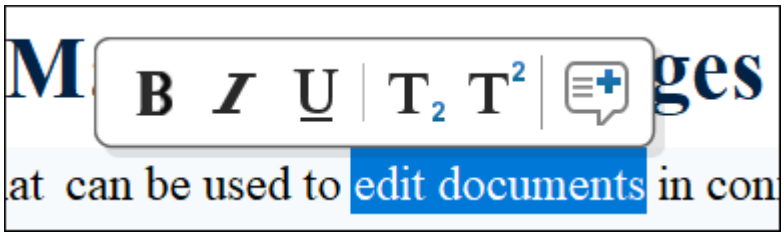
Options

Opens the Author mode preferences page *(on page 127)* where you can configure various options with regard to the **Author** editing mode.

Floating Contextual Toolbar for DocBook

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a dynamic feature where certain editing contexts will trigger a floating toolbar with common actions that are available in the current editing context.

Figure 198. DocBook Floating Contextual Toolbar



The *floating contextual toolbar* is automatically displayed when editing DocBook documents in the following situations:

- When a `<para>` or `<listitem>` element has a selection inside, the floating toolbar includes actions such as **Bold**, **Italic**, **Underline**, **Subscript**, and **Superscript**.
- When an `<imagedata>` or `<videodata>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes a URL chooser where you can select the appropriate target.
- When an `<olink>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes an **Edit OLink** action.
- When a `<link>` or `<include>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes a URL chooser where you can select the appropriate target.
- When a `<programlisting>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes a drop-down control where you can select the value of the `@language` attribute.
- When an `<itemizedlist>`, `<orderdlist>`, `<variablelist>`, or `<procedure>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for converting it to a different type of list or sorting the list.
- When a `<listitem>`, `<varlistentry>`, or `<step>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for moving the item up or down in the list/procedure.
- When a `<row>` or `<tr>` element is selected in a table, the floating toolbar includes various table-related actions (such as actions for editing table properties, inserting rows, or deleting rows).
- When an `<entry>` or `<td>` element is selected in a table, the floating toolbar includes various table-related actions (such as actions for editing table properties, inserting/deleting rows, or inserting/deleting columns).
- When a `<table>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for editing table properties or sorting the table.
- In all cases, the **Add Comment** action is in the floating toolbar, allowing you to easily add comments to selected content.

DocBook 4 Drag/Drop (or Copy/Paste) Actions

Dragging a file from the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* or **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* and dropping it into a DocBook 4 document that is edited in **Author** mode, creates a link to the dragged file (the `<ulink>` DocBook element) at the drop location. Copy and paste actions work the same.

You can also drag images or media files from your system explorer or the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and drop them into a DocBook 4 document (or copy and paste). This will insert the appropriate element at the drop or paste location (for example, dropping/pasting an image will insert the `<inlinegraphic>` DocBook element with a `@fileref` attribute).

Tip:
For information about customizing **Author** mode actions for a particular *framework (on page 2231)* (document type), see the Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)* section.

Related Information:
Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)*

Inserting an Olink in DocBook Documents

The `<olink>` element is used for linking to resources outside the current DocBook document. The `@targetdoc` attribute is used for the document ID that contains the target element and the `@targetptr` attribute for the ID of the target element (the value of an `@id` or `@xml:id` attribute). The combination of those two attributes provides a unique identifier to locate cross references.

For example, a *Mail Administrator Guide* with the document ID `MailAdminGuide` might contain a chapter about user accounts, like this:

```
<chapter id="user_accounts">
<title>Administering User Accounts</title>
<para>blah blah</para>
```

You can form a cross reference to that chapter by adding an `<olink>`, as in the following example:

```
You may need to update your
<olink targetdoc="MailAdminGuide" targetptr="user_accounts">user accounts
</olink>
when you get a new machine.
```

To use an `<olink>` to create links between documents, follow these steps:

1. Decide which documents are to be included in the domain for cross referencing.
   A unique ID must be assigned to each document that will be referenced with an `<olink>`. It is usually added as an `@id` (or `@xml:id` for DocBook5) attribute to the root element of the document.
2. Decide on your output hierarchy.
   For creating links between documents, the relative locations of the output documents must be known. Before going further you must decide the names and locations of the output directories for all the documents from the domain. Each directory will be represented by an element: `<dir name="directory_name">`, in the target database document.

3. Create the target database document.
   Each collection of documents has a main target database document that is used to resolve all *olinks* from that collection. The target database document is an XML file that is created once. It provides a means for pulling in the target data for each document. The database document is static and all the document data is pulled in dynamically.

   > **Tip:**
   > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in new document template called **DocBook Targetset Map** available in the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)* that will help you get started.

   Example: The following is an example of a target database document. It structures a collection of documents in a `<sitemap>` element that provides the relative locations of the outputs (HTML in this example). Then it pulls in the individual target data using system entity references to target data files that will be created in the next step.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE targetset [
<!ENTITY ugtargets SYSTEM "file:///doc/userguide/target.db">
<!ENTITY agtargets SYSTEM "file:///doc/adminguide/target.db">
<!ENTITY reftargets SYSTEM "file:///doc/man/target.db">
]>
<targetset>
  <targetsetinfo>
    Description of this target database document,
    which is for the examples in olink doc.
  </targetsetinfo>

  <!-- Site map for generating relative paths between documents -->
  <sitemap>
    <dir name="documentation">
      <dir name="guides">
        <dir name="mailuser">
          <document targetdoc="MailUserGuide"
                    baseuri="userguide.html">
            &ugtargets;
          </document>
        </dir>
        <dir name="mailadmin">
          <document targetdoc="MailAdminGuide">
            &agtargets;
          </document>
        </dir>
```

```
      </dir>
      <dir name="reference">
        <dir name="mailref">
          <document targetdoc="MailReference">
            &reftargets;
          </document>
        </dir>
      </dir>
    </dir>
  </sitemap>
</targetset>
```

4. Generate the target data files by executing a DocBook transformation scenario.
   Before applying the transformation, you need to edit the transformation scenario, go to the **Parameters** tab, and make sure the value of the `collect.xref.targets` parameter is set to `yes`. The default name of a target data file is `target.db`, but it can be changed by setting an absolute file path in the `targets.filename` parameter.

   Example: An example of a `target.db` file:

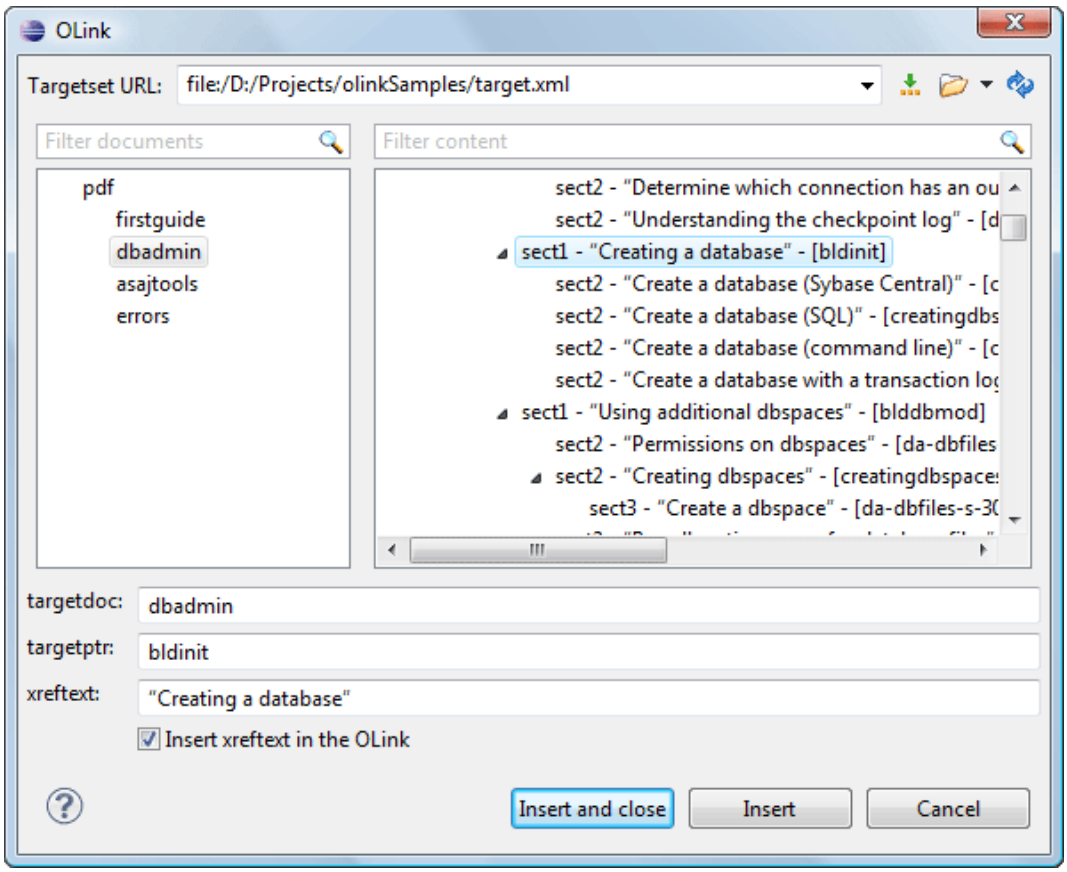
```
<div element="book" href="#MailAdminGuide" number="1" targetptr="user_accounts">
 <ttl>Administering User Accounts</ttl>
 <xreftext>How to administer user accounts</xreftext>
 <div element="part" href="#d5e4" number="I">
  <ttl>First Part</ttl>
  <xreftext>Part I, “First Part”</xreftext>
  <div element="chapter" href="#d5e6" number="1">
    <ttl>Chapter Title</ttl>
    <xreftext>Chapter 1, Chapter Title</xreftext>
    <div element="sect1" href="#src_chapter" number="1" targetptr="src_chapter">
      <ttl>Section1 Title</ttl>
      <xreftext>xreflabel_here</xreftext>
    </div>
  </div>
 </div>
</div>
```

5. Insert `<olink>` elements in the DocBook documents.
   When editing a DocBook XML document in **Author** mode, the **Insert OLink** action is available in the **Link** drop-down menu from the toolbar. This action opens the **Insert OLink** dialog box that allows you to select the target of an `<olink>` from the list of all possible targets from a specified target database document (specified in the **Targetset URL** field). Once a **Targetset URL** is selected, the structure of the target documents is presented. For each target document (`@targetdoc`), its content is displayed, allowing you to easily identify the appropriate `@targetptr`. You can also use the search fields

to quickly identify a target. If you already know the values for the `@targetdoc` and `@targetptr` attributes, you can insert them directly in the corresponding fields.

Example: In the following image, the target database document is called `target.xml`, *dbadmin* is selected for the target document (`@targetdoc`), and *bldinit* is selected as the value for the `@targetptr` attribute. Notice that you can also add XREF text into the `<olink>` by using the **xreftext** field.

Figure 199. Insert OLink Dialog Box



6. Process a DocBook transformation for each document to generate the output.
    a. Edit the transformation scenario and set the value of the `target.database.document` parameter to be the URL of the target database document.
    b. Apply the transformation scenario.

DocBook 5 Document Type (Framework)

DocBook is a very popular set of tags for describing books, articles, and other prose documents, particularly technical documentation. DocBook provides a vast number of semantic element tags, divided into three broad categories: structural, *block-level*, and *inline*. DocBook content can then be published in a variety of formats, including HTML, PDF, and EPUB.

File Definition

A file is considered to be a DocBook 5 document when the namespace is *http://docbook.org/ns/docbook*.

Default Document Templates

There are a variety of default *DocBook 5* templates available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 229)* and they can be found in: **Framework Templates > DocBook 5 > DocBook 5.0** and **Framework Templates > DocBook 5 > DocBook 5.1**.

New document templates for both DocBook 5 documents are located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/docbook/templates/Docbook5.0` folder.

New document templates for both DocBook 5.1 documents are located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/docbook/templates/Docbook5.1` folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

The default schema that is used if one is not detected is `docbookxi.rng` and it is stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/docbook/5.0/rng/` (or for DocBook 5.1 in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/docbook/5.1/rng/`). Other types of schemas for various DocBook versions are also located in various folders inside the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/docbook/` directory.

Default CSS

The default CSS files used for rendering DocBook content in **Author** mode is stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/docbook/css/`.

By default, these default CSS files are merged with any that are specified in the document. For more information, see Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*.

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes numerous built-in DocBook transformation scenarios that allow you to transform DocBook 5 documents to a variety of outputs, such as PDF, HTML, HTML Chunk, XHTML, XHTML Chunk, and EPUB. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes a DocBook 5.1 transformation scenario for *Assembly* documents *(on page 697)*. All of them are listed in the **DocBook 5** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

For more information, see the DocBook Transformation Scenarios *(on page 825)* section.

Resources

- Oxygen Video Tutorial: Editing DocBook Documents in Author Mode
- DocBook 5.0 (and older) Specifications
- DocBook 5.1 Specifications
- DocBook 5.1: The Definitive Guide

Related Information:

Editing XML Documents in Author Mode *(on page 343)*
Editing XML Documents in Text Mode *(on page 282)*
Adding Tables in DocBook *(on page 435)*
DocBook Assembly (5.1 and Later) *(on page 697)*
DocBook Topic (5.1 and Later) *(on page 698)*

DocBook 5 Author Mode Actions

A variety of actions are available for DocBook 5 documents in the **DocBook5** menu, toolbar, contextual menu, and the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

DocBook 5 Toolbar Actions

The following default actions are available on the DocBook toolbar when editing in **Author** mode (by default, most of them are also available in the **DocBook5** menu and in various submenus of the contextual menu):

Bold

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with a *bold* tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Italic

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with an *italic* tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Underline

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with an *underline* tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Link Actions Drop-Down Menu

The following link actions are available from this menu:

Cross reference (link)

Opens a dialog box that allows you to select a target to insert as a hypertext link.

Cross reference (xref)

Inserts a cross reference to other parts of the document.

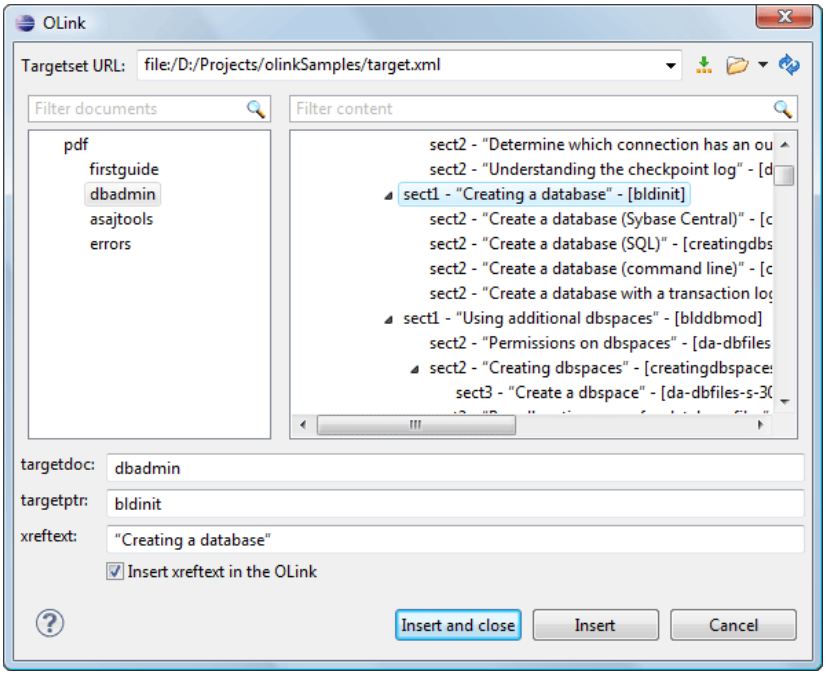
Web Link (ulink)

Inserts a link that addresses its target with a URL (Universal Resource Locator).

Insert OLink

Opens an **OLink** dialog box that allows you to insert a link that addresses its target indirectly, using the values of the `@targetdoc` and `@targetptr` attributes that are present in a **Targetset** *(on page 699)* file.

Figure 200. Insert OLink Dialog Box



After you choose the **Targetset URL**, the structure of the target documents is presented. For each target document (`@targetdoc`), its content is displayed allowing you to easily identify the `@targetptr` for the `<olink>` element that will be inserted. You can also use the search fields to quickly identify a target. If you already know the values for **targetdoc** and **targetptr**, you can insert them directly in the corresponding fields. You can also edit an `<olink>` using the **Edit OLink** action that is available on the contextual menu. The last used **Targetset** URL will be used to identify the edited target.

To insert XREF text into the `<olink>`, enter the text in the **xreftext** field and make sure the **Insert xreftext in the OLink** option is selected.

Insert URI

Inserts a URI element. The URI identifies a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) in content.

Edit OLink

Opens a dialog box that allows you edit an existing *OLink*. See the **Insert OLink** action for more information.

Insert Image

Opens a dialog box that allows you to select the path of an image to insert at the cursor position *(on page 468)*. Depending on the current location, an image-type element is inserted. If the action is invoked between two block elements (such as paragraphs), the dialog box also allows you to provide a title.

Insert Media Resource

Opens a **Choose Media** dialog box *(on page 496)* that allows you to select the URL of a media object to be inserted into a document at the cursor position. The result will be that a reference to the specified video, audio, or embedded HTML frame is inserted and rendered in **Author** mode so that it can be played directly from there.

Insert XInclude

Opens a dialog box that allows you to browse and select content to be included and automatically generates the corresponding XInclude instruction.

Section Drop-Down Menu

The following actions are available from this menu:

Insert Section

Inserts a new section or subsection in the document, depending on the current context. For example, if the current context is `<sect1>`, then a `<sect2>` is inserted. By default, this action also inserts a `<para>` element as a child node. The `<para>` element can be deleted if it is not needed.

Promote Section (Ctrl + Alt + LeftArrow (Command + Option + LeftArrow on macOS))

Promotes the current node as a sibling of the parent node.

Demote Section (Ctrl + Alt + RightArrow (Command + Option + RightArrow on macOS))

Demotes the current node a child of the previous node.

Insert Paragraph

Insert a new paragraph element at current cursor position.

Insert Equation

Opens the **XML Fragment Editor** that allows you to insert and edit MathML notations *(on page 498)*.

Insert List Item

Inserts a list item in the current list type.

Insert Ordered List

Inserts an ordered list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an ordered list.

Insert Itemized List

Inserts an itemized list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an itemized list.

Insert Variable List

Inserts a DocBook variable list. A child list item is also inserted automatically by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to a variable list.

Insert Procedure List

Inserts a DocBook `<procedure>` element. A `<step>` child element is also inserted automatically. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to a procedure list.

Sort

Sorts cells or list items in a table.

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs, lists, and inline content (mixed content, text plus markup, that is rendered inside a *block element (on page 2228)*) into a table, with the selected content inserted in the first column, starting from the first row after the header (if a header is inserted).

> **Note:**
> If the selection contains a mixture of elements that cannot be converted, you will receive an error message saying that **Only lists, paragraphs, or inline content can be converted to tables**.

Insert Row

Inserts a new table row with empty cells below the current row. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Delete Row(s)

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Insert Column

Inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Delete Column(s)

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Table Properties

Opens the **Table properties** dialog box that allows you to configure properties of a table (such as frame borders).

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

DocBook5 Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available in the contextual menu when editing in **Author** mode (most of them are also available in the **DocBook5** menu at the top of the interface):

Edit Attributes

Displays an in-place attributes editor *(on page 383)* that allows you to manage the attributes of an element.

Edit Profiling Attributes

Allows you to change the profiling attributes *(on page 419)* defined on all selected elements.

Cut (Ctrl + X (Command + X on macOS))

Removes the currently selected content from the document and places it in the clipboard.

Copy (Ctrl + C (Command + C on macOS))

Places a copy of the currently selected content in the clipboard.

The clipboard contains the precise node structure that is preserved when pasting to another location within the same document or to another document opened in the **Author** mode. The copied content contains an HTML flavor that attempts to convert the copied structure to plain HTML, which can be useful for preserving the styles when pasting into editors such as MS Word.

Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on macOS))

Inserts the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.

Paste special submenu

This submenu includes the following special paste actions:

Paste As XInclude

Allows you to create an `<xi:include>` element that references a DocBook element copied from **Author** mode. The operation fails if the copied element does not have a declared ID.

Paste as link

Allows you to create a `<link>` element that references a DocBook element copied from **Author** mode. The operation fails if the copied element does not have a declared ID.

Paste as xref

Allows you to create an `<xref>` element that references a DocBook element copied from **Author** mode. The operation fails if the copied element does not have a declared ID.

Image Map Editor

This action is available in the contextual menu when it is invoked on an image. This action applies an *image map* to the current image (if one does not already exist) and opens the **Image Map Editor** dialog box. This feature allows you to create hyperlinks in specific areas of an image that will link to various destinations.

Insert submenu

This submenu includes the following insert actions that are specific to the DocBook *framework*:

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs, lists, and inline content (mixed content, text plus markup, that is rendered inside a *block element (on page 2228)*) into a table, with the selected content inserted in the first column, starting from the first row after the header (if a header is inserted).

Note:
If the selection contains a mixture of elements that cannot be converted, you will receive an error message saying that **Only lists, paragraphs, or inline content can be converted to tables**.

Insert Image

Inserts an image reference *(on page 468)* at the cursor position. Depending on the current location, an image-type element is inserted.

Insert Media Resource

Opens a **Choose Media** dialog box *(on page 496)* that allows you to select the URL of a media object to be inserted into a document at the cursor position. The result will be that a reference to the specified video, audio, or embedded HTML frame is inserted and rendered in **Author** mode so that it can be played directly from there.

Insert Equation

Opens the **XML Fragment Editor** that allows you to insert and edit MathML notations *(on page 498)*.

Insert Paragraph

Inserts a new *paragraph* element at current cursor position.

Insert Section

Inserts a new *section* element in the document, depending on the current context.

Insert XInclude

Opens a dialog box that allows you to browse and select content to be included and automatically generates the corresponding XInclude instruction.

Insert Entity

Allows you to insert a predefined entity or character entity. Surrogate character entities (range #x10000 to #x10FFFF) are also accepted. Character entities can be entered in one of the following forms:

- #<*decimal value*> - e.g. #65
- &#<*decimal value*> - e.g. &#65
- #x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. #x41
- &#x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. &#x41

Style submenu

This submenu includes the following text styling actions:

Bold

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with a *bold* tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Italic

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with an *italic* tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Underline

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with an *underline* tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Subscript

Surrounds the selected text with a *subscript* tag, used for inserting a character (number, letter, or symbol) that will appear slightly below the baseline and slightly smaller than the rest of the text.

Superscript

Surrounds the selected text with a *superscript* tag, used for inserting a character (number, letter, or symbol) that will appear slightly above the baseline and slightly smaller than the rest of the text.

Section submenu

The following actions are available in this submenu:

Promote Section (Ctrl + Alt + LeftArrow (Command + Option + LeftArrow on macOS))

Promotes the current node as a sibling of the parent node.

Demote Section (Ctrl + Alt + RightArrow (Command + Option + RightArrow on macOS))

Demotes the current node a child of the previous node.

Link submenu

The following actions are available in this submenu:

Cross reference (link)

Opens a dialog box that allows you to select a target to insert as a hypertext link.

Cross reference (xref)

Inserts a cross reference to other parts of the document.

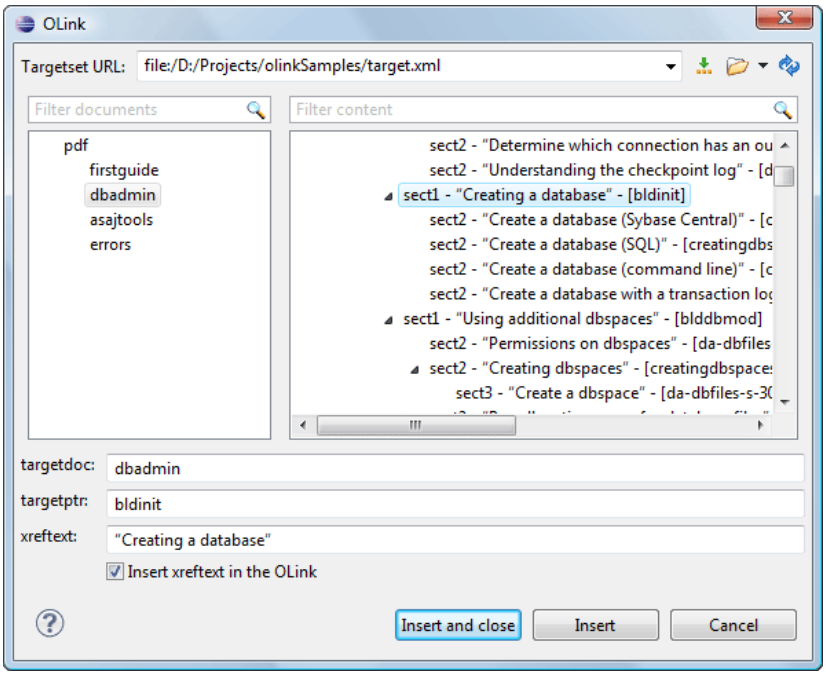
Web Link (ulink)

Inserts a link that addresses its target with a URL (Universal Resource Locator).

Insert OLink

Opens an **OLink** dialog box that allows you to insert a link that addresses its target indirectly, using the values of the `@targetdoc` and `@targetptr` attributes that are present in a **Targetset** *(on page 699)* file.

Figure 201. Insert OLink Dialog Box



After you choose the **Targetset URL**, the structure of the target documents is presented. For each target document (`@targetdoc`), its content is displayed allowing you to easily identify the `@targetptr` for the `<olink>` element that will be inserted.

You can also use the search fields to quickly identify a target. If you already know the values for **targetdoc** and **targetptr**, you can insert them directly in the corresponding fields. You can also edit an `<olink>` using the **Edit OLink** action that is available on the contextual menu. The last used **Targetset** URL will be used to identify the edited target.

To insert XREF text into the `<olink>`, enter the text in the **xreftext** field and make sure the **Insert xreftext in the OLink** option is selected.

Insert URI

Inserts a URI element. The URI identifies a Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) in content.

Edit OLink

Opens a dialog box that allows you edit an existing *OLink*. See the **Insert OLink** action for more information.

Table actions

The following table editing actions are available in the contextual menu when it is invoked on a table:

Insert Rows

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert any number of rows and specify the position where they will be inserted (**Above** or **Below** the current row).

Delete Row(s)

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Insert Columns

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert any number of columns and specify the position where they will be inserted (**Above** or **Below** the current column).

Delete Column(s)

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

Sort

Sorts cells or list items in a table.

Table Properties

Opens the **Table properties** dialog box that allows you to configure properties of a table (such as frame borders).

Other Actions submenu

This submenu give you access to all the usual contextual menu actions.

Generate IDs

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin generates unique IDs for the current element (or elements), depending on how the action is invoked:

- When invoked on a single selection, an ID is generated for the selected element at the cursor position.
- When invoked on a block of selected content, IDs are generated for all top-level elements and elements listed in the **ID Options** dialog box that are found in the current selection.

Note:
The **Generate IDs** action does not overwrite existing ID values. It only affects elements that do not already have an `@id` attribute.

Select submenu

This submenu allows you to select the following:

Element

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

Content

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

Parent

Selects the entire parent element at the current cursor position.

Text submenu

This submenu contains the following actions:

To Lower Case

Converts the selected content to lower case characters.

To Upper Case

Converts the selected content to upper case characters.

Capitalize Sentences

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected sentence.

Capitalize Words

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected word.

Count Words

Counts the number of words and characters (no spaces) in the entire document or in the selection for regular content and read-only content.

> **Note:**
> The content marked as deleted with *change tracking (on page 2234)* is ignored when counting words.

Convert Hexadecimal Sequence to Character (Ctrl + Shift + H (Command + Shift + H on macOS))

Converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character *(on page 274)*. The action can be invoked if there is a selection containing a valid hexadecimal sequence or if the cursor is placed at the right side of a valid hexadecimal sequence. A valid hexadecimal sequence can be composed of 2 to 4 hexadecimal characters and may or may not be preceded by the `0x` or `0X` prefix. Examples of valid sequences and the characters they will be converted to:

- `0x0045` will be converted to `E`
- `0X0125` to `ĥ`
- `265` to `ɩ`
- `2190` to `←`

> **Note:**
> For more information about finding the hexadecimal value of a character, see Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent *(on page 276)*.

Refactoring submenu

Contains a series of actions designed to alter the XML structure of the document:

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected text in a comment, or removes the comment if it is commented.

Move Up (Alt + UpArrow (Option + UpArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes in front of the previous node.

Move Down (Alt + DownArrow (Option + DownArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes after the subsequent node.

Split Element

Splits the content of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. Thus, if the cursor is positioned at the beginning or at the end of the element, the newly created sibling will be empty.

Join Elements

Joins two adjacent *block elements (on page 2228)* that have the same name. The action is available only when the cursor position is between the two adjacent *block elements*. Also, joining two *block elements* can be done by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys and the cursor is positioned between the boundaries of these two elements.

Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)

Allows you to choose a tag to enclose a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Rename Element

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

Delete Element Tags

Deletes the tags of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. This operation is also executed if the start or end tags of an element are deleted by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys.

Remove All Markup

Removes all the XML markup inside the selected block of content and keeps only the text content.

Remove Text

Removes the text content of the selected block of content and keeps the markup intact with empty elements.

Attributes Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add/Change attribute

Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

Convert attribute to element

Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

Delete attribute

Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

Rename attribute

Allows you to rename an attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

Comments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete comments

Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

Elements Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete element

Allows you to delete elements.

Delete element content

Allows you to delete the content of elements.

Insert element

Allows you to insert new elements.

Rename element

Allows you to rename elements.

Unwrap element

Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

Wrap element

Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

Wrap element content

Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

Fragments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Insert XML fragment

Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

Replace element with XML fragment

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

Review submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Track Changes

Enables or disables the *Track Changes (on page 2234)* support for the current document.

Accept Change(s) and Move to Next

Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is accepted.

Accept All Changes

Accepts all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Reject Change(s) and Move to Next

Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is rejected.

Reject All Changes

Rejects all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when

hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Highlight

Enables the highlighting tool that allows you to mark text in your document.

Colors

Allows you to select the color for highlighting text.

Stop highlighting

Use this action to deactivate the highlighting tool.

Remove highlight(s)

Use this action to remove highlighting from the document.

Add Comment

Inserts a comment at the cursor position. The comment appears in a callout box and a tooltip (when hovering over the change).

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Manage Reviews

Opens the **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Folding submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Toggle Fold

Toggles the state of the current fold.

Collapse Other Folds

Folds all the elements except the current element.

Collapse Child Folds

Folds the elements indented with one level inside the current element.

Expand Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad+ (Command + NumPad+ on macOS))

Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

Expand All

Unfolds all elements in the current document.

About Element > Go to Definition

Moves the cursor to the definition of the current element.

Inspect Styles

Opens the **CSS Inspector** view *(on page 391)* that allows you to examine the CSS rules that match the currently selected element.

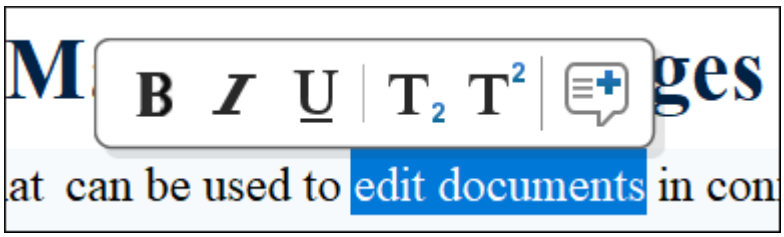
Options

Opens the Author mode preferences page *(on page 127)* where you can configure various options with regard to the **Author** editing mode.

Floating Contextual Toolbar for DocBook

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a dynamic feature where certain editing contexts will trigger a floating toolbar with common actions that are available in the current editing context.

Figure 202. DocBook Floating Contextual Toolbar



The *floating contextual toolbar* is automatically displayed when editing DocBook documents in the following situations:

- When a `<para>` or `<listitem>` element has a selection inside, the floating toolbar includes actions such as **Bold**, **Italic**, **Underline**, **Subscript**, and **Superscript**.
- When an `<imagedata>` or `<videodata>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes a URL chooser where you can select the appropriate target.
- When an `<olink>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes an **Edit OLink** action.
- When a `<link>` or `<include>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes a URL chooser where you can select the appropriate target.
- When a `<programlisting>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes a drop-down control where you can select the value of the `@language` attribute.
- When an `<itemizedlist>`, `<orderdlist>`, `<variablelist>`, or `<procedure>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for converting it to a different type of list or sorting the list.
- When a `<listitem>`, `<varlistentry>`, or `<step>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for moving the item up or down in the list/procedure.
- When a `<row>` or `<tr>` element is selected in a table, the floating toolbar includes various table-related actions (such as actions for editing table properties, inserting rows, or deleting rows).

- When an `<entry>` or `<td>` element is selected in a table, the floating toolbar includes various table-related actions (such as actions for editing table properties, inserting/deleting rows, or inserting/deleting columns).
- When a `<table>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for editing table properties or sorting the table.
- In all cases, the **Add Comment** action is in the floating toolbar, allowing you to easily add comments to selected content.

DocBook 5 Drag/Drop (or Copy/Paste) Actions

Dragging a file from the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and dropping it into a DocBook 5 document that is edited in **Author** mode, creates a link to the dragged file (the `<link>` DocBook element) at the drop location. Copy and paste actions work the same.

You can also drag images or media files from your system explorer or the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and drop them into a DocBook 5 document (or copy and paste). This will insert the appropriate element at the drop or paste location (for example, dropping/pasting an image will insert the `<imageobject>` DocBook element with an `<imagedata>` child element and a `@fileref` attribute).

Tip:
For information about customizing **Author** mode actions for a particular *framework (on page 2231)* (document type), see the Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)* section.

Related Information:
Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)*

Inserting an Olink in DocBook Documents

The `<olink>` element is used for linking to resources outside the current DocBook document. The `@targetdoc` attribute is used for the document ID that contains the target element and the `@targetptr` attribute for the ID of the target element (the value of an `@id` or `@xml:id` attribute). The combination of those two attributes provides a unique identifier to locate cross references.

For example, a *Mail Administrator Guide* with the document ID `MailAdminGuide` might contain a chapter about user accounts, like this:

```
<chapter id="user_accounts">
<title>Administering User Accounts</title>
<para>blah blah</para>
```

You can form a cross reference to that chapter by adding an `<olink>`, as in the following example:

```
You may need to update your
<olink targetdoc="MailAdminGuide" targetptr="user_accounts">user accounts
```

```
</olink>

when you get a new machine.
```

To use an `<olink>` to create links between documents, follow these steps:

1. Decide which documents are to be included in the domain for cross referencing.
   A unique ID must be assigned to each document that will be referenced with an `<olink>`. It is usually added as an `@id` (or `@xml:id` for DocBook5) attribute to the root element of the document.

2. Decide on your output hierarchy.
   For creating links between documents, the relative locations of the output documents must be known. Before going further you must decide the names and locations of the output directories for all the documents from the domain. Each directory will be represented by an element: `<dir name="directory_name">`, in the target database document.

3. Create the target database document.
   Each collection of documents has a main target database document that is used to resolve all *olinks* from that collection. The target database document is an XML file that is created once. It provides a means for pulling in the target data for each document. The database document is static and all the document data is pulled in dynamically.

   > **Tip:**
   > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in new document template called **DocBook Targetset Map** available in the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)* that will help you get started.

   Example: The following is an example of a target database document. It structures a collection of documents in a `<sitemap>` element that provides the relative locations of the outputs (HTML in this example). Then it pulls in the individual target data using system entity references to target data files that will be created in the next step.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE targetset [
<!ENTITY ugtargets SYSTEM "file:///doc/userguide/target.db">
<!ENTITY agtargets SYSTEM "file:///doc/adminguide/target.db">
<!ENTITY reftargets SYSTEM "file:///doc/man/target.db">
]>
<targetset>
  <targetsetinfo>
    Description of this target database document,
    which is for the examples in olink doc.
  </targetsetinfo>

  <!-- Site map for generating relative paths between documents -->
```

```
  <sitemap>
    <dir name="documentation">
      <dir name="guides">
        <dir name="mailuser">
          <document targetdoc="MailUserGuide"
                    baseuri="userguide.html">
            &ugtargets;
          </document>
        </dir>
        <dir name="mailadmin">
          <document targetdoc="MailAdminGuide">
            &agtargets;
          </document>
        </dir>
      </dir>
      <dir name="reference">
        <dir name="mailref">
          <document targetdoc="MailReference">
            &reftargets;
          </document>
        </dir>
      </dir>
    </dir>
  </sitemap>
</targetset>
```

4. Generate the target data files by executing a DocBook transformation scenario.
   Before applying the transformation, you need to edit the transformation scenario, go to the **Parameters** tab, and make sure the value of the `collect.xref.targets` parameter is set to `yes`. The default name of a target data file is `target.db`, but it can be changed by setting an absolute file path in the `targets.filename` parameter.

   Example: An example of a `target.db` file:

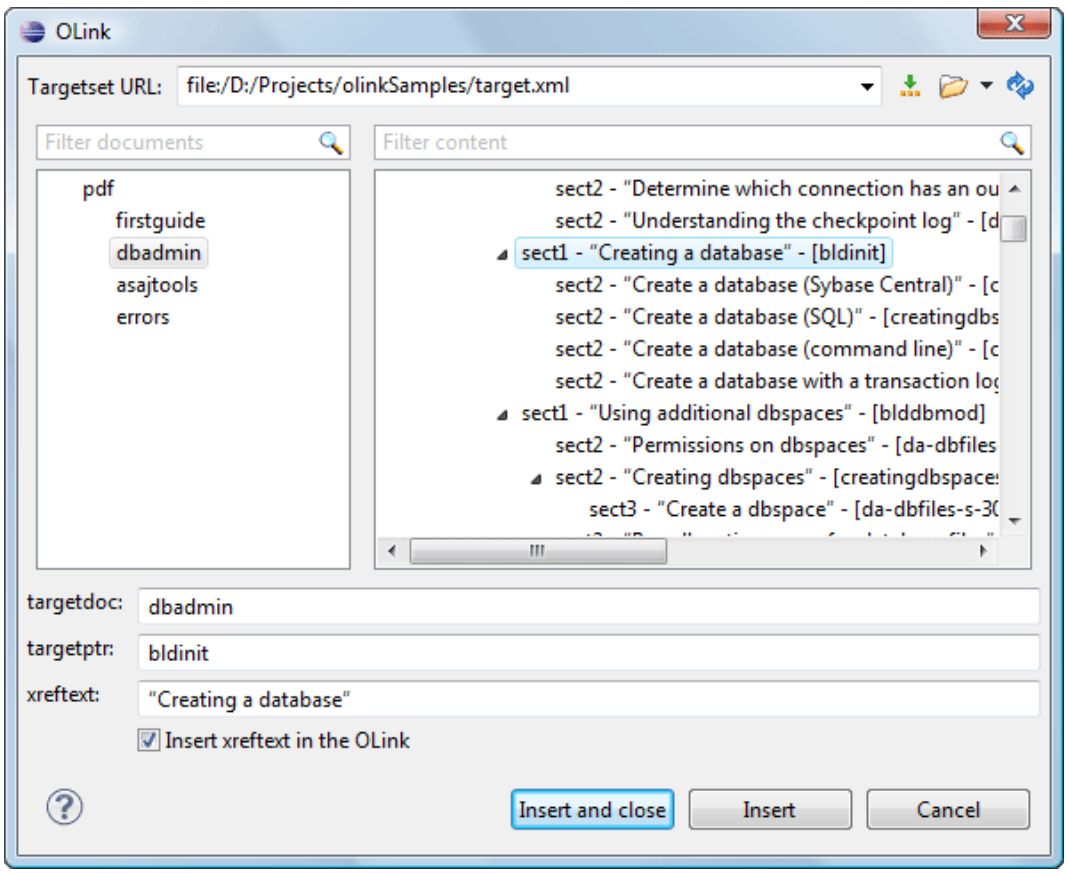
```
<div element="book" href="#MailAdminGuide" number="1" targetptr="user_accounts">
 <ttl>Administering User Accounts</ttl>
 <xreftext>How to administer user accounts</xreftext>
 <div element="part" href="#d5e4" number="I">
  <ttl>First Part</ttl>
  <xreftext>Part I, “First Part”</xreftext>
  <div element="chapter" href="#d5e6" number="1">
    <ttl>Chapter Title</ttl>
    <xreftext>Chapter 1, Chapter Title</xreftext>
    <div element="sect1" href="#src_chapter" number="1" targetptr="src_chapter">
```

```
      <ttl>Section1 Title</ttl>
      <xreftext>xreflabel_here</xreftext>
    </div>
  </div>
 </div>
</div>
```

5. Insert `<olink>` elements in the DocBook documents.
   When editing a DocBook XML document in **Author** mode, the **Insert OLink** action is available in the **Link** drop-down menu from the toolbar. This action opens the **Insert OLink** dialog box that allows you to select the target of an `<olink>` from the list of all possible targets from a specified target database document (specified in the **Targetset URL** field). Once a **Targetset URL** is selected, the structure of the target documents is presented. For each target document (`@targetdoc`), its content is displayed, allowing you to easily identify the appropriate `@targetptr`. You can also use the search fields to quickly identify a target. If you already know the values for the `@targetdoc` and `@targetptr` attributes, you can insert them directly in the corresponding fields.

   Example: In the following image, the target database document is called `target.xml`, *dbadmin* is selected for the target document (`@targetdoc`), and *bldinit* is selected as the value for the `@targetptr` attribute. Notice that you can also add XREF text into the `<olink>` by using the **xreftext** field.

Figure 203. Insert OLink Dialog Box



6. Process a DocBook transformation for each document to generate the output.

a. Edit the transformation scenario and set the value of the `target.database.document` parameter to be the URL of the target database document.
b. Apply the transformation scenario.

DocBook Assembly (5.1 and Later)

The DocBook *Assembly* document type was introduced with DocBook 5.1 and it is used to define the hierarchy and relationships for a collection of resources. It is especially helpful for topic-oriented authoring scenarios since it assembles a set of resources (such as DocBook 5.1 *topics (on page 698)*) to form a hierarchical structure for a larger publication.

An *Assembly* document usually has four major parts:

- **Resources** - Identifies a collection of resources (such as topics). An *Assembly* may identify one or more collections.
- **Structure** - Identifies an artifact to be assembled. A document in this case is the particular collection of resources (such as topics) that forms the documentation. Within the `<structure>` element, an `<output>` element can be used to identify the type of output to be generated and `<module>` elements can be used to identify the resources to be included. An *Assembly* may identify one or more *structures*.
- **Relationships** - Identifies relationships between resources. These relationships may be manifested in any number of *structures* during assembly. An *Assembly* may identify any number of relationships.
- **Transformations** - Identifies transformations that can be applied during assembly. An *Assembly* may identify any number of transformations.

For detailed information about the DocBook *Assembly* document type, see The Definitive Guide - DocBook Assemblies.

File Definition

A file is considered to be an *Assembly* when the root name is `assembly`.

Default Document Templates

A default **Assembly** document template is available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 229)* and it can be found in: **Framework Templates > DocBook 5 > DocBook 5.1**.

The default template for DocBook Assembly documents is located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/docbook/templates/Docbook5.1` folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

The default schema that is used if one is not detected is `docbookxi.rng` and it is stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/docbook/5.1/rng/`.

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in transformation scenario that can be applied on an *Assembly* file to generate an *assembled* (merged) DocBook file. The scenario is called **DocBook Assembly** and is found in the **DocBook 5** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

Resources

- The Definitive Guide - DocBook Assemblies
- DocBook Specifications
- Sample files: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/samples/docbook/v5/assembly/`

DocBook Topic (5.1 and Later)

The DocBook *Topic* document type was introduced with DocBook 5.1 and it is used as a modular unit of documentation. It is similar to the concept of the DITA *Topic* and can be used as modular resources in conjunction with DocBook *Assembly (on page 697)* documents.

For detailed information about the DocBook *Topic* document type, see The Definitive Guide - DocBook Topic.

File Definition

A DocBook file is considered to be a *Topic* when the root name is `topic`.

Default Document Templates

A default **Topic** document template is available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 229)* and it can be found in: **Framework Templates > DocBook 5 > DocBook 5.1**.

The default template for DocBook Assembly documents is located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/docbook/templates/Docbook5.1` folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

The default schema that is used if one is not detected is `docbookxi.rng` and it is stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/docbook/5.1/rng/`.

Transformation Scenarios

Since DocBook *Topics* are modular resources, they are *assembled* and transformed in the **DocBook Assembly** transformation process *(on page 698)*. You can also use any of the built-in DocBook transformation scenarios to transform individual DocBook Topics to a variety of outputs, such as PDF, HTML, EPUB, and more. They are found in the **DocBook 5** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

Resources

- The Definitive Guide - DocBook Topic
- DocBook Specifications
- Sample files: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/samples/docbook/v5/assembly/`

Related Information:
DocBook Assembly (5.1 and Later) *(on page 697)*

DocBook Targetset Document Type (Framework)

DocBook *Targetset* documents are used to resolve cross references with the DocBook *Olink*.

File Definition

A file is considered to be a *Targetset* when the root name is `targetset`.

Default Document Templates

A default **DocBook Targetset Map** document template is available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 229)* and it can be found in: **Framework Templates > DocBook Targetset**.

The default template for DocBook Targetset documents is located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/docbook/templates/Targetset` folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

The default schema, `targetdatabase.dtd`, for this type of document is stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/docbook/xsl/common/`.

Related Information:
DocBook Specifications

DITA Topics Document Type (Framework)

The Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) is an XML-based architecture for authoring, producing, and delivering technical information. It divides content into small, self-contained topics that you can reuse in various deliverables. The extensibility of DITA permits organizations to define specific information structures while still using standard tools to work with them. DITA content is created as topics, each an individual XML file. Typically, each topic has a defined primary objective and structure, and DITA also includes several specialized topic types (*task*, *concept*, *reference*, *glossary entry*).

For much more detailed information, resources, and instructions, see the DITA Authoring *(on page 1869)* chapter.

File Definition

A file is considered to be a DITA topic document when one of the following conditions are true:

- The root element name is one of the following: `<concept>`, `<task>`, `<reference>`, `<dita>`, or `<topic>`.
- The PUBLIC ID of the document is a PUBLIC ID for the elements listed above.
- The root element of the file has a `@DITAArchVersion` attribute for the *"http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/"* namespace. This enhanced case of matching is only applied when the **Enable DTD/XML Schema processing in document type detection** option *(on page 82)* is selected from the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 81)*.

Default Document Templates

There are a variety of default *DITA topic* templates available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 229)* and they can be found in various folders inside: **Framework Templates > DITA**.

The default templates for DITA topic documents are located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/dita/templates/topic` folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

Default schemas that are used if one is not detected in the DITA documents are stored in the various folders inside *DITA-OT-DIR*`/dtd/` or *DITA-OT-DIR*`/schema/`.

Default CSS

The default CSS files used for rendering DITA content in **Author** mode are stored in the various folders inside: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/dita/css/`.

By default, these default CSS files are merged with any that are specified in the document. For more information, see Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*.

Default XML Catalogs

The default *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)* for the DITA topic document type are as follows:

- *DITA-OT-DIR*`/catalog-dita.xml`
- *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/dita/catalog.xml`
- *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/dita/plugin/catalog.xml`
- *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/dita/styleguide/catalog.xml`

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes built-in transformation scenarios for transforming individual DITA Topics to HTML5, XHTML, or PDF output. They can be found in the **DITA** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

Resources

- DITA Specifications
- DITA Style Guide Best Practices for Authors
- Oxygen Video Tutorial: DITA Editing

Related Information:
DITA Authoring *(on page 1869)*
Getting Started with DITA *(on page 1870)*
Editing XML Documents in Author Mode *(on page 343)*
Editing XML Documents in Text Mode *(on page 282)*

DITA Topic Author Mode Actions

A variety of actions are available for DITA documents that can be found in **DITA** menu, toolbar, contextual menu, and the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

DITA Toolbar Actions

The following default actions are available on the DITA toolbar when editing in **Author** mode (by default, most of them are also available in the **DITA** menu and in various submenus of the contextual menu):

Bold

Surrounds the selected text with a `<b>` tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Italic

Surrounds the selected text with an `<i>` tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Underline

Surrounds the selected text with a `<u>` tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Link Actions Drop-Down Menu

The following link actions are available from this menu:

Cross Reference

Opens the **Cross Reference (xref)** dialog box *(on page 2061)* that allows you to insert a link to a target DITA resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map (on page 2230)* structure. Once the target resource has been selected, you can also target specific elements within that resource. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

File Reference

Opens the **File Reference** dialog box *(on page 2062)* that allows you to insert a link to a target non-DITA file resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Web Link

Opens the **Web Link** dialog box *(on page 2062)* that allows you to insert a link to a target web-related resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be a URL or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Related Link to Topic

Opens the **Cross Reference (xref)** dialog box *(on page 2062)* that allows you to insert a link to a target DITA resource in a related links section at the bottom of the current document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. Once the target resource has been selected, you can also target specific elements within that resource. If a related links section does not already exist, this action creates one. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Tip:
You can use the **Find Similar Topics** action (available in the contextual menu or **DITA** menu) to quickly find related topics that can be added as related links. It opens the **Open/Find Resource** view and performs a search using text content from the `<title>`, `<shortdesc>`, `<keyword>`, and `<indexterm>` elements.

Related Link to File

Opens the **File Reference** dialog box *(on page 2063)* that allows you to insert a link to a target non-DITA file resource in a related links section at the bottom of the current document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. If a related links section does not already exist, this action creates one. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Related Link to Web Page

Opens the **Web Link** dialog box *(on page 2063)* that allows you to insert a link to a target web-related resource in a related links section at the bottom of the current document. The target resource can be a URL or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. If a related links section does not already exist, this action creates one. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Insert Image

Opens the **Insert Image** dialog box *(on page 1960)* that allows you to configure the properties of an image to be inserted into a DITA document at the cursor position.

Insert Media Resource

Opens the **Insert Media** dialog box *(on page 1963)* that allows you to select and configure the properties of a media object to be inserted into a DITA document at the cursor position. The result will be that a reference to the specified video, audio, or embedded HTML frame is inserted in an `<object>` element and it is rendered in **Author** mode so that it can be played directly from there.

Insert Section Drop-Down Menu

The following insert actions are available from this menu:

Insert Section

Inserts a new `<section>` element in the document, depending on the current context.

Insert Concept

Inserts a new `<concept>` element, depending on the current context. Concepts provide background information that users must know before they can successfully work with a product or interface.

Insert Task

Inserts a new `<task>` element, depending on the current context. Tasks are the main building blocks for task-oriented user assistance. They generally provide step-by-step instructions that will help a user to perform a task.

Insert Topic

Inserts a new `<topic>` element, depending on the current context. Topics are the basic units of DITA content and are usually organized around a single subject.

Insert Reference

Inserts a new `<reference>` element, depending on the current context. A reference is a top-level container for a reference topic.

Insert Note

Inserts a new `<note>` element, depending on the current context.

Insert Codeblock

Inserts a new `<codeblock>` element, depending on the current context.

Insert Intent Question

Inserts a new special `<data>` element that contains a question or intent. The intent can be used to generate Google Structured data *(on page 1134)* content in WebHelp Responsive output.

Insert Paragraph

Inserts a new paragraph at current cursor position.

Reuse Content

This action provides a mechanism for reusing content fragments. It opens the **Reuse Content** dialog box *(on page 2033)* that allows you to insert several types of references to reusable content at the cursor position. The types of references that you can insert using this dialog box include content references (`@conref`) *(on page 2034)*, content key references (`@conkeyref`) *(on page 2036)*, or key references to metadata (`@keyref`) *(on page 2039)*.

Insert step or list item

Inserts a new list or step item in the current list type.

Insert Unordered List

Inserts an unordered list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an unordered list.

Insert Ordered List

Inserts an ordered list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an ordered list.

Sort

Sorts cells or list items in a table.

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs, lists, and inline content (mixed content, text plus markup, that is rendered inside a *block element (on page 2228)*) into a table, with the selected content inserted in the first column, starting from the first row after the header (if a header is inserted).

Note:
If the selection contains a mixture of elements that cannot be converted, you will receive an error message saying that **Only lists, paragraphs, or inline content can be converted to tables**.

Insert Row

Inserts a new table row with empty cells below the current row. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Delete Row(s)

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Insert Column

Inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Delete Column(s)

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Table Properties

Opens the **Table properties** dialog box that allows you to configure properties of a table (such as frame borders).

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

DITA Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available in the contextual menu when editing in **Author** mode (most of them are also available in the **DITA** menu at the top of the interface):

Edit Attributes

Displays an in-place attributes editor *(on page 383)* that allows you to manage the attributes of an element.

Edit Profiling Attributes

Allows you to change the profiling attributes *(on page 419)* defined on all selected elements.

Cut (Ctrl + X (Command + X on macOS))

Removes the currently selected content from the document and places it in the clipboard.

Copy (Ctrl + C (Command + C on macOS))

Places a copy of the currently selected content in the clipboard.

The clipboard contains the precise node structure that is preserved when pasting to another location within the same document or to another document opened in the **Author** mode. The

copied content contains an HTML flavor that attempts to convert the copied structure to plain HTML, which can be useful for preserving the styles when pasting into editors such as MS Word.

Copy as XML

Copies the selection as a string that contains the structured XML content.

Copy as Markdown

Copies the selection as a string that contains its Markdown-converted equivalent.

Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on macOS))

Inserts the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.

Paste special submenu

This submenu includes the following special paste actions that are specific to the DITA *framework*:

Paste as content reference

Inserts a content reference (a DITA element with a `@conref` attribute) to the DITA XML element from the clipboard. An entire DITA XML element with an ID attribute must be present in the clipboard when the action is invoked. The `conref` attribute will point to this ID value.

Paste as content key reference

Allows you to indirectly reference content using the `@conkeyref` attribute. When the DITA content is processed, the key references are resolved using key definitions from *DITA maps (on page 2230)*. To use this action, you must first do the following:

1. Make sure the DITA element that contains the copied content has an ID attribute assigned to it.
2. In the **DITA Maps Manager** view, make sure that the **Context** combo box points to the correct map that stores the keys.
3. Make sure the topic that contains the content you want to reference has a key assigned to it. To assign a key, right-click the topic with its parent map opened in the **DITA Maps Manager**, select **Edit Properties**, and enter a value in the **Keys** field.

Paste as link

Looks for the first element with an ID value in the clipboard and inserts an `<xref>` that points to that element. If no elements with an ID value are found, a message will appear that informs you that to use this action, the clipboard contents must include at least one element with a declared ID.

Paste as link (keyref)

Inserts a link to the element that you want to reference. To use this action, you must first do the following:

1. Make sure the DITA element that contains the copied content has an ID attribute assigned to it.
2. In the **DITA Maps Manager** view, make sure that the **Context** combo box points to the correct map that stores the keys.
3. Make sure the topic that contains the content you want to reference has a key assigned to it. To assign a key, right-click the topic with its parent map opened in the **DITA Maps Manager**, select **Edit Properties**, and enter a value in the **Keys** field.

Insert submenu

This submenu includes the following insert actions that are specific to the DITA *framework*:

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs, lists, and inline content (mixed content, text plus markup, that is rendered inside a *block element (on page 2228)*) into a table, with the selected content inserted in the first column, starting from the first row after the header (if a header is inserted).

Note:
If the selection contains a mixture of elements that cannot be converted, you will receive an error message saying that **Only lists, paragraphs, or inline content can be converted to tables**.

Insert Image

Inserts an image reference *(on page 468)* at the cursor position. Depending on the current location, an image-type element is inserted.

Insert Media Resource

Opens a **Choose Media** dialog box *(on page 496)* that allows you to select the URL of a media object to be inserted into a document at the cursor position. The result will be that a reference to the specified video, audio, or embedded HTML frame is inserted and rendered in **Author** mode so that it can be played directly from there.

Insert Equation

Opens the **XML Fragment Editor** that allows you to insert and edit MathML notations *(on page 498)*.

Insert Note

Inserts a new `<note>` element at the current cursor position.

Insert Code Block

Inserts a new `<codeblock>` element at current cursor position.

Insert Menu Cascade

Inserts a new `<menucascade>` element at current cursor position.

Insert Label

Inserts a special label keyword in the prolog. The label is helpful for searching WebHelp Responsive output for similar topics with the same label.

Insert Paragraph

Inserts a new `<p>` (paragraph) element at current cursor position.

Insert Section

Inserts a new `<section>` element in the document, depending on the current context.

Insert Topic

Inserts a new `<topic>` element, depending on the current context. Topics are the basic units of DITA content and are usually organized around a single subject.

Insert Entity

Allows you to insert a predefined entity or character entity. Surrogate character entities (range #x10000 to #x10FFFF) are also accepted. Character entities can be entered in one of the following forms:

- #<*decimal value*> - e.g. #65
- &#<*decimal value*> - e.g. &#65
- #x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. #x41
- &#x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. &#x41

Style submenu

This submenu includes the following text styling actions:

Bold

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with a `<b>` (bold) tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Italic

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with an `<i>` (italic) tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Underline

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with a `<u>` (*underline*) tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Subscript

Surrounds the selected text with a `<sub>` (subscript) tag, used for inserting a character (number, letter, or symbol) that will appear slightly below the baseline and slightly smaller than the rest of the text.

Superscript

Surrounds the selected text with a `<sup>` (superscript) tag, used for inserting a character (number, letter, or symbol) that will appear slightly above the baseline and slightly smaller than the rest of the text.

Code

Surrounds the selected text with a `<codeph>` tag.

UI Control

Surrounds the selected text with a `<uicontrol>` tag, used to mark up names of buttons, entry fields, menu items, or other interface objects.

Filepath

Surrounds the selected text with a `<filepath>` tag, used to indicate the name, and optionally the location of a referenced file. You can specify the directory that contains the file and other directories that may precede it in the system hierarchy.

Image Map Editor

This action is available in the contextual menu when it is invoked on an image. This action applies an *image map* to the current image (if one does not already exist) and opens the **Image Map Editor** dialog box. This feature allows you to create hyperlinks in specific areas of an image that will link to various destinations.

Table Actions

A variety of table editing actions are available in the contextual menu when it is invoked on a table (depending on the context, the table-related actions are promoted to the top level of the contextual menu and the **Other Actions** submenu provides access to the other actions):

Insert Rows

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert any number of rows and specify the position where they will be inserted (**Above** or **Below** the current row).

Delete Row(s)

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Insert Columns

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert any number of columns and specify the position where they will be inserted (**Above** or **Below** the current column).

Delete Column(s)

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

Sort

Sorts cells or list items in a table.

Table Properties

Opens the **Table properties** dialog box that allows you to configure properties of a table (such as frame borders).

Other Actions submenu

This submenu give you access to all the usual contextual menu actions.

Link submenu

The following link actions are available from this submenu:

Cross Reference

Opens the **Cross Reference (xref)** dialog box *(on page 2061)* that allows you to insert a link to a target DITA resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map (on page 2230)* structure. Once the target resource has been selected, you can also target specific elements within that resource. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

File Reference

Opens the **File Reference** dialog box *(on page 2062)* that allows you to insert a link to a target non-DITA file resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Web Link

Opens the **Web Link** dialog box *(on page 2062)* that allows you to insert a link to a target web-related resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be a URL or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Related Link to Topic

Opens the **Cross Reference (xref)** dialog box *(on page 2062)* that allows you to insert a link to a target DITA resource in a related links section at the bottom of the current document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. Once the target resource has been selected, you can also target specific elements within that resource. If a related links section does not already exist, this action creates one. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

> **Tip:**
> You can use the **Find Similar Topics** action (available in the contextual menu or **DITA** menu) to quickly find related topics that can be added as related links. It opens the **Open/Find Resource** view and performs a search using text content from the `<title>`, `<shortdesc>`, `<keyword>`, and `<indexterm>` elements.

Related Link to File

Opens the **File Reference** dialog box *(on page 2063)* that allows you to insert a link to a target non-DITA file resource in a related links section at the bottom of the current document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. If a related links section does not already exist, this action creates one. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Related Link to Web Page

Opens the **Web Link** dialog box *(on page 2063)* that allows you to insert a link to a target web-related resource in a related links section at the bottom of the current document. The target resource can be a URL or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. If a related links section does not already exist, this action creates one. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Sort

Available when invoked on a list, it opens a dialog box where you can configure a sorting operation for an entire list or a selection of list items.

Generate IDs

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin generates unique IDs for the current element (or elements), depending on how the action is invoked:

- When invoked on a single selection, an ID is generated for the selected element at the cursor position.
- When invoked on a block of selected content, IDs are generated for all top-level elements and elements listed in the **ID Options** dialog box that are found in the current selection.

Note:
The **Generate IDs** action does not overwrite existing ID values. It only affects elements that do not already have an `@id` attribute.

Reuse submenu

This submenu includes the following actions regarding reusing content in DITA:

Reuse Content

This action provides a mechanism for reusing content fragments. It opens the **Reuse Content** dialog box *(on page 2033)* that allows you to insert several types of references to reusable content at the cursor position. The types of references that you can insert using this dialog box include content references (`@conref`) *(on page 2034)*, content key references (`@conkeyref`) *(on page 2036)*, or key references to metadata (`@keyref`) *(on page 2039)*.

Push Current Element

Opens the **Push current element** dialog box *(on page 2042)* that allows content from a source topic to be inserted into another topic without any special coding in the topic where the content will be re-used.

Edit Content Reference

This action is available for elements with a `@conref` or `@conkeyref` attribute. It opens the **Edit Content Reference** dialog box that allows you to edit the source location (or key) and source element of a content reference (or content key reference), and the reference details (`@conref`/`@conkeyref` and `@conrefend` attributes). For more information, see Reuse Content Dialog Box *(on page 2033)*.

Replace Reference with Content

Replaces the referenced fragment (`@conref` or `@conkeyref`) at the cursor position with its content from it source. This action is useful if you want to make changes to the content in the currently edited document without changing the referenced fragment in its source location. If the source content includes references to other topics/resources (*hrefs*), the operation also resolves those references relative to the new location. Attributes are preserved according to the following priority:

1. Attributes from the elements in the current document that reference other content are preserved except for attributes with a `-dita-use-conref-target` value.
2. Attributes from the referenced content are brought into the replaced elements in the current document except for `@id` attributes.

Replace All References with Content

Replaces all referenced fragments (`@keyref`, `@conref`, or `@conkeyref`) in the current document with the content. Attributes are preserved according to the following priority:

1. Attributes from the elements in the current document that reference other content are preserved except for attributes with a `-dita-use-conref-target` value.
2. Attributes from the referenced content are brought into the replaced elements in the current document except for `@id` attributes.

For *keyrefs* inside `<xref>` or `<link>` elements, the `@keyref` attribute is changed to an `@href` attribute, while the rest of the content for the *keyref* is replaced with its source content.

If the source content includes references to other topics/resources (*hrefs*), the operation also resolves those references relative to the new location.

Remove Content Reference

Removes the content reference (`@conref` or `@conkeyref`) inside the element at the cursor position.

Create Reusable Component

Opens a dialog box that helps you to create a reusable component from the current element or selection of elements. If the **Replace selection with content reference** option is selected in the dialog box, the selection will be replaced with a content reference (`@conref`). If multiple elements are selected (for example, multiple steps or list items), the selection will be replaced with a content reference range (`@conref` and `@conrefend`). For more information, see Creating a Reusable Content Component *(on page 2045)*.

Insert Reusable Component

Inserts a reusable component at cursor location. For more information, see Inserting a Reusable Content Component *(on page 2046)*.

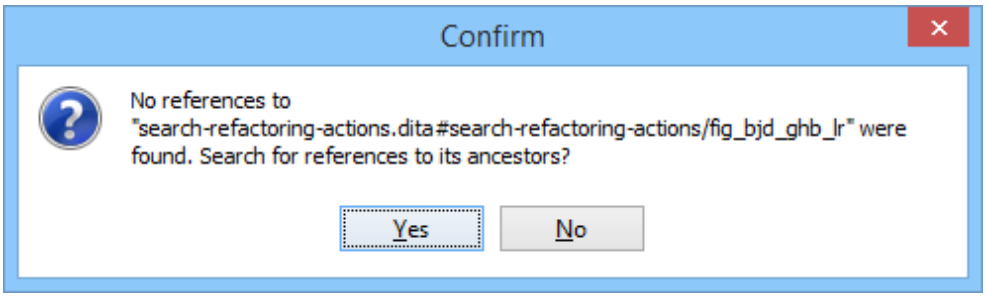
Extract Topic From Selection

Creates a new DITA topic from a selection of content in the current topic.

Search References (Ctrl + Shift + G (Command + Shift + G on macOS))

Finds the references to the `@id` attribute value for the element at the current cursor position, in all the topics contained in the current *DITA map (on page 2230)* (opened in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*). If no references are found for the current element, a dialog box will be displayed that offers you the option of searching for references to its ancestor elements.

Figure 204. Search References to Ancestors Dialog Box



Tip:
If you are invoking the action on an image, see Searching for References to Images *(on page 1963)* for details about what will be reported.

Find Similar Topics

Opens the **Open/Find Resource** view and performs a search using text content from the `<title>`, `<shortdesc>`, `<keyword>`, and `<indexterm>` elements. It is helpful for quickly finding related topics that can be added as related links.

Show Key Definition

Available for elements that have a `@conkeyref` or `@keyref` attribute set (or elements with an ancestor element that has a `@conkeyref` or `@keyref` attribute). It computes the key name and opens the *DITA map (on page 2230)* that contains the definition of the key with the element that defines that key selected.

About Element submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Style Guide

Opens the **DITA Style Guide Best Practices for Authors** in your browser and displays a topic that is relevant to the element at the cursor position. When editing DITA documents, this action is available in the contextual menu of the editing area (under the **About Element** sub-menu), in the **DITA** menu, and in some of the documentation tips that are displayed by the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

Browse reference manual

Opens a reference to the documentation of the XML element closest to the cursor position in a web browser.

Go to Definition

Moves the cursor to the definition of the current element.

Select submenu

This submenu allows you to select the following:

Element

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

Content

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

Parent

Selects the entire parent element at the current cursor position.

Text submenu

This submenu contains the following actions:

To Lower Case

Converts the selected content to lower case characters.

To Upper Case

Converts the selected content to upper case characters.

Capitalize Sentences

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected sentence.

Capitalize Words

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected word.

Count Words

Counts the number of words and characters (no spaces) in the entire document or in the selection for regular content and read-only content.

Note:
The content marked as deleted with *change tracking (on page 2234)* is ignored when counting words.

Convert Hexadecimal Sequence to Character (Ctrl + Shift + H (Command + Shift + H on macOS))

Converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character *(on page 274)*. The action can be invoked if there is a selection

containing a valid hexadecimal sequence or if the cursor is placed at the right side of a valid hexadecimal sequence. A valid hexadecimal sequence can be composed of 2 to 4 hexadecimal characters and may or may not be preceded by the `0x` or `0X` prefix. Examples of valid sequences and the characters they will be converted to:

- `0x0045` will be converted to `E`
- `0X0125` to `ĥ`
- `265` to `ɩ`
- `2190` to `←`

> **Note:**
> For more information about finding the hexadecimal value of a character, see Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent *(on page 276)*.

Refactoring submenu

Contains a series of actions designed to alter the XML structure of the document:

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected text in a comment, or removes the comment if it is commented.

Move Up (Alt + UpArrow (Option + UpArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes in front of the previous node.

Move Down (Alt + DownArrow (Option + DownArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes after the subsequent node.

Split Element

Splits the content of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. Thus, if the cursor is positioned at the beginning or at the end of the element, the newly created sibling will be empty.

Join Elements

Joins two adjacent *block elements (on page 2228)* that have the same name. The action is available only when the cursor position is between the two adjacent *block elements*. Also, joining two *block elements* can be done by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys and the cursor is positioned between the boundaries of these two elements.

Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)

Allows you to choose a tag to enclose a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Rename Element

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

Delete Element Tags

Deletes the tags of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. This operation is also executed if the start or end tags of an element are deleted by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys.

Remove All Markup

Removes all the XML markup inside the selected block of content and keeps only the text content.

Remove Text

Removes the text content of the selected block of content and keeps the markup intact with empty elements.

DITA-related Refactoring Actions

A variety of built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to DITA documents with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Change Topic ID to File Name

Use this operation to change the ID of a topic to be the same as its file name.

Convert CALS Tables to Simple Tables

Use this operation to convert DITA CALS tables to simple tables. If you invoke this operation from a nested table (a table inside a table), only the nested table will be affected. If it is invoked on a parent table that contains nested tables, all of the contained tables will be converted.

Convert conrefs to conkeyrefs

Use this operation to convert `@conref` attributes to `@conkeyref` attributes.

Convert Simple Tables to CALS Tables

Use this operation to convert DITA simple tables to CALS tables. If you invoke this operation from a nested table (a table inside a table), only the nested table will be affected. If it is invoked on a parent table that contains nested tables, all of the contained tables will be converted.

Convert to Concept

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Concept topic type (for example, Topic to Concept).

Convert to General Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA General Task topic type (for example, Task to General Task). A DITA *General Task* is a less restrictive alternative to the *Strict Task* information type.

Convert to Reference

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Reference topic type (for example, Topic to Reference).

Convert to Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Task topic type (for example, Topic to Task).

Convert to Topic

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Topic (for example, Task to Topic).

Convert to Troubleshooting

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Troubleshooting topic type (for example, Topic to Troubleshooting).

Rename Key

Available when invoked on a key, and can be used to quickly rename a key. It also updates all references to it. Note that it does not work on DITA 1.3 key scopes.

Generate IDs

Use this operation to automatically generate unique IDs for elements.

Attributes Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add/Change attribute

Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

Convert attribute to element

Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

Delete attribute

Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

Rename attribute

Allows you to rename an attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

Comments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete comments

Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

Elements Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete element

Allows you to delete elements.

Delete element content

Allows you to delete the content of elements.

Insert element

Allows you to insert new elements.

Rename element

Allows you to rename elements.

Unwrap element

Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

Wrap element

Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

Wrap element content

Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

Fragments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Insert XML fragment

Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

Replace element with XML fragment

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

Review submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Track Changes

Enables or disables the *Track Changes (on page 2234)* support for the current document.

Accept Change(s) and Move to Next

Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is accepted.

Accept All Changes

Accepts all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Reject Change(s) and Move to Next

Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is rejected.

Reject All Changes

Rejects all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when

hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Highlight

Enables the highlighting tool that allows you to mark text in your document.

Colors

Allows you to select the color for highlighting text.

Stop highlighting

Use this action to deactivate the highlighting tool.

Remove highlight(s)

Use this action to remove highlighting from the document.

Add Comment

Inserts a comment at the cursor position. The comment appears in a callout box and a tooltip (when hovering over the change).

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Manage Reviews

Opens the **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Manage IDs submenu

This submenu is available for topics that have an associated DTD or schema. It includes the following actions:

Rename in

Renames the ID and all its occurrences. Selecting this action opens the **Rename XML ID** dialog box. This dialog box lets you insert the new ID value and choose the scope of the rename operation.

Search References

Searches for the references of the ID. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 579)* dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

Search References in

Searches for the references of the ID. Selecting this action opens the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 579)*.

Search Occurrences in file

Searches for the occurrences of the ID in the current document.

Folding submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Toggle Fold

Toggles the state of the current fold.

Collapse Other Folds

Folds all the elements except the current element.

Collapse Child Folds

Folds the elements indented with one level inside the current element.

Expand Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad+ (Command + NumPad+ on macOS))

Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

Expand All

Unfolds all elements in the current document.

Inspect Styles

Opens the **CSS Inspector** view *(on page 391)* that allows you to examine the CSS rules that match the currently selected element.

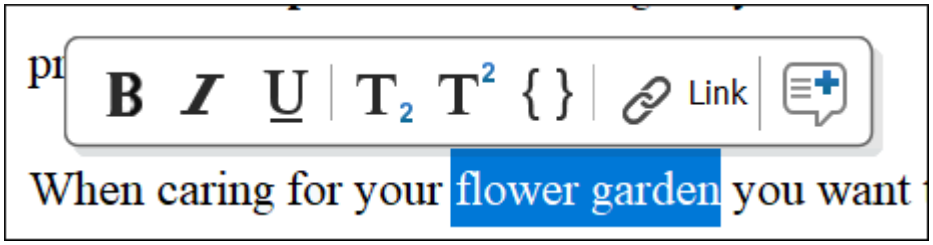
Options

Opens the Author mode preferences page *(on page 127)* where you can configure various options with regard to the **Author** editing mode.

Floating Contextual Toolbar for DITA

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a dynamic feature where certain editing contexts will trigger a floating toolbar with common actions that are available in the current editing context.

Figure 205. DITA Floating Contextual Toolbar



The *floating contextual toolbar* is automatically displayed when editing DITA documents in various situations, including:

- When a `<p>`, `<li>`, or `<shortdesc>` element has a selection inside, the floating toolbar includes actions such as **Bold**, **Italic**, **Underline**, a **Link** submenu, and more.
- When an `<image>` or `<xref>` element is selected:
  - If the element has an `@href` attribute, the floating toolbar includes a URL chooser where you can select the appropriate target.
  - If the element has a `@keyref` attribute, the floating toolbar includes a drop-down control where you can select the appropriate target key reference.
- When an `<object>` element is selected:
  - If the element has a `@data` attribute, the floating toolbar includes a URL chooser where you can select the appropriate target.
  - If the element has a `@datakeyref` attribute, the floating toolbar includes a drop-down control where you can select the appropriate target key reference.
- When an element with a `@conref` attribute is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for editing, removing, or replacing content references.
- When a `<codeblock>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes a drop-down control where you can select the value of the `@outputclass` attribute.
- When a `<ul>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for converting it to an ordered list or sorting the list.
- When an `<ol>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for converting it to an unordered list or sorting the list.
- When an `<li>` or `<step>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for moving the item up or down in the list/procedure.
- When a `<row>` or `<strow>` element is selected in a table, the floating toolbar includes various table-related actions (such as actions for editing table properties, inserting rows, or deleting rows).
- When an `<entry>` or `<stentry>` element is selected in a table, the floating toolbar includes various table-related actions (such as actions for editing table properties, inserting/deleting rows, or inserting/deleting columns).
- When a `<table>` or `<simpletable>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for editing table properties or sorting the table.
- In all cases, the **Add Comment** action is in the floating toolbar, allowing you to easily add comments to selected content.

DITA Drag/Drop (or Copy/Paste) Actions

Dragging a file from the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* or **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* and dropping it into a DITA document that is edited in **Author** mode, creates a link to the dragged file (the `<xref>` DITA element with the `@href` attribute) at the drop location. Copy and paste actions work the same.

You can also drag images or media files from your system explorer or the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and drop them into a DITA document (or copy and paste). This will insert the appropriate element at the drop

or paste location (for example, dropping/pasting an image will insert the DITA `<image>` element with an `@href` attribute).

Tip:
For information about customizing **Author** mode actions for a particular *framework (on page 2231)* (document type), see the Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)* section.

Related Information:
Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)*

DITA Map Document Type (Framework)

DITA maps (on page 2230) are documents that collect and organize references to DITA topics to indicate the relationships between the topics. They can be used as a container for topics used to transform a collection of content into a publication and they offer a sequence and structure to the topics. They can also serve as outlines or tables of contents for DITA deliverables and as build manifests for DITA projects. *DITA maps* allow scalable reuse of content across multiple contexts. Maps can reference topics or other maps, and can contain a variety of content types and metadata.

For much more detailed information, resources, and instructions, see the DITA Authoring *(on page 1869)* chapter.

File Definition

A file is considered to be a *DITA map* document when one of the following conditions are true:

- The root element name is one of the following: `<map>`, `<bookmap>`.
- The public ID of the document is `-//OASIS//DTD DITA Map` or `-//OASIS//DTD DITA BookMap`.
- The root element of the file has a `@class` attribute that contains the value `map/map` and a `@DITAArchVersion` attribute from the *http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/* namespace. This enhanced case of matching is only applied when the **Enable DTD/XML Schema processing in document type detection** option *(on page 82)* from the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 81)* is selected.

Default Document Templates

There are a variety of default *DITA map* templates available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 229)* and they can be found in various folders inside: **Framework Templates > DITA Map**.

The default templates for *DITA map* documents are located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/sita/templates/map` folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

Default schemas that are used if one is not detected in the *DITA map* document are stored in the various folders inside *DITA-OT-DIR*`/dtd/` or *DITA-OT-DIR*`/schema/`.

Default CSS

The default CSS files used for rendering DITA content in **Author** mode are stored in the various folders inside: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/dita/css/`.

By default, these default CSS files are merged with any that are specified in the document. For more information, see Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*.

Default XML Catalogs

The default *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)* for the *DITA map* document type are as follows:

- *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/dita/catalog.xml`
- *DITA-OT-DIR*`/catalog-dita.xml`

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes numerous built-in transformation scenarios that allow you to transform *DITA maps* to a variety of outputs, such as WebHelp, PDF, ODF, XHTML, EPUB, and CHM. All of them are listed in the **DITA Map** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

For more information, see the DITA Map Transformation Scenarios *(on page 2071)* section.

Resources

- DITA Specifications
- DITA Style Guide Best Practices for Authors
- Oxygen Video Tutorial: DITA Maps Manager

Related Information:

Selecting a Root Map *(on page 1897)*
DITA Authoring *(on page 1869)*
Getting Started with DITA *(on page 1870)*
Editing XML Documents in Author Mode *(on page 343)*
Editing XML Documents in Text Mode *(on page 282)*

DITA Map Author Mode Actions

A variety of actions are available for DITA map documents that can be found in **DITA** menu, toolbar, contextual menu, and the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

DITA Map Toolbar and Menu Actions

When a *DITA map* is opened in **Author** mode, the following default actions are available on the DITA Map toolbar (by default, they are also available in the **DITA** menu and in various submenus of the contextual menu):

Insert New DITA Resource

Opens a **New** DITA file dialog box *(on page 1946)* where you can choose the type of DITA document to create and inserts a reference to it at the current position within the map.

Insert Topic Reference

Opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* where you can configure a topic reference and inserts it at the current position within the map.

Insert Key Definition with Keyword

Opens a dialog box where you can choose the name of a key and its keyword value and inserts the key definition at the current position within the map.

Reuse Content

Opens the **Reuse Content** dialog box *(on page 2033)* that allows you to insert and configure a content reference (`@conref`), or a content key reference (`@conkeyref`) at the cursor position.

Insert Topic Heading

Opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* that allows you to insert a topic heading at the cursor position.

Insert Topic Group

Opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* that allows you to insert a topic group at the cursor position.

Insert Relationship Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure the relationship table to be inserted. The dialog box allows you to configure the number of rows and columns of the relationship table, if the header will be generated and if the title will be added.

Relationship Table Properties

Allows you to change the properties of rows in relationship tables.

Insert Relationship Row

Inserts a new table row with empty cells. The action is available when the cursor position is inside a table.

Insert Relationship Column

Inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. The action is available when the cursor position is inside a table.

Delete Relationship Column

Deletes the table column where the cursor is located.

Delete Relationship Row

Deletes the table row where the cursor is located.

Move Up

Moves the selected node up one position on its same level.

Move Down

Moves the selected node down one position on its same level.

Promote

Moves the selected node up one level to the level of its parent node.

Demote

Moves the selected node down one level to the level of its child nodes.

DITA Map Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available in the contextual menu when editing in **Author** mode (most of them are also available in the **DITA** menu at the top of the interface):

Edit Properties

Opens the **Edit Properties** dialog box that allows you to configure the properties of a selected node. For more details about this dialog box, see Edit Properties Dialog Box *(on page 1916)*.

Cut (Ctrl + X (Command + X on macOS))

Removes the currently selected content from the document and places it in the clipboard.

Copy (Ctrl + C (Command + C on macOS))

Places a copy of the currently selected content in the clipboard.

The clipboard contains the precise node structure that is preserved when pasting to another location within the same document or to another document opened in the **Author** mode. The copied content contains an HTML flavor that attempts to convert the copied structure to plain HTML, which can be useful for preserving the styles when pasting into editors such as MS Word.

Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on macOS))

Inserts the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.

Paste special submenu

This submenu includes the following special paste actions that are specific to the DITA *framework*:

Paste as content reference

Inserts a content reference (a DITA element with a `@conref` attribute) to the DITA XML element from the clipboard. An entire DITA XML element with an ID attribute must be present in the clipboard when the action is invoked. The `conref` attribute will point to this ID value.

Paste as content key reference

Allows you to indirectly reference content using the `@conkeyref` attribute. When the DITA content is processed, the key references are resolved using key definitions from *DITA maps (on page 2230)*. To use this action, you must first do the following:

1. Make sure the DITA element that contains the copied content has an ID attribute assigned to it.
2. In the **DITA Maps Manager** view, make sure that the **Context** combo box points to the correct map that stores the keys.
3. Make sure the topic that contains the content you want to reference has a key assigned to it. To assign a key, right-click the topic with its parent map opened in the **DITA Maps Manager**, select **Edit Properties**, and enter a value in the **Keys** field.

Paste as link

Looks for the first element with an ID value in the clipboard and inserts an `<xref>` that points to that element. If no elements with an ID value are found, a message will appear that informs you that to use this action, the clipboard contents must include at least one element with a declared ID.

Paste as link (keyref)

Inserts a link to the element that you want to reference. To use this action, you must first do the following:

1. Make sure the DITA element that contains the copied content has an ID attribute assigned to it.
2. In the **DITA Maps Manager** view, make sure that the **Context** combo box points to the correct map that stores the keys.
3. Make sure the topic that contains the content you want to reference has a key assigned to it. To assign a key, right-click the topic with its parent map opened in the **DITA Maps Manager**, select **Edit Properties**, and enter a value in the **Keys** field.

Insert submenu

This submenu includes the following insert actions that are specific to the DITA Map *framework*:

Insert New DITA Resource

Opens a **New** DITA file dialog box *(on page 1946)* where you can choose the type of DITA document to create and inserts a reference to it at the current position within the map.

Insert Topic Reference

Opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* where you can configure a topic reference and inserts it at the current position within the map.

Insert Key Definition with Keyword

Opens a dialog box where you can choose the name of a key and its keyword value and inserts the key definition at the current position within the map.

Reuse Content

Opens the **Reuse Content** dialog box *(on page 2033)* that allows you to insert and configure a content reference (`@conref`), or a content key reference (`@conkeyref`) at the cursor position.

Insert Topic Heading

Opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* that allows you to insert a topic heading at the cursor position.

Insert Topic Group

Opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* that allows you to insert a topic group at the cursor position.

Insert Entity

Allows you to insert a predefined entity or character entity. Surrogate character entities (range #x10000 to #x10FFFF) are also accepted. Character entities can be entered in one of the following forms:

- #<*decimal value*> - e.g. #65
- &#<*decimal value*> - e.g. &#65
- #x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. #x41
- &#x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. &#x41

Relationship Table > Insert Relationship Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure the relationship table to be inserted. The dialog box allows you to configure the number of rows and columns of the relationship table, if the header will be generated and if the title will be added.

Generate IDs

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin generates unique IDs for the current element (or elements), depending on how the action is invoked:

- When invoked on a single selection, an ID is generated for the selected element at the cursor position.
- When invoked on a block of selected content, IDs are generated for all top-level elements and elements listed in the **ID Options** dialog box that are found in the current selection.

Note:
The **Generate IDs** action does not overwrite existing ID values. It only affects elements that do not already have an `@id` attribute.

Search References

Finds the references to the `@href` or `@keys` attribute value of the topic/map reference element at the current cursor position, in all the topics from the current *DITA map* (opened in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*). The current topic/map reference element must have an `@href` or `@keys` attribute defined to complete the search.

Show Key Definition

Available for elements that have a `@conkeyref` or `@keyref` attribute set (or elements with an ancestor element that has a `@conkeyref` or `@keyref` attribute). It computes the key name and opens the *DITA map (on page 2230)* that contains the definition of the key with the element that defines that key selected.

Select submenu

This submenu allows you to select the following:

Element

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

Content

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

Parent

Selects the entire parent element at the current cursor position.

Text submenu

This submenu contains the following actions:

To Lower Case

Converts the selected content to lower case characters.

To Upper Case

Converts the selected content to upper case characters.

Capitalize Sentences

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected sentence.

Capitalize Words

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected word.

Count Words

Counts the number of words and characters (no spaces) in the entire document or in the selection for regular content and read-only content.

> **Note:**
> The content marked as deleted with *change tracking (on page 2234)* is ignored when counting words.

Convert Hexadecimal Sequence to Character (Ctrl + Shift + H (Command + Shift + H on macOS))

Converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character *(on page 274)*. The action can be invoked if there is a selection containing a valid hexadecimal sequence or if the cursor is placed at the right side of a valid hexadecimal sequence. A valid hexadecimal sequence can be composed of 2 to 4 hexadecimal characters and may or may not be preceded by the `0x` or `0X` prefix. Examples of valid sequences and the characters they will be converted to:

- `0x0045` will be converted to `E`
- `0X0125` to `ĥ`
- `265` to `ɩ`
- `2190` to `←`

> **Note:**
> For more information about finding the hexadecimal value of a character, see Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent *(on page 276)*.

Refactoring submenu

Contains a series of actions designed to alter the XML structure of the document:

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected text in a comment, or removes the comment if it is commented.

Move Up (Alt + UpArrow (Option + UpArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes in front of the previous node.

Move Down (Alt + DownArrow (Option + DownArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes after the subsequent node.

Split Element

Splits the content of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. Thus, if the cursor is positioned at the beginning or at the end of the element, the newly created sibling will be empty.

Join Elements

Joins two adjacent *block elements (on page 2228)* that have the same name. The action is available only when the cursor position is between the two adjacent *block elements*. Also, joining two *block elements* can be done by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys and the cursor is positioned between the boundaries of these two elements.

Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)

Allows you to choose a tag to enclose a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Rename Element

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

Delete Element Tags

Deletes the tags of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. This operation is also executed if the start or end tags of an element are deleted by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys.

Remove All Markup

Removes all the XML markup inside the selected block of content and keeps only the text content.

Remove Text

Removes the text content of the selected block of content and keeps the markup intact with empty elements.

Attributes Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add/Change attribute

Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

Convert attribute to element

Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

Delete attribute

Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

Rename attribute

Allows you to rename an attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

Comments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete comments

Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

Elements Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete element

Allows you to delete elements.

Delete element content

Allows you to delete the content of elements.

Insert element

Allows you to insert new elements.

Rename element

Allows you to rename elements.

Unwrap element

Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

Wrap element

Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

Wrap element content

Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

Fragments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Insert XML fragment

Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

Replace element with XML fragment

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

Review submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Track Changes

Enables or disables the *Track Changes (on page 2234)* support for the current document.

Accept Change(s) and Move to Next

Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is accepted.

Accept All Changes

Accepts all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Reject Change(s) and Move to Next

Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is rejected.

Reject All Changes

Rejects all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Highlight

Enables the highlighting tool that allows you to mark text in your document.

Colors

Allows you to select the color for highlighting text.

Stop highlighting

Use this action to deactivate the highlighting tool.

Remove highlight(s)

Use this action to remove highlighting from the document.

Add Comment

Inserts a comment at the cursor position. The comment appears in a callout box and a tooltip (when hovering over the change).

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Manage Reviews

Opens the **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Folding submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Toggle Fold

Toggles the state of the current fold.

Collapse Other Folds

Folds all the elements except the current element.

Collapse Child Folds

Folds the elements indented with one level inside the current element.

Expand Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad+ (Command + NumPad+ on macOS))

Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

Expand All

Unfolds all elements in the current document.

About Element > Go to Definition

Moves the cursor to the definition of the current element.

Inspect Styles

Opens the **CSS Inspector** view *(on page 391)* that allows you to examine the CSS rules that match the currently selected element.

Options

Opens the Author mode preferences page *(on page 127)* where you can configure various options with regard to the **Author** editing mode.

Floating Contextual Toolbar for DITA

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a dynamic feature where certain editing contexts will trigger a floating toolbar with common actions that are available in the current editing context.

The *floating contextual toolbar* is automatically displayed when editing DITA map documents when a `<topicref>` element is selected and it includes actions for moving the topic reference node up or down (or promoting/demoting the node).

DITA Map Drag/Drop Actions

Dragging a file from the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* or **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* and dropping it into a *DITA map* document that is edited in **Author** mode creates a link to the dragged file (a `<topicref>` element, `<chapter>`, `<part>`, etc.) at the drop location.

Opening a Topic from a DITA Map in Author Mode

If a *DITA map* is open in the **Author** visual editing mode, you can open a referenced topic by clicking the icon to the left of the particular topic. The source topic is opened in a new tab in the main editor.

Tip:
For information about customizing **Author** mode actions for a particular *framework (on page 2231)* (document type), see the Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)* section.

Related Information:
Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)*

S1000D® Document Type (Framework)

S1000D® is an international specification for the procurement and production of technical publications (mainly used in aerospace and aviation industries). It is an XML-based specification for preparing, managing, and using equipment maintenance and operations information.

S1000D® has a modular architecture based on the following components:

- **Data Module** - An XML-based, uniquely identified unit of information that can be managed, reused, and exchanged independently within the S1000D environment.
- **Data Module Structure** - Describes the internal organization of a *Data Module*, typically divided into:
  - The *Identification* and *Status* part that identifies the *Data Module* within the CSDB structure.
  - The *Content* part that is the detailed information of the *Data Module*.
- **Common Source DataBase (CSDB)** - The managed repository where S1000D objects (such as *Data Modules*, *Publication Modules*, and illustrations) are stored, controlled, and related to each other, and from which publications are assembled.
- **Business Rules Exchange (BREX)** - A specialized *Data Module* that defines project- or organization-specific business rules governing how S1000D is applied, and against which other *Data Modules* can be checked for conformance.
- **Publication Module (PM)** - An XML-based control file that defines the structure, sequence, and inclusion of *Data Modules* in a deliverable publication, effectively acting as the publication's table of contents.
- **Information Control Number (ICN)** - A unique identifier assigned to illustrations and other multimedia objects, so they can be managed and referenced as standalone entities within the *CSDB*.
- **Data Dispatch Note (DDN)** - A control document used to describe, package, and manage the exchange of *Data Modules* and related S1000D objects between organizations or systems.
- **Data Module Requirement List (DMRL)** - A structured list of required *Data Modules* for a project, used as a planning and tracking tool before and during authoring.
- **Comment** - A Data Module type used to record review comments, feedback, or annotations that reference one or more existing *Data Modules*.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes built-in support for **S1000D**. You can work with S1000D issues 4.0, 4.1, and 4.2 using built-in support for editing, visual authoring, templates, BREX handling, and smart paste.

Default Document Templates

You can get assistance with creating new S1000D® Data Modules or Publication Modules for issues 4.0, 4.1, and 4.2 by using the provided file templates available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 229)*.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

The default schemas used for validation and content completion are stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/s1000d-base/` (with separate folders for each supported issue).

S1000D document editing features include schema-guiding, validation, and content completion support. Also, documentation for S1000D elements and attributes can be viewed directly in the content completion window and in the **Attributes** view.

Author Mode Actions

S1000D documents can be edited in the **Author** visual editing mode, while switching between full-width, print preview, or large-font styles. The following dedicated actions are available in the toolbar when editing S1000D documents:

Bold

Surrounds the selected text with an *emphasis* element with `emphasisType="em01"` (bold).

Italic

Surrounds the selected text with an *emphasis* element with `emphasisType="em02"` (italic).

Underline

Surrounds the selected text with an *emphasis* element with `emphasisType="em03"` (underline).

Overline

Surrounds the selected text with an *emphasis* element with `emphasisType="em04"` (overline).

Strikethrough

Surrounds the selected text with an *emphasis* element with `emphasisType="em05"` (strikethrough).

Subscript

Surrounds the selected text with a *subscript* element, used for inserting a character (number, letter, or symbol) that will appear slightly below the baseline and slightly smaller than the rest of the text.

Superscript

Surrounds the selected text with a *superscript* element, used for inserting a character (number, letter, or symbol) that will appear slightly above the baseline and slightly smaller than the rest of the text.

Insert List Item

Inserts a list item in the current list type.

Insert Sequential List

Inserts a sequential list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default.

Insert Simple Random List

Inserts a simple random (unordered) list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default.

Insert Unordered Random List

Inserts an unordered random list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default.

Insert Definition List

Inserts a definition list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default.

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed.

Insert Row

Inserts a new table row with empty cells below the current row. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Delete Row

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Insert Column

Inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Delete Column

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected table cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

BREX Editing and Transformation

BREX modules can be edited in the **Text** or **Author** mode with content completion and validation support. You can also convert BREX modules to Schematron using the provided transformation scenario.

Smart Paste

Content can be copied from web browsers or Word documents and pasted into S1000D documents while preserving structure and formatting.

Note:
To display the CGM images that are commonly used in S1000D documents, you have to install the CGM Add-on.

If you want more advanced **S1000D** editing features, you can ask some of our partners.

XHTML Document Type (Framework)

The Extensible HyperText Markup Language (XHTML), is a markup language that has the same depth of expression as HTML, but also conforms to XML syntax.

File Definition

A file is considered to be an XHTML document when the root element is `<html>`.

Default Document Templates

There are a variety of default *XHTML* templates available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 229)* and they can be found in: **Framework Templates > XHTML**.

The default templates for XHTML documents are located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/xhtml/templates/` folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

Default schemas that are used if one is not detected in the XHTML file are stored in the following locations:

- XHTML 1.0 - *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/xhtml/dtd/` or *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/xhtml/nvdl/`.
- XHTML 1.1 - *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/xhtml11/dtd/` or *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/xhtml11/schema/`.
- XHTML 5 - *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/xhtml/xhtml5 (epub3)/`.

Default CSS

The default CSS files used for rendering XHTML content in **Author** mode are stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/xhtml/css/`.

By default, these default CSS files are merged with any that are specified in the document. For more information, see Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*.

Default XML Catalogs

The default *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)* for the XHTML document type are as follows:

- `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/xhtml/dtd/xhtmlcatalog.xml`
- `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/relaxng/catalog.xml`
- `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/nvdl/catalog.xml`
- `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/xhtml11/dtd/xhtmlcatalog.xml`
- `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/xhtml11/schema/xhtmlcatalog.xml`
- `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/xhtml5 (epub3)/catalog-compat.xml`

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes built-in transformation scenarios that allow you to transform XHTML documents to several types of DITA document types (topic, task, concept, reference). They can be found in the **XHTML** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

Related information

Editing HTML Documents *(on page 622)*
Editing XML Documents in Text Mode *(on page 282)*
Editing XML Documents in Author Mode *(on page 343)*
Adding Tables in XHTML Documents *(on page 459)*
XHTML Specifications

XHTML Validation

XHTML documents can be validated in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin using the same validation features as with any other XML document. In addition, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in validator engine (**W3C XHTML Validator**) based upon the *W3C Nu HTML Checker* that can be used to validate HTML or XHTML documents.

To use the **W3C XHTML Validator** engine:

1. Create or edit a validation scenario (e.g. select the **Configure Validation Scenario(s)** from the toolbar).
2. Change the **File type** column to *XML Document* and select *W3C XHTML Validator* in the **Validation engine** column.
3. Click **OK** and **Apply Associated** to run the validation.

Related information

W3C Nu HTML Checker
Validating XML Documents *(on page 523)*

XHTML Author Mode Actions

A variety of actions are available for XHTML documents that can be found in **XHTML** menu, toolbar, contextual menu, and the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

XHTML Toolbar Actions

The following default actions are available on the XHTML toolbar when editing in **Author** mode (by default, they are also available in the **XHTML** menu and some of them are in various submenus of the contextual menu):

Bold

Changes the style of the selected text to *bold* by surrounding it with the `<b>` tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Italic

Changes the style of the selected text to *italic* by surrounding it with `<i>` tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Underline

Changes the style of the selected text to *underline* by surrounding it with `<u>` tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Link

Inserts an `<a>` element with an `@href` attribute at the cursor position. You can type the URL of the reference you want to insert or use the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down menu.

Insert Image

Inserts a graphic object at the cursor position. This is done by inserting an `<img>` element regardless of the current context. The following graphical formats are supported: GIF, JPG, JPEG, BMP, PNG, SVG.

Insert Media Resource

Opens a **Choose Media** dialog box *(on page 496)* that allows you to select the URL of a media object to be inserted into a document at the cursor position. The result will be that a reference to the specified video, audio, or embedded HTML frame is inserted and rendered in **Author** mode so that it can be played directly from there.

Headings Drop-down Menu

A drop-down menu that includes actions for inserting `<h1>`, `<h2>`, `<h3>`, `<h4>`, `<h5>`, `<h6>` elements.

Insert Paragraph

Insert a new paragraph element at current cursor position.

Insert Equation

Opens the **XML Fragment Editor** that allows you to insert and edit MathML notations *(on page 498)*.

Insert List Item

Inserts a list item in the current list type.

Insert Unordered List

Inserts an unordered list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an unordered list.

Insert Ordered List

Inserts an ordered list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an ordered list.

Insert Definition List

Inserts a definition list (`<dl>` element) with one list item (a `<dt>` child element and a `<dd>` child element). You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to a definition list.

Sort

Sorts cells or list items in a table.

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs, lists, and inline content (mixed content, text plus markup, that is rendered inside a *block element (on page 2228)*) into a table, with the selected content inserted in the first column, starting from the first row after the header (if a header is inserted).

> **Note:**
> If the selection contains a mixture of elements that cannot be converted, you will receive an error message saying that **Only lists, paragraphs, or inline content can be converted to tables**.

Insert Row

Inserts a new table row with empty cells below the current row. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Insert Row Above

Inserts a new table row with empty cells above the current row. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Insert Column

Inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Insert Cell

Inserts a new empty cell depending on the current context. If the cursor is positioned between two cells, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin a new cell at the cursor position. If the cursor is inside a cell, the new cell is created after the current cell.

Delete Column(s)

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Delete Row(s)

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

XHTML Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available in the contextual menu when editing in **Author** mode (most of them are also available in the **XHTML** menu at the top of the interface):

Edit Attributes

Displays an in-place attributes editor *(on page 383)* that allows you to manage the attributes of an element.

Edit Profiling Attributes

Allows you to change the profiling attributes *(on page 419)* defined on all selected elements.

Cut (Ctrl + X (Command + X on macOS))

Removes the currently selected content from the document and places it in the clipboard.

Copy (Ctrl + C (Command + C on macOS))

Places a copy of the currently selected content in the clipboard.

The clipboard contains the precise node structure that is preserved when pasting to another location within the same document or to another document opened in the **Author** mode. The copied content contains an HTML flavor that attempts to convert the copied structure to plain HTML, which can be useful for preserving the styles when pasting into editors such as MS Word.

Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on macOS))

Inserts the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.

Image Map Editor

This action is available in the contextual menu when it is invoked on an image. This action applies an *image map* to the current image (if one does not already exist) and opens the **Image Map Editor** dialog box. This feature allows you to create hyperlinks in specific areas of an image that will link to various destinations.

Insert submenu

This submenu includes the following insert actions:

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs, lists, and inline content (mixed content, text plus markup, that is rendered inside a *block element (on page 2228)*) into a table, with the selected content inserted in the first column, starting from the first row after the header (if a header is inserted).

> **Note:**
> If the selection contains a mixture of elements that cannot be converted, you will receive an error message saying that **Only lists, paragraphs, or inline content can be converted to tables**.

Insert Link

Inserts an `<a>` element with an `@href` attribute at the cursor position. You can type the URL of the reference you want to insert or use the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down menu.

Insert Image

Inserts an image reference *(on page 468)* at the cursor position. Depending on the current location, an image-type element is inserted.

Insert Media Resource

Opens a **Choose Media** dialog box *(on page 496)* that allows you to select the URL of a media object to be inserted into a document at the cursor position. The result will be that a reference to the specified video, audio, or embedded HTML frame is inserted and rendered in **Author** mode so that it can be played directly from there.

Insert Equation

Opens the **XML Fragment Editor** that allows you to insert and edit MathML notations *(on page 498)*.

Insert Paragraph

Inserts a new *paragraph* element at current cursor position.

Headings Drop-down Menu

A drop-down menu that includes actions for inserting `<h1>`, `<h2>`, `<h3>`, `<h4>`, `<h5>`, `<h6>` elements.

Insert Entity

Allows you to insert a predefined entity or character entity. Surrogate character entities (range #x10000 to #x10FFFF) are also accepted. Character entities can be entered in one of the following forms:

- #<*decimal value*> - e.g. #65
- &#<*decimal value*> - e.g. &#65
- #x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. #x41
- &#x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. &#x41

Style submenu

This submenu includes the following text styling actions:

Bold

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with a *bold* tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Italic

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with an *italic* tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Underline

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with an *underline* tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Subscript

Surrounds the selected text with a *subscript* tag, used for inserting a character (number, letter, or symbol) that will appear slightly below the baseline and slightly smaller than the rest of the text.

Superscript

Surrounds the selected text with a *superscript* tag, used for inserting a character (number, letter, or symbol) that will appear slightly above the baseline and slightly smaller than the rest of the text.

Table actions

The following table editing actions are available in the contextual menu when it is invoked on a table:

Insert Rows

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert any number of rows and specify the position where they will be inserted (**Above** or **Below** the current row).

Delete Row(s)

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Insert Columns

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert any number of columns and specify the position where they will be inserted (**Above** or **Below** the current column).

Delete Column(s)

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

Sort

Sorts cells or list items in a table.

Table Properties

Opens the **Table properties** dialog box that allows you to configure properties of a table (such as frame borders).

Other Actions submenu

This submenu give you access to all the usual contextual menu actions.

Select submenu

This submenu allows you to select the following:

Element

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

Content

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

Parent

Selects the entire parent element at the current cursor position.

Text submenu

This submenu contains the following actions:

To Lower Case

Converts the selected content to lower case characters.

To Upper Case

Converts the selected content to upper case characters.

Capitalize Sentences

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected sentence.

Capitalize Words

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected word.

Count Words

Counts the number of words and characters (no spaces) in the entire document or in the selection for regular content and read-only content.

Note:
The content marked as deleted with *change tracking (on page 2234)* is ignored when counting words.

Convert Hexadecimal Sequence to Character (Ctrl + Shift + H (Command + Shift + H on macOS))

Converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character *(on page 274)*. The action can be invoked if there is a selection containing a valid hexadecimal sequence or if the cursor is placed at the right side of a valid hexadecimal sequence. A valid hexadecimal sequence can be composed of 2 to 4 hexadecimal characters and may or may not be preceded by the `0x` or `0X` prefix. Examples of valid sequences and the characters they will be converted to:

- `0x0045` will be converted to `E`
- `0X0125` to `ĥ`
- `265` to `ŋ`

- `2190` to `←`

> **Note:**
> For more information about finding the hexadecimal value of a character, see Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent *(on page 276)*.

Refactoring submenu

Contains a series of actions designed to alter the XML structure of the document:

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected text in a comment, or removes the comment if it is commented.

Move Up (Alt + UpArrow (Option + UpArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes in front of the previous node.

Move Down (Alt + DownArrow (Option + DownArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes after the subsequent node.

Split Element

Splits the content of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. Thus, if the cursor is positioned at the beginning or at the end of the element, the newly created sibling will be empty.

Join Elements

Joins two adjacent *block elements (on page 2228)* that have the same name. The action is available only when the cursor position is between the two adjacent *block elements*. Also, joining two *block elements* can be done by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys and the cursor is positioned between the boundaries of these two elements.

Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)

Allows you to choose a tag to enclose a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Rename Element

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

Delete Element Tags

Deletes the tags of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. This operation is also executed if the start or end tags of an element are deleted by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys.

Remove All Markup

Removes all the XML markup inside the selected block of content and keeps only the text content.

Remove Text

Removes the text content of the selected block of content and keeps the markup intact with empty elements.

Attributes Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add/Change attribute

Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

Convert attribute to element

Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

Delete attribute

Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

Rename attribute

Allows you to rename an attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

Comments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete comments

Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

Elements Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete element

Allows you to delete elements.

Delete element content

Allows you to delete the content of elements.

Insert element

Allows you to insert new elements.

Rename element

Allows you to rename elements.

Unwrap element

Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

Wrap element

Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

Wrap element content

Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

Fragments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Insert XML fragment

Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

Replace element with XML fragment

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

Review submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Track Changes

Enables or disables the *Track Changes (on page 2234)* support for the current document.

Accept Change(s) and Move to Next

Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is accepted.

Accept All Changes

Accepts all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Reject Change(s) and Move to Next

Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is rejected.

Reject All Changes

Rejects all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Highlight

Enables the highlighting tool that allows you to mark text in your document.

Colors

Allows you to select the color for highlighting text.

Stop highlighting

Use this action to deactivate the highlighting tool.

Remove highlight(s)

Use this action to remove highlighting from the document.

Add Comment

Inserts a comment at the cursor position. The comment appears in a callout box and a tooltip (when hovering over the change).

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Manage Reviews

Opens the **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Folding submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Toggle Fold

Toggles the state of the current fold.

Collapse Other Folds

Folds all the elements except the current element.

Collapse Child Folds

Folds the elements indented with one level inside the current element.

Expand Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad+ (Command + NumPad+ on macOS))

Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

Expand All

Unfolds all elements in the current document.

About Element > Go to Definition

Moves the cursor to the definition of the current element.

Inspect Styles

Opens the **CSS Inspector** view *(on page 391)* that allows you to examine the CSS rules that match the currently selected element.

Options

Opens the Author mode preferences page *(on page 127)* where you can configure various options with regard to the **Author** editing mode.

XHTML Drag/Drop (or Copy/Paste) Actions

Dragging a file from the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and dropping it into an XHTML document that is edited in **Author** mode, creates a link to the dragged file (the `<a>` element with the `@href` attribute) at the drop location. Copy and paste actions work the same.

You can also drag images or media files from your system explorer or the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and drop them into an XHTML document (or copy and paste). This will insert the appropriate element at the drop or paste location (for example, dropping/pasting an image will insert the `<img>` element with the `@src` attribute).

Tip:
For information about customizing **Author** mode actions for a particular *framework (on page 2231)* (document type), see the Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)* section.

Related Information:
Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)*

TEI P5 Document Type (Framework)

The *TEI (Text Encoding Initiative)* document type is an international and interdisciplinary standard that enables libraries, museums, publishers, and individual scholars to represent a variety of literary and linguistic texts for online research, teaching, and preservation.

File Definition

A file is considered to be a TEI P5 document when one of the following conditions are true:

- The document namespace is *http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0*.
- The public ID of the document is *-//TEI P5*.

Default Document Templates

There are a variety of default *TEI P5* templates available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 229)* and they can be found in: **Framework Templates > TEI P5**.

The default templates for TEI P5 documents are located in the `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/tei/templates/TEI P5` folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

The default schema that is used if one is not detected in the TEI P5 document is `tei_all.rng` and it is stored in `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/custom/schema/relaxng/`.

Default CSS

The default CSS files used for rendering TEI content in **Author** mode are stored in `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/css/`.

By default, these default CSS files are merged with any that are specified in the document. For more information, see Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*.

Default XML Catalogs

The default *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)* for the TEI P5 document type are as follows:

- *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/schema/dtd/catalog.xml
- *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/custom/schema/dtd/catalog.xml
- *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/stylesheet/catalog.xml

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes built-in transformation scenarios that allow you to transform TEI P5 documents to a variety of outputs, such as PDF, XHTML, EPUB, DOCX, and ODT. They can be found in the **TEI P5** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

Resources

- Oxygen Video Tutorial: Editing TEI Documents in Author Mode
- TEI: P5 Guidelines

Related Information:
Editing XML Documents in Author Mode *(on page 343)*
Editing XML Documents in Text Mode *(on page 282)*
Adding Tables in TEI Documents *(on page 462)*

TEI P5 Author Mode Actions

A variety of actions are available for TEI P5 documents that can be found in **TEI P5** menu, toolbar, contextual menu, and the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

TEI P5 Toolbar Actions

The following default actions are available on the TEI P5 toolbar when editing in **Author** mode (by default, they are also available in the **TEI P5** menu and some of them are in various submenus of the contextual menu):

Bold

Changes the style of the selected text to *bold* by surrounding it with the `<hi>` tag and setting the `@rend` attribute to *bold*. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Italic

Changes the style of the selected text to *italic* by surrounding it with the `<hi>` tag and setting the `@rend` attribute to *italic*. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Underline

Changes the style of the selected text to *underline* by surrounding it with the `<hi>` tag and setting the `@rend` attribute to *ul*. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Insert Section

Inserts a new section or subsection, depending on the current context. For example, if the current context is `div1`, then a `div2` is inserted. By default, this action also inserts a paragraph element as a child node.

Insert Paragraph

Insert a new paragraph element at current cursor position.

Insert Image

Inserts an image reference *(on page 468)* at the cursor position. Depending on the current location, an image-type element is inserted.

Insert List Item

Inserts a list item in the current list type.

Insert Ordered List

Inserts an ordered list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an ordered list.

Insert Itemized List

Inserts an itemized list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an itemized list.

Sort

Sorts cells or list items in a table.

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs, lists, and inline content (mixed content, text plus markup, that is rendered inside a *block element (on page 2228)*) into a table, with the selected content inserted in the first column, starting from the first row after the header (if a header is inserted).

> **Note:**
> If the selection contains a mixture of elements that cannot be converted, you will receive an error message saying that **Only lists, paragraphs, or inline content can be converted to tables**.

Insert Row

Inserts a new table row with empty cells below the current row. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Insert Column

Inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Insert Cell

Inserts a new empty cell depending on the current context. If the cursor is positioned between two cells, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin a new cell at the cursor position. If the cursor is inside a cell, the new cell is created after the current cell.

Delete Column(s)

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Delete Row(s)

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

TEI Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available in the contextual menu when editing in **Author** mode (most of them are also available in the **TEI P5** menu at the top of the interface):

Edit Attributes

Displays an in-place attributes editor *(on page 383)* that allows you to manage the attributes of an element.

Edit Profiling Attributes

Allows you to change the profiling attributes *(on page 419)* defined on all selected elements.

Cut (Ctrl + X (Command + X on macOS))

Removes the currently selected content from the document and places it in the clipboard.

Copy (Ctrl + C (Command + C on macOS))

Places a copy of the currently selected content in the clipboard.

The clipboard contains the precise node structure that is preserved when pasting to another location within the same document or to another document opened in the **Author** mode. The copied content contains an HTML flavor that attempts to convert the copied structure to plain HTML, which can be useful for preserving the styles when pasting into editors such as MS Word.

Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on macOS))

Inserts the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.

Image Map Editor

This action is available in the contextual menu when it is invoked on an image. This action applies an *image map* to the current image (if one does not already exist) and opens the **Image Map Editor** dialog box. This feature allows you to create hyperlinks in specific areas of an image that will link to various destinations.

Insert submenu

This submenu includes the following insert actions:

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs, lists, and inline content (mixed content, text plus markup, that is rendered inside a *block element (on page 2228)*) into a table, with the selected content inserted in the first column, starting from the first row after the header (if a header is inserted).

> **Note:**
> If the selection contains a mixture of elements that cannot be converted, you will receive an error message saying that **Only lists, paragraphs, or inline content can be converted to tables**.

Insert Image

Inserts an image reference *(on page 468)* at the cursor position. Depending on the current location, an image-type element is inserted.

Insert Paragraph

Inserts a new *paragraph* element at current cursor position.

Insert Section

Inserts a new *section* element in the document, depending on the current context.

Insert Entity

Allows you to insert a predefined entity or character entity. Surrogate character entities (range #x10000 to #x10FFFF) are also accepted. Character entities can be entered in one of the following forms:

- #<*decimal value*> - e.g. #65
- &#<*decimal value*> - e.g. &#65

- #x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. #x41
- &#x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. &#x41

Generate IDs

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin generates unique IDs for the current element (or elements), depending on how the action is invoked:

- When invoked on a single selection, an ID is generated for the selected element at the cursor position.
- When invoked on a block of selected content, IDs are generated for all top-level elements and elements listed in the **ID Options** dialog box that are found in the current selection.

Note:
The **Generate IDs** action does not overwrite existing ID values. It only affects elements that do not already have an `@id` attribute.

Table actions

The following table editing actions are available in the contextual menu when it is invoked on a table:

Insert Rows

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert any number of rows and specify the position where they will be inserted (**Above** or **Below** the current row).

Delete Row(s)

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Insert Columns

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert any number of columns and specify the position where they will be inserted (**Above** or **Below** the current column).

Delete Column(s)

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

Sort

Sorts cells or list items in a table.

Table Properties

Opens the **Table properties** dialog box that allows you to configure properties of a table (such as frame borders).

Other Actions submenu

This submenu give you access to all the usual contextual menu actions.

Select submenu

This submenu allows you to select the following:

Element

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

Content

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

Parent

Selects the entire parent element at the current cursor position.

Text submenu

This submenu contains the following actions:

To Lower Case

Converts the selected content to lower case characters.

To Upper Case

Converts the selected content to upper case characters.

Capitalize Sentences

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected sentence.

Capitalize Words

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected word.

Count Words

Counts the number of words and characters (no spaces) in the entire document or in the selection for regular content and read-only content.

Note:
The content marked as deleted with *change tracking (on page 2234)* is ignored when counting words.

Convert Hexadecimal Sequence to Character (Ctrl + Shift + H (Command + Shift + H on macOS))

Converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character *(on page 274)*. The action can be invoked if there is a selection containing a valid hexadecimal sequence or if the cursor is placed at the right side of a valid hexadecimal sequence. A valid hexadecimal sequence can be composed of 2 to 4 hexadecimal characters and may or may not be preceded by the `0x` or `0X` prefix. Examples of valid sequences and the characters they will be converted to:

- `0x0045` will be converted to `E`
- `0X0125` to `ĥ`
- `265` to `ɩ`
- `2190` to `←`

> **Note:**
> For more information about finding the hexadecimal value of a character, see Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent *(on page 276)*.

Refactoring submenu

Contains a series of actions designed to alter the XML structure of the document:

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected text in a comment, or removes the comment if it is commented.

Move Up (Alt + UpArrow (Option + UpArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes in front of the previous node.

Move Down (Alt + DownArrow (Option + DownArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes after the subsequent node.

Split Element

Splits the content of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. Thus, if the cursor is positioned at the beginning or at the end of the element, the newly created sibling will be empty.

Join Elements

Joins two adjacent *block elements (on page 2228)* that have the same name. The action is available only when the cursor position is between the two adjacent *block elements*. Also, joining two *block elements* can be done by pressing the **Delete** or

Backspace keys and the cursor is positioned between the boundaries of these two elements.

Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)

Allows you to choose a tag to enclose a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Rename Element

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

Delete Element Tags

Deletes the tags of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. This operation is also executed if the start or end tags of an element are deleted by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys.

Remove All Markup

Removes all the XML markup inside the selected block of content and keeps only the text content.

Remove Text

Removes the text content of the selected block of content and keeps the markup intact with empty elements.

Attributes Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add/Change attribute

Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

Convert attribute to element

Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

Delete attribute

Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

Rename attribute

Allows you to rename an attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

Comments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete comments

Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

Elements Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete element

Allows you to delete elements.

Delete element content

Allows you to delete the content of elements.

Insert element

Allows you to insert new elements.

Rename element

Allows you to rename elements.

Unwrap element

Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

Wrap element

Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

Wrap element content

Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

Fragments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Insert XML fragment

Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

Replace element with XML fragment

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

Review submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Track Changes

Enables or disables the *Track Changes (on page 2234)* support for the current document.

Accept Change(s) and Move to Next

Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is accepted.

Accept All Changes

Accepts all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Reject Change(s) and Move to Next

Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is rejected.

Reject All Changes

Rejects all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Highlight

Enables the highlighting tool that allows you to mark text in your document.

Colors

Allows you to select the color for highlighting text.

Stop highlighting

Use this action to deactivate the highlighting tool.

Remove highlight(s)

Use this action to remove highlighting from the document.

Add Comment

Inserts a comment at the cursor position. The comment appears in a callout box and a tooltip (when hovering over the change).

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Manage Reviews

Opens the **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Folding submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Toggle Fold

Toggles the state of the current fold.

Collapse Other Folds

Folds all the elements except the current element.

Collapse Child Folds

Folds the elements indented with one level inside the current element.

Expand Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad+ (Command + NumPad+ on macOS))

Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

Expand All

Unfolds all elements in the current document.

About Element > Go to Definition

Moves the cursor to the definition of the current element.

Inspect Styles

Opens the **CSS Inspector** view *(on page 391)* that allows you to examine the CSS rules that match the currently selected element.

Options

Opens the Author mode preferences page *(on page 127)* where you can configure various options with regard to the **Author** editing mode.

TEI P5 Drag/Drop Actions

Dragging a file from the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and dropping it into a TEI P5 document that is edited in **Author** mode, creates a link to the dragged file (the `<ptr>` element with the `@target` attribute) at the drop location. Dragging an image file from the default file system application (Windows Explorer on Windows or Finder on macOS, for example) and dropping it into a TEI P5 document inserts a graphic element (the `<graphic>` element with the `@url` attribute) at the drop location, similar to the **Insert Image** toolbar action.

Tip:
For information about customizing **Author** mode actions for a particular *framework (on page 2231)* (document type), see the Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)* section.

Related Information:
Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)*

How to Install a TEI Framework with the Latest Schema and Stylesheets

The TEI framework that is bundled in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has the TEI schema and stylesheets that were available at the time of its release. When the *TEI Consortium* releases a new TEI version (Schema and Stylesheets), they also release a new version of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin TEI framework with them.

Warning:
TEI Consortium, who maintains these releases, chose to keep them compatible with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 18.1. This means that some features or improvements that were developed in later versions of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin might be missing from these frameworks.

The following procedure describes how to install a release of the TEI framework done by *TEI Consortium* that has a newer version of the TEI Schema and TEI XSL https://github.com/TEIC/oxygen-tei/blob/master/oxygen-tei-plugin.md

1. Go to **Help > Install new add-ons**.
2. Enter or paste **https://www.tei-c.org/release/oxygen/updateSite.oxygen** in the **Show add-ons from** field.
3. Choose the TEI framework that you want to install and click **Next**.
4. Read the end-user license agreement. Then select the **I accept all terms of the end-user license agreement** option and click **Install**.
5. Restart the application.

TEI ODD Document Type (Framework)

The *TEI ODD (Text Encoding Initiative - One Document Does it all)* document type is a TEI XML-conformant specification format that allows you to create a custom TEI P5 schema in a literate programming fashion. A system of XSLT stylesheets called Roma was created by the TEI Consortium for manipulating the ODD files.

File Definition

A file is considered to be a TEI ODD document when the following conditions are true:

- The file extension is `.odd`.
- The document namespace is *http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0*.

Default Document Templates

There is a default *TEI ODD* document template available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 229)* and they can be found in: **Framework Templates > TEI ODD**.

The default template is located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/tei/templates/TEI ODD` folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

The default schema that is used if one is not detected in the TEI ODD document is `tei_odds.rng` and it is stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/custom/schema/relaxng/`.

Default CSS

The default CSS files used for rendering TEI ODD content in **Author** mode are stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/css/`.

By default, these default CSS files are merged with any that are specified in the document. For more information, see Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*.

Default XML Catalogs

The default *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)* for the TEI ODD document type are as follows:

- *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/custom/schema/catalog.xml`
- *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/schema/catalog.xml`

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes built-in transformation scenarios that allow you to transform TEI ODD documents to a variety of outputs, such as PDF, XHTML, EPUB, DOCX, ODT, RNG, DTD, and XML Schema. They can be found in the **TEI ODD** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

Resources

- Oxygen Video Tutorial: Editing TEI Documents in Author Mode
- TEI: Getting Started with ODD

Related Information:
Editing XML Documents in Author Mode *(on page 343)*
Editing XML Documents in Text Mode *(on page 282)*

TEI ODD Author Mode Actions

A variety of actions are available for TEI ODD documents that can be found in **TEI ODD** menu, toolbar, contextual menu, and the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

TEI ODD Toolbar Actions

The following default actions are available on the TEI ODD toolbar when editing in **Author** mode (by default, they are also available in the **TEI ODD** menu and some of them are in various submenus of the contextual menu):

Bold

Changes the style of the selected text to *bold* by surrounding it with the `<hi>` tag and setting the `@rend` attribute to *bold*. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Italic

Changes the style of the selected text to *italic* by surrounding it with the `<hi>` tag and setting the `@rend` attribute to *italic*. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Underline

Changes the style of the selected text to *underline* by surrounding it with the `<hi>` tag and setting the `@rend` attribute to *ul*. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Insert Section

Inserts a new section or subsection, depending on the current context. For example, if the current context is `div1`, then a `div2` is inserted. By default, this action also inserts a paragraph element as a child node.

Insert Paragraph

Insert a new paragraph element at current cursor position.

Insert Image

Inserts an image reference *(on page 468)* at the cursor position. Depending on the current location, an image-type element is inserted.

Insert List Item

Inserts a list item in the current list type.

Insert Ordered List

Inserts an ordered list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an ordered list.

Insert Itemized List

Inserts an itemized list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an itemized list.

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs, lists, and inline content (mixed content, text plus markup, that is rendered inside a *block element (on page 2228)*) into a table, with the selected content inserted in the first column, starting from the first row after the header (if a header is inserted).

> **Note:**
> If the selection contains a mixture of elements that cannot be converted, you will receive an error message saying that **Only lists, paragraphs, or inline content can be converted to tables**.

Insert Row

Inserts a new table row with empty cells below the current row. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Insert Column

Inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Insert Cell

Inserts a new empty cell depending on the current context. If the cursor is positioned between two cells, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin a new cell at the cursor position. If the cursor is inside a cell, the new cell is created after the current cell.

Delete Column(s)

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Delete Row(s)

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

TEI Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available in the contextual menu when editing in **Author** mode (most of them are also available in the **TEI ODD** menu at the top of the interface):

Edit Attributes

Displays an in-place attributes editor *(on page 383)* that allows you to manage the attributes of an element.

Edit Profiling Attributes

Allows you to change the profiling attributes *(on page 419)* defined on all selected elements.

Cut (Ctrl + X (Command + X on macOS))

Removes the currently selected content from the document and places it in the clipboard.

Copy (Ctrl + C (Command + C on macOS))

Places a copy of the currently selected content in the clipboard.

The clipboard contains the precise node structure that is preserved when pasting to another location within the same document or to another document opened in the **Author** mode. The copied content contains an HTML flavor that attempts to convert the copied structure to plain HTML, which can be useful for preserving the styles when pasting into editors such as MS Word.

Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on macOS))

Inserts the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.

Image Map Editor

This action is available in the contextual menu when it is invoked on an image. This action applies an *image map* to the current image (if one does not already exist) and opens the **Image Map Editor** dialog box. This feature allows you to create hyperlinks in specific areas of an image that will link to various destinations.

Insert submenu

This submenu includes the following insert actions that are specific to the DocBook *framework*:

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs, lists, and inline content (mixed content, text plus markup, that is rendered inside a *block element (on page 2228)*) into a table, with the selected content inserted in the first column, starting from the first row after the header (if a header is inserted).

> **Note:**
> If the selection contains a mixture of elements that cannot be converted, you will receive an error message saying that **Only lists, paragraphs, or inline content can be converted to tables**.

Insert Image

Inserts an image reference *(on page 468)* at the cursor position. Depending on the current location, an image-type element is inserted.

Insert Paragraph

Inserts a new *paragraph* element at current cursor position.

Insert Section

Inserts a new *section* element in the document, depending on the current context.

Insert Entity

Allows you to insert a predefined entity or character entity. Surrogate character entities (range #x10000 to #x10FFFF) are also accepted. Character entities can be entered in one of the following forms:

- #<*decimal value*> - e.g. #65
- &#<*decimal value*> - e.g. &#65
- #x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. #x41
- &#x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. &#x41

Generate IDs

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin generates unique IDs for the current element (or elements), depending on how the action is invoked:

- When invoked on a single selection, an ID is generated for the selected element at the cursor position.
- When invoked on a block of selected content, IDs are generated for all top-level elements and elements listed in the **ID Options** dialog box that are found in the current selection.

Note:
The **Generate IDs** action does not overwrite existing ID values. It only affects elements that do not already have an `@id` attribute.

Table actions

The following table editing actions are available in the contextual menu when it is invoked on a table:

Insert Rows

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert any number of rows and specify the position where they will be inserted (**Above** or **Below** the current row).

Delete Row(s)

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Insert Columns

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert any number of columns and specify the position where they will be inserted (**Above** or **Below** the current column).

Delete Column(s)

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

Sort

Sorts cells or list items in a table.

Table Properties

Opens the **Table properties** dialog box that allows you to configure properties of a table (such as frame borders).

Other Actions submenu

This submenu give you access to all the usual contextual menu actions.

Select submenu

This submenu allows you to select the following:

Element

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

Content

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

Parent

Selects the entire parent element at the current cursor position.

Text submenu

This submenu contains the following actions:

To Lower Case

Converts the selected content to lower case characters.

To Upper Case

Converts the selected content to upper case characters.

Capitalize Sentences

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected sentence.

Capitalize Words

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected word.

Count Words

Counts the number of words and characters (no spaces) in the entire document or in the selection for regular content and read-only content.

Note:
The content marked as deleted with *change tracking (on page 2234)* is ignored when counting words.

Convert Hexadecimal Sequence to Character (Ctrl + Shift + H (Command + Shift + H on macOS))

Converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character *(on page 274)*. The action can be invoked if there is a selection containing a valid hexadecimal sequence or if the cursor is placed at the right side of a valid hexadecimal sequence. A valid hexadecimal sequence can be composed of 2 to 4 hexadecimal characters and may or may not be preceded by the `0x` or `0X` prefix. Examples of valid sequences and the characters they will be converted to:

- `0x0045` will be converted to `E`
- `0X0125` to `ĥ`
- `265` to `ɩ`
- `2190` to `←`

> **Note:**
> For more information about finding the hexadecimal value of a character, see Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent *(on page 276)*.

Refactoring submenu

Contains a series of actions designed to alter the XML structure of the document:

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected text in a comment, or removes the comment if it is commented.

Move Up (Alt + UpArrow (Option + UpArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes in front of the previous node.

Move Down (Alt + DownArrow (Option + DownArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes after the subsequent node.

Split Element

Splits the content of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. Thus, if the cursor is positioned at the beginning or at the end of the element, the newly created sibling will be empty.

Join Elements

Joins two adjacent *block elements (on page 2228)* that have the same name. The action is available only when the cursor position is between the two adjacent *block elements*. Also, joining two *block elements* can be done by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys and the cursor is positioned between the boundaries of these two elements.

Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)

Allows you to choose a tag to enclose a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Rename Element

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

Delete Element Tags

Deletes the tags of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. This operation is also executed if the start or end tags of an element are deleted by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys.

Remove All Markup

Removes all the XML markup inside the selected block of content and keeps only the text content.

Remove Text

Removes the text content of the selected block of content and keeps the markup intact with empty elements.

Attributes Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add/Change attribute

Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

Convert attribute to element

Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

Delete attribute

Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

Rename attribute

Allows you to rename an attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

Comments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete comments

Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

Elements Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete element

Allows you to delete elements.

Delete element content

Allows you to delete the content of elements.

Insert element

Allows you to insert new elements.

Rename element

Allows you to rename elements.

Unwrap element

Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

Wrap element

Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

Wrap element content

Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

Fragments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Insert XML fragment

Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

Replace element with XML fragment

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

Review submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Track Changes

Enables or disables the *Track Changes (on page 2234)* support for the current document.

Accept Change(s) and Move to Next

Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is accepted.

Accept All Changes

Accepts all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Reject Change(s) and Move to Next

Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is rejected.

Reject All Changes

Rejects all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Highlight

Enables the highlighting tool that allows you to mark text in your document.

Colors

Allows you to select the color for highlighting text.

Stop highlighting

Use this action to deactivate the highlighting tool.

Remove highlight(s)

Use this action to remove highlighting from the document.

Add Comment

Inserts a comment at the cursor position. The comment appears in a callout box and a tooltip (when hovering over the change).

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Manage Reviews

Opens the **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Folding submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Toggle Fold

Toggles the state of the current fold.

Collapse Other Folds

Folds all the elements except the current element.

Collapse Child Folds

Folds the elements indented with one level inside the current element.

Expand Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad+ (Command + NumPad+ on macOS))

Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

Expand All

Unfolds all elements in the current document.

About Element > Go to Definition

Moves the cursor to the definition of the current element.

Inspect Styles

Opens the **CSS Inspector** view *(on page 391)* that allows you to examine the CSS rules that match the currently selected element.

Options

Opens the Author mode preferences page *(on page 127)* where you can configure various options with regard to the **Author** editing mode.

TEI ODD Drag/Drop Actions

Dragging a file from the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and dropping it into a TEI ODD document that is edited in **Author** mode, creates a link to the dragged file (the `<ptr>` element with the `@target` attribute) at the drop location.

Tip:
For information about customizing **Author** mode actions for a particular *framework (on page 2231)* (document type), see the Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)* section.

Related Information:
Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)*

jTEI Document Type (Framework)

The *jTEI (Journal of the Text Encoding Initiative)* document type is a highly restrictive customization (only about 80 elements are included) of the TEI P5 *framework*.

File Definition

A file is considered to be a *jTEI* document when the root element is named *TEI*, it is in the namespace *http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0*, and the `@rend` attribute is set to `"jTEI"`.

Default Document Templates

There is a default **jTEI Article** template available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 229)* and they can be found in: **Framework Templates > TEI JTEI**.

The default template is located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/tei/templates/TEI jTEI` folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

The default schema that is used if one is not detected is `tei_jtei.rng` and it is stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/custom/schema/relaxng/`.

Default CSS

The default CSS file (`jtei.css`) that is used for rendering *jTEI* in **Author** mode is stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/css/`.

By default, these default CSS files are merged with any that are specified in the document. For more information, see Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*.

Default XML Catalogs

The default *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)* for *jTEI* are as follows:

- `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/schema/dtd/catalog.xml`
- `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/custom/schema/dtd/catalog.xml`
- `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/tei/xml/tei/stylesheet/catalog.xml`

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes built-in transformation scenarios that allow you to transform *jTEI* documents to PDF and ODT. They can be found in the **TEI JTEI** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

Resources

- Oxygen Video Tutorial: Editing TEI Documents in Author Mode
- *jTEI* Article Guidelines

Related Information:
Editing XML Documents in Author Mode *(on page 343)*
Editing XML Documents in Text Mode *(on page 282)*
Adding Tables in TEI Documents *(on page 462)*

JATS Document Type (Framework)

The *JATS (NISO Journal Article Tag Suite)* document type is a technical standard that defines an XML format for scientific literature.

File Definition

A file is considered to be a JATS document when the PUBLIC ID of the document contains the string `-//NLM//DTD`.

Default Document Templates

There are some default *JATS* templates available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 229)* and they can be found in: **Framework Templates > JATSKit - NISO JATS and NLM BITS**

The default templates for JATS documents are located in the `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/jats/templates/` folder.

Default Schema for Validation and Content Completion

Default schemas that are used if one is not detected in the JATS document are stored in `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/jats/lib/schemas/`.

Default CSS

The default CSS files used for rendering JATS content in **Author** mode are stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/jats/lib/author-css/`.

By default, these default CSS files are merged with any that are specified in the document. For more information, see Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*.

Default XML Catalog

The default *XML Catalog (on page 2235)*, `jatskit-catalog.xml`, is stored in *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/jats/lib/schemas/`.

Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes built-in transformation scenarios that allow you to transform JATS documents to a variety of outputs, such as PDF, HTML, and EPUB. They can be found in the **JATSKit** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

Resources

- Oxygen Video Tutorial: Configuring a JATS *Framework*
- NLM Journal Archiving and Interchange Tag Suite

Related Information:
Editing XML Documents in Author Mode *(on page 343)*
Editing XML Documents in Text Mode *(on page 282)*

JATS Author Mode Actions

A variety of actions are available for JATS documents that can be found in **JATS** menu, toolbar, contextual menu, and the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

JATS Toolbar Actions

The following default actions are available on the JATS toolbar when editing in **Author** mode (by default, they are also available in the **JATS** menu and in various submenus of the contextual menu):

Paragraph Level Drop-Down Menu

Insert Paragraph

Insert a new paragraph element at current cursor position.

Insert Unordered List

Inserts an unordered list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an unordered list.

Insert Ordered List

Inserts an ordered list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an ordered list.

Boxed Text

Inserts or wraps content in a box with a shaded background.

Code

Inserts or wraps content in a `<code>` element.

Display Quote

Inserts or wraps content in a `<disp-quote>` element.

Figure

Inserts a `<fig>` element with a `<title>` (inside a `<caption>` element). This action opens a dialog box that allows you to enter the text for the title for the figure.

Graphic Figure

Inserts a `<fig>` element with a `<title>` (inside a `<caption>` element), and a `<graphic>` element. A dialog box is displayed that allows you to enter the title for the figure, followed by a dialog box that allows you to select the URL of the graphic to be inserted.

Bold

Surrounds the selected text with a `<bold>` tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Italic

Surrounds the selected text with an `<italic>` tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Underline

Surrounds the selected text with an `<underline>` tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Monospace

Inserts or wraps content with a `<monospace>` element.

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs, lists, and inline content (mixed content, text plus markup, that is rendered inside a *block element (on page 2228)*) into a table,

with the selected content inserted in the first column, starting from the first row after the header (if a header is inserted).

> **Note:**
> If the selection contains a mixture of elements that cannot be converted, you will receive an error message saying that **Only lists, paragraphs, or inline content can be converted to tables**.

Insert Row

Inserts a new table row with empty cells below the current row. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Delete Row(s)

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Insert Column

Inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Delete Column(s)

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

Insert Image

Inserts an image reference *(on page 468)* at the cursor position. Depending on the current location, an image-type element is inserted.

Insert List Item

Inserts a list item in the current list type.

Insert MathML

Opens the **XML Fragment Editor** that allows you to insert and edit MathML notations *(on page 498)*.

Subscript

Surrounds the selected text with a *subscript* tag, used for inserting a character (number, letter, or symbol) that will appear slightly below the baseline and slightly smaller than the rest of the text.

Superscript

Surrounds the selected text with a *superscript* tag, used for inserting a character (number, letter, or symbol) that will appear slightly above the baseline and slightly smaller than the rest of the text.

JATS Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available in the contextual menu when editing in **Author** mode (most of them are also available in the **JATS** menu at the top of the interface):

Edit Attributes

Displays an in-place attributes editor *(on page 383)* that allows you to manage the attributes of an element.

Edit Profiling Attributes

Allows you to change the profiling attributes *(on page 419)* defined on all selected elements.

Cut (Ctrl + X (Command + X on macOS))

Removes the currently selected content from the document and places it in the clipboard.

Copy (Ctrl + C (Command + C on macOS))

Places a copy of the currently selected content in the clipboard.

The clipboard contains the precise node structure that is preserved when pasting to another location within the same document or to another document opened in the **Author** mode. The copied content contains an HTML flavor that attempts to convert the copied structure to plain HTML, which can be useful for preserving the styles when pasting into editors such as MS Word.

Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on macOS))

Inserts the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.

Image Map Editor

This action is available in the contextual menu when it is invoked on an image. This action applies an *image map* to the current image (if one does not already exist) and opens the **Image Map Editor** dialog box. This feature allows you to create hyperlinks in specific areas of an image that will link to various destinations.

Boxed Text

Inserts or wraps content in a box with a shaded background.

Insert submenu

This submenu includes the following insert actions:

Figure

Inserts a `<fig>` element with a `<title>` (inside a `<caption>` element). This action opens a dialog box that allows you to enter the text for the title for the figure.

Graphic Figure

Inserts a `<fig>` element with a `<title>` (inside a `<caption>` element), and a `<graphic>` element. A dialog box is displayed that allows you to enter the title for the figure, followed by a dialog box that allows you to select the URL of the graphic to be inserted.

Display Quote

Inserts or wraps content in a `<disp-quote>` element.

Insert Paragraph

Inserts a new *paragraph* element at current cursor position.

Insert Image

Inserts an image reference *(on page 468)* at the cursor position. Depending on the current location, an image-type element is inserted.

Insert Entity

Allows you to insert a predefined entity or character entity. Surrogate character entities (range #x10000 to #x10FFFF) are also accepted. Character entities can be entered in one of the following forms:

- #<*decimal value*> - e.g. #65
- &#<*decimal value*> - e.g. &#65
- #x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. #x41
- &#x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. &#x41

Style submenu

This submenu includes the following text styling actions:

Monospace

Inserts or wraps content with a `<monospace>` element.

Bold

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with a *bold* tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Italic

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with an *italic* tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Underline

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with an *underline* tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

List > Insert Unordered List

Inserts an unordered list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an unordered list.

List > Insert Ordered List

Inserts an ordered list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an ordered list.

Code

Inserts or wraps content in a `<code>` element.

Select submenu

This submenu allows you to select the following:

Element

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

Content

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

Parent

Selects the entire parent element at the current cursor position.

Text submenu

This submenu contains the following actions:

To Lower Case

Converts the selected content to lower case characters.

To Upper Case

Converts the selected content to upper case characters.

Capitalize Sentences

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected sentence.

Capitalize Words

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected word.

Count Words

Counts the number of words and characters (no spaces) in the entire document or in the selection for regular content and read-only content.

> **Note:**
> The content marked as deleted with *change tracking (on page 2234)* is ignored when counting words.

Convert Hexadecimal Sequence to Character (Ctrl + Shift + H (Command + Shift + H on macOS))

Converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character *(on page 274)*. The action can be invoked if there is a selection containing a valid hexadecimal sequence or if the cursor is placed at the right side of a valid hexadecimal sequence. A valid hexadecimal sequence can be composed of 2 to 4 hexadecimal characters and may or may not be preceded by the `0x` or `0X` prefix. Examples of valid sequences and the characters they will be converted to:

- `0x0045` will be converted to `E`
- `0X0125` to `ĥ`
- `265` to `ɩ`
- `2190` to `←`

> **Note:**
> For more information about finding the hexadecimal value of a character, see Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent *(on page 276)*.

Refactoring submenu

Contains a series of actions designed to alter the XML structure of the document:

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected text in a comment, or removes the comment if it is commented.

Move Up (Alt + UpArrow (Option + UpArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes in front of the previous node.

Move Down (Alt + DownArrow (Option + DownArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes after the subsequent node.

Split Element

Splits the content of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. Thus, if the cursor is positioned at the beginning or at the end of the element, the newly created sibling will be empty.

Join Elements

Joins two adjacent *block elements (on page 2228)* that have the same name. The action is available only when the cursor position is between the two adjacent *block elements*. Also, joining two *block elements* can be done by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys and the cursor is positioned between the boundaries of these two elements.

Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)

Allows you to choose a tag to enclose a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Rename Element

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

Delete Element Tags

Deletes the tags of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. This operation is also executed if the start or end tags of an element are deleted by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys.

Remove All Markup

Removes all the XML markup inside the selected block of content and keeps only the text content.

Remove Text

Removes the text content of the selected block of content and keeps the markup intact with empty elements.

Attributes Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add/Change attribute

Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

Convert attribute to element

Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

Delete attribute

Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

Rename attribute

Allows you to rename an attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

Comments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete comments

Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

Elements Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete element

Allows you to delete elements.

Delete element content

Allows you to delete the content of elements.

Insert element

Allows you to insert new elements.

Rename element

Allows you to rename elements.

Unwrap element

Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

Wrap element

Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

Wrap element content

Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

Fragments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Insert XML fragment

Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

Replace element with XML fragment

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

Review submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Track Changes

Enables or disables the *Track Changes (on page 2234)* support for the current document.

Accept Change(s) and Move to Next

Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is accepted.

Accept All Changes

Accepts all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Reject Change(s) and Move to Next

Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is rejected.

Reject All Changes

Rejects all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when

hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Highlight

Enables the highlighting tool that allows you to mark text in your document.

Colors

Allows you to select the color for highlighting text.

Stop highlighting

Use this action to deactivate the highlighting tool.

Remove highlight(s)

Use this action to remove highlighting from the document.

Add Comment

Inserts a comment at the cursor position. The comment appears in a callout box and a tooltip (when hovering over the change).

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Manage Reviews

Opens the **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Folding submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Toggle Fold

Toggles the state of the current fold.

Collapse Other Folds

Folds all the elements except the current element.

Collapse Child Folds

Folds the elements indented with one level inside the current element.

Expand Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad+ (Command + NumPad+ on macOS))

Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

Expand All

Unfolds all elements in the current document.

About Element > Go to Definition

Moves the cursor to the definition of the current element.

Inspect Styles

Opens the **CSS Inspector** view *(on page 391)* that allows you to examine the CSS rules that match the currently selected element.

Options

Opens the Author mode preferences page *(on page 127)* where you can configure various options with regard to the **Author** editing mode.

JATS Drag/Drop Actions

Dragging a file from the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and dropping it into a JATS document that is edited in **Author** mode, creates a link to the dragged file (the `<ext-link>` element with the `@xlink:href` attribute) at the drop location. Dragging an image file from the default file system application (Windows Explorer on Windows or Finder on macOS, for example) and dropping it into a JATS document inserts an image element (the `<inline-graphic>` element with the `@xlink:href` attribute) at the drop location, similar to the **Insert Image** toolbar action.

Tip:
For information about customizing **Author** mode actions for a particular *framework (on page 2231)* (document type), see the Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)* section.

Related Information:
Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)*

EPUB Document Type (Framework)

EPUB is an e-book file format that is a ZIP archive and can be downloaded and read on devices such as phones, tablets, computers, or e-readers. You can view the contents and structure of this type of file *(on page 1458)* in the **Project Explorer** view or main editing pane.

Three distinct *frameworks (on page 2231)* are supported for the EPUB document type:

- **NCX** - A declarative global navigation definition.
- **OCF** - The Open Container Format (OCF) defines a mechanism by which all components of an Open Publication Structure (OPS) can be combined into a single file system entity.

- **OPF** - The Open Packaging Format (OPF) defines the mechanism by which all components of a published work that conforms to the Open Publication Structure (OPS) standard (including metadata, reading order, and navigational information) are packaged in an OPS Publication.

  Note:
  Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports OPF 2.0, OPF 3.0, and OPF 3.1.

File Definition

A file is considered to be an *EPUB* document if it has a file extension of `.epub`.

Default Document Templates

There are a variety of default *EPUB* templates available when creating new documents from templates *(on page 229)* and they can be found the following folders in **Framework Templates**: **NCX**, **OCF**, **OPF 2.0**, **OPF 3.0**, and **OPF 3.1**.

- The default templates for the **NCX** document types are located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/ncx/templates` folder.
- The default templates for the **OCF** document types are located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/ocf/templates` folder.
- The default template for the **OPF 2.0** document type is located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/opf/templates/2.0` folder.
- The default template for the **OPF 3.0** document type is located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/opf/templates/3.0` folder.
- The default template for the **OPF 3.1** document type is located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/opf/templates/3.1` folder.

Default Schema

The default schema files for the various types of EPUB document types are located in the following directories:

- The default schema files for the **NCX** document types are located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/ncx/schemas` folder.
- The default schema files for the **OCF** document types are located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/ocf/schemas` folder.
- The default schema files for the **OPF 2.0** document type is located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/opf/schemas/2.0` folder.
- The default schema files for the **OPF 3.0** document type is located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/opf/schemas/3.0` folder.
- The default schema files for the **OPF 3.1** document type is located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/opf/schemas/3.1` folder.

Related Information:

Working with Archive Files *(on page 1460)*

10.

Additional XML Editing Frameworks (Document Types)

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports custom frameworks (document types) contributed by the XML community. They provide support for additional functionality and XML vocabularies.

Similar to the built-in *frameworks (on page 2231)*, the additional frameworks may define:

- A default grammar used for validation and content completion in both **Author** mode and **Text** mode.
- CSS stylesheets for rendering XML documents in **Author** mode.
- User actions invoked from toolbars or menus in **Author** mode.
- Built-in transformation scenarios used for publishing XML documents.
- *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)* used for mapping resources.
- New document templates to make it easy to create XML documents.
- User-defined extensions for customizing the interaction with the content author in **Author** mode.

11.
Publishing

XML documents can be transformed into a variety of user-friendly output formats that can be viewed by end-users. This process is known as a *transformation*.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes numerous built-in transformation possibilities to publish XML content in various output formats (such as WebHelp, PDF, CHM, EPUB, JavaHelp, Eclipse Help, XHTML, etc.)

For transformations that are not included in your installed version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, simply install the tool chain required to perform the specific transformation and process the files in accordance with the processor instructions. A multitude of target formats are possible. The basic condition for a transformation to any format is that your source document is well-formed.

Warning:
Keep in mind that there could be instances where there are differences between what you see in **Author** mode and what you see in the published output. This is typically due to certain limitations in the publishing engine, especially when the source documents contain complex referencing.

Transformation Scenarios

A transformation scenario is a set of complex operations and settings that gives you the possibility to obtain outputs of multiple types (XML, HTML, PDF, EPUB, etc.) from the same source of XML files and stylesheets.

Note:
You need to use the appropriate stylesheet according to the source definition and the desired output. For example, if you want to transform into an HTML format using a DocBook stylesheet, your source XML document should conform with the DocBook DTD.

Executing a transformation scenario implies multiple actions, such as:

- Validating the input file.
- Obtaining intermediate output files (for example, formatting objects for the XML to PDF transformation).
- Using transformation engines to produce the output.

Before transforming an XML document in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, you need to define a transformation scenario to apply to that document. A scenario is a set of values for various parameters that define a transformation. It is not related to a particular document, but rather to a document type. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes preconfigured built-in transformation scenarios *(on page 797)*, but you can also create new transformation scenarios *(on page 828)*.

When creating new transformation scenarios, the types that are available include:

- **Scenarios that Apply to XML Files** - This type of scenario contains the location of an XSLT stylesheet that is applied on the edited XML document, as well as other transformation parameters. For more information, see XML Transformation with XSLT *(on page 828)* and XML Transformation with XQuery *(on page 844)*.
- **Scenarios that Apply to XSLT Files** - This type of scenario contains the location of an XML document that the edited XSLT stylesheet is applied to, as well as other transform parameters. For more information, see XSLT Transformation on XML *(on page 885)*.
- **Scenarios that Apply to XQuery Files** - This type of scenario contains the location of an XML source, that the edited XQuery file is applied to, as well as other transform parameters. When the XML source is a native XML database, the XML source field of the scenario is empty because the XML data is read with XQuery-specific functions, such as `document()`. When the XML source is a local XML file, the URL of the file is specified in the XML input field of the scenario. For more information, see XQuery Transformation on XML *(on page 915)*.
- **Scenarios that Apply to JSON Files** - This type of scenario contains the location of an XSLT stylesheet that is applied on the edited JSON document, as well as other transformation parameters. For more information, see JSON Transformation with XSLT *(on page 872)* and XSLT Transformation on JSON *(on page 903)*.
- **Scenarios that Apply to SQL Files** - This type of scenario specifies a database connection for the database server that runs the SQL file that is associated with the scenario. The data processed by the SQL script is located in the database.
- **Scenarios that Apply to XProc Files** - This type of scenario contains the location of an XProc script, as well as other transform parameters. For more information, see SQL Transformation *(on page 930)*.
- **DITA-OT Scenarios** - This type of scenario provides the parameters for an Ant transformation that executes a DITA-OT build script. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in version of Ant and a built-in version of DITA-OT, although you can also set other versions in the scenario. For more information, see DITA-OT Transformation *(on page 854)*.
- **ANT Scenarios** - This type of scenario contains the location of an Ant build script, as well as other transform parameters. For more information, see Ant Transformation *(on page 868)*.

Note:

Status messages generated during the transformation process are displayed in the **Console** view *(on page 279)* (the **Enable Oxygen consoles** option *(on page 167)* must be selected in the **View** preferences page *(on page 167)*).

Built-in Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes preconfigured built-in transformation scenarios that are used for common transformations. They can be found in the various sections in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)* or **Transformation Scenarios** view *(on page 940)*. All the built-in *document types (frameworks) (on page 2231)* that are included in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin have

various transformation scenarios in their specific sections, including the most popular *frameworks*, such as DITA, DocBook, TEI, XHTML, JATS, OOXML, and more.

To obtain the desired output, use one of the following actions from the toolbar or **Transform** submenu in the contextual menu of the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*:

- **Apply Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, T (Command + Option + T, T on macOS))** - If you have associated transformation scenarios for the current document, this action will simply apply the association *(on page 933)* and begin the transformation process. If an association is not detected, this action will open the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)* where you can choose the scenarios you want to apply.
- **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** - This action will open the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)* where you can choose the scenarios you want to apply.

Note:

- You can apply a transformation even if the current document is not associated with a transformation scenario.
- If the document contains an `xml-stylesheet` processing instruction that references an XSLT stylesheet (commonly used to display the document in web browsers), Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin prompts you to associate the document with a built-in transformation scenario.
- The default transformation scenario is suggested based on the processing instruction from the edited document.

Related Information:

Creating New Transformation Scenarios *(on page 828)*
Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*
Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios *(on page 933)*
Transformation Scenarios View *(on page 940)*

DITA Map Transformation Scenarios

Built-in transformation scenarios allow you to transform *DITA maps (on page 2230)* to a variety of outputs, such as WebHelp, PDF, ODF, XHTML, EPUB, CHM, Kindle, and MS Word. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes a special **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** *(on page 822)* that can be used to integrate a DITA-OT plugin and a **DITA Map Metrics Report** transformation that generates a statistics report for your DITA map. All of them are listed in the **DITA Map** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

A variety of transformations scenarios are available for *DITA maps (on page 2230)*:

- Built-in transformation scenarios allow you to transform a *DITA map* to a variety of outputs, such as WebHelp, PDF, ODF, XHTML, EPUB, CHM, Metrics Report, and MS Word.
- **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** *(on page 822)* - Use this transformation scenario if you want to integrate a DITA-OT plugin *(on page 2157)*. This scenario runs an Ant task that integrates all the plugins from the DITA-OT/plugins directory.

Related Information:
Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*
Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios *(on page 933)*
DITA Topic Transformation Scenarios *(on page 2095)*

DITA Map WebHelp Responsive Transformation

DITA content can be transformed into several types of WebHelp Responsive systems (with or without a feedback section). The WebHelp Responsive layout and features *(on page 944)* are designed to adapt to any device and screen size to provide an optimal viewing and interaction experience. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also provides numerous possibilities for customizing the WebHelp Responsive output *(on page 1031)*.

WebHelp Responsive Transformation Scenario

To publish a *DITA map (on page 2230)* as **WebHelp Responsive** output, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** action from the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar.
2. Select the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** scenario from the **DITA Map** section.
3. If you want to configure the transformation, click the **Edit** button.

   Step Result: This opens an **Edit scenario** configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in the following tabs:
   - Templates Tab *(on page 2098)* - This tab contains a set of built-in publishing templates *(on page 990)* that you can use for the layout of your WebHelp system output. You can also create your own publishing templates or edit existing ones *(on page 1031)*.
   - Parameters Tab *(on page 2104)* - This tab includes numerous parameters that can be set to customize your WebHelp system output. See the Parameters section *(on page 800)* below for details about the most commonly used parameters for WebHelp Responsive transformations.
   - Feedback Tab *(on page 2105)* - This tab is for those who want to add the **Oxygen Feedback** comments component at the bottom of each WebHelp page so that you can interact with your readers.
   - Filters Tab *(on page 2106)* - This tab allows you to filter certain content elements from the generated output.

- Advanced Tab *(on page 2107)* - This tab allows you to specify some advanced options for the transformation scenario.
- Output Tab *(on page 2110)* - This tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

4. Click **Apply associated** to process the transformation.

Result: When the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation is complete, the output is automatically opened in your default browser.

General Parameters for Customizing WebHelp Responsive Output

To customize a transformation scenario, you can edit various parameters, including the following most commonly used ones:

default.language

This parameter is used if the language is not detected in the *DITA map*. The default value is `en-us`.

clean.output

Deletes all files from the output folder before the transformation is performed (only `no` and `yes` values are valid and the default value is `no`).

editlink.remote.ditamap.url

Use this parameter in conjunction with `editlink.web.author.url` to add an *Edit* link next to the topic title in the WebHelp output. When a user clicks the link, the topic is opened in Oxygen XML Web Author where they can make changes that can be saved to a file server. The value should be set as the custom URL of the *main DITA map*. For example, a GitHub custom URL might look like this: `https://getFileContent/oxyengxml/userguide/master/UserGuide.ditamap`.

editlink.web.author.url

This parameter needs to be used in conjunction with `editlink.remote.ditamap.url` to add an *Edit* link next to the topic title in the WebHelp output. When a user clicks the link, the topic is opened in Oxygen XML Web Author where they can make changes that can be saved to a file server. The value should be set as the URL of the Web Author installation. For example: `https://www.oxygenxml.com/oxygen-xml-web-author/`.

editlink.present.only.path.to.topic

When this parameter is set to "true", the DITA topic path is displayed to the right of each topic title in the WebHelp Responsive output. Also, when this parameter is used, the **editlink.ditamap.edit.url**, **editlink.remote.ditamap.url**, and **editlink.web.author.url** parameters are ignored.

fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml (Only supported when the DITA-OT transformation process is started from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin)

The DITA Open Toolkit usually has problems processing references that point to locations outside of the directory of the processed *DITA map*. This parameter is used to specify whether

or not the application should try to fix such references in a temporary files folder before the DITA Open Toolkit is invoked on the fixed references. The fix has no impact on your edited DITA content. Allowed values: `true` or `false` (default).

force.unique

When set to `true` (default value), the transformation will be forced to create unique output files for each instance of a resource when a map contains multiple references to a single topic.

use.stemming

Controls whether or not you want to include stemming search algorithms into the published output (default setting is `false`).

webhelp.csh.disable.topicID.fallback

Specifies whether or not topic ID *fallbacks* are enabled when computing the mapping of context sensitive help and `resourceid` information is not available. Possible values are **false** (default) and **true**.

webhelp.custom.resources

The file path to a directory that contains resources files. All files from this directory will be copied to the root of the WebHelp output.

webhelp.favicon

The file path that points to an image to be used as a *favicon* in the WebHelp output.

webhelp.reload.stylesheet

Set this parameter to `true` if you have out of memory problems when generating WebHelp. It will increase processing time but decrease the memory footprint. The default value is `false`.

webhelp.search.custom.excludes.file

The path of the file that contains name patterns for HTML files that should not be indexed by the WebHelp search engine. Each exclude pattern must be on a new line. The patterns are considered to be relative to the output directory, and they accept wildcards such as `'*'` (matches zero or more characters) or `'?'` (matches one character). For more information about the patterns, see https://ant.apache.org/manual/dirtasks.html#patterns.

webhelp.search.japanese.dictionary

The file path of the dictionary that will be used by the *Kuromoji* morphological engine for indexing Japanese content in the WebHelp pages. The encoding for the dictionary must be **UTF8**.

webhelp.search.enable.pagination

Specifies whether or not search results will be displayed on multiple pages. Allowed values are `yes` or `no`.

webhelp.search.index.elements.to.exclude

Specifies a list of HTML elements that will not be indexed by the search engine. The value of the `@class` attribute can be used to exclude specific HTML elements from indexing. For example, the **div.not-indexed** value will not index all `<div>` elements that have a `@class` attribute with the value of **not-indexed**. Use a comma separator to specify more than one element.

webhelp.search.page.numberOfItems

Specifies the number of search results items displayed on each page. This parameter is only used when the **webhelp.search.enable.pagination** parameter is enabled.

webhelp.search.ranking

If this parameter is set to `false` then the 5-star rating mechanism is no longer included in the search results that are displayed on the **Search** tab (default setting is `true`).

webhelp.search.stop.words.include

Specifies a list of words that will be ignored by the search engine. Use a comma separator to specify more than one word.

webhelp.show.changes.and.comments

When set to `yes`, user comments, replies to comments, and tracked changes are published in the WebHelp output. The default value is `no`.

webhelp.sitemap.base.url

Base URL for all the `<loc>` elements in the generated `sitemap.xml` file. If this parameter is specified, the **loc** element will contain the value of this parameter plus the relative path to the page. If this parameter is not specified, the **loc** element will only contain the relative path of the page (the relative file path from the `@href` attribute of a `<topicref>` element from the *DITA map*, appended to this base URL value).

webhelp.sitemap.change.frequency

The value of the `<changefreq>` element in the generated `sitemap.xml` file. The `<changefreq>` element is optional in `sitemap.xml`. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the `<changefreq>` element is not added in `sitemap.xml`. Allowed values: <empty string> (default), `always`, `hourly`, `daily`, `weekly`, `monthly`, `yearly`, `never`.

webhelp.sitemap.priority

The value of the `<priority>` element in the generated `sitemap.xml` file. It can be set to any fractional number between 0.0 (least important priority) and 1.0 (most important priority). For example, 0.3, 0.5, or 0.8. The `<priority>` element is optional in `sitemap.xml`. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the `<priority>` element is not added in `sitemap.xml`.

Parameters Specific to Oxygen WebHelp Responsive

webhelp.fragment.feedback

You can integrate **Oxygen Feedback** with your WebHelp Responsive output to provide a comments area at the bottom of each page where readers can offer feedback. When you create

an **Oxygen Feedback** site configuration, an HTML fragment is generated during the final step of the creation process and that fragment should be set as the value for this parameter.

webhelp.default.collection.type.sequence

Specifies if the **sequence** value will be used by default when the `@collection-type` attribute is not specified. This option is helpful if you want to have *Next* and *Previous* navigational buttons generated for all HTML pages. Allowed values are **no** (default) and **yes**.

webhelp.enable.search.autocomplete

Specifies if the *Autocomplete* feature is enabled in the WebHelp search text field. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.enable.html.fragments.cleanup

Enables or disables the automatic conversion of HTML fragments to well-formed XML. If set to **true** (default), the transformation automatically converts non-well-formed HTML content to a well-formed XML equivalent. If set to **false**, the transformation will fail if at least one HTML fragment is not well-formed.

webhelp.enable.scroll.to.search.term

Specifies whether or not the page should scroll to the first search term when opening the search results page. Possible values are **no** (default) and **true**.

webhelp.fragment.after.body

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the body in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.body.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the body in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.body.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the body in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.body.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the body in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.body.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the body in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.logo_and_title

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the logo and title in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.main.page.search (deprecated)

This parameter is deprecated. Use `webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.main.page` instead.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.toc_or_tiles

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the table of contents or tiles in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.top_menu

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the top menu in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.body

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the page body in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.body.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the page body in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.body.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the page body in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.body.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the page body in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.body.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the page body in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.logo_and_title

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the logo and title. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.page.search (deprecated)

This parameter is deprecated. Use `webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.main.page` instead.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.toc_or_tiles

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the table of contents or tiles in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.top_menu

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the top menu in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.footer

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment as the page footer in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

Important:
This parameter should only be used if you are using a valid, purchased license of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (do not use it with a trial license).

webhelp.fragment.head

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment in the header section in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.head.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment in the header section in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.head.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment in the header section in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.head.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment in the header section in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.head.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment in the header section in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.welcome

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment as a welcome message (or title). The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.header

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the header section in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.header.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the header section in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.header.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the header section in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.header.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the header section in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.header.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the header section in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the main content section in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the main content section in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the main content section in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the main content section in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the main content section in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.main.content.area

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the main content section in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.main.content.area.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the main content section in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.main.content.area.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the main content section in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.topic.toolbar

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the toolbar buttons above the topic content in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.topic.toolbar

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the toolbar buttons above the topic content in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.topic.breadcrumb

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the breadcrumb component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.topic.breadcrumb

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the breadcrumb component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.publication.toc

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the publication's table of contents component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.publication.toc

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the publication's table of contents component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.topic.content

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the topic's content in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.topic.content

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the topic's content in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.feedback

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the **Oxygen Feedback** commenting component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.feedback

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the **Oxygen Feedback** commenting component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.topic.toc

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the topic's table of contents component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.topic.toc

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the topic's table of contents component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.custom.search.engine.results

This parameter can be used to replace the search results area with custom XHTML content. The value of the parameter is the path to an XHTML file that contains your custom content.

webhelp.fragment.custom.search.engine.script

This parameter can be used to replace WebHelp's built-in search engine with your own custom search engine. The value of the parameter is the path to an XHTML file that contains the scripts required for your custom search engine to run.

webhelp.labels.generation.mode

Controls whether or not labels are generated in the output. These labels are useful because users can easily search for topics with the same label by simply clicking on the label presented in the output. Possible values are:

- **keywords-label** - Generates labels for each defined `<keyword>` element that has the `@outputclass` attribute value set to **label**.
- **keywords** - Generates labels for each defined `<keyword>` element. If the topic contains `<keyword>` elements with the `@outputclass` attribute value set to **label**, then only these elements will have labels generated for them in the output.
- **disable** - Disables the generation of labels in the Webhelp Responsive output.

webhelp.merge.nested.topics.related.links

Specifies if the related links from nested topics will be merged with the links in the parent topic. Thus the links will be moved from the topic content to the related links component and all of the links from the same group (for example, *Related Tasks*, *Related References*, *Related Information*) are merged into a single group. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.publication.toc.hide.chunked.topics

Specifies if the table of contents will contain links for *chunked* topics. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.publication.toc.links

Specifies which links will be included in the table of contents. The possible values are:

- **chapter** (default) - The TOC will include links for the current topic, its children, its siblings, and its direct ancestor (including the direct ancestor's siblings), and the parent chapter.
- **topic** - The TOC will only include links for the current topic and its direct children.
- **all** - The TOC will include all links.

webhelp.publication.toc.tooltip.position

By default, if a topic contains a `<shortdesc>` element, its content is displayed in a tooltip when the user hovers over its link in the table of contents. This parameter controls whether or not this tooltip is displayed and its position relative to the link. The possible values are:

- **left**
- **right** (default)
- **top**
- **bottom**
- **hidden** - The tooltip will not be displayed.

webhelp.search.default.operator

Makes it possible to change the default operator for the search engine. Possible values are `and`, `or` (default). If set to `and` while the search query is WORD1 WORD2, the search engine only returns results for topics that contain both WORD1 and WORD2. If set to `or` and the search query is WORD1 WORD2, the search engine returns results for topics that contain either WORD1 or WORD2.

webhelp.search.stop.words.exclude

Specifies a list of words that will be excluded from the default list of *stop words* that are filtered out before the search processing. Use comma separators to specify more than one word (for example: `if,for,is`).

webhelp.show.breadcrumb

Specifies if the breadcrumb component will be presented in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.child.links

Specifies if child links will be generated in the output for all topics that have subtopics. The default value is `no`.

webhelp.show.indexterms.link

Specifies if an icon that links to the index terms page will be displayed in the output. The default value is `yes` (meaning the index terms icon is displayed). If set to `false`, the index terms icon is not displayed in the output and the index terms page is not generated.

webhelp.show.main.page.tiles

Specifies if the tiles component will be presented in the main page of the output. For a *tree* style layout, this parameter should be set to `no`.

webhelp.show.main.page.toc

Specifies if the table of contents will be presented in the main page of the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.expand.collapse.sections

Specifies if links to collapse sections will be presented within each topic in the output. Collapsing sections will collapse all collapsible elements (nested topics with titles, sections with titles, or tables with titles). The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.navigation.links

Specifies if navigation links will be presented in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.print.link

Specifies if a print link or icon will be presented within each topic in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.related.links

Specifies if the related links component will be presented in the WebHelp Responsive output. The default value is `yes`. The `webhelp.merge.nested.topics.related.links` parameter can be used in conjunction with this one to merge the related links from nested topics into the links in the parent topic.

webhelp.show.publication.toc

Specifies if a table of contents will be presented on the left side of each topic in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.topic.toc

Specifies if a topic table of contents will be presented on the right side of each topic in the output. This table of contents contains links to each `<section>` within the current topic that contains an `@id` attribute and the section corresponding to the current scroll position is highlighted. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.top.menu

Specifies if a menu will be presented at the topic of the main page in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.skip.main.page.generation

If set to `true`, the default main page is not generated in the output. The default value is `false`.

webhelp.top.menu.activated.on.click

When this parameter is activated (set to `yes`), clicking an item in the top menu will expand the submenu (if available). You can then click on a submenu item to open the item (topic). You can click outside the menu or press **ESC** to hide the menu. When set to `no` (default), hovering over a menu item displays the menu content.

webhelp.top.menu.depth

Specifies the maximum depth level of the topics that will be included in the top menu. The default value is `3`. A value of `0` means that the menu has unlimited depth.

webhelp.topic.collapsible.elements.initial.state

Specifies the initial state of collapsible elements (nested topics with titles, sections with titles, tables with titles or index term groups). The possible values are `collapsed` or `expanded` (default value).

Parameters for Adding a Link to PDF Documentation in WebHelp Responsive Output

The following transformation parameters can be used to generate a PDF link component in the WebHelp Responsive output (for example, it could link to the PDF equivalent of the documentation):

webhelp.pdf.link.url

Specifies the target URL for the PDF link component.

webhelp.pdf.link.text

Specifies the text for the PDF link component.

webhelp.pdf.link.icon.path

Specifies the path or URL of the image icon to be used for the PDF link component. If not specified, a default icon is used.

webhelp.show.pdf.link

Specifies whether or not the PDF link component is shown in the WebHelp Responsive output. Allowed values are: **yes** (default) and **no**.

webhelp.pdf.link.anchor.enabled

Specifies whether or not the current topic ID should be appended as the name destination at the end of the PDF link. Allowed values are: **yes** (default) and **no**.

Related information

Customizing WebHelp Responsive Output *(on page 1031)*
Layout and Features *(on page 944)*

DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS Transformation

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario based on a *DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing plugin* that converts DITA maps to PDF using a CSS-based processing engine and an HTML5 intermediate format. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with a built-in CSS-based PDF processing engine called **Oxygen PDF Chemistry**. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also supports some third-party processors.

For those who are familiar with CSS, this makes it very easy to style and customize the PDF output of your DITA projects without having to work with *xsl:fo* customizations. This transformation also includes some

built-in publishing templates that you can use for the layout of your PDF output and you can create your own templates or edit existing ones.

The following CSS-based PDF processors can be used:

- **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** - A built-in processor that is bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. For more information, see the Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide. This is the supported processor.
- **Prince Print with CSS** (not included in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation kit) - A third-party component that needs to be purchased from http://www.princexml.com.
- **Antenna House Formatter** (not included in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation kit) - A third-party component that needs to be purchased from http://www.antennahouse.com/antenna1/formatter/.

How to Create the Transformation Scenario

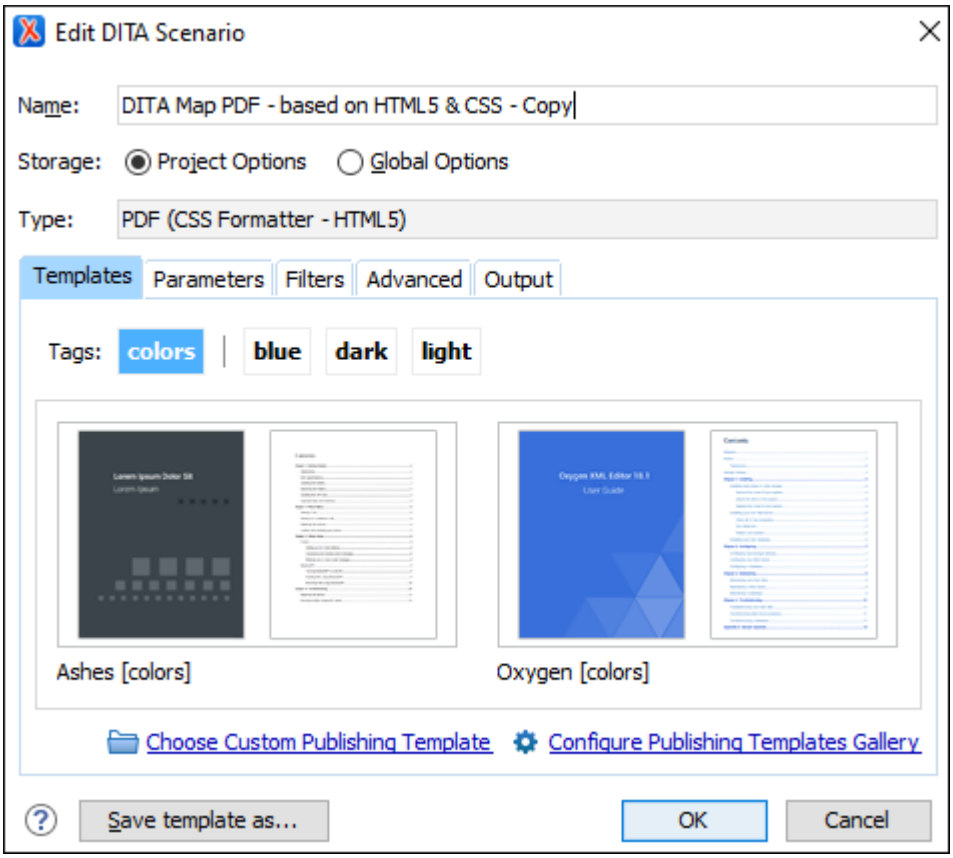
To create a **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Click the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** button from the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar.
2. Select the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
3. If you want to configure the transformation, click the **Edit** button.

   Step Result: This opens an **Edit scenario** configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in the following tabs:

- **Templates** Tab *(on page 2098)* - This tab contains a set of built-in publishing templates that you can use for the layout of your WebHelp system output. You can also create your own publishing templates by saving one from the gallery and changing it.

Figure 206. DITA Map to PDF Templates



- **Parameters** Tab *(on page 2104)* - This tab includes numerous parameters that can be set to customize the transformation.
- **Filters** Tab *(on page 2106)* - This tab allows you to filter certain content elements from the generated output.
- **Advanced** Tab *(on page 2107)* - This tab allows you to specify some advanced options for the transformation scenario.
- **Output** Tab *(on page 2110)* - This tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

4. In the **Parameters** tab, configure any of the following parameters (if applicable):
   - **args.css** - Specifies a path to a custom CSS to be used in addition to those specified in the publishing template. The files must have URL syntax and be separated using semicolons.
   - **css.processor.type**- This is where you choose the processor type. You can select between **Oxygen PDF Chemistry**, **Prince XML**, or **Antenna House**.
   - **css.processor.path.chemistry** (if you are using the **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** processor) - Specifies the path to the **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** executable file that will be run to generate the PDF. If this parameter is not set, the transformation will use the processor specified in the **CSS-based Processors** preferences page *(on page 174)*.

- **css.processor.path.prince** (if you are using the **Prince Print with CSS** processor) - Specifies the path to the Prince executable file that will be run to produce the PDF. If you installed Prince using its default settings, you can leave this blank.
- **css.processor.path.antenna-house** (if you are using the **Antenna House Formatter** processor) - Specifies the path to the Antenna House executable file that will be run to produce the PDF. If you installed Antenna House using its default settings, you can leave this blank.
- **show.changes.and.comments** - When set to `yes`, user comments, replies to comments, and *tracked changes* are published in the PDF output. The default value is `no`.
- **figure.title.placement** - Controls the position of the figure title relative to the image. Allowed values are "top" and "bottom", "top" is the default

5. Click **OK** and run the transformation scenario.

Customizing the Output

For information about customizing the output, see CSS-based DITA to PDF Customization *(on page 1162)*.

Related Information:
Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*
Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide
CSS-based DITA to PDF Customization *(on page 1162)*

DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO Transformation

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with the DITA Open Toolkit that provides a mechanism for converting *DITA maps (on page 2230)* to PDF output.

Creating a DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO Transformation Scenario

To create a *DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO* transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Click the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** button from the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar.
2. Select **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** and click the **Edit** button (or use the **Duplicate** button if your *framework (on page 2231)* is read-only).
3. Use the various tabs to configure the transformation scenario. In the **Parameters** tab, you can use a variety of parameters to customize the output. For example, the following parameters are just a few of the most commonly used ones:
   - `show.changes.and.comments` - If set to `yes`, user comments, replies to comments, and *tracked changes* are published in the PDF output.
   - `customization.dir` - Specifies the path to a customization directory.
   - `editlink.present.only.path.to.topic` - When this parameter is set to "true", the DITA topic path is displayed to the right of each topic title in the PDF output.
4. Click **OK** and then the **Apply Associated** button to run the transformation scenario.

Related Information:
XSL FO-based DITA to PDF Customization *(on page 1437)*

DITA Map MS Office Word Transformation

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with a transformation scenario that allows you to convert *DITA maps (on page 2230)* to Microsoft Office Word documents. It utilizes the **DITA to Word plugin** created by Jarno Elovirta. This *plugin* contains a Word document named **Normal.docx** (located in: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/dita/`*DITA-OT*`/plugins/com.elovirta.ooxml/resources`) that is used by the transformation scenario as a template to generate the final Word document.

Tip:
You can make general modifications to the **Normal.docx** template file to alter the published output. The Word application used to edit the **Normal.docx** should be configured with English locale as the style names for each Word element must be in English.

Configuring the Transformation Scenario

To configure a **DITA Map to MS Office Word** transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Open the DITA map in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*.
2. Click the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** button from the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar.
3. Select **DITA Map MS Office Word**.
4. For advanced customizations, in the **Parameters** tab you can use any of the following parameters that are unique to this transformation scenario to specify paths to files that affect the output in various ways:
   - **dotx.file** - Specifies the path to a Word template file (`.docx`) that will be used in the transformation to generate the final Word document. Set this parameter if you want to use a different template file other than the **Normal.docx** file that is used by default.
   - **document.flat.xsl** - Specifies the path to a pre-process clean-up stylesheet.
   - **core.xsl** - Specifies the path to a core metadata stylesheet.
   - **custom.xsl** - Specifies the path to a custom metadata stylesheet.
   - **document.xsl** - Specifies the path to a main document stylesheet.
   - **comments.xsl** - Specifies the path to a comments stylesheet.
   - **numbering.xsl** - Specifies the path to a list and title numbering stylesheet.
   - **footnotes.xsl** - Specifies the path to a footnote stylesheet.
   - **document.xml.xsl** - Specifies the path to a document relations metadata stylesheet.
   - **inkscape.exec** - Specifies the path to an Inkscape (open-source vector graphics editor) executable file.
5. Click **OK** and run the transformation scenario.

Result: The result of the transformation will automatically be opened in your system's default word processing application (such as Microsoft Word).

Related Information:

Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*
Migrating MS Office Documents to DITA *(on page 2180)*

DITA Map Markdown Transformation

Using the **Configure Transformation Scenarios** toolbar button, you can create a new transformation scenario of the type **DITA-OT transformation** and then choose one of the Markdown-specific output types:

- **GitHub-flavored Markdown**
- **Markdown**
- **GitBook**

More information about the Markdown output types is available in the DITA-OT documentation: https://www.dita-ot.org/dev/topics/dita2markdown.html.

The generated Markdown content can be used with a static web site generator (such as **MKDocs**) to build a web site: https://blog.oxygenxml.com/topics/publishing_dita_content_using_a_markdown_static_web_site_generator.html.

DITA Map CHM (Compiled HTML Help) Transformation

To perform a *Compiled HTML Help (CHM)* transformation, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin needs `Microsoft HTML Help Workshop` to be installed on your computer. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically detects if `HTML Help Workshop` is installed and uses it.

Note:
`HTML Help Workshop` might fail if the files used for transformation contain accents in their names, due to different encodings used when writing the *.hhp* and *.hhc* files. If the transformation fails to produce the CHM output but the *.hhp* (HTML Help Project) file is already generated, you can manually try to build the CHM output using `HTML Help Workshop`.

Changing the Output Encoding

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the `htmlhelp.locale` parameter to correctly display specific characters of different languages in the output of the *Compiled HTML Help (CHM)* transformation. By default, the **DITA Map CHM** transformation scenario that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has the `htmlhelp.locale` parameter set to `en-US`.

To customize this parameter, follow this procedure:

1. Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu.
2. Select the **DITA Map CHM** transformation scenario and click the **Edit** button.
3. In the **Parameter** tab, search for the `htmlhelp.locale` parameter and change its value to the desired language tag.

> **Note:**
> The format of the `htmlhelp.locale` parameter is `LL-CC`, where `LL` represents the language code (`en`, for example) and `CC` represents the country code (`US`, for example). The language codes are contained in the `ISO 639-1` standard and the country codes are contained in the `ISO 3166-1` standard. For further details about language tags, go to http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/rfc5646.txt.

Customizing the CHM Output

There are several possibilities available for customizing the CHM output:

- You can use a custom CSS stylesheet to customize how the HTML content is rendered in the output:
  1. Create the custom CSS.
  2. Select the **DITA Map CHM** transformation scenario and click the **Edit** button.
  3. In the **Parameter** tab, set the `args.css` parameter to point to the location of your custom CSS and make sure the `args.copy.css` parameter is set to **yes** to instruct the transformation to copy the custom CSS to the output folder.
  4. Run the transformation.
- If you are familiar with XSLT, there are two XSLT stylesheets that are used in the transformation to compile various settings and components in the CHM output. They are found in the following directory: `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/frameworks/dita/DITA-OT/plugins/org.dita.htmlhelp/xsl/map2htmlhelp`. The files are as follows:
  - **map2hhcImpl.xsl** - This file is used to compile the table of contents.
  - **map2hhpImpl.xsl** - This file contains information for compiling the CHM and various settings that are read by the *HTML Help Workshop* when creating the output.

DITA Map Metrics Report Transformation

A **DITA Map Metrics Report** action is available on the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar and in the **DITA Maps** main menu. It generates an overview report that contains useful statistics for a DITA map.

As an alternate approach, to create a metrics report from a *DITA map (on page 2230)* using a transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** action from the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar.
2. Select the **DITA Map Metrics Report** scenario from the **DITA Map** section.
3. Run the transformation.

The generated HTML report contains information such as:

- The number of processed maps and topics.
- The number of `map/bookmap/topic/task/concept/reference` types in the DITA map.
- Content reuse percentage.
- Number of elements and attributes of different types used in the entire *DITA map* structure.
- Number of words and characters used in the entire *DITA map* structure.
- DITA conditional processing attributes used in the *DITA maps*.
- Processing instructions.
- External links.
- All `@outputclass` attribute values gathered from the DITA project.

Important:
If you have cross references that point to content outside the scope of the DITA map, that referenced content is not counted. For example, if you have links to topics that are not included in the DITA map hierarchy, the content in those topics is ignored when generating the statistics.

The metrics report can also be obtained in XML format, making it possible to construct a metrics report evolution between multiple versions of the same DITA project.

DITA Map Zendesk Publishing

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in transformation scenario that provides the ability to publish DITA topics to XHTML output and upload them directly as articles to the *Zendesk* Help Center.

Attention:
This feature is only available in the **Enterprise** edition of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

To run the transformation, follow these steps:

1. Start Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and open a *DITA map* in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*.
2. Click the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** button.
3. Create a new **DITA-OT** transformation scenario and choose the **Zendesk Help Center** transformation type.
4. Go to **Parameters** tab and set the following parameters:

   Host

   The URL reference to the *Zendesk Help Center* (for example, `https://your-domain.zendesk.com`).

   Username

   The username (e-mail address) for the account used to upload the content.

API Token

An API token, generated in the *Zendesk* admin pages, necessary for authentication to the server: https://support.zendesk.com/hc/en-us/articles/226022787-Generating-a-new-API-token-.

Article category

The name of the category where the articles are uploaded. The category needs to be created in the *Zendesk* admin pages: https://support.zendesk.com/hc/en-us/articles/218222877-Organizing-knowledge-base-content-in-categories-and-sections#topic_hjs_tl4_kk.

Article section

The name of the section (inside the parent category) where articles are uploaded. The section needs to be created in the *Zendesk* admin pages: https://support.zendesk.com/hc/en-us/articles/218222877-Organizing-knowledge-base-content-in-categories-and-sections#topic_ysj_wtt_zz.

Note:
When publishing to a subsection, a path of section names separated by '///' can be passed (for example: `Main section///Subsection 1///Subsection 1.1`).

Create article draft

This setting controls whether the articles should be published (if the value is `false`) or saved as drafts (if the value is `true`). The default value is `false`.

Visible to

The name of the user segment that can view the articles.

Permission group name

The name of the Zendesk permission group that controls who edits and publishes articles: https://support.zendesk.com/hc/en-us/articles/203661966-Creating-managing-and-using-groups.

Create table of contents

When the `zendesk.create.toc` parameter is set to `true` (default value), a table of contents is published as the first article in the Zendesk section and this initial article references all other articles. The title of the TOC article is the title of the DITA map.

Specify a prefix title for the table of contents

Set the `zendesk.toc.title.prefix` parameter to specify a prefix to use for the title of the table of contents article.

Specify a suffix title for the table of contents

Set the `zendesk.toc.title.suffix` parameter to specify a suffix to use for the title of the table of contents article.

5. Save the changes and run the transformation.

Important:

There may be cases when the publishing breaks, presenting an error related to **HTTPS** certificates, similar to this one:

```
Error: org.zendesk.client.v2.ZendeskException: java.net.ConnectException: PKIX path building failed:
sun.security.provider.certpath.SunCertPathBuilderException: unable to find valid certification path
to requested target
```

This usually occurs if an HTTPS proxy server is installed in your company's network. In this case, if running on Windows, you can edit the transformation scenario you are using to publish **DITA** to **Zendesk** and in the **Advanced** tab, go to the **JVM Arguments** field and set this value:

```
-Djavax.net.ssl.trustStoreType=Windows-ROOT -Djavax.net.ssl.trustStore=C:\\Windows\\win.ini
```

Resources

For more information about publishing content to the Zendesk Help Center, watch the following video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/QZ_9Fk_LOk8

Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins Transformation

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with a transformation scenario designed to integrate DITA-OT plugins *(on page 2232)*. These DITA-OT *plugins* are used for various customizations. It is called **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** and is found in the **DITA Map** section of the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

Attention:
The integration will be performed on the DITA-OT version specified in the **DITA Open Toolkit** section of the **DITA** preferences page *(on page 74)*.

CAUTION:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin support engineers do not officially offer support and troubleshooting assistance for custom DITA-OT distributions or custom installed DITA-OT plugins. If you discover any issues or inconsistent behavior while using a custom DITA-OT or a DITA-OT that contains custom DITA-OT plugins, you should revert to the default built-in DITA-OT.

Running the Transformation Scenario

To integrate a DITA-OT *plugin*, follow these steps:

1. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin was installed in the default location, you may need to restart and run it as an administrator.
2. Select the **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** or **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** *(on page 934)* action from the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar (you could also use the same action on the main toolbar or open the **Transformation Scenarios** view *(on page 940)*).
3. Select the **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** transformation scenario. If the *integrator* is not visible, select the **Show all scenarios** action that is available in the **Settings** drop-down menu.
4. Apply the scenario *(on page 933)*.
5. Check the **Results** panel at the bottom of the application to make sure the build was successful.
6. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin with your normal permissions.

Related Information:
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*
Installing a DITA-OT Plugin *(on page 2157)*
Integrating a DITA Specialization *(on page 2169)*

Solving DITA Transformation Errors

If a DITA transformation results in errors or warnings, the information is displayed in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. The information includes the severity, description of the problem, the name of the resource, and the path of the resource.

To help prevent and solve DITA transformation problems, follow these steps:

1. Validate the *DITA map (on page 1926)* by using the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action that is available on the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar and in the **DITA Maps** menu.
2. If this action results in validation errors, solve them prior to executing the transformation. Also, you should pay attention to the warning messages because they may identify problems in the transformation.
3. Run the DITA transformation scenario *(on page 854)*.
4. If the transformation results in errors or warnings, they are displayed in the **Results** panel *(on page 310)* at the bottom of the editor. The following information is presented to help you troubleshoot the problems:
    - **Severity** - The first column displays the following icons that indicate the severity of the problem:
        - **Informational** - The transformation encountered a condition of which you should be aware.
        - **Warning** - The transformation encountered a problem that should be corrected.
        - **Error** - The transformation encountered a more severe problem, and the output is affected or cannot be generated.

- **Info** - Click the **See More** icon to open a web page that contains more details about DITA-OT error messages.
- **Description** - A description of the problem.
- **Resource** - The name of the transformation resource.
- **System ID** - The path of the transformation resource.

5. Use this information or other resources from the online DITA-OT community to solve the transformation problems before re-executing the transformation scenario.
6. If you need to contact the *Oxygen* technical support team, they will need you to send the entire transformation scenario execution log. To obtain it:
   a. Go to the **Options > Preferences > DITA** preferences page and set the **Show console output** option to **Always**.
   b. Execute the transformation scenario again. The console output messages are displayed in the **DITA-OT** view.
   c. Copy the entire log, save it in a text file, then send it to the *Oxygen* technical support team.
   d. After your issue has been solved, go back to the **Options > Preferences > DITA** preferences page and set the **Show console output** option to **When build fails**.

Related Information:
Troubleshooting DITA Transformation Problems *(on page 2119)*

DITA Topic Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes built-in transformation scenarios for transforming individual DITA Topics to HTML5, XHTML, or PDF output. They can be found in the **DITA** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

The available transformations scenarios for individual DITA topics include:

- **DITA HTML5** - This DITA-OT transformation scenario generates HTML5 output from a single DITA topic.
- **DITA XHTML** - This DITA-OT transformation scenario generates XHTML output from a single DITA topic. This was the first transformation scenario created for the DITA Open Toolkit and it originally served as the basis for all HTML-based transformations.
- **DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** - This transformation scenario converts individual DITA topics to PDF using a CSS-based processing engine and an HTML5 intermediate format. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with a built-in CSS-based PDF processing engine called **Oxygen PDF Chemistry**. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also supports some third-party processors.

  For those who are familiar with CSS, this makes it very easy to style and customize the PDF output of your DITA projects without having to work with *xsl:fo* customizations. Another advantage of this transformation scenario is that you can use the same customization CSS *(on page 1193)* or publishing template *(on page 1181)* that you use for converting entire DITA maps.

  The transformation scenario automatically detects the currently selected context DITA map (root map) *(on page 1885)* so that keys and references are properly resolved (the detected context map is

set as the value of the `args.root.map` parameter (this can be changed in the **Parameters** tab). It also automatically detects the currently applied profiling condition set *(on page 2134)* to be used as the default filtering option in the transformation scenario (this can be changed in the **Filters** tab).

The transformation scenario also supports a parameter named `args.enable.root.map.key.processing` that can be used to specify whether or not the values for `@keyref` and `@conkeyref` attributes within the transformed topics are resolved. The possible values are:

- **no** - This means that the values for all `@keyref` and `@conkeyref` attributes are ignored in the transformation. This results in lower processing times.
- **yes** - This means that the values for any `@keyref` and `@conkeyref` attributes found in the transformed topic are processed and resolved using the value of the `args.root.map` parameter.
- **auto** - This means that the process will search for any `@keyref` and `@conkeyref` attributes within the transformed topic and if any are found, the values will be processed and resolved using the value of the `args.root.map` parameter. If none are found, the `@keyref` and `@conkeyref` attributes are ignored.

- **DITA PDF - based on XSL-FO** - This DITA-OT transformation scenario converts individual DITA topics to PDF using an *xsl:fo* processor.

Related Information:
Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*
Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios *(on page 933)*
DITA Map Transformation Scenarios *(on page 2071)*

DocBook Transformation Scenarios

Built-in transformation scenarios allow you to transform DocBook documents to a variety of outputs, such as PDF, HTML, HTML Chunk, XHTML, XHTML Chunk, and EPUB. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes a DocBook 5.1 transformation scenario for *Assembly* documents. All of them are listed in the **DocBook 4** and **DocBook 5** sections in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

Related Information:
Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*
Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios *(on page 933)*

DocBook to DITA Transformation

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in transformation scenario that is designed to convert DocBook content to DITA. This transformation scenario is based upon a DITA Open Toolkit plugin that is available at sourceforge.net.

To convert a DocBook document to DITA, follow these steps:

1. Use one of the following two methods to begin the transformation process:
   - To apply the transformation scenario to a newly opened file, use the **Apply Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, T (Command + Option + T, T on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu.
   - To customize the transformation or change the scenario that is associated with the document, use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu.
2. Select the **DocBook to DITA** transformation scenario in the **DocBook 4** or **DocBook 5** section.
3. Click the **Apply associated** button to run the transformation.

   Step Result: The transformation will convert as many of the DocBook elements into equivalent DITA elements as it can recognize in its mapping process. For elements that cannot be mapped, the transformation will insert XML comments so that you can see which elements could not be converted.
4. Adjust the resulting DITA composite to suit your needs. You may have to remove comments, fix validation errors, adjust certain attributes, or split the content into individual topics.

Related Information:
Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*

DocBook to PDF Transformation

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in transformation scenario that is designed to convert DocBook content to PDF.

To convert a DocBook document to PDF, follow these steps:

1. Use one of the following two methods to begin the transformation process:
   - To apply the transformation scenario to a newly opened file, use the **Apply Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, T (Command + Option + T, T on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu.
   - To customize the transformation or change the scenario that is associated with the document, use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu.
2. Select the **DocBook PDF** transformation scenario in the **DocBook 4** or **DocBook 5** section.
3. Click the **Apply associated** button to run the transformation.

For information about customizing the PDF output for DocBook content, see DocBook to PDF Output Customization *(on page 1449)*.

Related Information:

Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*
DocBook to PDF Output Customization *(on page 1449)*

DocBook to EPUB Transformation

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in transformation scenario that is designed to convert DocBook content to EPUB. The EPUB specification recommends the use of *OpenType* fonts (recognized by their `.otf` file extension) whenever possible. To use a specific font, follow these steps:

1. Declare it in your CSS file, as in the following example:

```
@font-face {
font-family: "MyFont";
font-weight: bold;
font-style: normal;
src: url(fonts/MyFont.otf);
}
```

2. In the CSS, specify where this font is used. To set it as default for `<h1>` elements, use the `font-family` rule, as in the following example:

```
h1 {
font-size:20pt;
margin-bottom:20px;
font-weight: bold;
font-family: "MyFont";
text-align: center;
}
```

3. Open the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*, select the **DocBook EPUB** transformation scenario in the **DocBook 4** or **DocBook 5** section, and click **Edit**.
4. In the **Parameters** tab, set the `epub.embedded.fonts` parameter to `fonts/MyFont.otf`. If you need to provide more files, use commas to separate their file paths.

   Note:
   The `html.stylesheet` parameter allows you to include a custom CSS in the output EPUB.

5. Run the transformation scenario.

DocBook PDF (Show Change Tracking and Comments)

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in transformation scenario that is designed to show tracked changes and comment in DocBook to PDF output.

To include comments and *tracked changes* (stored within your DocBook 5 documents) in the PDF output, follow these steps:

1. Click the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** button.
2. Select **DocBook PDF (Show Change Tracking and Comments)** in the **DocBook 5** section.
3. If you need to configure the transformation, click the **Edit** *(on page 931)* or **Duplicate** *(on page 933)* button, make your changes to the scenario, and click **OK**.
4. Click the **Apply Associated** button to run the transformation scenario.

Result: Comment threads and tracked changes will now appear in the PDF output. Details about each comment or change will be available in the footer section for each page.

Creating New Transformation Scenarios

Defining a transformation scenario is the first step in the process of transforming a document. This section includes information on the types of new scenarios that are available in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and how to create each type of transformation.

XML Transformation with XSLT

This type of transformation specifies the transformation parameters and location of an XSLT stylesheet that is applied to the edited XML document. This scenario is useful when you develop an XML document and the XSLT document is in its final form.

To create an **XML transformation with XSLT** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** (**Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS)**) action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu. Then click the **New** button and select **XML transformation with XSLT**.
- Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view *(on page 940)*. Click the **New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **XML transformation with XSLT**.

Both methods open the **New Scenario** dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

XSLT Tab

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **XSLT** tab contains the following options:

XML URL

Specifies the source XML file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the file is used directly from its remote location.

Note:
If the transformer engine is Saxon 9.x and a custom URI resolver is configured in the advanced Saxon preferences page *(on page 194)*, the XML input of the transformation is passed to that URI resolver. If the transformer engine is one of the built-in XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 engines and the name of an initial template *(on page 829)* is specified in the scenario, the **XML URL** field can be empty. The **XML URL** field can also be empty if you use external XSLT processors *(on page 843)*. Otherwise, a value is mandatory in this field.

XSL URL

Specifies the source XSL file that the transformation will use. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, the file is used directly from its remote location.

Use "xml-stylesheet" declaration

If selected, the scenario applies the stylesheet specified explicitly in the XML document with the `xml-stylesheet` processing instruction. By default, this option is deselected and the transformation applies the XSLT stylesheet that is specified in the **XSL URL** field.

Transformer

This drop-down menu presents all the transformation engines available to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for performing a transformation. These include the built-in engines and the external engines defined in the Custom Engines preferences page *(on page 185)*. The engine you choose is used as the default transformation engine. Also, if an XSLT or XQuery document does not have an associated validation scenario, this transformation engine is used in the validation process (if it provides validation support).

Advanced options

Allows you to configure the advanced options of the Saxon HE/PE/EE engine *(on page 832)* for the current transformation scenario. To configure the same options globally, go to the Saxon-HE/PE/EE preferences page *(on page 191)*. For the current transformation scenario, these **Advanced options** override the options configured in that preferences page.

Parameters

Opens a **Configure parameters** dialog box *(on page 830)* that allows you to configure the XSLT parameters used in the current transformation. In this dialog box, you can also configure the parameters for additional XSLT stylesheets *(on page 830)*. If the XSLT transformation engine is custom-defined, you cannot use this dialog box to configure the parameters sent to the custom engine. Instead, you can copy all parameters from the dialog box using contextual menu actions and edit the custom XSLT engine to include the necessary parameters in the command line that starts the transformation process.

Extensions

Opens a dialog box for configuring the XSLT extension *JARS* or classes *(on page 831)* that define extension Java functions or extension XSLT elements used in the transformation.

Additional XSLT stylesheets

Opens a dialog box for adding XSLT stylesheets *(on page 832)* that are applied on the main stylesheet specified in the **XSL URL** field. This is useful when a chain of XSLT stylesheets must be applied to the input XML document.

XSLT Parameters

The global parameters of the XSLT stylesheet used in a transformation scenario can be configured by using the **Parameters** button in the **XSLT** tab of a new or edited transformation scenario dialog box.

The resulting dialog box includes a table that displays all the parameters of the current XSLT stylesheet, all imported and included stylesheets, and all additional stylesheets *(on page 832)*, along with their descriptions and current values. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and you can use the **Filter** text box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

If the **XPath** column is selected, the parameter value is evaluated as an XPath expression before starting the XSLT transformation.

Example:

For example, you can use expressions such as:

```
doc('test.xml')//entry

//person[@atr='val']
```

Note:

1. The **doc** function solves the argument relative to the XSL stylesheet location. You can use full paths or editor variables *(on page 199)* (such as **${cfdu}** [current file directory]) to specify other locations: `doc('${cfdu}/test.xml')//*`
2. You cannot use XSLT Functions. Only XPath functions are allowed.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing the parameters:

New

Opens the **Add Parameter** dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Edit

Opens the **Edit Parameter** dialog box that allows you to edit the selected parameter. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Unset

Resets the selected parameter to its default value. Available only for edited parameters with set values.

Delete

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

The bottom panel presents the following:

- The default value of the parameter selected in the table.
- A description of the parameter, if available.
- The system ID of the stylesheet that declares it.

Related Information:
Editor Variables *(on page 199)*

XSLT Extensions

The **Extensions** button opens a dialog box that allows you to specify the *JARS (on page 2231)* and classes that contain extension functions called from the XSLT file of the current transformation scenario. You can use the **Add**, **Edit**, and **Remove** buttons to configure the extensions.

Tip:
You can specify the path to the resources using wildcards (for example, `${oxygenHome}/lib/*.jar`).

An extension function called from the XSLT file of the current transformation scenario will be searched, in the specified extensions, in the order displayed in this dialog box. To change the order of the items, select the item to be moved and click the **Move up** or **Move down** buttons.

Additional XSLT Stylesheets

Use the **Additional XSLT Stylesheets** button in the **XSLT** tab to display a list of additional XSLT stylesheets to be used in the transformation and you can add files to the list or edit existing entries. The following actions are available:

Add

Adds a stylesheet in the **Additional XSLT stylesheets** list using a file browser dialog box. You can type an editor variable *(on page 199)* in the file name field of the browser dialog box. The name of the stylesheet will be added in the list after the current selection.

Remove

Deletes the selected stylesheet from the **Additional XSLT stylesheets** list.

Up

Moves the selected stylesheet up in the list.

Down

Moves the selected stylesheet down in the list.

Advanced Saxon HE/PE/EE XSLT Transformation Options

The XSLT transformation scenario allows you to configure advanced options that are specific for the Saxon HE (Home Edition), PE (Professional Edition), and EE (Enterprise Edition) engines. They are the same options as those in the **Saxon HE/PE/EE** preferences page *(on page 191)* but they are configured as a specific set of transformation options for each transformation scenario, while the values set in the preferences page apply as global options. The advanced options configured in a transformation scenario override the global options defined in the preferences page.

Saxon-HE/PE/EE Options

The advanced options for Saxon 12.9 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE), and Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Mode ("-im")

A Saxon-specific option that sets the initial mode for the transformation. If this value is also specified in a configuration file *(on page 833)*, the value in this option takes precedence.

Template ("-it")

A Saxon-specific option that sets the name of the initial XSLT template to be executed. If this value is also specified in a configuration file *(on page 833)*, the value in this option takes precedence.

Tip:
If your stylesheet includes `<xsl:template name="xsl:initial-template">`, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will automatically detect and use it as the initial template, so this option is not needed in this case.

Use a configuration file ("-config")

Select this option if you want to use a Saxon 12.9 configuration file that will be executed for the XSLT transformation and validation processes. You can specify the path to the configuration file by entering it in the **URL** field, or by using the **Insert Editor Variables** button, or using the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Attention:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin does not support the `ALLOWED_PROTOCOLS` Saxon property (*http://saxon.sf.net/feature/allowedProtocols*). This feature is specific to Saxon and controls access by Saxon (but not by underlying software, such as the XML parser). For more information, see https://www.saxonica.com/documentation12/index.html#!configuration/config-features.

Enable Optimizations ("-opt")

This option is selected by default, which means that optimization is enabled. If not selected, the optimization is suppressed, which is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

Line numbering ("-l")

Line numbers where errors occur are included in the output messages.

Expand attributes defaults ("-expand")

Specifies whether or not the attributes defined in the associated DTD or XML Schema are expanded in the output of the transformation you are executing.

DTD validation of the source ("-dtd")

Specifies whether or not the source document will be validated against their associated DTD. You can choose from the following:

- **On** - Requests DTD validation of the source file and of any files read using the `document()` function.
- **Off** - (default setting) Suppresses DTD validation.

- **Recover** - Performs DTD validation but treats the errors as non-fatal.

> **Note:**
> Any external DTD is likely to be read even if not used for validation, since DTDs can contain definitions of entities.

Strip whitespaces ("-strip")

Specifies how the *strip whitespaces* operation is handled. You can choose one of the following values:

- **All ("all")** - Strips *all* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source document.
- **Ignore ("ignorable")** - Strips all *ignorable* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.
- **None ("none")** - Strips *no* whitespace before further processing.

Enable profiling ("-TP")

If selected, profiling of the execution time in a stylesheet is enabled. The corresponding text field is used to specify the path to the output file where the profiling information will be saved. As long as the option is selected, and the output file specified, it will gather timed tracing information and create a profile report to the specified file.

Saxon-PE/EE Options

The following advanced options are specific for Saxon 12.9 Professional Edition (PE) and Enterprise Edition (EE) only:

Register Saxon-JS extension functions and instructions

Registers the Saxon-CE extension functions and instructions when compiling a stylesheet using the Saxon 12.9 processors.

Allow calls on extension functions ("-ext")

If selected, the stylesheet is allowed to call external Java functions. This does not affect calls on integrated extension functions, including Saxon and EXSLT extension functions. This option is useful when loading an untrusted stylesheet (such as from a remote site using `http://[URL]`). It ensures that the stylesheet cannot call arbitrary Java methods and thus gain privileged access to resources on your machine.

Enable assertions ("-ea")

In XSLT 3.0, you can use the `<xsl:assert>` element to make assertions in the form of XPath expressions, causing a dynamic error if the assertion turns out to be false. If this option is

selected, XSLT 3.0 `<xsl:assert>` instructions are enabled. If it is not selected (default), the assertions are ignored.

Saxon-EE Options

The advanced options that are specific for Saxon 12.9 Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

XML Schema version

Use this option to change the default XML Schema version for this transformation. To change the default XML Schema version globally, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XML Parser > XML Schema** and use the **Default XML Schema version** option *(on page 181)*.

Validation of the source file ("-val")

Requests schema-based validation of the source file and of any files read using `document()` or similar functions. It can have the following values:

- **Schema validation ("strict")** - This mode requires an XML Schema and allows for parsing the source documents with strict schema-validation enabled.
- **Lax schema validation ("lax")** - If an XML Schema is provided, this mode allows for parsing the source documents with schema-validation enabled but the validation will not fail if, for example, element declarations are not found.
- **Disable schema validation** - This specifies that the source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.

Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings ("-outval")

Normally, if validation of result documents is requested, a validation error is fatal. Selecting this option causes such validation failures to be treated as warnings.

Write comments for non-fatal validation errors of the result document

The validation messages for non-fatal errors are written (wherever possible) as a comment in the result document itself.

Enable streaming mode

Selecting this option will allow an XSLT to run in streaming mode. It is not selected by default. However, in certain instances, the Saxon XSLT processor may auto detect and use streaming even if this option is not selected.

Other Options

Initializer class

Equivalent to the `-init` Saxon command-line argument. The value is the name of a user-supplied class that implements the *net.sf.saxon.lib.Initializer* interface. This initializer is called during the initialization process, and may be used to set any options required on the configuration programmatically. It is particularly useful for tasks such as registering extension functions,

collations, or external object models, especially in Saxon-HE where the option cannot be set via a configuration file. Saxon only calls the initializer when running from the command line, but the same code may be invoked to perform initialization when running user application code.

Using Saxon Integrated Extension Functions

Saxon, the transformation and validation engine used by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, can be customized by adding custom functions (called Integrated Extension Functions) that can be called from XPath.

To define such a function, follow these steps:

1. Create a file with a Java class that extends `net.sf.saxon.lib.ExtensionFunctionDefinition`. Here is an example:

```
private static class ShiftLeft extends ExtensionFunctionDefinition {
  @Override
  public StructuredQName getFunctionQName() {
    return new StructuredQName("eg", "http://example.com/saxon-extension", "shift-left");
  }

  @Override
  public SequenceType[] getArgumentTypes() {
    return new SequenceType[] {SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER, SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER};
  }

  @Override
  public SequenceType getResultType(SequenceType[] suppliedArgumentTypes) {
    return SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER;
  }

  @Override
  public ExtensionFunctionCall makeCallExpression() {
    return new ExtensionFunctionCall() {
      public SequenceIterator call(SequenceIterator[] arguments, XPathContext context)
                  throws XPathException {
        long v0 = ((IntegerValue)arguments[0].next()).longValue();
        long v1 = ((IntegerValue)arguments[1].next()).longValue();
        long result = v0<<v1;
        return Value.asIterator(Int64Value.makeIntegerValue(result));
      }
    };
  }
}
```

2. Compile the class and add it to a JAR file.
3. Add a file called **net.sf.saxon.lib.ExtensionFunctionDefinition** that contains the fully qualified name of the Java class in the `META-INF/services/` folder of the JAR file.

Note:
To add more function definitions in the same JAR file, you need to add their fully qualified names on different lines.

To enable Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to pick up your custom function definition, the JAR file should be added to the classpath of the transformer. Here are some possibilities:

- If you develop a framework, you just need to link the JAR file in the **Classpath** tab *(on page 88)*.
- In a validation scenario *(on page 537)*, you can use the **Extensions** button to open a dialog box where you can add libraries.
- In a transformation scenario, you can use the **Extensions** button in the **XSLT** tab *(on page 830)* to open a dialog box where you can add libraries.

FO Processor Tab (XSLT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **FO Processor** tab contains the following options:

Perform FO Processing

Specifies whether or not an FO processor is applied (either the built-in Apache FOP engine or an external engine defined in **Preferences**) during the transformation.

Input

Choose between the following options to specify which input file to use:

- **XSLT result as input** - The FO processor is applied to the result of the XSLT transformation that is defined in the **XSLT** tab.
- **XML URL as input** - The FO processor is applied to the input XML file.

Method

The output format of the FO processing. The available options depend on the selected processor type.

Processor

Specifies the FO processor to be used for the transformation. It can be the built-in Apache FOP processor or an external processor *(on page 171)*.

Output Tab (XSLT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab contains the following options:

Prompt for file

At the end of the transformation, a file browser dialog box is displayed for specifying the path and name of the file that stores the transformation result.

Save As

The path of the file where the result of the transformation is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in Browser/System Application

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the file type of the result (for example, in Windows *PDF* files are often opened in *Acrobat Reader*).

Note:
To set the web browser that is used for displaying HTML/XHTML pages, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there.

- **Output file** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this button to automatically open the default output file at the end of the transformation.
- **Other location** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this option to open the file specified in this field at the end of the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in editor

When this is option is selected, at the end of the transformation, the default output file is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor, or if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor).

Show in results view as

You can choose to view the results in one of the following:

- **XML** - If this is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in an XML viewer panel at the bottom of the application window with syntax highlighting *(on page 163)*.
- **XHTML** - This option is only available if **Open in Browser/System Application** is not selected. If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in a built-in XHTML browser panel at the bottom of the application window.

  Important:
  When transforming very large documents, you should be aware that selecting this option may result in very long processing times. This drawback is due to the built-in Java XHTML browser implementation. To avoid delays for large documents, if you want to see the XHTML result of the transformation, you should use an external browser by selecting the **Open in Browser/System Application** option instead.

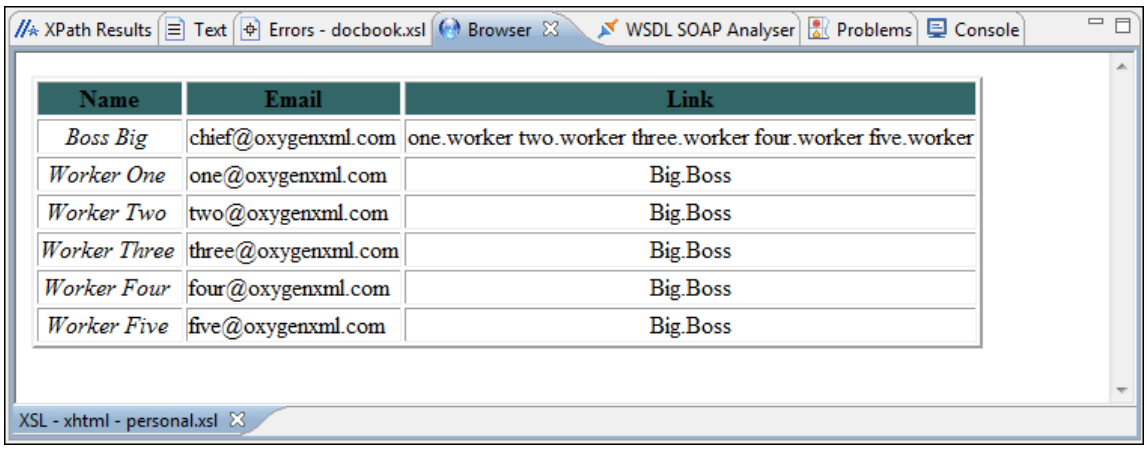
- **Image URLs are relative to** - If **Show in results view as XHTML** is selected, this option specifies the path used to resolve image paths contained in the transformation result. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Attention:
If your input XSLT contains `<xsl:result-document>` elements, then the secondary results will be saved to the specified URIs while the principal result is specified in this **Output** tab. For more information, see: https://www.w3.org/TR/xslt-30/#element-result-document.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Browser View

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Browser view is automatically displayed in the views pane of the Eclipse window to display HTML output from XSLT transformations. It contains a tab for each file with HTML results displayed in the view.

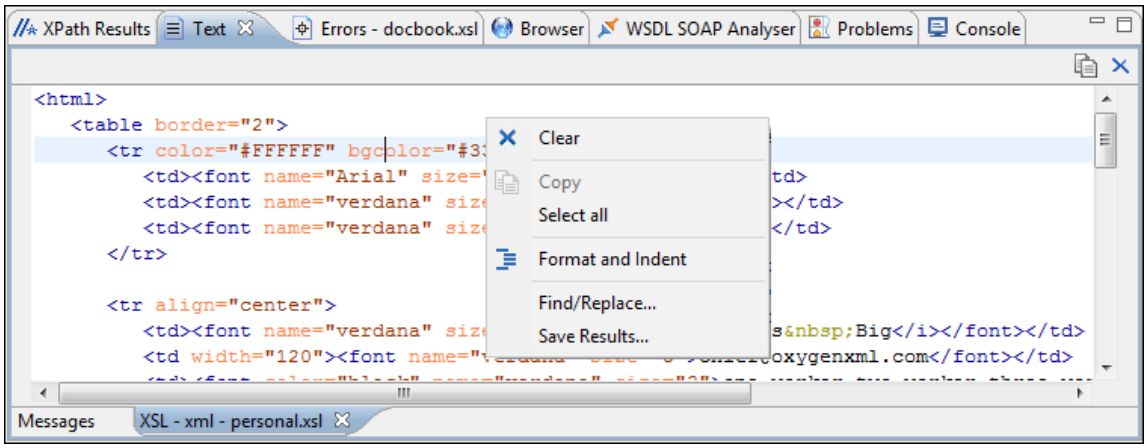
Figure 207. Browser View



Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Text View

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Text** view is automatically displayed in the views pane of the Eclipse window to display text output from XSLT transformations, FO processor info, warnings, and error messages. It contains a tab for each file with text results displayed in the view.

Figure 208. Text View



Text View Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available when the contextual menu is invoked in this view:

Clear

Removes all content from the view.

Copy

Copies the selected content to the clipboard.

Select All

Selects all content in the view.

Format and Indent

Formats (*pretty-prints (on page 2233)*) the content in this view.

Find/Replace

Allows you to perform search and replace operations.

Save Results

Saves the content in the view to a file in text format.

Configuring an XSLT Processor for Generating Output

This section explains how to configure an XSLT processor and extensions for such a processor in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Supported XSLT Processors

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes the following XSLT processors:

- **Xalan 2.7.2** (Deprecated) - Xalan-Java is an XSLT processor for transforming XML documents into HTML, text, or other XML document types. It implements XSL Transformations (XSLT) Version 1.0 and XML Path Language (XPath) Version 1.0.
- **Saxon 6.5.5** - Saxon 6.5.5 is an XSLT processor that implements the Version 1.0 XSLT and XPath with a number of powerful extensions. This version of Saxon also includes many of the new features that were first defined in the XSLT 1.1 working draft, but for conformance and portability reasons these are not available if the stylesheet header specifies `version="1.0"`.
- **Saxon 12.9 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE)** - Saxon-HE/PE implements the basic conformance level for XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 and XQuery 1.0. The term *basic XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 processor* is defined in the draft XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 specifications. It is a conformance level that requires support for all features of the language other than those that involve schema processing. The HE product remains open source, but removes some of the more advanced features that are present in Saxon-PE.

- **Saxon 12.9 Enterprise Edition (EE)** - Saxon EE is the schema-aware edition of Saxon and it is one of the built-in processors included in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. Saxon EE includes an XML Schema processor, and schema-aware XSLT, XQuery, and XPath processors.

  The validation in schema aware transformations is done according to the XML Schema 1.0 or 1.1. This can be configured in Preferences *(on page 181)*.

  Note:
  Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin implements a Saxon *framework* that allows you to create Saxon configuration files. Two templates are available: **Saxon collection catalog** and **Saxon configuration**. Both of these templates support content completion, element annotation, and attribute annotation.

  Note:
  Saxon can use the *ICU-J localization library* (`saxon9-icu.jar`) to add support for sorting and date/number formatting in a wide variety of languages. This library is not included in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation kit. However, Saxon will use the default collation and localization support available in the currently used JRE. To enable this capability, follow these steps:
  1. Download Saxon 12.9 Professional Edition (PE) or Enterprise Edition (EE) from http://www.saxonica.com.
  2. Unpack the downloaded archive.

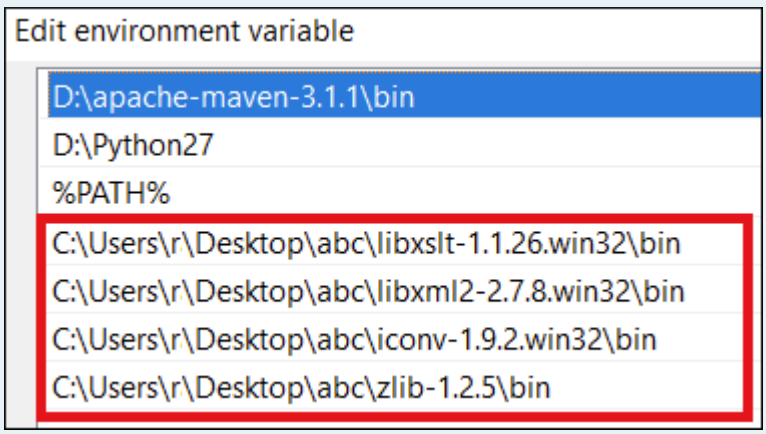
3. Create a new XSLT transformation scenario (or edit an existing one). In the **XSLT** tab, click the **Extensions** button to open the list of additional libraries used by the transformation process.
4. Click **Add** and browse to the folder where you unpacked the downloaded archive and choose the `saxon9-icu.jar` file.

Note that the `saxon9-icu.jar` should NOT be added to the application library folder because it will conflict with another version of the ICU-J library that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

- **Xsltproc (libxslt)** (Deprecated) - Libxslt is the XSLT C library developed for the Gnome project. **Libxslt** is based on *libxml2*, the XML C library developed for the Gnome project. It also implements most of the EXSLT set of processor-portable extensions, functions, and some of Saxon's evaluate and expression extensions.

  Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses **Libxslt** through its command-line tool (*Xsltproc*). Depending on your operating system, you must download the Libxslt libraries on your machine from http://xmlsoft.org/XSLT/downloads.html and place them in a local folder. Then you need to update the `PATH` environmental variable to contain the parent folder where the `xsltproc` executable is located.

  Tip:
  As an example, a Windows installation of the Xsltproc engine would follow these steps:
  1. Go to http://ftp.zlatkovic.com/libxml.en.html and download the following ZIP files: **iconv-1.9.2.win32.zip**, **libxml2-2.7.8.win32.zip**, **libxslt-1.1.26.win32.zip**, **zlib-1.2.5.win32.zip**.
  2. Unzip all of them into the same folder of your choice.
  3. Edit the `PATH` environment variable and add the `bin` folder for all four archives:

  4. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

  Result: You can now use the **xsltproc** processor as an XSLT engine in the XSLT transformation scenario.

Note:
The Xsltproc processor can be configured from the **XSLTPROC** options page *(on page 194)*.

CAUTION:
There is a known problem where file paths that contain spaces are not handled correctly in the LIBXML processor. For example, the built-in *XML Catalog (on page 2235)* files of the built-in document types (DocBook, TEI, DITA, etc.) are not handled properly by LIBXML if Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is installed in the default location on Windows (C:\Program Files). This is because the built-in *XML catalog* files are stored in the `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks` subdirectory of the installation directory, and in this case it contains a space character.

Configuring Custom XSLT Processors

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to configure custom processors to be used for running XSLT and XQuery transformations.

To add a new custom processor, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XSLT-XQuery > Custom Engines**.
2. Click the **New** button at the bottom of the dialog box.
3. Configure the parameters for the custom engine *(on page 185)*.
4. Click **OK**.

Note:

The output messages of a custom processor are displayed in an output view at the bottom of the application window. If an output message follows the format of an Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin linked message *(on page 533)*, clicking it highlights the location of the message in an editor panel containing the file referenced in the message.

Related Information:
Custom Engines Preferences *(on page 185)*

Configuring the XSLT Processor Extensions Paths

The Saxon and Xalan processors support the use of extension elements and extension functions. Unlike a literal result element, which the stylesheet simply transfers to the result tree, an extension element performs an action. The extension is usually used because the XSLT stylesheet fails in providing adequate functions for accomplishing a more complex task.

For more information about how to use extensions, see the following links:

- **Xalan (Deprecated)** - http://xml.apache.org/xalan-j/extensions.html
- **Saxon 6.5.5** - http://saxon.sourceforge.net/saxon6.5.5/extensions.html
- **Saxon 12.9** - http://www.saxonica.com/documentation9.5/index.html#!extensibility

To set an XSLT processor extension (a directory or a `jar` file), use the **Extensions** button *(on page 830)* in the **Edit scenario** dialog box.

XML Transformation with XQuery

This type of transformation specifies the transform parameters and location of an XQuery file that is applied to the edited XML document.

Use the **XML transformation with XQuery** scenario to apply a transformation to have an XQuery file query an XML file for the output results.

To create an **XML transformation with XQuery** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu. Then click the **New** button and select **XML transformation with XQuery**.
- Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view *(on page 940)*. Click the **New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **XML transformation with XQuery**.

Both methods open the **New Scenario** dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

XQuery Tab

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **XQuery** tab contains the following options:

XML URL

Specifies the source XML file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the file is used directly from its remote location.

Note:
If the transformer engine is Saxon 9.x and a custom URI resolver is configured in the advanced Saxon preferences page *(on page 194)*, the XML input of the transformation is passed to that URI resolver.

XQuery URL

Specifies the source XQuery file to be used for the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, the file is used directly from its remote location.

Transformer

This drop-down menu presents all the transformation engines available to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for performing a transformation. These include the built-in engines and the external engines defined in the Custom Engines preferences page *(on page 185)*. The engine you choose is used as the default transformation engine. Also, if an XSLT or XQuery document does not have an associated validation scenario, this transformation engine is used in the validation process (if it provides validation support).

Advanced options

Allows you to configure the advanced options of the Saxon HE/PE/EE engine *(on page 847)* for the current transformation scenario. To configure the same options globally, go to the Saxon-HE/PE/EE preferences page *(on page 191)*. For the current transformation scenario, these **Advanced options** override the options configured in that preferences page.

Parameters

Opens the **Configure parameters** dialog box *(on page 845)* for configuring the XQuery parameters. You can use the buttons in this dialog box to add, edit, or remove parameters. If the XQuery transformation engine is custom-defined, you can not use this dialog box to set parameters. Instead, you can copy all parameters from the dialog box using contextual menu actions and edit the custom XQuery engine to include the necessary parameters in the command line that starts the transformation process.

Extensions

Opens a dialog box for configuring the XQuery extension *JARS* or classes *(on page 847)* that define extension Java functions or extension XSLT elements used in the transformation.

XQuery Parameters

The global parameters of the XQuery file used in a transformation scenario can be configured by using the **Parameters** button in the **XQuery** tab.

The resulting dialog box includes a table that displays all the parameters of the current XQuery file, along with their descriptions and current values. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and use the **Filter** text

box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

If the **XPath** column is selected, the parameter value is evaluated as an XPath expression before starting the XQuery transformation.

Example:

For example, you can use expressions such as:

```
doc('test.xml')//entry

//person[@atr='val']
```

Note:

1. The **doc** function solves the argument relative to the XQuery file location. You can use full paths or editor variables *(on page 199)* (such as **${cfdu}** [current file directory]) to specify other locations: `doc('${cfdu}/test.xml')//*`
2. Only XPath functions are allowed.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing the parameters:

New

Opens the **Add Parameter** dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Edit

Opens the **Edit Parameter** dialog box that allows you to edit the selected parameter. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Unset

Resets the selected parameter to its default value. Available only for edited parameters with set values.

Delete

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

The bottom panel presents the following:

- The default value of the parameter selected in the table.
- A description of the parameter, if available.
- The system ID of the stylesheet that declares it.

Related Information:
Editor Variables *(on page 199)*

XQuery Extensions

The **Extensions** button is used to specify the *JAR (on page 2231)* and classes that contain extension functions called from the XQuery file of the current transformation scenario. You can use the **Add**, **Edit**, and **Remove** buttons to configure the extensions.

An extension function called from the XQuery file of the current transformation scenario will be searched, in the specified extensions, in the order displayed in this dialog box. To change the order of the items, select the item to be moved and click the **Move up** or **Move down** buttons.

Advanced Saxon HE/PE/EE XQuery Transformation Options

The XQuery transformation scenario allows you to configure advanced options that are specific for the Saxon HE (Home Edition), PE (Professional Edition), and EE (Enterprise Edition) engines.

Saxon-HE/PE/EE Options

The advanced options for Saxon 12.9 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE), and Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Use a configuration file ("-config")

Sets a Saxon 12.9 configuration file that is used for XQuery transformation and validation scenarios.

Enable Optimizations ("-opt")

This option is selected by default, which means that optimization is enabled. If not selected, the optimization is suppressed, which is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

Use linked tree model ("-tree:linked")

This option activates the linked tree model.

Strip whitespaces ("-strip")

Specifies how the *strip whitespaces* operation is handled. You can choose one of the following values:

- **All ("all")** - Strips *all* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source document.
- **Ignore ("ignorable")** - Strips all *ignorable* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.
- **None ("none")** - Strips *no* whitespace before further processing.

Enable profiling ("-TP")

If selected, profiling of the execution time in a query is enabled. The corresponding text field is used to specify the path to the output file where the profiling information will be saved. As long as the option is selected, and the output file specified, it will gather timed tracing information and create a profile report to the specified file.

Note:
The profiling support works only if the **Present as a sequence** transformation option *(on page 850)* is not set.

Saxon-PE/EE Options

The following advanced options are specific for Saxon 12.9 Professional Edition (PE) and Enterprise Edition (EE) only:

Allow calls on extension functions ("-ext")

If selected, calls on external functions are allowed. Selecting this option is not recommended in an environment where untrusted stylesheets may be executed. It also disables user-defined extension elements and the writing of multiple output files, both of which carry similar security risks.

Saxon-EE Options

The advanced options that are specific for Saxon 12.9 Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Validation of the source file ("-val")

Requests schema-based validation of the source file and of any files read using `document()` or similar functions. It can have the following values:

- **Schema validation ("strict")** - This mode requires an XML Schema and allows for parsing the source documents with strict schema-validation enabled.
- **Lax schema validation ("lax")** - If an XML Schema is provided, this mode allows for parsing the source documents with schema-validation enabled but the validation will not fail if, for example, element declarations are not found.
- **Disable schema validation** - This specifies that the source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.

Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings ("-outval")

Normally, if validation of result documents is requested, a validation error is fatal. Selecting this option causes such validation failures to be treated as warnings.

Write comments for non-fatal validation errors of the result document

The validation messages for non-fatal errors are written (wherever possible) as a comment in the result document itself.

Enable XQuery update ("-update:(on|off)")

This option controls whether or not XQuery update syntax is accepted. The default value is off.

Backup files updated by XQuery ("-backup:(on|off)")

If selected, backup versions for any XML files updated with an XQuery Update are generated. This option is available when the **Enable XQuery update** option is selected.

Other Options

Initializer class

Equivalent to the `-init` Saxon command-line argument. The value is the name of a user-supplied class that implements the *net.sf.saxon.lib.Initializer* interface. This initializer is called during the initialization process, and may be used to set any options required on the configuration programmatically. It is particularly useful for tasks such as registering extension functions, collations, or external object models, especially in Saxon-HE where the option cannot be set via a configuration file. Saxon only calls the initializer when running from the command line, but the same code may be invoked to perform initialization when running user application code.

FO Processor Tab (XQuery Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **FO Processor** tab contains the following options:

Perform FO Processing

Specifies whether or not an FO processor is applied (either the built-in Apache FOP engine or an external engine defined in **Preferences**) during the transformation.

Input

Choose between the following options to specify which input file to use:

- **XQuery result as input** - The FO processor is applied to the result of the XQuery transformation that is defined in the **XQuery** tab.
- **XML URL as input** - The FO processor is applied to the input XML file.

Method

The output format of the FO processing. The available options depend on the selected processor type.

Processor

Specifies the FO processor to be used for the transformation. It can be the built-in Apache FOP processor or an external processor *(on page 171)*.

Output Tab (XQuery Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab contains the following options:

Present as a sequence

Selecting this option will reduce the time necessary to fetch the full results, as it will only fetch the first chunk of the results.

Prompt for file

At the end of the transformation, a file browser dialog box is displayed for specifying the path and name of the file that stores the transformation result.

Save As

The path of the file where the result of the transformation is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in Browser/System Application

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the file type of the result (for example, in Windows *PDF* files are often opened in *Acrobat Reader*).

Note:
To set the web browser that is used for displaying HTML/XHTML pages, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there.

- **Output file** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this button to automatically open the default output file at the end of the transformation.
- **Other location** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this option to open the file specified in this field at the end of the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in editor

When this is option is selected, at the end of the transformation, the default output file is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor, or if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor).

Show in results view as

You can choose to view the results in one of the following:

- **XML** - If this is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in an XML viewer panel at the bottom of the application window with syntax highlighting *(on page 163)*.
- **XHTML** - This option is only available if **Open in Browser/System Application** is not selected. If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in a built-in XHTML browser panel at the bottom of the application window.

  Important:
  When transforming very large documents, you should be aware that selecting this option may result in very long processing times. This drawback is due to the built-in Java XHTML browser implementation. To avoid delays for large documents, if you want to see the XHTML result of the transformation, you should use an external browser by selecting the **Open in Browser/System Application** option instead.

- **Image URLs are relative to** - If **Show in results view as XHTML** is selected, this option specifies the path used to resolve image paths contained in the transformation result. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

XML to PDF Transformation with CSS

This type of transformation uses the **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** processing engine to obtain PDF output by applying CSS styling to the edited XML document. This scenario is useful for those who are familiar with CSS and want to obtain PDF output as its final form.

To create an **XML to PDF transformation with CSS** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu. Then click the **New** button and select **XML to PDF transformation with CSS**.
- Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view *(on page 940)*. Click the **New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **XML to PDF transformation with CSS**.

Both methods open the **New Scenario** dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

For more information about the **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** processing engine and numerous tips for customizing the output, see the Oxygen Chemistry User Guide.

CSS Tab (XML to PDF Transformation with CSS)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **CSS** tab contains the following options:

XML URL

Specifies the source XML file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the file is used directly from its remote location.

CSS URL

Optionally, you can use this option to specify the location of a custom CSS file to be applied to the transformation. If this option is left blank, only the CSS referenced directly from the document will be applied. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Apply CSS stylesheets set in the current framework

If selected, CSS stylesheets that are specified in the framework (in the Document Type configuration CSS subtab *(on page 89)*) are applied to the transformation in addition to any CSS referenced directly in the document or specified in the CSS URL field *(on page 852)*.

Note:
If CSS files are specified in multiple ways, the transformation applies the CSS in the following order (from lowest priority to highest):

- CSS files that are specified in the framework (in the Document Type configuration CSS subtab *(on page 89)*).
- CSS files referenced directly in the document.
- CSS files specified in the CSS URL field *(on page 852)*.

Processor options link

Opens the **CSS-based Processors** preferences page *(on page 174)* where you can configure some options for generating PDF output.

Output Tab (XML to PDF Transformation with CSS)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab contains the following options:

Output File section

Save As

The path of the file where the result of the transformation is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in Browser/System Application

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the PDF file type (for example, in Windows *PDF* files are often opened in *Acrobat Reader*).

Debugging section

Dump the intermediate annotated XML

Select this option to include (dump) the intermediate, annotated XML file in the same location as the output file. This can be used for debugging purposes.

Dump the FO file

Select this option to include (dump) the FO file (before it is converted to PDF) in the same location as the output file. This can be used for debugging purposes.

Console options link

Opens the **CSS-based Processors** preferences page *(on page 174)* where you can configure some options for generating PDF output.

DITA-OT Transformation

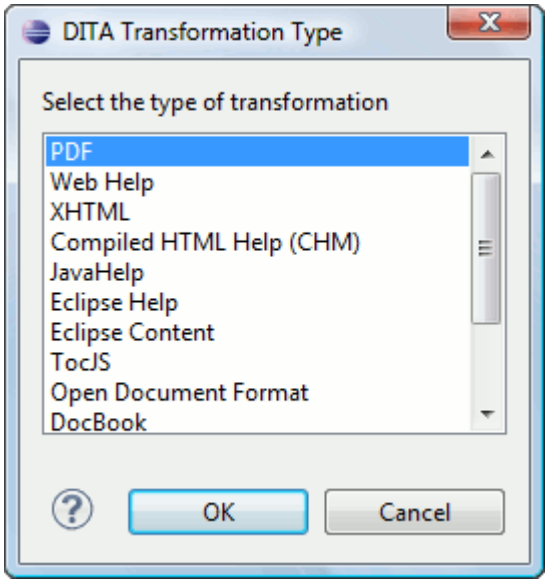
This type of transformation specifies the parameters for an Ant transformation that executes a DITA-OT build script. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in version of Ant and a built-in version of DITA-OT, but other versions can be set in the scenario.

To create a **DITA-OT Transformation** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar, main toolbar, or the **XML** menu. Then click the **New** button and select **DITA-OT Transformation**.
- Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view *(on page 940)*. Click the **New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **DITA-OT Transformation**.

Both methods open the **DITA Transformation Type** dialog box that presents the list of possible outputs.

Figure 209. DITA Transformation Type Dialog Box



Select the desired type of output and click **OK**. This opens the **New Scenario** dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.

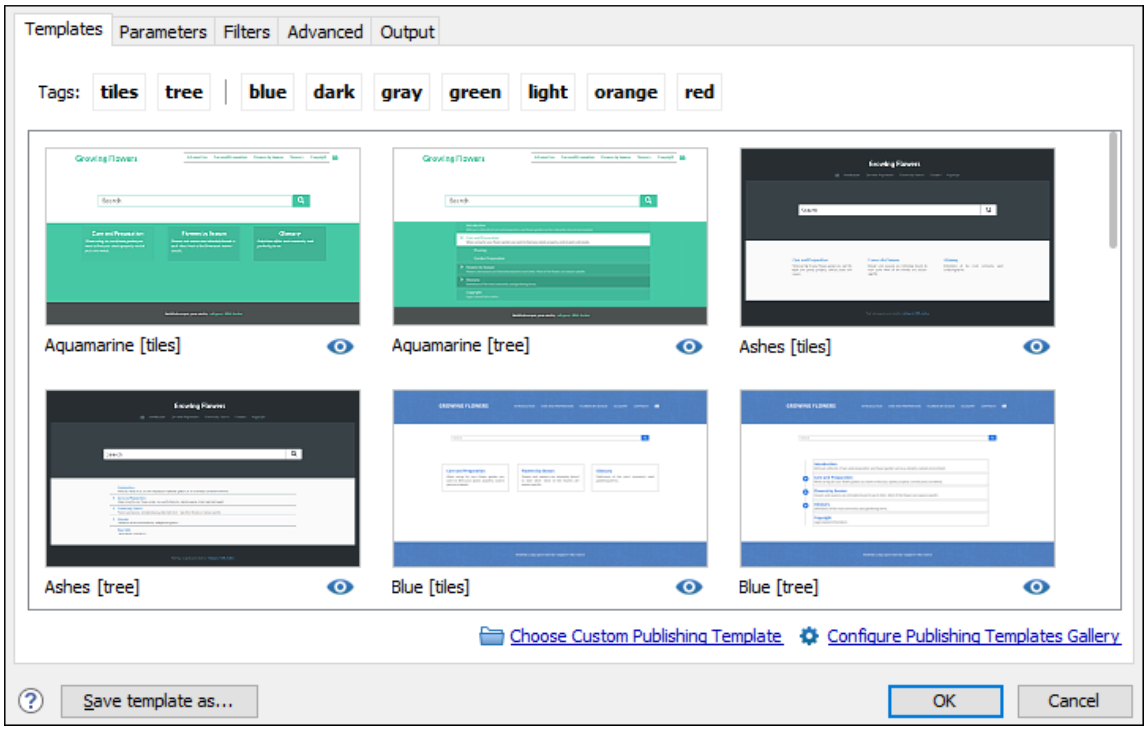
The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

Templates Tab (DITA-OT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Templates** tab is available for DITA-OT transformations with **WebHelp Responsive** or **PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** output types and it provides a set of built-in publishing templates *(on page 990)*. You can use one of them to publish your documentation or as a starting point for a new publishing template.

Figure 210. Templates Tab



Filtering and Previewing Templates

You can click on the tags at the top of the pane to filter the templates and narrow your search. Each built-in template also includes an **Online preview** icon in the bottom-right corner that opens a webpage in your default browser providing a sample of how the main page will look when that particular template is used to generate the output.

Built-in Templates Locations

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin scans the following locations to find the built-in templates to display in the dialog box:

- **WebHelp Responsive Templates** - All built-in WebHelp Responsive publishing templates are stored in the following directory: *DITA-OT-DIR*`/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/templates`.
- **PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** - All built-in PDF publishing templates are stored in the following directories:

- *DITA-OT-DIR*/plugins/com.oxygenxml.pdf.css/templates
- *DITA-OT-DIR*/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/templates

Custom Templates Locations

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin scans the locations specified in the **DITA > Publishing** preferences page *(on page 79)* to find custom templates to display in the dialog box. You can access that preferences page directly from the **Template** tab by clicking on the **Configure Publishing Templates Gallery** link.

Selecting Custom Templates

Once you are finished configuring your template, you can click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link to select your template.

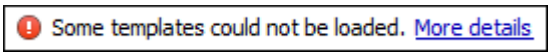
You can also add your custom templates *(on page 1047)* to the list of templates displayed in the **Templates** tab. To do this, store them in a directory, then click the **Configure Publishing Templates Gallery** link to open the **DITA > Publishing** preferences page *(on page 79)* where you can add that directory to the list. All the templates contained in your template directory will be displayed in the preview pane along with all the built-in templates.

Save Template As Button

You can use the **Save template as** button (at the bottom-left of the transformation dialog box) to export the currently selected template into a new template package that can be used as a starting point to create your own custom template *(on page 1188)*. Clicking this button will open a template package configuration dialog box *(on page 2100)* that contains some options and displays the parameters that will be exported to your template package.

Template Errors

When the **Templates** tab is opened, all templates (built-in and custom) are loaded and validated. Specifically, certain elements in the template descriptor file are checked for validity. If errors are encountered that prevents the template from loading, the following message will be displayed toward the bottom of the dialog box:



If you click the **More details** link, a window will open with more information about the encountered error. For example, it might offer a hint that the element is missing from the expected descriptor file structure.

Also, if a template could be loaded, but certain elements could not be found in the descriptor file, a warning icon (⚠) will be displayed on the template's image (in the **Templates** tab of the transformation dialog box). For example, this happens if a valid preview-image element cannot be found.

Sharing Publishing Template

To share a publishing template with others, following these steps:

1. Copy your template in a new folder.
2. Go to **Options > Preferences > DITA > Publishing** *(on page 79)* and add that new folder to the list.
3. Switch the option as the bottom of that preferences page to **Project Options**.
4. Share your project file (`.xpr`).

Resources

For more information about customizing publishing templates, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/zNmXfKWXwO8

Related Information:
Publishing Templates *(on page 990)*
Publishing Template Package Contents for PDF Customizations *(on page 1183)*
Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations *(on page 994)*

Template Package Configuration Dialog Box

The **Save template as** button (at the bottom-left of the transformation dialog box for **WebHelp Responsive** or **PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformations) can be used to export the currently selected template into a new template package that can be used as a starting point to create your own custom template *(on page 1188)*. The result will be a ZIP archive that contains a template descriptor file and other resources (such as CSS files) that were attached to the selected template.

Clicking the **Save template as** button opens a template package configuration dialog box contains the following options and components:

Name

Required field used to specify the name for the new template. This will become the text value of the `<name>` element in the template descriptor file. This information is displayed as the name of the template in the transformation scenario dialog box.

Description

Optional field used to specify a template description. This will become the text value of the `<description>` element in the template descriptor file. This information is displayed when the user hovers over the template in the transformation scenario dialog box.

Parameter Table

This table displays the parameters that will be exported. Only certain relevant parameters are exported. The parameters and their values will be inserted in the `<parameters>` section of the template descriptor file. If any of the parameter values point to a file path that references a template resource (such as CSS files, custom HTML fragments, images), those resources will automatically be copied to the new template package and their references will be changed accordingly.

Note:
Additional resources that are referenced in CSS files or other resources will not be copied to the new template package, so you will need to copy them manually and update their references in the template descriptor file.

Include WebHelp Customization

The same publishing template package can contain both a WebHelp Responsive and PDF customization and you can use the same template in both types of transformations (**DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** *(on page 799)* or **DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** *(on page 813)*). This option specifies that the custom template will include a WebHelp Responsive customization.

Include HTML Page Layout Files

For **WebHelp Responsive** customizations, select this option if you want to copy the default *HTML Page Layout Files (on page 1010)* into your template package. They are helpful if you want to change the structure of the generated HTML pages.

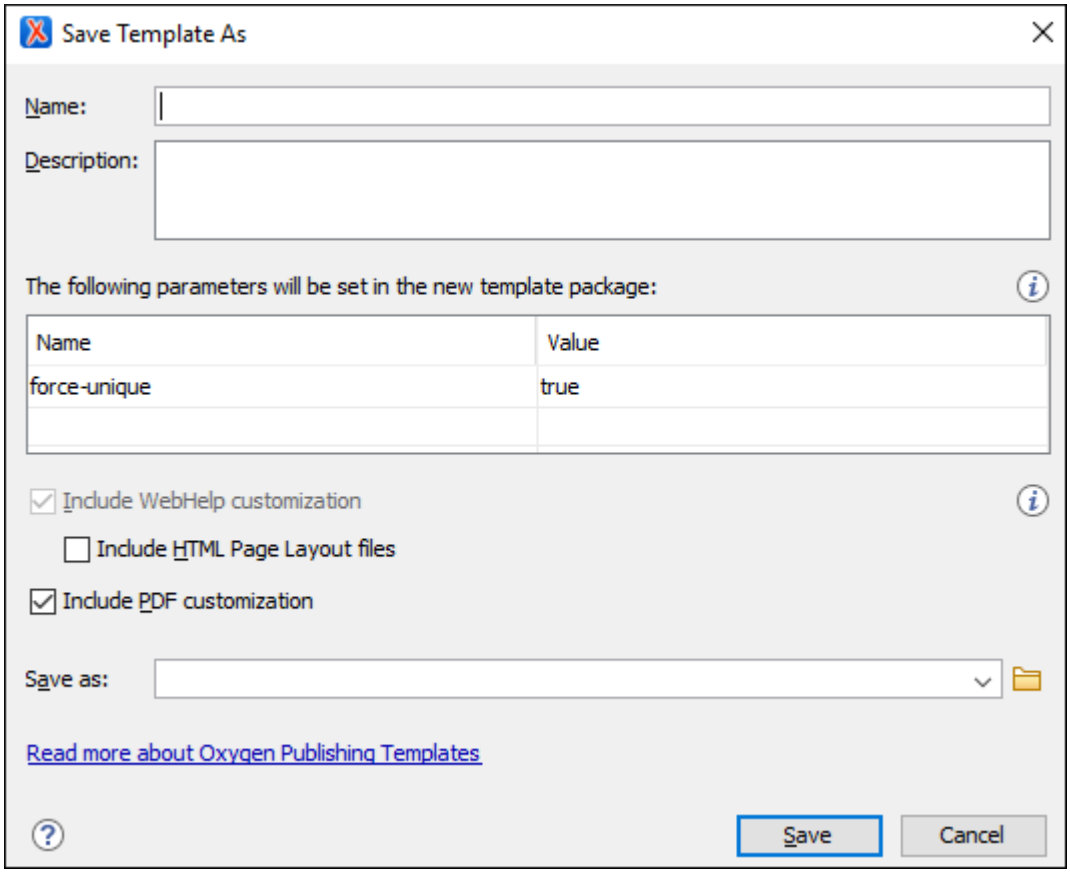
Include PDF Customization

The same publishing template package can contain both a WebHelp Responsive and PDF customization and you can use the same template in both types of transformations (**DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** *(on page 799)* or **DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** *(on page 813)*). This option specifies that the custom template will include a PDF customization.

Save as

Use this field to specify the name and path of the ZIP file where the template will be saved.

Figure 211. Template Package Configuration Dialog Box



Related Information:

Publishing Templates *(on page 990)*

Publishing Template Package Contents for PDF Customizations *(on page 1183)*

Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations *(on page 994)*

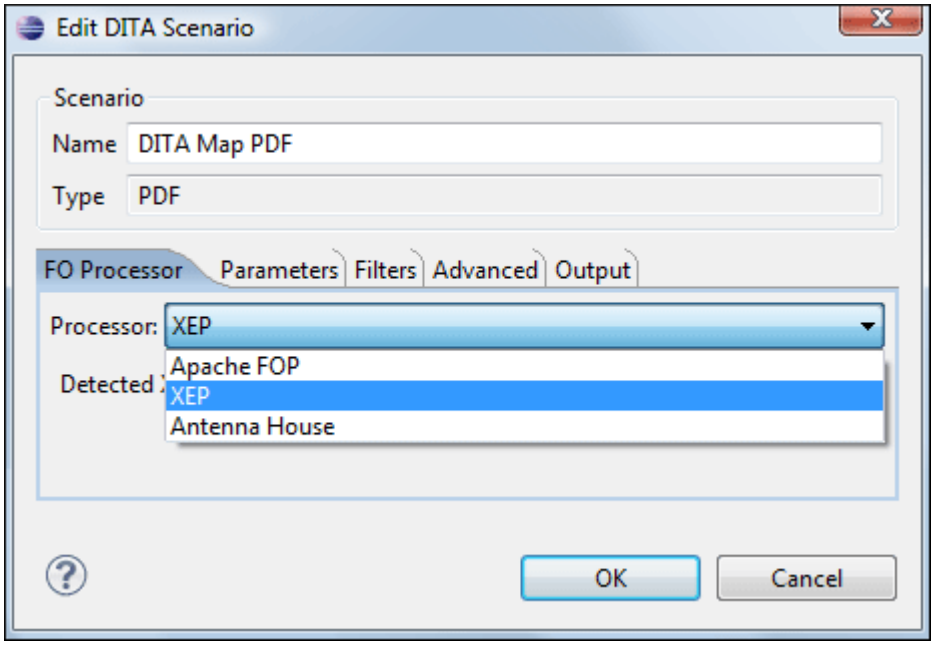
FO Processor Tab (DITA-OT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **FO Processor** tab is available for DITA-OT transformations with a **PDF** output type.

This tab allows you to select an FO Processor to be used for the transformation.

Figure 212. FO Processor Configuration Tab



You can choose one of the following processors:

Apache FOP

The default processor that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

XEP

The RenderX XEP processor. If XEP is already installed, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the detected installation path under the drop-down menu. XEP is considered installed if it was detected in one of the following sources:

- XEP was configured as an external FO Processor in the **FO Processors** option page *(on page 171)*.
- The system property *com.oxygenxml.xep.location* was set to point to the XEP executable file for the platform (for example: `xep.bat` on Windows).
- XEP was installed in the *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/lib` directory of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation directory.

Antenna House

The Antenna House (AH Formatter) processor. If Antenna House is already installed, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the detected installation path under the drop-down menu. Antenna House is considered installed if it was detected in one of the following sources:

- Environment variable set by Antenna House installation (the newest installation version will be used).
- Antenna House was added as an external FO Processor in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin preferences pages.

To further customize the PDF output obtained from the Antenna House processor, follow these steps:

1. **Edit** the transformation scenario.
2. Open the **Parameters** tab *(on page 2104)*.
3. Add the `env.AXF_OPT` parameter and point to the Antenna House configuration file.

Related information

FO Processors Preferences *(on page 171)*

XSL-FO (Apache FOP) Processor for Generating PDF Output *(on page 899)*

Parameters Tab (DITA-OT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Parameters** tab allows you to configure the parameters sent to the DITA-OT build file.

The table in this tab displays all the parameters that the DITA-OT documentation specifies as available for each chosen type of transformation (for example, XHTML or PDF), along with their description and current values. You can find more information about each parameter in the DITA-OT Documentation. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and you can use the text box to filter or search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

Depending on the type of a parameter, its value can be one of the following:

- A simple text field for simple parameter values.
- A combo box with some predefined values.
- A file chooser and an editor variable *(on page 199)* selector to simplify setting a file path as the value of a parameter.

Note:
To input parameter values at runtime, use the *ask* editor variable *(on page 201)* in the **Value** column.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing parameters:

New

Opens the **Add Parameter** dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. You can specify the **Value** of the parameter by using the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button or the **Browse** button.

Unset

Resets the selected parameter to its default value. Available only for edited parameters with set values.

Edit

Opens the **Edit Parameter** dialog box that allows you to change the value of the selected parameter or its description.

Delete

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

Parameters Contributed by an Oxygen Publishing Template

Transformation parameters that are defined in an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1181)* descriptor file are displayed in italics. After creating a publishing template *(on page 1188)* and adding it to the templates gallery *(on page 1047)*, when you select the template in the **Templates** tab *(on page 2098)*, the **Parameters** tab will automatically be updated to include the parameters defined in the template descriptor file.

Related Information:
DITA Open Toolkit Documentation

Feedback Tab (DITA-OT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Feedback** tab is for those who want to provide a way for users to offer feedback and ask questions in the published output and it is available for the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation type. To add a comments component in the output, you need to use **Oxygen Feedback** to create a site configuration for the website where your WebHelp output is published and use this **Feedback** tab to instruct the transformation to install the comments component at the bottom of each WebHelp page.

When you create a site configuration in the **Oxygen Feedback** administration interface, an HTML fragment is generated during the final step of the creation process. You need to click the **Edit** button at the bottom-right of this tab to open a dialog box where you will paste the generated HTML fragment. The HTML fragment can also be set in an **Oxygen Publishing Template** *(on page 1181)*, either as an HTML fragment extension point *(on page 1001)* or as a transformation parameter *(on page 999)* (the `webhelp.fragment.feedback` parameter). If the fragment is specified in multiple places, the order of precedence (from highest to lowest) is:

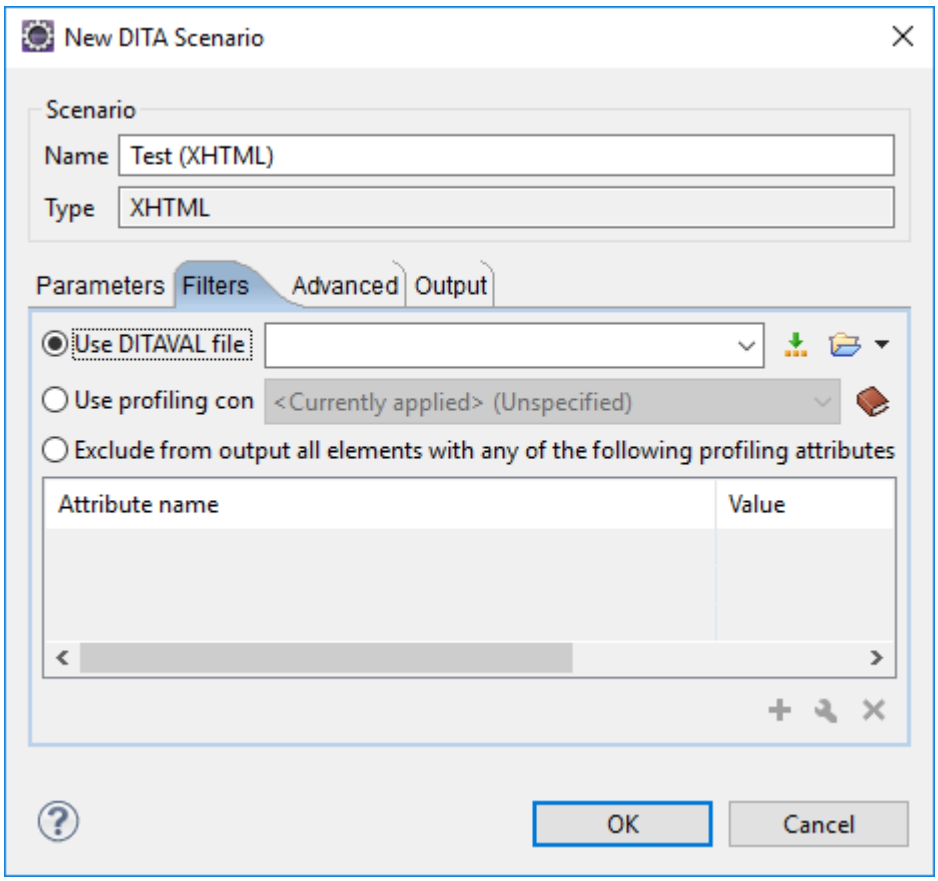
- The fragment specified directly in the **Feedback** tab.
- The fragment specified in a publishing template as an HTML fragment extension point.
- The fragment specified in a publishing template as a transformation parameter.

Filters Tab (DITA Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Filters** tab allows you to add filters to remove certain content elements from the generated output.

Figure 213. Edit Filters Tab



You can choose one of the following options to define filters:

Use DITAVAL file

If you already have a *DITAVAL* file associated with the *DITA map (on page 2230)*, you can specify the file to be used when filtering content. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. You can find out more about constructing a *DITAVAL* file in the DITA Documentation.

Note:
If a filter file is specified in the `args.filter` parameter (in the **Parameters** tab *(on page 2104)*), the filters are combined (neither file takes precedence over the other).

Use profiling condition set

Sets the profiling condition set *(on page 2134)* that will be applied to your transformation.

Exclude from output all elements with any of the following attributes

By using the **New**, **Edit**, or **Delete** buttons at the bottom of the pane, you can configure a list of attributes (name and value) to exclude all elements that contain any of these attributes from the output.

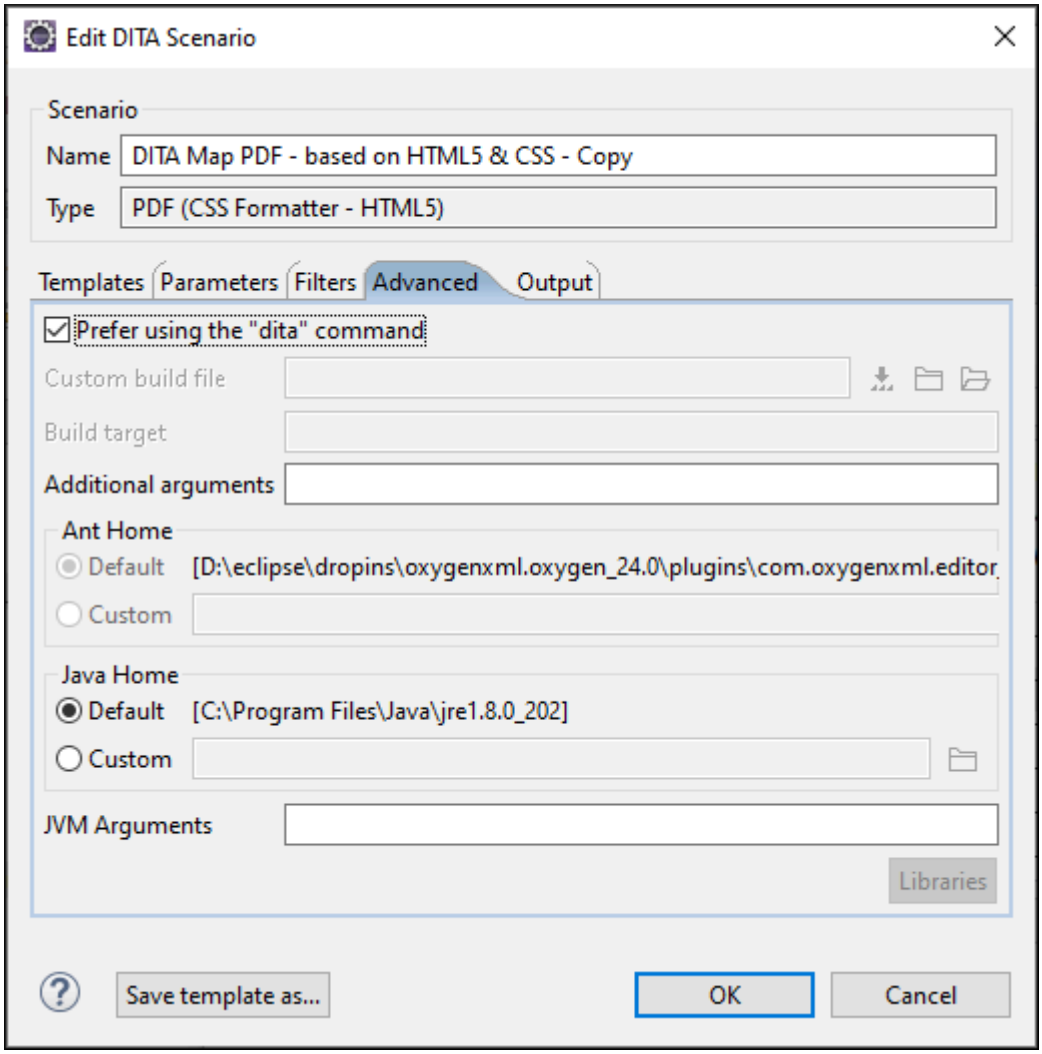
Note:
The colors and styles of the profiled content *(on page 2139)* settings are used for rendering it in **Author** mode but are not applied in the output.

Advanced Tab (DITA-OT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Advanced** tab allows you to specify advanced options for the transformation scenario.

Figure 214. Advanced Settings Tab



You can specify the following options:

Prefer using the "dita" command

When selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will attempt to use the `dita.bat` executable script (`dita.sh` for macOS and Linux) that is bundled with DITA-OT to run the transformation. If not selected, the transformation will run as an ANT process. Also, when this option is selected, other options (**Custom build file**, **Build target**, **Ant Home**) become unavailable. This setting is checked by default in newly created DITA-OT transformation scenario.

Note:
Even when this option is selected, the `dita.bat` (`dita` for macOS and Linux) executable cannot be used in some cases. For example, if the DITA Map is published from a remote location or if the `fix.external.refs` parameter is enabled in the **Parameters** tab, the transformation is started as an ANT process instead of using the executable.

Custom build file

If you use a custom DITA-OT build file, you can specify the path to the customized build file. If empty, the `build.xml` file from the `dita.dir` parameter that is configured in the **Parameters** tab *(on page 2104)* is used. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Build target

Optionally, you can specify a build target for the build file. If no target is specified, the default `init` target is used.

Additional Ant arguments

You can specify additional Ant-specific command-line arguments (such as `-diagnostics`).

Ant Home

You can choose between the default or custom Ant installation to run the transformation.

Java Home

You can choose between the default or custom Java installation to run the transformation. The default path is the Java installation that is used by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Note:
It may be possible that the used Java version is incompatible with the DITA Open Toolkit engine. If you encounter related errors running the transformation, consider installing a Java VM that is supported by the DITA-OT publishing engine and using it in the **Java Home** text field.

JVM Arguments

This parameter allows you to set specific parameters for the Java Virtual Machine used by Ant. When performing a large transformation, you may want to increase the memory allocated to the Java Virtual Machine. This will help avoid *Out of Memory* error messages (**OutOfMemoryError**). For example, if it is set to **-Xmx2g**, the transformation process is allowed to use a maximum 2 gigabytes of memory. If you do not specify an **-Xmx** value in this field, by default, the application will use a maximum of about a quarter of the total memory available on the machine.

Libraries

By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin adds libraries (as high priority) that are not transformation-dependent and also patches for certain DITA Open Toolkit bugs. You can use this button to specify additional libraries (*JAR (on page 2231)* files or additional class paths) to be used by the transformer.

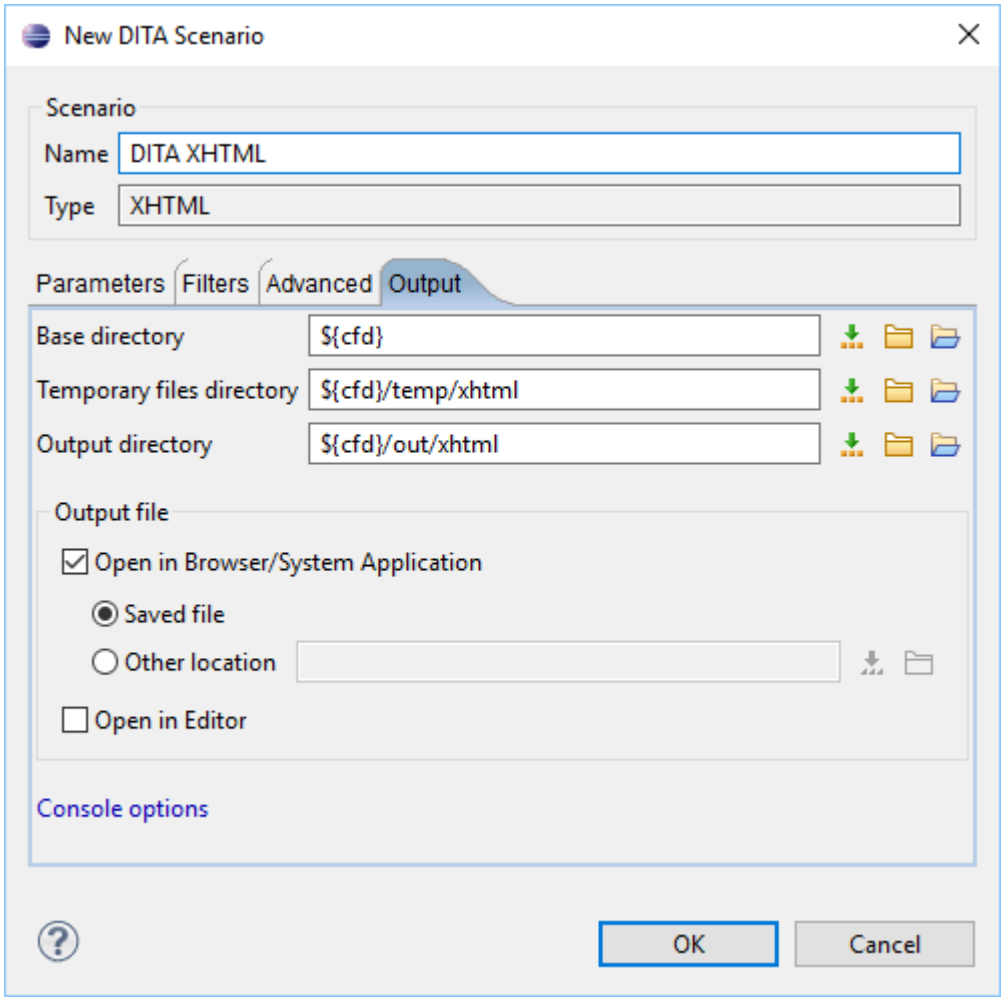
Tip:
You can specify the path to the additional libraries using wildcards (for example, `${oxygenHome}/lib/*.jar`).

Output Tab (DITA-OT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

Figure 215. Output Settings Tab



You can specify the following parameters:

Base directory

All the relative paths that appear as values in parameters are considered relative to the base directory. The default value is the directory where the transformed map is located. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Temporary files directory

This directory is used to store pre-processed temporary files until the final output is obtained. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Output directory

The folder where the content of the final output is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

> **Note:**
> If the *DITA map (on page 2230)* or topic is opened from a remote location or a ZIP file, the parameters must specify absolute paths.

Open in Browser/System Application

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the file type of the result (for example, in Windows *PDF* files are often opened in *Acrobat Reader*).

> **Note:**
> To set the web browser that is used for displaying HTML/XHTML pages, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there.
>
> - **Output file** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this button to automatically open the default output file at the end of the transformation.
> - **Other location** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this option to open the file specified in this field at the end of the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in editor

When this is option is selected, at the end of the transformation, the default output file is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor, or if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor).

Ant Transformation

This type of transformation allows you to configure the options and parameters of an Ant build script.

An Ant transformation scenario is usually associated with an Ant build script. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin runs an Ant transformation scenario as an external process that executes the Ant build script with the

built-in Ant distribution (*Apache Ant (on page 2228)* version 1.10.9) that is included with the application, or optionally with a custom Ant distribution configured in the scenario.

Tip:
Certain Ant tasks require additional JAR libraries (for example, Ant *mail* tasks). The additional libraries can be added by editing the Ant transformation scenario, and in the **Output** tab, click the **Libraries** button *(on page 869)* in the bottom right corner. This opens a dialog box where you can add JAR libraries. For a list of library dependencies, see https://ant.apache.org/manual/install.html#librarydependencies.

To create an Ant transformation scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu. Then click the **New** button and select **ANT transformation**.
- Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view *(on page 940)*. Click the **New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **ANT transformation**.

Both methods open the transformation configuration dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

Since **Ant** transformation scenarios are run as separate processes, to instruct Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to open certain resources created by the separate process, you can use `<echo>` elements in your build files with the following syntax:

```
<echo>Finished publishing: "absolute/path/to/file.ext"</echo>
```

Options Tab (Ant Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Options** tab allows you to specify the following options:

Working directory

The path of the current directory of the Ant external process. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Build file

The Ant script file that is the input of the Ant external process. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Build target

Optionally, you can specify a build target for the Ant script file. If no target is specified, the Ant target that is specified as the default in the Ant script file is used.

Additional Ant arguments

You can specify additional Ant-specific command-line arguments (such as `-diagnostics`).

Ant Home

You can choose between the default or custom Ant installation to run the transformation.

Java Home

You can choose between the default or custom Java installation to run the transformation. The default path is the Java installation that is used by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

JVM Arguments

This parameter allows you to set specific parameters for the Java Virtual Machine used by Ant. When performing a large transformation, you may want to increase the memory allocated to the Java Virtual Machine. This will help avoid *Out of Memory* error messages (**OutOfMemoryError**). For example, if it is set to **-Xmx2g**, the transformation process is allowed to use a maximum 2 gigabytes of memory. If you do not specify an **-Xmx** value in this field, by default, the application will use a maximum of about a quarter of the total memory available on the machine.

Libraries

By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin adds libraries (as high priority) that are not transformation-dependent and also patches for certain DITA Open Toolkit bugs. You can use this button to specify additional libraries (*JAR (on page 2231)* files or additional class paths) to be used by the transformer.

Tip:
You can specify the path to the additional libraries using wildcards (for example, `${oxygenHome}/lib/*.jar`).

Parameters Tab (Ant Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Parameters** tab allows you to configure the parameters that are accessible as Ant properties in the Ant build script.

The table displays all the parameters that are available in the Ant build script, along with their description and current values. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and use the **Filter** text box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

Depending on the type of a parameter, its value can be one of the following:

- A simple text field for simple parameter values.
- A combo box with some predefined values.
- A file chooser and an editor variable *(on page 199)* selector to simplify setting a file path as the value of a parameter.

Note:
To input parameter values at runtime, use the *ask* editor variable *(on page 201)* in the **Value** column.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing parameters:

New

Opens the **Add Parameter** dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. You can specify the **Value** of the parameter by using the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button or the **Browse** button.

Edit

Opens the **Edit Parameter** dialog box that allows you to change the value of the selected parameter or its description.

Delete

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

Output Tab (Ant Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab contains the following options:

Open

Allows you to specify the file to open automatically when the transformation is finished. This is usually the output file of the Ant process. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

- **In System Application** - The file specified in the **Open** text box is opened in the system application that is set in the operating system as the default application for that type of file (for example, in Windows *PDF* files are often opened in *Acrobat Reader*).
- **In Editor** - The file specified in the **Open** text box is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor).

Show console output

Allows you to specify when to display the console output log in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. The following options are available:

- **When build fails** - Displays the console output log only if the build fails.
- **Always** - Displays the console output log, regardless of whether or not the build fails.

JSON Transformation with XSLT

This type of transformation specifies the transformation parameters and location of an XSLT stylesheet that is applied to the edited JSON document. This scenario is useful when you develop a JSON document and the XSLT document is in its final form.

To create a **JSON transformation with XSLT** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu. Then click the **New** button and select **JSON transformation with XSLT**.
- Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view *(on page 940)*. Click the **New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **JSON transformation with XSLT**.

Both methods open the **New Scenario** dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

XSLT Tab (JSON Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **XSLT** tab contains the following options:

JSON URL

Specifies the source JSON file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the file is used directly from its remote location.

XSL URL

Specifies the source XSL file that the transformation will use. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the

browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, the file is used directly from its remote location.

Transformer

This drop-down menu presents all the transformation engines available to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for performing a transformation. The engine you choose is used as the default transformation engine. Also, if an XSLT or XQuery document does not have an associated validation scenario, this transformation engine is used in the validation process (if it provides validation support).

Advanced options

Allows you to configure the advanced options of the Saxon HE/PE/EE engine *(on page 832)* for the current transformation scenario. To configure the same options globally, go to the Saxon-HE/PE/EE preferences page *(on page 191)*. For the current transformation scenario, these **Advanced options** override the options configured in that preferences page.

Parameters

Opens a **Configure parameters** dialog box *(on page 830)* that allows you to configure the XSLT parameters used in the current transformation. In this dialog box, you can also configure the parameters for additional XSLT stylesheets *(on page 873)*. If the XSLT transformation engine is custom-defined, you cannot use this dialog box to configure the parameters sent to the custom engine. Instead, you can copy all parameters from the dialog box using contextual menu actions and edit the custom XSLT engine to include the necessary parameters in the command line that starts the transformation process.

Extensions

Opens a dialog box for configuring the XSLT extension *JARS* or classes *(on page 831)* that define extension Java functions or extension XSLT elements used in the transformation.

Additional XSLT stylesheets

Opens a dialog box for adding XSLT stylesheets *(on page 832)* that are applied on the main stylesheet specified in the **XSL URL** field. This is useful when a chain of XSLT stylesheets must be applied to the input XML document.

XSLT Parameters

The global parameters of the XSLT stylesheet used in a transformation scenario can be configured by using the **Parameters** button in the **XSLT** tab of a new or edited transformation scenario dialog box.

The resulting dialog box includes a table that displays all the parameters of the current XSLT stylesheet, all imported and included stylesheets, and all additional stylesheets *(on page 832)*, along with their descriptions and current values. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and you can use the **Filter** text box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

If the **XPath** column is selected, the parameter value is evaluated as an XPath expression before starting the XSLT transformation.

Example:

For example, you can use expressions such as:

```
doc('test.xml')//entry

//person[@atr='val']
```

Note:

1. The **doc** function solves the argument relative to the XSL stylesheet location. You can use full paths or editor variables *(on page 199)* (such as **${cfdu}** [current file directory]) to specify other locations: `doc('${cfdu}/test.xml')//*`
2. You cannot use XSLT Functions. Only XPath functions are allowed.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing the parameters:

New

Opens the **Add Parameter** dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Edit

Opens the **Edit Parameter** dialog box that allows you to edit the selected parameter. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Unset

Resets the selected parameter to its default value. Available only for edited parameters with set values.

Delete

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

The bottom panel presents the following:

- The default value of the parameter selected in the table.
- A description of the parameter, if available.
- The system ID of the stylesheet that declares it.

Related Information:
Editor Variables *(on page 199)*

XSLT Extensions

The **Extensions** button opens a dialog box that allows you to specify the *JARS (on page 2231)* and classes that contain extension functions called from the XSLT file of the current transformation scenario. You can use the **Add**, **Edit**, and **Remove** buttons to configure the extensions.

Tip:
You can specify the path to the resources using wildcards (for example, `${oxygenHome}/lib/*.jar`).

An extension function called from the XSLT file of the current transformation scenario will be searched, in the specified extensions, in the order displayed in this dialog box. To change the order of the items, select the item to be moved and click the **Move up** or **Move down** buttons.

Additional XSLT Stylesheets

Use the **Additional XSLT Stylesheets** button in the **XSLT** tab to display a list of additional XSLT stylesheets to be used in the transformation and you can add files to the list or edit existing entries. The following actions are available:

Add

Adds a stylesheet in the **Additional XSLT stylesheets** list using a file browser dialog box. You can type an editor variable *(on page 199)* in the file name field of the browser dialog box. The name of the stylesheet will be added in the list after the current selection.

Remove

Deletes the selected stylesheet from the **Additional XSLT stylesheets** list.

Up

Moves the selected stylesheet up in the list.

Down

Moves the selected stylesheet down in the list.

FO Processor Tab (JSON Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **FO Processor** tab contains the following options:

Perform FO Processing

Specifies whether or not an FO processor is applied (either the built-in Apache FOP engine or an external engine defined in **Preferences**) during the transformation.

Input

Choose between the following options to specify which input file to use:

- **XSLT result as input** - The FO processor is applied to the result of the XSLT transformation that is defined in the **XSLT** tab.
- **XML URL as input** - The FO processor is applied to the input XML file.

Method

The output format of the FO processing. The available options depend on the selected processor type.

Processor

Specifies the FO processor to be used for the transformation. It can be the built-in Apache FOP processor or an external processor *(on page 171)*.

Output Tab (JSON Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab contains the following options:

Prompt for file

At the end of the transformation, a file browser dialog box is displayed for specifying the path and name of the file that stores the transformation result.

Save As

The path of the file where the result of the transformation is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in Browser/System Application

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the file type of the result (for example, in Windows *PDF* files are often opened in *Acrobat Reader*).

Note:
To set the web browser that is used for displaying HTML/XHTML pages, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there.

- **Output file** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this button to automatically open the default output file at the end of the transformation.
- **Other location** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this option to open the file specified in this field at the end of the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in editor

When this is option is selected, at the end of the transformation, the default output file is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor, or if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor).

Show in results view as

You can choose to view the results in one of the following:

- **XML** - If this is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in an XML viewer panel at the bottom of the application window with syntax highlighting *(on page 163)*.
- **XHTML** - This option is only available if **Open in Browser/System Application** is not selected. If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in a built-in XHTML browser panel at the bottom of the application window.

  Important:
  When transforming very large documents, you should be aware that selecting this option may result in very long processing times. This drawback is due to the built-in Java XHTML browser implementation. To avoid delays for large documents, if you want to see the XHTML result of the transformation, you should use an external browser by selecting the **Open in Browser/System Application** option instead.

- **Image URLs are relative to** - If **Show in results view as XHTML** is selected, this option specifies the path used to resolve image paths contained in the transformation result. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Attention:
If your input XSLT contains `<xsl:result-document>` elements, then the secondary results will be saved to the specified URIs while the principal result is specified in this **Output** tab. For more information, see: https://www.w3.org/TR/xslt-30/#element-result-document.

JSON Transformation with XQuery

This type of transformation specifies the transformation parameters and location of an XQuery file that is applied to the edited JSON document. This scenario is useful when you develop a JSON document and the XQuery file is in its final form.

To create a **JSON transformation with XQuery** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu. Then click the **New** button and select **JSON transformation with XQuery**.
- Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view *(on page 940)*. Click the **New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **JSON transformation with XQuery**.

Both methods open the **New Scenario** dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

XQuery Tab (JSON Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **XQuery** tab contains the following options:

JSON URL

Specifies the source JSON file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the file is used directly from its remote location.

XQuery URL

Specifies the source XQuery file to be used for the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the

catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, the file is used directly from its remote location.

Transformer

This drop-down menu presents all the transformation engines available to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for performing a transformation. These include the built-in engines and the external engines defined in the Custom Engines preferences page *(on page 185)*. The engine you choose is used as the default transformation engine. Also, if an XSLT or XQuery document does not have an associated validation scenario, this transformation engine is used in the validation process (if it provides validation support).

Advanced options

Allows you to configure the advanced options of the Saxon HE/PE/EE engine *(on page 847)* for the current transformation scenario. To configure the same options globally, go to the Saxon-HE/PE/EE preferences page *(on page 191)*. For the current transformation scenario, these **Advanced options** override the options configured in that preferences page.

Parameters

Opens the **Configure parameters** dialog box *(on page 845)* for configuring the XQuery parameters. You can use the buttons in this dialog box to add, edit, or remove parameters. If the XQuery transformation engine is custom-defined, you can not use this dialog box to set parameters. Instead, you can copy all parameters from the dialog box using contextual menu actions and edit the custom XQuery engine to include the necessary parameters in the command line that starts the transformation process.

Extensions

Opens a dialog box for configuring the XQuery extension *JARS* or classes *(on page 847)* that define extension Java functions or extension XSLT elements used in the transformation.

XQuery Parameters

The global parameters of the XQuery file used in a transformation scenario can be configured by using the **Parameters** button in the **XQuery** tab.

The resulting dialog box includes a table that displays all the parameters of the current XQuery file, along with their descriptions and current values. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and use the **Filter** text box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

If the **XPath** column is selected, the parameter value is evaluated as an XPath expression before starting the XQuery transformation.

Example:

For example, you can use expressions such as:

```
doc('test.xml')//entry

//person[@atr='val']
```

Note:

1. The **doc** function solves the argument relative to the XQuery file location. You can use full paths or editor variables *(on page 199)* (such as **${cfdu}** [current file directory]) to specify other locations: `doc('${cfdu}/test.xml')//*`
2. Only XPath functions are allowed.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing the parameters:

New

Opens the **Add Parameter** dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Edit

Opens the **Edit Parameter** dialog box that allows you to edit the selected parameter. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Unset

Resets the selected parameter to its default value. Available only for edited parameters with set values.

Delete

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

The bottom panel presents the following:

- The default value of the parameter selected in the table.
- A description of the parameter, if available.
- The system ID of the stylesheet that declares it.

Related Information:
Editor Variables *(on page 199)*

XQuery Extensions

The **Extensions** button is used to specify the *JAR (on page 2231)* and classes that contain extension functions called from the XQuery file of the current transformation scenario. You can use the **Add**, **Edit**, and **Remove** buttons to configure the extensions.

An extension function called from the XQuery file of the current transformation scenario will be searched, in the specified extensions, in the order displayed in this dialog box. To change the order of the items, select the item to be moved and click the **Move up** or **Move down** buttons.

Advanced Saxon HE/PE/EE XQuery Transformation Options

The XQuery transformation scenario allows you to configure advanced options that are specific for the Saxon HE (Home Edition), PE (Professional Edition), and EE (Enterprise Edition) engines.

Saxon-HE/PE/EE Options

The advanced options for Saxon 12.9 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE), and Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Use a configuration file ("-config")

Sets a Saxon 12.9 configuration file that is used for XQuery transformation and validation scenarios.

Enable Optimizations ("-opt")

This option is selected by default, which means that optimization is enabled. If not selected, the optimization is suppressed, which is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

Use linked tree model ("-tree:linked")

This option activates the linked tree model.

Strip whitespaces ("-strip")

Specifies how the *strip whitespaces* operation is handled. You can choose one of the following values:

- **All ("all")** - Strips *all* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source document.
- **Ignore ("ignorable")** - Strips all *ignorable* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.
- **None ("none")** - Strips *no* whitespace before further processing.

Enable profiling ("-TP")

If selected, profiling of the execution time in a query is enabled. The corresponding text field is used to specify the path to the output file where the profiling information will be saved. As long as the option is selected, and the output file specified, it will gather timed tracing information and create a profile report to the specified file.

Note:
The profiling support works only if the **Present as a sequence** transformation option *(on page 850)* is not set.

Saxon-PE/EE Options

The following advanced options are specific for Saxon 12.9 Professional Edition (PE) and Enterprise Edition (EE) only:

Allow calls on extension functions ("-ext")

If selected, calls on external functions are allowed. Selecting this option is not recommended in an environment where untrusted stylesheets may be executed. It also disables user-defined extension elements and the writing of multiple output files, both of which carry similar security risks.

Saxon-EE Options

The advanced options that are specific for Saxon 12.9 Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Validation of the source file ("-val")

Requests schema-based validation of the source file and of any files read using `document()` or similar functions. It can have the following values:

- **Schema validation ("strict")** - This mode requires an XML Schema and allows for parsing the source documents with strict schema-validation enabled.
- **Lax schema validation ("lax")** - If an XML Schema is provided, this mode allows for parsing the source documents with schema-validation enabled but the validation will not fail if, for example, element declarations are not found.
- **Disable schema validation** - This specifies that the source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.

Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings ("-outval")

Normally, if validation of result documents is requested, a validation error is fatal. Selecting this option causes such validation failures to be treated as warnings.

Write comments for non-fatal validation errors of the result document

The validation messages for non-fatal errors are written (wherever possible) as a comment in the result document itself.

Enable XQuery update ("-update:(on|off)")

This option controls whether or not XQuery update syntax is accepted. The default value is off.

Backup files updated by XQuery ("-backup:(on|off)")

If selected, backup versions for any XML files updated with an XQuery Update are generated. This option is available when the **Enable XQuery update** option is selected.

Other Options

Initializer class

Equivalent to the `-init` Saxon command-line argument. The value is the name of a user-supplied class that implements the *net.sf.saxon.lib.Initializer* interface. This initializer is called during the initialization process, and may be used to set any options required on the configuration programmatically. It is particularly useful for tasks such as registering extension functions, collations, or external object models, especially in Saxon-HE where the option cannot be set via a configuration file. Saxon only calls the initializer when running from the command line, but the same code may be invoked to perform initialization when running user application code.

FO Processor Tab (XQuery Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **FO Processor** tab contains the following options:

Perform FO Processing

Specifies whether or not an FO processor is applied (either the built-in Apache FOP engine or an external engine defined in **Preferences**) during the transformation.

Input

Choose between the following options to specify which input file to use:

- **XQuery result as input** - The FO processor is applied to the result of the XQuery transformation that is defined in the **XQuery** tab.
- **XML URL as input** - The FO processor is applied to the input XML file.

Method

The output format of the FO processing. The available options depend on the selected processor type.

Processor

Specifies the FO processor to be used for the transformation. It can be the built-in Apache FOP processor or an external processor *(on page 171)*.

Output Tab (XQuery Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab contains the following options:

Present as a sequence

Selecting this option will reduce the time necessary to fetch the full results, as it will only fetch the first chunk of the results.

Prompt for file

At the end of the transformation, a file browser dialog box is displayed for specifying the path and name of the file that stores the transformation result.

Save As

The path of the file where the result of the transformation is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in Browser/System Application

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the file type of the result (for example, in Windows *PDF* files are often opened in *Acrobat Reader*).

Note:
To set the web browser that is used for displaying HTML/XHTML pages, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there.

- **Output file** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this button to automatically open the default output file at the end of the transformation.
- **Other location** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this option to open the file specified in this field at the end of the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in editor

When this is option is selected, at the end of the transformation, the default output file is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor, or if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor).

Show in results view as

You can choose to view the results in one of the following:

- **XML** - If this is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in an XML viewer panel at the bottom of the application window with syntax highlighting *(on page 163)*.
- **XHTML** - This option is only available if **Open in Browser/System Application** is not selected. If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in a built-in XHTML browser panel at the bottom of the application window.

  Important:
  When transforming very large documents, you should be aware that selecting this option may result in very long processing times. This drawback is due to the built-in Java XHTML browser implementation. To avoid delays for large documents, if you want to see the XHTML result of the transformation, you should use an external browser by selecting the **Open in Browser/System Application** option instead.

- **Image URLs are relative to** - If **Show in results view as XHTML** is selected, this option specifies the path used to resolve image paths contained in the transformation result. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

XSLT Transformation on XML

This type of transformation specifies the parameters and location of an XML document that the edited XSLT stylesheet is applied on. This scenario is useful when you develop an XSLT document and the XML document is in its final form.

To create an **XSLT transformation on XML** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu. Then click the **New** button and select **XSLT transformation on XML**.
- Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view *(on page 940)*. Click the **New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **XSLT transformation on XML**.

Both methods open the **New Scenario** dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

XSLT Tab

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **XSLT** tab contains the following options:

XML URL

Specifies the source XML file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the file is used directly from its remote location.

Note:
If the transformer engine is Saxon 9.x and a custom URI resolver is configured in the advanced Saxon preferences page *(on page 194)*, the XML input of the transformation is passed to that URI resolver. If the transformer engine is one of the built-in XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 engines and the name of an initial template *(on page 886)* is specified in the scenario, the **XML URL** field can be empty. The **XML URL** field can also be empty if you use external XSLT processors *(on page 843)*. Otherwise, a value is mandatory in this field.

XSL URL

Specifies the source XSL file that the transformation will use. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, the file is used directly from its remote location.

Use "xml-stylesheet" declaration

If selected, the scenario applies the stylesheet specified explicitly in the XML document with the `xml-stylesheet` processing instruction. By default, this option is deselected and the transformation applies the XSLT stylesheet that is specified in the **XSL URL** field.

Transformer

This drop-down menu presents all the transformation engines available to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for performing a transformation. These include the built-in engines and the external engines defined in the Custom Engines preferences page *(on page 185)*. The engine you choose is used as the default transformation engine. Also, if an XSLT or XQuery document does not have an associated validation scenario, this transformation engine is used in the validation process (if it provides validation support).

Advanced options

Allows you to configure the advanced options of the Saxon HE/PE/EE engine *(on page 832)* for the current transformation scenario. To configure the same options globally, go to the Saxon-HE/PE/EE preferences page *(on page 191)*. For the current transformation scenario, these **Advanced options** override the options configured in that preferences page.

Parameters

Opens a **Configure parameters** dialog box *(on page 830)* that allows you to configure the XSLT parameters used in the current transformation. In this dialog box, you can also configure the parameters for additional XSLT stylesheets *(on page 887)*. If the XSLT transformation engine is custom-defined, you cannot use this dialog box to configure the parameters sent to the custom engine. Instead, you can copy all parameters from the dialog box using contextual menu actions and edit the custom XSLT engine to include the necessary parameters in the command line that starts the transformation process.

Extensions

Opens a dialog box for configuring the XSLT extension *JARS* or classes *(on page 831)* that define extension Java functions or extension XSLT elements used in the transformation.

Additional XSLT stylesheets

Opens a dialog box for adding XSLT stylesheets *(on page 832)* that are applied on the main stylesheet specified in the **XSL URL** field. This is useful when a chain of XSLT stylesheets must be applied to the input XML document.

XSLT Parameters

The global parameters of the XSLT stylesheet used in a transformation scenario can be configured by using the **Parameters** button in the **XSLT** tab of a new or edited transformation scenario dialog box.

The resulting dialog box includes a table that displays all the parameters of the current XSLT stylesheet, all imported and included stylesheets, and all additional stylesheets *(on page 832)*, along with their descriptions and current values. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and you can use the **Filter** text box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

If the **XPath** column is selected, the parameter value is evaluated as an XPath expression before starting the XSLT transformation.

Example:

For example, you can use expressions such as:

```
doc('test.xml')//entry

//person[@atr='val']
```

Note:

1. The **doc** function solves the argument relative to the XSL stylesheet location. You can use full paths or editor variables *(on page 199)* (such as **${cfdu}** [current file directory]) to specify other locations: `doc('${cfdu}/test.xml')//*`
2. You cannot use XSLT Functions. Only XPath functions are allowed.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing the parameters:

New

Opens the **Add Parameter** dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Edit

Opens the **Edit Parameter** dialog box that allows you to edit the selected parameter. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Unset

Resets the selected parameter to its default value. Available only for edited parameters with set values.

Delete

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

The bottom panel presents the following:

- The default value of the parameter selected in the table.
- A description of the parameter, if available.
- The system ID of the stylesheet that declares it.

Related Information:
Editor Variables *(on page 199)*

XSLT Extensions

The **Extensions** button opens a dialog box that allows you to specify the *JARS (on page 2231)* and classes that contain extension functions called from the XSLT file of the current transformation scenario. You can use the **Add**, **Edit**, and **Remove** buttons to configure the extensions.

Tip:
You can specify the path to the resources using wildcards (for example, `${oxygenHome}/lib/*.jar`).

An extension function called from the XSLT file of the current transformation scenario will be searched, in the specified extensions, in the order displayed in this dialog box. To change the order of the items, select the item to be moved and click the **Move up** or **Move down** buttons.

Additional XSLT Stylesheets

Use the **Additional XSLT Stylesheets** button in the **XSLT** tab to display a list of additional XSLT stylesheets to be used in the transformation and you can add files to the list or edit existing entries. The following actions are available:

Add

Adds a stylesheet in the **Additional XSLT stylesheets** list using a file browser dialog box. You can type an editor variable *(on page 199)* in the file name field of the browser dialog box. The name of the stylesheet will be added in the list after the current selection.

Remove

Deletes the selected stylesheet from the **Additional XSLT stylesheets** list.

Up

Moves the selected stylesheet up in the list.

Down

Moves the selected stylesheet down in the list.

Advanced Saxon HE/PE/EE XSLT Transformation Options

The XSLT transformation scenario allows you to configure advanced options that are specific for the Saxon HE (Home Edition), PE (Professional Edition), and EE (Enterprise Edition) engines. They are the same options as those in the **Saxon HE/PE/EE** preferences page *(on page 191)* but they are configured as a specific set of transformation options for each transformation scenario, while the values set in the preferences page apply as global options. The advanced options configured in a transformation scenario override the global options defined in the preferences page.

Saxon-HE/PE/EE Options

The advanced options for Saxon 12.9 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE), and Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Mode ("-im")

A Saxon-specific option that sets the initial mode for the transformation. If this value is also specified in a configuration file *(on page 890)*, the value in this option takes precedence.

Template ("-it")

A Saxon-specific option that sets the name of the initial XSLT template to be executed. If this value is also specified in a configuration file *(on page 890)*, the value in this option takes precedence.

> **Tip:**
> If your stylesheet includes `<xsl:template name="xsl:initial-template">`, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will automatically detect and use it as the initial template, so this option is not needed in this case.

Use a configuration file ("-config")

Select this option if you want to use a Saxon 12.9 configuration file that will be executed for the XSLT transformation and validation processes. You can specify the path to the configuration file by entering it in the **URL** field, or by using the **Insert Editor Variables** button, or using the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

> **Attention:**
> Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin does not support the `ALLOWED_PROTOCOLS` Saxon property (*http://saxon.sf.net/feature/allowedProtocols*). This feature is specific to Saxon and controls access by Saxon (but not by underlying software, such as the XML parser). For more information, see https://www.saxonica.com/documentation12/index.html#!configuration/config-features.

Enable Optimizations ("-opt")

This option is selected by default, which means that optimization is enabled. If not selected, the optimization is suppressed, which is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

Line numbering ("-l")

Line numbers where errors occur are included in the output messages.

Expand attributes defaults ("-expand")

Specifies whether or not the attributes defined in the associated DTD or XML Schema are expanded in the output of the transformation you are executing.

DTD validation of the source ("-dtd")

Specifies whether or not the source document will be validated against their associated DTD. You can choose from the following:

- **On** - Requests DTD validation of the source file and of any files read using the `document()` function.
- **Off** - (default setting) Suppresses DTD validation.

- **Recover** - Performs DTD validation but treats the errors as non-fatal.

> **Note:**
> Any external DTD is likely to be read even if not used for validation, since DTDs can contain definitions of entities.

Strip whitespaces ("-strip")

Specifies how the *strip whitespaces* operation is handled. You can choose one of the following values:

- **All ("all")** - Strips *all* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source document.
- **Ignore ("ignorable")** - Strips all *ignorable* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.
- **None ("none")** - Strips *no* whitespace before further processing.

Enable profiling ("-TP")

If selected, profiling of the execution time in a stylesheet is enabled. The corresponding text field is used to specify the path to the output file where the profiling information will be saved. As long as the option is selected, and the output file specified, it will gather timed tracing information and create a profile report to the specified file.

Saxon-PE/EE Options

The following advanced options are specific for Saxon 12.9 Professional Edition (PE) and Enterprise Edition (EE) only:

Register Saxon-JS extension functions and instructions

Registers the Saxon-CE extension functions and instructions when compiling a stylesheet using the Saxon 12.9 processors.

Allow calls on extension functions ("-ext")

If selected, the stylesheet is allowed to call external Java functions. This does not affect calls on integrated extension functions, including Saxon and EXSLT extension functions. This option is useful when loading an untrusted stylesheet (such as from a remote site using `http://[URL]`). It ensures that the stylesheet cannot call arbitrary Java methods and thus gain privileged access to resources on your machine.

Enable assertions ("-ea")

In XSLT 3.0, you can use the `<xsl:assert>` element to make assertions in the form of XPath expressions, causing a dynamic error if the assertion turns out to be false. If this option is

selected, XSLT 3.0 `<xsl:assert>` instructions are enabled. If it is not selected (default), the assertions are ignored.

Saxon-EE Options

The advanced options that are specific for Saxon 12.9 Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

XML Schema version

Use this option to change the default XML Schema version for this transformation. To change the default XML Schema version globally, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XML Parser > XML Schema** and use the **Default XML Schema version** option *(on page 181)*.

Validation of the source file ("-val")

Requests schema-based validation of the source file and of any files read using `document()` or similar functions. It can have the following values:

- **Schema validation ("strict")** - This mode requires an XML Schema and allows for parsing the source documents with strict schema-validation enabled.
- **Lax schema validation ("lax")** - If an XML Schema is provided, this mode allows for parsing the source documents with schema-validation enabled but the validation will not fail if, for example, element declarations are not found.
- **Disable schema validation** - This specifies that the source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.

Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings ("-outval")

Normally, if validation of result documents is requested, a validation error is fatal. Selecting this option causes such validation failures to be treated as warnings.

Write comments for non-fatal validation errors of the result document

The validation messages for non-fatal errors are written (wherever possible) as a comment in the result document itself.

Enable streaming mode

Selecting this option will allow an XSLT to run in streaming mode. It is not selected by default. However, in certain instances, the Saxon XSLT processor may auto detect and use streaming even if this option is not selected.

Other Options

Initializer class

Equivalent to the `-init` Saxon command-line argument. The value is the name of a user-supplied class that implements the *net.sf.saxon.lib.Initializer* interface. This initializer is called during the initialization process, and may be used to set any options required on the configuration programmatically. It is particularly useful for tasks such as registering extension functions,

collations, or external object models, especially in Saxon-HE where the option cannot be set via a configuration file. Saxon only calls the initializer when running from the command line, but the same code may be invoked to perform initialization when running user application code.

Using Saxon Integrated Extension Functions

Saxon, the transformation and validation engine used by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, can be customized by adding custom functions (called Integrated Extension Functions) that can be called from XPath.

To define such a function, follow these steps:

1. Create a file with a Java class that extends `net.sf.saxon.lib.ExtensionFunctionDefinition`. Here is an example:

```
private static class ShiftLeft extends ExtensionFunctionDefinition {
  @Override
  public StructuredQName getFunctionQName() {
    return new StructuredQName("eg", "http://example.com/saxon-extension", "shift-left");
  }

  @Override
  public SequenceType[] getArgumentTypes() {
    return new SequenceType[] {SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER, SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER};
  }

  @Override
  public SequenceType getResultType(SequenceType[] suppliedArgumentTypes) {
    return SequenceType.SINGLE_INTEGER;
  }

  @Override
  public ExtensionFunctionCall makeCallExpression() {
    return new ExtensionFunctionCall() {
      public SequenceIterator call(SequenceIterator[] arguments, XPathContext context)
                    throws XPathException {
        long v0 = ((IntegerValue)arguments[0].next()).longValue();
        long v1 = ((IntegerValue)arguments[1].next()).longValue();
        long result = v0<<v1;
        return Value.asIterator(Int64Value.makeIntegerValue(result));
      }
    };
  }
}
```

2. Compile the class and add it to a JAR file.
3. Add a file called **net.sf.saxon.lib.ExtensionFunctionDefinition** that contains the fully qualified name of the Java class in the `META-INF/services/` folder of the JAR file.

Note:
To add more function definitions in the same JAR file, you need to add their fully qualified names on different lines.

To enable Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to pick up your custom function definition, the JAR file should be added to the classpath of the transformer. Here are some possibilities:

- If you develop a framework, you just need to link the JAR file in the **Classpath** tab *(on page 88)*.
- In a validation scenario *(on page 537)*, you can use the **Extensions** button to open a dialog box where you can add libraries.
- In a transformation scenario, you can use the **Extensions** button in the **XSLT** tab *(on page 830)* to open a dialog box where you can add libraries.

FO Processor Tab (XSLT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **FO Processor** tab contains the following options:

Perform FO Processing

Specifies whether or not an FO processor is applied (either the built-in Apache FOP engine or an external engine defined in **Preferences**) during the transformation.

Input

Choose between the following options to specify which input file to use:

- **XSLT result as input** - The FO processor is applied to the result of the XSLT transformation that is defined in the **XSLT** tab.
- **XML URL as input** - The FO processor is applied to the input XML file.

Method

The output format of the FO processing. The available options depend on the selected processor type.

Processor

Specifies the FO processor to be used for the transformation. It can be the built-in Apache FOP processor or an external processor *(on page 171)*.

Output Tab (XSLT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab contains the following options:

Prompt for file

At the end of the transformation, a file browser dialog box is displayed for specifying the path and name of the file that stores the transformation result.

Save As

The path of the file where the result of the transformation is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in Browser/System Application

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the file type of the result (for example, in Windows *PDF* files are often opened in *Acrobat Reader*).

Note:
To set the web browser that is used for displaying HTML/XHTML pages, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there.

- **Output file** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this button to automatically open the default output file at the end of the transformation.
- **Other location** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this option to open the file specified in this field at the end of the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in editor

When this is option is selected, at the end of the transformation, the default output file is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor, or if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor).

Show in results view as

You can choose to view the results in one of the following:

- **XML** - If this is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in an XML viewer panel at the bottom of the application window with syntax highlighting *(on page 163)*.
- **XHTML** - This option is only available if **Open in Browser/System Application** is not selected. If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in a built-in XHTML browser panel at the bottom of the application window.

  Important:
  When transforming very large documents, you should be aware that selecting this option may result in very long processing times. This drawback is due to the built-in Java XHTML browser implementation. To avoid delays for large documents, if you want to see the XHTML result of the transformation, you should use an external browser by selecting the **Open in Browser/System Application** option instead.

- **Image URLs are relative to** - If **Show in results view as XHTML** is selected, this option specifies the path used to resolve image paths contained in the transformation result. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Attention:
If your input XSLT contains `<xsl:result-document>` elements, then the secondary results will be saved to the specified URIs while the principal result is specified in this **Output** tab. For more information, see: https://www.w3.org/TR/xslt-30/#element-result-document.

Configuring an XSLT Processor for Generating Output

This section explains how to configure an XSLT processor and extensions for such a processor in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Supported XSLT Processors

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes the following XSLT processors:

- **Xalan 2.7.2** (Deprecated) - Xalan-Java is an XSLT processor for transforming XML documents into HTML, text, or other XML document types. It implements XSL Transformations (XSLT) Version 1.0 and XML Path Language (XPath) Version 1.0.
- **Saxon 6.5.5** - Saxon 6.5.5 is an XSLT processor that implements the Version 1.0 XSLT and XPath with a number of powerful extensions. This version of Saxon also includes many of the new features that were first defined in the XSLT 1.1 working draft, but for conformance and portability reasons these are not available if the stylesheet header specifies `version="1.0"`.
- **Saxon 12.9 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE)** - Saxon-HE/PE implements the basic conformance level for XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 and XQuery 1.0. The term *basic XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 processor* is

defined in the draft XSLT 2.0 / 3.0 specifications. It is a conformance level that requires support for all features of the language other than those that involve schema processing. The HE product remains open source, but removes some of the more advanced features that are present in Saxon-PE.

- **Saxon 12.9 Enterprise Edition (EE)** - Saxon EE is the schema-aware edition of Saxon and it is one of the built-in processors included in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. Saxon EE includes an XML Schema processor, and schema-aware XSLT, XQuery, and XPath processors.

  The validation in schema aware transformations is done according to the XML Schema 1.0 or 1.1. This can be configured in Preferences *(on page 181)*.

  Note:
  Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin implements a Saxon *framework* that allows you to create Saxon configuration files. Two templates are available: **Saxon collection catalog** and **Saxon configuration**. Both of these templates support content completion, element annotation, and attribute annotation.

  Note:
  Saxon can use the *ICU-J localization library* (`saxon9-icu.jar`) to add support for sorting and date/number formatting in a wide variety of languages. This library is not included in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation kit. However, Saxon will use the default collation and localization support available in the currently used JRE. To enable this capability, follow these steps:

  1. Download Saxon 12.9 Professional Edition (PE) or Enterprise Edition (EE) from http://www.saxonica.com.
  2. Unpack the downloaded archive.
  3. Create a new XSLT transformation scenario (or edit an existing one). In the **XSLT** tab, click the **Extensions** button to open the list of additional libraries used by the transformation process.
  4. Click **Add** and browse to the folder where you unpacked the downloaded archive and choose the `saxon9-icu.jar` file.

  Note that the `saxon9-icu.jar` should NOT be added to the application library folder because it will conflict with another version of the ICU-J library that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

- **Xsltproc (libxslt)** (Deprecated) - Libxslt is the XSLT C library developed for the Gnome project. **Libxslt** is based on *libxml2*, the XML C library developed for the Gnome project. It also implements most of the EXSLT set of processor-portable extensions, functions, and some of Saxon's evaluate and expression extensions.

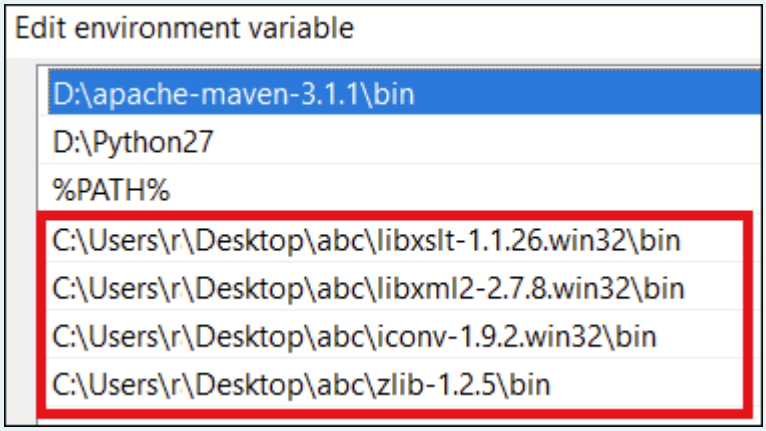
  Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses **Libxslt** through its command-line tool (*Xsltproc*). Depending on your operating system, you must download the Libxslt libraries on your machine from http://

xmlsoft.org/XSLT/downloads.html and place them in a local folder. Then you need to update the `PATH` environmental variable to contain the parent folder where the `xsltproc` executable is located.

Tip:

As an example, a Windows installation of the Xsltproc engine would follow these steps:

1. Go to http://ftp.zlatkovic.com/libxml.en.html and download the following ZIP files: **iconv-1.9.2.win32.zip**, **libxml2-2.7.8.win32.zip**, **libxslt-1.1.26.win32.zip**, **zlib-1.2.5.win32.zip**.
2. Unzip all of them into the same folder of your choice.
3. Edit the `PATH` environment variable and add the `bin` folder for all four archives:



4. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Result: You can now use the **xsltproc** processor as an XSLT engine in the XSLT transformation scenario.

Note:

The Xsltproc processor can be configured from the **XSLTPROC** options page *(on page 194)*.

CAUTION:

There is a known problem where file paths that contain spaces are not handled correctly in the LIBXML processor. For example, the built-in *XML Catalog (on page 2235)* files of the built-in document types (DocBook, TEI, DITA, etc.) are not handled properly by LIBXML if Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is installed in the default location on Windows (C:\Program Files). This is because the built-in *XML catalog* files are stored in the `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks` subdirectory of the installation directory, and in this case it contains a space character.

Configuring Custom XSLT Processors

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to configure custom processors to be used for running XSLT and XQuery transformations.

To add a new custom processor, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **XML > XSLT-XQuery > Custom Engines**.
2. Click the **New** button at the bottom of the dialog box.
3. Configure the parameters for the custom engine *(on page 185)*.
4. Click **OK**.

Note:

The output messages of a custom processor are displayed in an output view at the bottom of the application window. If an output message follows the format of an Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin linked message *(on page 533)*, clicking it highlights the location of the message in an editor panel containing the file referenced in the message.

Related Information:

Custom Engines Preferences *(on page 185)*

Configuring the XSLT Processor Extensions Paths

The Saxon and Xalan processors support the use of extension elements and extension functions. Unlike a literal result element, which the stylesheet simply transfers to the result tree, an extension element performs an action. The extension is usually used because the XSLT stylesheet fails in providing adequate functions for accomplishing a more complex task.

For more information about how to use extensions, see the following links:

- **Xalan (Deprecated)** - http://xml.apache.org/xalan-j/extensions.html
- **Saxon 6.5.5** - http://saxon.sourceforge.net/saxon6.5.5/extensions.html
- **Saxon 12.9** - http://www.saxonica.com/documentation9.5/index.html#!extensibility

To set an XSLT processor extension (a directory or a `jar` file), use the **Extensions** button *(on page 830)* in the **Edit scenario** dialog box.

XSL-FO (Apache FOP) Processor for Generating PDF Output

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation package is distributed with the Apache FOP that is a Formatting Objects processor for transforming your XML documents to PDF. *FOP* is a print and output independent formatter driven by XSL Formatting Objects. *FOP* is implemented as a Java application that reads a formatting object tree and renders the resulting pages to a specified output.

To see the version of the built-in XSL-FO processor for your installation, go to **Help > About > Libraries** and search for *Apache FOP*.

Other FO processors can be configured in the **FO Processors** preferences page *(on page 171)*.

Add a Font to the Built-in FO Processor - Simple Version

If the font that must be set to Apache FOP is one of the fonts that are installed in the operating system you should follow the next steps for creating and setting a FOP configuration file that looks for the font that it needs in the system fonts. It is a simplified version of the procedure for setting a custom font in Apache FOP *(on page 901)*.

1. Register the font in FOP configuration. (This is not necessary for DITA PDF transformations, skip to the next step)
   a. Create a FOP configuration file that specifies that FOP should look for fonts in the installed fonts of the operating system.

```
<fop version="1.0">
  <renderers>
    <renderer mime="application/pdf">
      <fonts>
        <auto-detect/>
      </fonts>
    </renderer>
  </renderers>
</fop>
```

   b. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **XML > PDF Output > FO Processors**, and enter the path of the FOP configuration file in the **Configuration file** text field.

2. Set the font on the document content.
   This is done usually with XSLT stylesheet parameters and depends on the document type processed by the stylesheet.
   - For DocBook documents you can start with the built-in scenario called **DocBook PDF**, edit the XSLT parameters *(on page 828)* and set the font name (for example, **Arial Unicode MS**) to the `body.font.family` and `title.font.family` parameters.
   - For TEI documents you can start with the built-in scenario called **TEI PDF**, edit the XSLT parameters *(on page 828)* and set the font name (for example, **Arial Unicode MS**) to the `bodyFont` and `sansFont` parameters.
   - For DITA transformations to PDF using DITA-OT you should modify the following two files:
     - *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/cfg/fo/font-mappings.xml` - The `<font-face>` element included in each `<physical-font>` element that has the `char-set="default"` attribute must contain the name of the font (for example, **Arial Unicode MS**)

- *DITA-OT-DIR*`/plugins/org.dita.pdf2.fop/fop/conf/fop.xconf` - An `<auto-detect>` element must be inserted in the `<fonts>` element, which is inside the `<renderer>` element that has the `mime="application/pdf"` attribute:

```
<renderer mime="application/pdf">
  . . .
   <fonts>
       <auto-detect/>
   </fonts>
  . . .
</renderer>
```

Add a Font to the Built-in FO Processor - Advanced Version

If an XML document is transformed to PDF using the built-in Apache FOP processor but it contains some Unicode characters that cannot be rendered by the default PDF fonts, then a special font that is capable to render these characters must be configured and embedded in the PDF result.

Important:
On Windows, fonts are located into the `C:\Windows\Fonts` directory. On macOS, they are placed in `/Library/Fonts`. To install a new font on your system, it is enough to copy it in the `Fonts` directory. If a special font is installed in the operating system, there is a simple way of telling FOP to look for it. See the simplified procedure for adding a font to FOP *(on page 900)*.

1. Locate the font.

   First, find out the name of a font that has the glyphs for the special characters you used. One font that covers most characters, including Japanese, Cyrillic, and Greek, is Arial Unicode MS.

2. Register the font in the FOP configuration.

   Note:
   DITA PDF transformations have their own `fop.xconf` (*DITA-OT-DIR*`/plugins/org.dita.pdf2.fop/fop/conf/fop.xconf`). If the font is not installed in the system, it needs to be referenced in the `fop.xconf`.

   a. For information about registering the font in the FOP Configuration, see: https://xmlgraphics.apache.org/fop/2.3/fonts.html.
   b. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **XML > PDF Output > FO Processors**, and enter the path of the FOP configuration file in the **Configuration file** text field.

3. Set the font on the document content.
   This is usually done with XSLT stylesheet parameters and depends on the document type processed by the stylesheet.

DocBook Example: For DocBook documents, you can start with the built-in scenario called **DocBook PDF**, edit the XSLT parameters *(on page 828)*, and set the font name (for example, *Arialuni*) to the `body.font.family` and `title.font.family` parameters.

TEI Example: For TEI documents, you can start with the built-in scenario called **TEI PDF**, edit the XSLT parameters *(on page 828)*, and set the font name (for example, *Arialuni*) to the `bodyFont` and `sansFont` parameters.

DITA Example: For DITA to PDF transformations using DITA-OT modify the following two files:

- *DITA-OT-DIR*`/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/cfg/fo/font-mappings.xml` - The `<font-face>` element included in each `<physical-font>` element that has the `char-set="default"` attribute must contain the name of the font.
- *DITA-OT-DIR*`/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/fop/conf/fop.xconf` - A `<font>` element must be inserted in the `<fonts>` element, which is inside the `<renderer>` element that has the `mime="application/pdf"` attribute.

For more information, see: https://xmlgraphics.apache.org/fop/2.1/fonts.html.

Adding Libraries to the Built-in FO Processor (XML with XSLT and FO)

Starting with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 20.0, both hyphenation and PDF image support are enabled by default in the built-in Apache FO processor. For older version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, use the following procedures to enable such support.

Adding Hyphenation Support for XML with XSLT Transformation Scenarios

If you want to add newer hyphenation libraries or you are using an older version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, follow this procedure:

1. Create a folder called `fop` in the *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`/lib` folder.
2. Download the compiled *JAR (on page 2231)* from OFFO.
3. Copy the `fop-hyph.jar` file into the *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`/lib/fop` folder.
4. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Adding Support for PDF Images

To add support for PDF images in an older version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, follow these steps:

1. Create a folder called `fop` in the *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`/lib` folder.
2. Download the *fop-pdf-images JAR* libraries.
3. Copy the libraries into the *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`/lib/fop` folder.
4. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

How to Enable Debugging for FO Processor Transformations

If you encounter errors when running PDF transformations that use an FO processor, it is possible to enable debugging/logging to help you identify the problem. To enable debugging/logging for FO processing, follow this procedure:

1. Locate and edit the following configuration file: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/tools/config/logback.xml`.

   > **Note:**
   > You need write access to this folder, so if you do not have administrator permissions, you might first need to copy the file to another location where you have write access.

2. Edit the `<root>` element (inside the `<configuration>` element), change its level to **debug**, and save the file.
3. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and re-run the transformation.

   > **Tip:**
   > To make it easier to analyze the data in the logs, it is recommended that you use a small input file when trying to reproduce the problem.

4. Once you are finished with the debugging session, remember to edit the `logback.xml` file and change the `<root>` element back to its original value. Otherwise, performance could be affected.

XSLT Transformation on JSON

This type of transformation specifies the parameters and location of a JSON document that the edited XSLT stylesheet is applied on. This scenario is useful when you develop an XSLT document and the JSON document is in its final form.

To create an **XSLT transformation on JSON** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu. Then click the **New** button and select **XSLT transformation on JSON**.
- Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view *(on page 940)*. Click the **New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **XSLT transformation on JSON**.

Both methods open the **New Scenario** dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

XSLT Tab (JSON Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **XSLT** tab contains the following options:

JSON URL

Specifies the source JSON file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the file is used directly from its remote location.

XSL URL

Specifies the source XSL file that the transformation will use. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, the file is used directly from its remote location.

Transformer

This drop-down menu presents all the transformation engines available to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for performing a transformation. The engine you choose is used as the default transformation engine. Also, if an XSLT or XQuery document does not have an associated validation scenario, this transformation engine is used in the validation process (if it provides validation support).

Advanced options

Allows you to configure the advanced options of the Saxon HE/PE/EE engine *(on page 832)* for the current transformation scenario. To configure the same options globally, go to the Saxon-HE/PE/EE preferences page *(on page 191)*. For the current transformation scenario, these **Advanced options** override the options configured in that preferences page.

Parameters

Opens a **Configure parameters** dialog box *(on page 830)* that allows you to configure the XSLT parameters used in the current transformation. In this dialog box, you can also configure the parameters for additional XSLT stylesheets *(on page 905)*. If the XSLT transformation engine is custom-defined, you cannot use this dialog box to configure the parameters sent to the custom engine. Instead, you can copy all parameters from the dialog box using contextual menu actions and edit the custom XSLT engine to include the necessary parameters in the command line that starts the transformation process.

Extensions

Opens a dialog box for configuring the XSLT extension *JARS* or classes *(on page 831)* that define extension Java functions or extension XSLT elements used in the transformation.

Additional XSLT stylesheets

Opens a dialog box for adding XSLT stylesheets *(on page 832)* that are applied on the main stylesheet specified in the **XSL URL** field. This is useful when a chain of XSLT stylesheets must be applied to the input XML document.

XSLT Parameters

The global parameters of the XSLT stylesheet used in a transformation scenario can be configured by using the **Parameters** button in the **XSLT** tab of a new or edited transformation scenario dialog box.

The resulting dialog box includes a table that displays all the parameters of the current XSLT stylesheet, all imported and included stylesheets, and all additional stylesheets *(on page 832)*, along with their descriptions and current values. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and you can use the **Filter** text box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

If the **XPath** column is selected, the parameter value is evaluated as an XPath expression before starting the XSLT transformation.

Example:

For example, you can use expressions such as:

```
doc('test.xml')//entry

//person[@atr='val']
```

Note:

1. The **doc** function solves the argument relative to the XSL stylesheet location. You can use full paths or editor variables *(on page 199)* (such as **${cfdu}** [current file directory]) to specify other locations: `doc('${cfdu}/test.xml')//*`
2. You cannot use XSLT Functions. Only XPath functions are allowed.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing the parameters:

New

Opens the **Add Parameter** dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Edit

Opens the **Edit Parameter** dialog box that allows you to edit the selected parameter. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Unset

Resets the selected parameter to its default value. Available only for edited parameters with set values.

Delete

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

The bottom panel presents the following:

- The default value of the parameter selected in the table.
- A description of the parameter, if available.
- The system ID of the stylesheet that declares it.

Related Information:
Editor Variables *(on page 199)*

XSLT Extensions

The **Extensions** button opens a dialog box that allows you to specify the *JARS (on page 2231)* and classes that contain extension functions called from the XSLT file of the current transformation scenario. You can use the **Add**, **Edit**, and **Remove** buttons to configure the extensions.

Tip:
You can specify the path to the resources using wildcards (for example, `${oxygenHome}/lib/*.jar`).

An extension function called from the XSLT file of the current transformation scenario will be searched, in the specified extensions, in the order displayed in this dialog box. To change the order of the items, select the item to be moved and click the **Move up** or **Move down** buttons.

Additional XSLT Stylesheets

Use the **Additional XSLT Stylesheets** button in the **XSLT** tab to display a list of additional XSLT stylesheets to be used in the transformation and you can add files to the list or edit existing entries. The following actions are available:

Add

Adds a stylesheet in the **Additional XSLT stylesheets** list using a file browser dialog box. You can type an editor variable *(on page 199)* in the file name field of the browser dialog box. The name of the stylesheet will be added in the list after the current selection.

Remove

Deletes the selected stylesheet from the **Additional XSLT stylesheets** list.

Up

Moves the selected stylesheet up in the list.

Down

Moves the selected stylesheet down in the list.

FO Processor Tab (JSON Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **FO Processor** tab contains the following options:

Perform FO Processing

Specifies whether or not an FO processor is applied (either the built-in Apache FOP engine or an external engine defined in **Preferences**) during the transformation.

Input

Choose between the following options to specify which input file to use:

- **XSLT result as input** - The FO processor is applied to the result of the XSLT transformation that is defined in the **XSLT** tab.
- **XML URL as input** - The FO processor is applied to the input XML file.

Method

The output format of the FO processing. The available options depend on the selected processor type.

Processor

Specifies the FO processor to be used for the transformation. It can be the built-in Apache FOP processor or an external processor *(on page 171)*.

Output Tab (JSON Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab contains the following options:

Prompt for file

At the end of the transformation, a file browser dialog box is displayed for specifying the path and name of the file that stores the transformation result.

Save As

The path of the file where the result of the transformation is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in Browser/System Application

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the file type of the result (for example, in Windows *PDF* files are often opened in *Acrobat Reader*).

Note:
To set the web browser that is used for displaying HTML/XHTML pages, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there.

- **Output file** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this button to automatically open the default output file at the end of the transformation.
- **Other location** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this option to open the file specified in this field at the end of the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in editor

When this is option is selected, at the end of the transformation, the default output file is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor, or if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor).

Show in results view as

You can choose to view the results in one of the following:

- **XML** - If this is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in an XML viewer panel at the bottom of the application window with syntax highlighting *(on page 163)*.
- **XHTML** - This option is only available if **Open in Browser/System Application** is not selected. If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in a built-in XHTML browser panel at the bottom of the application window.

Important:
When transforming very large documents, you should be aware that selecting this option may result in very long processing times. This drawback is due to the built-in Java XHTML browser implementation. To avoid delays for large documents, if you want to see the XHTML result of the transformation, you should use an external browser by selecting the **Open in Browser/System Application** option instead.

- **Image URLs are relative to** - If **Show in results view as XHTML** is selected, this option specifies the path used to resolve image paths contained in the transformation result. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Attention:
If your input XSLT contains `<xsl:result-document>` elements, then the secondary results will be saved to the specified URIs while the principal result is specified in this **Output** tab. For more information, see: https://www.w3.org/TR/xslt-30/#element-result-document.

XProc Transformation

This type of transformation specifies the parameters and location of an XProc script.

A sequence of transformations described by an XProc script can be executed with an XProc transformation scenario. To create an **XProc transformation** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** (**Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS)**) action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu. Then click the **New** button and select **XProc transformation**.
- Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view *(on page 940)*. Click the **New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **XProc transformation**.

Both methods open the **New Scenario** dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

Related Information:
Integrating an External XProc Engine *(on page 914)*

XProc Tab

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **XProc** tab contains the following options:

XProc URL

Specify the source XProc file to be used by the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, the file is used directly from its remote location.

Processor

Allows you to select the XProc engine to be used for the transformation. You can choose from **XML Calabash 1.X**, **XML Calabash 3.X**, or a custom engine that is configured in the **XProc Preferences** page *(on page 183)*.

Configuration File

You can specify a configuration file to be sent to the XProc Transformer. You can specify the path by using the text field, history drop-down, **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Extensions

Opens a dialog box where you can specify additional extension libraries to be added to the class path used in the XProc transformation.

Inputs Tab (XProc Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Inputs** tab contains a list with the ports that the XProc script uses to read input data. Use the **Filter** text box to search for a specific term in the entire ports collection.

Each input port has an assigned name in the XProc script. The XProc engine reads data from the URL specified in the **URL** column.

The following actions are available for managing the input ports:

New

Opens an **Edit** dialog box that allows you to add a new port and its URL. The built-in editor variables *(on page 199)* and custom editor variables *(on page 209)* can be used to specify the URL.

Edit

Opens an **Edit** dialog box that allows you to modify the selected port and its URL. The built-in editor variables *(on page 199)* and custom editor variables *(on page 209)* can be used to specify the URL.

Delete

Removes the selected port from the list. It is available only for new ports that have been added to the list.

Parameters Tab (XProc Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

Notice:
This tab is not available for XProc 3.0, since that version does not use parameters.

The **Parameters** tab presents a list of ports and parameters collected from the XProc script. The tab is divided into three sections:

List of Ports

In this section, you can use the **New** and **Delete** buttons to add or remove ports.

List of Parameters

This section presents a list of parameters for each port and includes columns for the parameter name, namespace URI, and its value. Use the **Filter** text box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. You can use the **New** and **Delete** buttons to add or remove parameters. You can edit the value of each cell in this table by double-clicking the cell. You can also sort the parameters by clicking the column headers.

Editor Variable Information

The built-in editor variables *(on page 199)* and custom editor variables *(on page 209)* can be used for specifying the URI. The message pane at the bottom of the dialog box provides more information about the editor variables that can be used.

Outputs Tab (XProc Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Outputs** tab displays a list of output ports (along with the URL) collected from the XProc script. Use the **Filter** text box to search for a specific term in the entire ports collection. You can also sort the columns by clicking the column headers.

The following actions are available for managing the output ports:

New

Opens an **Edit** dialog box that allows you to add a new output port and its URL. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted for the URL by using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. There is also a **Show in transformation results view** option that allows you to select whether or not the results will be displayed in the output **Results** view *(on page 310)*.

Edit

Opens an **Edit** dialog box that allows you to edit an existing output port and its URL. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted for the URL by using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. There is also a **Show in transformation results view** option that allows you to select whether or not the results will be displayed in the output **Results** view *(on page 310)*.

Delete

Removes the selected output port from the list. It is available only for new ports that have been added to the list.

Additional options that are available at the bottom of this tab include:

Open in Editor

If this option is selected, the XProc transformation result is automatically opened in an editor panel.

Open in Browser/System Application

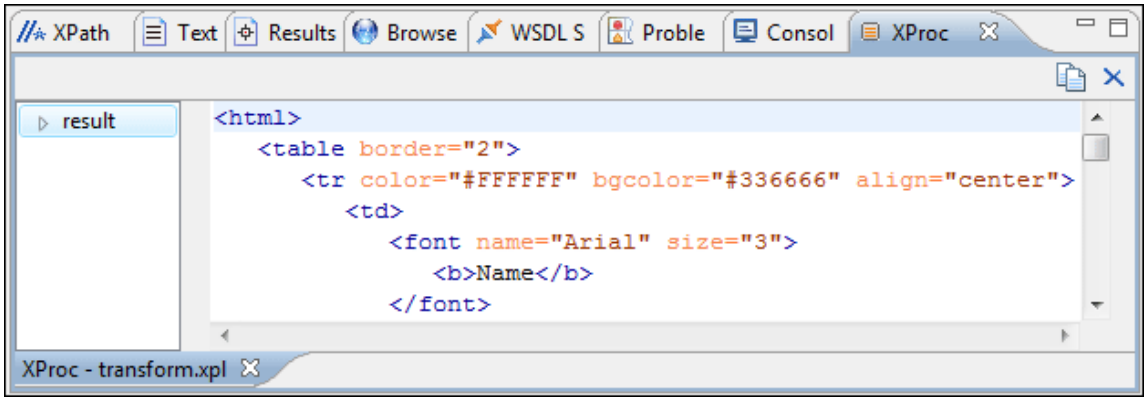
If this option is selected, you can specify a file to be opened at the end of the XProc transformation in the browser or system application that is associated with the file type. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Results

The result of the XProc transformation can be displayed as a sequence in an output view with two sections:

- A list with the output ports on the left side.
- The content that correspond to the selected output port on the right side.

Figure 216. XProc Transformation Results View



Options Tab (XProc Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Options** tab displays a list of the options collected from the XProc script. The tab is divided into two sections:

List of Options

This section presents a list of options and includes columns for the option name, namespace URI, and its value. Use the **Filter** text box to search for a specific term in the entire options collection. You can use the **New** and **Delete** buttons to add or remove options. You can edit the value of each cell in this table by double-clicking the cell. You can also sort the parameters by clicking the column headers. The names of edited options are displayed in bold.

Editor Variable Information

The built-in editor variables *(on page 199)* and custom editor variables *(on page 209)* can be used for specifying the URI. This section provides more information about the editor variables that can be used.

Calabash XProc Processor for Generating PDF Output

To generate PDF output from your XProc pipeline (when using the Calabash XProc processor), follow these steps:

1. Open the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/lib/xproc/calabash/engine.xml` file.
2. Uncomment the `<system-property name="com.xmlcalabash.fo-processor" value="com.xmlcalabash.util.FoXEP"/>` system property.
3. Uncomment the `<system-property name="com.renderx.xep.CONFIG" file="../../../tools/xep/xep.xml"/>` system property. Edit the `@file` attribute to point to the configuration file that is usually located in the XEP installation folder.

4. Uncomment the references to the XEP libraries. Edit them to point to the matching library names from the XEP installation directory.
5. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Integrating an External XProc Engine

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a bundled version of the *Calabash* XProc engine that can be used for XProc transformations and validation, but you can also integrate other external XProc engines. When you edit an XProc transformation scenario, there is a **Processor** drop-down menu where you can select the XProc engine to be used for the transformation.

If you do not need the external XProc engine to be used for automatic validation or pass parameters/ports and it is not Java-based, you can simply add the external engine by using the **XProc** preferences page *(on page 183)*. Otherwise, if the external engine is Java-based, or it has validation support, or it can receive parameters or ports passed from the transformation, you need to integrate it using the plugin extension procedure below.

For example, there is a public project on GitHub that is an implementation for integrating *Morgana XProc* with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin: https://github.com/xml-project/support-for-xmleditor. Also, the Javadoc documentation of the XProc API is available for download from the application website as a zip file: *xprocAPI.zip*.

To create an XProc integration project, follow these steps:

1. Move the `oxygen.jar` file from *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/lib`* to the `lib` folder of your project.
2. Implement the *ro.sync.xml.transformer.xproc.api.XProcTransformerInterface* interface.
3. Create a *Java archive (JAR) (on page 2231)* from the classes you created.
4. Create an `engine.xml` file according to the `engine.dtd` file. The attributes of the `<engine>` element are as follows:
    a. **name** - The name of the XProc engine.
    b. **description** - A short description of the XProc engine.
    c. **class** - The complete name of the class that implements *ro.sync.xml.transformer.xproc.api.XProcTransformerInterface*.
    d. **version** - The version of the integration.
    e. **engineVersion** - The version of the integrated engine.
    f. **vendor** - The name of the vendor / implementer.
    g. **supportsValidation** - **true** if the engine supports validation (otherwise, **false**).

    The `<engine>` element has only one child, `<runtime>`. The `<runtime>` element contains one or more `<library>` elements with the `@name` attribute that contains either of the following:
    - The relative or absolute location of the libraries necessary to run this integration.
    - A folder name (for example, `lib/`) that contains the libraries necessary to run this integration. Note that the folder name must end in a slash character (**/**).

5. Create a new folder (for example, named `MyXprocEngine`) and place the `engine.xml` and all the libraries necessary to run the new integration in that folder.

6. Place that new folder (e.g. `MyXprocEngine`) inside a new plugin folder. This new plugin folder should also contain a `plugin.xml` file that points to the new engine folder (e.g. `MyXprocEngine`).
   The `plugin.xml` file would look like this:

```
<plugin
 id="morgana.xproc.addon"
 name="Contribute Morgana XProc"
 description="Contribute Morgana XProc"
 version="1.0"
 vendor="Syncro Soft"
 class="ro.sync.exml.plugin.Plugin"
 classLoaderType="preferReferencedResources">
 <extension type="AdditionalXProcEngine" path="MyXprocEngine/"></extension>
</plugin>
```

Related Information:
Creating an XProc Transformation Scenario *(on page 909)*

XQuery Transformation on XML

This type of transformation specifies the parameters and location of an XML source that the edited XQuery file is applied on.

Note:
When the XML source is a native XML database, the source field of the scenario is empty because the XML data is read with XQuery-specific functions, such as `document()`. When the XML source is a local XML file, the URL of the file is specified in the input field of the scenario.

To create an **XQuery transformation on XML** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu. Then click the **New** button and select **XQuery transformation on XML**.
- Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view *(on page 940)*. Click the **New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **XQuery transformation on XML**.

Both methods open the **New Scenario** dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

XQuery Tab

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **XQuery** tab contains the following options:

XML URL

Specifies the source XML file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the file is used directly from its remote location.

Note:
If the transformer engine is Saxon 9.x and a custom URI resolver is configured in the advanced Saxon preferences page *(on page 194)*, the XML input of the transformation is passed to that URI resolver.

XQuery URL

Specifies the source XQuery file to be used for the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, the file is used directly from its remote location.

Transformer

This drop-down menu presents all the transformation engines available to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for performing a transformation. These include the built-in engines and the external engines defined in the Custom Engines preferences page *(on page 185)*. The engine you choose is used as the default transformation engine. Also, if an XSLT or XQuery document does not have an associated validation scenario, this transformation engine is used in the validation process (if it provides validation support).

Advanced options

Allows you to configure the advanced options of the Saxon HE/PE/EE engine *(on page 847)* for the current transformation scenario. To configure the same options globally, go to the Saxon-HE/PE/EE preferences page *(on page 191)*. For the current transformation scenario, these **Advanced options** override the options configured in that preferences page.

Parameters

Opens the **Configure parameters** dialog box *(on page 845)* for configuring the XQuery parameters. You can use the buttons in this dialog box to add, edit, or remove parameters. If the XQuery transformation engine is custom-defined, you can not use this dialog box to set parameters. Instead, you can copy all parameters from the dialog box using contextual menu actions and edit the custom XQuery engine to include the necessary parameters in the command line that starts the transformation process.

Extensions

Opens a dialog box for configuring the XQuery extension *JARS* or classes *(on page 847)* that define extension Java functions or extension XSLT elements used in the transformation.

XQuery Parameters

The global parameters of the XQuery file used in a transformation scenario can be configured by using the **Parameters** button in the **XQuery** tab.

The resulting dialog box includes a table that displays all the parameters of the current XQuery file, along with their descriptions and current values. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and use the **Filter** text box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

If the **XPath** column is selected, the parameter value is evaluated as an XPath expression before starting the XQuery transformation.

Example:

For example, you can use expressions such as:

```
doc('test.xml')//entry

//person[@atr='val']
```

Note:

1. The **doc** function solves the argument relative to the XQuery file location. You can use full paths or editor variables *(on page 199)* (such as **${cfdu}** [current file directory]) to specify other locations: `doc('${cfdu}/test.xml')//*`
2. Only XPath functions are allowed.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing the parameters:

New

Opens the **Add Parameter** dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Edit

Opens the **Edit Parameter** dialog box that allows you to edit the selected parameter. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Unset

Resets the selected parameter to its default value. Available only for edited parameters with set values.

Delete

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

The bottom panel presents the following:

- The default value of the parameter selected in the table.
- A description of the parameter, if available.
- The system ID of the stylesheet that declares it.

Related Information:
Editor Variables *(on page 199)*

XQuery Extensions

The **Extensions** button is used to specify the *JAR (on page 2231)* and classes that contain extension functions called from the XQuery file of the current transformation scenario. You can use the **Add**, **Edit**, and **Remove** buttons to configure the extensions.

An extension function called from the XQuery file of the current transformation scenario will be searched, in the specified extensions, in the order displayed in this dialog box. To change the order of the items, select the item to be moved and click the **Move up** or **Move down** buttons.

Advanced Saxon HE/PE/EE XQuery Transformation Options

The XQuery transformation scenario allows you to configure advanced options that are specific for the Saxon HE (Home Edition), PE (Professional Edition), and EE (Enterprise Edition) engines.

Saxon-HE/PE/EE Options

The advanced options for Saxon 12.9 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE), and Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Use a configuration file ("-config")

Sets a Saxon 12.9 configuration file that is used for XQuery transformation and validation scenarios.

Enable Optimizations ("-opt")

This option is selected by default, which means that optimization is enabled. If not selected, the optimization is suppressed, which is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

Use linked tree model ("-tree:linked")

This option activates the linked tree model.

Strip whitespaces ("-strip")

Specifies how the *strip whitespaces* operation is handled. You can choose one of the following values:

- **All ("all")** - Strips *all* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source document.
- **Ignore ("ignorable")** - Strips all *ignorable* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.
- **None ("none")** - Strips *no* whitespace before further processing.

Enable profiling ("-TP")

If selected, profiling of the execution time in a query is enabled. The corresponding text field is used to specify the path to the output file where the profiling information will be saved. As long as the option is selected, and the output file specified, it will gather timed tracing information and create a profile report to the specified file.

Note:
The profiling support works only if the **Present as a sequence** transformation option *(on page 850)* is not set.

Saxon-PE/EE Options

The following advanced options are specific for Saxon 12.9 Professional Edition (PE) and Enterprise Edition (EE) only:

Allow calls on extension functions ("-ext")

If selected, calls on external functions are allowed. Selecting this option is not recommended in an environment where untrusted stylesheets may be executed. It also disables user-defined extension elements and the writing of multiple output files, both of which carry similar security risks.

Saxon-EE Options

The advanced options that are specific for Saxon 12.9 Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Validation of the source file ("-val")

Requests schema-based validation of the source file and of any files read using `document()` or similar functions. It can have the following values:

- **Schema validation ("strict")** - This mode requires an XML Schema and allows for parsing the source documents with strict schema-validation enabled.
- **Lax schema validation ("lax")** - If an XML Schema is provided, this mode allows for parsing the source documents with schema-validation enabled but the validation will not fail if, for example, element declarations are not found.
- **Disable schema validation** - This specifies that the source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.

Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings ("-outval")

Normally, if validation of result documents is requested, a validation error is fatal. Selecting this option causes such validation failures to be treated as warnings.

Write comments for non-fatal validation errors of the result document

The validation messages for non-fatal errors are written (wherever possible) as a comment in the result document itself.

Enable XQuery update ("-update:(on|off)")

This option controls whether or not XQuery update syntax is accepted. The default value is off.

Backup files updated by XQuery ("-backup:(on|off)")

If selected, backup versions for any XML files updated with an XQuery Update are generated. This option is available when the **Enable XQuery update** option is selected.

Other Options

Initializer class

Equivalent to the `-init` Saxon command-line argument. The value is the name of a user-supplied class that implements the *net.sf.saxon.lib.Initializer* interface. This initializer is called during the initialization process, and may be used to set any options required on the configuration programmatically. It is particularly useful for tasks such as registering extension functions, collations, or external object models, especially in Saxon-HE where the option cannot be set via a configuration file. Saxon only calls the initializer when running from the command line, but the same code may be invoked to perform initialization when running user application code.

FO Processor Tab (XQuery Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **FO Processor** tab contains the following options:

Perform FO Processing

Specifies whether or not an FO processor is applied (either the built-in Apache FOP engine or an external engine defined in **Preferences**) during the transformation.

Input

Choose between the following options to specify which input file to use:

- **XQuery result as input** - The FO processor is applied to the result of the XQuery transformation that is defined in the **XQuery** tab.
- **XML URL as input** - The FO processor is applied to the input XML file.

Method

The output format of the FO processing. The available options depend on the selected processor type.

Processor

Specifies the FO processor to be used for the transformation. It can be the built-in Apache FOP processor or an external processor *(on page 171)*.

Output Tab (XQuery Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab contains the following options:

Present as a sequence

Selecting this option will reduce the time necessary to fetch the full results, as it will only fetch the first chunk of the results.

Prompt for file

At the end of the transformation, a file browser dialog box is displayed for specifying the path and name of the file that stores the transformation result.

Save As

The path of the file where the result of the transformation is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in Browser/System Application

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the file type of the result (for example, in Windows *PDF* files are often opened in *Acrobat Reader*).

Note:
To set the web browser that is used for displaying HTML/XHTML pages, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there.

- **Output file** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this button to automatically open the default output file at the end of the transformation.
- **Other location** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this option to open the file specified in this field at the end of the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in editor

When this is option is selected, at the end of the transformation, the default output file is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor, or if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor).

Show in results view as

You can choose to view the results in one of the following:

- **XML** - If this is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in an XML viewer panel at the bottom of the application window with syntax highlighting *(on page 163)*.
- **XHTML** - This option is only available if **Open in Browser/System Application** is not selected. If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in a built-in XHTML browser panel at the bottom of the application window.

Important:
When transforming very large documents, you should be aware that selecting this option may result in very long processing times. This drawback is due to the built-in Java XHTML browser implementation. To avoid delays for large documents, if you want to see the XHTML result of the transformation, you should use an external browser by selecting the **Open in Browser/System Application** option instead.

- **Image URLs are relative to** - If **Show in results view as XHTML** is selected, this option specifies the path used to resolve image paths contained in the transformation result. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

XQuery Transformation on JSON

This type of transformation specifies the parameters and location of a JSON document that the edited XQuery file is applied on. This scenario is useful when you develop an XQuery file and the JSON document is in its final form.

To create an **XQuery transformation on JSON** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu. Then click the **New** button and select **XQuery transformation on JSON**.
- Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view *(on page 940)*. Click the **New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **XQuery transformation on JSON**.

Both methods open the **New Scenario** dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

XQuery Tab (JSON Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **XQuery** tab contains the following options:

JSON URL

Specifies the source JSON file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, then the file is used directly from its remote location.

XQuery URL

Specifies the source XQuery file to be used for the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. This URL is resolved through the

catalog resolver. If the catalog does not have a mapping for the URL, the file is used directly from its remote location.

Transformer

This drop-down menu presents all the transformation engines available to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for performing a transformation. These include the built-in engines and the external engines defined in the Custom Engines preferences page *(on page 185)*. The engine you choose is used as the default transformation engine. Also, if an XSLT or XQuery document does not have an associated validation scenario, this transformation engine is used in the validation process (if it provides validation support).

Advanced options

Allows you to configure the advanced options of the Saxon HE/PE/EE engine *(on page 847)* for the current transformation scenario. To configure the same options globally, go to the Saxon-HE/PE/EE preferences page *(on page 191)*. For the current transformation scenario, these **Advanced options** override the options configured in that preferences page.

Parameters

Opens the **Configure parameters** dialog box *(on page 845)* for configuring the XQuery parameters. You can use the buttons in this dialog box to add, edit, or remove parameters. If the XQuery transformation engine is custom-defined, you can not use this dialog box to set parameters. Instead, you can copy all parameters from the dialog box using contextual menu actions and edit the custom XQuery engine to include the necessary parameters in the command line that starts the transformation process.

Extensions

Opens a dialog box for configuring the XQuery extension *JARS* or classes *(on page 847)* that define extension Java functions or extension XSLT elements used in the transformation.

XQuery Parameters

The global parameters of the XQuery file used in a transformation scenario can be configured by using the **Parameters** button in the **XQuery** tab.

The resulting dialog box includes a table that displays all the parameters of the current XQuery file, along with their descriptions and current values. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and use the **Filter** text box to search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

If the **XPath** column is selected, the parameter value is evaluated as an XPath expression before starting the XQuery transformation.

Example:

For example, you can use expressions such as:

```
doc('test.xml')//entry

//person[@atr='val']
```

Note:

1. The **doc** function solves the argument relative to the XQuery file location. You can use full paths or editor variables *(on page 199)* (such as **${cfdu}** [current file directory]) to specify other locations: `doc('${cfdu}/test.xml')//*`
2. Only XPath functions are allowed.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing the parameters:

New

Opens the **Add Parameter** dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Edit

Opens the **Edit Parameter** dialog box that allows you to edit the selected parameter. An editor variable *(on page 199)* can be inserted in the text box using the **Insert Editor Variables** button. If the **Evaluate as XPath** option is selected, the parameter will be evaluated as an XPath expression.

Unset

Resets the selected parameter to its default value. Available only for edited parameters with set values.

Delete

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

The bottom panel presents the following:

- The default value of the parameter selected in the table.
- A description of the parameter, if available.
- The system ID of the stylesheet that declares it.

Related Information:

Editor Variables *(on page 199)*

XQuery Extensions

The **Extensions** button is used to specify the *JAR (on page 2231)* and classes that contain extension functions called from the XQuery file of the current transformation scenario. You can use the **Add**, **Edit**, and **Remove** buttons to configure the extensions.

An extension function called from the XQuery file of the current transformation scenario will be searched, in the specified extensions, in the order displayed in this dialog box. To change the order of the items, select the item to be moved and click the **Move up** or **Move down** buttons.

Advanced Saxon HE/PE/EE XQuery Transformation Options

The XQuery transformation scenario allows you to configure advanced options that are specific for the Saxon HE (Home Edition), PE (Professional Edition), and EE (Enterprise Edition) engines.

Saxon-HE/PE/EE Options

The advanced options for Saxon 12.9 Home Edition (HE), Professional Edition (PE), and Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Use a configuration file ("-config")

Sets a Saxon 12.9 configuration file that is used for XQuery transformation and validation scenarios.

Enable Optimizations ("-opt")

This option is selected by default, which means that optimization is enabled. If not selected, the optimization is suppressed, which is helpful when reducing the compiling time is important, optimization conflicts with debugging, or optimization causes extension functions with side-effects to behave unpredictably.

Use linked tree model ("-tree:linked")

This option activates the linked tree model.

Strip whitespaces ("-strip")

Specifies how the *strip whitespaces* operation is handled. You can choose one of the following values:

- **All ("all")** - Strips *all* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source document.
- **Ignore ("ignorable")** - Strips all *ignorable* whitespace text nodes from source documents before any further processing, regardless of any `@xml:space` attributes in the source document. Whitespace text nodes are ignorable if they appear in elements defined in the DTD or schema as having element-only content.
- **None ("none")** - Strips *no* whitespace before further processing.

Enable profiling ("-TP")

If selected, profiling of the execution time in a query is enabled. The corresponding text field is used to specify the path to the output file where the profiling information will be saved. As long as the option is selected, and the output file specified, it will gather timed tracing information and create a profile report to the specified file.

Note:
The profiling support works only if the **Present as a sequence** transformation option *(on page 850)* is not set.

Saxon-PE/EE Options

The following advanced options are specific for Saxon 12.9 Professional Edition (PE) and Enterprise Edition (EE) only:

Allow calls on extension functions ("-ext")

If selected, calls on external functions are allowed. Selecting this option is not recommended in an environment where untrusted stylesheets may be executed. It also disables user-defined extension elements and the writing of multiple output files, both of which carry similar security risks.

Saxon-EE Options

The advanced options that are specific for Saxon 12.9 Enterprise Edition (EE) are as follows:

Validation of the source file ("-val")

Requests schema-based validation of the source file and of any files read using `document()` or similar functions. It can have the following values:

- **Schema validation ("strict")** - This mode requires an XML Schema and allows for parsing the source documents with strict schema-validation enabled.
- **Lax schema validation ("lax")** - If an XML Schema is provided, this mode allows for parsing the source documents with schema-validation enabled but the validation will not fail if, for example, element declarations are not found.
- **Disable schema validation** - This specifies that the source documents should be parsed with schema-validation disabled.

Validation errors in the result tree treated as warnings ("-outval")

Normally, if validation of result documents is requested, a validation error is fatal. Selecting this option causes such validation failures to be treated as warnings.

Write comments for non-fatal validation errors of the result document

The validation messages for non-fatal errors are written (wherever possible) as a comment in the result document itself.

Enable XQuery update ("-update:(on|off)")

This option controls whether or not XQuery update syntax is accepted. The default value is off.

Backup files updated by XQuery ("-backup:(on|off)")

If selected, backup versions for any XML files updated with an XQuery Update are generated. This option is available when the **Enable XQuery update** option is selected.

Other Options

Initializer class

Equivalent to the `-init` Saxon command-line argument. The value is the name of a user-supplied class that implements the *net.sf.saxon.lib.Initializer* interface. This initializer is called during the initialization process, and may be used to set any options required on the configuration programmatically. It is particularly useful for tasks such as registering extension functions, collations, or external object models, especially in Saxon-HE where the option cannot be set via a configuration file. Saxon only calls the initializer when running from the command line, but the same code may be invoked to perform initialization when running user application code.

FO Processor Tab (XQuery Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **FO Processor** tab contains the following options:

Perform FO Processing

Specifies whether or not an FO processor is applied (either the built-in Apache FOP engine or an external engine defined in **Preferences**) during the transformation.

Input

Choose between the following options to specify which input file to use:

- **XQuery result as input** - The FO processor is applied to the result of the XQuery transformation that is defined in the **XQuery** tab.
- **XML URL as input** - The FO processor is applied to the input XML file.

Method

The output format of the FO processing. The available options depend on the selected processor type.

Processor

Specifies the FO processor to be used for the transformation. It can be the built-in Apache FOP processor or an external processor *(on page 171)*.

Output Tab (XQuery Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab contains the following options:

Present as a sequence

Selecting this option will reduce the time necessary to fetch the full results, as it will only fetch the first chunk of the results.

Prompt for file

At the end of the transformation, a file browser dialog box is displayed for specifying the path and name of the file that stores the transformation result.

Save As

The path of the file where the result of the transformation is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in Browser/System Application

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the file type of the result (for example, in Windows *PDF* files are often opened in *Acrobat Reader*).

Note:
To set the web browser that is used for displaying HTML/XHTML pages, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there.

- **Output file** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this button to automatically open the default output file at the end of the transformation.
- **Other location** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this option to open the file specified in this field at the end of the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in editor

When this is option is selected, at the end of the transformation, the default output file is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor, or if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor).

Show in results view as

You can choose to view the results in one of the following:

- **XML** - If this is selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in an XML viewer panel at the bottom of the application window with syntax highlighting *(on page 163)*.
- **XHTML** - This option is only available if **Open in Browser/System Application** is not selected. If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the transformation result in a built-in XHTML browser panel at the bottom of the application window.

  Important:
  When transforming very large documents, you should be aware that selecting this option may result in very long processing times. This drawback is due to the built-in Java XHTML browser implementation. To avoid delays for large documents, if you want to see the XHTML result of the transformation, you should use an external browser by selecting the **Open in Browser/System Application** option instead.

- **Image URLs are relative to** - If **Show in results view as XHTML** is selected, this option specifies the path used to resolve image paths contained in the transformation result. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

SQL Transformation

This type of transformation specifies a database connection for the database server that runs the SQL file associated with the scenario. The data processed by the SQL script is located in the database.

To create an **SQL transformation** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu. Then click the **New** button and select **SQL transformation**.
- Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view *(on page 940)*. Click the **New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **SQL transformation**.

Both methods open the **New Scenario** dialog box. This dialog box allows you to configure the following options that control the transformation:

Name

The unique name of the SQL transformation scenario.

SQL URL

Allows you to specify the URL of the SQL script. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Connection

Allows you to select a connection from a drop-down list. To configure a connection, use the **Advanced options** button to open the **Data Source** preferences page *(on page 67)*.

Parameters

Allows you to add or configure parameters for the transformation.

Editing a Transformation Scenario

Editing a transformation scenario is useful if you need to configure some of its parameters.

> **Note:**
> Since transformation scenarios that are associated with built-in *frameworks (on page 2231)* are read-only, to edit one of these scenarios you will need to duplicate it and edit the duplicated scenario *(on page 933)*.

To configure an existing transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu.

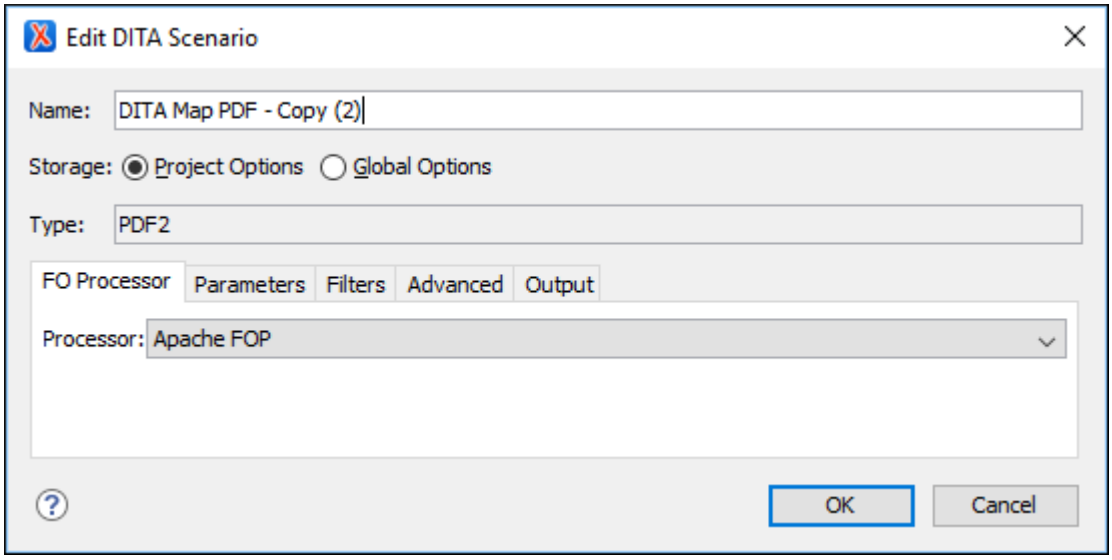
   Step Result: The **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)* is opened.

2. Select the particular transformation scenario and click the **Edit** button at the bottom of the dialog box or from the contextual menu.

   > **Tip:**
   > You could also select the scenario and the **Edit** button in the **Transformation Scenarios** view *(on page 940)* to achieve the same result.

Result: This will open an **Edit scenario** configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in several tabs, depending on the type of transformation scenario that was selected.

Figure 217. Edit Scenarios Configuration Dialog Box



Transformation Types

The **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)* contains a **Type** column that shows you the transformation type for each of the listed scenarios. Each type of transformation contains some tabs with various configuration options.

The following is a list of the transformation types and their particular tabs (click the name of each tab below to see details about all the options that are available):

- **DITA-OT** - This type of transformation includes configurable options in the following tabs:
  - Templates Tab *(on page 2098)*
  - FO Processor Tab *(on page 2102)* (Available for PDF output)
  - Parameters Tab *(on page 2104)*
  - Filters Tab *(on page 2106)*
  - Advanced Tab *(on page 2107)*
  - Output Tab *(on page 2110)*
- **ANT** - This type of transformation includes configurable options in the following tabs:
  - Options Tab *(on page 869)*
  - Parameters Tab *(on page 870)*
  - Output Tab *(on page 871)*
- **XSLT** - This type of transformation includes configurable options in the following tabs:
  - XSLT Tab *(on page 828)*
  - FO Processor Tab *(on page 837)*
  - Output Tab *(on page 838)*
- **XProc** - This type of transformation includes configurable options in the following tabs:
  - XProc Tab *(on page 910)*
  - Inputs Tab *(on page 910)*
  - Parameters Tab *(on page 911)*

    - Outputs Tab *(on page 911)*
    - Options Tab *(on page 913)*
- **XQuery** - This type of transformation includes configurable options in the following tabs:
    - XQuery Tab *(on page 844)*
    - FO Processor Tab *(on page 849)*
    - Output Tab *(on page 850)*

Related Information:
Creating New Transformation Scenarios *(on page 828)*
Duplicating a Transformation Scenario *(on page 933)*
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*
Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios *(on page 933)*

Duplicating a Transformation Scenario

Duplicating a transformation scenario is useful for creating a scenario that is similar to an existing one or to edit a built-in transformation scenario.

To configure an existing transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu.

   Step Result: The **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)* is opened.
2. Select the particular transformation scenario and click the **Duplicate** button at the bottom of the dialog box or from the contextual menu.

   Tip:
   You could also select the scenario and the **Duplicate** button in the **Transformation Scenarios** view *(on page 940)* to achieve the same result.

Result: This will open an **Edit scenario** configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in several tabs, depending on the type of transformation scenario that was selected. For information about all the specific options in the various tabs, see the Transformation Types section *(on page 932)*.

Related Information:
Creating New Transformation Scenarios *(on page 828)*
Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*

Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios

If you have associated transformation scenarios for the current document (in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)* or **Transformation Scenarios** view *(on page 940)*), Oxygen XML

Author Eclipse plugin included an **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** action that allows you to quickly apply the associated transformation scenarios on the current document. Note that if an association is not detected, this action will open the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)* where you can choose the scenarios you want to apply.

The **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** action can be initiated from any of the following methods:

- Use the **Alt + Shift + T, T (Command + Option + T, T on macOS))** keyboard shortcut.
- Click the **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** button on the main toolbar.
- Click the **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** button on the toolbar in the **Transformation Scenarios** view *(on page 940)*.
- Right-click a file in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and select **Transform > Apply Transformation Scenario(s)**.
- Use the **Apply Associated** button in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

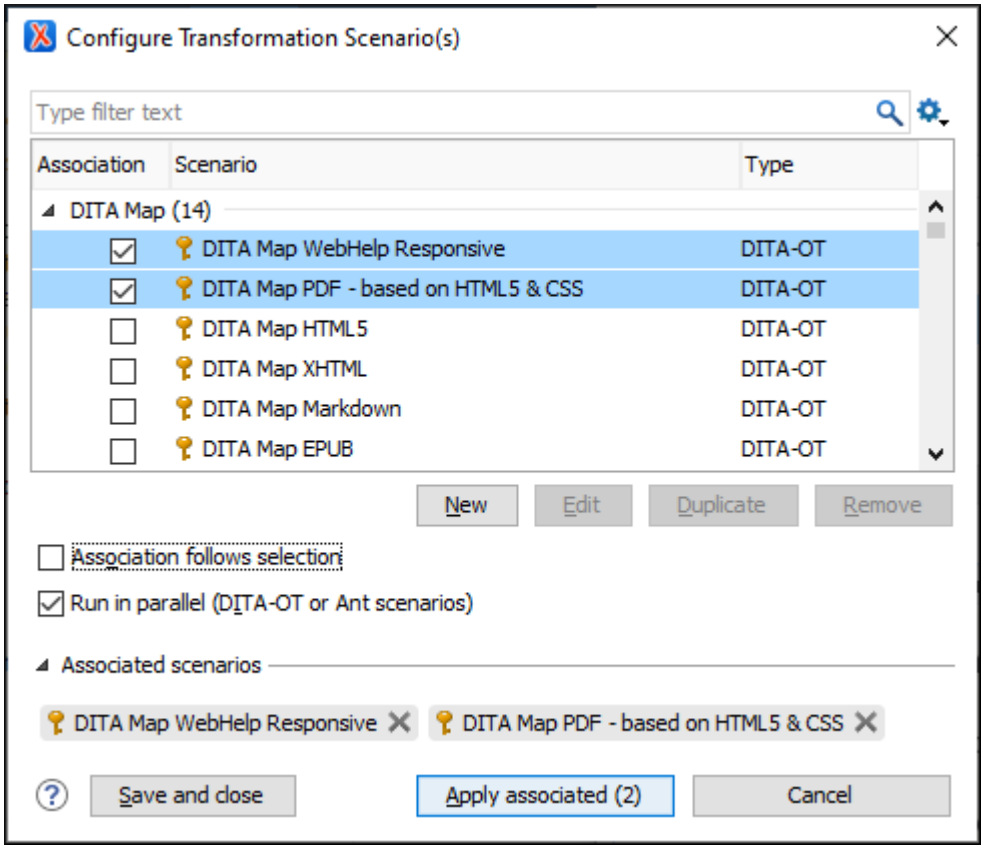
Related Information:
Creating New Transformation Scenarios *(on page 828)*
Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*
Transformation Scenarios View *(on page 940)*

Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box

You can use the **Configure Transformation Scenarios(s)** dialog box for editing existing transformation scenarios *(on page 931)* or creating new ones *(on page 828)*.

To open this dialog box, use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu.

Figure 218. Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box



The dialog box includes the following options and features:

Search Filter Field

You can begin typing text in the search field at the top of the dialog box to filter the scenarios shown in the table below this field.

Settings

Use this drop-down to access the following options:

Show all scenarios

Select this option to display all the available scenarios, regardless of the document they are associated with.

Show only the scenarios available for the editor

Select this option to only display the scenarios that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can apply for the current document type.

Show associated scenarios

Select this option to only display the scenarios associated with the document you are editing.

Import scenarios

This option opens the **Import scenarios** dialog box that allows you to select the `scenarios` file that contains the scenarios you want to import. If one of the scenarios you import is identical to an existing scenario, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin ignores it. If a conflict appears (an imported scenario has the same name as an existing one), you can choose between two options:

- Keep or replace the existing scenario.
- Keep both scenarios.

> **Note:**
> When you keep both scenarios, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin adds `imported` to the name of the imported scenario.

Export selected scenarios

Use this option to export selected scenarios individually. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin creates a `scenarios` file that contains the exported scenarios. This is useful if you want to share scenarios with others or export them to another computer.

Scenarios Table Section

The middle section of the dialog box is a table that displays the scenarios that you can apply to the current document. The table includes following sortable columns:

- **Association** - The checkboxes in this column mark whether or not a transformation scenario is associated with the current document.
- **Scenario** - This column presents the names of the transformation scenarios.
- **Type** - If the **Show Type** contextual menu option is selected, this column displays the type of the transformation scenario. For further details about the types of transformation scenarios that are available in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the Transformation Types section *(on page 932)*.

If you right-click in the header area, the following options are accessible:

Show Type

Use this option to display the transformation type of each scenario.

Show Storage

Use this option to display the storage location of the scenarios.

Group by Type

Select this option to group the scenarios by their type.

Group by Storage

Select this option to group the scenarios by their storage location.

Ungroup all

Select this option to ungroup all the scenarios.

Reset Layout

Select this option to restore the default settings of the layout.

If you right-click any particular transformation scenario, the following actions are accessible:

Edit

This button opens the **Edit Scenario** configuration dialog box *(on page 931)* that allows you to configure the options of the transformations scenario.

Duplicate

Use this button to create a duplicate transformation scenario *(on page 933)*.

Remove

Use this button to remove custom transformation scenarios.

Import scenarios

This option opens the **Import scenarios** dialog box that allows you to select the `scenarios` file that contains the scenarios you want to import. If one of the scenarios you import is identical to an existing scenario, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin ignores it. If a conflict appears (an imported scenario has the same name as an existing one), you can choose between two options:

- Keep or replace the existing scenario.
- Keep both scenarios.

> **Note:**
> When you keep both scenarios, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin adds `imported` to the name of the imported scenario.

Export selected scenarios

Use this option to export selected scenarios individually. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin creates a `scenarios` file that contains the exported scenarios. This is useful if you want to share scenarios with others or export them to another computer.

Bottom Section

The bottom section of the dialog box contains the following actions and options:

New

This button allows you to create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)*.

Edit

This button opens the **Edit Scenario** dialog box that allows you to configure the options of the transformations scenario. For information about all the specific options in the various tabs, see the Transformation Types section *(on page 932)*.

Note:
If you try to edit a transformation scenario associated with a defined document type, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays a warning message to inform you that this is not possible and gives you the option to create a duplicate transformation scenario *(on page 933)* to edit instead.

Duplicate

Use this button to create a duplicate transformation scenario *(on page 933)*.

Remove

Use this button to remove transformation scenarios.

Note:
Removing scenarios associated with a defined document type is not allowed.

Association follows selection

Select this checkbox to automatically associate selected transformation scenarios with the current document. This option can also be used for multiple selections.

Note:
When this option is selected, the **Association** column is hidden.

Run in parallel (DITA-OT or Ant scenarios)

This option is available if you select multiple DITA-OT or Ant type scenarios. Selecting this option results in the transformations being done in parallel, instead of sequentially. It should help to reduce the amount of time it takes for the publishing to finish when transforming large projects.

Attention:
If multiple selected DITA-OT scenarios have the same output or temporary files folder, this option is not available since the process would need to read and write content to the same folder in this case.

Associated scenarios section

Displays the scenarios that are associated with the current document. Selecting a checkbox in the **Association** column in the list of scenarios will add that scenario to this section. To remove a scenario from being associated with the current document, simply click the remove icon ( ) to the right of the scenario name.

Save and close

Saves the current configuration and closes the dialog box.

Apply associated

Use this button to apply the associated scenarios and run the transformation on the current document.

Cancel

Cancels any changes made in the dialog box and reverts to the previously saved association.

Tip:
Your selections in the **Configure Transformation Scenarios(s)** dialog box are persistent so the configured associations for the current document will be remembered after the dialog box is closed.

Related Information:
Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Duplicating a Transformation Scenario *(on page 933)*
Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios *(on page 933)*
Creating New Transformation Scenarios *(on page 828)*
Sharing Transformation Scenarios *(on page 940)*

Batch Transformations

A transformation action can be applied on a batch of selected files from the contextual menu of the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 249)* without having to open the files involved in the transformation. You can apply the same scenario to a batch of files or multiple scenarios to a single file or batch of files.

1. Select the files you want to transform and from the contextual menu, select **Transform >** **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** to choose one or more transformation scenarios to be applied on all the files in the logical folder.
2. Use Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin editor variables *(on page 199)* to specify the input and output files. This ensures that each file from the selected set of resources is processed and that the output is not overwritten by the subsequent processing.
    a. Edit the transformation scenario to make sure the appropriate editor variable *(on page 199)* is assigned for the input file. For example, for a *DocBook PDF transformation*, make sure the **XML URL** input box is set to the *${currentFileURL}* editor variable *(on page 206)*. For a DITA PDF

transformation, make sure the `args.input` parameter is set to the *${cf}* editor variable *(on page 206)*.

b. Edit the transformation scenario to make sure the appropriate editor variable is assigned for the output file. For example, for an **XML transformation with XSLT**, switch to the **Output** tab and set the path of the output file using a construct of editor variables *(on page 199)*, such as `${cfd}/${cfn}.html`.

3. Now that the logical folder has been associated with one or more transformation scenarios, whenever you want to apply the same batch transformation, you can select **Transform >** **Transform with** from the contextual menu and the same previously associated scenario(s) will be applied.
4. If you want a different type of transformation to be applied to each file inside the logical folder, associate individual scenarios for each file and select **Transform >** **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** from the contextual menu of the logical folder.

Related Information:
Editor Variables *(on page 199)*

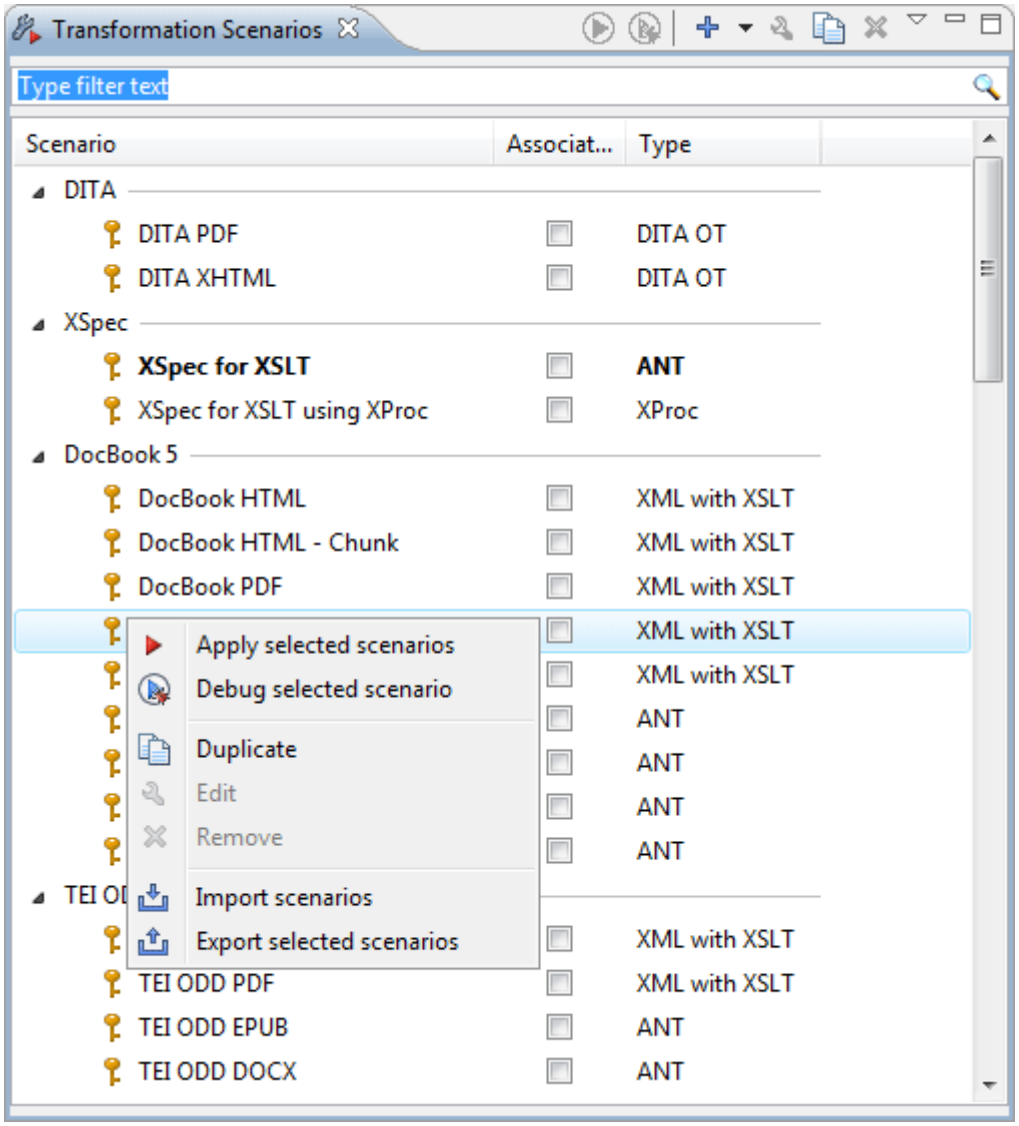
Sharing Transformation Scenarios

The transformation scenarios and their settings can be shared with other users by exporting them to a specialized scenarios file *(on page 199)* that can then be imported.

Transformation Scenarios View

You can manage the transformation scenarios by using the **Transformation Scenarios** view. To open this view, select **Window > Show View > Transformation Scenarios**.

Figure 219. Transformation Scenarios view



Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports multiple scenarios association. To associate multiple scenarios with a document, select the checkboxes in front of each scenario. You can also associate multiple scenarios with a document from the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin presents the items in the following order:

1. Scenarios that match the current *framework (on page 2231)*.
2. Scenarios that match the current project.
3. Scenarios that match other *frameworks*.

Toolbar/Contextual Menu Actions and Options

The following actions and options are available on the toolbar or in the contextual menu:

Apply selected scenarios

Select this option to run the current transformation scenario.

New

This drop-down menu contains a list of the scenarios that you can create *(on page 828)*. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin determines the most appropriate scenarios for the current type of file and displays them at the beginning of the list, followed by the rest of the scenarios.

Duplicate

Adds a new scenario to the list that is a duplicate of the current scenario. It is useful for creating a scenario that is similar to an existing one.

Edit

Opens the dialog box that allows you to configure various options in several tabs, depending on the type of transformation scenario that was selected. For information about all the specific options in the various tabs, see the Transformation Types section *(on page 932)*.

Remove

Removes the current scenario from the list. This action is also available by using the **Delete** key.

Import scenarios

This option opens the **Import scenarios** dialog box that allows you to select the `scenarios` file that contains the scenarios you want to import. If one of the scenarios you import is identical to an existing scenario, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin ignores it. If a conflict appears (an imported scenario has the same name as an existing one), you can choose between two options:

- Keep or replace the existing scenario.
- Keep both scenarios.

> **Note:**
> When you keep both scenarios, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin adds `imported` to the name of the imported scenario.

Export selected scenarios

Use this option to export transformation and validation scenarios individually. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin creates a `scenarios` file that contains the scenarios that you export.

Settings

This drop-down menu allows you to configure the following options (many of these options are also available if you right-click the name of a column):

Show all scenarios

Select this option to display all the available scenarios, regardless of the document they are associated with.

Show only the scenarios available for the editor

Select this option to only display the scenarios that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can apply for the current document type.

Show associated scenarios

Select this option to only display the scenarios associated with the document you are editing.

Import scenarios

This option opens the **Import scenarios** dialog box that allows you to select the `scenarios` file that contains the scenarios you want to import. If one of the scenarios you import is identical to an existing scenario, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin ignores it. If a conflict appears (an imported scenario has the same name as an existing one), you can choose between two options:

- Keep or replace the existing scenario.
- Keep both scenarios.

> **Note:**
> When you keep both scenarios, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin adds `imported` to the name of the imported scenario.

Export selected scenarios

Use this option to export selected scenarios individually. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin creates a `scenarios` file that contains the exported scenarios. This is useful if you want to share scenarios with others or export them to another computer.

Show Type

Use this option to display the transformation type of each scenario.

Show Storage

Use this option to display the storage location of the scenarios.

Group by Type

Select this option to group the scenarios by their type.

Group by Storage

Select this option to group the scenarios by their storage location.

Ungroup all

Select this option to ungroup all the scenarios.

Reset Layout

Select this option to restore the default settings of the layout.

Your selections in the **Transformation Scenarios** view are persistent so the configured associations for the current document will be remembered whenever the document is opened.

Related Information:
Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Creating New Transformation Scenarios *(on page 828)*

WebHelp Output Customization

Oxygen XML WebHelp provides the ability to generate **WebHelp Responsive** from DITA XML content.

Table 9. WebHelp System Feature Matrix

Features	Responsive
Desktop Systems	✔
Mobile Devices	✔
Built-in Skins	✔
Built-in Templates	✔
Search Capabilities	✔
Modern Layout	✔
Adaptable to Any Screen Size	✔
Oxygen Feedback Commenting Platform	✔
DITA Documents	✔

WebHelp Responsive Output for DITA

WebHelp Responsive features a very flexible layout, is designed to adapt to any screen size to provide an optimal viewing and interaction experience. It is based upon the *Bootstrap* responsive front-end framework and is available for DITA document types.

WebHelp Responsive output can be generated by using the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** *(on page 799)* transformation scenario.

For an in-depth look at WebHelp Responsive features and the publishing process, watch our Webinar: **DITA Publishing and Feedback with Oxygen Tools**.

Layout and Features

This section contains information about the layout and features of the WebHelp Responsive output.

Layout of the Responsive Page Types

You can select from several different styles of layouts (for example, by default, you can select either a *tiles* or *tree* style of layout). Furthermore, each layout includes a collection of skins that you can choose from, or you can customize your own.

Figure 220. WebHelp Responsive Output on a Normal Screen

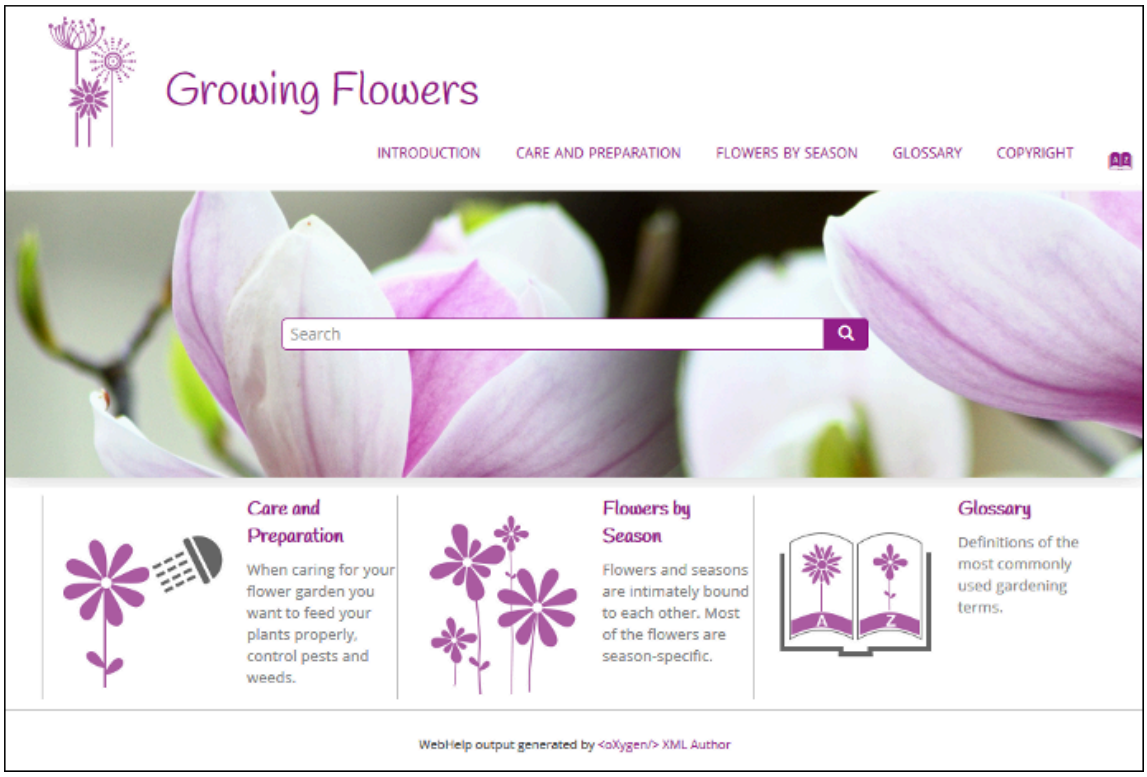


Figure 221. WebHelp Responsive Output on a Narrow Screen

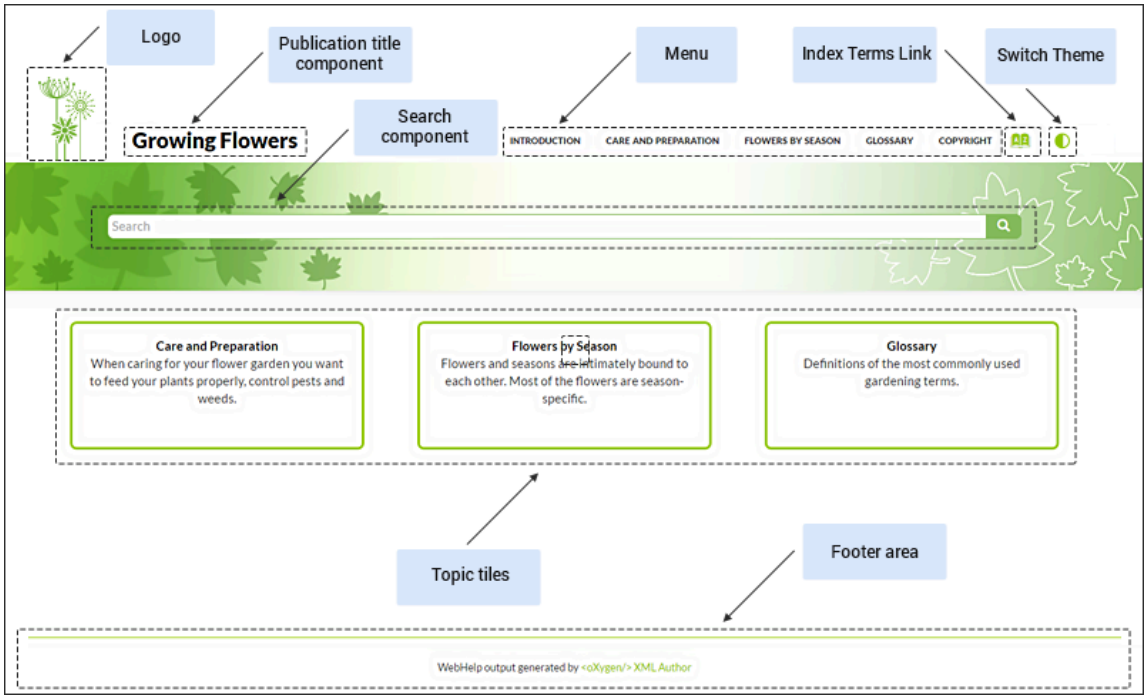
Main Page

The *Main Page* is the home page generated in the WebHelp Responsive output. The main function of the home page is to display top-level information and provide links that help you easily navigate to any of the top-level topics of the publication. These links can be rendered in either a *Tiles* or *Tree* style of layout. The main page also consists of various other components, such as a logo, title, menu, search field, or index link.

Main Page - Tiles Layout

In the *tiles* presentation mode, a tile component is created for each chapter (first-level topic) in the publication. The tile presents a link to the topic and its short description.

Figure 222. Main Page - Tiles Layout

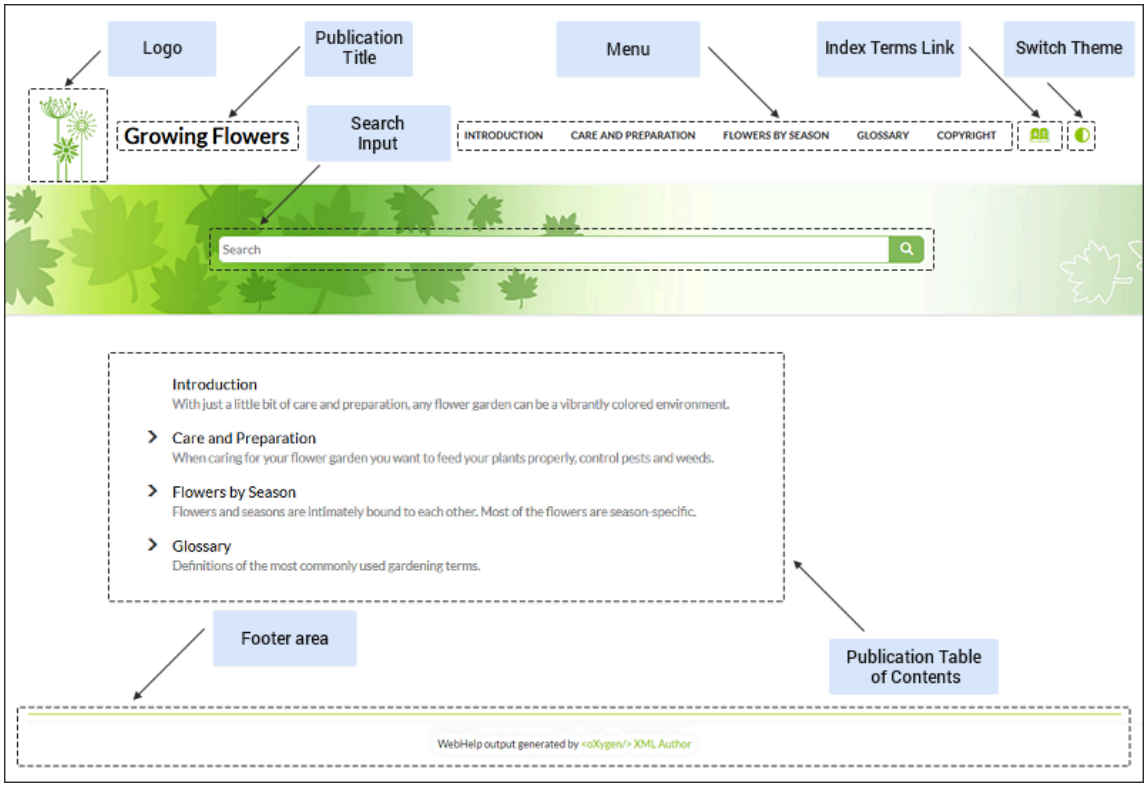


1. Logo Component *(on page 948)*
2. Title Component *(on page 948)*
3. Search Input Component *(on page 949)*
4. Menu Component *(on page 949)*
5. Index Terms Link Component *(on page 949)*
6. Theme Button Component *(on page 949)*
7. Topic Tiles Component *(on page 949)*
8. Footer Component *(on page 949)*

Main Page - Tree Layout

In the *tree* presentation mode, links to the first and second level topics in the publication are displayed using a tree-like component.

Figure 223. Main Page - Tree Layout



1. Logo Component *(on page 948)*
2. Title Component *(on page 948)*
3. Search Input Component *(on page 949)*
4. Menu Component *(on page 949)*
5. Index Terms Link Component *(on page 949)*
6. Theme Button Component *(on page 949)*
7. Table of Contents Component *(on page 949)*
8. Footer Component *(on page 949)*

Main Page Components

The layout components displayed in the main page are:

Publication Title

The title of the publication. It is usually taken from the DITA map title.

Logo

Displays a logo associated with the publication. Additionally, you can set a target URL that will be opened when you click on the logo image.

The logo image can be specified using the webhelp.logo.image transformation parameter *(on page 1145)*. For the target URL, use the webhelp.logo.image.target.url parameter *(on page 1145)*.

Menu

Helps you to navigate to your documentation. This component presents a set of links to all topics from your publication. For information about customizing the menu, see How to Customize the Menu *(on page 1067)* topic.

Index Terms Link

Presents a link to the index terms page. You can control if this component is displayed by using the webhelp.show.indexterms.link parameter *(on page 1155)*.

Switch Theme Button

Presents a button that opens a drop-down menu for selecting the theme. You can control if this component is displayed by using the webhelp.enable.dark.mode parameter *(on page 1155)*. For more information, see How to Create a Dark Mode-Ready Publishing Template *(on page 1035)*.

Search Input

An input text field where you can enter search queries.

Topic Tiles

A tile associated with a main topic. Each topic tile has three sections that correspond to the topic title, short description, and image.

Topic Tile Title

Presents the navigation title of the associated topic.

Topic Tile Short Description

Presents the short description of the topic. It may be collected either from the topic or from the DITA map topic meta.

Topic Tile Image

Presents an image associated with the topic. The image association *(on page 1067)* is done in the DITA map.

Tree Table of Contents

An area that contains first and second-level topic titles from your publication.

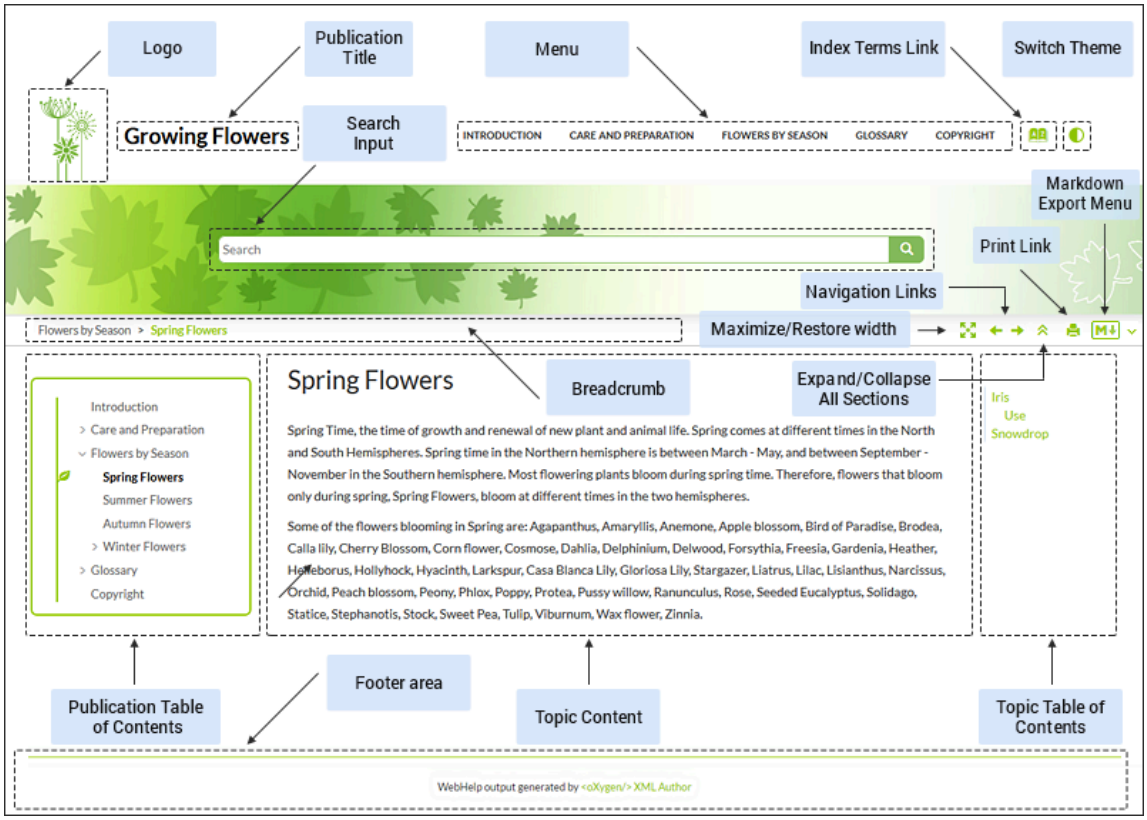
Page Footer

WebHelp Responsive output footer.

Topic Page

The *Topic Page* is the page generated for each DITA topic in the WebHelp Responsive output. The HTML pages produced for each topic consist of the topic content along with various other additional components, such as a title, menu, navigation breadcrumb, print icon, or side table of contents.

Figure 224. Topic Page



1. Logo Component *(on page 951)*
2. Title Component *(on page 950)*
3. Search Input Component *(on page 951)*
4. Menu Component *(on page 951)*
5. Index Terms Link Component *(on page 951)*
6. Theme Button Component *(on page 951)*
7. Maximize/Restore width Component *(on page 951)*
8. Navigation Links Component *(on page 951)*
9. Expand/Collapse All Sections Component *(on page 951)*
10. Print Link Component *(on page 952)*
11. Markdown Export Menu *(on page 952)*
12. Breadcrumb Component *(on page 952)*
13. Publication Table of Contents Component *(on page 952)*
14. Topic Content Component *(on page 952)*
15. Topic Table of Contents Component *(on page 952)*
16. Footer Component *(on page 952)*

Topic Page Components

The layout components displayed in this page are:

Publication Title

The title of the publication. It is usually taken from the DITA map title.

Logo

Displays a logo associated with the publication. Additionally, you can set a target URL that will be opened when you click on the logo image.

The logo image can be specified using the webhelp.logo.image transformation parameter *(on page 1145)*. For the target URL, use the webhelp.logo.image.target.url parameter *(on page 1145)*.

Menu

Helps you to navigate to your documentation. This component presents a set of links to all topics from your publication. For information about customizing the menu, see How to Customize the Menu *(on page 1067)* topic.

Index Terms Link

Presents a link to the index terms page. You can control if this component is displayed by using the webhelp.show.indexterms.link parameter *(on page 1155)*.

Switch Theme Button

Presents a button that opens a drop-down menu for selecting the theme. You can control if this component is displayed by using the webhelp.enable.dark.mode parameter *(on page 1155)*. For more information, see How to Create a Dark Mode-Ready Publishing Template *(on page 1035)*.

Search Input

An input text field where you can enter search queries.

Navigation Links

The navigation links (**Previous** / **Next** arrows) can be used to navigate to the previous or next topic. These navigation links are controlled by the `collection-type` attribute. For example, if you set `collection-type="sequence"` on a parent topic reference, navigation links will be generated in the output for that topic and all of its child topics. You can also use the `webhelp.default.collection.type.sequence` parameter and set its value to `yes` to generate navigation links for all topics, regardless of whether or not the `collection-type` attribute is present.

Tip:
To hide the navigation links, you can edit the transformation scenario and set the value of the `webhelp.show.navigation.links` parameter to `no`.

Maximize to full width/Restore to normal width Button

Icon that maximizes or restores the topic content to use the entire page space. Only visible when screen width exceeds 1600 pixels.

Expand/Collapse Sections Button

Icon that expands or collapses sections listed in the side table of contents within a topic.

Print Link

A print icon that opens the print dialog box for your particular browser.

Markdown Export Menu

Button that opens a menu with "Copy as Markdown" and "View as Markdown" actions.

Breadcrumb

Presents the path of the current displayed DITA topic.

Topic Content

Presents the content of the associated DITA topic.

Publication Table of Contents

A Table of Content for the publication displayed in the left side of the screen. You can use the button to collapse the table of contents (or the button to expand it).

Topic Table of Contents (*On this page* links)

A table of contents for the topic displayed on the right side with a heading named **On this page** and it contains links to each section within the current topic and the section corresponding to the current scroll position is highlighted. This component is generated for any topic that contains at least two `<section>` elements and each `<section>` must have an `@id` attribute. You can use the button to collapse the table of contents (or the button to expand it).

Page Footer

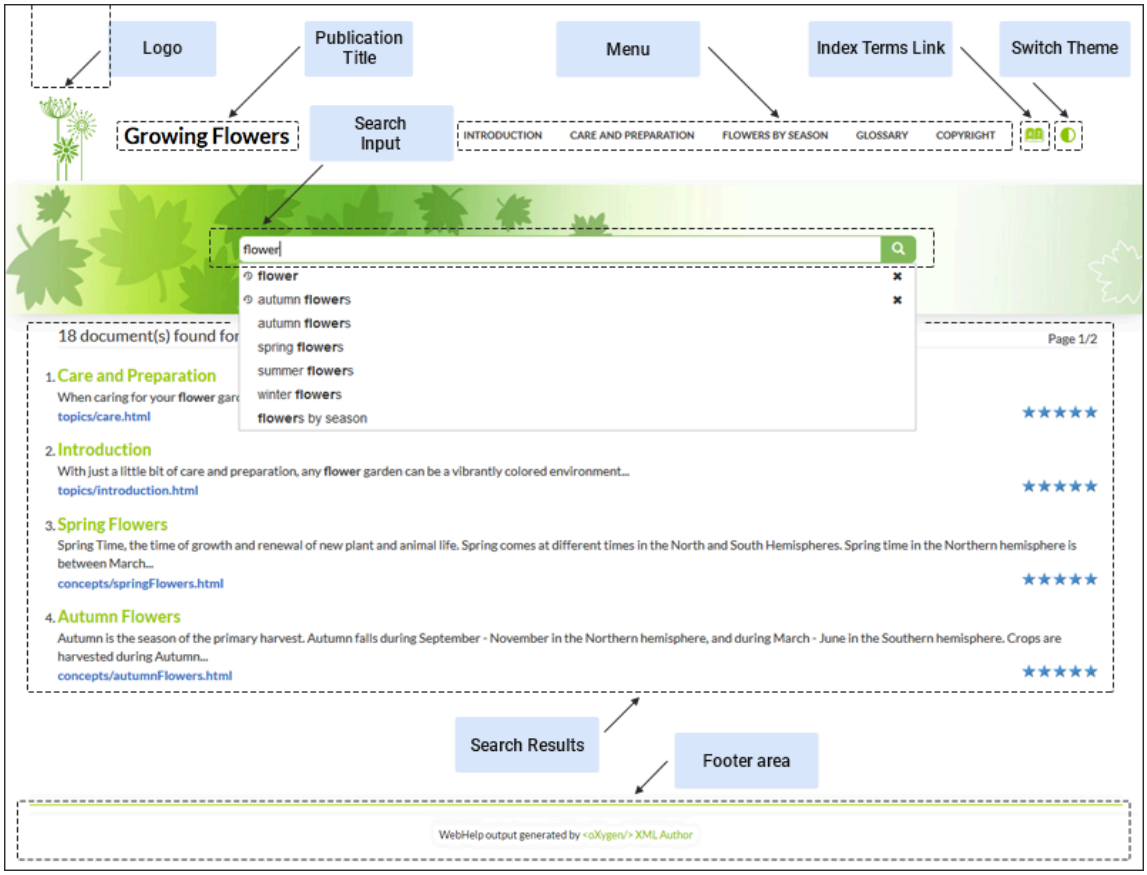
WebHelp Responsive output footer.

Search Results Page

The *Search Page* presents search results in the WebHelp Responsive output. The HTML page consists of a search results component along with various other additional components, such as a title, menu, or index link.

When you enter search terms in the **Search** field, the results are displayed in a results page. When you click on a result, the topic is opened in the main pane and the search results are highlighted. If you want to remove the colored highlights, click the **Toggle Highlights** button at the top-right side of the page. The **Search** field also includes an *autocomplete* feature.

Figure 225. Search Results Page



1. Logo Component *(on page 953)*
2. Title Component *(on page 953)*
3. Search Input Component *(on page 954)*
4. Menu Component *(on page 954)*
5. Index Terms Link Component *(on page 954)*
6. Theme Button Component *(on page 954)*
7. Search Results Component *(on page 954)*
8. Footer Component *(on page 954)*

Search Results Page Components

The layout components displayed in the search page are:

Publication Title

The title of the publication. It is usually taken from the DITA map title.

Logo

Displays a logo associated with the publication. Additionally, you can set a target URL that will be opened when you click on the logo image.

The logo image can be specified using the webhelp.logo.image transformation parameter *(on page 1145)*. For the target URL, use the webhelp.logo.image.target.url parameter *(on page 1145)*.

Menu

Helps you to navigate to your documentation. This component presents a set of links to all topics from your publication. For information about customizing the menu, see How to Customize the Menu *(on page 1067)* topic.

Index Terms Link

Presents a link to the index terms page. You can control if this component is displayed by using the webhelp.show.indexterms.link parameter *(on page 1155)*.

Switch Theme Button

Presents a button that opens a drop-down menu for selecting the theme. You can control if this component is displayed by using the webhelp.enable.dark.mode parameter *(on page 1155)*. For more information, see How to Create a Dark Mode-Ready Publishing Template *(on page 1035)*.

Search Input

An input text field where you can enter search queries.

Search Results

Each result includes the topic title that can be clicked to open that page. Under the title, a breadcrumb is displayed that shows the path of the topic and you can click any of the topics in the breadcrumb to open that particular page.

Page Footer

WebHelp Responsive output footer.

Auto-complete Suggestions in the Search Input Field

When you are typing in the search input field, proposals are presented to help you to compute the search query. The information proposed when you are typing is collected from:

- The search queries from the history of the previous searches.
- The titles collected from your documentation.
- Documentation index terms and keywords. For example, in a DITA topic, the keywords and index terms are specified in the topic prolog section like this:

```
<prolog>
  <metadata>
    <keywords><indexterm>databases</indexterm></keywords>
    <keyword>installing</keyword>
    <keyword>uninstalling</keyword>
    <keyword>prerequisites</keyword>
```

```
  </metadata>
</prolog>
```

Missing Terms

If you enter multiple search terms (other than *stop words*), for any result that the search engine found at least one term but not one or more of the other terms, the **Missing** terms will be listed below each result.

Related information

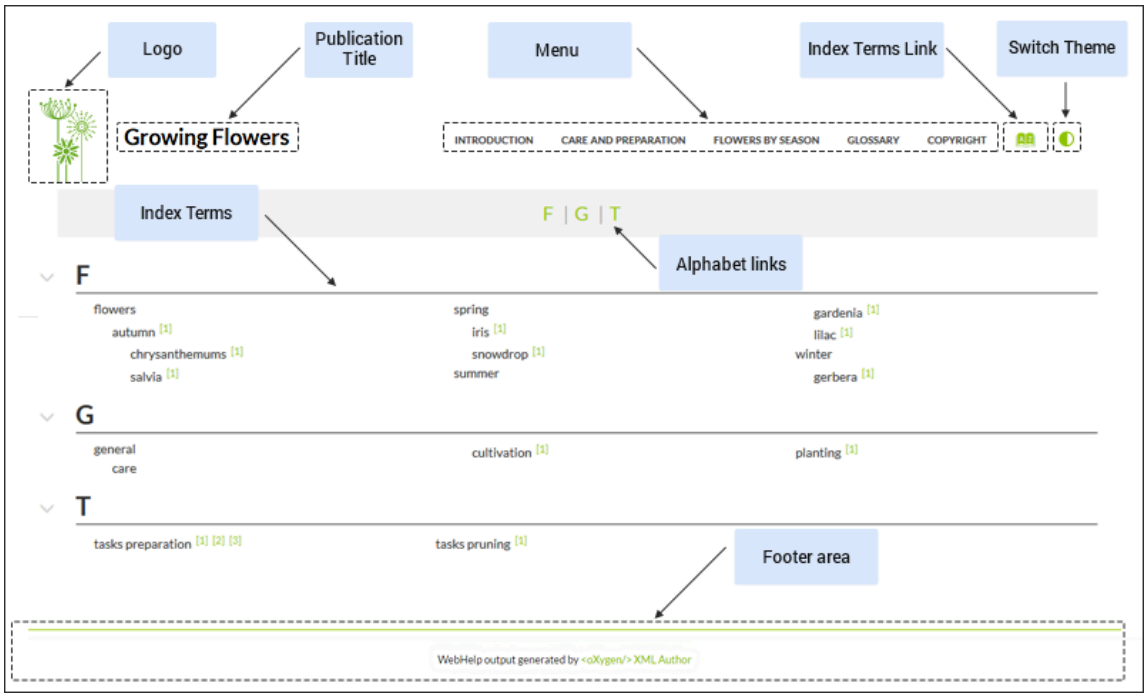
WebHelp Responsive Search Engine *(on page 956)*

Index Terms Page

The *Index Terms Page* page consists of an index terms section along with various other additional components, such as a title, menu, or search field.

An alphabet that contains the first letter of the documentation index terms is generated at the top of the index page. Each letter represents a link to a specific indices section. The indexes are presented in multiple columns to make it easier to read this page.

Figure 226. Index Terms Page



1. Logo Component *(on page 956)*
2. Title Component *(on page 956)*
3. Menu Component *(on page 956)*
4. Index Terms Link Component *(on page 956)*
5. Theme Button Component *(on page 956)*
6. Index Terms Component *(on page 956)*

7. Alphabet Links Component *(on page 956)*
8. Footer Component *(on page 956)*

Index Terms Page Components

The layout components displayed in this page are:

Publication Title

The title of the publication. It is usually taken from the DITA map title.

Logo

Displays a logo associated with the publication. Additionally, you can set a target URL that will be opened when you click on the logo image.

The logo image can be specified using the webhelp.logo.image transformation parameter *(on page 1145)*. For the target URL, use the webhelp.logo.image.target.url parameter *(on page 1145)*.

Menu

Helps you to navigate to your documentation. This component presents a set of links to all topics from your publication. For information about customizing the menu, see How to Customize the Menu *(on page 1067)* topic.

Index Terms Link

Presents a link to the index terms page. You can control if this component is displayed by using the webhelp.show.indexterms.link parameter *(on page 1155)*.

Switch Theme Button

Presents a button that opens a drop-down menu for selecting the theme. You can control if this component is displayed by using the webhelp.enable.dark.mode parameter *(on page 1155)*. For more information, see How to Create a Dark Mode-Ready Publishing Template *(on page 1035)*.

Index Terms Alphabet

An alphabet that contains the first letter of index terms. Each letter represents a link to a specific indices section.

Index Terms

The first letter of the index along with the list of index terms.

Page Footer

WebHelp Responsive output footer.

Built-in JavaScript-based Search Engine

The client-side JavaScript-based search engine comes preconfigured in the WebHelp responsive plugin. It is enabled by default when you run the WebHelp Responsive transformation.

Search Index

The search index is created when you publish your documentation to WebHelp by traverses all HTML pages (for DITA topics) from output folder to gather information.

Search interface

This component is an interface between the user and the *search index*. It helps the user to search through the *search index* and displays results in the search page.

Search Field and Results Page

When you enter search terms in the **Search** field, the results are displayed in a results page. When you click on a result, the topic is opened in the main pane and the search results are highlighted. If you want to remove the colored highlights, click the **Toggle Highlights** button at the top-right side of the page. The **Search** field also includes an *autocomplete* feature.

Each result includes the topic title that can be clicked to open that page. Under the title, a breadcrumb is displayed that shows the path of the topic and you can click any of the topics in the breadcrumb to open that particular page.

If you enter multiple search terms (other than *stop words*), for any result that the search engine found at least one term but not one or more of the other terms, the **Missing** terms will be listed below each result.

Tip:

You can use the `searchQuery` URL parameter to perform a search operation when WebHelp is loaded. This opens the Search Results page with the specified search query processed. The URL should look something like this:

```
http://localhost/webhelp/search.html?searchQuery=deploying%20feedback
```

5-Star Rating Mechanism and Sorting

The **Search** feature is also enhanced with a rating mechanism that computes scores for every result that matches the search criteria. These scores are then translated into a 5-star rating scheme and the stars are displayed to the right of each result. The search results are sorted depending on the following:

- Search entries that satisfy the phrase search criterion are presented first.
- The number of keywords found in a single page (the higher the number, the better).
- The context (for example, a word found in a title, scores better than a word found in unformatted text). The search ranking order, sorted by relevance is as follows:
  - The search term is in the title of the page.
  - The search term is included in a meta keyword.
  - The search term is in bold text in a paragraph.
  - The search term is in normal text in a paragraph.

Tag Element Scoring Values

HTML tag elements are also assigned a scoring value and these values are evaluated for the search results. For information about editing these values, see How to Change Element Scoring in Search Results *(on page 1078)*.

Search Rules

Rules that are applied during a search include:

- You can use quotes to perform an exact search for multiple word phrases (for example, *"grow flowers"* will only return results if both words are found consecutively and exactly as they are typed in the search field). This type of search is known as a *phrase search*.
- *Boolean Search* is supported using the following operators: *and*, *or*, *not*. When there are two adjacent search terms without an operator, *or* is used as the default search operator (for example, *grow flowers* is the same as *grow or flowers*).
- The space character separates keywords (an expression such as *grow flowers* counts as two separate keywords.
- Words composed by merging two or more words with colon (":"), minus ("-"), underline ("_"), or dot (".") characters count as a single word.
- Your search terms should contain two or more characters (note that stop words will be ignored). This rule does not apply to CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) languages.
- When searching for multiple words in CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) languages that often have them appear in strings without a space separator, you may need to add a space to separate the words. Otherwise, WebHelp will not find results. For example, Chinese uses a specialized character for space separators, but the current WebHelp implementation cannot detect such specialized characters, so to search for **开始之前** (it translates as "before you begin" or "before start"), you have to enter **开始 之前** (notice the space between the second and third symbols) in the search field.

  Note:
  Phrase searches (two or more consecutive words in an exact order) do not work for CJK (Chinese, Japanese, Korean) languages.

Tip:
The `<indexterm>` and `<keywords>` DITA elements are an effective way to increase the ranking of a page (for example, content inside a *keywords* element weighs more than an *H1* HTML element).

Excluded Terms

To improve performance, the **Search** feature excludes certain *stop words*. For example, the English version of the *stop words* includes: *a*, *an*, *and*, *are*, *as*, *at*, *be*, *but*, *by*, *for*, *if*, *in*, *into*, *is*, *it*, *no*, *not*, *of*, *on*, *or*, *such*, *that*, *the*, *their*, *then*, *there*, *these*, *they*, *this*, *to*, *was*, *will*, *with*.

Related Information:
WebHelp Responsive HTML5 Pages: Search Page *(on page 952)*

Context-Sensitive Help System

Context-sensitive help systems assist users by offering relevant information about specific elements of a user interface, such as buttons or windows. This mechanism relies on a mapping between a unique ID and its associated HTML page.

Context-Sensitive Queries

Context-sensitive help is provided through the `cshelp.html` page:

```
http://localhost/webhelp/cshelp.html?contextId=topicID&appname=myApplication
```

Notes:

- The `contextId` parameter is not case-sensitive.
- The URL can include an *anchor (on page 2228)* to jump to a page section (e.g. `contextId=topicID#anchor`).

Attention:
Prior to version 24.1, context-sensitive help was accessible via `index.html`. This method still works but is deprecated and will be removed in a future release.

Use the following parameters in the URL:

contextId

Used by the WebHelp JavaScript engine to open the corresponding help page. Its value comes from either:

`<resourceid>` **(see DITA Specifications: <resourceid> for more details)**

Specified in the *DITA map* `<topicref>` or in the topic `<prolog>` using the following attributes (ordered by priority):

1. `@appid` - ID used by an application to identify the topic.
2. `@id` - ID used by a specific application to identify the topic, ignored if `@appid` is present.

Note:
Multiple `@appid` values can share a single `@appname`, and vice versa. However, each `@appid`/`@appname` combination must be unique within the context of a single *root map (on page 2234)*, as it identifies a specific application

ID. For example, two different functions of an application can point to the same WebHelp page.

Example: The `<resourceid>` Element Specified in a DITA Map

The `<resourceid>` element can be specified in a `<topicmeta>` element within a `<topicref>`.

```
<map title="App Help">
  <topicref href="app-help1.dita" type="task">
     <topicmeta>
       <resourceid appname="myapp" appid="functionid1"/>
       <resourceid appname="myapp" appid="functionid2"/>
     </topicmeta>
  </topicref>
</map>
```

Example: The `<resourceid>` Element Specified in a DITA Topic

The `<resourceid>` element can be specified in a `<prolog>` element within a DITA topic.

```
<task id="app-help1">
  <title>My App Help</title>
  <prolog>
    <resourceid appname="myapp" appid="functionid1"/>
    <resourceid appname="myapp" appid="functionid2"/>
  </prolog>
...
</task>
```

`@id`

Specified in the topic root element, used if no `<resourceid>` is declared (in both *DITA map* and topic).

Important:
Ensure these IDs are unique within the entire DITA project. Duplicate IDs will trigger warning messages and the help system will not work properly.

Note:
The `webhelp.csh.disable.topicID.fallback` parameter *(on page 1145)* can be set to *true* to disable the topic `@id` fallback when `resourceid` information is unavailable when computing context-sensitive help mapping.

appname (optional)

Used in combination with `contextId` to match the corresponding *appname*. Its value comes from the `@appname` attribute of the `<resourceid>` element and is empty (`""`) if unspecified.

Generating Context-Sensitive WebHelp

To simplify the integration of WebHelp Responsive into an application, the `context-help-map.xml` file is generated in the output folder. This file maps IDs to HTML pages using `<appContext>` elements, as shown below:

```
<map productID="oxy-webhelp" productVersion="1.1">
  <appContext helpID="myapp-functionid1" path="tasks/app-help1.html"/>
  <appContext appname="myapp" helpID="myapp-functionid2" path="tasks/app-help1.html"/>
  ...
</map>
```

The `<appContext>` element contains the following attributes:

`@helpID`

A Unique ID that identifies the topic based on the `<resourceid>` element or the `@id` attribute (as described above).

`@appname` **(optional)**

A name for the external application that references the topic from the `@appname` attribute of the `<resourceid>` element (as described above).

`@path`

The path to the corresponding HTML page, relative to the location of the `context-help-map.xml` mapping file.

Note:
To prevent duplicate entries in `context-help-map.xml`, ensure that all repeated topics are assigned a unique `<resourceid>` in the DITA map.

Accessibility

Oxygen XML WebHelp Responsive output is compliant with the Section 508 accessibility standard, making the output accessible for people with visual impairment and other disabilities. Documentation and interface components are considered accessible when they have support in place that allows those with disabilities to use assistive technologies to understand the content.

Generally speaking, the WebHelp Responsive output has two major parts: topic content and WebHelp Responsive-related components (publication TOC, breadcrumb, menu). While the WebHelp Responsive components are designed to comply with the accessibility rules, it is important to adhere to some rules when you write DITA topics so that the content is also accessible.

Related Information:
DITA-OT Day 2017 Presentation: Accessibility in DITA-OT

Writing Guidelines for Accessible Documentation

To create accessible content, good authoring practices involve following guidelines, such as marking table headers, using semantic elements where available, and using alternative text for images.

Accessible Images

Images must have text alternatives that describe the information or function represented by them.

Short Text Equivalents for Images

When using the `<image>` element, specify a short alternative text with the `<alt>` element.

```
<image href="puffin.jpg">
  <alt>Puffin figure</alt>
</image>
```

Long Descriptions of Images

For complex images, when a short text equivalent does not suffice to adequately convey the function or role of an image, provide additional information in a file designated by the `<longdescref>` element.

```
<image href="puffin.jpg">
  <alt>Puffin figure</alt>
  <longdescref href="http://www.example.org/birds/puffin.html"
               scope="external"
               format="html"/>
</image>
```

Related Information:
Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) Specification `<image>` element
Web Accessibility Tutorials: Alt Decision Tree

Accessible Image Maps

For image maps, text alternatives are needed on both the `<image>` element itself (to describe the informative context) and on each of the `<area>` elements (to convey the link destination or the action that will be initiated if the link is followed). The `<xref>` content within the `<area>` element contains the intended alternative text or hover text for that image map area.

```
<imagemap id="gear_pump_map">
  <image href="../images/Gear_pump_exploded.png" id="gear_pump_exploded">
    <alt>Gear Pump</alt>
```

```
  </image>
  <area>
    <shape>circle</shape>
      <coords>172, 265, 14</coords>
      <xref href="parts/bushings.dita#bushings_topic/bushings"
            format="dita">Bushings</xref>
  </area>
  <area>
      <shape>circle</shape>
      <coords>324, 210, 14</coords>
      <xref href="parts/ports.dita#ports_topic/sucction_port" format="dita"
        >Suction Port</xref>
   </area>
</imagemap>
```

Related Information:

Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) Specification `<imagemap>` element

Accessible Tables

Accessible HTML tables need markup that indicates header cells and data cells and defines their relationship. Header cells must be marked with `<th>`, and data cells with `<td>`, to make tables accessible. For more complex tables, explicit associations may be needed using `@scope`, `@id`, and `@headers` attributes.

When you implement the table, it is best to use the `<table>` element (CALS table or OASIS Table Exchange Model). The `<table>` element includes all that you need to make a fully accessible table.

Related Information:

Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) Specification `<table>` element

Table with Header Cells in the Top Row Only

For this type of table, you have to embed the table rows in the `<thead>` element.

Table 10. Example: Oxygen Events

Event	Date	Location
Evolution of TC 2018	May 31 - June 1, 2018	Sofia, Bulgaria
Markup UK	June 9 - 10, 2018	London, United Kingdom
Balisage 2018 - The Markup Conference	July 31 - August 3, 2018	Rockville, Maryland, USA

```
<table colsep="1" rowsep="1" frame="all">
  <title>
```

```
    <b>Oxygen Events</b>
  </title>
  <tgroup cols="3">
    <colspec colname="COLSPEC0" colwidth="1*"/>
    <colspec colname="COLSPEC1" colwidth="1.1*"/>
    <colspec colname="newCol3" colwidth="1*"/>
    <thead>
      <row>
        <entry colname="COLSPEC0" valign="top">Event</entry>
        <entry colname="COLSPEC1" valign="top">Date</entry>
        <entry>Location</entry>
      </row>
    </thead>
    <tbody>
      <row>
        <entry>Evolution of TC 2018</entry>
        <entry>May 31 - June 1, 2018</entry>
        <entry>Sofia, Bulgaria</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry>Markup UK</entry>
        <entry>June 9 - 10, 2018</entry>
        <entry>London, United Kingdom</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry>Balisage 2018 - The Markup Conference</entry>
        <entry>July 31 - August 3, 2018</entry>
        <entry>Rockville, Maryland, USA</entry>
      </row>
    </tbody>
  </tgroup>
</table>
```

Table with Header Cells in the First Column Only

For this type of table, you have to set the `rowheader="firstcol"` attribute on the `<table>` element to identify the header column.

Table 11. Example: Oxygen Events

Event	Evolution of TC 2018	Markup UK	Balisage 2018 - The Markup Conference
Date	May 31 - June 1, 2018	June 9 - 10, 2018	July 31 - August 3, 2018

Table 11. Example: Oxygen Events (continued)

Location	Sofia, Bulgaria	London, United Kingdom	Rockville, Maryland, USA

```
<table rowheader="firstcol" colsep="1" rowsep="1" frame="all">
  <title>
    <b>Oxygen Events</b>
  </title>
  <tgroup cols="4">
    <colspec colname="COLSPEC0" colwidth="1*"/>
    <colspec colname="COLSPEC1" colwidth="1.1*"/>
    <colspec colname="newCol3" colwidth="1*"/>
    <colspec colname="newCol4" colwidth="1*"/>
    <tbody>
      <row>
        <entry>Event</entry>
        <entry>Evolution of TC 2018</entry>
        <entry>Markup UK</entry>
        <entry>Balisage 2018 - The Markup Conference</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry>Date</entry>
        <entry>May 31 - June 1, 2018</entry>
        <entry>June 9 - 10, 2018</entry>
        <entry>July 31 - August 3, 2018</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry>Location</entry>
        <entry>Sofia, Bulgaria</entry>
        <entry>London, United Kingdom</entry>
        <entry>Rockville, Maryland, USA</entry>
      </row>
    </tbody>
  </tgroup>
</table>
```

Table with Header Cells in the Top Row and First Column

For this type of table, you can use `<thead>` to identify header rows and `@rowheader` to identify a header column.

Table 12. Example: Bus Timetable

	Mon-day	Tues-day	Wednes-day	Thurs-day	Friday
09:00 - 11:00	Closed	Open	Open	Closed	Closed
11:00 - 13:00	Open	Open	Closed	Closed	Closed
13:00 - 15:00	Open	Open	Open	Closed	Closed
15:00 - 17:00	Closed	Closed	Closed	Open	Open

```
<table id="table_dqk_n24_vdb" rowheader="firstcol" colsep="1" rowsep="1" frame="all">
   <title>Example: Bus Timetable</title>
   <tgroup cols="6">
     <colspec colnum="1" colname="col1"/>
     <colspec colnum="2" colname="col2"/>
     <colspec colnum="3" colname="col3"/>
     <colspec colnum="4" colname="col4"/>
     <colspec colnum="5" colname="col5"/>
     <colspec colnum="6" colname="col6"/>
     <thead>
       <row>
        <entry/>
        <entry>Monday</entry>
        <entry>Tuesday</entry>
        <entry>Wednesday</entry>
        <entry>Thursday</entry>
        <entry>Friday</entry>
       </row>
     </thead>
     <tbody>
      <row>
        <entry>09:00 - 11:00</entry>
        <entry>Closed</entry>
        <entry>Open</entry>
        <entry>Open</entry>
        <entry>Closed</entry>
        <entry>Closed</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry>11:00 - 13:00</entry>
        <entry>Open</entry>
        <entry>Open</entry>
```

```
        <entry>Closed</entry>
        <entry>Closed</entry>
        <entry>Closed</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry>13:00 - 15:00</entry>
        <entry>Open</entry>
        <entry>Open</entry>
        <entry>Open</entry>
        <entry>Closed</entry>
        <entry>Closed</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry>15:00 - 17:00</entry>
        <entry>Closed</entry>
        <entry>Closed</entry>
        <entry>Closed</entry>
        <entry>Open</entry>
        <entry>Open</entry>
      </row>
    </tbody>
  </tgroup>
</table>
```

WebHelp Responsive VPAT Accessibility Conformance Report

International Edition

VPAT® Version 2.5 – November 2023

Product Name/Version

Oxygen XML WebHelp Responsive

Product Description

Oxygen XML WebHelp Responsive enables you to publish DITA content on the web and present it in a user-friendly interface that is easy to navigate. You can design your WebHelp Responsive output to be available on desktop systems or various mobile devices. With **Oxygen XML WebHelp Responsive**, your published content is accessible, interactive, and convenient.

Date

February 2025

Contact Information

support@oxygenxml.com

Notes

Oxygen XML WebHelp Responsive has been designed and enhanced to adhere to the U.S. Government Section 508 accessibility standards and the Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG). For details, see WebHelp Responsive Accessibility *(on page 961)*.

Evaluation Methods Used:

The following applications were used for testing **Oxygen XML WebHelp Responsive**:

- Desktop browsers: Chrome, Firefox, Safari, Edge.
- Assistive technologies: NVDA, VoiceOver, JAWS, Microsoft Narrator.

Applicable Standards/Guidelines

This report covers the degree of conformance for the following accessibility standards/guidelines:

Standard/Guideline	Included In Report
Web Content Accessibility Guidelines 2.0	Level A - Yes Level AA - Yes Level AAA - No
Web Content Accessibility Guidelines 2.1	Level A - Yes Level AA - Yes Level AAA - No
Web Content Accessibility Guidelines 2.2	Level A - Yes Level AA - Yes Level AAA - No
Revised Section 508 standards published January 18, 2017 and corrected January 22, 2018	Yes
EN 301 549 Accessibility requirements for ICT products and services - V3.1.1 (2019-11) AND EN 301 549 Accessibility requirements for ICT products and services - V3.2.1 (2021-03)	No

Terms

The terms used in the Conformance Level information are defined as follows:

- **Supports**: The functionality of the product has at least one method that meets the criterion without known defects or meets with equivalent facilitation.
- **Partially Supports**: Some functionality of the product does not meet the criterion.
- **Does Not Support**: The majority of product functionality does not meet the criterion.

- **Not Applicable**: The criterion is not relevant to the product.
- **Not Evaluated**: The product has not been evaluated against the criterion. This can only be used in WCAG Level AAA criteria.

WCAG 2.x Report

Tables 1 and 2 also document conformance with:

- Revised Section 508: Chapter 5 – 501.1 Scope, 504.2 Content Creation or Editing, and Chapter 6 – 602.3 Electronic Support Documentation.

Note:
When reporting on conformance with the WCAG 2.x Success Criteria, they are scoped for full pages, complete processes, and accessibility-supported ways of using technology as documented in theWCAG 2.0 Conformance Requirements.

Table 1: Success Criteria, Level A

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
1.1.1 Non-text Content (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Partially Supports	Text alternatives are provided for many instances of non-text content, with a few exceptions.
1.2.1 Audio-only and Video-only (Prerecorded) (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	The authors of the input DITA document are responsible for providing a transcript of the media content in the document.
1.2.2 Captions (Prerecorded) (Level A) Also applies to:	Supports	The product does not provide prerecorded media that requires captions.

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)		
1.2.3 Audio Description or Media Alternative (Prerecorded) (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	The authors of the input DITA document are responsible for providing an alternative for time-based media or audio description of the prerecorded video content in the document. See: G58: Placing a link to the alternative for time-based media immediately next to the non-text content
1.3.1 Info and Relationships (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Partially Supports	Information, structure, and relationships conveyed through presentation can be programmatically determined or are available in text, with exceptions that include: • Some landmarks are not marked with the corresponding role or do not have an associated label. • Some link groups are not structured using lists or are not marked as navigation regions. The authors of the input DITA document are responsible for:

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
		• Using semantic elements to mark up structure. • Using semantic markup to mark emphasized or special text. • Using caption elements to associate data table captions with data tables.
1.3.2 Meaningful Sequence (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	The product presents content in a meaningful sequence. Authors should use Unicode right-to-left mark (RLM) or left-to-right mark (LRM) to mix text direction inline.
1.3.3 Sensory Characteristics (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	Authors should ensure that items are referenced in the content in ways that do not depend on sensory perception.
1.4.1 Use of Color (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	(Cobalt template) Color is not used as the only visual means of conveying information, indicating an action, prompting a response, or distinguishing a visual element.
1.4.2 Audio Control (Level A) Also applies to:	Supports	There is no sound that plays automatically.

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)		
2.1.1 Keyboard (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Partially Supports	Most of the content is operable through a keyboard interface, with exceptions that include: • The top-level links in the main page accordion cannot be accessed. • The facets component does not have full keyboard support.
2.1.2 No Keyboard Trap (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	The product does not contain content that traps the keyboard focus.
2.1.4 Character Key Shortcuts (Level A 2.1 only) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Supports	The product does not include character key shortcuts.
2.2.1 Timing Adjustable (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508	Supports	The product does not include time limits.

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
• 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)		
2.2.2 Pause, Stop, Hide (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	The product does not include elements that move, blink, scroll, or auto-update.
2.3.1 Three Flashes or Below Threshold (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	The product does not contain flashing content.
2.4.1 Bypass Blocks (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) – Does not apply to non-web software • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs) – Does not apply to non-web docs	Supports	Each page contains a link at the top that goes directly to the main content area. Each page contains *ARIA* landmarks that identify the available regions.
2.4.2 Page Titled (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508	Supports	Each page contains a non-empty `<title>` element in the `<head>` section.

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
• 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)		
2.4.3 Focus Order (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	Focusable components receive focus in an order that preserves meaning and operability.
2.4.4 Link Purpose (In Context) (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	The purpose of each link can be determined from the link text alone or from the link text together with its programmatically-determined link context. The authors can create hypertext links using text that describes the purpose of the hypertext. There is no control that allows the user to choose between short or long link text (G189 / SCR30).
2.5.1 Pointer Gestures (Level A 2.1 only) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Supports	The WebHelp Responsive output does not rely on path-based or multipoint gestures and does not provide controls that require complex gestures.
2.5.2 Pointer Cancellation (Level A 2.1 only) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Supports	The product has operations that are activated on the pointer up event.
2.5.3 Label in Name (Level A 2.1 only)	Supports	The names of the user interface components contain the text that is presented visually.

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
Also applies to: Revised Section 508 – Does not apply		
2.5.4 Motion Actuation (Level A 2.1 only) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Supports	The product does not contain functionality that can be operated by device or user motion.
3.1.1 Language of Page (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	The web pages indicate the language of the content when the content language has been specified by authors.
3.2.1 On Focus (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	No changes of context occur when any component receives focus.
3.2.2 On Input (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	Changing the setting of any user interface component does not automatically cause a change of context.
3.3.1 Error Identification (Level A) Also applies to:	Partially Supports	If a search operation is performed leaving the search input empty, an error message is automatically dis-

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)		played to the user, but no *aria-invalid* information is provided.
3.3.2 Labels or Instructions (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Partially Supports	The search input does not have a visible label specified using a label element.
4.1.1 Parsing (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Partially Supports	Several HTML validation errors are reported by the W3C validator.
4.1.2 Name, Role, Value (Level A) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Partially Supports	The *Home* link from the breadcrumb does not have an associated *aria-label*.

Table 2: Success Criteria, Level AA

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
1.2.4 Captions (Live) (Level AA)	Supports	No live audio content is used.

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)		
1.2.5 Audio Description (Prerecorded) (Level AA) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	The authors of the input DITA document can ensure that the output document meets this criterion.
1.3.4 Orientation (Level AA 2.1 and 2.2) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Supports	Content does not restrict its view and operation to a single display orientation.
1.3.5 Identify Input Purpose (Level AA 2.1 and 2.2) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Supports	The content does not contain input fields that collect information about the user.
1.4.3 Contrast (Minimum) (Level AA) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Partially Supports	The missing words element from the search results page does not have the contrast ratio 4.5:1.

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
1.4.4 Resize text (Level AA) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Partially Supports	Text can be resized up to 200 percent without loss of content or functionality and without using assistive technology. Some text content has dimensions specified in pixels rather that em units.
1.4.5 Images of Text (Level AA) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	The output does not contain images of text. The authors of the input DITA content can ensure that this criterion is met.
1.4.10 Reflow (Level AA 2.1 and 2.2) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Partially Supports	The majority of the content can be presented without loss of information or functionality, and without requiring scrolling in two dimensions. Long URLs determine the page to display the horizontal scroll bar.
1.4.11 Non-text Contrast (Level AA 2.1 and 2.2) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Supports	(Cobalt template) There is no contrast issue regarding user interface components or graphical objects.
1.4.12 Text Spacing (Level AA 2.1 and 2.2) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Supports	There is no loss of content or functionality that occurs by setting line height (line spacing), spacing following paragraphs, letter spacing, and word spacing.

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
1.4.13 Content on Hover or Focus (Level AA 2.1 and 2.2) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Partially Supports	Tooltips and submenus are not dismissible. Also, the tooltips are not hoverable.
2.4.5 Multiple Ways (Level AA) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) – Does not apply to non-web software • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs) – Does not apply to non-web docs	Supports	There is a search form provided that will go to a page that contains the search term and links to the corresponding page. Also, a table of contents is provided. The authors of the input DITA document are responsible for providing links to all pages from the home page or providing links to navigate to related pages from the current page.
2.4.6 Headings and Labels (Level AA) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	Headings and labels describe the topic or purpose. DITA authors can ensure that this criterion is met.
2.4.7 Focus Visible (Level AA) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Partially Supports	Placing focus on a focusable element using the mouse doesn't render a visible focus indicator. Also, the search button does not have a visible focus indicator.
2.4.11 Focus Not Obscured (Minimum) (Level AA 2.2 only)	Supports	Focused items are always visible even if the page contains sticky elements.

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
Revised Section 508 – Does not apply		
2.5.7 Dragging Movements (Level AA 2.2 only) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Supports	No user action relies on dragging.
2.5.8 Target Size (Minimum) (Level AA 2.2 only) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Does Not Support	Links in the breadcrumb, publication TOC, and topic TOC do not match the 24x24px minimum size. Navigation buttons, print button, and link to PDF button do not match the 24x24px minimun size.
3.1.2 Language of Parts (Level AA) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	DITA authors can ensure that this criterion is met.
3.2.3 Consistent Navigation (Level AA) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) – Does not apply to non-web software • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs) – Does not apply to non-web docs	Supports	Repeated components appear in the same relative in each page.
3.2.4 Consistent Identification (Level AA) Also applies to: Revised Section 508	Partially Supports	The output uses labels, names, and text alternatives consistently for items that have the same functionality.

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
• 501 (Web)(Software) – Does not apply to non-web software • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs) – Does not apply to non-web docs		Text alternatives are provided for many instances of non-text content, with exceptions that include: • Enlarge images action. The *Home* link from the breadcrumb does not have an associated *aria-label*.
3.3.3 Error Suggestion (Level AA) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Does Not Support	The Search input does not have the *aria-required* information set and does not contain a text description specifying that it is a required field.
3.3.4 Error Prevention (Legal, Financial, Data) (Level AA) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 • 501 (Web)(Software) • 504.2 (Authoring Tool) • 602.3 (Support Docs)	Supports	The Web pages do not cause legal commitments or financial transactions for the user to occur, that modify or delete user-controllable data in data storage systems, or that submit user test responses.
3.3.8 Accessible Authentication (Minimum) (Level AA 2.2 only) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Applicable	
4.1.3 Status Messages(Level AA 2.1 and 2.2) Also applies to: Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Supports	The pages do not contain status messages as defined by this criterion.

Table 3: Success Criteria, Level AAA

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
1.2.6 Sign Language (Prerecorded) (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
1.2.7 Extended Audio Description (Prerecorded) (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
1.2.8 Media Alternative (Prerecorded) (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
1.2.9 Audio-only (Live) (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
1.3.6 Identify Purpose (Level AAA 2.1 and 2.2) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
1.4.6 Contrast Enhanced (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
1.4.7 Low or No Background Audio (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
1.4.8 Visual Presentation (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
1.4.9 Images of Text (No Exception) Control (Level AAA)	Not Evaluated	

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
Revised Section 508 – Does not apply		
2.1.3 Keyboard (No Exception) (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
2.2.3 No Timing (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
2.2.4 Interruptions (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
2.2.5 Re-authenticating (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
2.2.6 Timeouts (Level AAA 2.1 and 2.2) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
2.3.2 Three Flashes (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
2.3.3 Animation from Interactions (Level AAA 2.1 and 2.2) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
2.4.8 Location (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
2.4.9 Link Purpose (Link Only) (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
2.4.10 Section Headings (Level AAA)	Not Evaluated	

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
Revised Section 508 – Does not apply		
2.4.12 Focus Not Obscured (Enhanced) (Level AAA 2.2 only) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
2.4.13 Focus Appearance (Level AAA 2.2 only) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
2.5.5 Target Size (Level AAA 2.1 and 2.2) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
2.5.6 Concurrent Input Mechanisms (Level AAA 2.1 and 2.2) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
3.1.3 Unusual Words (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
3.1.4 Abbreviations (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
3.1.5 Reading Level (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
3.1.6 Pronunciation (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
3.2.5 Change on Request (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
3.3.5 Help (Level AAA)	Not Evaluated	

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
Revised Section 508 – Does not apply		
3.3.6 Error Prevention (All) (Level AAA) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	
3.3.9 Accessible Authentication (Enhanced) (Level AAA 2.2 only) Revised Section 508 – Does not apply	Not Evaluated	

Revised Section 508 Report

N/A

Chapter 3: Functional Performance Criteria (FPC)

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
302.1 Without Vision	Partially Supports	Most of the content is accessible without vision with exceptions that include: • Some components do not have text alternatives or labels. • Some landmarks are not marked with the corresponding role or do not have an associated label. • Some link groups are not structured using lists or are not marked as navigation regions.
302.2 With Limited Vision	Partially Supports	Most of the content is accessible with limited vision with exceptions that include: • Some components do not have text alternatives or labels. • Some landmarks are not marked with the corresponding

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
		role or do not have an associated label. • Some link groups are not structured using lists or are not marked as navigation regions.
302.3 Without Perception of Color	Supports	(Cobalt template) Color is not used as the only visual means of conveying information, indicating an action, prompting a response, or distinguishing a visual element.
302.4 Without Hearing	Supports	The authors can create content that does not require hearing abilities for use.
302.5 With Limited Hearing	Supports	The authors can create content that does not require hearing abilities for use.
302.6 Without Speech	Supports	The output does not require speech for use.
302.7 With Limited Manipulation	Supports	The WebHelp Responsive output does not rely on path-based or multipoint gestures and does not provide controls that require complex gestures.
302.8 With Limited Reach and Strength	Supports	The WebHelp Responsive output does not rely on path-based or multipoint gestures and does not provide controls that require complex gestures.
302.9 With Limited Language, Cognitive, and Learning Abilities	Supports	The authors can create content that can be used by users with limited language, cognitive, and learning abilities.

Chapter 4: Hardware

Notes: Not Applicable - **Oxygen XML WebHelp Responsive** is not a hardware product.

Chapter 5: Software

Notes: **Oxygen XML WebHelp Responsive** is a web application, not a software product. However, the web application includes authoring functionality, hence Chapter 5: Software 504 Authoring Tools applies to this product.

501 General

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
501.1 Scope – Incorporation of WCAG 2.0 AA	See WCAG 2.x section *(on page 969)*	See information in WCAG section

502 Interoperability with Assistive Technology

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
502.2.1 User Control of Accessibility Features	Not Applicable	The product is not platform software.
502.2.2 No Disruption of Accessibility Features	Supports	The product does not disrupt platform features that are defined in the platform documentation as accessibility features.

502.3 Accessibility Services

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
502.3.1 Object Information	Partially Supports	The majority of object roles, state(s), properties, boundary, name, and description are programmatically determinable. The *Home* link from the breadcrumb does not have an associated *aria-label*.
502.3.2 Modification of Object Information	Supports	States and properties that can be set by the user can be set programmatically.
502.3.3 Row, Column, and Headers	Supports	The headers associated with the rows or columns of a table can be programmatically determined.
502.3.4 Values	Supports	The current values of an object can be programmatically determined.

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
502.3.5 Modification of Values	Supports	Values that can be set by the user are capable of being set programmatically.
502.3.6 Label Relationships	Partially Supports	Information, structure, and relationships conveyed through presentation can be programmatically determined or are available in text. See WCAG 1.3.1 *(on page 970)*.
502.3.7 Hierarchical Relationships	Supports	The content is hierarchically structured using language-specific elements and their relationships can be programmatically determined.
502.3.8 Text	Supports	The content of text objects, text attributes, and the boundary of text rendered to the screen shall be programmatically determinable.
502.3.9 Modification of Text	Supports	The editable text (search input) can be set programmatically.
502.3.10 List of Actions	Not Applicable	There are no custom actions available that can be executed on the content.
502.3.11 Actions on Objects	Not Applicable	There are no custom actions available that can be executed on the content.
502.3.12 Focus Cursor	Not Applicable	The product is a web application and is isolated from the underlying platform software (web browser).
502.3.13 Modification of Focus Cursor	Not Applicable	The product is a web application and is isolated from the underlying platform software (web browser).
502.3.14 Event Notification	Not Applicable	There are no automatic focus changes, caret movement, selection changes, or added components in the content.

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
502.4 Platform Accessibility Features	Not Applicable	This product is not platform software.

503 Applications

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
503.2 User Preferences	Not Applicable	This section does not apply to web applications.
503.3 Alternative User Interfaces	Not Applicable	The application does not provide an alternative user interface that functions as assistive technology.

503.4 User Controls for Captions and Audio Description

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
503.4.1 Caption Controls	Not Applicable	The product does not provide controls for volume adjustment.
503.4.2 Audio Description Controls	Not Applicable	The product does not provide controls for program selection.

504 Authoring Tools

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
504.2 Content Creation or Editing (if not authoring tool, enter “not applicable”)	Not Applicable See the WCAG 2.x section *(on page 969)*	The product is not an authoring tool. See information in WCAG section
504.2.1 Preservation of Information Provided for Accessibility in Format Conversion	Not Applicable	The product is not an authoring tool.
504.2.2 PDF Export	Not Applicable	The product is not an authoring tool.
504.3 Prompts	Not Applicable	The product is not an authoring tool.
504.4 Templates	Not Applicable	The product is not an authoring tool.

Chapter 6: Support Documentation and Services

601.1 Scope

602 Support Documentation

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
602.2 Accessibility and Compatibility Features	Partially Supports	The product documentation is distributed in the WebHelp Responsive format. See the Chapter 3 *(on page 985)* and Chapter 5 *(on page 986)* sections.
602.3 Electronic Support Documentation	See the WCAG 2.x section *(on page 969)*	See information in the WCAG section.
602.4 Alternate Formats for Non-Electronic Support Documentation	Not Applicable	Documentation is not provided in non-electronic formats.

603 Support Services

Criteria	Conformance Level	Remarks and Explanations
603.2 Information on Accessibility and Compatibility Features	Supports	The support services cover the accessibility features.
603.3 Accommodation of Communication Needs	Supports	Support services are available by phone or e-mail.

Legal Disclaimer

This report describes **Oxygen XML WebHelp's** ability to support the stated VPAT Standards/Guidelines, subject to Syncro Soft's interpretation of the same. This accessibility report is provided for informational purposes only, and the contents hereof are subject to change without notice. SYNCRO SOFT MAKES NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, IN THIS DOCUMENT. For more information regarding the accessibility status, please contact us at *sales@oxygenxml.com*.

© 2019 Syncro Soft SRL. All rights reserved.

Publishing Templates

An *Oxygen Publishing Template* defines all aspects of the layout and styles for output obtained from the following transformation scenarios:

- **WebHelp Responsive**
- **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS**

It is a self-contained customization package stored as a ZIP archive or folder that can easily be shared with others. It provides the primary method for customizing the output.

Tip:
You can start creating publishing templates by using the **Oxygen Styles Basket**. https://styles.oxygenxml.com

Some possible customization methods include:

- Add additional template resources to customize the output (such as logos, *Favicons*, or CSS files).
- Extend the default processing by specifying one or more XSLT extension points.
- Specify one or more transformation parameters to customize the output.
- Customize various aspects of the output through simple CSS styling.
- For **WebHelp Responsive** output, change the layout of the main page or topic pages by customizing which components will be displayed and where they will be positioned in the page.

The following graphics are possible sample structures for *Oxygen Publishing Template* packages:

Figure 227. Oxygen Publishing Template Package (WebHelp Responsive)

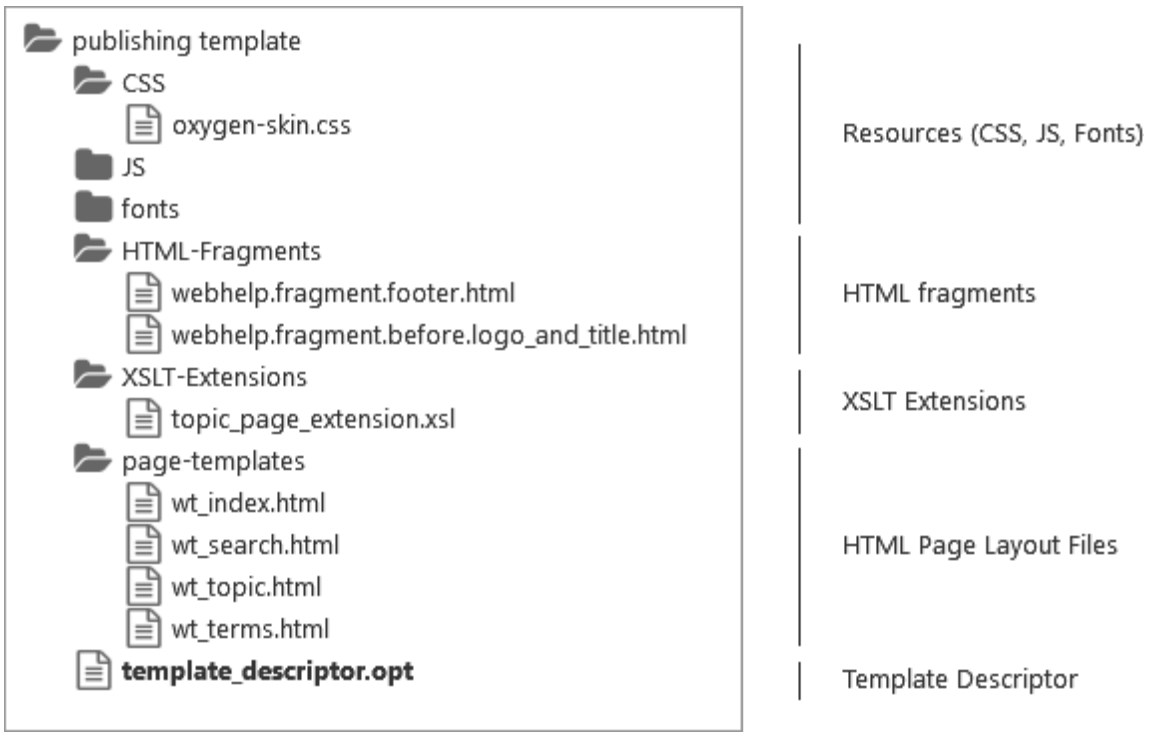


Figure 228. Oxygen Publishing Template Package (PDF)

For information about creating and customizing publishing templates, and how to adjust the WebHelp and PDF output through CSS styling and other customization methods, watch our Webinar: **Creating Custom Publishing Templates for WebHelp and PDF Output**. The Webinar slides and sample project are also available from that webpage.

Related Information:

How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1032)*
How to Edit a Packed Publishing Template *(on page 1047)*
How to Add a Publishing Template to the Publishing Templates Gallery *(on page 1047)*
How to Share a Publishing Template *(on page 1193)*

Publishing Templates Gallery

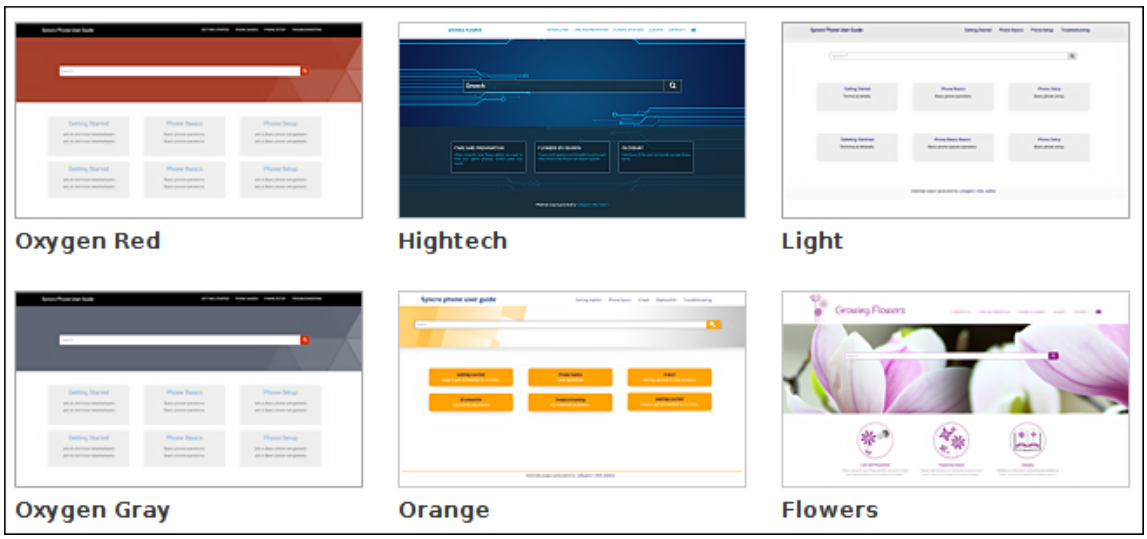
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with a variety of built-in templates. You can use one of them to publish your documentation or as a starting point for a new publishing template.

Built-in Templates

There are two categories of templates, *Tiles* and *Tree*. You can see the built-in templates in the **Templates** tab when editing a WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario in **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**. Each one also includes an **Online preview** icon in the bottom-right corner that opens a webpage in your default browser that provides a sample of how the main page will look when that particular template is used to generate the output.

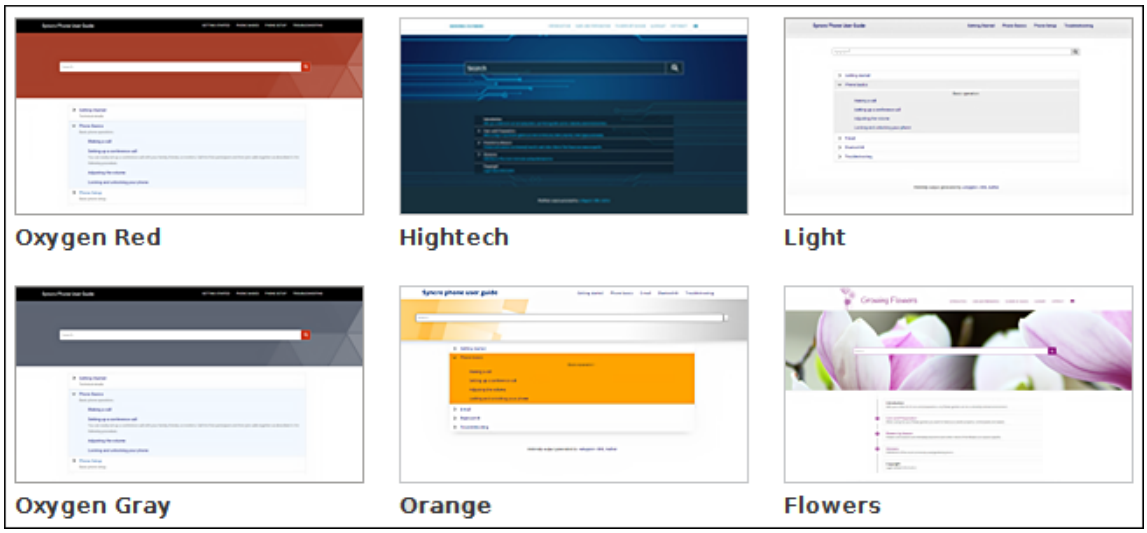
Tiles Templates

The main page in the WebHelp output presents a tile for each main topic (chapter) of the documentation.



Tree Templates

The main page in the WebHelp output presents a tree-like table of contents.



Built-in Templates Location

All built-in templates are stored in the following directory: *DITA-OT-DIR*`/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/templates`.

Custom Templates

You can use a built-in template as a starting point for creating your own custom template *(on page 1188)*. You can store all of your custom templates in a particular directory. Then, go to **Options > Preferences > DITA > Publishing** and add your directory to the list, and all the templates stored in that directory will be displayed in the preview pane in the transformation scenario's **Template** tab along with all the built-in templates.

Sharing Publishing Template

To share a publishing template with others, following these steps:

1. Copy your template in a new folder.
2. Go to **Options > Preferences > DITA > Publishing** and add that new folder to the list.
3. Switch the option as the bottom of that preferences page to **Project Options**.
4. Share your project file (`.xpr`).

Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations

An *Oxygen Publishing Template* package for WebHelp output must contain a template descriptor file and at least one CSS file, and may contain other resources (such as graphics, XHTML files, XSLT files, etc.). All the template resources can be stored in either a ZIP archive or in a folder. It is recommended to use a ZIP archive because it is easier to share with others.

Template Descriptor File

Each publishing template includes a descriptor file that defines the meta-data associated with the template. It is an XML file that defines all the resources included in a template (such as CSS files, images, JS files, and transformation parameters).

The template descriptor file must have the `.opt` file extension and must be located in the template's root folder.

A template descriptor might look like this:

```
<publishing-template>
    <name>Flowers</name>


    <webhelp>
        <tags>
            <tag>tree</tag>
            <tag>light</tag>
        </tags>
        <preview-image file="flowers-tree.png"/>


        <!-- Resources (CSS, favicon, logo and others) -->
        <resources>
            <!-- Main CSS file -->
            <css file="flowers.css"/>


             <!-- Resources to copy to the output folder -->
            <fileset>
                <include name="resources/**/*"/>
                <exclude name="resources/**/.svn"/>
                <exclude name="resources/**/.git"/>
            </fileset>
```

```
        </resources>


        <parameters>
            <parameter name="webhelp.show.main.page.tiles" value="no"/>
            <parameter name="webhelp.show.main.page.toc" value="yes"/>
            <parameter name="webhelp.top.menu.depth" value="3"/>
        </parameters>
    </webhelp>
</publishing-template>
```

Tip:
It is recommended to edit the template descriptor in **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** because it provides content completion and validation support.

Template Name and Description

Each template descriptor file requires a `<name>` element. This information is displayed as the name of the template in the transformation scenario dialog box.

Optionally, you can include a `<description>` and it displayed when the user hovers over the template in the transformation scenario dialog box.

```
<publishing-template>
    <name>Lorem Ipsum</name>
    <description>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit</description>
    ...
```

Template Author

Optionally, you can include author information in the descriptor file and it displayed when the user hovers over the template in the transformation scenario dialog box. This information might be useful if users run into an issue or have questions about a certain template.

If you include the `<author>` element, a `<name>` is required and optionally you can include `<email>`, `<organization>`, and `<organizationUrl>` information.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <author>
      <name>John Doe</name>
      <email>jdoe@example.com</email>
      <organization>ACME</organization>
      <organizationUrl>http://www.example.com/jdoe</organizationUrl>
```

```
    </author>
    ...
```

Webhelp Element

The `<webhelp>` element contains various details that define the WebHelp Responsive output. It is a required element if you intend on using a WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario. The elements that are allowed in this `<webhelp>` section specify the template tags *(on page 996)*, template preview image *(on page 997)*, resources *(on page 997)* (such as CSS, JS, fonts, logos), transformation parameters *(on page 999)*, HTML fragment extensions *(on page 1001)* (used to add fragments to placeholders), XSLT extensions *(on page 1000)*, or HTML page layout files *(on page 1010)*.

```
    <webhelp>
        <tags>
          ...
        </tags>
        <preview-image file="MyPreview.png"/>

        <resources>
          ...
        </resources>

        <html-page-layouts>
          ...
        </html-page-layouts>

        <parameters>
          ...
        </parameters>
    </webhelp>
```

Template Tags

The `<tags>` section provides meta information about the template (such as layout type or color theme). Each *tag* is displayed at the top of the **Templates** tab window in the transformation scenario dialog box and they help the user filter and find particular templates.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
      <tags>
        <tag>tree</tag>
        <tag>dark</tag>
      </tags>
```

Template Preview Image

The `<preview-image>` element is used to specify an image that will be displayed in the transformation scenario dialog box. It provides a visual representation of the template to help the user select the right template. The image dimensions should be `200 x 115` pixels and the supported image formats are: `JPEG`, `PNG`, or `GIF`.

You can also include an `<online-preview-url>` element to specify the URL of a published sample of your template. This will display an **Online preview** icon in the bottom-right corner the image in the transformation scenario dialog box and if the user clicks that icon, it will open the specified URL in their default browser.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
      ...
      <preview-image file="ashes/ashes-tree.png"/>
      <online-preview-url>https://www.example.com/samples/tiles/ashes</online-preview-url>
```

Template Resources

The `<resources>` section of the descriptor file specifies a set of resources (CSS, JS, fonts, logos, graphics, etc.) that are used to customize various components in the generated output. These resources will be copied to the output folder during the transformation process. At least one CSS file must be included, while the other types of resources are optional.

Warning:
All paths set in the `@file` attribute must be relative.

This section is defined using the `<resources>` element and the types of resources that can be specified include:

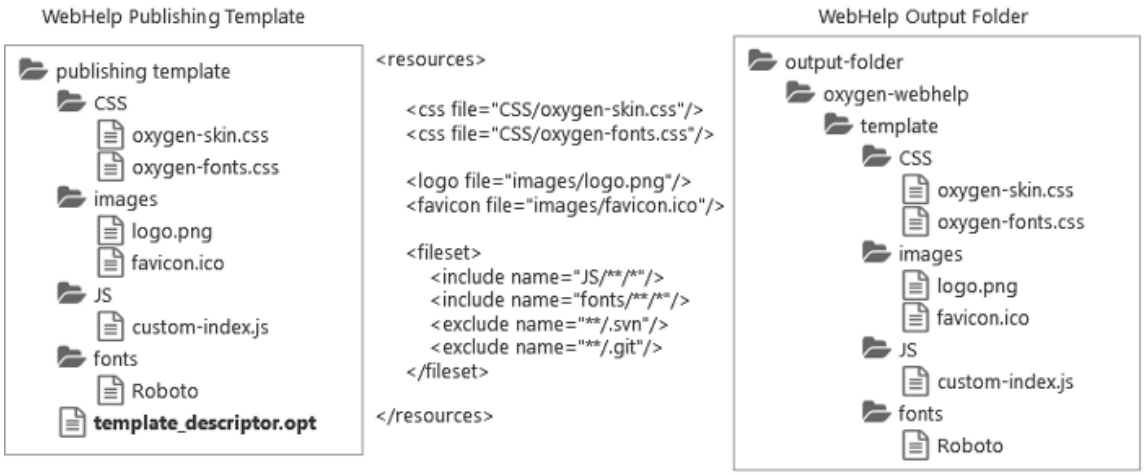
- **CSS files** - One or more CSS files that will define the styles of all generated HTML pages. They are referenced using the `<css>` element.
- **Favicon** - You can specify the path to an image for the *favicon* associated with your website. It is referenced using the `<favicon>` element.
- **Logo** - You can specify the path to a logo image that will be displayed in the left side of the output header. It is referenced using the `<logo>` element. Optionally, you can also specify:
  - `@target-url` - Redirects the user to the specified URL if they click the logo in the output.
  - `@new-tab` - Opens the target URL in a new browser tab.
  - `@alt` - Provides an alternate text for the logo image.
- **Additional Resources (graphics, JS, fonts, folders)** - For other resources (such as images referenced in CSS, JavaScript, fonts, entire folders, etc.) that need to be included in the output, you need to instruct the transformation to include them in the output folder. You can specify one or more sets of additional resources to be copied to the output folder by using the `<fileset>` element and you can use one or more `<include>` and `<exclude>` elements. This semantic is similar to the ANT FileSet.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
      ...
      <resources>
          <css file="css/custom_styles.css"/>
          <css file="css/custom_fonts.css"/>

          <favicon file="images/favicon.png"/>

          <logo
           file="images/logo.png"
           target-url="http://www.example.com"
           alt="Alternate text for the logo image"
           new-tab="true"/>

          <js-amd-module file="js/template-main.js"/>

          <fileset>
              <include name="common/**/*"/>
              <include name="JS/**/*"/>
              <exclude name="**/*.svn"/>
              <exclude name="**/*.git"/>
          </fileset>
      </resources>
```

Note:
All relative paths specified in the descriptor file are relative to the template root folder.

The resources specified in the template descriptor are copied to the following output folder: *[WebHelp_OUTPUT_DIR]*`/oxygen-webhelp/template`. The following graphic illustrates the mapping between the template resources and the location where they will be copied to the output folder:

Figure 229. Template Resources Mapping



Related Information:

How to Add a Favicon in WebHelp Systems *(on page 1075)*

Transformation Parameters

You can also set one or more WebHelp transformation parameters in the descriptor file.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
      ...
      <parameters>
        <parameter
          name="webhelp.show.main.page.toc"
          value="yes"/>
        <parameter
          name="webhelp.top.menu.depth"
          value="3"/>
        <parameter
          name="webhelp.fragment.welcome"
          value="html-fragment/webhelp.fragment.welcome.html"
          type="filePath"/>
      </parameters>
    </webhelp>
```

The following information can be specified in the `<parameter>` element:

Parameter name

The name of the parameter. It may be one of the WebHelp Responsive transformation parameters *(on page 1144)* or a DITA-OT HTML-based output parameter.

Note:
It is not recommended to specify an input/output parameter in the descriptor file (such as the input Map, DITAVAL file, or temporary directory).

Attention:
JVM arguments like *-Xmx* cannot be specified as a transformation parameter.

Parameter Value

The value of the parameter. It should be a relative path to the template root folder for file paths parameters.

Parameter Type

The type of the parameter: `string` or `filepath`. The `string` value is default.

After creating a publishing template *(on page 1188)* and adding it to the templates gallery *(on page 1047)*, when you select the template in the transformation scenario dialog box, the **Parameters** tab will automatically be updated to include the parameters defined in the descriptor file. These parameters are displayed in italics.

XSLT Extension Points

The publishing templates can include one or more supported XSLT extension points *(on page 1159)*. They are helpful when you want to change the structure of the HTML pages that are primarily generated from XSLT processing. They can be specified using the `<xslt>` element in the descriptor file using the following structure:

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <xslt>
            <extension
              id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.dita2webhelp"
              file="xsl/customDita2webhelp.xsl"/>
            <extension
              id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage"
              file="xsl/customMainPage.xsl"/>
        </xslt>
```

For a full list of the supported extension points, see: XSLT-Import and XSLT-Parameter Extension Points *(on page 1159)*.

Note:
You can read the value of a WebHelp transformation parameter from your XSLT extension stylesheets by using the `getParameter(param.name)` function from the `http://www.oxygenxml.com/functions` namespace.

HTML Fragment Placeholders

The HTML pages contain component placeholders that can be used to insert custom HTML fragments either by specifying a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or referencing a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment (for details on how the file or fragment needs to be constructed, see How to Insert Custom HTML Content *(on page 1057)*).

These fragments and their placeholder location are defined in the descriptor file using a `<fragment>` element inside the `<html-fragments>` section. You can specify one or more HTML fragment extension points in the descriptor file using the following structure:

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
      ...
      <html-fragments>
        <fragment
          file="html-fragments/webhelp_fragment_welcome.html"
          placeholder="webhelp.fragment.welcome"/>
        <fragment
          file="html-fragments/webhelp_fragment_footer.html"
          placeholder="webhelp.fragment.footer"/>
      </html-fragments>
```

Some of these placeholders are left empty in the default output configurations, but you can use them to insert custom content.

Each placeholder has an associated parameter value in the transformation. Some of the placeholder parameters are global and can be used in all type of pages (*main page*, *topic page*, *search results page*, *index terms page*), while others are applicable for certain type of pages. The following diagram illustrates the predefined placeholders that are global (can be used in any of the types of pages.

Figure 230. Global Predefined Placeholders Diagram

1. Header *(on page 1002)*
2. After Header *(on page 1002)*
3. Before Body *(on page 1002)*
4. Before Logo and Title *(on page 1002)*
5. After Logo and Title *(on page 1003)*
6. Beforer Top Menu *(on page 1003)*
7. After Top Menu *(on page 1003)*
8. Before Search Input *(on page 1003)*
9. After Search Input *(on page 1003)*
10. Before Main Content *(on page 1003)*
11. After Main Content *(on page 1003)*
12. Footer *(on page 1003)*
13. After Body *(on page 1003)*

Global Placeholder Parameters

The following placeholder parameters can be used in any of the type of pages (*main page*, *topic page*, *search results page*, *index terms page*). The parameter values can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment:

- **1 = webhelp.fragment.header** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment in the header section.
- **2 = webhelp.fragment.after.header** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the header section.
- **3 = webhelp.fragment.before.body** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the body.
- **4 = webhelp.fragment.before.logo_and_title** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the logo and title.

- **5 = webhelp.fragment.after.logo_and_title** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the logo and title.
- **6 = webhelp.fragment.before.top_menu** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the top menu.
- **7 = webhelp.fragment.after.top_menu** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the top menu.
- **8 = webhelp.fragment.before.search.input** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the search input component.
- **9 = webhelp.fragment.after.search.input** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the search input component.
- **10 = webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the main content area
- **11 = webhelp.fragment.after.main.content.area** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the main content area.
- **12 = webhelp.fragment.footer** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment in the footer section.
- **13 = webhelp.fragment.after.body** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the body.

Main Page Placeholder Parameters

The following placeholder parameters can be used in the *main page*. The parameter values can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment:

- **webhelp.fragment.header.main.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment in the header section.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.header.main.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the header section.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.body.main.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the body.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.main.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the search input component.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.main.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the search input component.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.main.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the main content area
- **webhelp.fragment.after.main.content.area.main.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the main content area.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.body.main.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the body.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.toc_or_tiles** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the main table of contents or tiles component on the main page.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.toc_or_tiles** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the main table of contents or tiles component on the main page.

Topic Page Placeholder Parameters

The following placeholder parameters can be used in the *topic page*. The parameter values can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment:

- **webhelp.fragment.header.topic.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment in the header section.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.header.topic.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the header section.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.body.topic.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the body.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.topic.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the search input component.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.topic.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the search input component.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.topic.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the main content area
- **webhelp.fragment.after.main.content.area.topic.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the main content area.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.body.topic.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the body.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.topic.toolbar** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the toolbar buttons above the topic content in the topic page.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.topic.toolbar** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the toolbar buttons above the topic content in the topic page.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.topic.breadcrumb** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the breadcrumb component in the topic page.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.topic.breadcrumb** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the breadcrumb component in the topic page.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.publication.toc** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the publication's table of contents component in the topic page.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.publication.toc** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the publication's table of contents component in the topic page.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.topic.content** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the topic's main content in the topic page.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.topic.content** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the topic's main content in the topic page.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.feedback** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the **Oxygen Feedback** commenting component in the topic page.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.feedback** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the **Oxygen Feedback** commenting component in the topic page.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.topic.toc** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the topic's table of contents component in the topic page.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.topic.toc** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the topic's table of contents component in the topic page.

Search Results Page Placeholder Parameters

The following placeholder parameters can be used in the *search results page*. The parameter values can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment:

- **webhelp.fragment.header.search.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment in the header section.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.header.search.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the header section.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.body.search.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the body.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.search.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the search input component.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.search.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the search input component.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.search.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the main content area
- **webhelp.fragment.after.main.content.area.search.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the main content area.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.body.search.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the body.
- **webhelp.google.search.script** - Replaces the search input component with a Google search component.

Index Terms Page Placeholder Parameters

The following placeholder parameters can be used in the *search results page*. The parameter values can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment:

- **webhelp.fragment.header.terms.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment in the header section.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.header.terms.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the header section.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.body.terms.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the body.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.terms.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the search input component.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.terms.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the search input component.
- **webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.terms.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment before the main content area
- **webhelp.fragment.after.main.content.area.terms.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the main content area.
- **webhelp.fragment.after.body.terms.page** - Displays the specified XHTML fragment after the body.

Using String Values in Placeholder Parameter Values

If you use strings for values of HTML fragment placeholder parameter values, the string values are written to files in the transformation's temporary directory. The values of the associated parameters reference the paths of the temporary files. This means that the HTML fragments will have a uniform processing in the *WebHelp's XSLT Module*.

Example:

Suppose the placeholder parameter has the following string value:

```
# String value

webhelp.fragment.welcome = <p>This is an HTML paragraph.</p>
```

A new file that contains the parameter's value is created:

`[temp-dir]/whr-html-fragments/webhelp_fragment_welcome.xml`

```
<p>This is an HTML paragraph.</p>
```

The parameter's value then becomes:

```
# Absolute file path as value

webhelp.fragment.welcome= [temp-dir]/whr-html-fragments/webhelp_fragment_welcome.xml
```

Related Information:
How to Insert Custom HTML Content *(on page 1057)*

WebHelp Responsive Macros

You can use the `whc:macro` layout component to specify a macro value (a variable that will be expanded when the output files are generated).

A macro has the following syntax:

```
${macro-name}
```

or

```
${macro-name(macro-parameter)}
```

A macro name can accept any alphanumeric characters, as well as the following characters: `-` (minus), `_` (underscore), `.` (dot), `:` (colon). The value of a parameter may contain any character except the `}` (close curly bracket) character.

Implementations

The following *macros* are supported:

i18n

For localizing a string.

```
${i18n(string.id)}
```

param

Returns the value of a transformation parameter.

```
${param(webhelp.show.main.page.tiles)}
```

env

Returns the value of an environment variable.

```
${env(JAVA_HOME)}
```

system-property

Returns the value of a system property.

```
${system-property(os.name)}
```

timestamp

Can be used to format the current date and time. Accepts a string (as a parameter) that determines how the date and time will be formatted (format string or *picture string* as it is known in the XSLT specification). The format string must comply with the rules of the XSLT `format-dateTime` function specification.

```
${timestamp([h1]:[m01] [P] [M01]/[D01]/[Y0001])}
```

path

Returns the path associated with the specified path ID. The following paths IDs are supported:

- **oxygen-webhelp-output-dir** - The path to the output directory. The path is relative to the current HTML file.
- **oxygen-webhelp-assets-dir** - The path to the `oxygen-webhelp` subdirectory from the output directory. The path is relative to the current HTML file.
- **oxygen-webhelp-template-dir** - The path to the template directory. The path is relative to the current HTML file.

```
${path(oxygen-webhelp-template-dir)}
```

Note:
New paths IDs can be added by overriding the `wh-macro-custom-path` template from `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\template\macroExpander.xsl`:

```
<!-- Extension template for expanding a custom path macro. -->
<xsl:template name="wh-macro-custom-path">
    <xsl:param name="pathId"/>
    <xsl:value-of select="$pathId"/>
</xsl:template>
```

map-xpath

Can be used to execute an XPath expression over the DITA map file from the temporary directory.

Tip:
Available in all template layout HTML pages.

```
${map-xpath(/map/title)}
```

topic-xpath

Can be used to execute an XPath expression over the current topic.

> **Tip:**
> Available only in the topic HTML page template (`wt_topic.html`).

```
${topic-xpath(string-join(//shortdesc//text(), ' '))}
```

oxygen-webhelp-build-number

Returns the current WebHelp distribution ID (build number).

```
${oxygen-webhelp-build-number}
```

Extensibility

To add new *macros*, you can add an XSLT extension to overwrite the `wh-macro-extension` template from the `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\template\macroExpander.xsl` file.

```
<!-- Extension template for expanding custom macro constructs -->
<xsl:template name="wh-macro-extension">
    <xsl:param name="name"/>
    <xsl:param name="params"/>
    <xsl:param name="contextNode"/>
    <xsl:param name="matchedString"/>

    <xsl:choose>
        <xsl:when test="$contextNode instance of attribute()">
            <xsl:value-of select="$matchedString"/>
        </xsl:when>
        <xsl:otherwise>
            <xsl:message>Cannot expand macro:
                [<xsl:value-of select="$matchedString"/>]</xsl:message>
            <xsl:copy-of select="$contextNode"/>
        </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>
```

The `wh-macro-extension` template has the following parameters:

- **name** - The name of the current *macro*.
- **params** - List of parameters of the current *macro* as a `string` sequence. The current *macros* parsing mechanism only allows *macros* with a maximum of one parameter. Consequently, this list will contain at most one element.
- **contextNode** - The current element or attribute where the *macro* was declared.
- **matchedString** - The entire value of the matched *macro* as specified in the HTML template page.

Combining WebHelp Responsive and PDF Customizations in a Template Package

An *Oxygen Publishing Template* package can contain both a WebHelp Responsive and PDF customization in the same template package and you can use that same template in both types of transformations. The template descriptor file can define the customization for both types by including both a `<webhelp>` and `<pdf>` element and some of the resources can be reused. Resources referenced in elements in the `<webhelp>` element will only be used for WebHelp transformations, and resources referenced in the elements in the `<pdf>` element will only be used in PDF transformations.

```
<publishing-template>
    <name>Flowers</name>
    <description>Flowers themed light-colored template</description>

    <webhelp>
        <tags>
            <tag>purple</tag>
            <tag>light</tag>
        </tags>
        <preview-image file="flowers-preview.png"/>
        <resources>
            <css file="flowers-wh.css"/>
            <css file="flowers-page-styling.css"/>
        </resources>
        <parameters>
            <parameter name="webhelp.show.main.page.tiles" value="no"/>
            <parameter name="webhelp.show.main.page.toc" value="yes"/>
        </parameters>
    </webhelp>
    <pdf>
        <tags>
            <tag>purple</tag>
            <tag>light</tag>
        </tags>
        <preview-image file="flowers-preview.png"/>
        <resources>
            <css file="flowers-pdf.css"/>
            <css file="flowers-page-styling.css"/>
        </resources>
        <parameters>
            <parameter name="show.changes.and.comments" value="yes"/>"/>
        </parameters>
```

```
    <pdf>
</publishing-template>
```

Related Information:

Publishing Template Package Contents for PDF Customizations *(on page 1183)*

HTML Page Layout Files

The HTML page layout files define the default layout of the generated pages in the output for the built-in template. There are four types of pages (*main*, *search*, *topic*, *index*) and each type of page is a simple HTML file. Each page type has various components that appear by default and each component has a corresponding element and when that element is included in the HTML file, the corresponding components will appear in the output.

Warning:
It is no longer recommended for you to customize these files because if you upgrade to a newer version of **Oxygen**, those files may no longer produce the desired results and if new components have been added, you won't have access to them. Instead, use any of the other methods described in Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations *(on page 994)*.

If you do choose to customize these HTML files, each type of page is defined inside an `<html-page-layout-files>` element in the descriptor file.

```
<publishing-template>
      ...
      <webhelp>
      ...
      <!-- HTML page layout files -->
      <html-page-layout-files>
        <page-layout-file page="main" file="page-templates/wt_index.html"/>
        <page-layout-file page="search" file="page-templates/wt_search.html"/>
        <page-layout-file page="topic" file="page-templates/wt_topic.html"/>
        <page-layout-file page="index-terms" file="page-templates/wt_terms.html"/>
      </html-page-layout-files>
```

If you do use the **html-page-layout-files** element, you must specify all four types of pages (*main*, *search*, *topic*, *index*). When not specified, the files from the `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/oxygen-webhelp/page-templates` folder will be used to define the layout of each type of page.

HTML Page Components

Each type of page contains various components that control the layout of that page. The rendering of each component depends on the context where it is placed and its content depends on the transformed *DITA map (on page 2230)*.

Some of the components can be used in all four types of pages, while some are only available for certain pages. For instance, the *Publication Title* component can be used in all pages, but the *Navigation Breadcrumb* component can only be used in the **Topic Page**.

To include a component in the output of a particular type of page, you have to reference a specific element in that particular HTML file. All the elements associated with a component should belong to the `http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components` namespace.

Every component can contain custom content or reference another component. To specify where the component content will be located in the output, you can use the `<whc:component_content>` element as a descendant of the component element. It can specify the location as before, after, or it can wrap the component content. The following snippet contains an example of each:

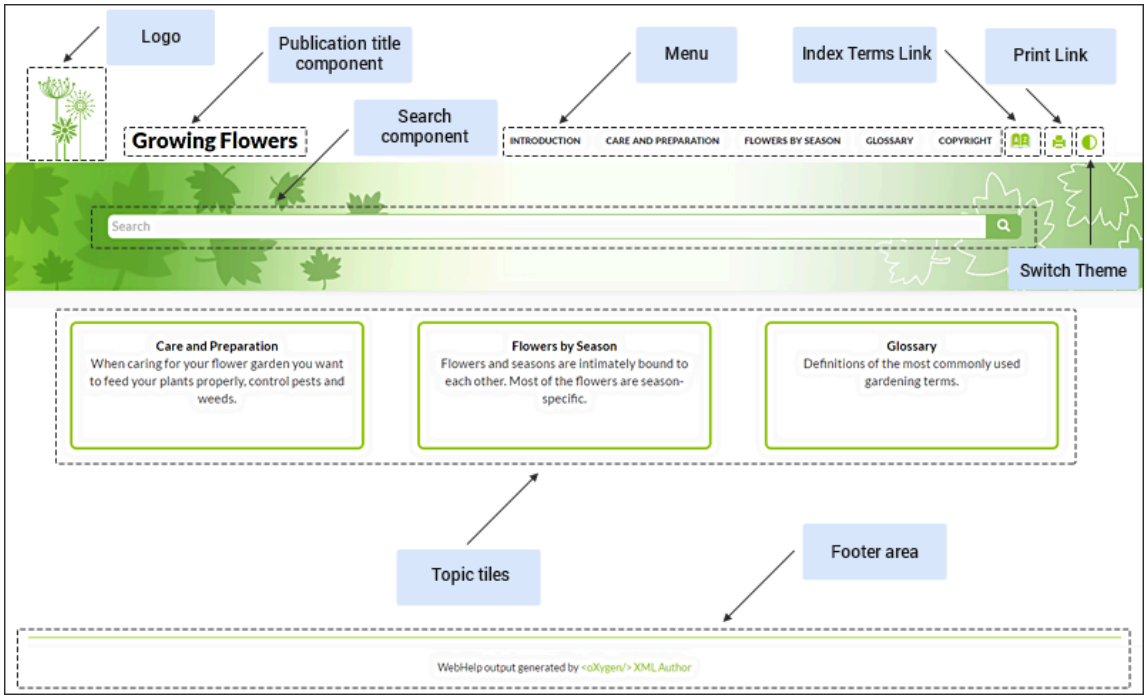
```
<whc:webhelp_search_input class="navbar-form wh_main_page_search"
    role="form" >
    <div class="custom-content-before">Enter search terms here:</div>
    <div class="custom-wrapper">
        <whc:component_content/>
    </div>
    <div class="custom-content-after">Results will be displayed in a new window.</div>
</whc:webhelp_search_input>
```

Main Page

The *Main Page* is the home page generated in the WebHelp Responsive output. The name of the HTML file that defines this page is `wt_index.html` and it is located in the following directory: *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/oxygen-webhelp/page-templates`.

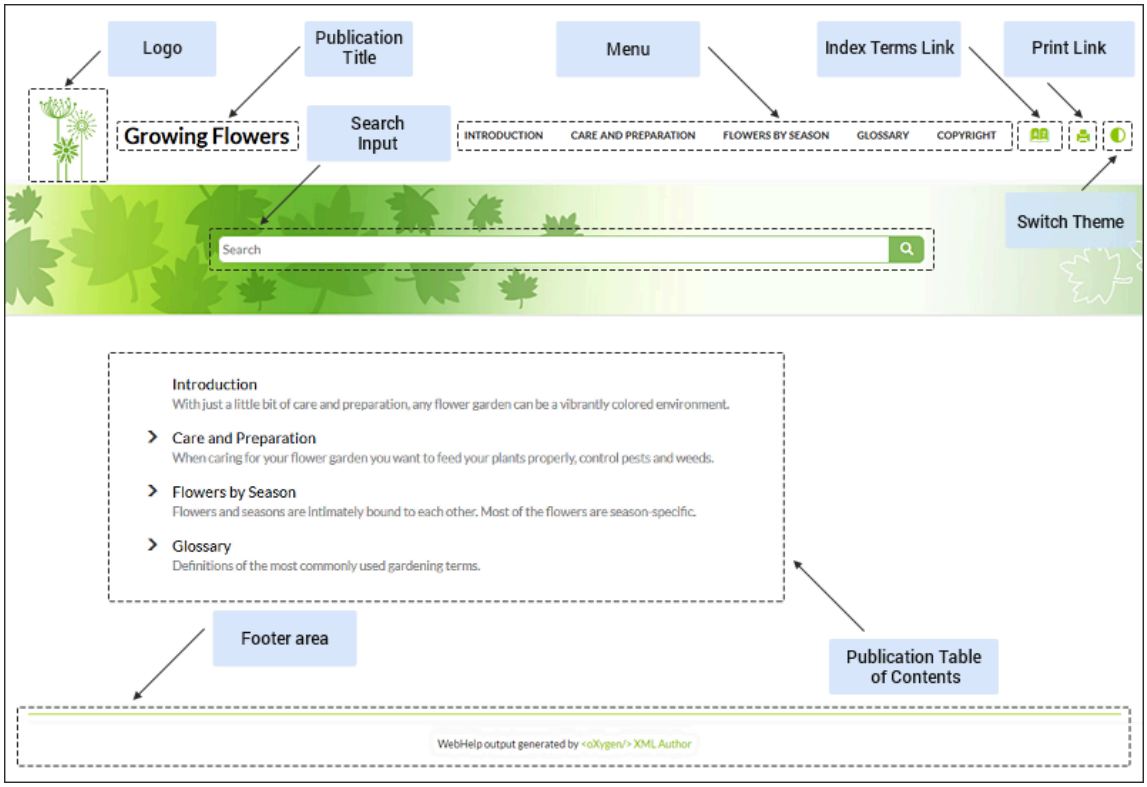
The main function of the home page is to display top-level information and provide links that help you easily navigate to any of the top-level topics of the publication. These links can be rendered in either a *Tiles* or *Tree* style of layout. The HTML page produced for the home page also consists of various other components, such as a logo, title, menu, search field, or index link.

Figure 231. Example of Main Page Components for a Tiles Style of Layout



1. Publication Logo *(on page 1013)*
2. Publication Title *(on page 1013)*
3. Search Input *(on page 1014)*
4. Main Menu *(on page 1014)*
5. Index Terms Link *(on page 1016)*
6. Print Link *(on page 1014)*
7. Switch Theme Button *(on page 1014)*
8. Topic Tiles *(on page 1015)*

Figure 232. Example of Main Page Components for a Tree Style of Layout



1. Publication Logo *(on page 1013)*
2. Publication Title *(on page 1013)*
3. Search Input *(on page 1014)*
4. Main Menu *(on page 1014)*
5. Index Terms Link *(on page 1016)*
6. Table of Contents *(on page 1015)*
7. Switch Theme Button *(on page 1014)*
8. Print Link *(on page 1014)*

The following components can be referenced in the *Main Page* (`wt_index.html`) file:

Publication Title (`webhelp_publication_title`)

This component generates the publication title in the output. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_publication_title>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_publication_title
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_publication_title`.

Publication Logo (`webhelp_logo`)

This component generates a logo image in the output. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_logo>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_logo
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In addition, you must also specify the path of the logo image in the `webhelp.logo.image` transformation parameter (in the **Parameters** tab in the transformation scenario). You can set the `webhelp.logo.image.target.url` parameter to generate a link to a URL when you click the logo image.

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_logo`.

Search Input (`webhelp_search_input`)

This component is used to generate the input widget associated with search function in the output. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_search_input>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_search_input
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_search_input`.

Print Link (`webhelp_print_link`)

This component is used to generate a print icon that opens the print dialog box for your particular browser. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_print_link>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_print_link
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_print_link`.

Switch Theme Button (`webhelp_theme_button`)

This component is used to generate a button that opens a drop-down menu for selecting the theme. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_theme_button>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_theme_button
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_theme`.

Main Menu (`webhelp_top_menu`)

This component generates a menu with all the documentation topics. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_top_menu>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_top_menu
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_top_menu`.

You can control the maximum level of topics that will be included in the menu using the `webhelp.top.menu.depth` transformation parameter (in the **Parameters** tab of the transformation scenario).

For information about customizing the menu, see How to Customize the Menu *(on page 1067)*.

Main Page Topic Tiles (`webhelp_tiles`)

This component generates the tiles section in the main page. This section will contain a tile for each root topic of the published documentation. Each topic tile has three sections that correspond to the topic title, short description, and image. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_tiles>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_tiles
     xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_tiles`.

If you want to control the HTML structure that is generated for a WebHelp tile you can also specify the template for a tile by using the `<whc:webhelp_tile>` component, as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_tile class="col-md-4">
  <!-- Place holder for tile's image -->
  <whc:webhelp_tile_image/>

  <div class="wh_tile_text">
    <!-- Place holder for tile's title -->
     <whc:webhelp_tile_title/>

     <!-- Place holder for tile's shordesc -->
     <whc:webhelp_tile_shortdesc/>
  </div>
</whc:webhelp_tile>
```

For information about customizing the tiles, see How to Configure the Tiles on the WebHelp Responsive Main Page *(on page 1071)*.

Main Page Table of Contents (`webhelp_main_page_toc`)

This component generates a simplified Table of Contents. It is simplified because it contains only two levels from the documentation hierarchy. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_main_page_toc>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_main_page_toc

    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_main_page_toc`.

Index Terms Link (`webhelp_indexterms_link`)

This component can be used to generate a link to the index terms page (`indexterms.html`). If the published documentation does not contain any index terms, then the link will not be generated. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_indexterms_link>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_indexterms_link

    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_indexterms_link`. This component will contain a link to the `indexterms.html` page.

Link to Skins Resources (`webhelp_skin_resources`)

This component can be used to add a link to resources for the current WebHelp skin (such as the CSS file). To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_skin_resources>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_skin_resources/>
```

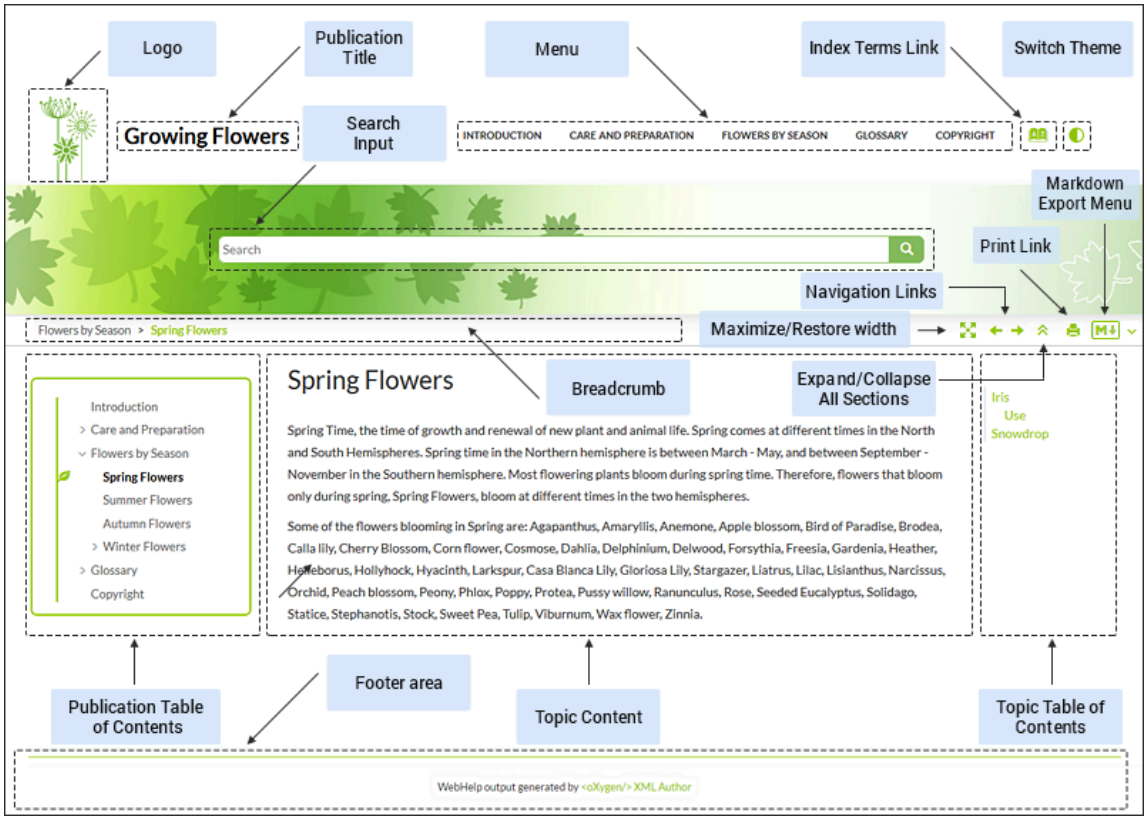
In the output, you will find a link to the skin resources.

Topic Page

The *Topic Page* is the page generated for each DITA topic in the WebHelp Responsive output. The name of the HTML file that defines this page is `wt_topic.html` and it is located in the following directory: *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/oxygen-webhelp/page-templates`.

The HTML pages produced for each topic consist of the topic content along with various other additional components, such as a title, menu, navigation breadcrumb, print icon, or side table of contents.

Figure 233. Example of Topic Page Components



1. Publication Logo *(on page 1018)*
2. Publication Title *(on page 1017)*
3. Search Input *(on page 1018)*
4. Main Menu *(on page 1019)*
5. Index Terms Link *(on page 1018)*
6. Switch Theme Button *(on page 1018)*
7. Maximize/Restore width Component *(on page 1019)*
8. Navigation Links *(on page 1019)*
9. Expand/Collapse All Sections *(on page 1021)*
10. Print Link *(on page 1020)*
11. Markdown Export Menu *(on page 1020)*
12. Breadcrumb *(on page 1019)*
13. Publication Table of Contents *(on page 1020)*
14. Topic Content *(on page 1020)*
15. Topic Table of Contents *(on page 1021)*

The following components can be referenced in the *Topic Page* (`wt_topic.html`) file:

Publication Title (`webhelp_publication_title`)

This component generates the publication title in the output. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_publication_title>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_publication_title
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_publication_title`.

Publication Logo (`webhelp_logo`)

This component generates a logo image in the output. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_logo>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_logo
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In addition, you must also specify the path of the logo image in the `webhelp.logo.image` transformation parameter (in the **Parameters** tab in the transformation scenario). You can set the `webhelp.logo.image.target.url` parameter to generate a link to a URL when you click the logo image.

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_logo`.

Index Terms Link (`webhelp_indexterms_link`)

This component can be used to generate a link to the index terms page (`indexterms.html`). If the published documentation does not contain any index terms, then the link will not be generated. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_indexterms_link>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_indexterms_link
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_indexterms_link`. This component will contain a link to the `indexterms.html` page.

Switch Theme Button (`webhelp_theme_button`)

This component is used to generate a button that opens a drop-down menu for selecting the theme. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_theme_button>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_theme_button
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_theme`.

Search Input (`webhelp_search_input`)

This component is used to generate the input widget associated with search function in the output. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_search_input>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_search_input
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_search_input`.

Main Menu (`webhelp_top_menu`)

This component generates a menu with all the documentation topics. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_top_menu>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_top_menu
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_top_menu`.

You can control the maximum level of topics that will be included in the menu using the `webhelp.top.menu.depth` transformation parameter (in the **Parameters** tab of the transformation scenario).

For information about customizing the menu, see How to Customize the Menu *(on page 1067)*.

Topic Breadcrumb (`webhelp_breadcrumb`)

This component generates a breadcrumb that displays the path of the current topic. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_breadcrumb>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_breadcrumb
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_breadcrumb`. This component will contain a list with items that correspond to the topics in the path. The first item in the list has a link to the main page with the `home` class. The last item in the list corresponds to the current topic and has the `active` class set.

Maximize to full width/Restore to normal width Link (`webhelp_full_width_link`)

This component is used to maximizes or restores the topic content to use the entire page space. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_full_width_link>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_full_width_link
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `webhelp_full_width_link`.

Navigation Links (`webhelp_navigation_links`)

This component generates navigation links to the next and previous topics. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_navigation_links>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_navigation_links
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_navigation_links`. This component will contain the links to the next and previous topics.

Print Link (`webhelp_print_link`)

This component is used to generate a print icon that opens the print dialog box for your particular browser. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_print_link>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_print_link
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_print_link`.

Markdown Export Menu (`whc:webhelp_md_menu`)

This component is used to generate a menu with "Copy as Markdown" and "View as Markdown" actions. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_md_menu>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_md_menu
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh-md-menu`.

Topic Content (`webhelp_topic_content`)

This component generates the content of a topic and it represent the content of the HTML files as they are produced by the DITA-OT processor. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_topic_content>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_topic_content
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_topic_content`.

Publication TOC (`webhelp_publication_toc`)

This component generates a mini table of contents for the current topic (on the left side). It will contain links to the children of the current topic, its siblings, and all of its ancestors. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_publication_toc>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_publication_toc
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_publication_toc`. This component will contain links to the topics referenced in the DITA map. It also includes an expand/collapse button (either < to collapse or the > to expand).

Topic TOC (`webhelp_topic_toc`)

This component generates a topic table of contents for the current topic (on the right side) with a heading named **On this page**. It contains links to each section within the current topic and the section corresponding to the current scroll position is highlighted. The topic must contain at least two `<section>` elements and each `<section>` must have an `@id` attribute. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_topic_toc>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_topic_toc
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_topic_toc`. This component will contain links to the sections within the current topic. It also includes an expand/collapse button (either > to collapse or the < to expand).

Expand/Collapse Sections (`webhelp_expand_collapse_sections`)

This component is used to generate an icon that expands or collapses sections listed in the side table of contents within a topic. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_expand_collapse_sections>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_expand_collapse_sections
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `webhelp_expand_collapse_sections`.

Topic Feedback (`webhelp_feedback`)

This component generates a placeholder for where the comments section will be presented. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_feedback>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_feedback
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

Child Links (`webhelp_child_links`)

For all topics with subtopics (child topics), this component generates a list of links to each child topic. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_child_links>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_child_links
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

Related Links (`webhelp_related_links`)

For all topics that contain related links, this component generates a list of related links that will appear in the output. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_related_links>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_related_links
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

Link to Skins Resources (`webhelp_skin_resources`)

This component can be used to add a link to resources for the current WebHelp skin (such as the CSS file). To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_skin_resources>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_skin_resources/>
```

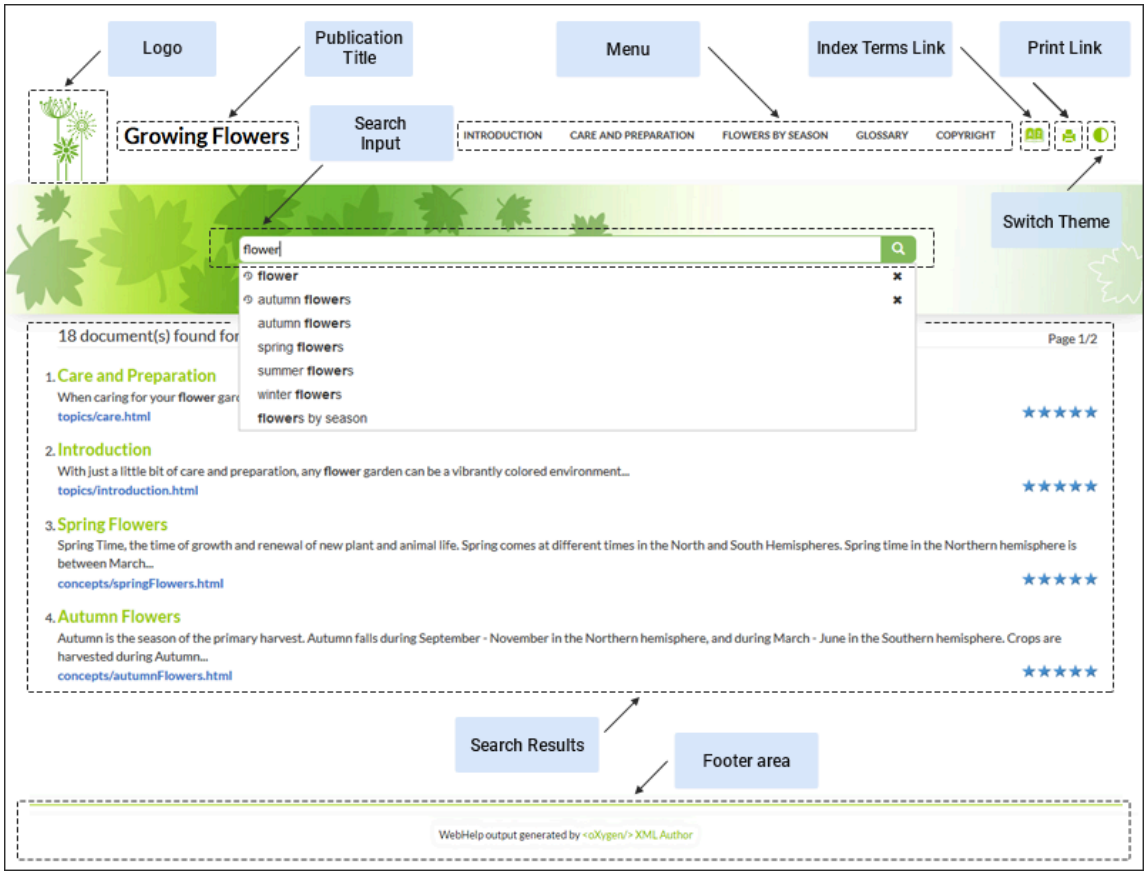
In the output, you will find a link to the skin resources.

Search Results Page

The *Search Results Page* is the page generated that presents search results in the WebHelp Responsive output. The name of the HTML file that defines this page is `wt_search.html` and it is located in the following directory: *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/oxygen-webhelp/page-templates`.

The HTML page that is produced consists of a search results component along with various other additional components, such as a title, menu, or index link.

Figure 234. Example of Search Results Page Components



1. Publication Logo *(on page 1023)*
2. Publication Title *(on page 1023)*
3. Search Input *(on page 1024)*
4. Main Menu *(on page 1025)*
5. Index Terms Link *(on page 1025)*
6. Search Results *(on page 1024)*
7. Print Link *(on page 1024)*
8. Switch Theme Button *(on page 1024)*

The following components can be referenced in the *Search Results Page* (`wt_search.html`) file:

Publication Title (`webhelp_publication_title`)

This component generates the publication title in the output. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_publication_title>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_publication_title
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_publication_title`.

Publication Logo (`webhelp_logo`)

This component generates a logo image in the output. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_logo>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_logo
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In addition, you must also specify the path of the logo image in the `webhelp.logo.image` transformation parameter (in the **Parameters** tab in the transformation scenario). You can set the `webhelp.logo.image.target.url` parameter to generate a link to a URL when you click the logo image.

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_logo`.

Search Input (`webhelp_search_input`)

This component is used to generate the input widget associated with search function in the output. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_search_input>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_search_input
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_search_input`.

Search Results (`webhelp_search_results`)

This component is used to generate a placeholder to signal where the search results will be presented in the output. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_search_results>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_search_results
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_search_results`.

Print Link (`webhelp_print_link`)

This component is used to generate a print icon that opens the print dialog box for your particular browser. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_print_link>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_print_link
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_print_link`.

Switch Theme Button (`webhelp_theme_button`)

This component is used to generate a button that opens a drop-down menu for selecting the theme. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_theme_button>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_theme_button
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_theme`.

Main Menu (`webhelp_top_menu`)

This component generates a menu with all the documentation topics. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_top_menu>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_top_menu
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_top_menu`.

You can control the maximum level of topics that will be included in the menu using the `webhelp.top.menu.depth` transformation parameter (in the **Parameters** tab of the transformation scenario).

For information about customizing the menu, see How to Customize the Menu *(on page 1067)*.

Index Terms Link (`webhelp_indexterms_link`)

This component can be used to generate a link to the index terms page (`indexterms.html`). If the published documentation does not contain any index terms, then the link will not be generated. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_indexterms_link>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_indexterms_link
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_indexterms_link`. This component will contain a link to the `indexterms.html` page.

Link to Skins Resources (`webhelp_skin_resources`)

This component can be used to add a link to resources for the current WebHelp skin (such as the CSS file). To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_skin_resources>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_skin_resources/>
```

In the output, you will find a link to the skin resources.

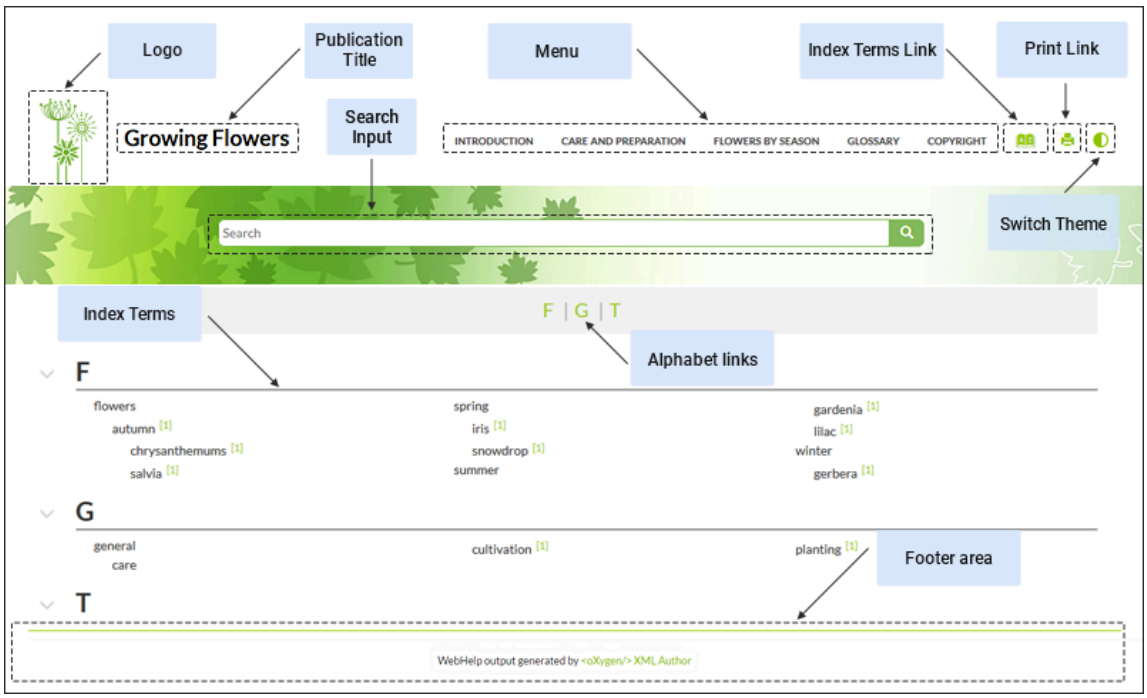
Index Terms Page

The *Index Terms Page* is the page generated that presents index terms in the WebHelp Responsive output. The name of the HTML file that defines this page is `wt_terms.html` and it is located in the following directory: *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/oxygen-webhelp/page-templates`.

The HTML page that is produced consists of an index terms section along with various other additional components, such as a title, menu, or search field.

An alphabet that contains the first letter of the documentation index terms is generated at the top of the index page. Each letter represents a link to a specific indices section.

Figure 235. Example of Index Terms Page Components



1. Publication Logo *(on page 1026)*
2. Publication Title *(on page 1026)*
3. Search Input *(on page 1027)*
4. Main Menu *(on page 1027)*
5. Index Terms Link *(on page 1028)*
6. Print Link *(on page 1027)*
7. Switch Theme Button *(on page 1027)*

The following components can be referenced in the *Index Terms Page* (`wt_terms.html`) file:

Publication Title (`webhelp_publication_title`)

This component generates the publication title in the output. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_publication_title>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_publication_title
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_publication_title`.

Publication Logo (`webhelp_logo`)

This component generates a logo image in the output. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_logo>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_logo
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In addition, you must also specify the path of the logo image in the `webhelp.logo.image` transformation parameter (in the **Parameters** tab in the transformation scenario). You can set the `webhelp.logo.image.target.url` parameter to generate a link to a URL when you click the logo image.

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_logo`.

Search Input (`webhelp_search_input`)

This component is used to generate the input widget associated with search function in the output. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_search_input>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_search_input
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_search_input`.

Print Link (`webhelp_print_link`)

This component is used to generate a print icon that opens the print dialog box for your particular browser. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_print_link>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_print_link
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_print_link`.

Switch Theme Button (`webhelp_theme_button`)

This component is used to generate a button that opens a drop-down menu for selecting the theme. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_theme_button>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_theme_button
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_theme`.

Main Menu (`webhelp_top_menu`)

This component generates a menu with all the documentation topics. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_top_menu>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_top_menu
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_top_menu`.

You can control the maximum level of topics that will be included in the menu using the `webhelp.top.menu.depth` transformation parameter (in the **Parameters** tab of the transformation scenario).

For information about customizing the menu, see How to Customize the Menu *(on page 1067)*.

Index Terms Link (`webhelp_indexterms_link`)

This component can be used to generate a link to the index terms page (`indexterms.html`). If the published documentation does not contain any index terms, then the link will not be generated. To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_indexterms_link>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_indexterms_link
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>
```

In the output, you will find an element with the class: `wh_indexterms_link`. This component will contain a link to the `indexterms.html` page.

Link to Skins Resources (`webhelp_skin_resources`)

This component can be used to add a link to resources for the current WebHelp skin (such as the CSS file). To generate this component, the `<whc:webhelp_skin_resources>` element must be specified in the HTML file as in the following example:

```
<whc:webhelp_skin_resources/>
```

In the output, you will find a link to the skin resources.

Generating WebHelp Responsive Output

The publishing process can be initiated from a transformation scenario within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, from a command line outside **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, or from an integration server.

Running WebHelp Responsive from Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To publish a *DITA map (on page 2230)* as **WebHelp Responsive** output, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** action from the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar.
2. Select the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** scenario from the **DITA Map** section.
3. If you want to configure the transformation, click the **Edit** button.

   Step Result: This opens an **Edit scenario** configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in the following tabs:

- **Templates Tab** - This tab contains a set of built-in skins that you can use for the layout of your WebHelp system output.
- **Parameters Tab** - This tab includes numerous transformation parameters that can be set to customize your WebHelp system output.
- **Feedback Tab** - This tab is for those who want to add the **Oxygen Feedback** comments component at the bottom of each WebHelp page so that you can interact with your readers.
- **Filters Tab** - This tab allows you to filter certain content elements from the generated output.
- **Advanced Tab** - This tab allows you to specify some advanced options for the transformation scenario.
- **Output Tab** - This tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

4. Click **Apply associated** to process the transformation.

Result: When the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation is complete, the output is automatically opened in your default browser.

Automating the WebHelp Responsive Output for DITA

DITA-based WebHelp output can be generated from an automated publishing process using a command line outside of **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** or an automatic publishing system, such as *Jenkins* or *Travis*. **However, to do this, you must purchase an additional Oxygen XML WebHelp license**.

Adding Oxygen Feedback to WebHelp Responsive Documentation

You can add Oxygen Feedback in WebHelp Responsive for DITA output to benefit from a modern commenting system, advanced ready-to-use search engine, administrative interface, and **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** integration.

Comments Component

A comments component is presented in your WebHelp Responsive output to provide a simple and efficient way for your community to interact and offer feedback. The comments component is contributed by **Oxygen Feedback**, a modern comment management system that can be integrated with your WebHelp Responsive output to provide a comments area at the bottom of each WebHelp page where readers can add new comments or reply to existing ones.

External Search Engine

Oxygen Feedback can be configured as an external search engine for the **Oxygen WebHelp Responsive** output. This function be enabled from the *Content Indexing and Search* section that is available in the *Version Settings* page.

Administration Interface

Oxygen Feedback includes a modern, user-friendly administration interface where you can moderate comments, manage users, view statistics, and configure settings. It is very easy to integrate and there are no requirements for installing additional software. You simply need to create an **Oxygen Feedback** site configuration in the administration interface, copy the

HTML installation fragment that is generated at the end of the creation process, and paste the generated fragment in the **Feedback** tab in the WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario dialog box *(on page 2105)*.

Oxygen XML Editor/Author Integration

An add-on is available that contributes a **Feedback Comments Manager** view in *Oxygen XML Editor/Author* where the documentation team can see all the comments added in your WebHelp output. This means they can react to user feedback by making corrections and updating the source content without leaving the application.

Deploying the Oxygen Feedback Comments Component

Prerequisite

To install and manage **Oxygen Feedback**, you will need to obtain a license for the product. This requires that you choose a subscription plan during the installation procedure. To see the subscription plans prior to installing the product, go to: https://www.oxygenxml.com/oxygen_feedback/buy_feedback.html.

Installation Procedure

1. Log in to your Feedback account from the *administration login page* (https://feedback.oxygenxml.com/login). You can click on **Log in with Google** or **Log in with Facebook** to create an account using your Google or Facebook credentials, or click the **Sign Up** tab to create an account using your name and email address.
2. Click the **Add site** button to create a site configuration. If you have not already selected a subscription plan, you will be directed to a page where you can choose from several options.
3. In the **Settings** page, enter a **Name** and **Description** for the site configuration. There are some optional settings that can be adjusted according to your needs. For more details, see the Site Settings topic. Click **Continue**.
4. In the **Initial version** page, enter the **Base URL** for your website (you can add additional URLs by clicking the **Add** button). You can also specify an **Initial version** if you want it to be something other than *1.0*. If you do not plan to have multiple versions, leave the version as *1.0*. For more details, see the Initial Version topic.
5. [Optional] To configure Oxygen Feedback as an external search engine check the **Enable content indexing** option.
6. Click **Continue**.
7. In the **Installation** page, choose a site generation option:
    a. If you will generate the documentation using a transformation scenario in *Oxygen XML Editor/Author*, select the **Oxygen XML Editor** option and continue with these steps:
        i. Copy the generated HTML fragment and click **Finish**.
        ii. In *Oxygen XML Editor/Author*, open the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box.
        iii. Select and duplicate the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** scenario.
        iv. Go to the **Feedback** tab.
        v. Click the **Edit** button and paste the generated installation fragment.

b. If you will generate the documentation using a command-line script, select the **Oxygen XML WebHelp** option and continue with these steps:
   i. Copy the generated HTML fragment and click **Finish**.
   ii. Create an XML file (for example, `feedback-install.xml`) with the generated installation fragment.
   iii. Use the `webhelp.fragment.feedback` parameter in your command-line script to specify the path to the file you just created. For example:

```
dita.bat -Dwebhelp.fragment.feedback=c:\path\to\feedback-install.xml
```

8. [Optional] If you want the **Oxygen Feedback** comments component to fill the entire page width, contribute a custom CSS file (use the `args.css` parameter to reference it) that contains the following style rule:

```
div.footer {
  float: none;
}
```

For more details about **Oxygen Feedback**, how to configure settings, moderate comments, view statistics, and much more, see the **Oxygen Feedback** user guide.

Also, to see a demonstration of **Oxygen Feedback** being integrated into WebHelp Responsive output, watch our Webinar: **DITA Publishing and Feedback with Oxygen Tools**.

Customizing WebHelp Responsive Output

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for customizing the **WebHelp Responsive** output to suit your specific needs. The **WebHelp Responsive** output is based upon the *Bootstrap* responsive front-end framework and is available for DITA document types.

To change the overall appearance of your **WebHelp Responsive** output, you can use several different customization methods or a combination of methods. If you are familiar with CSS and coding, you can style your WebHelp output through your own custom stylesheets. You can also customize your output by modifying existing templates, create your own layout pages, or by configuring certain options and parameters in the transformation scenario.

This section includes topics that explain various ways to customize your WebHelp Responsive system output, such as how to configure the tiles on the main page, add logos in the title area, integrate with social media, localizing the interface, and much more.

For an in-depth look at WebHelp Responsive features and some customization tips, watch our Webinar: **DITA Publishing and Feedback with Oxygen Tools**.

Working with Publishing Templates

An *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 2232)* defines all aspects of the layout and styles of the **WebHelp Responsive** output. It is a self-contained customization package stored as a ZIP archive or folder that can

easily be shared with others. It provides the primary method for customizing the output. The recommended method for customizing the *WebHelp Responsive* output is to use a custom publishing template.

This section contains topics about how to create, edit, publish, and share publishing templates.

Related Information:
Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations *(on page 994)*

How to Create a Publishing Template

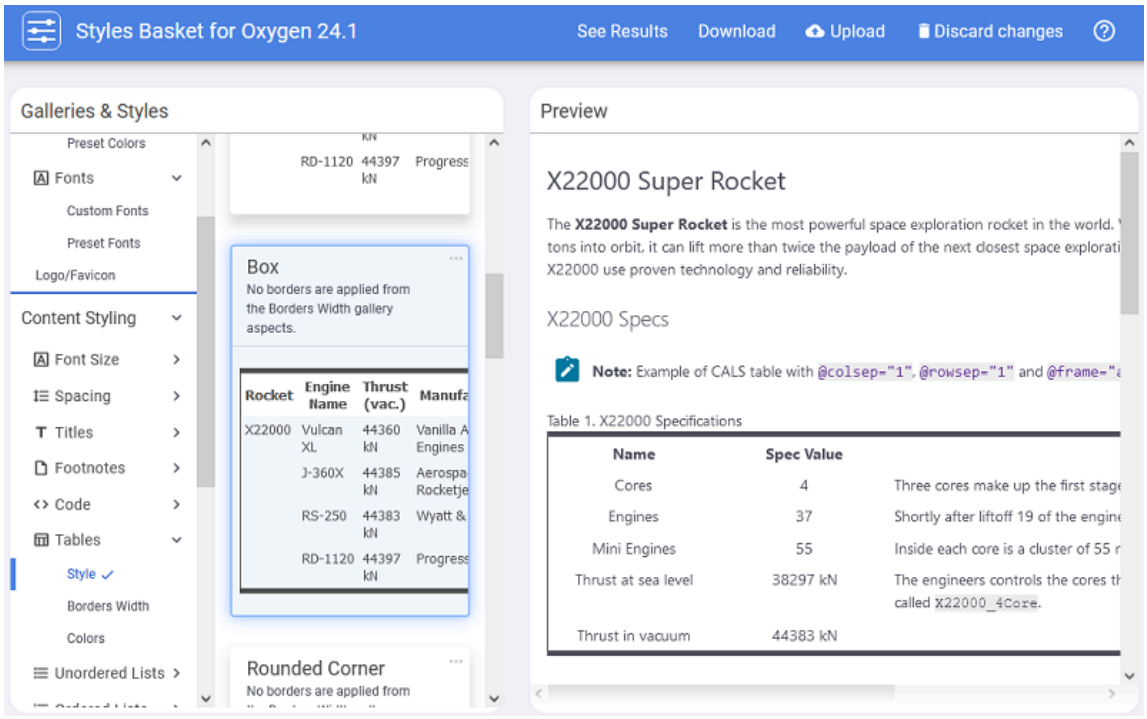
To create a customization, you can use the **Oxygen Styles Basket**, start from scratch or from an existing template, and then adapt it according to your needs.

Creating a Publishing Template Using the Oxygen Styles Basket

Oxygen Styles Basket is a handy free-to-use web-based visual tool that helps you create your own *Publishing Template Package* to customize your **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** and/or **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenarios.

To create an *Oxygen Publishing Template*, simply visit the galleries and pick styling aspects. Various different types of styles can be selected (such as fonts, tables, lists, spacing, code) and all changes can be seen in the **Preview** pane. You can also click the **See Results** button to generate a preview of either PDF or WebHelp output.

Figure 236. Oxygen Styles Basket Interface



After creating your custom style, you can **Download** the current template, then back in **Oxygen**, click **Choose Custom Publishing Template** and select the downloaded archive in the transformation dialog to apply it.

At any time you can **Upload** a previously generated template for further customization.

Tip:
For more information about the **Oxygen Styles Basket**, see the following resources:

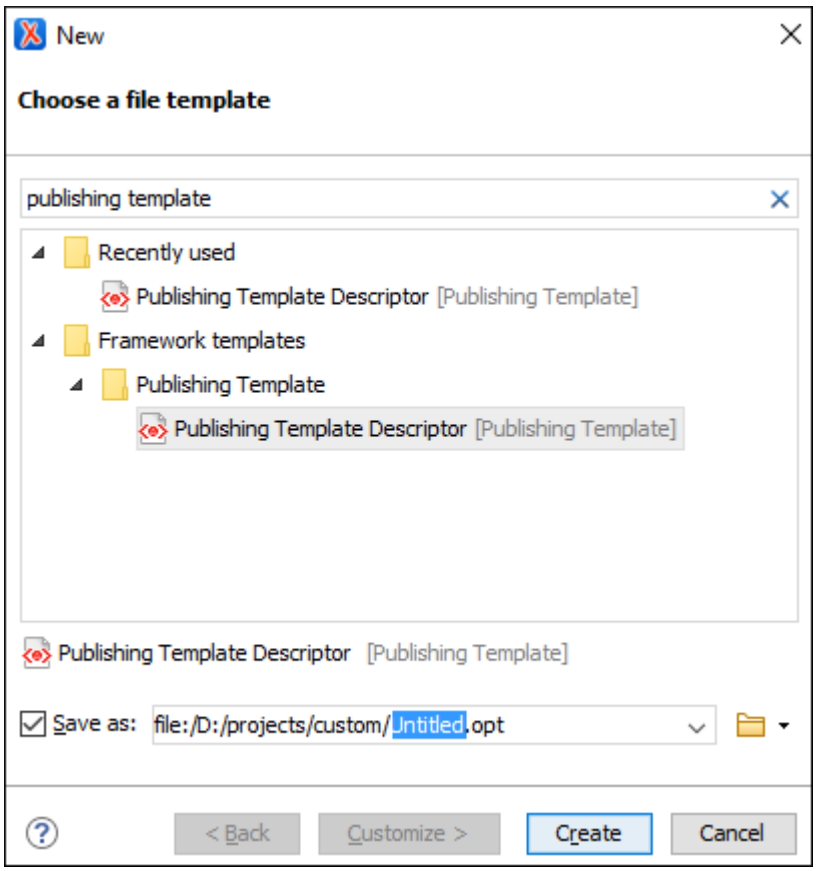
- **Video: Introducing the New Oxygen Styles Basket**
- **Webinar: Using Oxygen Styles Basket to Create CSS Customization from Scratch**

Creating a Publishing Template Starting from Scratch

To create a new *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 2232)*, follow these steps:

1. Create a folder that will contain all the template files.
2. In **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, open the new document wizard (use **File > New** or the **New** toolbar button), then choose the **Publishing Template Descriptor** template.

Figure 237. Choosing the Publishing Template Descriptor Document Template



3. Save the `.opt` file into your customization directory.
4. Open the `.opt` file in the editor and customize it to suit your needs.

Creating a Publishing Template Starting from an Existing Template

If you are using a **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** or **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation, the easiest way to create a new *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 2232)* is to select an existing template

in the transformation scenario dialog box and use the **Save template as** button to save that template into a new template package that can be used as a starting point.

To create a new *Oxygen Publishing Template*, follow these steps:

1. Open the transformation scenario dialog box and select the publishing template you want to export and use as a starting point.
2. **Optional:** You can set one or more transformation parameters from the **Parameters** tab and the edited parameters will be exported along with the selected template. You will see which parameters will be exported in the dialog box that is displayed after the next step.
3. Click the **Save template as** button.

   Step Result: This opens a template package configuration dialog box that contains some options and displays the parameters that will be exported to your template package.
4. Specify a name for the new template.
5. **Optional:** Specify a template description.
6. **Optional:** The same publishing template package can contain both a WebHelp Responsive and PDF customization and you can use the same template in both types of transformations (**DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** or **DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS**). You can use the **Include WebHelp customization** and **Include PDF customization** options to specify whether your custom template will include both types of customizations.
7. **Optional:** For **WebHelp Responsive** customizations, you can select the **Include HTML Page Layout Files** option if you want to copy the default *HTML Page Layout Files (on page 1010)* in your template package. They are helpful if you want to change the structure of the generated HTML pages.
8. In the **Save as** field, specify the name and path of the ZIP file where the template will be saved.

   Step Result: A new ZIP archive will be created on disk in the specified location with the specified name.
9. Open the `.opt` file in the editor and customize it to suit your needs.

For more information about creating and customizing publishing templates, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/zNmXfKWXwO8

Related information

Publishing Template Package Contents for PDF Customizations *(on page 1183)*
Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations *(on page 994)*

How to Create a Dark Mode-Ready Publishing Template

How to Create a Dark Mode-Ready Publishing Template From a Default One

By default, two templates supports both light and dark mode: **Light** and **Oxygen**. The following example uses the **Light** template:

1. Copy the existing Publishing Template (see Creating a Publishing Template Starting from an Existing Template *(on page 1190)*).
2. Edit the `light-theme.css` stylesheet with the colors you want to add/modify:

```
:root {
  --wh-primary-bg: #e3e3e3;
  ...
  --wh-title-color: #333;
}

@media screen {
  :root[data-wh-theme="dark"] {
    color-scheme: dark;
    --wh-primary-bg: #293136;
    ...
    --wh-title-color: #bfbfbf;
  }
}
```

3. If you added new color variables, add CSS rules using them (in `light.css` for example):

```
*[class ~= "topic/title"] {
  color: var(--wh-title-color);
}
```

4. Duplicate the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
5. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
6. Click **OK** to save the changes, then run the transformation scenario.

How to Create a Dark Mode-Ready Publishing Template From Scratch

1. Create a Publishing Template, see Creating a Publishing Template Starting from Scratch *(on page 1189)*.
2. Create a custom CSS stylesheet (`theme.css` for example) and add the light colors:

Note:
Built-in CSS rules will automatically use the variables defined here and in the next step.

```
:root {
  /* General */
  --wh-primary-bg: #fff;
  --wh-primary-color: #000;
  --wh-secondary-bg: #000;
  --wh-secondary-color: #fff;
  --wh-strong-color: #888;
  --wh-soft-color: #ccc;
  --wh-subtle-color: #f2f2f2;

  --wh-top-menu-bg: #e6e6e6;
  --wh-main-page-toc-bg: #f2f8ff;
  --wh-main-page-toc-border: #c0c0c0;
  --wh-main-page-shortdesc-color: #0d1a2b;
  --wh-close-toc-icon-border: #343a40;
  --wh-close-toc-button-shadow: rgba(0,0,0,.16);

  --wh-link-color: #337ab7;
  --wh-label-color: #666;
  --wh-pre-bg: #eee;
  --wh-tooltip-color: #5185cb;
  --wh-code-color: #800000;
  --wh-boolean-color: #008000;
  --wh-state-color: #ff0000;
  --wh-syntaxdiagram-color: #800000;
  --wh-markup-color: #639;
  --wh-fig-border: #c0c0c0;
  --wh-caution-bg: #ffd100;
  --wh-danger-bg: #c8102e;
  --wh-warning-bg: #ff8200;
  --wh-hazardstatement-bg: #0072ce;
  --wh-indexterm-bg: #fdf;
  --wh-go2top-bg: #444;
  --wh-go2top-border: #999;
  --wh-toggle-border: #347bb7;

  /* Search */
  --wh-search-color: #c93416;
  --wh-search-breadcrumb-color: #ccc;
  --wh-search-loader-base-bg: #eaecec;
  --wh-search-loader-glow-bg: #f3f3f3;
  --wh-search-facets-bg: #e3ebf3;
```

```
  --wh-search-facets-disabled-color: #b7b6b6;
  --wh-search-facets-border: #ebebeb;
  --wh-search-results-facets-bg: #f5f5f5;
  --wh-search-results-facets-color: #212c37;
  --wh-highlight-bg: #ffff88;
  --wh-scroll-bg: #d6d6d6;

  /* Change Tracking */
  --wh-oxy-delete-color: #ff0000;
  --wh-oxy-insert-color: #0000ff;
  --wh-oxy-change-done-color: #808080;
  --wh-oxy-range-color: #800000;
  --wh-oxy-comment-border: #ffa500;
  --wh-oxy-change-bg: #ffff00;
  --wh-oxy-attributes-footnote-bg: #00ffff;
  --wh-oxy-comment-footnote-bg: #ffffaa;
  --wh-oxy-delete-footnote-bg: #ffaaaa;
  --wh-oxy-insert-footnote-bg: #ddddff;

  /* Syntax Highlight */
  --wh-hl-json_key-color: #7263b9;
  --wh-hl-keyword-color: #7f0055;
  --wh-hl-string-color: #2a00ff;
  --wh-hl-comment-color: #006400;
  --wh-hl-directive-color: #8b26c9;
  --wh-hl-tag-color: #000096;
  --wh-hl-attribute-color: #ff7935;
  --wh-hl-value-color: #993300;
  --wh-hl-html-color: #000080;
  --wh-hl-xsl-color: #0066ff;
  --wh-hl-annotation-color: #808080;
  --wh-hl-tag-doctype-comment-color: #3f5fbf;
  --wh-hl-tag-doctype-color: #0000ff;

  /* OpenAPI */
  --wh-openapi-border: #c5c5c5;
  --wh-openapi-post-bg: #c2f2cb;
  --wh-openapi-get-bg: #ccebff;
  --wh-openapi-delete-bg: #ffceca;
  --wh-openapi-put-bg: #ffe7c7;
  --wh-openapi-head-bg: #f4e6ff;
}
```

3. In the same stylesheet, add the dark colors:

Note:
If you are using the same color in both light and dark modes, you only need to define it for the light mode.

```
@media screen {
  :root[data-wh-theme="dark"] {
    color-scheme: dark;
    /* General */
    --wh-primary-bg: #212529;
    --wh-primary-color: #e3e3e3;
    --wh-secondary-bg: #212529;
    --wh-secondary-color: #e3e3e3;
    --wh-strong-color: #e0e0e0;
    --wh-subtle-color: #3a3b3c;

    --wh-top-menu-bg: #2b3035;
    --wh-main-page-toc-bg: #22303c;
    --wh-main-page-shortdesc-color: #d5d5d5;
    --wh-close-toc-icon-border: var(--wh-primary-color);
    --wh-close-toc-button-shadow: rgba(255,255,255,.16);

    --wh-link-color: #76a5e0;
    --wh-label-color: #bbb;
    --wh-pre-bg: #444;
    --wh-code-color: #ffa500;
    --wh-boolean-color: #66ff66;
    --wh-state-color: #ff6666;
    --wh-syntaxdiagram-color: #ff4d4d;
    --wh-markup-color: #d1b3ff;
    --wh-caution-bg: #7f6000;
    --wh-danger-bg: #62002b;
    --wh-warning-bg: #993500;
    --wh-hazardstatement-bg: #0025cb;

    /* Search */
    --wh-search-color: #a2311a;
    --wh-search-breadcrumb-color: #555555;
    --wh-search-loader-base-bg: #3a3f44;
    --wh-search-loader-glow-bg: #4b525a;
    --wh-search-facets-bg: #2d333b;
```

```
--wh-search-facets-disabled-color: var(--wh-label-color);
--wh-search-facets-border: #444;
--wh-search-results-facets-bg: #2c2f35;
--wh-search-results-facets-color: #d8dee9;
--wh-highlight-bg: #777700;
--wh-scroll-bg: #444;

/* Change Tracking */
--wh-oxy-delete-color: #ff6b6b;
--wh-oxy-insert-color: #66aaff;
--wh-oxy-change-done-color: #ccc;
--wh-oxy-range-color: #ff4d4d;
--wh-oxy-comment-border: #995f00;
--wh-oxy-change-bg: #666600;
--wh-oxy-attributes-footnote-bg: #006666;
--wh-oxy-comment-footnote-bg: #363600;
--wh-oxy-delete-footnote-bg: #994d4d;
--wh-oxy-insert-footnote-bg: #666699;

/* Syntax Highlight */
--wh-hl-json_key-color: #b5adda;
--wh-hl-keyword-color: #ff89d8;
--wh-hl-string-color: #b7a8ff;
--wh-hl-comment-color: #00cf00;
--wh-hl-directive-color: #d0a0ed;
--wh-hl-tag-color: #aaaaff;
--wh-hl-attribute-color: #ff9763;
--wh-hl-value-color: #ff9661;
--wh-hl-html-color: #a9a9ff;
--wh-hl-xsl-color: #80b2ff;
--wh-hl-annotation-color: #b0b0b0;
--wh-hl-tag-doctype-comment-color: #a2b2e0;
--wh-hl-tag-doctype-color: #a8a8ff;

/* OpenAPI */
--wh-openapi-border: #8a8a8a;
--wh-openapi-post-bg: #7eae7a;
--wh-openapi-get-bg: #7a9fcf;
--wh-openapi-delete-bg: #b2746e;
--wh-openapi-put-bg: #bfae86;
--wh-openapi-head-bg: #7a70b2;
```

```
  }
}
```

4. Add custom variables for elements that require two color or image variants, such as:

```
:root {
  ...
  --wh-breadcrumb-color: #878787;
  --wh-related-links-color: #5185cb;
  --wh-publication-toc-color: #7b7a7a;

  --wh-search-image: url("resources/images/custom.png");
}

@media screen {
  :root[data-wh-theme="dark"] {
    color-scheme: dark;
    ...
    --wh-breadcrumb-color: #6ab1e3;
    --wh-related-links-color: #0d6efd;
    --wh-publication-toc-color: var(--wh-breadcrumb-color);

    --wh-search-image: url("resources/images/custom_dark.png");
  }
}
```

If you added new color variables, add CSS rules using them (in `custom.css` for example):

```
.wh_breadcrumb ol{
  color: var(--wh-breadcrumb-color);
}
.related-links a,
.related-links a:visited {
  color: var(--wh-related-links-color);
  padding-bottom: .3em;
}
.wh_publication_toc a,
.wh_publication_toc a:visited,
.wh_publication_toc a:hover {
  color: var(--wh-publication-toc-color);
}
.wh_search_input{
  padding: 115px 0;
  background: var(--wh-search-image) right no-repeat var(--wh-search-input-bg);
}
```

5. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template, add your custom CSS stylesheets in the `<resources>` section and declare the parameter in the `<parameters>` section:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
    ...
    <resources>
      <css file="theme.css"/>
      <css file="custom.css"/>
    </resources>
    <parameters>
      ...
      <parameter name="webhelp.enable.dark.mode" value="yes"/>
    </parameters>
    ...
```

6. Duplicate the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
7. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
8. Click **OK** to save the changes, then run the transformation scenario.

Restriction:
If you open the output locally in **Firefox**, the theme settings may not persist between pages. This happens because Firefox treats each local page as a separate origin, preventing shared storage of theme preferences. If you deploy the output on an HTTP server or use another browser, theme settings will persist.

Related information
Using CSS Inspector to Identify Content for Custom CSS File *(on page 1055)*

How to Migrate a Publishing Template to be Dark Mode-Ready

If you already have a publishing template (created manually or via the **Oxygen Styles Basket**) prior to version 28.0, you can migrate it to support dark mode by following these steps:

1. Create a custom CSS stylesheet (`theme.css` for example) and add the default colors:

Note:
Built-in CSS rules will automatically use the variables defined here and in the next step.

```
:root {
  /* General */
```

```
--wh-primary-bg: #fff;
--wh-primary-color: #000;
--wh-secondary-bg: #000;
--wh-secondary-color: #fff;
--wh-strong-color: #888;
--wh-soft-color: #ccc;
--wh-subtle-color: #f2f2f2;

--wh-top-menu-bg: #e6e6e6;
--wh-main-page-toc-bg: #f2f8ff;
--wh-main-page-toc-border: #c0c0c0;
--wh-main-page-shortdesc-color: #0d1a2b;
--wh-close-toc-icon-border: #343a40;
--wh-close-toc-button-shadow: rgba(0,0,0,.16);

--wh-link-color: #337ab7;
--wh-label-color: #666;
--wh-pre-bg: #eee;
--wh-tooltip-color: #5185cb;
--wh-code-color: #800000;
--wh-boolean-color: #008000;
--wh-state-color: #ff0000;
--wh-syntaxdiagram-color: #800000;
--wh-markup-color: #639;
--wh-fig-border: #c0c0c0;
--wh-caution-bg: #ffd100;
--wh-danger-bg: #c8102e;
--wh-warning-bg: #ff8200;
--wh-hazardstatement-bg: #0072ce;
--wh-indexterm-bg: #fdf;
--wh-go2top-bg: #444;
--wh-go2top-border: #999;
--wh-toggle-border: #347bb7;

/* Search */
--wh-search-color: #c93416;
--wh-search-breadcrumb-color: #ccc;
--wh-search-loader-base-bg: #eaecec;
--wh-search-loader-glow-bg: #f3f3f3;
--wh-search-facets-bg: #e3ebf3;
--wh-search-facets-disabled-color: #b7b6b6;
--wh-search-facets-border: #ebebeb;
```

```
  --wh-search-results-facets-bg: #f5f5f5;
  --wh-search-results-facets-color: #212c37;
  --wh-highlight-bg: #ffff88;
  --wh-scroll-bg: #d6d6d6;

  /* Change Tracking */
  --wh-oxy-delete-color: #ff0000;
  --wh-oxy-insert-color: #0000ff;
  --wh-oxy-change-done-color: #808080;
  --wh-oxy-range-color: #800000;
  --wh-oxy-comment-border: #ffa500;
  --wh-oxy-change-bg: #ffff00;
  --wh-oxy-attributes-footnote-bg: #00ffff;
  --wh-oxy-comment-footnote-bg: #ffffaa;
  --wh-oxy-delete-footnote-bg: #ffaaaa;
  --wh-oxy-insert-footnote-bg: #ddddff;

  /* Syntax Highlight */
  --wh-hl-json_key-color: #7263b9;
  --wh-hl-keyword-color: #7f0055;
  --wh-hl-string-color: #2a00ff;
  --wh-hl-comment-color: #006400;
  --wh-hl-directive-color: #8b26c9;
  --wh-hl-tag-color: #000096;
  --wh-hl-attribute-color: #ff7935;
  --wh-hl-value-color: #993300;
  --wh-hl-html-color: #000080;
  --wh-hl-xsl-color: #0066ff;
  --wh-hl-annotation-color: #808080;
  --wh-hl-tag-doctype-comment-color: #3f5fbf;
  --wh-hl-tag-doctype-color: #0000ff;

  /* OpenAPI */
  --wh-openapi-border: #c5c5c5;
  --wh-openapi-post-bg: #c2f2cb;
  --wh-openapi-get-bg: #ccebff;
  --wh-openapi-delete-bg: #ffceca;
  --wh-openapi-put-bg: #ffe7c7;
  --wh-openapi-head-bg: #f4e6ff;
}

@media screen {
```

```
:root[data-wh-theme="dark"] {
  color-scheme: dark;
  /* General */
  --wh-primary-bg: #212529;
  --wh-primary-color: #e3e3e3;
  --wh-secondary-bg: #212529;
  --wh-secondary-color: #e3e3e3;
  --wh-strong-color: #e0e0e0;
  --wh-subtle-color: #3a3b3c;

  --wh-top-menu-bg: #2b3035;
  --wh-main-page-toc-bg: #22303c;
  --wh-main-page-shortdesc-color: #d5d5d5;
  --wh-close-toc-icon-border: var(--wh-primary-color);
  --wh-close-toc-button-shadow: rgba(255,255,255,.16);

  --wh-link-color: #76a5e0;
  --wh-label-color: #bbb;
  --wh-pre-bg: #444;
  --wh-code-color: #ffa500;
  --wh-boolean-color: #66ff66;
  --wh-state-color: #ff6666;
  --wh-syntaxdiagram-color: #ff4d4d;
  --wh-markup-color: #d1b3ff;
  --wh-caution-bg: #7f6000;
  --wh-danger-bg: #62002b;
  --wh-warning-bg: #993500;
  --wh-hazardstatement-bg: #0025cb;

  /* Search */
  --wh-search-color: #a2311a;
  --wh-search-breadcrumb-color: #555555;
  --wh-search-loader-base-bg: #3a3f44;
  --wh-search-loader-glow-bg: #4b525a;
  --wh-search-facets-bg: #2d333b;
  --wh-search-facets-disabled-color: var(--wh-label-color);
  --wh-search-facets-border: #444;
  --wh-search-results-facets-bg: #2c2f35;
  --wh-search-results-facets-color: #d8dee9;
  --wh-highlight-bg: #777700;
  --wh-scroll-bg: #444;
```

```
    /* Change Tracking */
    --wh-oxy-delete-color: #ff6b6b;
    --wh-oxy-insert-color: #66aaff;
    --wh-oxy-change-done-color: #ccc;
    --wh-oxy-range-color: #ff4d4d;
    --wh-oxy-comment-border: #995f00;
    --wh-oxy-change-bg: #666600;
    --wh-oxy-attributes-footnote-bg: #006666;
    --wh-oxy-comment-footnote-bg: #363600;
    --wh-oxy-delete-footnote-bg: #994d4d;
    --wh-oxy-insert-footnote-bg: #666699;

    /* Syntax Highlight */
    --wh-hl-json_key-color: #b5adda;
    --wh-hl-keyword-color: #ff89d8;
    --wh-hl-string-color: #b7a8ff;
    --wh-hl-comment-color: #00cf00;
    --wh-hl-directive-color: #d0a0ed;
    --wh-hl-tag-color: #aaaaff;
    --wh-hl-attribute-color: #ff9763;
    --wh-hl-value-color: #ff9661;
    --wh-hl-html-color: #a9a9ff;
    --wh-hl-xsl-color: #80b2ff;
    --wh-hl-annotation-color: #b0b0b0;
    --wh-hl-tag-doctype-comment-color: #a2b2e0;
    --wh-hl-tag-doctype-color: #a8a8ff;

    /* OpenAPI */
    --wh-openapi-border: #8a8a8a;
    --wh-openapi-post-bg: #7eae7a;
    --wh-openapi-get-bg: #7a9fcf;
    --wh-openapi-delete-bg: #b2746e;
    --wh-openapi-put-bg: #bfae86;
    --wh-openapi-head-bg: #7a70b2;
  }
}
```

2. If your custom stylesheets include color definitions, move them into the file created in the previous step:

Note:
If you are using the same color in both light and dark modes, you only need to define it for the light mode.

```
.topictitle1,
.topictitle2,
.topictitle3,
.topictitle4,
.topictitle5,
.topictitle6 {
  color: #070d59;
}
```

```
:root {
  ...
  --wh-title-color: #070d59;
}

@media screen {
  :root[data-wh-theme="dark"] {
    --wh-title-color: #5ca6e4;
  }
}

.topictitle1,
.topictitle2,
.topictitle3,
.topictitle4,
.topictitle5,
.topictitle6 {
  color: var(--wh-title-color);
}
```

3. Open your publishing template descriptor file *(on page 994)* and add the `theme.css` stylesheet in the `<resources>` section and declare the parameter in the `<parameters>` section:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
    ...
    <resources>
      <css file="theme.css"/>
      <css file="styles.css"/>
```

```
    <css file="custom.css"/>
  </resources>
  <parameters>
    ...
    <parameter name="webhelp.enable.dark.mode" value="yes"/>
  </parameters>
  ...
```

4. Run the transformation scenario with the updated template.

How to Edit a Packed Publishing Template

To edit an existing *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 2232)* package, follow these steps:

1. Unzip the ZIP archive associated with the *Oxygen Publishing Template* in a separate folder.
2. Link the folder associated with the template in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, you can modify the resources (CSS, JS, fonts) within the *Oxygen Publishing Template* folder to fit your needs.
4. Open the publishing template descriptor file (`.opt` extension) in the editor and modify it to suit your needs.
5. **Optional:** Once you finish your customization, you can archive the folder as a ZIP file.

Related Information:
Publishing Template Package Contents for PDF Customizations *(on page 1183)*
Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations *(on page 994)*

How to Add a Publishing Template to the Publishing Templates Gallery

To add the publishing template to your templates gallery, follow these steps:

1. Open the transformation scenario dialog box by editing a WebHelp Responsive transformation.
2. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Configure Publishing Templates Gallery** link to.
   This will open the preferences page.
3. Click the **Add** button and specify the location of your template directory.
   Your template directory is now added to the **Additional Publishing Templates Galleries** list.
4. Click **OK** to return to the transformation scenario dialog box.
   All the templates contained in your template directory will be displayed in the preview pane along with all the built-in templates.

How to Use a Publishing Template from a Command Line

Before you run the transformation, you need to know if the publishing template has a single template descriptor file or multiple descriptor files *(on page 994)*. If you don't know, open the ZIP archive or folder and check for files with the `.opt` extension.

Using a Publishing Template with a Single Descriptor

A template with a single descriptor is used for a single customization.

To run from a command line, you need to use the webhelp.publishing.template parameter *(on page 1144)*. This parameter specifies the path to the ZIP archive (or root folder) that contains your custom WebHelp Responsive template.

Command-Line Example:

- Windows

```
dita.bat
   --format=webhelp-responsive
   --input=c:\path\to\mySample.ditamap
   --output=c:\path\to\output
   -Dwebhelp.publishing.template=custom-template
```

- Linux/macOS

```
dita
   --format=webhelp-responsive
   --input=/path/to/mySample.ditamap
   --output=/path/to/output
   -Dwebhelp.publishing.template=custom-template
```

Tip:
You can also start the `dita` process by passing it a DITA OT Project File. Inside the project file you can specify as parameters for the `webhelp-responsive` transformation type the WebHelp-related parameters.

Using a Publishing Template with Multiple Descriptors

A template with multiple descriptors contains multiple customizations.

Because the publishing template is self-contained, it is used to reuse resources that are common to multiple publications.

To run from a command line, you need to use the webhelp.publishing.template *(on page 1144)* and webhelp.publishing.template.descriptor *(on page 1144)* parameters.

The webhelp.publishing.template *(on page 1144)* parameter specifies the path to the ZIP archive (or root folder) while the webhelp.publishing.template.descriptor *(on page 1144)* parameter specifies the name of the descriptor you want to use.

Command-Line Example:

- Windows

```
dita.bat
   --format=webhelp-responsive
   --input=c:\path\to\mySample.ditamap
   --output=c:\path\to\output
   -Dwebhelp.publishing.template=custom-template
   -Dwebhelp.publishing.template.descriptor=flowers.opt
```

- Linux/macOS

```
dita
   --format=webhelp-responsive
   --input=/path/to/mySample.ditamap
   --output=/path/to/output
   -Dwebhelp.publishing.template=custom-template
   -Dwebhelp.publishing.template.descriptor=flowers.opt
```

Tip:
You can also start the `dita` process by passing it a DITA OT Project File. Inside the project file you can specify as parameters for the `webhelp-responsive` transformation type the WebHelp-related parameters.

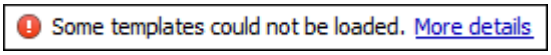
How to Share a Publishing Template

To share a publishing template with others, following these steps:

1. Copy your template in a new folder in your project.
2. Go to **Options > Preferences > DITA > Publishing** and add that new folder to the list.
3. Switch the option as the bottom of that preferences page to **Project Options**.
4. Share your project file (`.xpr`).

Troubleshooting: Errors Encountered when Loading Templates

When the **Templates** tab of a **WebHelp Responsive** transformation scenario dialog box is opened, all templates (built-in and custom) are loaded and validated. Specifically, certain elements in the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* are checked for validity. If errors are encountered that prevents the template from loading, the following message will be displayed toward the bottom of the dialog box:



If you click the **More details** link, a window will open with more information about the encountered error. For example, it might offer a hint that the element is missing from the expected descriptor file structure *(on page 994)*.

Also, if a template could be loaded, but certain elements could not be found in the descriptor file *(on page 994)*, a warning icon (⚠) will be displayed on the template's image (in the **Templates** tab of the transformation dialog box). For example, this happens if a valid preview-image element *(on page 997)* cannot be found.

Converting Old Templates to Newer Versions

WebHelp templates that were created in older versions of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can be converted to the Publishing Template format that was introduced in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 20.0. This section contains procedures for converting old templates depending on the version they were created in.

Important:
You must convert each version sequentially, one at a time (for example, you cannot convert version 27.0 directly to version 28.0, you must first convert it to 27.1 and then to 28.0). Make sure you follow the procedure in each migration topic to ensure a smooth transition and avoid compatibility issues.

Convert Version 27.1 Publishing Templates to Version 28

If you have a custom Publishing Template that was created in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 27.1, the following conversion procedure is required for the template to be compatible with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 28.0:

1. In the **Project Explorer** view, add the root directory for your custom Publishing Template (you can use a linked folder *(on page 244)* and the easiest way to do this is to drag and drop the folder).

   Note:
   If your template is stored as a ZIP archive, you first need to unzip it.

2. Expand your template directory, right-click the `page-templates` subfolder, and select **Refactoring > XML Refactoring**.
3. In the **XML Refactoring** dialog box, scroll to the **Publishing Template** section and select **Migrate HTML Page Layout Files to v28**, then click **Next**.
4. The **Scope** should be left as **Selected project resources**.
5. You can use the **Preview** button to open a comparison panel where you can review all the changes that will be made by the refactoring operation before applying the changes.
6. Click **Finish** to perform the conversion.

Result: The converted Publishing Template can now be used in version 28.0.

Related information

Convert Version 25 - 27.0 Publishing Templates to Version 27.1 *(on page 1051)*
Convert Version 24.1 Publishing Templates to Version 25 *(on page 1051)*
Convert Version 24.0 Publishing Templates to Version 24.1 *(on page 1052)*
Convert Version 22 - 23 Publishing Templates to Version 24 *(on page 1053)*
Convert Version 21 Publishing Templates to Version 22 *(on page 1053)*
Convert Version 20 Publishing Templates to Version 21 *(on page 1054)*

Convert Version 25 - 27.0 Publishing Templates to Version 27.1

If you have a custom Publishing Template that was created in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 25, 26, or 27.0, the following conversion procedure is required for the template to be compatible with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 27.1:

1. In the **Project Explorer** view, add the root directory for your custom Publishing Template (you can use a linked folder *(on page 244)* and the easiest way to do this is to drag and drop the folder).

   > **Note:**
   > If your template is stored as a ZIP archive, you first need to unzip it.

2. Expand your template directory, right-click the `page-templates` subfolder, and select **Refactoring > XML Refactoring**.
3. In the **XML Refactoring** dialog box, scroll to the **Publishing Template** section and select **Migrate HTML Page Layout Files to v27.1**, then click **Next**.
4. The **Scope** should be left as **Selected project resources**.
5. You can use the **Preview** button to open a comparison panel where you can review all the changes that will be made by the refactoring operation before applying the changes.
6. Click **Finish** to perform the conversion.

Result: The converted Publishing Template can now be used in version 27.1.

Related information

Convert Version 24.1 Publishing Templates to Version 25 *(on page 1051)*
Convert Version 24.0 Publishing Templates to Version 24.1 *(on page 1052)*
Convert Version 22 - 23 Publishing Templates to Version 24 *(on page 1053)*
Convert Version 21 Publishing Templates to Version 22 *(on page 1053)*
Convert Version 20 Publishing Templates to Version 21 *(on page 1054)*

Convert Version 24.1 Publishing Templates to Version 25

If you have a custom Publishing Template that was created in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 24.1, the following conversion procedure is required for the template to be compatible with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 25.0:

1. In the **Project Explorer** view, add the root directory for your custom Publishing Template (you can use a linked folder *(on page 244)* and the easiest way to do this is to drag and drop the folder).

   > **Note:**
   > If your template is stored as a ZIP archive, you first need to unzip it.

2. Expand your template directory, right-click the `page-templates` subfolder, and select **Refactoring > XML Refactoring**.
3. In the **XML Refactoring** dialog box, scroll to the **Publishing Template** section and select **Migrate HTML Page Layout Files to v25**, then click **Next**.
4. The **Scope** should be left as **Selected project resources**.
5. You can use the **Preview** button to open a comparison panel where you can review all the changes that will be made by the refactoring operation before applying the changes.
6. Click **Finish** to perform the conversion.

Result: The converted Publishing Template can now be used in version 25.0.

Related information

Convert Version 22 - 23 Publishing Templates to Version 24 *(on page 1053)*

Convert Version 21 Publishing Templates to Version 22 *(on page 1053)*

Convert Version 20 Publishing Templates to Version 21 *(on page 1054)*

Convert Version 24.0 Publishing Templates to Version 24.1

If you have a custom Publishing Template that was created in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 24.0, the following conversion procedure is required for the template to be compatible with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 24.1:

1. In the **Project Explorer** view, add the root directory for your custom Publishing Template (you can use a linked folder *(on page 244)* and the easiest way to do this is to drag and drop the folder).

   > **Note:**
   > If your template is stored as a ZIP archive, you first need to unzip it.

2. Expand your template directory, right-click the `page-templates` subfolder, and select **Refactoring > XML Refactoring**.
3. In the **XML Refactoring** dialog box, scroll to the **Publishing Template** section and select **Migrate HTML Page Layout Files to v24.1**, then click **Next**.
4. The **Scope** should be left as **Selected project resources**.
5. You can use the **Preview** button to open a comparison panel where you can review all the changes that will be made by the refactoring operation before applying the changes.
6. Click **Finish** to perform the conversion.

Result: The converted Publishing Template can now be used in version 24.1.

Related information

Convert Version 22 - 23 Publishing Templates to Version 24 *(on page 1053)*
Convert Version 21 Publishing Templates to Version 22 *(on page 1053)*
Convert Version 20 Publishing Templates to Version 21 *(on page 1054)*

Convert Version 22 - 23 Publishing Templates to Version 24

If you have a custom Publishing Template that was created in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 23.0 or 23.1, the following conversion procedure is required for the template to be compatible with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 24:

1. In the **Project Explorer** view, add the root directory for your custom Publishing Template (you can use a linked folder *(on page 244)* and the easiest way to do this is to drag and drop the folder).

   Note:
   If your template is stored as a ZIP archive, you first need to unzip it.

2. Expand your template directory, right-click the `page-templates` subfolder, and select **Refactoring > XML Refactoring**.
3. In the **XML Refactoring** dialog box, scroll to the **Publishing Template** section and select **Migrate HTML Page Layout Files to v24**, then click **Next**.
4. The **Scope** should be left as **Selected project resources**.
5. You can use the **Preview** button to open a comparison panel where you can review all the changes that will be made by the refactoring operation before applying the changes.
6. Click **Finish** to perform the conversion.

Result: The converted Publishing Template can now be used in version 24.

Related information

Convert Version 24.0 Publishing Templates to Version 24.1 *(on page 1052)*
Convert Version 21 Publishing Templates to Version 22 *(on page 1053)*
Convert Version 20 Publishing Templates to Version 21 *(on page 1054)*

Convert Version 21 Publishing Templates to Version 22

If you have a custom Publishing Template that was created in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 21.0 or 21.1, the following conversion procedure is required for the template to be compatible with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 22:

1. In the **Project Explorer** view, add the root directory for your custom Publishing Template (you can use a linked folder *(on page 244)* and the easiest way to do this is to drag and drop the folder).

   > **Note:**
   > If your template is stored as a ZIP archive, you first need to unzip it.

2. Expand your template directory, right-click the `page-templates` subfolder, and select **Refactoring > XML Refactoring**.
3. In the **XML Refactoring** dialog box, scroll to the **Publishing Template** section and select **Migrate HTML Page Layout Files to v22**, then click **Next**.
4. The **Scope** should be left as **Selected project resources**.
5. You can use the **Preview** button to open a comparison panel where you can review all the changes that will be made by the refactoring operation before applying the changes.
6. Click **Finish** to perform the conversion.

Result: The converted Publishing Template can now be used in version 22.

Related Information:
Convert Version 24.0 Publishing Templates to Version 24.1 *(on page 1052)*
Convert Version 22 - 23 Publishing Templates to Version 24 *(on page 1053)*
Convert Version 20 Publishing Templates to Version 21 *(on page 1054)*

Convert Version 20 Publishing Templates to Version 21

If you have a custom Publishing Template that was created in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 20.0 or 20.1, the following conversion procedure is required for the template to be compatible with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 21.0 or 21.1:

1. In the **Project Explorer** view, add the root directory for your custom Publishing Template (you can use a linked folder *(on page 244)* and the easiest way to do this is to drag and drop the folder).

   > **Note:**
   > If your template is stored as a ZIP archive, you first need to unzip it.

2. Expand your template directory, right-click the `page-templates` subfolder, and select **Refactoring > XML Refactoring**.
3. Convert Version 20 Publishing Templates to Version 21 *(on page 1054)*
4. In the **XML Refactoring** dialog box, scroll to the **Publishing Template** section and select **Migrate HTML Page Layout Files to v21**, then click **Next**.
5. The **Scope** should be left as **Selected project resources**.
6. You can use the **Preview** button to open a comparison panel where you can review all the changes that will be made by the refactoring operation before applying the changes.
7. Click **Finish** to perform the conversion.

Result: The converted Publishing Template can now be used in version 21.0 or 21.1.

Related information

Convert Version 24.0 Publishing Templates to Version 24.1 *(on page 1052)*
Convert Version 22 - 23 Publishing Templates to Version 24 *(on page 1053)*
Convert Version 21 Publishing Templates to Version 22 *(on page 1053)*

Changing the Layout and Styles

This section contains topics that explain how to customize the output using CSS, inserting HTML fragments, changing the layout of the main page, and more.

How to Use CSS Styling to Customize the Output

The most common way to customize WebHelp Responsive output is to use custom CSS styling. This method can be used to make small, simple styling changes or more advanced, precise changes. To implement the styling in your WebHelp output, you simply need to create the custom CSS file and reference it in your transformation scenario (using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 2232)* or a transformation parameter). This custom file will be the final CSS to be applied so its content will override the styles in the other pre-existing CSS files.

Using CSS Inspector to Identify Content for Custom CSS File

You can use your browser's CSS inspector to identify the pertinent code in the current CSS files and you can even make changes directly in the CSS inspector to test the results so that you know exactly what content to use in your custom CSS file.

In most popular browsers (such as Chrome, Firefox, and Edge), you can access the CSS inspector by using **F12** or by selecting **Inspect Element** (or simply **Inspect**) from the contextual menu.

Tip:
When using Safari on macOS, you must first enable the Develop menu by going to the Advanced settings and selecting **Show Develop menu in menu bar**. Then you can select **Show Web Inspector** from the Develop menu or click **Command + Option + I**.

Create the Custom CSS

As a practical example, the following procedure changes the background color of the footer bar in the WebHelp output:

1. Use the browser's CSS inspector to identify the current CSS code that styles the footer bar. In this particular case, the pertinent code that would be identified is:

```
.wh_footer {
  font-size: 15px;
```

```
  line-height: 1.7em;
  background-color: #000;
}
```

2. If you want to test the color you want to apply as the background of this particular element, use the browser's CSS inspector to change the value of the `background-color` attribute. After you find a suitable color, copy that new code.
3. Create a custom CSS file and paste or enter the copied code. For example:

```
.wh_footer {
  background-color: #255890;
}
```

4. Save the custom CSS file at a location of your convenience.
5. Reference the CSS file in a *WebHelp Responsive* transformation using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1056)* or the `args.css` parameter *(on page 1057)*.

Fastpath:
Regenerating the output to see the changes made in the CSS is not required. Instead, you can directly edit the files in *`WebHelp Output Directory`*`/oxygen-webhelp/template` and reload the page in your browser. Once you obtained the desired output, simply copy the stylesheet back to your publishing template folder.

Referencing the CSS Using a Publishing Template

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Using the **Project Explorer** view, copy your custom CSS in a folder inside the publishing template root folder (for example, in the `custom_footer_template/resources` folder).
3. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and add your custom CSS in the *resources* section.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <resources>
            ...
            <css file="resources/MyCustom.css"/>
```

4. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
5. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
6. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
7. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: Your custom CSS will be applied as a final layer on top of any existing CSS rules and the output will reflect the changes you made.

Referencing the CSS Using the args.css Parameter

1. Edit the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario and open the **Parameters** tab.
2. Set the `args.css` parameter to the path of your custom CSS file.
3. Set the `args.copycss` parameter to `yes` to automatically copy your custom CSS in the output folder when the transformation scenario is processed.
4. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
5. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: Your custom CSS will be applied as a final layer on top of any existing CSS rules and the output will reflect the changes you made.

How to Insert Custom HTML Content

You can add custom HTML content in the WebHelp Responsive output by inserting it in a well-formed XML file (or specifying it in a **well-formed** XHTML fragment) that will be referenced in the transformation (either from an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 2232)* or using one of the HTML fragment placeholder parameters *(on page 1145)*). This content may include references to additional JavaScript, CSS, and other types of resources, or such resources can be inserted inline within the HTML content that is inserted in the XML file.

The XML File

There are several things to consider regarding this XML file:

- **Well-Formedness** - If the content of the file is not *XML Well-formed (on page 523)*, the transformation will automatically convert non-well-formed HTML content to a well-formed XML equivalent (assuming the `webhelp.enable.html.fragments.cleanup` transformation parameter is set to **true**).

  For example, if the HTML content includes several `<script>` or `<link>` elements, the XML fragment would have multiple root elements and to make it well-formed, it would be wrapped it in an `<html>` element. This element tag will be filtered out and only its children will be copied to the output documents. Similarly, you can wrap your content in `<head>`, `<body>`, `<html/head>`, or `<html/body>` elements.

  Note:
  The converted fragments are stored in a file located in the `whr-html-fragments` subfolder of the transformation's temporary directory.

  Tip:
  If you do not want the transformation to automatically convert non-well-formed content into well-formed XML content, you can set the `webhelp.enable.html.fragments.cleanup`

transformation parameter to **false**. This will instead cause the transformation to fail if at least one HTML fragment is not well-formed.

- **Referencing Resources in the XML File** - You can include references to local resources (such as JavaScript or CSS files) by using the built-in `${oxygen-webhelp-output-dir}` macro to specify their paths relative to the output directory:

```
<html>
  <script type="text/javascript" src="${oxygen-webhelp-output-dir}/js/test.js"/>
  <link rel="stylesheet" type="text/css"
        href="${oxygen-webhelp-output-dir}/css/test.css" />
</html>
```

If you want that the path of your resource to be relative to the templates directory *(on page 990)*, you can use the `${oxygen-webhelp-template-dir}` macro.

To copy the referenced resources to the output directory, follow the procedure in: How to Copy Additional Resources to Output Directory *(on page 1122)*.

- **Inline JavaScript or CSS Content**:

JavaScript:

```
<script type="text/javascript">
    /* Include JavaScript code here. */

    function myFunction() {
      return true;
    }
</script>
```

CSS:

```
<style>
    /* Include CSS style rules here. */

    *{
      color:red
    }
</style>
```

Note:

If you have special characters (e.g. `&`, `<`) that break the well-formedness of the XML fragment, it is important to place the content inside an XML comment.

Otherwise, the WebHelp transformation automatically wraps inline JavaScript or CSS content in an XML comment. Also, if the commented content contains constructs that are not allowed in an XML comment, those constructs are escaped.

[Important] XML comment tags (both the start and end tags) must be on lines by themselves. If they are on the same line as any of the script's content, it will likely result in a JavaScript error.

```
<script type="text/javascript">
  <!--
    /* Include JavaScript code here. */


    function myFunction() {
      return true;
    }
  -->
</script>
```

Using WebHelp Macros

The XML file can use WebHelp macros, which are variables that will be expanded when the content of the HTML fragment file will be copied in the final output.

There are two possibilities for using macros:

- **Directly in attribute values** - For example, if you want to reference a JavaScript file from the Publishing Template directory, you can use the following construct:

```
<script type="text/javascript" src="${path(oxygen-webhelp-template-dir)}/"></script>
```

- **In text content** - Using the `<whc:macro>` template component:

```
<script type="text/javascript">
    var outDirPath = '<whc:macro value="${path(oxygen-webhelp-output-dir)}"
    xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"/>';
    console.log("The output directory path is:", outDirPath);
</script>
```

Note:
When using the `<whc:macro>` element, you should also include the `xmlns:whc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/webhelp/components"` namespace declaration for the `whc` prefix. This is necessary for the XML fragment to be well-formed.

The following *macros* are supported:

i18n

For localizing a string.

```
${i18n(string.id)}
```

param

Returns the value of a transformation parameter.

```
${param(webhelp.show.main.page.tiles)}
```

env

Returns the value of an environment variable.

```
${env(JAVA_HOME)}
```

system-property

Returns the value of a system property.

```
${system-property(os.name)}
```

timestamp

Can be used to format the current date and time. Accepts a string (as a parameter) that determines how the date and time will be formatted (format string or *picture string* as it is known in the XSLT specification). The format string must comply with the rules of the XSLT `format-dateTime` function specification.

```
${timestamp([h1]:[m01] [P] [M01]/[D01]/[Y0001])}
```

path

Returns the path associated with the specified path ID. The following paths IDs are supported:

- **oxygen-webhelp-output-dir** - The path to the output directory. The path is relative to the current HTML file.
- **oxygen-webhelp-assets-dir** - The path to the `oxygen-webhelp` subdirectory from the output directory. The path is relative to the current HTML file.
- **oxygen-webhelp-template-dir** - The path to the template directory. The path is relative to the current HTML file.

```
${path(oxygen-webhelp-template-dir)}
```

Note:

New paths IDs can be added by overriding the `wh-macro-custom-path` template from `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\template\macroExpander.xsl`:

```
<!-- Extension template for expanding a custom path macro. -->
<xsl:template name="wh-macro-custom-path">
    <xsl:param name="pathId"/>
    <xsl:value-of select="$pathId"/>
</xsl:template>
```

map-xpath

Can be used to execute an XPath expression over the DITA map file from the temporary directory.

> **Tip:**
> Available in all template layout HTML pages.

```
${map-xpath(/map/title)}
```

topic-xpath

Can be used to execute an XPath expression over the current topic.

> **Tip:**
> Available only in the topic HTML page template (`wt_topic.html`).

```
${topic-xpath(string-join(//shortdesc//text(), ' '))}
```

oxygen-webhelp-build-number

Returns the current WebHelp distribution ID (build number).

```
${oxygen-webhelp-build-number}
```

Referencing the HTML fragment using a Publishing Template

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see Working with Publishing Templates *(on page 1031)*.
2. Insert the HTML content in a file that is XML well-formed (for example, `custom-html.xml`).
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, copy your custom XML file in a folder inside publishing the template root folder (for example, in the `custom_footer_template/html-fragments` folder).
4. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and add a reference to the custom HTML fragment in the *html-fragments* section.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
      ...
      <html-fragments>
        <fragment
          file="html-fragments/custom-html.xml"
          placeholder="webhelp.fragment.head"/>
```

> **Note:**
> If you want to insert the content in another location within the output document, you can reference the XML file from any other HTML Fragment extension points *(on page 1001)*.

5. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
6. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
7. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
8. Run the transformation scenario.

Results: Your additional content will be included at the end of the `<head>` element of your output document.

Referencing the HTML Fragment using a Transformation Parameter

1. Insert the HTML content in a well-formed XML file.
2. Edit the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario and open the **Parameters** tab.
3. Edit the value of the `webhelp.fragment.head` parameter and set it to the absolute path of your XML file.

> **Note:**
> If you want to insert the content in another location within the output document, you can reference the XML file from any other HTML Fragment extension points *(on page 1001)*.

4. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
5. Run the transformation scenario.

Results: Your additional content will be included at the end of the `<head>` element of your output document.

Related Information:
HTML Fragment Placeholders *(on page 1001)*
Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations *(on page 994)*

How to Change Ordered Lists Layout and Styles

How to Continue Numbering in Ordered Lists

Ordered lists (`<ol>`) typically begin numbering at 1 in XHTML output. However, in certain situations you may need to start at a given index. You can control the starting number using the `@outputclass="start-x"` attribute (where X is the number you want the list to start with) on the `<ol>` element. This is especially useful when lists do not have the same parent:

```
<table frame="all">
  <title>Table with nested order lists</title>
  <tgroup cols="1">
    <tbody>
```

```
      <row>
        <entry>
          <ol>
            <li>First Item</li>
            <li>Second Item</li>
          </ol>
        </entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry>
          <ol outputclass="start-3">
            <li>Third Item</li>
            <li>Fourth Item</li>
          </ol>
        </entry>
      </row>
    </tbody>
  </tgroup>
</table>
```

How to Change Numbering Styles for Ordered Lists

Ordered lists (`<ol>`) are usually numbered in XHTML output using numerals. If you want to change the numbering to alphabetical, follow these steps:

1. Define a custom `@outputclass` value and set it as an attribute of the ordered list, as in the following example:

   ```
   <ol outputclass="number-alpha">
       <li>A</li>
       <li>B</li>
       <li>C</li>
   </ol>
   ```

2. Add the following code snippet in a custom CSS file:

   ```
   ol.number-alpha{
       list-style-type:lower-alpha;
   }
   ```

3. Reference the CSS file in a *WebHelp Responsive* transformation using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1064)* or the `args.css` parameter *(on page 1064)*.

Referencing the Custom CSS from a Publishing Template

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Using the **Project Explorer** view, copy your custom CSS in a folder inside the publishing template root folder (for example, in the `custom_footer_template/resources` folder).
3. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and add your custom CSS in the *resources* section.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <resources>
            ...
            <css file="resources/MyCustom.css"/>
```

4. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
5. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
6. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
7. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: Your custom CSS will be applied as a final layer on top of any existing CSS rules and the output will reflect the changes you made.

Referencing the CSS Using the *args.css* Parameter

1. Edit the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario and open the **Parameters** tab.
2. Set the `args.css` parameter to the path of your custom CSS file.
3. Set the `args.copycss` parameter to `yes` to automatically copy your custom CSS in the output folder when the transformation scenario is processed.
4. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
5. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: Your custom CSS will be applied as a final layer on top of any existing CSS rules and the output will reflect the changes you made.

How to Add Syntax Highlights for Codeblocks in the Output

Syntax Highlighting makes it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code (language) in different colors and fonts. The application provides the ability to add syntax highlights in codeblocks for DITA to PDF or HTML-based output through the use of the `@outputclass` attribute and a variety of predefined values are available.

To provide syntax highlighting in the codeblocks that appear in the output, add the `@outputclass` attribute on the `<codeblock>` element and set its value to one of the predefined language values. The **Content Completion**

Assistant offers a list of the possible values when adding the `@outputclass` attribute in **Text** mode but there are also two simple ways to set the value in **Author** mode:

- Select the `<codeblock>` element in the editor and in the **Attributes** view, click on the **Value** cell for the `@outputclass` attribute and select one of the predefined values (for example, `language-xml`).
- Select the `<codeblock>` element in the editor and use the **Alt + Enter** keyboard shortcut to open the in-place attributes editor window. Then select one of the predefined values from the **Value** drop-down menu.

The predefined values that can be selected are:

- language-json
- language-yaml
- language-xml
- language-bourne
- language-c
- language-cmd
- language-cpp
- language-csharp
- language-css
- language-dtd
- language-ini
- language-java
- language-javascript
- language-lua
- language-perl
- language-powershell
- language-php
- language-python
- language-ruby
- language-sql
- language-xquery

Attention:
It is recommended that you do not add inline elements in the codeblocks when using this `@outputclass` attribute, as it may lead to improper highlighting.

Tip:
Starting with version 24.0, the language values can also be set without using the `language-` prefix.

Example:

The following codeblock with the `@outputclass` set as `language-css`:

```
<codeblock outputclass="language-css" id="codeblock_1">@page preface-page {
 background-color:silver;
 @top-center{
  content: "Custom Preface Header";
 }
}
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][@topicrefclass ~= "bookmap/preface"] {
 page: preface-page;
}</codeblock>
```

would like this in WebHelp output:

```
@page preface-page {
 background-color:silver;
 @top-center{
  content: "Custom Preface Header";
 }
}
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][@topicrefclass ~= "bookmap/preface"] {
 page: preface-page;
}
```

How to Show or Hide Navigation Links in Topic Pages

The topic pages *(on page 949)* in WebHelp Responsive output can contain navigation links (⬅ **Previous** / ➡ **Next** arrows) that can be used to navigate to the previous or next topic.

How to Control Which Topic Pages Include Navigation Links

The navigation links are controlled by the `@collection-type` attribute. For example, if you set `collection-type="sequence"` on a parent topic reference in your DITA map, navigation links will be generated in the output for all of its child topics (from children to parent, and from child to previous sibling and next sibling).

```
<map id="example_map" title="Example Map">
 <topicref href="../topics/ParentTopic.dita" collection-type="sequence">
  <topicref href="../topics/Childtopic.dita"/>
 </topicref>
```

How to Generate Navigation Links for All Topics (Ignoring the Collection Type Attribute)

You can use the `webhelp.default.collection.type.sequence` parameter in the transformation and set its value to `yes` to generate navigation links for all topics, regardless of whether or not the `collection-type` attribute is present.

How to Hide All Navigation Links

To hide all navigation links, use the `webhelp.show.navigation.links` parameter in the transformation and set its value to `no`.

How to Change the Main Page Layout

This section contains topics that explain how to customize the layout of the main page in the WebHelp Responsive output.

How to Customize the Menu

By default, the menu component is displayed in all WebHelp Responsive pages. However, you might want to hide it completely, or only display some of its menu entries.

How to Hide Some of the Menu Entries

There are two methods for doing this. One of them involves editing the *DITA map (on page 2230)* and marking the topics that do not need to be included in the menu, and another one that uses a small CSS customization.

Editing the DITA Map

To edit the metadata in the *DITA map* to control which topics will not be displayed in the menu, follow these steps:

1. Open the *DITA map* in the **Text** editing mode of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
2. Add the following metadata information in the `topicref` element (or any of its specializations) for each topic you do not want to be displayed in the menu:

```
<topicmeta>
  <data name="wh-menu">
    <data name="hide" value="yes"/>
  </data>
</topicmeta>
```

Customizing the CSS

To customize the CSS to control which topics will not be displayed in the menu, follow these steps:

1. Make sure you set an ID on the topic that you do not want to include in the menu.
2. Create a new CSS file that contains a rule that hides the menu entry generated for the topic (identified by the topic ID `growing-flowers` in the following example). The CSS file should have content that is similar to this:

```
.wh_top_menu *[data-id='growing-flowers'] {
  display:none;
}
```

3. Reference the CSS file in a *WebHelp Responsive* transformation using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1056)* or the `args.css` parameter *(on page 1057)*.

How to Hide the Entire Menu

If you do not want to include a main menu in the pages of the WebHelp Responsive output, you can instruct the transformation scenario to skip the menu generation completely.

Using a Publishing Template

To hide the menu using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 990)*, follow this procedure:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and add the `webhelp.show.top.menu` parameter in the *parameters* section with its value set to `no`.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <parameters>
            <parameter name="webhelp.show.top.menu" value="no"/>
        </parameters>
    </webhelp>
```

3. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
4. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
5. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
6. Run the transformation scenario.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To hide the menu using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Edit the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario and choose a *template*.
2. Open the **Parameters** tab and set the `webhelp.show.top.menu` parameter to `no`.
3. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
4. Run the transformation scenario.

How to Add a Welcome Message in the WebHelp Responsive Main Page

The main page of the WebHelp Responsive output contains a set of empty placeholders *(on page 1001)* that can be used to display customized text fragments. These placeholders are available to you through WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario parameters. For example, the placeholder identified through the `webhelp.fragment.welcome` parameter displays text content above the search box in the main page.

Using a Publishing Template

To add a customized welcome message in the main page of the WebHelp Responsive output using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 990)*, follow this procedure:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and add the `webhelp.fragment.welcome` parameter in the *parameters* section with its value set to one of the following:
   - A small well-formed XHTML fragment (such as: `<i>Welcome to the User Guide</i>`).
   - A path to a file that contains well-formed XHTML content.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <parameters>
            <parameter name="webhelp.fragment.welcome"
                value="path/to/welcome.xhtml" type="filePath"/>
        </parameters>
    </webhelp>
```

3. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
4. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
5. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
6. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: In the WebHelp output, your custom message will be displayed above the search box in the main page.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

Important:
Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** requires an additional license and some additional setup:

- You must have a valid license for the **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** (https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html).
- The **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** must be installed and integrated.

To add a customized welcome message in the main page of the WebHelp Responsive output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Edit the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario and choose a *template*.
2. Open the **Parameters** tab and set the `webhelp.fragment.welcome` parameter with its value set to one of the following:
   - A small well-formed XHTML fragment (such as: `<i>Welcome to the User Guide</i>`).
   - A path to a file that contains well-formed XHTML content.
3. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
4. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: In the WebHelp output, your custom message will be displayed above the search box in the main page.

Related information

How to Insert Custom HTML Content *(on page 1057)*

How to Create a Custom Footer

The main page of the WebHelp Responsive output contains a set of empty placeholders *(on page 1001)* that can be used to display customized text fragments. These placeholders are available to you through WebHelp Responsive transformation scenario parameters. For example, the placeholder identified through the `webhelp.fragment.footer` parameter displays the custom content at the bottom of the page.

Using a Publishing Template

To create a custom footer in the WebHelp Responsive output using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 990)*, follow this procedure:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and add the `webhelp.fragment.footer` parameter in the *html-fragments* section with its value set to a path of a file that contains well-formed XHTML content.

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
    ...
    <html-fragments>
      <fragment file="html/footer.xhtml" placeholder="webhelp.fragment.footer"/>
```

```
    </html-fragments>
</webhelp>
```

Important:
This parameter should only be used if you are using a valid, purchased license of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (do not use it with a trial license).

3. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
4. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
5. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
6. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: In the WebHelp output, your custom footer will be displayed at the bottom of the page.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

Important:
Running WebHelp transformations from a script outside of **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** requires an additional license and some additional setup:

- You must have a valid license for the **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** (https://www.oxygenxml.com/buy_webhelp.html).
- The **Oxygen XML WebHelp Plugin** must be installed and integrated.

To create a custom footer in the WebHelp Responsive output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Edit the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario and choose a *template*.
2. Open the **Parameters** tab and set the `webhelp.fragment.footer` parameter with its value set to one of the following:
   - A small well-formed XHTML fragment.
   - A path to a file that contains well-formed XHTML content.
3. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
4. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: In the WebHelp output, your custom footer will be displayed at the bottom of the page.

How to Configure the Tiles on the WebHelp Responsive Main Page

The *tiles* version of the main page of the WebHelp Responsive output displays a tile for each topic found on the first level of the *DITA map (on page 2230)*. However, you might want to customize the way they look or even to hide some of them.

Depending on your particular setup, you can choose to customize the tiles either by setting metadata information in the *DITA map* or by customizing the CSS that is associated with the *DITA map*.

How to Hide Some of the Tiles

If your documentation is very large or there is a large number of topics on the first level, you might want to hide some of the tiles. Also, this might be useful if you only want to display the topics in the first page that are most relevant to your intended audience.

There are two methods for doing this. One of them involves editing the *DITA map* and marking the topics that do not need to be displayed as tiles, and another one that uses a small CSS customization level to hide some tiles identified by the ID of the topic.

Editing the DITA Map

To edit the metadata in the *DITA map* to control which topics on the first level of the *DITA map* will not be displayed as a tile, follow these steps:

1. Open the *DITA map* in the **Text** editing mode of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
2. Add the following metadata information in the `<topicref>` element (or any of its specializations) for each first-level topic that you do not want to be displayed as a tile:

```
<topicmeta>
  <data name="wh-tile">
    <data name="hide" value="yes"/>
  </data>
</topicmeta>
```

Customizing the CSS

To customize the CSS to control which topics on the first level of the *DITA map* will not be displayed as a tile, follow these steps:

1. Make sure you set an ID on the topic you want to hide.
2. Create a new CSS file that contains a rule that hides the tile generated for the topic (identified in the following example by the topic ID `growing-flowers`). The CSS file should have content that is similar to this:

```
.wh_tile [data-id='growing-flowers'] {
  display:none;
}
```

3. Reference the CSS file in a *WebHelp Responsive* transformation using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1056)* or the `args.css` parameter *(on page 1057)*.

How to Add an Image to the Tiles

There are two methods that you can use to add an image to a tile. One of them involves editing the *DITA map*, and the other uses a CSS customization.

Editing the DITA Map

To edit the metadata in the *DITA map* to set an image to be displayed in a tile, follow these steps:

1. Open the *DITA map* in the **Text** editing mode of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
2. Add the following metadata information in the `<topicref>` element (or any of its specializations) for each first-level topic that will have an image displayed in the corresponding tile:

```
<topicmeta>
  <data name="wh-tile">
    <data name="image" href="img/tile-image.png" format="png">
     <data name="attr-width" value="64"/>
     <data name="attr-height" value="64"/>
    </data>
  </data>
</topicmeta>
```

Note:
The `@attr-width` and `@attr-height` attributes can be used to control the size of the image, but they are optional.

Customizing the CSS

To customize the CSS to set an image to be displayed in a tile, follow these steps:

1. Make sure you set an ID on the topic that you want the tile to include an image.
2. Create a new CSS file that contains a rule that associates an image with a specific tile. The CSS file should have content that is similar to this:

```
.wh_tile[data-id='growing-flowers']> div {
    background-image:url('resources/flower.png');
}
```

3. Reference the CSS file in a *WebHelp Responsive* transformation using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1056)* or the `args.css` parameter *(on page 1057)*.

Adding Graphics and Media Resources

This section contains topics that explain how to add media resources to the published output or the output directory.

How to Add a Logo Image in the Title Area

You can customize **WebHelp Responsive** output to include a logo in the title area. It will be displayed before the publication title. You can also specify a URL that can be used to send users to a specific website when they click the logo image.

This customization can be done using an *Oxygen Publishing Template* or using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**.

Using a Publishing Template

To add a logo in the title area of your WebHelp output using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 990)*, follow this procedure:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and add the `<logo>` element in the `<resources>` section and set the `@file` attribute value to the path of your logo.
3. If you also want to add a link to your website when you click the logo image, set its URL in the `@target-url` attribute.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <resources>
            <logo
                file="images/logo.png"
                target-url="http://www.example.com"
                alt="Alternate text for the logo image"
                new-tab="true"/>
        </resources>
    </webhelp>
```

4. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
5. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
6. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
7. Run the transformation scenario.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To add a logo in the title area of your WebHelp output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Edit the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario and choose a *template*.
2. Open the **Parameters** tab and set the `webhelp.logo.image` parameter to the path of your logo.

3. If you also want to add a link to your website when you click the logo image, set its URL in the `webhelp.logo.image.target.url` parameter.
4. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
5. Run the transformation scenario.

How to Add a Favicon in WebHelp Systems

You can add a custom *favicon* to your WebHelp output by simply using a parameter in the transformation scenario to point to your *favicon* image.

This customization can be done using an *Oxygen Publishing Template* or using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**.

Using a Publishing Template

To add a *favicon* to your WebHelp output using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 990)*, follow this procedure:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see Working with Publishing Templates *(on page 1031)*.
2. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and add the `<favicon>` element in the *resources* section. The path to the image is relative to the template root folder.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
      ...
      <resources>
          ...
          <favicon file="images/favicon.png"/>
```

3. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
4. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
5. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
6. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: Browsers that provide *favicon* support display the *favicon* (typically in the browser's address bar, in the list of bookmarks, and in the history).

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To add a *favicon* to your WebHelp output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Edit the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario and choose a *template*.
2. Open the **Parameters** tab and set the `webhelp.favicon` parameter to the path of your image.

3. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
4. Run the transformation scenario.

How to Add Video and Audio Objects in DITA WebHelp Output

You can insert references to video and audio media resources (such as videos, audio clips, or embedded HTML frames) in your DITA topics and then publish them to WebHelp output. The media objects can be played directly in all HTML5-based outputs, including WebHelp systems.

To add media objects in the WebHelp output generated from DITA documents, follow the procedures below.

Adding Videos to DITA WebHelp Output

1. Edit the DITA topic and insert a reference to the video through one of the following methods:
   - Use the **Insert Media Object** toolbar action *(on page 1963)*.
   - Drag (or copy) the video file from your system explorer or the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and drop (or paste) it into your document.
   - Manually add an `<object>` element, as in one of the following examples:

     ```
     <object outputclass="video" type="video/mp4" data="MyVideo.mp4"/>
     ```

     or, instead of the `@data` attribute, you can specify the video using a parameter like this:

     ```
     <object outputclass="video">
       <param name="src" value="videos/MyVideo.mp4"/>
     </object>
     ```
2. Apply a **DITA to WebHelp** transformation to obtain the output.

Result: The transformation converts the `<object>` element to an HTML5 `<video>` element.

```
<video controls="controls"><source type="video/mp4" src="MyVideo.mp4"></source>
</video>
```

Adding Audio Clips to DITA WebHelp Output

1. Edit the DITA topic and insert a reference to the audio clip through one of the following methods:
   - Use the **Insert Media Object** toolbar action *(on page 1963)*.
   - Drag (or copy) the audio file from your system explorer or the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and drop (or paste) it into your document.
   - Manually add an `<object>` element, as in one of the following examples:

     ```
     <object outputclass="audio" type="audio/mpeg" data="MyClip.mp3"/>
     ```

     or, instead of the `@data` attribute, you can specify the video using a parameter like this:

```
<object outputclass="audio">
  <param name="src" value="audio/MyClip.mp3"/>
</object>
```

2. Apply a **DITA to WebHelp** transformation to obtain the output.

Result: The transformation converts the `<object>` element to an HTML5 `<audio>` element.

```
<audio controls="controls"><source type="audio/mpeg" src="MyClip.mp3"></source>
</audio>
```

Adding Embedded HTML Frames (such as YouTube videos) to DITA WebHelp Output

1. Edit the DITA topic and insert a reference to the embedded object by using the **Insert Media Object** toolbar action *(on page 1963)* or by manually adding an `<object>` element, as in one of the following examples:

   ```
   <object outputclass="iframe" data="https://www.youtube.com/embed/m_vv2s5Trn4"/>
   ```

   or, instead of the `@data` attribute, you can specify the object using a parameter like this:

   ```
   <object outputclass="iframe">
     <param name="src" value="http://www.youtube.com/embed/m_vv2s5Trn4"/>
   </object>
   ```

2. If you want the video to be allowed to play in full screen mode once the document is converted to XHTML output, also add an `allowfullscreen` parameter and set its value to **true**:

   ```
   <object outputclass="iframe" data="https://www.youtube.com/embed/m_vv2s5Trn4"/>
     <param name="allowfullscreen" value="true"/>
   </object>
   ```

   Tip:
   If you copy the embed code from the source and paste it into the **Insert Media** dialog box (see the specific instructions: here *(on page 1966)*), the `allowfullscreen` parameter will automatically be added and all you have to do is set the value to **true**.

3. Apply a **DITA to WebHelp** transformation to obtain the output.

Result: The transformation converts the `<object>` element to an HTML5 `<iframe>` element.

```
<iframe controls="controls" src="https://www.youtube.com/embed/m_vv2s5Trn4">
</iframe>
```

Resources

For more information, see the following video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/llX11gS4WaU

Related Information:
Adding Video, Audio, and Embedded HTML Resources in DITA Topics *(on page 1963)*

How to Add MathML Equations in WebHelp Output

Currently, the majority of modern browsers have native support to render **MathML** equations embedded in the **HTML** code. If your browser that does not have support for MathML,MathJax is a solution to properly view MathML equations embedded in **HTML** content in a variety of browsers.

If you have DITA content that has embedded **MathML** equations and you want to properly view the equations in published HTML output types (such as WebHelp), you need to add a reference to the MathJax script in the **head** element of all HTML files that have the equation embedded.

For example:

```
<script type="text/javascript" id="MathJax-script" async

  src="https://cdnjs.cloudflare.com/ajax/libs/mathjax/3.0.0/es5/latest?tex-mml-chtml.js">

</script>
```

Result: The equation should now be properly rendered in the WebHelp output for other browsers.

Related information
How to Insert Custom HTML Content *(on page 1057)*
Getting Started with MathJax Components

Searching the Output

This section contains topics that explain how to use some of the search features in WebHelp Responsive output.

Built-in JS Based Search Engine Customizations

How to Change Element Scoring in Search Results

The WebHelp **Search** feature is enhanced with a rating mechanism that computes scores for every page that matches the search criteria. HTML tag elements are assigned a scoring value and these values are evaluated for the search results. The WebHelp directory includes a properties file that defines the scoring values for tag elements and this file can be edited to customize the values according to your needs.

To edit the scoring values of HTML tag element for enhancing WebHelp search results, follow these steps:

1. Edit the scoring properties file for DITA. The properties file includes instructions and examples to help you with your customization. The file is located in: *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\indexer\scoring.properties`.
   The following values can be edited in the `scoring.properties` file:

```
h1 = 10
h2 = 9
h3 = 8
h4 = 7
h5 = 6
h6 = 5
b = 5
strong = 5
em = 3
i=3
u=3
div.toc=-10
title=20
div.ignore=ignored
meta_keywords = 20
meta_indexterms = 20
meta_description = 25
shortdesc=25
```

2. Save your changes to the file.
3. Re-run your WebHelp transformation.

How to Index Japanese Content

To optimize the indexing of Japanese content in WebHelp pages, the *Lucene Kuromoji Japanese analyzer* can be used. This analyzer is included in the **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** installation kit.

Restriction:
The *Kuromoji* analyzer does not work if your WebHelp output is accessed locally. In this scenario, a warning message will be displayed informing you that the *Kuromoji* analyzer is disabled.
It is possible to hide this warning message by using a transformation parameter named `webhelp.enable.search.kuromoji.js`. By default, its value is **yes**, which means the *Kuromoji* analyzer is enabled by default. To hide the warning message, set the value of that parameter to **no** using either of the methods listed below. When it is set to **no**, the *Kuromoji* analyzer is disabled even if you deploy your WebHelp output on a web server.

Using a Publishing Template

To add a logo in the title area of your WebHelp output using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 990)*, follow this procedure:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and add the `default.language` parameter in the *parameters* section with its value set to `ja-jp`.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <parameters>
            <parameter name="default.language" value="ja-jp"/>
        </parameters>
    </webhelp>
```

3. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
4. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
5. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
6. Run the transformation scenario.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To activate the Japanese indexing in your WebHelp output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Edit a **DITA to WebHelp** transformation scenario and in the **Parameters** tab, set the value of the `default.language` parameter to `ja-jp`.

Note:
Alternatively, you could set the `@xml:lang` attribute on the root of the *DITA map (on page 2230)* and the referenced topics to `ja-jp`. Another alternative for DITA output is to use the `webhelp.search.japanese.dictionary` parameter to specify a path to a Japanese dictionary that will be used by the *Kuromoji* morphological engine (note that the encoding for the dictionary must be **UTF8**).

2. Run the WebHelp transformation scenario to generate the output.

How to Implement a Custom Search Filter

It is possible to implement a custom search filter (search input component) in your WebHelp Responsive output. The search input component is where users enter search queries to locate certain content within the WebHelp output.

To integrate a custom search filter, follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Create the following items in the folder that contains your publishing descriptor file (the `.opt` file):
    - A folder named `js`.
    - A folder named `fragments`.
3. In the **js** folder, create a file named **search-filter.js**.
4. As a starting point, you can copy the following content to the **search-filter.js** file:

```
/**
 * Object that implements the methods required by WebHelp to run a search filter.
 */
function CustomSearchFilter() {


    /**
     * Method required to run the search filter in webhelp. It is called when the users
     * executes the query in the search page.
     *
     * @param {WebHelpAPI.SearchResult} searchResult The search result for the executed query.
     *
     * @return A list of WebHelpAPI.SearchResult objects
     */
    this.filterResults = function (searchResult) {
        // implement filter
        return filteredResults;
    }
}


// Set the Search Filter to WebHelp
WebHelpAPI.setCustomSearchFilter(new CustomSearchFilter());
...
```

Note:

See the API Search Objects section *(on page 1091)* for details on how to create a `WebHelpAPI.SearchResult` object.

5. Implement your custom search filter.
6. In the **fragments** folder, create a file named **search-filter-script-fragment.xml**.
7. In the **search-filter-script-fragment.xml** file, define the scripts that are required for your custom search filter to run. For example:

```
<div>
    <script src="${oxygen-webhelp-template-dir}/js/search-filter.js"></script>
</div>
```

8. Copy the **js** folder to the output folder during the transformation process. For this, open the `.opt` file and add the following content in the `<resources>` section (see Template Resources *(on page 997)* for more details):

```
<fileset>
  <include name="js/**"/>
</fileset>
```

9. Set the transformation parameters needed to enable the custom search filter. For this, open the `.opt` file and add the following content inside the `<webhelp>` element:

```
<html-fragments>
  <fragment file="fragments/search-filter-script-fragment.xml"
      placeholder="webhelp.fragment.head.search.page"/>
</html-fragments>
```

10. Run the transformation with this publishing template selected.

How to Exclude Certain DITA Topics from Search Results

There are several ways to exclude certain DITA resources from your WebHelp system's search results. This is useful if you have topics in your *DITA map (on page 2230)* structure that you do not want to be included in search results for your WebHelp system. The first method involves setting a parameter in the WebHelp transformation scenario and the second involves setting an attribute for each DITA topic reference that you want to exclude.

Transformation Parameter Method

To exclude DITA topics from WebHelp search results using a transformation parameter, follow these steps:

1. Create a simple text file that will contain your excluded file patterns. Each pattern must be on a new line. The patterns are considered to be relative to the output directory and they accept wildcards such as `'*'` (matches zero or more characters) or `'?'` (matches one character). For more information about the patterns, see https://ant.apache.org/manual/dirtasks.html#patterns.

   Example: Suppose that in your project, you want to exclude all files located in the `resources` directory and all files located in the `topics` directory that have a `.bak` file extension. You could create a simple text file (for example, named `exclude.properties`), and add the following lines:

```
resources/*
topics/*.bak
```

2. Set the `webhelp.search.custom.excludes.file` parameter to specify the path to the file that contains the excluded file patterns (for example, `exclude.properties` in step 1). The parameter can be specified in the *parameters* section of the template descriptor file *(on page 999)* associated with your publishing template or in the **Parameters** tab of the transformation scenario dialog box in **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**.
3. Run the transformation.

Search Attribute Method

The WebHelp **Search** engine does not index DITA topics that have the `@search` attribute set to `no`.

To exclude DITA topics from WebHelp search results using this attribute, follow these steps:

1. Edit the *DITA map* and for any `<topicref>` that you want to exclude from search results, set the `@search` attribute to `no`. For example:

   ```
   <topicref href="../topics/internal-topic1.dita" search="no"/>
   ```

2. Save your changes to the *DITA map*.
3. Run your WebHelp system transformation.

Oxygen Feedback Search Engine

How to Configure Faceted Search in WebHelp Output

A *faceted search* is a powerful tool that allows users to refine search results by selecting filters or facets. *Facets* are predefined categories that are associated with search results. By selecting one or more facets, users can narrow down their search results to a specific category or set of categories.

Configure Oxygen Feedback as an External Search Engine

To enable faceted searches, you need to have a search engine that supports this functionality. The **Oxygen Feedback** search engine implements faceted searches and can be easily configured as a search engine for WebHelp, see Adding Oxygen Feedback to WebHelp Responsive Documentation *(on page 1029)* for more details.

> **Attention:**
> The default search engine that comes embedded in the WebHelp Responsive output does not support faceted searches.

Defining Facets Using a DITA Subject Scheme Map

A subject scheme map can be used to define controlled values and subject definitions. *Subject definitions* are classifications and sub-classifications that compose a tree. Subject definitions provide semantics that can be used in conjunction with taxonomies and ontologies.

The `<subjectdef>` element is used to define both a subject category and a list of controlled values. The parent `<subjectdef>` element defines the category, and the children `<subjectdef>` elements define the controlled values.

The following example defines the "Operating system" category, with "Linux" and "Windows" sub-categories. The controlled values (facet values) are: "RedHat Linux", "SUSE Linux", "Windows 7", and "Windows 10".

```
<subjectScheme>
    ...
    <hasInstance>
```

```
        <subjectdef keys="os" navtitle="Operating system">
            <subjectdef keys="linux" navtitle="Linux">
                <subjectdef keys="redhat" navtitle="RedHat Linux"/>
                <subjectdef keys="suse" navtitle="SUSE Linux"/>
            </subjectdef>
            <subjectdef keys="windows" navtitle="Windows">
                <subjectdef keys="win7" navtitle="Windows 7"/>
                <subjectdef keys="win10" navtitle="Windows 10"/>
            </subjectdef>
        </subjectdef>
    </hasInstance>
    ...
</subjectScheme>
```

Associating Faceted Values With a Topic Using a DITA Classification Map

The classification domain provides elements that enable map authors to indicate information about the subject matter of DITA topics. The subjects are defined in subject scheme maps, and the subjects are referenced using the `@keyref` attribute.

The following example shows you how to associate a faceted value with a topic:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE map PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DITA Classification Map//EN" "classifyMap.dtd">
<map>
    <title>Classification map</title>
    <topicref keyref="how-to-install-on-suse.dita">
      <topicsubject keyref="linux">
        <subjectref keyref="suse"/>
      </topicsubject>
    </topicref>

    <topicref keyref="how-to-install-win7.dita">
      <topicsubject keyref="windows">
        <subjectref keyref="win7"/>
      </topicsubject>
    </topicref>
</map>
```

Note:
The facet information cascades into child `<topicref>` elements.

Refining the Search Results by Using Facets in the Search Page

The configured facets are displayed in the search page, allowing you to narrow down the results.

When a user selects a facet, the search results are updated to only include the topics that match the selected facets. If multiple facet values are selected from the same category/facet, the search results display all topics with at least one facet. On the other hand, if multiple facet values from distinct facets are selected, the search results display all topics with all selected facet values.

Related information

Adding Oxygen Feedback to WebHelp Responsive Documentation *(on page 1029)*

How to Add Searchable Labels in WebHelp Output

It is possible to add *searchable labels* in WebHelp Responsive output that can be clicked to search for topics with that exact same label. Labels are textual words attached to a DITA topic that enables it to be easily found using the search function. These labels can help you organize your topics, making it more accessible to retrieve topics for a specific text.

Configure Oxygen Feedback as an External Search Engine

To enable *searchable labels*, you need to have a search engine that supports this functionality. The **Oxygen Feedback** search engine implements *searchable labels* and can be easily configured as a search engine for WebHelp. See Adding Oxygen Feedback to WebHelp Responsive Documentation *(on page 1029)* for more details.

Attention:
The default search engine that comes embedded in the WebHelp Responsive output does not support searchable labels. It will simply perform a standard search using the content within the label.

How to Add Searchable Labels in a DITA Topic

The generation of *searchable labels* in the WebHelp Responsive output is activated by default. You need to insert the desired text (to be displayed in the label in the output) in a `<keyword>` element with an `@outputclass` attribute set to **label** within the prolog of each topic that you want to have that label displayed in the output.

Note:
You can right-click anywhere within the topic in **Author** mode and select **Insert > Insert Label** to quickly insert the needed structure in the prolog.

For example:

```
<prolog>
    <metadata>
        <keywords>
```

```
            <keyword outputclass="label">Customization</keyword>
        </keywords>
    </metadata>
</prolog>
```

This would add a label that contains the text "Customization" in the output for the particular topic. If the user clicks that label, the search engine will search for all topics that have this same label defined.

Transformation Parameters for Generating Searchable Labels

You can have more control over how the labels are generated in the WebHelp Responsive output by using the **webhelp.labels.generation.mode** transformation parameter. The possible values for this parameter are:

- **keywords-label** - Generates labels for each defined `<keyword>` element that has the `@outputclass` attribute value set to **label**.
- **keywords** - Generates labels for each defined `<keyword>` element. If the topic contains `<keyword>` elements with the `@outputclass` attribute value set to **label**, then only these elements will have labels generated for them in the output.
- **disable** - Disables the generation of labels in the WebHelp Responsive output.

Note:
The default value for the **webhelp.labels.generation.mode** transformation parameter is **keywords-label**.

Searchable Labels in WebHelp Responsive Output

The WebHelp Responsive transformation will generate a component that renders the text value of the `<keyword>` element. When the user clicks that component, they will be redirected to the search page with the search query populated for them and the search engine will display all topics that have the same text value defined in the prolog.

Custom Search Engine

How to Integrate Google Search in WebHelp Responsive Output

It is possible to integrate the *Google Search Engine* into your **WebHelp Responsive** output and you can specify where you want the results to appear in your WebHelp page.

Using a Publishing Template

To integrate the *Google Search Engine* into your WebHelp Responsive output using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 990)*, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Google Custom Search Engine page using your Google account.
2. Select the **Create a custom search engine** button.

3. Follow the on-screen instructions to create a search engine component for your site.

> **Important:**
> For the **Layout**, you must select **Results only** for the *Google Search Engine* to work with **Oxygen XML WebHelp Responsive**.

4. At the end of this process you should obtain a code snippet that looks like this:

```
<script async src="https://cse.google.com/cse.js?cx=xxxxxxxxxxxxxx"></script>
<div class="gcse-searchresults-only"></div>
```

5. Create a folder named `html-fragments`, and in that folder, create a file named `google-script.html`.
6. Inside `google-script.html`, add only the `<script>` element. The file should look like this:

```
<script async src="https://cse.google.com/cse.js?cx=xxxxxxxxxxxxxx"></script>
```

7. In the `html-fragments` folder, create another file named `google-results.html`.
8. Inside *google-results.html*, add only the * * element and include the `data-autoSearchOnLoad="true"` `data-queryParameterName="searchQuery"` attributes. The file should look like this:

```
<div class="gcse-searchresults-only" data-autoSearchOnLoad="true"
  data-queryParameterName="searchQuery"></div>
```

> **Note:**
> For more information about other supported attributes, see Google Custom Search: Supported Attributes.

9. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and add the `webhelp.google.search.script` parameter in the parameters section, setting its value to reference `google-script.html`. Then add the `webhelp.google.search.results` parameter, with its value set to `google-results.html`.

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <webhelp>
    ...
    <parameters>
    ...
    <parameter
      name="webhelp.google.search.script"
      value="html-fragments/google-script.html"
      type="filePath"/>
    <parameter
      name="webhelp.google.search.results"
      value="html-fragments/google-results.html"
```

```
      type="filePath"/>
    </parameters>
  </webhelp>
</publishing-template>
```

10. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
11. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
12. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
13. Run the transformation scenario.

> **Important:**
> The Google search feature will not work locally, it must be deployed on an HTTP server.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To integrate the *Google Search Engine* into your WebHelp Responsive output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Google Custom Search Engine page using your Google account.
2. Select the **Create a custom search engine** button.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to create a search engine for your site.

> **Important:**
> For the **Layout**, you must select **Results only** for the *Google Search Engine* to work with **Oxygen XML WebHelp Responsive**.

4. At the end of this process you should obtain a code snippet that looks like this:

```
<script async src="https://cse.google.com/cse.js?cx=xxxxxxxxxxxxxx"></script>
<div class="gcse-searchresults-only"></div>
```

5. Create a file named `google-script.html`, and add only the `<script>` element. The file should look like this:

```
<script async src="https://cse.google.com/cse.js?cx=xxxxxxxxxxxxxx"></script>
```

6. Create a file named `google-results.html`, add only the * * element and include the `data-autoSearchOnLoad="true" data-queryParameterName="searchQuery"` attributes. The file should look like this:

```
<div class="gcse-searchresults-only" data-autoSearchOnLoad="true"
  data-queryParameterName="searchQuery"></div>
```

> **Note:**
> For more information about other supported attributes, see Google Custom Search: Supported Attributes.

7. Edit the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario and choose a *template*.
8. Switch to the **Parameters** tab and edit the `webhelp.google.search.script` parameter to reference the `google-script.html` file. Then edit the `webhelp.google.search.results` parameter to reference the `google-results.html` file.
9. Click **Ok** and run the transformation scenario.

> **Important:**
> The Google search feature will not work locally, it must be deployed on an HTTP server.

Replacing the Search Engine Only

It is possible to replace the internal search engine that is used by **Oxygen XML WebHelp** by using a custom JavaScript file. This customization method allows you to replace the search engine but keep the search results presentation.

To replace WebHelp's internal search engine, follow this procedure:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Create the following items in the folder that contains your publishing descriptor file (the **.opt** file):
   - A folder named `js`.
   - A folder named `fragments`.
3. In the `js` folder, create a file named `search-engine.js`.
4. As a starting point, you can copy the following content to the `search-engine.js` file:

```
/**
 * Object that implements the methods required by WebHelp to run a search engine.
 */
function CustomSearchEngine() {


  /**
   * Method required to run the search engine in webhelp. Handler when the users
   * executes the query in the search page.
   *
   * @param {String} query            The search input string from the user.
   * @param {Function} successHandler Needs to be called if the search operation is executed
   *                                  successfully. The parameter needs to have the type of
   *                                  WebHelpAPI.SearchResult
   * @param {Function} errorHandler   Needs to be called if the search operation fails to
   *                                  execute successfully. It needs to have the type
   *                                  of String.
   */
  this.performSearchOperation = function(query, successHandler, errorHandler) {
      // implement search engine
```

```
      // const searchRestult = externalSearchEngine(query);

      // convert the result to WebHelpApi.SearchResult
      // const formattedResult = convert(searchRestult);

      // call successHanlder with the converted result.
      // successHandler(formattedResult)
  }

  /**
   * Method required to run the search engine in webhelp. Handler when the
   * page is changed in the search page.
   *
   * @param {Integer} pageToShow      The page to be dispalyed.
   * @param {Integer} maxItemsPerPage The maximum # of items that can be displayed on a page.
   * @param {String} query            The search input string from the user.
   * @param {Function} successHandler Needs to be called if the search operation is executed
   *                                  successfully. The parameter needs to have the type of
   *                                  WebHelpAPI.SearchResult
   * @param {Function} errorHandler   Needs to be called if the search operation fails to
   *                                  execute successfully. It needs to have the type
   *                                  of String.
   */
  this.onPageChangedHandler = function(pageToShow, maxItemsPerPage, query, successHandler,
errorHandler) {
      // implement search engine
      // const searchRestult = externalSearchEngine(pageToShot, maxItemsPerPage, query);

      // convert the result to WebHelpApi.SearchResult
      // const formattedResult = convert(searchRestult);

      // call successHanlder with the converted result.
      // successHandler(formattedResult)
  }
}

// Set the Search Engine to WebHelp
WebHelpAPI.setCustomSearchEngine(new CustomSearchEngine());
```

Note:
See the API Search Objects section *(on page 1091)* for details on how to convert your custom search engine results to `WebHelpAPI.SearchResult`.

5. Implement your search engine.
6. In the `fragments` folder, create a file named `search-engine-script-fragment.xml`.
7. In the `search-engine-script-fragment.xml` file, define the scripts that are required for your search engine to run. For example:

```
<div>
    <script src="${oxygen-webhelp-template-dir}/js/search-engine.js"></script>
</div>
```

8. Copy the `js` folder to the output folder during the transformation process. For this, open the `.opt` file and add the following content in the `<resources>` section (see Template Resources *(on page 997)* for more details):

```
<fileset>
  <include name="js/**"/>
</fileset>
```

9. Set the transformation parameters needed to enable the search filter. For this, open the `.opt` file and add the following content inside the `<webhelp>` element:

```
<html-fragments>
  <fragment file="fragments/search-engine-script-fragment.xml"
      placeholder="webhelp.fragment.head.search.page"/>
</html-fragments>
```

API Search Objects

To replace the WebHelp Search Engine, you will need to convert your custom search result into WebHelp API Objects that WebHelp will use to render your search result on the search page. To convert your custom search result, you will have to create the following objects:

1. *WebHelpAPI.SearchMeta* is a JavaScript object used to hold additional information for the search result. To create such an object, the following fields are required:
    - **String: searchEngineName** - The name of the search engine used to retrieve the search result.
    - **Integer: totalSearchItems** - The total number of search items the search engine returned.
    - **Integer: currentPage** - The current page to display.
    - **Integer: maxItemsPerPage** - The maximum number of items that can be displayed on a page.
    - **Integer: totalPages** - The number of total pages for the search result.
    - **String: originalSearchExpression** - The query string the user typed in the search input field.

```
conse searchMeta = new WebHelpAPI.SearchMeta(searchEngineName, totalSearchItems, currentPage,
maxItemsPerPage, totalPages, origianlSearchExpresion);
```

2. *WebHelpAPI.SearchDocument* is a JavaScript object used to hold the search result for a single topic/HTML page. To create such an object, the following fields are required:
    - **String: linkLocation** - The URL to the topic.
    - **String: title** - The topic title.
    - **String: shortDescription** - The topic short description.

```
const searchDocument = new WebHelpAPI.SearchDocument(linkLocation, title, shortDescription);
```

3. *WebHelpAPI.SearchResult* is a JavaScript object used to display the search results in the search page. To create such an object, the following fields are required:
   - **WebHelpAPI.SearchMeta: searchMeta** - Contains additional information for the search result.
   - **Array[WebHelpAPI.SearchDocument]: documents** - An array with the matching documents (HTML pages) for the search result.

```
conse searchMeta = new WebHelpAPI.SearchMeta(searchEngineName, totalSearchItems, currentPage,
maxItemsPerPage, totalPages, origianlSearchExpresion);
const searchDocument = new WebHelpAPI.SearchDocument(linkLocation, title, shortDescription);
const documents = [searchDocument]; // An array with one element.
const searchResult = new WebHelpAPI.SearchResult(searchMeta, documents);
```

Replacing the Search Engine and Results Presentation

It is possible to integrate a custom search engine and replace the search results area into your WebHelp Responsive output. This is done by using the following transformation parameters:

webhelp.fragment.custom.search.engine.results

This parameter can be used to replace the search results area with custom XHTML content. The value of the parameter is the path to an XHTML file that contains your custom content.

webhelp.fragment.custom.search.engine.script

This parameter can be used to replace WebHelp's built-in search engine with your own custom search engine. The value of the parameter is the path to an XHTML file that contains the scripts required for your custom search engine to run.

To integrate a custom search engine into your WebHelp Responsive output, follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Create the following items in the folder that contains your publishing descriptor file (the `.opt` file):
   - A file named `custom-search-results-fragment.xml`.
   - A file named `custom-search-script-fragment.xml`.
   - A folder named `js`.
3. In the **custom-search-results-fragment.xml** file, define the HTML structure that will be used as the search results area. For example:

```
<div id="cumstom-search-results">...</div>
```

Note:
The custom search engine script will need to find an HTML element from the HTML structure that will be used as the search results area and write the search results inside it. In this example, it is the `<div>` element with the id *custom-search-results*.

4. In the **js** folder, create a file named **custom-search.js**.
5. As a starting point, you can copy the following content to the **custom-search.js** file:

```
document.addEventListener('DOMContentLoaded', (event) => {
    const params = new URLSearchParams(window.location.search);
    const searchQuery = params.get('searchQuery');
    // Implement your custom search engine
    // Display the search results
});
```

> **Important:**
> The value entered by the user in the search page will be available in the URL's query parameters in a parameter named `searchQuery`.

> **Attention:**
> *URLSearchParams* is not supported on all browsers (it is used as an example). A list with the supported browsers can be found here. A different solution should be used if you need to support other browsers.

6. Implement your custom search engine.

> **Note:**
> The search results should be pushed into the `<div>` element created earlier with the id *custom-search-results*.

7. In the **custom-search-script-fragment.xml** file, define the scripts that are required for your custom search engine to run. For example:

```
<div>
    <script src="${oxygen-webhelp-template-dir}/js/custom-search.js"></script>
</div>
```

8. Copy the **js** folder to the output folder during the transformation process. For this, open the `.opt` file and add the following content in the `<resources>` section (see Template Resources *(on page 997)* for more details):

```
<fileset>
  <include name="js/**"/>
</fileset>
```

9. Set the transformation parameters needed to enable the custom search engine. For this, open the `.opt` file and add the following content inside the `<webhelp>` element:

```
<html-fragments>
  <fragment file="custom-search-script-fragment.xml"
```

```
      placeholder="webhelp.fragment.custom.search.engine.script"/>
  <fragment file="custom-search-results-fragment.xml"
      placeholder="webhelp.fragment.custom.search.engine.results"/>
</html-fragments>
```

10. Run the transformation with this publishing template selected.

> **Tip:**
> A sample publishing template that overrides WebHelp's default search engine is available to download here. You can use it as a starting point for your customization.

How to Display Custom Title in Search Results

It is possible to display a custom title for topics in the search results page. This can be achieved by adding the `<searchtitle>` element inside the particular DITA topic (or within the topic reference in the DITA map). The `<searchtitle>` element is used to specify the title that is displayed by search tools that locate the topic. This is useful when the topic has a title that makes sense in the context of a single information set, but may be too general in a list of search results. If the `<searchtitle>` is specified, then the search results page will display the contents inside the `<searchtitle>` as the topic title.

For details about the `<searchtitle>` element (including an example), see https://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.2/os/spec/langref/searchtitle.html.

How to Trigger a Search Query When WebHelp is Loaded

You can use the `searchQuery` URL parameter to perform a search operation when WebHelp is loaded. This opens the search results page with the specified search query processed. The URL should look something like this:

```
http://localhost/webhelp/search.html?searchQuery=deploying%20feedback
```

Configuring the Search Engine Optimization

A **DITA Map WebHelp** transformation scenario produces a `sitemap.xml` file that is used by search engines to aid crawling and indexing mechanisms. A *sitemap* lists all pages of a WebHelp system and allows web admins to provide additional information about each page, such as the date it was last updated, change frequency, and importance of each page in relation to other pages in your WebHelp deployment.

> **Important:**
> If the `webhelp.sitemap.base.url` parameter is specified, the **loc** element will contain the value of this parameter plus the relative path to the page. If the `webhelp.sitemap.base.url` parameter is not specified, the **loc** element will only contain the relative path of the page.
>
> You can also set these additional parameters:

- **webhelp.sitemap.change.frequency** - Specifies how frequently the WebHelp pages are likely to change (accepted values are: `always`, `hourly`, `daily`, `weekly`, `monthly`, `yearly`, and `never`).
- **webhelp.sitemap.priority** - Specifies the priority of each page (a value ranging from 0.0 to 1.0).

The structure of the `sitemap.xml` file looks like this:

```
<urlset xmlns="http://www.sitemaps.org/schemas/sitemap/0.9">
  <url>
    <loc>http://www.example.com/topics/introduction.html</loc>
    <lastmod>2014-10-24</lastmod>
    <changefreq>weekly</changefreq>
    <priority>0.5</priority>
  </url>
  <url>
    <loc>http://www.example.com/topics/care.html#care</loc>
    <lastmod>2014-10-24</lastmod>
    <changefreq>weekly</changefreq>
    <priority>0.5</priority>
  </url>
   . . .
</urlset>
```

Each page has a `<url>` element structure containing additional information, such as:

- **loc** - The URL of the page. This URL must begin with the protocol (such as `http`), if required by your web server. It is constructed from the value of the `webhelp.sitemap.base.url` parameter from the transformation scenario and the relative path to the page (collected from the `href` attribute of a `topicref` element in the *DITA map*).

  Note:
  The value must have fewer than 2,048 characters.

- **lastmod** (optional) - The date when the page was last modified. The date format is `YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss`.
- **changefreq** (optional) - Indicates how frequently the page is likely to change. This value provides general information to assist search engines, but may not correlate exactly to how often they crawl the page. Valid values are: `always`, `hourly`, `daily`, `weekly`, `monthly`, `yearly`, and `never`. The first time the `sitemap.xml` file is generated, the value is set based upon the value of the `webhelp.sitemap.change.frequency` parameter in the DITA WebHelp transformation scenario. You can change the value in each `url` element by editing the `sitemap.xml` file.

> **Note:**
> The value `always` should be used to describe documents that change each time they are accessed. The value `never` should be used to describe archived URLs.

- **priority** (optional) - The priority of this page relative to other pages on your site. Valid values range from 0.0 to 1.0. This value does not affect how your pages are compared to pages on other sites. It only lets the search engines know which pages you deem most important for the crawlers. The first time the `sitemap.xml` file is generated, the value is set based upon the value of the `webhelp.sitemap.priority` parameter in the DITA WebHelp transformation scenario. You can change the value in each `url` element by editing the `sitemap.xml` file.

Creating and Editing the `sitemap.xml` File

Follow these steps to produce a `sitemap.xml` file for your WebHelp system, which can then be edited to fine-tune search engine optimization:

1. **Edit** the transformation scenario you currently use for obtaining your WebHelp output. This opens the **Edit DITA Scenario** dialog box.
2. Open the **Parameters** tab and set a value for the following parameters:
   - **webhelp.sitemap.base.url** - The URL of the location where your WebHelp system is deployed.

     > **Note:**
     > This parameter is required for Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to generate the `sitemap.xml` file.

   - **webhelp.sitemap.change.frequency** - How frequently the WebHelp pages are likely to change (accepted values are: `always`, `hourly`, `daily`, `weekly`, `monthly`, `yearly`, and `never`).
   - **webhelp.sitemap.priority** - The priority of each page (value ranging from 0.0 to 1.0).
3. Run the transformation scenario.
4. Look for the `sitemap.xml` file in the transformation's output folder. Edit the file to fine-tune the parameters of each page, according to your needs.

Localization

This section contains topics that explain how to use the localization support in WebHelp Responsive output.

How to Localize the Interface of WebHelp Responsive Output

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes with support for the following built-in languages: English, French, German, Japanese, and Chinese. It is possible to edit existing localization strings or add a new language.

Static labels used in the WebHelp output are stored in translation files that have the *strings-lang1-lang2.xml* name format, where *lang1* and *lang2* are ISO language codes. For example, the US English labels are kept in the *strings-en-us.xml* file.

These translation files are collected from two locations:

- ***DITA-OT-DIR*/plugins/org.dita.base/xsl/common folder** - DITA-OT's default translations (generated text for `<note>`, `<fig>`, and `<table>` elements).
- ***DITA-OT-DIR*/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/oxygen-webhelp/resources/localization folder** - These translations are contributed by the WebHelp plugin and extend the default ones provided by DITA-OT. The labels defined in this folder take precedence over the DITA-OT defaults.

There are two major reasons you may want to use modify the translation files: to modify the existing strings or to translate to a new language.

Related Information:

How to Index Japanese Content *(on page 1079)*
Customizing Generated Text

Modifying the Existing Strings

To modify the generated text for WebHelp transformations, you need to create a DITA-OT extension plugin that uses the *dita.xsl.strings* extension point. The following procedure is for changing English labels, but you can adapt it for any language:

1. Create a `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization` plugin directory inside the *DITA-OT-DIR*`/plugins/` location.
2. Create a `plugin.xml` file inside that `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization` directory with the following content:

```
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization">
    <require plugin="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive"/>

    <feature extension="dita.xsl.strings" file="webhelp-extension-strings.xml"/>
</plugin>
```

3. Create a `webhelp-extension-strings.xml` file with the following content:

```
<langlist>
    <lang xml:lang="en"    filename="strings-en-us.xml"/>
    <lang xml:lang="en-us"    filename="strings-en-us.xml"/>
</langlist>
```

4. Create an empty `strings-en-us.xml` file and copy the strings you want to change from the translation files *(on page 1096)* into it. Make sure you leave the `@id` attribute unchanged because this is the key used to look up the string. Then replace their values:

```
<variables>
  <variable id="Figure">Fig</variable>
```

```
  <variable id="Draft comment">ADDRESS THIS DRAFT COMMENT</variable>
</variables>
```

5. Use the **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** transformation scenario *(on page 822)* found in the **DITA Map** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

Adding a New Language

To add a new language for WebHelp transformations, you need to create a DITA-OT extension plugin that uses the *dita.xsl.strings* extension point. The following sample procedure is for adding translation files for the Polish language, but you can adapt it for any language:

1. Create a `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization` plugin directory inside the *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/` location.
2. Create a `plugin.xml` file inside that `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization` directory with the following content:

```
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.localization">
    <require plugin="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive"/>

    <feature extension="dita.xsl.strings" file="webhelp-extension-strings.xml"/>
</plugin>
```

3. Create a `webhelp-extension-strings.xml` file with the following content:

```
<langlist>
    <lang xml:lang="pl"    filename="strings-pl-pl.xml"/>
    <lang xml:lang="pl-PL"    filename="strings-pl-pl.xml"/>
</langlist>
```

4. Copy the WebHelp strings file (*`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/oxygen-webhelp/resources/localization/strings-en-us.xml`) to your plugin directory, and rename it as `strings-pl-pl.xml`.
5. Copy the common DITA-OT strings defined in the *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/org.dita.base/xsl/common/strings-en-us.xml` file into the file created at step 4. It defines a set generated text available for HTML-based transformations (such as `<note>`, `<fig>`, and `<table>` elements). Translate the content of each `<variable>` element (make sure to leave the `@id` attribute unchanged).

```
<variables>
  ...
  <variable id="webhelp.content" js="true" php="false">Polish word for 'Content'.</variable>
  <variable id="webhelp.search" js="true" php="false">Polish word for 'Search'</variable>
  ...
  <variable id="Figure">Polish word for 'Figure'</variable>
  <variable id="Table">Polish word for 'Table'</variable>
```

```
  ...
</variables>
```

6. Use the **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** transformation scenario *(on page 822)* found in the **DITA Map** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

How to Activate Support for Right-to-Left (RTL) Languages

To activate support for RTL (right-to-left) languages in WebHelp output, edit the *DITA map (on page 2230)* and set the `@xml:lang` attribute on its root element (`<map>`). The corresponding attribute value can be set for following RTL languages:

- **ar-eg** - Arabic
- **he-il** - Hebrew
- **ur-pk** - Urdu

Integrating Social Media and Google Tools in the WebHelp Output

This section contains topics that explain how to integrate some of the most popular social media sites in WebHelp output.

How to Add a Facebook Like Button in WebHelp Responsive Output

It is possible to integrate Facebook™ into your **WebHelp Responsive** output and you can specify where you want the widget to appear in your WebHelp page.

Using a Publishing Template

To add a Facebook™ *Like* widget to your WebHelp output using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 990)*, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Facebook Developers website.
2. Fill in the displayed form, then click the **Get Code** button.
3. Copy the two code snippets and paste them into a `<div>` element inside an XML file called `facebook-widget.xml`. Make sure you follow these rules:
   - The file must be well-formed.
   - The code for each `<script>` element must be included in an XML comment.
   - The start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line. The content of the XML file should look like this:

```
<div id="facebook">
    <div id="fb-root"/>
    <script>
        <!--
            (function(d, s, id) {
        var js, fjs = d.getElementsByTagName(s)[0];
        if (d.getElementById(id)) return;
```

```
        js = d.createElement(s); js.id = id;
        js.src = "//connect.facebook.net/en_US/sdk.js#xfbml=1&version=v2.0";
        fjs.parentNode.insertBefore(js, fjs);
        }(document, 'script', 'facebook-jssdk'));
        -->
    </script>
    <div class="fb-like" data-layout="standard" data-action="like"
        data-show-faces="true" data-share="true"/>
</div>
```

4. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template.
5. Use one of the parameters that begin with *webhelp.fragment (on page 1001)* in the *html-fragments* section of the descriptor file. Set the value of that parameter to reference the `facebook-widget.xml` file that you created earlier.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
      <html-fragments>
        <fragment
          file="HTML-fragments/facebook-widget.xml"
          placeholder="webhelp.fragment.after.toc_or_tiles"/>
      </html-fragments>
    </webhelp>
```

6. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
7. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
8. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
9. Run the transformation scenario.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To add a Facebook™ *Like* widget to your WebHelp output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Facebook Developers website.
2. Fill in the displayed form, then click the **Get Code** button.
3. Copy the two code snippets and paste them into a `<div>` element inside an XML file called `facebook-widget.xml`. Make sure you follow these rules:
    - The file must be well-formed.
    - The code for each `<script>` element must be included in an XML comment.
    - The start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line. The content of the XML file should look like this:

```
<div id="facebook">
    <div id="fb-root"/>
    <script>
        <!--
            (function(d, s, id) {
        var js, fjs = d.getElementsByTagName(s)[0];
        if (d.getElementById(id)) return;
        js = d.createElement(s); js.id = id;
        js.src = "//connect.facebook.net/en_US/sdk.js#xfbml=1&version=v2.0";
        fjs.parentNode.insertBefore(js, fjs);
        }(document, 'script', 'facebook-jssdk'));
        -->
    </script>
    <div class="fb-like" data-layout="standard" data-action="like"
        data-show-faces="true" data-share="true"/>
</div>
```

4. Edit the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario and choose a *template*.
5. Switch to the **Parameters** tab. Depending on where you want to display the button, edit one of the parameters that begin with *webhelp.fragment (on page 1001)*. Set that parameter to reference the `facebook-widget.xml` file that you created earlier.
6. Click **Ok** and run the transformation scenario.

How to Add Tweet Button in WebHelp Responsive Output

It is possible to integrate X™ (formerly known as Twitter) into your **WebHelp Responsive** output and you can specify where you want the widget to appear in your WebHelp page.

Using a Publishing Template

To add a X™ *Tweet* widget to your WebHelp Responsive output using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 990)*, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Tweet button generator page.
2. Fill in the displayed form. The **Preview and code** area displays the code that you will need.
3. Copy the code snippet displayed in the **Preview and code** area and paste it into a `<div>` element inside an XML file called `tweet-button.xml`. Make sure you follow these rules:
    - The file must be well-formed.
    - The code for each `<script>` element must be included in an XML comment.
    - The start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line.

    The content of the XML file should look like this:

```
<div id="twitter">
  <a href="https://twitter.com/share" class="twitter-share-button">Tweet</a>
  <script>
```

```
    <!--
      !function (d, s, id) {
      var
      js, fjs = d.getElementsByTagName(s)[0], p = /^http:/.test(d.location)
 ? 'http': 'https';
      if (! d.getElementById(id)) {
      js = d.createElement(s);
      js.id = id;
      js.src = p + '://platform.twitter.com/widgets.js';
      fjs.parentNode.insertBefore(js, fjs);
      }
      }
      (document,
      'script', 'twitter-wjs');
     -->
  </script>
</div>
```

4. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template.
5. Use one of the parameters that begin with *webhelp.fragment (on page 1001)* in the *html-fragments* section of the descriptor file. Set the value of that parameter to reference the `tweet-button.xml` file that you created earlier.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
      <html-fragments>
        <fragment
          file="HTML-fragments/tweet-button.xml"
          placeholder="webhelp.fragment.after.toc_or_tiles"/>
      </html-fragments>
    </webhelp>
```

6. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
7. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
8. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
9. Run the transformation scenario.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To add a X™ *Tweet* widget to your WebHelp Responsive output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the Tweet button generator page.
2. Fill in the displayed form. The **Preview and code** area displays the code that you will need.
3. Copy the code snippet displayed in the **Preview and code** area and paste it into a `<div>` element inside an XML file called `tweet-button.xml`. Make sure you follow these rules:
   - The file must be well-formed.
   - The code for each `<script>` element must be included in an XML comment.
   - The start and end tags for the XML comment must be on a separate line.

   The content of the XML file should look like this:

```
<div id="twitter">
  <a href="https://twitter.com/share" class="twitter-share-button">Tweet</a>
  <script>
    <!--
      !function (d, s, id) {
      var
      js, fjs = d.getElementsByTagName(s)[0], p = /^http:/.test(d.location)
 ? 'http': 'https';
      if (! d.getElementById(id)) {
      js = d.createElement(s);
      js.id = id;
      js.src = p + '://platform.twitter.com/widgets.js';
      fjs.parentNode.insertBefore(js, fjs);
      }
      }
      (document,
      'script', 'twitter-wjs');
     -->
  </script>
</div>
```

4. Edit the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario and choose a *template*.
5. Switch to the **Parameters** tab. Depending on where you want to display the button, edit one of the parameters that begin with *webhelp.fragment (on page 1001)*. Set that parameter to reference the `tweet-button.xml` file that you created earlier.
6. Click **Ok** and run the transformation scenario.

How to Integrate Google Analytics in WebHelp Responsive Output

You can use *Google Analytics* to track and report site data for your **WebHelp Responsive** output.

Using a Publishing Template

To integrate *Google Analytics* into your WebHelp Responsive output using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 990)*, follow this procedure:

1. Create a new Google Analytics account (if you do not already have one) and log on.
2. Choose the Analytics solution that best fits the needs of your website.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to obtain a **Tracking Code** that contains your *Tracking ID*. A **Tracking Code** looks like this:

```
<script>
 (function(i,s,o,g,r,a,m){i['GoogleAnalyticsObject']=r;i[r]=i[r]||function(){
 (i[r].q=i[r].q||[]).push(arguments)},i[r].l=1*new Date();a=s.createElement(o),
 m=s.getElementsByTagName(o)[0];a.async=1;a.src=g;m.parentNode.insertBefore(a,m)
 })(window,document,'script','//www.google-analytics.com/analytics.js','ga');


 ga('create', 'UA-XXXXXXXX-X', 'auto');
 ga('send', 'pageview');
</script>
```

4. Save the Tracking Code (obtained in the previous step) in a new XML file called `googleAnalytics.xml`. Note that the file should only contain the tracking code.
5. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template.
6. Use the webhelp.fragment.after.body parameter *(on page 1146)* in the *html-fragments* section of the descriptor file. Set the value of that parameter to reference the `googleAnalytics.xml` file that you created earlier. The content of this file will be copied at the end of all generated output pages, right before the ending `<body>` element. This ensures that the page is loaded before the Google Analytics servers are contacted, thus reducing page loading time.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
      <html-fragments>
        <fragment
          file="HTML-fragments/googleAnalytics.xml"
          placeholder="webhelp.fragment.after.body"/>
      </html-fragments>
    </webhelp>
```

7. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
8. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
9. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
10. Run the transformation scenario.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To integrate *Google Analytics* into your WebHelp Responsive output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Create a new Google Analytics account (if you do not already have one) and log on.
2. Choose the Analytics solution that best fits the needs of your website.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions to obtain a **Tracking Code** that contains your *Tracking ID*. A **Tracking Code** looks like this:

```
<script>
 (function(i,s,o,g,r,a,m){i['GoogleAnalyticsObject']=r;i[r]=i[r]||function(){
 (i[r].q=i[r].q||[]).push(arguments)},i[r].l=1*new Date();a=s.createElement(o),
 m=s.getElementsByTagName(o)[0];a.async=1;a.src=g;m.parentNode.insertBefore(a,m)
 })(window,document,'script','//www.google-analytics.com/analytics.js','ga');


 ga('create', 'UA-XXXXXXXX-X', 'auto');
 ga('send', 'pageview');
</script>
```

4. Save the Tracking Code (obtained in the previous step) in a new XML file called `googleAnalytics.xml`. Note that the file should only contain the tracking code.
5. Edit the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario and choose a *template*.
6. Switch to the **Parameters** tab. Edit the webhelp.fragment.after.body parameter *(on page 1146)* and set it to reference the `googleAnalytics.xml` file that you created earlier. The content of this file will be copied at the end of all generated output pages, right before the ending `<body>` element. This ensures that the page is loaded before the Google Analytics servers are contacted, thus reducing page loading time.
7. Click **Ok** and run the transformation scenario.

Ant Extensions for WebHelp Responsive

The WebHelp Responsive plugin provides extension points that allow you to implement custom Ant targets to perform additional operations before and after certain processing stages. The following extension points are available in WebHelp Responsive:

whr-init-pre

Runs a custom Ant target before the `whr-init` processing stage.

whr-init-post

Runs a custom Ant target after the `whr-init` processing stage.

whr-collect-indexterms-pre

Runs a custom Ant target before the `whr-collect-indexterms` processing stage.

whr-collect-indexterms-post

Runs a custom Ant target after the `whr-collect-indexterms` processing stage.

whr-toc-xml-pre

Runs a custom Ant target before the `whr-toc-xml` processing stage.

whr-toc-xml-post

Runs a custom Ant target after the `whr-toc-xml` processing stage.

whr-context-help-map-pre

Runs a custom Ant target before the `whr-context-help-map` processing stage.

whr-context-help-map-post

Runs a custom Ant target after the `whr-context-help-map` processing stage.

whr-sitemap-pre

Runs a custom Ant target before the `whr-sitemap` processing stage.

whr-sitemap-post

Runs a custom Ant target after the `whr-sitemap` processing stage.

whr-copy-resources-pre

Runs a custom Ant target before the `whr-copy-resources` processing stage.

whr-copy-resources-post

Runs a custom Ant target after the `whr-copy-resources` processing stage.

whr-create-topic-pages-pre

Runs a custom Ant target before the `whr-create-topic-pages` processing stage.

whr-create-topic-pages-post

Runs a custom Ant target after the `whr-create-topic-pages` processing stage.

whr-create-main-page-pre

Runs a custom Ant target before the `whr-create-main-page` processing stage.

whr-create-main-page-post

Runs a custom Ant target after the `whr-create-main-page` processing stage.

whr-create-search-page-pre

Runs a custom Ant target before the `whr-create-search-page` processing stage.

whr-create-search-page-post

Runs a custom Ant target after the `whr-create-search-page` processing stage.

whr-create-indexterms-page-pre

Runs a custom Ant target before the `whr-create-indexterms-page` processing stage.

whr-create-indexterms-page-post

Runs a custom Ant target after the `whr-create-indexterms-page` processing stage.

whr-search-index-pre

Runs a custom Ant target before the `whr-search-index` processing stage.

whr-search-index-post

Runs a custom Ant target after the `whr-search-index` processing stage.

To use Ant extension points for WebHelp Responsive, follow these steps:

1. In the `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/` folder, create a folder for this plugin (for example, `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive.custom.ant.extensions`).
2. Create a **plugin.xml** file (in the folder you created in step 1) that extends the WebHelp Responsive plugin and specifies an Ant extension point with your custom Ant project file that contains the new build targets. For example:

```
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive.custom.ant.extensions">

     <require plugin="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive"/>

    <feature extension="ant.import" file="custom_build_file.xml"/>

</plugin>
```

3. Create the **custom_build_file.xml** file (in the folder you created in step 1) that contains your custom Ant project implementing one or more extension points:

```
<project name="custom.ant.extensions.integrator" basedir=".">

    <target name="custom-whr-init-pre" extensionOf="whr-init-pre">

        <echo>Extension point that executes before whr-init</echo>

    </target>

    <target name="custom-whr-init-post" extensionOf="whr-init-post">

        <echo>Extension point that executes after whr-init</echo>

    </target>

</project>
```

4. Integrate the plugin into the DITA-OT. In the `DITA-OT-DIR/bin` directory of the DITA Open Toolkit *(on page 2230)*, run one of the following scripts, depending on your operating system:
   - Windows: `DITA-OT-DIR/bin/dita.bat --install`
   - Linux/macOS: `sh DITA-OT-DIR/bin/dita --install`
5. Execute a DITA Map to WebHelp Responsive transformation script.

XSLT Extensions for WebHelp Responsive

Since WebHelp Responsive output is primarily obtained by running XSLT transformations over the DITA input files, one customization method would be to override the default XSLT templates that are used by the WebHelp Responsive transformations.

There are two methods available to override the XSLT stylesheets implied by the WebHelp Responsive transformation.

- Use *XSLT-import extension points* from an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 2232)*.

> **Note:**
> Use this method if you want to affect only the transformations that use this *publishing template*.

- Use *XSLT-import extension points* from a DITA-OT extension plugin.

> **Note:**
> This method will affect all the outputs generated with the WebHelp system.

Related information

WebHelp Responsive XSLT-Import and XSLT-Parameter Extension Points *(on page 1159)*

How to Use XSLT Extension Points from a Publishing Template

It is possible to declare a WebHelp XSLT-Import Extension Points *(on page 1160)* in an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1181)* to override or add additional XSLT processing.

Example:

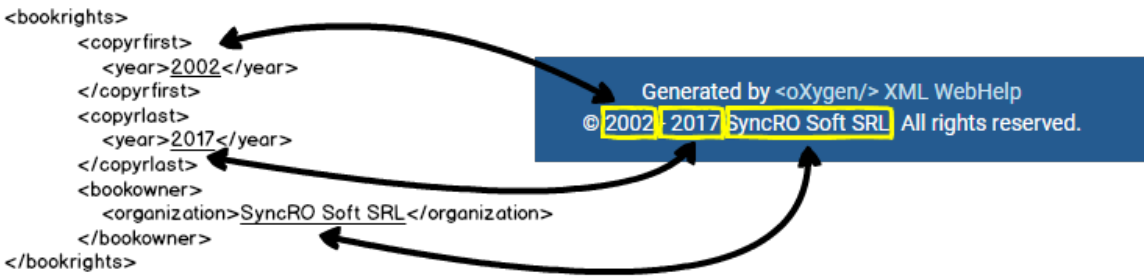
```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <xslt>
            <extension
              id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage"
              file="xsl/customMainPage.xsl"/>
        </xslt>
```

Use Case 1: Add Copyright Information Extracted from a DITA Bookmap

Suppose you want to customize the WebHelp Responsive main page by adding information about the legal rights associated with the book in the footer (for example, copyright dates and owner). This information is specified in the bookmap:

```
<bookrights>
  <copyrfirst>
    <year>2002</year>
  </copyrfirst>
  <copyrlast>
    <year>2017</year>
  </copyrlast>
  <bookowner>
    <organization>SyncRO Soft SRL</organization>
  </bookowner>
</bookrights>
```

Figure 238. Example: Copyright Information Added in the WebHelp Footer



The XSLT stylesheet that generates the main page is located in: *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\mainFiles\createMainPage.xsl`. This XSLT stylesheet declares the `copy_template` mode that processes the main page template *(on page 1011)* to expand its components. The main page template declares a component for the footer section that looks like this:

```
<div class=" footer-container text-center ">

  <whc:include_html href="${webhelp.fragment.footer}"/>

</div>
```

To add this functionality using a *Oxygen Publishing Template*, follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.

   Step Result: You should have the `custom_footer_template` folder linked in your project.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xsl` folder inside the project root folder.

   Step Result: You should have the `custom_footer_template/xsl` folder in your project.
4. Create your customization stylesheet (for example, **customMainPage.xsl**) in the `custom_footer_template/xsl` folder. Edit it to override the template that produces the footer section:

   ```
   <xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"

     xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"

     xmlns:oxygen="http://www.oxygenxml.com/functions"

     exclude-result-prefixes="xs"

     version="3.0">


     <xsl:template match="*:div[contains(@class, 'footer-container')]" mode="copy_template">

       <!-- Apply the default processing -->

       <xsl:next-match/>


       <!-- Add a div containing the copyright information -->
   ```

```
    <div class="copyright_info">
      <xsl:choose>
        <!-- Adds the start-end years if they are defined -->
        <xsl:when test="exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst) and
          exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrlast)">
          <span class="copyright_years">
            &#xa9;<xsl:value-of select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst"/>
            -<xsl:value-of select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrlast"/>
          </span>
        </xsl:when>

        <!-- Adds only the first year if last is not defined. -->
        <xsl:when test="exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst)">
          <span class="copyright_years">
            &#xa9;<xsl:value-of select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst"/>
          </span>
        </xsl:when>
      </xsl:choose>


      <xsl:if test="exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:bookowner/*:organization)">
        <span class="organization">
          <xsl:text> </xsl:text><xsl:value-of
            select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:bookowner/*:organization"/>
          <xsl:text>. All rights reserved.</xsl:text>
        </span>
      </xsl:if>
    </div>
  </xsl:template>


</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the *com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage* XSLT extension point.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <xslt>
            <extension
            file="xslt/customMainPage.xsl"
            id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage"/>
```

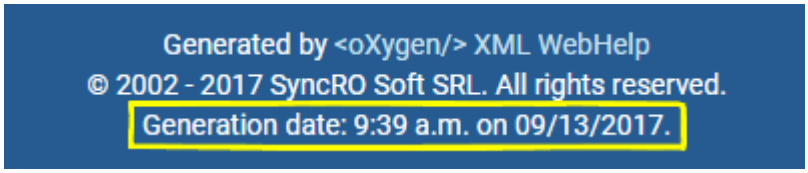
6. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
7. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
8. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
9. Run the transformation scenario.

Bonus: Add Generation Time in the Output Footer

An additional customization for the main page is to add the generation time in its footer. A transformation parameter is used to control whether or not this customization is active.

Note:
This can also be done directly by using an HTML fragment *(on page 1001)*. You can see a sample project on GitHub that uses an HTML fragment to show the generation time.

Figure 239. Generation Time Added in the WebHelp Footer



To add this functionality, follow these steps:

1. In the customization stylesheet that you just created (for example, **customMainPage.xsl**), modify the template by adding the following XSLT code at the end (before the closing `</div>` element).

```
<xsl:if test="oxygen:getParameter('webhelp.footer.add.generation.time') = 'yes'">
  <div class="generation_time">
    Generation date: <xsl:value-of
      select="format-dateTime(
      current-dateTime(),
      '[h1]:[m01] [P] on [M01]/[D01]/[Y0001].')"/>
  </div>
</xsl:if>
```

Note:
The `oxygen:getParameter(param.name)` function can be called to get the value of any WebHelp transformation parameter. Just make sure the `xmlns:oxygen="http://www.oxygenxml.com/functions"` namespace is declared in the stylesheet.

2. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and set the `webhelp.footer.add.generation.time` parameter to the default value.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
```

```
...
<parameters>
  <parameter
    name="webhelp.footer.add.generation.time"
    value="yes"/>
```

3. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
4. In the **Parameters** tab, you can change the value of the `webhelp.footer.add.generation.time` parameter.
5. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
6. Run the transformation scenario.

Use Case 2: Display Footnotes Below Tables

Suppose you want to separate the footnotes displayed in the WebHelp Responsive pages so that all footnotes are displayed at the end of the page except those within tables that are displayed just after them.

To add this functionality using a *Oxygen Publishing Template*, follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.

   Step Result: You should have the `custom_template` folder linked in your project.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xsl` folder inside the project root folder.

   Step Result: You should have the `custom_template/xsl` folder in your project.
4. Create your customization stylesheet (for example, **tablesFootnotes.xsl**) in the `custom_template/xsl` folder with the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns:oxy="http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author"
  exclude-result-prefixes="#all"
  version="3.0">

  <!--
    Match only top level tables (i.e tables that are not nested in other tables),
    that contains some footnotes.
  -->
  <xsl:template match="
      *[contains(@class, 'topic/table')]
      [not(ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'topic/table')])]
      [//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')]]">
```

```
  <xsl:variable name="top-level-table" select="."/>
  <xsl:next-match>
    <xsl:with-param name="top-level-table" select="$top-level-table" tunnel="yes"/>
  </xsl:next-match>
  <!-- Create a list with all the footnotes from the current table. -->
  <div outputclass="table-fn-container">
    <xsl:for-each select=".//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')]">
      <!--
        Try to preserve the footnote ID, if available, so that the xrefs will have a target.
      -->
      <div id="{if(@id) then @id else generate-id(.)}">
        <xsl:variable name="unique-id" select="generate-id($top-level-table)"/>
        <xsl:variable name="fn-id">
          <xsl:number from="$top-level-table" level="any"/>
        </xsl:variable>

        <xsl:call-template name="commonattributes"/>
        <a name="tbl_{$unique-id}_fntarg_{$fn-id}" href="#tbl_{$unique-id}_fnsrc_{$fn-id}">
          <sup>
            <xsl:value-of select="$fn-id"/>
          </sup>
        </a>
        <xsl:text>  </xsl:text>

        <xsl:apply-templates/>
      </div>
    </xsl:for-each>
  </div>
</xsl:template>

<!--
  Process footnotes both inside and outside tables (based on the top-level-table parameter).
-->
<xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' topic/fn ')]" name="topic.fn">
  <xsl:param name="xref"/>
  <xsl:param name="top-level-table" tunnel="yes"/>
  <!-- Footnotes with IDs must be ignored, they are accessible only through xrefs. -->
  <xsl:if test="not(@id) or $xref = 'yes'">
    <xsl:variable name="unique-id" select="
        if ($top-level-table) then
          generate-id($top-level-table)
        else
```

```
          ()"/>
    <xsl:variable name="fn-id" select="
        if ($top-level-table) then
          index-of($top-level-table//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')], .)
        else
          index-of(//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')]
          [not(ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'topic/entry')])], .)"/>
    <xsl:variable name="callout" select="@callout"/>
    <xsl:variable name="converged-callout" select="
        if (string-length($callout) > 0) then
          $callout
        else
          $fn-id"/>
    <a>
      <!-- Generate different attributes based on the presence of a parent table. -->
      <xsl:attribute name="name" select="
          if ($top-level-table) then
            concat('tbl_', $unique-id,'_fnsrc_', $fn-id)
          else
            concat('fnsrc_', $fn-id)"/>
      <xsl:attribute name="href" select="
          if ($top-level-table) then
            concat('#tbl_', $unique-id,'_fntarg_', $fn-id)
          else
            concat('#fntarg_', $fn-id)"/>
      <sup>
        <xsl:value-of select="$converged-callout"/>
      </sup>
    </a>
  </xsl:if>
</xsl:template>

<!--
  The xrefs to footnotes with IDs inside table-cells. We need to recalculate
  their indexes if their referenced footnote is also in the table.
-->
<xsl:template match="
    *[contains(@class, 'topic/xref')][@type = 'fn']
    [ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'topic/entry')]]">
  <xsl:param name="top-level-table" tunnel="yes"/>

  <xsl:variable name="topic-id" select="substring-after(@href, '#')"/>
```

```
  <xsl:variable name="element-id" select="substring-after($topic-id, '/')"/>
  <xsl:variable name="destination">
    <xsl:choose>
      <xsl:when test="$element-id = ''">
        <xsl:value-of select="$topic-id"/>
      </xsl:when>
      <xsl:otherwise>
        <xsl:value-of select="$element-id"/>
      </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
  </xsl:variable>

  <xsl:variable name="fn" select="
      $top-level-table//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')][@id = $destination]"/>
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$fn">
      <xsl:variable name="unique-id" select="generate-id($top-level-table)"/>
      <!-- There is a reference in the table, recalculate index. -->
      <xsl:variable name="fn-id" select="
          index-of($top-level-table//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')], $fn)"/>
      <a name="tbl_{$unique-id}_fnsrc_{$fn-id}" href="#tbl_{$unique-id}_fntarg_{$fn-id}">
        <sup>
          <xsl:value-of select="$fn-id"/>
        </sup>
      </a>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <!-- There is no reference in the table, keep original index. -->
      <xsl:next-match/>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>

<!--
  Output footnotes below tables and at the end of the topic.
-->
<xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' topic/fn ')]" mode="genEndnote">
  <!-- Do not process footnotes from tables. -->
  <xsl:if test="not(node()/ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'topic/table')])">
    <div>
      <!-- Do not number footnotes from tables. -->
      <xsl:variable name="fn-id" select="index-of(//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')]
```

```
      [not(ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'topic/entry')])], .)"/>
  <xsl:variable name="callout" select="@callout"/>
  <xsl:variable name="converged-callout" select="
      if (string-length($callout) > 0) then
        $callout
      else
        $fn-id"/>

  <xsl:call-template name="commonattributes"/>
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="@id and not(@id = '')">
      <xsl:variable name="topic-id" select="
        ancestor::*[contains(@class, ' topic/topic ')][1]/@id"/>
      <xsl:variable name="ref-id" select="concat($topic-id, '/', @id)"/>
      <xsl:choose>
        <xsl:when test="key('xref', $ref-id)">
          <a>
            <xsl:call-template name="setid"/>
            <sup>
              <xsl:value-of select="$converged-callout"/>
            </sup>
          </a>
          <xsl:text>  </xsl:text>
        </xsl:when>
        <xsl:otherwise>
          <sup>
            <xsl:value-of select="$converged-callout"/>
          </sup>
          <xsl:text>  </xsl:text>
        </xsl:otherwise>
      </xsl:choose>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <a name="fntarg_{$fn-id}" href="#fnsrc_{$fn-id}">
        <sup>
          <xsl:value-of select="$converged-callout"/>
        </sup>
      </a>
      <xsl:text>  </xsl:text>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
```

```
        <xsl:apply-templates/>
      </div>
    </xsl:if>
  </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the *com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.dita2webhelp* XSLT extension point.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <xslt>
            <extension
            file="xslt/tablesFootnotes.xsl"
            id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.dita2webhelp"/>
```

6. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
7. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
8. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
9. Run the transformation scenario.

How to Use XSLT Extension Points from a DITA-OT Plugin

In this example, the main page footer is modified by adding copyright information extracted from the DITA bookmap or by adding the output generation time. The first use-case uses an *XSLT-Import* extension point while the second uses an *XSLT-Parameter* extension point.

Note:
This customization is available as a GitHub project at: https://github.com/oxygenxml/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive.custom.footer.

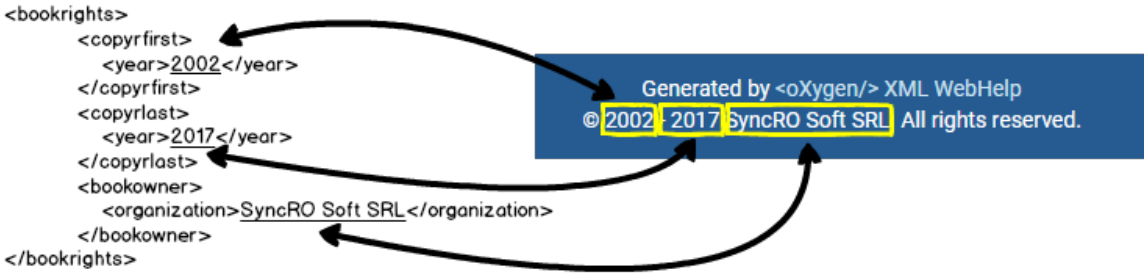
Use Case 1: WebHelp *XSLT-Import* extension point to add copyright information extracted from a DITA Bookmap

Suppose you want to customize the WebHelp Responsive main page by adding information about the legal rights associated with the book in the footer (for example, copyright dates and owner). This information is specified in the bookmap:

```
<bookrights>
  <copyrfirst>
    <year>2002</year>
  </copyrfirst>
```

```
  <copyrlast>
    <year>2017</year>
  </copyrlast>
  <bookowner>
    <organization>SyncRO Soft SRL</organization>
  </bookowner>
</bookrights>
```

Figure 240. Example: Copyright Information Added in the WebHelp Footer



The XSLT stylesheet that generates the main page is located in: *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\mainFiles\createMainPage.xsl`. This XSLT stylesheet declares the `copy_template` mode that processes the main page template to expand its components. The main page template *(on page 1011)* declares a component for the footer section that looks like this:

```
<div class=" footer-container text-center ">
  <whc:include_html href="${webhelp.fragment.footer}"/>
</div>
```

In the following example, the extension stylesheet will add a template that matches this component. It applies the default processing and adds the copyright information at the end.

```
<xsl:template match="*:div[contains(@class, 'footer-container')]" mode="copy_template">
  <!-- Apply the default processing -->
  <xsl:next-match/>

  <!-- Add a div containing the copyright information -->
  <div class="copyright_info">
      <xsl:choose>
          <!-- Adds the start-end years if they are defined -->
          <xsl:when test="exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst) and
                          exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrlast)">
              <span class="copyright_years">
                 &#xa9;<xsl:value-of select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst"/>
                       -<xsl:value-of select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrlast"/>
              </span>
          </xsl:when>
```

```
        <!-- Adds only the first year if last is not defined. -->
        <xsl:when test="exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst)">
            <span class="copyright_years">
               &#xa9;<xsl:value-of select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst"/>
            </span>
        </xsl:when>
    </xsl:choose>


    <xsl:if test="exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:bookowner/*:organization)">
        <span class="organization">
            <xsl:text> </xsl:text><xsl:value-of
                select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:bookowner/*:organization"/>
            <xsl:text>. All rights reserved.</xsl:text>
        </span>
    </xsl:if>
  </div>
</xsl:template>
```

You can implement this functionality with a WebHelp extension plugin that uses the **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage** extension point *(on page 1160)*. This extension point allows you to specify a customization stylesheet that will override the template described above.

To add this functionality as a DITA-OT plugin, follow these steps:

1. In the *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\` folder, create a folder for this plugin (for example, `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive.custom.footer`).
2. Create a **plugin.xml** file (in the folder you created in step 1) that specifies the extension point and your customization stylesheet. For example:

   ```
   <plugin id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive.custom.footer">
     <feature extension="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage"
                file="custom_mainpage.xsl"/>
   </plugin>
   ```

3. Create your customization stylesheet (for example, **custom_mainpage.xsl**), and edit it to override the template that produces the footer section:

   ```
   <xsl:template match="*:div[contains(@class, 'footer-container')]" mode="copy_template">
     <!-- Apply the default processing -->
     <xsl:next-match/>

     <!-- Add a div containing the copyright information -->
     <div class="copyright_info">
   ```

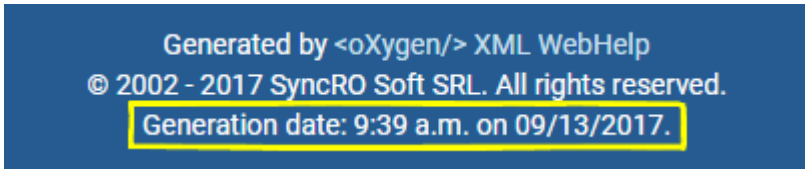
```
      <xsl:choose>
          <!-- Adds the start-end years if they are defined -->
          <xsl:when test="exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst) and
                          exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrlast)">
              <span class="copyright_years">
                 &#xa9;<xsl:value-of select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst"/>
                       -<xsl:value-of select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrlast"/>
              </span>
          </xsl:when>

          <!-- Adds only the first year if last is not defined. -->
          <xsl:when test="exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst)">
              <span class="copyright_years">
                 &#xa9;<xsl:value-of select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:copyrfirst"/>
              </span>
          </xsl:when>
      </xsl:choose>


      <xsl:if test="exists($toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:bookowner/*:organization)">
          <span class="organization">
              <xsl:text> </xsl:text><xsl:value-of
                  select="$toc/*:topicmeta/*:bookrights/*:bookowner/*:organization"/>
              <xsl:text>. All rights reserved.</xsl:text>
          </span>
      </xsl:if>
  </div>
</xsl:template>
```

4. Use the **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** transformation scenario *(on page 822)* found in the **DITA Map** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.
5. Run a **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation scenario to obtain the customized side TOC.

Use-Case 2: WebHelp *XSLT-Parameter* Extension Point to Control if Generation Time is Displayed in the Output

Another possible customization for the main page is to add the generation time in its footer. You can use an *XSLT-Parameter* extension point to control whether or note this customization is active. In this case, you can use the `com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage.param` extension point *(on page 1161)*.

Figure 241. Generation Time Added in the WebHelp Footer



To add this functionality, follow these steps:

1. Create a DITA-OT plugin structure by following the first 3 steps in the procedure above *(on page 1117)*.
2. In the customization stylesheet that you just created (for example, **custom_mainpage.xsl**), declare `webhelp.footer.add.generation.time` as a global parameter and modify the template by adding the following XSLT code at the end.

```
<xsl:if test="$webhelp.footer.add.generation.time = 'yes'">
    <div class="generation_time">
        Generation date: <xsl:value-of select="format-dateTime(
              current-dateTime(), '[h1]:[m01] [P] on [M01]/[D01]/[Y0001].')"/>
    </div>
</xsl:if>
```

3. Edit the **plugin.xml** file to specify the **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage.param** extension point and a custom parameter file by adding the following line:

```
<feature extension="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage.param" file="params.xml"/>
```

4. Create a custom parameter file (for example, **params.xml**). It should look like this:

```
<dummy>
    <param name="webhelp.footer.add.generation.time"
        expression="${webhelp.footer.add.generation.time}"
        if="webhelp.footer.add.generation.time"/>
</dummy>
```

5. Use the **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** transformation scenario *(on page 822)* found in the **DITA Map** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.
6. Edit a **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation scenario and in the **Parameters** tab *(on page 2104)*, specify the desired value (*yes* or *no*) for your custom parameter (`webhelp.footer.add.generation.time`).
7. Run the transformation scenario.

Related Information:
[DITA-OT] *XSLT-Import* Extension Points
[DITA-OT] *XSLT-Parameter* Extension Points

Miscellaneous Customization Topics

This section contains miscellaneous topics about how to customize the WebHelp Responsive output.

How to Copy Additional Resources to Output Directory

You can copy additional resources (such as graphics, JavaScript, CSS, entire folders, or other resources) to the output directory either by using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 2232)*, the `webhelp.custom.resources` parameter or by referencing it in the DITA Map .

Copying Additional Resources to the Output Directory using a Publishing Template

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Add a new `<fileset>` element in the resources section of the template descriptor file *(on page 997)*.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <resources>
            <fileset>
                <include name="custom-resources/**/*"/>
                <exclude name="**/*.git"/>
            </fileset>
```

> **Note:**
> Relative paths in the descriptor file are relative to the template root folder.

3. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
4. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
5. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
6. Run the transformation scenario.

Results: All files from the custom resources directory will be copied to the *`WebHelp Output Directory`*`/oxygen-webhelp/template` folder.

Copying Additional Resources to the Output Directory using a Transformation Parameter

1. Place all your resources in the same directory.
2. Edit the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario and open the **Parameters** tab.
3. Edit the value of the `webhelp.custom.resources` parameter and set it to the absolute path of the directory in step 1.
4. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
5. Run the transformation scenario.

Results: All files from the new directory will be copied to the root of the WebHelp output directory.

Copying Additional Resources to the Output Directory using DITA Map reference

1. Place the resources in the ditamap directory or in a folder under it.
2. Open your ditamap file and declare the resource to be copied:

```
<topicref href="path/to/manual.pdf" format="pdf" processing-role="resource-only"/>
```

3. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: All files referenced this way will be copied at the path indicated by `@href` in the ditamap.

How to Add an Edit Link to Launch Oxygen XML Web Author

You can embed *Edit* links in the DITA WebHelp Responsive output that will automatically launch a particular document in Oxygen XML Web Author. A reviewer can then click the link to open the particular file in Oxygen XML Web Author where they can make or propose changes.

Using a Publishing Template

To embed an *Edit* link in the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive output using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 990)*, follow this procedure:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see Working with Publishing Templates *(on page 1031)*.
2. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and add the following parameters with their values set to the URLs:
   - **editlink.ditamap.edit.url** - The URL of the DITA map used to publish your content. The easiest way to obtain the URL is to open the map in Web Author or Content Fusion and copy the URL from the browser's address bar.
   - **editlink.additional.query.parameters** - Optional query parameters to be appended to each generated edit link. Each parameter must start with *&* (e.g. *&tags-mode=no-tags*).

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <parameters>
            <parameter name="editlink.ditamap.edit.url"
                       value="webdav-https://dav.box.com/dav/my.ditamap"/>
        </parameters>
    </webhelp>
```

3. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
4. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
5. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
6. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: In the WebHelp output, all topics will have an **Edit** link to the right side of the title and clicking the link will launch that particular document in Oxygen XML Web Author.

For example:

- Windows`dita.bat -i c:\mySample.ditamap -f webhelp-responsive -Deditlink.ditamap.edit.url=webdav-https://dav.box.com/dav/my.ditamap`
- macOS/ Linux`dita -i /mySample.ditamap -f webhelp-responsive -Deditlink.ditamap.edit.url=webdav-https://dav.box.com/dav/my.ditamap`

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To embed an *Edit* link in the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Edit a **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation scenario and open the **Parameters** tab.
2. Set values for the following parameters:
   - **editlink.ditamap.edit.url** - The URL of the Oxygen XML Web Author that have opened the DITA map for editing.
   - **editlink.additional.query.parameters** - Optional query parameters to be appended to each generated edit link. Must start with *&* (e.g.: *&tags-mode=no-tags*).
3. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: In the WebHelp output, all topics will have an **Edit** link to the right side of the title and clicking the link will launch that particular document in Oxygen XML Web Author.

Related information

Web Author Customization Guide: Embedding an Edit Link that will Launch Web Author

How to Flag DITA Content in WebHelp Output

Flagging content in WebHelp output involves defining a set of images that will be used for marking content across your information set.

To flag DITA content, you need to create a filter file that defines properties that will be applied on elements to be flagged. Generally, flagging is supported for *block elements (on page 2228)* (such as paragraphs), but not for phrase-level elements within a paragraph. This ensures that the images that will flag the content are easily scanned by the reader, instead of being buried in the text.

Using a Publishing Template

To flag content in DITA Map to WebHelp output using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 990)*, follow this procedure:

1. Create a DITA filter file (DITAVAL) and add it in a directory of your choice (for example, named `myFile.ditaval`.
2. Define the property for the elements you want to be flagged. For example, if you want to flag any element that has the `@audience` attribute set to `programmer`, the content of the DITAVAL file should look like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<val>
  <prop att="audience" val="programmer" action="flag"
 img="D:\resource\delta.gif" alt="sample alt text"/>
</val>
```

> **Note:**
> For an element to be flagged, at least one attribute-value pair needs to have a property declared in the DITAVAL file.

3. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and add the `args.filter` parameter in the *parameters* section with its value set to the path of the DITAVAL file you created.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <parameters>
            <parameter name="args.filter" value="resources/myFile.ditaval"/>
        </parameters>
    </webhelp>
```

4. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
5. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
6. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
7. Run the transformation scenario.

Using a Transformation Scenario in Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To flag content in the DITA Map to WebHelp output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Create a DITA filter file (DITAVAL) and add it in a directory of your choice (for example, named `myFile.ditaval`.
2. Define the property for the elements you want to be flagged. For example, if you want to flag any element that has the `@audience` attribute set to `programmer`, the content of the DITAVAL file should look like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<val>
  <prop att="audience" val="programmer" action="flag"
 img="D:\resource\delta.gif" alt="sample alt text"/>
</val>
```

Note:
For an element to be flagged, at least one attribute-value pair needs to have a property declared in the DITAVAL file.

3. Edit a **DITA Map to WebHelp** transformation scenario.
4. Specify the DITAVAL file in the **Filters** tab (with the **Use DITAVAL File** option).
5. Run the transformation scenario.

Related Information:
Filtering Profiling Values with a DITAVAL File *(on page 2148)*

How to View MathML Equations in HTML Output

By default, only **Firefox** can render **MathML** equations embedded in the **HTML** code. MathJax is a solution to properly view MathML equations embedded in **HTML** content in a variety of browsers.

If you have DocBook or DITA content that has embedded **MathML** equations and you want to properly view the equations in published HTML output types (WebHelp, CHM, EPUB, etc.), you need to add a reference to the MathJax script in the **head** element of all HTML files that have the equation embedded.

For example:

```
<script type="text/javascript"
  src="https://cdnjs.cloudflare.com/ajax/libs/mathjax/2.7.1/MathJax.js?config=TeX-AMS-MML_HTMLorMML">
</script>
```

Alternate Method for DITA

For DITA documents, you can also use the following procedure:

1. Create an XML file that contains a script similar to the one shown in the example above.
2. Edit the DITA Map transformation scenario and open the **Parameters** tab.
3. Set the following parameter to point to the XML file created in step 1:
   - **WebHelp Responsive Systems** - Set the `webhelp.fragment.head` parameter to point to your XML file.
   - **Any other type of HTML-based publishing** - Set the `args.hdf` parameter to point to your XML file.
4. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: The equation should now be properly rendered in other browsers, such as Edge, IE, or Chrome.

How to Disable Caching in WebHelp Responsive Output

In cases where a set of WebHelp Responsive pages need to be updated on a regular basis to deliver the latest version of the documentation, the WebHelp pages should always be requested from the server upon re-loading it in a web browser on the client side, (rather than re-using an outdated *cached* version in the browser).

To disable caching in WebHelp Responsive output, follow this procedure:

1. Create a new well-formed XML file and add the following code snippet:

```
<meta http-equiv="Pragma" content="no-cache" />
<meta http-equiv="Expires" content="-1" />
```

> **Note:**
> The code should look like this:
>
> ```
> <!DOCTYPE html>
> <html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
>     <head>
>         <meta http-equiv="Pragma" content="no-cache" />
>         <meta http-equiv="Expires" content="-1" />
>     </head>
> </html>
> ```

2. Edit the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario and open the **Parameters** tab.
3. Edit the value of the `webhelp.fragment.head` parameter and set it to the absolute path of your XML file.
4. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
5. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: Your additional content is included at the end of the `<head>` element of your output document.

How to Add a Link to PDF Documentation

It is possible to add a component in your WebHelp output that links to an external PDF resource. For example, it could link to the PDF equivalent of the documentation. This is achieved by configuring some transformation parameters and the link component is added in the header/breadcrumb stripe, next to the navigation links.

> **Important:**
> The external PDF must already be created beforehand. This procedure does not generate the PDF, just the component that links to a specified PDF resource.

Add a Link to a PDF Using a Publishing Template

To embed a component that links to an external PDF resource in the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive output using an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 990)*, follow this procedure:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see Working with Publishing Templates *(on page 1031)*.
2. Open the template descriptor file *(on page 994)* associated with your publishing template and add the following parameters:

   webhelp.pdf.link.url

   Specifies the target URL for the PDF link component.

   webhelp.pdf.link.text

   Specifies the text for the PDF link component.

   webhelp.pdf.link.icon.path

   Specifies the path or URL of the image icon to be used for the PDF link component. If not specified, a default icon is used.

   webhelp.show.pdf.link

   Specifies whether or not the PDF link component is shown in the WebHelp Responsive output. Allowed values are: **yes** (default) and **no**.

   webhelp.pdf.link.named.destination.enabled

   Specifies whether or not the current topic ID should be appended as named destination at the end of the PDF link. Allowed values are: **yes** (default) and **no**.
3. Open the *DITA Map WebHelp Responsive* transformation scenario.
4. Click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
5. Click **OK** to save the changes to the transformation scenario.
6. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: In the WebHelp output, the link component is added in the header/breadcrumb stripe, next to the navigation links.

Add a Link to a PDF by Directly Setting Parameters in a Transformation Scenario

To embed a component that links to an external PDF resource in the DITA Map WebHelp Responsive output using a transformation scenario from within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, follow this procedure:

1. Edit a **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation scenario and open the **Parameters** tab.
2. Set values for the following parameters:

   webhelp.pdf.link.url

   Specifies the target URL for the PDF link component.

webhelp.pdf.link.text

Specifies the text for the PDF link component.

webhelp.pdf.link.icon.path

Specifies the path or URL of the image icon to be used for the PDF link component. If not specified, a default icon is used.

webhelp.show.pdf.link

Specifies whether or not the PDF link component is shown in the WebHelp Responsive output. Allowed values are: **yes** (default) and **no**.

webhelp.pdf.link.named.destination.enabled

Specifies whether or not the current topic ID should be appended as named destination at the end of the PDF link. Allowed values are: **yes** (default) and **no**.

3. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: In the WebHelp output, the link component is added in the header/breadcrumb stripe, next to the navigation links.

Related information

How to Copy Additional Resources to Output Directory *(on page 1122)*

How to Add a Custom Component for WebHelp Output

This topic explains how to use several customization methods to define and implement a custom component for WebHelp output pages.

Predefined components

The WebHelp output is based on a set of HTML Page Layout Files *(on page 1010)* that define the default layout of the generated pages. Each layout file is made of a set of various components. Each component is described using an associated XML element that is processed at the generation time resulting in its associated component being included in the output pages.

Here are a few examples of predefined components: **Logo**, **Title**, **Menu**, **Search Input**, **Topics Tiles**, **Topic Breadcrumb**, **Topic Content**, **Publication Table of Contents**. A complete list with all the available components is available here: Layout of the Responsive Page Types *(on page 945)*.

For example, the page component that is used to define the Search Input field in the WebHelp HTML pages is defined as follows:

```
<!-- Search form -->
<whc:webhelp_search_input class="navbar-form wh_topic_page_search search" role="form"/>
```

At publishing time, the above component will be expanded into:

```
<div class=" wh_search_input navbar-form wh_topic_page_search search">
  <form id="searchForm" method="get" role="search" action="../search.html">
    <div>
      <input type="search" placeholder="Search "
        class="wh_search_textfield ui-autocomplete-input" id="textToSearch"
        name="searchQuery" aria-label="Search query" required="required"
        autocomplete="off"/>
      <button type="submit" class="wh_search_button" aria-label="Search">
        <span class="search_input_text">Search</span>
      </button>
    </div>
  </form>
</div>
```

Customization Methods

The most common customization methods for the WebHelp Responsive output include:

- Apply custom CSS styles *(on page 1055)* to change the default layout and styles.
- Insert additional HTML content *(on page 1057)* using one of the available HTML Fragment Placeholder parameters *(on page 1001)*.
- Extend the default processing using XSLT Extension Points *(on page 1000)*.
- Configure available Transformation Parameters *(on page 1144)*.

Use Case: Custom Link Component

For the subsequent procedure, suppose you have a DITA project for a User Manual and you also have various video demonstrations available on your website that supplement the documentation. You may want to link a video demonstration for a particular feature it its associated DITA topic in the WebHelp output.

You could simply add a link somewhere in your DITA topic, but this approach would not be very suitable for a printable (PDF) version of your User Manual. Thus, you need to include the link to the associated video demonstration only in the WebHelp output of your User Manual (and not the PDF version).

One way to link a video with its associated topic is to include its URL in the metadata section. For example:

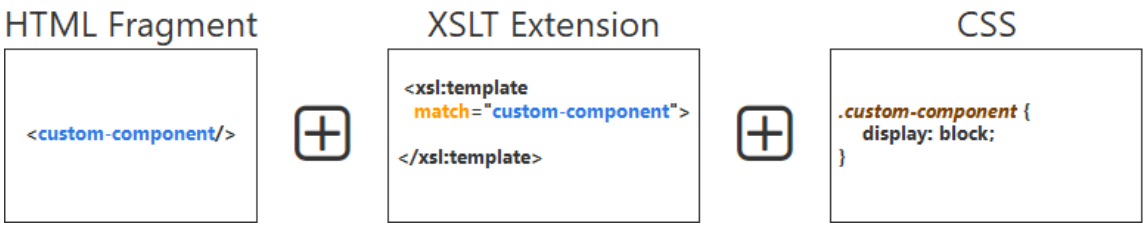
```
<prolog>
   <metadata>
      <othermeta name="video-link" content="https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zNmXfKWXwO8"/>
   </metadata>
</prolog>
```

Next, you need to instruct WebHelp to pick up the URL from the metadata and generate a link in a specific location of the HTML output page. You can achieve this by creating your own WebHelp custom component.

Creating a Custom Component

You can combine several of the available customization methods to define and implement your own WebHelp custom component.

Figure 242. Custom Component



To create a custom component that displays a link to the current topic's associated video tutorial, follow these steps:

1. Define your component. For example, it may have the following form:

   ```
   <comp:video-link xmlns:comp="http://example.com/custom-components"/>
   ```

   The component is an XML element that belongs to a custom defined namespace.
2. Insert the component in your topic pages. To do this, you will have to save the associated XML element in an HTML Fragment file (for example, named `video-link-fragment.xml`).
3. Reference the HTML Fragment file in your current Publishing Template's descriptor file *(on page 994)* and associate it with an HTML Fragment placeholder that is available for the topic pages (`webhelp.fragment.before.topic.toolbar` in this case):

   ```
   <html-fragments>
      <fragment file="component/html-fragment/video-link-fragment.xml"
           placeholder="webhelp.fragment.before.topic.toolbar"/>
   </html-fragments>
   ```

   Note:
   The HTML Fragment file is referenced using a path relative to the Publishing Template root directory.

4. Create a custom XSLT file that processes the custom component and picks up the video URL available in the current topic's metadata and generates a link to the page that contains the video:

   ```
   <xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
       xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
       xmlns:comp="http://example.com/custom-components"
       exclude-result-prefixes="xs comp"
       version="3.0">

       <!-- Custom component implementation -->
       <xsl:template match="comp:video-link" mode="copy_template">
   ```

```
        <xsl:param name="ditaot_topicContent" tunnel="yes"/>
        <!-- Look for a 'video-link' <meta> element in the current topic content -->
        <xsl:variable name="videoLinkMeta"
              select="$ditaot_topicContent//*:meta[@name='video-link']"/>
        <xsl:if test="exists($videoLinkMeta)">
            <div class="video-link-container">
                <a href="{$videoLinkMeta[1]/@content}"
                   class="video-link" target="_blank" aria-label="Video">
                    <span>Video</span>
                </a>
            </div>
        </xsl:if>
    </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

The HTML content generated for your component will look like this:

```
<div class="video-link-container">
    <a href="https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zNmXfKWXwO8"
      class="video-link" target="_blank"
        aria-label="Video">
        <span>Video</span>
    </a>
</div>
```

5. Reference the above XSL file in your Publishing Template's descriptor file using the XSLT extension point associated with the XSL module that generates an HTML file for each DITA topic:

```
<xslt>
    <extension file="component/xsl/video-link-impl.xsl"
       id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.dita2webhelp"/>
</xslt>
```

6. Create a custom CSS file that contains the rules for styling the output for your component:

```
@import url('https://fonts.googleapis.com/icon?family=Material+Icons');

.video-link-container {
    display: flex;
    align-items: center;
    flex-grow: 10;
    justify-content: flex-end;
}

.video-link {
```

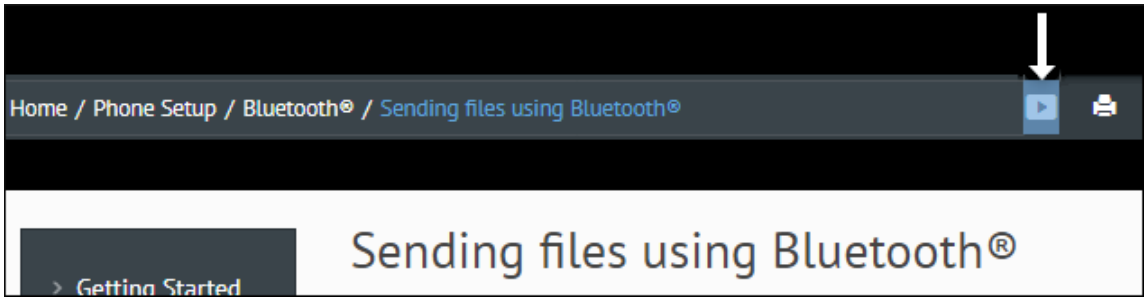
```
    display: flex;
    align-items: center;
    color: #fff !important;
}

.video-link:before {
    content: "smart_display";
    font-family: 'Material Icons';
    font-size: 20px;
    display: inline-block;
    word-wrap: normal;
    white-space: nowrap;
}

.video-link span {
    display: none;
}

.wh_right_tools {
    padding: 0;
}
```

7. Reference the above CSS file in your Publishing Template's descriptor file:

```
<resources>
    <!-- .... -->
    <css file="component/css/video-link.css"/>
</resources>
```

Result: An icon that is a link to the video appears in the header stripe in the output page.

Figure 243. Custom Link to Video Component



Sample Publishing Template

A sample Publishing Template that contains all the above customizations is available here: https://github.com/oxygenxml/oxygen-publishing-template-samples/tree/master/templates/video-link-custom-component.

How to Generate Google Structured Data

It is possible to generate Google Structured Data (`<script>` elements that contain a JSON-LD object) in the DITA WebHelp Responsive output. Google uses this JSON-LD object to better understand the contents of the page and display special search results in a Google Search.

> **Tip:**
> For more details, see Google Search Central: Understand how structured data works.

To generate Google Structured Data in WebHelp output, use the following transformation parameter:

google.structured.data

Specifies whether or not Google Structured Data will be generated in the output. If set to **yes**, the transformation automatically generates Google Structured Data for **Questions and Answers** topics, DITA Task topics, and from `<data>` elements found inside a topic that has the `@name="oxy:question"` construct. If set to **no** (default value), the transformation will not generate Google Structured Data.

Generating Google Structured Data for DITA Tasks Topics

When Google Structured Data is enabled, the DITA Task `<title>`, `<shordesc>`, and `<step>` elements are mapped to the HowTo JSON-LD object. For example, the following DITA Task topic:

```
<task id="task_id">
  <title>My task</title>
  <shortdesc>Task description</shortdesc>
  <steps>
    <step>
      <cmd>Step 1 content.</cmd>
    </step>
    <step>
      <cmd>Step 2 content.</cmd>
    </step>
  </steps>
</task>
```

will generate the following structure in the output:

```
<script type="application/ld+json" id="jsonld-howto">
  {
    "@context": "https://schema.org",
    "@type": "HowTo",
    "name": "My task",
    "description": "Task description",
    "supply": [],
```

```
    "tool": [],
    "step":[
      {
        "@type": "HowToStep",
        "text": "<span class=\"topic/ph task/cmd ph cmd\">Step 1 content.</span>"
      }
      ,
      {
        "@type": "HowToStep",
        "text": "<span class=\"topic/ph task/cmd ph cmd\">Step 2 content.</span>"
      }
    ]
  }
</script>
```

Generating for Questions and Answers Topics

When Google Structured Data is enabled, the QA topic `<qagroup>` elements are mapped to the FAQPage JSON-LD object. For example, the following QA topic:

```
<qatopic id="qa_id">
  <title>Faq Page 1</title>
  <qabody>
    <qagroup>
      <question>What is a car engine?</question>
      <answer>The car engine is a device that uses fuel to create mechanical power that can
              turn the car's wheels.</answer>
    </qagroup>
  </qabody>
</qatopic>
```

will generate the following structure in the output:

```
<script type="application/ld+json" id="jsonld-faq">
  {
    "@context": "https://schema.org",
    "@type": "FAQPage",
    "mainEntity": [
      {
        "@type": "Question",
        "name": "What is a car engine?",
        "acceptedAnswer": {
          "@type": "Answer",
          "text": "<div class=\"- topic/div qatopic/answer div answer\">The car engine is a
device that uses fuel to create mechanical power that can turn the car's wheels.</div>"
```

```
      }
    }
  ]
 }
</script>
```

Generating from `data` elements found inside a topic

When Google Structured Data is enabled, the WebHelp Responsive transformation will map the `<data>` elements found inside a topic to a FAQPage JSON-LD object. There are 2 different use cases depending on where the `<data>` element is found in the document:

- In the `<prolog>` element. For example, this content:

```
<concept id="lawnmowerconcept">
  <title>Lawnmower</title>
  <shortdesc>The lawnmower is a machine used to cut grass in the yard.</shortdesc>
  <prolog>
    <metadata>
      <data name="oxy:question">What tools are necessary to cut the grass?</data>
    </metadata>
  </prolog>
  <conbody>
    <p>Lawnmowers can be electric, gas-powered, or manual.</p>
  </conbody>
</concept>
```

  will generate the following structure in the output:

```
<script type="application/ld+json" id="jsonld-faq">
  {
    "@context": "https://schema.org",
    "@type": "FAQPage",
    "mainEntity": [
      {
        "@type": "Question",
        "name": "What tools are necessary to cut the grass?",
        "acceptedAnswer": {
          "@type": "Answer",
          "text": "<div class=\"- topic/body concept/conbody body conbody\">
                    <p class=\"- topic/shortdesc shortdesc\">The lawnmower is a machine
used to cut grass in the yard.</p> <p class=\"- topic/p p\">Lawnmowers can be electric,
gas-powered, or manual.</p> </div>"
        }
      }
```

```
    ]
  }
</script>
```

Important:
The answer represents the HTML result of the entire content inside the topic.

- Inside the topic body elements. For example, content:

```
<topic id="concept-id">
  <title>Morning</title>
  <shortdesc>In the morning we have breakfast.</shortdesc>
  <body>
    <ul>
      <data name="oxy:question">What do people drink in the morning?</data>
      <li>Tea</li>
      <li>Milk</li>
    </ul>
  </body>
</topic>
```

will generate the following structure in the output:

```
<script type="application/ld+json" id="jsonld-faq">
  {
    "@context": "https://schema.org",
    "@type": "FAQPage",
    "mainEntity": [
      {
        "@type": "Question",
        "name": "What do people drink in the morning?",
        "acceptedAnswer": {
          "@type": "Answer",
          "text": "<div class=\"- topic/body body\"><ul class=\"- topic/ul ul\"></ul>
<li class=\"- topic/li li\">Tea</li> <li class=\"- topic/li li\">Milk</li> </div>"
        }
      }
    ]
```

```
  }
</script>
```

Important:
The answer represents the HTML result of the entire block where the `<data>` element is located inside.

How to Hide Related Link Descriptions

Starting with **Oxygen 27.0**, by default, if the target of a related link includes a short description (`<shortdesc>`), that description will appear as text beneath the link. It is possible to remove this text by adding the following rule in a custom CSS stylesheet:

```
.wh_related_links .desc {
  display: none;
}
```

How to Group Related Links by Type

By default, all links from DITA relationship tables or related link elements within topics are grouped under one "Related information" heading:

```
Related information
  Target Topic
  Target Concept
  Target Task
```

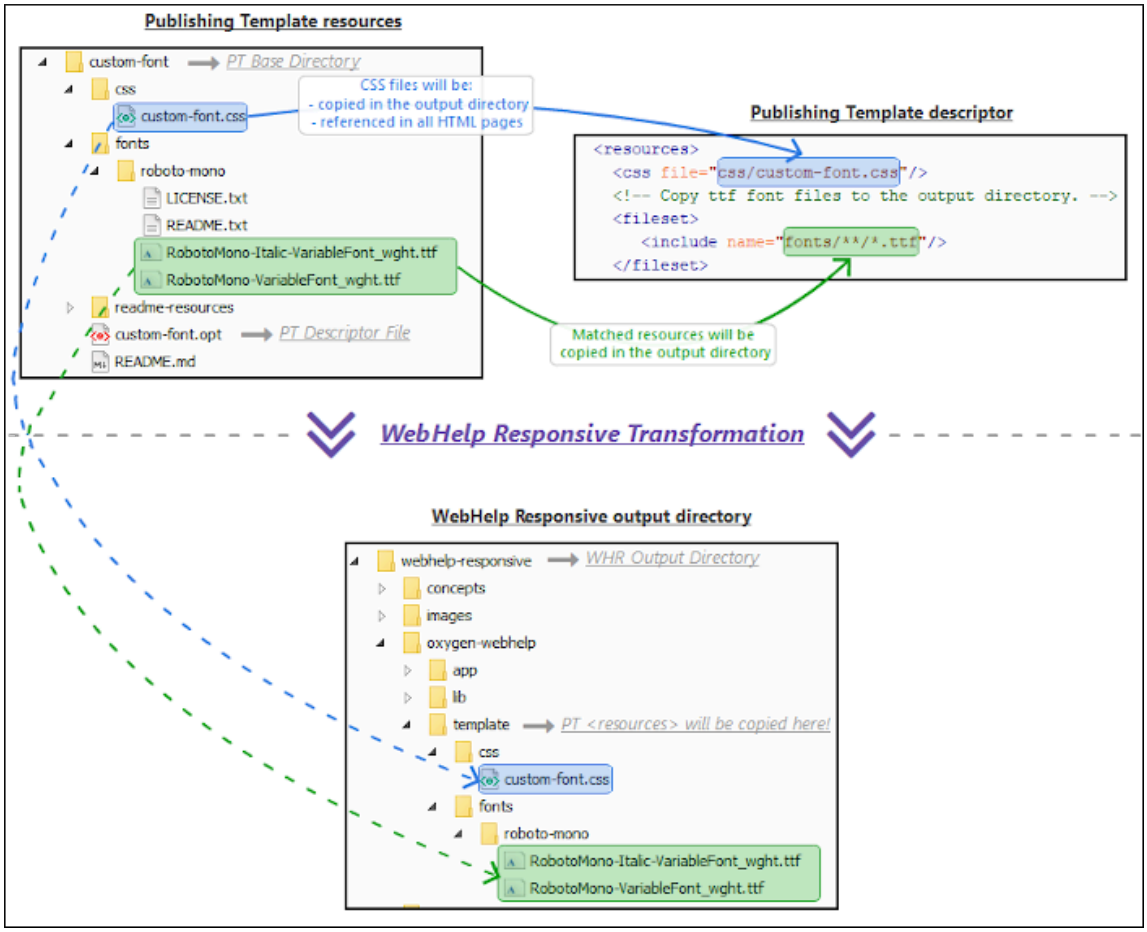
It is possible to group the links by target type (topic type) by setting the `webhelp.rellinks.group.mode=group-by-type` parameter. The output will look like this:

```
Related concepts
  Target Concept
Related tasks
  Target Task
Related information
  Target Topic
```

How to Use a Local Font in WebHelp Responsive Output

It is possible to use a local fonts in WebHelp Responsive output by copying the local font file to the output directory through a Publishing Template and referencing the font files using `@font-face` rules within a custom CSS.

Figure 244. Referencing Local Fonts in a Publishing Template



To use a local font in your WebHelp Responsive output, follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Add the local font files to the `fonts` folder within your Publishing Template directory structure. For example:

   ```
   fonts/roboto-mono/RobotoMono-Italic-VariableFont_wght.ttf

   fonts/roboto-mono/RobotoMono-VariableFont_wght.ttf
   ```

3. Configure WebHelp Responsive to copy the font file to the output directory. Define a `<fileset>` that matches the location of the font files in the `<resources>` section of your Publishing Template's descriptor file.

   ```
   <resources>

     <!-- Copy ttf font files to the output directory. -->

     <fileset>

        <include name="fonts/**/*.ttf"/>

     </fileset>

   </resources>
   ```

   All the files matched by this fileset will be copied to the output directory. The additional resources will be copied in the following subfolder of the output directory:

```
{OUTPUT-DIR}/oxygen-webhelp/template/
```

4. Create a custom CSS file in your Publishing Template directory.

```
css/custom-font.css
```

5. Reference the CSS file in the `<resources>` section of the Publishing Template's descriptor file. This means that the CSS file will be referenced in each HTML page within the WebHelp Responsive output.

```
<resources>
  <css file="css/custom-font.css"/>
  <!-- ... -->
</resources>
```

6. Add `@font-face` definitions that reference the font files in your custom CSS file. The font files can be referenced using relative URLs since the CSS and the font files included in the Publishing Template package will be copied together in the output folder.

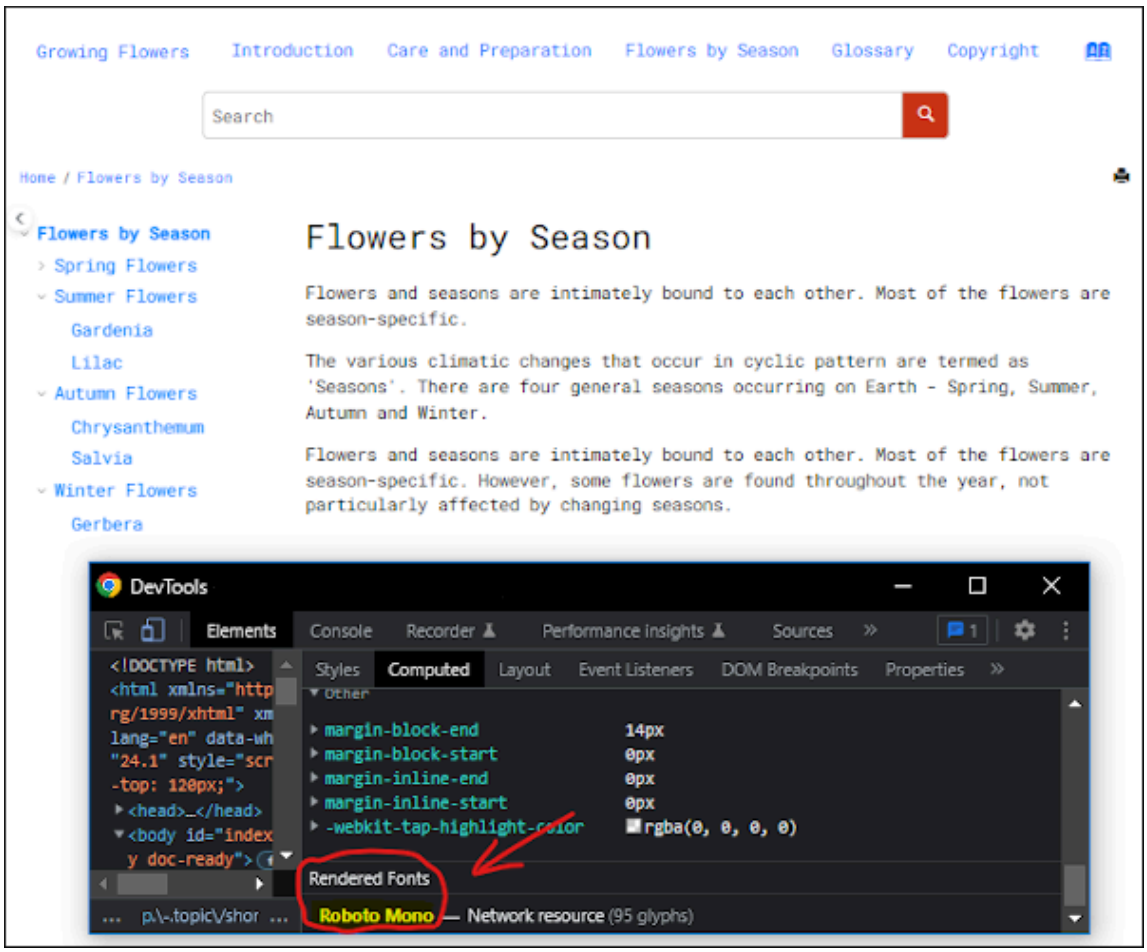
```
@font-face {
  font-family: 'Roboto Mono';
  font-style: normal;
  src: url('../fonts/roboto-mono/RobotoMono-VariableFont_wght.ttf') format('truetype');
}
@font-face {
  font-family: 'Roboto Mono';
  font-style: italic;
  src: url('../fonts/roboto-mono/RobotoMono-Italic-VariableFont_wght.ttf') format('truetype');
}
```

7. Add a CSS rule that applies the custom font on all elements.

```
body {
  font-family: 'Roboto Mono', sans-serif;
}
```

8. Run the transformation with the publishing template selected.

Figure 245. Output Example



How to Use JQuery in WebHelp Responsive Output

The JQuery library that comes bundled with WebHelp is accessible in the browser's global context so that developers have access to use it.

To use the JQuery library in your WebHelp Responsive output, follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, see How to Create a Publishing Template.
2. Create the following items in the folder that contains your publishing template's descriptor file (the `.opt` file):
   - A folder named **js**
   - A folder named **fragments**
3. In the **js** folder, create a file named `custom.js`.
4. As a starting point, you can copy the following content to the `custom.js` file:

```
$(document).ready(function () {

    // Your JQuery code.

});
```

5. In the **fragments** folder, create a file named `jquery-scripts.html` with the following content:

```
<html>
    <script src="${oxygen-webhelp-template-dir}/js/custom.js" defer="defer"></script>
</html>
```

Important:
Make sure that the `@defer` attribute is present on the `<script>` element.

6. Copy the **js** folder to the output folder during the transformation process. For this, open the `.opt` file and add the following content in the `<resources>` section (see Template Resources for more details):

```
<fileset>
    ...
    <include name="js/**"/>
    ...
</fileset>
```

7. Include the `jquery-scripts.html` file in your WebHelp Responsive output by opening the `.opt` file and add the following content inside the `<webhelp>` element:

```
<html-fragments>
  <fragment file="jquery-scripts.html" placeholder="webhelp.fragment.head"/>
</html-fragments>
```

8. Run the transformation with your publishing template selected.

How to Display Certain Elements as Tabs

It is possible to display the following elements as tabs in the WebHelp output:

- Lists (both `<ol>` and `<ul>` elements)
- Definition lists (`<dl>` element)
- Choice tables (`<choicetable>` element)

For this, you just need to add the `@outputclass="wh-tabbed"` attribute on the element.

Note:
The tab name is extracted from:

- The first `<ph>` in lists.
- The first `<dt>` in definition lists.
- The first `<choption>` in choice tables.

Here are some examples:

- List

```
<ul outputclass="wh-tabbed">
    <li>
        <ph>Windows</ph>
        <ol>
            <li>First instruction for Windows</li>
            <li>Second instruction for Windows</li>
        </ol>
    </li>
    <li>
        <ph>Linux</ph>
        <ol>
            <li>First instruction for Linux</li>
            <li>Second instruction for Linux</li>
            <li>Third instruction for Linux</li>
        </ol>
    </li>
    <li>
        <ph>Mac</ph>
        <ol>
            <li>First instruction for Mac</li>
            <li>Second instruction for Mac</li>
        </ol>
    </li>
</ul>
```

- Definition List

```
<dl outputclass="wh-tabbed">
    <dlentry>
        <dt>Version 1</dt>
        <dd>Instructions for Version 1</dd>
    </dlentry>
    <dlentry>
        <dt>Version 2</dt>
        <dd>Instructions for Version 2</dd>
    </dlentry>
</dl>
```

- Choice Table

```
<choicetable outputclass="wh-tabbed">
    <chrow>
        <choption>First</choption>
        <chdesc>First option description</chdesc>
```

```
    </chrow>
    <chrow>
        <choption>Second</choption>
        <chdesc>Second option description</chdesc>
    </chrow>
</choicetable>
```

The outputs will be as follows:

- Windows
    1. First instruction for Windows
    2. Second instruction for Windows
- Linux
    1. First instruction for Linux
    2. Second instruction for Linux
    3. Third instruction for Linux
- Mac
    1. First instruction for Mac
    2. Second instruction for Mac

Version 1

Instructions for Version 1

Version 2

Instructions for Version 2

WebHelp Responsive Transformation Parameters

In addition to the common DITA-OT transformation parameters and the HTML-based Output Parameters, there are numerous other supported parameters that are specific to the WebHelp Responsive output.

Publishing Template Parameters

webhelp.publishing.template

Specifies the path to the ZIP archive (or root folder) that contains your custom WebHelp Responsive template.

Note:
The built-in templates are stored in the *DITA-OT-DIR*`/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/templates` folder.

Note:
Relative paths are resolved based on the current working directory.

webhelp.publishing.template.descriptor

Specifies the name of the descriptor to be loaded from the WebHelp Responsive template package. If it is not specified, the first encountered descriptor will be automatically loaded.

Custom Resource Parameters

webhelp.custom.resources

The file path to a directory that contains resources files. All files from this directory will be copied to the root of the WebHelp output.

webhelp.favicon

The file path that points to an image to be used as a *favicon* in the WebHelp output.

webhelp.logo.image.target.url

Specifies a target URL that is set on the logo image. When you click the logo image, you will be redirected to this address.

webhelp.logo.image.target.url.new.tab

Specifies if the URL of the link that is set on the logo image will be opened in a new tab.

webhelp.logo.image

Specifies a path to an image displayed as a logo in the left side of the output header.

webhelp.logo.image.alt

Specifies a value that will be set in the `@alt` attribute of the logo image. If the parameter is not specified, the `@alt` attribute will contain the publication title. Note that this parameter makes sense only in conjunction with the `webhelp.logo.image` parameter.

Oxygen Feedback Parameter

webhelp.fragment.feedback

You can integrate **Oxygen Feedback** with your WebHelp Responsive output to provide a comments area at the bottom of each page where readers can offer feedback. When you create an **Oxygen Feedback** site configuration, an HTML fragment is generated during the final step of the creation process and that fragment should be set as the value for this parameter.

Context Sensitive Help Parameter

webhelp.csh.disable.topicID.fallback

Specifies whether or not topic ID *fallbacks* are enabled when computing the mapping of context sensitive help and `resourceid` information is not available. Possible values are **false** (default) and **true**.

HTML Fragment Extension Parameters

webhelp.enable.html.fragments.cleanup

Enables or disables the automatic conversion of HTML fragments to well-formed XML. If set to **true** (default), the transformation automatically converts non-well-formed HTML content to a well-formed XML equivalent. If set to **false**, the transformation will fail if at least one HTML fragment is not well-formed.

webhelp.enable.scroll.to.search.term

Specifies whether or not the page should scroll to the first search term when opening the search results page. Possible values are **no** (default) and **true**.

webhelp.fragment.after.body

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the body in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.body.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the body in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.body.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the body in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.body.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the body in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.body.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the body in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.feedback

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the **Oxygen Feedback** commenting component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.header

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the header section in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.header.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the header section in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.header.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the header section in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.header.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the header section in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.header.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the header section in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.logo_and_title

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the logo and title in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.main.content.area

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the main content section in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.main.content.area.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the main content section in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.main.content.area.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the main content section in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.main.page.search (deprecated)

This parameter is deprecated. Use `webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.main.page` instead.

webhelp.fragment.after.publication.toc

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the publication's table of contents component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.toc_or_tiles

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the table of contents or tiles in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.top_menu

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the top menu in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.topic.breadcrumb

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the breadcrumb component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.topic.content

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the topic's content in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.topic.toc

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the topic's table of contents component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.topic.toolbar

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the toolbar buttons above the topic content in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.body

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the page body in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.body.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the page body in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.body.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the page body in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.body.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the page body in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.body.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the page body in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.feedback

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the **Oxygen Feedback** commenting component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.logo_and_title

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the logo and title. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the main content section in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the main content section in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the main content section in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the main content section in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the main content section in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.page.search (deprecated)

This parameter is deprecated. Use `webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.main.page` instead.

webhelp.fragment.before.publication.toc

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the publication's table of contents component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.toc_or_tiles

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the table of contents or tiles in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.top_menu

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the top menu in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.topic.breadcrumb

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the breadcrumb component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.topic.content

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the topic's content in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.topic.toc

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the topic's table of contents component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.topic.toolbar

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the toolbar buttons above the topic content in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.custom.search.engine.results

This parameter can be used to replace the search results area with custom XHTML content. The value of the parameter is the path to an XHTML file that contains your custom content.

webhelp.fragment.custom.search.engine.script

This parameter can be used to replace WebHelp's built-in search engine with your own custom search engine. The value of the parameter is the path to an XHTML file that contains the scripts required for your custom search engine to run.

webhelp.fragment.footer

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment as the page footer in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

Important:
This parameter should only be used if you are using a valid, purchased license of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (do not use it with a trial license).

webhelp.fragment.head

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment in the header section in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.head.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment in the header section in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.head.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment in the header section in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.head.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment in the header section in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.head.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment in the header section in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.welcome

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment as a welcome message (or title). The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

Note:
All the XHTML fragments can contain WebHelp Responsive Macros *(on page 1059)*.

Output Component Parameters

webhelp.default.collection.type.sequence

Specifies if the **sequence** value will be used by default when the `@collection-type` attribute is not specified. This option is helpful if you want to have *Next* and *Previous* navigational buttons generated for all HTML pages. Allowed values are **no** (default) and **yes**.

webhelp.display.table.cell.tooltip

Specifies whether a tooltip indicating the row and column of each table cell should be shown. Possible values are **no** (default) or **yes**.

webhelp.enable.ai.friendly

Indicates if Markdown topics and an `llms.txt` file should be created alongside the standard HTML output. Possible values are **no** (default) or **yes**. The `llms.txt` file can be used together with companion Markdown (`.md`) files to provide LLMs with a clean, simplified view of site content and a curated index of the most relevant resources.

webhelp.enable.sticky.header

Controls whether or not the header section will remain *sticky* in the output. Possible values are **yes** (default) or **no**.

webhelp.enable.sticky.publication.toc

Controls whether or not the publication table of contents will remain *sticky* in the output. Possible values are **yes** (default) or **no**.

webhelp.enable.sticky.table.headers

Controls whether or not table headers will remain *sticky* in the output when the tables are taller than the viewport height. Possible values are **yes** or **no** (default).

webhelp.enable.sticky.topic.toc

Controls whether or not the topic table of contents will remain *sticky* in the output. Possible values are **yes** (default) or **no**.

webhelp.figure.title.placement

Controls the placement of the title for figures (relative to the image). Possible values include **top** (default) and **bottom**.

webhelp.full.page.width

Determines whether or not the content should use the entire page space. This is most beneficial for large displays such as 4K. Possible values are **no** (default) or **yes**.

webhelp.labels.generation.mode

Controls whether or not labels are generated in the output. These labels are useful because users can easily search for topics with the same label by simply clicking on the label presented in the output. Possible values are:

- **keywords-label** - Generates labels for each defined `<keyword>` element that has the `@outputclass` attribute value set to **label**.
- **keywords** - Generates labels for each defined `<keyword>` element. If the topic contains `<keyword>` elements with the `@outputclass` attribute value set to **label**, then only these elements will have labels generated for them in the output.
- **disable** - Disables the generation of labels in the Webhelp Responsive output.

webhelp.merge.nested.topics.related.links

Specifies if the related links from nested topics will be merged with the links in the parent topic. Thus the links will be moved from the topic content to the related links component and all of the links from the same group (for example, *Related Tasks*, *Related References*, *Related Information*) are merged into a single group. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.publication.toc.hide.chunked.topics

Specifies if the table of contents will contain links for *chunked* topics. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.publication.toc.links

Specifies which links will be included in the table of contents. The possible values are:

- **chapter** (default) - The TOC will include links for the current topic, its children, its siblings, and its direct ancestor (including the direct ancestor's siblings), and the parent chapter.
- **topic** - The TOC will only include links for the current topic and its direct children.
- **all** - The TOC will include all links.

webhelp.publication.toc.tooltip.position

By default, if a topic contains a `<shortdesc>` element, its content is displayed in a tooltip when the user hovers over its link in the table of contents. This parameter controls whether or not this tooltip is displayed and its position relative to the link. The possible values are:

- **left**
- **right** (default)
- **top**
- **bottom**
- **hidden** - The tooltip will not be displayed.

webhelp.rellinks.group.mode

Specifies the related links grouping mode. All links can be grouped into a single "Related Information" heading or links can be grouped by their target type (topic, task, or concept). Allowed values: **single-group** (default) or **group-by-type**.

webhelp.show.breadcrumb

Specifies if the breadcrumb component will be presented in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.changes.and.comments

When set to `yes`, user comments, replies to comments, and tracked changes are published in the WebHelp output. The default value is `no`.

webhelp.show.child.links

Specifies if child links will be generated in the output for all topics that have subtopics. The default value is `no`.

webhelp.show.full.size.image

Specifies if responsive images that are displayed with a smaller dimension than their original size can be clicked to see an enlarged version of the image. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.image.map.areas

Indicates whether the image map areas are displayed permanently or only on hover. Possible values are **no** (default - areas visible on hover) or **yes** (areas always visible).

webhelp.show.indexterms.link

Specifies if an icon that links to the index terms page will be displayed in the output. The default value is `yes` (meaning the index terms icon is displayed). If set to `false`, the index terms icon is not displayed in the output and the index terms page is not generated.

webhelp.enable.dark.mode

Specifies if the dark mode is enabled in the output. The default value is `no` (no theme menu is displayed). If set to `yes`, a drop-down menu will appear, and the output will reflect either the browser's settings or the user's preference.

webhelp.show.main.page.tiles

Specifies if the tiles component will be presented in the main page of the output. For a *tree* style layout, this parameter should be set to `no`.

webhelp.show.main.page.toc

Specifies if the table of contents will be presented in the main page of the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.expand.collapse.sections

Specifies if links to collapse sections will be presented within each topic in the output. Collapsing sections will collapse all collapsible elements (nested topics with titles, sections with titles, or tables with titles). The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.navigation.links

Specifies if navigation links will be presented in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.print.link

Specifies if a print link or icon will be presented within each topic in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.publication.toc

Specifies if a table of contents will be presented on the left side of each topic in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.topic.toc

Specifies if a topic table of contents will be presented on the right side of each topic in the output. This table of contents contains links to each `<section>` within the current topic that contains an `@id` attribute and the section corresponding to the current scroll position is highlighted. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.top.menu

Specifies if a menu will be presented at the topic of the main page in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.skip.main.page.generation

If set to `true`, the default main page is not generated in the output. The default value is `false`.

webhelp.table.title.placement

Controls the placement of the title for tables. Possible values include **top** (default) and **bottom**.

webhelp.top.menu.activated.on.click

When this parameter is activated (set to `yes`), clicking an item in the top menu will expand the submenu (if available). You can then click on a submenu item to open the item (topic). You can click outside the menu or press **ESC** to hide the menu. When set to `no` (default), hovering over a menu item displays the menu content.

webhelp.top.menu.depth

Specifies the maximum depth level of the topics that will be included in the top menu. The default value is `3`. A value of `0` means that the menu has unlimited depth.

webhelp.topic.collapsible.elements.initial.state

Specifies the initial state of collapsible elements (nested topics with titles, sections with titles, tables with titles or index term groups). The possible values are `collapsed` or `expanded` (default value).

Search-Related Parameters

webhelp.enable.search.autocomplete

Specifies if the *Autocomplete* feature is enabled in the WebHelp search text field. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.google.search.results

A file path that specifies the location of a well-formed XHTML file containing the Google Custom Search Engine element `gcse:searchresults-only`. You can use all supported attributes for this element. It is recommended to set the `@linkTarget` attribute to `frm` for frameless (*iframe*) version of WebHelp or to `contentWin` for the frameset version of WebHelp. The default value for this attribute is `_blank` and the search results will be loaded in a new window. If this parameter is

not specified, the following code will be used `<gcse:searchresults-only linkTarget="frm"></gcse:searchresults-only>`.

webhelp.google.search.script

A file path that specifies the location of a well-formed XHTML file containing the Custom Search Engine script from Google.

webhelp.search.default.operator

Makes it possible to change the default operator for the search engine. Possible values are `and`, `or` (default). If set to `and` while the search query is WORD1 WORD2, the search engine only returns results for topics that contain both WORD1 and WORD2. If set to `or` and the search query is WORD1 WORD2, the search engine returns results for topics that contain either WORD1 or WORD2.

webhelp.search.enable.pagination

Specifies whether or not search results will be displayed on multiple pages. Allowed values are `yes` or `no`.

webhelp.search.index.elements.to.exclude

Specifies a list of HTML elements that will not be indexed by the search engine. The value of the `@class` attribute can be used to exclude specific HTML elements from indexing. For example, the **div.not-indexed** value will not index all `<div>` elements that have a `@class` attribute with the value of **not-indexed**. Use a comma separator to specify more than one element.

webhelp.search.japanese.dictionary

The file path of the dictionary that will be used by the *Kuromoji* morphological engine for indexing Japanese content in the WebHelp pages. The encoding for the dictionary must be **UTF8**.

webhelp.search.page.numberOfItems

Specifies the number of search results items displayed on each page. This parameter is only used when the **webhelp.search.enable.pagination** parameter is enabled.

webhelp.search.ranking

If this parameter is set to `false` then the 5-star rating mechanism is no longer included in the search results that are displayed on the **Search** tab (default setting is `true`).

webhelp.search.stop.words.exclude

Specifies a list of words that will be excluded from the default list of *stop words* that are filtered out before the search processing. Use comma separators to specify more than one word (for example: `if,for,is`).

webhelp.search.stop.words.include

Specifies a list of words that will be ignored by the search engine. Use a comma separator to specify more than one word.

webhelp.sitemap.base.url

Base URL for all the `<loc>` elements in the generated `sitemap.xml` file. If this parameter is specified, the **loc** element will contain the value of this parameter plus the relative path to the page. If this parameter is not specified, the **loc** element will only contain the relative path of the page (the relative file path from the `@href` attribute of a `<topicref>` element from the *DITA map*, appended to this base URL value).

webhelp.sitemap.change.frequency

The value of the `<changefreq>` element in the generated `sitemap.xml` file. The `<changefreq>` element is optional in `sitemap.xml`. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the `<changefreq>` element is not added in `sitemap.xml`. Allowed values: <empty string> (default), `always`, `hourly`, `daily`, `weekly`, `monthly`, `yearly`, `never`.

webhelp.sitemap.priority

The value of the `<priority>` element in the generated `sitemap.xml` file. It can be set to any fractional number between 0.0 (least important priority) and 1.0 (most important priority). For example, 0.3, 0.5, or 0.8. The `<priority>` element is optional in `sitemap.xml`. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the `<priority>` element is not added in `sitemap.xml`.

Publishing Speedup Parameters

parallel

A common parameter with other transformation types. When set to **true** (default value is **false**), the publishing pre-processing stages are run in parallel slightly improving the publishing time.

store-type

A common parameter with other transformation types. When set to **memory**, the processing stages use internal memory to store temporarily processed documents, thus decreasing the publishing time but slightly increasing the amount of internal memory used for the process. When publishing on Windows, setting this parameter can decrease the publishing times by about one-third.

Note:
The `fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml` parameter is not supported when running the transformation from a command line. This parameter is normally used to specify whether or not the application tries to fix such references in a temporary files folder before the DITA Open Toolkit is invoked on the fixed references.

Parameters for Adding a Link to PDF Documentation in WebHelp Responsive Output

The following transformation parameters can be used to generate a PDF link component in the WebHelp Responsive output (for example, it could link to the PDF equivalent of the documentation):

webhelp.pdf.link.url

Specifies the target URL for the PDF link component.

webhelp.pdf.link.text

Specifies the text for the PDF link component.

webhelp.pdf.link.icon.path

Specifies the path or URL of the image icon to be used for the PDF link component. If not specified, a default icon is used.

webhelp.pdf.link.anchor.enabled

Specifies whether or not the current topic ID should be appended as the name destination at the end of the PDF link. Allowed values are: **yes** (default) and **no**.

webhelp.show.pdf.link

Specifies whether or not the PDF link component is shown in the WebHelp Responsive output. Allowed values are: **yes** (default) and **no**.

Related information

Generating WebHelp Responsive Output *(on page 1028)*

Setting DITA-OT Parameters

WebHelp Responsive XSLT-Import and XSLT-Parameter Extension Points

XSLT extension points can be used from either from an *Oxygen Publishing Template* or from a DITA-OT extension plug-in.

Extension Points from an Oxygen Publishing Template

The publishing template allows you to specify an XSLT extension point. The extension point will only affect the transformations that use the particular template.

Important:

While the publishing templates only support referencing one extension point at a time, you can use `xslt:include` or `xslt:import` to aggregate multiple modules.

For a specific example of how to use an extension in a publishing template, see: How to Use XSLT Extension Points from a Publishing Template *(on page 1108)*.

Example:

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <webhelp>
        ...
        <xslt>
            <extension
```

```
            id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage"
            file="xsl/customMainPage.xsl"/>
        </xslt>
```

Extension Points from a DITA-OT Extension Plug-in

The DITA-OT plug-in installer adds an XSLT import statement in the default WebHelp XSLT so that the XSLT stylesheet referenced by the extension point becomes part of the normal build. You can use these extension points to override XSLT processing steps.

Example:

```
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive.extension">
  <feature extension="com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.dita2webhelp"
           file="xsl/fixup.xsl"/>
</plugin>
```

XSLT-Import Extension Points

The following extension points are supported:

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.dita2webhelp

Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheet (`dita2webhelp.xsl`) that produces an HTML file for each DITA topic. The location of this file is *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\dita2webhelp\dita2webhelp.xsl`

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage

Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheet (`createMainPage.xsl`) that produces the WebHelp Responsive main HTML page (`index.html`). The location of this file is *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\mainFiles\createMainPage.xsl`

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createNavLinks

Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheets that are used to generate navigation links in the WebHelp Responsive pages. These stylesheets can be found in the `navLinks` folder: *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\navLinks\`

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createSearchPage

Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheet (`createSearchPage.xsl`) that produces the WebHelp Responsive search HTML page (`search.html`). The location of this file is *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\mainFiles\createSearchPage.xsl`

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createIndexTermsPage

Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheet (`createIndextermsPage.xsl`) that produces the WebHelp Responsive index terms HTML page (`indexterms.html`). The location of this

file is *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\mainFiles\createIndextermsPage.xsl`

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createTocXML

Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheet (`tocDita.xsl`) that produces the `toc.xml` file. This file contains information extracted from the *DITA map (on page 2230)* and it is mainly used to construct the WebHelp Table of Contents and navigational links. The path to this stylesheet is: *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\navLinks\tocDita.xsl`.

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.contextHelpMap

Extension point to override the XSLT stylesheet (`contextHelpMapDita.xsl`) that generates the context sensitive help mapping. The path to this stylesheet is: *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive\xsl\contextHelp\contextHelpMapDita.xsl`.

XSLT-Parameter Extension Points

If your customization stylesheet declares one or more XSLT parameters and you want to control their values from the transformation scenario, you can use one of the following XSLT parameter extension points:

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.dita2webhelp.param

Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.dita2webhelp** extension point *(on page 1160)*.

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage.param

Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createMainPage** extension point *(on page 1160)*.

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createNavLinks.param

Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createNavLinks** extension point *(on page 1160)*.

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createSearchPage.param

Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createSearchPage** extension point *(on page 1160)*.

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createIndexTermsPage.param

Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createIndexTermsPage** extension point *(on page 1160)*.

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createTocXML.param

Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.createTocXML** extension point *(on page 1161)*.

com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.contextHelpMap.param

Use this extension point to pass parameters to the stylesheet specified using the **com.oxygenxml.webhelp.xsl.contextHelpMap** extension point *(on page 1161)*.

Related Information:
[DITA-OT] *XSLT-Import* Extension Points
[DITA-OT] *XSLT-Parameter* Extension Points

DITA to PDF Output Customization

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for generating PDF output using transformation scenarios for certain types of documents (for example, DITA, DocBook, TEI, and JATS) and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports several different types of processors. There are numerous ways to customize the published output to fit your specific needs.

CSS-based DITA to PDF Customization

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with a **DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing Plugin** for transforming DITA maps or single topics to PDF, while styling the resulting output using CSS. It is the base of two types of transformation scenarios:

DITA Map Transformation Type (DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS)

This transformation type converts DITA maps to PDF using a CSS-based processing engine and HTML5 as an intermediate format. For this transformation, the `pdf-css-html5` transtype is used. Because the structure of the HTML5 intermediate format resembles the one used in WebHelp output, it is possible to reuse parts of your CSS file you developed for a WebHelp customization.

Single Topic Transformation Type (DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS)

This transformation type converts a single DITA topic to PDF using a CSS-based processing engine and HTML5 as an intermediate format. For this transformation, the `pdf-css-html5-single-topic` transtype is used. This transformation is derived from the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation type but applies on a single topic.

Related Information:
DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS Transformation *(on page 813)*
DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS Transformation *(on page 2095)*

Overview

This section contains topics that provide a basic overview of the **DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing Plugin**, technical details, and some additional resources to help you with your customizations.

Tip:
For more information and some tips in regard to publishing DITA documents to PDF using CSS, watch our Webinars:

- **Transforming DITA documents to PDF using CSS, Part 1 – Page Definitions, Cover Page and PDF Metadata**.
- **Transforming DITA documents to PDF using CSS, Part 2 – Book Design, Pagination, Page Layout, and Bookmarks**.
- **Transforming DITA documents to PDF using CSS, Part 3 – Advanced Fonts Usage**.
- **Transforming DITA documents to PDF using CSS, Part 4 – Advanced CSS Rules**.
- **Transforming XML and HTML documents to PDF using CSS, Part 1 – Basic CSS Layout**.
- **Transforming XML and HTML documents to PDF using CSS, Part 2 – Lists, Tables and Images**.
- **Transforming XML and HTML documents to PDF using CSS, Part 3 – Global Page Layout**.
- **Transforming XML and HTML documents to PDF using CSS, Part 4 – Advanced Functionalities**.

Resources

Customizing the PDF output requires knowledge of CSS, Paged Media, and DITA. The following list provides some resources to help you:

- **CSS** - You can find a good tutorial here: https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Learn/CSS/Introduction_to_CSS. Also, the specification is available on the W3C (https://www.w3.org/Style/CSS/Overview.en.html) or on the MDN (https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/CSS) websites.
- **CSS Paged Media** - This is a part of the CSS specification that shows how to organize your publication in pages, how to use headers/footers, page breaks, and other page-related issues. The specification is available here: https://www.w3.org/TR/CSS2/page.html. Also, there is a set of hands-on examples in the **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** user guide: https://www.oxygenxml.com/doc/ug-chemistry/.
- **DITA** - You will need a basic understanding of DITA elements, attributes, and structure. A good resource is *The DITA Style Guide - Best Practices for Authors* by Tony Self. It is available at: www.ditastyle.com and: https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/styleguide/c_DITA_Authoring_Concepts.html. You can find all the details for every DITA element on OASIS website: http://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.2/os/spec/DITA1.2-spec.html.
- **HTML5** - You will need a good knowledge of HTML5. You can find resources here: https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/Guide/HTML/HTML5
- **Webinars** - Some helpful webinars are available on our website: https://www.oxygenxml.com/publishing_engine/videos.html?category=Webinars. They explain how to generate PDF from DITA documents using CSS, step-by-step.

Related Information:
DITA-OT DAY 2017: Using CSS to Style PDF Output

Supported Processors

The **DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing Plugin** supports the following CSS processors:

- **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** - This is recommended processor because the built-in CSS files were fine-tuned for this processor. For example, metadata extraction *(on page 1253)* only functions with this processor. If the plugin is started from an **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** distribution, a Chemistry installation is not needed.
- **Prince XML** - A commercial product, available at: https://www.princexml.com/.
- **Antenna House** - A commercial product, available at: https://www.antennahouse.com/formatter.

Technical Details

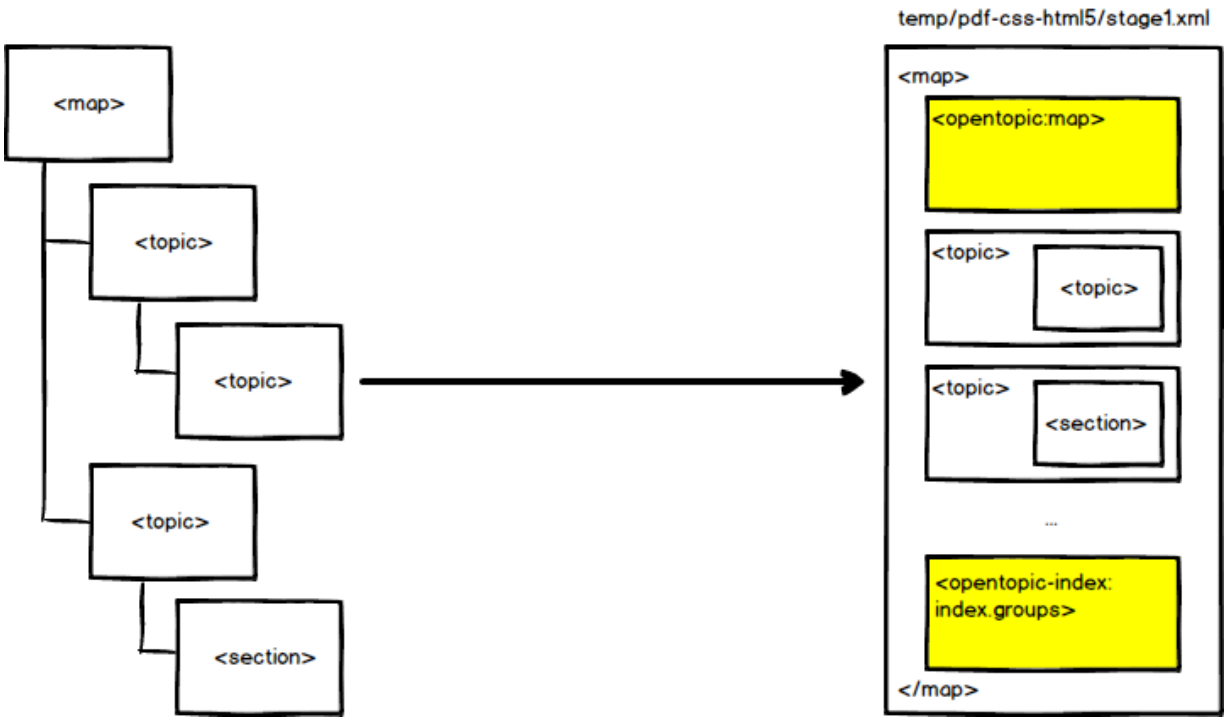
The **DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing Plugin** comes bundled in the **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** distributions. The plugin ID is: **com.oxygenxml.pdf.css**. It is installed in the `[OXYGEN-INSTALL-DIR]frameworks/dita/DITA-OT/plugins/com.oxygenxml.pdf.css` folder.

It has the following transformation types:

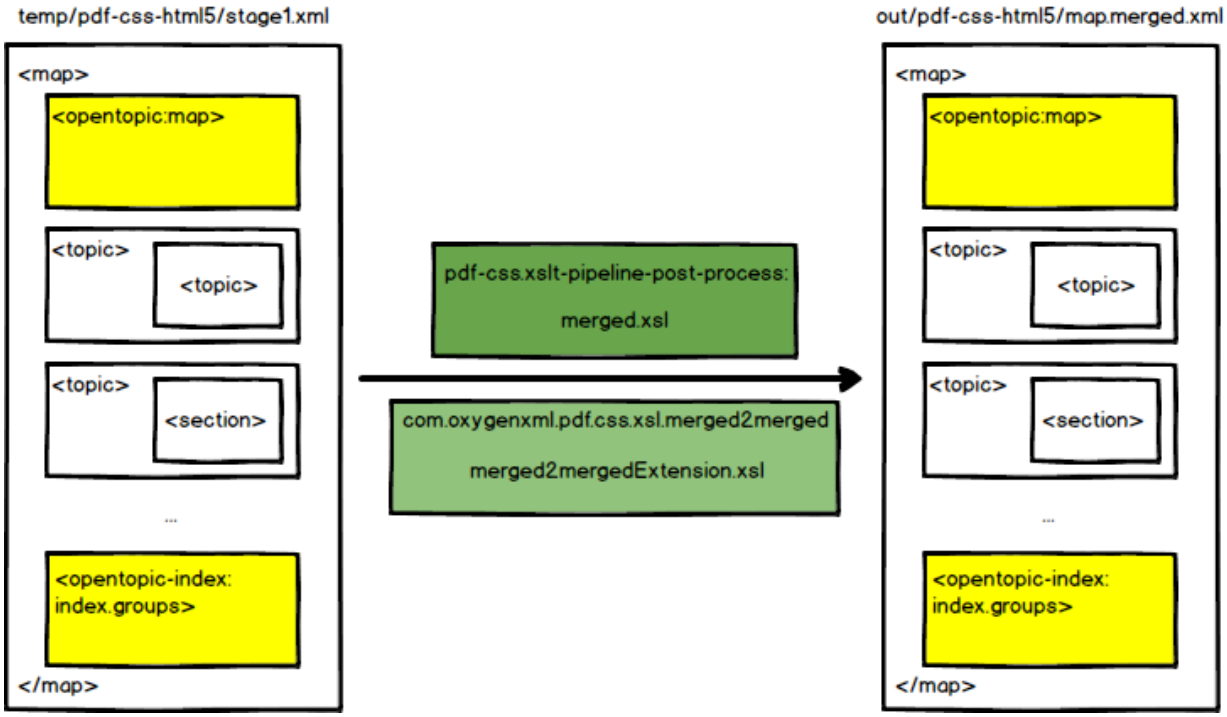
- **pdf-css-html5** (*DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS* transformation) - CSS styling applied over a merged HTML5 document (the merged DITA map converted to HTML5).
- **pdf-css-html5-single-topic** (*DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS* transformation) - CSS styling applied over a merged HTML5 document (the merged DITA topic converted to HTML5).

This is how it works:

1. It expands all the topic references into a temporary clone of the map, resolving keys and reused content. For the single topic transformation the result is a file with the keys and content resolved.
2. It generates a structure for the table of contents and index. The result is a merged map with all the references resolved. When transforming a single topic, the TOC and Index are not added to the merged file, this includes only the contents of the topic.

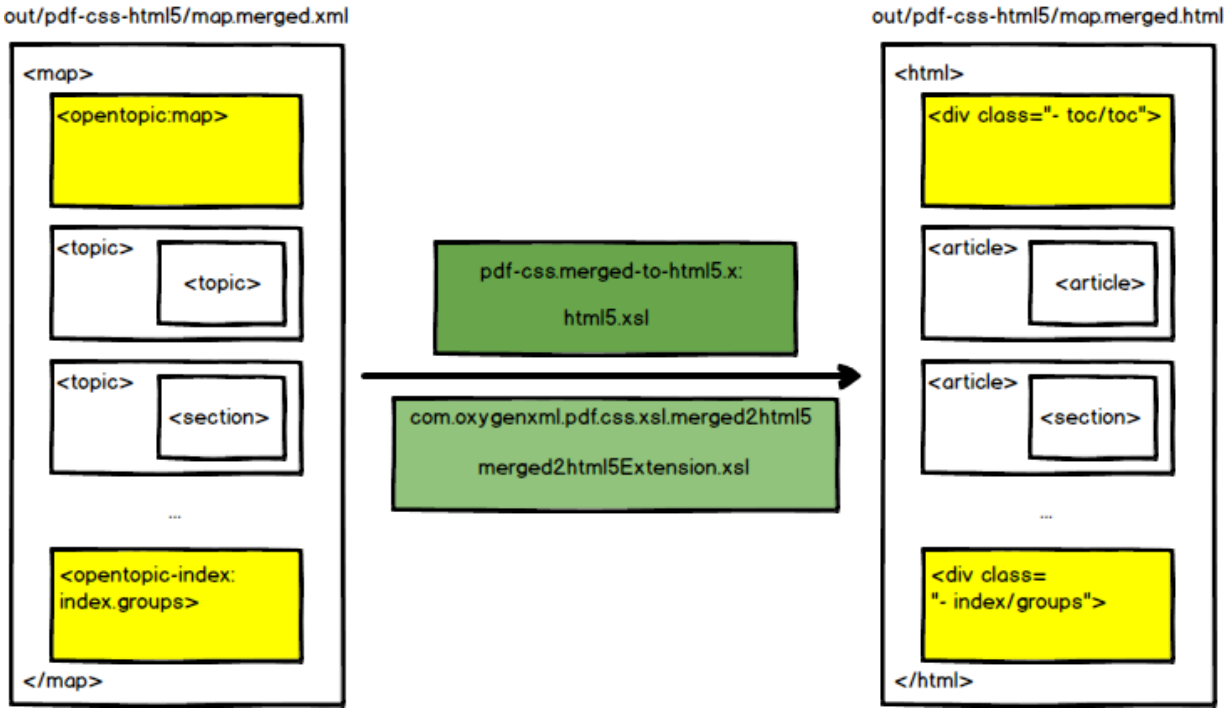


3. It post-processes the merged map. It fixes some of the structure in the TOC and index, moves the *frontmatter* and *backmatter* to the correct places, transforms any change tracking and review processing instructions to elements that can be styled later, etc. During this phase, the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged` *(on page 1389)* extension points are also called. The result is another merged map.

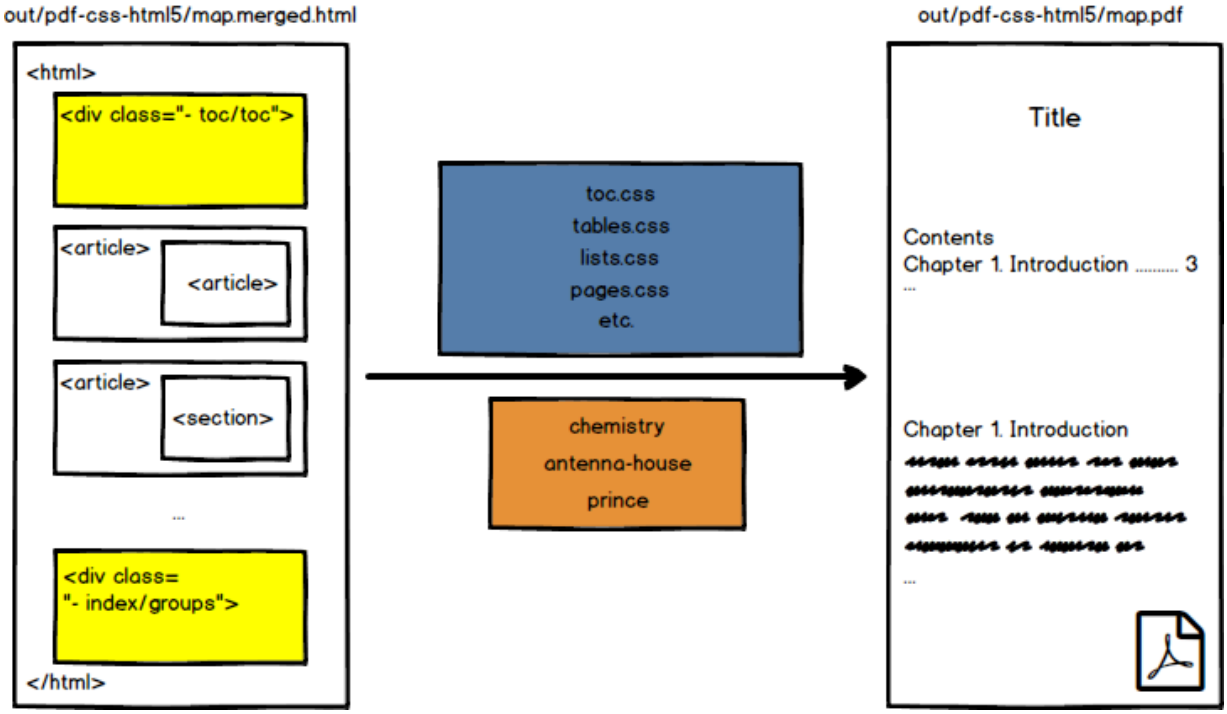


Note:
In the single topic transformation type (**DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS**), these steps are simplified.

4. It converts the post-processed merged map or topic into a single HTML5 file. The generated HTML elements have the `@class` attribute from their original DITA elements. This means that you can either use selectors that were designed for DITA structure, or ones for the HTML structure. For more details, see Reusing the Styling for WebHelp and PDF Output *(on page 1340)*. During this phase, the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5` *(on page 1389)* extensions points are also called.



5. It uses a collection of CSS stylesheets against the merged HTML5 file and uses a PDF processor to generate the final PDF. References to the CSS files are collected from the publishing template *(on page 1183)*.



Increasing Memory Allocation for Java

If you are working with a large project with extensive metadata or key references, you may need to increase the amount of memory that is allocated to the Java process that performs the publishing.

There can be two situations where an out of memory error can be triggered:

- From the DITA-OT basic processing (the preparation of the merged HTML document).
- From the Chemistry PDF CSS processor (the transformation of the merged HTML document to PDF).

When the Transformation is Started from Oxygen

To alter the memory allocation setting from the transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box.
2. Select your transformation scenario, then click **Edit**.
3. Go to the **Advanced** tab.
4. Uncheck the **Prefer using the "dita" command** option
5. Locate the **JVM Arguments** and increase the default value. For instance, to set 2 gigabytes as the maximum amount of memory, you can use: `-Xmx2g`. If you do not specify the **-Xmx** value in this field, by default, the application will use a maximum of 512 megabytes when used with a 32-bit Java Virtual Machine and one gigabyte with a 64-bit Java Virtual Machine.

Note:
This memory setting is used by both the DITA-OT process and the Chemistry CSS processor.

When the Transformation is Started from the Command Line

- **If the DITA-OT process fails with Out Of Memory Error:** you can change the value of the `ANT_OPTS` environment variable from a command line for a specific session.

  Example: To increase the JVM memory allocation to 1024 MB for a specific session, issue the following command from a command prompt (depending on your operating system):
  - Windows

    ```
    set ANT_OPTS=%ANT_OPTS% -Xmx1024M
    ```

  - Linux/macOS

    ```
    export ANT_OPTS="$ANT_OPTS -Xmx1024M"
    ```

  Tip:
  To persistently change the memory allocation, change the value allocated to the `ANT_OPTS` environment variable on your system.

- **If the Chemistry PDF CSS processor fails with an Out Of Memory Error:** try adding the `baseJVMArgLine` parameter to the DITA-OT command line. For example:

```
-DbaseJVMArgLine=-Xmx2048m
```

Transformation Parameters

This list includes the most common customization parameters that are available in the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario. Other standard DITA-OT parameters were omitted for clarity, but they are supported.

Note:
These parameters must be prefixed by "-D" when used from a command line.

antenna-house.option.setting.file	Path to the Antenna House Option Setting File (eg: `C:\path\to\for-matter\options\settings.xml` on Windows).
args.allow.external.coderefs	Enables the inclusion of code files that are located outside the DITA map folder hierarchy, referenced using the DITA `<coderef>` element. Allowed values are **yes** or **no** (default).
args.chapter.layout	Specifies whether chapter-level TOCs are generated for bookmaps. When set to **MINITOC**, a small section with links is added at the beginning of each chapter. The default is **BASIC**. For details, see: Table of Contents on a Page (Mini TOC) *(on page 1288)*. Allowed values: • **BASIC** - No chapter TOC is created. • **MINITOC** - A chapter-level TOC is generated. • **MINITOC-BOTTOM-LINKS** - A chapter-level TOC is generated, with the links under the chapter description.
args.css	You can use this to specify a list of CSS URLs to be used in addition to those specified in the publishing template. The files must have URL syntax and be separated using semicolons.
args.css.param.*	You can use this parameter pattern to set attributes on the root of the merged map. This means you can activate specific CSS rules from your custom CSS using custom attributes. For examples, see: Styling Through Custom Parameters *(on page 1384)*.
args.css.param.clone-referenced-footnotes	You can use this parameter to control the footnotes behavior:

	• When set to yes, footnotes that are referenced multiple times throughout a publication are cloned and placed at the bottom of the page for each occurrence. • When set to no (default value), only the first footnote reference is placed at the bottom of the page and subsequent references point back to the original footnote.
args.css.param.pdf-split-mode	You can use this parameter to generate additional PDFs alongside the main PDF publication. Allowed values: • **none** - Only the main PDF is generated. • **chapters** - All the chapters are generated beside the main PDF. The PDF chapter file name is equal to the original chapter `@id`. • **parts** - All the parts are generated beside the main PDF. The PDF part file name is equal to the original part `@id`.
args.css.param.numbering	You can use this parameter to change the numbering of the first-level topics (chapters) and nested topics. Allowed values: • **shallow** - Only the topics from the first level are numbered (chapters). This is the default. • **deep** - All the topics from the map are numbered (nested topics up to level 3). • **deep-chapter-scope** - Similar to deep, but in addition, the page numbers, figures, and table numbers are reset at the start of each first-level topic (chapter). The table and figure titles (and the links to them) are prefixed with the chapter numbers. The generic cross reference links contain both the first-level topic (chapter) numbers and the page numbers to avoid ambiguity. This parameter value is only available for the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario. • **deep-chapter-scope-no-page-reset** - Similar to `deep-chapter-scope`, but the page numbers do not reset at the start of each first-level topic (chapter). The generic cross reference links contain only the page number. This parameter value is only available for the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario. For more details, see Numbering Types *(on page 1274)*.
args.css.param.numbering-sections	Controls whether or not the sections are included in the table of contents. When set to **yes** (sections are included), they are numbered ac-

	cording the numbering scheme set by the `args.css.param.numbering` parameter.
args.css.param.show-onpage-lbl	Controls whether or not the links will have an `on page NN` label after them. This parameter has different defaults, depending on the transformation type. For map transformations (`pdf-css-html5` trans type), the default is **yes**. For topic transformations (`pdf-css-html5-single-topic` trans type), the default is **no**.
args.css.param.show-profiling-attributes	Controls whether or not the profiling attributes are displayed in the output. Allowed values: • **yes** • **no** (default)
args.css.param.title.layout	Changes the structure of the title element. In the output, the title area consists of two parts: one is the number of the chapter (and optionally, the sections number), and one is the title text. This parameter allows a switch between normal text flow (in-line flow) and a table layout where the number is placed in one cell and the text in the other (to avoid wrapping text under the chapter number). • **normal** • **table** (avoid wrapping text under counter)
args.draft	Specifies whether or not the content of `<draft-comment>` and `<required-cleanup>` elements is included in the output. Allowed values: • **no** (default) - No draft information is shown in the output. • **yes** - The draft information is shown in the output.
args.figurelink.style	Specifies how cross references to figures are styled in output. Allowed values: • **NUMBER** - Only the number of the figures are shown in links. • **TITLE** - Only the title of the figures are shown in links. • **NUMTITLE** (default) - Both the title and number of the figures are shown in links.

args.gen.task.lbl	Specifies whether or not to generate headings for sections within task topics. Allowed values: **YES** or **NO** (default). When set to **YES**, headings such as "About this task", "Before you begin", "Procedure", or "What to do next", are shown in the task contents.
args.hyph.dir	Specifies the directory that contains custom hyphenation dictionaries. Fore more details see: Hyphenation *(on page 1318)*.
args.input	Specifies the main DITA map file for your documentation project.
args.keep.output.debug.files	Specifies whether or not the debug files generated during the transformation should be kept in the output folder. Allowed values: **YES** (default) or **NO**.
args.output.base	Specifies the name of the output file without a file extension. By default, the name of the PDF file is derived from the name of the DITA map file. This parameter allows you to override it. A common use-cases is to use the ditamap title instead of the ditamap filename, the parameter value then become `${xpath_eval(normalize-space(string-join(/*[contains(@class, 'map/map')]/*[contains(@class, 'topic/title')]//text()))}`. **Note:** To replace spaces by a custom separator the query should call the `replace()` function: `${xpath_eval(replace(normalize-space(string-join(/*[contains(@class, 'map/map')]/*[contains(@class, 'topic/title')]//text())), '\s', '_'))}`.
args.rellinks.group.mode	Specifies the related links grouping mode. All links can be grouped into a single "Related Information" group or links grouped by their target type (topic, task, or concept). Allowed values: **single-group** (default) or **group-by-type**. Fore more details see: How to Group Related Links by Type *(on page 1352)*.
args.tablelink.style	Specifies how cross references to tables are styled in output. Allowed values: • **NUMBER** - Only the number of the tables are shown in links. • **TITLE** - Only the title of the tables are shown in links. • **NUMTITLE** (default) - Both the title and number of the tables are shown in links.
clean.temp	Specifies whether or not the DITA-OT deletes the files in the temporary directory after it finishes a build. Allowed values: **yes** (default) or **no**.

chemistry.log.file	Specifies the path to the `logback.xml` configuration file used by Chemistry. For more details, see: Console Logging *(on page 1178)*.
chemistry.merge.after	Specifies a list of PDF URLs to be added at the end of the generated PDF. The files must have URL syntax and be separated using semicolons.
chemistry.merge.before	Specifies a list of PDF URLs to be added in front of the generated PDF. The files must have URL syntax and be separated using semicolons.
chemistry.security.policy	Specifies a Java policy file that applies to the Chemistry process. A template can be found here: `plugins/com.oxygenxml.pdf.css/lib/oxygen-pdf-chemistry/config/chemistry.policy`.
chemistry.security.resources.dir	Path to an additional folder that Chemistry will use to read its resources (CSS, images). The process already has read access to the input map folder, the publishing templates folder, and the OPE install folder. This optional parameter should only be used when the `chemistry.security-.policy` parameter is set.
chemistry.security.resources-.host	The host, specified as `name:port`, that Chemistry will use to get resources (e.g. CSS files, images, fonts). This optional parameter should only be used when the `chemistry.security.policy` parameter is set.
chemistry.security.workspace	Specifies a directory where the temporary files and font cache created by the Chemistry process need to be stored. This becomes required when the `chemistry.security.policy` is specified.
chemistry.sign.keystore	Specifies the path to the keystore file used by Chemistry to sign the PDF. This parameter must be set if you want to sign your PDF.
chemistry.sign.location	Specifies the location of the person/company who certified the PDF.
chemistry.sign.name	Specifies the name of the person/company who certified the PDF.
chemistry.sign.password	Specifies the export password of the keystore used to sign the PDF. Mandatory if the keystore has been exported with a password.
chemistry.sign.reason	Specifies the reason for certifying the PDF.
css.processor.path.antenna-house	Path to the Antenna House executable file that needs to be run to generate the PDF (for example, `C:\path\to\AHFCmd.exe` on Windows).
css.processor.path.chemistry	Path to the **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** executable file that needs to be run to generate the PDF (for example, `C:\path\to\chemistry.bat` on Windows). If this parameter is not set, the plugin will use the system's PATH environment variable to locate and start **Oxygen PDF Chemistry**.
css.processor.path.prince	Path to the Prince executable file that needs to be run to generate the PDF (for example, `C:\path\to\prince.exe` on Windows).

css.processor.type	Specifies the processor to use for the transformation. Allowed values: **chemistry** (default), **antenna-house**, or **prince**.
default.language	Specifies the default language for source documents. Examples: **fr**, **de**, **zh**, etc. Depending on the transformation type, the actual number of supported languages can vary, see: Localization *(on page 1426)*.
drop.block.margins.at.page-.boundary	Specifies that the top and bottom margins associated with a block element should be discarded when the block is at the top or bottom of the page. Allowed values: **YES** (default) or **NO**.
editlink.ditamap.edit.url	Use this parameter to add an *Edit* link next to the topic title in the Web-Help output. When a user clicks the link, the topic is opened in **Oxygen XML Web Author** or **Content Fusion** where they can make changes that can be saved to a file server. The value should be set as the edit URL of the *main DITA map* used for publishing your output. The easiest way to obtain the URL is to open the map in Web Author or Content Fusion and copy the URL from the browser's address bar.
editlink.additional.query.parameters	You can use this optional parameter to add additional parameters to be appended to each generated edit link. Each parameter must start with *&* (for example: *&tags-mode=no-tags*).
editlink.remote.ditamap.url (deprecated)	Use this parameter in conjunction with `editlink.web.author.url` to add an *Edit* link next to the topic title in the PDF output. When a user clicks the link, the topic is opened in **Oxygen XML Web Author** where they can make changes that can be saved to a file server. The value should be set as the custom URL of the *main DITA map*. For example, a GitHub custom URL might look like this: `https://getFileContent/oxygenxml/userguide/master/UserGuide.ditamap`.
editlink.web.author.url (deprecated)	This parameter needs to be used in conjunction with `editlink.remote-.ditamap.url` to add an *Edit* link next to the topic title in the PDF output. When a user clicks the link, the topic is opened in **Oxygen XML Web Author** where they can make changes that can be saved to a file server. The value should be set as the URL of the Web Author installation. For example: `https://www.oxygenxml.com/oxygen-xml-web-author/`.
enable.character.level.font.fallback	When set to **yes** (default), character-level font fallback is enabled for better Unicode support. Otherwise, a single font per word is used.
enable.chunk.processing	Enables the processing of the `@chunk` attribute. By default, this stage is skipped but it needs to be enabled, for example, if both the `@chunk` and `@copy-to` attributes are present on a `<topicref>`. Accepted values: **true** or **false**.

enable.latin.glyph.substitutions	When set to **yes** (default), glyph substitution is enabled (if the particular font supports it). This applies to Latin-based scripts only (the substitutions are always enabled in other types of scripts). If you encounter problems rendering or copying accented glyphs (e.g. *umlauts* or other *diacritics*), it might be helpful to set this parameter to **no** to disable the font glyph substitutions. Another example of a case when you might need to disable the substitutions is a situation where an accented character cannot be mapped to a compound glyph, resulting in the glyph not being rendered in the PDF output. **Warnings:** • Disabling substitutions also disables Latin ligatures. • Disabling substitutions is not recommended unless absolutely necessary. It is better practice to use another font if you can find one that does not have the rendering issues.
expand.xpath.in.svg.templates	Expands XPath expressions (whose format is `${expression}`) contained in SVG templates. Allowed values: **yes** (default) or **no**.
figure.title.placement	Controls the title placement of the figures, relative to the image. Possible values include **top** (default) and **bottom**.
filter.unused.glossentries	When set to **no** (default), all glossary entries are displayed in the glossary. If set to **yes**, only referenced entries are displayed.
fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml	The DITA Open Toolkit usually has problems processing references that point to locations outside of the processed DITA map directory. This parameter is used to specify whether or not the application should try to fix such references in a temporary files folder before the DITA Open Toolkit is invoked on the fixed references. The fix has no impact on your edited DITA content. Allowed values: **true** or **false** (default).
hide.frontpage.toc.index.glossary	When set to **yes**, the generated structures (table of contents, index list, front page, etc.) are removed from the output. The default is **no**.
image.resolution	You can use this parameter to set the default resolution used by images. It works mainly on *vector* images since *raster* images have their resolution defined in their metadata. The default is **96** (dpi). For more information, see how to change images resolution *(on page 1353)*.

pdf.accessibility	When set to **yes**, the PDF output is generated in compliance with the PDF/Universal Accessibility standard (also known as ISO 14289). The default is **no**.
pdf.archiving.mode	Specifies the archiving mode. The PDF output will be generated in compliance with the PDF/A standard. Allowed values (not set by default): • **PDF/A-1a** • **PDF/A-1b** • **PDF/A-2a** • **PDF/A-2b** • **PDF/A-2u** • **PDF/A-3a** • **PDF/A-3b** • **PDF/A-3u**
pdf.compress	When set to **yes**, the PDF output is compressed. This may increase processing time. The default is **no**.
pdf.version	Use this parameter to specify the version of the produced PDF. It has no impact on the set of PDF features used by the engine, but may be used to signal a compatibility level to the PDF readers. The default is **1.5**.
pdf.security.restrict.printhq	Restricts high quality printing. Used for protecting the PDF Document. The restriction is off by default. Accepted values: **yes** or **no**.
pdf.security.restrict.assembledoc	Restricts assembling document (e.g. adding pages). Used for protecting the PDF Document. The restriction is off by default. Accepted values: **yes** or **no**.
pdf.security.restrict.accesscontent	Restricts extracting text and graphics. Used for protecting the PDF Document. The restriction is off by default. Accepted values: **yes** or **no**.
pdf.security.restrict.fillinforms	Restricts filling in existing interactive forms. Used for protecting the PDF Document. The restriction is off by default. Accepted values: **yes** or **no**.
pdf.security.restrict.annotations	Restricts filling in existing interactive forms. Used for protecting the PDF Document. The restriction is off by default. Accepted values: **yes** or **no**.
pdf.security.restrict.print	Restricts printing. Used for protecting the PDF Document. The restriction is off by default. Accepted values: **yes** or **no**.
pdf.security.restrict.copy	Restricts copying content. Used for protecting the PDF Document. The restriction is off by default. Accepted values: **yes** or **no**.

pdf.security.restrict.edit	Restricts copying content. Used for protecting the PDF Document. The restriction is off by default. Accepted values: **yes** or **no**.
pdf.security.user.password	User password. The document can be opened using this password. When the owner password parameter is not specified, the user password gives full rights to the people using it. When the owner password parameter is specified, the people can open the document using the user password but restrictions will apply. Missing by default.
pdf.security.owner.password	Owner password. There are no restrictions for people using this password.
pdf.security.encrypt.metadata	Encrypts the metadata. By default active when other security parameters are set. Accepted values: **yes** or **no**.
show.changes.and.comments	When set to **yes**, the user comments, colored highlights and tracked changes are shown in the output.
show.changes.and.comments-.as.changebars	When set to **yes** (default) and the `show.changes.and.comments` parameter is also set to **yes**, the user comments and tracked changes are shown as change bars in the PDF output. This parameter can be used in conjunction with the `show.changes.and.comments.as.pdf.sticky.notes` parameter to choose whether the change bars are displayed in footnotes or sticky notes. You can override this from your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*.
show.changes.and.comments-.as.pdf.sticky.notes	When set to **yes** (default) and the `show.changes.and.comments` parameter is also set to **yes**, the user comments and tracked changes are shown in the PDF output as sticky note annotations. When set to **no**, the comments and tracked changes are left in the document model and are styled by the default CSS rules as footnotes. You can override this from your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*.
show.changed.text.in.pdf.sticky-.notes.content	When set to **yes** (default) and both the `show.changes.and.comments` and `show.changes.and.comments.as.pdf.sticky.notes` parameters are also set to **yes**, the inserted and deleted text is shown in the sticky note annotations. When set to **no**, only the *inserted* and *deleted* labels are shown in the annotations (this is useful for search scope).
show.image.map.area.numbers	When set to **yes**, a counter for each area from the image map is displayed over the image, near the defined shape. The default is **no**.
show.image.map.area.shapes	When set to **yes**, each of the image map area shapes is displayed with a translucent fill over the image. You can use this to debug your image maps. The default is **no**.

show.media.as.link	When set to **yes**, media objects will not appear and an external link is generated for each one instead.
sort.and.group.glossentries	When set to **no** (default), glossary entries are sorted based upon the document order. If set to **yes**, they are sorted alphabetically and grouped by their first letter. **Warning:** This only works for glossary entries inside the `<glossgroup>` element or children of the `<glossarylist>` element.
store-type	Setting this parameter to **memory** will increase the processing speed and thus, could help decrease the publishing time.
table.title.placement	Controls the placement of the title for tables. Possible values include **top** (default) and **bottom**.
table.title.repeat	Specifies whether or not a table caption should repeat on other pages when the table spans onto multiple pages. The caption is not repeated for tables nested in lists or other tables. Allowed values are **yes** (default) or **no**.
use.css.for.embedded.svg	When set to **yes** (default), the CSS files specified in the publishing template or by the `args.css` parameter are also applied on embedded SVG elements. Allowed values are **yes** and **no**.
use.navtitles.in.all.links	Specifies whether a `<navtitle>` defined in a topic or a topic reference should be used as the display name for all links or only in the table of contents. Allowed values are **yes** and **no** (default).
parallel	Specifies whether or not certain pre-processing tasks should be run in parallel. Setting this parameter to **true** may add a small increase to the publishing speed. Allowed values are: **true** and **false** (default).

The following parameters can be used to specify a publishing template:

pdf.publishing.template	Specifies the path to the folder containing the custom PDF template.
pdf.publishing.template.descriptor	Specifies the name of the descriptor file to be loaded from the PDF template folder or package. If not specified, the first encountered descriptor file is loaded.

The following parameter is available on all DITA transformations when using the **Oxygen Publishing Engine**:

args.disable.security.checks	Specifies whether or not to load external entities that are not solved through catalogs. For security reasons, the default is **no**.

	Allowed values: • **yes** • **no** (default)

The following parameters are only available for the **DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** single DITA topic transformation scenario (`pdf-css-html5-single-topic` trans type):

args.root.map	Specifies the path of the root map file used to expand the key references in the published topic.
args.enable.root.map.key.processing	Indicates whether or not the keys should be processed using the root map parameter. Allowed values: • **auto** (default) • **yes** • **no**

Console Logging

To activate the logging of the last processing stage, involving the usage of the Chemistry processor to generate the PDF from the merged HTML, use the `-v` (or `--verbose`) DITA-OT parameter from the command line.

Note:
When the transformation is started from an **Oxygen** application, this parameter is automatically set.

Chemistry Console Logging

Besides the global verbosity, it is possible to control **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** console logging separately by creating a custom `logback.xml` configuration file. This is helpful if you want to hide the INFO messages or write the logs into a separate file.

Related Information:
Oxygen PDF Chemistry: Logging

License Key

When running the **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** engine or the **Oxygen Publishing Engine** from inside a started **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** installation, an extra license key is not required. The sections below pertain to running the publishing from the command line.

Chemistry License

If you have an **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** license key, you will be able to generate PDF output that is not stamped with the **Chemistry** logo image from the command line.

To install your **Chemistry** license key:

- If you are using the version of **Chemistry** that comes bundled in **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, save the license key text in a file with the name `licensekey.txt` and place it in the *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/com.oxygenxml.pdf.css/lib/oxygen-pdf-chemistry` folder.
- If you are using another **Chemistry** installation, make sure you place the `licensekey.txt` file in that folder.

Oxygen Publishing Engine License

If you have purchased a license for the **Oxygen Publishing Engine**, you will be able to produce both PDF and WebHelp output without any restrictions from the command line.

To install your **Oxygen Publishing Engine** license key, save the license key text in a file with the name `licensekey.txt` and place it in the *DITA-OT-DIR* folder.

Generating PDF Output

The publishing process can be initiated from a transformation scenario within **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, from a command line outside **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, or from an integration server.

Generating PDF from a Command Line

To publish the PDF output from a command line outside of **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, you can use the `dita` startup script that comes bundled with the *DITA Open Toolkit* distribution.

The command line supports all the parameters specific to the PDF transformation *(on page 1168)*. Here is an example of how to write the commands:

- Windows

```
dita.bat -f pdf-css-html5 -i C:\path\to\map.ditamap -o C:\path\to\output\folder -v
```

- Linux/macOS

```
dita -f pdf-css-html5 -i /path/to/map.ditamap -o /path/to/output/folder -v
```

Note:
You can use the long form of the command-line options (e.g. `--format` or `--input`).

Generating PDF from an Integration Server

PDF output can be automatically generated from a Continuous Integration/Continuous Delivery system, such as *Jenkins*.

To integrate PDF output with the Jenkins CI tool, follow these steps:

1. Create a Maven project to incorporate **Oxygen Publishing Engine**.
2. Go to the root of your Maven project and edit the `pom.xml` file to include the following fragment:

```
<project xmlns="http://maven.apache.org/POM/4.0.0"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://maven.apache.org/POM/4.0.0
                      http://maven.apache.org/xsd/maven-4.0.0.xsd">
  <modelVersion>4.0.0</modelVersion>

  <groupId>com.oxygenxml</groupId>
  <artifactId>oxygen-oxygen-pdf-css-generator</artifactId>
  <version>1.0</version>

  <properties>
    <!-- The path to Oxygen Publishing Engine -->
    <dita-ot-dir>/path/to/oxygen-publishing-engine</dita-ot-dir>
    <!-- The path to the DITA map that you want to process. -->
    <input-file>/path/to/map.ditamap</input-file>
    <!-- The path of the output directory. -->
    <output-dir>/path/to/output/folder</output-dir>
    <!-- The path to the PDF publishing template folder (containing the .opt file). -->
    <publishing-template>/path/to/template/folder</publishing-template>
  </properties>

  <build>
    <plugins>
      <plugin>
        <groupId>org.codehaus.mojo</groupId>
        <artifactId>exec-maven-plugin</artifactId>
        <version>1.6.0</version>
        <executions>
          <execution>
            <id>generate-pdf-css</id>
            <phase>generate-sources</phase>
            <goals>
              <goal>exec</goal>
            </goals>
```

```
            <configuration>
              <executable>${dita-ot-dir}/bin/dita</executable>
              <arguments>
                <argument>--format=pdf-css-html5</argument>
                <argument>--input=${input-file}</argument>
                <argument>--output=${output-dir}</argument>
                <argument>-Dpdf.publishing.template=${publishing-template}</argument>
                <argument>-v</argument>
              </arguments>
            </configuration>
          </execution>
        </executions>
      </plugin>
    </plugins>
  </build>
</project>
```

3. Go to the Jenkins top page and create a new Jenkins job. Configure this job to suit your particular requirements, such as the build frequency and location of the Maven project.

Related information

Webinar: Introducing the Oxygen Publishing Engine for DITA

Publishing Templates

An *Oxygen Publishing Template* defines all aspects of the layout and styles for output obtained from the following transformation scenarios:

- **WebHelp Responsive**
- **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS**

It is a self-contained customization package stored as a ZIP archive or folder that can easily be shared with others. It provides the primary method for customizing the output.

Tip:
You can start creating publishing templates by using the **Oxygen Styles Basket**. https://styles.oxygenxml.com

Some possible customization methods include:

- Add additional template resources to customize the output (such as logos, *Favicons*, or CSS files).
- Extend the default processing by specifying one or more XSLT extension points.
- Specify one or more transformation parameters to customize the output.

- Customize various aspects of the output through simple CSS styling.
- For **WebHelp Responsive** output, change the layout of the main page or topic pages by customizing which components will be displayed and where they will be positioned in the page.

The following graphics are possible sample structures for *Oxygen Publishing Template* packages:

Figure 246. Oxygen Publishing Template Package (WebHelp Responsive)

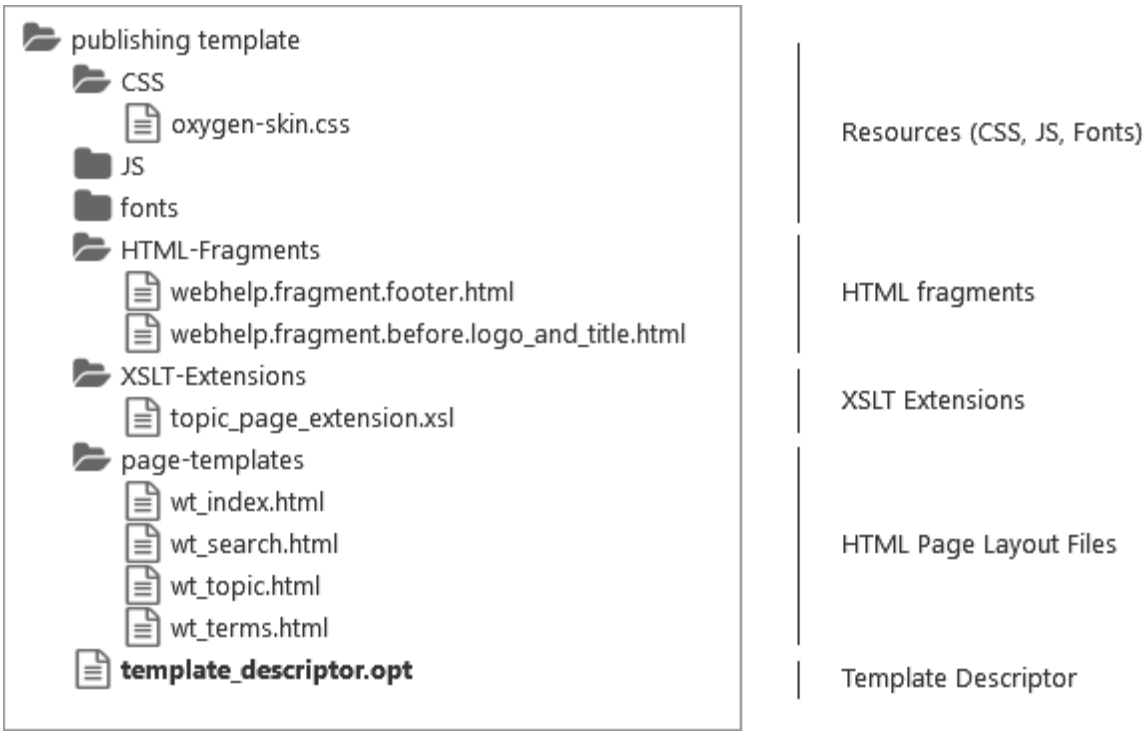


Figure 247. Oxygen Publishing Template Package (PDF)

For information about creating and customizing publishing templates, and how to adjust the WebHelp and PDF output through CSS styling and other customization methods, watch our Webinar: **Creating Custom Publishing Templates for WebHelp and PDF Output**. The Webinar slides and sample project are also available from that webpage.

Related Information:

How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1032)*
How to Edit a Packed Publishing Template *(on page 1047)*
How to Add a Publishing Template to the Publishing Templates Gallery *(on page 1047)*
How to Share a Publishing Template *(on page 1193)*

Publishing Template Package Contents for PDF Customizations

An *Oxygen Publishing Template* for PDF output must contain a template descriptor file and at least one CSS file, and may contain other resources (such as graphics, XSLT files, etc.). All the template resources can be stored in either a ZIP archive or in a folder. It is recommended to use a ZIP archive because it is easier to share with others.

Template Descriptor File

Each publishing template includes a descriptor file that defines the meta-data associated with template. It is an XML file with certain elements that defines all the resources included in a template (such as CSS files, images, and transformation parameters).

The template descriptor file must have the `.opt` file extension and must be located in the templates' root folder.

A PDF template descriptor might look like this:

```
<publishing-template>
    <name>Flowers</name>

    <pdf>
        <tags>
            <tag>purple</tag>
            <tag>light</tag>
        </tags>
        <preview-image file="flowers-preview.png"/>

        <resources>
            <css file="flowers.css"/>
        </resources>

        <parameters>
            <parameter name="figure.title.placement" value="top"/>
        </parameters>
    </pdf>
</publishing-template>
```

Tip:
It is recommended to edit the template descriptor in **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** because it provides content completion and validation support.

Template Name and Description

Each template descriptor file requires a `<name>` element. This information is displayed as the name of the template in the transformation scenario dialog box.

Optionally, you can include a `<description>` and it displayed when the user hovers over the template in the transformation scenario dialog box.

```
<publishing-template>
    <name>Flowers</name>
    <description>Flowers themed light colored template</description>
    ...
```

Template Author

Optionally, you can include author information in the descriptor file and it displayed when the user hovers over the template in the transformation scenario dialog box. This information might be useful if users run into an issue or have questions about a certain template.

If you include the `<author>` element, a `<name>` is required and optionally you can include `<email>`, `<organization>`, and `<organizationUrl>`.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <author>
      <name>John Doe</name>
      <email>jdoe@example.com</email>
      <organization>ACME</organization>
      <organizationUrl>http://www.example.com/jdoe</organizationUrl>
    </author>
    ...
```

PDF Element

The `<pdf>` element contains various details about the template and its resources that define the PDF output. It is a required element if you intend on using a DITA Map to PDF transformation scenario. The elements that are allowed in this `<pdf>` section specify the template tags *(on page 1185)*, template preview image *(on page 1185)*, resources *(on page 1185)* (such as CSS files), transformation parameters *(on page 1186)*, or XSLT extensions *(on page 1187)*.

```
    <pdf>
        <tags>
          ...
        </tags>
        <preview-image file="MyPreview.png"/>
```

```
      <resources>
        ...
      </resources>

      <parameters>
        ...
      </parameters>
    </pdf>
```

Template Tags

The `<tags>` section provides meta information about the template (such as color theme). Each *tag* is displayed at the top of the **Templates** tab window in the transformation scenario dialog box and they help the user filter and find particular templates.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <pdf>
      <tags>
        <tag>purple</tag>
        <tag>light</tag>
      </tags>
```

Template Preview Image

The `<preview-image>` element is used to specify an image that will be displayed in the transformation scenario dialog box. It provides a visual representation of the template to help the user select the right template. The image dimensions should be `200 x 115` pixels and the supported image formats are: `JPEG`, `PNG`, or `GIF`.

You can also include an `<online-preview-url>` element to specify the URL of a published sample of your template. This will display an **Online preview** icon in the bottom-right corner of the image in the transformation scenario dialog box and if the user clicks that icon, it will open the specified URL in their default browser.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <pdf>
      ...
      <preview-image file="ashes/ashes-tree.png"/>
      <online-preview-url=https://www.example.com/samples/tiles/ashes</online-preview-url>
```

Template Resources

The `<resources>` section of the descriptor file specifies a set of resources (CSS files) that are used to customize various components in the generated output. These resources will be copied to the output folder during the transformation process. At least one CSS file must be included (using the `<css>` element).

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <pdf>
      ...
      <resources>
          <css file="css/custom_styles.css"/>
          <css file="css/custom_fonts.css"/>
      </resources>
```

Note:
All relative paths specified in the descriptor file are relative to the template root folder.

Transformation Parameters

You can also set one or more transformation parameters in the descriptor file.

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <pdf>
      ...
      <parameters>
        <parameter name="show.changes.and.comments" value="yes"/>
      </parameters>
    </pdf>
```

The following information can be specified in the `<parameters>` element:

Parameter name

The name of the parameter. It may be one of the transformation parameters listed in the **Parameters** tab of the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario or a DITA-OT PDF-based output parameter.

Note:
It is not recommended to specify an input/output parameter in the descriptor file (such as the input Map, DITAVAL file, or temporary directory).

Attention:
JVM arguments like *-Xmx* cannot be specified as a transformation parameter.

Parameter Value

The value of the parameter. It should be a relative path to the template root folder for file paths parameters.

Parameter Type

The type of the parameter: `string` or `filepath`. The `string` value is default.

After creating a publishing template *(on page 1188)* and adding it to the templates gallery *(on page 1192)*, when you select the template in the transformation scenario dialog box, the **Parameters** tab will automatically be updated to include the parameters defined in the descriptor file. These parameters are displayed in italics.

XSLT Extension Points

The publishing templates support one or more XSLT extension points. They can be specified using the `<xslt>` element in the descriptor file using the following structure:

```
<publishing-template>
    ...
    <pdf>
        ...
        <xslt>
            <extension
              id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5"
              file="xslt/merged2html5Extension.xsl"/>
            <extension
              id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged"
              file="xslt/merged2mergedExtension.xsl"/>
        </xslt>
```

For more information about the available extension points, see: XSLT Extensions for PDF Transformations *(on page 1389)*.

Combining PDF and WebHelp Responsive Customizations in a Template Package

An *Oxygen Publishing Template* package can contain both a PDF and WebHelp Responsive customization in the same template package and you can use that same template in both types of transformations. The template descriptor file can define the customization for both types by including both a `<webhelp>` and `<pdf>` element and some of the resources can be reused. Resources referenced in elements in the `<webhelp>` element will only be used for WebHelp transformations, and resources referenced in the elements in the `<pdf>` element will only be used in PDF transformations.

```
<publishing-template>
    <name>Flowers</name>
    <description>Flowers themed light-colored template</description>

    <webhelp>
        <tags>
            <tag>purple</tag>
```

```
            <tag>light</tag>
        </tags>
        <preview-image file="flowers-preview.png"/>
        <resources>
            <css file="flowers-wh.css"/>
            <css file="flowers-page-styling.css"/>
        </resources>
        <parameters>
            <parameter name="webhelp.show.main.page.tiles" value="no"/>
            <parameter name="webhelp.show.main.page.toc" value="yes"/>
        </parameters>
    </webhelp>
    <pdf>
        <tags>
            <tag>purple</tag>
            <tag>light</tag>
        </tags>
        <preview-image file="flowers-preview.png"/>
        <resources>
            <css file="flowers-pdf.css"/>
            <css file="flowers-page-styling.css"/>
        </resources>
        <parameters>
            <parameter name="show.changes.and.comments" value="yes"/>"/>
        </parameters>
    <pdf>
</publishing-template>
```

Related Information:

Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations *(on page 994)*

How to Create a Publishing Template

To create a customization, you can use the **Oxygen Styles Basket**, start from scratch or from an existing template, and then adapt it according to your needs.

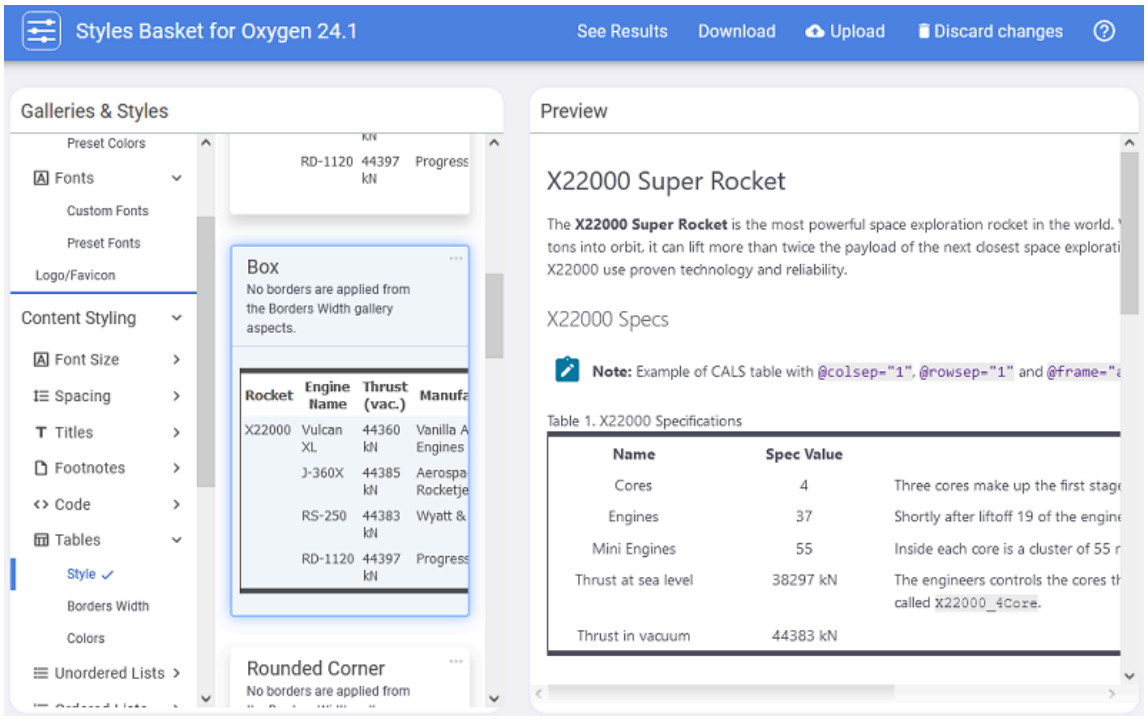
Creating a Publishing Template Using the Oxygen Styles Basket

Oxygen Styles Basket is a handy free-to-use web-based visual tool that helps you create your own *Publishing Template Package* to customize your **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** and/or **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenarios.

To create an *Oxygen Publishing Template*, simply visit the galleries and pick styling aspects. Various different types of styles can be selected (such as fonts, tables, lists, spacing, code) and all changes can be seen in

the **Preview** pane. You can also click the **See Results** button to generate a preview of either PDF or WebHelp output.

Figure 248. Oxygen Styles Basket Interface



After creating your custom style, you can **Download** the current template, then back in **Oxygen**, click **Choose Custom Publishing Template** and select the downloaded archive in the transformation dialog to apply it.

At any time you can **Upload** a previously generated template for further customization.

Tip:
For more information about the **Oxygen Styles Basket**, see the following resources:

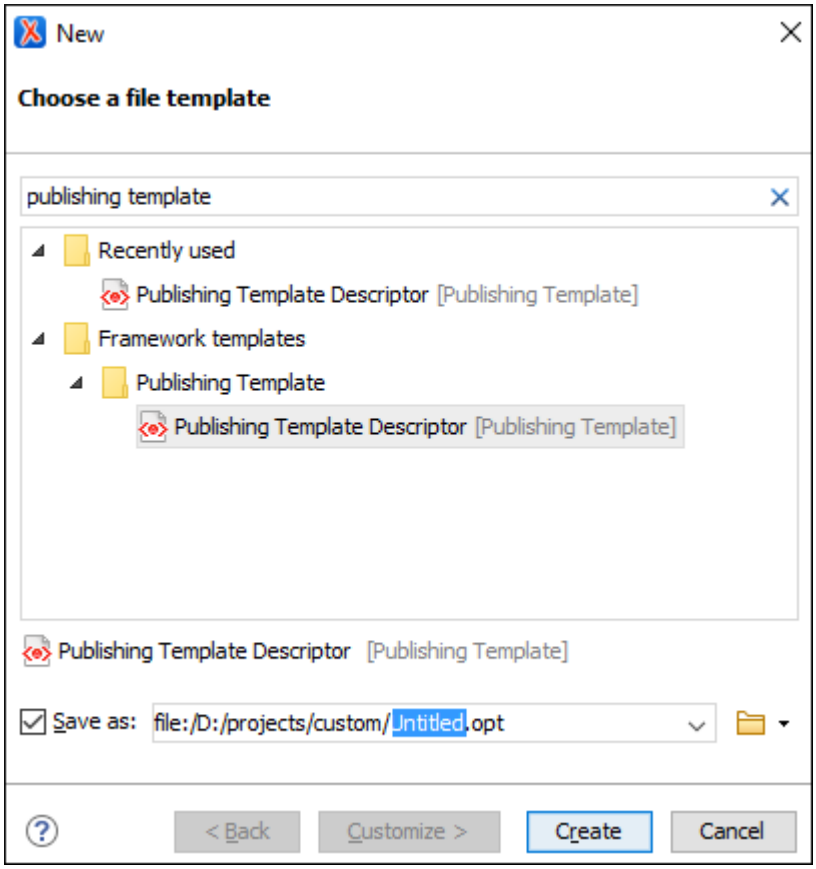
- **Video: Introducing the New Oxygen Styles Basket**
- **Webinar: Using Oxygen Styles Basket to Create CSS Customization from Scratch**

Creating a Publishing Template Starting from Scratch

To create a new *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 2232)*, follow these steps:

1. Create a folder that will contain all the template files.
2. In **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, open the new document wizard (use **File > New** or the **New** toolbar button), then choose the **Publishing Template Descriptor** template.

Figure 249. Choosing the Publishing Template Descriptor Document Template



3. Save the `.opt` file into your customization directory.
4. Open the `.opt` file in the editor and customize it to suit your needs.

Creating a Publishing Template Starting from an Existing Template

If you are using a **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** or **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation, the easiest way to create a new *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 2232)* is to select an existing template in the transformation scenario dialog box and use the **Save template as** button to save that template into a new template package that can be used as a starting point.

To create a new *Oxygen Publishing Template*, follow these steps:

1. Open the transformation scenario dialog box and select the publishing template you want to export and use as a starting point.
2. **Optional:** You can set one or more transformation parameters from the **Parameters** tab and the edited parameters will be exported along with the selected template. You will see which parameters will be exported in the dialog box that is displayed after the next step.
3. Click the **Save template as** button.

   Step Result: This opens a template package configuration dialog box that contains some options and displays the parameters that will be exported to your template package.

4. Specify a name for the new template.
5. **Optional:** Specify a template description.
6. **Optional:** The same publishing template package can contain both a WebHelp Responsive and PDF customization and you can use the same template in both types of transformations (**DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** or **DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS**). You can use the **Include WebHelp customization** and **Include PDF customization** options to specify whether your custom template will include both types of customizations.
7. **Optional:** For **WebHelp Responsive** customizations, you can select the **Include HTML Page Layout Files** option if you want to copy the default *HTML Page Layout Files (on page 1010)* in your template package. They are helpful if you want to change the structure of the generated HTML pages.
8. In the **Save as** field, specify the name and path of the ZIP file where the template will be saved.

   Step Result: A new ZIP archive will be created on disk in the specified location with the specified name.
9. Open the `.opt` file in the editor and customize it to suit your needs.

For more information about creating and customizing publishing templates, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/zNmXfKWXwO8

Related information
Publishing Template Package Contents for PDF Customizations *(on page 1183)*
Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations *(on page 994)*

How to Edit a Packed Publishing Template

To edit an existing *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 2232)* package, follow these steps:

1. Unzip the ZIP archive associated with the *Oxygen Publishing Template* in a separate folder.
2. Link the folder associated with the template in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, you can modify the resources (CSS, JS, fonts) within the *Oxygen Publishing Template* folder to fit your needs.
4. Open the publishing template descriptor file (`.opt` extension) in the editor and modify it to suit your needs.
5. **Optional:** Once you finish your customization, you can archive the folder as a ZIP file.

Related Information:
Publishing Template Package Contents for PDF Customizations *(on page 1183)*
Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations *(on page 994)*

How to Use a Publishing Template in a PDF Transformation

From Oxygen XML Editor/Author

A publishing template can be used for PDF output from the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario (or from the **DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario).

The **Templates** tab in the transformation scenario dialog box displays all the templates that are available in your template gallery. To use a particular template in the transformation scenario, simply select it from this tab and then continue configuring the transformation using the other tabs to suit your needs.

To add the publishing template to your templates gallery, follow these steps:

1. Open the transformation scenario dialog box by editing a **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation (or a **DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario).
2. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Configure Publishing Templates Gallery** link to.

   Step Result: This will open the preferences page.
3. Click the **Add** button and specify the location of your template directory.

   Step Result: Your template directory is now added to the **Additional Publishing Templates Galleries** list.
4. Click **OK** to return to the transformation scenario dialog box.

Result: All the templates contained in your template directory will be displayed in the preview pane along with all the built-in templates.

From a Command Line

You can use the `pdf.publishing.template` parameter to point to the **.opt* (publishing template) file:

```
dita.bat
 --input=map\test.ditamap"
 "-Dpdf.publishing.template=full_path_to_template_dir/my_template.opt"
 --format=pdf-css-html5
 ...
```

Or use the two parameters to indicate the folder containing the publishing templates and the name of the publishing template file relative to that folder:

```
dita.bat
 --input=map\test.ditamap"
 "-Dpdf.publishing.template=full_path_to_template_dir"
 "-Dpdf.publishing.template.descriptor=my_template.opt"
 --format=pdf-css-html5
 ...
```

Tip:
You can also start the `dita` process by passing it a DITA OT Project File. Inside the project file you can specify as parameters for the `webhelp-responsive` transformation type the WebHelp-related parameters.

Related Information:
Transformation Parameters *(on page 1168)*

How to Share a Publishing Template

To share a publishing template with others, following these steps:

1. Copy your template in a new folder in your project.
2. Go to **Options > Preferences > DITA > Publishing** and add that new folder to the list.
3. Switch the option as the bottom of that preferences page to **Project Options**.
4. Share your project file (`.xpr`).

Customizing PDF Output Using CSS

The publishing process is driven by a *customization CSS*.

Warning:
You should not edit the CSS stylesheet from *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/com.oxygenxml.pdf.css/css/print`. Instead, create your own customization.

To change the styling of the output for the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** or the **DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenarios you can either create your own custom CSS rules or create a publishing template using the **Oxygen Styles Basket**.

Create Custom CSS Rules from Scratch

1. Create a CSS file that will contain all of your customizations. It is recommended to create this file in your project directory so you can edit it easily.

   Tip:
   If you use the default Chemistry processor in **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, you can use LESS instead of CSS. In this case, the customization files should have the `.less` extension.

2. Add your custom CSS rules. As a good starting point, you can check the various topics in this section for assistance with specific types of customizations.
3. Link the CSS file. For this, you have two options:

- Create a publishing template, create the customization CSS file inside the template folder, and link it to the publishing template descriptor. For assistance, see Publishing Templates *(on page 990)*.
- Choose an existing publishing template, then edit the scenario and set the full path to the custom CSS file as the value of the `args.css` parameter. The rules from custom CSS will override the rules from the template CSS files.

4. Run the transformation scenario.

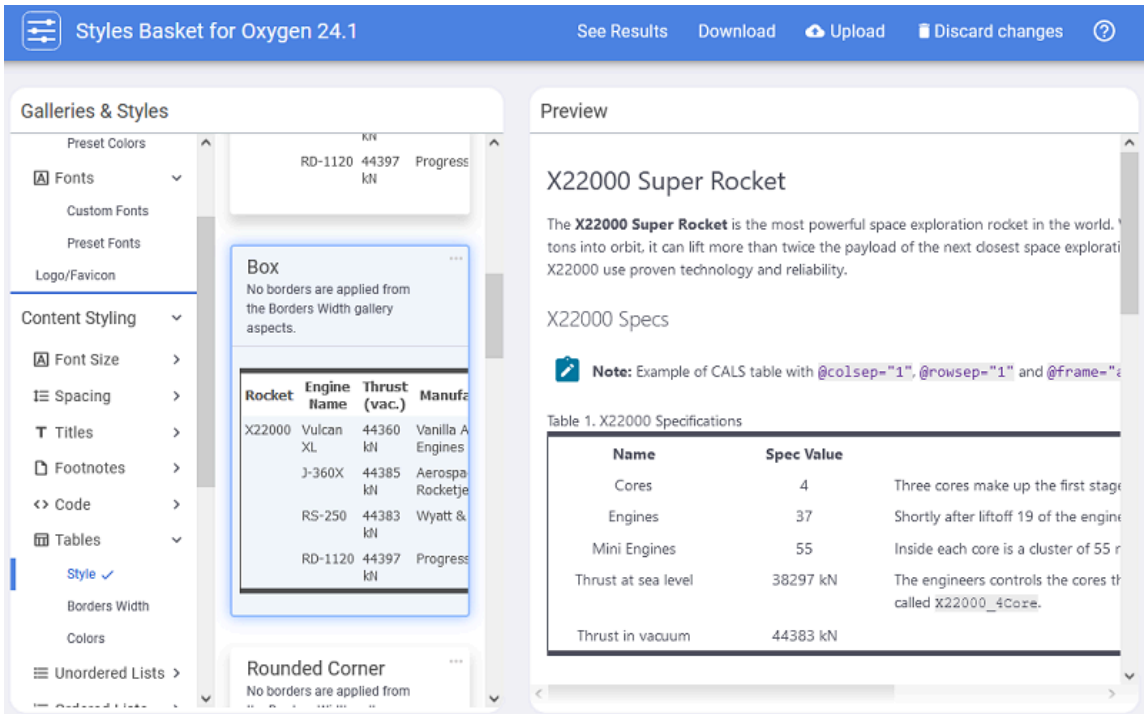
Creating a Publishing Template Using the Oxygen Styles Basket

Another way to create an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 2232)* is to use the **Oxygen Styles Basket**. This tool is a handy free-to-use web-based visual tool that helps you create your own *Publishing Template Package* to customize your **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenarios.

It is based on galleries that you can visit to pick styling aspects to create a custom look and feel. Various different types of styles can be selected (such as fonts, tables, lists, spacing, code) and all changes can be seen in the **Preview** pane. You can also click the **See Results** button to generate a preview of either PDF or WebHelp output.

It is possible to **Download** the current template or **Upload** a previously generated template for further customization.

Figure 250. Oxygen Styles Basket Interface



Tip:
For more information and some tips in regard to publishing DITA documents to PDF using CSS, watch our Webinars:

- **Transforming DITA documents to PDF using CSS, Part 1 – Page Definitions, Cover Page and PDF Metadata**:
  https://www.youtube.com/embed/5NsVEOvxbas
- **Transforming DITA documents to PDF using CSS, Part 2 – Book Design, Pagination, Page Layout, and Bookmarks**:
  https://www.youtube.com/embed/UiYwPBOJQcg
- **Transforming DITA documents to PDF using CSS, Part 3 – Advanced Fonts Usage**:
  https://www.youtube.com/embed/1fzS8AzOGao
- **Transforming DITA documents to PDF using CSS, Part 4 – Advanced CSS Rules**:
  https://www.youtube.com/embed/rs04iX_RdIk

Debugging the CSS

If you notice that some of the CSS properties were not applied as expected, some of the tips offered in this topic might help you with the debugging process.

CAUTION:
Do not modify the built-in rules directly in the CSS files from the **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** installation. Instead, copy the rules to your own customization CSS.

Inspecting the Merged Map File

During the transformation stages, two merged map files are created. These files could be used to help debug unexpected results.

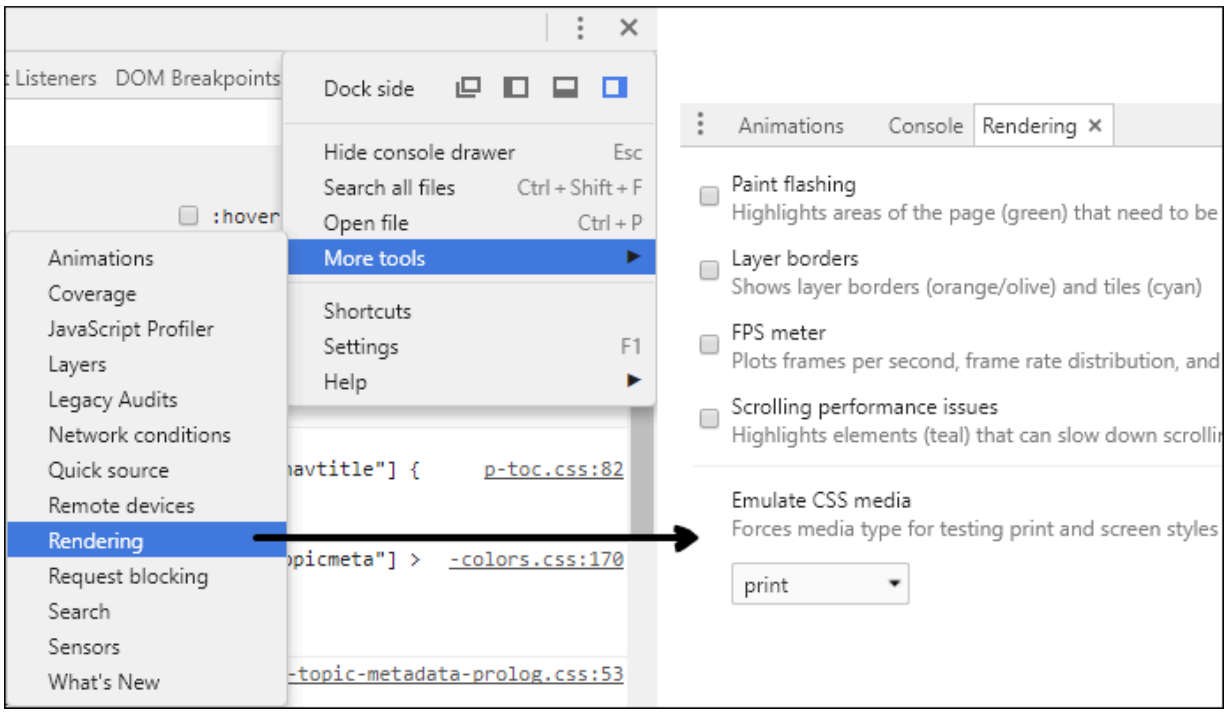
1. The first thing you should try is to check the file structure of the **HTML merged map file**. This file can be found in the `out/pdf-css` directory and it has the `.merged.html` file extension (you will also find a `.merged.xml` file that aggregates the entire DITA map structure). You can open the HTML files in **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** to examine the structure. Optionally, you can use the pretty print feature (**Format and Indent**) to make the structure easier to read.
2. If the structure is as expected, you can start checking that the CSS selectors are written correctly against the document structure.
3. If the CSS selectors are correctly written, you can start inspecting how the styles are applied (you can try any of the methods listed below).

Inspecting the Applied Styles Using a Browser

The following procedure explains how to inspect the applied CSS styles using Chrome, but any modern browser can be used and the procedure for each of them is similar:

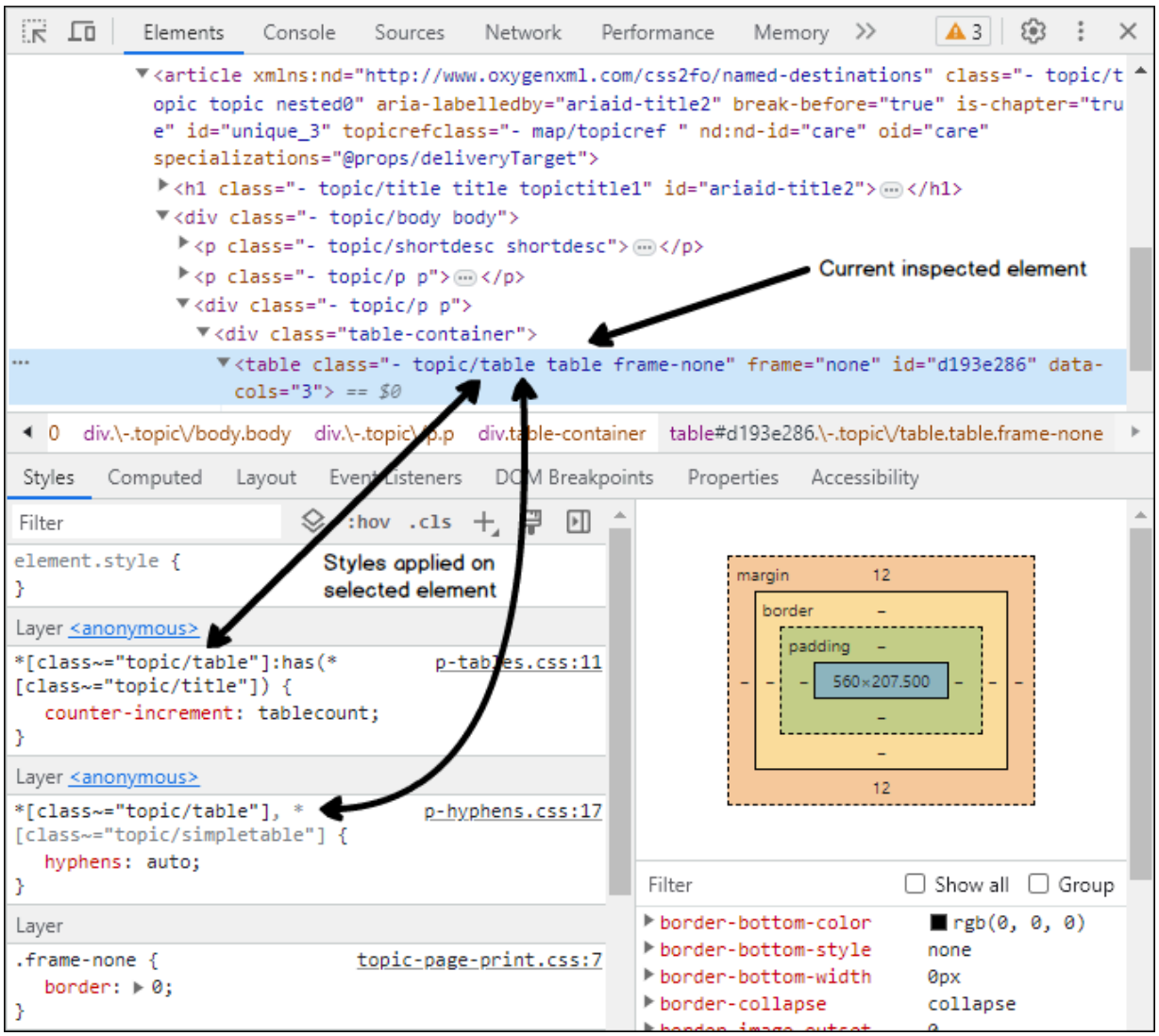
1. Open the file ending in `.merged.html`.
2. Open the **Chrome Developer Tools** by using ⋮ **> More Tools > Developer Tools** (or press **CTRL+SHIFT+I**).

3. Activate the **Rendering** pane by using ⋮ **> More Tools > Rendering** then select **print** from the **Emulate CSS media** section. This will activate the CSS selectors enclosed in `@media print {..}`:



Note:
This allows you to debug the styling of elements, the table of contents, and the index, but not the styles of the page margin boxes (headers, footers) or page breaks.

4. Right-click on the element you want to inspect and select the **Inspect** action, you will see the element (in the **Elements** pane) and the list of styles that are applied on it (in the **Styles** pane):



Tip:
Clicking any of the stylesheet links from the **Styles** pane opens the original CSS files in the **Sources** pane. Editing the rules in that pane results in a live preview of how the change will affect the output (these modifications will be lost on reload).

Inspecting the Applied Styles Using Oxygen XML Editor/Author

To inspect the applied CSS styles using **Oxygen**:

1. In **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**, open the file ending in `.merged.html`.
2. From the **Styles** toolbar, choose the **+ Print Ready** entry. This will activate certain CSS selectors enclosed in `@media print {..}`.

Note:
This allows you to debug the styling of elements, the table of contents, and the index, but not the styles of the page margin boxes (headers, footers) or page breaks.

3. Right-click on the element you want to inspect and select the **Inspect Styles** action. The dedicated **CSS Inspector** view will be opened and it will show the applied CSS rules.

   > **Tip:**
   > With this file open in **Author** mode, it might be helpful to switch the **Tags Display Mode** to **Full Tags with Attributes**. You might be able to identify the selector you need to style without using the **CSS Inspector** view.

Other Debugging Techniques

Here are some other debugging techniques you may find useful:

- Add background and border properties to the specific CSS rule. If they do not appear in the output, then there is a problem with the rule selector.
- Add the `!important` keyword to a property that is not applied, or make the selector more specific (by adding more parent selectors).
- Add the following fragment in your customization CSS to show how the elements are mapped to PDF:

```
* {
   border: 1pt solid blue !important;
}

*:before(1000) {
   content:  oxy_name() !important;
   color: orange;
}

*:before(900) {
   content: "[ class= '" attr(class) "'] " !important;
   color: orange;
}
```

  This will show the element name, its class attribute, and will paint a blue border around each of the elements in the output. It will not show the page margin boxes or some content elements that are hidden.

How to Speed up CSS Development and Debugging

You may have already run the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario before using this procedure.

You can speed up your CSS development considerably by not invoking the entire pipeline of transforming your DITA maps to PDF. Instead, you can directly transform the merged map *(on page 1195)* (`.merged.html`) into PDF using **Oxygen PDF Chemistry**.

1. Open the `.merged.html` located in the output directory in the editor.
2. Configure a new **XML to PDF transformation with CSS** scenario. There is no need to set the CSS URL in the resulting dialog box. The stylesheets are already declared in the file `<head>`. This scenario uses the Chemistry CSS processor.
3. **Optional:** Enable the console output of the CSS processor from: **Options > Preferences > XML > PDF Output > CSS-based Processors**.

Now you can make incremental changes to the CSS stylesheet and quickly see the results by transforming the merged file directly.

Fastpath:
If your changes only involve element styling (with no specific paged media CSS rules and properties), you can simply open the merged file in a browser (such as Chrome or Firefox) and refresh at each CSS change, as shown in: Debugging the CSS *(on page 1195)*.

How to Use XPath Expressions in CSS

How to Write XPath Expressions

To use XPath expressions in CSS, you need to use the `oxy_xpath()` function. These XPath expressions are used to extract the content from the HTML merged DITA map document.

The following example shows how to display the product name meta-information before the front page title:

```
*[class~="front-page/front-page-title"]:before {
    text-align: left;
    content: oxy_xpath("(//*[contains(@class, 'topic/prodname')]/text())[1]");
    display:block;
}
```

Important:
Do not use the DITA element names directly. You must use the DITA `@class` attribute instead, as these attributes are propagated to the HTML elements while the element names can be lost. By using the class selectors, you also cover DITA specializations.

Tip:
Use the "[1]" XPath predicate to select the first value from the document. Do not forget the parenthesis between the node to be selected.

For example: `oxy_xpath("(//*[contains(@class, 'topic/prodname')]/text())[1]")`.

Note that the meta-information might be copied multiple times in the output, inherited by the `<topicref>` elements, so you might get more values than expected.

Other Notes:

- You can call the `oxy_xpath()` function in `string-set` property.
- You can use content extracted using the `oxy_xpath()` function in both pseudo-elements and @page at-rules.
- Do not use strings as values for pseudo-elements content because they are not supported in them.

How to Debug XPath Expressions

Suppose that you need to display the publication author in the bottom-left part of the cover page.

The ditamap content is the following:

```
<map>
  <title>The Art of Bike Repair</title>
  <topicmeta>
    <author>John Doe</author>
  </topicmeta>
  ...
</map>
```

To debug an XPath expression:

1. Read the XPath Expressions Guidelines *(on page 1199)*.
2. Launch the transformation of the DITA map using your customization CSS.
3. Open the `[MAP_NAME].merged.html` file (from the output folder) in **Oxygen XML Editor/Author**. You will find this inside the HTML:

   ```
   <div class="- front-page/front-page front-page">
     <div class="- map/topicmeta topicmeta">
       <div class="- topic/author author">John Doe</div>
     </div>
     <div class="- front-page/front-page-title front-page-title">
       <div class="- topic/title title">The Art of Bike Repair</div>
     </div>
   </div>
   ```

4. Activate the **XPath Builder** view (**Window > Show View > XPath/XQuery Builder**).
5. Paste your XPath expression (for example: `//*[contains(@class, "front-page/front-page")]/*[contains(@class, "map/topicmeta")]/*[contains(@class, "topic/author")]/text()`) and click the **Execute XPath** button. Check if it returns the expected results.
6. Copy the expression in your customization CSS and define the rules that will use it. For example:

```
:root {
  string-set: author oxy_xpath('//*[contains(@class, "front-page/front-page")]\
  /*[contains(@class, "map/topicmeta")]/*[contains(@class, "topic/author")]/text()');
}

@page front-page {
  @bottom-left {
    content: "Created by " string(author);
  }
}
```

Note:
The "\" character used in the expression allows the multi-line display without breaking the query.

7. Run the transformation again to obtain the desired output.

Note:
The XPath builder has a function that allows it to display the document path of the current element from the editor (**Settings drop-down menu >** **Update on cursor move**). Alternatively, you can right-click the element in the merged document and select the **Copy XPath** action, then paste it in the XPath builder.

Related Information:
XPath Builder Documentation
XPath Examples (w3schools.com)

Default Page Definitions

All page definitions are found in: `[PLUGIN_DIR]css/print/p-pages-and-headers.css`.

Note:
This is listed solely for illustration purposes, as the plugin might use something different.

There are page definitions for the default page, chapter page, table of contents page, front matter page, back matter page, index page, large tables page, and blank page.

Default Page

The default page imposes a header that contains the publication title, chapter, and section title. They alternate on the left or right side of the page:

```
@page :left {
  @top-left {
    content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
  }
}

@page :right{
  @top-right {
    content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
  }
}
```

Tip:

To override the default rules defined for named pages (such as chapter or table of contents), you need to use more specific page rules that contain the page name:

```
@page :left, table-of-contents:left, chapter:left {
  @top-left {
    content: "...";
  }
}

@page :right, table-of-contents:right, chapter:right{
  @top-right {
    content: "...";
  }
}
```

Front Page

The cover page. It clears the headers.

```
@page front-page {
    @top-left-corner    {          content:none }
    @top-left           {          content:none }
    @top-center         {          content:none }
    @top-right          {          content:none }
    @top-right-corner   {          content:none }
    @bottom-left-corner {          content:none }
    @bottom-left        {          content:none }
    @bottom-center      {          content:none }
    @bottom-right       {          content:none }
```

```
    @bottom-right-corner{          content:none }
}
```

Table of Contents Page

The table of content page. It clears the headers and uses a lower roman page number in the header.

```
@page table-of-contents {
  @top-left      { content: none; }
  @top-center    { content: none; }
  @top-right     { content: none; }
  @bottom-left   { content: none; }
  @bottom-center { content: none; }
  @bottom-right  { content: none; }
}
@page table-of-contents:left {
  @top-left {
    content: string(toc-header) " | " counter(page, lower-roman);
  }
}
@page table-of-contents:right {
  @top-right {
    content: string(toc-header) " | " counter(page, lower-roman);
  }
}

/* Do not put a header on the first page of the TOC */
@page table-of-contents:first:left {
  @top-left {
    content: none;
  }
}
@page table-of-contents:first:right {
   @top-right {
     content: none;
   }
}
```

Chapter Page

The chapter page is inherited from the default page. The chapter page is associated with the topics marked as chapters, usually direct children of the map. It clears the header from the first page of each chapter. If you need to add other information to the chapter headers, make sure you override these rules in your CSS:

```
@page chapter{
  /* Currently inherit from the default page. */
}

/* No headers on the chapter first page. */
@page chapter:first:left{
  @top-left {
    content: none;
  }
}
@page chapter:first:right{
  @top-right {
    content: none;
  }
}
```

Front Matter and Back Matter Page

The bookmap front matter and back matter page. It clears the headers.

```
@page matter-page {
  @top-left-corner    {          content:none }
  @top-center         {          content:none }
  @top-right-corner   {          content:none }
  @bottom-left-corner {          content:none }
  @bottom-left        {          content:none }
  @bottom-center      {          content:none }
  @bottom-right       {          content:none }
  @bottom-right-corner{          content:none }
}

@page matter-page:left {
  @top-left           {          content: counter(page, lower-roman); }
}

@page matter-page:right {
  @top-right          {          content: counter(page, lower-roman); }
}
```

Index Page

The index page contains the index terms (and appears only if there are such items in your topics). It uses a lower alpha page number in the footer:

```
@page index {
  @top-left-corner    {          content:none }
  @top-left           {          content:none }
  @top-right          {          content:none }
  @top-right-corner   {          content:none }
  @top-center         {          content:none }
  @bottom-left-corner {          content:none }
  @bottom-left        {          content:none }
  @bottom-right       {          content:none }
  @bottom-right-corner{          content:none }
  @bottom-center      {
    content: counter(page, lower-alpha);
    font-size: 11pt;
  }
}

@media oxygen-chemistry {
  @page index {
    column-count: 2;
    column-fill: auto;
  }
}
```

When transformed, the page layout is spread on two columns.

Landscape Page

The landscape page contains large tables (for example). The page is rotated and the header is moved on the right side of the page:

```
@page landscape-page:right {
  size: landscape;

  @top-left {
    content: none
  }
  @top-center {
    content: none
  }
  @top-right {
    content: none
  }

  @right-bottom {
```

```
    content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
    transform: rotate(90deg);
    vertical-align: middle;
    text-align: right;
  }
}

@page landscape-page:left {
  size: landscape;

  @top-left {
    content: none
  }
  @top-center {
    content: none
  }
  @top-right {
    content: none
  }

  @right-top {
    content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
    transform: rotate(90deg);
    vertical-align: middle;
    text-align: left;
  }
}
```

Blank Page

The following example clears the header for the blank pages that may be created by a `break-before`, `break-after`, or by using double side pagination *(on page 1295)*:

```
@page :blank{
  @top-left {
    content: none;
  }
  @top-right {
    content: none;
  }
}
```

Related information

Oxygen PDF Chemistry: The Page Counter

Page Size

This is where you can find information on how the page sizes are defined.

Page Size - Built-in CSS rules

The `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-page-size.css` file contains the default page rules. It uses the US-LETTER size (8.5 X 11 inches). The content of this file is:

```
@page {
    padding-top:0.2em;
    padding-bottom:0.2em;
    size: letter;
    margin: 1in;
}
```

Note:
This is listed solely for illustration purposes, as the plugin might use something different.

How to Change the Page Size

Suppose you want to publish using the standard A4 page size, with a margin of 2cm.

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, use:

```
@page {
    size: A4;
    margin: 2cm;
}
```

If you need different margins depending on the page side:

```
@page {
    size: A4;
    margin: 2cm;
}
@page :left{
    margin-right:4cm;
}
@page :right{
    margin-left:4cm;
}
```

This would only increase the gutter margins or the inside margins needed for binding of the final book. The other margins would remain 2cm.

How to Change the Page Orientation

Suppose you want to publish on a landscape page orientation. The default is portrait, so you need to change it by using the size property. This will contain both the physical measurements and the orientation. In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, use:

```
@page {
    size: letter landscape;
}
```

How to Change the Page Settings for a Specific Element

Suppose your publication mainly uses a portrait page orientation, but there are some topics that have wide images. To avoid having the images bleed outside of the page, you could use a wider page setting (landscape).

1. Mark the topic with an `@outputclass` attribute and give it a distinct value (for example, **wide**), you can set the attribute on the root element of the topic or on the `<topicref>` element from the map.

   Note:
   The `@outputclass` values from the `<topicref>` automatically propagate to the root of the topic from the merged map *(on page 1195)*.

2. In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, match the output class and associate it with a named page. In the following example, the page has a landscape orientation and small margins. This technique works for any element (e.g. a table or list) not just for a topic.

   ```
   @page wide-page {
       size: letter landscape;
       margin: 0.5in;
   }

   *[outputclass = 'wide'] {
       page: wide-page !important;
   }
   ```

   Note:
   The `!important` rule is necessary to override the default page settings.

Page Headers and Footers

The page headers and footers use string sets defined for publication, part, chapter, and section titles. These string-sets are defined in the numbering CSS *(on page 1269)*:

maptitle

Set to the current map title (on both DITA maps and bookmaps).

parttitle

Set to the current part number and title, prefixed with " | " (only for DITA bookmaps that use parts).

parttitle-no-prefix

Set to the current part number and title (only for DITA bookmaps that use parts).

chaptertitle

Set to the current chapter number and title, prefixed with " | " (on both Shallow and Deep numbering).

chaptertitle-no-prefix

Set to the current chapter number and title (on both Shallow and Deep numbering).

chaptertitle-only

Set to the current chapter title (on both Shallow and Deep numbering).

sectiontitle

Set to the current section number and title, prefixed with " | " (Deep numbering only).

To see where the default page rules are defined, see: Default Page Definitions *(on page 1201)*.

Important:
The `string-set` CSS property is not additive. Matching the same elements will end up breaking the current definitions. A very common use-case is to change one of the "`chaptertitle`" string-sets defined in the default CSS (see How to Change the Header Separators *(on page 1213)*). In this case, the best approach is to copy the default rules into your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, then alter the property definition by adding your definition to the existing ones or changing the value of the existing ones (without removing them).

Related Information:
Numbering *(on page 1269)*

Page Headers and Footers - Built-in CSS

The headers and footers are part of the page definitions. To see how the default page layouts are defined, see: Default Page Definitions *(on page 1201)*.

How to Change the Size of Headers and Footers

This is directly related to the page margins and size.

The headers and footers are placed in the so-called page margin boxes, a series of rectangular areas residing in the page margins.

To affect the margins of all page definitions, you may use the following rule:

```
@page {
 margin-top:3cm !important;
 margin-bottom:3cm !important;
 margin-left:2cm !important;
 margin-right:2cm !important;
}
```

If you want to affect only a specific page, like the first page from chapters for instance, you must use more specific page selectors. See the Default Page Definitions *(on page 1201)* for details.

Note that the page margin boxes fill the entire page margin. This means the `margin-top`, for example, dictates the height of the `@top-left-corner`, `@top-left`, `@top-center`, `@top-right`, `@top-right-corner` margin boxes. These cannot have margins on themselves, so to change the position of the content inside them, you must use `padding` properties:

```
@page {
 @top-left {
  content:"..."
  padding: 1cm;
 }
 ..
}
```

How to Change the Font of the Headers and Footers

To change the font for all the headers and footers, in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add a CSS rule similar to this:

```
@page {
    font-size: 12pt;
    font-family: "Arial";
}
```

Important:
These settings apply to all page margin boxes, but not to the text inside the page.

If you want to change the settings only for a specific page type (for example, the table of contents), use the name of the page:

```
@page table-of-contents {
    font-size: 12pt;
    font-family: "Arial";
}
```

Related Information:

How to Change TOC Header *(on page 1285)*

How to Display Chapter's Headers on First Page

By default, the header is not displayed on the first page of each chapter:

```
/* No headers on the chapter first page. */
@page chapter:first:left{
  @top-left {
    content: none;
  }
}
@page chapter:first:right{
  @top-right {
    content: none;
  }
}
```

If you want to display them on the first page, you just need to override the above default rules with the following default content:

```
@page chapter:first:left{
  @top-left {
    content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
  }
}
@page chapter:first:right{
  @top-right {
    content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
  }
}
```

Tip:

It is also possible to import the `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-optional-pages-and-headers.css` stylesheet into your custom CSS.

How to Position Text in the Headers and Footers

By default, the name of the publication and chapter titles are placed in the `top-left` or `top-right` page margin boxes:

```
@page :left {
  @top-left {
    content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
  }
}

@page :right{
  @top-right {
    content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
  }
}
```

If you want to change this, you should use the `content` CSS properties of other page margin boxes, and inhibit the ones in the above content. For example, to set the chapter title in the page top left corner, you can use:

```
@page :left {
  @top-left {
    content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
  }
  @top-left-corner {
    content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
    white-space: nowrap;
    text-align:left;
  }
}

@page :right{
  @top-right {
    content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
  }
  @top-right-corner {
    content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
    white-space: nowrap;
    text-align:right;
  }
}
```

Note:
The corner page margin boxes are fixed and limited as the available space. Above, the `text-align` and `white-space` properties are used to make the text bleed out of these boxes towards the center of the page. If you plan to add an image or artwork background, you should consider using the technique described in: How to Decorate the Header by Using a Background Image on the Entire Page *(on page 1218)*.

How to Change the Header Separators

There are some `strings` defined for parts, chapters, and sections. Each of these strings start with the " | " character as a separator. For example, in the header of a page, you may find a sequence of strings:

```
My Publication | Introduction | Getting Started
```

- "My Publication" is the value of the `maptitle` string.
- "Introduction" is the value of the `chaptertitle` string.
- "Getting Started" is the value of the `sectiontitle` string.

There might be cases where you want to change this separator. You will need to recompose the header content using the above string sets. Suppose you want to use " - " as the prefix separator. In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following CSS rule:

```
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-part] > *[class ~= "topic/title"] {
    string-set: parttitle " - " counter(part, upper-roman) " - " content(),
    parttitle-no-prefix " " counter(part, upper-roman) " - " content(),
    chaptertitle "",
    chaptertitle-no-prefix "",
    chaptertitle-only ""; /* Avoid propagating a past chapter title on a new part */
}
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) > *[class ~= "topic/title"] {
  string-set: chaptertitle " - " counter(chapter) " - " content(),
  chaptertitle-no-prefix " " counter(chapter) " - " content(),
  chaptertitle-only " " content();
}
```

If you enabled the deep numbering for chapters and subsections *(on page 1274)*, then use:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep'] *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-part] > *[class ~= "topic/title"] {
  string-set: parttitle " - " counter(part, upper-roman) " - " content(),
  parttitle-no-prefix " " counter(part, upper-roman) " - " content(),
  chaptertitle "",
  chaptertitle-no-prefix "",
  chaptertitle-only ""; /* Avoid propagating a past chapter title on a new part */
}
```

```
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep'] *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) > *[class ~= "topic/title"]
 {
  string-set: chaptertitle " - " counters(chapter-and-sections, ".") " - " content(),
  chaptertitle-no-prefix " " counters(chapter-and-sections, ".") " - " content(),
  chaptertitle-only " " content(),
  sectiontitle ""; /* Avoid propagating a past section title on a new chapter */
}
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep'] *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) > *[class ~= "topic/topic"]
 > *[class ~= "topic/title"] {
  string-set: sectiontitle " - " counters(chapter-and-sections, ".") " - " content();
}
```

Note:
Always keep in mind that the `string-set` property is not additive (like the majority of CSS properties) so defining new string-sets using the same selector will override the default values.

How to Simplify the Header (Keep Only the Chapter Title)

The headers display information such as *map title*, *part title*, *chapter title*, and *section title*, ending in the page number.

```
content: string(maptitle) string(parttitle) string(chaptertitle) string(sectiontitle) " | " counter(page);
```

This might be too much if you have long titles. The solution is to override the default header content.

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following CSS rule:

```
@page :left {
    @top-left {
        content: string(chaptertitle) " | " counter(page);
    }
}
@page :right{
    @top-right {
        content: string(chaptertitle) " | " counter(page);
    }
}
```

Important:
Some of the CSS default page rules are more important. If you see that the content does not change:

- Try to also specify the name of the page, to increase the specificity of the rules:

```
@page :left, table-of-contents:left, chapter:left{
  ...
```

```
}
@page :right, table-of-contents:right, chapter:right{
  ...
}
```

- Add an `!important` classifier just before the semi-colon.

```
@top-right {
    content: string(chaptertitle) " | " counter(page) !important;
}
```

How to Style a Part of the Text from the Header

If you need to style a fragment of text (for example, a company slogan) with certain colors or font styles, you have several options:

- Use an SVG image as the background for a page margin box or for the entire page. See: How to Add a Background Image to the Header *(on page 1216)*.
- Use two adjacent page margin boxes, and style them differently:

```
@page {
  @top-center {
    content: "First part";
    color: red;
    text-align:right;
  }
  @top-left {
    content: "- Second part";
    color: blue;
    text-align:left;
  }
}
```

- Use the `oxy_label` constructor. This is a function that creates a text label with a set of styles.

```
@page {
  @top-right {
    content: oxy_label(text, "My Company", styles, "color:red; font-size: larger;")
             ' '
             oxy_label(text, "Product", styles, "color:blue; text-decoration:underline;");
  }
}
```

Notes:

- These functions only work with the Chemistry CSS processor.
- You can combine the `oxy_label` with `oxy_xpath`, to extract and style a piece of text from the document:

```
content: oxy_label(text, oxy_xpath("/some/xpath"), styles, "color:blue; "));
```

- You cannot use `string()` inside an `oxy_label()`. As a workaround, define general styles for the page margin box to affect the dynamic text from `string()` and use `oxy_label` to style the static text differently.

```
@page {
  @top-right {
    color: red;
    content: oxy_label(text, "My Company", styles, "color:black")
             ' '
             string(chaptertitle); /* This inherits the styling from @top-right*/
  }
}
```

How to Add a Background Image to the Header

Using Raster or Vector Images

A common use-case is to add a company or a product logo to one of the page corners.

Important:
Always specify a `content` property. If not, the page margin box will not be generated.

```
@page {
  @bottom-left-corner {
    content: " ";
    background-image: url('https://www.oxygenxml.com/img/resources/oxygen190x62.png');
    background-repeat: no-repeat;
    background-position: 50% 50%;
    background-size: 90%;
  }
}
```

Another use-case is to use the `@top-left` or `@top-right` page margin boxes. These boxes have an automatic layout and they can be very small if they have no content. If there is no text to be placed over the image, use a series of non-breaking spaces (`\A0`) to increase the box width as in the following example (alternatively, you can use the technique described in How to Decorate the Header by Using a Background Image on the Entire Page *(on page 1218)*):

```
@page :left {
  @top-left{
      content: '\A0\A0\A0\A0\A0\A0\A0\A0\A0\A0';
      background-image: url('https://www.oxygenxml.com/resellers/resources/OxygenXMLEditor_icon.svg');
      background-repeat:no-repeat;
      background-position:50% 50%;
  }
}
```

Note:
You can use raster image formats (such as PNG or JPEG), but it is best to use vector images (such as SVG or PDF). They scale very well and produce better results when printed. In addition, the text from these images is searchable and can be selected (if the glyphs have not been converted to shapes) in the PDF viewer.

Using SVG Templates

Additional requirements may present the need to insert dynamic content (such as version or date). To achieve this, you can use SVG Templates (for example, if you need to display the last version in a `<bookmap>`):

```
<bookmap id="taskbook">
    ...
    <bookmeta>
        ...
        <prodinfo>
            <vrmlist>
                <vrm version="1.0"/>
                <vrm version="1.1"/>
            </vrmlist>
        </prodinfo>
        ...
    </bookmeta>
    ...
</bookmap>
```

1. Locate the node you want to extract in the `merged.html` file:

```
<div class="- front-page/front-page front-page">
  <div class="- map/topicmeta bookmap/bookmeta topicmeta bookmeta">
    ...
    <div class="- topic/prodinfo prodinfo">
      <div class="- topic/prodname prodname">Product tasks</div>
      <div class="- topic/vrmlist vrmlist">
        <div version="1.0" class="- topic/vrm vrm"></div>
```

```
        <div version="1.1" class="- topic/vrm vrm"></div>
      </div>
    </div>
    ...
  </div>
</div>
```

2. Create the template that will be set as footer (`footer.template.svg` in our example):

```
<svg xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg" width="1in" height="1in">
  <text x="0.10in" y="0.70in">Version:
    ${//*[contains(@class, 'bookmap/bookmeta')]
    //*[contains(@class, 'topic/vrmlist')]
    /*[contains(@class, 'topic/vrm')][last()]/@version}</text>
</svg>
```

3. Reference the template in your CSS customization:

```
@page {
  @bottom-left-corner {
    content: " ";
    background-image: url("footer.template.svg");
    background-repeat: no-repeat;
    background-position: 0;
  }
}
```

4. After the transformation processes, you will get **Version: 1.1** in the footer.

Related Information:

Images and Figures *(on page 1352)*
How to Add a Background Image for the Cover *(on page 1237)*
How to Add a Link in Headers and Footers *(on page 1224)*
How to Use XPath Expressions in CSS *(on page 1199)*

How to Decorate the Header by Using a Background Image on the Entire Page

If you want to precisely position artwork and the page margin boxes are not sufficient, it is possible to use a background image for the entire page.

This technique consists of creating an image (SVG is the best since it is a vector image) as wide as the page that would contain the logo and placing other decorations at the desired locations. This offers the best results and the position of the artwork does not depend on the page margin contents.

Example:

```
@page :left, chapter:left, chapter:first:left {
  background-image: url('img/page_background_image_with_logos_and_artwork_for_left_page.svg');
  background-repeat: no-repeat;
  background-position: 50% 50%;
  background-size: 8.5in 11in; /* Optional: Adapt to your page size. */
}
```

For a list of all the possible page names, see: Default Page Definitions *(on page 1201)*.

Related Information:

How to Add a Background Image for the Cover *(on page 1237)*

How to Change Header Text for Each Topic

It is possible to dynamically change the header depending on the content in a topic. The following example assumes that the data to be presented in the header is located in the metadata section of each topic. One way is to specify it in the DITA map is by using the `<topicmeta>` element for the `<topicref>` topic reference:

```
...
 <topicref href="topics/installing.dita">
    <topicmeta>
      <data name="header-data" value="ID778-3211"/>
    </topicmeta>
    ...
```

In the above example, there is set of key value pairs with the name `header-data`. This information is automatically copied into the content in the merged map file *(on page 1195)*, like this:

```
<topic ... >
    <title class="- topic/title ">Installing</title>
    <shortdesc class="- topic/shortdesc ">You install components to make them available for your
      solution.</shortdesc>
    <prolog class="- topic/prolog ">
      ...
      <data class="- topic/data " name="header-data" value="ID778-3211"/>
      ...
```

This information can be extracted from the CSS:

```
/* Define the string set variable that contains the text extracted from the data element */
*[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/data"][name="header-data"] {
  string-set: hdrstr attr(value);
}

/* Using the value='none' stops applying the image. */
*[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/data"][name="header-data"][value="none"] {
```

```
  string-set: hdrstr "";
}

/* Use the string set variable in one of the page margin boxes. */
@page chapter {
  @top-left-corner {
    content: string(hdrstr);
  }
}
```

Notes:

The string set is applied to all pages that follow the data element, until another data element changes it:

```
...
 <topicref href="topics/installing.dita">
    <topicmeta>
      <data name="header-data" value="ID778-3211"/>
    </topicmeta>
 </topicref>
 <topicref href="..."> <!-- Uses the same value -->
 <topicref href="..."> <!-- Uses the same value -->
 <topicref href="..."> <!-- Uses the same value -->
 <topicref href="topics/change.dita">
    <topicmeta>
      <data name="header-data" value="ID990-3200"/>
    </topicmeta>
 </topicref>
 <topicref href="..."> <!-- The string set is changed now -->
 <topicref href="..."> <!-- The string set is changed now -->
 <topicref href="..."> <!-- The string set is changed now -->
```

To clear the text, use the `none` value:

```
...
     <topicref href="..."> <!-- The string set is void now -->


...
```

How to Change Header Images for Each Chapter

It is possible to dynamically change an image in the header depending on the chapter. For this, you need to define an image reference in the metadata section of each chapter. One way is to specify it in the DITA map by using the `<topicmeta>` element for the `<chapter>` topic reference:

```
...
 <chapter href="topics/installing.dita">
    <topicmeta>
      <data name="header-image" value="img/installing.png"/>
    </topicmeta>
    ...
```

In the above example, there is set of key value pairs with the name `header-image`. The `img/installing.png` is an image reference relative to the DITA map URI. This information is automatically copied into the content in the merged map file *(on page 1195)*, like this:

```
<topic is-chapter="true" ... >
    <title class="- topic/title ">Installing</title>
    <shortdesc class="- topic/shortdesc ">You install components to make them available for your
      solution.</shortdesc>
    <prolog class="- topic/prolog ">
      ...
      <data class="- topic/data " name="header-image" value="img/installing.png"/>
      ...
```

This information can be picked up from CSS:

```
/* Define the string set variable that contains an URL */
*[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/data"][name="header-image"] {
  string-set: imgst oxy_url(oxy_xpath('/*/@xtrf'), attr(value));
}

/* Using the value='none' stops applying the image. */
*[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/data"][name="header-image"][value="none"] {
  string-set: imgst "";
}

/* Use the string set variable in one of the page margin boxes. */
@page chapter {
  @top-left-corner {
    content: string(imgst);
    font-size:0; /* remove the font ascent and descent */
  }
}
```

Details: The `@value` attribute is used to build a URL relative to the URI of the DITA map. To determine the base URI of the DITA map, the `@xtrf` attribute was used from the root element of the merged map document, extracted using the `oxy_xpath` function.

Notes:

- The image is always aligned vertically to the middle of available space from the page margin box.
- Make sure you use an image of the correct size. For example, if you want to place the image in the top-left corner of the page, assuming the top and left page margins are 1 in, then make sure the image is a square having a size of 1 in.
- The image is applied to all pages that follow the data element, until another data element changes it:

```
...
<chapter href="topics/installing.dita">
   <topicmeta>
     <data name="header-image" value="img/installing.png"/>
   </topicmeta>
</chapter>
<chapter href="..."> <!-- Uses the same installing.png image -->
<chapter href="..."> <!-- Uses the same installing.png image -->
<chapter href="..."> <!-- Uses the same installing.png image -->
<chapter href="topics/change.dita">
   <topicmeta>
     <data name="header-image" value="img/change.png"/>
   </topicmeta>
</chapter>
<chapter href="..."> <!-- Uses the same change.png image -->
<chapter href="..."> <!-- Uses the same change.png image -->
<chapter href="..."> <!-- Uses the same change.png image -->
```

To clear the image, use the `none` value:

```
...
     <data name="header-image" value="none"/>
...
```

How to Add a Multi-line Copyright Notice to the Footer

Suppose you want to add a footer with the following two lines of text at the end of each page that is shown on the right side:

```
© 2017 - My Company Ltd
All rights reserved
```

For this, you need to specify a rule that matches all the right pages and adds that content in the `bottom-center`. In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following CSS rule:

```
@page :right{
    @bottom-center {
        content: "© 2017 - My Company Ltd \A All rights reserved";
        font-size: 0.5em;
        color: silver;
    }
}
```

Note:
Other page rules (such as the *table-of-contents*) override the contents of the `@bottom-center` because they are more specific. If you need to also print the copyright in the TOC pages, then use this as the selector:

```
@page :right, table-of-contents:right {
  ...
}
```

Note:
To use new lines (`\n` characters) in your headers or footers, use the `\A` notation, as in the example above.

How to Add a Group of Topics to the Footer

To create a footer that contains the content of several topic files, but only on the last page, there are two possible approaches:

Method 1: Using the position:fixed CSS Property

1. Group all the footer topics under a single parent topic, under the last topic from your DITA map. For example, you can have the following map structure:

   ```
   ...
   End topic
      Footer container topic
         Footer content topic 1
         Footer content topic 2
   ```

2. Add an `@outputclass=footer` on the `<topic>` root element of the footer container topic, or on its `<topicref>` in the map.
3. Use the CSS `position: fixed` property to position this topic to the bottom of the page:

```
*[outputclass ~= "footer"] {
  position: fixed;

  bottom: 0.5in;
  left: 0.5in;

  width:5in;
  height:200pt;
}
```

Note:
Make sure the width and height are enough for the content of the footer to fit. Be careful because the content might bleed out of the page. Use bottom and left values to position the block in the page.

Method 2: Using the float:footnote CSS Property

The second approach would be to declare the footer block as a footnote. Assuming the same DITA Map structure as above, you can use the following CSS fragment:

```
*[outputclass ~= "footer"] {
  float:footnote;
}

*[outputclass ~= "footer"]:footnote-call{
  color:transparent;
  font-size:0;
}

*[outputclass ~= "footer"]:footnote-marker{
  color:transparent;
  font-size:0;
}
```

Note:
Use transparent colors and/or zero size font to avoid the display of the footnote counters.

How to Add a Link in Headers and Footers

Method 1: Using an SVG Link Attribute

It is possible to add a link inside the document header (or footer) by using the `<a>` element inside an SVG document. For example, suppose you have the following SVG document named *custom.svg*:

```
<svg width="180" height="20" viewBox="0 0 180 20" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg"
  xmlns:xlink="http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink">
    <a xlink:href="https://www.oxygenxml.com/chemistry-html-to-pdf-converter.html">
        <rect x="0" y="0" width="180" height="20" opacity="0"/>
        <text x="5" y="15" fill="blue">Oxygen PDF Chemistry</text>
    </a>
</svg>
```

This creates an SVG link with **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** displayed as its text (the content of the `<text>` element).

Note:
If you just want to add a link without text, you can define a rectangle that contains the link instead of text.

To display the link, you just need to set your SVG file as the content of one of the page margin boxes:

```
@page {
  @top-left {
    content: url("custom.svg");
  }
}
```

Method 2: Using the CSS *-oxy-link* Property

It is also possible to add a link inside the document header (or footer) by using the `-oxy-link` property on the `@page` margin box declaration. The entire page margin box will behave as a link and will be clickable.

```
@page {
  @top-left {
    content: "Link";
    -oxy-link: "https://www.oxygenxml.com/";
    color:blue;
  }
}
```

How to Change the Header Styling Depending on Page Side

To modify the styling of the default page headers, add the following CSS rule in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
@page :left {
    @top-left {
        color:navy;
        font-style:italic;
    }
    @top-right {
```

```
        color:red;
    }
}
```

If you intend to modify **just the headers of the table of contents**, use the `table-of-contents` page rule selector:

```
@page table-of-contents:left {
    @top-left {
        color:navy;
        font-style:italic;
    }
    @top-right {
        color:red;
    }
}
```

How to Use XPath Computed Data or Images in the Header or Footer

A very simple approach is to use the `oxy_xpath` directly in the `content` property:

```
@page front-page {
     @top-center {
          content: "Created: " oxy_xpath('//*[contains(@class, " topic/created "][1]');
     }
}
```

Example 1: Compute the Number of Words

The following example computes the number of words from the publication. It counts all the words, including the ones from the TOC, but does not take the static labels into account:

```
@page front-page {
     @bottom-center {
          content: "Number of words: "
                    oxy_xpath("string-length(normalize-space(/)) - \
                              string-length(translate(normalize-space(/),' ','')) +1");
     }
}
```

Note:
The XPath expression from the page rules is evaluated in the context of the document root element, so you will need to use absolute expressions starting with `/` or `//`. This is different from the case when the `oxy_xpath` is used in CSS rules that match an element. In this case, the XPath expressions are evaluated in the context of the matched element and you can use relative paths.

Tip:
XPath 2.0 is supported (not schema aware).

Example 2: Retrieve Image from a Document and Insert it in the Header

Another example is to use an image from the document in the publication header:

```
<bookmeta>
  <metadata>
   ...
    <data name="cover">
        <image href="product-cover.png" outputclass="cover-image"/>
    </data>
   ...
  </metadata>
</bookmeta>
```

```
@page {
   @top-center {
        content: url("oxy_xpath('//*[contains(@outputclass, "cover-image")]/@href')");
   }
}
```

If the URL returned by `oxy_xpath` is not absolute, it is considered to be relative to the CSS file. To obtain an absolute URL from one relative to the XML document, you can use in the XPath expression functions like `resolve-uri` and `document-uri`:

```
@page {
   @top-center {
        content: url(oxy_xpath("resolve-uri(//*[contains(@outputclass, 'cover-image')]/@href), document-uri(/))"));
   }
}
```

Example 3: Insert the Current Date in the Footer

Another example is to use the `oxy_xpath` function to compute the current date and insert it in the publication footer:

```
@page {
    @bottom-left {
        content: oxy_xpath('current-date()');
    }
}
```

Example 4: Picking up Metadata from the Original Map

Another example is to use the `oxy_xpath` function to extract the title, or any other element text value from the original processed DITA map file. For this, you can use the `@xtrf` attribute that is set on the root element of the merged map. This attribute contains the URL of the input map.

```
:root{
        string-set: maptitle oxy_xpath('document(@xtrf)/*[contains(@class, " map/map ")]/*[contains(@class, " topic/title
 ")]/text()');
}
```

Related Information:

Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide: Headers and Footers

http://zvon.org/xxl/XPathTutorial/General/examples.html

Oxygen User Guide: oxy_xpath() Function

How to Add a Line Under the Header

There are two ways to add a horizontal line under the header.

Method 1: Add a Border in the Page Margin Boxes

To add a horizontal line that would stretch across the width of the page, add a bottom border to each of the 5 margin boxes in the top side of the page (`top-left-corner`, `top-left`, `top-center`, `top-right`, `top-right-corner`).

If you consider that the space between the header and the bottom border is too large, you could also change the alignment by adding a `vertical-align: bottom;` declaration in the page margin boxes.

For example, if you need to set some text as a header in the top-left margin box and insert a horizontal line under it, the customization CSS would look something like this:

```
@page chapter, chapter:first:left:right, front-page{


   padding-top: 1em;


  @top-left {
    content: "Custom header";
    color: gray;
    border-bottom: 1px solid black;
    vertical-align: bottom;
  }


  @top-center{
    content:" ";
    border-bottom: 1px solid black;
    vertical-align: bottom;
```

```
}


@top-right{
  content:" ";
  border-bottom: 1px solid black;
  vertical-align: bottom;
}


@top-right-corner{
  content:" ";
  border-bottom: 1px solid black;
  vertical-align: bottom;
}


@top-left-corner{
  content:" ";
  border-bottom: 1px solid black;
  vertical-align: bottom;
}
```

Note:

The `padding-top: 1em;` is used to avoid the border at the bottom of the header that joins with the page content.

Method 2: Use a Background Image

An alternative method is to add a horizontal line/border under an existing header (or in any other part of the page) using an SVG image, as described in How to Add a Background Image to the Header *(on page 1216)*.

How to Change the Headings Using a Parameter

Suppose you need to change the headings of your publication by specifying a static text in a parameter.

First, establish a name for your parameter (it must start with the `args.css.param.` prefix). For example, you could name it `args.css.param.heading.text`. It will have the text value that you will pass when starting the transformation. This parameter does not have to be registered anywhere as it will be automatically recognized and passed as an XML attribute on the root of the merged file, as specified in Styling Through Custom Parameters *(on page 1384)*.

Next, alter your customization CSS to make use of the parameter value. In the example below, the text is placed in the central part of the header:

```
@page front-page, table-of-contents, chapter {
   @top-center{
```

```
        content: oxy_xpath("/*/@heading.text");
    }
}
```

Note:
You can use any XPath 2.0 here. It will be executed in the context of the merged map document, so you can collect data from it. You can use *if/then/else* expressions if your parameter is a switch.

The text does not affect the first pages from the page sequences because the built-in CSS page rules *(on page 1201)* clear the content from the headers. If you need the text content on all pages, you might consider adding an `!important` keyword after the `content` property value, or increase the specificity of the page selectors, like this:

```
@page front-page,
      table-of-contents,
      table-of-contents:first:left,
      table-of-contents:first:right,
      chapter:first:left,
      chapter:first:right{
    @top-center{
        ...
    }
}
```

Another use case is to alter the string-sets that are used in the headers (not the headers directly), as it is explained here: How to Use XPath Computed Data or Images in the Header or Footer *(on page 1226)*. You can use this technique to alter the chapter titles as in the following example:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering^='deep']
   *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) >
        *[class ~= "topic/title"] {
    string-set:
            chaptertitle " | " counters(chapter-and-sections, "." ) " - " oxy_xpath("/*/@heading.text") content(),
            sectiontitle "";
}
```

Note:
This is a rule copied from `p-numbering-deep.css` and it may change if future versions.

How to Change the Headings depending on the Language

Example 1: Adjust the headings according to the publication's language

It is possible to customize the text displayed in the headings depending on the language of the publication (set by the `@xml:lang` attribute on the main Dita map).

For instance, you can display the page counter at the bottom of each page, prefixed by the word 'Page' in the selected language:

```
@page chapter {
  @bottom-center {
    content: oxy_xpath("if (@lang='es') then  'Página' \
                       else if (@lang='it') then 'Pagina' \
                       else 'Page'") " " counter(page);
  }
}
```

Note:
Backslashes (\) are used to split the XPath into multiple lines to make it easier to read.

Example 2: Adjust the headings according to each topic language

It is possible to customize the heading text depending on the language of each topic as well (using the `@xml:lang` attribute).

For example, you can display the language code in the top-right corner of each page, according to each topic language:

```
*[class ~= "topic/topic"] {
  string-set: lang oxy_xpath("if (@lang) then upper-case(@lang) else 'EN'");
}


@page chapter {
  @top-right-corner {
    color: orange;
    content: string(lang);
  }
}
```

How to Display the Chapter and the Page Number in the Footer

It is possible to display the chapter number along with the page number in the footer of each page. For example, a CC-PP (using a 2-digits numbering) display can be done using the following CSS rules:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-part] {
  string-set: chapternumber "";
```

```
}
*[class ~= "map/map"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) {
  string-set: chapternumber counter(chapter, decimal-leading-zero);
}
*[class ~= "map/map"] *[class ~= "bookmap/frontmatter"]
*[class ~= "map/map"] *[class ~= "bookmap/backmatter"]
*[class ~= "map/map"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-part] ~ *[class ~= "topic/topic"]:not([is-part]) {
  string-set: chapternumber "";
}
...
@page chapter {
  @bottom-center {
    content: string(chapternumber) "-" counter(page, decimal-leading-zero);
  }
}
```

Page Breaks

The page breaks can be controlled in multiple ways:

- By creating an `@page` and assigning it to an element. This will create a page break between this element and the sibling elements that have a different page.
- By using the CSS properties: `break-before`, `break-after`, or `break-avoid`.
- In your DITA topic, by setting the `@outputclass` attribute on the topic root (or any element) to contain one of the `break-before`, `break-after`, or `break-avoid` values. If you want to control the page breaking from the DITA map, use the `@outputclass` attribute on the `<topicref>`, with any of the values mentioned above.

Related Information:

Double Side Pagination *(on page 1295)*

Oxygen PDF Chemistry: Controlling Page Breaks

Page Breaks - Built-in CSS

Page break properties are used in: `[PLUGIN_DIR]css/print/p-page-breaks.css`.

How to Avoid Page Breaks in Lists and Tables

To avoid splitting elements over two pages, you can use the `break-inside` CSS property. For example, if you want to impose this on tables and lists, then add the following rules to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "topic/table"] {
    break-inside:avoid;
}
```

```
*[class ~= "topic/ol"] {
    break-inside:avoid;
}
*[class ~= "topic/ul"] {
    break-inside:avoid;
}
```

Note:
Since the task steps are inherited from `topic/ol`, they will also not be split over two separate pages. However, if you want to allow this, add the following CSS rule:

```
*[class ~= "task/steps"] {
    break-inside:auto;
}
```

Note:
Another way to do this is to mark the element with an `@outputclass` set to `break-avoid`.

How to Force a Page Break Before or After a Topic or Another Element

If you want to force a page break **before all** the second-level topics (for example, sections in chapters that are usually kept flowing one after another without page breaks), add the following in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"] > *[class ~= "topic/topic"] > *[class ~= "topic/topic"] {
  break-before:always;
}
```

If you need to break at third or fourth level topics, add more `.. > *[class ~= "topic/topic"]` selectors to the expression.

If you want to force a page break **for a specific topic**, mark the topic (or any other element you need to control page breaking for) with an `@outputclass` attribute set to one of these values:

break-before

Use this for a page break before the marked element.

break-after

Use this for a page break after the marked element.

break-avoid

Use this to avoid page breaks inside the marked element.

For example, to force a page break before a certain topic, use:

```
<topic outputclass="break-before" ... >
```

Note:
You can set the output class on the `<topicref>` element from the DITA map instead of the `<topic>` element. In this way you can reuse the topic in another context where the page breaking is not necessary.

You can also control page breaking for lists, paragraphs, or any other block type elements. The following example avoids page breaks inside an ordered list:

```
<ol outputclass="break-avoid" ... >
```

How to Add a Blank Page After a Topic

If you want to add a new blank page after a topic, add the following rules to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*.

Style the separating blank page:

```
@page topic-separating-page{
   @top-left {
     content: "";
   }
   @top-right {
     content: "";
   }
   @top-center {
      content: "This page is blank";
   }
}
```

Associate this page to the `:after` pseudo-element of the topic:

```
*[class~="topic/topic"][outputclass~="add-separator-page"]:after {
 content: " ";
 display: block;
 page: topic-separating-page;
}
```

In the XML content, on the `<topic>` element, set the `@outputclass` to the `add-separator-page` value.

```
<topic outputclass="add-separator-page"> ... </topic>
```

The `:after` pseudo-element will be created next to the topic content and will be placed on the `topic-separating-page`.

Use the page margin box selectors to override the default content from the headers/footers.

Note:
You can set the output class on the `<topicref>` element from the DITA map instead of the `<topic>` element. This allows you to reuse the topic in another context where the page breaking is not necessary.

How to Enforce a Number of Lines from Paragraphs that Continue in Next Page

In typography, an *orphan* is the first line of a paragraph that appears alone at the bottom of a page (the paragraph continues on a subsequent page), while a *widow* is the last line of a paragraph that appears alone at the top of a page. The default is 2 for each of them. You can control this number by adding the following to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
:root {
    widows:4;
    orphans:4;
}
```

Note:
As a difference from the W3C standard, the `widows` and `orphans` CSS properties are applied to lists as well (the default is 2). This means that a list that spans consecutive pages will have either zero or at least 2 lines on each of the pages.

How to Avoid Page Breaks Between Top-Level Topics (Chapters)

If you plan to publish a simple map with just one level of topics (such as a list of topics), then the automated page breaks between these topics might not be desired.

In this case, you can use the following CSS snippet to disable the page breaks between chapters:

```
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter] {
  -oxy-page-group:auto;
}
```

Related Information:
Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide: Chapter Page Placement and Styling

Cover (Title) Page

Customizing the cover page is one of the most requested customization requests.

Cover Page - XML Fragment

The merged map file *(on page 1195)* contains the `<oxy:front-page>` element, as a child of the root element. This contains the metadata and an `<oxy:front-page-title>` element with the title structure.

```
<bookmap xmlns:ditaarch="http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/" ...>
  <oxy:front-page xmlns:oxy="http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author">
   <bookmeta xmlns:dita-ot="http://dita-ot.sourceforge.net/ns/201007/dita-ot"
            ...
   </bookmeta>
   <oxy:front-page-title>
    <booktitle xmlns:dita-ot="http://dita-ot.sourceforge.net/ns/201007/dita-ot"
       class="- topic/title bookmap/booktitle ">
       <booklibrary class="- topic/ph bookmap/booklibrary ">Retro Tools</booklibrary>
       <mainbooktitle class="- topic/ph bookmap/mainbooktitle ">Tasks</mainbooktitle>
       <booktitlealt class="- topic/ph bookmap/booktitlealt ">Product tasks</booktitlealt>
    </booktitle>
   </oxy:front-page-title>
</oxy:front-page>
```

For the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation type, the merged map is further processed resulting in a collection of HTML5 `<div>` elements. These elements preserve the original DITA `@class` attribute values and add a new value derived from the DITA element name.

```
<div class="- map/map bookmap/bookmap bookmap" ... >
   <div class=" front-page/front-page front-page">
      <div class="- map/topicmeta bookmap/bookmeta boometa">
        ...
      </div>
     <div class=" front-page/front-page-title front-page-title">
       <div class="- topic/title bookmap/booktitle booktitle">
         <div class="- topic/ph bookmap/booklibrary booklibrary">Retro Tools</div>
         <div class="- topic/ph bookmap/mainbooktitle mainbooktitle">Tasks</div>
         <div class="- topic/ph bookmap/booktitlealt booktitlealt">Product tasks</div>
      </div>
...
```

Cover Page - Built-in CSS rules

The element with the class `frontpage/frontpage` is associated with a page named *front-page* with no headers or footers. The front page title is styled with a bigger font. The built-in CSS rules are in `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-front-page.css`.

```
@media print {


    *[class~="front-page/front-page"] {
        page: front-page;
    }
```

```
    /* Prevents the front-page title margin collapsing */
    *[class~="front-page/front-page"]::before(1000) {
      display:block;
      content:"\A";
      font-size:0;
    }

    *[class~="front-page/front-page-title"] {
        display:block;
        text-align:center;
        margin-top:3in;
        font-size:2em;
        font-family:arial, helvetica, sans-serif;
        font-weight:bold;
    }

    @page front-page {
        @top-left-corner    {          content:none }
        @top-left           {          content:none }
        @top-center         {          content:none }
        @top-right          {          content:none }
        @top-right-corner   {          content:none }
        @bottom-left-corner {          content:none }
        @bottom-left        {          content:none }
        @bottom-center      {          content:none }
        @bottom-right       {          content:none }
        @bottom-right-corner{          content:none }
    }
}
```

Note:
This is listed solely for illustration purposes, as the plugin might use something different.

How to Add a Background Image for the Cover

The simplest way is to create an SVG image as large as the entire physical page and set it as the background for the *front-page*. This makes it easy to accomplish a good positioning of the graphical elements or artwork. In the foreground, you can place text fragments using a series of `:after` pseudo-elements bound to the front page title.

To set the size to an SVG image, you should specify the `@width` and `@height` attributes on the `<svg>` root element using specified unit values (in, cm, etc.) This should be enough only if all the coordinates from your drawing have unit identifiers.

If you are using unit-less coordinates in your drawing like the following:

```
<polygon points="17.78 826.21 577.51 ....
```

Next, make sure you also specify the `@viewBox` attribute on the `<svg>` root element that defines the abstract rectangle that contains the drawing:

```
<svg xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg" width="8.5in" height="11in" viewBox="0 0 600 850">
```

The following SVG document has the `@width`, `@height`, and `@viewBox` attributes. The width and height have physical units (in inches), while the view box and rectangle coordinates are unit-less.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE svg PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD SVG 1.1//EN"
       "http://www.w3.org/Graphics/SVG/1.1/DTD/svg11.dtd">
<svg xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg" width="8.5in" height="11in" viewBox="0 0 110 110">
  <desc>A gradient as big as a page.</desc>
  <defs>
    <linearGradient id="lc"
      x1="0%" y1="0%"
      x2="0%" y2="100%"
      spreadMethod="pad">
      <stop offset="0%"   stop-color="#00DD00" stop-opacity="1"/>
      <stop offset="100%" stop-color="#00AA00" stop-opacity="1"/>
    </linearGradient>
  </defs>
  <rect x="5" y="5" width="100" height="100" rx="10" ry="10"
    style="fill:url(#lc);
    stroke: #005000;
    stroke-width: 3;"/>
  <text x="33%" y="50%"  color="#FFFFAA"> Sample </text>
</svg>
```

This example shows a gradient. It is the size of a US-LETTER page and can be used in a publication using this page size.

Note:
You can use raster image formats (such as PNG or JPEG), but it is best to use vector images (such as SVG or PDF). They scale very well and produce better results when printed. In addition, the text from these images is searchable and can be selected (if the glyphs have not been converted to shapes) in the PDF viewer.

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following:

```
@page front-page {
    background-image: url("us-letter.svg");
    background-position: center;
    background-repeat: no-repeat;
    background-size: 100% 100%;
}
```

For smaller artworks, you can use `background-position` with percentage values to position and center the artwork (for example, a company logo):

```
@page front-page {
    background-image:url("company-logo.svg");
    background-position:50% 5%; /* The first is the alignement on the X axis, the second on the Y axis.*/
    background-repeat:no-repeat;
}
```

Note:
The text from the SVG or PDF background images is searchable in the PDF reader.

How to Display the Background Cover Image Before the Title

It is possible to split the font-page display into two pages so that the background image appears on one page and the title on another. The solution is to define a new page for the main title:

```
@page front-page {
  @top-left { content: none; }
  @top-right { content: none; }
  @bottom-center { content: none; }

  background-image: url("us-letter.svg");
  background-position: center;
  background-repeat: no-repeat;
  background-size: 100% 100%;
}

@page main-title-page {
  @top-left { content: none; }
  @top-right { content: none; }
  @bottom-center { content: none; }
}

*[class ~= "front-page/front-page-title"]:before {
  display: block;
```

```
  content: "\2002";
  margin-bottom: 3in;
}

*[class ~= "front-page/front-page-title"] {
  page: main-title-page;
}
```

How to Use Different Background Cover Images Based on Bookmap or Map Information

It is common to use the same CSS file for customizing multiple publications, and you may need to set a different cover for each of them. The solution is to use an XPath expression to extract some information from the document, and based on that, select the SVG images.

```
@page front-page {
    background-image: url(oxy_xpath("\
        if(//*[contains(@class, ' topic/prodname ')][1] = 'gardening') then 'bg-gardening.svg' else\
        if(//*[contains(@class, ' topic/prodname ')][1] = 'soil') then 'bg-soil.svg'\
        else 'bg-default.svg'\
    "));
    background-position:center;
}
```

The backslash (****) is used to continue the expression string on the subsequent lines (there should be no spaces after it). For more use cases solved using XPath, see: Metadata *(on page 1253)*.

Related information

Oxygen PDF Chemistry: Graphics

How to Use SVG Templates for Creating Dynamic Cover Pages *(on page 1247)*

How to Change Styling of the Cover Page Title

Match the front page title element in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)* based on its class attribute:

```
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page-title" {
  margin-top: 1in;
  font-size: 3em;
}
```

Important:

Make sure the sum of the top and bottom margins and paddings for this element do not exceed the physical dimension of the page. If this happens, an extra blank page may appear before the cover page. Usually, it is enough to specify only the top margin.

How to Add Text to the Cover Page

If you need to add arbitrary text to the cover page, you can use the front page title element as an anchor and add as many blocks of text as you need after it, and style them differently.

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following:

```
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page-title"]:after(1) {
    display:block;
    content: "DRAFT VERSION";
    font-size: large;
    color: red;
    text-align:center;
}

*[class ~= "front-page/front-page-title"]:after(2) {
    display:block;
    content: "DO NOT DISTRIBUTE WITHOUT PERMISSION";
    font-size: large;
    color: red;
    text-align:center;
    font-style: italic;
}
```

The result is:

To use content from the document, you can use the `oxy_xpath` function in the `content` property. For a more complex example, including the generation of a new page for the synthetic `:after` elements, see: How to Show Metadata in the Cover Page *(on page 1258)*.

Related Information:

How to Show Metadata in the Cover Page *(on page 1258)*

How to Place Cover on the Right or Left Side

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following CSS rules:

```
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page"]{
  break-before:left;
}
```

Note:
This will create an empty page at the beginning of the publication, moving the cover content on the needed side.

For more information, see: Oxygen PDF Chemistry: Controlling Page Breaks.

Related Information:
Double Side Pagination *(on page 1295)*

How to Add a Second Cover Page and Back Cover Page

It is possible to add a second cover page after the front-page by defining another page-selector:

```
@page second-cover {
  @top-left {content: none;}
  @top-right {content: none;}
  @bottom-center {content: none;}

  background-image: url("second-cover.svg");
  background-position: center;
  background-repeat: no-repeat;
  background-size: 100% 100%;
}

*[class ~= 'front-page/front-page']:after{
  page: second-cover;
  break-after: always;
  display: block;
  content: "\2002";
}
```

If you want to add a back cover page, you should use an `:after` pseudo element on the map itself:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"]:after
```

and bind it to another `@page` declaration:

```
@page back-cover {
  @top-left {content: none;}
  @top-right {content: none;}
  @bottom-center {content: none;}

  background-image: url("back-cover.svg");
  background-position: center;
  background-repeat: no-repeat;
  background-size: 100% 100%;
}

*[class ~= "map/map"]:after {
  page: back-cover;
  content: "\2002";
}
```

Note:
For any `background-image`, it is recommended to use SVG instead of PNG (or JPG) because it scales it to the page size.

Tip:
To add multiple cover pages, use multiple-leveled pseudo selectors, such as `:after(1)`, `:after(2)`. Remember that the larger the value, the more distant the pseudo element is to the target element.

How to Dynamically Add a Second Cover Page

It is possible to dynamically set the path to the SVG image that will be displayed on the secondary cover page.

First, you need to declare a `<data>` element in the *bookmap's* metadata that contains the URL to your cover image:

```
<bookmap>
  <booktitle>
    ...
  </booktitle>
  <bookmeta>
    <metadata>
      <data name="second-cover-url" value="covers/second-cover.svg"/>
    </metadata>
  </bookmeta>
...
</bookmap>
```

Note:
This can also be done on a normal DITA map by using the `<topicmeta>` after the map's `<title>`.

Next, you need to modify the page declaration inside your CSS stylesheet and replace the `background-image` property value with the result of the `oxy_xpath()` function:

```
@page second-cover {
  ...
  background-image: url(oxy_xpath("//*[contains(@class, 'bookmap/bookmeta')]//*[contains(@class,
 'topic/data')][@name='second-cover-url']/@value"));
  ...
}
```

Tip:
You can reuse the same stylesheet on multiple maps. You just need to change the data value for each of them.

How to Add a Specific Number of Empty Pages After the Cover Page

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following CSS rules:

```
@page my-blank-page {
    /* Hide the page numbers */
    @top-left {content: none;}
    @top-right {content: none;}
}

*[class ~= 'front-page/front-page']:after(1){
    page:my-blank-page;
    display:block;
    content: '\2002';
    color:transparent;
    break-after:always;
}

*[class ~= 'front-page/front-page']:after(2){
    page:my-blank-page;
    display:block;
    content: '\2002';
    break-after:always;
}

*[class ~= 'front-page/front-page']:after(3){
```

```
    page:my-blank-page;
    display:block;
    content: '\2002';
    break-after:always;
}
```

Note:
The `\2002` character is a space that is not shown on the pages, but gives a value for the content property.

Related Information:
How to Force an Odd or Even Number of Pages in a Chapter *(on page 1297)*

How to Add a Copyright Page after the Map Cover (Not for Bookmaps)

Regular DITA maps do not have the concept of a copyright notice. This is available only in the DITA *bookmap* structure.

If you are constrained to using a regular map and you need to add a copyright page between the front cover and the TOC, use the following technique:

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, declare a new page layout:

```
@page copyright-notice-page {
  /* Clear the headers for the copyright page */
  @top-left {
    content: none;
  }
  @top-right {
    content: none;
  }
}
```

The element with the class `front-page/front-page` element contains the title of the publication and generates the cover page. A synthetic `:after` element is created that follows this element and it is placed on a different page.

```
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page"]:after {
  display: block;
  page: copyright-notice-page; /* Moves the synthetic element on a new page. */
  content: "Copyright 2018-2019 MyCorp Inc. \A All rights reserved";
  padding-top: 8in; /* Use padding to position the text in the page. */
  text-align: center;
```

```
  color: blue;
}
```

If you need to add more content as blocks, use the `:after(2)`, `:after(3)` pseudo-elements:

```
*[class~="front-page/front-page"]:after(2){
  display:block;
  page: copyright-notice-page;  /* Continue on the same page as the first ':after'. */
  content: "Some more styled text";
  color:red;
}
```

If you want to extract information from the document, use the `oxy_xpath()` function. For example, if the copyright info is stored in the map like this:

```
<map ...>
 <topicmeta>
   <copyright>
     <copyryear year="2018"/>
     <copyrholder>MyCorp Inc.</copyrholder>
   </copyright>
 </topicmeta>
...
```

then use this:

```
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page"]:after(3) {
  display: block;
  page: copyright-notice-page;
  content:
    "Year: "
      oxy_xpath('//*[contains(@class, " front-page/front-page ")]/*[contains(@class, " map/topicmeta ")]/*[contains(@class,
 " topic/copyright ")]/*[contains(@class, " topic/copyryear ")]/@year')
    "\A Holder: "
      oxy_xpath('//*[contains(@class, " front-page/front-page ")]/*[contains(@class, " map/topicmeta ")]/*[contains(@class,
 " topic/copyright ")]/*[contains(@class, " topic/copyrholder ")]/text()');
  color: green;
}
```

Related information

How to Debug XPath Expressions *(on page 1200)*

How to Remove the Cover Page and TOC

If you need to hide or remove the cover page, the table of contents or other structures, match the elements with a "`front-page/front-page`" and "`toc/toc`" classes in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= 'map/map'] > *[class ~= 'toc/toc'] {
    display:none !important;
}
*[class ~= 'map/map'] > *[class ~= 'front-page/front-page']{
    display:none !important;
}
*[class~='topic/topic'][is-chapter] {
    -oxy-page-group : auto;
}
```

How to Add a Cover in Single-Topic Publishing

It is possible to add a cover page before the topic when publishing a single-topic PDF (without a DITA map) using the DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS transformation scenario.

For example, to add a background image before the published topic, you need to create a new `@page` rule and add it in a block before the actual content of the document:

```
@page topic-cover {
  @top-left {content: none;}
  @top-right {content: none;}

  background-image: url("img/cover.svg");
  background-position: center;
  background-repeat: no-repeat;
  background-size: 100% 100%;
}

:root::before {
  page: topic-cover;
  display: block;
  content: "\2002";
  break-after: always;
}
```

How to Use SVG Templates for Creating Dynamic Cover Pages

It is possible to use XPath expressions inside SVG templates to insert dynamic text when creating PDF output using the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS scenario.

Using SVG Template as a Cover Page

A common use-case is when you want to create a custom cover page and this cover should display metadata information (i.e. the author, dates, and copyright information):

1. In the source `<bookmap>`, the various metadata elements are inserted inside the `<bookmeta>` element:

```
<bookmap id="taskbook">
    <booktitle>
        <booklibrary>Retro Tools</booklibrary>
        <mainbooktitle>Product tasks</mainbooktitle>
        <booktitlealt>Tasks and what they can do</booktitlealt>
    </booktitle>
    <bookmeta>
        <author>Howe Tuduit</author>
        <critdates>
            <created date="2015-01-01"/>
            <revised modified="2016-04-03"/>
            <revised modified="2016-03-05"/>
        </critdates>
        ...
        <bookrights>
            <copyrfirst>
                <year>2004</year>
            </copyrfirst>
            <copyrlast>
                <year>2007</year>
            </copyrlast>
            <bookowner>
                <organization>Retro Tools, Inc.</organization>
            </bookowner>
        </bookrights>
    </bookmeta>
    ...
```

2. The corresponding `merged.html` file will have the following content:

```
...
<div class="- front-page/front-page front-page">
  <div class="- map/topicmeta bookmap/bookmeta topicmeta bookmeta">
    <div class="- topic/author author">Howe Tuduit</div>
    <div class="- topic/critdates critdates">
      <div date="2015-01-01" class="- topic/created created"></div>
      <div modified="2016-04-03" class="- topic/revised revised"></div>
      <div modified="2016-03-05" class="- topic/revised revised"></div>
    </div>
    ...
    <div class="- topic/data bookmap/bookrights data bookrights">
      <div class="- topic/data bookmap/copyrfirst data copyrfirst">
```

```
        <div class="- topic/ph bookmap/year ph year">2004</div>
      </div>
      <div class="- topic/data bookmap/copyrlast data copyrlast">
        <div class="- topic/ph bookmap/year ph year">2007</div>
      </div>
      <div class="- topic/data bookmap/bookowner data bookowner">
        <div class="- topic/data bookmap/organization data organization">Retro Tools,
          Inc.</div>
      </div>
    </div>
  </div>
  <div class="- front-page/front-page-title front-page-title">
    <div class="- topic/title bookmap/booktitle title booktitle">
      <span class="- topic/ph bookmap/booklibrary ph booklibrary">Retro Tools</span>
      <span class="- topic/ph bookmap/mainbooktitle ph mainbooktitle">Product
        tasks</span>
      <span class="- topic/ph bookmap/booktitlealt ph booktitlealt">Tasks and what they
        can do</span>
    </div>
  </div>
</div>
...
```

3. The cover image (for example, named `cover.template.svg`) should display `<bookmeta>` node information (author, creation date, and copyright information) and the `<mainbooktitle>` will be displayed rotated.

```
<svg version="1.1" id="Layer_1" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg"
  xmlns:xlink="http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink" x="0px" y="0px"
  viewBox="0 0 610 790" style="enable-background:new 0 0 610 790;" xml:space="preserve">
<style type="text/css">
  .st0{fill:url(#SVGID_1_);}
  .st1{opacity:0.31;fill:#FFFFFF;enable-background:new    ;}
  .st2{fill:#FFFFFF;}
  .st3{fill:#F04C3E;}
  .st4{fill:none;stroke:#FFFFFF;stroke-width:0.3685;stroke-miterlimit:2.6131;}
  .st5{font-family:'Arial';}
  .st6{font-size:24.3422px;}
  .st7{font-size:10px;}
  .st8{font-size:63.3422px;font-weight:bold;}
  .st9{fill:#F04C3E;stroke:#000000;stroke-miterlimit:10;}
</style>
<linearGradient id="SVGID_1_" x1="305.6" y1="799.9393" x2="305.6" y2="8.9393"
  gradientUnits="userSpaceOnUse">
```

```
  <stop  offset="1.848748e-02" style="stop-color:#2F639F"/>
  <stop  offset="1" style="stop-color:#1C3E72"/>
</linearGradient>
<rect x="0.1" y="0.1" class="st0" width="611" height="791"/>
<path class="st1" d="M143.4,700.5l381.3-381.3c35.2-35.2,35.2-92.3,
  0-127.5L332.1-0.9H0.1v685.6l15.8,15.8C51.1,735.7,108.2,735.7,143.4,700.5z"/>
<path class="st2" d="M1.5,617.6c29.2,22.6,71.4,20.5,98.2-6.3l315.2-315.2c29.1-29.1,
  29.1-76.3,0-105.4L224.8,0.5H1.5V617.6z"/>
<text transform="matrix(1 0 0 1 419.998 615.9277)" class="st2 st5 st6">
  ${//*[contains(@class, 'bookmap/bookmeta')]/*[contains(@class, 'topic/author')]}
</text>
<text transform="matrix(1 0 0 1 419.998 660.9277)" class="st2 st5 st6">
  ${//*[contains(@class, 'bookmap/bookmeta')]//*[contains(@class, 'topic/created')]/@date}
</text>
<text transform="matrix(1 0 0 1 471.998 749.9277)" class="st2 st5 st7">©
  ${
    concat(//*[contains(@class, 'bookmap/bookmeta')]/*[contains(@class, 'bookmap/bookrights')]
    //*[contains(@class, 'bookmap/organization')], ' ',
    //*[contains(@class, 'bookmap/bookmeta')]/*[contains(@class, 'bookmap/bookrights')]
    /*[contains(@class, 'bookmap/copyrlast')]/*[contains(@class, 'bookmap/year')])
  }
</text>
<text transform="matrix(0.7071 -0.7071 0.7071 0.7071 88.1369 568.6693)" class="st9 st5 st8">
  ${
    //*[contains(@class, 'front-page/front-page-title')]
    //*[contains(@class, 'bookmap/mainbooktitle')]
  }
</text>
</svg>
```

Notes:

- XPath expressions are not expanded if the SVG template is open in **Author** mode.
- XPath expressions can be tested (without `${}`) using the XPath/XQuery Builder view.
- XPath *Conditional Expressions*, *For Expressions*, and *Let Expressions* are supported.

Important:

- If you received the SVG image from someone else (e.g. a graphics designer), make sure that the text from the image was not converted to glyph shapes and that it is rendered using the `<text>` element.
- The SVG `<text>` element does not wrap the text if it overflows the image. If you have longer text that needs to be rendered, you might consider using multiple `<text>` elements and more evolved XPath expressions (for example, using the `substring()` function) to place the text on multiple lines.

Tip:

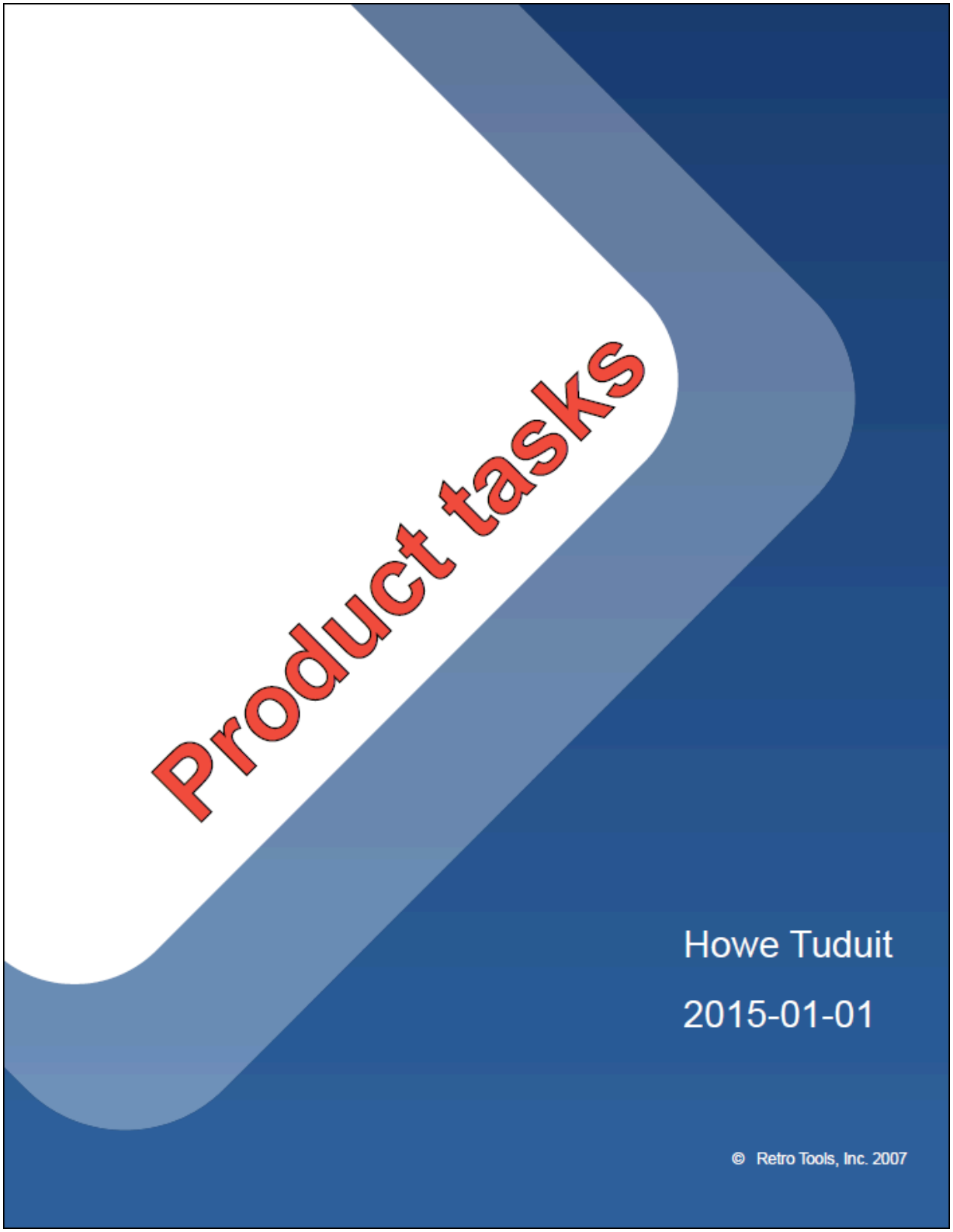
You can ask a designer to fill the image with some placeholders that you can later find and replace with your XPath expressions. In the above SVG, the designer could place the text `Here comes the author`, that you replace with `${//*[contains(@class, 'bookmap/bookmeta')]/*[contains(@class, 'topic/author')]}`:

```
<text transform="matrix(1 0 0 1 419.998 615.9277)" class="st2 st5 st6">
  Here comes the author
</text>
```

4. The CSS stylesheet should declare the template file as a background-image for the cover *(on page 1237)*. Also the following example hides the `<mainbooktitle>` and its bookmark (it is displayed in the template):

```
@page front-page {
  background-image: url("cover.template.svg");
  background-repeat: no-repeat;
  background-size: 100% 100%;
}

*[class ~= "bookmap/booktitle"] {
  display: none;
}
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page-title"]
> *[class ~= "bookmap/booktitle"]
> *[class ~= "bookmap/mainbooktitle"] {
  bookmark-level: 0;
}
```

5. After the transformation, the final document cover will look like this:



Related information

How to Use XPath Expressions in CSS *(on page 1199)*

SVG Templates

Metadata

DITA has a solid vocabulary for specifying metadata. There are `<prolog>` elements in the topics, and `<topicmeta>`, `<bookmeta>` elements in the bookmaps. They can be used to define authors, dates, audiences, organizations, etc. See: https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/archSpec/base/metadata-in-maps-and-topics.html

It is up to you to decide where this information should be presented, in the PDF content or in the PDF document properties.

Metadata - XML Fragment

In the merged map file *(on page 1195)*, the metadata section is placed inside the `<oxy:front-page>` element. This is different from the original placement in the map or bookmap (after the title), but allows for the usage of information from it in the title page.

Bookmaps

This is an example of a section taken from a merged bookmap. It only contains some of the possible metadata elements. The `bookmeta` metadata section is inherited from `topicmeta`:

```
<bookmap xmlns:ditaarch="http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/"
  xmlns:opentopic-index="http://www.idiominc.com/opentopic/index" cascade="merge"
    class="- map/map bookmap/bookmap "
  ditaarch:DITAArchVersion="1.3" >


  <oxy:front-page xmlns:oxy="http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author">


   <bookmeta xmlns:dita-ot="http://dita-ot.sourceforge.net/ns/201007/dita-ot"
     class="- map/topicmeta bookmap/bookmeta ">
     <author class="- topic/author ">Howe Tuduit</author>
     <bookid class="- topic/data bookmap/bookid ">
       <isbn class="- topic/data bookmap/isbn ">071271271X</isbn>
       <booknumber class="- topic/data bookmap/booknumber ">SG99-9999-00</booknumber>
        <maintainer class="- topic/data bookmap/maintainer ">
        <organization class="- topic/data bookmap/organization ">ACME Tools</organization>
        <person class="- topic/data bookmap/person "/>
       </maintainer>
     </bookid>
     <bookrights class="- topic/data bookmap/bookrights ">
        ...
         <bookowner class="- topic/data bookmap/bookowner ">
<organization class="- topic/data bookmap/organization ">ACME Tools, Inc.</organization>
         </bookowner>
     </bookrights>
```

```
        </bookmeta>


        <oxy:front-page-title>
            ...
...
```

For the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation type, the merged map is further processed resulting in a collection of HTML5 `<div>` elements. These elements preserve the original DITA `@class` attribute values and add a new value derived from the DITA element name.

```
<div
    class="- map/map bookmap/bookmap bookmap" ... >


   <div class=" front-page/front-page front-page">


   <div
     class="- map/topicmeta bookmap/bookmeta boometa">
     <div class="- topic/author author">Howe Tuduit</div>
     <div class="- topic/data bookmap/bookid bookid">
       <div class="- topic/data bookmap/isbn isbn">071271271X</div>
       <div class="- topic/data bookmap/booknumber booknumber">SG99-9999-00</div>
       <div class="- topic/data bookmap/maintainer maintainer">
          <div class="- topic/data bookmap/organization organization">ACME Tools</div>
          <div class="- topic/data bookmap/person person"/>
        </div>
      </div>
      <div class="- topic/data bookmap/bookrights bookrights">
        ...
        <div class="- topic/data bookmap/bookowner bookowner">
             <div class="- topic/data bookmap/organization organization">
                                      ACME Tools, Inc.
             </div>
        </div>
      </div>
    </div>


    <div class=" front-page/front-page-title front-page-title">
           ...
...
```

Maps

The maps have a more simple structure, they use the `<topicmeta>` element for metadata sections. This is also a simplified example, as there may be many more elements in the metadata section:

```
<map xmlns:ditaarch="http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/"
    xmlns:opentopic-index="http://www.idiominc.com/opentopic/index"
          cascade="merge" class="- map/map "
    ditaarch:DITAArchVersion="1.3">
    ...

<oxy:front-page xmlns:oxy="http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author">

  <topicmeta class="- map/topicmeta ">
      <author class="- topic/author ">Dan C</author>
      <metadata class="- topic/metadata ">
         <prodinfo class="- topic/prodinfo ">
             <prodname class="- topic/prodname ">oXygen PDF CSS DITA Plugin</prodname>
         </prodinfo>
      </metadata>
      <audience class="- topic/audience "/>
  </topicmeta>
...
```

For the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation type, the merged map is further processed resulting in a collection of HTML5 `<div>` elements. These elements preserve the original DITA `@class` attribute values and add a new value derived from the DITA element name.

```
<div xmlns:ditaarch="http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/"
    xmlns:opentopic-index="http://www.idiominc.com/opentopic/index"
          cascade="merge" class="- map/map "
    ditaarch:DITAArchVersion="1.3">
    ...

<div class=" front-page/front-page front-page">

  <div class="- map/topicmeta topicmeta">
      <div class="- topic/author author">Dan C</div>
      <div class="- topic/metadata metadata">
         <div class="- topic/prodinfo prodinfo">
             <div class="- topic/prodname prodname">oXygen PDF CSS DITA Plugin</div>
         </div>
      </div>
      <div class="- topic/audience audience"/>
  </topicmeta>
...
```

Metadata - Built-in CSS rules

The `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-meta.css` file contains the rules that extract metadata.

How to Create a Searchable PDF

To make a PDF searchable, you need to add some `<keyword>` or `<indexterm>` elements inside bookmaps, maps, or topics. Most of the search engines will parse the resulting document and extract those keywords and create a search base.

Note:
Both `<keyword>` and `<indexterm>` elements can be combined inside the `<keywords>` element. They will be equally processed by the search engine.

In the generated PDF, keywords are displayed in the Document Properties.

Bookmaps

If you want your keywords to appear inside a bookmap, you need to define them inside the `<bookmeta>` element:

```
<bookmap>
  ...
  <bookmeta>
    <keywords>
      <keyword>web server</keyword>
      <keyword>hard disk</keyword>
    </keywords>
  </bookmeta>
```

Maps

If you want your keywords to appear inside a map, you need to define them inside the `<topicmeta>` element:

```
<map>
  ...
  <topicmeta>
    <keywords>
      <keyword>flowers</keyword>
      <indexterm>care and preparation</indexterm>
      <keyword>seasons</keyword>
    </keywords>
  </topicmeta>
```

Topics

If you want your keywords to appear inside one or more topics, you need to define them inside the `<prolog>` element:

```
<topic>
  ...
  <prolog>
    <metadata>
      <keywords>
        <indexterm>iris</indexterm>
      </keywords>
    </metadata>
  </prolog>
```

Warning:
Keywords must be at map level or at topic level, you cannot combine them.

How to Add the Publication Audience to the Custom PDF Metadata

The audience element indicates the users the publication is addressing. This can be placed inside a `<topicmeta>` element in a `<map>` as in the following example:

```
<map>
    ...
    <topicmeta>
        ...
        <audience type="programmer" job="programming" experiencelevel="expert"/>
```

To collect the `@type` attribute, add the following in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"] > *[class ~= "map/topicmeta"] > *[class ~= "topic/audience"] {
    -oxy-pdf-meta-custom: "Audience" attr(type);
}
```

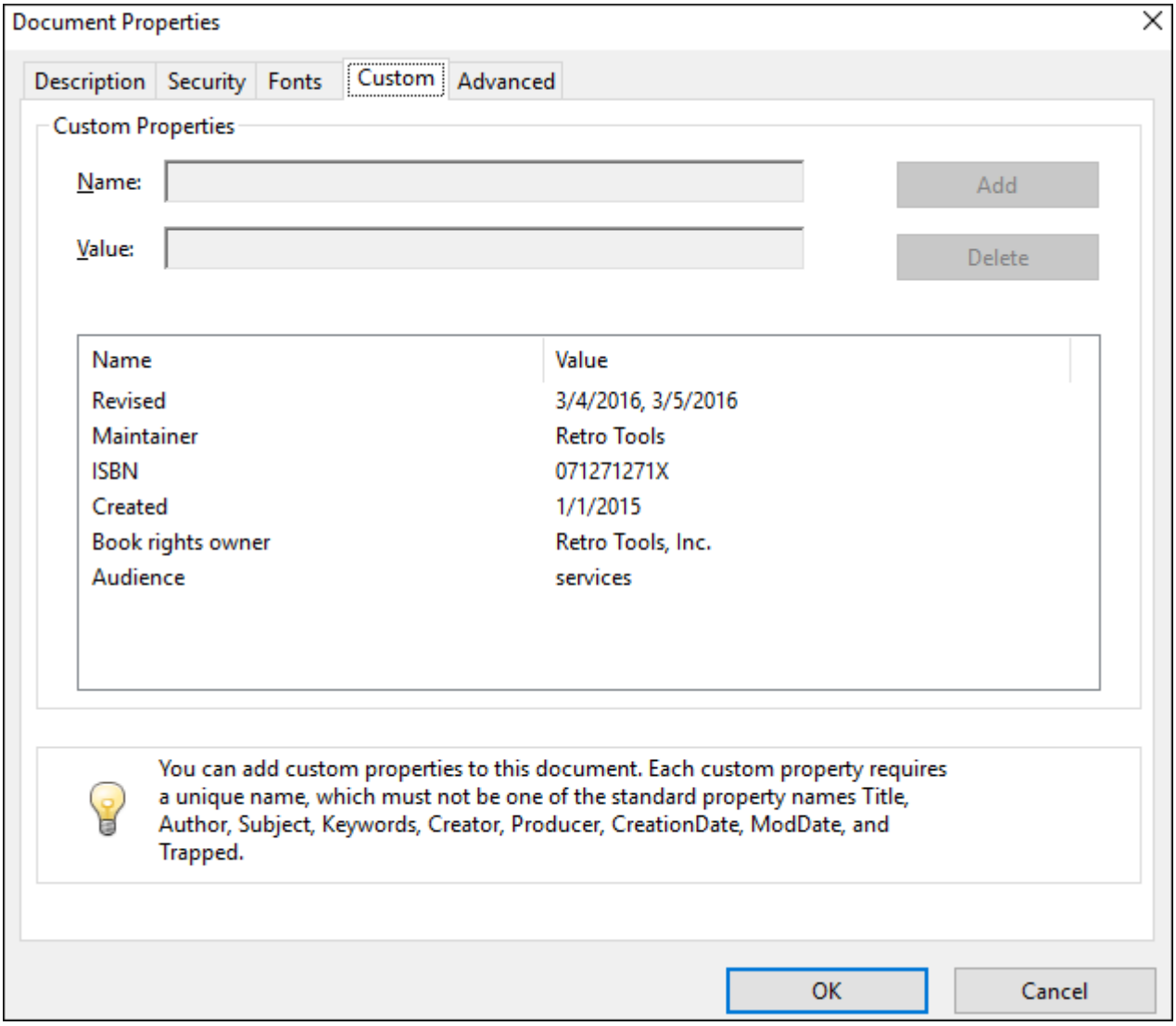
Notice:
It is best to use the class selector (such as `*[class ~= "map/topicmeta"]`) instead of `topicmeta` to cover cases where the elements are specialized (for instance, in a bookmap the `bookmeta` is a `topicmeta`, so your selector will also function for bookmaps, not only simple maps.

Note:
The selector begins with `map >` to choose the `<topicmeta>` that is a direct child of the map, not other `<topicmeta>` elements from other `<topicref>` elements.

Tip:
You can define multiple key value pairs by separating them with commas:

```
-oxy-pdf-meta-custom: "Audience" attr(type), "Job" attr(job)
```

The metadata is displayed in the **Custom** tab of the **Document Properties** dialog box from Acrobat Reader:



How to Show Metadata in the Cover Page

The following CSS extensions are used in the subsequent examples:

- **oxy_xpath** - Executes an XPath expression and returns string content. Use this whenever you need to extract data from an element other than the one matched by the CSS rule selector.
- `:after(N)` - Creates more than one *after* pseudo-element. The argument value represents how far the generated content is from the real content. For example, in the second code snippet in the next section *(on page 1259)*, the content of the `:after` is closer to the title (upper) than the content of the `:after(2)`.

Note:
The `attr()` CSS function can also be used but it is limited to extracting attribute values from the matched element.

Processing Metadata for Bookmaps

Suppose you need to present the **Author** and the **ISBN** (when it exists) just under the publication title and suppose your bookmap contains:

```
<bookmap id="taskbook">
    <booktitle>
        <booklibrary>Retro Tools</booklibrary>
        <mainbooktitle>Product tasks</mainbooktitle>
        <booktitlealt>Tasks and what they can do</booktitlealt>
    </booktitle>
    <bookmeta>
        <author>Howe Tuduit</author>
        <critdates>
            <created date="1/1/2015"/>
            <revised modified="3/4/2016"/>
            <revised modified="3/5/2016"/>
        </critdates>
        <bookid>
            <isbn>071271271X</isbn>
            <booknumber>SG99-9999-00</booknumber>
...
```

The entire `<booktitle>` element content is displayed on the first page of the PDF, so if you need to add the information after it, in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following CSS rules:

```
*[class ~= "bookmap/booktitle"]:after {
    display: block;
    content: "by " oxy_xpath('//*[contains(@class, " bookmap/bookmeta ")]/*[contains(@class, " topic/author ")]/text()');
    margin-top: 4em;
    text-align: center;
    color: gray;
}
*[class ~= "bookmap/booktitle"]:after(2) {
    display: block;
    content: oxy_xpath('if(//*[contains(@class, " bookmap/isbn ")]) then concat("ISBN ", //*[contains(@class, " bookmap/isbn
 ")]/text()) else ""');
    text-align: center;
    color: gray;
}
```

Processing Metadata for DITA Maps

Suppose you need to present the **Revision Date** just under the publication title and suppose your DITA map contains:

```
<map>
  <title>Growing Flowers</title>
  <topicmeta>
    <critdates>
      <revised modified="2021-04-26"/>
    </critdates>
...
```

The entire `<title>` element content is displayed on the first page of the PDF. If you need to add the information after it, add the following CSS rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page-title"] > *[class ~= "topic/title"]:after {
    display: block;
    content: "last revision " oxy_xpath('(//*[contains(@class, " map/topicmeta ")])[1] \
    //*[contains(@class, " topic/revised ")]/@modified');
    margin-top: 4em;
    text-align: center;
    color: gray;
}
```

Note:
The `[1]` predicate is used to avoid duplicated results as the *topicmeta* is included in all children topics.

Generating Synthetic Pages for Metadata

Suppose you need to show this information on a page that follows the title page, instead of on the title page. In this case, you need to prepare a named page and place the content in it. Add the following rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
@page page-for-meta {
    background-color: yellow; /* Just to see it better*/
    @top-left-corner {
        content:""; /* Remove the default header */
    }
    @top-right-corner {
        content:""; /* Remove the default header */
    }
}

*[class ~= "bookmap/booktitle"]:after {
```

```
    page: page-for-meta;
}
*[class ~= "bookmap/booktitle"]:after(2) {
    page: page-for-meta;
}
```

How to Show Metadata in the Header or Footer

The header and footer are composed of page margin boxes that can be populated with static text by using *string-sets*.

If you need to add some of the map metadata to the header of the front page (for example, the **creation date**), add the following CSS rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page"] >
  *[class ~= "map/topicmeta"] >
    *[class ~= "topic/critdates"] >
      *[class ~= "topic/created"]{
    string-set: mapcreated attr(date);
}



@page front-page {
     @top-center {
          content: "Created: " string(mapcreated);
     }
}
```

Note:
The *front-page* is the name of a page that used to present the element with the class "front-page/front-page". The above page rule is combined with the default styles.

How to Show Metadata Information (Revision History) in the Topic Prologue

This topic explains how to present metadata information that is normally hidden in the published output. For the example that follows, this will be the revision history list:

```
<task id="task_3ml_qm3_rf">
    <title>Removing the battery</title>
    <shortdesc/>
    <prolog>
        <change-historylist>
            <change-item>
                <change-revisionid>abd3</change-revisionid>
                <change-completed>Build no 1.</change-completed>
```

```
            </change-item>
            <change-item>
                <change-revisionid>bc72</change-revisionid>
                <change-completed>Build no 2.</change-completed>
            </change-item>
        </change-historylist>
....
```

By default, the `<prolog>` element is hidden (`display:none`) and has several properties that make it collapse, even if the display property is changed.

- It has a transparent color.
- The font has size zero.
- The width and height values are zero.

Start by resetting the prolog properties, but only for prologs that contains a history list. The others will be kept hidden.

```
*[class~="topic/prolog"]:has(*[class~="relmgmt-d/change-historylist"] ){
    display:block;
    color:inherit;
    font-size:1rem;
    width:auto;
    height:auto;
}
```

Next, the following will keep the children of the prolog hidden (other than the change history):

```
*[class~="topic/prolog"]:has(*[class~="relmgmt-d/change-historylist"]) > *:not([class~="relmgmt-d/change-historylist"]) {
    display:none;
}
```

The `<change-item>`, `<change-revisionid>`, and `<change-completed>` (like the descendents of the `<change-historylist>`) are specializations of the `topic/data` element and are also hidden in the output, so you need to make them visible. In the following selector, you can add more classes, depending on what elements you want to be visible.

```
*[class~="relmgmt-d/change-item"],
*[class~="relmgmt-d/change-revisionid"],
*[class~="relmgmt-d/change-completed"] {
    display:block;
}
```

Now some styling for the entire list:

```
*[class~="relmgmt-d/change-historylist"] {
    font-size:1rem;
    border: 3pt solid silver;
```

```
    padding: 0.5em;
}
*[class~="relmgmt-d/change-historylist"]:before {
    content: "Revision History:";
    font-weight:bold;
}
```

And the child elements:

```
/* Example of styling some of the descendends of the history list. */
*[class~="relmgmt-d/change-item"] {
    margin:1em;
}
*[class~="relmgmt-d/change-revisionid"]:before {
    content: "Revision ID: " !important;
    font-weight:bold;
}
*[class~="relmgmt-d/change-completed"]:before {
    content: "Completed: "  !important;
    font-weight:bold;
}
```

In the output, the history list is now visible:

How to Remove or Change the PDF Keywords

The keywords defined in the prolog sections of topics are automatically collected and set as PDF keywords. These are shown by the readers in the PDF document properties window.

If you need to remove them, you can use the following CSS snippet in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
:root {
 -oxy-pdf-meta-keywords:"";
}
```

To change them, if you have a hard-coded list, you just enumerate each of them in the property content, separating them with comma:

```
:root {
 -oxy-pdf-meta-keywords:"alpha, beta, gamma";
}
```

If you need to extract them by other criteria from the merged map, you can use the `oxy_xpath()` function instead of the hard-coded list.

How to Remove the PDF Publication Title Property

The title defined in the PDF reader is automatically collected from the map's main title.

If you want to display the map name instead of the title, you can use one of the following rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
/*
 * Titles (maps).
 */
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page-title"] *[class ~= "topic/title"]:not([class ~= 'bookmap/booktitle']) {
    -oxy-pdf-meta-title: unset;
}
```

```
/*
 * Titles (bookmaps).
 */
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page"] *[class ~= "bookmap/booktitle"] > *[class ~= "bookmap/mainbooktitle"] {
    -oxy-pdf-meta-title: unset;
}
```

How to Change the PDF Publication Title Property

The `<title>` element of a bookmap is quite complex and contains elements for the book library and an alternate title:

```
<booktitle>
   <booklibrary>Retro Tools</booklibrary>
   <mainbooktitle>Main Book Title</mainbooktitle>
   <booktitlealt>Book Title Alternative</booktitlealt>
 </booktitle>
```

For the publication title, the built-in CSS uses only the content of the `<mainbooktitle>`. If you want to collect all of the text from the `<booktitle>`, you can add the following rule to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
:root {
    -oxy-pdf-meta-title: oxy_xpath('(//*[contains(@class, "bookmap/booktitlealt")])[1]/text()');
```

```
    -oxy-pdf-meta-description: "";
}
```

An XPath expression is used to collect all the `<booktitlealt>` elements from the merged map, select the first one, then use its text.

The built-in CSS uses the `<booktitlealt>` as the PDF description. In the example above, this property is cleared since it was moved as a title.

How to Use Data Elements from the Map to Create Custom PDF Metadata

To use a key value in the CSS, the key must be referenced from the content (either a topic or map).

If you do not have it referenced, you may force a reference by using the `<topicmeta>` or `<bookmeta>` section of your map and a `<data>` element. This has no effect on the published content, but allows the CSS rules to use its content.

```
<bookmeta>
  ....
  <data keyref="my_key"/>
  ....
</bookmeta>
```

This is expanded in the merged HTML file to:

```
<div class="- map/topicmeta bookmap/bookmeta topicmeta bookmeta">
 ...
 <div keyref="my_key" class="- topic/data data">
  <div class="- topic/keyword keyword">KEY VALUE</div>
 </div>
 ...
</div>
```

Suppose that you need the expanded key value in the footer of the publication. You can define a string-set on this `data` element:

```
*[class ~= "topic/data"][keyref="my_key"] {
 string-set: key-string content(text);
}
@page {
 @bottom-left {
  content: "My key is: " string(key-string) !important;
 }
}
```

Or you can use the value from a `:before` pseudo-element, like the one for the title:

```
*[class ~= "topic/title"]:before {
 content: oxy_xpath("//*[contains(@class, 'topic/data')][@keyref = 'my_key']//text()");
}
```

Another use-case is to use the key as a source for a custom PDF document property:

```
*[class ~= "topic/data"][keyref="my_key"] {
 -oxy-pdf-meta-custom: attr(keyref) content(text);
}
```

How to Control the PDF Viewer

The PDF document may contain settings for the PDF Viewer. This helps to make the viewing experience common for all of the readers. For example, you can specify the zoom level that the document is presented, or whether the outline view should be displayed.

There are several CSS properties you can use. These properties should be set on the root element. If they are set on multiple elements, the first one will be taken into account.

Examples

- To hide the PDF Viewer toolbar and menu bar:

  ```
  :root {
    -oxy-pdf-viewer-hide-menubar: true;
    -oxy-pdf-viewer-hide-toolbar: true;
  }
  ```

- To make the document be displayed with a different zoom level:

  ```
  :root {
    -oxy-pdf-viewer-zoom: 50%;
  }
  ```

- To make the PDF Viewer just as large as the displayed document (e.g. if there is a zoom level that makes the document smaller, then the window of the viewer will be just as big as the page):

  ```
  :root {
    -oxy-pdf-viewer-fit-window: true;
  }
  ```

- If you need the pages to be displayed as a single continuous column (to be able to scroll in a single view port), use:

  ```
  :root {
    -oxy-pdf-viewer-page-layout: one-column;
  }
  ```

  The supported include: `single-page`, `two-columns-left`, and more.

- To make the document outline view visible, use:

```
:root {
  -oxy-pdf-viewer-page-mode: use-outlines;
}
```

The supported values include: `use-thumbs`, `use-none`. For more details, see the list of Chemistry extension CSS properties.

Front Matter and Back Matter

The *front matter* is a series of topics that are usually placed after the cover page and before the TOC or the content.

The *back matter* is a series of topics that are usually placed after the content of the book.

Front Matter and Back Matter - XML Fragment

In the merged map file *(on page 1195)*, the *frontmatter* topic references are wrapped in a `<frontmatter>` element that has the class `bookmap/frontmatter`. Then, the referenced content is marked with the attribute `@is-frontmatter="true"`:

```
<bookmap xmlns:ditaarch="http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/" ...>
    <oxy:front-page class="- front-page/front-page ">
       ...
    </oxy:front-page>
    <opentopic:map xmlns:ot-placeholder="http://suite-sol.com/namespaces/ot-placeholder"
    class="- toc/toc ">
        ...
        <frontmatter xmlns:dita-ot="http://dita-ot.sourceforge.net/ns/201007/dita-ot"
        class="- map/topicref bookmap/frontmatter ">
          ...
          <topicref class="- map/topicref " href="#unique_1" type="concept">
          ...
        </frontmatter>
    </opentopic:map>
    <concept
           class="- topic/topic concept/concept "
           is-frontmatter="true"
           topicrefclass="- map/topicref bookmap/bookabstract " ...>
```

For the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation type, the merged map is further processed resulting in a collection of HTML5 `<div>` elements. These elements preserve the original DITA `@class` attribute values and add a new value derived from the DITA element name.

```
<div xmlns:ditaarch="http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/" ...>
    <div class=" front-page/front-page front-page">
```

```
    ...
  </div>
  <div class="- toc/toc toc">
    <div class="- map/topicref bookmap/frontmatter topicref frontmatter">
      <div href="#unique_2" type="topic" class="- map/topicref topicref">
      ...
      </div>
  </div>
  <article
      class="- topic/topic concept/concept topic concept nested0"
      is-frontmatter="true"
      topicrefclass="- map/topicref bookmap/bookabstract "  ...>
```

Note:
The process also applies for the backmatter topic references inside a `<backmatter>` element with the `bookmap/backmatter` class and referenced content with the `@is-backmatter="true"` attribute both in the merged map and merged HTML files.

Front Matter and Back Matter - Built-in CSS

The built-in CSS rules are in `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-bookmap-frontmatter-backmatter.css`. By default, it associates the top-level topics that do not represent chapters to a `matter-page` style of page layout. Each child topic starts on a new page.

Related Information:
Page Headers and Footers *(on page 1209)*

How to Remove Page Breaks Between Front Matter Child Topics

If you do not like the fact that all the topics that enter a bookmap frontmatter start on a new page, you can disable this by using the following rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"] > *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-frontmatter]{
  break-before: auto;
}
```

How to Style the Front Matter and Back Matter Topics

Style all the Topics with the Same Aspect

All the topics referenced from the `<frontmatter>` and `<backmatter>` bookmap elements are formatted using the `matter-page` as defined in Default Page Definitions *(on page 1201)*. In the merged file, the `<backmatter>` and `<frontmatter>` elements are omitted, and their child topic content is matched using a CSS rule like the one below:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"] > *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-backmatter],
*[class ~= "map/map"] > *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-frontmatter]{
  page: matter-page;
  ...
}
```

Style the Topics Depending on Their Role

There might be cases when you need to distinguish between certain types of topics that have different roles in your publication:

- Preface
- Notice
- Abstract
- Copyright

These are referenced from the DITA map by specialized `<topicref>` elements, with different class attribute values.

The class attribute values are then passed by the transformation process onto the corresponding topic elements from the merged map content. For example, a topic that was referenced by a `<preface>` map element now has a " bookmap/preface " value in its `@topicrefclass` attribute:

```
<topic
 class="- topic/topic "
 id="unique_1"
 topicrefclass="- map/topicref bookmap/preface " .. >
...
</topic>
```

This can be used to match and apply various styling choices, or even a particular page layout:

```
@page preface-page {
 background-color:silver;
 @top-center{
  content: "Custom Preface Header";
 }
}
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][@topicrefclass ~= "bookmap/preface"] {
 page: preface-page;
}
```

Numbering

The topics in this section contain some technical details in case you need to fine-tune the way the numbering works.

Numbering - Built-in CSS

The built-in CSS rules are in:

- `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-numbering-shallow.css`
- `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-numbering-deep.css`
- `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-numbering-deep-chapter-scope.css`
- `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-numbering-deep-chapter-scope-no-page-reset.css`
- `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-numbering-appendix.css`

The first CSS (shallow) contains rules that add a "Chapter NN" before the first-level topics from the publication, the second one (deep) contains rules that add a deep structure of counters on all topics referenced from the map (at any level), the third one (chapter-scope) creates a chapter scope-oriented numbering (meaning that the numbering for pages, tables, figures, and links to them are reset for each chapter), and the last one is similar to the third except that page numbers do not reset. For more details, see Numbering Types *(on page 1274)*.

Numbering - Input XML Fragments

The numbering affects multiple logical parts of your publication, the table of contents, headers/footers, chapter titles, figures and tables titles:

The Table of Contents

The table of contents is a tree of `<topicref>` elements.

```
<map xmlns:ditaarch="http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/" ...>
  <oxy:front-page xmlns:oxy="http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author"
        class=" front-page/front-page ">
        ...
  </oxy:front-page>
  <opentopic:map xmlns:opentopic="http://www.idiominc.com/opentopic" class=" toc/toc ">
    <title class="- topic/title ">Publication Title</title>

    <topicref is-chapter="true" class="- map/topicref " ... >
      <topicmeta class="- map/topicmeta " ... >
        <navtitle href="#unique_1" class="- topic/navtitle ">Overview</navtitle>
            ...
      </topicmeta>
      <topicref class="- map/topicref " ...>
        <topicmeta class="- map/topicmeta " data-topic-id="dcpp_resources">
          <navtitle href="#unique_2" class="- topic/navtitle ">Resources</navtitle>
            ...
        </topicmeta>
      </topicref>
```

```
      ...
  </opentopic:map>
...
</map>
```

Note:
The `<opentopic:map>` element contains the effective table of contents structure.

Note:
The TOC items are the elements with the class: `- map/topicref`.

Note:
The ones identified as chapters have the `@is-chapter` attribute set.

For the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation type, the merged map is further processed resulting in a collection of HTML5 `<div>` elements. These elements preserve the original DITA `@class` attribute values and add a new value derived from the DITA element name.

```
<div class="- map/map map" ...>
  <div
      class=" front-page/front-page front-page">
      ...
  </div>
  <div class=" toc/toc toc">
    <div class="- topic/title title">Publication Title</title>

    <div is-chapter="true" class="- map/topicref topicref" ... >
      <div class="- map/topicmeta topicmeta" ... >
        <div href="#unique_1" class="- topic/navtitle navtitle">Overview</div>
          ...
      </div>
      <div class="- map/topicref " ...>
        <div class="- map/topicmeta " data-topic-id="dcpp_resources">
          <div href="#unique_2" class="- topic/navtitle ">Resources</div>
          ...
        </div>
      </div>
      ...
  </div>
...
</div>
```

The Header and Footers

These are based on string sets generated for the titles. The complete set of strings is defined in: `[INSTALLATION_DIR]/css/print/p-numbering-shallow.css`/`[INSTALLATION_DIR]/css/print/p-numbering-deep.css` (depending on your numbering scheme - default is shallow) and used in `[INSTALLATION_DIR]/css/print/p-pages-and-headers.css`.

The CSS rules that build the string sets are matching the map title from the front page and the titles from the content.

```
<oxy:front-page xmlns:oxy="http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author">
        <oxy:front-page-title>
            <title class="- topic/title ">Publication Title</title>
        </oxy:front-page-title>
</oxy:front-page>
```

For the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformations:

```
<div class=" front-page/front-page front-page">
        <div class=" front-page-title/front-page-title front-page-title">
            <div class="- topic/title title ">Publication Title</div>
        </div>
</div>
```

The main content is organized as follows:

```
<map xmlns:ditaarch="http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/" ...>
    ...
    <opentopic:map xmlns:opentopic="http://www.idiominc.com/opentopic">
      ...
    </opentopic:map>

    <topic is-chapter="true" oid="dcpp_overview">
        <title class="- topic/title ">Overview</title>
        <body class="- topic/body ">
            ...
        </body>
        <topic class="- topic/topic " id="unique_2" oid="dcpp_resources">
            <title class="- topic/title ">Resources</title>
            ...
        </topic>
        <topic class="- topic/topic " id="unique_2" oid="dcpp_parameters">
            <title class="- topic/title ">Parameters</title>
            ...
        </topic>
    </topic>
```

For the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformations:

```
<div class=" map/map map" ...>

    ...

   <div class=" toc/toc toc">

      ...

    </div>


    <div is-chapter="true" oid="dcpp_overview" class="- topic/topic topic">

        <div class="- topic/title title">Overview</title>

        <div class="- topic/body body">

            ...

        </div>

        <div class="- topic/topic topic" id="unique_2" oid="dcpp_resources">

            <div class="- topic/title title">Resources</div>

            ...

        </div>

        <div class="- topic/topic topic" id="unique_2" oid="dcpp_parameters">

            <div class="- topic/title title">Parameters</div>

            ...

        </div>

    </div>
```

Note:
The topic content comes after the `<opentopic:map>` element.

Note:
The child topics are the elements that have the class `- topic/topic` included in the parents.

Note:
The ones identified as chapters have the `@is-chapter` attribute set.

The Titles of Chapters

The titles from the content are children of the topics:

```
<topic class="- topic/topic " id="unique_2" oid="dcpp_parameters">

        <title class="- topic/title ">Parameters</title>

            ...

</topic>
```

For the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformations:

```
<div class="- topic/topic topic" id="unique_2" oid="dcpp_parameters">
        <div class="- topic/title title ">Parameters</div>
            ...
</div>
```

Note:
The title elements have the class: `- topic/title`. The actual element name can be different.

Numbering Types

The type of numbering that appears in your publication is controlled by the `args.css.param.numbering` parameter.

This parameter activates various sets of CSS rules from the built-in CSS. By default, only the first-level topics (the chapters) are numbered (`shallow` numbering). The following values are accepted:

Table 13. Types of Numbering

Value	Chapters	Sections/ Nested Topics	Figures & Tables	Pages
shallow	num-bered	no	counted from the start of the publi-cation	from the start of the pub-lication
deep	num-bered	numbered	counted from the start of the publi-cation	from the start of the pub-lication
deep-chapter-scope	num-bered	numbered	numbering is restarted at the be-ginning of each chapter, adds the chapter number in their titles (and in the links to them), and in the list of tables and list of figures sec-tions	restarted at the beginning of each chapter
deep-chap-ter-scope-no-page-reset	num-bered	numbered	numbering is restarted at the be-ginning of each chapter, adds the chapter number in their titles (and in the links to them), and in the list of tables and list of figures sec-tions	from the start of the pub-lication

Note:
When using any of the deep numbering types, no distinction is made between sections and nested topics. For example, if a topic contains two sections, followed by another nested topic, the sections will be numbered with 1 and 2, and the nested topic with 3.

Notice:
The `deep-chapter-scope` and `deep-chapter-scope-no-page-reset` values are only available for the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.

Examples

Shallow

Each chapter (or first-level topic) is numbered, but sections/nested topics are not numbered. Figures, tables, and pages are numbered sequentially from the start of the publication and they do not reset.

```
Chapter 1. First Chapter
    Page 1
      Topic
        Section
          Table 1
          Table 2
      Topic
        Section
    Page 2
        Table 3
Chapter 2. Second Chapter
    Page 3
      Topic
        Table 4
        Table 5
      Topic
    Page 4
```

It will result in the following content inside the PDF:

```
Chapter 1. Introduction.....1
Chapter 2. Care and Preparation.....2
  Pruning.....2
  Garden Preparation.....3
Chapter 3. Flowers by Season.....4
  Spring Flowers.....4
    Iris.....4
```

```
    Snowdrop.....................................................................6
  ...


List of Figures
  Figure 1: Iris


List of Tables
  Table 1: Flowers
```

Deep

All chapters (or first-level topics) and sections/nested topics are numbered (these are also prefixed with the chapter number). Figures, tables, and pages are numbered sequentially from the start of the publication and they do not reset.

```
1. First Chapter
    Page 1
      Topic 1.1
        Table 1
      Topic 1.2
        Table 2
    Page 2
        Table 3
2. Second Chapter
    Page 3
      Topic 2.1
        Table 4
        Table 5
      Topic 2.2
    Page 4
```

It will result in the following content inside the PDF:

```
1. Introduction..............................................................1
2. Care and Preparation......................................................2
  2.1. Pruning...............................................................2
  2.2. Garden Preparation....................................................3
3. Flowers by Season.........................................................4
  3.1. Spring Flowers........................................................4
    3.1.1. Iris.............................................................4
    3.1.2. Snowdrop.........................................................6
  ...


List of Figures
  Figure 1: Iris
```

```
List of Tables
  Table 1: Flowers
```

Deep Chapter Scope

Each chapter (or first-level topic) is independent (so it can be read separately, as a separate part of your publication). The sections/nested topics, pages, figures, and table counters (and links to them) restart at each chapter. The general cross reference links also display the chapter number before the page number to clearly specify the target.

```
1. First Chapter
    Page 1.1
      Topic 1.1
        Table 1-1
        Link to page 2.2
      Topic 1.2
    Page 1.2
        Table 1-2
2. Second Chapter
    Page 2.1
      Topic 2.1
        Table 2-1
        Table 2-2
        Table 2-3
      Topic 2.2
        Table 2-4
    Page 2.2
       Link to page 1.1
```

It will result in the following content inside the PDF:

```
1. Introduction.....................................................................1
2. Care and Preparation.............................................................1
  2.1. Pruning.....................................................................1
  2.2. Garden Preparation..........................................................2
3. Flowers by Season................................................................1
  3.1. Spring Flowers..............................................................1
    3.1.1. Iris.....................................................................1
    3.1.2. Snowdrop.................................................................3
  ...


List of Figures
  Figure 3-1: Iris
```

```
List of Tables

  Table 2-1: Flowers
```

Deep Chapter Scope No Page Reset

Each chapter (or first-level topic) is independent (so it can be read separately, as a separate part of your publication). The sections/nested topics, figures, and table counters (and links to them) restart at each chapter, but the page numbers do not reset. The generic cross reference links contain only the page number.

```
1. First Chapter

    Page 1

      Topic 1.1

        Table 1-1

        Link to page 4

      Topic 1.2

    Page 2

        Table 1-2

2. Second Chapter

    Page 3

      Topic 2.1

        Table 2-1

        Table 2-2

        Table 2-3

      Topic 2.2

        Table 2-4

    Page 4

       Link to page 1
```

It will result in the following content inside the PDF:

```
1. Introduction.....................................................................1

2. Care and Preparation.............................................................2

  2.1. Pruning.....................................................................2

  2.2. Garden Preparation..........................................................3

3. Flowers by Season................................................................4

  3.1. Spring Flowers..............................................................4

    3.1.1. Iris.....................................................................4

    3.1.2. Snowdrop................................................................6

  ...


List of Figures

  Figure 3-1: Iris
```

```
List of Tables

  Table 2-1: Flowers
```

Tip:
When using deep numbering, if you want to exclude sections from being numbered, see How to Include Topic Sections in TOC *(on page 1280)*.

How to Reset Page Numbering at First Chapter/Part

By default, pages are numbered from the start of the publication, but in some cases, you may need to restart the page numbering at the first chapter of your publication.

Warning:
The following sections do not apply for `args.css.param.numbering="deep-chapter-scope"` because it already define a specific numbering scheme that resets the page number at each chapter.

Reset Page Numbering in Shallow Context

To reset the page counter at the first part/chapter when the `args.css.param.numbering="shallow"` parameter value is set, use the following rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"] > *:not([class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter]) + *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter] {
  counter-reset: page 1;
}
*[class ~= "map/map"] > *:not([class ~= "topic/topic"][is-part]) + *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-part] {
  counter-reset: page 1 chapter;
}
```

Reset Page Numbering in Deep Context

To reset the page counter at the first part/chapter when the `args.css.param.numbering="deep"` parameter value is set, use the following rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep'] > *:not([class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter]) + *[class
 ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter] {
  counter-reset: page 1 section1;
}
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep'] > *:not([class ~= "topic/topic"][is-part]) + *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-part] {
  counter-reset: page 1 chapter chapter-and-sections;
}
```

Reset Page Numbering in Deep Chapter Scope No Page Reset Context

To reset the page counter at the first part/chapter when the `args.css.param.numbering="deep-chapter-scope-no-page-reset"` parameter value is set, use the following rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep'] > *:not([class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter]) + *[class
 ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter] {
  counter-reset: page 1 section1 tablecount figcount !important;
}
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep'] > *:not([class ~= "topic/topic"][is-part]) + *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-part] {
  counter-reset: page 1 chapter chapter-and-sections section1 tablecount figcount !important;
}
```

How to Use Part, Chapter, and Subtopics Numbers in Links

This topic is applicable if you have enabled deep numbering *(on page 1274)*. Suppose you have a link in the third chapter that points to a paragraph in the second subtopic of the first chapter and you need this structural information (1.2) presented to the user, just after the link text. To do this, you can use the `target-counters` CSS function to extract the entire context of the counters from the target. The `chapter-and-sections` built-in counter is already updated with both the chapter number and the nested topics:

```
*[class ~= "topic/xref"]:after {
 content: target-counters(attr(href), chapter-and-sections, ".") !important;
}
```

This counter does not include the part number, so be careful when linking between parts (consider adding the target part number explicitly):

```
*[class ~= "topic/xref"]:after {
 content: "[" target-counter(attr(href), part, upper-roman) "/" target-counters(attr(href),
 chapter-and-sections, ".") "]" !important;
 color:blue;
}
```

Related Information:

Numbering Types *(on page 1274)*

How to Include Topic Sections in TOC

To include topic sections in the table of contents, set the `args.css.param.numbering-sections` transformation parameter *(on page 1168)* to **yes**. In this case, they are numbered according the numbering scheme set by the `args.css.param.numbering` parameter *(on page 1274)*.

If you want to prevent topic sections from being numbered in your output, set the value of the `args.css.param.numbering-sections` parameter to **no**.

Table of Contents

The table of contents is a hierarchy of topic titles with links to the topic content.

For plain maps, the TOC is automatically generated. For DITA bookmaps, you will need to add a `<toc>` element in the `<booklists>` element (inside the `<frontmatter>`):

```
<bookmap>
  ...
  <frontmatter>
    <booklists>
      <toc/>
      <figurelist/>
      <tablelist/>
    </booklists>
  </frontmatter>
  ...
  ...
```

Related Information:

Table of Contents on a Page (Mini TOC) *(on page 1288)*
List of Tables/Figures *(on page 1293)*
Index *(on page 1302)*

Table of Contents - XML Fragment

In the merged map file *(on page 1195)*, the `<opentopic:map>` contains a hierarchy of `<topicref>` elements, or other elements (such as `<chapter>` or `<part>`) that are specializations of `<topicref>`.

Each of the `<topicref>` elements include a *metadata* section that includes the topic title.

```
<bookmap ...>

<oxy:front-page> ... </oxy:front-page>
<oxy:front-matter> ... </oxy:front-matter>

<opentopic:map xmlns:opentopic="http://www.idiominc.com/opentopic" class="- toc/toc ">

  <oxy:toc-title xmlns:oxy="http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author" empty="true"
      class="- toc/title "/>

  <booktitle class="- topic/title bookmap/booktitle ">
      <booklibrary class="- topic/ph bookmap/booklibrary ">Retro Tools</booklibrary>
      <mainbooktitle class="- topic/ph bookmap/mainbooktitle ">Tasks</mainbooktitle>
      <booktitlealt class="- topic/ph bookmap/booktitlealt ">Product Tasks</booktitlealt>
  </booktitle>


  <chapter is-chapter="true"
```

```
      class="- map/topicref bookmap/chapter " href="#unique_5" type="topic">
      <topicmeta class="- map/topicmeta " data-topic-id="installing">
          <navtitle href="#unique_5" class="- topic/navtitle ">Installing</navtitle>
          ...
      </topicmeta>

      <topicref class="- map/topicref " href="#unique_6" type="task">
          <topicmeta class="- map/topicmeta " data-topic-id="installstorage">
              <navtitle href="#unique_6" class="- topic/navtitle ">Installing</navtitle>
                  ...
          </topicmeta>
               ...
      </topicref>
           ...
  </chapter>
```

For the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation type, the merged map is further processed resulting in a collection of HTML5 `<div>` elements. These elements preserve the original DITA `@class` attribute values and add a new value derived from the DITA element name.

```
<div class="- bookmap/bookmap map/map map bookmap" ...>

<div class="- front-page/front-page front-page"> ... </div>
<div class="- bookmap/frontmatter frontmatter"> ... </div>

<div class=" toc/toc toc">

 <div class="toc/toc-title toc-title" empty="true"/>

 <div class="- topic/title bookmap/booktitle booktitle">
      <div class="- topic/ph bookmap/booklibrary booklibrary">Retro Tools</div>
      <div class="- topic/ph bookmap/mainbooktitle mainbooktitle">Tasks</div>
      <div class="- topic/ph bookmap/booktitlealt booktitlealt">Product Tasks</div>
 </div>


 <div is-chapter="true"
  class="- map/topicref bookmap/chapter topicref chapter " href="#unique_5" type="topic">
  <div class="- map/topicmeta topicmeta" data-topic-id="installing">
      <div href="#unique_5" class="- topic/navtitle navtitle">Installing</div>
      ...
 </div>
```

```
<div class="- map/topicref  topicref chapter " href="#unique_6" type="task">
     <div class="- map/topicmeta topicmeta" data-topic-id="installstorage">
         <div href="#unique_6" class="- topic/navtitle navtitle">Installing</div>
             ...
</div>
             ...
</div>
          ...
</div>
```

Note:
The `<oxy:toc-title>` element is used as a placeholder for the name of the TOC. For instance, you can use the string "Contents", specified on a pseudo-element, in the CSS.

Table of Contents - Built-in CSS

The built-in CSS rules are in: `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-toc.css`.

Related Information:
Page Headers and Footers *(on page 1209)*

How to Increase TOC Depth

By default, only the first three levels of topics are displayed in the Table of Contents of the PDF output.

The CSS rule (see Table of Contents - Built-in CSS *(on page 1283)*) that hides topics on higher levels is:

```
/* Hide sections below level 3. */
*[class ~= "map/topicref"][is-chapter] >
*[class ~= "map/topicref"]:not([is-chapter]) >
*[class ~= "map/topicref"] >
*[class ~= "map/topicref"] {
  display: none;
}
```

If you want to increase the TOC depth so that topic references on level 3 or higher are visible, you can overwrite this rule in your customization CSS like this:

```
*[class ~= "map/topicref"][is-chapter] >
*[class ~= "map/topicref"]:not([is-chapter]) >
*[class ~= "map/topicref"] >
*[class ~= "map/topicref"]{
  display:block;
}
```

If the `args.css.param.numbering` parameter is set to a value other than `shallow`, you also need to add the following rules in your customization CSS:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep']
*[class ~= "map/topicref"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) >
*[class ~= "map/topicref"] >
*[class ~= "map/topicref"]
*[class ~= "map/topicref"] {
  counter-increment: toc-chapter-and-sections;
}

*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep']
*[class ~= "map/topicref"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) >
*[class ~= "map/topicref"] >
*[class ~= "map/topicref"]
*[class ~= "map/topicref"] >
*[class ~= "map/topicmeta"] + *[class ~= "map/topicref"] {
  counter-reset: toc-chapter-and-sections;
}

*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep']
*[class ~= "map/topicref"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) >
*[class ~= "map/topicref"] >
*[class ~= "map/topicref"] >
*[class ~= "map/topicref"]
*[class ~= "map/topicref"] > *[class ~= "map/topicmeta"]:before {
  content: counters(toc-chapter-and-sections, ".") ". ";
}
```

How to Style TOC Entries

Note:
Each of the items from the table of contents is an element that has the `map/topicref` class.

The following example uses the italic font for the label and changes the color and style of the connecting line between the title and the page number.

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following two selectors:

```
/* The toc item label - the topic title */
*[class ~= "map/topicref"] *[class ~= "topic/navtitle"] {
    font-style:italic;
    color: navy;
}
```

```
/* The dotted line between the topic name and the page number. */
*[class ~= "map/topicref"] *[class ~= "topic/navtitle"]:after {
    content: leader('-') target-counter(attr(href), page);
    color: navy;
}
```

And if you need to alter the indent of the nested table of content items, use the following selector:

```
*[class ~= "map/topicref"] *[class ~= "map/topicref"] {
    margin-left: 1em;
}
```

The numbers can be styled like this:

```
*[class ~= "map/topicref"] > *[class ~= "map/topicmeta"]:before,
*[class ~= "map/topicref"]
    > *[class ~= "map/topicmeta"] > *[class ~= "topic/navtitle"]:before{
  color:blue;
}
```

The following is an example of customizing the font size for the items representing chapters. The chapters are level one topics and are marked in the merged DITA document TOC with the attribute `@is-chapter`.

```
*[class ~= "map/topicref"][is-chapter = "true"]  > *[class ~= "map/topicmeta"] > *[class ~= "topic/navtitle"]{
  font-size:2em;
}
```

How to Change TOC Header

In the built-in CSS, there is a page named *table-of-contents*. The default is to have the word 'Contents' in its header (this is localized, using the `toc-header` string defined in the `p-18n.css`) alternating in the left or right side of the header:

```
@page table-of-contents:left {
    @top-left {
        content: string(toc-header) " | " counter(page, lower-roman);
        font-size: 8pt;
    }
}
@page table-of-contents:right {
     @top-right {
         content: string(toc-header) " | " counter(page, lower-roman);
         font-size: 8pt;
     }
}
```

If you need to change this string, or change the color, you should use the following `@page` selectors as a starting point in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
@page table-of-contents:left {
    @top-left {
        content: "My publication table of contents | " counter(page, lower-roman);
        color:red;
    }
}
@page table-of-contents:right {
     @top-right {
        content: "My publication table of contents | " counter(page, lower-roman);
        color:red;
     }
}
```

Important:

The first page from the table of contents does not have any content displayed in the header. The default CSS contains rules that disable the content. If you need to also display the numerals on the first page, use the following:

```
@page table-of-contents:first:left {
  @top-left {
    content: string(toc-header) " | " counter(page, lower-roman);
  }
}
@page table-of-contents:first:right {
   @top-right {
     content: string(toc-header) " | " counter(page, lower-roman);
   }
}
```

Related information

Localization *(on page 1426)*

How to Make the TOC Start on an Odd Page

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following snippet for the *table-of-contents* page:

```
@page table-of-contents{
    -oxy-initial-page-number: auto-odd;
}
```

Related Information:
Double Side Pagination *(on page 1295)*

How to Display a Topic Before the TOC

To display a topic before the *table-of-contents* page, follow these steps:

1. Make sure the topic is referenced on the first level in the DITA map.
2. Set the `@outputclass` to `before-toc` on the `<topicref>`.

```
<topicref href="pathToMyTopic" outputclass="before-toc">
```

Result: When the PDF is processed, the topic will automatically appear before the table of contents.

Related Information:
Controlling the Publication Content *(on page 1386)*

How to Remove Entries from the TOC

To remove entries from the table of contents, set the `@toc="no"` attribute on the topicrefs from the map that need to be removed. This is sometimes desirable for the topics listed in the frontmatter or backmatter when using a bookmap.

How to Display Subtopics in TOC

By default, subtopics (nested `<topic>` elements) are not displayed in the Table of Contents. To be displayed, they must be referenced in the DITA map:

```
<map>
  <title>Map</title>
  <topicref href="topic.dita">
    <topicref href="topic.dita#nested1">
      <topicref href="topic.dita#nested11"/>
    </topicref>
    <topicref href="topic.dita#nested2"/>
  </topicref>
</map>
```

where `nestedX` is the subtopic's `@id` value.

Note:
By adding the subtopics in the DITA map, they will also appear in the PDF bookmarks.

How to Hide the TOC

To hide the TOC, you have multiple options:

- [Recommended] Use a DITA `<bookmap>` instead of a `<map>`, and omit the `<toc>` element from the `<booklists>`. An example bookmap can be found in the DITA 1.3 Spec.
- Use the transformation parameter: **hide.frontpage.toc.index.glossary** *(on page 1174)*.
- Use a `display:none` property to hide the element that contains the TOC structure, and also remove it from the PDF bookmarks tree:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"] > *[class ~= "toc/toc"] {
  display:none;
}

*[class ~= "map/map"] > *[class ~= "toc/toc"] > *[class ~= "toc/title"]{
  bookmark-label: none;
  -ah-bookmark-label: none;
}
```

Related Information:
Transformation Parameters *(on page 1168)*

How to Display Short Descriptions in the TOC

To display the short descriptions from the topics in the table of contents, you need to make the `<shortdesc>` element visible.

The following example only makes the short descriptions associated with the chapters visible. The chapters are level one topics and are marked in the merged DITA document TOC with the attribute `@is-chapter`.

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following CSS selector:

```
*[class ~= "map/topicref"][is-chapter = "true"] > *[class ~= "map/topicmeta"] > *[class ~= "map/shortdesc"] {
  display:block; /* The default is none - the shortdesc is hidden. */
  color:gray;
}
```

Note:
If you need all the TOC item short descriptions to be visible, remove the `[is-chapter]` condition.

Table of Contents on a Page (Mini TOC)

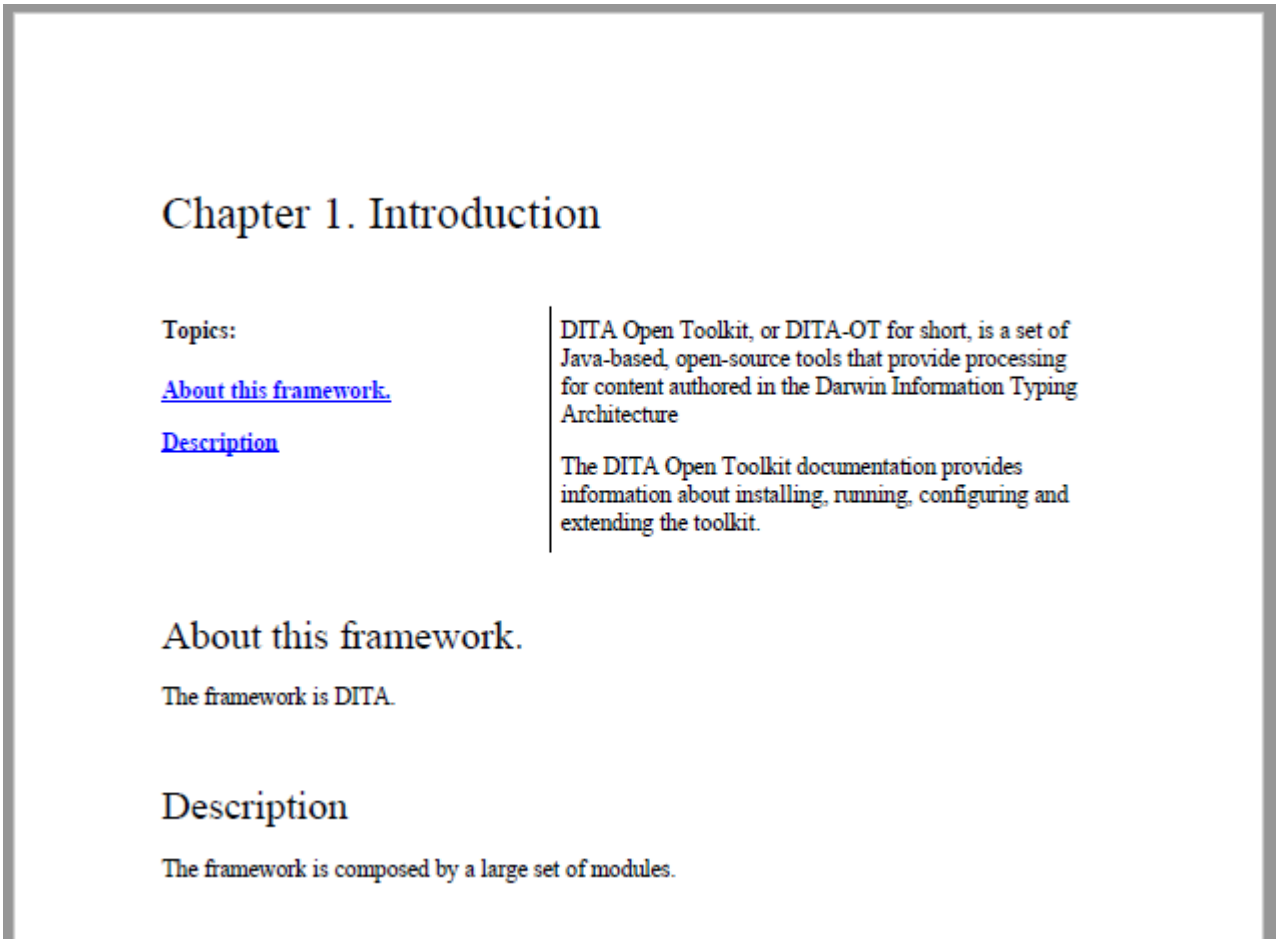
To add a mini table of contents for each chapter, you need to:

- Use DITA bookmaps instead of regular maps.
- Set the `args.chapter.layout` transformation parameter to either of the following values: **MINITOC** or **MINITOC-BOTTOM-LINKS**.

Note:
If the chapter does not have child topics, it will not have a mini TOC in the PDF output.

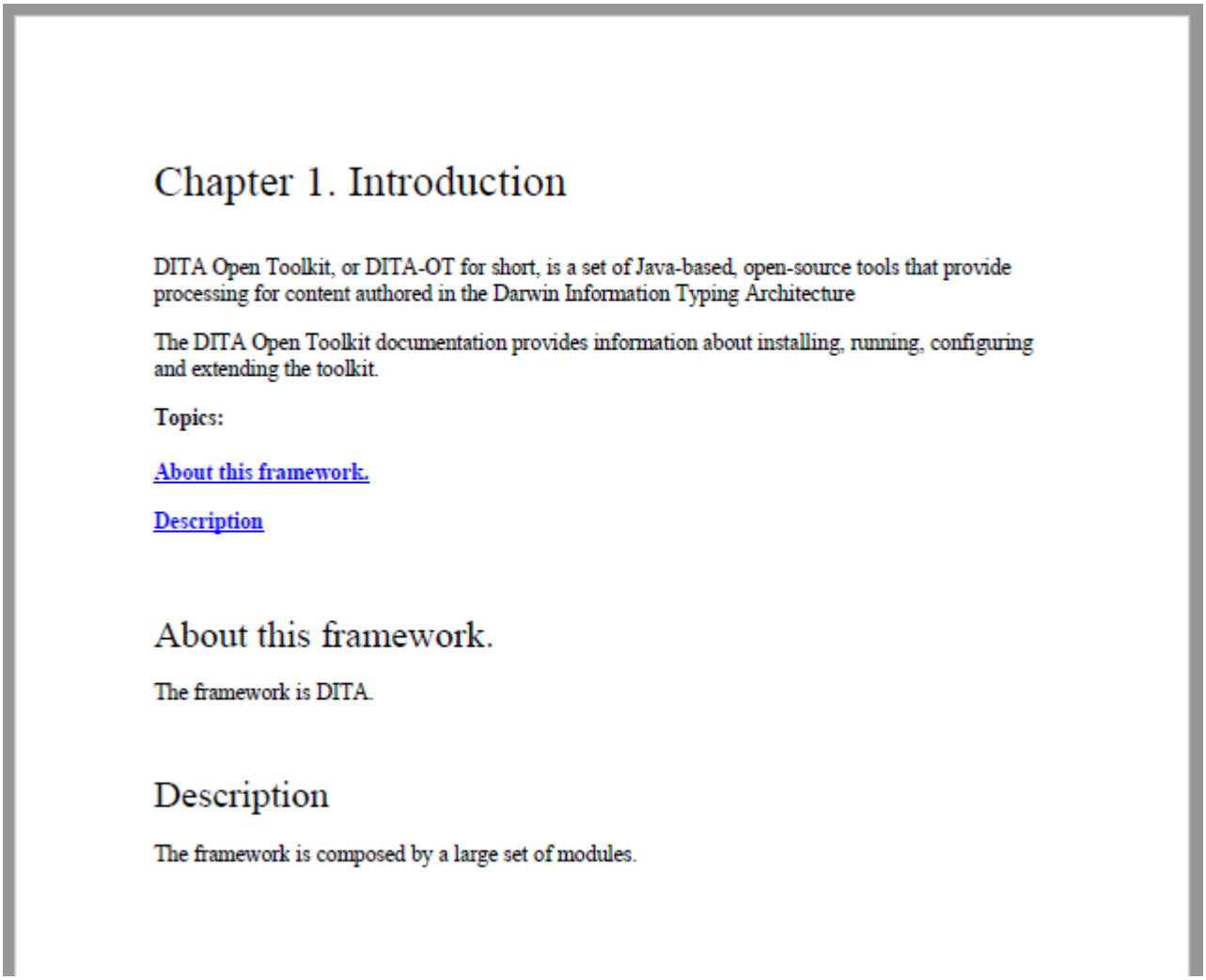
Layout for MINITOC

This table of contents is positioned between the chapter title and the chapter child topics. It consists of a list of links pointing to the child topics, positioned in the left side of the page, and a description in the right side. This content is collected from the topic file referenced by the chapter `<topicref>` in the map.



Layout for MINITOC-BOTTOM-LINKS

This table of contents is positioned between the chapter title and the chapter child topics. It consists of a chapter description and list of links pointing to the child topics, under the description. This description is collected from the topic file referenced by the chapter `<topicref>` in the map.



The above chapter example has the following DITA map fragment:

```
<chapter href="topics/chapter-introduction.dita">
  <topicref href="topics/introduction-about.dita" />
  <topicref href="topics/introduction-description.dita" />
</chapter>
```

The `chapter-introduction.dita` file provides the description content that is in the right side of the page. The children `<topicref>` elements generate the mini TOC links.

Table of Contents for Chapters (Mini TOC) - XML Fragment

In the merged XML file, the mini TOC is built from a related links section and some `<div>` elements that wrap the entire mini TOC and the description area.

chapter/minitoc

Wraps the entire structure, including the content of the chapter `<topicref>`.

chapter/minitoc-links

Wraps the `<related-links>` element. Note that the label of the related links list is internationalized.

chapter/minitoc-desc

Contains the entire content of the topic file referenced by the chapter `<topicref>` element in the map.

```
<div class="- topic/div chapter/minitoc ">
  <div class="- topic/div chapter/minitoc-links ">
    <related-links class="- topic/related-links ">
      <linklist class="- topic/linklist ">
        <desc class="- topic/desc ">
          <ph class="- topic/ph chapter/minitoc-label ">Topics: </ph>
        </desc>
        <link class="- topic/link " href="#unique_2" type="topic" role="child">
          <linktext class="- topic/linktext ">About this framework.</linktext>
        </link>
        <link class="- topic/link " href="#unique_3" type="topic" role="child">
          <linktext class="- topic/linktext ">Description</linktext>
        </link>
      </linklist>
    </related-links>
  </div>
  <div class="- topic/div chapter/minitoc-desc ">
    <shortdesc class="- topic/shortdesc ">DITA Open Toolkit, or DITA-OT for
      short, is a set of Java-based, open-source tools that provide processing
      for content authored in the Darwin Information Typing
      Architecture</shortdesc>
    <body class="- topic/body ">
      <p class="- topic/p ">The DITA Open Toolkit documentation provides information about
        installing, running, configuring and extending the toolkit.</p>
    </body>
  </div>
</div>
```

When using the `pdf-css-html5` transformation, this structure is converted to a set of HTML elements, preserving the class values:

```
<div class="- topic/div chapter/minitoc div minitoc">
 <div class="- topic/div chapter/minitoc-links div minitoc-links">
  <div class="wh_related_links">
   <nav role="navigation" class="- topic/related-links related-links">
    <div class="- topic/linklist linklist linklistwithchild">
     <div class="- topic/desc desc">
      <span class="- topic/ph chapter/minitoc-label ph minitoc-label">Topics: </span>
      </div>
```

```
        <ul class="linklist">
         <li class="- topic/link link ulchildlink" href="#unique_2"
           type="topic" role="child">
           <strong>
             <a href="#unique_2">About this framework.</a>
           </strong>
           <br/>
         </li>
         <li class="- topic/link link ulchildlink" href="#unique_3"
           type="topic" role="child">
           <strong>
             <a href="#unique_3">Description</a>
           </strong>
           <br/>
         </li>
        </ul>
       </div>
      </nav>
    </div>
  </div>
  <div class="- topic/div chapter/minitoc-desc div minitoc-desc">
    <div class="- topic/body body">
      <p class="- topic/shortdesc shortdesc">DITA Open Toolkit, or DITA-OT for short,
        is a set of Java-based, open-source tools that provide processing for content
        authored in the Darwin Information Typing Architecture</p>
      <p class="- topic/p p">The DITA Open Toolkit documentation provides information
        about installing, running, configuring and extending the toolkit.</p>
    </div>
  </div>
</div>
```

Table of Contents for Chapters (Mini TOC) - Built-in CSS

The built-in CSS rules are in: `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-chapters-minitoc.css`.

How to Style the Table of Contents for Chapters (Mini TOC)

Suppose that you do not want the links and the chapter description to be side by side, but instead place the links above the description. Also, you may choose to remove the label above the links and put all the links in a colored rectangle with decimal numbers before them.

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following selectors:

```
/* Change from inline to blocks to stack them one over the other. */

*[class~="chapter/minitoc-desc"],
*[class~="chapter/minitoc-links"] {
 display: block;
 width: 100%;
}
/* No need for the 'Topics:' label. */
*[class~="chapter/minitoc-links"] *[class~="topic/desc"] {
 display:none;
}

/* Add background for the links list. */
*[class~="chapter/minitoc-links"] {
 background-color:silver;
 padding:0.5em;
}

/* Remove the border and the padding from the description. We do not need that separator. */
*[class~="chapter/minitoc-desc"] {
 border-left:none;
 padding-left:0;
}

/* Add a number before each of the links. */
*[class~="chapter/minitoc-links"] *[class~="topic/link"] {
 display:list-item;
 list-style-type:decimal;
 margin-left:1em;
}
```

Related Information:

How to Speed up CSS Development and Debugging *(on page 1198)*

List of Tables/Figures

To activate these:

1. The map must be a DITA bookmap.
2. There must be a `<figurelist>` or `<tablelist>` in the *frontmatter* or *backmatter*. In the following example, both of the lists are added just after the table of contents (the `<toc>` element is the placeholder where the table of contents will be created):

```
<frontmatter>
   <booklists>
     <toc/>
     <figurelist/>
     <tablelist/>
   </booklists>
 </frontmatter>
```

How to Set a Header for a List of Tables/Figures

Suppose you want to set the headline "Figure List" on the second and subsequent pages associated to a list of figures and something similar for a list of tables.

Start by associating pages to the list of figures and tables from the merged file:

```
*[class~="placeholder/tablelist"] {
   page:tablelist;
   color:green;
}
*[class~="placeholder/figurelist"]{
   page:figurelist;
   color:green;
}
```

Note:
The "placeholder/tablelist" is the class name of the output generated from the `<tablelist>` bookmap element.

Then define the pages:

```
@page figurelist {
    @top-left { content: none; }
    @top-center { content: "Figure List"; }
    @top-right { content: none; }
}

@page figurelist:first {
    @top-left { content: none; }
    @top-center { content: none; }
    @top-right { content: none; }
}

@page tablelist {
```

```
    @top-left { content: none; }
    @top-center { content: "Table List"; }
    @top-right { content: none; }
}

@page tablelist:first {
    @top-left { content: none; }
    @top-center { content: none; }
    @top-right { content: none; }
}
```

How to Remove the Numbers Before a List of Tables or Figures

Suppose you need to remove the "Figure NN" prefix before each entry of a list of figures.

An entry in the generated list of figures from the merged map looks like this:

```
<entry class="- listentry/entry " href="#unique_6_Connect_42_fig_rjy_spn_xgb">
  <prefix class="- listentry/prefix ">Figure</prefix>
  <number class="- listentry/number ">4</number>
  <title class="- topic/title ">This is another figure</title>
</entry>
```

For the HTML merged map, the element names are all `<div>` elements but they have the same class.

So, to hide the label and the number, use:

```
*[class~="listentry/prefix"],
*[class~="listentry/number"] {
    display:none;
}
```

This works for both a list of tables and list of figures since the structure of each entry is the same.

To make it more specific (for example, to apply it only for the list of figures), you can add the selector:

```
*[class~="placeholder/figurelist"] *[class~="listentry/prefix"],
*[class~="placeholder/figurelist"] *[class~="listentry/number"] {
    display:none;
}
```

Double Side Pagination

By default, the processor generates pages that are mirror images (the right page has the header on the right side, the left pages have the header on the left side). The chapters follow one another with no constraint on the page side.

Note:
For a plain DITA map, the chapters are the `<topicref>` elements that are placed on the first level. For bookmaps, the chapters are the topics referenced by a `<chapter>` element.

This section contains information about how to position the start of the chapters on an odd folio number. Some of the CSS rules given here as examples are already listed in: `[INSTALLATION_DIRECTORY]/css/print/p-optional-double-side-pagination.css`. You may choose to import this file from your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*.

How to Start Chapters on Odd Pages

A common use case is to arrange the chapters of the publication to start on an odd page number.

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following:

```
@page chapter {
 -oxy-initial-page-number: auto-odd;
}
@page table-of-contents {
 -oxy-initial-page-number: auto-odd;
}
```

Supported values for `-oxy-initial-page-number` include: **auto**, **auto-even**, **auto-odd**, or a number.

How to Style the Empty (Blank) Pages

By making the chapters start on an odd page, the CSS processor might add blank pages to the previous page sequence as padding.

To style those blank pages add the following code in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
@page chapter:blank, table-of-contents:blank {
    @top-left      { content: none; }
    @top-center    { content: none; }
    @top-right     { content: none; }
    @bottom-left   { content: none; }
    @bottom-center { content: none; }
    @bottom-right  { content: none; }
}
```

Note:
This just removes the headers and footers, but you can use a background image or a header with "Intentionally left blank" text.

Related Information:
How to Add a Background Image for the Cover *(on page 1237)*

How to Force an Odd or Even Number of Pages in a Chapter

Another use case is to specify a number of pages for a section. Suppose that you have a table of contents that follows the cover page and you need to have an even number of pages. Hence, the next chapter would start on an even page.

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, use the `-oxy-force-page-count` property with an even value:

```
@page table-of-contents {
 -oxy-force-page-count: even;
}
```

Supported values for `-oxy-force-page-count` include: **even**, **odd**, **end-on-even**, **end-on-odd**, **auto**, **no-force**.

How to Style the First page of a Chapter

You can use the `:first` page rule selector to control how the first page of a chapter looks. Suppose that you have defined the following layout for your default page and you want to put the publication title (the `maptile` string) on the header of the first page (instead of the chapter name that is displayed on this page):

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following:

```
@page chapter:first {
 @top-right-corner { content: string(maptitle); }
 @top-left { content: none; }
}
```

Multiple Column Pages

This section contains information about how to handle pages that have multiple columns.

How to Use a Two Column Layout

Change Layout for Predefined Pages

First, you need to identify which of the pages need to be changed. Pages are already defined for the cover page, table of contents, chapter content, and others. The complete list is here: Default Page Definitions *(on page 1201)*.

Next, add the `column-count` and `column-gap` properties to that page. For example:

```
@page chapter{
  column-count:2;
  column-gap:1in;
}
```

If you need some of the elements to expand on all the columns, use the `column-span:all` CSS property. The next snippet makes the chapter titles span both columns:

```
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter] > *[class ~= "topic/title"] {
  column-span:all;
}
```

Limitation:
You cannot use multiple column configurations on the same page. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin only takes the `column-count` and `column-gap` properties into account if they are set on `@page` rules, not on elements from the content.

Change Layout for a Specific Topic

If you need to have a different column layout for just one topic, you can use the following technique:

1. Define an `outputclass` on the topic root element.

   ```
   <topic outputclass="two_columns" ...
   ```

2. Define a CSS rule that changes the `page` property for the matching element.

   ```
   *[class ~= "two_columns"],
   *[outputclass ~= "two_columns"]{
     page: two_column_page !important;
   }
   ```

   Tip:
   In the selector, use the `class` attribute for the HTML transformation, or `outputclass` for the direct transformation, or leave them both if you are not sure.

   Note:
   The topics from the first level use the `chapter` page. You must use `!important` because the built-in rules are more specific and you need to override the `page` property.

3. Define a page layout.

   ```
   @page two_column_page {
     column-count: 2;
   }
   ```

Note that the topic will be separated from other sibling topics with different page layouts by page breaks.

Change Column Breaks for Headings

If you need to start each topic on a new column, you can use the following technique:

Suppose you have the following map:

```
<map>
    <title>Map</title>
    <topicref href="first.dita">
        <topicref href="second.dita"/>
    </topicref>
    <topichead navtitle="Topichead">
        <topicref href="second.dita"/>
    </topichead>
</map>
```

You can use the following rules to get the chapter on the new column display:

```
@page {
  column-count: 2;
}
*[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"] > *[class ~= "topic/title"] {
  -oxy-column-break-before: always;
}
*[class ~= "topic/title"] + *[class ~= "topic/topic"] > *[class ~= "topic/title"] {
  -oxy-column-break-before: auto;
}
```

Each topic will be displayed on a new column except for topics that only have a title and no content.

Related Information:

Page Formatting in Oxygen PDF Chemistry

Multiple Page Formatting in Oxygen PDF Chemistry

Bookmarks

The PDF Bookmarks are used to generate a hierarchical structure similar to a table of contents in a specialized view of your PDF Reader.

By default, the titles defined in the topics are used as bookmark labels.

PDF Bookmarks - Built-in CSS

The PDF bookmarks are generated by matching the titles from the topics in the content. The built-in CSS rules are in: `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-bookmarks.css`.

How to Change the Bookmark Labels using the Navigation Title

To change the bookmark labels, you can specify a navigation title in a DITA map or topic.

This will be used as the bookmark label instead of the topic title in the table of contents and the bookmark views. There are two possibilities to do specify it:

1. Place a `<navtitle>` element in the topic reference in the DITA map:

```
...
<topicref href="topics/my_topic.dita" locktitle="yes">
   <topicmeta>
      <navtitle>Introduction</navtitle>
   </topicmeta>
</topicref>
...
```

Note:
As a best practice, a `@locktitle` attribute with the value 'yes' is needed to activate the navigation title. The plugin applies the navigation title even if the attribute is missing.

2. Place a `<navtitle>` element in the topic, as a title alternative.

```
<topic id="other_topic" xml:lang="en-us">
  <title>Normal Title</title>
  <titlealts>
    <navtitle>Navigation Title</navtitle>
  </titlealts>
  <body>
...
```

How to Control Bookmarks Depth and Sections Display in PDF.

By default, the PDF bookmarks are generated for up to 7 levels. If you need to limit them (for example, to 2 levels), you can use the following CSS rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] > *[class~="topic/title"],
*[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] > *[class~="topic/title"],
*[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] >
 *[class~="topic/title"],
*[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"]
 *[class~="topic/topic"] > *[class~="topic/title"],
*[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"]
 *[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] > *[class~="topic/title"] {
  bookmark-label:none;
}
```

These rules clear the labels generated by the titles starting with the depth of 3 (the topic nesting level is given by the selectors `*[class~="topic/topic"]`).

By default, the PDF bookmarks also include the sections. If you need to remove them, you can use the following CSS rule in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/section"] > *[class ~= "topic/title"],
*[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/section"] > *[class ~= "topic/title"],
*[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/section"] > *[class
 ~= "topic/title"],
*[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class
 ~= "topic/section"] > *[class ~= "topic/title"],
*[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class
 ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/section"] > *[class ~= "topic/title"],
*[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class
 ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/topic"] *[class ~= "topic/section"] > *[class ~= "topic/title"] {
  bookmark-label: none;
}
```

How to Specify the Open/Closed PDF Bookmark State

If you want to specify the initial state for the bookmarks (opened/expanded or closed/collapsed), you can use the `bookmark-state` property in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*.

For example, to specify that all bookmarks for the first three levels are opened (expanded) in the initial state, use:

```
*[class~="topic/topic"] > *[class~="topic/title"],
*[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] > *[class~="topic/title"],
*[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] *[class~="topic/topic"] > *[class~="topic/title"] {
    bookmark-state:open;
}
```

How to Remove the Numbering From the PDF Bookmarks

By default, the PDF bookmark labels are generated while taking the text set before the chapters titles into account. Since this usually contains the part, chapter, or section numbers, the PDF Bookmarks will make use of them.

The solution is to remove the `content(before)` from the `bookmark-label`, leaving just the `content(text)`.

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following CSS rules:

```
*[class~="topic/topic"] > *[class~="topic/title"] {
  bookmark-label: content(text);
  -ah-bookmark-label: content();
}
```

Important:

This is a simple example that does not use the possible navigation titles, just the content of the `<title>` element. Copy and modify the built-in CSS for the full CSS rule that matches the `<title>` and `<titlealts>` elements:

```
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/titlealts"]) > *[class~="topic/title"] {...}
```

Related Information:

Numbering *(on page 1269)*

Index

The content of an `<indexterm>` element is used to produce an index entry in the generated index. You can nest `<indexterm>` elements to create multi-level indexes. The content is not output as part of the topic content, only as part of the index tree.

To add an index to your publication, you just need to add `<indexterm>` elements inside the `<prolog>` section (inside a `<metadata>` element):

```
<title>The topic title.</title>
<prolog>
  <metadata>
    <keywords>
      <indexterm>Installing <indexterm>Water Pump</indexterm></indexterm>
    </keywords>
  </metadata>
</prolog>
<body>
  .....
```

or in the content itself:

```
...
<p>Open the lid then turn the body pump to the right.
<indexterm>Installing <indexterm>Water Pump</indexterm></indexterm>
</p>
...
```

If you are using a bookmap, you need to specify where the index list should be presented (for instance in the *backmatter* of the book. Technically, it is possible to also add it to the *frontmatter*, but this is unusual). This is done using an `<indexlist>` element in the `<booklists>` element (inside the `<backmatter>`):

```
<bookmap>
   ...
```

```
    <chapter href="tasks/troubleshooting.dita">
      ...
    </chapter>
    <backmatter>
        <booklists>
            <indexlist/>
        </booklists>
    </backmatter>
</bookmap>
```

For plain maps, the index list is automatically added at the end of the publication, with no need to modify the map.

Index - XML Fragment

In the merged map file *(on page 1195)*, the structure that holds the index tree is the `<opentopic-index:index.groups>` element.

```
<map class="- map/map " >
    <oxy:front-page>
        ...
    </oxy:front-page>
    <opentopic:map xmlns:opentopic="http://www.idiominc.com/opentopic">
        ...
    </opentopic:map>
    <topic class="- topic/topic ">
        <title class="- topic/title ">Request Support</title>
       ...
    </topic>
    <opentopic-index:index.groups id="d16e5548">
      ...
    </opentopic-index:index.groups>
</map>
```

Each of the groups contain:

- A label, the starting letter ("T" in the following example).
- A tree of `<opentopic-index:index.entry>` elements.

```
<opentopic-index:index.group>

 <opentopic-index:label>T</opentopic-index:label>

  <opentopic-index:index.entry value="table of contents">
    <opentopic-index:formatted-value>table of contents</opentopic-index:formatted-value>
```

```
    <opentopic-index:refID value="table of contents:">
        <oxy:index-link xmlns:oxy="http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author"
               href="#d16e3988"> [d16e3988]
        </oxy:index-link>
    </opentopic-index:refID>
    <opentopic-index:index.entry value="change header">
        <opentopic-index:formatted-value>change header</opentopic-index:formatted-value>
        <opentopic-index:refID value="table of contents:change header:">
           <oxy:index-link xmlns:oxy="http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author"
                href="#d16e4176">
                [d16e4176] </oxy:index-link>
        </opentopic-index:refID>
    </opentopic-index:index.entry>
    <opentopic-index:index.entry value="style">
        <opentopic-index:formatted-value>style</opentopic-index:formatted-value>
        <opentopic-index:refID value="table of contents:style:">
            <oxy:index-link xmlns:oxy="http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author"
                href="#d16e4120">
                [d16e4120] </oxy:index-link>
        </opentopic-index:refID>
  </opentopic-index:index.entry>
 </opentopic-index:index.entry>
</opentopic-index:index.group>
```

Each of the entries contain:

- The formatted value (`<opentopic-index:formatted-value>`).
- A link to the publication content (`<opentopic-index:refID>`/`<oxy:index-link>`).
- Possibly other child entries.

For the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation type, the merged map is further processed resulting in a collection of HTML5 `<div>` elements. These elements preserve the original DITA `@class` attribute values and add a new value derived from the DITA element name.

```
<div class="- map/map map" >
   <div class="front-page/front-page">
       ...
   </div>
   <div class="toc/toc toc">
       ...
   </div>
   <div class="- topic/topic topic">
       <div class="- topic/title title">Request Support</title>
      ...
```

```
    </div>
    <div class=" index/groups groups">
      ...
    </div>
</map>
```

The index group content becomes:

```
<div class=" index/group group">
  <div class=" index/label label">T</div>

  <div class=" index/entry entry">
    <div class=" index/formatted-value formatted-value">table of contents</div>
    <div class=" index/refid refid">
        <div class=" index/link link"
               href="#d16e3988"> [d16e3988]
        </div>
    </div>
    <div class=" index/entry entry">
        <div class=" index/formatted-value formatted-value">change header</div>
         <div class=" index/refid refid">
            <div class=" index/link link"
               href="#d16e4176"> [d16e4176] </div>
        </div>
    </div>
    <div class=" index/entry entry">
        <div class=" index/formatted-value formatted-value">style</div>
        <div class=" index/refid refid">
            <div class=" index/link link"
               href="#d16e4120"> [d16e4120] </div>
        </div>
    </div>
  </div>
</div>
```

Index - Built-in CSS

All index styling is found in: `[PLUGIN_DIR]css/print/p-index.css`.

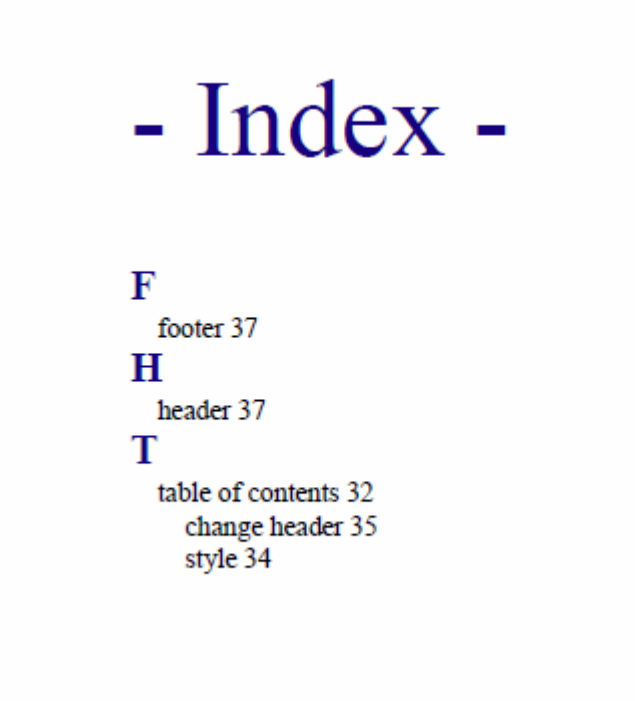
How to Style the Index Page Title and the Grouping Letters

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following CSS rules:

```
*[class ~= "index/groups"] *[class ~= "index/group"] *[class ~= "index/label"] {
    font-size:1.5em;
```

```
    color:navy;
}


*[class ~= "index/groups"]:before {
    content: "- Index - ";
    color:navy;
    font-size: 4em;
}
```

The result is:

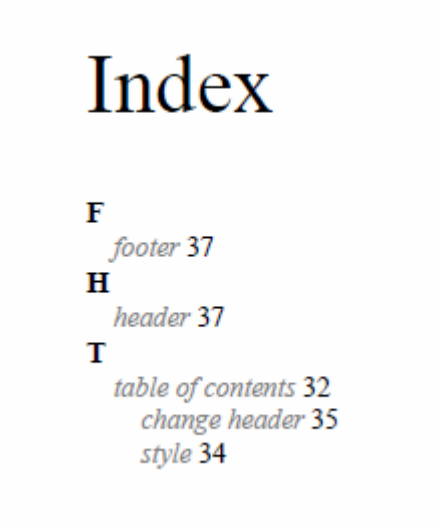


How to Style the Index Terms Labels

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following CSS rule:

```
*[class ~= 'index/groups'] *[class ~= 'index/formatted-value'] {
    font-style:oblique;
    color:gray;
}
```

The result is:



Index

F
footer 37
H
header 37
T
table of contents 32
change header 35
style 34

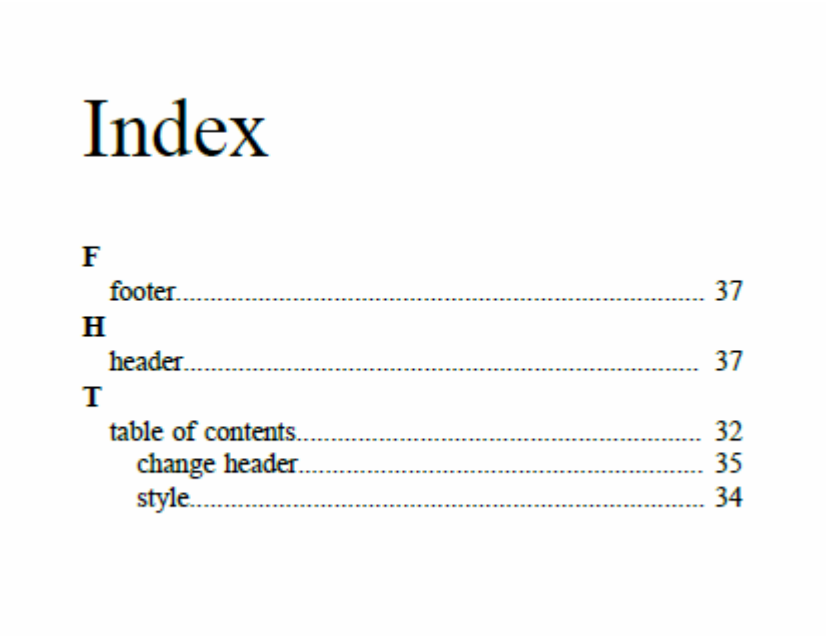
How to Add Filling Dots Between the Index Labels and the Page Numbers

Suppose you want the leader CSS content to generate a row of dots. It is necessary that the parent entry has the text justified.

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following CSS rule:

```
*[class~="index/formatted-value"],
*[class~="index/refid"] {
    display:inline;
}



/* Hide the sequences of links that actually do not contain links. */
*[class~="index/group"] *[class ~= "index/entry"] > *[class~="index/refid"]{
    display:none;
}
*[class~="index/group"] *[class ~= "index/entry"] > *[class~="index/refid"]:has(*[class~="index/link"]){
    display:inline;
}


*[class~="index/group"] *[class~="index/entry"] {
    text-align:justify;
}
*[class~="index/group"] *[class ~= "index/entry"] > *[class~="index/refid"]:before{
    content:leader('.');
}
```

The output now contains the dots:



How to Change the Index Page Number Format and Reset its Value

The page number is reset at the beginning of the index page by the built-in CSS rule:

```
*[class ~= "index/groups"] {

        counter-reset: page 1;

}
```

If you want to start the page counter from a different initial number, just change the value of this counter. For example, to continue the normal page counting, use:

```
*[class ~= "index/groups"] {

        counter-reset: none;

}
```

If you need to style the page number differently (for example, using decimals), add the following CSS rule in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
@page index {

        @bottom-center      {          content: counter(page, decimal) }

}
```

How to Display Index Terms and Page Numbers inline

By default, the page numbers that reference each index term are displayed beneath the term. This behavior can be overridden to render page numbers inline with their associated terms. The goal here is to render the following elements on the same line:

index/formatted-value

This element contains the index term text.

index/refid

This element contains the list of links for the given term (as page numbers).

To accomplish this, simply add the following CSS rule in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "index/formatted-value"],
*[class ~= "index/refid"] {
  display: inline;
}
```

How to Impose a Table-like Index Layout

For a more complex inline layout (requiring greater alignment constraint), using `inline-block` instead of `inline` provides a way to emulate a table-like appearance.

To implement this table layout, include the following CSS rule in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

Notes:

- The 45% fixed width is used (slightly under 50% to keep content on the same line despite possible margins/paddings).
- Hierarchical layout is achieved by applying progressive padding to the formatted value text.

```
*[class ~= "index/formatted-value"],
*[class ~= "index/refid"] {
  display: inline-block;
  width: 45%;
}

/* Hide the sequences of links that actually do not contain links. */
*[class ~= "index/groups"] *[class ~= "index/entry"] > *[class ~= "index/refid"] {
  display: none;
}
*[class ~= "index/groups"] *[class ~= "index/entry"] > *[class ~= "index/refid"]:has(*[class ~= "index/link"]) {
  display:inline-block;
}

/* Move the nesting of indexterms from margin to padding */
*[class ~= "index/groups"] *[class ~= "index/entry"] {
  margin-left: 0;
}
*[class ~= "index/groups"]
*[class ~= "index/entry"]
```

```
*[class ~= "index/formatted-value"] {
  padding-left: 0.2em;
}
*[class ~= "index/groups"]
*[class ~= "index/entry"]
*[class ~= "index/entry"]
*[class ~= "index/formatted-value"] {
  padding-left: 0.4em;
}
*[class ~= "index/groups"]
*[class ~= "index/entry"]
*[class ~= "index/entry"]
*[class ~= "index/entry"]
*[class ~= "index/formatted-value"] {
  padding-left: 0.6em;
}

/* Some styling */
*[class ~= "index/formatted-value"],
*[class ~= "index/refid"] {
  padding: 0.2em;
  background-color: #EEEEEE;
}
```

You will obtain this result:

Index

C

Close programs	8
Computer cover	7,8
configure	10, 10,10

D

database	8, 8, 8, 9, 10, 11,12

H

hard drive	7, 7, 7, 8, 10, 11,12

I

install	7, 8,9

M

maintain	11,11
hdd	
drive	11

To avoid bleeding of the index term label, you may need to mark it as being hyphenated:

```
*[class~="index/formatted-value"] {
    hyphens:auto;
}
```

To activate hyphenation, see: How to Enable Hyphenation for Entire Map *(on page 1321)*.

Appendices

The `<appendices>` element that is available in the DITA bookmap has a special behavior (based on its sibling nodes):

1. If the bookmap contains `<part>` elements, the `<appendices>` will behave as a part.
2. If the bookmap contains `<chapter>` (and no `<part>`) elements, the `<appendices>` will behave as a chapter.

Note:
The behavior includes page-break, numbering, and title rendering.

For example, if I define a bookmap with a `<part>` element, I will obtain:

```
<part>
  <chapter/>
    <topicref/>
  <chapter/>
</part>
```

```
<appendices>  <!-- Appendices behaves like a Part -->
  <appendix/>  <!-- Appendix behaves like a Chapter -->
  <appendix/>
</appendices>
```

For another example, if I define a bookmap with a `<chapter>` element only, I will obtain:

```
<chapter/>
  <topicref/>
<chapter/>
<appendices>  <!-- Appendices behaves like a Chapter -->
  <appendix/>  <!-- Appendix behaves like a TopicRef -->
  <appendix/>
</appendices>
```

Warning:
If the `<appendices>` element is not defined and the `<appendix>` is used directly instead, then it will behave like a *Part* or *Chapter* using the same pattern as for `<appendices>`.

How To Control Page Break Within Appendices

If you define a bookmap with `<appendices>` and some `<appendix>` elements, you may want the parent `<appendices>` to be on a separate page than its children. This is done automatically if the bookmap contains `<part>` elements. Otherwise, you may need to use the following in your CSS:

```
*[topicrefclass ~= "bookmap/appendix"]:first-of-type {
  break-before: always;
}
```

Footnotes

Footnotes are pieces of information that have several purposes, including citations, additional information (copyright, background), outside sources, and more. They are divided as follows:

- **The footnote call** - The number that remains in the content, usually superscripted.
- **The footnote marker** - The number displayed at the bottom of the page (the value matches the footnote call).
- **The footnote text** - The value of the `<fn>` element, also displayed at the bottom of the page.

Footnotes - Built-in CSS

Footnote properties are defined in `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-foot-notes.css`.

How to Change Style of the Footnote Markers and Footnote Calls

To bold the footnotes numbers, use some colors, and change the footnote marker, add the following rules to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "topic/fn"]:footnote-call {
  font-weight: bold;
  color:red;
}

*[class ~= "topic/fn"]:footnote-marker {
  content: counter(footnote) " / ";
  font-weight: bold;
  color:red;
}
```

To indent the footnote content displayed at the end of the page, add the following rules to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "topic/entry"] > *[class ~= "topic/fn"] {
  padding-left: 1in;
}

*[class ~= "topic/entry"] > *[class ~= "topic/fn"]:footnote-marker {
  margin-left: 1in;
}
```

Related Information:

Oxygen PDF Chemistry: Footnotes

How to Add a Separator Above the Footnotes

The `@footnote` part of a `@page` declaration controls the style of the separator between the page content and the footnotes. For the content, you should set a `leader`. The leader uses a letter or a line style to fill the entire width of the page.

```
@page {
  margin:0.5in;
  ...
  @footnote {
    content: leader(solid);
    color:silver;
  }
}
```

To create a dotted line, you can use the dot character: `leader('.')`. Other commonly used characters are: "-" (dash) and "_" (underscore).

How to Reset the Footnotes Counter

It is possible to reset the footnote counter. For example, if you want to reset the counter at the beginning of each chapter, add one of the following rules to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
@page chapter {
  counter-reset: footnote 1;
}
```

```
*[class ~= "bookmap/chapter"],
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter] {
  counter-reset: footnote 1;
}
```

In a deep numbering context, you need to use the following rule instead:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep'] *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) {
  counter-reset: section1 0 footnote 1;
}
```

or can mark any element with an `@outputclass` value, match that value, and reset the counter at any point in your counter:

```
<p outputclass="reset-footnotes"/>
```

```
*[outputclass ~= "reset-footnotes"] {
  counter-reset: footnote 1;
}
```

How to Display Footnotes Below Tables

In your PDF output, you may want to group all the footnotes contained in a table just below it instead of having them displayed at the bottom of the page.

To add this functionality, use an *Oxygen Publishing Template* and follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, you need to create one. For details, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xslt` folder inside the project root folder.
4. In the newly created folder, create an XSL file (for example, named `merged2mergedExtension.xsl`) with the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns:opentopic-func="http://www.idiominc.com/opentopic/exsl/function"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs opentopic-func"
  version="3.0">

  <!--
    Match only top level tables (i.e tables that are not nested in other tables),
    that contains some footnotes.
  -->
  <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, 'topic/table')]
    [not(ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'topic/table')])]
    [//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')]]">
    <xsl:next-match>
      <xsl:with-param name="top-level-table" select="." tunnel="yes"/>
    </xsl:next-match>
    <!-- Create a list with all the footnotes from the current table. -->
    <ol class="- topic/ol " outputclass="table-fn-container">
      <xsl:for-each select=".//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')]">
        <!--
          Try to preserve the footnote ID, if available, so that the xrefs will have a target.
        -->
        <li class="- topic/li " id="{if(@id) then @id else generate-id(.)}"
          outputclass="table-fn">
          <xsl:copy-of select="@callout"/>
          <xsl:apply-templates select="node()"/>
        </li>
      </xsl:for-each>
    </ol>
  </xsl:template>

  <!--
    The footnotes that have an ID must be ignored, they are accessible only
    through existing xrefs (already present in the merged.xml file).

    The above template already made a copy of these footnotes in the OL element
    so it is not a problem if markup is not generated for them in the cell.
  -->
  <xsl:template
    match="*[contains(@class, 'topic/entry')]//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')][@id]"/>
```

```
<!--
  The xrefs to footnotes with IDs inside table-cells. We need to recalculate
  their indexes if their referenced footnote is also in the table.
-->
<xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, 'topic/xref')][@type='fn']
  [ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'topic/entry')]]">
  <xsl:param name="top-level-table" tunnel="yes"/>
  <xsl:variable name="destination" select="opentopic-func:getDestinationId(@href)"/>
  <xsl:variable name="fn" select="
    $top-level-table//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')][@id = $destination]"/>
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$fn">
      <!-- There is a reference in the table, recalculate index. -->
      <xsl:variable name="fn-number" select="
        index-of($top-level-table//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')], $fn)"/>
      <xsl:copy>
        <xsl:apply-templates select="@*"/>
        <xsl:apply-templates select="$fn/@callout"/>
        <xsl:apply-templates select="node()
          except (text(), *[contains(@class, 'hi-d/sup')])"/>
        <sup class="+ topic/ph hi-d/sup ">
          <xsl:apply-templates select="child::*[contains(@class, 'hi-d/sup')]/@*"/>
          <xsl:value-of select="$fn-number"/>
        </sup>
      </xsl:copy>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <!-- There is no reference in the table, keep original index. -->
      <xsl:next-match/>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>


<!--
  The footnotes without ID inside table-cells. They are copied in the OL element, but have
  no xrefs pointing to them (because they have no ID), so xrefs are generated.
-->
<xsl:template
  match="*[contains(@class, 'topic/entry')]//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')][not(@id)]">
  <!-- Determine the footnote index in the document order. -->
  <xsl:param name="top-level-table" tunnel="yes"/>
  <xsl:variable name="fn-number" select="
```

```
      index-of($top-level-table//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')], .)"/>
    <xref type="fn" class="- topic/xref "
      href="#{generate-id(.)}" outputclass="table-fn-call">
      <xsl:copy-of select="@callout"/>
      <!-- Generate an extra <sup>, identical to what DITA-OT generates for other xrefs. -->
      <sup class="+ topic/ph hi-d/sup ">
        <xsl:value-of select="$fn-number"/>
      </sup>
    </xref>
  </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the *.opt* file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged` XSLT extension point:

```
<publishing-template>
 ...
 <pdf>
  ...
  <xslt>
    <extension
      id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged"
      file="xslt/merged2mergedExtension.xsl"/>
   </xslt>
```

6. Create a `css` folder in the publishing template directory. In this directory, save a custom CSS file with rules that style the *glossary* structure. For example:

```
/* Customize footnote calls, inside the table. */
*[outputclass ~= 'table-fn-call'] {
  line-height: none;
}
*[class ~= "topic/table"] *[class ~= "topic/xref"][type = 'fn'][callout] *[class ~= "hi-d/sup"] {
  content: oxy_xpath("ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'topic/xref')]/@callout");
}

/* Customize the list containing all the table footnotes. */
*[outputclass ~= 'table-fn-container'] {
  border-top: 1pt solid black;
  counter-reset: table-footnote;
}

/* Customize footnotes display, below the table. */
```

```
*[outputclass ~= 'table-fn'] {
  font-size: smaller;
  counter-increment: table-footnote;
}
*[outputclass ~= 'table-fn']::marker {
  font-size: smaller;
  content: "(" counter(table-footnote) ")";
}
*[outputclass ~= 'table-fn'][callout]::marker {
  content: "(" attr(callout) ")";
}

/* Customize xrefs pointing to footnotes, inside the table. */
*[class ~= "topic/table"] *[class ~= "topic/xref"][type = 'fn'] {
  color: unset;
  text-decoration: none;
}
*[class ~= "topic/table"] *[class ~= "topic/xref"][type = 'fn']:after {
  content: none;
}
*[class ~= "topic/table"] *[class ~= "topic/xref"][type = 'fn'] *[class ~= "hi-d/sup"]:before {
  content: "(";
}
*[class ~= "topic/table"] *[class ~= "topic/xref"][type = 'fn'] *[class ~= "hi-d/sup"]:after {
  content: ")";
}
```

7. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the `.opt` file) and reference your custom CSS file in the `resources` element:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <resources>
      <css file="css/custom.css"/>
    </resources>
```

8. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
9. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
10. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

Hyphenation

Hyphenation specifies how words should be hyphenated when text wraps across multiple lines.

The transformation plugin uses the capabilities of **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** processor to perform hyphenation.

Hyphenation Dictionaries

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides built-in hyphenation patterns for the following languages:

Code	Language
da	Danish
de	German
de_CH	German (Switzerland)
en	English
es	Spanish
fr	French
it	Italian
nb	Norwegian Bokmål
nl	Dutch
pt	Portuguese
ru	Russian
sv	Swedish
th	Thai

The built-in hyphenation pattern license terms are listed in the LICENSE.txt files in the `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/lib` folder. Most of them comply with the *LaTex* distribution policy.

How to Install a Hyphenation Dictionary

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the *TeX* hyphenation dictionaries converted to XML by the *OFFO* project: https://sourceforge.net/projects/offo/.

The `.xml` files allow you to access the licensing terms and you can use them as a starting point to create customized dictionaries (see How to Alter a Hyphenation Dictionary *(on page 1320)*).

The `.hyp` files are the compiled dictionaries that the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin actually uses.

One simple way to add more dictionaries:

1. Download and extract the `offo-hyphenation-compiled.zip` (or the `offo-hyphenation.zip`) file.
2. Copy and extract the `fop-hyph.jar` file (containing the dictionaries bundle) into a directory in your project.

3. If you just need a single dictionary, copy the `.hyp` or `.xml` file extracted from the above jar.
4. Reference the directory using the `args.hyph.dir` parameter.

How to Alter a Hyphenation Dictionary

You can copy the dictionaries you need to change in another directory, then use the `args.hyph.dir` parameter to reference it inside your transformation.

Each file is named with the language code and has the following structure:

```
<hyphenation-info>


<hyphen-min before="2" after="3"/>


<exceptions>
o-mni-bus
...
</exceptions>


<patterns>
préémi3nent.
proémi3nent.
surémi3nent.
....
</patterns>


</hyphenation-info>
```

To change the behavior of the hyphenation, you can modify either the patterns or the exceptions sections:

exceptions

Contains the list of words that are not processed using the patterns, each on a single line. Each of the words should indicate the hyphenation points using the hyphen ("-") character. If a word does not contain this character, it will not be hyphenated.

For example, `o-mni-bus` will match the `omnibus` word and will indicate two possible hyphenation points.

Note:
Compound words (i.e. e-mail) cannot be controlled by exception words.

patterns

Contains the list of patterns, each on a single line. A pattern is a word fragment, not a word. The numbers from the patterns indicate how desirable a hyphen is at that position.

For example, `tran3s2act` indicates that the possible hyphenation points are "*tran-s-act*" and the preferable point is the first one, having the higher score of "3".

How to Enable Hyphenation for Entire Map

To enable hyphenation for your entire map:

1. Make sure you set an `@xml:lang` attribute on the root of your map, or set the `default.language` parameter in the transformation.
2. In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add:

```
:root {
    hyphens: auto;
}
```

3. To except certain elements from being hyphenated, use `hyphens:none`. The following example excludes the `<keyword>` elements from being hyphenated:

```
*[class ~= "topic/keyword"] {
    hyphens: none;
}
```

How to Enable/Disable Hyphenation for an Element

1. Make sure you set an `@xml:lang` attribute on the root of your map, or set the `default.language` parameter in the transformation.
2. You have two options to control hyphenation inside an XML element:

CSS Approach

Use the `hyphens` property.

For example, if you want to enable hyphenation in codeblocks:

```
*[class~="pr-d/codeblock"] {
    hyphens: auto;
}
```

If you want to disable hyphenation inside tables:

```
*[class~="topic/table"] {
    hyphens: none;
}
```

Attribute Approach

Use the `@outputclass="hyphens"` or `@outputclass="no-hyphens"` attributes/values.

For example, if you want to enable hyphenation in codeblocks:

```
<codeblock outputclass="hyphens">

  ...

</codeblock>
```

If you want to disable hyphenation inside tables:

```
<table outputclass="no-hyphens" ...>

  ...

</table>
```

Note:

The default built-in CSS enables hyphenation for tables:

```
*[class ~= "topic/table"] {

    hyphens: auto;

}
```

Related information

How to Enable Line Wrap in Code Phrases *(on page 1377)*

How to Disable Hyphenation for a Word

How to Define Hyphenation for a Specific Word

1. Create a new hyphenation dictionary *(on page 1320)*.
2. Add the word under the `<exceptions>` section using hard hyphen symbols between its segments.
3. To make sure the words from your document match against the ones from the "exceptions", make sure that you add capitalized/lower case variants as well.

Related information

How to Disable Hyphenation for a Word

How to Alter a Hyphenation Dictionary *(on page 1320)*

How to Enable/Disable Hyphenation for an Element *(on page 1321)*

How to Force or Avoid Line Breaks at Hyphens

It is possible to force or avoid line breaks inside words with hyphens (`U+2010`). This can be useful, for example, inside tables that have product references if you want the display to remain on a single line (or to split it on multiple lines). To achieve this, you can use the `-oxy-break-line-at-hyphens` property:

The accepted values are:

auto

Words are hyphenated automatically according to an algorithm that is driven by a hyphenation dictionary. This can lead to line breaks at hyphens.

avoid

Words are still hyphenated automatically except no line break will occur on hyphens.

always

Words are still hyphenated automatically except line breaks will be forced on hyphens.

Example:

Suppose you have a products table like this:

```
<table>
  <row>
    <cell>Product-1233-55-88</cell>
    <cell>120</cell>
  <row>
  <row>
    <cell>Product-1244-66-99</cell>
    <cell>112</cell>
  <row>
</table>
```

and the following rule in a CSS stylesheet:

```
table {
  -oxy-break-line-at-hyphens: avoid;
}
```

In the output, the list of product references will be displayed in a single line. On the contrary, setting the property value to `always`, will force a break after each hyphen.

Accessibility

By default, the PDF documents produced using this plugin are partially accessible in the sense that most of the paragraphs, tables, lists, headers, and footers are tagged automatically so a PDF reader can use this information to present the content.

Related Information:

Oxygen PDF Chemistry: Accessibility

Accessibility - Built-in CSS

Accessibility properties are defined in `[PLUGIN_DIR]css/print/p-accessibility.css`.

How to Create Fully Accessible Documents

To make your documents fully accessible (**PDF/UA1** compliant), do the following:

1. The accessibility standard requires that all the fonts be embedded in the PDF. To force font embedding, you have to specify fonts for all elements and for all page margin boxes in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*. For instance, you can use:

```
body { font-family: Arial }


code { font-family: "Courier New" }


*[class ~= "pr-d/codeph"],
*[class ~= "pr-d/codeblock"],
*[class ~= "sw-d/filepath"] {
  font-family: "Courier New";
}


@page {
  @top-left {font-family: Arial }
  @top-right {font-family: Arial }
  @top-center {font-family: Arial }
  @top-left-corner {font-family: Arial }
  @top-right-corner {font-family: Arial }


  @bottom-left {font-family: Arial }
  @bottom-right {font-family: Arial }
  @bottom-center {font-family: Arial }
  @bottom-left-corner {font-family: Arial }
  @bottom-right-corner {font-family: Arial }
}
```

2. Create a new transformation scenario (based on the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** or the **DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** built-in scenario).
3. In the **Parameters** tab, change the value of the `pdf.accessibility` parameter to **yes**.
4. Run the transformation scenario.

Related Information:

Oxygen PDF Chemistry: Fully Accessible PDF (PDF/UA1)

Archiving

Your PDF files may need to be archived for security or legal reasons. In this case, the generated file must be compliant to the PDF/A ISO standard.

Related Information:

Oxygen PDF Chemistry: Archiving

How to Allow Document Archiving

To make your documents archive-able (PDF/A compliant), do the following:

1. The archiving standard requires that all the fonts be embedded in the PDF. To force font embedding, you have to specify fonts for all elements and for all page margin boxes in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*. For instance, you can use:

```
body { font-family: Arial }


@page {
    @top-left {font-family: Arial }
    @top-right {font-family: Arial }
    @top-center {font-family: Arial }
    @top-left-corner {font-family: Arial }
    @top-right-corner {font-family: Arial }


    @bottom-left {font-family: Arial }
    @bottom-right {font-family: Arial }
    @bottom-center {font-family: Arial }
    @bottom-left-corner {font-family: Arial }
    @bottom-right-corner {font-family: Arial }
}
```

2. Create a new transformation scenario, based on the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** built-in scenario.
3. In the **Parameters** tab, select a value for the `pdf.archiving.mode` parameter from the list.
4. Run the transformation scenario.

Fonts

Fonts are an important part of the publication. Your font selection should take into consideration both design and the targeted ranges of characters.

Notes:

- Before using a font, make sure you have the permissions to use it and make sure you comply with all the license terms.
- When installing a font on Windows, make sure you select the **Install for all users** option.

To use them in the customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

- You can place the font files in the same folder as your CSS and use a @font-face definition to reference them.
- You can use web fonts (for example, Google Fonts), and import the CSS snippet into your CSS.
- You can use system fonts.

All these techniques are explained in: **Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Manual: Fonts**.

How to Set Fonts in Titles and Content

Suppose that in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, you have defined your font (for example, *Roboto*) using a Google web font:

```
https://fonts.googleapis.com/css2?family=Roboto:ital,wght@0,400;0,700;1,400;1,700&display=swap
```

You can force a font on all elements, then style the ones that need to be different. The advantage of this method is that you do not need to trace all elements that have a font family defined in the built-in CSS files, you just reset them all.

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add an `!important` rule that associates a font to all the elements from the document:

```
* {
  font-family: "Roboto", sans-serif !important;
}
```

Note:
If you want to use the `:root` selector instead of the `*` sector, without the `!important` qualifier, the elements that have a predefined font specified in the built-in CSS will keep that font. If your content uses non-Latin glyphs, it is possible that the built-in fonts do not render them.

Next, if you want to use another font for the document headings, your customization CSS *(on page 1193)* should contain the following rule:

```
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page-title"],
*[class ~= "topic/title"] {
  font-family: "Roboto", sans-serif !important;
  font-weight: bold;
}
```

Then, identify the selectors for the elements that need to be styled with a different font than the one associated above. For information on how to do this, see: Debugging the CSS *(on page 1195)*.

For example, if you want the titles or the pre-formatted text to have a different font from the rest, matched by the above `*` selector, you need to use more specific CSS selectors:

```
*[class~="pr-d/codeph"],
*[class~="topic/pre"] {
```

```
  font-family: monospace !important;
}
```

Important:
These settings do not apply to page margin boxes, only to the text inside the page. If you also want to change the font used in headers and footers, see: How to Change the Font of the Headers and Footers *(on page 1210)*.

Related information
How to Change the Font of the Headers and Footers *(on page 1210)*

How to Use Fonts for Symbols

For some specific symbols (e.g. arrows), you must use a font or a sequence of fonts that cover the needed character ranges. As an example, suppose the right arrow character is used in a definition list like this:

```
<dlentry>
  <dt>&#8594;</dt>
  <dd><ph>This is the right arrow.</ph></dd>
</dlentry>
```

If you are using the *Roboto* font, the character is not found, the # symbol is used, and a warning is thrown (see also Glyph Not Available in Font *(on page 1431)*):

```
[CH] Glyph "?" (0x2192, arrowright) not available in font "Roboto-Bold".
```

The PDF output will then look like this:

```
  #
    This is the right arrow.
```

To solve this issue, you can use *Segoe UI* as a fallback font. In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add:

```
*[class ~= "topic/dl"] {
  font-family: "Roboto", "Segoe UI";
}
```

To change the font for the entire publication, not just an element, you can use:

```
:root {font-family:  "Roboto", "Segoe UI" !important; }

@page {
    @top-left {font-family:  "Roboto", "Segoe UI" !important; }
    @top-right {font-family:  "Roboto", "Segoe UI" !important; }
    @top-center {font-family:  "Roboto", "Segoe UI" !important; }
    @top-left-corner {font-family:  "Roboto", "Segoe UI" !important; }
    @top-right-corner {font-family:  "Roboto", "Segoe UI" !important; }
```

```
    @bottom-left {font-family:  "Roboto", "Segoe UI" !important; }
    @bottom-right {font-family:  "Roboto", "Segoe UI" !important; }
    @bottom-center {font-family:  "Roboto", "Segoe UI" !important; }
    @bottom-left-corner {font-family:  "Roboto", "Segoe UI" !important; }
    @bottom-right-corner {font-family:  "Roboto", "Segoe UI" !important; }
}
```

Tip:
It is possible to use a generic family name as fallback (like `serif`, `sans-serif` or `monospace`) to call upon the processor's default fallback fonts system.

How to Use Fonts for Asian Languages

For Asian languages, you must use a font or a sequence of fonts that cover the needed character ranges. If the characters are not found, the # symbol is used.

When you specify a sequence of fonts, if the glyphs are not found in the first font, the next font is selected, and so on until one is found that includes all the glyphs. A common font sequence for Asian languages is as follows:

```
font-family: Calibri, SimSun, "Malgun Gothic", "Microsoft JhengHei";
```

To apply this font sequence, see: How to Set Fonts in Titles and Content *(on page 1326)*.

Some of the Asian fonts do not have italic, bold, or bold-italic variants. In this case, you may use the regular font file with multiple font face definitions to simulate (synthesize) the missing variants. You need to use the `-oxy-simulate-style:yes` CSS property in the font face definition as explained in: Using Simulated/Synthetic Styles in Oxygen Chemistry.

How to Use Asian Fonts in Linux

For Asian languages on Linux distributions, **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** automatically uses `DejaVu` and `Noto CJK` as fallback fonts for Serif, Sans-Serif, and Monospace content.

Warning:
On some distributions, the `Noto CJK` fonts are not available. In this case, you need to install them using the system package manager:

- `fonts-noto-cjk` on Debian family distributions (e.g. Ubuntu).
- `google-noto-cjk-fonts` on Red Hat family distributions (e.g. CentOS).

How to Add a New Asian Font

If you want to add a specific font for Asian languages, you need to declare it inside your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*. The following example uses the Noto Sans Tamil font-family:

```
/* Font Declaration */
@font-face {
    font-family: "Noto Sans Tamil";
    font-style: normal;
    font-weight: 400;
    src: url(../fonts/ttf/notosanstamil/NotoSansTamil-Regular.ttf);
}

@font-face {
    font-family: "Noto Sans Tamil";
    font-style: normal;
    font-weight: 700;
    src: url(../fonts/ttf/notosanstamil/NotoSansTamil-Bold.ttf);
}

/* Font Usage */
* {
    font-family: sans-serif, "Noto Sans Tamil";
}
```

How to Set Fonts for Displaying Music

Music is rendered as normal text in most fonts, but some of them will render them as musical glyphs. For example, the *MusGlyphs* font converts the text to music and adjusts it to the surrounding text.

This font is divided in two sub-fonts that act for each of the following categories:

- **MusGlyphs** - Converts all characters that match a musical pattern into music glyphs. It should be used inside the elements that contain only music.
- **MusGlyphs-Text** - Converts only the text prefixed with the `@` symbol into music glyphs. The remaining text is displayed normally.

To use this font, you simply need to declare each sub-font then use them in appropriate elements:

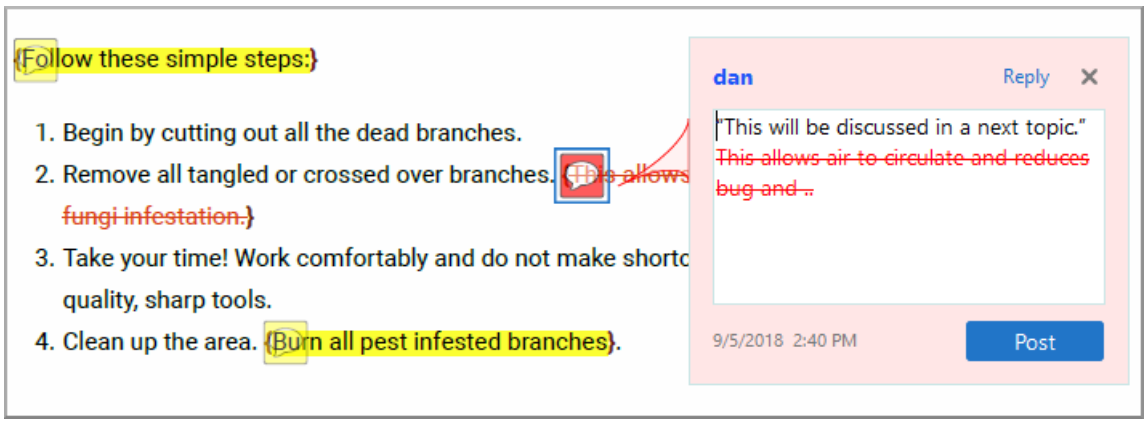
```
@font-face {
  font-family: MusGlyphs;
  font-style: normal;
  font-weight: 400;
  src: url(../fonts/otf/musglyphs/MusGlyphs.otf);
}
```

```
@font-face {
  font-family: MusGlyphs-Text;
  font-style: normal;
  font-weight: 400;
  src: url(../fonts/otf/musglyphs/MusGlyphs-Text.otf);
}
@font-face {
  font-family: MusGlyphs-Text;
  font-style: normal;
  font-weight: bold;
  src: url(../fonts/otf/musglyphs/MusGlyphs-TextBold.otf);
}

/*
 * All the elements are displayed with the MusGlyphs-Text.
 * If a text is prefixed with @, music will be displayed.
 */
body {
  font-family: MusGlyphs-Text, serif;
}

/* Elements with @outputclass="music" contain only music. */
*[outputclass ~= "music"] {
  font-family: MusGlyphs, serif;
}
```

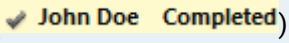
Comments, Highlights, and Tracked Changes

The comments and tracked changes can be made visible in the PDF output by setting the `show.changes.and.comments` transformation parameter to `yes`.

Figure 251. Chemistry Annotations in Acrobat Reader



By default, they are shown as PDF text annotations (sticky notes). These are graphical markers in the document content and are also listed in the **Comments** section when opening the output file in Acrobat Reader.

Note:
Comments with the **Mark as Done** flag selected appear with a check mark in the **Comments** section and with a **Completed** label (

).

To avoid rendering the elements as PDF annotations and show them as footnotes instead, you can use the `show.changes.and.comments.as.pdf.sticky.notes` transformation parameter set to `no`.

The comments and changes are included in the merged map file *(on page 1195)* either as XML elements (`<oxy-insert>`, `<oxy-delete>`, `<oxy-comment>`, `<oxy-attributes>`) in the case of the XML merged map, or as HTML elements with similar classes (`oxy-insert`, `oxy-delete`, `oxy-comment`, `oxy-attributes`) in the case of the HTML merged map. Sub-elements contain meta-information about each change.

Tip:
These elements are automatically recognized and transformed in PDF annotations when using Chemistry as PDF processor.

Note:
The inserted text, deleted text, and deleted markup are included in the sticky notes, you can change this behavior by using the `show.changed.text.in.pdf.sticky.notes.content` parameter *(on page 1176)*.

Related Information:
Transformation Parameters *(on page 1168)*
Debugging the CSS *(on page 1195)*

Comments and Tracked Changes - Built-in CSS

The built-in CSS that controls the way tracked changes and comments are displayed is found in: `[PLUGIN_DIR]css/print/p-side-notes.css`.

Comments and Tracked Changes - HTML Fragment

This section contains information about how each type of tracked change is structured in the merged map HTML file *(on page 1195)*.

Insertions

For an insertion type of tracked change, the structure that defines the insertion details is inside a *range* (`oxy-range-start` to `oxy-range-end`), the inserted text is highlighted by a `<span>` element with the class `oxy-insert-hl`, and the details are stored in a `<span>` element with the `oxy-insert` class.

```
<span class="oxy-range-start" id="sc_1" hr_id="1"/>

   <span class="oxy-insert" href="#sc_1" hr_id="1">
       <span class="oxy-author">dan</span>
       <span class="oxy-content">insert</span>
       <span class="oxy-date">2018/03/15</span>
       <span class="oxy-hour">09:38:29</span>
       <span class="oxy-tz">+02:00</span>
   </span>
   <span class="oxy-insert-hl">This is an insert!!</span>

<span class="oxy-range-end" hr_id="1"/>
```

Comments

Similar to insertions, comments are defined in a *range* (`oxy-range-start` to `oxy-range-end`), the comment details in an element with the class `oxy-comment`, and the highlighted content is wrapped in the `oxy-comment-hl` element.

```
<span class="oxy-range-start" id="sc_1" hr_id="1"/>

    <span class="oxy-comment" href="#sc_1" hr_id="1">
          <span class="oxy-author">dan</span>
          <span class="oxy-comment-text">This is a comment.</span>
          <span class="oxy-date">2018/03/15</span>
          <span class="oxy-hour">09:56:59</span>
          <span class="oxy-tz">+02:00</span>
    </span>

    <span class="oxy-comment-hl">The commented text.</span>

<span class="oxy-range-end" hr_id="1"/>
```

Note:

Comments that are marked as done have a `flag="done"` attribute:

```
<span class="oxy-comment" href="#sc_6" hr_id="6" flag="done">
```

Attribute changes

The attribute changes are more complex. The range is empty, and is directly above the affected element (the one that has modified attributes). The element with the class `oxy-attributes` contains details about multiple attribute changes, each stored in an element with the class `oxy-attribute-change`.

```
<element>


  <span class="oxy-range-start" id="sc_3" hr_id="3"/>
  <span class="oxy-range-end" hr_id="3"/>


  <span class="oxy-attributes" href="#sc_3" hr_id="3">


     <span class="oxy-attribute-change" type="inserted" name="platform">
          <span class="oxy-author">dan</span>
          <span class="oxy-current-value">windows</span>
          <span class="oxy-date">2018/03/15</span>
          <span class="oxy-hour">10:05:04</span>
          <span class="oxy-tz">+02:00</span>
     </span>
    ....
     <span class="oxy-attribute-change" type="removed" name="audience">
        ....
     </span>
  </span>
...
</element>
```

Deletions

For a deletion, there are some elements that define the start and end of the deletion, and the highlighted text is wrapped in an element with the class `oxy-delete-hl`.

```
   <span class="oxy-range-start" id="sc_2" hr_id="2"/>
   <span class="oxy-delete-hl"> This is a deleted text. </span>
   <span class="oxy-range-end" hr_id="2"/>
```

There is a structure that offers details about the deletion change, using the element with the class `oxy-delete`. This is linked to the above deletion range by the same ID value:

```
   <span class="oxy-delete" href="#sc_2" hr_id="2">
      <span class="oxy-author">dan</span>
      <span class="oxy-content"><image href="../img/ex.gif"></span>
      <span class="oxy-date">2018/03/14</span>
      <span class="oxy-hour">11:38:06</span>
```

```
    <span class="oxy-tz">+02:00</span>
 </span>
```

Colored Highlights

To show some text as highlighted with a background color:

```
<span class="oxy-color-hl" color="rgba(140,255,140,50)">Some colored text.</span>
```

How to Style Tracked Changes or Comments

Here are some examples showing how to customize tracked changes and highlighted text:

- If you want to change the highlighted text color from the document content, use the `@class="oxy-comment-hl"` attribute (or `@class="oxy-delete-hl"`, `@class="oxy-insert-hl"`):

  ```
  .oxy-comment-hl {
    color:magenta;
  }
  ```

- If you want to change the range labels indicating the start or the end of a change (by default, formatted like this: "[n]...[/n]" where n is the change number), you can use the following selectors:

  ```
  .oxy-range-start:before {
    content:'[START]';
    color:red;
  }
  .oxy-range-end:before {
    content:'[END]';
    color:red;
  }
  ```

- If you want to only show the changes and comments highlights

  ```
  .oxy-range-start,
  .oxy-range-end {
    display: none;
  }
  .oxy-insert,
  .oxy-delete {
    display: none;
  }
  ```

  Note:
  No comments will be displayed in the PDF Viewer Comments view after this modification.

How to Style Tracked Changes Shown as Footnotes

Important:
This topic is relevant if you have set the `show.changes.and.comments.as.pdf.sticky.notes` transformation parameter to `no`, and therefore the changes are shown as footnotes instead of PDF annotations.

Here are some examples showing how to customize footnotes:

- If you want to change the background color and the border of the comment footnote, add the following snippet in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
.oxy-comment {
  background-color:inherit;
  border: 2pt solid yellow;
}
```

  Similarly, you can style the other footnotes for `@class="oxy-attributes"`, `@class="oxy-delete"`, and `@class="oxy-insert"`.
- If you want to hide some footnotes (for example, the footnotes associated with the insertions, deletions, or attribute changes when your document contains a lot of tracked changes), add something like this in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)* (the following example results in the deletions and insertions being hidden, but the comments remain visible):

```
.oxy-attributes,
.oxy-delete,
.oxy-insert{
  float:none;
  display:none;
}
```

How to Show Only Change Bars on Tracked Changes

It is possible to only display the change bars for tracked changes (inserted or deleted content) in the PDF document while hiding the other styling for the tracked changes. This is helpful if you want to see the document in a final version while still seeing change bars where content was inserted or deleted.

To achieve this, follow these steps:

1. Set the **show.changes.and.comments** parameter to `yes` and the **show.changes.and.comments.as.pdf.sticky.notes** parameter to `no`.

   Step Result: The first parameter causes tracked changes to be visible in your document and styled (e.g. insertions are blue and underlined, while deletions are red with a strike-through). Changing the second parameter to `no` causes the tracked changes to be displayed as a footnote instead of a PDF annotation.
2. Hide the footnotes by adding the following in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
.oxy-attributes,
.oxy-comment,
.oxy-delete,
.oxy-insert {
  float: initial;
  display: none;
}
```

3. Remove the change range markers (the **{** and **}** symbols):

```
.oxy-range-start:before,
.oxy-range-end:before {
  content:none;
}
```

4. Remove the styling for the insertions and deletions:

```
.oxy-insert-hl{
  color:unset;
  text-decoration:none;
}
.oxy-delete-hl {
  content: "\200b";
  text-decoration:none;
}
.oxy-comment-hl{
  background-color:unset;
}
.oxy-color-hl[color]{
  background-color:unset;
}
```

5. **[Optional]** You can improve the visibility of the change bars with this construct:

```
.oxy-range-start[is-changebar]:before(100) {
  -oxy-changebar-color: red;
  -oxy-changebar-width: 3pt;
}
```

Draft Watermarks

A *watermark* is an image displayed as the background of a printed document and it is faded enough to keep the publication text readable. *Draft watermarks* are used to indicate that a document is under construction or has not yet been approved.

How to Add a Draft Watermark on All Pages

To add a draft watermark to all of your publication pages, you can use the following page selector in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
@page {
    background-image: url("draft.svg");
    background-position:center;
    background-repeat:no-repeat;
    background-size: 100% 100%;
}
```

If you have already set a background image for other pages (for example, the `front-page` or `table-of-contents`), the above selector won't change them, as they are more specific.

The best practice is to use a different `draft.css` CSS file that imports the customization CSS where the rest of the style changes reside. If you need to publish the content as a draft, use the `draft.css` in your transformation scenario, otherwise directly reference the customization CSS *(on page 1193)*.

Related Information:
Images and Figures *(on page 1352)*

How to Add a Draft Watermark in the Foreground

If you want the watermark to be displayed above the text (in the foreground), instead of using the standard `background-image` property, you can use the `-oxy-foreground-image` property:

```
@page {
    -oxy-foreground-image: url("draft.svg");
}
```

You can set a more specific selector if you just need to display the foreground in a subset group of pages (for example, `chapter`). In this case, the above selector will not change it since it is more specific.

Note:
The usage of SVG images is preferred because other image types suffer from *pixelation* and because foreground images are stretched to the full page size.

How to Add a Draft Watermark Depending on Metadata

Suppose you want to apply a *Draft watermark* until your DITA bookmap is approved and the map is approved when an `<approved>` element has been added to the metadata section (for example, in the **bookmeta/bookchangehistory** element).

```
<bookmeta>
   <author>John</author>
```

```
   <critdates>
      <created date="1/1/2015"/>
      <revised modified="3/4/2016"/>
      <revised modified="3/5/2016"/>
   </critdates>
   <bookchangehistory>
       <approved/>
   </bookchangehistory>
...
```

Use `oxy_xpath` every time you need to probe the value from an element other than the one matched by the CSS selector, and test the expression on the merged HTML file using the **Oxygen XPath Builder** view.

You can either use a page selector that imposes the draft watermark on the entire page surface (recommended):

```
@page {
  background-image: url(oxy_xpath("if(//*[contains(@class, 'bookmap/approved')]) then '' else 'draft-watermark.png'"));
  background-position: center;
  background-repeat: no-repeat;
}
```

or use an element selector that restricts the watermark image only to the page area covered by that element:

```
:root, body{
  ... /* same as properties above */
}
```

Note:
You can use another element selector to target a specific part of your publication (for example, marking only the tables as drafts).

Related information
Metadata *(on page 1253)*
How to Debug XPath Expressions *(on page 1200)*

Flagging Content

In DITA, you can mark certain content to flag it or draw attention to it. This is done by defining a flag in a DITAVAL file.

You can attach the DITAVAL file to the DITA map using the `<ditavalref>` element in the map, or by specifying it in the `args.filter` transformation parameter.

In the following example, all the elements that have the attribute `@product` set to `YourProd` is flagged to have a purple background:

```
<val>
...
   <prop action="flag" att="product" val="YourProd" backcolor="purple"/>
...
</val>
```

Related Information:

Change Bars

DITAVAL Elements

How to Flag Content Using Change Bars

As an example, to add a *change bar* (revision mark) for particular content, you can use the following in the DITAVAL file:

```
<val>
  <revprop action="flag"
    changebar="color:blue;style:solid;width:2pt;offset:1.25mm;placement:start" val="new"/>
</val>
```

This would result in any content that is marked with `@rev="new"` having a blue change bar.

How to Flag Content Using Images

You can mark the elements that match a specific profiling condition using images (one for the start, one for the end). The image references are relative to the DITAVAL file.

```
<val>
   <prop action="flag"
          att="product"  val="MyProd"
          backcolor="blue"
          color="yellow" >

      <startflag imageref="startflag.jpg">
        <alt-text>This is the start of my product info</alt-text>
      </startflag>

      <endflag imageref="endflag.jpg">
        <alt-text>This is the end of my product info</alt-text>
      </endflag>
   </prop>
</val>
```

Styling the Content

If you need to change the styles of the elements from the topic contents, you should create a customization CSS *(on page 1193)* and then add CSS rules. To create the CSS rules, you can use the development tools described in Debugging the CSS *(on page 1195)*.

Reusing the Styling for WebHelp and PDF Output

If you are using the `pdf-css-html5` transformation type, then the generated HTML5 document that is later converted to PDF is very similar to the generated HTML5 pages from the WebHelp Responsive output.

This is an output example from the WebHelp transformation:

```
<h1 class="title topictitle1" id="ariaid-title2">Care and Preparation</h1>
<div class="body">
    <p class="shortdesc">When caring ...</p>
    <p class="p">When caring for your flower garden you want ... </p>
```

And the same example from the PDF transformation (note the additional emphasized class values):

```
<h1 class="- topic/title title topictitle1" id="ariaid-title2">Care andPreparation</h1>
<div class="- topic/body body">
   <p class="- topic/shortdesc shortdesc">When caring ... </p>
   <p class="- topic/p p">When caring for your flower garden you want ...  </p>
```

It makes sense to reuse the same CSS rules you developed for one transformation type to the other. The main rule is to use the short class names instead of the long ones. For example, to style the short descriptions with italic font, use:

```
.shortdesc {
  font-style: italic;
}
```

The rule of thumb is that if you have a CSS rule that successfully styles an element in WebHelp, it should apply without any modification in the PDF output.

Titles

Titles in PDF can be classified into two categories:

- Table of contents titles, identified by the `map/topicref` and `topic/navtitle` class attributes.
- Content titles, that can be styled by matching the `topic/title` class attribute.

How to Control Titles Layout

By default, titles are rendered on a single line (with both the chapter/section number and title text). If the title is too long, the text wraps to the next line without any indentation.

```
4.5.5 This is a long title

text that wraps.
```

If you want each line of the title to start at the same location (and indented), you need to set the value of the `args.css.param.title.layout` transformation parameter to **table**. This means that the chapter/section number is placed in one cell and title text is placed in another cell (resulting and indented text):

```
4.5.5 This is a long title

      text that wraps.
```

How to Change Chapters Title Prefix

Changing Prefixes in Shallow Numbering

In shallow numbering (default), to replace the "Chapter N." prefix, use the following rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "map/topicref"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) > *[class ~= "map/topicmeta"] > *[class ~= "topic/navtitle"]:before{

  content: "Module " counter(toc-chapter, decimal-leading-zero) " - ";

}

*[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) > *[class ~= "topic/title"]:before {

  content: "Module " counter(chapter, decimal-leading-zero) "\A";

}
```

Changing Prefixes in Deep Numbering

In deep numbering, to replace the "N." prefix, use the following rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep'] *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) > *[class

 ~= "topic/title"]:before,

*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep'] *[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) *[class ~= "topic/topic"] >

 *[class ~= "topic/title"]:before {

  content: counters(chapter-and-sections, ".") "\A";

}
```

How to Remove Parts and Chapter Title Prefixes

Removing Prefixes in Shallow Numbering

In shallow numbering (default), to hide the "Part N" and "Chapter NN" prefixes, use the following rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "map/topicref"] > *[class ~= "map/topicmeta"] > *[class ~= "topic/navtitle"]:before {

  display: none !important;

}

*[class ~= "topic/topic"] > *[class ~= "topic/title"]:before {
```

```
  display: none !important;
}
```

You can also choose to remove only the "Part N" prefix:

```
*[class ~= "map/topicref"][is-part] > *[class ~= "map/topicmeta"] > *[class ~= "topic/navtitle"]:before {
  display: none !important;
}
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-part] > *[class ~= "topic/title"]:before {
  display: none !important;
}
```

Or to remove only the "Chapter NN" prefix:

```
*[class ~= "map/topicref"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) > *[class ~= "map/topicmeta"] > *[class ~= "topic/navtitle"]:before {
  display: none !important;
}
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) > *[class ~= "topic/title"]:before {
  display: none !important;
}
```

Removing Prefixes in Deep Numbering

In deep numbering, to hide the "Part N" and "Chapter NN" prefixes, use the following rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep'] *[class ~= "map/topicref"] > *[class ~= "map/topicmeta"]:before {
  display: none !important;
}
*[class ~= "topic/topic"] > *[class ~= "topic/title"]:before {
  display: none !important;
}
```

How to Display Chapters Title on a Separate Page

You may want to display the chapters title on a separate page (for example, with a background). To do this, a new page should be defined in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
@page chapter-title-page {
  background-image: url("resources/title-bg.png");
  background-repeat: no-repeat;
  background-size: 100% 100%;
  background-position: center;
}
```

After that, you need to replace the default "chapter" page definition with the one created before:

```
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter] {

  page: chapter-title-page;

}
```

Then, you need to set it back on the content following the title:

```
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter] > *[class ~= "topic/title"] ~ *:not([class ~= "topic/title"]) {

  page: chapter;

}
```

Finally, you can customize the title color, size, and more:

```
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter]:not([is-part]) > *[class ~= "topic/title"] {

  color: white;

  font-size: 32pt;

}
```

Related information

Default Chapter Page Definition *(on page 1203)*

Equations

This processor supports MathML equations.

How to Change the Font of MathML Equations

Suppose that you need to change the font of MathML equations from the documentation, and also add some padding. The MathML fragments are wrapped in elements that have the class `equation-d/equation-block` or `equation-d/equation-inline`, so you can match them with:

```
*[class ~="equation-d/equation-block"],

*[class ~="equation-d/equation-inline"]{

 font-family:"courier new";

 font-size:1.5em;

 padding:1em;

}
```

Note:

An equation can be rendered using multiple classes of fonts (e.g. the *serif*, *sans serif*, *monospace*, *fraktur*, and *doublestruck* classes. Depending on each of the equation symbols, a class is selected for it. The font specified in the CSS rule (as in the preceding example), applies only to the *serif* class. However, if a symbol codepoint is not covered by the currently selected class fonts, it falls back to the font specified in the CSS.

Attention:

Some of the fonts may not be supported. In that case, a default *serif* font is used.

How to Assign Different Numbering to Figures and Equations

By default, both `<fig>` and `<equation-figure>` elements are numbered as figures. To use a different type of numbering for equations, use the following rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "equation-d/equation-figure"]:has(*[class ~= "topic/title"]) {
  counter-increment: equationcount;
}

*[class ~= "topic/fig"] .fig--title-label {
  content: "Figure";
}
*[class ~= "equation-d/equation-figure"] .fig--title-label {
  content: "Equation";
}

/* Shallow and Deep Numbering. */
*[class ~= "topic/fig"] .fig--title-label:after {
  content: " " counter(figcount) ". ";
}
*[class ~= "equation-d/equation-figure"] .fig--title-label:after {
  content: " " counter(equationcount) ". ";
}

/* Deep Chapter Scope and Deep Chapter Scope No Page Reset Numbering. */
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep-chapter-scope'] *[class ~= "topic/fig"] > figcaption > .fig--title-label:after {
  content: " " counter(chapter) "-" counter(figcount) " ";
}
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep-chapter-scope'] *[class ~= "equation-d/equation-figure"] > figcaption
 > .fig--title-label:after {
  content: " " counter(chapter) "-" counter(equationcount) " ";
}
```

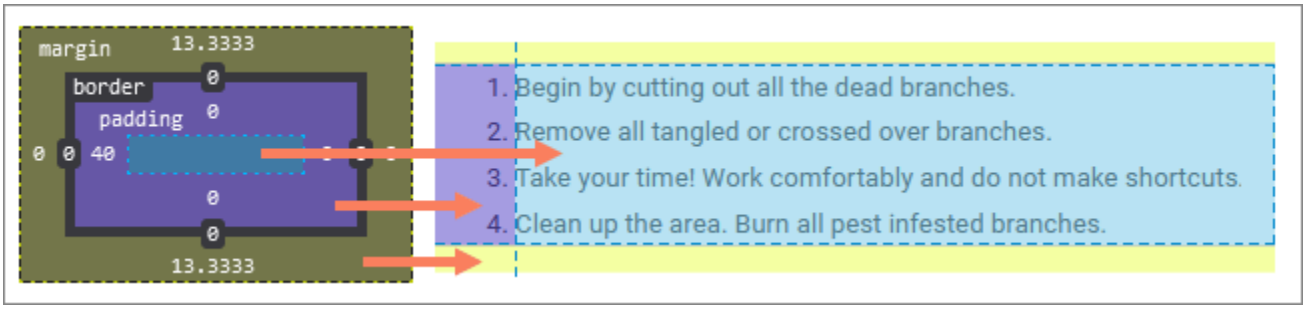
If there are links to these figures/equations, the following rules must also be added:

```
/* Shallow and Deep Numbering. */
*[class ~= "topic/xref"][href][type = "equation-figure"] {
  content: "Equation " target-counter(attr(href), equationcount);
}
*[class ~= "topic/xref"][href][type = "fig"] {
  content: "Figure " target-counter(attr(href), figcount);
}

/* Deep Chapter Scope and Deep Chapter Scope No Page Reset Numbering. */
```

```
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep-chapter-scope'] *[class ~= "topic/xref"][href][type = "equation-figure"] {
  content: "Equation " target-counter(attr(href), chapter) "-" target-counter(attr(href), equationcount);
}
*[class ~= "map/map"][numbering ^= 'deep-chapter-scope'] *[class ~= "topic/xref"][href][type = "fig"] {
  content: "Figure " target-counter(attr(href), chapter) "-" target-counter(attr(href), figcount);
}
```

Lists

This is the default layout for lists (both ordered and unordered lists - values are in **px**):



Markers are displayed in the padding area, so they are not included in the principal block box.

The lists are treated differently than ordinary block elements in the sense that their margins are not collapsed with the margins of the neighboring blocks or lists. This is also visible for nested lists. To summarize:

- Setting the `padding-left` or `margin-left` properties on lists will move the whole list.
- Setting the `margin-left` property on list items will move the whole list.
- Setting the `padding-left` property on list items will only move the list item content (not the marker).

Note:
If the `padding-left` property is set on lists and the `margin-left` property is set on list items, the result will move the whole list with a combination of both padding and margin values.

How to Style Lists

Some common use-cases for styling lists require you to change each list level separately. For example, for an ordered list:

```
*[class ~= "topic/ol"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"] /* First Level */ {
  font-size: 15pt;
}
*[class ~= "topic/ol"] *[class ~= "topic/ol"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"] /* Second Level */ {
  font-size: 13pt;
}
*[class ~= "topic/ol"] *[class ~= "topic/ol"] *[class ~= "topic/ol"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"] /* Third Level */ {
  font-size: 11pt;
```

```
}
/* Etc. */
```

Similarly, for an unordered list:

```
*[class ~= "topic/ul"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]::marker /* First Level */ {
  color: red;
  content: "\2022";
}
*[class ~= "topic/ul"] *[class ~= "topic/ul"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]::marker /* Second Level */ {
  color: orange;
  content: "\2022";
}
*[class ~= "topic/ul"] *[class ~= "topic/ul"] *[class ~= "topic/ul"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]::marker /* Third Level */ {
  color: green;
  content: "\2022";
}
/* Etc. */
```

Note:
It is possible to mix lists type simply by mixing `*[class ~= "topic/ol"]` and `*[class ~= "topic/ul"]` in the CSS selector.

How to Align Lists with Page Margins

It is possible to reposition the lists to align them with the rest of the text from the body.

The default CSS rules for the lists are as follows:

```
ol {
    display:block;
    margin-top: 1.33em;
    margin-bottom: 1.33em;
    list-style-type:decimal;
    padding-left: 40px;
}
ul {
    display:block;
    margin-top: 1.33em;
    margin-bottom: 1.33em;
    list-style-type:disc;
    padding-left: 40px;
}
```

To align the lists, the following rules are sufficient in the customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class~="topic/ol"],
*[class~="topic/ul"] {
  padding-left: 0;
  list-style-position: inside;
}
```

Note:
By default, the `list-style-position` property is set to **outside**.

How to Change List Item Markers Font

You can change the fonts for list items markers to make them easier to read or compliant with your company fonts. By default, **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** already provides a list of fallback fonts (to cover the majority of symbols).

To customize the fonts, add the following rule to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "topic/ul"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]::marker {
  font-family: "Segoe UI", sans-serif;
}
```

Related information
Using Web Fonts
Using Local Font Files
Customizing :marker Elements

How to Continue List Numbering

It is possible to continue the numbering of an ordered list even when the content is split in multiple `<ol>` elements.

Using the 'start-x' outputclass

One solution consists of adding the `@outputclass="start-x"` attribute (where X is the number you want the list to start with) to the `<ol>` element. This is especially useful when lists do not have the same parent:

```
<table frame="all">
  <title>Table with nested order lists</title>
  <tgroup cols="1">
    <tbody>
      <row>
        <entry>
          <ol>
            <li>First Item</li>
            <li>Second Item</li>
```

```
          </ol>
        </entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry>
          <ol outputclass="start-3">
            <li>Third Item</li>
            <li>Fourth Item</li>
          </ol>
        </entry>
      </row>
    </tbody>
  </tgroup>
</table>
```

Using the 'continue' outputclass and CSS

Another solution is to add the `@outputclass="continue"` attribute to the list where numbering should continue:

```
<ol>
  <li>First Item</li>
  <li>Second Item</li>
</ol>
<p>A paragraph</p>
<ol outputclass="continue">
  <li>Third Item</li>
</ol>
```

Then set the following content inside your CSS customization:

```
*[class ~= "topic/ol"] {
    counter-reset: item-count;
}

*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "continue"] {
    counter-reset: none;
}

/* Add counter marker for each list level */
*[class ~= "topic/ol"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]::marker {
    counter-increment: item-count;
    content: counter(item-count, decimal) ". ";
}
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][type=a] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]::marker{
    content: counter(item-count, lower-alpha) ". ";
```

```
}
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][type=A] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]::marker{
    content: counter(item-count, upper-alpha) ". ";
}
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][type=i] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]::marker{
    content: counter(item-count, lower-roman) ". ";
}
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][type=I] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]::marker{
    content: counter(item-count, upper-roman) ". ";
}
```

How to Change the Numbering System of Ordered Lists

It is possible to change all lists to have a different numbering system and there are several methods that can be used to achieve this.

Use the `list-style-type` CSS Property.

The **Chemistry** engine supports the following types: `decimal`, `decimal-leading-zero`, `lower-roman`, `upper-roman`, `lower-latin`, `upper-latin`, `lower-alpha`, `upper-alpha`.

```
*[class ~= "topic/ol"] {
  list-style-type: lower-roman;
}
```

Change the Content of the `:marker` CSS Pseudo-Element.

The following example emulates the Cyrillic numbering for the list items for an ordered list that has the `@outputclass` attribute set to `cyrillic`:

Important:
This example will work only for lists up to 28 items. You will have to extend it for longer lists!

```
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:marker {
  width:3em;
}

*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(1):marker{ content:"а" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(2):marker{ content:"б" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(3):marker{ content:"в" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(4):marker{ content:"г" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(5):marker{ content:"д" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(6):marker{ content:"е" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(7):marker{ content:"ж" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(8):marker{ content:"з" }
```

```
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(9):marker{ content:"и" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(10):marker{ content:"к" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(11):marker{ content:"л" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(12):marker{ content:"м" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(13):marker{ content:"н" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(14):marker{ content:"о" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(15):marker{ content:"п" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(16):marker{ content:"р" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(17):marker{ content:"с" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(18):marker{ content:"т" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(19):marker{ content:"у" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(20):marker{ content:"ф" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(21):marker{ content:"х" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(22):marker{ content:"ц" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(23):marker{ content:"ч" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(24):marker{ content:"ш" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(25):marker{ content:"щ" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(26):marker{ content:"э" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(27):marker{ content:"ю" }
*[class ~= "topic/ol"][outputclass ~= "cyrillic"] > *[class ~= "topic/li"]:nth-of-type(28):marker{ content:"я" }
```

Related Information:

Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide: Lists

Links

Links allow the users to navigate through the documentation.

How to Change 'on page NNN' Link Label

For printed material, it is usually desirable for the links to display a label after the text content (such as "on page 54"). This makes it easier the user to identify the target page. However, if the produced PDF is not printed and is intended only for electronic use, this label may create clutter and make the document harder to read. To eliminate this label, you can simply disable the `args.css.param.show-onpage-lbl` parameter.

This can also be done by adding the following in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "topic/xref"][href]:after,
*[class ~= "topic/link"][href]:after {
    content: none !important;
}
```

Note:

A variant is to remove the "on page" label only and keep the page number:

```
*[class ~= "topic/xref"][href]:after,
*[class ~= "topic/link"][href]:after {
    content: " (" target-counter(attr(href), page) ")" !important;
}
```

Another use-case is to remove the labels only from links shown in tables cells, and leave the others as they are. For this, you could use a more specific selector:

```
*[class ~= "topic/entry"] *[class ~= "topic/xref"][href]:after{
    content: none !important;
}
```

How to Change Link Styles

Suppose you want the links to be bold and with an underline. In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add this snippet:

```
*[class ~= "topic/xref"][href]:after,
*[class ~= "topic/link"][href]:after {
    font-weight: bold;
    text-decoration: underline;
}
```

How to Hide Descriptions in Related Links Sections

The link descriptions that come from DITA relationship tables or related link elements within topics, are structured in the merged map *(on page 1195)* like this:

```
<related-links class="- topic/related-links ">
   <linkpool class="- topic/linkpool ">
        <link class="- topic/link "
            ...
               role="friend" scope="local" type="topic">
                <linktext class="- topic/linktext ">Salvia</linktext>
                <desc class="- topic/desc ">The salvia plant</desc>
         </link>
    </linkpool>
    ...
</related-links>
```

If you need to hide these descriptions, add the following code in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "topic/link"] > *[class ~= "topic/desc"] {
  display: none;
}
```

How to Group Related Links by Type

By default, all links from DITA relationship tables or related link elements within topics are grouped under one "Related information" heading:

```
Related information
  Target Topic
  Target Concept
  Target Task
```

It is possible to group the links by target type (topic type) by setting the `args.rellinks.group.mode=group-by-type` parameter. The output will look like this:

```
Related concepts
  Target Concept
Related tasks
  Target Task
Related information
  Target Topic
```

Images and Figures

Images are an important part of a publication.

Note:
You can use raster image formats (such as PNG or JPEG), but it is best to use vector images (such as SVG or PDF). They scale very well and produce better results when printed. In addition, the text from these images is searchable and can be selected (if the glyphs have not been converted to shapes) in the PDF viewer.

Related information
The DITA Style Guide Best Practices for Authors: Image file formats

Images - Built-in CSS

Image properties are defined in `[PLUGIN_DIR]css/print/p-figures-images.css`.

```
*[class ~= "topic/image"] {
      prince-image-resolution: 96dpi;
      -ah-image-resolution: 96dpi;
      image-resolution: 96dpi;
      max-width: 100%;
  }
```

How to Fix Image Bleeding - Control Image Size

Sometimes the images may be too big for the page. The built-in CSS rules specify a maximum size for images, limiting to the width of the parent block. But if the parent block is itself too wide and bleeds out of page, you might consider specifying a length.

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add the following snippet:

```
*[class ~= "topic/image"] {
  ...
      /* The US-letter page size minus page margins. See p-page-size.css for the current page size. */
      max-width: 6.5in;
  }
```

Pay attention to images that have an image map *(on page 1359)* associated. The built-in rules set the `max-width: auto` for them to avoid scaling. Otherwise, it would cause a misalignment between the image and its clickable areas. These images are best to have a `@width` and `@height` attribute.

How to Change Image Resolution

How to Change the Resolution for Raster Images

This technique changes the size of all **raster** images from your documentation. It will not work for *vector* images, such as PDF or SVG.

The default resolution is 96 dpi (same as in web browsers). You can change it by adding the following in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "topic/image"] {
        prince-image-resolution: 300dpi;
        -ah-image-resolution: 300dpi;
        image-resolution: 300dpi;
}
```

Important:
The above selector does not apply to images from the `<imagemap>` element. You can use the following selector for that purpose:

```
*[class ~= "ut-d/imagemap"] > *[class ~= "topic/image"] {
  ...
}
```

Make sure you verify the area shapes to match the new image boundaries. The pixels specified in the image map area coordinates are always 1/96 in. For more details, see: How to Use Image Maps *(on page 1359)*.

How to Change the Resolution for Vector Images

This technique will change the size of all **vector** images (such as PDF or SVG) and will not affect *raster* images.

Vector images are rendered with a default resolution of 96 dpi. You can change this default value by setting the `image.resolution` transformation parameter *(on page 1168)* to another value (from 72, 120, 300 and 600).

How to Place Big Images on Rotated Pages

Wide images may bleed out of the page. One solution for this is to use landscape pages for these wide images.

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add:

```
*[class~="topic/image"][outputclass='land'] {
  page: landscape-page;
}
```

Setting the `@outputclass` = 'land' attribute on the `<image>` element forces the image to be displayed on a new landscape page.

If you want to rotate the entire topic that contains the image, use:

```
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > *[class~="topic/image"][outputclass="land"]),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > * > *[class~="topic/image"][outputclass="land"]),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > * > * > *[class~="topic/image"][outputclass="land"]) {
  page: landscape-page;
}
```

How to Place a Text and Image Side by Side

If you need to align text and an image side-by-side, you can use the following technique:

1. Organize your text and image inside a `<div>` element like this:

```
...
 <div outputclass="side-by-side">
      <p> This will be in the left side, the next figure in the right. </p>
      <fig>
        <image href="cactus.jpeg"/>
      </fig>
 </div>
...
```

Note:
You can use the `@outputclass` attribute to mark the `<div>` elements that have this special layout.

2. In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add:

```
*[outputclass ~= "side-by-side"] > *[class ~= "topic/p"] {
  display:inline-block;
  width: 45%;
}

*[outputclass ~= "side-by-side"] > *[class ~= "topic/fig"] {
  display:inline-block;
  width: 45%;
}
```

The image should fill the entire width of the parent `<fig>` element:

```
*[outputclass ~= "side-by-side"] > *[class ~= "topic/fig"]  > *[class ~= "topic/image"] {
  width:100%;
}
```

By default, the bottom of the image is on the same line as the text baseline. If you want the text and the image to be aligned at the top, add these lines:

```
*[outputclass ~= "side-by-side"] > *[class ~= "topic/p"] {
  vertical-align:top;
}

*[outputclass ~= "side-by-side"] > *[class ~= "topic/fig"] {
  vertical-align:top;
}
```

Note:

If your figure does not have a title, you can also set `font-size:0pt` to remove the font ascent and descent around the image rectangle.

```
*[outputclass ~= "side-by-side"] > *[class ~= "topic/fig"] {
  vertical-align:top;
  font-size:0pt;
}
```

How to Control the Image Size in Complex Static Content

It is common to have text and images mixed together in a `:before` or `:after` pseudo-element. For example, for notes you may have both artwork and text:

```
*[class ~= "topic/note"]::before {
    content: url('note.png') "Some text";
}
```

If you want to change the size of the image, you have two options:

- Use the `image-resolution` CSS property:

```
*[class ~= "topic/note"] {
    image-resolution:300dpi;
}
```

- Separate the image from the text and apply the width and height CSS properties only on the image, using the width and height properties. You could use multiple `:before` pseudo-elements for that, considering that the farthest content presented before the actual content of an element is matched by the `:before` with the highest number in the brackets:

```
*[class ~= "topic/note"]:before(2) {
    content: url('note.png') ;
    width:0.5in;
}

*[class ~= "topic/note"]:before(1) {
    content: "Some text";
}
```

How to Center Images

DITA defines a `@placement` attribute for the `<image>` elements. The implicit value is `inline`. Suppose that you need to center the images that have the placement set to `break` (for example, they are not on the same line with other content and the images from the `<fig>` element).

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add:

```
*[class ~= "topic/fig"] {
  text-align:center;
}

/* Other images, with break placement. */
*[class ~= "topic/image"][placement='break']{
  display:block;
  text-align:center;
}

/*
 Scaled images are getting a computed width attribute, so we can use the auto margins.
 Auto margins function only if the block they apply to has a width.
*/
*[class ~= "topic/image"][placement='break'][width] {
  margin-left:auto;
```

```
  margin-right:auto;
  border: 2pt solid red;
}
```

How to Surround Images with Borders

Suppose you want to surround all images contained inside figures that have the placement set to `break` by a border to emphasize them. To resize them, you need to use the width calculated by DITA-OT (by default, blocks use their parent max-width, which is the whole page in this case).

In your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*, add:

```
@namespace dita-ot url('http://dita-ot.sourceforge.net/ns/201007/dita-ot');


*[class ~= "topic/fig"] *[class ~= "topic/image"][placement='break'] {
  border: 1px solid black;
  padding: 1em;
}
*[class ~= "topic/image"][placement='break'][dita-ot|image-width] {
  width: attr(dita-ot|image-width px);
}
```

How to Remove the Figure NN Label

For the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario, the label for a table's title is wrapped in a `<span>` element with the class: `fig--title-label`.

```
<figure class="- topic/fig fig ">
  <figcaption class="- topic/title title figcap">
    <span class="figtitleprefix fig--title-label">Figure
      <span class="fig--title-label-number">1</span>
      <span class="fig--title-label-punctuation">. </span>
    </span>
    <span class="fig--title">
      <span class="- topic/ph topic/title-wrapper ph title-wrapper">Lorem picsum</span>
    </span>
  </figcaption>
  ...
</figure>
```

To hide it, set its display to *none*:

```
.fig--title-label {
  display:none;
}
```

How to Change/Reset the Figure Numbering

Note:
This topic is applicable for the *DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS* *DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS* transformation types.

There are cases when you need to change the aspect of the figure counter that is shown before the figure titles. By default, the figure titles are formatted like this:

```
Figure NN. Lore Ipsum Title
```

NN is the number of the figure that starts being counted from the beginning of the publication.

One use-case is to have the NN counter be incremented only within one chapter (for example, the first chapter contains "Figure 1" and "Figure 2", and the second chapter starts over with "Figure 1" instead of incrementing to "Figure 3").

You should reset the figure counter on each topic marked as chapter, then hide the label from the figure `<figcaption>` (this is an HTML element generated by the XSL transformation), and create another label using a `:before` selector on the `<figcaption>`.

```
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][is-chapter] {
  counter-reset: figcount;
}

.fig--title-label {
  display: none;
}

*[class ~= "topic/fig"] > .figcap:before {
  display: inline;
  content: "Figure " counter(chapter) "-" counter(figcount) " ";
}
```

Of course you will need to update the links to these figures to show the same number:

```
.fig--title-label-number,
.fig--title-label-punctuation {
  display: none;
}

.fig--title-label-number-placeholder {
  content: target-counter(attr(href), chapter) "-" target-counter(attr(href), figcount) "  ";
}
```

How to Fix Missing Images

If your images are not accessible, you may receive an error message in the transformation console like this:

```
Image not found. URI:file:/path/to/my/image
```

This is usually because they are in a folder that is not in the folder subtree of the transformed map or topic.

To solve this, you can set the following transformation parameter: `fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml=true`.

How to Use Image Maps

To use the DITA `<imagemap>` element in a PDF transformation, follow this procedure:

1. Start by determining the width and height of your image in *CSS pixels* and specify it on the `<image>` element using the `@width` and `@height` attributes.

   Notes:
   - A *CSS pixel* is *1/96 in*, so if the image is created at a `96dpi` resolution, one dot from the image is one pixel in the CSS space. If your image is displayed at another resolution *(on page 1353)*, then it is adjusted accordingly (for example, `192dpi` results in two dots from the image being equal to one pixel in the CSS space).
   - You can use other CSS units, including percentages. The percentages are solved relative to the image size and represent a way of creating *responsive* image maps.

   Warning:
   If you publish the content for both PDF and HTML web output, make sure you only use *pixels*, as some browsers only support these units.

   Example:

   Suppose you have a large image that is 6400x4800 dots, but you want to make it fit in a box of 640x480 *CSS pixels*. In the following snippet, this is done by specifying the width and height attributes. The areas must use coordinates relative to these values.

   ```
   <imagemap>
     <image href="../images/Gear_pump_exploded.png"
         id="gear_pump_exploded"
         width="640"
         height="480">
         <alt>Gear Pump</alt>
     </image>
   </imagemap>
   ```

2. In the map element, add areas (each with a shape and a set of coordinates):

```
<imagemap>
  <image ...> ... </image>
  <area>
      <shape>circle</shape>
      <coords>172, 265, 14</coords>
      <xref
          href="parts/bushings.dita#bushings_topic/bushings"
          format="dita">Bushings</xref>
  </area>
  <area>
      <shape>poly</shape>
      <coords>568, 81, 576, 103, 468, 152, 455, 130</coords>
      <xref
          href="parts/drive-shaft.dita#drive_shaft_topic/drive_shaft"
          format="dita">Drive Shaft</xref>
  </area>
  ....
</imagemap
```

The type of areas are the ones defined in the HTML standard: `circle`, `poly`, `rect`, `default`. For more details, see: https://html.spec.whatwg.org/multipage/image-maps.html#the-area-element.

Warning:
Areas coordinates are relative the image box and are not affected by the image resizing (change in image width/height or scaling), accordingly to the HTML specs:

> "For historical reasons, the coordinates must be interpreted relative to the displayed image after any stretching caused by the CSS 'width' and 'height' properties (or, for non-CSS browsers, the image element's width and height attributes - CSS browsers map those attributes to the aforementioned CSS properties)."

Tip:
Adding the `@scale` attribute on the `<imagemap>` element will scale both the image and areas.

3. Verify how the shapes look in the output. You can make the shapes visible by using **one of the following methods**:

- Using the `show.image.map.area.numbers` and `show.image.map.area.shapes` transformation parameters.
- Adding a CSS snippet to your customization. The shapes have the `image-map-shape` class, the bullet around the image map number (`image-map-number`), and the text inside the bullet (`image-map-number-text`). To make them translucent yellow:

```
.image-map-shape {
  fill: yellow;
  stroke: orange;
  fill-opacity: 0.3;
  stroke-opacity: 0.7;
}
.image-map-number-text {
  visibility: visible;
  stroke: red;

}
.image-map-number {
  fill: yellow;
  fill-opacity: 1;
}
```

Remember:
Make sure the `use.css.for.embedded.svg` parameter is set to 'yes' (it is by default).

Tip:
An `<svg>` with links (`<a>`) can be used as an alternative to the DITA `<imagemap>` element. Make sure that each link is a relative URI to an ID inside the publication content.

How to Hide the Image Map Links List

Below every image map, a list of links that point to the image map targets is displayed. This list can be hidden from the final output by using the following CSS selector:

```
.imagemap--areas {
  display: none;
}
```

How to Use SVG Syntax Diagrams

The DITA `<syntaxdiagram>` element is supported by the PDF transformation. To use SVG syntax diagrams, follow this procedure:

1. Download the latest version of the svg-syntaxdiagrams plugin, unzip it, and copy all the folders into your *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins` folder (they all start with `"com."`).
2. Open a command prompt inside *DITA-OT-DIR*`\bin` and run the dita install command.
3. You can now add your custom `<syntaxdiagram>` element in your topic, as in the following example:

```
<syntaxdiagram id="syntaxdiagram_ok4_c1k_xnb">
  <title>CopyFile</title>
  <groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
  <groupseq><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupseq>
  <groupchoice> <var>input-filename</var> <kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
  <groupchoice> <var>output-filename</var> <kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

4. Run the DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS (or DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS) transformation.

> **Warning:**
> If you are not publishing the content for the first time, you may need to delete the `out/` and `temp/` folders to see the syntax diagram correctly in the `.merged.html` file.

Result: The PDF is generated and the syntax diagram is displayed as a referenced SVG file like this:

Videos

Videos can be referenced in a DITA topic by using the `<object>` element:

```
<object data="path/to/video.mp4" outputclass="video"/>
```

Related information

Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide: Videos

How to Reference a Video Using a Key

Videos can also be referenced in DITA topics by using a key.

The key must be defined in the DITA map like this:

```
<keydef keys="video" href="path/to/video.mp4" format="mp4"/>
```

The key is referenced in the topic with the `@datakeyref` attribute within the `<object>` element:

```
<object datakeyref="video" outputclass="video" width="480" height="270"/>
```

How to Change Video Size

It is possible to set the size for your videos directly from a custom CSS stylesheet *(on page 1193)*:

```
.video {
  width: 480px;
  height: 270px;
}
```

Related information

Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide: Change the Video Size

How to Change the Videos Cover

By default, a placeholder is displayed in place of the video. When clicked, this placeholder launches the video. A popup is presented in Acrobat Reader to enable the Multimedia content (the document must be trusted for the video to launch).

It is possible to change this placeholder with a custom one by using the `-oxy-video-cover` property:

```
.video {
  -oxy-video-cover: url("files/cover.png");
}
```

How to Center Videos

It is possible to center the videos by centering their containers like this:

```
.video-container {
  text-align: center;
}
```

Tables

Tables are widely used in technical documentation. This section contains information about the CSS rules that are used to style them and how to fix some problems.

Tables - Built-in CSS

There is a combination of CSS files that address tables:

- `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/core/-table-html-cals.css`
- `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-tables.css`

How to Avoid a Table Exceeding the Page Width

The DITA specification indicates that tables should have a fixed layout. This can be done in two different ways:

1. **Using proportional or relative measures** - It includes percent values and shares values (i.e. "3*" or "12*").
2. **Using fixed measures** - It includes all the values followed by units (i.e. *in*, *pt*, *px*, and others).

Important:

- Although the specification allows you to combine these values, it is **highly recommend** that you only use one method at a time. Combining both methods could lead to a table exceeding the page width and will make the content unreadable.
- If all of the column width values are not declared in the table, the shares values (e.g. "2.5*") will not be used.

How to Handle Wide Tables - Page Rotation

Some of the tables can have a large number of columns. In this case, the table may bleed out of the page. One solution is to use landscape pages for these tables.

Setting the attribute `orient = 'land'` attribute on the table element will force the table to be on a new landscape page.

Another solution is to use automatic detection of wide tables (5 or more columns):

```
*[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='5'],
*[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='6'],
*[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='7'],
*[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='8'],
*[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='9'],
*[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='10'] {
  page: landscape-page;
  max-width: 100%;
  max-height: 100%;
  width: 100%;
  break-before: avoid;
}
```

Note:
The `landscape-page` page layout is defined in the `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-pages-and-headers.css` file.

If you want to rotate the entire topic that contains the big table, use:

```
*[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='5'],
*[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='6'],
```

```
*[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='7'],
*[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='8'],
*[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='9'],
*[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='10'] {
  max-width: 100%;
  table-layout:auto;
}

*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='5']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='6']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='7']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='8']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='9']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='10']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > * > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='5']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > * > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='6']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > * > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='7']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > * > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='8']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > * > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='9']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > * > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='10']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > * > * > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='5']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > * > * > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='6']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > * > * > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='7']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > * > * > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='8']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > * > * > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='9']),
*[class~="topic/topic"]:has(*[class~="topic/body"] > * > * > *[class~="topic/table"][data-cols='10']) {
  page: landscape-page;
}
```

Tip:
It is also possible to import the `[PLUGIN_DIR]/css/print/p-optional-auto-rotate-wide-tables.css` stylesheet into your custom CSS.

How to Fix Text Bleeding From Table Cells

Slim tables or tables that have many columns make the text from the cells be confined to a small horizontal space. Sometimes this causes long words to bleed outside the cell boundaries.

By default, the built-in CSS automatically activates the hyphenation for the text inside tables as long as your topics have the language specified.

In case the text is still bleeding outside the boundaries, you can also use the `overflow-wrap` property to force the word to break:

```
*[class ~= "topic/table"] {
  overflow-wrap: break-word;
}
```

Related Information:

Hyphenation *(on page 1318)*
How to Enable/Disable Hyphenation for an Element *(on page 1321)*

How to Fix Small Images in Table

Tables contained in the output of DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS (and DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS) transformations have an automatic layout by default. This means that DITA-OT defines a preferred size on them, optimizing their width/height inside the content to make them as small as possible.

If, for example, you have a two-column table **without defined column widths** and one column contains images while the other column contains text, the table in the generated PDF will have its first column shrunk with smaller images and an enlarged second column (to occupy the least amount of space in the output).

To avoid this, you must *unset* the default image `max-width` so that the original size of the image will be used instead:

```
*[class ~= "topic/image"] {
  max-width: unset;
}
```

How to Center Tables

You can center the tables by using margins `auto`, while the table caption (title) can be centered using the `text-align` property:

```
*[class ~= "topic/table"] {
    margin-left:auto;
    margin-right:auto;
    width: 50%;
    border: 1pt solid blue;
}
*[class ~= "topic/table"] *[class ~= "topic/title"]{
    text-align:center;
}
```

How to Remove the Table NN Label

For the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario, the label for a table's title is wrapped in a `<span>` element with the class: `table--title-label`.

```
<table class="- topic/table table ">
  <caption class="- topic/title title tablecap">
```

```
    <span class="table--title-label">Table
      <span class="table--title-label-number">1</span>
      <span class="table--title-label-punctuation">. </span>
    </span>
    <span class="table--title">
      <span class="- topic/ph topic/title-wrapper ph title-wrapper">Lorem Tablesum</span>
    </span>
  </caption>
  ...
</table>
```

To hide it, set its display to *none*:

```
.table--title-label {
  display:none;
}
```

How to Customize Rows, Columns and Cells

Common Use-Cases

Here are some common table use-cases and the CSS selectors for customizing table rows, columns, and cells. These example uses the `background-color` CSS property but any CSS property can be used (border, margin, padding, etc.).

- Select all non-header cells:

  ```
  *[class ~= "topic/tbody"] *[class ~= "topic/entry"] {
    background-color: lightgray;
  }
  ```

- Select some table rows (using `:nth-of-type()` pseudo-class):

  ```
  /* Select all even rows. */
  *[class ~= "topic/tbody"] *[class ~= "topic/row"]:nth-of-type(even) {
    background-color: lightgray;
  }
  /* Select the fourth row. */
  *[class ~= "topic/tbody"] *[class ~= "topic/row"]:nth-of-type(4) {
    background-color: yellow;
  }
  ```

- Select specific table columns (using `:nth-of-type()` pseudo-class):

  ```
  /* Select all odd columns. */
  *[class ~= "topic/tbody"] *[class ~= "topic/entry"]:nth-of-type(odd) {
    background-color: lightgray;
  }
  ```

```
/* Select the second column. */
*[class ~= "topic/tbody"] *[class ~= "topic/entry"]:nth-of-type(2) {
  background-color: yellow;
}
```

Applying Properties to Specific Elements

If you need to apply some properties to specific elements, you can use the DITA `@outputclass` attribute:

```
<table frame="none">
    <title>Flowers</title>
    <tgroup cols="3">
        <colspec colname="c1" colnum="1" colwidth="171pt"/>
        <colspec colname="c2" colnum="2" colwidth="99pt"/>
        <colspec colname="c3" colnum="3" colwidth="150pt"/>
        <thead>
            <row>
                <entry>Flower</entry>
                <entry>Type</entry>
                <entry>Soil</entry>
            </row>
        </thead>
        <tbody>
            <row>
                <entry>Chrysanthemum</entry>
                <entry outputclass="colored">perennial</entry>
                <entry>well drained</entry>
            </row>
            <row>
                <entry>Gardenia</entry>
                <entry>perennial</entry>
                <entry>acidic</entry>
            </row>
            <row outputclass="colored">
                <entry>Gerbera</entry>
                <entry>annual</entry>
                <entry>sandy, well-drained</entry>
            </row>
        </tbody>
    </tgroup>
</table>
```

In this case, the selector will be based on this `outputclass`:

```
*[class ~= "topic/table"] *[outputclass ~= "colored"] {
  background-color: yellow;
}
```

How to Add Stripes to a Table

To create a striped look for your tables, you can use the following CSS rules:

```
/* Header background and foreground */
*[class ~= "topic/table"][outputclass ~= "stripes"] > *[class ~= "topic/thead"] > *[class ~= "topic/row"]  {
    background-color: blue;
    color:white;
}

/* A default background for the entire table body */
*[class ~= "topic/table"][outputclass ~= "stripes"] > *[class ~= "topic/tbody"] {
    background-color: #eeeeee;
}

/* Color for the stripes */
*[class ~= "topic/table"][outputclass ~= "stripes"] > *[class ~= "topic/tbody"] > *[class ~= "topic/row"]:nth-child(odd) {
    background-color: cyan;
}

/* Border for the cells */
*[class ~= "topic/table"][outputclass ~= "stripes"] *[class ~= "topic/entry"]  {
    border: blue;
}
```

The above rules assume that tables that are to be painted with stripes are marked with an `@outputclass` attribute:

```
<table outputclass="stripes">...</table>
```

If you want to make all tables look the same, you can ignore this attribute and remove the `[outputclass ~= "stripes"]` simple selector from the above rules.

CAUTION:
Applying stripes and thin cell borders can cause rendering issues in the PDF renderer on screen display devices. For more information, see Disappearing Thin Lines or Cell Borders *(on page 1433)*.

How to Display Borders on a Split Cell

By default, if a cell extends onto a second page, its bottom and top borders are discarded. To display these borders, you need to add the following property in your CSS customization:

```
*[class ~= "topic/entry"] {

  -oxy-borders-conditionality: retain;

}
```

How to Rotate Content from a Table Cell

In DITA CALS tables, you can rotate the content of a cell by setting the `@rotate` attribute to `1`.

In the following example, the `Sport`, `All terrain`, and `Family` header cells are rotated.

```
<table frame="all" rowsep="1" colsep="1" id="table_d1p_flb_crb">
  <title>Car Features</title>
  <tgroup cols="4">
    <colspec colname="c1" colnum="1" colwidth="14*"/>
    <colspec colname="c2" colnum="2" colwidth="1*" align="center"/>
    <colspec colname="c3" colnum="3" colwidth="1*" align="center"/>
    <colspec colname="c4" colnum="4" colwidth="1*" align="center"/>
    <thead>
      <row>
        <entry morerows="1">Car Name</entry>
        <entry namest="c2" nameend="c4">Features</entry>
      </row>
      <row>
        <entry rotate="1">Sport</entry>
        <entry rotate="1">All terrain</entry>
        <entry rotate="1">Family</entry>
      </row>
    </thead>
    <tbody>
      <row>
        <entry>Tesla Model S</entry>
        <entry>X</entry>
        <entry/>
        <entry>X</entry>
      </row>
...
```

Table 14. Car Features

Car Name	Features		
	Sport	All terrain	Family
Tesla Model S	X		X

The resulting output will be:

Car Name	Features		
	Sport	All terrain	Family
Tesla Model S	X		X
Nissan Leaf			X
Dacia Duster		X	X

The built-in CSS matches the cells with this attribute and applies the following properties:

```
*[class~="topic/entry"][rotate='1'] {
  transform: rotate(270deg);

  /* Avoid wrapping, including hyphenation */
  white-space:pre;
  hyphens:manual;

  /* The rotated content will start from the lower side of the cell */
  vertical-align:bottom;
}
```

To change the vertical alignment of the content (for example, to move it to the middle of the cell), use the following in your CSS customization:

```
*[class~="topic/entry"][rotate='1'] {
  vertical-align:middle;
}
```

The resulting output will be:

Car Name	Features		
	Sport	All terrain	Family
Tesla Model S	X		X
Nissan Leaf			X
Dacia Duster		X	X

To make the text wrap (for instance, the "All terrain" could be split on two lines), you need to inhibit the whitespace preservation from the built-in CSS. In this case, all spaces will create a line break in the rotated layout. Thus, you can add this in your customization:

```
*[class~="topic/entry"][rotate='1'] {
  vertical-align:middle;
  white-space:normal;
}
```

The resulting output will be:

Car Name	Features		
	Sport	All terrain	Family
Tesla Model S	X		X
Nissan Leaf			X
Dacia Duster		X	X

Note:
The padding and borders set on the table cells are not rotated (only the content of the cell is rotated). You can use `padding-left` (for instance) to move the labels to the horizontal axis.

```
*[class~="topic/entry"][rotate='1'] {
  padding-left:2em;
}
```

How to Add Horizontal Lines to a Choice Table

To add horizontal lines that separate the options within a `<choicetable>`, you can use borders set on each of the rows. The following CSS styles the top header and the first column with some background colors. In a choice table, the first column represents the choice labels.

```
*[class~="task/choptionhd"],
*[class~="task/choptionhd"],
*[class~="task/chdeschd"],
*[class~="task/choption"] {
 background-color: #EEEEEE;
 text-align: left;
}

*[class~="task/choicetable"] {
```

```
 border: 2pt solid #EEEEEE;
}


*[class~="task/choicetable"] *[class~="task/chrow"],
*[class~="task/choicetable"] *[class~="task/chhead"]{
 border-bottom: 2pt solid #EEEEEE;
}


*[class~="task/choicetable"] *[class~="topic/stentry"] {
 border-bottom: none;
 border-right: none;
}
```

Note:
Using the frame attribute on the choice table will make these selectors apply partially. Please make sure you are designing your customization CSS taking into account all possible values for the frame attribute.

Programming Elements

Programming Elements are used to render lines of programming code. These elements have preserved line endings and use a monospace font in the output.

How to Change Font in Code Blocks

You can change fonts in code blocks to make them easier to read or compliant with your company fonts. To do so, add the following rule to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= 'pr-d/codeblock'],
*[class ~= "pr-d/codeblock"] > code {
  font-family: 'Consolas', monospace;
}
```

Related information

Using Web Fonts

Using Local Font Files

How to Enable Syntax Highlight in Code Blocks

Note:
This topic refers only to the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation type.

You can use syntax highlighting to make it easier to read your code snippets by displaying each type of code in different colors and fonts. In the DITA topics, set the `@outputclass` attribute on the `<codeblock>` elements to one of these values:

- language-json
- language-yaml
- language-xml
- language-bourne
- language-c
- language-cmd
- language-cpp
- language-csharp
- language-css
- language-dtd
- language-ini
- language-java
- language-javascript
- language-lua
- language-perl
- language-powershell
- language-php
- language-python
- language-ruby
- language-sql
- language-xquery

For example, for a java snippet:

```
<codeblock outputclass="language-java">
   for (int i=0; i <100; i++) {
     // do something
   }
</codeblock>
```

The resulting HTML fragment in the merged HTML5 document is:

```
 <pre class="+ topic/pre pr-d/codeblock pre codeblock language-java"
    xml:space="preserve">
   <strong class="hl-keyword" style="color:#7f0055">for</strong>
       (<strong class="hl-keyword" style="color:#7f0055">int</strong>
         i=<span class="hl-number">0</span>; i
            <<span class="hl-number">100</span>; i++) {
     <em class="hl-comment" style="color:#006400">// do something</em>
```

```
  }
</pre>
```

And in the output, it is rendered as:

```
for (int i=0; i <100; i++) {
  // do something
}
```

Changing the Colors for the Syntax Highlighting

As you can see in the above example, the HTML elements `<span>` and `<strong>` are used to color the content. Since they have a `@style` attribute set, the overriding properties need to be marked with `!important`.

Suppose you want to color the keywords in red and the comments in blue. To do so, add the following to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
.hl-keyword {
  color: red !important;
}
.hl-comment {
  color: blue !important;
}
```

How to Add Line Numbering in Code Blocks

Note:
This topic refers only to the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation type.

You can add line numbering to make your code snippets easier to read. In the DITA topics, set the `@outputclass` attribute on the `<codeblock>` elements to the `show-line-numbers` value.

Note:
It is possible to use the `@outputclass="show-line-numbers"` together with any of the `language` `@outputclass` value (e.g. `@outputclass="language-java show-line-numbers"`).

For example, for a java snippet:

```
<codeblock outputclass="show-line-numbers">
public void convert(String systemId, InputStream is) {
 return new FileInputStream();
}
</codeblock>
```

The resulting HTML fragment in the merged HTML5 document is:

```
<pre class="+ topic/pre pr-d/codeblock pre codeblock show-line-numbers"
outputclass="show-line-numbers" xml:space="preserve">
<span class="+ topic/pre-new-line pre-new-line"></span>
<span class="+ topic/pre-new-line pre-new-line">
</span>public void convert(String systemId, InputStream is) {
<span class="+ topic/pre-new-line pre-new-line"></span> return new FileInputStream();
<span class="+ topic/pre-new-line pre-new-line"></span>}
<span class="+ topic/pre-new-line pre-new-line"></span></pre>
```

And in the output, it is rendered as:

```
1
2   public void convert(String systemId, InputStream is) {
3    return new FileInputStream();
4   }
5
```

How to Display Whitespaces in Code Blocks

Note:
This topic refers only to the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation type.

You can display whitespace characters in code blocks to visualize indentation in the PDF. In the DITA topics, set the `@outputclass` attribute on the `<codeblock>` elements to the `show-whitespace` value.

Note:
It is possible to use the `@outputclass="show-whitespace"` together with any of the `language` or `show-line-numbers` `@outputclass` values (e.g. `@outputclass="language-java show-line-numbers show-whitespace"`).

For example, for a java snippet:

```
<codeblock outputclass="show-whitespace">
public void convert(String systemId, InputStream is) {
  return new FileInputStream();
}
</codeblock>
```

The resulting HTML fragment in the merged HTML5 document is:

```
<pre class="+ topic/pre pr-d/codeblock pre codeblock show-whitespaces"
outputclass="show-whitespaces" xml:space="preserve">
public·void·convert(String·systemId,·InputStream·is)·{
··return·new·FileInputStream();
```

```
}
</pre>
```

And in the output, it is rendered as:

```
public·void·convert(String·systemId,·InputStream·is)·{
··return·new·FileInputStream();
}
```

How to Disable Line Wrapping in Code Blocks

By default, code blocks have the content wrapped to avoid the bleeding of long lines out of the page. To avoid wrapping, add the following in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class~="pr-d/codeblock"] {
   white-space: pre;
}
```

For the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation type, the best solution to distinguish between lines is to leave them wrapped, but color each line with a different background (zebra coloring). An example is provided here: XSLT Extensions for PDF Transformations *(on page 1389)*.

How to Enable Line Wrap in Code Phrases

By default, line wrapping does not apply on inline elements, which could cause some lines of code to bleed out of the page. To allow line wrapping, the property should be set on the parent block with the following rule in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*:has(*[class ~= 'pr-d/codeph']) {
  overflow-wrap: break-word;
}
```

Notes:

- It is possible to use `hyphens: auto` instead of `overflow-wrap: break-word`.
- It is possible to use the same rule for software domain elements (e.g. `<filepath>` or `<cmdname>`).

How to Deal with Unwanted Returns in Code Blocks

There are cases where the source file contains long lines of code that need to continue onto the next line in the rendered PDF (to wrap visually).

When the user copies the block from the PDF reader, they get two separated lines. This means that the command fails when users copy it from the PDF to the command-line terminal (because it comes in as two commands).

For example, the command:

```
$gist = ls -l * | count -n | some more
```

May be rendered in the PDF on two lines:

```
$gist = ls -l * | count -n

| some more
```

And this is invalid when used in the terminal.

There is no CSS workaround for this, but you can manually format the command using a continuation character:

- Windows

  ```
  $gist = ls -l * | count -n ^

  | some more
  ```

- Linux/macOS

  ```
  $gist = ls -l * | count -n \

  | some more
  ```

The command-line processor will automatically know that the command continues on the second line.

Notes

Notes contain an additional piece of information that calls attention to particular content. They may have various types (note, tip, fastpath, restriction, important, remember, attention, caution, danger, other).

For information on how to add and manage mixed content before the note icons and labels, see How to Control the Image Size in Complex Static Content *(on page 1355)*.

How to Change Note Icons

Remember:

- The recommended icon format is SVG.
- The default size of the note icons is 24x24px.

To change the default icon for notes that do not have a `@type` attribute, add the following rule to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
div.note {
  background-image: url("../img/note.svg");
}
```

For a note with a `@type` attribute set to *warning*, *caution*, or *trouble*, add the following corresponding CSS rule:

```
div.warning {
  background-image: url("../img/warning.svg");
}
div.caution {
  background-image: url("../img/caution.svg");
}
div.trouble {
  background-image: url("../img/troubleshooting.svg");
}
```

For a note with `@type` attribute set to *other* and `@othertype` attribute set to *Safety*, add the following CSS rule:

```
div.note[type="other"][othertype=Safety] {
  background-image: url("../img/life-preserver.svg");
}
```

How to Change Note Colors

To change the background-color for notes that do not have a `@type` attribute, add the following rule to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class~="topic/note"]:not([class~="hazard-d/hazardstatement"]) {
  background-color: #50bbff;
}
```

For a note with a `@type` attribute set to *restriction*, add the following CSS rule:

```
*[class~="topic/note"].note_restriction {
  background-color: #ff5566;
}
```

For a note with `@type` attribute set to *other* and `@othertype` attribute set to *Safety*, add the following CSS rule:

```
*[class~="topic/note"][type = "other"][othertype = Safety] {
  background-color: #ffaa00;
}
```

Hazard

Hazards (embodied by the `<hazardstatement>` element) contain warning information. They are based on ANSI Z535 and ISO 3864 standards and may have various values set for the type (`note`, `tip`, `fastpath`, `restriction`, `important`, `remember`, `attention`, `caution`, `notice`, `danger`, `warning`, `other`).

How to Customize Hazard Statements

It is possible to customize hazard statements (`<hazardstatement>` elements) to add an icon, change the borders, change the colors, and more. For example, to customize the *attention* type hazards, add the following rules to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "hazard-d/hazardstatement"][type = "attention"] {
  border-width: 2px;
}
*[class ~= "hazard-d/hazardstatement"][type = "attention"],
*[class ~= "hazard-d/hazardstatement"][type = "attention"] td {
  border-color: #ff9900;
}

.hazardstatement .hazardstatement--attention {
  text-align: left;
  padding-left: 3em;
  background-position: .5em .3em;
  background-image: url("danger.svg");
  background-repeat: no-repeat;
  background-color: #ff9900;
  border-color: #ff9900;
  color: black;
}
```

Tip:
The default icon size is 24px and its URL is relative to the CSS stylesheet.

How to Customize Other Type Hazards

It is possible to create custom hazard types by using the `@type` and `@othertype` attributes. For example, to add a high voltage hazard in a microwave manual:

```
<hazardstatement id="hazardstatement_vzy_zdc_syb" type="other" othertype="HIGH_VOLTAGE">
    <messagepanel id="messagepanel_wzy_zdc_syb">
        <typeofhazard>Electrical Shock</typeofhazard>
        <howtoavoid>Do not disassemble or repair the microwave yourself.</howtoavoid>
    </messagepanel>
    <hazardsymbol id="hazardsymbol_z4t_gjc_syb" href="electricity_icon.svg"/>
</hazardstatement>
```

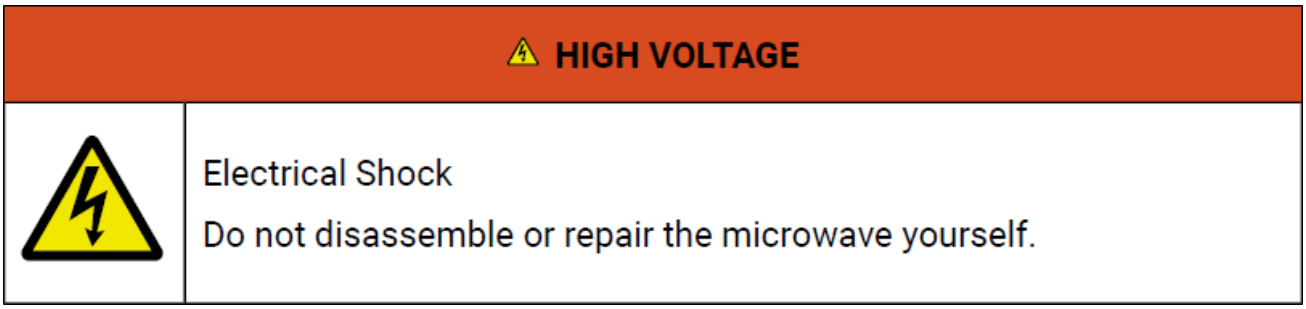
Tip:
SVG images are preferred for the `<hazardsymbol>` and you should set both `@height="1em"` and `@width="1em"` to obtain a rendering that is similar to default hazards.

To customize the hazard, add the following rules to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
/* Change the header color. */
*[othertype ~= "HIGH_VOLTAGE"] .hazardstatement--other {
```

```
  content: "HIGH VOLTAGE"; /* Change the hazard text */
  background-color: #d84b20;
  color: unset;
}

/* Show logo in the header. */
*[othertype ~= "HIGH_VOLTAGE"] .hazardstatement--other::before {
  padding: .5rem;
  content: url("electricity_icon.svg");
}

/* Show logo in the left cell. */
*[othertype ~= "HIGH_VOLTAGE"] th {
  table-column-span: 2 !important;
}
*[othertype ~= "HIGH_VOLTAGE"] .hazardstatement--logo-col {
  display: table-column !important;
}
*[othertype ~= "HIGH_VOLTAGE"] td:first-of-type {
  display: table-cell !important;
}
*[othertype ~= "HIGH_VOLTAGE"] .hazardsymbol {
  height: 4em; /* Change the symbol dimension */
}
```

The result in the PDF output would look like this:



How to Remove the Hazard Symbol

Remove the Hazard Symbol from the Header

It is possible to remove the symbol that appears in the hazard header (for example, if you consider it redundant with the symbol in the column).

To remove it, simply hide its container with the following rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
.hazardsymbol-container {
  display: none;
}
```

Remove the Hazard Symbol on the left of the Message Panel

It is possible to remove the column that contains the hazard symbol (for example, if you want to maximize the message panel).

To remove the caution symbols, for example, add the following rules to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
.hazardstatement_caution .hazardstatement--logo-col {
  display: none;
}
.hazardstatement_caution th {
  table-column-span: 1
}
.hazardstatement_caution td:first-of-type {
  display: none;
}
```

Tasks

Tasks provide step-by-step instructions that enable a user to perform an operation.

How to Add Requirements Labels

It is possible to add tasks headings by setting the `args.gen.task.lbl` parameter in the transformation. However, **Machinery Tasks** have some extra required elements. It is possible to add labels for these requirements by adding the following rules to your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
*[class ~= "taskreq-d/reqconds"]:before,
*[class ~= "taskreq-d/reqpers"]:before,
*[class ~= "taskreq-d/supequip"]:before,
*[class ~= "taskreq-d/supplies"]:before,
*[class ~= "taskreq-d/spares"]:before,
*[class ~= "taskreq-d/safety"]:before {
  font-weight: bold;
  padding-left: 20px;
}

*[class ~= "taskreq-d/reqconds"]:before {
  content: "Conditions: ";
}
*[class ~= "taskreq-d/reqpers"]:before {
```

```
  content: "Personnel: ";
}
*[class ~= "taskreq-d/personnel"]:before {
  content: "Number of workers: " !important;
}
*[class ~= "taskreq-d/perscat"]:before {
  content: "Category: " !important;
}
*[class ~= "taskreq-d/perskill"]:before {
  content: "Skill level: " !important;
}
*[class ~= "taskreq-d/esttime"]:before {
  content: "Time estimate: " !important;
}
*[class ~= "taskreq-d/supequip"]:before {
  content: "Equipment: " !important;
}
*[class ~= "taskreq-d/supplies"]:before {
  content: "Supplies: " !important;
}
*[class ~= "taskreq-d/spares"]:before {
  content: "Spares:";
}
*[class ~= "taskreq-d/safety"]:before {
  content: " Safety:";
}
```

Abbreviated Forms

When using the `<abbreviated-form>` element in your content, it is possible to style the subsequent occurrences differently than the first occurrence. To achieve this, add something similar to the following rule in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)*:

```
a:has(dfn[class ~= "abbreviated-form"]) {
    color: oxy_xpath("let $cdf:= dfn return if (preceding::dfn[@keyref = $cdf/@keyref]) then 'black' else 'red'");
    text-decoration: oxy_xpath("let $cdf:= dfn return if (preceding::dfn[@keyref = $cdf/@keyref]) then 'none' else
 'underline'");
}
```

This example would render the first occurrence with a red color and an underline, while the subsequent occurrences would be rendered with a black color and no underline.

Trademarks

Trademarks are used to specify legally registered words and they are often used in technical documentation. To specify a trademark, your DITA content could use a structure similar to this:

```
<tm tmtype="tm">My Product Name</tm>
```

Depending on the value of the `@tmtype` attribute, a different symbol is appended to the text: (®, ™ , or ℠).

The structure of the merged HTML document the CSS will apply to is:

```
<span class="- topic/tm tm" tmtype="tm">My Product Name<span
                        class="- topic/tmmark tmmark ">™</span></span>
```

How to Style the Trademark Element Text

To change the style of the entire trademark text, you can match the `topic/tm` class like this:

```
*[class ~= "topic/tm"] {
 font-weight:bold;
}
```

How to Style the Trademark Symbol

To change the aspect of the trademark symbol, you can use the `topic/tmmark` class. Usually, common fonts already render these symbols smaller and with superscript by default. The following example does it from the CSS:

```
*[class ~= "topic/tmmark"] {
 vertical-align: super;
 font-size: smaller;
}
```

Styling Through Custom Parameters

You can activate parts of your CSS by using custom transformation parameters that start with the `args.css.param.` prefix.

These parameters are recognized by the publishing pipeline and are forwarded as synthetic attributes on the root element of the merged map. The last part of the parameter name will become the attribute name, while the value of the parameter will become the attribute value. The namespace of these synthetic attributes is: `http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/publishing/dita/css/params`.

When using the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** or the **DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformations, the generated attribute will be in no namespace.

Notes:

- Make sure the name of your custom parameter does not conflict with an attribute name that may already exist on the root element.
- Use only Latin alphanumeric characters for parameter names.
- You can set multiple styling parameters at the same time.

How to Change the Publication Title Using a Parameter

In the following example, a custom parameter is used as the publication's main title. The parameter is defined in the transformation scenario as:

```
args.css.param.main-title="${ask('Main title', generic, 'Flowers')}"
```

When running the scenario, a dialog box will appear prompting for a title, with 'Flowers' set as the default.

Then in the CSS, the attribute value is extracted and used as follows:

```
/* Update the title */
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page-title"] > *[class ~= "topic/title"] {
  content: oxy_xpath('/*/@*[local-name()="main-title"][1]');
}

/* Update the bookmark */
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page-title"] > *[class ~= "topic/title"]:not([class ~= "bookmap/booktitle"]),
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page-title"] > *[class ~= "bookmap/booktitle"] > *[class ~= "bookmap/mainbooktitle"] {
  bookmark-label: content(before) oxy_xpath('/*/@*[local-name()="main-title"][1]');
}

/* Update metadata and tab name */
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page-title"] *[class ~= "topic/title"]:not([class ~= 'bookmap/booktitle']),
*[class ~= "front-page/front-page"] *[class ~= "bookmap/booktitle"] > *[class ~= "bookmap/mainbooktitle"] {
  -oxy-pdf-meta-title: oxy_xpath('/*/@*[local-name()="main-title"][1]');
}
```

How to Limit the Depth of the TOC Using a Parameter

In the following example, a custom parameter is used to switch from a full depth table of contents to a flat one that shows only the titles of the first-level topics (such as chapters, notices, or the preface).

The custom parameter is:

```
args.css.param.only-chapters-in-toc="yes"
```

The CSS that hides the *topicrefs* at level 2 or more:

```
:root[only-chapters-in-toc='yes'] *[class ~= "toc/toc"]
        > *[class ~= "map/topicref"]> *[class ~= "map/topicref"] {
  display:none;
}
```

The `:root[a|only-chapters-in-toc='yes']` selector makes the rule activate only when the attribute is set.

How to Change the Page Size Using a Parameter

In the following example, a custom parameter is used to modify the page size. The parameter is defined in the transformation scenario as:

```
args.css.param.page-size="A4"
```

Then in the CSS, the attribute value is extracted and used as follows:

```
@page {
    size: oxy_xpath('/*/@*[local-name()="page-size"][1]');
}
```

How to Change the Cover Page Using a Parameter

In the following example, a custom parameter is used to set the path of the cover page. The parameter points to an image by using its URL and is defined in the transformation scenario as:

```
args.css.param.cover-page="file:/path/to/cover-page.svg"
```

Then in the CSS, the attribute value is extracted and used as follows:

```
@page front-page {
    background-image: url(oxy_xpath('/*/@*[local-name()="cover-page"][1]'));
}
```

Controlling the Publication Content

It is possible to control the publication content by either using a DITA Bookmap or by specifying additional parameters in the transformation scenario.

Why Use a Bookmap

Using a plain DITA map, the transformation will produce a publication with a front page, a table of contents, chapters with content, and an index at the end. This is appropriate for most cases, but there are some use cases where some adjustments are necessary. For example, if you want to do one of the following:

- Remove the TOC or index.
- Add a glossary.
- Change the position of the TOC or the index relative to the sibling topics.
- Add a *preface*, *frontmatter*, or *backmatter* with copyright notices, abstracts, list of tables, list of figures, etc.

All of these can be achieved using a DITA `<bookmap>` element.

A bookmap has a more elaborate structure than a regular map. You should start by defining the title structure, with a main title and alternative title:

```
<!DOCTYPE bookmap PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DITA BookMap//EN"  "bookmap.dtd">
<bookmap id="taskbook">
  <booktitle>
    <mainbooktitle>Publication Title</mainbooktitle>
    <booktitlealt>A very short description of the publication</booktitlealt>
  </booktitle>
```

Then you may define a *frontmatter*. For this, you can link the topics that need to appear before the main content. You can also define the location where the table of contents will be placed. In the example below, it appears between the `abstract.dita` and `foreword.dita` topics:

```
  <frontmatter>
    <topicref href="topics/abstract.dita"/>
    <booklists>
      <toc/>
    </booklists>
    <topicref href="topics/foreword.dita"/>
  </frontmatter>
```

Note:
To remove the TOC from the publication, just omit the `<toc>` element from the `<booklists>` element.

Next, the topics are grouped into chapters:

```
...
<chapter href="topics/installation.dita" />
...
```

Note:
If you need more levels, you can use the `<part>` element and then group your chapters under it.

At the end, you could define the structure of the *backmatter*. Just like for the *frontmatter*, you can include some topics and some generated content (such as the index). In the example below, the glossary is defined to come after the index, followed by a list of figures, and a list of tables. At the very end, there is a topic with some thank you notes:

```
  <backmatter>
    <topicref href="topics/conclusion.dita"/>
    <booklists>
      <indexlist/>
```

```
    <glossarylist>
      <topicref href="topics/xp.dita" keys="xp" print="yes" />
      <topicref href="topics/anti_lock_braking_system.dita" keys="abs" print="yes" />
    </glossarylist>

    <figurelist/>
    <tablelist/>
  </booklists>
  <topicref href="topics/thanks.dita"/>
</backmatter>
```

As you can see, the bookmap offers more control over the final content of the publication than a regular map. It also offers more options for controlling the metadata that will go in the PDF (see the Metadata *(on page 1253)* topic).

How to Omit the Front Page, TOC, Glossary, Index for a Plain DITA Map

For a plain DITA map, there are no elements that allow you to control if and where to place the generated content such as the title page, table of contents, list of tables, glossary, or index. For the most common use-case, when you want to hide them all and just keep the content, you can use the transformation parameter `hide.frontpage.toc.index.glossary`. See: Transformation Parameters *(on page 1168)*.

Related Information:

How to Remove Entries from the TOC *(on page 1287)*

How to Hide the TOC *(on page 1288)*

How to Extract Parts and Chapters as Individual PDF Files

Note:

This topic is only applicable for the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.

There are two ways to tell the processor to extract some topics as individual PDF files:

1. Using the `args.css.param.pdf-split-mode` parameter: This option allows you to create individual PDF files for each part or chapter of a publication.
2. Using the `@outputclass="pdf-split"` attribute: This option allows you to create separate PDF files only for selected topics.

Remember:

- Only parts, chapters and topics with an `@id` attribute will be extracted.
- Individual PDFs will be generated alongside the main PDF.
- Extracted PDFs will preserve the styling of the original document.

Tip:
Generating additional PDFs may produce numerous files. To keep the output directory organized, it is recommended to disable the `args.keep.output.debug.files` parameter.

Since each part or chapter is independent and can be read separately, the page, figure, and table counters should restart at the beginning of each chapter. You can control this behavior using the `args.css.param.numbering` parameter, setting its value to `deep-chapter-scope`.

Beyond numbering, it is possible to enforce the creation of a chapter-specific table of contents *(on page 1288)*.

Related information
Split Mode Parameter *(on page 1169)*

XSLT Extensions for PDF Transformations

Since PDF output is primarily obtained by running XSLT transformations over the DITA input files, one customization method would be to override the default XSLT templates that are used by the PDF transformation.

The `pdf-css-html5` transformation type uses two stages to transform the merged DITA map (the one that aggregates all the topics) to HTML5:

1. **Stage 1**: Makes some changes on the merged map *(on page 1195)* and the result is a modified merged map. This stage can be altered by implementing the **com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged** XSLT extension point. This extension overrides the stylesheets found in the following folder: *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\com.oxygenxml.pdf.css\xsl\merged2merged`.

   Note:
   Use this when you need to filter DITA content.

2. **Stage 2**: Transforms the merged map *(on page 1195)* to HTML5 and the result is a single HTML document. This stage can be altered by implementing the **com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5**

XSLT extension point. This extension overrides the stylesheets found in the following folder: *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\com.oxygenxml.pdf.css\xsl\merged2html5`.

> **Note:**
> Use this when you need to change the HTML structures generated for a specific DITA element.

These extension points can be used either from a *Publishing Template* or a DITA-OT extension plugin.

How to Use XSLT Extension Points for PDF Output from a Publishing Template

This section contains some common examples of customizations using both XSLT and CSS stylesheets. These stylesheets must be used as CSS resources and XSLT extension points inside an *Oxygen Publishing Template*.

> **Tip:**
> The XSLT extension points are called on specific files during two different phases of the process: merged2merged *(on page 1165)* and merged2html5 *(on page 1166)*.

How to Style Codeblocks with a Zebra Effect

A possible requirement for your `<codeblock>` elements could be to alternate the background color on each line. Some advantages of this technique is that you can clearly see when text from the `<codeblock>` is wrapped.

> **Note:**
> Adding this styling will remove syntax highlights on codeblocks.

This effect can be done by altering the HTML5 output, creating a `div` for each line from the code block, then styling them.

To add this functionality using an *Oxygen Publishing Template*, follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, you need to create one. For details, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xslt` folder inside the project root folder.
4. In this folder, create an XSL file (for example, named `merged2html5Extension.xsl`) with the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
```

```
  version="3.0">

  <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' pr-d/codeblock ')]">
    <xsl:variable name="nm">
      <xsl:next-match/>
    </xsl:variable>
    <xsl:apply-templates select="$nm" mode="zebra"/>
  </xsl:template>

  <xsl:template match="node() | @*" mode="zebra">
    <xsl:copy>
      <xsl:apply-templates select="node() | @*" mode="#current"/>
    </xsl:copy>
  </xsl:template>

  <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' pr-d/codeblock ')]" mode="zebra">
    <xsl:element name="{name()}">
      <xsl:copy-of select="@*"/>
      <xsl:attribute name="class" select="concat(@class, ' zebra')"/>
      <xsl:analyze-string regex="\n" select=".">
        <xsl:matching-substring/>
        <xsl:non-matching-substring>
          <div>
            <xsl:value-of select="."/>
          </div>
        </xsl:non-matching-substring>
      </xsl:analyze-string>
    </xsl:element>
  </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the `.opt` file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5` XSLT extension point:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <xslt>
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5"
```

```
        file="xslt/merged2html5Extension.xsl"/>
    </xslt>
```

6. Create a `css` folder in the publishing template directory. In this directory, save a custom CSS file with rules that style the `<codeblock>` structure. For example:

```
.zebra {
  padding: 0;
}

.zebra > *:nth-of-type(odd) {
  background-color: lightgray;
}
```

7. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the `.opt` file) and reference your custom CSS file in the `resources` element:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <resources>
      <css file="css/custom.css"/>
    </resources>
```

8. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
9. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
10. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

How to Remove the Related Links Section

Suppose that you want the *related links* sections to be removed from the PDF output.

To add this functionality using an *Oxygen Publishing Template*, follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, you need to create one. For details, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xslt` folder inside the project root folder.
4. In this folder, create an XSL file (for example, named `merged2mergedExtension.xsl`) with the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
  version="3.0">
```

```
  <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' topic/related-links ')]">
    <!-- Remove. -->
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the *.opt* file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged` XSLT extension point:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <xslt>
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged"
        file="xslt/merged2mergedExtension.xsl"/>
    </xslt>
```

6. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
7. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
8. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

How to Wrap Words in Markup

Suppose you want compound words that contain hyphens (or any other criteria) to be wrapped with inline elements (such as the HTML `<code>` element).

To add this functionality using an *Oxygen Publishing Template*, follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, you need to create one. For details, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xslt` folder inside the project root folder.
4. In this folder, create an XSL file (for example, named `merged2htmlExtension.xsl`) with the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
  version="3.0">

  <xsl:template match="text()">
```

```
    <xsl:variable name="txt">
      <xsl:next-match/>
    </xsl:variable>

    <xsl:analyze-string regex="(\w|\-)+" select="$txt">
      <xsl:matching-substring>
        <!-- A word -->
        <xsl:choose>
          <xsl:when test="contains(., '-')">
            <!-- A compound word -->
            <code class="compound-word">
              <xsl:value-of select="."/>
            </code>
          </xsl:when>
          <xsl:otherwise>
            <!-- A simple word -->
            <xsl:value-of select="."/>
          </xsl:otherwise>
        </xsl:choose>
      </xsl:matching-substring>
      <xsl:non-matching-substring>
        <!-- Not a word -->
        <xsl:value-of select="."/>
      </xsl:non-matching-substring>
    </xsl:analyze-string>

  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the *.opt* file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged` XSLT extension point:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <xslt>
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged"
        file="xslt/merged2mergedExtension.xsl"/>
    </xslt>
```

6. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
7. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
8. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

How to Convert Definition Lists into Tables

Suppose you want your definitions lists (`<dl>`) to be displayed as tables in your PDF output.

To add this functionality using an *Oxygen Publishing Template*, follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, you need to create one. For details, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xslt` folder inside the project root folder.
4. In this folder, create an XSL file (for example, named `merged2html5Extension.xsl`) with the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
  version="3.0">

  <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' topic/dl ')]">
    <xsl:call-template name="setaname"/>
    <xsl:apply-templates select="
      *[contains(@class,
      ' ditaot-d/ditaval-startprop ')]" mode="out-of-line"/>
    <!-- Wrap in a table -->
    <table>
      <xsl:call-template name="commonattributes"/>
      <xsl:call-template name="setid"/>
      <xsl:apply-templates/>
    </table>
    <xsl:apply-templates select="
      *[contains(@class,
      ' ditaot-d/ditaval-endprop ')]" mode="out-of-line"/>
  </xsl:template>

  <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' topic/dlentry ')]">
    <!-- Wrap in a table row -->
    <tr>
      <xsl:call-template name="commonattributes"/>
```

```
      <xsl:call-template name="setidaname"/>
      <xsl:apply-templates/>
    </tr>
  </xsl:template>

  <xsl:template match="
    *[contains(@class, ' topic/dd ')] |
    *[contains(@class, ' topic/dt ')]">
    <!-- Wrap in a cell -->
    <td>
      <xsl:call-template name="commonattributes"/>
      <xsl:call-template name="setidaname"/>
      <xsl:apply-templates select="
        ../*[contains(@class,
        ' ditaot-d/ditaval-startprop ')]" mode="out-of-line"/>
      <xsl:apply-templates/>
      <xsl:apply-templates select="
        ../*[contains(@class,
        ' ditaot-d/ditaval-endprop ')]" mode="out-of-line"/>
    </td>
  </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the *.opt* file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5` XSLT extension point:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <xslt>
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5"
        file="xslt/merged2html5Extension.xsl"/>
    </xslt>
```

6. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
7. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
8. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

How to Display Footnotes Below Tables

In your PDF output, you may want to group all the footnotes contained in a table just below it instead of having them displayed at the bottom of the page.

To add this functionality, use an *Oxygen Publishing Template* and follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, you need to create one. For details, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xslt` folder inside the project root folder.
4. In the newly created folder, create an XSL file (for example, named `merged2mergedExtension.xsl`) with the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns:opentopic-func="http://www.idiominc.com/opentopic/exsl/function"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs opentopic-func"
  version="3.0">

  <!--
    Match only top level tables (i.e tables that are not nested in other tables),
    that contains some footnotes.
  -->
  <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, 'topic/table')]
    [not(ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'topic/table')])]
    [//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')]]">
    <xsl:next-match>
      <xsl:with-param name="top-level-table" select="." tunnel="yes"/>
    </xsl:next-match>
    <!-- Create a list with all the footnotes from the current table. -->
    <ol class="- topic/ol " outputclass="table-fn-container">
      <xsl:for-each select=".//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')]">
        <!--
          Try to preserve the footnote ID, if available, so that the xrefs will have a target.
        -->
        <li class="- topic/li " id="{if(@id) then @id else generate-id(.)}"
          outputclass="table-fn">
          <xsl:copy-of select="@callout"/>
          <xsl:apply-templates select="node()"/>
        </li>
      </xsl:for-each>
```

```
  </ol>
</xsl:template>


<!--
  The footnotes that have an ID must be ignored, they are accessible only
  through existing xrefs (already present in the merged.xml file).

  The above template already made a copy of these footnotes in the OL element
  so it is not a problem if markup is not generated for them in the cell.
-->
<xsl:template
  match="*[contains(@class, 'topic/entry')]//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')][@id]"/>


<!--
  The xrefs to footnotes with IDs inside table-cells. We need to recalculate
  their indexes if their referenced footnote is also in the table.
-->
<xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, 'topic/xref')][@type='fn']
  [ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'topic/entry')]]">
  <xsl:param name="top-level-table" tunnel="yes"/>
  <xsl:variable name="destination" select="opentopic-func:getDestinationId(@href)"/>
  <xsl:variable name="fn" select="
    $top-level-table//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')][@id = $destination]"/>
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="$fn">
      <!-- There is a reference in the table, recalculate index. -->
      <xsl:variable name="fn-number" select="
        index-of($top-level-table//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')], $fn)"/>
      <xsl:copy>
        <xsl:apply-templates select="@*"/>
        <xsl:apply-templates select="$fn/@callout"/>
        <xsl:apply-templates select="node()
          except (text(), *[contains(@class, 'hi-d/sup')])"/>
        <sup class="+ topic/ph hi-d/sup ">
          <xsl:apply-templates select="child::*[contains(@class, 'hi-d/sup')]/@*"/>
          <xsl:value-of select="$fn-number"/>
        </sup>
      </xsl:copy>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <!-- There is no reference in the table, keep original index. -->
      <xsl:next-match/>
```

```
      </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
  </xsl:template>

  <!--
    The footnotes without ID inside table-cells. They are copied in the OL element, but have
    no xrefs pointing to them (because they have no ID), so xrefs are generated.
  -->
  <xsl:template
    match="*[contains(@class, 'topic/entry')]//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')][not(@id)]">
    <!-- Determine the footnote index in the document order. -->
    <xsl:param name="top-level-table" tunnel="yes"/>
    <xsl:variable name="fn-number" select="
      index-of($top-level-table//*[contains(@class, 'topic/fn')], .)"/>
    <xref type="fn" class="- topic/xref "
      href="#{generate-id(.)}" outputclass="table-fn-call">
      <xsl:copy-of select="@callout"/>
      <!-- Generate an extra <sup>, identical to what DITA-OT generates for other xrefs. -->
      <sup class="+ topic/ph hi-d/sup ">
        <xsl:value-of select="$fn-number"/>
      </sup>
    </xref>
  </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the *.opt* file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged` XSLT extension point:

```
<publishing-template>
 ...
 <pdf>
  ...
  <xslt>
    <extension
      id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged"
      file="xslt/merged2mergedExtension.xsl"/>
   </xslt>
```

6. Create a `css` folder in the publishing template directory. In this directory, save a custom CSS file with rules that style the *glossary* structure. For example:

```
/* Customize footnote calls, inside the table. */
*[outputclass ~= 'table-fn-call'] {
```

```
  line-height: none;
}
*[class ~= "topic/table"] *[class ~= "topic/xref"][type = 'fn'][callout] *[class ~= "hi-d/sup"] {
  content: oxy_xpath("ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'topic/xref')]/@callout");
}

/* Customize the list containing all the table footnotes. */
*[outputclass ~= 'table-fn-container'] {
  border-top: 1pt solid black;
  counter-reset: table-footnote;
}

/* Customize footnotes display, below the table. */
*[outputclass ~= 'table-fn'] {
  font-size: smaller;
  counter-increment: table-footnote;
}
*[outputclass ~= 'table-fn']::marker {
  font-size: smaller;
  content: "(" counter(table-footnote) ")";
}
*[outputclass ~= 'table-fn'][callout]::marker {
  content: "(" attr(callout) ")";
}

/* Customize xrefs pointing to footnotes, inside the table. */
*[class ~= "topic/table"] *[class ~= "topic/xref"][type = 'fn'] {
  color: unset;
  text-decoration: none;
}
*[class ~= "topic/table"] *[class ~= "topic/xref"][type = 'fn']:after {
  content: none;
}
*[class ~= "topic/table"] *[class ~= "topic/xref"][type = 'fn'] *[class ~= "hi-d/sup"]:before {
  content: "(";
}
*[class ~= "topic/table"] *[class ~= "topic/xref"][type = 'fn'] *[class ~= "hi-d/sup"]:after {
  content: ")";
}
```

7. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the `.opt` file) and reference your custom CSS file in the `resources` element:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <resources>
      <css file="css/custom.css"/>
    </resources>
```

8. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
9. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
10. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

How to Wrap Scientific Numbers in Tables Cells

In your PDF output, you may need to wrap scientific numbers on two lines when they are included in table cells.

To add this functionality, use an *Oxygen Publishing Template* and follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, you need to create one. For details, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xslt` folder inside the project root folder.
4. In the newly created folder, create an XSL file (for example, named `merged2html5Extension.xsl`) with the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
  version="3.0">

  <!-- Matches text from table cells. -->
  <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' topic/entry ') ]/text()">
    <xsl:analyze-string select="." regex="[0-9]\.[0-9]{{2}}e-[0-9]{{2}}">
      <!-- The cell contains a scientific number like 1.23e-08. -->
      <xsl:matching-substring>
        <xsl:variable name="text" select="concat(substring-before(., 'e'),
          'e&#8203;', substring-after(., 'e'))"/>
        <xsl:value-of select="$text"/>
      </xsl:matching-substring>
      <xsl:non-matching-substring>
        <xsl:value-of select="."/>
      </xsl:non-matching-substring>
```

```
    </xsl:analyze-string>
  </xsl:template>


</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the *.opt* file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5` XSLT extension point:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <xslt>
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5"
        file="xslt/merged2html5Extension.xsl"/>
    </xslt>
```

6. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
7. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
8. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

How to Use a Bullet for Tasks that Contain a Single Step

If a DITA *Task* document only contains one list item (a single `<step>` element), you probably want it to be rendered the same as an unordered list (displayed with a bullet instead of a number), as in the following example:

```
...
<steps>
   <step>
        <cmd>My single step</cmd>
   </step>
</steps>
...
```

Normally, the output will be rendered as:

```
1. The step
```

instead of:

```
o The step
```

To change the default rendering so that a single step will be rendered with a bullet instead of a number, use an *Oxygen Publishing Template* and follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, you need to create one. For details, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xslt` folder inside the project root folder.
4. In the newly created folder, create an XSL file (for example, named `merged2html5Extension.xsl`) with the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
  version="3.0">

  <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' task/step ')][count(../*[contains
(@class, ' task/step ')]) = 1]">
    <xsl:copy>
      <xsl:copy-of select="@*"/>
      <xsl:attribute name="outputclass" select="concat(@outputclass, ' single ')"/>
      <xsl:apply-templates/>
    </xsl:copy>
  </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the *.opt* file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5` XSLT extension point:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <xslt>
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5"
        file="xslt/merged2html5Extension.xsl"/>
    </xslt>
```

6. Create a `css` folder in the publishing template directory. In this directory, save a custom CSS file with rules that style the *glossary* structure. For example:

```
*[outputclass ~= "single"] {
  list-style-type:circle !important;
  margin-left:2em;
}
```

7. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the `.opt` file) and reference your custom CSS file in the `resources` element:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <resources>
      <css file="css/custom.css"/>
    </resources>
```

8. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
9. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
10. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

How to Change the Critical Dates Format

By default, the dates are entered in a *YYYY-MM-DD* format (where *YYYY* is the year, *MM* is the number of the month, and *DD* is the number of the day. You can change the format (for example, to something like *January 1, 2020*) using an XSLT extension.

To add this functionality, use an *Oxygen Publishing Template* and follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, you need to create one. For details, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xslt` folder inside the project root folder.
4. In the newly created folder, create an XSL file (for example, named `merged2mergedExtension.xsl`) with the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
  version="3.0">

  <xsl:template match="
      *[contains(@class, 'topic/created')]/@date |
      *[contains(@class, 'topic/revised')]/@modified">
    <xsl:attribute name="{name()}">
      <xsl:value-of select="format-date(., '[MNn] [D01], [Y0001]')"/>
    </xsl:attribute>
  </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the *.opt* file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged` XSLT extension point:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <xslt>
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged"
        file="xslt/merged2mergedExtension.xsl"/>
    </xslt>
```

6. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
7. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
8. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

Related information

Formatting Dates and Times in XSLT

How to Remove Links from Terms

Your topics might contain multiple references to the same `<term>`. These terms can further be explained in the glossary. In this case, you may want to only keep the first occurrence of this term to be a link to the glossary and display the other terms as text.

To add this functionality, use an *Oxygen Publishing Template* and follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, you need to create one. For details, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xslt` folder inside the project root folder.
4. In the newly created folder, create an XSL file (for example, named `merged2html5Extension.xsl`) with the following content:

```
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
  version="3.0">

  <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' topic/term ')]" name="topic.term">
    <!-- Save the current @href value -->
    <xsl:variable name="current-href" select="@href"/>
```

```
    <!-- Get the closest parent topic -->
    <xsl:variable name="closest-parent"
      select="ancestor::*[contains(@class, ' topic/topic ')][1]"/>
    <!-- Get the first <term> having the same href -->
    <xsl:variable name="first-term-with-same-href" select="($closest-parent//
      *[contains(@class, ' topic/term ')][@href=$current-href])[1]"/>

    <!-- Call the HTML5 default template -->
    <xsl:variable name="result">
      <xsl:next-match/>
    </xsl:variable>

    <!-- Call the copy template that will remove the links -->
    <xsl:apply-templates select="$result" mode="remove-extra-links">
      <xsl:with-param name="is-first-term-with-same-href"
        select="generate-id(.) = generate-id($first-term-with-same-href)" tunnel="yes"/>
    </xsl:apply-templates>
  </xsl:template>

  <xsl:template match="node() | @*" mode="remove-extra-links">
    <xsl:copy>
      <xsl:apply-templates select="node() | @*" mode="#current"/>
    </xsl:copy>
  </xsl:template>

  <xsl:template match="a" mode="remove-extra-links">
    <xsl:param name="is-first-term-with-same-href" tunnel="yes"/>
    <xsl:choose>
      <!-- Process the first term as a link -->
      <xsl:when test="$is-first-term-with-same-href">
        <xsl:next-match/>
      </xsl:when>
      <xsl:otherwise>
        <!-- Process the other terms as text -->
        <xsl:copy-of select="child::*"/>
      </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
  </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the *.opt* file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5` XSLT extension point:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <xslt>
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5"
        file="xslt/merged2html5Extension.xsl"/>
    </xslt>
```

6. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
7. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
8. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

How to Display Glossary as a Table

Suppose you want to display the content of your Glossary as a table, to condense the information for one entry on a single line.

Remember:
Make sure all the glossary is contained within a single `<glossgroup>` element.

To add this functionality, use an *Oxygen Publishing Template* and follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, you need to create one. For details, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xslt` folder inside the project root folder.
4. In the newly created folder, create an XSL file (for example, named `merged2html5Extension.xsl`) with the following content:

```
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  xmlns:dita2html="http://dita-ot.sourceforge.net/ns/200801/dita2html"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs dita2html" version="3.0">

  <!-- Create a table that will contain all the glossentries contained in the glossgroup. -->
  <xsl:template name="gen-topic">
    <xsl:param name="nestlevel" as="xs:integer">
      <xsl:choose>
```

```
      <!-- Limit depth for historical reasons, could allow any depth. -->
      <!-- Previously limit was 5. -->
      <xsl:when
        test="count(ancestor::*[contains(@class, ' topic/topic ')]) > 9"
        >9</xsl:when>
      <xsl:otherwise>
        <xsl:sequence
          select="count(ancestor::*[contains(@class, ' topic/topic ')])"/>
      </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
  </xsl:param>
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="parent::dita and not(preceding-sibling::*)">
      <!-- Do not reset xml:lang if it is already set on <html> -->
      <!-- Moved outputclass to the body tag -->
      <!-- Keep ditaval based styling at this point -->
      <!-- (replace DITA-OT 1.6 and earlier call to gen-style) -->
      <xsl:apply-templates
        select="*[contains(@class, ' ditaot-d/ditaval-startprop ')]/@style"
        mode="add-ditaval-style"/>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <xsl:call-template name="commonattributes">
        <xsl:with-param name="default-output-class"
          select="concat('nested', $nestlevel)"/>
      </xsl:call-template>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
  <xsl:call-template name="gen-toc-id"/>
  <xsl:call-template name="setidaname"/>
  <xsl:choose>
    <xsl:when test="contains(@class, 'glossgroup/glossgroup')">
      <!-- Custom processing for glossgroup. -->
      <xsl:apply-templates select="*[contains(@class, 'topic/title')]"/>
      <table class="- glossgroup/table table">
        <thead class="- glossgroup/thead thead">
          <tr class="- glossgroup/row row">
            <th class="- glossgroup/entry entry">Acronym</th>
            <th class="- glossgroup/entry entry">Term</th>
            <th class="- glossgroup/entry entry">Full Term</th>
            <xsl:if
              test="exists(//*[contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossdef')])">
```

```
              <th class="- glossgroup/entry entry">Definition</th>
            </xsl:if>
          </tr>
        </thead>
        <xsl:apply-templates
          select="*[contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossentry')]"/>
      </table>
      <xsl:apply-templates select="
          * except (*[contains(@class, 'topic/title')]
          | *[contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossentry')])"/>
    </xsl:when>
    <xsl:otherwise>
      <!-- Default processing. -->
      <xsl:apply-templates/>
    </xsl:otherwise>
  </xsl:choose>
</xsl:template>

<!-- Create a row for each glossentry. -->
<xsl:template
  match="*[contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossentry')]
  [parent::*[contains(@class, 'glossgroup/glossgroup')]]">
  <xsl:variable name="glossentry" as="node()">
    <xsl:next-match/>
  </xsl:variable>
  <tr>
    <xsl:copy-of select="$glossentry/@*"/>
    <xsl:copy-of
      select="$glossentry/*[contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossAlt')]"/>
    <xsl:copy-of
      select="$glossentry/*[contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossterm')]"/>
    <xsl:copy-of
      select="$glossentry/*[contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossSurfaceForm')]"/>
    <xsl:copy-of
      select="$glossentry/*[contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossdef')]"/>
    <xsl:copy-of select="
        $glossentry/* except $glossentry/*[contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossAlt')
        or contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossterm')
        or contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossSurfaceForm')
        or contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossdef')]"/>
  </tr>
</xsl:template>
```

```
  <!-- Process only glossBody's children nodes. -->
  <xsl:template
    match="*[contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossBody')]
    [ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'glossgroup/glossgroup')]]">
    <xsl:apply-templates/>
  </xsl:template>

  <!-- Create a cell for each glossterm, glossSurfaceForm and glossAlt. -->
  <xsl:template match="
      *[contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossterm')]
      [ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'glossgroup/glossgroup')]] |
      *[contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossSurfaceForm')]
      [ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'glossgroup/glossgroup')]] |
      *[contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossAlt')]
      [ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'glossgroup/glossgroup')]]">
    <xsl:variable name="glossContent" as="node()">
      <xsl:next-match/>
    </xsl:variable>
    <td>
      <xsl:copy-of select="$glossContent/@*"/>
      <xsl:copy-of select="normalize-space(string-join($glossContent//text()))"
      />
    </td>
  </xsl:template>

  <!-- Create a cell for each glossdef. -->
  <xsl:template
    match="*[contains(@class, 'glossentry/glossdef')]
    [ancestor::*[contains(@class, 'glossgroup/glossgroup')]]">
    <td>
      <xsl:call-template name="commonattributes"/>
      <xsl:apply-templates/>
    </td>
  </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the *.opt* file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5` XSLT extension point:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
```

```
<pdf>
  ...
  <xslt>
    <extension
      id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5"
      file="xslt/merged2html5Extension.xsl"/>
  </xslt>
```

6. Create a `css` folder in the publishing template directory. In this directory, save a custom CSS file with rules that style the *glossary* structure. For example:

```
*[class ~= "glossgroup/table"] {
  width: 100%;
  border: 1px solid black;
  border-collapse: collapse;
}

*[class ~= "glossgroup/table"] th {
  background-color: lightgray;
}

*[class ~= "glossgroup/table"] th,
*[class ~= "glossgroup/table"] td {
  border: 1px solid black;
  padding: 0.3em !important;
  vertical-align: inherit !important;
}

/* Remove glossSurfaceForm */
th:nth-of-type(3),
*[class ~= "glossentry/glossSurfaceForm"] {
  display: none;
}

/* Discard the default glossterm layout */
*[class ~= "glossentry/glossterm"] {
  font-size: unset;
  font-weight: unset;
}
```

Note:
The `<glossSurfaceForm>` removal part is optional. It is present as an example of how to fully remove a column.

7. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the `.opt` file) and reference your custom CSS file in the `resources` element:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <resources>
      <css file="css/custom.css"/>
    </resources>
```

8. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
9. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
10. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

How to Include Sections in the Mini TOC

By default, the *Mini TOC* only displays the child topics of a given chapter topic. To add the possibility of also displaying the child sections, use an *Oxygen Publishing Template* and follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, you need to create one. For details, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xslt` folder inside the project root folder.
4. In the newly created folder, create an XSL file (for example, named `merged2mergedExtension.xsl`) with the following content:

```
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform" version="3.0"
  xmlns:ditaarch="http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/"
  xmlns:opentopic-index="http://www.idiominc.com/opentopic/index"
  xmlns:opentopic="http://www.idiominc.com/opentopic"
  xmlns:oxy="http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author" xmlns:saxon="http://saxon.sf.net/"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" exclude-result-prefixes="#all">
  <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' topic/topic ')]">
    <xsl:choose>
      <xsl:when test="
          ($args.chapter.layout = 'MINITOC' or
          $args.chapter.layout = 'MINITOC-BOTTOM-LINKS') and
          oxy:is-chapter(/, oxy:get-topicref-for-topic(/, @id)) and
          *[contains(@class, ' topic/topic ')]">
        <!-- Minitoc. -->
        <xsl:copy>
          <xsl:apply-templates select="@*"/>
          <xsl:apply-templates select="*[contains(@class, ' topic/title ')]"/>
```

```
          <xsl:apply-templates select="*[contains(@class, ' topic/prolog ')]"/>
          <xsl:apply-templates select="*[contains(@class, ' topic/titlealts ')]"/>
          <div>
            <xsl:choose>
              <xsl:when test="$args.chapter.layout = 'MINITOC'">
                <xsl:attribute name="class">- topic/div chapter/minitoc </xsl:attribute>
                <xsl:call-template name="generate-minitoc-links"/>
                <xsl:call-template name="generate-minitoc-desc"/>
              </xsl:when>
              <xsl:when test="$args.chapter.layout = 'MINITOC-BOTTOM-LINKS'">
<xsl:attribute name="class">- topic/div chapter/minitoc chapter/minitoc-bottom </xsl:attribute>
                <xsl:call-template name="generate-minitoc-desc"/>
                <xsl:call-template name="generate-minitoc-links"/>
              </xsl:when>
            </xsl:choose>
          </div>
          <xsl:apply-templates select="*[contains(@class, ' topic/topic ')]"/>
        </xsl:copy>
      </xsl:when>
      <xsl:otherwise>
        <!-- No minitoc. -->
        <xsl:next-match/>
      </xsl:otherwise>
    </xsl:choose>
  </xsl:template>
  <!--
    The chapter topic content. This has the role of describing the chapter.
  -->
  <xsl:template name="generate-minitoc-desc">
    <div class="- topic/div chapter/minitoc-desc ">
      <xsl:apply-templates select="
          *[not(contains(@class, ' topic/title ')) and
          not(contains(@class, ' topic/prolog ')) and
          not(contains(@class, ' topic/titlealts ')) and
          not(contains(@class, ' topic/topic ')) and
          not(contains(@class, ' topic/section '))
          ]"/>
    </div>
  </xsl:template>
  <!--
    Child links.
  -->
```

```
  <xsl:template name="generate-minitoc-links">
    <div class="- topic/div chapter/minitoc-links ">
      <related-links class="- topic/related-links ">
        <linklist class="- topic/linklist ">
          <desc class="- topic/desc ">
            <ph class="- topic/ph chapter/minitoc-label ">
              <xsl:call-template name="getVariable">
                <xsl:with-param name="id" select="'Mini Toc'"/>
              </xsl:call-template>
            </ph>
          </desc>
          <xsl:apply-templates select="
              *[contains(@class, ' topic/topic ')] |
              descendant-or-self::*[contains(@class, ' topic/section ')]"
            mode="in-this-chapter-list"/>
        </linklist>
      </related-links>
    </div>
  </xsl:template>
  <xsl:template match="
      *[contains(@class, ' topic/topic ')
      or contains(@class, ' topic/section ')]" mode="in-this-chapter-list">
    <xsl:variable name="link-type" select="
        if (contains(@class, ' topic/section ')) then
          'section'
        else
          'topic'"/>
    <link class="- topic/link " href="#{@id}" type="{$link-type}" role="child">
      <linktext class="- topic/linktext ">
        <xsl:value-of select="*[contains(@class, ' topic/title ')]"/>
      </linktext>
    </link>
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the *.opt* file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged` XSLT extension point:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <xslt>
```

```
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.mergedmerged"
        file="xslt/merged2mergedExtension.xsl"/>
    </xslt>
    <parameters>
      <parameter name="args.chapter.layout" value="MINITOC"/>
    </parameters>
```

Note:
This solution works also with `args.chapter.layout` set to `MINITOC-BOTTOM-LINKS`.

6. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
7. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
8. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

How to Add a Link to the TOC

For making the navigation easier in the PDF, you may want to add a link that sends the reader back to the table of contents. To add this link, use an *Oxygen Publishing Template* and follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, you need to create one. For details, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xslt` folder inside the project root folder.
4. In the newly created folder, create an XSL file (for example, named `merged2html5Extension.xsl`) with the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
  version="3.0">

  <!-- Add an anchor after the TOC title. -->
  <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, 'toc/title')]" mode="div-it">
    <div>
      <xsl:attribute name="class" select="'- toc/anchor anchor'"/>
      <xsl:attribute name="id" select="'toc-anchor'"/>
    </div>
    <xsl:next-match/>
  </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the *.opt* file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5` XSLT extension point:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <xslt>
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5"
        file="xslt/merged2html5Extension.xsl"/>
    </xslt>
```

6. Create a `css` folder in the publishing template directory. In this directory, save a custom CSS file with rules that style the *glossary* structure. For example:

```
@page chapter:first:left:right {
  @top-right {
    content: "Back to Table of Contents";
    -oxy-link: "#toc-anchor";
    color: #337ab7;
  }
}
@page chapter:left:right {
  @top-right {
    content: "Back to Table of Contents";
    -oxy-link: "#toc-anchor";
    color: #337ab7;
  }
}
```

7. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the `.opt` file) and reference your custom CSS file in the `resources` element:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <resources>
      <css file="css/custom.css"/>
    </resources>
```

8. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
9. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
10. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

How to Repeat Note Titles After a Page Break

Suppose that you have large notes that split between pages or columns and you want the note icon and title to be displayed on the next page/column. To add this functionality, use an *Oxygen Publishing Template* and follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, you need to create one. For details, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xslt` folder inside the project root folder.
4. In the newly created folder, create an XSL file (for example, named `merged2html5Extension.xsl`) with the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
  version="3.0">

  <!-- Display notes titles and content in table cells. -->
  <xsl:template match="*" mode="process.note.common-processing">
    <xsl:param name="type" select="@type"/>
    <xsl:param name="title">
      <xsl:call-template name="getVariable">
        <xsl:with-param name="id" select="concat(upper-case(substring($type, 1, 1)),
substring($type, 2))"/>
      </xsl:call-template>
    </xsl:param>
    <table>
      <xsl:call-template name="commonattributes">
        <xsl:with-param name="default-output-class"
select="string-join(($type, concat('note_', $type)), ' ')"/>
      </xsl:call-template>
      <xsl:call-template name="setidaname"/>
 <!-- Normal flags go before the generated title; revision flags only go on the content. -->
      <xsl:apply-templates select="*[contains(@class, ' ditaot-d/ditaval-startprop ')]
/prop" mode="ditaval-outputflag"/>
      <thead>
        <tr>
          <th class="note__title">
            <xsl:copy-of select="$title"/>
            <xsl:call-template name="getVariable">
              <xsl:with-param name="id" select="'ColonSymbol'"/>
```

```
            </xsl:call-template>
          </th>
        </tr>
      </thead>
      <tbody>
        <tr>
          <td>
            <xsl:text> </xsl:text>
            <xsl:apply-templates select="*[contains(@class, ' ditaot-d/ditaval-startprop ')]
/revprop" mode="ditaval-outputflag"/>
            <xsl:apply-templates/>
            <!-- Normal end flags and revision end flags both go out after the content. -->
            <xsl:apply-templates select="*[contains(@class, ' ditaot-d/ditaval-endprop ')]"
mode="out-of-line"/>
          </td>
        </tr>
      </tbody>
    </table>
  </xsl:template>


</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the *.opt* file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5` XSLT extension point:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <xslt>
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5"
        file="xslt/merged2html5Extension.xsl"/>
    </xslt>
```

6. Create a `css` folder in the publishing template directory. In this directory, save a custom CSS file with rules that style the *glossary* structure. For example:

```
table.note th,
table.note td {
  text-align: left;
  padding: .75em .5em .75em 3em;
}
```

```
table.note {
  background-repeat: no-repeat;
  background-image: url("../img/note.svg");
  background-position: .5em .5em;
  border: 1px solid;
}

table.note.note_other { background-image: none; }
table.warning { background-image: url("../img/warning.svg"); }
table.caution { background-image: url("../img/caution.svg"); }
table.trouble { background-image: url("../img/troubleshooting.svg"); }
table.important { background-image: url("../img/important.svg"); }
table.attention { background-image: url("../img/attention.svg"); }
table.notice { background-image: url("../img/notice.svg"); }
table.remember { background-image: url("../img/remember.svg"); }
table.fastpath { background-image: url("../img/fastpath.svg"); }
table.restriction { background-image: url("../img/restriction.svg"); }
table.danger { background-image: url("../img/danger.svg"); }
table.tip { background-image: url("../img/tip.svg"); }

table.note {
  background-color: rgba(0, 120, 160, 0.09);
  border-color: #0078A0;
}
table.note_danger,
table.note_caution {
  background-color: rgba(255, 202, 45, 0.1);
  border-color: #606060;
}
table.note_warning,
table.note_attention,
table.note_important {
  background-color: rgba(255, 202, 45, 0.1);
  border-color: #FFCA2D;
}
table.note_restriction {
  background-color: rgba(255, 226, 225, 0.32);
  border-color: #FF342D;
}
```

7. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the `.opt` file) and reference your custom CSS file in the `resources` element:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <resources>
      <css file="css/custom.css"/>
    </resources>
```

8. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
9. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
10. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

How to Create a Custom Code Block Highlighter

You may want to add additional highlighters in your `<codeblock>` elements (for example, to highlight method names or arguments). To add this functionality, use an *Oxygen Publishing Template* and follow these steps:

1. If you have not already created a Publishing Template, you need to create one. For details, see How to Create a Publishing Template *(on page 1188)*.
2. Link the folder associated with the publishing template to your current project in the **Project Explorer** view.
3. Using the **Project Explorer** view, create an `xslt` folder inside the project root folder.
4. In the newly created folder, create an XSL file (for example, named `merged2html5Extension.xsl`) with a custom template matching the codeblock for a given language (based on the `@outputclass`):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
  version="3.0">

  <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, 'pr-d/codeblock')]
    [@outputclass='language-python']/text()">
    <xsl:analyze-string select="." regex="\(([\w,\s]+)\):">
      <xsl:matching-substring>
        <xsl:text>(</xsl:text>
        <span>
          <xsl:attribute name="class" select="'hl-arguments'"/>
          <xsl:value-of select="regex-group(1)"/>
        </span>
        <xsl:text>):</xsl:text>
      </xsl:matching-substring>
      <xsl:non-matching-substring>
        <xsl:next-match/>
```

```
      </xsl:non-matching-substring>
    </xsl:analyze-string>
  </xsl:template>


</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the *.opt* file) and set the XSLT stylesheet created in the previous step with the `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5` XSLT extension point:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <xslt>
      <extension
        id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5"
        file="xslt/merged2html5Extension.xsl"/>
    </xslt>
```

6. Create a `css` folder in the publishing template directory. In this directory, save a custom CSS file with rules that style the highlight span. For example:

```
.hl-arguments {
  color: orange;
}
```

7. Open the *template descriptor file (on page 1183)* associated with your *publishing template* (the `.opt` file) and reference your custom CSS file in the `resources` element:

```
<publishing-template>
  ...
  <pdf>
    ...
    <resources>
      <css file="css/custom.css"/>
    </resources>
```

8. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
9. In the **Templates** tab, click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link and select your template.
10. Click **OK** to save the changes and run the transformation scenario.

How to Use XSLT Extension Points for PDF Output from a DITA-OT Plugin

The examples in this section demonstrate how to use XSLT extension points from a DITA-OT plugin.

Instead of directly adding plugins inside the embedded DITA-OT, it is highly recommended to use an external Oxygen Publishing Engine so that you will not lose any of your customizations anytime you upgrade the product in the future.

You just need to follow these steps before starting your custom DITA-OT plugins:

1. Download the Oxygen Publishing Engine and unzip it inside a folder where you have full write access.
2. Create your custom plugin(s) inside the *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\` folder.
3. Go to **Options > Preferences > DITA**, set the **DITA Open Toolkit** option to **Custom**, and specify the path to the unzipped folder.

   Warning:
   The path must end with: `oxygen-publishing-engine`.

How to Style Codeblocks with a Zebra Effect

Suppose you want your *codeblocks* to have a particular background color for one line, and another color for the next line. One advantage of this coloring technique is that you can clearly see when text from the *codeblock* is wrapped.

This effect can be done by altering the HTML5 output, creating a `<div>` for each line from the code block, then styling them.

To add this functionality using a DITA-OT plugin, follow these steps:

1. In the *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\` folder, create a folder for this plugin (for example, `com.oxygenxml.pdf.custom.codeblocks`).
2. Create a **plugin.xml** file (in the folder you created in step 1) that specifies the extension point and your customization stylesheet. For example:

```
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.custom.codeblocks">
  <feature extension="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5"
             file="custom_codeblocks.xsl"/>
</plugin>
```

3. Create your customization stylesheet (for example, **custom_codeblocks.xsl**) with the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
    version="3.0">

    <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' pr-d/codeblock ')]">
       <div class='zebra'>
          <xsl:analyze-string regex="\n" select=".">
```

```
            <xsl:matching-substring/>
            <xsl:non-matching-substring>
               <div><xsl:value-of select="."/></div>
            </xsl:non-matching-substring>
         </xsl:analyze-string>
      </div>
   </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

4. Use the **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** transformation scenario *(on page 822)* found in the **DITA Map** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box.
5. Create a custom CSS file with rules that style the *codeblock* structure. For example:

```
div.zebra {
  font-family:courier, fixed, monospace;
  white-space:pre-wrap;
}

div.zebra > *:nth-of-type(odd){
  background-color: silver;
}
```

6. Edit a **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario and reference your custom CSS file (using the `args.css` parameter).
7. Run the transformation scenario.

How to Remove the Related Links Section

Suppose you want the *related links* sections to be removed from the PDF output.

To add this functionality using a DITA-OT plugin, follow these steps:

1. In the *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`\plugins\` folder, create a folder for this plugin (for example, `com.oxygenxml.pdf.custom.codeblocks`).
2. Create a **plugin.xml** file (in the folder you created in step 1) that specifies the extension point and your customization stylesheet. For example:

```
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.custom.related.links">
  <feature extension="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2merged"
  file="custom_related_links.xsl"/>
</plugin>
```

3. Create your customization stylesheet (for example, **custom_related_links.xsl**) with the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
    xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
```

```
    exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
    version="3.0">

    <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' topic/related-links ')]">
        <!-- Remove. -->
    </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

4. Use the **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** transformation scenario *(on page 822)* found in the **DITA Map** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box.
5. Run the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.

How to Use Custom Parameters in XSLT Stylesheets

Suppose you want to add an attribute with a custom value inside a `<div>` element.

To add this functionality using a DITA-OT plugin, follow these steps:

1. In the *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\` folder, create a folder for this plugin (for example, `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.param`).
2. Create a **plugin.xml** file (in the folder you created in step 1) that specifies the extension points, your parameter file, and your customization stylesheet. For example:

```
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.param">
  <feature extension="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5.parameters" file="params.xml"/>
  <feature extension="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5" file="custom.xsl"/>
</plugin>
```

> **Note:**
> The `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.xsl.merged2html5` extension point can also be called from a Publishing Template.

3. Create a **params.xml** file that specifies the name of the custom attribute with the following content:

```
<dummy xmlns:if="ant:if">
  <param name="custom-param" expression="${custom.param}" if:set="custom.param"/>
</dummy>
```

4. Create your customization stylesheet (for example, **custom.xsl**) with the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
  version="3.0">
  <xsl:param name="custom-param"/>
```

```
  <xsl:template match="*[contains(@class, ' topic/div ')]">
    <div>
      <xsl:call-template name="commonattributes"/>
      <xsl:call-template name="setid"/>
      <xsl:if test="$custom-param">
        <xsl:attribute name="custom" select="$custom-param"/>
      </xsl:if>
      <xsl:apply-templates/>
    </div>
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

5. Use the **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** transformation scenario *(on page 822)* found in the **DITA Map** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box.
6. Duplicate the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario, then in the **Parameters** tab click **New** to create a new parameter (e.g. named *custom.param* with the value of **customValue**).
7. Run the transformation scenario.

Related information

Adding parameters to existing XSLT steps

DITA-OT Extension Points

The **DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing Plugin** supports DITA-OT extension points that can be used to expand the functionality of the transformation. The extension points are defined in the `plugin.xml` file. For more information, see DITA Open Toolkit Extension Points.

Related Information:

XSLT Extensions for PDF Transformations *(on page 1389)*

How to Contribute a Custom CSS to the Transformation from a DITA-OT Plugin

This topic is intended for publishing architects/developers that need to deploy a customized DITA-OT.

Usually, the CSS styles can be passed to the transformation by referencing the CSS files using the `args.css` parameter. However, there are cases where you want to add some sort of "built-in" CSS that is applied in conjunction with the publishing template or CSS files referenced in the transformation.

For this, you need to use the **com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.init** extension point and set the value of the **extension.css** ANT property to the path of the custom CSS file:

1. In your **plugin.xml** file, add:

```
<feature extension="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.init" file="init.xml"/>
```

2. Create a file named **init.xml** with the following ANT content:

```
<root>
  <property name="extension.css"
            value="${dita.plugin.[com.my.plugin.id].dir}/css/my-custom.css"/>
  <!-- add here more init stuff if needed -->
</root>
```

Note:
The name of the root element does not matter. The content of this element will be copied in an initialization template.

Important:
Make sure all file references begin with the ANT variable that is expanded to the base directory of your plugin.

Related Information:
How to Use XSLT Extension Points for PDF Output from a DITA-OT Plugin *(on page 1421)*

Localization

DITA-OT supports more than 40 languages. The full list of supported languages (and their codes) is available here: https://www.dita-ot.org/dev/topics/globalization-languages.

There are two ways to switch the labels to a specific language:

- Set the `@xml:lang` attribute on the DITA maps and/or topics root element with one of the supported values (e.g. `de`, `fr-FR`, `ru`, `zh-CN`).
- Set the `default.language` parameter in the transformation dialog box to the desired language code.

You can create language-dependent CSS rules in your customization CSS *(on page 1193)* by adding rules using the `:lang` pseudo-class (see https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/CSS/:lang).

Tip:
It is recommended that you do this customization on a DITA-OT distribution deployed outside of the **Oxygen** installation. Otherwise, you will lose the customization when upgrading **Oxygen**. You can contact the *Oxygen support team* to ask for the **Oxygen Publishing Engine** package.

If the label you want to modify is not available from the CSS, you need to modify the XML strings. The default XML strings are available at the following three locations:

- *DITA-OT-DIR*/plugins/org.dita.base/xsl/common
- *DITA-OT-DIR*/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/cfg/common/vars
- *DITA-OT-DIR*/plugins/com.oxygenxml.pdf.css/resources/localization

Related information

Webinar: Transforming DITA documents to PDF using CSS, Part 4 – Advanced CSS Rules

How to Customize CSS Strings

Some of the labels come from CSS files located in the *DITA-OT-DIR*/plugins/com.oxygenxml.pdf.css/css/print/i18n directory. These strings can be overridden directly from a custom CSS stylesheet. Simply identify (by debugging the CSS) and copy the rules that apply on your content and change their values. For example:

```
*[class ~= "toc/title"][empty]:before {
  content: "Agenda";
}
```

```
/* Title of the TOC page */
*[class ~= "toc/title"][empty]:lang(es):before {
  content: "Contenidos";
}
```

Note:

If you want to use a language without a corresponding `p-i18n-xx.css` stylesheet, follow these instructions:

1. Copy one of the available stylesheets (located in the *DITA-OT-DIR*/plugins/com.oxygenxml.pdf.css/css/print/i18n directory) into your CSS customization (other than the English one because it does not have the `:lang` pseudo-class since it is the default language).
2. For each rules, replace the `:lang(xx)` pseudo-class with your expected language code, then replace each property value with the expected label.

Related information

Debugging the CSS *(on page 1195)*

How to Modify Existing Strings

To modify the generated text, you need to create a DITA-OT extension plugin that uses the *dita.xsl.strings* extension point. The following example uses English, but you can adapt it for any language:

1. In the *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\` folder, create a folder for this plugin (for example, `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.localization`).
2. Create a `plugin.xml` file (in the folder you created in step 1) that specifies the extension points, your parameter file, and your customization stylesheet. For example:

```
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.localization">
  <require plugin="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css"/>

  <feature extension="dita.xsl.strings" file="pdf-extension-strings.xml"/>
</plugin>
```

3. Create a `pdf-extension-strings.xml` file with the following content:

```
<langlist>
  <lang xml:lang="en"     filename="strings-en-us.xml"/>
  <lang xml:lang="en-us"  filename="strings-en-us.xml"/>
</langlist>
```

4. Create an empty `strings-en-us.xml` file and copy the strings you want to change from the default files into it. Make sure you leave the `@id` attribute unchanged because this is the key used to look up the string. Then replace their values:

```
<variables>
  <variable id="Figure">Fig</variable>
  <variable id="Table">Array</variable>
</variables>
```

5. Use the **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** transformation scenario *(on page 822)* found in the **DITA Map** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box.
6. Run the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.

How to Add New Strings

Some strings are not translated in all languages. In this case, they will appear in English. To add a new language for a given string, you need to create a DITA-OT extension plugin that uses the *dita.xsl.strings* extension point. The following example uses Polish, but you can adapt it for any language:

1. In the *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\` folder, create a folder for this plugin (for example, `com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.localization`).
2. Create a `plugin.xml` file (in the folder you created in step 1) that specifies the extension points, your parameter file, and your customization stylesheet. For example:

```
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css.localization">
  <require plugin="com.oxygenxml.pdf.css"/>

  <feature extension="dita.xsl.strings" file="pdf-extension-strings.xml"/>
</plugin>
```

3. Create a `pdf-extension-strings.xml` file with the following content:

```
<langlist>
  <lang xml:lang="pl"     filename="strings-pl-pl.xml"/>
  <lang xml:lang="pl-pl"  filename="strings-pl-pl.xml"/>
</langlist>
```

4. Copy the PDF strings file (*DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\org.dita.pdf2\cfg\common\vars\en.xml`) to your plugin directory and rename it as `strings-pl-pl.xml`.
5. Copy the common DITA-OT strings defined in the *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\org.dita.base\xsl\common\strings-en-us.xml` file into the file created at step 4.
6. Copy the PDF-CSS-HTML5 strings defined in the *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\com.oxygenxml.pdf.css\resources\localization\strings-en-us.xml` file into the file created in step 4. Translate the content of each `<variable>` element (make sure to leave the `@id` attribute unchanged).

```
<variables>
  <variable id="Figure">Polish word for 'Figure'</variable>
  <variable id="Table">Polish word for 'Table'</variable>
  ...
  <variable id="Table of Contents">Polish word for 'Table of Contents'</variable>
  ...
  <variable id="Continued">(ciąg dalszy)</variable>
</variables>
```

7. Use the **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** transformation scenario *(on page 822)* found in the **DITA Map** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box.
8. Run the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.

Security

You can restrict the use of the PDF files by specifying a set of permissions. For example, you may want to set a password on the document, restrict the available actions inside the PDF reader, or encrypt the PDF content.

The `pdf.security.*` parameters listed in the Transformation Parameters *(on page 1168)* section can be used for this purpose.

You can also sign your PDF files to ensure their authenticity and integrity.

How to Protect PDF Files by Setting Security Permissions

For example, to permit only the users that have a password to access the document and also to restrict their printing and copying capability, you can use the following parameter combination:

Parameter	Value	Description
pdf.security.owner.password	<OWNER PASSWORD>	People using this password will be able to open the document, with full permissions.

Parameter	Value	Description
pdf.security.user.password	<USER PASSWORD>	People using this password will be able to open the document, but they will not be able to print.
pdf.security.restrict.print	yes	Restricts users from printing.
pdf.security.restrict.copy	yes	Restricts users from copying content.

Important:
If you specify just the user password (without an owner password), then the people using it will be considered owners, and no restrictions will apply to them.

How to Sign a PDF

The following Bouncy Castle libraries must be downloaded (in their last available version):

- bcpkix-jdk18on
- bcprov-jdk18on
- bcutil-jdk18on

1. Install an external **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** processor.

   Restriction:
   A separate installation is required to include the additional libraries.

2. Copy the Bouncy Castle libraries to the `[CHEMISTRY_INSTALL_DIR]/lib` directory.
3. Create a keystore file (if you do not already have one). See Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide: Signing for information about how to create one.
4. Set the keystore file as the value for the `chemistry.sign.keystore` parameter.
5. **Optional:** If the keystore uses an export password, set it as the `chemistry.sign.password` value.
6. **Optional:** If you need to add more information (such as your company name), you can set the other `chemistry.sign.*` *(on page 1172)* parameters.
7. Set the external **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** path as the value for `css.processor.path.chemistry`.
8. Run the transformation scenario.

Related information
Oxygen PDF Chemistry: Signing

Troubleshooting

There are cases when the PDF CSS-based processing fails when trying to publish DITA content to a PDF file. This topic lists some of the common problems and possible solutions.

Access Denied

Problem

The transformation fails due to `Access to file:/tmp/chemistry-temp/ denied` (commonly responsible for such failures).

Cause

This usually happens on Linux systems when the user executing the transformation does not have the necessary permissions for the `/tmp` directory.

Solution

If the user's access cannot be modified, you can run the scenario by setting the `chemistry.security.workspace` parameter to a different directory.

Damaged PDF File

Problem

It is possible to get a PDF that cannot be opened in the PDF viewer. In this case, you might get an error similar to:

```
Error: PDF file is damaged - attempting to reconstruct xref table...
Error: Couldn't find trailer dictionary
Error: Couldn't read xref table
```

Cause

This usually means that your PDF viewer does not support a PDF version greater than 1.4. The main difference with newer PDF versions is that the xref table is compressed in a stream and is not available as a table.

Solution

You need to re-run the PDF transformation with the `pdf.version` parameter set to `1.4`.

Glyph Not Available in Font

Problem

A warning appears during the PDF transformation that is similar to this:

```
[CH] Glyph "?" (0x2192, arrowright) not available in font "Roboto-Bold".
```

Warning:
Even if the message is a warning, sometimes it can lead to a failed transformation. This usually occurs for unique special characters (different from letters or common characters).

Cause

Some fonts lack specific characters, such as CJK characters or Greek symbols commonly used in scientific publications. Those characters are replaced with the # symbol in the PDF output.

Solution

Specify one or more fallback font(s) in your customization CSS:

```
body{
  font-family: Roboto, "Segoe UI", "Arial Unicode MS";
}
```

Tip:

- It is possible to use a generic family name as fallback (like `serif`, `sans-serif` or `monospace`) to call upon the processor's default fallback fonts system.
- To determine the needed font, you can copy the text fragment from the DITA source document and paste it into any text editor (e.g. MS Word). Make sure there are no licensing restrictions on that particular font.

Error Parsing CSS File - Caused by a Networking Problem

Problem

My custom styles are not applied and in the transformation results console, I get an error containing one of the following: `I/O exception`, `Unknown host`, `Error parsing`.

Cause

One of the CSS files contains references to resources from another website that is currently inaccessible. These resources may include:

- Fonts
- Images
- Other CSS files

Note:
If you exported one of the built-in publishing templates from the transformation scenario dialog, it is possible that the associated CSS files use an imported Google Font.

Remedy

1. Check your proxy settings (ask the system administrator for help).
2. If the server is still inaccessible from the transformation process, download the remote resources using a web browser, save them in the customization CSS file folder, and refer them directly from your CSS.

   Note:
   If the problem is caused by a remote font, see Using Local Fonts.

Failed to Run Pipeline: The Entity Cannot Be Resolved Through Catalogs

Problem

You can get a *Failed to run pipeline* error message that looks something like this:

```
Failed to run pipeline: The entity SOME_ENTITY cannot not be resolved through catalogs.
For security reasons files that are not listed in the DITA-OT catalogs and are not
located in the DITA-OT directory are not read
```

Cause

This happens when the security checks that are implemented in the default transformation have blocked the reading of files that are not part of the DITA-OT (**Oxygen Publishing Engine**) installation directory and not part of the transformed DITA map.

Solution

If the origin of the transformed content is known and trusted, you can disable these checks by setting the `args.disable.security.checks` transformation parameter to **yes**.

Disappearing Thin Lines or Cell Borders

Problem

There are cases where thin lines disappear from the PDF viewer at certain zoom levels.

Cause

This is caused by the limited resolution of the display, while a printer has a superior resolution and there should be no problem printing thin lines on paper.

Solution

If the primary PDF target is the display, then you have to use thicker lines in your CSS customization (for example, avoid using 1px and use 1pt or larger instead).

If you are using Adobe Acrobat Reader, then you can enhance the display of thin lines. This behavior can be changed by going to **Menu > Preferences... > Page Display > Enhance thin lines**. Deselecting this option makes thin lines displayed as a row of gray pixels (through antialiasing) and they do not disappear. You can experiment by selecting and deselecting the option.

Glossary Entries Referenced Using 'glossref' are not Displayed

Problem

I have a `<glossgroup>` that contains multiple `<glossentry>` elements and all the entries are referenced using `<glossref>` elements inside my map. When I add an `<abbreviated-form>` element linked to one of my `<glossentry>` elements (using a `@keyref`), the entry is not resolved in the PDF output.

Solution

Make sure every `<glossentry>` has an `@id`. Then, for each `<glossentry>`, declare a `<glossref>` element like this:

```
<glossref href="concepts/glossary.dita#flowers.genus" print="yes" keys="genus"/>
```

Important:
For bookmaps, the `<glossref>` elements should be declared in a separate ditamap.

The format-date() XPath Function Does Not Respect the Specified Locale

Problem

Formatting a date using another language code, as in this example:

```
title:before {
   content: oxy_xpath('format-date(current-date(), "[Mn] [Y]", "ru", (), ())');
}
```

results in an output like: `[Language: en]september 2019`, with the date being formatted in English.

Cause

The XPath expressions are evaluated using the Saxon HE processor. This processor does not support languages other than English.

Solution

As a solution, you can either switch to a more language-neutral format that avoids the months names:

```
title:before{
   content: oxy_xpath('format-date( current-date(), "[M] [Y]", "en", (), ())');
}
```

or you can use a more complex XPath expression like this:

```
title:before{

            content: oxy_xpath("let $cm:= format-date(current-date(), '[MNn]') \

return  concat( \

if ($cm= 'January') then  'JAN' else \

if ($cm= 'February') then  'FEB' else \

if ($cm= 'March') then  'MAR' else \

if ($cm= 'April') then  'APR' else \

if ($cm= 'May') then  'MAY' else \

if ($cm= 'June') then  'JUNE' else \

if ($cm= 'July') then  'JUL' else \

if ($cm= 'August') then  'AUG' else \

if ($cm= 'September') then  'SEPT' else \

if ($cm= 'October') then  'OCT' else \

if ($cm= 'November') then  'NOV' else  '' \

, \

' ', \

format-date(current-date(), '[Y0001]') \

) ");

}
```

Make sure the entire expression is rendered blue in the CSS editor. Replace the capitalized month names with the translation in the desired language.

Highlights Span Unexpectedly to the End of the Page

Problem

Tracked changes and highlights span beyond what is expected.

Cause

If the change tracking insertions, comments, or highlights span over an area that is larger than expected, the markup that signals their end is missing.

Solution

To fix this, open the topic where the highlights start and check if the XML processing instructions that define the end of the highlighted interval are correct (it is easiest to see them in **Text** mode). The intervals are defined as follows:

For highlights:

```
<?oxy_custom_start type="oxy_content_highlight" color="140,255,140"?>
<?oxy_custom_end?>
```

For comments:

```
<?oxy_comment_start author="dan" timestamp="20201102T092905+0200" comment="Test"?>
<?oxy_comment_end?>
```

For inserted text:

```
<?oxy_insert_start author="dan" timestamp="20201102T093034+0200"?>
<?oxy_insert_end?>
```

Make sure all the ending processing instructions are located before the root element end tag.

Unexpected Page Break Before or After an Element

Problem

A page break occurs before or after an element that has `break-before` or `break-after` (`break-before` or `break-after`) property set to *avoid*. For example, after a topic/section title (set by default):

```
*[class ~= "topic/title"] {
  break-after: avoid;
}
```

Cause

An empty element (for example, `<p>` or `<shortdesc>`) is present before or after the element with the break set to avoid. The page-break actually occurs at this element level.

Solution

Either remove the empty element from the DITA source topic (preferable) or set the display to *none* using the following CSS rule:

```
*[class ~= "topic/shortdesc"]:empty {
  display: none;
}
```

Error When Processing Topics With Chunk and Copy-To Attribute

Problem

A topic marked with both the `@chunk` and `@copy-to` attributes is missing from the PDF output and the following error appears in the **Results** view:

```
[DOTX008E] File 'file:/D:/path/to/file.dita' does not exist or cannot be loaded.
```

Cause

The chunk processing is skipped by default and must be enabled.

Solution

Set the `enable.chunk.processing` parameter to the value of **true** and re-run the transformation scenario.

XSL FO-based DITA to PDF Customization

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with the DITA Open Toolkit that provides a mechanism for converting *DITA maps (on page 2230)* to PDF output. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)* that converts DITA maps to PDF using an *xsl:fo* processor.

There are several methods that can be used to customize DITA to PDF output:

- Create a customization directory that contains your customized files and reference that directory in the PDF transformation scenario (using the `customization.dir` parameter).
- Creating a DITA Open Toolkit plugin that adds extensions to the PDF output. More details can be found in the DITA Open Toolkit Documentation.

> **Tip:**
> Some sample plugins are available on GitHub that could help you to get started with creating a plugin:

- Sample Plugin: DITA-OT PDF Customization Plugin for Oxygen User Manual
- Sample Plugin: DITA-OT PDF2 - Generate Numbers Before Topic's Title

Using a Customization Directory

One way to customize the PDF output generated by the **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)* is to create a dedicated folder to store customized files. With this approach, you will copy the contents of the built-in customization directory to a new directory where you can customize the files according to your needs and reference the new directory using the `customization.dir` parameter in the transformation scenario. The biggest advantage of this method is that the contents of your customization directory will remain unaffected when the DITA-OT is upgraded.

How to Create a Customization Directory

Follow this procedure to create a customization directory:

1. Copy all the entire *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`\plugins\org.dita.pdf2\Customization` directory to another location where you have write access.
2. Modify any of the files in whatever way necessary to achieve your specific goal. For inspiration, see Embedding a Company Logo *(on page 1438)* for a specific example of how you can modify contents of the directory to embed a logo in the output.

   Tip:
   For other specific examples, see DITA-OT Documentation - PDF Customization Plugin.

3. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)*, go to the **Parameters** tab, and set the **customization.dir** parameter to point to the location of your customization directory.

Related information
Automatic PDF plugin customization generator by Jarno Elovirta.
DITA-OT Documentation - PDF Customization Plugin

Embedding a Company Logo

The following procedure explains how to embed a company logo image in the front matter of the book for the **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)*.

1. Create a customization directory *(on page 1438)* (if you have not already done so).
2. Create a `common\artwork` directory structure in your customization directory and copy your logo in it (for example, `[C:\Customization\common\artwork\logo.png`).
3. Rename `Customization\catalog.xml.orig` to: `Customization\catalog.xml`.
4. Open the `catalog.xml` in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and *uncomment* this line:

```
<!--uri name="cfg:fo/xsl/custom.xsl" uri="fo/xsl/custom.xsl"/-->
```

It now looks like this:

```
<uri name="cfg:fo/xsl/custom.xsl" uri="fo/xsl/custom.xsl"/>
```

5. Rename the file `Customization\fo\xsl\custom.xsl.orig` to: `C:\Customization\fo\xsl\custom.xsl`

6. Open the `custom.xsl` file in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and create the template called `createFrontCoverContents` for DITA-OT 4.4.0.

Tip:
You can copy the same template from *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\org.dita.pdf2\xsl\fo\front-matter.xsl` and modify it in whatever way necessary to achieve your specific goal. This new template in the `custom.xsl` file will override the same template from *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\org.dita.pdf2\xsl\fo\front-matter.xsl`.

Example:

For example, the `custom.xsl` could look like this:

```
<?xml version='1.0'?>
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:fo="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format"
  version="2.0">


<xsl:template name="createFrontCoverContents">
 <!-- set the title -->
 <fo:block xsl:use-attribute-sets="__frontmatter__title">
  <xsl:choose>
   <xsl:when test="$map/*[contains(@class,' topic/title ')][1]">
    <xsl:apply-templates select="$map/*[contains(@class,' topic/title ')][1]"/>
      </xsl:when>
      <xsl:when test="$map//*[contains(@class,' bookmap/mainbooktitle ')][1]">
        <xsl:apply-templates select="$map//*[contains
                                    (@class,' bookmap/mainbooktitle ')][1]"/>
      </xsl:when>
      <xsl:when test="//*[contains(@class, ' map/map ')]/@title">
        <xsl:value-of select="//*[contains(@class, ' map/map ')]/@title"/>
      </xsl:when>
      <xsl:otherwise>
        <xsl:value-of select="/descendant::*[contains
          (@class, ' topic/topic ')][1]/*[contains(@class, ' topic/title ')]"/>
   </xsl:otherwise>
```

```
 </xsl:choose>
</fo:block>


<!-- set the subtitle -->
<xsl:apply-templates select="$map//*[contains
                                        (@class,' bookmap/booktitlealt ')]"/>
<fo:block xsl:use-attribute-sets="__frontmatter__owner">
 <xsl:apply-templates select="$map//*[contains(@class,' bookmap/bookmeta ')]"/>
</fo:block>


<!-- Load the image logo -->
 <fo:block text-align="center" width="100%">
  <fo:external-graphic
     src="url({concat($artworkPrefix,
                         'Customization/OpenTopic/common/artwork/logo.png')})"
   />
 </fo:block>
</xsl:template>


</xsl:stylesheet>
```

7. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)*, go to the **Parameters** tab, and set the `customization.dir` parameter to point to the location of your customization directory.

Tip:
For other specific examples, see DITA-OT Documentation - Customizing PDF Output.

Related Information:
Using a Customization Directory *(on page 1438)*

Customizing the Header and Footer in PDF Output

This procedure should only be used for the **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)*.

The XSLT stylesheet *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/xsl/fo/static-content.xsl` contains templates that output the static header and footers for various parts of the PDF such as the prolog, table of contents, front matter, or body.

The templates for generating a footer for pages in the body are called `insertBodyOddFooter` or `insertBodyEvenFooter`.

These templates get the static content from resource files that depend on the language used for generating the PDF. The default resource file is `DITA-OT-DIR/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/cfg/common/vars/en.xml`. These resource files contain variables (such as *Body odd footer*) that can be set to specific user values.

Instead of modifying these resource files directly, they can be overwritten with modified versions of the resources in a PDF customization directory.

1. Create a customization directory *(on page 1438)* (if you have not already done so).
2. Locate the stylesheets and templates listed above in your customization directory and modify them in whatever way necessary to achieve your specific goal.

   Tip:
   For more information and examples, see the Oxygen PDF Customization Plugin project on GitHub.

3. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)*, go to the **Parameters** tab, and set the **customization.dir** parameter to point to the location of your customization directory.

Related Information:
https://github.com/oxygenxml/com.oxygenxml.pdf2.ug/wiki
Using a Customization Directory *(on page 1438)*

Adding a Watermark to PDF Output

To add a watermark to the PDF output of a **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)*, follow this procedure:

1. Create a customization directory *(on page 1438)* (if you have not already done so).
2. Create a `cfg\common\artwork` directory structure in your customization directory and copy your watermark image to that directory (for example, `C:\Customization\cfg\common\artwork\watermark.png`).
3. Rename the `Customization\catalog.xml.orig` file to: `Customization\catalog.xml`.
4. Open the `catalog.xml` in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and *uncomment* this line:

   ```
   <!--uri name="cfg:fo/xsl/custom.xsl" uri="fo/xsl/custom.xsl"/-->
   ```

   The uncommented line should look like this:

   ```
   <uri name="cfg:fo/xsl/custom.xsl" uri="fo/xsl/custom.xsl"/>
   ```

5. Rename the file: `Customization\fo\xsl\custom.xsl.orig` to: `Customization\fo\xsl\custom.xsl`.

6. Open the `Customization\fo\xsl\custom.xsl` file in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to overwrite two XSLT templates:
   - The first template is located in the XSLT stylesheet *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`\plugins\org.dita.pdf2\xsl\fo\static-content.xsl`. Override by copying the original template content in the `custom.xsl` and specifying a watermark image for every page in the PDF content, using a *block-container* element that references the watermark image file:

```
<fo:static-content flow-name="odd-body-header">
       <fo:block-container absolute-position="absolute"
          top="-2cm" left="-3cm" width="21cm" height="29.7cm"
          background-image="{concat($artworkPrefix,
'Configuration/OpenTopic/cfg/common/artwork/watermark.png')}">
         <fo:block/>
       </fo:block-container>
      <fo:block xsl:use-attribute-sets="__body__odd__header">
          <xsl:call-template name="insertVariable">
              <xsl:with-param name="theVariableID" select="'Body odd header'"/>
              <xsl:with-param name="theParameters">
                 <prodname>
                     <xsl:value-of select="$productName"/>
                 </prodname>
                 <heading>
                <fo:inline xsl:use-attribute-sets="__body__odd__header__heading">
                      <fo:retrieve-marker retrieve-class-name="current-header"/>
                </fo:inline>
                 </heading>
                 <pagenum>
               <fo:inline xsl:use-attribute-sets="__body__odd__header__pagenum">
                     <fo:page-number/>
               </fo:inline>
            </pagenum>
        </xsl:with-param>
      </xsl:call-template>
    </fo:block>
  </fo:static-content>


</xsl:template>
```

   - The second template to override is located in the XSLT stylesheet *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`\plugins\org.dita.pdf2\xsl\fo\commons.xsl` and is used for styling the first page of the output. Override it by copying the original template content in the `custom.xsl` and adding the `block-container` element that references the watermark image file:

```
<xsl:template name="createFrontMatter_1.0">
      <fo:page-sequence master-reference="front-matter"
xsl:use-attribute-sets="__force__page__count">
          <xsl:call-template name="insertFrontMatterStaticContents"/>
          <fo:flow flow-name="xsl-region-body">
              <fo:block-container absolute-position="absolute"
                  top="-2cm" left="-3cm" width="21cm" height="29.7cm"
                  background-image="{concat($artworkPrefix,
'Configuration/OpenTopic/cfg/common/artwork/watermark.png')}">
                  <fo:block/>
              </fo:block-container>
  <fo:block xsl:use-attribute-sets="__frontmatter">
       <!-- set the title -->
    <fo:block xsl:use-attribute-sets="__frontmatter__title">
     <xsl:choose>
      <xsl:when test="$map/*[contains(@class,' topic/title ')][1]">
    <xsl:apply-templates select="$map/*[contains(@class,' topic/title ')][1]"/>
      </xsl:when>
      <xsl:when test="$map//*[contains(@class,' bookmap/mainbooktitle ')][1]">
    <xsl:apply-templates select="$map//*[contains
(@class,' bookmap/mainbooktitle ')][1]"/>
          </xsl:when>
          <xsl:when test="//*[contains(@class, ' map/map ')]/@title">
              <xsl:value-of select="//*[contains(@class, ' map/map ')]/@title"/>
          </xsl:when>
            <xsl:otherwise>
             <xsl:value-of select="/descendant::*[contains
(@class, ' topic/topic ')][1]/*[contains(@class, ' topic/title ')]"/>
            </xsl:otherwise>
      </xsl:choose>
    </fo:block>

   <!-- set the subtitle -->
   <xsl:apply-templates select="$map//*[contains
(@class,' bookmap/booktitlealt ')]"/>

      <fo:block xsl:use-attribute-sets="__frontmatter__owner">
         <xsl:apply-templates select="$map//*[contains
(@class,' bookmap/bookmeta ')]"/>
      </fo:block>

      </fo:block>
```

```
<!--<xsl:call-template name="createPreface"/>-->

   </fo:flow>
     </fo:page-sequence>
     <xsl:if test="not($retain-bookmap-order)">
         <xsl:call-template name="createNotices"/>
     </xsl:if>
 </xsl:template>
```

7. Edit the **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)*, go to the **Parameters** tab, and set the **customization.dir** parameter to point to the location of your customization directory.

Related Information:
Adding a Watermark in DITA Map to XHTML Output *(on page 2114)*

Adding an Edit Link in PDF Output to Launch Oxygen XML Web Author

You can embed *Edit* links in the **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)* output that will automatically launch a particular document in Oxygen XML Web Author. A reviewer can then simply click the link and they will be redirected to the Oxygen XML Web Author editing page with that particular file open and editable.

To embed an *Edit* link in the DITA Map PDF output, follow these steps:

1. Edit a **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)* and open the **Parameters** tab.
2. Set values for the following parameters:
   - **editlink.ditamap.edit.url** - The URL of the DITA map used to publish your content. The easiest way to obtain the URL is to open the map in Web Author or Content Fusion and copy the URL from the browser's address bar.
   - **editlink.additional.query.parameters** - Optional query parameters to be appended to each generated edit link. Each parameter must start with *&* (e.g. *&tags-mode=no-tags*).
3. Run the transformation scenario.

Result: In the PDF output, all topics will have an **Edit** link to the right side of the title and clicking the link will launch that particular document in Oxygen XML Web Author.

Force Page Breaks Between Two Block Elements in PDF Output

The following procedure works for the **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)*.

Suppose that in your DITA content you have two *block elements (on page 2228)*, such as two paragraphs:

```
<p>First para</p>
<p>Second para</p>
```

and you want to force a page break between them in the PDF output.

Here is how you can implement a DITA Open Toolkit *plugin (on page 2232)* that would achieve this:

1. Define your custom processing instruction that marks the place where a page break should be inserted in the PDF, for example:

   ```
   <p>First para</p>
     <?pagebreak?>
   <p>Second para</p>
   ```

2. Locate the **DITA Open Toolkit** distribution and in the `plugins` directory create a new *plugin* folder (for example, *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/pdf-page-break`).

3. In this new folder, create a new `plugin.xml` file with the following content:

   ```
   <plugin id="com.yourpackage.pagebreak">
     <feature extension="package.support.name" value="Force Page Break Plugin"/>
     <feature extension="package.support.email" value="support@youremail.com"/>
     <feature extension="package.version" value="1.0.0"/>
     <feature extension="dita.xsl.xslfo" value="pageBreak.xsl" type="file"/>
   </plugin>
   ```

   The most important feature in the *plugin* is that it will add a new XSLT stylesheet to the XSL processing that produces the PDF content.

4. In the same folder, create an XSLT stylesheet named `pageBreak.xsl` with the following content:

   ```
   <xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
                       xmlns:fo="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Format" version="1.0">
     <xsl:template match="processing-instruction('pagebreak')">
       <fo:block break-after="page"/>
     </xsl:template>
   </xsl:stylesheet>
   ```

5. Install your *plugin* in the DITA Open Toolkit. *(on page 2157)*

The source code for the plugin can be found on GitHub here: https://github.com/dita-community/org.dita-community.pdf-page-break.

Show Comments and Tracked Changes in PDF Output

To include comments and *tracked changes* (stored within your DITA topics) in the **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)* output, follow these steps:

1. Edit a **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario.
2. In the **Parameters** tab, set the value of the **show.changes.and.comments** parameter to `yes`. If you also want to display change bars for inserted or deleted content in the PDF, set the **show.changebars** parameter to `yes`. If you want to only show the *changebars*, without other styling of the changes, you should set both the **show.changes.and.comments** and **show.changes.and.comments.as.changebars.only** parameters to `yes`.
3. Optionally, you can configure any of these other parameters to adjust the colors of the comments and tracked changes:
   - **ct.insert.color** - Specifies the color for insertion type tracked changes, as a plain color (e.g. red, yellow, blue), or with a hexadecimal equivalent (e.g. #FFFFFF). The default value is 'blue'.
   - **ct.delete.color** - Specifies the color for deletion type tracked changes, as a plain color (e.g. red, yellow, blue), or with a hexadecimal equivalent (e.g. #FFFFFF). The default value is 'red'.
   - **ct.comment.bg.color** - Specifies the background color for comment type tracked changes, as a plain color (e.g. red, yellow, blue), or with a hexadecimal equivalent (e.g. #FFFFFF). The default value is 'yellow'.
4. Click **OK** and then the **Apply Associated** button to run the transformation scenario.

Result: Comment threads and tracked changes will now appear in the PDF output. Details about each comment or change will be available in the footer section for each page.

Set a Font for PDF Output Generated with FO Processor

When a *DITA map (on page 2230)* is transformed using the **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)* and it contains some Unicode characters that cannot be rendered by the default PDF fonts, a font that is capable of rendering these characters must be configured and embedded in the PDF result.

The settings that must be modified for configuring a font for the built-in FO processor are detailed in Add a Font to the Built-in FO Processor - Advanced Version *(on page 901)*.

DITA-OT PDF Font Mapping

The DITA-OT contains a file *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/cfg/fo/font-mappings.xml` that maps logical fonts used in the XSLT stylesheets to physical fonts that will be used by the FO processor to generate the PDF output.

The XSLT stylesheets used to generate the XSL-FO output contain code like this:

```
<xsl:attribute name="font-family">monospace</xsl:attribute>
```

The font-family is defined to be *monospace*, but *monospace* is just an alias. It is not a physical font name. Therefore, another stage in the PDF generation takes this *monospace* alias and looks in the `font-mappings.xml`.

If it finds a mapping like this:

```
<aliases>
      <alias name="monospace">Monospaced</alias>
 </aliases>
```

then it looks to see if the *monospace* has a *logical-font* definition and if so, it will use the *physical-font* specified there:

```
<logical-font name="Monospaced">
      <physical-font char-set="default">
        <font-face>Courier New, Courier</font-face>
      </physical-font>
.............
</logical-font>
```

Important:

If no alias mapping is found for a font-family specified in the XSLT stylesheets, the processing defaults to **Helvetica**.

Related information

http://www.elovirta.com/2016/02/18/font-configuration-in-pdf2.html

Adding Libraries to the Built-in FO Processor (DITA-OT)

Adding Support for PDF Images

Starting with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 20.0, PDF image support is enabled by default in the built-in **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)*. For older versions of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, use the following procedures to enable this support:

1. Download the *fop-pdf-images JAR* libraries.
2. Edit the DITA-OT transformation scenario and switch to the **Advanced** tab.
3. Click the **Libraries** button and add the path to the libraries.

Adding Support for CGM Images

1. Go to the JCGM page and download the `jcgm-image-0.1.1.jar` and `jcgm-core-0.2.0.jar` libraries.
2. Edit the DITA-OT transformation scenario and switch to the **Advanced** tab.
3. Click the **Libraries** button and add the path to the libraries.

Adding Hyphenation Support for DITA-OT Transformation Scenarios

1. Download the pre-compiled *JAR (on page 2231)* from OFFO.
2. Edit the DITA-OT transformation scenario and switch to the **Advanced** tab.
3. Click the **Libraries** button and add the path to the `fop-hyph.jar` library.

Debugging DITA PDF Transformations

To debug the **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario *(on page 816)*, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **XML > XML Catalog**, click **Add**, and select the file located at *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\org.dita.pdf2\cfg\catalog.xml`. If there are other custom DITA-OT PDF customization plugins that contain XML catalogs, references to those XML catalogs might need to be added as well.
2. Open the map in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* and create a **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** transformation scenario.
3. Edit the scenario, go to the **Parameters** tab and change the value of the **clean.temp** parameter to **no**.
4. Run the transformation scenario.
5. Open the **stage1.xml** file located in the temporary directory and format and indent *(on page 314)* it.
6. Create a transformation scenario for this XML file by associating the `topic2fo_shell_fop.xsl` stylesheet located at *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\org.dita.pdf2.fop\xsl\fo\topic2fo_shell_fop.xsl`. If you are specifically using the RenderX XEP or Antenna House FO processors to build the PDF output, you should use the XSL stylesheets `topic2fo_shell_xep.xsl` or `topic2fo_shell_axf.xsl` located in the corresponding plugin folders.

   > **Note:**
   > For validation purposes, you need to add the main debugged stylesheet (usually `topic2fo_shell_fop.xsl`) to the Main Files folder *(on page 255)* in the **Project Explorer** view.

7. In the transformer drop-down menu, select the Saxon EE XSLT processor (the same processor used when the DITA-OT transformation is executed).
8. Click the **Parameters** button:
   a. Set the `locale` parameter (e.g. with the value of `en_GB`).
   b. Set the `work.dir.url` parameter with the value `${cfdu}`.
   c. Set the `customizationDir.url` parameter to point to either your customization directory or to the default DITA-OT customization directory. Its value should have a URL syntax like this:

   ```
   file://c:/path/to/<term keyref="glossentry_dita_ot_dir"/>/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/cfg
   ```

9. You need to reference the extra commonly used JAR libraries by clicking the **Extensions** button and using wildcards to add a reference to all libraries in this folder: `DITA-OT\plugins\com.oxygenxml.common\lib\*`.

10. Apply the transformation to continue the debugging process.

> **Note:**
> For externally configured DITA Open Toolkit installations or when using custom plugins based on the base PDF2 plugin, the paths to resources described above may need to be adjusted accordingly.

Related information
How to Enable Debugging for FO Processor Transformations *(on page 903)*

DocBook to PDF Output Customization

When the default layout and output of the DocBook to PDF transformation needs to be customized, follow these steps:

1. Create a custom version of the DocBook title spec file.

   You could start from a copy of the file `[DocBook XSL directory]/fo/titlepage.templates.xml` (for example, `[OXYGEN-INSTALL-DIR]/frameworks/docbook/xsl/fo/titlepage.templates.xml`) and customize it. More information about the spec file can be found here.

2. Generate a new XSLT stylesheet from the title spec file from the previous step.
   Apply `[DocBook XSL directory]/template/titlepage.xsl` to the title spec file. The result is an XSLT stylesheet (for example, `mytitlepages.xsl`).

3. Import `mytitlepages.xsl` in a DocBook customization layer.
   The customization layer is the stylesheet that will be applied to the XML document. The `mytitlepages.xsl` should be imported with an element like this:

   ```
   <xsl:import href="dir-name/mytitlepages.xsl"/>
   ```

4. Insert a logo image in the XML document.
   The path to the logo image must be inserted in the `book/info/mediaobject` structure of the XML document.

5. Apply the customization layer to the XML document.
   A quick way is to duplicate the transformation scenario **DocBook PDF** that is included with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and set the customization layer in the **XSL URL** property of the scenario *(on page 829)*.

Related Information:

The book **DocBook XSL: The Complete Guide** by Bob Stayton contains more details about customizing the PDF output.

Video demonstration for creating a DocBook customization layer in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

12.

Working with XPath Expressions

XPath is a language for addressing specific parts of a document. XPath models an XML document as a tree of nodes. An XPath expression is a mechanism for navigating through and selecting nodes from the document. An XPath expression is, in a way, analogous to an SQL query used to select records from a database.

Note:
If an XPath expression is run over a JSON document, it is converted to XML and the XPath is executed over the converted XML document.

There are various types of nodes, including element nodes, attribute nodes, and text nodes. XPath defines a way to compute a string-value for each type of node.

XPath defines a library of standard functions for working with strings, numbers and boolean expressions.

Examples:

- **child::*** - Selects all children of the root node.
- **.//name** - Selects all `<name>` elements and descendants of the current node.
- **/catalog/cd[price>10.80]** - Selects all the `<cd>` elements that have a `<price>` element with a value larger than 10.80.
- **//prolog** - Finds all `<prolog>` elements.
- **//prolog[@platform='mac']** - Finds all `<prolog>` elements that have the `@platform` attribute value set to **mac**.
- **//child::prolog** - Selects all `@prolog` elements and the child content.
- **/*[count(//accountNumber) > 5]** - Searches for instances where more than 5 `<accountNumber>` elements are found.
- **collection('file:/C:/path/to/folder/?select=*.xml')/*[not(//prolog)]** - Finds a list of all XML files that do not contain any `<prolog>` elements.

To find out more about XPath, see http://www.w3.org/TR/xpath.

XPath Builder View

The **XPath/XQuery Builder** view allows you to compose complex XPath expressions and execute them over the currently edited XML document. For XPath 2.0 / 3.1, you can use the `doc()` function to specify the source file that will have the expressions executed. When you connect to a database, the expressions are executed over that database. If you are using the **XPath/XQuery Builder** view and the current file is an XSLT document, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin executes the expressions over the XML document in the associated scenario.

Note:
If an XPath expression is run over a JSON document, it is converted to XML and the XPath is executed over the converted XML document.

If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

The upper part of the view contains the following actions:

XPath version chooser drop-down menu

A drop-down menu that allows you to select the type of the expression you want to execute. You can choose between:

- XPath 1.0 (Xerces-driven)
- XPath 2.0, XPath 2.0 SA, XPath 3.1, XPath 3.1 SA, Saxon-HE XQuery, Saxon-PE XQuery, or Saxon-EE XQuery (all of them are Saxon-driven)
- Custom connection to XML databases that can execute XQuery expressions

Note:
The results returned by XPath 2.0 SA and XPath 3.1 SA have a location limited to the line number of the start element (there are no column information and no end specified).

Note:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses Saxon to execute XPath 3.1 expressions. Since Saxon implements a part of the 3.1 functions, when using a function that is not implemented, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin returns a compilation error.

Execute XPath button

Use this button to start the execution of the XPath or XQuery expression you are editing. The result of the execution is displayed in the **Results** view *(on page 310)* view.

Favorites button

Allows you to save certain expressions that you can later reuse. To add an expression as a favorite, click this button and enter a name for it. The star turns yellow to confirm that the expression was saved. Expand the drop-down menu next to the star button to see all your favorites. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically groups favorites in folders named after the method of execution.

History drop-down menu

Keeps a list of the last 15 executed XPath expressions. Use the **Clear history** action from the bottom of the list to remove them.

Settings drop-down menu

Contains the following three options:

Update on cursor move

When selected and you navigate through a document, the XPath expression corresponding to the XML node at the current cursor position is displayed. For JSON documents, it displays the XPath expression for the current property.

Evaluate as you type

When you select this option, the XPath expression you are composing is evaluated in real time.

> **Note:**
> This option and the automatic validation are disabled when the scope is other than **Current file**.

Options

Opens the Preferences page of the currently selected processing engine.

XPath scope menu

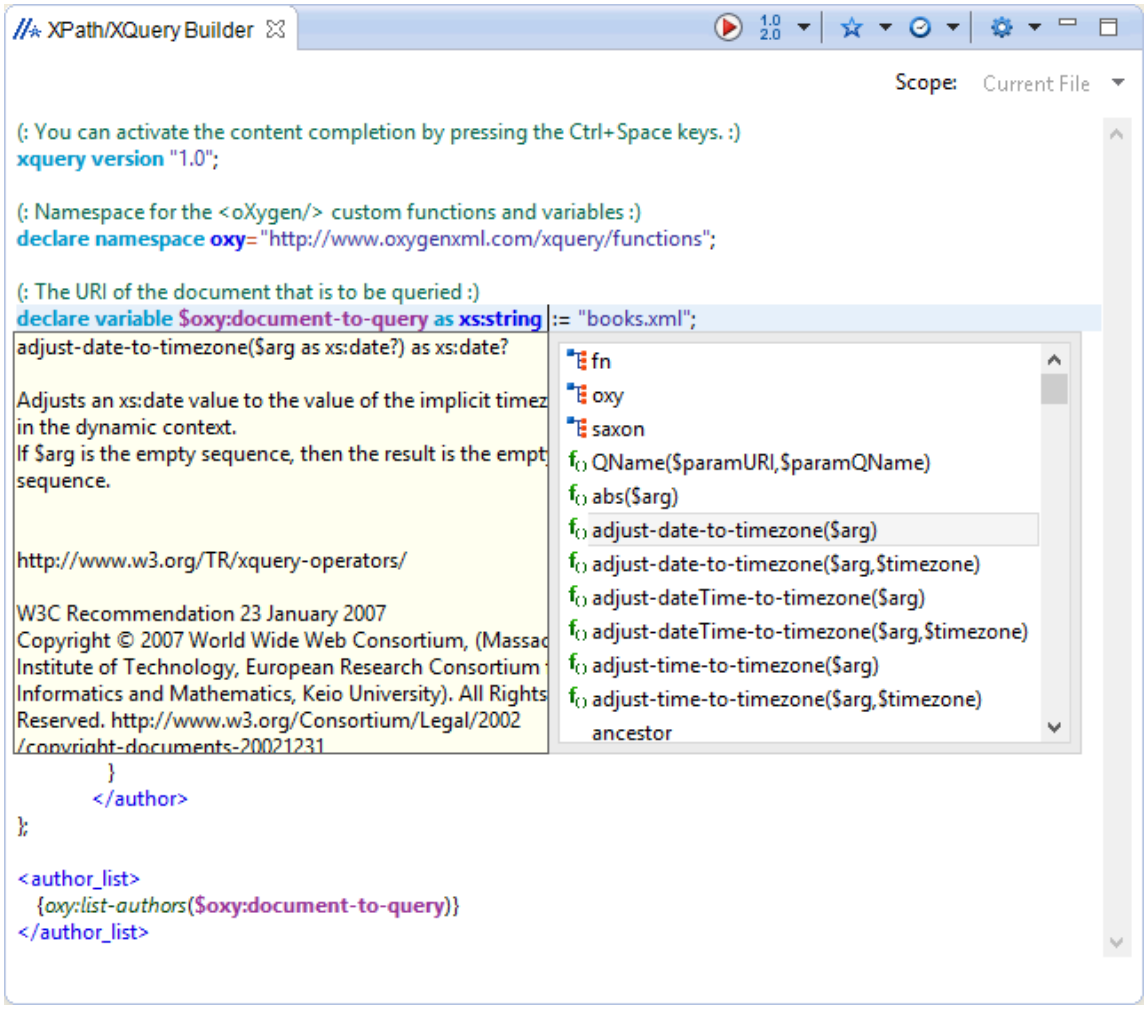
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to define a scope for the XPath operation to be executed. You can choose where the XPath expression will be executed:

- **Current file** - Currently selected file only.
- **Enclosing project** - All the files of the project that encloses the currently edited file.
- **Workspace selected files** - The files selected in the workspace. The files are collected from the last selected resource provider view (**Project Explorer** *(on page 245)* or **Package Explorer**).
- **All opened files** - All files that are opened in the application.
- **Current DITA Map hierarchy** - All resources referenced in the currently selected *DITA map* that is open in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*.
- **Opened archive** - Files that are opened in the **Archive Browser** view *(on page 1458)*.
- **Working sets** - The selected *working sets (on page 2235)*.

At the bottom of the scope menu the following scope configuration actions are available:

- **Configure XPath working sets** - Allows you to configure and manage collections of files and folders, encapsulated in logical containers called *working sets (on page 2235)*.
- **XPath file filter** - You can filter the files from the selected scope that will have the XPath expression executed. By default, the XPath expression will be executed only on XML or JSON files, but you can also define a set of patterns that will filter out files from the current scope.

Figure 252. XPath/XQuery Builder View



When you hover your cursor over the version icon 1.0 2.0, a tooltip is displayed to let you know what engine Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin currently uses.

While you edit an XPath or XQuery expression, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin assists you with the following features:

- *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* - It offers context-dependent proposals and takes into account the cursor position in the document you are editing. The set of functions proposed by the *Content Completion Assistant* also depends on the engine version. Select the engine version from the drop-down menu available in the toolbar.
- Syntax Highlighting - Allows you to identify the components of an expression. To customize the colors of the components of the expression, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Syntax Highlight** *(on page 163)*.
- Automatic validation of the expression as you type.

> **Note:**
> When you type invalid syntax, a red serrated line underlines the invalid fragments.

- Function signature and documentation balloon, when the cursor is located inside a function.

Related Information:
XPath Expression Results View *(on page 1455)*

XPath Expression Results View

When you run an XPath expression, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the results of its execution in the **XPath Results** view.

This view contains the following columns:

- **Description** - The result thatOxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays when you run an XPath expression.
- **XPath location** - The path to the matched node.
- **Resource** - The name of the document that you run the XPath expression on.
- **System ID** - The path to the document itself.
- **Location** - The location of the result in the document.

To arrange the results depending on a column, click its header. If no information regarding location is available, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays **Not available** in the **Location** column. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the results in a valid XPath expression format.

```
- /node[value]/node[value]/node[value] -
```

XPath Results View Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available when the contextual menu is invoked in this view:

Select All

Extends the selection to all the messages from the view.

Copy

Copies information associated with the selected messages in case you want to paste it elsewhere.

Save Results

Saves the complete list of messages in a file in text format. For each message, the included details are the same as the ones for the **Copy** action *(on page 1455)*.

Save Results as XML

Saves the complete list of messages in a file in XML format. For each message, the included details are the same as the ones for the **Copy** action *(on page 1455)*.

Save Results as HTML

Saves the complete list of messages in a file in HTML format. For each message, the included details are the same as the ones for the **Copy** action *(on page 1455)*.

Example:

The following snippets are taken from a DocBook book based on the DocBook XML DTD. The book contains a number of chapters. To return all the chapter nodes of the book, enter `//chapter` in the XPath expression field and press **Enter**. This action returns all the `chapter` nodes of the DocBook book in the **Results View**. Click a record in the **Results View** to locate and highlight its corresponding chapter element and all its children nodes in the document you are editing.

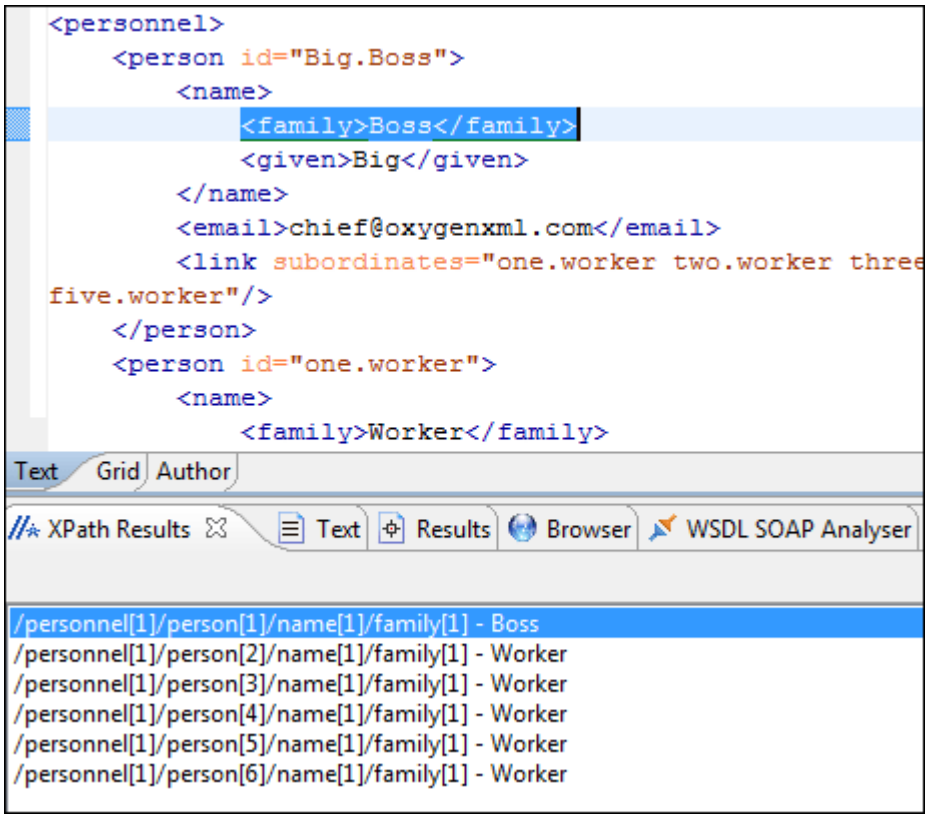
To find all `example` nodes contained in the `sect2` nodes of a DocBook XML document, use the following XPath expression: `//chapter/sect1/sect2/example`. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin adds a result in the **Results View** for each `example` node found in any `sect2` node.

For example, if the result of the above XPath expression is:

```
- /chapter[1]/sect1[3]/sect2[7]/example[1]
```

it means that in the edited file, the `example` node is located in the first chapter, third section level one, seventh section level 2.

Figure 253. XPath Results Highlighted in Editor Panel with Character Precision



XPath and XML Catalogs

The evaluation of the XPath expression tries to resolve the locations of documents referenced in the expression through *XML Catalogs (on page 2235)*. These catalogs are configured in the **XML Catalog** preferences *(on page 175)* pages and the **XML Parser** preferences *(on page 177)*.

Example:

As an example, consider the evaluation of the `collection(URIofCollection)` function (XPath 2.0). To resolve the references from the files returned by the `collection()` function with an *XML catalog*, specify the class name of the catalog-enabled parser for parsing these collection files. The class name is *ro.sync.xml.parser.CatalogEnabledXMLReader*. Specify it as it follows:

```
let $docs := collection(iri-to-uri(
   "file:///D:/temp/test/XQuery-catalog/mydocsdir?recurse=yes;select=*.xml;
   parser=ro.sync.xml.parser.CatalogEnabledXMLReader"))
```

XPath Prefix Mapping

To define default mappings between prefixes and namespace URIs go to the **XPath** preferences page *(on page 187)* and enter the mappings in the **Default prefix-namespace mappings** table. The same preferences panel allows you to configure the default namespace used in XPath 2.0 expressions.

Important:

If you define a default namespace, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin binds this namespace to the first free prefix from the list: `default`, `default1`, `default2`, and so on. For example, if you define the default namespace `xmlns="something"` and the prefix `default` is not associated with another namespace, you can match tags without prefix in an XPath expression typed in the XPath toolbar by using the prefix `default`. To find all the `<level>` elements when you define a default namespace in the root element, use this expression: `//default:level` in the XPath toolbar.

13.

Working with Archives

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a useful **Archive Browser** view *(on page 1458)* that offers the means to work with files directly from various types of archives (for example, opening and saving files directly in archives, or browsing and modifying archive structures). The archive support is available for all ZIP-type archives, including:

- ZIP archives
- EPUB books
- *JAR archives (on page 2231)*
- Office Open XML (OOXML) files
- Open Document Format (ODF) files
- *IDML files (on page 2231)*

You can transform, validate, and perform many other operations on files directly from an archive. For instance, you can transform, or validate files directly from OOXML or ODF packages, and the structure and content of the ZIP archives can be opened, edited, and saved, similar to any other ZIP archive browsing tool. Also, when browsing for a URL in various dialog boxes, you can use the **Browse for archived file** action to browse and select files from a particular archive.

Resources

For more information about working with an EPUB archive in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/OIGTNQwOCl8

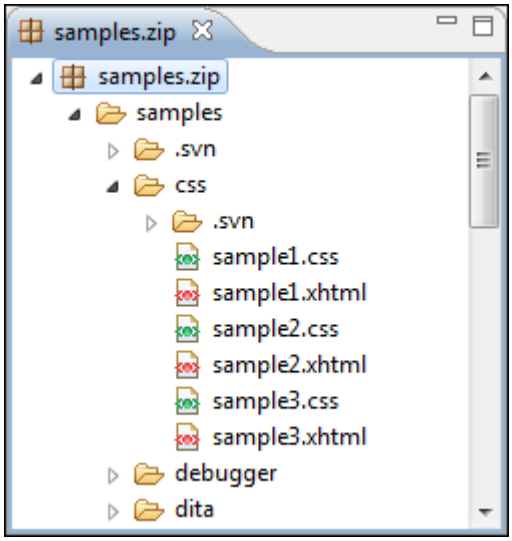
Browsing Archives

To view the contents and structure of an archive, use one of the following methods:

- Open an archive from the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*. This opens the archive in the main editing pane. The archive is unmounted when the editor is closed.
- Use the Eclipse File System (EFS) by right-clicking the archive in the **Project Explorer** view and choosing **Expand Zip Archive**. This expands the archive. All the standard actions are available on the mounted archive. To close the archive, you can use the **Collapse ZIP Archive** action and any file opened from the expanded archive is closed when the archive in unmounted.

Tip:
If a file is not recognized by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin as a supported archive type, you can add it in the **Archive** preferences page *(on page 64)*.

Figure 254. Browsing an Archive



Archive Contextual Menu Actions

The following additional actions are available from the contextual menu for archives:

Open

Opens a resource from the archive in the editor.

Extract

Extracts a resource from the archive in a specified folder.

New folder

Creates a folder as child of the selected folder in the browsed archive.

New file

Creates a file as child of the selected folder in the browsed archive.

Add files

Adds existing files as children of the selected folder in the browsed archive.

Note:
On macOS, the **Add file** action is also available and it allows you to add one file at a time.

Rename

Renames a resource in the archive.

Cut

Cuts the selected archive resource.

Copy

Copies the selected archive resource.

Paste

Pastes a file or folder into the archive.

Delete

Removes a file or folder from archive.

Copy location

Copies the URL location of the selected resource.

Refresh

Refreshes the selected resource.

Properties

Shows the properties of the selected resource.

Resources

For more information, watch our video demonstration about working with an EPUB in the **Archive Browser** view:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/OIGTNQwOCI8

Working with Archive Files

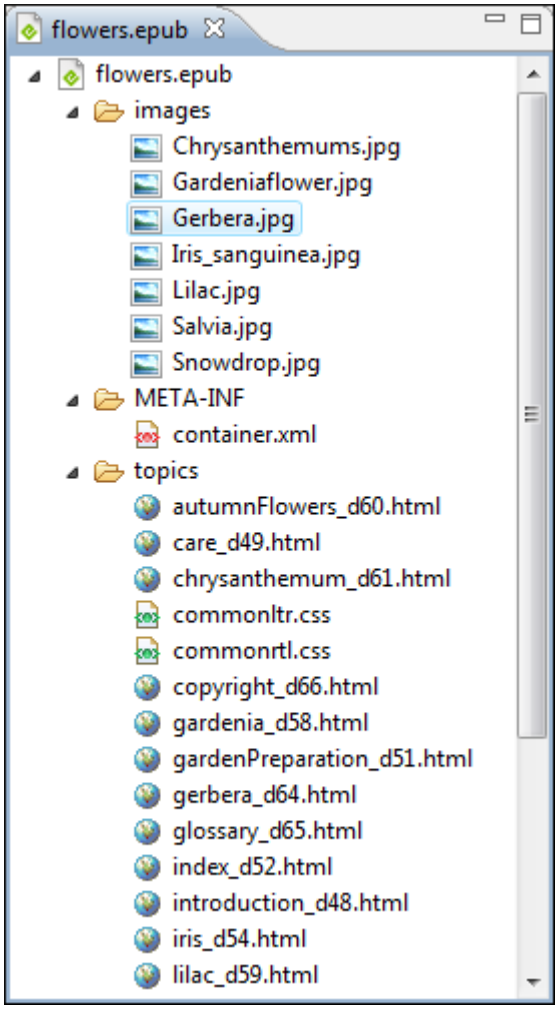
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for working with various types of archives, including the following:

- **EPUB** - An e-book file format that can be used on many types of devices, such as smart phones, tablets, e-readers, or computers.
- **OOXML** - An XML-based file format for representing spreadsheets, charts, presentations, and word processing documents.
- **ODF** - An free and open-source XML-based file format for electronic office documents, such as spreadsheets, charts, presentations, and word processing documents.

When these types of files are opened in the **Project Explorer** view or the main editing pane, their internal components are expanded:

- Document content (XHTML and image files).
- Packaging files.
- Container files.

Figure 255. EPUB File Displayed in Eclipse



When an archive is expanded, you can add or delete files that compose the archive structure. All changes made to the structure of an archive are saved immediately. You can open files from within the archive to edit them in the main editing pane and save changes back to the archive. You can also use the **Open in System Application** action to open the archive in the default system application that is associated with that type of file.

EPUB-Specific Validation

When working with EPUB archives, Eclipse includes a **Validate** action on the toolbar that checks the EPUB archive to make sure the structure and content are valid. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the open-source *EpubCheck* validator to perform the validation. This validator detects many types of errors, including OCF container structure, OPF and OPS mark-up, as well as internal reference consistency.

Resources

For more information about working with an EPUB archive in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/OIGTNQwOCl8

Related information

The Archive Browser View *(on page 1458)*
EPUB Document Type (Framework) *(on page 792)*

Creating an Archive

To create an archive from scratch, follow these steps:

1. Go to **File > New > New from Templates**.
2. Choose your particular type of archive template. For example, select one of the **ODF**, **OOXML**, or **EPUB** templates.
3. Click **Next** and choose the name and location of the file.
4. Click **Finish**.
   A skeleton archive is saved on disk and open in Eclipse.

   Tip:
   Use toolbar and contextual menu actions to edit, add, and remove resources from the archive. For EPUB archives, you can use the **Validate** action to verify the integrity of the EPUB archive.

Editing and Saving Files Inside an Archive

You can open files directly from an archive and then edit them in the main editor pane. To open a file, simply double-click it or select **Open** from the contextual menu.

When saving the file back to the archive, you are prompted to choose if you want the application to make a backup copy of the archive before saving the new content. If you choose **Never ask me again**, you will not be asked again to make backup copies. You can re-enable the pop-up message from the Archive preferences page *(on page 64)*.

Migrating Archives to DITA or TEI

Certain types of archives can be converted to DITA or TEI. For example, OOXML (Office Open XML) archive files with the DOCX file extension can be migrated to DITA or TEI.

To migrate DOCX files to DITA or TEI, follow these steps:

1. Open and expand the archive in Eclipse.
2. Open the **document.xml** file contained in the archive.
3. Run one of the following built-in transformation scenarios:

a. **DOCX DITA** to migrate to DITA.
b. **DOCX TEI P5** to migrate to TEI.

4. You may need to do some manual reconfiguring to map DOCX styles to DITA or TEI content.

Tip:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes a built-in transformation scenario called **ODT TEI P5** for converting ODF archive files with the ODT file extension to TEI and a similar process can be used to migrate ODT files to TEI.

14.
Databases and SharePoint

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for connecting and integrating with various databases and Microsoft SharePoint. This section includes information about the database-related features in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. It explains how to connect with the supported databases, presents the actions that are available for each type, and includes information about SharePoint integration.

Working with Databases

XML is a storage and interchange format for structured data and is supported by all major database systems. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers the means for managing the interaction with some of the most commonly used databases (both *Relational* and *Native XML* databases). Through this interaction, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin helps users with browsing, content editing, importing from databases, using XQuery with databases, SQL execution, and generating XML Schema from a database structure.

The types of connections that are supported in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin include:

- IBM DB2 (Deprecated) *(on page 1504)*
- Microsoft SQL Server (Deprecated) *(on page 1469)*
- Oracle Database (Deprecated) *(on page 1474)*
- PostgreSQL (Deprecated) *(on page 1479)*
- eXist *(on page 1484)*
- MarkLogic (Deprecated) *(on page 1489)*
- MySQL (Deprecated) *(on page 1494)*
- Generic JDBC *(on page 1497)*
- JDBC-ODBC *(on page 1498)*
- BaseX *(on page 1500)*
- WebDAV *(on page 1509)*
- Microsoft SharePoint *(on page 1514)*

Related information

Integration with Microsoft SharePoint *(on page 1514)*

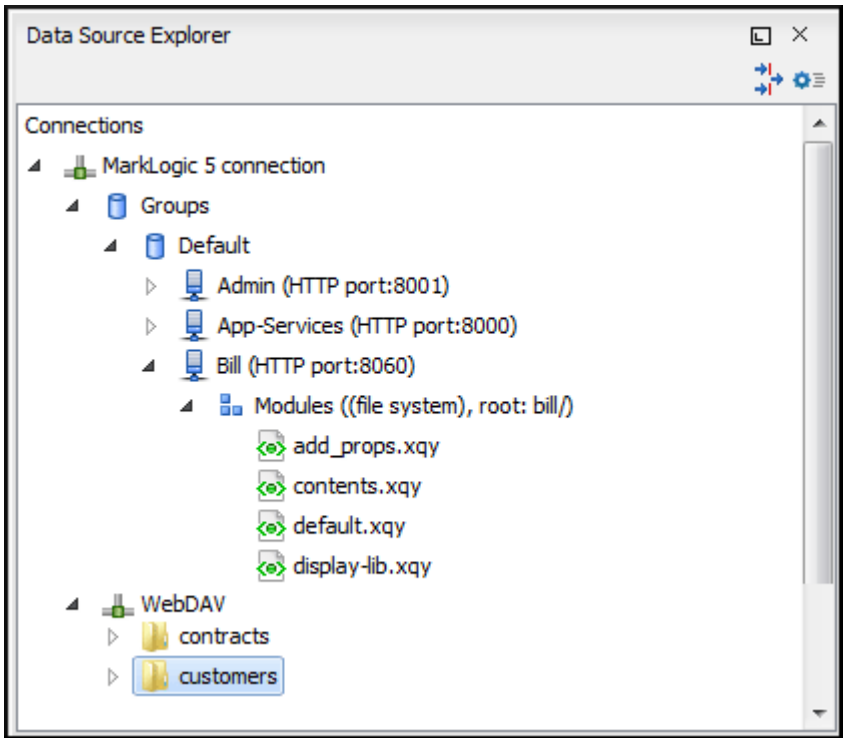
Data Source Explorer View

The **Data Source Explorer** view displays your database connections. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

You can connect to a database simply by expanding the connection node (click the connection).
The database structure can be expanded to resource level, or even all the way to column level for tables

inside relational databases. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports multiple simultaneous database connections and the connection tree in the **Data Source Explorer** view provides an easy method for browsing them.

Figure 256. Data Source Explorer View



The objects (nodes) that are displayed in the **Data Source Explorer** view depend on the connection type and structure of the database. Various contextual menu actions are available for each hierarchical level and for some connections you can add or move resources in a container by simply dragging them from the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*, a file browsing application, or another database.

Toolbar Actions

The following actions are available in the toolbar of this view:

Filters

Opens the **Data Sources / Table Filters** preferences page *(on page 72)*, allowing you to decide which table types are displayed in the **Data Source Explorer** view.

Configure Database Sources

Opens the **Data Sources** preferences page *(on page 67)* where you can configure both data sources and connections.

Database-Specific Contextual Menu Actions

Each specific type of database will also include its own specific contextual menu actions in the **Data Source Explorer** view. The actions depend on the type of database, the type of node, or the hierarchical level of the node where the contextual menu is invoked.

For more information on the specific actions that are available, see the topics in this section for each specific type of database.

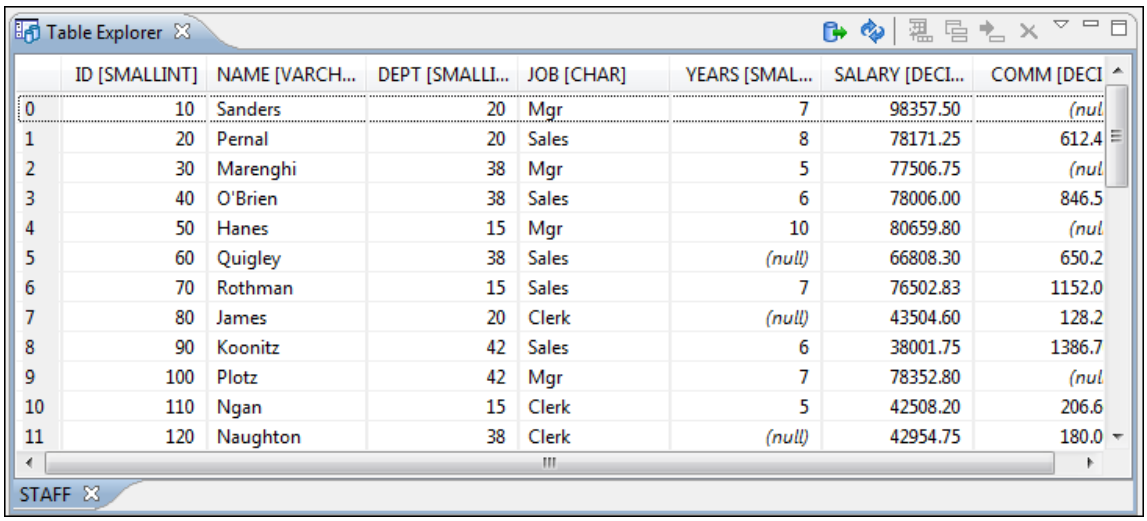
Related Information:

Data Sources Preferences *(on page 67)*

Table Explorer View

Relational databases tables in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* can be displayed and edited in the **Table Explorer** view by selecting the **Edit** action from the contextual menu of a **Table** node or by double-clicking one of its fields. To modify the content of a cell, double-click it and start typing. When editing is complete, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin attempts to update the database with the new cell content.

Figure 257. Table Explorer View



You can sort the content of a table by one of its columns by clicking its column header.

Note the following:

- The first column is an index (not part of the table structure).
- Every column header contains the field name and its data type.
- The primary key columns are marked with this symbol: .
- Multiple tables are presented in a tabbed manner.

For performance issues, you can set the maximum number of cells that are displayed in the **Table Explorer** view (using the **Limit the number of cells** option in the **Data Sources** Preferences page *(on page 71)*). If a table that has more cells than the value set in the options is displayed in the **Table Explorer** view, a warning dialog box informs you that the table is only partially shown.

You are notified if the value you have entered in a cell is not valid (and thus cannot be updated).

- If the content of the edited cell does not belong to the data type of the column, an information dialog box appears, notifying you that the value you have inserted cannot be converted to the SQL type of that field. For example, if you have a column that contains `LONG` (numerical) values, and a character or string is inserted into one of its cells, you would get the error message that a string value cannot be converted to the requested SQL type (NUMBER).
- If the constraints of the database are not met (for instance, primary key constraints), an information dialog box will appear, notifying you of the reason the database has not been updated. For example, in the table below, trying to set the second record in the primary key `propID` column to 8, results in a duplicate entry error since that value has already been used in the first record:

Figure 258. Duplicate Entry for Primary Key

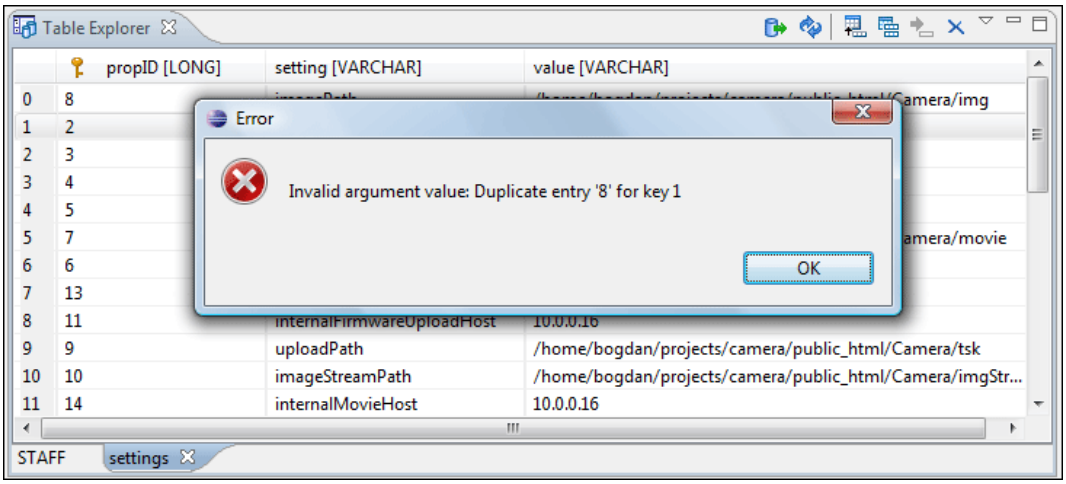


Table Explorer Contextual Menu Actions

Common editing actions (**Cut**, **Copy**, **Paste**, **Select All**, **Undo**, **Redo**) are available in the contextual menu of an edited cell.

The contextual menu, available on every cell in the **Table Explorer** view, also includes the following actions:

Set NULL

Sets the content of the cell to **null**. This action is not available for columns that cannot have a value of **null**.

Insert row

Inserts an empty row in the table.

Duplicate row

Makes a copy of the selected row and adds it in the **Table Explorer** view. Note that the new row will not be inserted in the database table until all conflicts are resolved.

Commit row

Commits the selected row.

Delete row

Deletes the selected row.

Copy

Copies the content of the cell.

Paste

Pastes copied content into the selected cell.

Table Explorer Toolbar Actions

The toolbar of the **Table Explorer** view also includes the following actions:

Export to XML

Opens the **Export Criteria** dialog box .

Refresh

Performs a refresh for the sub-tree of the selected node.

Insert row

Inserts an empty row in the table.

Duplicate row

Makes a copy of the selected row and adds it in the **Table Explorer** view. Note that the new row will not be inserted in the database table until all conflicts are resolved.

Commit row

Commits the selected row.

Delete row

Deletes the selected row.

Related Information:
Data Source Explorer View *(on page 1464)*

Database Connection Support

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers support for a variety of *Relational* and *Native XML* database connections. The database drivers and connections for various types of database are configured in the **Data Sources** preferences page *(on page 67)* and once configured, the database connections can be viewed and managed in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes a **Database** *perspective (on page 217)* that helps you to manage databases.

The database support in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers a variety of capabilities, including:

- Browsing the structure of databases in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*.
- Viewing relational tables in the **Table Explorer** view *(on page 1466)*.
- Executing SQL queries against databases.
- Calling stored procedures with input and output parameters.
- XQuery execution with databases.
- Exporting data from databases to XML.

Relational Database Support

Relational databases use a relational model and are based on tables linked by a common key. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers support for the most commonly used relational databases, including:

- IBM DB2 (Deprecated)
- Oracle 11g (Deprecated)
- Microsoft SQL Server (Deprecated)
- PostgreSQL (Deprecated)
- MySQL (Deprecated)

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also offers generic support (table browsing and execution of SQL queries) for any JDBC-compliant database (for example, *MariaDB*).

Native XML Database Support

Native XML databases have an XML-based internal model and their fundamental unit of storage is XML. They use XML as an interface to specify documents as tree structured data that may contain unstructured text, but on disk the data is stored as optimized binary files. This makes query and retrieval processes faster. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers support for the most commonly used native XML databases, including:

- eXist
- MarkLogic (Deprecated)
- Oracle XML DB (Deprecated)
- Base X

Related information

WebDAV Connections *(on page 1509)*

Integration with Microsoft SharePoint *(on page 1514)*

Microsoft SQL Server Database Connections (Deprecated)

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for Microsoft SQL Server database connections. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to browse the structure of a SQL Server database in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, open tables in the **Table Explorer** view *(on page 1466)*, and perform various operations on the resources in the repository.

Configuring a Microsoft SQL Server Connection

To configure the support for a Microsoft SQL Server database, follow this procedure:

1. Download the appropriate MS SQL JDBC driver from the Microsoft website: https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/connect/jdbc/release-notes-for-the-jdbc-driver?view=sql-server-ver16#102.
2. Configure MS SQL Server *Data Source* drivers *(on page 1470)*.
3. Configure a MS SQL Server *Connection (on page 1471)*.
4. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

How to Configure Microsoft SQL Server Data Source Drivers

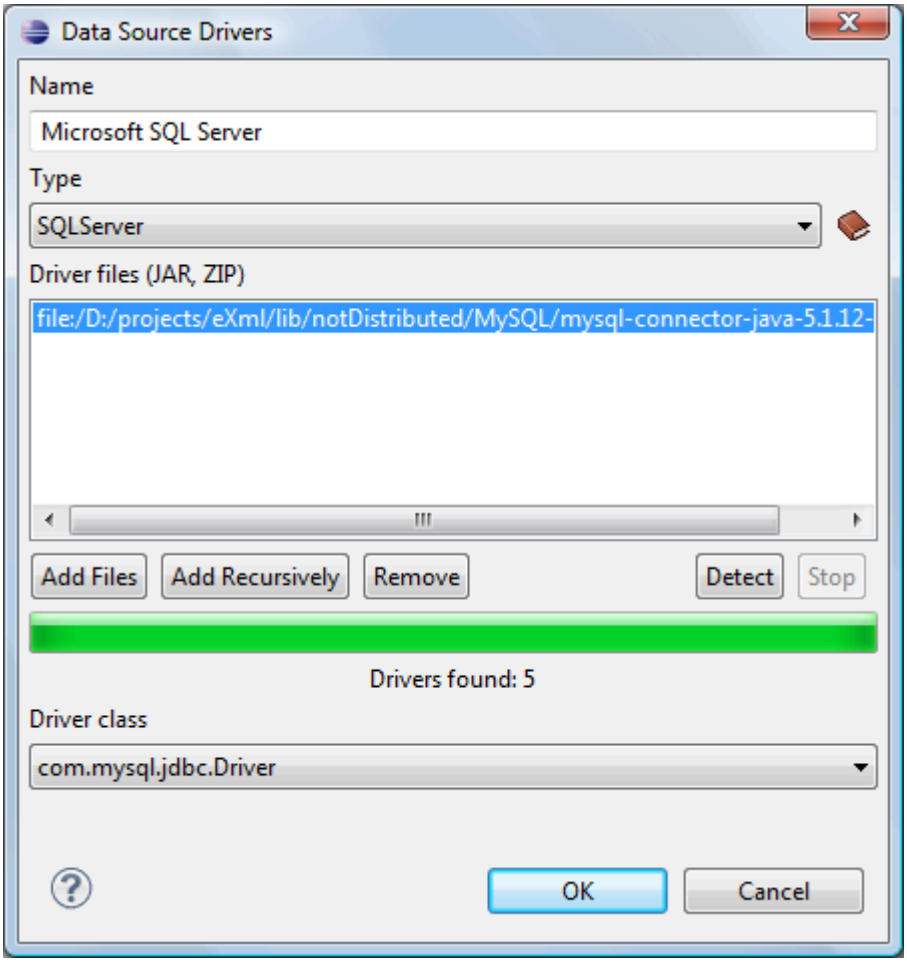
Note:
Available in the Enterprise edition only.

To configure a data source for connecting to a Microsoft SQL server, follow these steps:

1. Download the appropriate MS SQL JDBC driver from the Microsoft website: https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/sql/connect/jdbc/release-notes-for-the-jdbc-driver?view=sql-server-ver16#102.
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
3. Click the **New** button in the **Data Sources** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a data source is opened.

Figure 259. Data Source Drivers Configuration Dialog Box



4. Enter a unique name for the data source.
5. Select *SQLServer* in the driver **Type** drop-down menu.
6. Click the **Add Files** button and select the Microsoft SQL Server driver file that you downloaded.
   The SQL Server driver file is called `sqljdbc.jar`.
7. Select the most appropriate **Driver class**.
8. Click the **OK** button to finish the data source configuration.
9. Continue on to configure your Microsoft SQL Server connection *(on page 1471)*.

How to Configure a Microsoft SQL Server Connection

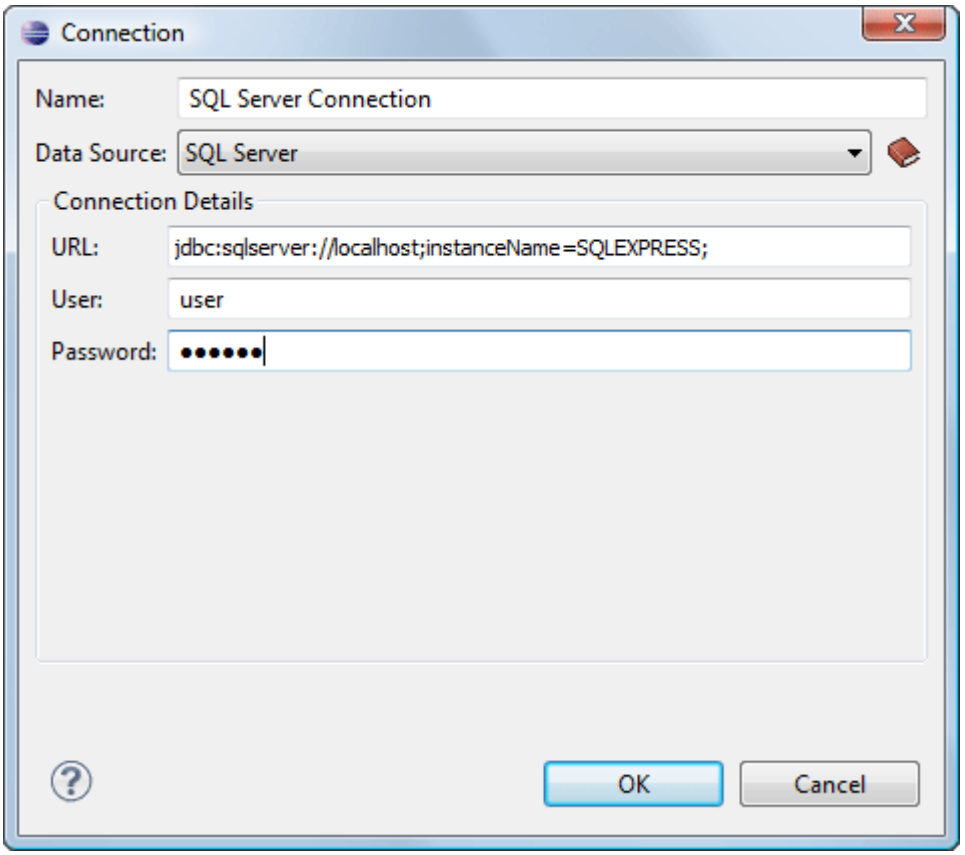
Note:
The support to configure a Microsoft SQL Server connection is available in the Enterprise edition only.

To configure a connection to a Microsoft SQL Server, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
2. Click the **New** button in the **Connections** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a database connection is displayed.

Figure 260. Connection Configuration Dialog Box



3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select the *SQL Server* data source in the **Data Source** drop-down menu.
5. Enter the connection details.
   a. Enter the URL of the SQL Server server.
      If you want to connect to the server using Windows integrated authentication, you must add **;integratedSecurity=true** to the end of the URL. The URL will look like this:

      ```
      jdbc:sqlserver://localhost;instanceName=SQLEXPRESS;integratedSecurity=true;
      ```

      Note:
      For integrated authentication, leave the **User** and **Password** fields empty.

   b. Enter the user name for the connection to the SQL Server.
   c. Enter the password for the connection to the SQL Server.

6. Click the **OK** button to finish the connection configuration.
7. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

Microsoft SQL Server Contextual Menu Actions

General Contextual Menu Actions

For relational databases, the following general actions are available in the contextual menu of the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, depending on the node where it is invoked:

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Disconnect (available on Connection nodes)

Closes the current database connection. If a table is already open, you are warned to close it before proceeding.

Configure Database Sources (available on Connection nodes)

Opens the **Data Sources** preferences page *(on page 67)* where you can configure both data sources and connections.

Edit (available on Table nodes)

Opens the selected table in the **Table Explorer** view *(on page 1466)*.

Export to XML (available on Table nodes)

Opens the **Export Criteria** dialog box .

Database-Specific Contextual Menu Actions

In addition to the general contextual menu actions in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, the resource level nodes in Microsoft SQL Server connections include the following additional contextual menu action:

XML Schema Repository Level Nodes

Register

Opens a dialog box for adding a new schema file in the DB XML repository. In this dialog box, you enter a collection name and the necessary schema files. Schema dependencies management can be done by using the **Add** and **Remove** buttons.

Schema Level Nodes

Add

Adds a new schema to the XML Schema files.

Unregister

Removes the selected schema from the XML Schema Repository.

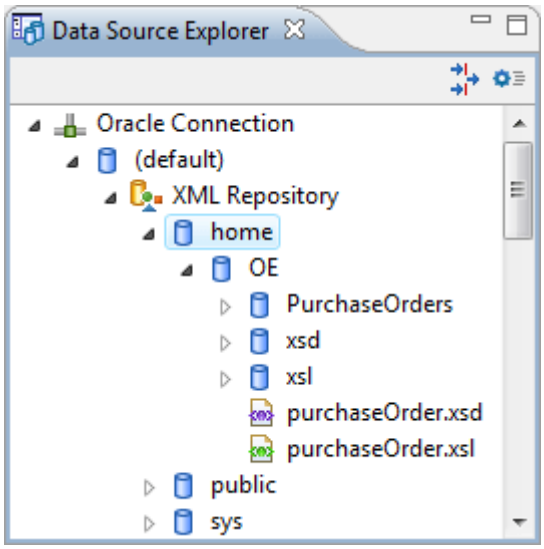
View

Opens the selected schema in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Oracle Database Connections (Deprecated)

The Oracle database is a common relational type of database system. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes with built-in support for the 11g version of the database system. The Oracle database also includes a Oracle XML DB component that adds native XML support. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to browse Oracle repositories in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, open tables in the **Table Explorer** view *(on page 1466)*, and perform various operations on the resources in the repository.

Figure 261. Oracle Database Connection



Related Information:
Using XQuery with Oracle XML DB

Configuring an Oracle 11g Database Connection

To configure the support for a Oracle 11g database, follow this procedure:

1. Go to http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database/enterprise-edition/jdbc-112010-090769.html and download the Oracle 11g JDBC driver called `ojdbc6.jar`.
2. Configure Oracle 11g *Data Source* drivers *(on page 1475)*.
3. Configure an Oracle 11g *Connection (on page 1476)*.
4. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

How to Configure Oracle 11g Data Source Drivers

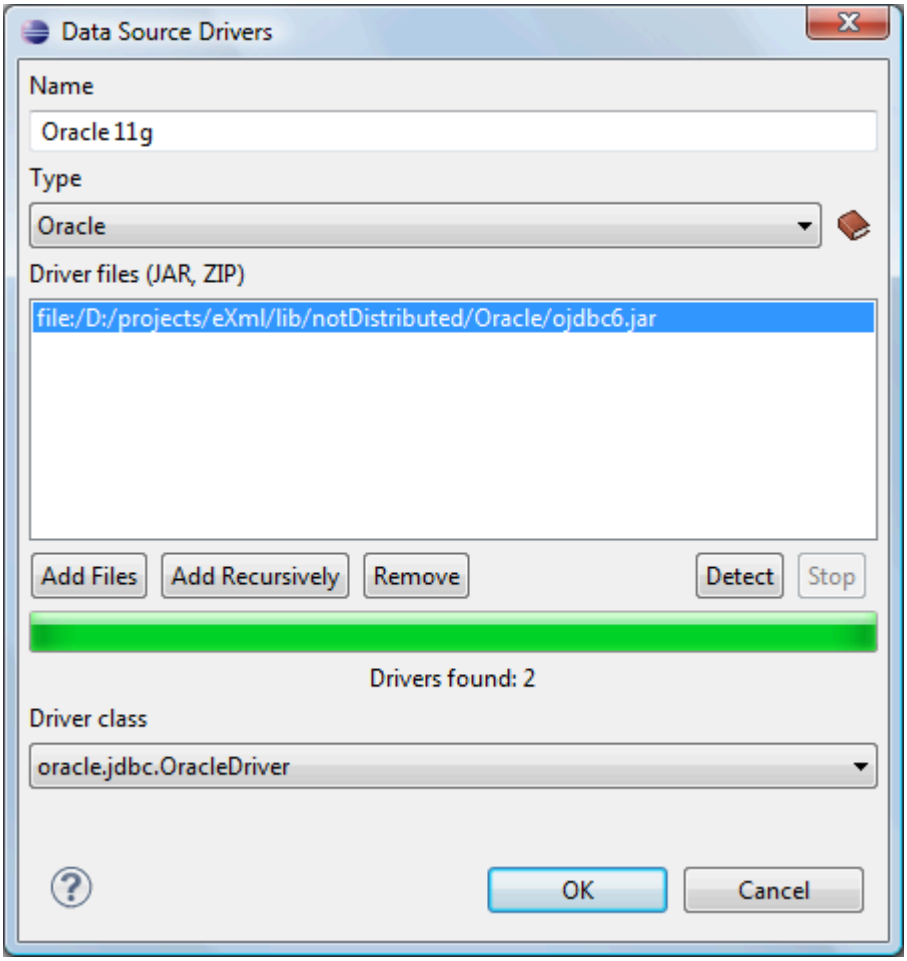
Note:
Available in the Enterprise edition only.

To configure a data source for connecting to an Oracle 11g server, follow these steps:

1. Go to http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/database/enterprise-edition/jdbc-112010-090769.html and download the Oracle 11g JDBC driver called `ojdbc6.jar`.
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
3. Click the **New** button in the **Data Sources** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a data source is opened.

Figure 262. Data Source Drivers Configuration Dialog Box



4. Enter a unique name for the data source.
5. Select *Oracle* in the driver **Type** drop-down menu.
6. Click the **Add Files** button and select the Oracle driver file that you downloaded.

The Oracle driver file is called `ojdbc5.jar`.

7. Select the most appropriate **Driver class**.
8. Click the **OK** button to finish the data source configuration.
9. Continue on to configure your Oracle connection *(on page 1476)*.

How to Configure an Oracle 11g Connection

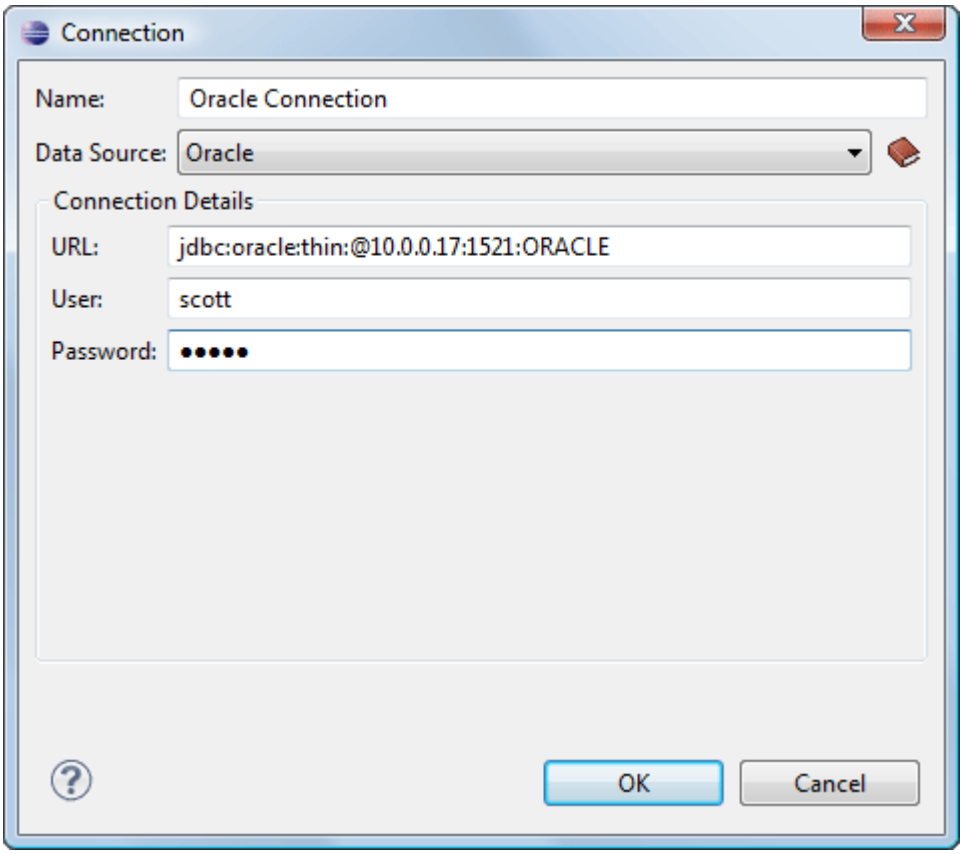
Note:
Available in the Enterprise edition only.

To configure a connection to an Oracle 11g server, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
2. Click the + **New** button in the **Connections** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a database connection is displayed.

Figure 263. Connection Configuration Dialog Box



3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select the *Oracle 11g* data source in the **Data Source** drop-down menu.

5. Enter the connection details.
    a. Enter the URL of the Oracle server.
    b. Enter the user name for the connection to the Oracle server.
    c. Enter the password for the connection to the Oracle server.
6. Click the **OK** button to finish the connection configuration.
7. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

Oracle Database Contextual Menu Actions

General Contextual Menu Actions

For relational databases, the following general actions are available in the contextual menu of the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, depending on the node where it is invoked:

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Disconnect (available on Connection nodes)

Closes the current database connection. If a table is already open, you are warned to close it before proceeding.

Configure Database Sources (available on Connection nodes)

Opens the **Data Sources** preferences page *(on page 67)* where you can configure both data sources and connections.

Edit (available on Table nodes)

Opens the selected table in the **Table Explorer** view *(on page 1466)*.

Export to XML (available on Table nodes)

Opens the **Export Criteria** dialog box .

Database-Specific Contextual Menu Actions

In addition to the general contextual menu actions in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, the various nodes in Oracle database connections include the following additional contextual menu actions:

XML Schema Repository Level Nodes

Register

Opens a dialog box for adding a new schema file in the XML repository. To add an XML Schema, enter the schema URI and location on your file system. *Local* scope

means that the schema is visible only to the user who registers it. *Global* scope means that the schema is public.

Note:
Registering a schema may involve dropping/creating types. Hence you need type-related privileges such as DROP TYPE, CREATE TYPE, and ALTER TYPE. You need privileges to delete and register the XML schemas involved in the registering process. You need all privileges on XMLType tables that conform to the registered schemas. For XMLType columns, the ALTER TABLE privilege is needed on corresponding tables. If there are schema-based XMLType tables or columns in other database schemas, you need privileges such as the following:

- **CREATE ANY TABLE**
- **CREATE ANY INDEX**
- **SELECT ANY TABLE**
- **UPDATE ANY TABLE**
- **INSERT ANY TABLE**
- **DELETE ANY TABLE**
- **DROP ANY TABLE**
- **ALTER ANY TABLE**
- **DROP ANY INDEX**

To avoid having to grant all these privileges to the schema owner, Oracle recommends that the registration be performed by a DBA if there are XML schema-based XMLType table or columns in other user database schemas.

XML Repository Level Nodes

Add container

Adds a new child container to the current one.

Add resource

Adds a new resource to the folder.

Container Level Nodes

Add container

Adds a new child container to the current one.

Add resource

Adds a new resource to the folder.

Delete

Deletes the current container.

Properties

Shows various properties of the current container.

Resource Level Nodes

Open

Opens the selected resource in the editor.

Open in System Application

When you use this action, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin downloads the selected resource to a local temporary folder and opens the selected resource in the system application that is currently set as the default application associated with that type of resource. You can then edit the resource, save it, and when you switch the focus back to the **Data Source Explorer** view, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will detect that there was a change and will ask if you want to upload the edited resource to the server.

Rename

Renames the current resource

Move

Moves the current resource to a new container (also available through drag and drop).

Delete

Deletes the current container.

Copy location

Allows you to copy (to the clipboard) an application-specific URL for the resource that can then be used for various actions, such as opening or transforming the resources.

Properties

Shows various properties of the current container.

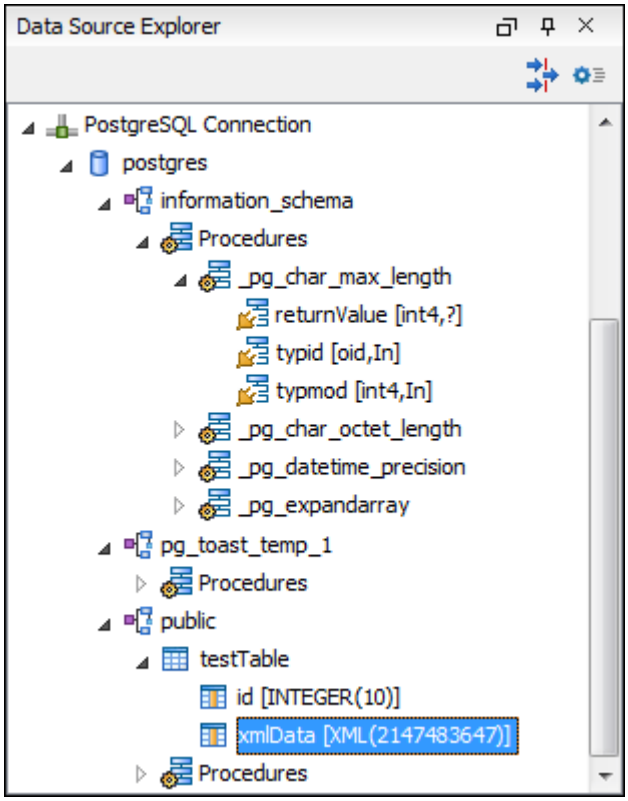
Compare

Compares two selected resources.

PostgreSQL Database Connections (Deprecated)

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for PostgreSQL database connections. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to browse the structure of a PostgreSQL database in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, open tables in the **Table Explorer** view *(on page 1466)*, and perform various operations on the resources in the repository.

Figure 264. PostgreSQL Database Connection



Configuring a PostgreSQL Database Connection

To configure the support for a PostgreSQL database, follow this procedure:

1. Go to https://jdbc.postgresql.org/download/ and download the PostgreSQL JDBC driver specific for your server version.
2. Configure PostgreSQL *Data Source* drivers *(on page 1480)*.
3. Configure a PostgreSQL *Connection (on page 1482)*.
4. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

How to Configure PostgreSQL Data Source Drivers

To configure a data source for connecting to a PostgreSQL server, follow these steps:

1. Go to https://jdbc.postgresql.org/download/ and download the PostgreSQL JDBC3 driver specific for your server version.
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
3. Click the **New** button in the **Data Sources** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a data source is opened.

Figure 265. Data Source Drivers Configuration Dialog Box

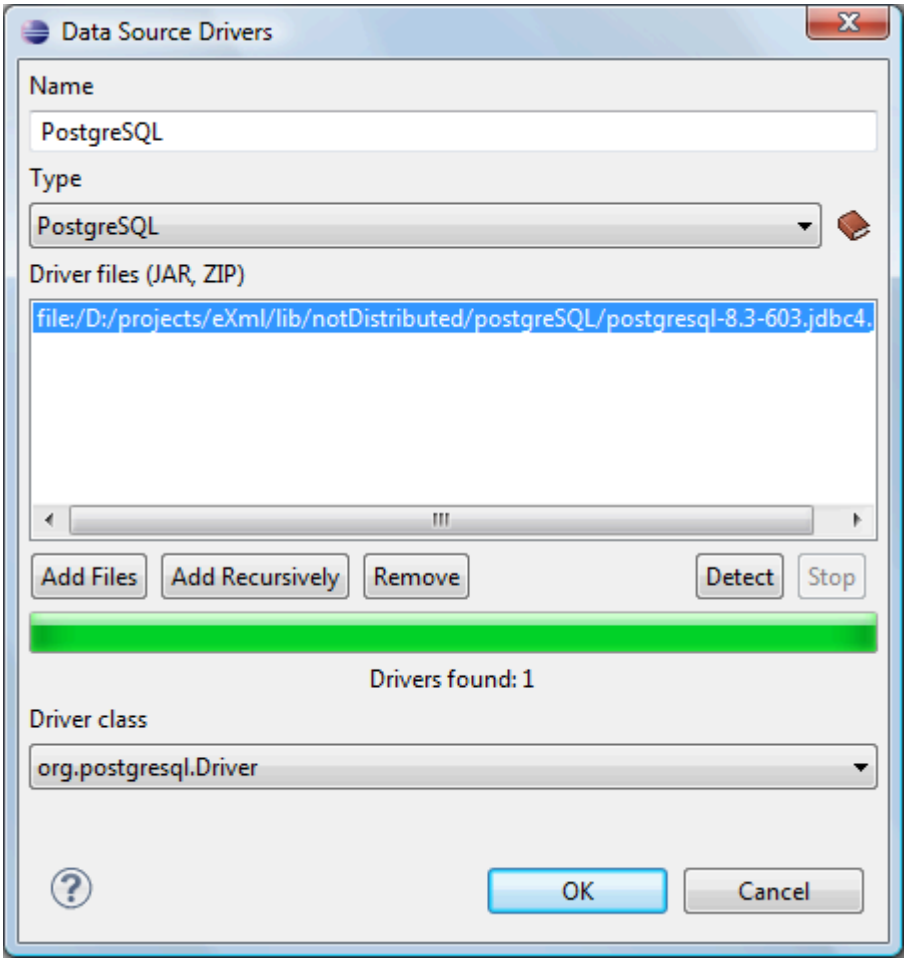
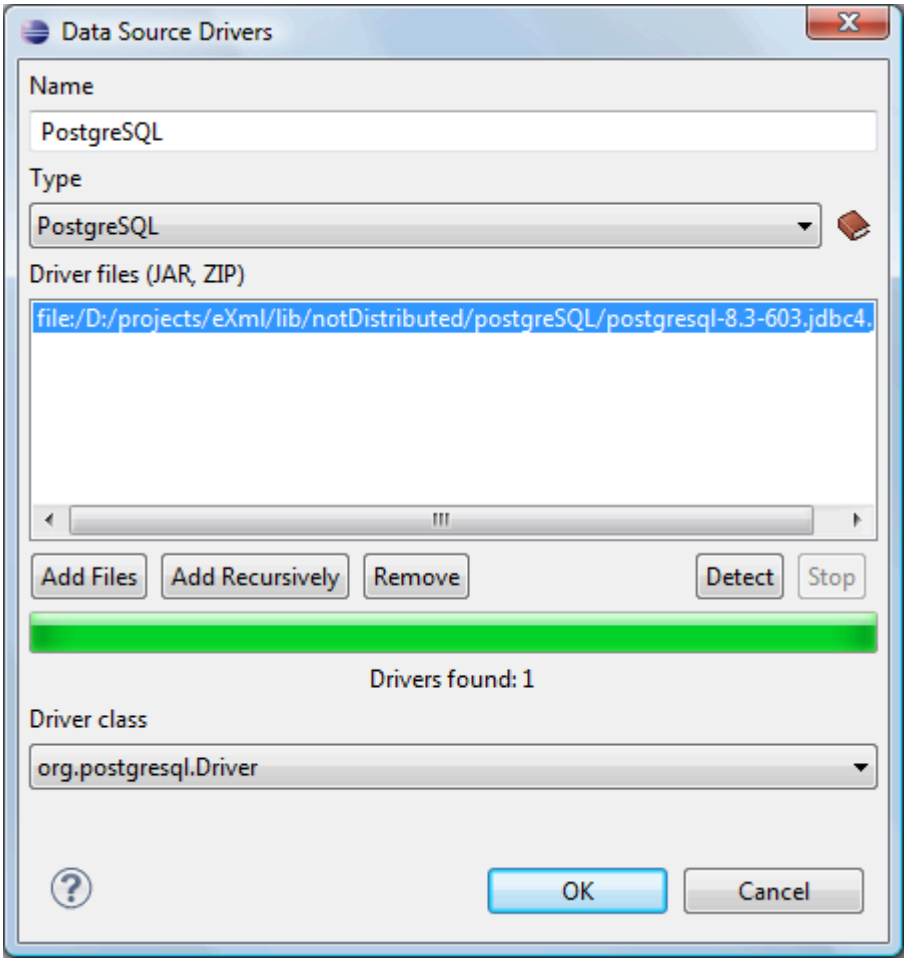


Figure 266. Data Source Drivers Configuration Dialog Box



4. Enter a unique name for the data source.
5. Select *PostgreSQL* in the driver **Type** drop-down list.
6. Click the **Add Files** button and select the PostgreSQL driver file that you downloaded.
7. Select the most appropriate **Driver class**.
8. Click the **OK** button to finish the data source configuration.
9. Continue to configure your PostgreSQL connection *(on page 1482)*.

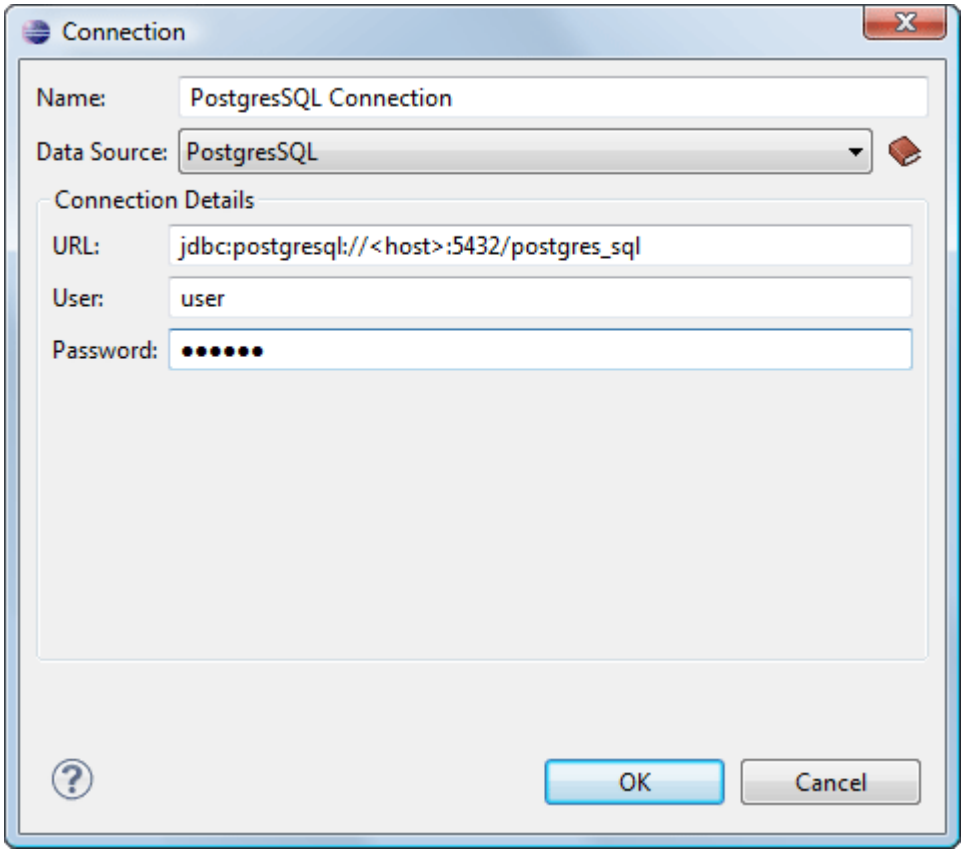
How to Configure a PostgreSQL Connection

To configure a connection to a PostgreSQL server, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
2. Click the **New** button in the **Connections** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a database connection is displayed.

Figure 267. Connection Configuration Dialog Box



3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select the *PostgreSQL* data source in the **Data Source** drop-down menu.
5. Enter the connection details.
    a. Enter the URL of the PostgreSQL server.
    b. Enter the user name for the connection to the PostgreSQL server.
    c. Enter the password for the connection to the PostgreSQL server.
6. Click the **OK** button to finish the connection configuration.
7. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

PostgreSQL Contextual Menu Actions

General Contextual Menu Actions

For relational databases, the following general actions are available in the contextual menu of the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, depending on the node where it is invoked:

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Disconnect (available on Connection nodes)

Closes the current database connection. If a table is already open, you are warned to close it before proceeding.

Configure Database Sources (available on Connection nodes)

Opens the **Data Sources** preferences page *(on page 67)* where you can configure both data sources and connections.

Edit (available on Table nodes)

Opens the selected table in the **Table Explorer** view *(on page 1466)*.

Export to XML (available on Table nodes)

Opens the **Export Criteria** dialog box .

Database-Specific Contextual Menu Actions

In addition to the general contextual menu actions in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, the resource level nodes in PostgreSQL connections include the following additional contextual menu action:

Resource Level Nodes

Compare

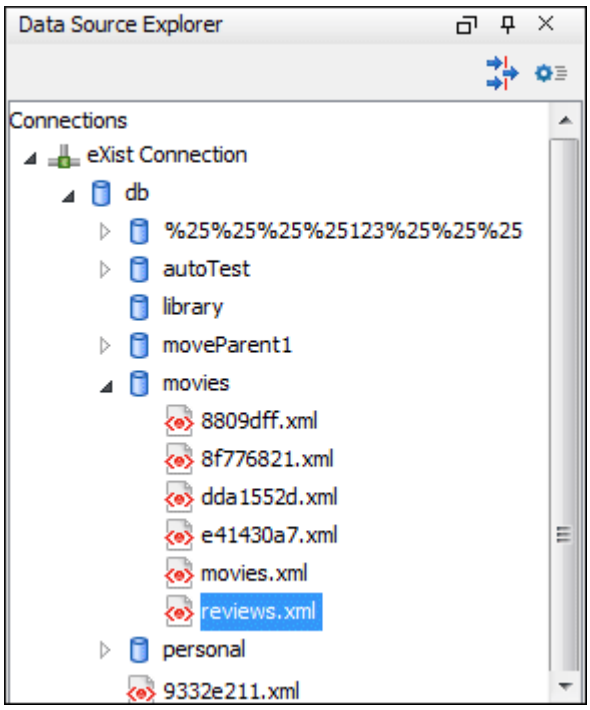
Compares two selected resources.

eXist Database Connections

Attention:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has been tested to work with the latest stable *eXist* version (version 6). It might work with previous *eXist* versions, but they have not been tested and cannot be guaranteed to be compatible.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for *eXist* database connections. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to browse the structure of a *eXist* database in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* and perform various operations on the resources in the repository.

Figure 268. eXist Database Connection



Configuring an eXist Database Connection

There are two ways to configure the support for an *eXist* database:

- Use the dedicated **Create eXist-db XML connection** wizard.
- Use the **Data Sources** preferences page to manually configure your connection.

How to Configure an eXist Connection Using the Built-in Wizard

To configure a connection for an *eXist* database using the dedicated **Create eXist-db XML connection** wizard, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Data Sources** and click the **Create eXist-db XML connection** link.
2. Enter your connection details in the connection wizard and click **OK**.

> **Important:**
> To create an *eXist* connection using this wizard, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin expects the `exist/webstart/exist.jnlp` path to be accessible at the provided **Host** and **Port**.

> **Attention:**
> The connection details dialog box has a **Libraries** path where it will download JAR libraries from the eXist server. If you are using Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 25.0 or older with eXist version 6.2.0 or newer and the final connection to the server does not work, you need

to remove all libraries with the pattern `log4j-*.jar` from the folder of downloaded libraries because they may interfere with the logging in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

3. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

Attention:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has been tested to work with the latest stable *eXist* version (version 6). It might work with previous *eXist* versions, but they have not been tested and cannot be guaranteed to be compatible.

How to Configure an eXist Connection Manually

Attention:
For this manual procedure, you need to already have an *eXist* database server installed. Also, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has been tested to work with the latest stable *eXist* version (version 6). It might work with previous *eXist* versions, but they have not been tested and cannot be guaranteed to be compatible.

Tip:
There is an easier way to configure an *eXist* database connection using a built-in wizard. For more information, see How to Configure an eXist Connection Using the Built-in Wizard *(on page 1485)*.

Step 1: Configure eXist Data Source Drivers

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports *eXist* database server versions up to and including version 5.0. To configure a data source for an *eXist* database, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
2. Click the **New** button in the **Data Sources** panel.
3. Enter a unique name for the data source.
4. Select *eXist* from the driver **Type** drop-down menu.
5. Click the **Add Files** button to add the *eXist* driver files. The following driver files should be added and they are found in the installation directory of the *eXist* database server. Make sure you copy the files from the installation of the *eXist* server where you want to connect from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

- The `exist.jar` file located in the base directory (if present, depending on the server version).
- All JAR files in the `lib/core/` directory (if present) or all JAR files located in the `lib` directory except for the JAR libraries with the pattern `log4j-*.jar`, which may interfere with the logging in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

6. Click the **OK** button to finish the data source configuration.

Step 2: Configure an eXist Connection

To configure a connection to an *eXist* database, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
2. Click the **New** button in the **Connections** panel.
3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select a previously configured *eXist* data source from the **Data Source** drop-down menu.
5. Enter the connection details:
   a. Set the URI to the installed *eXist* engine in the **XML DB URI** field.
   b. Set the user name in the **User** field.
   c. Set the password in the **Password** field.
   d. Enter the start collection in the **Collection** field.

      eXist organizes all documents in hierarchical collections. Collections are like directories. They are used to group related documents together. This text field allows the user to set the default collection name.
6. Click the **OK** button to finish the connection configuration.
7. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

Resources

For more information about running XQuery against an *eXist* XML database, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/Yoc5h1zSddA

eXist Contextual Menu Actions

While browsing *eXist* database connections in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, the various nodes include the following contextual menu actions:

Connection Level Nodes

Configure Database Sources

Opens the **Data Sources** preferences page *(on page 67)* where you can configure both data sources and connections.

Disconnect (when connected)

Stops the connection.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Container Level Nodes

New File

Creates a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

New Collection

Creates a new collection on the connection.

Import Folders

Imports folders on the server.

Import Files

Allows you to add a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

Export

Allows you to export the folder on the remote connection to a local folder.

Cut

Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.

Paste

Pastes the copied selection.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Properties

Shows various properties of the current container.

Resource Level Nodes

Open

Opens the selected resource in the editor.

Open in System Application

When you use this action, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin downloads the selected resource to a local temporary folder and opens the selected resource in the system application that is currently set as the default application associated with that type of resource. You can then edit the resource, save it, and when you switch the focus back to the **Data Source Explorer** view, Oxygen XML Author

Eclipse plugin will detect that there was a change and will ask if you want to upload the edited resource to the server.

Save As

Allows you to save the selected resource as a file on disk.

Cut

Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.

Copy

Copies the current selection into the clipboard.

Copy location

Allows you to copy (to the clipboard) an application-specific URL for the resource that can then be used for various actions, such as opening or transforming the resources.

Rename

Renames the current resource

Delete

Deletes the current container.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Properties

Shows various properties of the current container.

Compare

Compares two selected resources.

MarkLogic Database Connections (Deprecated)

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Enterprise edition includes support for MarkLogic database connections. Once you configure a MarkLogic connection *(on page 1491)*, you can use the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* to display all the application servers that are configured on the MarkLogic server. You can expand each application server and view all of its configured modules, and the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* allows you to open and edit these modules.

Note:
To browse modules located in a database, directory properties must be associated with them. These directory properties are generated automatically if the *directory creation* property of the database is set to automatic. If this property is set to **manual** or **manual-enforced**, add the directory properties of the modules manually, using the XQuery function `xdmp:directory-create()`. For example, for two

documents with the `/code/modules/main.xqy` and `/code/modules/imports/import.xqy` IDs, run the following query:

```
(xdmp:directory-create('/code/modules/'), xdmp:directory-create('/code/modules/imports/'))
```

For more information about directory properties, go to: http://blakeley.com/blogofile/2012/03/19/directory-assistance/.

MarkLogic and XQuery

MarkLogic connections can be used in conjunction with XQuery scripts to debug and solve problems with XQuery transformations. XQuery modules can also be validated using a MarkLogic server to allow to you to spot possible issues without the need of actually executing the XQuery script.

Modules Container

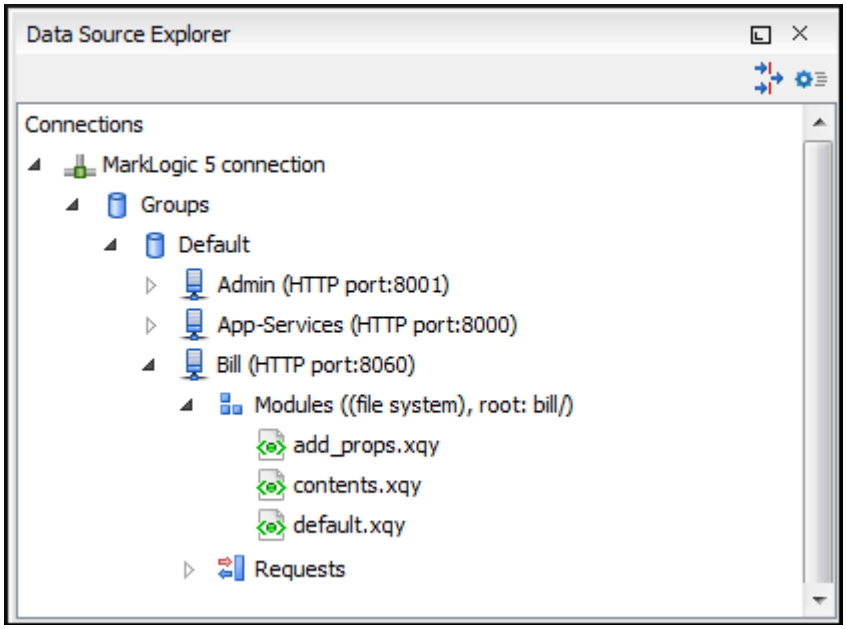
For each Application server (for example: *Bill (HTTP port:8060)*), you have access to the XQuery modules that are visible to that server. When editing, executing, or debugging XQuery it is recommended to open the XQuery files from this **Modules** container.

Note:
You can also manage resources for a MarkLogic database through a WebDAV connection, although it is not recommended if you work with XQuery files since imported modules may not be resolved correctly.

Requests Container

Each MarkLogic application server includes a **Requests** container. In this container, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays both queries that are stopped for debugging purposes and queries that are still running. To clean up the entire **Requests** container at the end of your session, right-click it and use the **Cancel all requests** action *(on page 1494)*.

Figure 269. MarkLogic Connection in Data Source Explorer



Configuring a MarkLogic Database Connection

Note that this feature is available in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Enterprise edition only.

Follow this procedure to configure the support for a MarkLogic database connection:

1. Download the MarkLogic driver from MarkLogic Community site.
2. Configure MarkLogic *Data Source* drivers *(on page 1491)*.
3. Configure a MarkLogic *Connection (on page 1492)*.
4. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

Related Information:

How to Configure MarkLogic Data Source Drivers

Notes:

- Available in the Enterprise edition only.
- Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports MarkLogic version 4.0 or later.

To configure a data source for MarkLogic, follow this procedure:

1. Download the **XCC Java distribution** zip file from: http://developer.marklogic.com/products/xcc.
2. Unzip the downloaded archive.
3. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.

4. Click the **New** button in the **Data Sources** panel.
5. Enter a unique name for the data source.
6. Select *MarkLogic* from the driver **Type** drop-down list.
7. Click the **Add Files** button and select the MarkLogic driver file from the `lib` folder of the archive that you downloaded and unzipped. The driver file name is `marklogic-xcc-{server_version}.jar`, where *{server_version}* is the MarkLogic server version.
8. Click the **OK** button to finish the data source configuration.
9. Continue on to configure your MarkLogic Connection *(on page 1492)*.

How to Configure a MarkLogic Connection

Notes:

- Available in the Enterprise edition only.
- Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports MarkLogic version 4.0 or later.

To configure a connection to a MarkLogic database, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
2. Click the **New** button in the **Connections** panel.
3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select a previously configured MarkLogic data source from the **Data Source** drop-down menu.
5. Enter the connection details.

    a. The host name or IP address of the installed MarkLogic engine in the **XDBC Host** field. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses XCC connector to interact with MarkLogic XDBC server and requires the basic authentication schema to be set. Starting with version MarkLogic 4.0 the default authentication method when you create an HTTP or WebDAV Server is *digest*, so make sure to change it to *basic*.

    b. Set the port number of the MarkLogic engine in the **Port** field. A MarkLogic XDBC application server must be configured on the server on this port. This XDBC server will be used to process XQuery expressions against the server. Later, if you want to change the XDBC server, instead of editing the configuration just use the **Use it to execute queries** action *(on page 1493)* from Data Source Explorer.

    c. Set the user name to access the MarkLogic engine in the **User** field.

    d. Set the password to access the MarkLogic engine in the **Password** field.

e. Optionally, in the **WebDAV URL** field, set the URL used for browsing the MarkLogic database in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*.
The **Database** field specifies the database that will have the XQuery expressions executed. If you set this option to default, the database associated to the application server of the configured port is used.

6. Click the **OK** button to finish the connection configuration.
7. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

MarkLogic Contextual Menu Actions

While browsing MarkLogic connections in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, the various nodes include the following contextual menu actions:

Connection Level Nodes

Configure Database Sources

Opens the **Data Sources** preferences page *(on page 67)* where you can configure both data sources and connections.

Disconnect (when connected)

Stops the connection.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Container Level Nodes

Enable Debug Mode

Switches the server to a debugging mode.

Use it to Execute Queries

The server will be used to process XQuery expressions against it.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Module or Folder Level Nodes

Export

Allows you to export the folder on the remote connection to a local folder.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Requests Level Nodes

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Cancel all requests

Cancels all queries that are either running or stopped on the application server. You can use this action to clean up the entire **Requests** container at the end of your sessions.

Resource Level Nodes

Open

Opens the selected resource in the editor.

Open in System Application

When you use this action, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin downloads the selected resource to a local temporary folder and opens the selected resource in the system application that is currently set as the default application associated with that type of resource. You can then edit the resource, save it, and when you switch the focus back to the **Data Source Explorer** view, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will detect that there was a change and will ask if you want to upload the edited resource to the server.

Copy location

Allows you to copy (to the clipboard) an application-specific URL for the resource that can then be used for various actions, such as opening or transforming the resources.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Compare

Compares two selected resources.

Related Information:

Configuring a MarkLogic Database Connection *(on page 1491)*

MySQL Database Connections (Deprecated)

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for MySQL database connections. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to browse the structure of a SQL Server database in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, open tables in the **Table Explorer** view *(on page 1466)*, and perform various operations on the resources in the repository.

Configuring a MySQL Database Connection

To configure the support for a MySQL database, follow this procedure:

1. Configure MySQL *Data Source* drivers *(on page 1495)*.
2. Configure a MySQL *Connection*. *(on page 1496)*
3. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

How to Configure MySQL Data Source Drivers

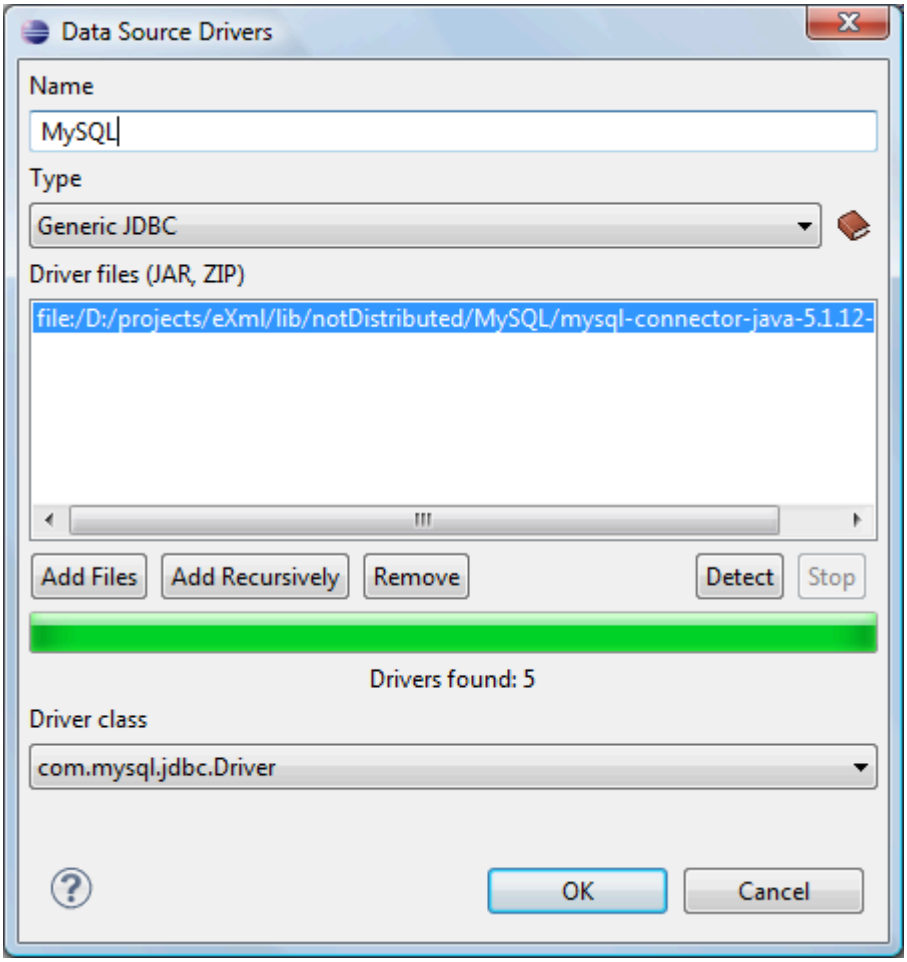
To connect to a MySQL server, you need to create a generic JDBC type data source based on the MySQL JDBC driver available on the MySQL website.

To configure this data source, follow these steps:

1. Go to https://www.oxygenxml.com/database_drivers.html and download the appropriate MySQL driver.
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
3. Click the **New** button in the **Data Sources** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a data source is opened.

Figure 270. Data Source Drivers Configuration Dialog Box



4. Enter a unique name for the data source.
5. Select *Generic JDBC* in the driver **Type** drop-down list.
6. Click the **Add Files** button and select the MySQL driver file that you downloaded.
   The driver file for the MySQL server is called `mysql-com.jar`.
7. Select the most appropriate **Driver class**.
8. Click the **OK** button to finish the data source configuration.
9. Continue on to configure your MySQL connection *(on page 1496)*.

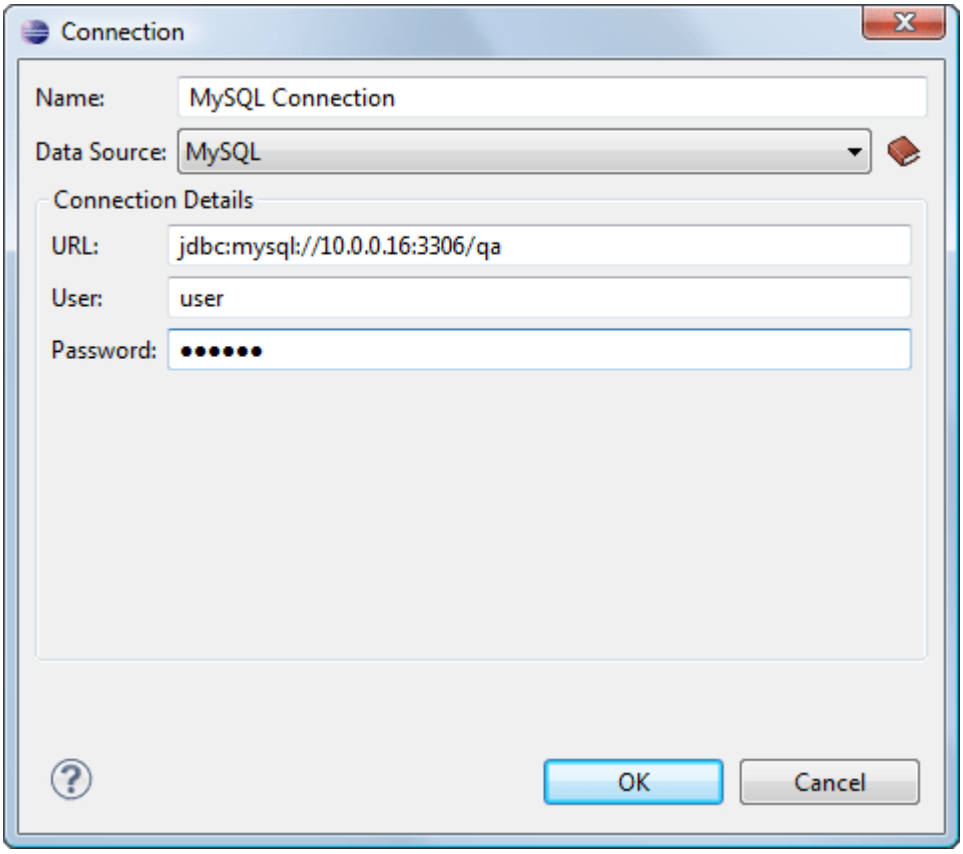
How to Configure a MySQL Connection

To configure a connection to a MySQL server, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
2. Click the + **New** button in the **Connections** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a database connection is displayed.

Figure 271. Connection Configuration Dialog Box



3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select the *MySQL* data source in the **Data Source** drop-down list.
5. Enter the connection details.
    a. Enter the URL of the MySQL server.
    b. Enter the user name for the connection to the MySQL server.
    c. Enter the password for the connection to the MySQL server.
6. Click the **OK** button to finish the connection configuration.
7. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

Generic JDBC Database Connections

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for Generic JDBC database connections.

Configuring a Generic JDBC Database Connection

To configure the support for a generic JDBC database, follow this procedure:

1. Configure Generic JDBC *Data Source* drivers *(on page 1498)*.
2. Configure a Generic JDBC *Connection (on page 1498)*.
3. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

How to Configure Generic JDBC Data Source Drivers

Starting with version 17, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with Java 11, which does not provide built-in access to JDBC-ODBC data sources. To access such sources, you need to find an alternative JDBC-ODBC bridge or use a platform-independent distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin along with a Java VM version 7 or 6.

To configure a generic JDBC data source, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
2. Click the **New** button in the **Data Sources** panel.
3. Enter a unique name for the data source.
4. Select *Generic JDBC* in the driver **Type** drop-down list.
5. Add the driver file(s) using the **Add Files** button.
6. Select the most appropriate **Driver class**.
7. Click the **OK** button to finish the data source configuration.
8. Continue on to configure a generic JDBC connection *(on page 1498)*.

How to Configure a Generic JDBC Connection

To configure a connection to a generic JDBC database, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
2. Click the **New** button in the **Connections** panel.
3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select the *Generic JDBC* data source in the **Data Source** drop-down menu.
5. Enter the connection details.
    a. Enter the URL of the generic JDBC database, with the following format: `jdbc: <subprotocol>: <subname>`.
    b. Enter the user name for the connection to the generic JDBC database.
    c. Enter the password for the connection to the generic JDBC database.
6. Click the **OK** button to finish the connection configuration.
7. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

JDBC-ODBC Database Connections

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for JDBC-ODBC database connections.

How to Configure a JDBC-ODBC Connection

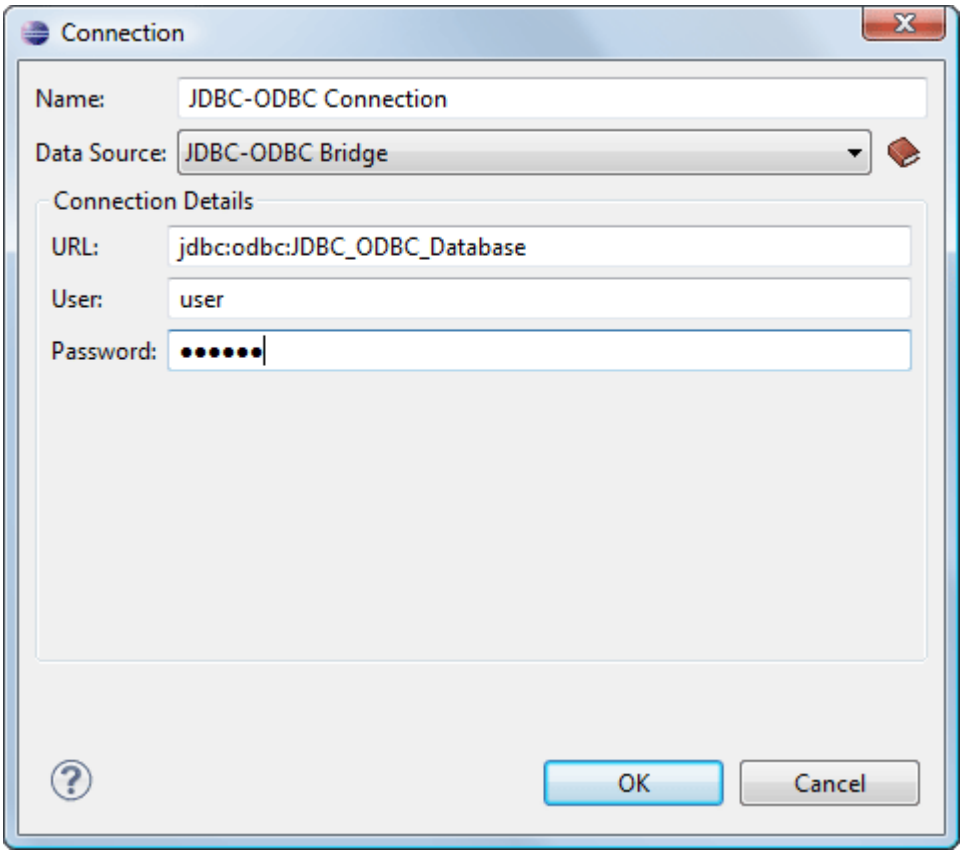
Starting with version 17, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with Java 11, which does not provide built-in access to JDBC-ODBC data sources. To access such sources, you need to find an alternative JDBC-ODBC bridge or use a platform-independent distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin along with a Java VM version 7 or 6.

To configure a connection to an ODBC data source, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
2. Click the + **New** button in the **Connections** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a database connection is displayed.

Figure 272. Connection Configuration Dialog Box



3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select *JDBC-ODBC Bridge* in the **Data Source** drop-down list.
5. Enter the connection details.
   a. Enter the URL of the ODBC source.
   b. Enter the user name of the ODBC source.
   c. Enter the password of the ODBC source.

6. Click the **OK** button to finish the connection configuration.
7. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

BaseX Database Connections

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for BaseX database connections using a WebDAV connection. BaseX is a light-weight XML database engine and XQuery processor. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to browse the structure of a BaseX database in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* and perform XQuery executions.

How to Configure a BaseX Connection

To configure a BaseX connection, follow these steps:

1. First of all, make sure the BaseX HTTP Server is started. For details about starting the BaseX HTTP server, go to http://docs.basex.org/wiki/Startup#BaseX_HTTP_Server. The configuration file for the HTTP server is named `.basex` and is located in the BaseX installation directory. This file helps you to find out which port the HTTP server using. The default port for BaseX WebDAV is 8984.
2. To ensure that everything is functioning, open a WebDAV URL inside a browser and check to see if it works. For example, the following URL retrieves a document from a database named TEST: `http://localhost:8984/webdav/TEST/etc/factbook.xml`.
3. Once you are sure that the BaseX WebDAV service is working, you can configure the WebDAV connection in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin as described in How to Configure a WebDAV Connection *(on page 1509)*. The WebDAV URL should resemble this: `http://{hostname }:{port}/webdav/`. If the BaseX server is running on your own machine and it has the default configuration, the data required by the WebDAV connection is:
   - WebDAV URL: `http://localhost:8984/webdav`
   - User: `admin`
   - Password: `admin`
4. Once the WebDAV connection is created, to view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

BaseX Contextual Menu Actions

While browsing BaseX connections in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, the various nodes include the following contextual menu actions:

Connection Level Nodes

Configure Database Sources

Opens the **Data Sources** preferences page *(on page 67)* where you can configure both data sources and connections.

Disconnect (when connected)

Stops the connection.

New Folder

Creates a new folder on the connection.

Import Files

Allows you to add a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Folder Level Nodes

New File

Creates a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

New Folder

Creates a new folder on the connection.

Import Folders

Imports folders on the server.

Import Files

Allows you to add a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

Export

Allows you to export the folder on the remote connection to a local folder.

Cut

Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.

Copy

Copies the current selection into the clipboard.

Paste

Pastes the copied selection.

Rename

Renames the current resource

Delete

Deletes the current container.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Resource Level Nodes

Open

Opens the selected resource in the editor.

Open in System Application

When you use this action, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin downloads the selected resource to a local temporary folder and opens the selected resource in the system application that is currently set as the default application associated with that type of resource. You can then edit the resource, save it, and when you switch the focus back to the **Data Source Explorer** view, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will detect that there was a change and will ask if you want to upload the edited resource to the server.

Cut

Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.

Copy

Copies the current selection into the clipboard.

Copy location

Allows you to copy (to the clipboard) an application-specific URL for the resource that can then be used for various actions, such as opening or transforming the resources.

Rename

Renames the current resource

Delete

Deletes the current container.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Properties

Shows various properties of the current container.

Compare

Compares two selected resources.

Base X XQJ Connection

XQuery execution is possible in a BaseX connection through an XQJ connection.

Important:
The XQJ connector is only capable of running XQuery 1.0 scrips, therefore XQuery 3.0 and 3.1 scripts are not supported.

BaseX XQJ Data Source

First of all, create an XQJ data source as described in How to Configure an XQJ Data Source *(on page 1503)*. The BaseX XQJ API-specific files that must be added in the configuration dialog box are `xqj-api-1.0.jar`, `xqj2-0.1.0.jar` and `basex-xqj-1.2.3.jar` (the version names of the *JAR* file may differ). These libraries can be downloaded from *xqj.net/basex/basex-xqj-1.2.3.zip*. As an alternative, you can also find the libraries in the BaseX installation directory, in the **lib** sub-directory.

BaseX XQJ Connection

The next step is to create an XQJ connection *(on page 1504)*.

For a default BaseX configuration, the following connection details apply (you can modify them when necessary):

- **Port**: 1984
- **serverName**: localhost
- **user**: admin
- **password**: admin

XQuery Execution

Now that the XQJ connection is configured, open the XQuery file you want to execute in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and create an XQuery Transformation on XML *(on page 915)*. In the **Transformer** drop-down menu, select the name of the XQJ connection you created. Apply the transformation scenario and the XQuery will be executed.

How to Configure an XQJ Data Source

Any transformer that offers an XQJ API implementation can be used when validating XQuery or transforming XML documents.

1. If your XQJ Implementation is native, make sure the directory containing the native libraries of the engine is added to your system environment variables: to **PATH** - on Windows, to **LD_LIBRARY_PATH** - on Linux, or to **DYLD_LIBRARY_PATH** - on macOS. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin after configuring the environment variables.
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
3. Click the **New** button in the **Data Sources** panel.
4. Enter a unique name for the data source.

5. Select **XQuery API for Java (XQJ)** in the **Type** combo box.
6. Click the **Add** button to add XQJ API-specific files.
   You can manage the driver files using the **Add**, **Remove**, **Detect**, and **Stop** buttons.
   Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects any implementation of *javax.xml.xquery.XQDataSource* and presents it in **Driver class** field.
7. Select the most suited driver in the **Driver class** combo box.
8. Click the **OK** button to finish the data source configuration.
9. Continue on to configure the XQJ connection *(on page 1504)*.

How to Configure an XQJ Connection

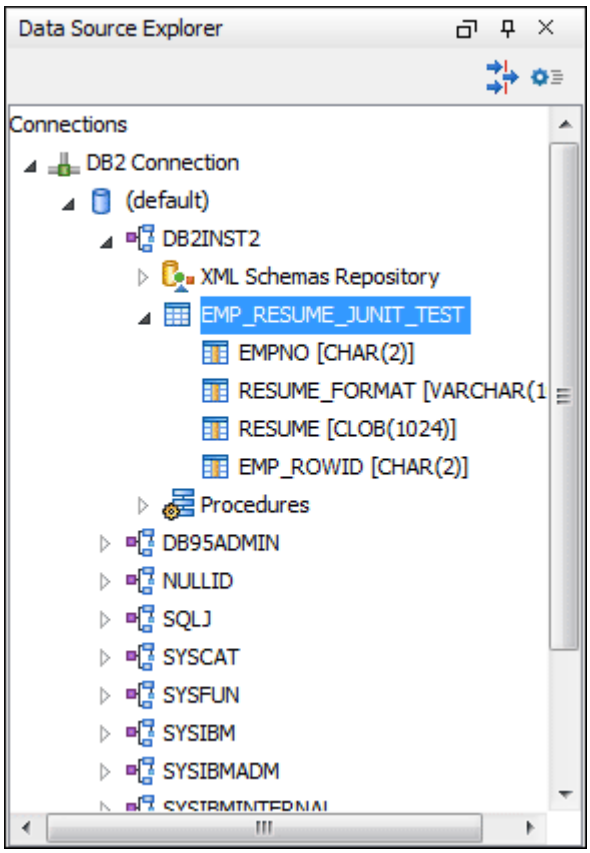
The steps for configuring an XQJ connection are the following:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
2. Click the **New** button in the **Connections** panel.
3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select one of the previously configured XQJ data sources *(on page 1503)* in the **Data Source** combo box.
5. Fill-in the connection details.
   The properties presented in the connection details table are automatically detected depending on the selected data source.
6. Click the **OK** button to finish the connection configuration.

IBM DB2 Database Connections (Deprecated)

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for IBM DB2 database connections. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to browse the structure of an IBM DB2 database in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, open tables in the **Table Explorer** view *(on page 1466)*, and perform various operations on the resources in the repository.

Figure 273. IBM DB2 Database Connection



Configuring an IBM DB2 Database Connection (Deprecated)

To configure the support for the IBM DB2 database, follow this procedure:

1. Go to the IBM website and in the *DB2 Clients and Development Tools* category select the *DB2 Driver for JDBC and SQLJ* download link. Fill out the download form and download the zip file. Unzip the zip file and use the `db2jcc.jar` and `db2jcc_license_cu.jar` files in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for configuring a DB2 data source *(on page 1505)*.
2. Configure IBM DB2 *Data Source* drivers *(on page 1505)*.
3. Configure an IBM DB2 Server *Connection (on page 1507)*.
4. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

How to Configure IBM DB2 Data Source Drivers (Deprecated)

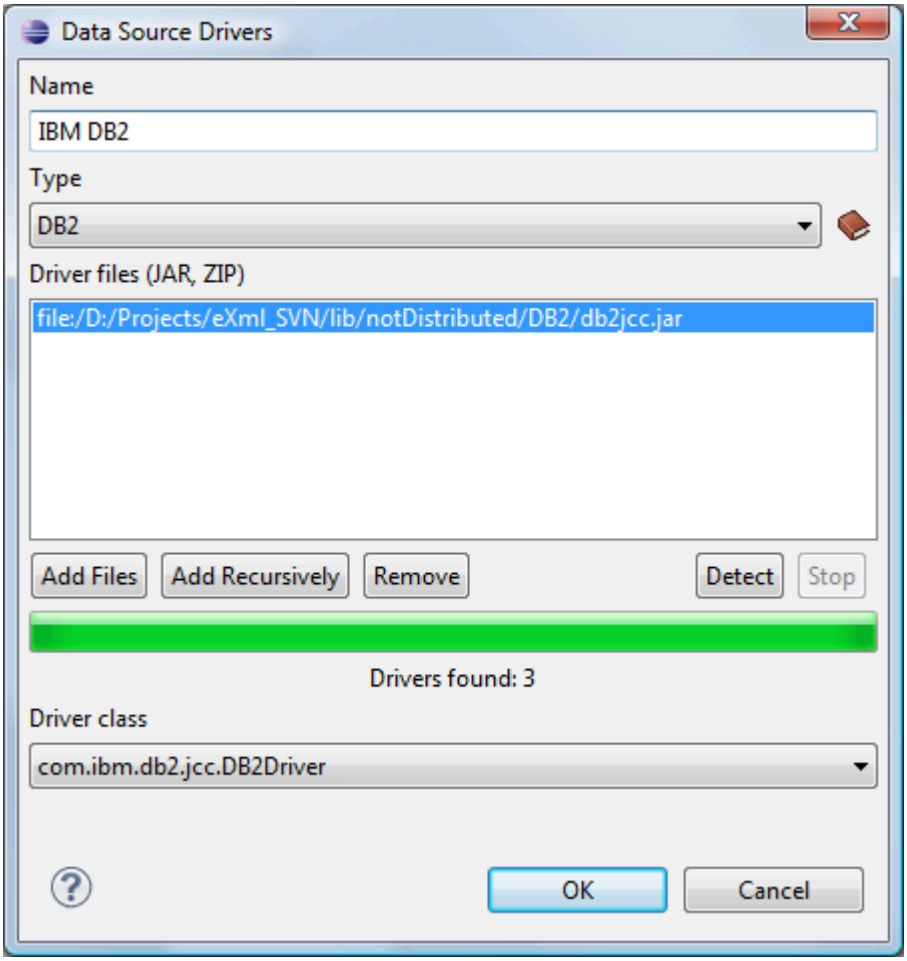
Note:
Available in the Enterprise edition only.

To configure a data source for connecting to an IBM DB2 server, follow these steps:

1. Go to the IBM website and in the *DB2 Clients and Development Tools* category select the *DB2 Driver for JDBC and SQLJ* download link. Fill out the download form and download the zip file.
2. Unzip the downloaded archive.
3. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
4. Click the + **New** button in the **Data Sources** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a data source is opened.

Figure 274. Data Source Drivers Configuration Dialog Box



5. Enter a unique name for the data source.
6. Select *DB2* in the driver **Type** drop-down menu.
7. Click the **Add Files** button and select the IBM DB2 driver files from the archive that you downloaded and unzipped.

   The IBM DB2 driver files are:

   - `db2jcc.jar`
   - `db2jcc_license_cisuz.jar`
   - `db2jcc_license_cu.jar`

8. Select the most appropriate **Driver class**.
9. Click the **OK** button to finish the data source configuration.
10. Continue on to configure your IBM DB2 connection *(on page 1507)*.

How to Configure an IBM DB2 Connection (Deprecated)

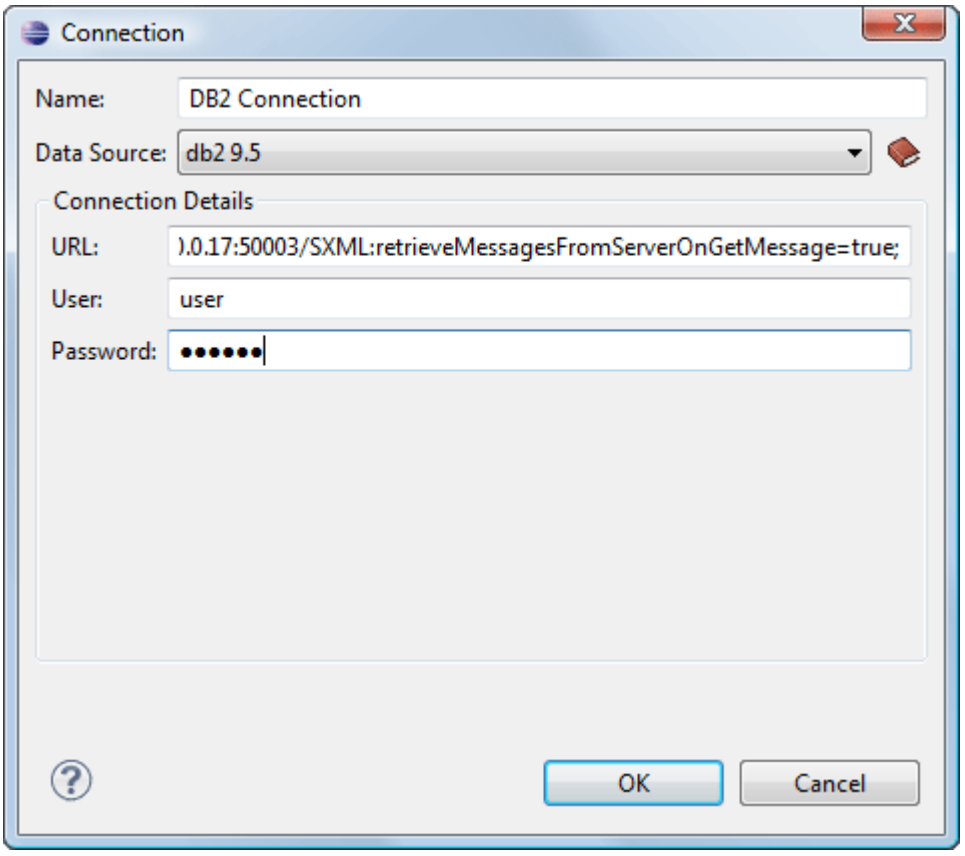
Note:
The support to create an IBM DB2 connection is available in the Enterprise edition only.

To configure a connection to an IBM DB2 server, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
2. Click the + **New** button in the **Connections** panel.

   The dialog box for configuring a database connection is displayed.

Figure 275. Connection Configuration Dialog Box



3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select an *IBM DB2* data source in the **Data Source** drop-down menu.
5. Enter the connection details.

a. Enter the URL to the installed IBM DB2 engine.
b. Enter the user name to access the IBM DB2 engine.
c. Enter the password to access the IBM DB2 engine.

6. Click the **OK** button to finish the connection configuration.
7. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.

IBM DB2 Contextual Menu Actions (Deprecated)

General Contextual Menu Actions

For relational databases, the following general actions are available in the contextual menu of the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, depending on the node where it is invoked:

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Disconnect (available on Connection nodes)

Closes the current database connection. If a table is already open, you are warned to close it before proceeding.

Configure Database Sources (available on Connection nodes)

Opens the **Data Sources** preferences page *(on page 67)* where you can configure both data sources and connections.

Edit (available on Table nodes)

Opens the selected table in the **Table Explorer** view *(on page 1466)*.

Export to XML (available on Table nodes)

Opens the **Export Criteria** dialog box .

Database-Specific Contextual Menu Actions

In addition to the general contextual menu actions in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, the various nodes in IBM DB2 connections include the following additional contextual menu actions:

XML Schema Repository Level Nodes

Register

Opens a dialog box for adding a new schema file in the DB XML repository. In this dialog box, you enter a collection name and the necessary schema files. Schema dependencies management can be done by using the **Add** and **Remove** buttons.

Schema Level Nodes

Unregister

Removes the selected schema from the XML Schema Repository.

View

Opens the selected schema in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

WebDAV Connections

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for WebDAV server connections. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to browse the structure of a WebDAV connection in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* and perform various operations on the resources in the repository.

How to Configure a WebDAV Connection

By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin contains built-in data source drivers for **WebDAV** connections. Based on this data source, you can create a WebDAV connection for browsing and editing data from a database that provides a WebDAV interface. The connection is available in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*.

To configure a WebDAV connection, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Data Sources**.
2. Click the **New** button in the **Connections** panel.
3. Enter a unique name for the connection.
4. Select one of the WebDAV data sources in the **Data Source** drop-down menu.
5. Enter the connection details:
   a. Set the URL to the WebDAV repository in the field **WebDAV URL**.
   b. Set the user name that is used to access the WebDAV repository in the **User** field.
   c. Set the password that is used to access the WebDAV repository in the **Password** field.
6. Click the **OK** button to finish the connection configuration.
7. To view your connection, go to the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* (if the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu) or switch to the **Database** *perspective (on page 2232)*.
   For more information about the WebDAV support in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, watch our video demonstration:

   https://www.youtube.com/embed/vDXO36CqbvM

WebDAV Contextual Menu Actions

While browsing WebDAV connections in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, the various nodes include the following contextual menu actions:

Connection Level Nodes

Configure Database Sources

Opens the **Data Sources** preferences page *(on page 67)* where you can configure both data sources and connections.

Disconnect (when connected)

Stops the connection.

New Folder

Creates a new folder on the connection.

Import Files

Allows you to add a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Folder Level Nodes

New File

Creates a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

New Folder

Creates a new folder on the connection.

Import Folders

Imports folders on the server.

Import Files

Allows you to add a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

Export

Allows you to export the folder on the remote connection to a local folder.

Cut

Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.

Copy

Copies the current selection into the clipboard.

Paste

Pastes the copied selection.

Rename

Renames the current resource

Delete

Deletes the current container.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Resource Level Nodes

Open

Opens the selected resource in the editor.

Open in System Application

When you use this action, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin downloads the selected resource to a local temporary folder and opens the selected resource in the system application that is currently set as the default application associated with that type of resource. You can then edit the resource, save it, and when you switch the focus back to the **Data Source Explorer** view, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will detect that there was a change and will ask if you want to upload the edited resource to the server.

Cut

Removes the current selection and places it in the clipboard.

Copy

Copies the current selection into the clipboard.

Copy location

Allows you to copy (to the clipboard) an application-specific URL for the resource that can then be used for various actions, such as opening or transforming the resources.

Rename

Renames the current resource

Delete

Deletes the current container.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Properties

Shows various properties of the current container.

Compare

Compares two selected resources.

SQL Execution Support

The database support in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for writing SQL statements, syntax highlighting, *folding (on page 2230)*, and dragging and dropping from the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*. It also includes transformation scenarios for executing the statements, and the results are displayed in the **Table Explorer** view *(on page 1466)*.

Drag and Drop from Data Source Explorer View

Dragging operations from the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)* and dropping them in the SQL Editor allows you to create SQL statements quickly by inserting the names of tables and columns in the SQL statements.

1. Configure a database connection (see the specific procedure for your database server in the Database Connection Support *(on page 1468)* section).
2. Browse to the table you will use in your statement.
3. Drag the table or a column of the table into the editor where a SQL file is open.

   Drag and drop actions are available both on the table and on its fields. A pop-up menu is displayed in the SQL editor.

4. Select the type of statement from the pop-up menu.

   Depending on your choice, dragging a table results in one of the following statements being inserted into the document:

   - **SELECT `*field1*`,`*field2*`, ... FROM `*catalog*`. `*table*`** (for example: `SELECT` `` `DEPT`,`DEPTNAME`,`LOCATION` FROM `camera`.`cameraDesc` ``)
   - **UPDATE `*catalog*`. `*table*` SET `*field1*`=, `*field2*`=,....** (for example: `UPDATE` `` `camera`.`cameraDesc` SET `DEPT`=, `DEPTNAME`=, `LOCATION`= ``)
   - **INSERT INTO `*catalog*`. `*table*` (`*field1*`,`*field2*`, ...) VALUES (, ,)** (for example: `INSERT INTO` `` `camera`.`cameraDesc` (`DEPT`,`DEPTNAME`,`LOCATION`) VALUES (, , ) ``)
   - **DELETE FROM `*catalog*`. `*table*`** (for example: `DELETE FROM` `` `camera`.`cameraDesc` ``)

   Depending on your choice, dragging a column results in one of the following statements being inserted into the document:

   - **SELECT `*field*` FROM `*catalog*`. `*table*`** (for example: `SELECT` `` `DEPT` FROM `camera`.`cameraDesc` ``)
   - **UPDATE `*catalog*`. `*table*` SET `*field*`=** (for example: `UPDATE` `` `camera`.`cameraDesc` SET `DEPT`= ``)

- **INSERT INTO `*catalog*`. `*table*` (`*field1*) VALUES ()** (for example: `INSERT INTO \`camera\`.\`cameraDesc\` (\`DEPT\`) VALUES ()`)
- **DELETE FROM `*catalog*`. `*table*`** (for example: `DELETE FROM \`camera\`.\`cameraDesc\` WHERE \`DEPT\`=`)

SQL Validation

SQL validation support is offered for IBM DB2. Note that if you choose a connection that does not support SQL validation, you will receive a warning when trying to validate. The SQL document is validated using the connection from the associated transformation scenario.

Executing SQL Statements

The steps for executing an SQL statement on a relational database are as follows:

1. Configure a transformation scenario *(on page 796)* using the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu.
   A SQL transformation scenario needs a database connection. You can configure a connection using the **Preferences** button from the SQL transformation dialog box.
   The dialog box contains the list of existing scenarios that apply to SQL documents.
2. Set parameter values for SQL placeholders using the **Parameters** button from the SQL transformation dialog box.
   For example, in `SELECT * FROM \`test\`.\`department\` where DEPT = ? or DEPTNAME = ?` the two parameters can be configured for the place holders (?) in the transformation scenario.

   When the SQL statement is executed, the first placeholder is replaced with the value set for the first parameter in the scenario, the second placeholder is replaced by the second parameter value, and so on.

   Restriction:
   When a stored procedure is called in an SQL statement executed on an SQL Server database, mixing inline parameter values with values specified using the **Parameters** button of the scenario dialog box is not recommended. This is due to a limitation of the SQL Server driver for Java applications. An example of stored procedure that is not recommended: `call dbo.Test(22, ?)`.
3. Execute the SQL scenario by clicking the **OK** or **Apply associated** button.

   The result of a SQL transformation is displayed in a view *(on page 310)* at the bottom of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin window.
4. View more complex return values of the SQL transformation in a separate editor panel.
   A more complex value returned by the SQL query (for example, an *XMLTYPE* or *CLOB* value) cannot be displayed entirely in the result table.

a. Right-click the cell containing the complex value.

b. Select the action **Copy cell** from the contextual menu.
The action copies the value in the clipboard.

c. Paste the value into an appropriate editor.
For example, you can paste the value in an opened XQuery editor panel of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

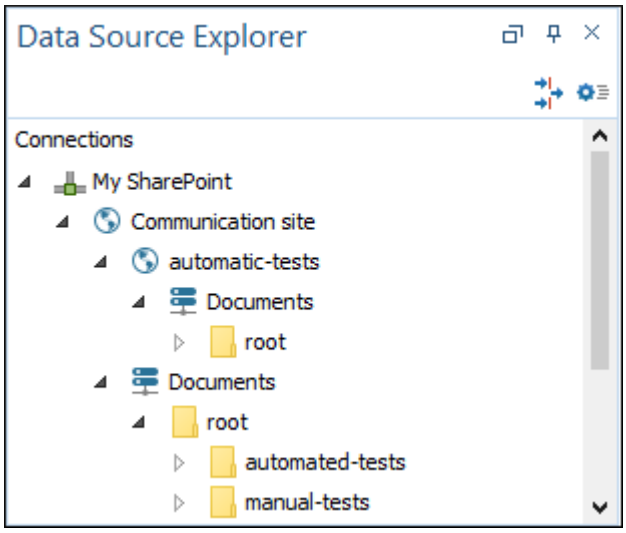
Integration with Microsoft SharePoint

Restriction:
The SharePoint integration is only available in the Enterprise edition of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for browsing and managing SharePoint connections in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*. You can easily create new resources on the repository, copy and move them using contextual actions or the drag and drop support, or edit and transform the documents in the editor.

The **SharePoint Online** implementation uses the SharePoint REST API v.2 and it supports OAuth credentials (access tokens).

Figure 276. SharePoint Connection in Data Source Explorer View



Related Information:
Working with Databases *(on page 1464)*

How to Configure a SharePoint Connection

By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin contains built-in data source drivers for **SharePoint**. Use this data source to create a connection to a SharePoint server that will be available in the **Data Source Explorer** view.

The **SharePoint Online** connection that uses the SharePoint REST API v.2 and it supports OAuth credentials (access tokens).

SharePoint Online Connection

To configure a SharePoint connection, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Data Sources**. Select **SharePoint Online** in the **Data Sources** pane and in the **Connections** pane, click the **New** button.
2. Enter a unique name for the connection.
3. Make sure **SharePoint Online** is selected in the **Data Source** combo box.
4. Enter the **Tenant URL** for your SharePoint repository and click **OK**.

Note:
If you are still logged in when you close Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, the authentication persists the next time the application is started. If, for some reason, the authentication fails to recover the access token, an error is displayed in the **Results** pane at the bottom of the application. If this happens, you need to re-authenticate Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Troubleshooting SharePoint Online Connections

Allowed SharePoint Online Sites

SharePoint Online sites supported by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin have the following syntax:

- `https://tenant.SharePoint.com`
- `https://tenant.SharePoint.com/sites/siteName`
- `https://tenant.SharePoint.com/sites/siteName/subsiteName1/..../subsiteNameK`
- `https://tenant.SharePoint.com/teams/siteName`
- `https://tenant.SharePoint.com/teams/siteName/subsiteName1/..../subsiteNameK`

Authentication Workflow Problems

Once you configure the SharePoint Online Connection *(on page 1515)* and use the *Log in with Microsoft account* action, the action will open the default browser for authentication. If this is the fist time you access this SharePoint site, you will have to Grant Permissions to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *(on page 1516)*.

If the authentication is successful, the browser should display the **Authentication complete** page:

Attention:
If you cannot get past the *This page isn't working* response while using *Google Chrome*, try using a different browser.

Once you go back to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, in the *SharePoint Browser* you should see your username details and be able to browse the repository.

Grant Permissions to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

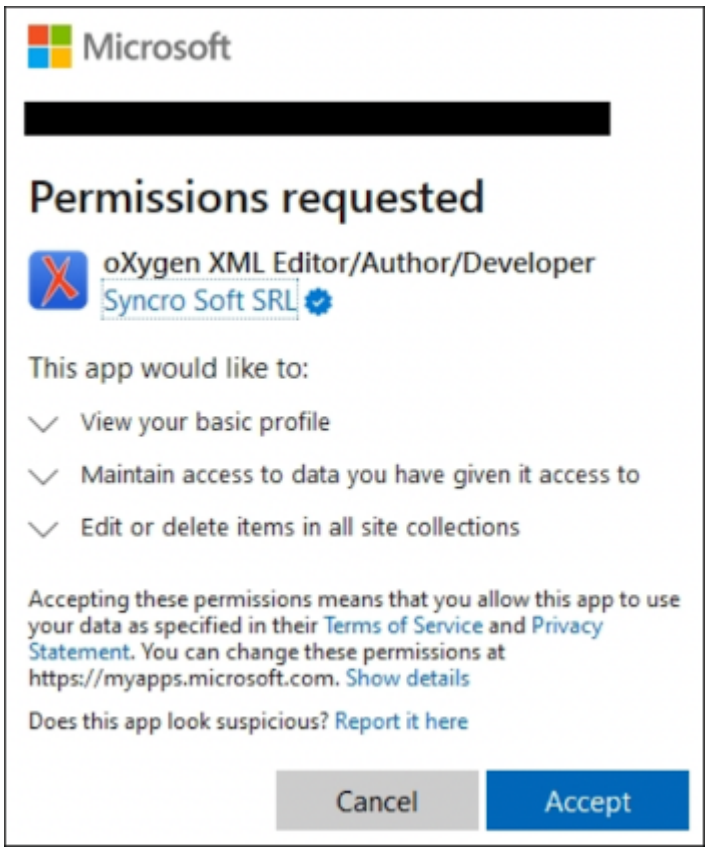
When you first **Log in** and access your **SharePoint** server, you may need to grant **SharePoint Enterprise Application** permissions for the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin application to:

- View your basic profile.
- Maintain access to data you have given access to.
- Edit or delete items in all site collections.

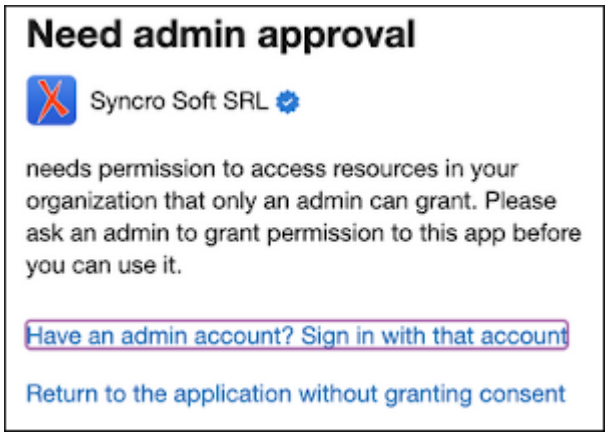
The **Permissions requested** form will appear when you first authenticate to your **SharePoint** server from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

If you have administrative privileges, you are able to grant permissions directly from the form:

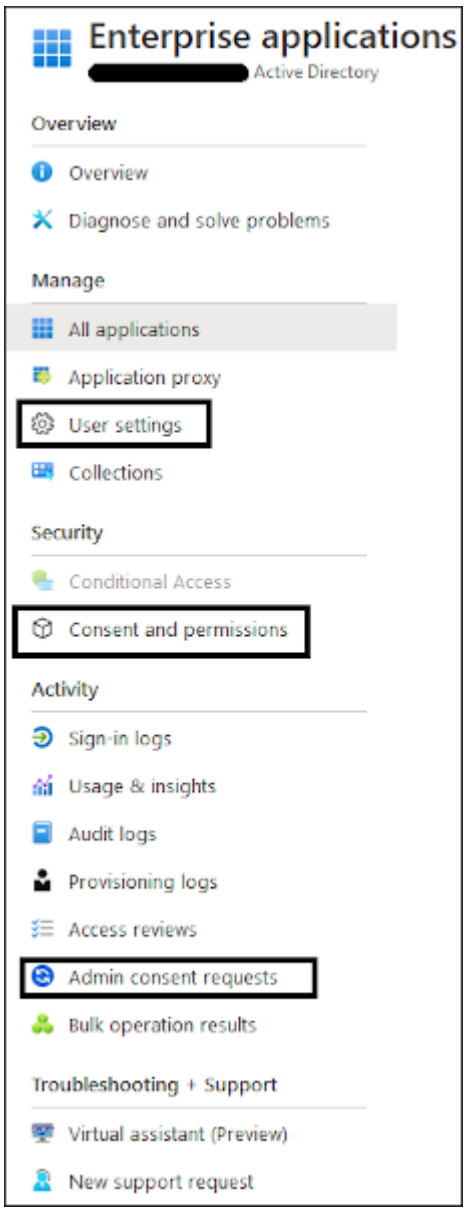
Figure 277. Permissions Requested Form



If you do not have admin rights to give Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin permissions to access the **SharePoint** server, the **Permissions requested** form will suggest that you contact the administrator for your **SharePoint** account so that they can grant the permissions.



The **SharePoint** global administrator should log in to https://portal.azure.com/, navigate to **Manage Azure Active Directory > Enterprise applications**, and approve the request under the **Admin consent requests** category.



The administrator can also check the **User settings** category and configure the **Users can request admin consent to apps they are unable to consent to** options and policies.

More consent settings can be configured by the admin under the **User consent settings** category.

SharePoint Contextual Menu Actions

While browsing SharePoint connections in the **Data Source Explorer** view *(on page 1464)*, the following contextual menu actions are available, depending on the type of node:

Connection Nodes

Configure Database Sources

Opens the **Data Sources** preferences page *(on page 67)* where you can configure both data sources and connections.

Log in with Microsoft Account (when not connected)

Opens the Microsoft login page in your default browser and authenticates Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Disconnect (when connected)

Stops the connection.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Site Nodes / Sub-site Nodes

Copy location

Allows you to copy (to the clipboard) an application-specific URL for the resource that can then be used for various actions, such as opening or transforming the resources.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Folder Level Nodes

New File

Creates a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

New Folder

Creates a new folder on the connection.

Import Folders

Imports folders on the server.

Import Files

Allows you to add a new file on the connection, in the current folder.

Rename

Renames the current resource

Delete

Deletes the current container.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Resource Level Nodes

Open

Opens the selected resource in the editor.

Open in System Application

When you use this action, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin downloads the selected resource to a local temporary folder and opens the selected resource in the system application that is currently set as the default application associated with that type of resource. You can then edit the resource, save it, and when you switch the focus back to the **Data Source Explorer** view, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will detect that there was a change and will ask if you want to upload the edited resource to the server.

Copy location

Allows you to copy (to the clipboard) an application-specific URL for the resource that can then be used for various actions, such as opening or transforming the resources.

Check Out

Checks out the selected document on the server.

Check In

Checks in the selected document on the server. This action opens the **Check In** dialog box. You have the option to enter a comment and click the **Check In** button to process it.

Discard Check Out

Discards the previous checkout operation, making the file available to other users.

Important:
Due to some API restrictions, the *Discard Checkout* action may not work when SharePoint Online connections are made directly to a sub-site.

Rename

Renames the current resource

Delete

Deletes the current container.

Refresh

Performs a refresh on the selected node.

Compare

Compares two selected resources.

15.
Importing Data

Computer systems and databases contain data in incompatible formats and exchanging data between these systems can be very time consuming. Converting the data to XML can greatly reduce the complexity and create data that can be read by various types of applications.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers support for importing text files, MS Excel files, Database Data, and HTML files into XML documents. The XML documents can be further converted into other formats using the Transform features *(on page 796)*.

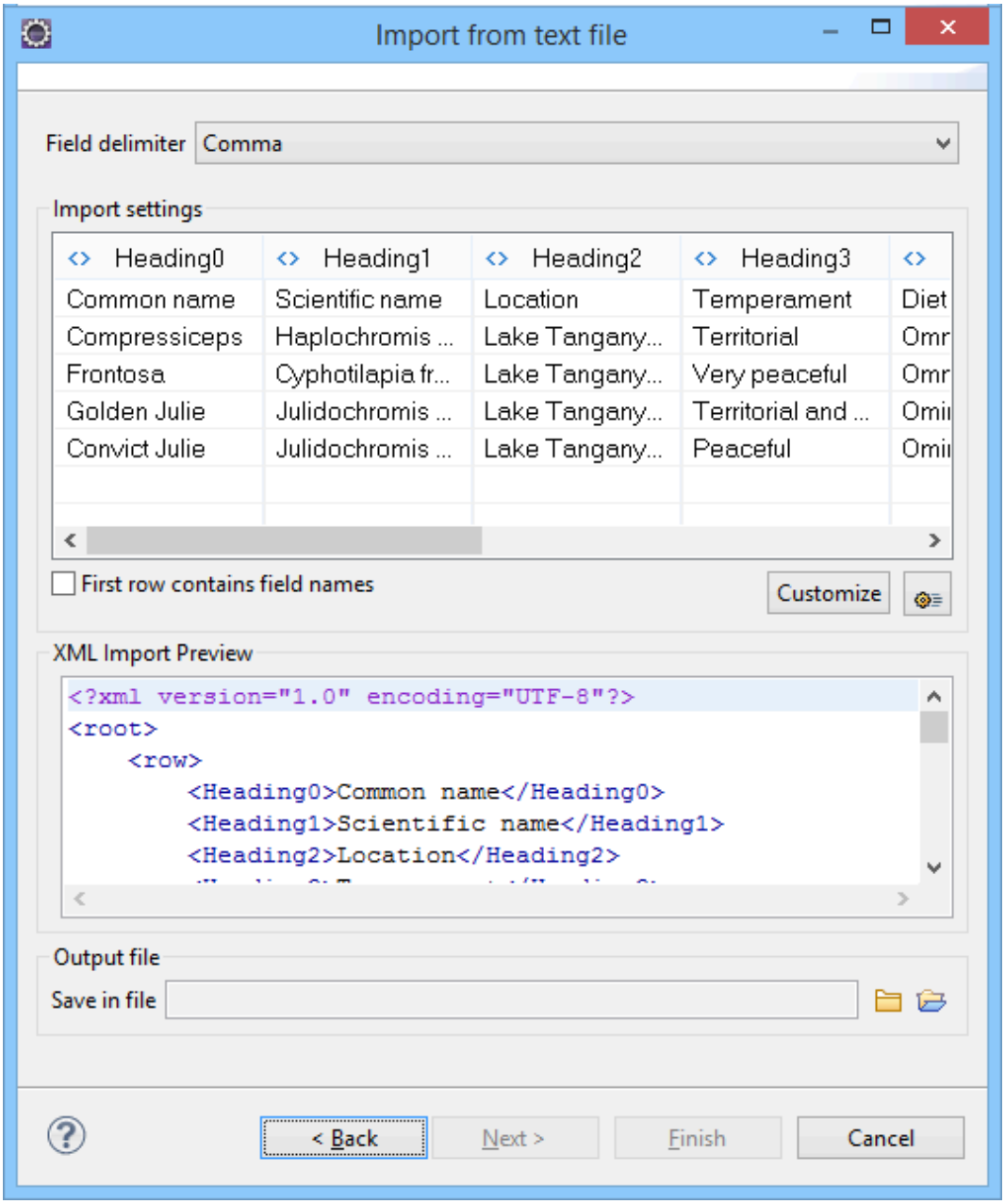
Import from Text Files

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes the possibility of importing text files (`txt` or `csv` file extensions) as XML documents.

To import a text file into an XML file, follow these steps:

1. Go to **File > Import/Convert > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin > Text File to XML** and click **Next**.
   A **Select text file** dialog box is displayed.
2. Select the URL of the text file (`txt` or `csv` file extensions).
3. Select the encoding of the text file.
4. Click the **Next** button.
   The **Import from text file** dialog box is displayed.

Figure 278. Import from Text File to XML Dialog Box



5. Configure the settings for the conversion.
    a. Select the **Field delimiter** for the import settings. You can choose between the following: `Comma`, `Semicolon`, `Tab`, `Space`, or `Pipe`.
    b. The **Import settings** section presents the input data in a tabular form. By default, all data items are converted to element content (<> symbol), but this can be overridden by clicking the individual column headers. Clicking a column header once causes the data from this column to be converted to attribute values (= symbol). Clicking a second time causes the column data to be ignored (× symbol) when generating the XML file. You can cycle through these three options by continuing to click the column header.
    c. **First row contains field names** - If this option is selected, the default column headers are replaced (where such information is available) by the content of the first row. In other words, the

first row is interpreted as containing the field names. The changes are also visible in the preview panel.

d. **Customize** - This button opens a **Presentation Names** dialog box that allows you to edit the name, XML name, and conversion criterion for the root and row elements. The XML names can be edited by double-clicking the desired item and entering the label. The conversion criteria can also be modified by selecting one of the following options in the drop-down menu: `ELEMENT`, `ATTRIBUTE`, or `SKIPPED`.

e. **Import Settings** - Clicking this button opens the **Import** preferences page *(on page 168)* that allows you to configure more import options.

f. The **XML Import Preview** panel contains an example of what the generated XML document looks like.

g. **Save in file** - If selected, the new XML document is saved in the specified path.

6. Click **Finish** to generate the XML document.

Import from MS Excel Files

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides several methods for importing MS Excel files into an XML file. The first method is to use the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Smart Paste** mechanism *(on page 366)* by simply copying data from Excel and pasting it into a document in **Author** mode (note that this is only supported in DITA, DocBook, TEI, JATS, and XHTML documents). You can also copy data from Excel and paste it into inserted cells in **Grid** mode, but this is a more manual process. If you want to import an entire Excel file, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also offers a configurable import wizard that works with any type of XML document.

Smart Paste Method in Author Mode

If you are importing data into DITA, DocBook, TEI, JATS, or XHTML documents, you can open the Excel spreadsheet in your office application, copy its content, and simply paste it into your document in **Author** mode.

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Smart Paste** mechanism *(on page 366)* will convert the pasted content to the equivalent XML markup and considers various pasting solutions to keep the resulting document valid, while preserving the original text styling (such as bold, italics, underline) and formatting (such as lists, tables, paragraphs).

Grid Mode Method

The **Grid** mode in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays all content in an XML document as a structured grid of nested tables and you can work with the cells in those tables much like you would with any spreadsheet application. When importing Excel data into **Grid** mode, you first need to insert new cells in the particular nested table and then you can paste data from Excel the same as you would in any table or spreadsheet.

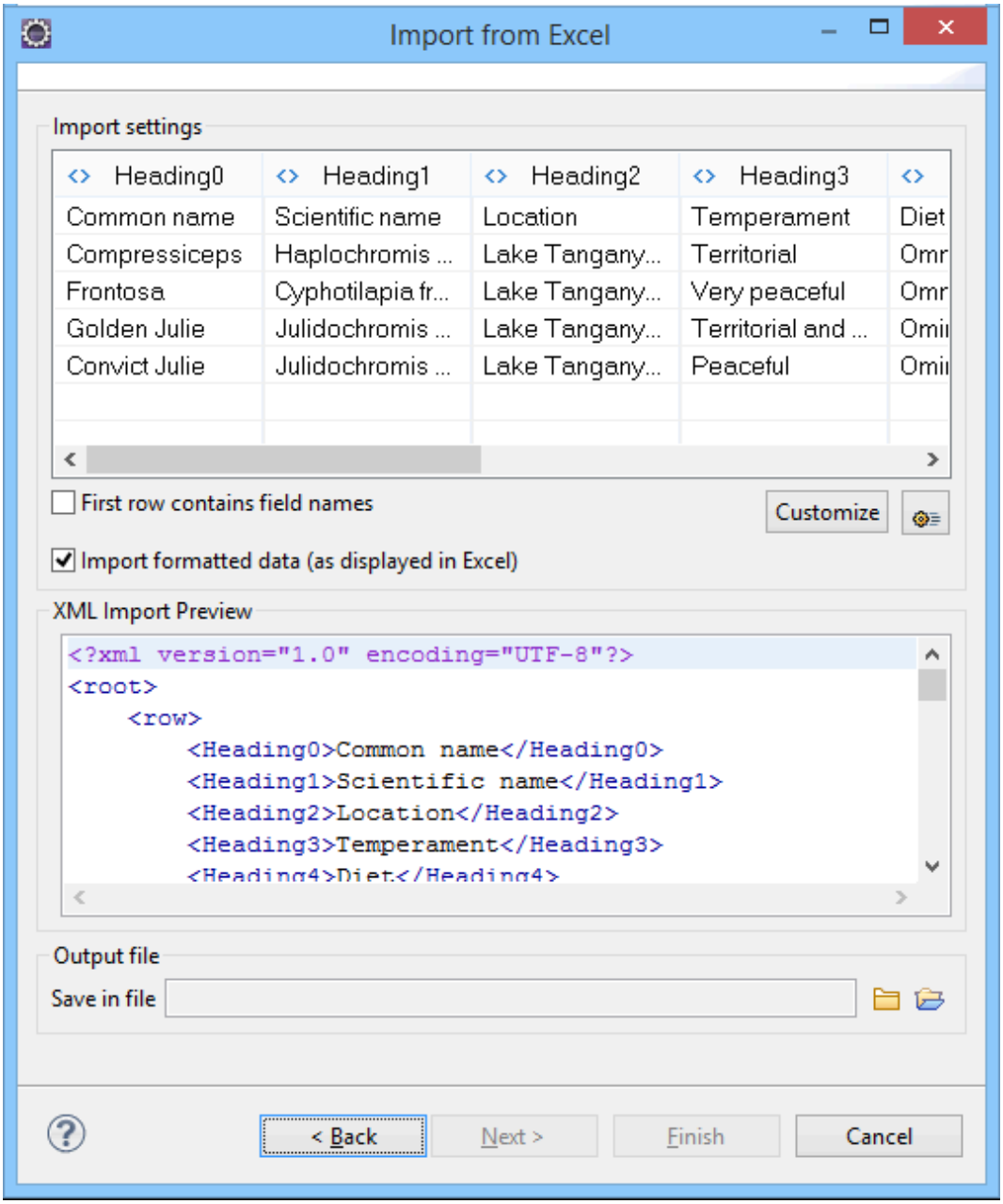
1. Copy the particular cells from your Excel spreadsheet that you want to import into an XML file.
2. Switch to **Grid** mode in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
3. Expand the particular nodes and locate the nested table where you want to insert the copied cells.
4. Right-click a particular row or column where you want to insert the data and select **Insert row** or **Insert column**, depending on the structure of the copied cells.
5. Paste the copied cells from the clipboard into the newly inserted cells in **Grid** mode.
6. You may need to make some manual adjustments. For example, if the selection of copied cells contained an empty cell, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin might ignore that cell.

Import Wizard Method

To use the **Import** wizard to import an Excel file into an XML file, follow these steps:

1. Go to **File > Import/Convert > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin > MS Excel file to XML**.
2. Select the URL of the Excel file. The sheets of the document you are importing are presented in the **Available Sheets** section of this dialog box.
3. Click the **Next** button to proceed to the next stage of the wizard.

Figure 279. Import Wizard



4. Configure the settings for the conversion. This stage of the wizard offers the following options:

Import settings section

Presents the input data in a tabular form. By default, all data items are converted to element content (<> symbol), but this can be overridden by clicking the individual column headers. Clicking a column header once causes the data from this column to be converted to attribute values (= symbol). Clicking a second time causes the column data to be ignored (× symbol) when generating the XML file. You can cycle through these three options by continuing to click the column header.

First row contains field names

If this option is selected, the default column headers are replaced (where such information is available) by the content of the first row. In other words, the first row is interpreted as containing the field names. The changes are also visible in the preview panel.

Customize

This button opens a **Presentation Names** dialog box that allows you to edit the name, XML name, and conversion criterion for the root and row elements. The XML names can be edited by double-clicking the desired item and entering the label. The conversion criteria can also be modified by selecting one of the following option in the drop-down menu: `ELEMENT`, `ATTRIBUTE`, or `SKIPPED`.

Import Settings

Clicking this button opens the **Import** preferences page *(on page 168)* that allows you to configure more import options.

Import formatted data (as displayed in Excel)

If this option is selected, the imported data retains the Excel data formatting (such as the representation of numeric values or dates). If deselected, the data formatting is not imported.

XML Import Preview panel

Contains an example of what the generated XML document will look like.

Save in file

If selected, the new XML document is saved in the specified path.

5. Click **Finish** to generate the XML document.

Resources

For more information about exchanging data between Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and spreadsheet applications, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/8VwsF58zLkU

Related information
Exporting XML Content to Excel *(on page 342)*

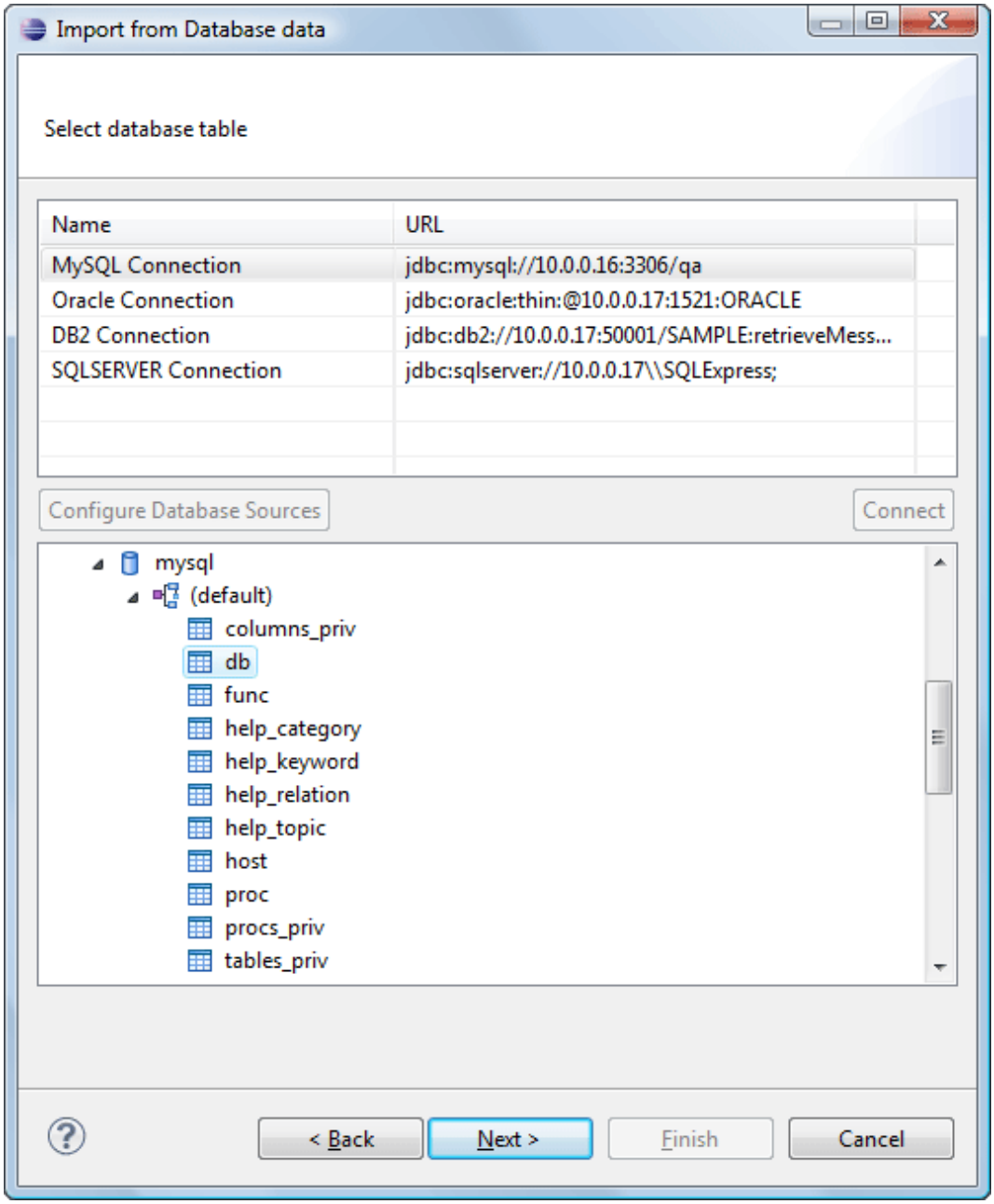
Import Database Data as an XML Document

To import the data from a relational database table as an XML document, follow these steps:

1. Go to **File > Import/Convert > Oxygen / Database Data to XML** and click **Next** to start the **Import** wizard.

   This opens a **Select database table** dialog box that lists all the defined database connections:

Figure 280. Select Database Table Dialog Box



2. Select the connection to the database that contains the appropriate data.
   Only connections configured in relational data sources can be used to import data.

3. If you want to edit, delete, or add a data source or connection, click the **Configure Database Sources** button.
   The **Preferences**/**Data Sources** option page is opened.

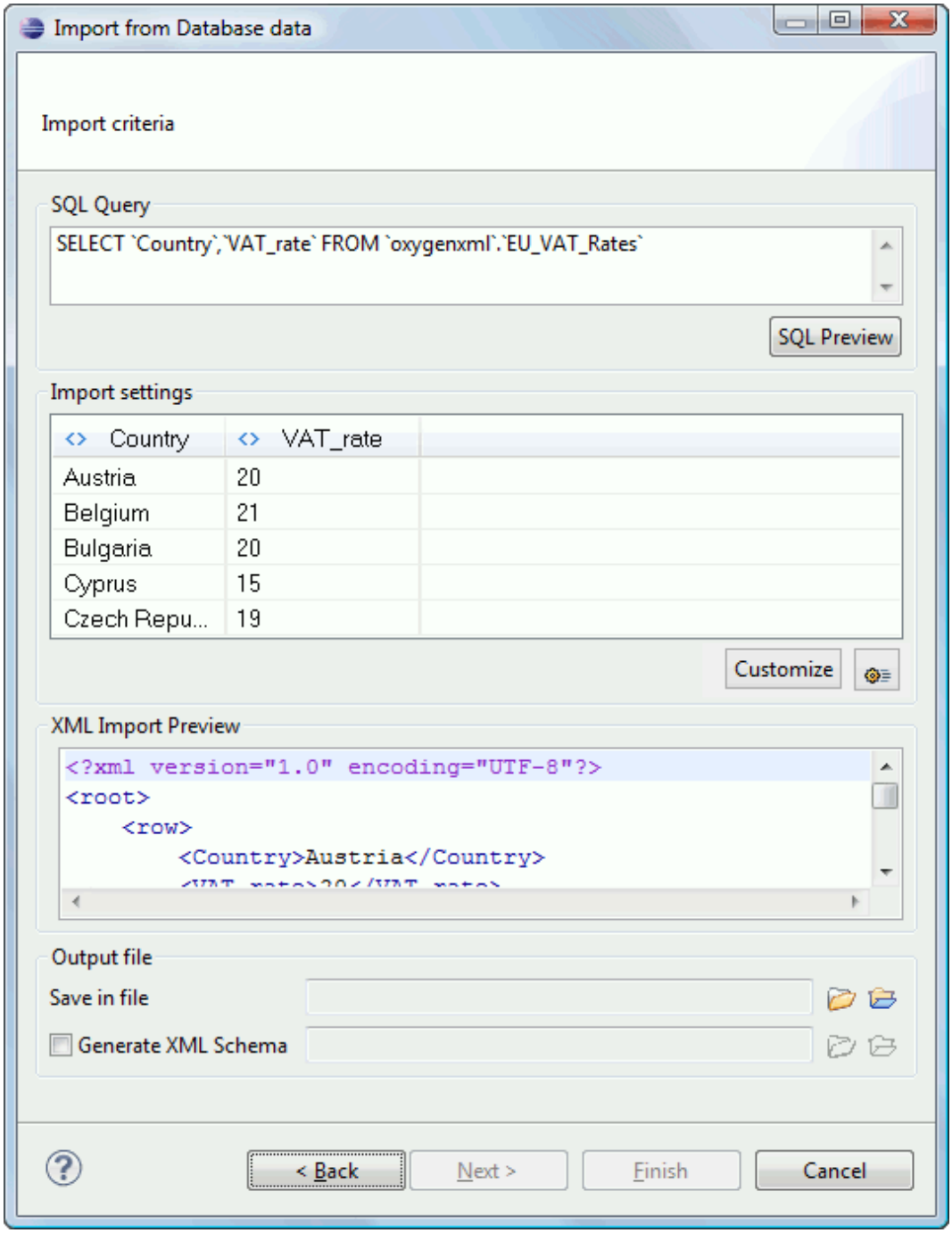
4. Click **Connect**.

5. In the list of sources, expand a schema and choose the required table.

6. Click the **Next** button.

   The **Import Criteria** dialog box is opened with a default query string in the **SQL Query** pane.

Figure 281. Import from Database Criteria Dialog Box



7. Configure the settings for the conversion.
    a. **SQL Preview** - If this button is pressed, the **Import settings** pane displays the labels that are used in the XML document and the first five lines from the database. By default, all data items are converted to element content (<> symbol), but this can be overridden by clicking the individual column headers. Clicking a column header once causes the data from this column to be converted to attribute values (= symbol). Clicking a second time causes the column data to be ignored (× symbol) when generating the XML file. You can cycle through these three options by continuing to click the column header.

b. **Customize** - This button opens a **Presentation Names** dialog box that allows you to edit the name, XML name, and conversion criterion for the root and row elements. The XML names can be edited by double-clicking the desired item and entering the label. The conversion criteria can also be modified by selecting one of the following option in the drop-down menu: `ELEMENT`, `ATTRIBUTE`, or `SKIPPED`.

c. **Import Settings** - Clicking this button opens the **Import** preferences page *(on page 168)* that allows you to configure more import options.

d. The **XML Import Preview** panel contains an example of what the generated XML document looks like.

e. **Save in file** - If selected, the new XML document is saved in the specified path.

f. **Generate XML Schema** - Allows you to specify the path of the generated XML Schema file.

8. Click **Finish** to generate the XML document.

Import from HTML Files

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers two methods for importing HTML files into an XML document. The first method is to simply copy data from an HTML document and paste it into a document in **Author** mode, but this is only supported in DITA, DocBook, TEI, JATS, and XHTML documents. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also offers a configurable import wizard that works with any type of XML document.

Smart Paste Method

If you are importing data into DITA, DocBook, TEI, JATS, or XHTML documents, you can open the HTML document in your web browser, copy its content, and paste it into your document in **Author** mode.

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Smart Paste** mechanism *(on page 366)* will convert the pasted content to the equivalent XML markup and considers various pasting solutions to keep the resulting document valid, while preserving the original text styling (such as bold, italics, underline) and formatting (such as lists, tables, paragraphs).

Import Wizard Method

To use the **Import** wizard to import from HTML files, follow these steps:

1. Go to **File > Import/Convert > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin > HTML File to XHTML**. The **Import HTML to XHTML** wizard is displayed.
2. Select a parent folder and file name for the resulting XHTML document.
3. Enter the URL of the HTML document.
4. Select the type of the resulting XHTML document:
   - XHTML5
   - XHTML 1.0 Transitional
   - XHTML 1.0 Strict
5. Click the **Finish** button.

Result: The resulting document is an XHTML file containing a DOCTYPE declaration that references the XHTML DTD definition on the Web. The parsed content of the imported file is transformed to XHTML5, XHTML Transitional, or XHTML Strict depending on the option you chose.

Import Content Dynamically

Along with the built-in support for various useful URL protocols (such as HTTPS or SFTP), Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also provides special support for a *convert* protocol that can be used to chain predefined processors to dynamically import content from various sources.

Important:
Starting with version 26, the dynamic conversion protocol is disabled by default. To enable it, you must set the `com.oxygenxml.enable.convert.url.protocol` system property to the value of `true`.

A *dynamic conversion URL* chains various processors that can be applied, in sequence, on a target resource and has the following general syntax:

```
convert:/processor=xslt;ss=urn:processors:excel2d.xsl/processor=excel!/urn:files:my.xls
```

The previous example first applies a processor (`excel`) on a target identified by the identifier (`urn:files:sample.xls`) and converts the Excel™ resource to XML. The second applied processor (`xslt`) applies an XSLT stylesheet identified using the identifier (`urn:processors:excel2d.xsl`) over the resulting content from the first applied processor. These identifiers are all mapped to real resources on disk via an *XML catalog* that is configured in the application, as in the following example:

```
<catalog xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog">
  <rewriteURI uriStartString="urn:files:" rewritePrefix="./resources/"/>
  <rewriteURI uriStartString="urn:processors:" rewritePrefix="./processors/"/>
</catalog>
```

The target resource part of the conversion URL must always follow the `!/` pattern. It can be any of the following:

- An absolute URL that points to a resource.
- An identifier that will be resolved to an actual resource via the *XML Catalog (on page 2235)* support in the application. In the example above, the **urn:files:sample.xls** target resource is resolved via the *XML catalog*.
- A relative location. This location can only be resolved to an actual resource URL when the application has enough information about the location where the URL is referenced.

  For example, for a *DITA map (on page 2230)* with a `<topicref>` such as:

  ```
  <topicref href="convert:/.../processor=excel!/resources/sample.xls"/>
  ```

  the `resources/sample.xls` path will be resolved relative to the *DITA map* location.

This type of URL can be opened in the application by using the **Open URL** action from the **File** menu. It can also be referenced from existing XML resources via *xi:include* or as a topic reference from a *DITA map*.

A *GitHub* project that contains various dynamic conversion samples for producing DITA content from various sources (and then publishing it) can be found here: https://github.com/oxygenxml/dita-glass.

Conversion Processors

A set of predefined conversion processors is provided in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. Each processor has its own parameters that can be set to control the behavior of the conversion process. All parameters that are resolved to resources are passed through the *XML catalog* mapping.

The following predefined conversion processors are included:

- `xslt` **Processor** - Converts an XML input using the Saxon EE XSLT processor. The `ss` parameter indicates the stylesheet resource to be loaded. All other specified parameters will be set as parameters to the XSLT transformation.

  ```
  convert:/processor=xslt;ss=urn:processors:convert.xsl;p1=v1!/urn:files:sample.xml
  ```

- `xquery` **Processor** - Converts an XML input using the Saxon EE XQuery processor. The `ss` parameter indicates the XQuery script to be loaded. All other specified parameters will be set as parameters to the XSLT transformation.

  ```
  convert:/processor=xquery;ss=urn:processors:convert.xquery;p1=v1!/urn:files:sample.xml
  ```

- `excel` **Processor** - Converts an Excel™ input to an XML format that can later be converted by other piped processors. It has a single parameter `sn`, which indicates the name of the sheet that needs to be converted. If this parameter is missing, the XML will contain the combined content of all sheets included in the Excel™ document.

  ```
  convert:/processor=excel;sn=test!/urn:files:sample.xls
  ```

- `java` **Processor** - Converts an input to another format by applying a specific Java method. The `jars` parameter is a comma-separated list of *JAR (on page 2231)* libraries, or folders that libraries will be loaded from. The `ccn` parameter is the fully qualified name of the conversion class that will be instantiated. The conversion class needs to have a method with the following signature:

  ```
  public void convert(String systemID, String originalSourceSystemID,
  InputStream is, OutputStream os, LinkedHashMap<String, String> properties)
  throws IOException
  ```

  ```
  convert:/processor=java;jars=libs;ccn=test.JavaToXML!/
  urn:files:java/WSEditorBase.java
  ```

- `js` **Processor** - Converts an input to another format by applying a JavaScript method. The `js` parameter indicates the script that will be used. The `fn` parameter is the name of the method that will be called from the script. The method must take a string as an argument and return a string. If any of the parameters are missing, an error is thrown and the conversion stops.

  ```
  convert:/processor=js;js=urn:processors:md.js;fn=convertExternal!/urn:files:sample.md
  ```

- **`json` Processor** - Converts a JSON input to XML. It has no parameters.

  ```
  convert:/processor=json!/urn:files:personal.json
  ```

- **`xhtml` Processor** - Converts HTML content to well-formed XHTML. It has no parameters.

  ```
  convert:/processor=xhtml!/urn:files:test.html
  ```

- **`wrap` Processor** - Wraps content in a tag name making it well-formed XML. The `rn` parameter indicates the name of the root tag to use. By default, it is `wrapper`. The `encoding` parameter specifies the encoding that should be used to read the content. By default, it is `UTF8`. As an example, this processor can be used if you want to process a comma-separated values file with an XSLT stylesheet to produce XML content. The CSV file is first wrapped as well-formed XML, which is then processed with an `xslt` processor.

  ```
  convert:/processor=wrap!/urn:files:test.csv
  ```

- **`cache` Processor** - Caches the converted content obtained from the original document to a temporary file. The cache will be used on subsequent uses of the same URL, thus increasing the speed for the application returning the converted content. If the original URL points to the local disk, the cache will be automatically invalidated when the original file content gets modified. Otherwise, if the original URL points to a remote resource, the cache will need to be invalidated by reloading (**Reload (F5)** from the toolbar) the URL content that is opened in the editor.

  ```
  convert:/processor=cache/processor=xslt;…..!/urn:files:test.csv
  ```

Reverse Conversion Processors

All processors defined above can also be used for saving content back to the target resource if they are defined in the URL as reverse processors. Reverse processors are evaluated right to left. These reverse processors allow *round-tripping* content to and from the target resource.

As an example, the following URL converts HTML to DITA when the URL is opened using the `h2d.xsl` stylesheet and converts DITA to HTML when the content is saved in the application using the `d2h.xsl` stylesheet.

```
convert:/processor=xslt;ss=h2d.xsl/rprocessor=xslt;ss=d2h.xsl!/urn:files:sample.html
```

Important:
If you are publishing a *DITA map* that has such conversion URL references inside, you need to edit the transformation scenario and set the value of the parameter *fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml* to **true**. This will instruct Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to resolve such references during a special pre-processing stage. Depending on the conversion, you may also require additional libraries to be added using the **Libaries** button in the **Advanced** tab of the transformation scenario.

Related Information:
https://github.com/oxygenxml/dita-glass

16.

Framework (Document Type) and Author Mode Customization

This section contains information and tutorials about customizing the authoring experience through custom frameworks (document types) and customizing the **Author** editing mode through CSS styling or API extensions.

Creating and Configuring Custom Frameworks

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes built-in, configured *frameworks (on page 2231)* for DocBook, DITA, TEI, XHTML, and JATS, but you can also create your own customization to handle other types of documents. A common use-case is wanting to customize the interface to accommodate the needs of your authoring team.

Fully configuring a *framework* usually involves customizing CSS stylesheets, XML schemas, GUI components (menu actions, toolbars, inline components, content completion proposals, and more), configuring other more general settings, then bundling the framework to share with your team. The CSS and GUI components are used to customize the interface, while other general settings can be configured to accommodate custom document templates, XML catalogs, transformation scenarios, and more.

Advanced users who are familiar with API development can also create custom **Author** mode operations *(on page 1582)* for a particular framework.

This section includes information about numerous possibilities for creating and customizing a *framework*, and how to share your customization with others.

Tip:
A sample framework customization package is available that you can dabble with and use to help you get started. It can be downloaded from: https://www.oxygenxml.com/maven/com/oxygenxml/samples/oxygen-sample-framework/24.0.0.0/oxygen-sample-framework-24.0.0.0-package.zip. The package includes a sample CSS file, XSL file, schema files, document templates, an XML catalog file, custom icons, and other resources.

Creating a Framework Using the Configuration Dialog Box

The easiest way to create a custom *framework (on page 2231)* (document type) is by extending an existing built-in framework, such as DITA or DocBook, and then making modifications to it. You can then easily share the custom framework *(on page 1691)* with your team.

To create a custom *framework* by extending an existing one, follow these steps:

1. In a location where you have full write access, create a folder structure similar to this: `custom_frameworks/dita-extension`.
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association > Locations** *(on page 83)*. Add the path to your `custom_frameworks` folder in the **Additional frameworks directories** list and click **OK** or **Apply** to save your changes.
3. Go to the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 81)* and select an existing *framework* configuration (for example, **DITA**) and use the **Extend** button to create an extension for it.

   Step Result: This opens the **Document Type** Configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* where you can define the set of rules and settings for your custom framework.
4. Give the extension an appropriate name, select **External** for the **Storage** option, click the browsing button ( ) to specify the location of the custom directory you created in step 1.
5. Continue to configure the extension using the tabs on the bottom half of the dialog box. For details about each of those tabs, see the child topics in the **Document Type** Configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* section. For even more information about customizing the extended framework, see the various topics and tutorials in the Creating and Configuring Custom Frameworks *(on page 1533)* section. Make sure that you save any resources you reference in your framework configuration (CSS files, new document templates, schemas used for validation, catalogs, etc.) in your custom framework directory you created in step 1.
6. Click **OK** to close the configuration dialog box and then **OK** or **Apply** to save your changes.

   Results: You now have a fully functional *framework* that can be shared with others *(on page 1691)*.

Note:
An alternative for creating a framework extension without using the UI is by Creating a Framework Using an Extension Script *(on page 1534)*.

Related information
Sharing a Framework *(on page 1691)*
Webinar: Creating Frameworks Using an Extension Script

Creating a Framework Using an Extension Script

A custom *framework (on page 2231)* (document type) can be created using a special XML descriptor file, either from scratch or by extending an existing built-in framework (such as DITA or DocBook) and then making modifications to it. You can then easily share the custom framework *(on page 1691)* with your team.

The easiest way to create such a descriptor is to use the **New** document wizard *(on page 222)* and choose the **Extend Framework Script** or **Create Framework Script** template.

Tip:
To see a visual, detailed look at how to create frameworks with an extension script, watch our webinar: **Creating Frameworks Using an Extension Script** (some samples are also available on that events page).

Creating a Custom Framework Starting from an Existing Framework

To create a custom *framework* by extending an existing one, follow these steps:

1. In a location where you have full write access, create a folder structure similar to this: `custom_frameworks/dita-extension`.
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association > Locations** *(on page 83)*. Add the path to your `custom_frameworks` folder in the **Additional frameworks directories** list and click **OK** or **Apply** to save your changes and close the dialog box.
3. Click the **New** button on the toolbar and select the **Extend Framework Script** template. Save it inside the previously configured framework path (e.g. `custom_frameworks/dita-extension`).
4. Set the `@base` attribute on the script element to the value of the name of the extended framework (e.g. **DITA**).

   Note:
   Removing the `@base` attribute will create a framework from scratch.

5. Edit the script as described in Framework Extension Script File *(on page 1536)*.

To test your customization, open a document that matches the newly created framework and inspect how your settings apply or go to **Options > Preferences > Document Type Association** and inspect the resulting framework structure.

Note:
If you want to use the framework in an older Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version that does not have support for these scripts, you can compile the script to obtain the `*.framework` file by using the **Compile Framework Extension script** action from the contextual menu or by running the scripts/compileFrameworkScript.bat external tool.

Creating a Custom Framework Without a Base Framework

To create a custom *framework* without starting from an existing one, follow these steps

1. In a location where you have full write access, create a folder structure similar to this: `custom_frameworks/dita-extension`.
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association > Locations** *(on page 83)*. Add the path to your `custom_frameworks` folder in the **Additional frameworks directories** list and click **OK** or **Apply** to save your changes and close the dialog box.
3. Click **New** button on the toolbar and select the **Create Framework Script** template. Save it inside the previously configured framework path, `custom_frameworks/dita-extension`.
4. Edit the script as described in Framework Extension Script File *(on page 1536)*.

To test your customization, open a document that matches the newly created framework and inspect how your settings apply or go to **Options > Preferences > Document Type Association** and inspect the newly generated framework structure.

Note:
If you want to use the framework in an older Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version that does not have support for these scripts, you can compile the script to obtain the `*.framework` file by using the **Compile Framework Extension script** action from the contextual menu or by running the scripts/compileFrameworkScript.bat external tool.

Related information
Sharing a Framework *(on page 1691)*
Webinar: Creating Frameworks Using an Extension Script

Framework Extension Script File

The framework extension file is used to describe a new framework configuration. Optionally, you can extend an existing built-in framework configuration (such as DITA or DocBook) and then make additions and changes to it.

The easiest way to create such a file is to use the **New** document wizard *(on page 222)* and choose the **Extend Framework Script** or **Create Framework Script** template.

The following examples assume that the newly created framework extends a built-in one.

Basic Information

Once you have created a new script file, you need to:

- Specify the name of the framework using the `<name>` element. Optionally, you can also add a description using the `<description>` element.
- If you want to extend an existing framework (such as DITA or DocBook), specify the name of the extended framework using the `@base` attribute on the `<script>` element.
- The `<priority>` element might be needed to instruct Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to use this new framework instead of the one being extended or another framework that matches the same document.

Example: Extending the Built-in DITA Framework

```
<script xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/framework/extend"
  xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/framework/extend
  http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/framework/extend/frameworkExtensionScript.xsd"
  base="DITA">
  <name>My custom DITA framework</name>
  <description>A custom framework based on the built-in DITA framework</description>
  <priority>High</priority>
</script>
```

Changing the Association Rules

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin identifies the type of a document when the document matches at least one of the *association rules*.

Example: Instructing the Built-in Associations to Inherit None to Add Your Own

```
<associationRules inherit="none">
  <addRule rootElementLocalName="concept"/>
  <addRule fileName="test.xml"/>
</associationRules>
```

Setting the Initial Editing Mode

You can set the default editing mode that is loaded when a document is opened for the first time. For example, if the files are usually edited in the **Author** mode, you can set it as the initial page. For more details on the possible values, see Document Type Configuration Dialog Box - Initial Edit Mode *(on page 84)*.

Example: Setting the Initial Editing Mode to Author

```
<initialPage>Author</initialPage>
```

Changing the Classpath

The **Classpath** tab displays a list of folders and *JAR (on page 2231)* libraries that hold implementations for API extensions, implementations for custom **Author** mode operations, various resources (such as stylesheets), and *framework (on page 2231)* translation files. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin loads the resources looking in the folders in the order they appear in the list.

Example: Customizing and Extending the Classpath Inherited From the Base Framework

```
  <classpath inherit="all">
    <!-- Contribute this resource before the ones inherited from the base framework
    because Oxygen loads the resources looking in the folders in the order they
    appear in the list.
    -->
```

```
    <addEntry path="${framework}/resources_2x" position="before"/>


    <removeEntry path="${baseFramework}/refactoring/"/>
  </classpath>
```

Notice:
Relative paths in the framework extension file are automatically resolved to the location of the script file.

Note:
When removing entries with framework editor variables, take into consideration how they were added in the base framework.

- An entry present in the base framework with the path `${framework}/file` can be removed using an identical path or by using the *${baseFramework}* variable: `${baseFramework}/file`.
- An entry present in the base framework with the path `${frameworkDir}/file` can be removed using an identical path or by using the *${baseFrameworkDir}* variable: `${baseFrameworkDir}/file`.

Sharing a Plugin Class Loader

If your *framework* uses the same JAVA extensions/classes as a *plugin (on page 2232)*, it is recommended that they share the same classloader. This way, the common classes are loaded by only one *Class Loader* and they will both use the same static objects and have the ability to cast objects between one another.

```
<classpath parentClassLoaderID="com.oxygenxml.git.plugin"/>
```

Setting a Default Schema

You can specify a default schema for Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to use if an XML document does not contain a schema declaration and no default validation scenario is associated with it.

Example: Setting a Default XML Schema Relative to the Script Location

```
<defaultSchema schemaType="xmlschema" href="xsd/my-schema.xsd"/>
```

Changing XML Catalogs

For cases where you need to reference the location of a schema file from a remote web location and an internet connection may not be available, an *XML Catalog (on page 2235)* may be used to map the web location to a local file system entry.

Example: Customizing and Extending the XML Catalogs Inherited From the Base Framework

```
<xmlCatalogs inherit="all">
  <!-- Contribute this resource before the ones inherited from the base framework
    because Oxygen loads the resources looking in the folders in the order they
    appear in the list.
    -->
  <addEntry path="${framework}/catalog.xml" position="before"/>

  <removeEntry path="${baseFramework}/oldCatalog.xml"/>
</xmlCatalogs>
```

Notice:
Relative paths in the framework extension file are automatically resolved to the location of the script file.

Changing the Document Templates

You can create your own custom document templates or remove templates inherited from the base framework.

Example: Customizing and Extending the XML Catalogs Inherited From the Base Framework

```
<documentTemplates inherit="all">
  <!-- Contribute this resource before the ones inherited from the base framework
    to make them appear first in the list.
    -->
  <addEntry path="${framework}/newTemplates" position="before"/>

  <removeEntry path="${baseFramework}/oldTemplates"/>
</documentTemplates>
```

Notice:
Relative paths in the framework extension file are automatically resolved to the location of the script file.

Adding New Transformation Scenarios and Removing Existing Ones

You can create new transformation scenarios and export them in one of the following locations:

- The Transformation Scenarios View *(on page 940)*.
- The Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*.
- The Transformation Tab *(on page 108)*.

Example: Importing New Transformation Scenarios

The `@href` attribute from the `<addScenarios>` element is used to point to the location of the scenarios export file. Relative paths are resolved relative to the script's location. The *${framework}* editor variable also resolves to the script's location. You can also remove any scenario inherited from the base framework or set the default scenario (the one used when another specific scenario is not specified).

```
<transformationScenarios>
  <addScenarios href="scenarioExport.scenarios"/>
  <removeScenario name="DITA HTML5"/>
  <defaultScenarios>
    <name>DITA</name>
    <name>XML</name>
  </defaultScenarios>
</transformationScenarios>
```

Adding New Validation Scenarios and Removing Existing Ones

You can create new validation scenarios and export them in one of the following locations:

- The Configure Validation Scenario Dialog Box *(on page 537)*.
- The Validation Tab *(on page 109)*.

Example: Importing New Validation Scenarios

The `@href` attribute from the `<addScenarios>` element is used to point to the location of the scenarios export file. Relative paths are resolved relative to the script's location. The *${framework}* editor variable also resolves to the script's location. You can also remove any scenario inherited from the base framework or set the default scenario (the one used when another specific scenario is not specified).

```
<validationScenarios>
  <addScenarios href="validationScenarioExport.scenarios"/>
  <removeScenario name="DITA"/>
  <defaultScenarios>
    <name>DITA Validation</name>
    <name>XML Validation</name>
  </defaultScenarios>
</validationScenarios>
```

Customizing the Author Mode Through New CSS Files

The **Author** mode layout is driven by CSS rules. To customize it, you need to create new CSS files and add them in the new framework.

Example: Using Larger Fonts in Titles

```
<author>
    <css>
```

```
      <removeCss path="${framework}/base.css"/>
      <!--
        Adding CSS after the ones in the base gives the opportunity to
        override rules from previous CSSs.
      -->
      <addCss path="${framework}/titles.css" position="after"/>
    </css>
  </author>
```

The `${framework}/titles.css` file contains a rule like this:

```
*[class~='topic/title'] {
  font-size:larger;
}
```

Example: Creating an Alternate CSS That Activates When the User Selects it in the Styles Menu

```
  <author>
    <css>
      <addCss path="${framework}/pink.css" title="Pink titles" alternate="true"/>
    </css>
  </author>
```

The `${framework}/pink.css` file contains a rule like this:

```
*[class~='topic/title'] {
  color:#FF1493;
}
```

Control How CSS Styles are Handled in the Author mode

The **Author** mode layout is driven by CSS rules. You can configure how CSS styles are handled in the framework by using the following attributes in the script file:

selectMultipleAlternateCSS

If set to *true*, any number of alternate CSS files can be activated and they will be applied like layers. If set to false, the alternate styles are treated like a main CSS style and only one can be selected at a time.

Example: Using the selectMultipleAlternateCSS Attribute in the Script

```
<css selectMultipleAlternateCSS="true"/>
```

mergeDocumentCSS

Controls how CSS files are handled if there are CSS styles specified in the document. If set to true, they will be merged with the CSS files from the framework. If set to false, they will be ignored.

Example: Using the mergeDocumentCSS Attribute in the Script

```
<css mergeDocument="true"/>
```

Example: Changing the styling in the author mode

We add a new CSS located in the new framework directory and we remove a CSS contributed by the base framework.

```
<author>
  <css>
    <addCss path="css/style.css" />

    <removeCss path="${baseFramework}/resources/css/base.css"/>
  </css>
</author>
```

Notice:
Relative paths in the framework extension file are automatically resolved to the location of the script file.

Defining Author Actions for the New Framework

Create external author actions *(on page 1551)*, save them in a specific subdirectory of your particular framework directory *(on page 1554)*, and they will be loaded automatically.

Removing Author Actions from the Base Framework

Suppose that the base framework configuration defines some author actions *(on page 1550)* that are added in the main menu *(on page 100)*, contextual menu *(on page 100)*, toolbar *(on page 102)*, or content completion window *(on page 103)*. If you do not want to inherit one of these actions in the new framework and you also want to remove it from all the GUI elements, you can use the `<removeAction>` element:

```
<author>
  <authorActions>
    <removeAction id="action.to.remove"/>
  </authorActions>
</author>
```

Note:
If the new framework has an external author action *(on page 1551)* with the same ID as one of the actions specified in a `<removeAction>` element, the action will not be removed from the GUI elements (menus, toolbars, content completion window).

Replacing Author Actions from the Base Framework

Suppose that the base framework configuration defines some author actions *(on page 1550)* that are added in the main menu *(on page 100)*, contextual menu *(on page 100)*, toolbar *(on page 102)*, or content completion window *(on page 103)*. If you want to keep one of these actions in all the GUI elements, but to perform differently in the new framework, just create an external author action *(on page 1551)* with the same ID as the action to replace and save it in the specific subdirectory within your new framework directory *(on page 1554)*.

Author Toolbar Configuration

The **Author** mode-specific toolbars for the new framework can be customized by:

- Adding or removing actions from toolbars.
- Changing toolbar groups by adding or removing actions.
- Creating new toolbars and action groups.

Example: Customizing the Toolbar

```
<author>
  <toolbars>
    <toolbar>

      <!-- Remove an action inherited from the base framework. -->
      <removeAction id="bold"/>

      <!-- Insert an action into an existing group -->
      <group name="${i18n(link)}">
        <addAction id="insert.note"/>
      </group>

      <!-- Add actions, separators and new groups-->
      <separator/>
      <addAction id="insert.note"/>

      <group name="New group">
        <addAction id="insert.note"/>
        <addAction id="insert.table"/>
      </group>
    </toolbar>
  </toolbars>
</author>
```

Note:
If you create a toolbar or group configuration and a toolbar/group with the same name already exists in the base framework, you will change the one inherited instead of creating a new one. You can inspect the names of the existing toolbars/groups inherited from the base framework in the Toolbar Subtab *(on page 102)*.

Example: Creating a New Toolbar

A new toolbar is created if the `@name` attribute does not match a toolbar inherited from the base.

```
<author>
    <toolbars>
      <toolbar name="Extra Toolbar">
        <!-- Add actions, separators and new groups-->
        <separator/>
        <addAction id="insert.note"/>

        <group name="New group">
          <addAction id="insert.note"/>
          <addAction id="insert.table"/>
        </group>
      </toolbar>
    </toolbars>
  </author>
```

Example: Adding an Action in the Toolbar at a Specific Location

You can insert items (actions or groups) relative to other items already present in the toolbar because they were inherited from the base framework configuration. The `@anchor` attribute specifies either the ID of an action or the name of a group already present in the toolbar and the `@position` attribute specifies whether the new item should be added before or after it.

Note:
If the `@anchor` attribute is missing, the entries will be added either first or last, according to `@position` value.

```
      <toolbar>
        <addAction id="insert.note" anchor="bold" position="before"/>

        <group name="Table menu" anchor="${i18n(link)}" position="after">
          <addAction id="insert.table"/>
        </group>
      </toolbar>
```

Author Menu and Contextual Menu Configuration

The **Author** mode-specific menus for the new framework can be customized by:

- Adding or removing actions and submenus.
- Changing existing submenus by adding or removing actions.

Example: Customizing the Contextual Menu

```
<contextualMenu>
  <!-- Add new actions and submenu -->
  <separator/>
  <addAction id="insert.table"/>
  <submenu name="Other actions">
    <addAction id="insert.note"/>
  </submenu>

  <!-- Contribute to an existing submenu -->
  <submenu name="${i18n(section)}">
    <addAction id="paragraph"/>
  </submenu>

  <!-- Remove a submenu inherited from the base framework. -->
  <removeSubmenu name="${i18n(link)}"/>
</contextualMenu>
```

Note:
The framework main menu is configured similarly, inside a `<menu>` container.

Tip:
You can inspect the names of the submenus inherited from the base framework in the Contextual Menu Subtab *(on page 100)* and Menu Subtab *(on page 100)*.

Example: Adding an Action in the Contextual Menu at a Specific Location

You can insert new actions and submenus relative to other actions and submenus already present in the menu because they were inherited from the base framework configuration. The `@anchor` attribute specifies the ID of an **Author** mode action or a name of a submenu already present in the menu and the `@position` attribute specifies whether the new action should be added before or after it.

Note:
If the `@anchor` attribute is missing, the entries will be added either first or last, according to `@position` value.

```
    <contextualMenu>
      <addAction id="insert.note" anchor="edit.image.map" position="before"/>

      <submenu name="Table menu" anchor="${i18n(insert)}" position="after">
        <addAction id="insert.table"/>
      </submenu>
    </contextualMenu>
```

Configuring the Content Completion in Author Mode

You can replace content completion entries obtained from the associated schema with **Author** mode actions *(on page 1550)*.

In the `<authorActions>` container, you can specify the **Author** mode actions to be contributed. Optionally, you can mark them as a replacement for an existing schema proposal with the `@replacedElement` attribute.

The `<schemaProposals>` element allows you to remove proposals detected from the associated schema through the `<removeProposal>` element. If some proposals were removed in the base framework configuration and you want them re-added, you can do so through the `<addProposal>` element.

Example: Customizing the Content Completion Assistant

```
<contentCompletion>
  <authorActions>
    <addAction id="insert.note" replacedElement="note" inCCWindow="true"/>
  </authorActions>

  <schemaProposals>
    <removeProposal renderName="table"/>

    <!-- The base framework removed the "list" element proposal. We want it back... -->
    <addProposal renderName="list"/>
  </schemaProposals>
</contentCompletion>
```

Using Framework Extension Points

The **Extensions** tab specifies implementations of Java interfaces used to provide advanced functionality to the document type. Libraries that contain the implementations must be present in the classpath of your framework *(on page 1537)*. The Javadoc available at https://www.oxygenxml.com/InstData/Editor/SDK/javadoc/ contains details about how each API implementation functions.

Example: Setting a Custom Extensions Bundle

```
<extensionPoints>
  <extension
    name="extensionsBundleClassName"
```

```
    value="ro.sync.ecss.extensions.dita.map.DITAMapExtensionsBundle"/>
</extensionPoints>
```

Reusing Parts of the Script Using XInclude

Elements in the script can be specified in dedicated files that can then be referenced using XInclude in the script.

Example: Using XInclude to Reference Elements in the Script

```
<script xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/framework/extend">
    <name>New framework</name>
    <xi:include href="classpath.xml" xmlns:xi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude"/>
</script>
```

Where the referenced `classpath.xml` has this content:

```
<classpath xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/framework/extend">
    <addEntry path="test.jar"/>
</classpath>
```

Notice:
Relative paths in the framework extension file are automatically resolved to the location of the script file.

Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework

You can customize the editing experience in **Author** mode for you and any other user who shares the same framework. This includes the ability to configure actions, menus, toolbars, icons, structure insertion shortcuts, and content completion proposals specifically for a particular *framework (on page 2231)* (document type). Advanced users who are familiar with API development can also create custom **Author** mode operations *(on page 1582)* for a particular framework.

Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a **Styles** drop-down menu on the toolbar that allows you to select one *main (non-alternate) CSS style (on page 2231)* and multiple *alternate CSS styles (on page 2228)*. This makes it easy to change the look of the document as it appears in **Author** mode.

An example of a common use case is when content authors want to use custom styling within a document. You can select a *main* CSS stylesheet that styles the whole document and then apply *alternate* styles, as layers, to specific parts of the document.

Note:
When altering a CSS file configured as a stylesheet for the current document framework, you can quickly check its effects in the **Author** mode by using the **Reload** document action that is available on the toolbar.

Managing the CSS Styles

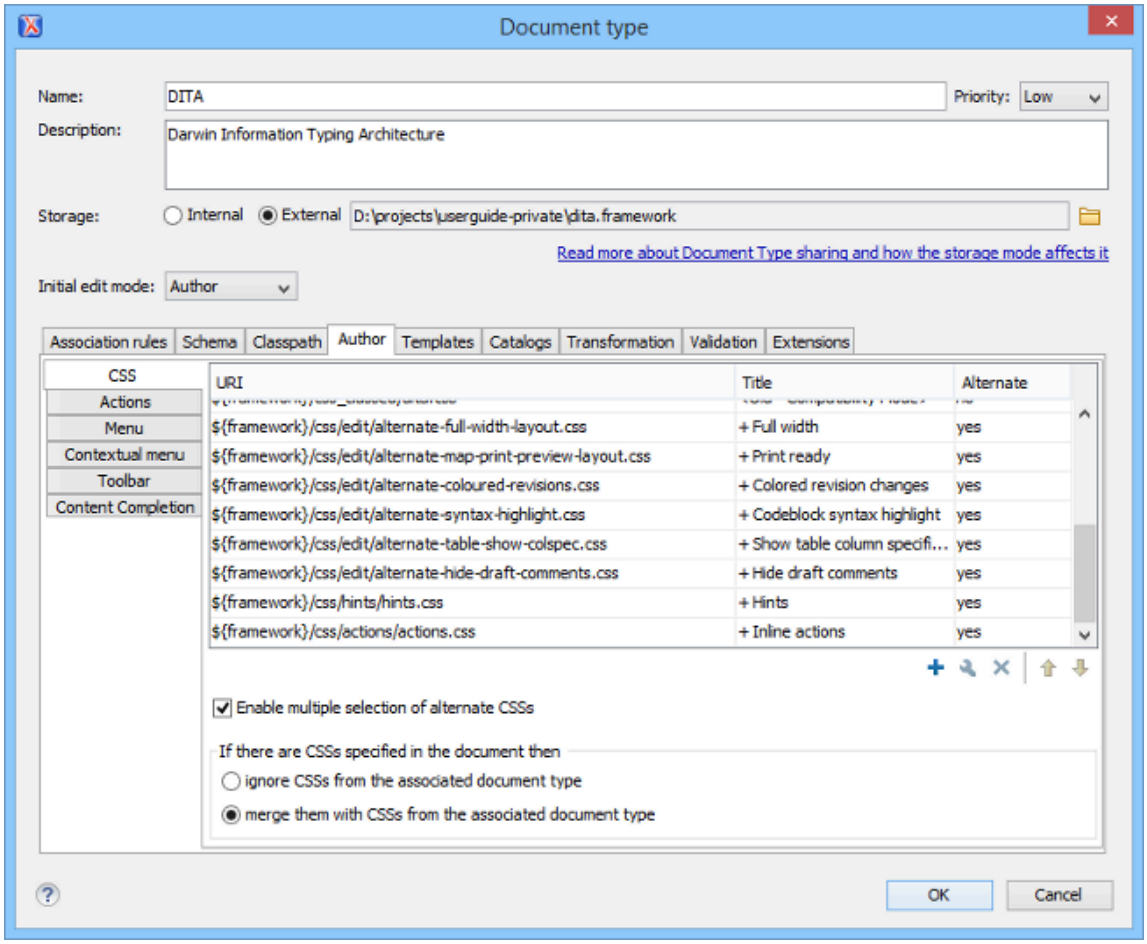
The *main (on page 2231)* and *alternate (on page 2228)* styles that are listed in the **Styles** drop-down menu can be controlled in the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*. To access it, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* .
2. Go to **Document Type Association**.
3. Select the appropriate document type and click the **Edit** button.

Important:
If you do not have access rights to the folder where the *framework (on page 2231)* files are stored, you can either elevate read/write permissions on that *framework* folder or you can extend the *framework* and customize the CSS stylesheets in the extension. If you want to share the customized extension with the rest of your team, see Sharing the Extended Framework *(on page 1691)*.

The CSS styles (CSS files) associated with the particular document type are listed in the **CSS** subtab *(on page 89)* of the **Author** tab.

Figure 282. Main and Alternate CSS Styles in the Document Type Configuration Dialog Box



You can **Add**, **Edit**, or **Delete** styles from this dialog box to manage the *main (on page 2231)* and *alternate (on page 2228)* styles associated to the particular document type. You can also change the order of the styles by using the **Move Up** and **Move Down** buttons. This also changes the order that they appear in the **Styles** drop-down menu. The *alternate* styles are combined with the *main* CSS sequentially, in the order that they appear in this list. Therefore, if the same style rules are included in multiple CSS files, the *alternate* style that is listed last in this list takes precedence, since it is the last one to be combined (applied as a layer).

The **URI** column shows the path of each CSS file. The names listed in the **Styles** drop-down menu match the values in the **Title** column. The value in the **Alternate** column determines whether it is a *main* or *alternate* CSS. If the value is *no*, it is a *main* CSS. If the value is *yes*, it is an *alternate* CSS and the style can be combined with a *main* CSS or other *alternate* styles when using the **Styles** drop-down menu.

Note:
To group alternate styles into categories (submenus), use a vertical bar character (|) in the **Title** column. You can use multiple vertical bars for multiple submenus. The text before each vertical bar will be rendered as the name of a submenu entry in the **Styles** drop-down menu, while the text after the final vertical bar is rendered as the name of the style inside the submenu.

Example: Suppose that you want to add two alternate stylesheets in separate submenus, with the *Title* column set to **My Styles|User Assistance|Hints** and **My Styles|User Actions|Inline Actions**, respectively.

URI	Title	Alternate
${framework}/css/hints/hints.css	My Styles|User Assistance| Hints	yes
${framework}/css/actions/actions.css	My Styles|User Actions|Inline actions	yes

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will add a **My Styles** submenu with two submenus (**User Assistance** that contains the **Hints** style, and **User Actions** that contains the **Inline Actions** style) in the **Styles** drop-down menu.

The **Enable multiple selection of alternate CSSs** checkbox *(on page 89)* at the bottom of the pane must be selected for the *alternate CSS styles (on page 2228)* to be combined. They are applied like layers and you can activate any number of them. If this option is not selected, the *alternate* styles are treated like *main CSS styles (on page 2231)* and you can only select one at a time. By default, this option is selected. There are also a few options that allow you to specify how to handle the CSS if there are CSS styles specified in the document. You can choose to *ignore* or *merge* them.

The following rules apply for merging CSS styles:

- CSS files with the same title will be merged.
- CSS files without a title will contribute to all others.
- They are merged sequentially, in the order that they appear in the list.

Related information

Changing the Look of Documents in Author Mode Using the Styles Menu *(on page 344)*

CSS Subtab *(on page 89)*

Adding an extra CSS to customize the DITA visual editor

Creating and Customizing Author Mode Actions for a Framework

There are several possibilities for creating new **Author** mode actions:

- You can create new actions for a framework or edit existing ones using the **Actions** subtab of the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*. In this case, the actions are stored internally in the **.framework* file.
- You can export existing actions from the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* into individual XML files or use a built-in template to create a new XML file that defines a single action. In

this case, the actions are stored externally as separate XML files. The benefits of using this approach are explained in the Creating or Editing Actions Using an Individual XML File for Each Action *(on page 1551)* section below.

Creating or Editing Actions Using the Document Type Configuration Dialog Box

To add or configure **Author** mode actions for a *framework (on page 2231)* (document type) using the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*, follow this procedure:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Types Association**, and select the *framework*.
2. Select your framework and click the **Edit** button (or you can use the **Duplicate** or **Extend** button to create an extension of the framework *(on page 1533)*).
3. In the resulting **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*, go to the **Author** tab, then the **Actions** subtab.
4. To create a new action, click the **New** button. To edit an existing action, select the action and click the **Edit** button.

   Step Result: In either case, this opens the **Action** configuration dialog box *(on page 91)* where you can configure numerous aspects of the action.
5. Once you are finished, click **OK** several times to exit the configuration dialog box.

Result: Your changes are stored in the **.framework* file for your particular framework.

Creating or Editing Actions Using an Individual XML File for Each Action

It is possible to work with **Author** mode actions outside the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* and store them externally from the **.framework* file. You can either export existing actions or use a template to create a new action from scratch. The benefits of using this approach are:

- You can share, copy, or reuse each individual action across multiple projects or frameworks.
- It is easier to develop and test action configurations. After configuring the XML file that defines an action, you can test its functionality by opening a document from your particular framework and invoking the action to see if it works as expected. If you did not get the desired result, you can simply repeat the process until you are happy with the result without having to navigate through the framework configuration dialog box.

Exporting Actions

To export existing **Author** mode actions into individual XML files, follow this procedure:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Types Association**, and select the *framework*.
2. Select your framework and click the **Edit** button (or you can use the **Duplicate** or **Extend** button to create an extension of the framework *(on page 1533)*).

3. In the resulting **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*, go to the **Author** tab, then the **Actions** subtab.
4. **[Important]** Make sure the **Storage** option *(on page 84)* in the top part of the dialog box is set to **External** and the external location must be a subdirectory of your current framework directory (see the Notes About the Storage Path section *(on page 1554)*).
5. Select the action (or multiple actions) you want to export, right-click, and use the **Export** action (this action is also located at the bottom of the table of actions).

   Step Result: If you choose to export a single action, a resulting dialog box will allow you to select the destination path for the new XML file that contains the configuration details of the action. If you export multiple actions, they will automatically be saved as individual XML files inside a newly created folder (it will have ***_externalAuthorActions*** at the end of the folder name) inside your current framework directory.
6. **[Important]** Click **OK** several times to confirm your changes and exit the **Preferences** dialog box. The files will not be created until you exit this dialog box.

   Step Result: Each exported action is extracted from the framework configuration file and exported as an individual XML file.
7. To configure and test a particular action, you can open its corresponding XML file in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, make changes, save the file, then open a document from your framework, test the action and repeat until you get the desired result.

   Note:
   You can add or edit the action files outside of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, but you will need to restart the application each time to reload the changes.

Creating New Actions

To create a new **Author** mode action outside the framework configuration dialog box, follow these steps:

1. Open the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)*, search for a template called **Author Action**, and choose a storage path and file name. Remember that ultimately, it must be saved in a subdirectory of your particular framework directory (see the Notes About the Storage Path section *(on page 1554)*). Complete the creation process.

   Step Result: The resulting XML file contains some hints and it is an example of an action configuration that will insert a new paragraph.
2. Configure the action as needed and save your changes.

   Note:
   You can use XInclude to reuse different fragments (such as XPath expressions or configured operations between actions).

Example: Reusing and XPath Expression

```
<a:operations>
    <a:operation id="InsertFragmentOperation">
      <a:xpathCondition>
        <xi:include href="expression.txt"
            xmlns:xi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude" parse="text"/>
      </a:xpathCondition>
      <a:arguments>
        <a:argument name="insertLocation">
            <xi:include href="expression.txt"
                xmlns:xi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude" parse="text"/>
            </a:argument>
      </a:arguments>
    </a:operation>
  </a:operations>
```

Where the content of the `expression.txt` file is `self::para`.

Example: Reusing an Entire Operation

```
  <a:operations xmlns:a="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/author/external-action">
      <xi:include href="operation.xml"
          xpointer="element(/1/1)" xmlns:xi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude" />
  </a:operations>
```

Where the content of `operation.xml` is:

```
<a:operations xmlns:a="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/author/external-action">
    <a:operation id="ToggleSurroundWithElementOperation">
        <a:xpathCondition>ancestor-or-self::p</a:xpathCondition>
        <a:arguments>
            <a:argument name="element"><i/></a:argument>
        </a:arguments>
    </a:operation>
</a:operations>
```

Step Result: At this point, the action has been created but it needs to be added to the UI (in a toolbar or menu).

3. Add the new action to a UI component. For example, to add it in a toolbar, open the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*, go to the **Author** tab, then the **Toolbar** subtab *(on page 102)*, and add the action.

4. To test the action, you can open a document from your framework and test the action. If you don't get the desired result, open the action file, make changes, then test them again. Repeat until you get the desired result.

   Note:
   You can add or edit the action files outside of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, but you will need to restart the application each time to reload the changes.

Notes About the Storage Path

As mentioned above, it is imperative that the action configuration files be stored in a specific subdirectory of your particular framework directory.

There are two possible naming conventions for this subdirectory:

- ***{framework_directory}*/externalAuthorActions** - If there are multiple framework subdirectories inside *{framework_directory}*, using this path structure will make the actions available to all of them.
- ***{framework_directory}*/*{framework_file_name}*_externalAuthorActions** - Using this path structure will make the actions only available in the framework stored inside the `{framework_file_name}.framework` file.

  Note:
  When exporting actions from the UI *(on page 1551)*, this is the directory structure that is used.

Action Configuration Tips

- If an action is configured to insert a fragment that contains entities, you need to wrap it in `CDATA` markup.
- For a list of default operation, see Built-in Author Mode Operations *(on page 1554)*.

Resources

For more information about customizing **Author** mode actions, see the following resources:

- Webinar: **Improving the Authoring Experience Through Custom Actions**.
- Webinar: **Working with DITA in Oxygen - Customizing the Editing Experience**.

Related information
Framework Configuration Dialog Box: Actions Subtab *(on page 90)*

Built-in Author Mode Operations

This topic lists the default operations for the **Author** mode.

ChangeAttributeOperation

This operation allows you to add/modify/remove an attribute. You can use this operation in your own custom **Author** mode action to modify the value for a certain attribute on a specific XML element. The arguments of the operation are:

name

The attribute local name.

namespace

The attribute namespace.

elementLocation

The XPath location that identifies the element.

value

The new value for the attribute. If empty or null the attribute will be removed.

editAttribute

If an in-place editor exists for this attribute, it will automatically activate the in-place editor and start editing.

removeIfEmpty

The possible values are `true` and `false`. True means that the attribute should be removed if an empty value is provided. The default behavior is to remove it.

ChangeAttributesOperation

This operation allows you to add/modify/remove multiple attributes. You can use this operation in your own custom **Author** mode action to modify the value for one or more attributes for one or more XML elements. The arguments of the operation are:

elementLocations

The XPath location that identifies the elements whose attributes will be affected. If not defined, the element at the cursor location will be used.

attributeNames

The names of the attributes to add, modify, or remove, separated by the new-line character (`\n`). The values can be local names or Clark notations.

values

The new attributes values, each on a new line, separated by the new-line character (`\n`). An empty value will remove the attribute if `removeIfEmpty` is set to `true`.

removeIfEmpty

The possible values are `true` (default) and `false`. **True** means that the attribute will be removed if an empty value is provided.

ChangePseudoClassesOperation

Operation that sets a list of pseudo-class values to nodes identified by an XPath expression. It can also remove a list of values from nodes identified by an XPath expression. The operation accepts the following parameters:

setLocations

An XPath expression indicating a list of nodes that will have the specified list of pseudo-classes set. If it is not defined, then the element at the cursor position will be used.

setPseudoClassNames

A space-separated list of pseudo-class names that will be set on the matched nodes.

removeLocations

An XPath expression indicating a list of nodes that will have the specified list of pseudo-classes removed. If it is not defined, then the element at the cursor position will be used.

removePseudoClassNames

A space-separated list of pseudo-class names that will be removed from the matched nodes.

includeAllNodes

The possible values are `yes` and `no`. If set to `yes`, comments, CDATA, and text nodes are included when evaluating XPath expressions. If set to `no`, they are ignored.

DeleteElementOperation

Deletes the node indicated by the `elementLocation` parameter XPath expression. If missing, the operation will delete the node at the cursor location.

DeleteElementsOperation

Deletes the nodes indicated by the `elementLocations` parameter XPath expression. If missing, the operation will delete the node at the cursor location.

ExecuteCommandLineOperation

This operation allows you to start a process executing a given command line. It has the following arguments:

name

The name of the operation (or name of the console panel that corresponds to the process run by an action built over this operation).

workingDirectory

The path to the directory where the command line is executed. The default value is `"."` (current directory).

cmdLine

The command line to be executed (accepts editor variables *(on page 1572)*).

showConsole

If set to `true`, the console panel will be displayed in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. The default value is `false`.

wait

If set to `true`, the command line will wait for the operation to finish. The default value is `false`.

ExecuteCustomizableTransformationScenarioOperation

Allows you to run a publishing transformation scenario configured at framework level with a specified set of parameters.

Notice:
This operation is not applicable to the Oxygen XML Author Component or the Oxygen XML Web Author.

It supports the following arguments:

scenarioName

The name of the transformation scenario to execute.

scenarioParameters

Provided parameters for the transformation scenario. The parameters are inserted as `name=value` pairs separated by line breaks. The set parameters are taken into account for **XSLT**, **DITA**, **Chemistry**, and **ANT** transformation scenario types.

markInProgressXPathLocation

XPath expression that identifies the element(s) on which a specific `-oxy-transformation-in-progress` pseudo class is set before transformation is started. The pseudo class is reset when the transformation ends or is cancelled. If this XPath expression is not defined, the current node is used.

markOthersInProgressXPathLocation

XPath expression that identifies other elements on which a specific `-oxy-transformation-in-progress-others` pseudo class is set before the transformation is started. The pseudo class is reset when the transformation ends.

ExecuteMultipleActionsOperation

This operation allows the execution of a sequence of actions, defined as a list of action IDs. The actions must be defined by the corresponding *framework*, or one of the common actions for all *frameworks* supplied by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

actionIDs

The action IDs list that will be executed in sequence, the list must be a string sequence containing the IDs separated by commas or new lines.

ExecuteMultipleWebappCompatibleActionsOperation

An implementation of an operation that runs a sequence of Oxygen XML Web Author-compatible actions, defined as a list of IDs.

ExecuteTransformationScenariosOperation

This operation allows running one or more transformation scenarios defined in the current *document type association (on page 2229)*, in the project options, or in the global options. A use case would be to add a toolbar button that triggers publishing to various output formats. The argument of the operation is:

scenarioNames

The list of scenario names that will be executed, separated by new lines.

ExecuteValidationScenariosOperation

This operation allows running one or more validation scenarios defined in the current *document type association (on page 2229)*, in the project options, or in the global options. The single argument for the operation is:

scenarioNames

The list of scenario names that will be executed, separated by new lines.

InsertEquationOperation

Inserts a fragment containing a MathML equation at the cursor offset. The argument of this operation is:

fragment

The XML fragment containing the MathML content that should be inserted.

InsertFragmentOperation

Inserts an XML fragment at the current cursor position. The selection, if there is one, remains unchanged. The fragment will be inserted in the current context of the cursor position meaning that if the current XML document uses some namespace declarations then the inserted fragment must use the same declarations. The namespace declarations of the inserted fragment will be adapted to the existing namespace declarations of the XML document. For more details about its list of parameters, see Arguments of InsertFragmentOperation *(on page 1578)*.

InsertOrReplaceFragmentOperation

Similar to **InsertFragmentOperation** *(on page 1558)*, except it removes the selected content before inserting the fragment. Also, the **insertPosition** parameter has another possible value: **Replace**. If this value is used, the

operation deletes the node selected by the XPath expression denoted by the **insertLocation** parameter. For more details about its list of parameters, see Arguments of InsertFragmentOperation *(on page 1578)*.

InsertOrReplaceTextOperation

Inserts a text at current position removing the selected content, if any. The argument of this operation is:

text

The text section to insert.

InsertXIncludeOperation

Insert an `XInclude` element at the cursor offset. Opens a dialog box that allows you to browse and select content to be included in your document and automatically generates the corresponding XInclude instruction.

JSOperation

Allows you to call the Java API from custom JavaScript content. For some sample **JSOperation** implementations, see https://github.com/oxygenxml/javascript-sample-operations.

Notice:
For the Oxygen XML Web Author, this operation cannot be invoked using the JavaScript API. However, it can be used when configuring an Action for Author mode using the Document Type Configuration dialog box *(on page 94)*.

This operation accepts the following parameter:

script

The JavaScript content to execute. It must have a function called `doOperation()`, which can use the predefined `authorAccess` variable. The `authorAccess` variable has access to the entire *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess* Java API.

The following example is a script that retrieves the current value of the **type** attribute on the current element, allows the end-user to edit its new value and sets the new value in the document:

```
function doOperation(){
 //The current node is either entirely selected...
 currentNode = authorAccess.getEditorAccess().getFullySelectedNode();
 if(currentNode == null){
 //or the cursor is placed in it
 caretOffset = authorAccess.getEditorAccess().getCaretOffset();
 currentNode = authorAccess.getDocumentController().getNodeAtOffset
                          (caretOffset);
 }
```

```
//Get current value of the @type attribute
 currentTypeValue = "";
 currentTypeValueAttr = currentNode.getAttribute("type");
 if(currentTypeValueAttr != null){
   currentTypeValue = currentTypeValueAttr.getValue();
 }
//Ask user for new value for attribute.
newTypeValue = javax.swing.JOptionPane.showInputDialog
                        ("Input @type value", currentTypeValue);
if(newTypeValue != null){
  //Create and set the new attribute value for the @type attribute.
  attrValue = new Packages.ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AttrValue
                        (newTypeValue);
  authorAccess.getDocumentController().setAttribute
                        ("type", attrValue, currentNode);
 }
}
```

Tip:
You can call functions defined inside a script called `commons.js` from your custom script content so that you can use that external script file as a library of functions. Note that this `commons.js` file must be placed in the root of the *framework* directory (for example, *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`/frameworks/dita/commons.js`) because that is the only location where Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will look for it.

MoveCaretOperation

Flexible operation for moving the cursor within a document and it is also capable of performing a selection. The operation accepts the following arguments:

xpathLocation

An XPath expression that identifies the node relative to where the cursor will be moved. If the expression identifies more than one node, only the first one will be taken into account.

position

The position relative to the node obtained from the XPath expression where the cursor will be moved. When also choosing to perform a selection, you can use the following possible values:

- **Before** - Places the cursor at the beginning of the selection.
- **Inside, at the beginning** - Places the cursor at the beginning of the selection.
- **After** - Places the cursor at the end of the selection.
- **Inside, at the end** - Places the cursor at the end of the selection.

selection

Specifies if the operation should select the element obtained from the XPath expression, its content, or nothing at all. The possible values of the argument are: `None`, `Element`, and `Content`.

MoveElementOperation

Flexible operation for moving an XML element to another location from the same document. XPath expressions are used to identify the source element and the target location. The operation takes the following parameters:

sourceLocation

XPath expression that identifies the content to be moved.

deleteLocation

XPath expression that identifies the node to be removed. This parameter is optional. If missing, the **sourceLocation** parameter will also identify the node to be deleted.

surroundFragment

A string representation of an XML fragment. The moved node will be wrapped in this string before moving it in the destination.

targetLocation

XPath expression that identifies the location where the node must be moved to.

insertPosition

Argument that indicates the insert position.

moveOnlySourceContentNodes

When set to `true`, only the content of the source element is moved.

processTrackedChangesForXpathLocations

When nodes are located via an XPath expression and the nodes are deleted with *Change Tracking (on page 2234)* enabled, they are considered as being present by default (thus, the *change tracking* is ignored). If you set this argument to `true` and *change tracking* is enabled, deleted nodes will be ignored when the XPath locations are computed (thus, the *change tracking* is NOT ignored).

alwaysPreserveTrackedChangesInMovedContent

When set to `true`, tracked changes are included when a copied fragment is inserted in a document, regardless of the current state of the **Track Changes** feature.

OpenInSystemAppOperation

Opens a resource in the system application that is associated with the resource in the operating system. The arguments of this operation are:

resourcePath

An XPath expression that, when executed, returns the path of the resource to be opened. Editor variables *(on page 199)* are expanded in the value of this parameter, before the expression is executed.

isUnparsedEntity

Possible values are `true` or `false`. If the value is `true`, the value of the **resourcePath** argument is treated as the name of an unparsed entity.

ReloadContentOperation

Reloads the content of the editor by re-reading the information from the URL used to open it. It accepts the following argument:

markAsNotModified

The possible values are `true` and `false`. After reloading the editor, the content may appear as modified and in some cases where the content is already present on the file server, you would not want the user to save it again. You can set this flag to `true` to prevent the editor from showing the content as modified.

RemovePseudoClassOperation

An operation that removes a pseudo-class from an element. Accepts the following parameters:

name

Name of the pseudo-class to be removed.

includeAllNodes

The possible values are `yes` and `no`. If set to `yes`, comments, CDATA, and text nodes are included when evaluating XPath expressions. If set to `no`, they are ignored.

elementLocation

The XPath location that identifies the element. If it is not defined, then the element at the cursor position is used. It can also identify multiple elements, in which case the pseudo class will be removed from all of them.

Example:

Suppose that there is a pseudo-class called `myClass` on the element `paragraph` and there are CSS styles matching the pseudo-class.

```
paragraph:myClass{
  font-size:2em;
  color:red;
}
paragraph{
```

```
  color:blue;
}
```

In the previous example, by removing the pseudo-class, the layout of the `paragraph` is rebuilt by matching the other rules (in this case, the foreground color of the `paragraph` element will become blue.

RenameElementOperation

This operation allows you to rename all occurrences of the elements identified by an XPath expression. The operation requires two parameters:

elementName

The new element name.

elementLocation

The XPath expression that identifies the element occurrences to be renamed. If this parameter is missing, the operation renames the element at current cursor position.

ReplaceElementContentOperation

An operation that replaces the content of the element at the cursor location (or fully selected element). The operation accepts the following parameters:

fragment

Specifies the fragment that will be inserted as the element content.

elementLocation

An XPath expression that identifies the element. If it is not defined, then the element at the cursor position is used.

SetPseudoClassOperation

An operation that sets a pseudo-class to an element. The operation accepts the following parameters:

elementLocation

An XPath expression that identifies the element that will have the pseudo-class set. If it is not defined, then the element at the cursor position is used.

name

The pseudo-class local name.

includeAllNodes

The possible values are `yes` and `no`. If set to `yes`, comments, CDATA, and text nodes are included when evaluating XPath expressions. If set to `no`, they are ignored.

ShowElementDocumentationOperation

Opens the associated specification HTML page for the current element. The operation accepts as parameter a URL pattern that points to the HTML page containing the documentation.

StopCurrentTransformationScenarioOperation

Allows you to stop the transformation scenario that is currently running.

Notice:
This operation is not applicable to the Oxygen XML Author Component or the Oxygen XML Web Author.

SurroundWithFragmentOperation

Surrounds the selected content with a text fragment. Since the fragment can have multiple nodes, the surrounded content will be always placed in the first leaf element. If there is no selection, the operation will simply insert the fragment at the cursor position. For more details about the list of parameters go to: Arguments of SurroundWithFragmentOperation *(on page 1580)*.

SurroundWithTextOperation

This operation has two arguments (two text values) that will be inserted before and after the selected content. If there is no selected content, the two sections will be inserted at the cursor position. The arguments of the operation are:

header

The text that is placed before the selection.

footer

The text that is placed after the selection.

TogglePseudoClassOperation

An implementation of an operation to toggle on/off the pseudo-class of an element. Accepts the following parameters:

name

Name of the pseudo-class to be toggled on/off.

includeAllNodes

The possible values are `yes` and `no`. If set to `yes`, comments, CDATA, and text nodes are included when evaluating XPath expressions. If set to `no`, they are ignored.

elementLocation

The XPath location that identifies one or more elements that will have the pseudo class toggled. If it is not defined, then the element at the cursor position is used.

Example:

```
paragraph:myClass{
  color:red;
}
paragraph{
  color:blue;
}
```

By default, the paragraph content is rendered in blue. Suppose that you have a `TogglePseudoClassOperation` configured for the `myClass` pseudo-class. Invoking it the first time will set the `myClass` pseudo-class and the paragraph will be rendered in red. Invoking the operation again, will remove the pseudo-class and the visible result will be a blue rendered `paragraph` element.

ToggleSurroundWithElementOperation

This operation allows wrapping and unwrapping content in a specific wrapper element that can have certain attributes specified on it. It is useful to implement toggle actions such as highlighting text as bold, italic, or underline. The operation supports processing multiple selection intervals, such as multiple cells within a table column selection. The arguments of the operation are:

element

The element to wrap or unwrap content.

schemaAware

This argument applies only on the surround with element operation and controls whether or not the insertion is valid, based upon the schema. If the insertion is not valid, then wrapping action will be broken up into smaller intervals until the wrapping action is valid. For example, if you try to wrap a *paragraph* element with a *bold* element, it would not be valid, so the operation will wrap the text inside the paragraph instead, since it would be valid at that position.

ToggleCommentOperation

This operation allows for commenting or un-commenting the selected content. It does not have any arguments. If the selection is text, the operation wraps the selection in a comment. If the selection is a comment, the operation removes the comment.

UnwrapTagsOperation

This operation allows removing the element tags either from the current element or for an element identified with an XPath location. The argument of the operation is:

unwrapElementLocation

An XPath expression that identifies the element to unwrap. If it is not defined, the element at the cursor position is unwrapped.

XQueryUpdateOperation

Allows you to execute an XQuery Update script directly over content in **Author** mode.

> **Notice:**
> This operation is not applicable to the Oxygen XML Author Component or the Oxygen XML Web Author.

It supports the following arguments:

script

The XQuery Update script to be executed. The value can either be an XQuery script or a URL that points to the XQuery Update script. You can use the *${framework} (on page 206)* or *${frameworkDir} (on page 207)* editor variables to refer the scripts from the *framework* directory.

The script will be executed in the context of the node at the cursor position. If the script declares the following variable, it will also receive the selected nodes (assuming that entire nodes are selected):

```
declare variable $oxyxq:selection external;
```

In the example below *(on page 1566)*, you can see how this argument is used.

externalParams

A string that can assign multiple key-value pairs separated by a comma or a new line character.

For example, if an XQuery script declares two external parameters like this:

```
declare variable $param1 external;

declare variable $param2 external;
```

You can pass custom values for each parameter by setting the **externalParams** to `param1=value1,param2=value2`.

expandXincludeReferences

Makes all *Xinclude* elements transparent to the XQuery transformer. When the *Xinclude* references are transparent, the **XQueryUpdateOperation** can use the referenced elements for further processing in the current document, but it cannot change their values in the original document. The default value is `false`, which means the *Xinclude* elements are not transparent.

An example of an *XQuery Update Script* that converts paragraphs to list items:

```
declare namespace oxyxq = "http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/xqu";

(: This variable will be linked to the selected nodes assuming that there are
```

```
actually fully selected nodes. For example this selection will return null:

<p>{SEL_START}text{SEL_END} in para</p>

but this will give two "p" elements:

{SEL_END}<p>text</p><p>text2</p>{SEL_END}


If a multiple selection exists it will also be processed and forwarded.

 Again, only fully selected nodes will be passed.

:)

declare variable $oxyxq:selection external;


(: We will process either the selection or the context node :)

let $toProcess := if (empty($oxyxq:selection)) then

    (.)

else

    ($oxyxq:selection)


return if (not(empty($toProcess))) then

        (

        (: Create the list :)

        let $ul :=

        <ul>

            {

                for $sel in $toProcess

                return

                    <li>{$sel}</li>

            }

        </ul>


        return

            (

            (: Delete the processed nodes :)

            for $sel in $toProcess

            return

                delete node $sel,

            (: Inserts the constructed list :)

            insert node $ul

                before $toProcess[1]

            )

        )

    else

        ()
```

XSLTOperation and XQueryOperation

Applies an XSLT or XQuery script on a source element and then replaces or inserts the result in a specified target element.

Notice:
For Oxygen XML Web Author, these operations cannot be invoked using the JavaScript API.

These operations accept the following parameters:

sourceLocation

An XPath expression indicating the element that the script will be applied on. If it is not defined, then the element at the cursor position will be used.

There may be situations where you want to look at an ancestor of the current element and make decisions in the script based on that. To do this, you can set the **sourceLocation** to point to an ancestor node then use the `oxy:current-element()` function to access the current element, as in the following example:

```
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform" version="2.0"
  xpath-default-namespace="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook"
  xmlns:oxy="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/author/xpath-extension-functions"
                          exclude-result-prefixes="oxy">
    <xsl:template match="/">
        <xsl:apply-templates select="oxy:current-element()"/>
    </xsl:template>


    <xsl:template match="para">
        <!-- And the context is again inside the current element,
        but we can use information from the entire XML -->
        <xsl:variable
            name="keyImage" select="//imagedata[@fileref='images/lake.jpeg']
              /ancestor::inlinemediaobject/@xml:id/string()"/>
        <xref linkend="{$keyImage}" role="key_include"
                xmlns="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook"/>
    </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

targetLocation

An XPath expression indicating the insert location for the result of the transformation. If it is not defined then the insert location will be at the cursor location.

script

The script content (XSLT or XQuery). The base system ID for this will be the *framework* file, so any include/import reference will be resolved relative to the `.framework` file that contains this action definition.

For example, for the following script, the imported `xslt_operation.xsl` needs to be located in the current *framework* directory.

```
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
                version="1.0">
    <xsl:import href="xslt_operation.xsl"/>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

You can also use a path for an included or imported reference. When using a path, the following apply:

- A relative path is resolved to the *framework* directory.
- The *${framework}* editor variable *(on page 206)* can also be used to reference resources from the *framework* directory.
- The path is passed through the catalog mappings. It helps to use an absolute URL (for instance, `http://www.oxygenxml.com/fr/testy.xsl`) and map it in the `catalog.xml` file from the *framework* directory to a resource from the *framework*.

action

The insert action relative to the node determined by the target XPath expression. It can be: Replace, At cursor position, Before, After, Inside as first child or Inside as last child.

caretPosition

The position of the cursor after the action is executed. It can be: `Preserve`, `Before`, `Start`, `First editable position`, `End`, or `After`. If this parameter is not set, you can still indicate the position of the cursor by using the *${caret}* editor variable *(on page 205)* in the inserted content.

expandEditorVariables

Parameter controlling the expansion of editor variables *(on page 199)* returned by the script processing. Expansion is enabled by default.

suspendTrackChanges

It has 2 possible values (`true` and `false`). The default value is `false`. When set to `true`, the *Track Changes (on page 2234)* feature is deactivated. When using this argument, after the action is finished, the state of the *Track Changes* feature is restored to its initial value.

externalParams

A string that can assign multiple key-value pairs separated by a comma or a new line character.

For example, if an XQuery script declares two external parameters like this:

```
declare variable $param1 external;

declare variable $param2 external;
```

You can pass custom values for each parameter by setting the **externalParams** to `param1=value1,param2=value2`.

escapeEntityRefs

Escapes entity references in processed content to plain text and unescapes them back in the returned content.

XSLTOperation Example: Sort a list with respect to the language declared on the root element:

Suppose you want an action that will sort a list with respect to the language declared on the root element and you have an XML file like this:

```
<article xml:lang="en">
  <ul>
     <li>B</li>
     <li>C</li>
     <li>A</li>
  </ul>
</article>
```

The **XSLTOperation** needs to be configured as follows:

- **sourceLocation** is set to /* so that the script has access to the root element and its children.
- **targetLocation** is left untouched (assuming that the action is active only when the cursor is inside the list).

The XSLT script would look like this:

```
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:oxy="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/author/xpath-extension-functions"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs oxy" version="2.0">


  <xsl:template match="/">
      <!--
          sourceLocation parameter was set to /* to have a larger context.
          We can pinpoint the element that contained the caret
          using the oxy:current-element() function.
      -->
      <xsl:apply-templates select="oxy:current-element()"/>
  </xsl:template>


  <xsl:template match="ul">
```

```
    <!-- Because the sourceLocation parameter was set to /* we now have access to
         the root element and its attributes. -->
    <xsl:variable name="lang" select="/*/@xml:lang"/>
    <xsl:variable name="collationURI">
      <xsl:value-of select="concat('http://www.w3.org/2013/collation/UCA?lang=', $lang)"/>
    </xsl:variable>

      <xsl:copy>
          <xsl:copy-of select="@*"/>

          <!-- Copy the list items, but sorted. -->
          <xsl:apply-templates select="li">
              <xsl:sort collation="{$collationURI}" select="text()"/>
          </xsl:apply-templates>
      </xsl:copy>
  </xsl:template>

  <!-- This copy template will handle the contents of the list items. -->
  <xsl:template match="@* | node()">
      <xsl:copy>
          <xsl:apply-templates select="@* | node()"/>
      </xsl:copy>
  </xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

Using Entities and Xincludes with the XSLTOperation

- **Entities** are treated as plain text and not expanded.
- **Xincludes** are resolved in the result, and you can alter the XML obtained afterward using the XSLT/XQuery script of the operation, but you cannot alter the included document itself.

InvokeAIActionOperation

Asynchronously invoke an existing AI action using the **AI Positron** add-on optionally installed in the application. If the action ID is not found or the **AI Positron Assistant** add-on is not accessible, then error messages are reported.

Notice:
This operation is not compatible with Oxygen XML Web Author.

This operation accepts the following parameters:

actionID

The ID of the AI action to invoke.

imposedSelectionXPath

An XPath expression indicating the XML element to select before invoking the action. If it is not defined, then the selection is left as it is before the action is invoked.

Editor Variables in Author Mode Operations

Author mode operations can include parameters that contain the following editor variables *(on page 199)*:

- **${caret}** - The position where the cursor is located. This variable can be used in a code template, in **Author** mode operations, or in a **selection** *plugin*.

  > **Note:**
  > The **${caret}** editor variable is available only for parameters that take XML content as values. It is replaced with the **${UNIQUE_CARET_MARKER_FOR_AUTHOR}** macro. The default Author operations process this macro and position the cursor at the designated offset.

  > **Note:**
  > The **${caret}** editor variable can be used for setting a fixed cursor position inside an XML fragment. To set the cursor position depending on the fragment inserted in the document, you can use **AuthorDocumentFilter** and inside the **insertFragment(AuthorDocumentFilterBypass, int, AuthorDocumentFragment)** method, use the **AuthorDocumentFragment.setSuggestedRelativeCaretOffset(int)** API on the given fragment.

- **${selection}** - The currently selected text content in the currently edited document. This variable can be used in a code template, in **Author** mode operations, or in a **selection** *plugin*.
- **${ask('message', type, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1'; 'real_value2':'rendered_value2'; ...), 'default_value', @id)}** - To prompt for values at runtime, use the *ask('message', type, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1'; 'real_value2':'rendered_value2'; ...), 'default-value')* editor variable. You can set the following parameters:
  - **'message'** - The displayed message. Note the quotes that enclose the message.
  - **'default-value'** - Optional parameter. Provides a default value.
  - **@id** - Optional parameter. Used for identifying the variable to reuse the answer using the **${answer(@id)}** editor variable.
  - **type** - Optional parameter (defaults to **generic**), with one of the following values:

    > **Note:**
    > The title of the dialog box will be determined by the type of parameter and as follows:

- For *url* and *relative_url* parameters, the title will be the name of the parameter and the value of the *'message'*.
- For the other parameters listed below, the title will be the name of that respective parameter.
- If no parameter is used, the title will be "Input".

Notice:
Editor variables that are used within a parameter of another editor variable must be escaped within single quotes for them to be properly expanded. For example:

```
${ask( 'Provide a date',generic,'${date(yyyy-MM-dd'T'HH:MM)}')}
```

Parameter	
generic (default)	**Format**: *${ask('message', generic, 'default')}*
	Description: The input is considered to be generic text that requires no special handling.
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Hello world!')}* - The dialog box has a *Hello world!* message displayed. ▪ *${ask('Hello world!', generic, 'Hello again!')}* - The dialog box has a *Hello world!* message displayed and the value displayed in the input box is *'Hello again!'*.
url	**Format:** *${ask('message', url, 'default_value')}*
	Description: Input is considered a URL. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin checks that the provided URL is valid.
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Input URL', url)}* - The displayed dialog box has the name *Input URL*. The expected input type is URL. ▪ *${ask('Input URL', url, 'http://www.example.com')}* - The displayed dialog box has the name *Input URL*. The expected input type is URL. The input field displays the default value *http://www.example.com*.
relative_url	**Format:** *${ask('message', relative_url, 'default')}*
	Description: Input is considered a URL. This parameter provides a file chooser, along with a text field. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin tries to make the URL relative to that of the document you are editing.

Parameter	
	Note: If the *$ask* editor variable is expanded in content that is not yet saved (such as an *untitled* file, whose path cannot be determined), then Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will transform it into an absolute URL. **Example:** *${ask('File location', relative_url, 'C:/example.txt')}* - The dialog box has the name *'File location'*. The URL inserted in the input box is made relative to the currently edited document location.
password	**Format**: *${ask('message', password, 'default')}* **Description:** The input is hidden with bullet characters. **Example:** ▪ *${ask('Input password', password)}* - The displayed dialog box has the name *'Input password'* and the input is hidden with bullet symbols. ▪ *${ask('Input password', password, 'abcd')}* - The displayed dialog box has the name *'Input password'* and the input hidden with bullet symbols. The input field already contains the default **abcd** value.
combobox	**Format:** *${ask('message', combobox, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1';..-.;'real_valueN':'rendered_valueN'), 'default')}* **Description:** Displays a dialog box that offers a drop-down menu. The drop-down menu is populated with the given *rendered_value* values. Choosing such a value will return its associated value (*real_value*). **Note:** The list of *'real_value':'rendered_value'* pairs can be computed using *${xpath_eval()}*. **Note:** The *'default'* parameter specifies the default-selected value and can match either a key or a value. **Example:**

Parameter	
	▪ *${ask('Operating System', combobox, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'macos':'macOS';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'macos')}* - The dialog box has the name *'Operating System'*. The drop-down menu displays the three given operating systems. The associated value will be returned based upon your selection. **Note:** In this example, the default value is indicated by the *osx* key. However, the same result could be obtained if the default value is indicated by *macOS*, as in the following example: *${ask('Operating System', combobox, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'macos':'macOS';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'macOS')}* ▪ *${ask('Mobile OS', combobox, ('ios':'iOS';'and':'Android'), 'Android')}* ▪ *${ask('Mobile OS', combobox, (${xpath_eval(for $pair in (['ios', 'iOS'], ['and', 'Android']) return '"' || $pair?1 || '":"' || $pair?2 || '";')}), 'ios')}*
editable_combobox	**Format:** *${ask('message', editable_combobox, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1';...;'real_valueN':'rendered_valueN'), 'default')}* **Description:** Displays a dialog box that offers a drop-down menu with editable elements. The drop-down menu is populated with the given *rendered_value* values. Choosing such a value will return its associated real value (*real_value*) or the value inserted when you edit a list entry. **Note:** The list of *'real_value':'rendered_value'* pairs can be computed using *${xpath_eval()}*. **Note:** The *'default'* parameter specifies the default-selected value and can match either a key or a value. **Example:** ▪ *${ask('Operating System', editable_combobox, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'macos':'macOS';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'macos')}* - The dialog box has the name *'Operating System'*. The drop-down menu displays the three given operating systems and also allows you to ed-

Parameter	
	it the entry. The associated value will be returned based upon your selection or the text you input. ▪ *${ask('Operating System', editable_combobox, (${xpath_eval(for $pair in (['win', 'Microsoft Windows'], ['macos', 'macOS'], ['lnx', 'Linux/UNIX']) return '"' || $pair?1 || '":"' || $pair?2 || '";")}), 'ios')}*
radio	**Format:** *${ask('message', radio, ('real_value1':'rendered_value1';...;'real_valueN':'rendered_valueN'), 'default')}*
	Description: Displays a dialog box that offers a series of radio buttons. Each radio button displays a *'rendered_value* and will return an associated *real_value*. **Note:** The list of *'real_value':'rendered_value'* pairs can be computed using *${xpath_eval()}*. **Note:** The *'default'* parameter specifies the default-selected value and can match either a key or a value.
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Operating System', radio, ('win':'Microsoft Windows';'macos':'macOS';'lnx':'Linux/UNIX'), 'macos')}* - The dialog box has the name *'Operating System'*. The radio button group allows you to choose between the three operating systems. **Note:** In this example, `macOS` is the default-selected value and if selected, it would return *macos* for the output. ▪ *${ask('Operating System', radio, (${xpath_eval(for $pair in (['win', 'Microsoft Windows'], ['macos', 'macOS'], ['lnx', 'Linux/UNIX']) return '"' || $pair?1 || '":"' || $pair?2 || '";")}), 'ios')}*
textarea	**Format:** *${ask('message', textarea, 'default')}*
	Description: The input is a text area that requires no special handling.

Parameter	
	Example: ▪ *${ask('Hello world!', textarea, 'Hello again!')}* - The dialog box would have a *Hello world!* message displayed and the value of *Hello again!* would be displayed in the text area.

Here is an example of a complex XPath expression for constructing a radio button set:

```
${ask('Bundle for keydefs', radio, (${xpath_eval(let $family := 'utah', $bundles := doc(environment-variable('HOME')
 || '/git/dita-author-tools/resource/properties/bundle-data.xml')/*/family[@name eq $family]/*, $pairs :=
 $bundles ! concat('''',./@bundle-code, ''','':',  ''',./@map-filename,''')  return string-join($pairs, ';'))}),
 @bundle-code)}
```

- **${timeStamp}** - The timestamp, which is the current time in Unix format. For example, it can be used to save transformation results in multiple output files on each transformation.
- **${uuid}** - Universally unique identifier, a unique sequence of 32 hexadecimal digits generated by the Java UUID class.
- **${id}** - Application-level unique identifier. It is a short sequence of 10-12 letters and digits that is not guaranteed to be universally unique.
- **${cfn}** - Current file name without the extension and parent folder. The current file is the one currently open and selected.
- **${cfne}** - Current file name with extension. The current file is the one currently open and selected.
- **${cf}** - Current file as file path, that is the absolute file path of the currently edited document.
- **${cfd}** - Current file folder as file path, that is the path of the currently edited document up to the name of the parent folder.
- **${frameworksDir}** - The path (as file path) of the `frameworks` directory. When used to define references inside a framework configuration, it expands to the parent folder of that specific framework folder. Otherwise, it expands to the main `frameworks` folder defined in the **Document Type Association > Locations** preferences page.
- **${pd}** - The file path to the folder that contains the current project file (`.xpr`).
- **${oxygenInstallDir}** - Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation folder as file path.
- **${homeDir}** - The path (as file path) of the user home folder.
- **${pn}** - Current project name.
- **${env(VAR_NAME)}** - Value of the *VAR_NAME* environment variable. The environment variables are managed by the operating system. If you are looking for Java System Properties, use the **${system(var.name)}** editor variable.
- **${system(var.name)}** - Value of the *var.name* Java System Property. The Java system properties can be specified in the command-line arguments of the Java runtime as *-Dvar.name=var.value*. If you are looking for operating system environment variables, use the **${env(VAR_NAME)}** editor variable instead.

- **${date(pattern)}** - Current date. The allowed patterns are equivalent to the ones in the Java SimpleDateFormat class. **Example:** *yyyy-MM-dd*.

  > **Note:**
  > This editor variable supports both the **xs:date** and **xs:datetime** parameters. For details about **xs:date**, go to: http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#date. For details about **xs:datetime**, go to: http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#dateTime.

How to Find More Information About the Arguments of an Operation

If you need to find more information about the arguments of an operation, there are several places where this information is available:

- In the API documentation for the particular operation.
- By invoking the `getArguments()` method on the operation.
- In the source code of the operation.
- In Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:
  1. Go to **Options > Preferences > Document Type Association**, select a document type and click the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*.
  2. Go to the **Author** tab and then the **Actions** subtab. At the bottom of this subtab, click **New** to open the **Action** dialog box *(on page 91)*.
  3. Locate the **Operation** field and click the **Choose** button on the right side. This will open a dialog box that displays the default operations.
  4. Double-click the operation (or select it and click **OK**).

     The arguments for the operation will now be displayed in the **Action** dialog box *(on page 91)*.

Arguments of InsertFragmentOperation

fragment

This argument has a textual value. This value is parsed by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin as it was already in the document at the cursor position. You can use entity references declared in the document and it is namespace aware. The fragment may have multiple roots.

You can even use namespace prefixes that are not declared in the inserted fragment, if they are declared in the document where the insertion is done. For the sake of clarity, you should always prefix and declare namespaces in the inserted fragment!

If the fragment contains namespace declarations that are identical to those found in the document, the namespace declaration attributes will be removed from elements contained by the inserted fragment.

There are two possible scenarios:

- **Prefixes that are not bound explicitly**

  For instance, the fragment:

```
<x:item id="dty2"/>
&ent;
<x:item id="dty3"/>
```

  Can be correctly inserted in the document: ('|' marks the insertion point):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE x:root [
    <!ENTITY ent "entity">
]>

<x:root xmlns:x="nsp">
  |
</x:root>
```

  Result:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE x:root [
    <!ENTITY ent "entity">
]>
<x:root xmlns:x="nsp">
    <x:item id="dty2"/>
    &ent;
    <x:item id="dty3"/>
</x:root>
```

- **Default namespaces**

  If there is a default namespace declared in the document and the *document fragment (on page 2229)* does not declare a namespace, the elements from the fragment are considered to be in **no namespace**.

  For instance, the fragment:

```
<item id="dty2"/>
<item id="dty3"/>
```

  Inserted in the document:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<root xmlns="nsp">
|
</root>
```

Gives the result document:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<root xmlns="nsp">
    <item xmlns="" id="dty2"/>
    <item xmlns="" id="dty3"/>
</root>
```

insertLocation

An XPath expression that is relative to the current node. It selects the reference node for the fragment insertion. When missing, the fragment will be inserted at the cursor position.

insertPosition

Specifies where the insertion is made relative to the reference node selected by the *insertLocation*. It can be one of the following constants:

- **Inside as first child** (default value) - The fragment is inserted as first child of the reference node.
- **Inside as last child** - The fragment is inserted as the last child of the reference node.
- **After** - The fragment is inserted after the reference node.
- **Before** - The fragment is inserted before the reference node.

goToNextEditablePosition

After inserting the fragment, the first editable position is detected and the cursor is placed at that location. It handles any in-place editors used to edit attributes. It will be ignored if the fragment specifies a cursor position using the **${caret}** editor variable *(on page 205)*. The possible values of this action are **true** and **false**.

schemaAware

This argument applies only on the surround with element operation and controls whether or not the insertion is valid, based upon the schema. If the insertion is not valid, then wrapping action will be broken up into smaller intervals until the wrapping action is valid. For example, if you try to wrap a *paragraph* element with a *bold* element, it would not be valid, so the operation will wrap the text inside the paragraph instead, since it would be valid at that position.

insertEvenIfInvalid

The possible values of this argument are **true** and **false**. If **true**, the content that would make the document invalid is accepted. If **false** and the insertion is not valid, the operation will not be executed and an error message will be displayed.

Arguments of SurroundWithFragmentOperation

fragment

The XML fragment that will surround the selection. For example, consider the fragment:

```
<F>
   <A></A>
   <B>
     <C></C>
   </B>
</F>
```

and the document:

```
<doc>
  <X></X>
  <Y></Y>
  <Z></Z>
<doc>
```

Considering the selected content to be surrounded is the sequence of elements `X` and `Y`, then the result is:

```
<doc>
   <F>
      <A>
         <X></X>
         <Y></Y>
      </A>
      <B>
        <C></C>
      </B>
   </F>
  <Z></Z>
<doc>
```

Since the element `A` was the first leaf in the fragment, it received the selected content. The fragment was then inserted in the place of the selection.

Note:
If the first leaf is not the desired location for the surrounded fragment, you can use ro.sync.ecss.extensions.commons.operations.InsertOrReplaceFragmentOperation and set the following arguments:

fragment

The XML fragment that will surround the selection. Use the `${selection}` editor variable in the location you want to place the surrounded fragment.

schemaAware

Set it to *false* to avoid moving the fragment if it is not valid at the given location.

schemaAware

This argument applies only on the surround with element operation and controls whether or not the insertion is valid, based upon the schema. If the insertion is not valid, then wrapping action will be broken up into smaller intervals until the wrapping action is valid. For example, if you try to wrap a *paragraph* element with a *bold* element, it would not be valid, so the operation will wrap the text inside the paragraph instead, since it would be valid at that position.

Note:
If a selection exists, the surround with fragment operation is not schema aware.

Adding a Custom Operation to an Existing Framework

This task explains how to add a custom **Author** mode operation to an existing *framework (on page 2231)* (document type).

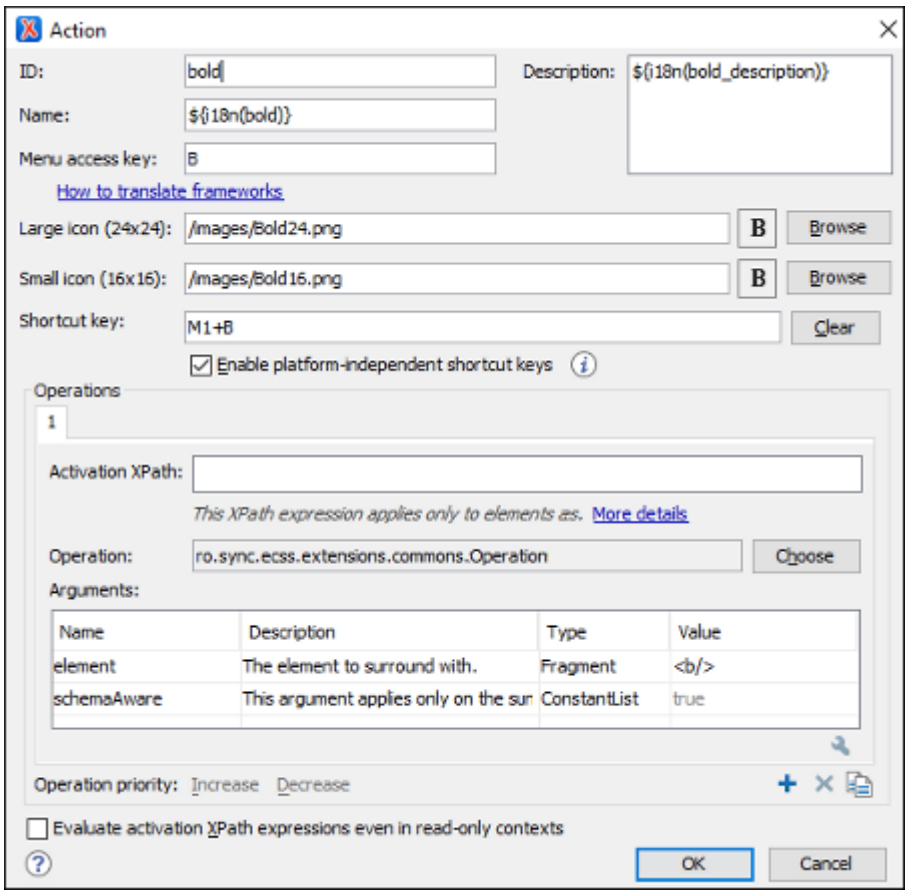
1. Set up a sample project.
2. A variety of classes implement the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperation* interface. Depending on your use-case, modify one of these classes.
3. Pack the operation class inside a Java *JAR* library.
4. Copy the *JAR* library to your framework directory (for example, `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/[FRAMEWORK_DIR]`).
5. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, and edit the document type (you need write access to the `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`) to open the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*.
    a. In the **Classpath** tab, add a reference to your JAR library (for example, `${framework}/customAction.jar`).
    b. Go to the **Author** tab, then go to the **Actions** subtab.
    c. Click the + **New** button and use the **Action** dialog box *(on page 91)* to create a new action that uses your custom operation.
    d. Mount the action to the toolbars or menus. You can also define a shortcut key.
6. Share the modifications *(on page 1691)* with your colleagues. The files that should be shared are your `customAction.jar` library and the `.framework` configuration file from the `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/[FRAMEWORK_DIR]` directory.

Related Information:
AuthorOperation API

Example: Configuring the Insert Section Action for a Framework

This topic describes the procedure for defining the **Insert Section** action for a custom *framework (on page 2231)*. It is assumed that the icon files, $ (`Section16.gif`) for the menu item and § (`Section20.gif`) for the toolbar, are already available. Although you could use the same icon size for both the menu and toolbar, usually the icons from the toolbars are larger than the ones found in the menus. These files should be placed in your custom *framework* directory (`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]\frameworks\[CUSTOM_FRAMEWORK_DIR]`).

Figure 283. Action Dialog Box



1. Set the **ID** field to **insert_section**. This is a unique action identifier.
2. Set the **Name** field to **Insert Section**. This will be the action's name, displayed as a tooltip when the action is placed in the toolbar, or as the menu item name.
3. Set the **Menu access key** to **i**. On Windows, the menu items can be accessed using **Alt+letter** keys combination, when the menu is visible. The *letter* is visually represented by underlining the first letter from the menu item name having the same value.
4. Add a **Description**.
5. Set the **Large icon (20x20)** field to `${framework}/Section20.gif`. A good practice is to store the image files inside the *framework* directory and use editor variable *(on page 199)* **${framework}** to make the image relative to the *framework* location.

If the images are bundled in a *JAR (on page 2231)* archive together with some Java operations implementation, for instance, it might be convenient for you to reference the images not by the file name, but by their relative path location in the class-path.

If the image file `Section20.gif` is located in the **images** directory inside the *JAR* archive, you can reference it by using **/images/Section20.gif**. The *JAR* file must be added into the **Classpath** list.

6. Set the **Small icon (16x16)** field to `${framework}/Section16.gif`.
7. Click the text field next to **Shortcut key** and set it to **Ctrl+Shift+S (Meta+Shift+S on macOS)**. This will be the key combination to trigger the action using the keyboard only.
   The shortcut is enabled only by adding the action to the main menu of **Author** mode *(on page 1586)*, which contains all the actions that the author will have in a menu for the current document type.
8. At this time the action has no functionality added to it. Next you must define how this action operates. An action can have multiple operation modes. The first action mode enabled by the evaluation of its associated XPath expression will be executed when the action is triggered by the user. The XPath expression needs to be version 2.0 and its scope must be only element and attribute nodes of the edited document. Otherwise, the expression will not return a match and will not trigger the action. If the expression is left empty, the action will be enabled anywhere in the scope of the root element. For this example, suppose you want the action to add a section only if the current element is either a `<book>`, `<article>`, or another `<section>`.
   a. Set the XPath expression field to:
   ```
   local-name()='section' or local-name()='book' or
    local-name()='article'
   ```
   b. Set the **invoke operation** field to *InsertFragmentOperation* built-in operation, designed to insert an XML fragment at the cursor position. This belongs to a set of built-in operations, a complete list of which can be found in the Author Default Operations *(on page 1554)* section. This set can be expanded with your own Java operation implementations.
   c. Configure the arguments section as follows:
   ```
   <section xmlns=
   "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation">
       <title/>
   </section>
   ```
   `insertLocation` - leave it empty. This means the location will be at the cursor position.
   `insertPosition` - select "**Inside**".

Example: Configuring the Insert Table Action for a Framework

This topic describes the procedure for defining the **Insert Table** action for a custom *framework (on page 2231)*. Suppose that you want to create an action that inserts a table with three rows and three columns into

a document and the first row is the table header. As with the insert section action *(on page 1583)*, you will use the *InsertFragmentOperation* built-in operation.

Place the icon files for the menu item, and for the toolbar, in your custom *framework* directory (`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]\frameworks\[CUSTOM_FRAMEWORK_DIR]`).

1. Set **ID** field to **insert_table**.
2. Set **Name** field to **Insert table**.
3. Set **Menu access key** field to **t**.
4. Set **Description** field to **Adds a table element**.
5. Set **Toolbar icon** to **${framework} / toolbarIcon.png**.
6. Set **Menu icon** to **${framework} / menuIcon.png**.
7. Set **Shortcut key** to **Ctrl + Shift + T (Command + Shift + T on macOS)**.
8. Set up the action's functionality:

    a. Set **XPath expression** field to `true()`.
    `true()` is equivalent with leaving this field empty.

    b. Set **Invoke operation** to use **InsertFragmentOperation** built-in operation that inserts an XML fragment to the cursor position.

    c. Configure operation's arguments as follows:

    fragment - set it to:

    ```
    <table xmlns=
    "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation">
      <header><td/><td/><td/></header>
      <tr><td/><td/><td/></tr>
      <tr><td/><td/><td/></tr>
    </table>
    ```

    `insertLocation` - to add tables at the end of the section use the following code:

    ```
    ancestor::section/*[last()]
    ```

    `insertPosition` - Select **After**.

Using Retina/HiDPI Icons for the Actions from a Framework

Higher resolution icons can also be included in customized *frameworks (on page 2231)* for rendering them in a Retina or HiDPI display. The icons can be referenced directly from the **Document Type Congifuration** dialog box *(on page 83)* (from the **Action** dialog box *(on page 91)*) or from an API (*ro.sync.exml.workspace.api.node.customizer.XMLNodeRendererCustomizer (on page 1672)*).

As with any image, the higher resolution icons are stored in the same images folder as the normal resolution images and they are identified by a scaling factor that is included in the name of the image files. For instance, icons with a Retina scaling factor of 2 will include *@2x* in the name (for example, `myIcon@2x.png`).

Developers should not specify the path of the alternate icons (*@2x* or *@3x*) in the **Action** dialog box *(on page 91)* or the *XMLNodeRendererCustomizer* API *(on page 1672)*. When using a Retina or HiDPI display, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically searches the folder of the *normal* icon for a corresponding image file with a Retina scaling factor in the name. If the higher resolution icon file does not exist, the *normal* icon is scaled and used instead.

Related Information:

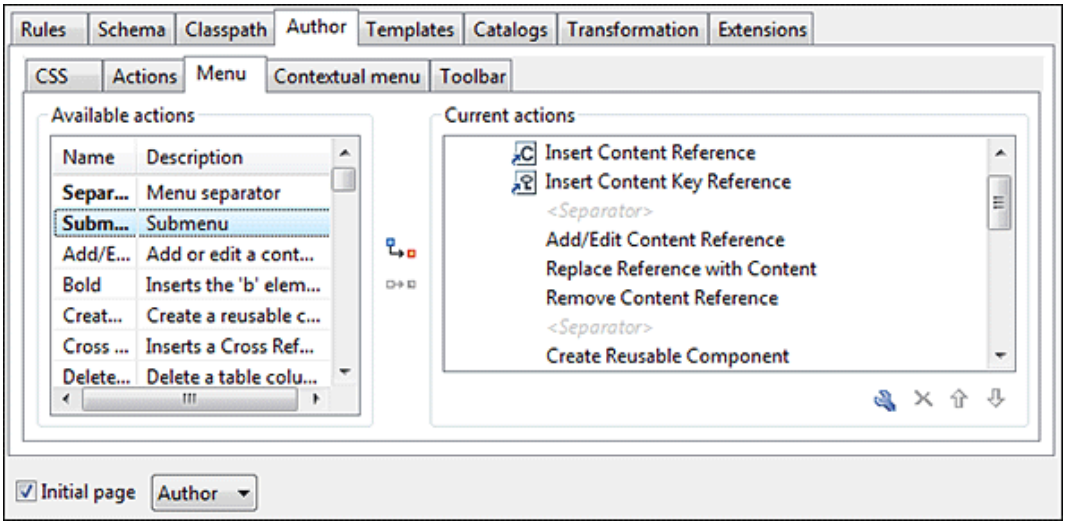
Retina/HiDPI Images in Author Mode *(on page 472)*

Customizing the Menu for a Framework

Defined actions can be grouped into customized menus in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin menu bar.

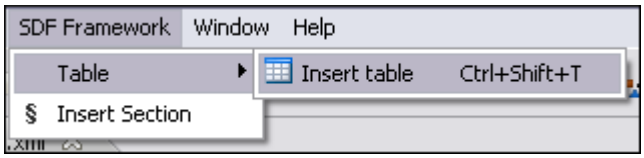
1. Open the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*, select your custom *framework (on page 2231)*, and go to the **Author** tab.
2. Go to the **Menu** subtab. In the left side you have the list of actions and some special entries:
   - **Submenu** - Creates a submenu. You can nest an unlimited number of menus.
   - **Separator** - Creates a separator into a menu. This way you can logically separate the menu entries.
3. The right side of the panel displays the current actions for that menu tree. To change its name, click this label to select it, then click the **Edit** button.
4. Select the **Submenu** label in the left panel section and the appropriate label in the right panel section, then click the **Add as child** button. Change the submenu name to **Table**, using the **Edit** button.
5. Select the **Insert section** action in the left panel section and the **Table** label in the right panel section, then click the **Add as sibling** button.
6. Now select the **Insert table** action in the left panel section and the **Table** in the right panel section. Click the **Add as child** button.

Figure 284. Configuring the Menu



When opening a test document for a custom *framework* in **Author** mode, the menu you created is displayed in between the **Tools** and the **Document** menus. The upper part of the menu contains generic **Author** mode actions (common to all document types) and the two actions created previously (with **Insert table** under the **Table** submenu).

Figure 285. Author Mode Menu



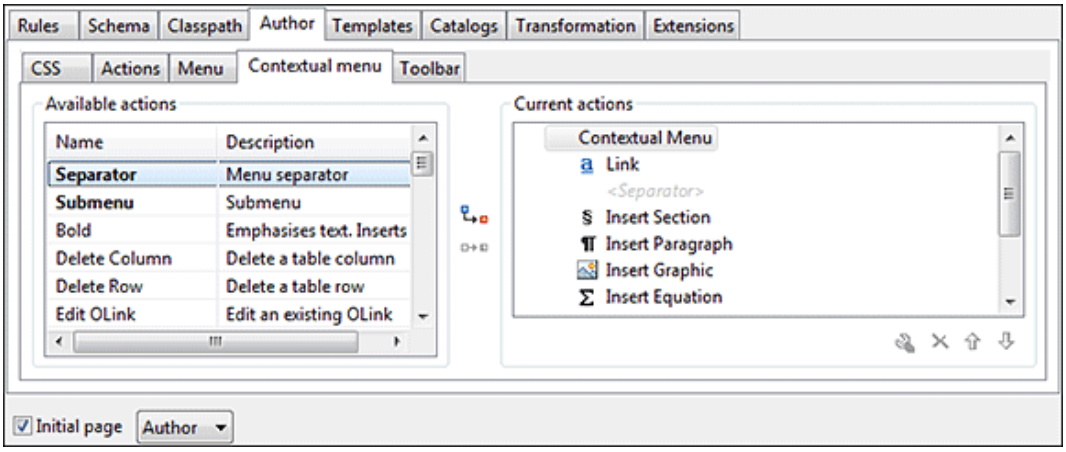
Customizing the Contextual Menu for a Framework

The contextual menu is displayed when you right-click in the **Author** editing area. You can only configure the bottom part of the menu, since the top part is reserved for a list of generic actions (such as Copy, Paste, Undo, etc.)

1. Open the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* for the particular *framework (on page 2231)* and go to the **Author** tab. Next, go to the **Contextual Menu** subtab.
2. Follow the same steps as explained in the Configuring the Main Menu *(on page 1586)*, except changing the menu name because the contextual menu does not have a name.

> **Note:**
> You can choose to reuse a submenu that contains general authoring actions. In this case, all actions (both general and *framework*-specific ones) are grouped together under the same submenu.

Figure 286. Configuring the Contextual Menu



To test it, open the test file, and open the contextual menu. In the lower part there is shown the **Table** sub-menu and the **Insert section** action.

Customizing the Content Completion Assistant for Author Mode Only

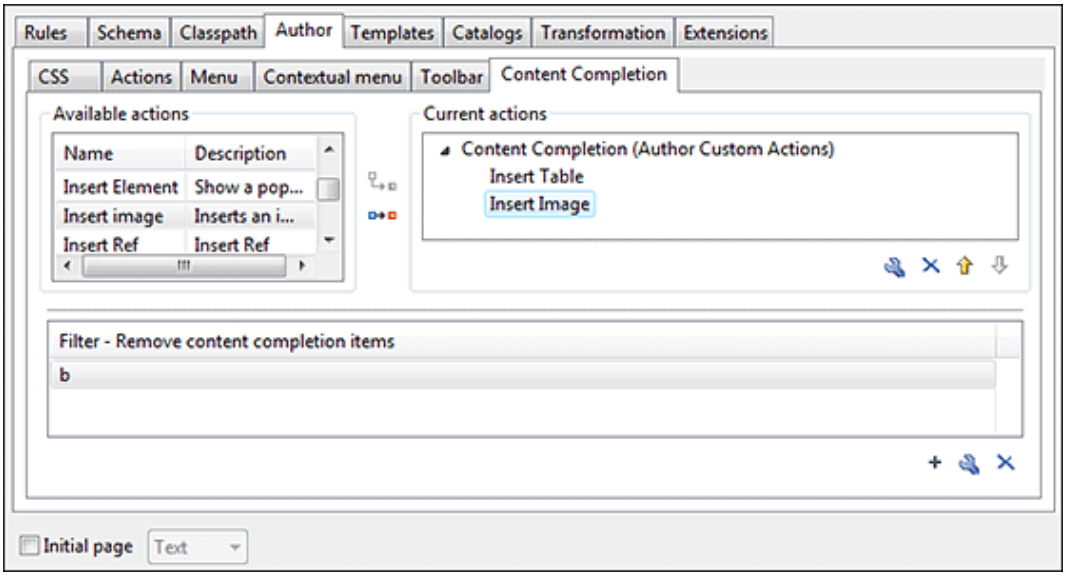
You can customize the content of the following **Author** controls, adding items (which, when invoked, perform custom actions) or filtering the default contributed ones:

- *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* window
- **Elements** view *(on page 386)*
- **Insert Element** menus (from the **Outline** view *(on page 301)* or breadcrumb *(on page 355)* contextual menus)

You can use the content completion customization support in a custom *framework (on page 2231)* by following this procedure:

1. Open the **Document type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* for your custom *framework* and select the **Author** tab. Next, go to the **Content Completion** tab *(on page 103)*.

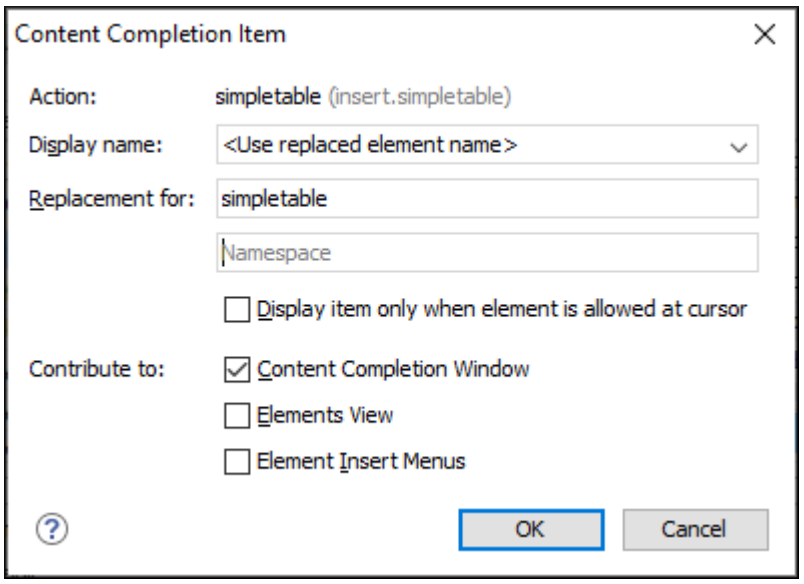
Figure 287. Customize Content Completion



The top side of the **Content Completion** section contains the list with all the actions defined within the custom *framework* and the list of actions that you decided to include in the *Content Completion Assistant* list of proposals. The bottom side contains the list with all the items that you decided to remove from the *Content Completion Assistant* list of proposals.

2. If you want to add a custom action to the list of current **Content Completion** proposals, select the action item from the **Available actions** list and click the **Add as child** or **Add as sibling** button to include it in the **Current actions** list. A **Content Completion Item** dialog box appears, giving you the possibility to select where to provide the selected action.

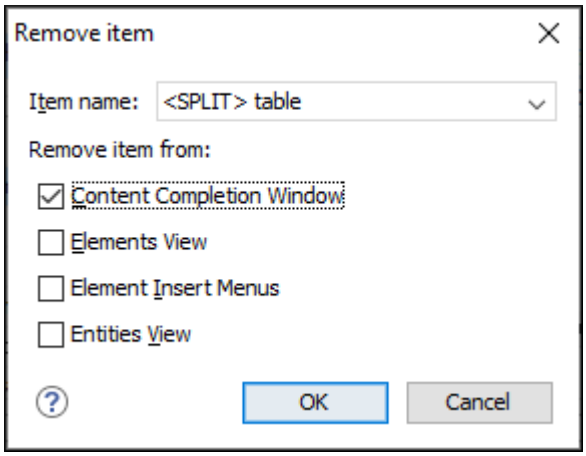
Figure 288. Content Completion Item Dialog Box



3. If you want to exclude a certain item from the **Content Completion** proposals, you can use the **Add** button from the **Filter - Remove content completion items** list. The **Remove item** dialog box is

displayed, allowing you to input the item name and to choose the controls that filter it. The **Item name** combo box accepts wildcards.

Figure 289. Remove Item Dialog Box



Note:
In the **Item name** drop-down menu, **<SPLIT>** refers to the action of splitting the element and creating a new one, while **<ENTER>** refers to the action of inserting a new line.

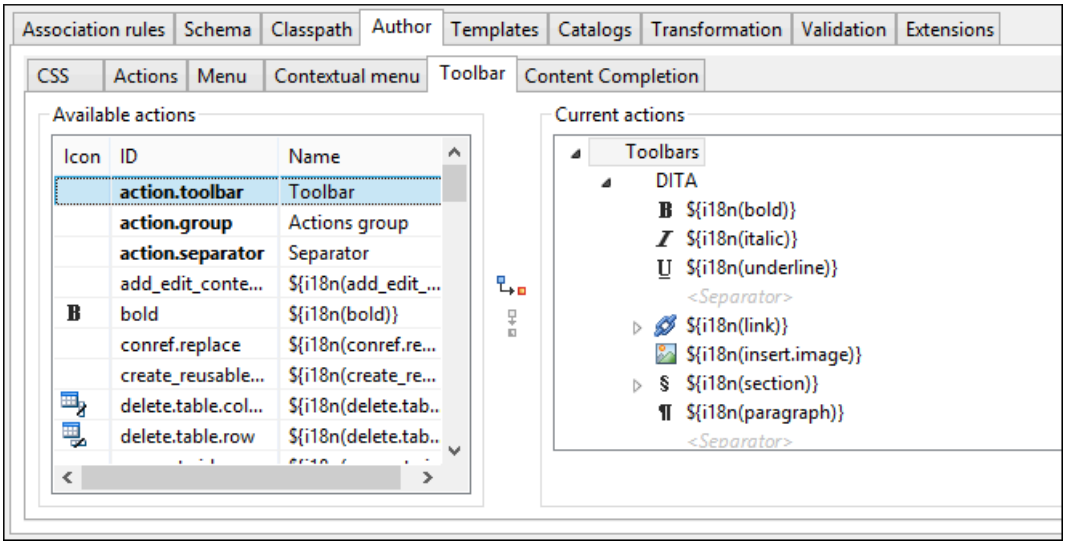
Related Information:
Customizing the Content Completion Assistant Using a Configuration File *(on page 1596)*

Customizing the Toolbars for a Framework

This procedure describes how to add defined actions to a toolbar for a custom *framework (on page 2231)*. You can also create additional custom toolbars with existing or custom actions.

1. Open the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* for your custom *framework* and select the **Author** tab.
2. Go to the **Toolbar** subtab.

Figure 290. Configuring the Toolbar



The panel is divided in two sections. The left side contains a list of actions, while the right side contains an action tree, displaying the list of actions added in the toolbar. The special entry called *Separator* allows you to visually separate the actions in the toolbar.

3. To add an action, select it in the left panel and select the particular toolbar label where you want it added in the right panel section, then click the **Add as child** or **Add as sibling** button.

Result: When opening a document for the particular *framework* in **Author** mode, the toolbar with the new buttons will be displayed in the toolbar area.

Tip:
If you have many custom toolbar actions, or want to group actions according to their category, add more toolbars with custom names and split the actions to better suit your purpose. If your toolbar is not displayed when switching to the **Author** mode, right-click the main toolbar, select **Configure Toolbars**, and make sure the appropriate toolbar (such as the **Author Custom Actions** toolbar) is selected.

Note:
A maximum of 16 toolbars can be added. If you add more, all extra toolbars will be automatically converted to sub-toolbars for the last added toolbar.

Customizing Text-to-Markup Shortcut Patterns

Some built-in frameworks include a configuration file that defines shortcut patterns that can be used in **Author** mode to automatically insert a certain XML structure. More specifically, the XML structure (fragment) automatically replaces a specific prefix pattern. For example, if you are editing a DITA document using the built-in DITA framework, entering a hyphen (**-**) followed by a space at the beginning of a paragraph would

automatically replace them with an unordered list element (`<ul>`) with a child list item element (`<li>`). This is made possible by the *AutoCorrect* mechanism in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

It is possible to customize the particular configuration file (`structureAutocorrect.xml`) to define your own markup insertion shortcut patterns by following these steps:

1. Create a new `resources` folder (if it does not already exist) in the `frameworks` directory for the particular document type (for example, `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/frameworks/dita/resources`).
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association**. Select the particular document type, click the **Edit** button, and in the **Classpath** tab *(on page 88)* add a link to that `resources` folder (if it does not already exist).
3. Create a new `structureAutocorrect.xml` file or edit an existing one (this file already exists in the `resources` folder of particular document types and you can use an existing file as a starting point for your customization).
4. Make the appropriate changes to your `structureAutocorrect.xml` file. The file should look like this:

```
<structure-autocorrect>
  <!-- Unordered lists -->
  <prefix-replacement prefix="-">
    <ul><li/></ul>
  </prefix-replacement>
  <!-- Ordered lists -->
  <prefix-replacement prefix="1.">
    <ol><li/></ol>
  </prefix-replacement>
  <!-- Code block -->
  <prefix-replacement prefix="```">
    <codeblock/>
  </prefix-replacement>
</structure-autocorrect>
```

   Using this example, when a user enters one of the defined prefixes at the start of an element that allows the corresponding fragment, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will automatically replace the prefix with its corresponding fragment. For example, entering a hyphen (**-**) at the beginning of a paragraph followed by a space would automatically replace them with an unordered list element (`<ul>`) with a child list item element (`<li>`). Any subsequently added content would be placed inside the first node/element that does not have a child node/element (in this example, the cursor would be placed in the first `<li>` element).
5. Save the file in the `resources` folder for the particular document type, using the fixed name: `structureAutocorrect.xml` (for example, `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/frameworks/dita/resources/structureAutocorrect.xml`).

6. Restart the application and open a document for your particular framework to test your customization.

> **Note:**
> Once the file is created, changes that you make to it are processed by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin when you press the **Reload** toolbar button.

Customizing Smart Paste Support

The *Smart Paste* feature *(on page 366)* preserves certain style and structure information when copying content from some of the most common applications and pasting into *frameworks* (document types) that support *Smart Paste (on page 367)* in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. For other document types, the default behavior of the paste operation is to keep only the text content without the styling.

The style of the pasted content can be customized by editing an XSLT stylesheet for a particular document type (*framework (on page 2231)*). The XSLT stylesheet must accept an XHTML flavor of the copied content as input, and transform it to the equivalent XML markup that is appropriate for the target document type of the paste operation.

How to Customize the Smart Paste Mapping

To customize the mapping between the markup of the copied content and the markup of the pasted content for a particular document type, follow these steps:

1. Make sure the particular *framework* contains a folder named `resources` in the following path structure:

   ```
   /frameworks/[Document Type]/resources
   ```

2. Create an XSLT file named `xhtml2content.xsl` and save it in the `resources` folder for the particular *framework*.

   For example: `/frameworks/[Document Type]/resources/xhtml2content.xsl`

3. Add your customized styling in the XSLT file. A list of supported parameters can be found in the Supported Parameters for the Custom Smart Paste XSLT *(on page 1594)* section below.

> **Tip:**
> The built-in DITA framework includes an `xhtml2ditaDriver.xsl` file (in `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/dita/resources`) that imports various other stylesheets that apply cleanup and handle the conversion from the pasted HTML content to DITA. If you are using a custom extension of the DITA framework, you can copy the entire

contents of the built-in `dita/resources` folder and customize the stylesheets according to your needs.

4. You can test modifications done in the stylesheet by pasting content without having to restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Result: When you paste content from external applications (such as a web browser or and Office document) to a document that is open in **Author** mode, and that matches the particular *framework*, the styling from the `xhtml2content.xsl` stylesheet will be applied on the clipboard contents.

Customized Smart Paste Stylesheet Sample:

```
<xsl:stylesheet version="1.0"
  xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xhtml="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml"
  xmlns="urn:hl7-org:v3"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xsl xhtml">

  <xsl:output method="xml" indent="no" omit-xml-declaration="yes"/>

  <xsl:template match="xhtml:b | xhtml:strong">
    <content styleCode="bold" >
      <xsl:apply-templates select="@* | node()"/>
    </content>
  </xsl:template>

  <xsl:template match="*">
    <xsl:apply-templates select="@* | node()"/>
  </xsl:template>

  <xsl:template match="@* | node()">
    <xsl:copy>
      <xsl:apply-templates select="@* | node()"/>
    </xsl:copy>
  </xsl:template>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

Supported Parameters for the Custom Smart Paste XSLT

The following parameters can be used in your XSLT stylesheet for customizing the *Smart Paste* mechanism:

inTableContext

The custom XSLT stylesheet receives this parameter with a value of **true** if the end-user is pasting content inside a table.

folderOfPasteTargetXml

A URL pointing to the folder where the currently edited XML document is located. This is used to save images relative to the current XML document.

context.path.names

A sequence of element names showing the current context in the XML document where the paste occurred.

context.path.uris

A sequence of namespaces, one for each context path name.

context.path.separator

The separator between the path names. Its value can be used to split the context path names to a sequence.

By default, there is an extra check in place to ensure that the applied XSLT does not remove the original text from the pasted content. If there is a file called `externalPasteOptions.xml` in the `resources` folder, you can use it to specify the default behavior for checking if the XSLT stylesheet loses content during conversion:

```
<!-- Options that control external paste
(automatic conversions when pasting HTML and URL flavors from the clipboard). -->
<pasteOptions>
    <!-- True to check if the entire sequence of words which get pasted are
         converted to the target vocabulary. If the check fails, the content
         will be inserted as a simple sequence of words without any formatting. -->
    <checkEntireContentIsFullyPreserved>true</checkEntireContentIsFullyPreserved>
</pasteOptions>
```

Related Information:

Smart Paste in Author Mode *(on page 366)*
Oxygen XML Blog: How Special Paste Works in Oxygen (DITA)
Handling When URLs or XHTML Fragments are Dropped or Pasted in Author Mode *(on page 1688)*

Customize the Content Completion Assistant

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin gathers information from the associated schemas (DTDs, XML Schema, RelaxNG) to determine the proposals that appear in the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes support that allows you to customize the *Content Completion Assistant* to suit your specific needs.

There are two ways to customize the *Content Completion Assistant* in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:

- You can add, modify, or remove actions that are proposed for each particular document type (*framework (on page 2231)*) by using the **Content Completion** subtab in the **Document Type Association** configuration dialog box *(on page 103)*. To access this subtab, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, click on the **Author** tab, and then the **Content Completion** subtab.

  Note:
  This works only for Author visual mode.

- You can use a `cc_config.xml` configuration file that is specific to each document type (*framework*) to configure the values that are proposed in certain contexts, to customize the attributes or elements that are proposed, or to customize how certain aspects of the proposals are rendered in the interface. The rest of the topics in this section explain how you can use this configuration file to customize the content completion.

Resources

To see more ideas for various advanced customization possibilities (including how to insert or reject proposals for the content completion assistant), watch our Webinar: **Working with DITA in Oxygen - Customizing the Editing Experience**.

Related information
Customizing the Content Completion Assistant for Author Mode Only *(on page 1588)*

Customizing the Content Completion Assistant Using a Configuration File

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin gathers information from the associated schemas (DTDs, XML Schema, RelaxNG) to determine the proposals that appear in the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes support that allows you to customize the *Content Completion Assistant* to suit your specific needs.

There are two ways to customize the *Content Completion Assistant* in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:

- You can add, modify, or remove actions that are proposed for each particular document type (*framework (on page 2231)*) by using the **Content Completion** subtab in the **Document Type Association** configuration dialog box *(on page 103)*. To access this subtab, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, use the **New**, **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button *(on page 81)*, click on the **Author** tab, and then the **Content Completion** subtab.
- You can use a `cc_config.xml` configuration file that is specific to each document type (*framework*) to configure the values that are proposed in certain contexts, to customize the attributes or elements that are proposed, or to customize how certain aspects of the proposals are rendered in the interface. The rest of the topics in this section explain how you can use this configuration file to customize the content completion.

Setting up the Content Completion Configuration File

To customize the configuration file for the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*, follow these steps:

1. Create a new `resources` folder (if it does not already exist) in the `frameworks` directory for the particular document type (for example, `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/frameworks/dita/resources`).
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association**. Select the particular document type, click the **Edit** button, and in the **Classpath** tab *(on page 88)* add a link to that `resources` folder (if it does not already exist).
3. Create a new configuration file or edit an existing one.
    a. To easily create a new configuration file, you can use the *Content Completion Configuration* document template that is included in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (**File > New > New from Templates > Framework templates > Oxygen Extensions > Content Completion Configuration**). The document template includes details about how each element and attribute is used in the configuration file.
    b. If a configuration file (`cc_config.xml`) already exists for the particular document type (in the `resources` folder), you can modify this existing file.
    c. If you extend a framework, you need to copy the content of the `cc_config.xml` file from the base framework and modify it (e.g. create a `resources` folder in your framework extension folder and place the file there). You also need to make sure that the folder that contains the `cc_config.xml` file in your extension (e.g. `resources`) is listed in the **Classpath** tab *(on page 88)* before the one from the base framework.

       If you only want to make small changes or add extra rules in your custom content completion configuration file, you need to name it `cc_config_ext.xml` and all the rules inside it are merged with the base `cc_config.xml` file. The merging is done by taking all the rules specified in the `cc_config_ext.xml` file into consideration after processing the set of rules from the base `cc_config.xml` file.
4. Make the appropriate changes to your custom configuration file.
5. Save the file in the `resources` folder for the particular document type, using the fixed name: `cc_config.xml` (for example, `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/frameworks/dita/resources/cc_config.xml`).
6. Restart the application and open an XML document. In the *Content Completion Assistant* you should see your customizations.

Tip:
In some cases, you can simply use the **Refresh (F5)** action to test your customizations, without having to restart the application.

Attention:
In the **Classpath** tab *(on page 88)*, if you have references to multiple `resources` folders, each with its own `cc_config.xml` file, the first reference listed in the **Classpath** tab takes precedence and the multiple configuration files are not combined.

Resources

To see more ideas for various advanced customization possibilities (including how to insert or reject proposals for the content completion assistant), watch our Webinar: **Working with DITA in Oxygen - Customizing the Editing Experience**.

Related Information:
Customizing the Content Completion Assistant for Author Mode Only *(on page 1588)*

Configuring the Proposals for Elements and Attributes

There are many cases where elements have a relaxed content model and can accept a large number of child elements. For example, the DITA list item element (`<li>`) accepts more than 60 child elements. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support to allow the content architect to put some constraints on the possible elements or attributes, or to impose some best practices in the way content is edited.

For an example of a specific use-case, suppose that you want to restrict DITA list item elements (`<li>`) to only accept paragraph elements (`<p>`). In this case, the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* should not offer any element other than a paragraph (`<p>`) when a list item (`<li>`) is inserted into a document. It would also be helpful if the required child element (`<p>`) was automatically inserted whenever a list item (`<li>`) is inserted.

One method of changing the content model is to alter the element definition in the associated schema (XML Schema, DTD, RelaxNG), but this may be complicated in some cases. Fortunately, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers a simple, alternative method of using a configuration file to customize the content completion proposals for each element. For more details about the configuration file, see Setting up the Content Completion Configuration File *(on page 1597)*.

Configuring Elements or Attributes that are Proposed for Each Element

For the purposes of customizing the elements or attributes that are proposed for each individual element, the configuration file (`cc_config.xml`) *(on page 1597)* uses `<elementProposals>` elements. This element allows you to customize or filter the child elements and attributes for an element.

Warning:
Note that you can only choose elements or attributes that are already allowed by the schema in a particular context. For example, you cannot specify an element that is not allowed by the schema as a child of a particular node.

Elements:

To control the **elements** that are proposed for an element, you can use the following attributes for the `<elementProposals>` element:

- **path** - A path within the document that matches the element that will have its content completion proposals changed. For example, `"title"` matches all the `<title>` elements in the document, while `"chapter/title"` matches only the `<title>` elements that are direct children of the `<chapter>` element. You can use simplified forms of XPath in this attribute.

  The XPath expressions can accept multiple attribute conditions and inside each condition you can use *AND/OR* boolean operators and parentheses to override the priority.

  You can use one or more of the following attribute conditions (default attribute values are not taken into account):
  - *element[@attr]* - Matches all instances of the specified element that include the specified attribute.
  - *element[not(@attr)]* - Matches all instances of the specified element that do not include the specified attribute.
  - *element[@attr = "value"]* - Matches all instances of the specified element that include the specified attribute with the given value.
  - *element[@attr != "value"]* - Matches all instances of the specified element that include the specified attribute and its value is different than the one given.

  Example: The following are examples of how you could use multiple boolean operators and parentheses inside an attribute condition:

  ```
  *[@a and @b or @c and @d]
  *[@a and (@b or @c) and @d]
  ```

  The following are just examples of how simplified XPath expressions might look like:
  - *elementName*
  - *//elementName*
  - */elementName1/elementName2/elementName3*
  - *//xs:localName*
  - *//xs:documentation[@lang="en"]*

  Note:
  Using a namespace prefix requires that you declare it on the `<elementProposals>` element or on an ancestor element. For example:

```
<elementProposals xmlns:db5="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook"
  path="db5:listitem" insertElements="db5:para" />
```

Other Important Notes:

- If the `@path` attribute is missing, the customization will apply to the proposals for all elements. You can intentionally omit this attribute and use *possibleElements (on page 1600)* or *rejectElements (on page 1601)* to specify or restrict particular elements for a *framework (on page 2231)*.

  For example, suppose that in your DITA documents, you want to restrict your users from using `<image>` and `<fig>` elements because you do not want images to be included in your output. The configuration file should look like this:

  ```
  <elementProposals rejectElements="image fig" />
  ```

  Since the `@path` attribute is missing, the specified element will be filtered out from the proposals for the entire *framework*.

- If the particular document type has name namespaces, the `@path` should contain the qualified name. For example, in TEI documents, if you want to set a list of possible attributes for the `<span>` element, you need to use a qualified name like this (notice the declaration of the namespace prefix "*t*" and its usage):

  ```
  <config xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
      xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/ccfilter/config
       http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/ccfilter/config/ccConfigSchemaFilter.xsd"
      xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/ccfilter/config"
      xmlns:t="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">

      <elementProposals path="t:span" possibleAttributes="type"/>
  ```

- **insertElements** - A space-separated sequence of child element names. Each time the element specified in the `@path` attribute is inserted into the document, these child elements will also be inserted in the order that they are listed. For example, `insertElements="b i"` will insert exactly one `<b>` element, followed by an `<i>` element. An empty value (`""`) means that no child elements should be inserted.

  Note:
  If this attribute is missing, the default required child elements will be inserted, as specified in the associated schema for the document.

- **possibleElements** - A space-separated list of element names that will be shown in the content completion list when invoked inside an element that is specified in the `@path` attribute. For example, `"b i codeph ph"` means that the *Content Completion Assistant* will contain these four elements when

invoked on the element specified in the `@path` attribute. The following other possible values are also supported:

- ***NONE*** - There will be no proposals in the content completion list.
- ***ALL*** - All the possible elements specified in the associated schema will be presented in the content completion list. This is also the default behavior if this attribute is missing.
- ***INSERTED*** - The proposals will be the same list of elements that are defined in the `@insertElements` attribute.

When using this attribute to specify multiple elements, only use one entry with the element names separated by a space:

```
<elementProposals possibleElements="b i codeph ph" />
```

- **rejectElements** - A space-separated list of element names that will be filtered out from the list of proposals that are presented in the content completion list. Each time the element specified in the `@path` attribute is inserted into the document, the list of proposals in the *Content Completion Assistant* will include the entries that are defined in the associated schema, minus the elements specified in this attribute.

Note:

This setting makes the application behave as if the rejected elements were not allowed by the schema in that location. Most of the toolbar actions take the schema into account when inserting content. If the inserted content is not allowed by the schema in that particular location, the application tries to find another location within close proximity where the content is allowed.

For example, suppose you reject the insertions of images in paragraphs. If a user has the cursor inside a paragraph and uses the toolbar action that inserts an image, the image will be inserted after the current paragraph rather than at the current location.

If you want to avoid having users insert an element directly from the content completion mechanism and want them to use a toolbar action instead, it is better to use the Document Type Configuration *(on page 103)* dialog box to remove the element.

When using this attribute to specify multiple elements, only use one entry with the element names separated by a space:

```
<elementProposals rejectElements="image fig imagemap foreign" />
```

- **contentType** - Forces an element to have an imposed content type. The possible values are: `elementOnly`, `mixed`, or `empty`.

```
<elementProposals path="section" insertElements="title p" contentType="elementOnly"/>
```

- **merge** - By default, if there are multiple element proposal rules that match the current element context, then only the rule that has the most specific path is used. By setting the `@merge` attribute to `true` on the proposal rules that might match the same element context, all the rules will be applied. Example:

```
<elementProposals
  path="/*[not(@xml:lang='ja')]//*"
  rejectElements="japaneseTag"
  merge="true"/>

<elementProposals
  path="/*[@xml:lang!='he']//*"
  rejectElements="hebrewTag"
  merge="true"
/>
```

Attributes:

To control the **attributes** that are proposed for an element, you can use the following attributes for the `<elementProposals>` element:

- **path** - A path within the document that matches the element that will have its attribute proposals changed. For example, `"title"` matches all the `<title>` elements in the document, while `"chapter/title"` matches only the `<title>` elements that are direct children of the `<chapter>` element. You can use simplified forms of XPath in this attribute. For examples of such forms of XPath expressions, see the note in XML Preferences *(on page 157)*.

  Note:

  If this attribute is missing, the customization will apply to the proposals for all elements. You can intentionally omit this attribute and use *possibleAttributes (on page 1603)* or *rejectAttributes (on page 1603)* to specify or restrict attributes for an entire *framework*.

  For example, suppose that you only want to allow a limited set of attributes in a customized *framework*. The configuration file should look like this:

  ```
  <elementProposals possibleAttributes="
                id domains href scope format type conref
                props keyref class"/>
  ```

  Since the `@path` attribute is missing, this applies to the entire *framework* and only the specified attributes will be proposed.

- **insertAttributes** - A space-separated sequence of attribute names that will be inserted along with the element.

```
<elementProposals path="ol/li" insertAttributes="product platform"/>
```

- **insertAttribute** - This is similar to the preceding attribute, but this one also allows you to specify a value for the attribute that will be inserted. This attribute should be used like this:

```
<elementProposals path="ol/li">
    <insertAttribute name="platform" value="test"/>
</elementProposals>
```

- **possibleAttributes** - A space-separated list of attribute names that will be shown in the content completion list when invoked inside an element that is specified in the `@path` attribute.

  When using this attribute to specify multiple attributes, only use one entry with the attribute names separated by a space:

```
<elementProposals possibleAttributes="scope format type"/>
```

- **rejectAttributes** - A space-separated list of attribute names that will be filtered out from the list of proposals that are presented in the content completion list. Each time the element specified in the `@path` attribute is inserted into the document, the list of proposals in the *Content Completion Assistant* will include the entries that are defined in the associated schema, minus the attributes specified in this attribute.

  When using this attribute to specify multiple attributes, only use one entry with the attribute names separated by a space:

```
<elementProposals rejectAttributes="importance platform product"/>
```

Other Important Notes About the Configuration File

Important:

- By default, the element names that do not have a namespace prefix are considered from *no-namespace*. Consider declaring the namespace mapping on the root of the configuration file and prefixing the element names from the `@elementPath` and `@model` attributes.
- This configuration file only affects the content completion assistance. It has no effect on validation or operations invoked from other areas in the interface (such as the toolbar or menus).
- To test the effects of your changes, you should restart the application, although in some cases, you can simply use the **Reload (F5)** action to test your customizations.
- When an XML element from the document is matched against a list of configured `elementProposals`, the first one in sequence takes precedence. Therefore, make sure you place the more specific `elementProposals` (those with a longer path) first in your configuration file.
- Simple wildcard patterns can be used in the following attributes: `@possibleElements`, `@rejectElements`, `@possibleAttributes`, and `@rejectAttributes`. For example, `code*`, `*block`, `con*ref`, `_*`.
- Editor variables *(on page 199)* can be used in the `@value` attribute of the `<insertAttribute>` element. For example:

```
<elementProposals path="prolog/critdates/created">
    <insertAttribute name="date" value="${date(yyyy-MM-dd)}"/>
</elementProposals>
```

- Only simple recursion cases are detected and avoided by the editor, and logged to the console. Therefore, if complex `elementProposals` patterns are defined, you should avoid *infinite recursions*.

Examples: Configuring the Element Proposals

- **Example 1: Automatically Insert Elements**

  Suppose that you want to automatically insert a paragraph element (`<p>`) whenever a DITA ordered list item element (`<ol/li>`) is inserted, and also to not allow any other element besides a paragraph inside the ordered list items.

  To achieve this, the configuration file should include the following:

  ```
  <elementProposals path="ol/li" insertElements="p"
        possibleElements="_INSERTED_"/>
  ```

  Tip:
  This particular example modifies an action that inserts a list in a DITA document. There are several ways to invoke this action in the interface. For example, there is a toolbar button and an action in the **DITA** menu that inserts a list. However, since the configuration file only affects the *Content Completion Assistant*, this modification will have no effect on the behavior of the toolbar or menu action. Those actions would need to be configured separately if you want the result to be the same as the content completion proposal. For more information, see Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)*.

- **Example 2: Insert Complex Element Structure**

  For a more complex example, suppose that you want to insert a complex structure whenever a DITA `<prolog>` element is inserted.

  For instance, if you want to insert the following structure inside `<prolog>` elements:

  ```
  <prolog>
    <author></author>
    <metadata>
        <keywords>
            <keyword></keyword>
            <keyword></keyword>
        </keywords>
  ```

```
    </metadata>
  </prolog>
```

the configuration file should include the following:

```
<elementProposals path="prolog" insertElements="author metadata"/>
<elementProposals path="prolog/metadata" insertElements="keywords"/>
<elementProposals path="prolog/metadata/keywords"
       insertElements="keyword, keyword"/>
```

- **Example 3: Limit Possible Elements**

Suppose that you also want to limit the proposals for the `<keywords>` element to only allow the user to insert `<audience>` or `<keyword>` elements. The configuration file should include the following:

```
<elementProposals path="prolog/metadata" insertElements="keywords"
          possibleElements="audience keywords"/>
```

Suppose that you want to simply restrict your users from inserting `<image>` elements inside DITA list item elements (`<li>`), but still propose all the other elements that are defined in the associated schema. The configuration file should look like this:

```
<elementProposals path="li" rejectElements="image" />
```

Examples: Configuring the Attributes Proposals

- **Example 1: Automatically Insert Attributes**

Suppose that you want to insert an `@id` attribute (with an empty value) whenever a DITA list item element (`<li>`) is inserted. The configuration file should include the following:

```
<elementProposals path="li" insertAttributes="id"/>
```

- **Example 2: Limit Possible Attributes**

Suppose that you also want to limit the number of choices for attributes that are presented to the user whenever a DITA list item element (`<li>`) is inserted. The configuration file should look like this:

```
<elementProposals path="li" insertAttributes="id"
         possibleAttributes="id product platform audience"/>
```

Suppose that you want to simply restrict your users from inserting `@conref` attributes inside DITA topics (`<topic>` element), but still propose all the other attributes that are defined in the associated schema. The configuration file should look like this:

```
<elementProposals path="topic" rejectAttributes="conref" />
```

Related information

Setting up the Content Completion Configuration File *(on page 1597)*
Configuring the Proposals for Attribute and Element Values *(on page 1606)*
Customizing the Rendering of Elements *(on page 1611)*

Configuring the Proposals for Attribute and Element Values

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for configuring the proposed values that appear in the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*. To do so, a configuration file is used, along with the associated schema, to add or replace possible values for attributes or elements that are proposed in the *Content Completion Assistant*. For more details about the configuration file, see Setting up the Content Completion Configuration File *(on page 1597)*.

For an example of a specific use-case, suppose that you want the *Content Completion Assistant* to propose several possible values for the language code when you use an `@xml:lang` attribute.

Configuring Proposed Values

For the purposes of adding or replacing the values that are proposed, the configuration file (`cc_config.xml`) *(on page 1597)* includes a series of `valueProposals` instructions that will match an element or attribute name and has the following attributes:

- **path** - A path within the document that matches the element or attribute that will have its content completion proposals changed. For example:
  - `path="title"` matches all the `<title>` elements in the document.
  - `path="chapter/title"` matches only the `<title>` elements that are direct children of the `<chapter>` element.
  - `path="@xml:lang"` matches all the `@xml:lang` attributes in the document.
  - `path="title/@xml:lang"` matches only the `@xml:lang` attributes that appear on `<title>` elements.

  You can use simplified forms of XPath in this attribute.

  The XPath expressions can accept multiple attribute conditions and inside each condition you can use *AND/OR* boolean operators and parentheses to override the priority.

  You can use one or more of the following attribute conditions (default attribute values are not taken into account):
  - *element[@attr]* - Matches all instances of the specified element that include the specified attribute.
  - *element[not(@attr)]* - Matches all instances of the specified element that do not include the specified attribute.
  - *element[@attr = "value"]* - Matches all instances of the specified element that include the specified attribute with the given value.
  - *element[@attr != "value"]* - Matches all instances of the specified element that include the specified attribute and its value is different than the one given.

Example: The following are examples of how you could use multiple boolean operators and parentheses inside an attribute condition:

```
*[@a and @b or @c and @d]

*[@a and (@b or @c) and @d]
```

The following are just examples of how simplified XPath expressions might look like:

- *elementName*
- *//elementName*
- */elementName1/elementName2/elementName3*
- *//xs:localName*
- *//xs:documentation[@lang="en"]*

Note:
Using a namespace prefix requires that you declare it on the `<elementProposals>` element or on an ancestor element. For example:

```
<elementProposals xmlns:db5="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook"
  path="db5:listitem" insertElements="db5:para" />
```

- **editable** - Specifies the editable state of the attribute values, as reflected in the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)* and the **In-place Attributes Editor** *(on page 383)*. The possible values for the `@editable` attribute are:
  - **true** - The attribute values can be edited by choosing from a combo box or manually providing a value.
  - **false** - The attribute values cannot be edited.
  - **onlyAllowedItems** - The attribute values can be edited, but only by choosing from a list of proposed values, in a non-editable combo box.

The new value proposals are specified in the `<valueProposals>` element through:

- One or more `<item>` elements, which are grouped inside an `<items>` element.

Tip:
The `<item>` element can have a `@listValue` attribute, which can be set to **true** if you want those items to be part of a list attribute value (such as `attr="item1 item2"`).

- An `<xslt>` element that references an XSLT script that gets executed and must return an `<items>` element.

The behavior of the `<items>` or `<xslt>` elements are specified with the help of the `@action` attribute, which can have any of the following values:

- **append** - Adds new values to appear in the proposals list (default value).
- **addIfEmpty** - Adds new values to the proposals list only if no other values are contributed by the schema.
- **replace** - Replaces the values contributed by the schema with new values to appear in the proposals list.

The values in the configuration file can be specified either directly or by calling an external XSLT file that will extract data from an external source. An `<xslt>` element must be used in this situation.

Note:

`valueProposals` offers more flexibility compared to the old `match` element that was marked as deprecated.

```
<match elementName="lg" elementNS="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/samples">
    <items action="replace">
        <item value="stanza"/>
        <item value="refrain"/>
    </items>
</match>
```

Other Important Notes About the Configuration File

Important:

- The configuration file *(on page 1597)* only affects the content completion assistance, not validation.
- To test the effects of your changes, you should Refresh the source document *(on page 503)*.

Example: Specifying Values Directly

If you want to specify the values directly, the configuration file should look like this:

```
<!-- Replaces the values for an element with the local name "lg",
      from the given namespace -->
<valueProposals path="x:lg" xmlns:x="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/samples">
  <items action="replace">
    <item value="stanza"/>
    <item value="refrain"/>
  </items>
</valueProposals>

<!-- Adds two values for an attribute "type", from no namespace -->
<valueProposals path="@type" editable="onlyAllowedItems">
```

```
    <items>
        <item value="stanza"/>
        <item value="refrain"/>
    </items>
</valueProposals>
```

Example: Using Attribute Conditions

The possible values of an attribute depend on the value of another attribute from the same element:

```
<valueProposals path="property[@name='color']">
  <items>
    <item value="red"/>
    <item value="blue"/>
  </items>
</valueProposals>

<valueProposals path="property[@name='shape']">
  <items>
    <item value="rectangle"/>
    <item value="square"/>
  </items>
</valueProposals>
```

Example: Calling an External XSLT Script

If you want to collect values from an external XSLT script, the configuration file should include something like this:

```
<xslt href="../xsl/get_values_from_db.xsl" useCache="false" action="replace"/>
```

In this example, the `get_values_from_db.xsl` is executed to extract values from a database.

Tip:
You can use `xsl:message` as a debugging mechanism. These messages are presented in the results area at the bottom of the application whenever the *Content Completion Assistant* is invoked.

Note:
A comprehensive XSLT sample is included in the **Content Completion Configuration** document template (in the **Framework Templates > Oxygen Extensions** section of the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)*).

Note:
If `@useCache` is set to *false*, then the XSLT will be invoked any time the proposals are needed. If `@useCache` is set to *true*, then the XSLT is executed once and the obtained proposals are kept in a cache and returned every time the proposals are requested again. You can use the **Validate** action to drop the cached values and recompute them.

Configuring Proposed Values in the Context Where the Content Completion was Invoked

Web Author Customization Note:
This particular scenario is not supported for an Oxygen XML Web Author customization.

A more complex scenario is if you want to choose the possible values to propose, depending on the context of the element where the content completion was invoked.

Suppose that you want to propose certain possible values for one property (for example, *color*) and other values for another property (for example, *shape*). If the property represents a color, then the values should represent applicable colors, while if the property represents a shape, then the values should represent applicable shapes. See the following code snippets:

Your main document:

```
<sampleArticle>
  <!-- The possible values for @value should be "red" and "blue" -->
  <property name="color" value=""/>
  <!-- The possible values for @value should be "square" and "rectangle" -->
  <property name="shape" value=""/>
</sampleArticle>
```

The content completion configuration file:

```
<config xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/ccfilter/config">
    <valueProposals path="property/@value">
      <xslt href="get_values.xsl" useCache="false" action="replace"/>
    </valueProposals>
</config>
```

The stylesheet that defines the possible values based on the context of the property on which the content completion was invoked:

```
<xsl:stylesheet
  xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
  exclude-result-prefixes="xs"
  version="3.0">

  <xsl:param name="documentSystemID" as="xs:string"></xsl:param>
```

```
<xsl:param name="contextElementXPathExpression" as="xs:string"></xsl:param>


<xsl:template name="start">
  <xsl:apply-templates select="doc($documentSystemID)"/>
</xsl:template>


<xsl:template match="/">
 <xsl:variable name="propertyElement" as="element()">
   <xsl:evaluate xpath="$contextElementXPathExpression" context-item="./*"/>
 </xsl:variable>


 <items>
   <xsl:if test="$propertyElement/@name = 'color'">
     <item value='red'/>
     <item value='blue'/>
   </xsl:if>
   <xsl:if test="$propertyElement/@name = 'shape'">
     <item value='rectangle'/>
     <item value='square'/>
   </xsl:if>
 </items>
</xsl:template>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

The `contextElementXPathExpression` parameter will be bound to an XPath expression that identifies the element in the context where the content completion was invoked.

Related information

Setting up the Content Completion Configuration File *(on page 1597)*

Configuring the Proposals for Elements and Attributes *(on page 1598)*

Customizing the Rendering of Elements *(on page 1611)*

Customizing the Rendering of Elements

In addition to the support for configuring the proposals that appear in the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes support for customizing how the elements are rendered. You can do this by using the *XMLNodeRendererCustomizer* API extension *(on page 1672)*, but you can also use the same configuration file that is used to configure the content completion proposals.

For an example of a specific use-case, suppose that in DITA you want the names of paragraph elements (`<p>`) to be rendered as "**Paragraph**" instead of "**p**" in the various components in **Author** mode (such as in the **Outline** view *(on page 301)*, **Elements** view *(on page 386)*, **Attributes** view *(on page 381)*, and the breadcrumb

navigation bar). To achieve this, you can use the `<elementRenderings>` element in the configuration file. For more details about the configuration file, see Setting up the Content Completion Configuration File *(on page 1597)*.

Changing the Rendering of Elements (Their Names, Annotations, and Icons)

For the purposes of customizing how the content completion elements are rendered, in the configuration file *(on page 1597)*, you can use the `<render>` element inside a `<elementRenderings>` element to specify how element names, their annotations, and their icons are rendered.

The `<elementRenderings>` element supports the `@platform` attribute, which can have one of the following values:

webapp

The element renderings are only applied to Oxygen XML Web Author.

standalone

The element renderings are only applied to standalone distributions of **Oxygen**.

eclipse

The element renderings are only applied to Eclipse plugin distributions of **Oxygen**.

Note:
If the `@platform` attribute is missing, the element renderings are applied to all types of distributions.

You can use the following attributes for the `<render>` element:

element

Identifies the element to be customized, in the form of a qualified name. If it does not have a prefix, it is considered to be from *noNamespace*.

as

Provides the name (label) that will be displayed for the element in various components in **Author** mode (the *Content Completion Assistant*, the breadcrumb navigation bar, the **Full Tags** display mode *(on page 348)*, and the **Outline** *(on page 301)*, **Elements** *(on page 386)*, and **Attributes** *(on page 381)* views). This attribute is optional. If it is missing, the name of the element is used.

If you want to translate this label into another language, use the `${i18n(key_name)}` editor variable *(on page 207)*. The following code snippet shows how the DITA paragraph elements (`<p>`) can be translated:

```
<elementRenderings>
    <render element="p" as="${i18n(cc_p)}"/>
</elementRenderings>
```

> **Note:**
> The `cc_p` id is a key that identifies the translations available for the paragraph element.

iconPath

Optional attribute that specifies the icon for the element. This is shown in the *Content Completion Assistant* and the **Outline** view *(on page 301)* in **Author** mode. If it is a relative path, the full path of the icon image file will be computed starting from the directory of the configuration file (for example, a value of `"myImg.png"` will cause Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to load `"frameworks/$ {framework}/resources/myImg.png"`). If you want to access a built-in resource, the value can begin with a forward slash `"/"`, and the image file will be searched for in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin classpath resources (for example,`"/images/OrderedList16.png"` will load an icon from the built-in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *JAR* file resources.

xml:lang (Deprecated)

It is recommended to use the `${i18n(key_name)}` editor variable *(on page 207)* instead. Optional attribute that could be used to render the same element differently, depending on the language. If there are multiple `<render>` elements for the same `@element` attribute (element name) and the `@xml:lang` attribute is missing on one of them, that one will be considered the default fallback value to be used if none of the others match the language specified in the interface.

> **Note:**
> The default entry should be listed first, since the application tries to match them in sequence and the last match found is the one that is used.

For example, suppose that you want the name of DITA paragraph elements (`<p>`) to be rendered as "Paragraphe" if the language is French, "Absatz" if the language is German, and "Paragraph" if the language is English (or any other language). Your configuration file should look something like this:

```
<elementRenderings>
    <render element="p" as="Paragraph"/>
    <render element="p" as="Paragraphe" xml:lang="fr"/>
    <render element="p" as="Absatz" xml:lang="de"/>
</elementRenderings>
```

You can also use the configuration file to customize the annotations for elements. For this purpose, the `<render>` element also accepts the following element to change the tooltip annotations for an element (in both **Author** mode and **Text** mode):

annotation

This element can be used within the `<render>` element to customize the tooltip annotations that are displayed for the element in various components in **Author** mode (such as tooltips shown in

the *Content Completion Assistant* documentation window, the breadcrumb navigation bar, the **Full Tags** display mode *(on page 348)*, and the **Outline** *(on page 301)*, **Elements** *(on page 386)*, **Attributes** *(on page 381)* views), as well as the tooltips that are displayed when you hover over elements in **Text** mode. You can use HTML content to style the annotations (see the example below *(on page 1615)*).

Note:
If this element is missing, the styling for the annotations for that element is collected from the associated schema *(on page 373)*.

Tip:
The annotations can also be translated in the configuration file. For example:

```
<elementRenderings>
    <render element="p" as="${i18n(cc_p)}">
        <annotation>${i18n(cc_p)}</annotation>
    </render>
</elementRenderings>
```

Other Important Notes About the Configuration File for Rendering Elements

Important:

- The configuration file *(on page 1597)* only affects the content completion assistance, not validation.
- To test the effects of your changes, you should restart the application, although in some cases, you can simply use the **Reload (F5)** action to test your customizations.
- If the *framework (on page 2231)* has an associated *style guide*, then the annotations defined in the configuration file will take precedence over those defined in the *style guide*. To check to see if your *framework* uses a *style guide*, look for the following folder: `${oXygenInstallDir}frameworks/${framework}/styleguide/`. If that folder exists, it is recommended that you make your annotation changes directly in the *style guide*, rather than in the configuration file.
- If an *XMLNodeRendererCustomizer* API extension *(on page 1672)* has been implemented for the *framework* and a configuration file is also used, the rendering customization for an element will be the result of merging the two. For example, if the *XMLNodeRendererCustomizer* implementation customizes the element name, while the configuration file specifies an icon for the element, the properties of both customizations will be rendered. However, if both

implementations define the same property (for example, both specify the rendering of an element name), the customizations defined in the configuration file take precedence.
- The rendering customizations defined in the configuration file also apply to aspects of the Oxygen XML Web Author interface.

Example: Changing the Rendering of an Element

Suppose that you want to render the name of the DITA `<title>` element to begin with a capital letter, use a custom icon for it, and provide specific documentation for that element in the various components in **Author** mode. The configuration file should look like this:

```
<elementRenderings>
   <render element="title"   as="Title"  iconPath="cimg/AcceptAll16.png">
      <annotation>
         <html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
           <head>
             <title>Documentation for the Title Element</title>
           </head>
             <body>
           <p>A <i>heading</i> or <b>label</b> for the main parts of a topic</p>
             </body>
         </html>
            </annotation>
   </render>
</elementRenderings>
```

Related Information:

Setting up the Content Completion Configuration File *(on page 1597)*
Configuring the Proposals for Attribute and Element Values *(on page 1606)*
Configuring the Proposals for Elements and Attributes *(on page 1598)*
Customizing XML Node Rendering *(on page 1672)*
Schema Annotations in Author Mode *(on page 373)*
Customizing Annotations in the Content Completion Assistant *(on page 1615)*

Customizing Annotations in the Content Completion Assistant

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin gathers documentation from the associated schemas (DTD, XML Schema, RelaxNG) and presents it for each element or attribute. For example, if you open the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* for a recognized XML vocabulary, documentation is displayed for each element provided by the associated schema. Similar information is displayed when you hover over tag names presented in the **Elements** view *(on page 386)*. If you hover over attributes in the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)* you also see information about each attribute, gathered from the same schema.

If you have a *framework* configuration *(on page 83)* set up for your XML vocabulary, there is a special XML configuration file that can be added to provide additional documentation information or links to additional information for certain elements and attributes.

To provide this additional information in the *Content Completion Assistant*, follow these steps:

1. Create a new folder in the configuration directory for the document type.

   Example: `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/frameworks/dita/styleguide`
2. Use the **New** document wizard to create a file using the **Content Completion Styleguide** document template (in the **Framework Templates > Oxygen Extensions** section).
3. Save the file in the folder created in step 1, using the fixed name: `contentCompletionElementsMap.xml`.
4. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, and edit the document type configuration for your XML vocabulary. Now you need to indicate where Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will locate your mapping file by doing one of the following:
   - In the **Classpath** tab add a link to the newly created folder.
   - In the **Catalogs** tab add a new catalog file *(on page 573)*. The selected file needs to contain the following:

     ```
     <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
     <!DOCTYPE catalog PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD XML Catalogs V1.1//EN"
         "http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/entity/release/1.1/catalog.dtd">
     <catalog xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog">
         <uri name="http://www.oxygenxml.com/{processed_dt_name}/styleguide/
     contentCompletionElementsMap.xml" uri="contentCompletionElementsMap.xml"/>
     </catalog>
     ```

     where *{processed_dt_name}* is the name of the document type in lower case and with spaces replaced by underscores.

     > **Note:**
     > If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin finds a mapping file in both locations, the one in the **Catalogs** tab takes precedence.
5. Make the appropriate changes to your custom mapping file.

   Example: You can look at how the DITA mapping file is configured: `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/frameworks/dita/styleguide/contentCompletionElementsMap.xml`

   The associated XML Schema contains additional details about how each element and attribute is used in the mapping file.
6. Re-open the application and open an XML document.

In the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*, you should see the additional annotations for each element.

Translating Annotations

Annotations in the Content Completion Assistant can be displayed in various languages. Based on the language set for the interface, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin looks for several filename formats to determine the information to load for the content completion annotations. These files that begin with the name *contentCompletionElementsMap*, are located in the `styleguide` folder for each built-in framework (for example, `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/frameworks/dita/styleguide`).

For example, for English, the files are loaded in the following order (from specific to more general):

- `contentCompletionElementsMap_en_US.xml` or `contentCompletionElementMap_en_UK.xml`, and so on
- `contentCompletionElementsMap_en.xml`
- `contentCompletionElementsMap.xml`

If you want the annotations to be displayed in another language, you need to create similar files for the particular language. For example, to show annotations in German, create a file with one of the following names (and store it in the `styleguide` folder for your framework):

- `contentCompletionElementsMap_de_DE.xml`
- `contentCompletionElementsMap_de.xml`

Related Information:
Customizing the Rendering of Elements *(on page 1611)*

Customizing the Content Completion Assistant for Author Mode Only

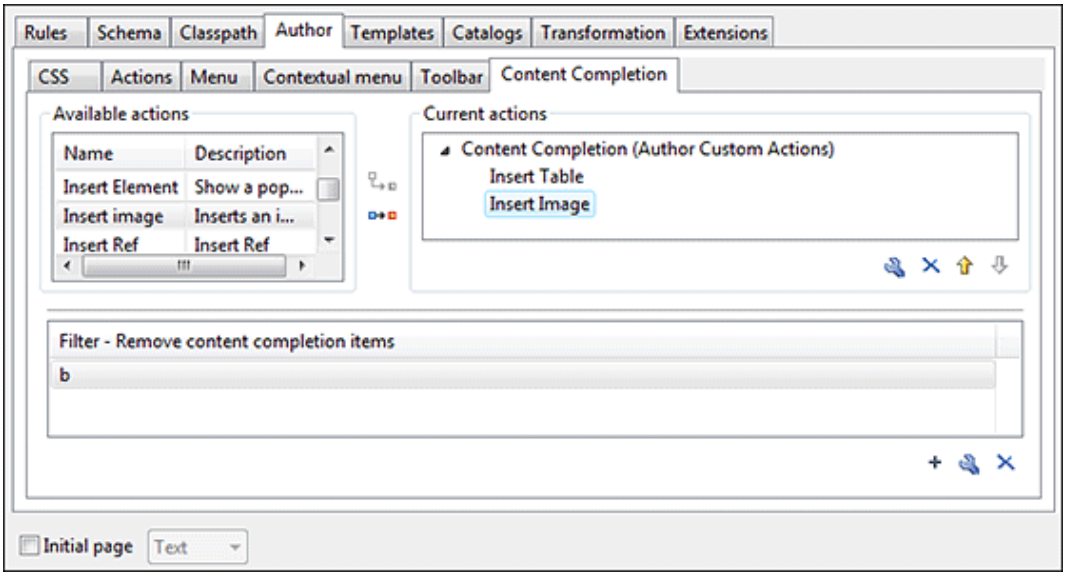
You can customize the content of the following **Author** controls, adding items (which, when invoked, perform custom actions) or filtering the default contributed ones:

- *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* window
- **Elements** view *(on page 386)*
- **Insert Element** menus (from the **Outline** view *(on page 301)* or breadcrumb *(on page 355)* contextual menus)

You can use the content completion customization support in a custom *framework (on page 2231)* by following this procedure:

1. Open the **Document type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* for your custom *framework* and select the **Author** tab. Next, go to the **Content Completion** tab *(on page 103)*.

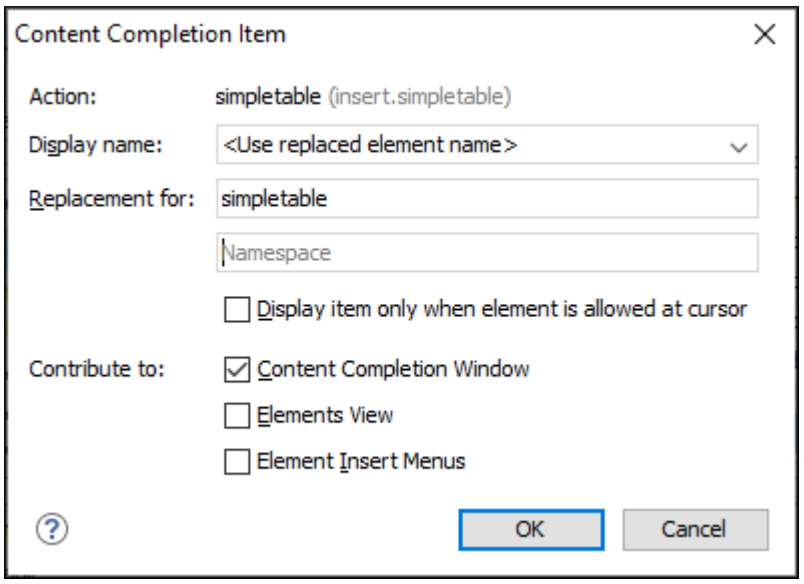
Figure 291. Customize Content Completion



The top side of the **Content Completion** section contains the list with all the actions defined within the custom *framework* and the list of actions that you decided to include in the *Content Completion Assistant* list of proposals. The bottom side contains the list with all the items that you decided to remove from the *Content Completion Assistant* list of proposals.

2. If you want to add a custom action to the list of current **Content Completion** proposals, select the action item from the **Available actions** list and click the **Add as child** or **Add as sibling** button to include it in the **Current actions** list. A **Content Completion Item** dialog box appears, giving you the possibility to select where to provide the selected action.

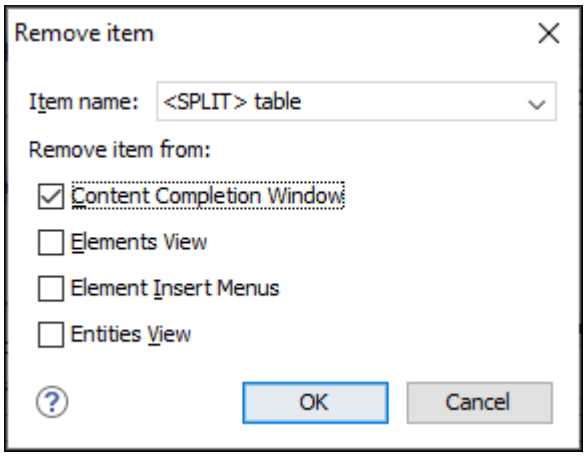
Figure 292. Content Completion Item Dialog Box



3. If you want to exclude a certain item from the **Content Completion** proposals, you can use the **Add** button from the **Filter - Remove content completion items** list. The **Remove item** dialog box is

displayed, allowing you to input the item name and to choose the controls that filter it. The **Item name** combo box accepts wildcards.

Figure 293. Remove Item Dialog Box



Note:
In the **Item name** drop-down menu, **<SPLIT>** refers to the action of splitting the element and creating a new one, while **<ENTER>** refers to the action of inserting a new line.

Related Information:
Customizing the Content Completion Assistant Using a Configuration File *(on page 1596)*

Configuring Transformation Scenarios for a Framework

When distributing a *framework (on page 2231)* to users, it is a good idea to have the transformation scenarios already configured. This helps the content authors publish their work in various formats. By being contained in the *framework* configuration, the scenarios can be distributed along with the actions, menus, toolbars, and catalogs.

To create a transformation scenario for your *framework*, follow these steps:

1. Create an `xsl` folder inside your custom *framework* directory (*`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`\frameworks\[CUSTOM_FRAMEWORK_DIR]`).

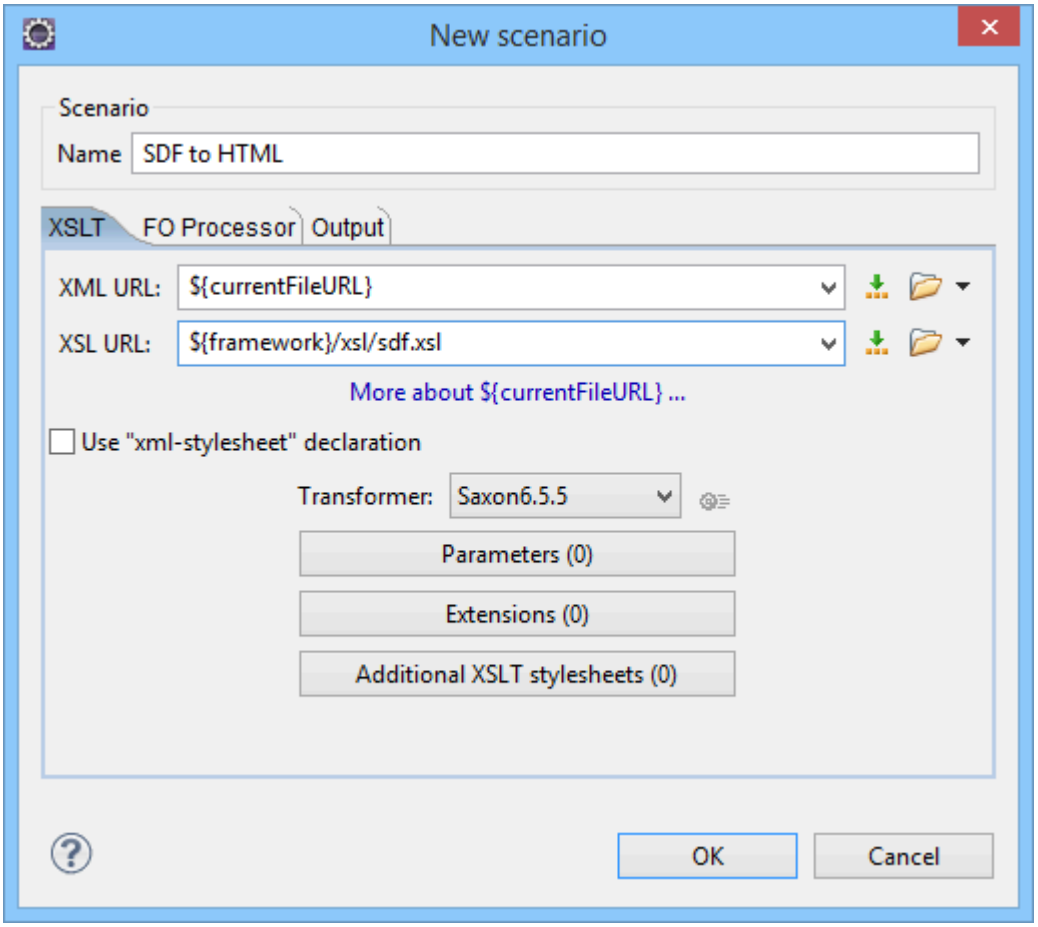
   The folder structure for the documentation *framework* should be:

```
oxygen
  frameworks
     [CUSTOM_FRAMEWORK_DIR]
       schema
       css
       templates
       xsl
```

2. Create an `xsl` file and save it in the `xsl` folder. To help you get started, you can use the sample `sdf.xsl` file found in the sample framework customization package.

3. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Associations**. Select the particular *framework*, click the **Edit** button to open **Document Type** Configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*, and choose the **Transformation** tab. Click the **New** button and choose the appropriate type of transformation (for example, **XML transformation with XSLT**).
   In the **New scenario** dialog box, fill in the following fields:
   - Fill in the **Name** field with the name of your transformation scenario.
   - Set the **XSL URL** field to path of your custom stylesheet (for example, `${framework}/xsl/mycustom.xsl`).

Figure 294. Configuring a New XSLT Transformation Scenario



4. Change to the **Output** tab. Configure the fields as follows:
   - Set the **Save as** field to `${cfd}/${cfn}.html`. This means the transformation output file will have the name of the XML file and the *html* extension and will be stored in the same folder.
   - Select the **Open in Browser/System Application** option.

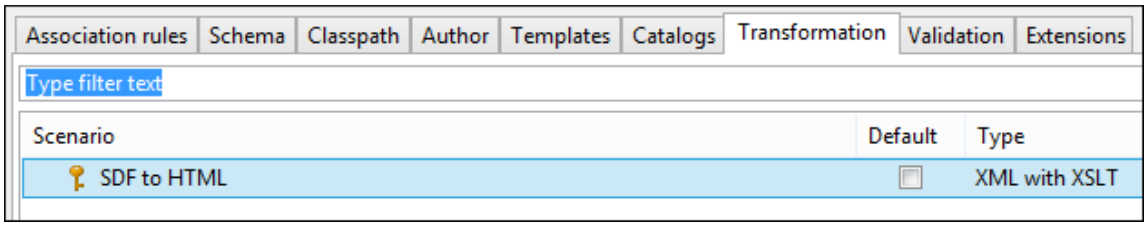
> **Note:**
> To set the browser or system application that will be used, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there. This will take precedence over the default system application settings.

- Select the **Saved file** option.

5. Click the **OK** button to save the new scenario.

Now the scenario is listed in the **Transformation** tab:

Figure 295. Transformation Tab



To test the transformation scenario that you just created, you can use the sample `sdf.xml` file found in the sample framework customization package. Click the **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** button to display the **Transform with** dialog box. The scenario list contains the scenario you defined earlier. Select the *SDF to HTML* scenario that you just defined and click the **Apply associated** button. The HTML file is saved in the same folder as the XML file and displayed in the browser.

Configuring Validation Scenarios for a Framework

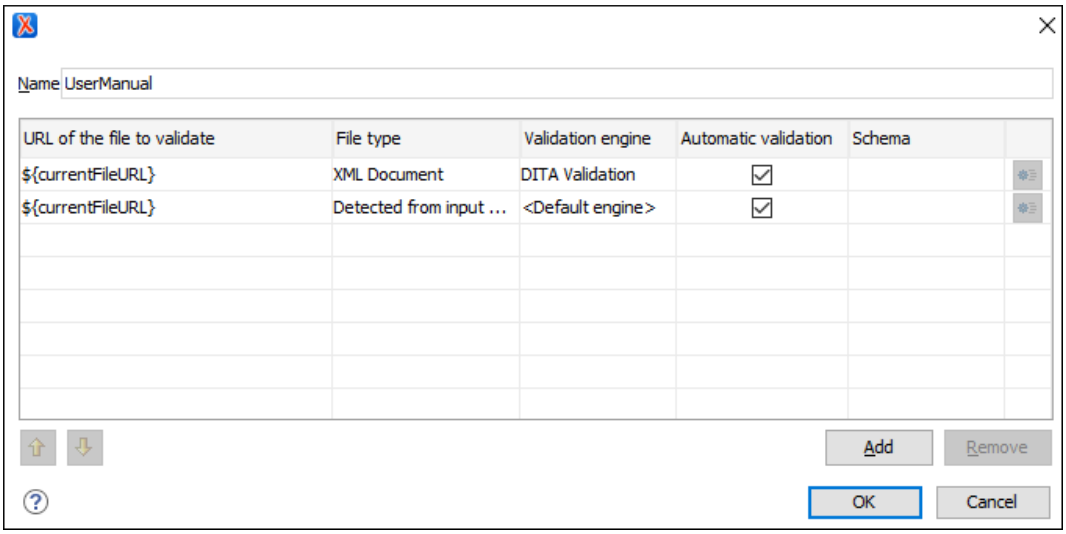
You can distribute a *framework (on page 2231)* with a series of already configured validation scenarios. Also, this provides enhanced validation support that allows you to use multiple grammars to check the document. For example, you can use Schematron rules to impose guidelines that are otherwise impossible to enforce using conventional validation.

> **Note:**
> If a *main file* is associated with the current file, the validation scenarios defined in the *main file*, along with any Schematron schema defined in the default scenarios for that particular *framework*, are used for the validation. These take precedence over other types of validation units defined in the default scenarios for the particular *framework*. For more information on *main files*, see Contextual Project Operations Using 'Main Files' Support *(on page 253)* or Modular Contextual XML Editing Using 'Main Files' Support *(on page 576)*.

To associate a validation scenario with a specific *framework*, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association**.
2. Select the document type and click the **Edit** button to open the **Document Type Configuration** dialog box *(on page 83)*, then choose the **Validation** tab. This tab displays a list of document types. To set one or more of the validation scenarios listed in this tab to be used as the default validation scenario (when another one is not specified in the validation process) for a specific document type, check the **Default** box for that specific document type.
3. To edit an existing scenario, select the scenario and click the **Edit** button. To add a new scenario, click the **New** button.
   In either case, a scenario configuration dialog box is displayed. It lists all the validation units for the scenario.

Figure 296. Validation Scenario Configuration Dialog Box



This scenario configuration dialog box allows you to configure the following information and options:

Name

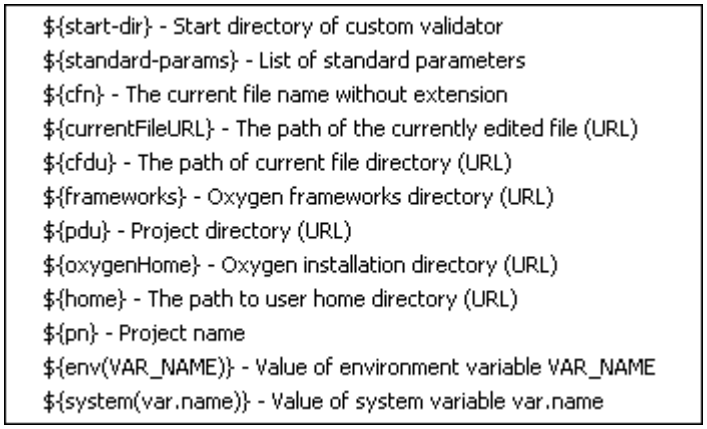
The name of the validation scenario.

URL of the file to validate

The URL of the main module that includes the current module. It is also the entry module of the validation process when the current one is validated. To edit the URL, click its cell and specify the URL of the main module by doing one of the following:

- Enter the URL in the text field or select it from the drop-down list.
- Use the **Browse** drop-down button to browse for a local, remote, or archived file.
- Use the **Insert Editor Variable** button to insert an editor variable *(on page 199)* or a custom editor variable *(on page 209)*.

Figure 297. Insert an Editor Variable



File type

The type of the document that is validated in the current validation unit. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically selects the file type depending on the value of the **URL of the file to validate** field.

Validation engine

You can select one of the engines available in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for validation of the particular document type:

- **Default engine** - The default engine is used to run the validation for the current document type, as specified in the preferences page for that type of document (for example, XSLT preferences page *(on page 191)*, XML Schema preferences page *(on page 181)*).
- **DITA Validation** engine - Performs DITA-specific checks in the context of the specifications (it is similar to the process when using the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)* in the **DITA Maps Manager**, but for a local file rather than an entire *DITA map (on page 2230)*).
- **DITA Map Validation and Completeness Check** engine - Performs a validation process that checks the DITA map document and all referenced topics and maps (it is similar to the process when using the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)* in the **DITA Maps Manager**).
- **DITA-OT Project Validation and Completeness Check** engine - Performs a validation process that checks each context from the provided DITA-OT project file (it is similar to the process when using the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)* in the **DITA Maps Manager**).
- **Table Layout Validation** engine - Looks for table layout problems (for more information, see the Report table layout problems option *(on page 1931)*).

Automatic validation

If this option is selected, the validation operation defined by this row is also applied by the automatic validation feature *(on page 525)*. If the **Automatic validation** feature is disabled

in the Document Checking preferences page *(on page 123)*, then this option is ignored, as the preference setting has a higher priority.

Schema

This option becomes active when you set the **File type** to **XML Document** and allows you to specify the schema used for the validation unit.

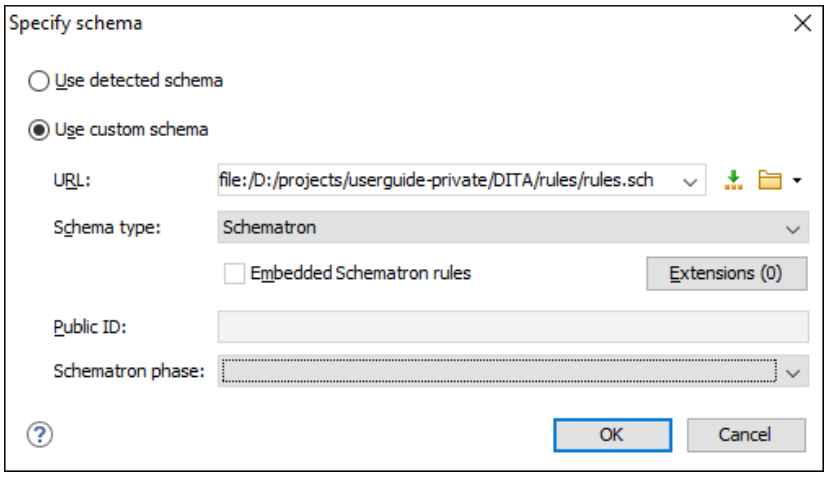
Settings

Depending on the selected validation engine, clicking the **Settings** button either opens the **Specify Schema** dialog box or the **Configure validation engine** dialog box.

- **Specify Schema Dialog Box**

  This dialog box allows you to specify a custom schema to be used for the validation process.

  Figure 298. Specify Schema Dialog Box

  The **Specify Schema** dialog box contains the following options:

  Use detected schema

  Uses the schema detected for the particular document *(on page 564)*.

  Use custom schema

  Allows you to specify the schema using the following options:

  - **URL** - Allows you to specify or select a URL for the schema. It also keeps a history of the last used schemas. The URL must point to the schema file that can be loaded from the local disk or from a remote server through HTTP(S) or SFTP. You can specify the URL by using the text field, the history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

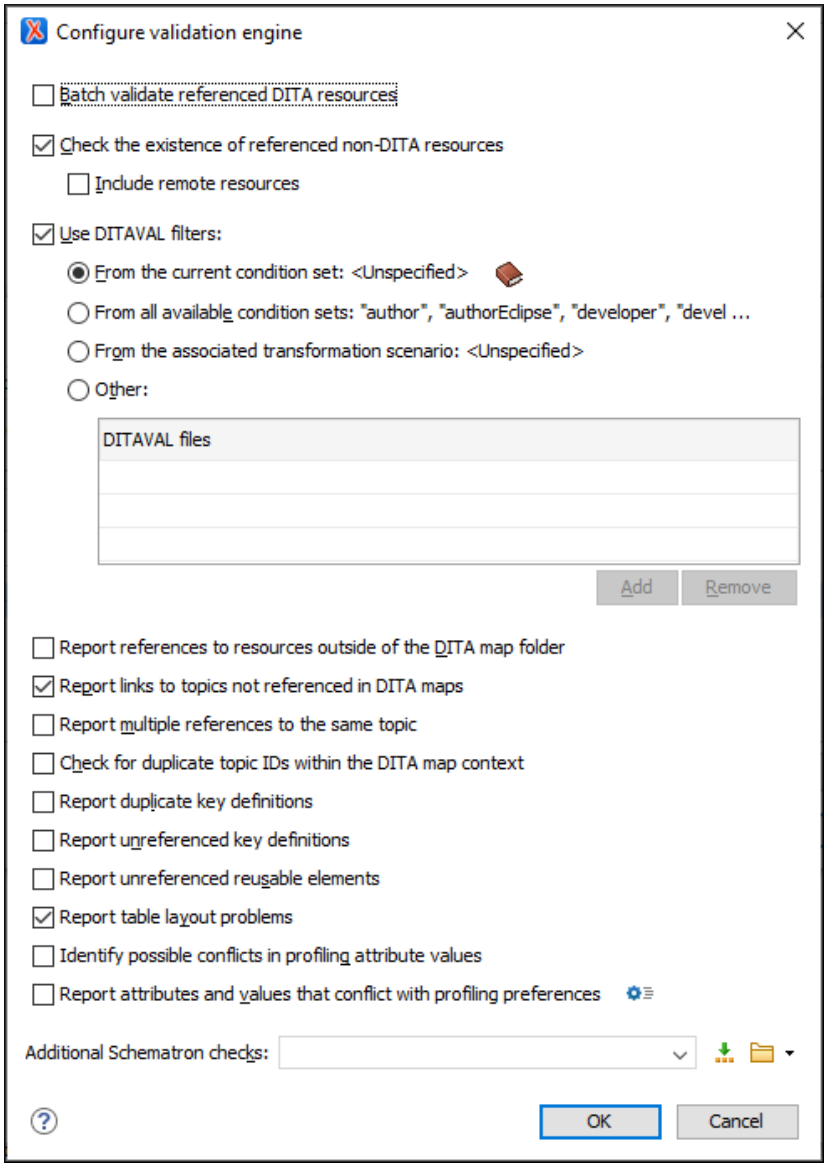
- **Schema type** - Select a possible schema type from this combo box that is populated based on the extension of the schema file that was entered in the **URL** field. The possible schema types are: XML Schema, DTD, Relax NG, Relax NG Compact, Schematron, or NVDL.
- **Embedded Schematron rules** - If you have selected XML Schema or Relax NG schemas with embedded Schematron rules and you want to use those embedded rules, select this option.
- **Extensions**- Opens a dialog box that allows you to specify *Java extension JARs (on page 2231)* to be used during the validation.
- **Public ID** - Allows you to specify a public ID if you have selected a DTD.
- **Schematron phase** - If you select a Schematron schema, this drop-down list allows you to select a Schematron phase that you want to use for validation. The listed phases are defined in the Schematron document.

◦ **Configure Validation Engine Dialog Box**

This dialog box allows you to configure options for checking the DITA map document and all referenced topics and maps (similar to the process done when using the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)* in the **DITA Maps Manager**).

Note:
The options presented in the **Configure validation engine** dialog box depends on type of validation engine. For example, when configuring the **DITA-OT Project Validation and Completeness Check** validation engine, the dialog box has slightly fewer options (omitting those that are not applicable).

Figure 299. Example of the Configure Validation Engine Dialog Box



The **Configure Validation Engine** dialog box contains the following options:

Batch validate referenced DITA resources

This option specifies the level of validation that applies to referenced DITA files:

- If the checkbox is left unchecked (default setting), the DITA files will be validated using the rules defined in the DTD or XML Schema declared in the document.
- If the checkbox is selected, the DITA files will be validated using rules defined in their associated validation scenario *(on page 536)*.

Check the existence of non-DITA references resources

Extends the validation of referenced resources to non-DITA files.

Include remote resources

Select this option if you want to check that remote referenced binary resources (such as images, movie clips, ZIP archives) exist at the specified location.

Use DITAVAL filters

The content of the map is filtered by applying a profiling condition set before validation. You can choose between the following options:

- **From the current condition set** - The map is filtered using the condition set currently applied in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*. Clicking the **Details** icon opens a topic in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin User Guide that explains how to create a profiling condition set.
- **From all available condition sets** - For each available condition set, the map content is filtered using that set before validation.
- **From the associated transformation scenario** - The filtering condition set is specified explicitly as a DITAVAL file in the current transformation scenario associated with the *DITA map*.
- **Other DITAVAL files** - For each DITAVAL file from this list, the map content is filtered using the DITAVAL file before validation. Use the **Add** or **Remove** buttons to configure the list. The **Add** button opens a dialog box that allows you to select a local or remote path to a DITAVAL file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Report references to resources outside of the DITA map folder

If selected, it will report any references to DITA resources that are located outside the *main DITA map (on page 2234)* folder.

Report links to topics not referenced in DITA maps

Checks that all the topics referenced by other topics are also linked in the *DITA map*. Also reports related links defined in relationship tables whose target topics are not referenced in the DITA Map.

Report multiple references to the same topic

If selected, it will report warnings when a topic is referenced multiple times in the *DITA map*, unless a unique `@copy-to` attribute is used on the `<topicref>` element for any topic that is referenced multiple times.

For example, it will **not** report a warning if there is a topic referenced twice, but the second `<topicref>` has a `@copy-to` attribute set:

```
<topicref href="topic.dita"/>
.....
 <topicref href="topic.dita" copy-to="topic2.dita"/>
```

On the other hand, it **will** report a warning if there is a topic referenced twice and none of the reference-type elements has a `@copy-to` attribute set or both of them have the `@copy-to` attribute set to the same value:

```
<topicref href="topic.dita" copy-to="topic2.dita"/>
......
 <topicref href="topic.dita" copy-to="topic2.dita"/>
```

Check for duplicate topic IDs within the DITA map context

Checks for multiple topics with the same ID in the context of the entire map.

Report duplicate key definitions

Checks the *DITA map* for multiple key references with the same key defined for them. This is helpful because if you have two different resources with the same value for the `@keys` attribute, all references will point to the first one encountered and the other will be ignored.

Note:
This option takes *key scopes (on page 2049)* into account. For example, if you have something like this:

```
<topicref href="t2.dita" keys="k2"/>
    <topicgroup keyscope="ks">
        <topicref href="t2.dita" keys="k2"/>
    </topicgroup>
```

it will not report the "k2" key as a duplicate because it is defined in a *key scope (on page 2049)* on the second occurrence.

Report unreferenced key definitions

Checks the entire *DITA map* and reports any key definitions that are not referenced anywhere. Note that if the **Use DITAVAL filters** option is selected, this check will search for unreferenced key definitions based upon your selected filter.

Report unreferenced reusable elements

Checks the entire *DITA map* and reports any detected reusable elements that are not referenced anywhere. It looks for elements that have an *ID* specified in the following types of topic references:

- Any `<topicref>` that contains a `@processing-role` attribute set to **resource-only**.
- Any other referenced topic that contains elements that are reused elsewhere through a `@conref` or `@conkeyref`.

Report table layout problems

Looks for table layout problems. The types of errors that may be reported include:

- If a row has fewer cells than the number of columns detected.
- For a *CALS* table, if a cell has a vertical span greater than the available rows count.
- For a *CALS* table, if the number of `<colspecs>` is different than the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute.
- For a *CALS* table, if the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute is different than the number of columns detected in the table structure.
- For a *CALS* table, if the value of the `@cols`, `@rowsep`, or `@colsep` attributes are not numeric.
- For a *CALS* table, if the `@namest`, `@nameend`, or `@colname` attributes point to an incorrect column name.

Identify possible conflicts in profile attribute values

When the profiling attributes of a topic contain values that are not found in parent topic profiling attributes, the content of the topic is overshadowed when generating profiled output. This option reports these possible conflicts.

Report attributes and values that conflict with profiling preferences

Looks for profiling attributes and values that are not defined in the **Profiling / Conditional Text** preferences page *(on page 136)* (you can click the **Profiling Preferences** button to open this preferences page). It also checks if profiling attributes defined as *single-value* have multiple values set in the searched topics.

Additional Schematron checks

Allows you to select a Schematron file that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will use for the validation of DITA resources. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

> **Advanced Tip:**
> Some APIs are available that retrieve information about DITA keys that are referenced within a topic. The APIs can be called from XSLT Stylesheets (including XML Refactoring operations) or Schematron schemas. For details, see API Documentation: DITAXSLTExtensionFunctionUtil.

Move Up

Moves the selected validation unit up one spot in the list.

Move Down

Moves the selected validation unit down one spot in the list.

Add

Adds a new validation unit to the list.

Remove

Removes an existing validation unit from the list.

4. Configure any of the existing validation units according to the information above, and you can use the buttons at the bottom of the table to add, remove, or move validation units. Note that if you add a Schematron validation unit, you can also select the **validation phase**.
5. Click **Ok**.
   The newly created validation scenario is now included in the list of scenarios in the **Validation** tab *(on page 109)*. You can use the **Default** checkbox to specify that the new scenario be used as the default validation scenario when another specific scenario is not specified in the validation process.

Customizing New Document Templates for a Framework

You can create your own custom document templates and attach them to a custom *framework (on page 2231)*. You can then share the custom framework *(on page 1691)* so that all users will have access to the templates in the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)*.

To create your own custom document template and have it appear in the new document wizard, follow these steps:

1. Create a new file and customize it to become a starting point for creating new files of this type.

> **Tip:**
> You can use editor variables *(on page 199)* in the template file content and they will be expanded when the files are opened. Also, see Customizing Document Templates *(on page*

231) for other template customization tips (for example, you could add placeholders or hints *(on page 234)* to assist authors).

2. Save the new template in a directory (for example, called `templates`) within your custom framework directory.

   Attention:
   The name that you use to save the template will be the name that appears in the new document wizard, including capitalization, space, and characters (for example, `My Custom Template1.xml` will appear in the new file wizard as **My Custom Template1**). You can also configure the displayed name in a properties file by following the procedure found in the Configure the Displayed Names for Document Templates *(on page 233)* section.

3. Open the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* for that specific framework, go to the **Templates** tab *(on page 106)*, and click the + button in the bottom-right corner to add your new directory to the list. It is recommended that the reference be made relative to the framework directory (for example, `${frameworkDir}/templates`). Binding to an absolute file (e. g.: `C:\some_dir\templates`) makes the association difficult to share between users.
4. Click **OK** for all of the dialog boxes to save your changes.
5. To test the template, open the new document wizard (**New** toolbar button or **File > New > New from Templates**) and you should see your custom template in the folder for your custom *framework* (in the **Framework templates** section).

Related information
Customizing Document Templates *(on page 231)*

Configuring XML Catalogs

For cases where you need to reference the location of a schema file from a remote web location and an Internet connection may not be available, an *XML Catalog (on page 2235)* may be used to map the web location to a local file system entry. The following procedure presents an example of using an *XML catalog* in a custom *framework (on page 2231)* by modifying an XML Schema file.

1. Create a catalog file that will help the parser locate the schema for validating the XML document. The file must map the location of the schema to a local version of the schema.
   Example:

   Create a new XML file called `catalog.xml` and save it in your custom *framework* directory (*`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]\frameworks\[CUSTOM_FRAMEWORK_DIR]`*). The content of the file should look like this:

   ```
   <?xml version="1.0"?>

   <catalog xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog">
   ```

```
    <uri name="http://www.oxygenxml.com/SDF/abs.xsd"
            uri="schema/abs.xsd"/>
    <uri name="http://www.oxygenxml.com/SDF/abs.xsd"
               uri="schema/abs.xsd"/>
</catalog>
```

2. Add catalog files to your custom *framework* using the **Catalogs** tab *(on page 107)* from the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*.

To test the catalog settings, restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and try to validate a new sample document for your custom *framework*. There should be no errors.

Example:

The schema that validates the document refers the other file `abs.xsd` through an **import** element:

```
<xs:import namespace=
 "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts"
 schemaLocation="http://www.oxygenxml.com/SDF/abs.xsd"/>
```

The `@schemaLocation` attribute references the `abs.xsd` file:

```
xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts"
    http://www.oxygenxml.com/SDF/abs.xsd"/>
```

The catalog mapping is:

```
http://www.oxygenxml.com/SDF/abs.xsd -> schema/abs.xsd
```

This means that all the references to http://www.oxygenxml.com/SDF/abs.xsd must be resolved to the `abs.xsd` file located in the `schema` directory (note that the `schema` directory needs to be in the same folder as the *XML Catalog*). The URI element is used by URI resolvers (for example, to resolve a URI reference used in an XSLT stylesheet).

Localizing Frameworks

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports *framework (on page 2231)* localization (translating *framework* actions, buttons, and menu entries to various languages). This lets you develop and distribute a *framework* to users that speak other languages without changing the distributed *framework*.

To localize the content of a *framework*, follow this procedure:

1. Create a `translation.xml` file that contains all the translation (key, value) mappings. The `translation.xml` has the following format:

```
<translation>
    <languageList>
        <language description="English" lang="en_US"/>
```

```
        <language description="German" lang="de_DE"/>
        <language description="French" lang="fr_FR"/>
    </languageList>
    <key value="list">
        <comment>List menu item name.</comment>
        <val lang="en_US">List</val>
        <val lang="de_DE">Liste</val>
        <val lang="fr_FR">Liste</val>
    </key>
.....................
</translation>
```

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin matches the GUI language with the language set in the `translation.xml` file. If this language is not found, the first available language declared in the `<languagelist>` tag for the corresponding *framework* is used.

2. The `translation.xml` file must be stored in a directory named `i18n` located in the framework folder. You also need to add a reference to the `i18n` directory in the **Classpath** list corresponding to the edited document type *(on page 88)*.

${framework}/i18n/	file:/D:/Programs/oxygen/frameworks/TRANSLATIONS/i18n/

Note:
If you are working with an extension of a framework, you have to add the reference to your directory after (below) the reference to the `i18n` directory for the base directory:

${baseFramework}/i18n/	file:/D:/Programs/oxygen/frameworks/dita/i18n/
${framework}/i18n/	file:/D:/Programs/oxygen/frameworks/TRANSLATIONS/i18n/

3. After you create this file, you can use the keys defined in it to customize the name and description of the following:
    - Actions
    - Menu entries
    - Contextual menus
    - Toolbars
    - Static CSS content

For example, if you want to localize the bold action, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association**. Use the **New** or **Edit** button to open the **Document type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*, go to **Author > Actions**, and rename the bold action to `${i18n(translation_key)}`. Actions with a name format other than `${i18n(translation_key)}` are not localized. *Translation_key* corresponds to the key from the `translation.xml` file.

4. Next, open the `translation.xml` file and edit the translation entry if it exists or create one if it does not exist. This is an example of an entry in the translation.xml file:

```
<key value="translation_key">
        <comment>Bold action name.</comment>
        <val lang="en_US">Bold</val>
        <val lang="de_DE">Bold</val>
        <val lang="fr_FR">Bold</val>
    </key>
```

To use a description from the `translation.xml` file in the Java code used by your custom *framework*, use the new *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess.getAuthorResourceBundle()* API method to request the associated value for a certain key. This allows all the dialog boxes that you present from your custom operations to have labels translated in multiple languages.

You can also reference a key directly in the CSS content:

```
title:before{
    content:"${i18n(title.key)} : ";
}
```

Tip:
You can enter any language you want in the `<languagelist>` tag and any number of keys.

DocBook Example:

The `translation.xml` file for the DocBook *framework* is located here:*[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/docbook/i18n/translation.xml`. In the **Classpath** list corresponding to the DocBook document type, the following entry was added: `${framework}/i18n/`.

To see how the DocBook actions are defined to use these keys for their name and description, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association > Author > Actions**. If you look in the Java class *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.docbook.table.SADocbookTableCustomizerDialog* available in the *oxygen-sample-framework* module of the Oxygen SDK Maven archetype, you can see how the new *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorResourceBundle* API is used to retrieve localized descriptions for various keys.

Framework Java Extensibility Guide

You can add *extensions (on page 2232)* to your custom *framework (on page 2231)* (document type) by using the **Extensions** tab from the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*.

If you want to customize the Eclipse plugin, you can look at the Eclipse IDE Integration Sample Project to see how an Eclipse plugin can interact with the **Oxygen** APIs.

Configuring an Extensions Bundle

All *extensions (on page 2232)* that are provided by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin are includes in a single bundle.

Note:
The individual extensions can still be set (open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, double-click a document type, and go to the extension tab), and if present, they take precedence over the single provider. However, this practice is discouraged and the single provider should be used instead.

The extensions bundle is represented by the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ExtensionsBundle* class. The provided implementation of the `ExtensionsBundle` is instantiated when the *Document Type Association (on page 2229)* rules defined for the custom *framework (on page 2231)* matches a document opened in the editor. Therefore, references to objects that need to be persistent throughout the application running session must not be kept in the bundle because the next detection event can result in creating another *ExtensionsBundle* instance.

To configure an extensions bundle, follow this procedure:

1. Create a new Java project in your IDE. Create a `lib` folder in the Java project folder and copy in it the `oxygen.jar` file from the *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/lib`* folder.
2. Create the class (for example, *simple.documentation.framework.SDFExtensionsBundle*) to extend the abstract class *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ExtensionsBundle*.
   For example:

   ```
   public class SDFExtensionsBundle extends ExtensionsBundle {
   ```

3. A `Document Type ID` and a short description should be defined by implementing the *getDocumentTypeID* and *getDescription* methods. The `Document Type ID` is used to uniquely identify the current *framework*. Such an ID must be provided especially if options related to the *framework* need to be persistently stored and retrieved between sessions.
   For example:

   ```
   public String getDocumentTypeID() {
       return "Simple.Document.Framework.document.type";
   }


   public String getDescription() {
       return "A custom extensions bundle used for the Simple Document" +
              "Framework document type";
   }
   ```

4. **[Optional]** To be notified about the activation of the custom *Author Extension* in relation with an open document, *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorExtensionStateListener* should be implemented. The **activation** and **deactivation** events received by this listener should be used to perform custom initializations and to register or remove listeners such as *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorListener*, *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorMouseListener*, or *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorCaretListener*. The custom *Author Extension* state listener should be provided by implementing the *createAuthorExtensionStateListener* method.
   For example:

   ```
   public AuthorExtensionStateListener createAuthorExtensionStateListener() {

       return new SDFAuthorExtensionStateListener();

   }
   ```

   The `AuthorExtensionStateListener` is instantiated and notified about the activation of the *framework* when the rules of the *Document Type Association* match a document opened in the **Author** editing mode. The listener is notified about the deactivation when another *framework* is activated for the same document, the user switches to another mode or the editor is closed. A complete description and implementation of *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorExtensionStateListener* can be found in Implementing an Author Extension State Listener *(on page 1649)*.

   If Schema-Aware mode *(on page 145)* is active in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, all actions that can generate invalid content will be redirected toward the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler*. The handler can resolve a specific case, let the default implementation take place, or reject the edit entirely by throwing *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.InvalidEditException*. The actions that are forwarded to this handler include typing, delete, or paste.

   For more details about this handler, see Handling Schema-Aware Editing Events *(on page 1686)*.

5. **[Optional]** You can customize the content completion proposals by creating a schema manager filter extension. The interface that declares the methods used for content completion proposals filtering is *ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.SchemaManagerFilter*. The filter can be applied on elements, attributes, or on their values. The *createSchemaManagerFilter* method is responsible for creating the content completion filter. A new `SchemaManagerFilter` will be created each time a document matches the rules defined by the *Document Type Association* that contains the filter declaration.
   For example:

   ```
   public SchemaManagerFilter createSchemaManagerFilter() {

       return new SDFSchemaManagerFilter();

   }
   ```

   A detailed presentation of the schema manager filter can be found in the Configuring a Content Completion Handler *(on page 1642)* section.

6. **[Optional]** The **Author** mode supports link-based navigation between documents and document sections. Therefore, if the document contains elements defined as links to other elements (for example,

links based on the `@id` attributes), the extension should provide the means to find the referenced content. To do this, an implementation of the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocatorProvider* interface should be returned by the *createElementLocatorProvider* method. Each time an element pointed by a link needs to be located, the method is invoked.
For example:

```
public ElementLocatorProvider createElementLocatorProvider() {

    return new DefaultElementLocatorProvider();

}
```

For more information on how to implement an element locator provider, see the Configuring a Link Target Element Finder *(on page 1666)* section.

7. **[Optional]** The drag and drop functionality can be extended by implementing the *ro.sync.exml.editor.xmleditor.pageauthor.AuthorDnDListener* interface. Relevant methods from the listener are invoked when the mouse is dragged, moved over, or exits the **Author** editing mode, when the drop action changes, and when the drop occurs. Each method receives the `DropTargetEvent` containing information about the drag and drop operation. The drag and drop extensions are available in **Author** mode for both Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Eclipse plugin and standalone application. The **Text** mode corresponding listener is available only for Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Eclipse plugin. The methods corresponding to each implementation are: *createAuthorAWTDndListener*, *createTextSWTDndListener*, and *createAuthorSWTDndListener*.

```
public AuthorDnDListener createAuthorAWTDndListener() {

    return new SDFAuthorDndListener();

}
```

For more details about the **Author** mode drag and drop listeners, see the Configuring a custom Drag and Drop Listener *(on page 1644)* section.

8. **[Optional]** Another extension that can be included in the bundle is the reference resolver. For example, the references represented by the **ref** element and the attribute indicating the referenced resource is **location**. To be able to obtain the content of the referenced resources you will have to implement a Java extension class that implements *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorReferenceResolver*. The method responsible for creating the custom references resolver is *createAuthorReferenceResolver*. The method is called each time a document opened in an **Author** editing mode matches the *Document Type Association* where the extensions bundle is defined. The instantiated references resolver object is kept and used until another extensions bundle corresponding to another document type is activated as result of the detection process.
For example:

```
public AuthorReferenceResolver createAuthorReferenceResolver() {

    return new ReferencesResolver();

}
```

A more detailed description of the references resolver can be found in the Configuring a References Resolver *(on page 1645)* section.

9. **[Optional]** To be able to dynamically customize the default CSS styles for a certain *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorNode*, an implementation of *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.StylesFilter* can be provided. The extensions bundle method responsible for creating the `StylesFilter` is *createAuthorStylesFilter*. The method is called each time a document opened in an **Author** editing mode matches the *Document Type Association* where the extensions bundle is defined. The instantiated filter object is kept and used until another extensions bundle corresponding to another document type is activated as a result of the detection process.
   For example:

   ```
   public StylesFilter createAuthorStylesFilter() {

       return new SDFStylesFilter();

   }
   ```

   See the Configuring CSS Styles Filter *(on page 1665)* section for more details about the styles filter extension.

10. **[Optional]** To edit data in custom tabular format, implementations of the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableCellSpanProvider* and the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider* interfaces should be provided. The two methods from the `ExtensionsBundle` specifying these two extension points are *createAuthorTableCellSpanProvider* and *createAuthorTableColumnWidthProvider*.
    For example:

    ```
    public AuthorTableCellSpanProvider createAuthorTableCellSpanProvider() {

        return new TableCellSpanProvider();

    }


    public AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider

        createAuthorTableColumnWidthProvider() {

        return new TableColumnWidthProvider();

    }
    ```

    The two table information providers are not reused for different tables. The methods are called for each table in the document so new instances should be provided every time. Read more about the cell span and column width information providers in Configuring a Table Cell Span Provider *(on page 1658)* and Configuring a Table Column Width Provider *(on page 1652)* sections.

    If the functionality related to one of the previous extension points does not need to be modified, then the developed *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ExtensionsBundle* should not override the corresponding method and leave the default base implementation to return **null**.

11. **[Optional]** An XML vocabulary can contain links to various areas of a document. If the document contains elements defined as links, you can choose to present a more relevant text description for each link. To do this, an implementation of the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.LinkTextResolver* interface should be returned by the *createLinkTextResolver* method. This implementation is used each time the *oxy_link-text() function (on page 1768)* is encountered in the CSS styles associated with an element. For example:

    ```
    public LinkTextResolver createLinkTextResolver() {
      return new DitaLinkTextResolver();
    }
    ```

    Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers built-in implementations for DITA and DocBook: *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.dita.link.DitaLinkTextResolver* and *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.docbook.link.DocbookLinkTextResolver* respectively.

12. Pack the compiled class into a *JAR (on page 2231)* file.
13. Copy the *JAR* file into your custom *framework* directory (for example, `frameworks/sdf`).
14. Add the *JAR* file to the class path. To do this, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, select the document type (for example, *SDF*), click the **Edit** button, select the **Classpath** tab, and click the **Add** button. In the displayed dialog box, enter the location of the *JAR* file relative to the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin `frameworks` folder.
15. Register the Java class by going to the **Extensions** tab. Click the **Choose** button and select the name of the class (for example, *SDFExtensionsBundle*).

    Note:
    The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

Related information

`ExtensionsBundle` Javadoc

Sample DITA (framework) extension that sets a custom `ExtensionsBundle` implementation for customizing links

Adding a Custom Image Decorator for Author Mode

The *AuthorImageDecorator* extension point allows you to add a custom decorator over images in **Author** mode. For example, you could use it to add a message over an image informing the user that they can double-click the image to edit it.

How to Implement an *AuthorImageDecorator*

To implement your own *AuthorImageDecorator*, follow this procedure:

1. Implement the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorImageDecorator* interface.
2. To instruct Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to use this newly created implementation, use either of the following methods:
    a. If you have configured an extensions bundle *(on page 1635)*, you can return the *AuthorImageDecorator* implementation using the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ExtensionsBundle.getAuthorImageDecorator()* method.
    b. Specify the *AuthorImageDecorator* in the **Author image decorator** individual extension in the **Extensions** tab *(on page 110)* of the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* for your particular document type.

Example

The following example illustrates an implementation for presenting a simple message over an image that informs the user that they can double-click the image to edit it:

```
/**
 * Custom Author image decorator for drawing string over images.
 */
public class CustomAuthorImageDecorator extends AuthorImageDecorator {


  /**
   * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorImageDecorator#paint
(ro.sync.exml.view.graphics.Graphics, int, int, int, int,
 ro.sync.exml.view.graphics.Rectangle,
 ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorNode,
 ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess, boolean)
   */
  @Override
  public void paint(Graphics g, int x, int y, int imageWidth, int imageHeight,
      Rectangle originalSize, AuthorNode element,
 AuthorAccess authorAccess, boolean wasAnnotated) {
    if ("image".equals(CommonsOperationsUtil.getLocalName(element.getName()))) {
      g.drawString(
          "[Double-click to edit image]",
          // Draw near the top-left corner
          x + 15,
          y + 15);
    }
  }
```

Example result: In the top-left corner of the image, the following message will be displayed: `[Double-click to edit image]`.

Adding Custom Persistent Highlights

The *Author API* includes a class that allows you to create or remove custom persistent highlights, set new properties for the highlights, and customize their appearance. An example of a possible use case would be if you want to implement your own way of editing review comments. The custom persistent highlights get serialized in the XML document as processing instructions, with the following format:

```
<?oxy_custom_start prop1="val1"....?> xml content <?oxy_custom_end?>
```

This functionality is available through the *AuthorPersistentHighlighter* class that is accessible through the *AuthorEditorAccess#getPersistentHighlighter()* method.

For more information, see the JavaDoc details for this class at https://www.oxygenxml.com/InstData/Editor/SDK/javadoc/ro/sync/ecss/extensions/api/highlights/AuthorPersistentHighlighter.html.

Configuring the Automatic ID Generation and Unique Attributes Recognizer

The *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.UniqueAttributesRecognizer* interface can be implemented if you want to provide for your *framework (on page 2231)* the following features:

- **Automatic ID generation** - You can automatically generate unique IDs for newly inserted elements. Implementations are already available for the DITA and DocBook *frameworks (on page 2231)*. The following methods can be implemented to accomplish this: *assignUniqueIDs(int startOffset, int endOffset)*, *isAutoIDGenerationActive()*
- **Avoiding copying unique attributes when "Split" is called inside an element** - You can split the current *block element (on page 2228)* by pressing the "Enter" key and then choosing "Split". This is a very useful way to create new paragraphs, for example. All attributes are by default copied on the new element but if those attributes are IDs you sometimes want to avoid creating validation errors in the editor. Implementing the following method, you can decide whether or not an attribute should be copied during the split: *boolean copyAttributeOnSplit(String attrQName, AuthorElement element)*

  Tip:
  The *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.commons.id.DefaultUniqueAttributesRecognizer* class is an implementation of the interface that can be extended by your customization to provide easy assignation of IDs in your *framework (on page 2231)*. You can also check out the DITA and DocBook implementations of *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.UniqueAttributesRecognizer* to see how they were implemented and connected to the extensions bundle.

Note:
The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

Configuring Content Completion Proposals

You can filter or contribute to proposals offered for content completion by implementing the *ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.SchemaManagerFilter* interface.

```
import java.util.List;


import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.CIAttribute;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.CIElement;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.CIValue;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.Context;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.SchemaManagerFilter;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.WhatAttributesCanGoHereContext;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.WhatElementsCanGoHereContext;
import ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.WhatPossibleValuesHasAttributeContext;


public class SDFSchemaManagerFilter implements SchemaManagerFilter {
```

You can implement the various callbacks of the interface either by returning the default values given by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin or by contributing to the list of proposals. The filter can be applied on elements, attributes or on their values. Attributes filtering can be implemented using the *filterAttributes* method and changing the default content completion list of *ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.CIAttribute* for the element provided by the current *ro.sync.contentcompletion.xml.WhatAttributesCanGoHereContext* context. For example, the `SDFSchemaManagerFilter` checks if the element from the current context is the `table` element and adds the `frame` attribute to the `table` list of attributes.

```
/**
 * Filter attributes of the "table" element.
 */
public List<CIAttribute> filterAttributes(List<CIAttribute> attributes,
    WhatAttributesCanGoHereContext context) {
  // If the element from the current context is the 'table' element add the
  // attribute named 'frame' to the list of default content completion proposals
  if (context != null) {
    ContextElement contextElement = context.getParentElement();
    if ("table".equals(contextElement.getQName())) {
      CIAttribute frameAttribute = new CIAttribute();
      frameAttribute.setName("frame");
      frameAttribute.setRequired(false);
```

```
      frameAttribute.setFixed(false);
      frameAttribute.setDefaultValue("void");
      if (attributes == null) {
        attributes = new ArrayList<CIAttribute>();
      }
      attributes.add(frameAttribute);
    }
  }
  return attributes;
}
```

The elements that can be inserted in a specific context can be filtered using the *filterElements* method. The `SDFSchemaManagerFilter` uses this method to replace the `td` child element with the `th` element when `header` is the current context element.

```
public List<CIElement> filterElements(List<CIElement> elements,
    WhatElementsCanGoHereContext context) {
  // If the element from the current context is the 'header' element remove the
  // 'td' element from the list of content completion proposals and add the
  // 'th' element.
  if (context != null) {
    Stack<ContextElement> elementStack = context.getElementStack();
    if (elementStack != null) {
      ContextElement contextElement = context.getElementStack().peek();
      if ("header".equals(contextElement.getQName())) {
        if (elements != null) {
          for (Iterator<CIElement> iterator =
elements.iterator(); iterator.hasNext();) {
            CIElement element = iterator.next();
            // Remove the 'td' element
            if ("td".equals(element.getQName())) {
              elements.remove(element);
              break;
            }
          }
        } else {
          elements = new ArrayList<CIElement>();
        }
        // Insert the 'th' element in the list of content completion proposals
        CIElement thElement = new SDFElement();
        thElement.setName("th");
        elements.add(thElement);
      }
```

```
    }
  } else {
    // If the given context is null then the given list of content completion
    // elements contains global elements.
  }
  return elements;
}
```

The elements or attributes values can be filtered using the *filterElementValues* or *filterAttributeValues* methods.

Note:
The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

Configuring a Custom Drag and Drop Listener

Sometimes it is useful to perform various operations when certain objects are dropped from outside sources in the editing area. You can choose from three interfaces to implement depending on whether you are using the Eclipse plugin or the standalone version of the application, or if you want to add the handler for the **Text** or **Author** modes.

Interfaces for the Drag and Drop Listener

ro.sync.exml.editor.xmleditor.pageauthor.AuthorDnDListener

Receives callbacks from the standalone application for Drag And Drop in **Author** mode.

com.oxygenxml.editor.editors.author.AuthorDnDListener

Receives callbacks from the Eclipse plugin for Drag And Drop in **Author** mode.

com.oxygenxml.editor.editors.TextDnDListener

Receives callbacks from the Eclipse plugin for Drag And Drop in **Text** mode.

Note:
The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

To configure how dropped URLs or XHTML fragments are handled in documents, see Handling When URLs or XHTML Fragments are Dropped or Pasted in Author Mode *(on page 1688)*.

Related Information:
Customizing Smart Paste Support *(on page 1593)*

Configuring a Reference Resolver

This information is helpful if you need to provide a handler for resolving references and obtain the content they reference. For example, suppose the element that has references is **ref** and the attribute indicating the referenced resource is **location**. You need to implement a Java extension class for obtaining the referenced resources.

1. Create the class *simple.documentation.framework.ReferencesResolver*. This class must implement the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorReferenceResolver* interface.

```
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorReferenceResolver;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AttrValue;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorNode;


public class ReferencesResolver
      implements AuthorReferenceResolver {
```

2. The *hasReferences* method verifies if the handler considers the node to have references. It takes *AuthorNode* as an argument that represents the node that will be verified. The method will return `true` if the node is considered to have references. In the following example, to be a reference, the node must be an element with the name *ref* and it must have an attribute named *location*.

```
public boolean hasReferences(AuthorNode node) {
  boolean hasReferences = false;
  if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
    AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
    if ("ref".equals(element.getLocalName())) {
      AttrValue attrValue = element.getAttribute("location");
      hasReferences = attrValue != null;
    }
  }
  return hasReferences;
}
```

3. The method *getDisplayName* returns the display name of the node that contains the expanded referenced content. It takes *AuthorNode* as an argument that represents the node that needs the display name. The referenced content engine will ask this *AuthorReferenceResolver* implementation for the display name for each node that is considered a reference. In the following example, the display name is the value of the *location* attribute from the *ref* element.

```
public String getDisplayName(AuthorNode node) {
  String displayName = "ref-fragment";
  if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
    AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
```

```
    if ("ref".equals(element.getLocalName())) {
      AttrValue attrValue = element.getAttribute("location");
      if (attrValue != null) {
        displayName = attrValue.getValue();
      }
    }
  }
  return displayName;
}
```

4. The method *resolveReference* resolves the reference of the node and returns a *SAXSource* with the parser and its input source. It takes *AuthorNode* as an argument that represents the node that needs the reference resolved, the `systemID` of the node, the *AuthorAccess* with access methods to the **Author** mode data model and a SAX *EntityResolver* that resolves resources that are already opened in another editor or resolve resources through the *XML Catalog (on page 2235)*. In the implementation, you need to resolve the reference relative to the `systemID`, and create a parser and an input source over the resolved reference.

```
public SAXSource resolveReference(
    AuthorNode node,
    String systemID,
    AuthorAccess authorAccess,
    EntityResolver  entityResolver) {
  SAXSource saxSource = null;

  if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
    AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
    if ("ref".equals(element.getLocalName())) {
      AttrValue attrValue = element.getAttribute("location");
      if (attrValue != null) {
        String attrStringVal = attrValue.getValue();
        try {
          URL absoluteUrl = new URL(new URL(systemID),
          authorAccess.getUtilAccess().correctURL(attrStringVal));

          InputSource inputSource = entityResolver.resolveEntity(null,
              absoluteUrl.toString());
          if(inputSource == null) {
            inputSource = new InputSource(absoluteUrl.toString());
          }

          XMLReader xmlReader = authorAccess.newNonValidatingXMLReader();
          xmlReader.setEntityResolver(entityResolver);
```

```
          saxSource = new SAXSource(xmlReader, inputSource);
        } catch (MalformedURLException e) {
          logger.error(e, e);
        } catch (SAXException e) {
          logger.error(e, e);
        } catch (IOException e) {
          logger.error(e, e);
        }
      }
    }
  }

  return saxSource;
}
```

5. The method *getReferenceUniqueID* should return a unique identifier for the node reference. The unique identifier is used to avoid resolving the references recursively. The method takes *AuthorNode* as an argument that represents the node with the reference. In the following example, the unique identifier is the value of the *location* attribute from the *ref* element.

```
public String getReferenceUniqueID(AuthorNode node) {
  String id = null;
  if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
    AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
    if ("ref".equals(element.getLocalName())) {
      AttrValue attrValue = element.getAttribute("location");
      if (attrValue != null) {
        id = attrValue.getValue();
      }
    }
  }
  return id;
}
```

6. The method *getReferenceSystemID*should return the `systemID` of the referenced content. It takes *AuthorNode* as an argument that represents the node with the reference and the *AuthorAccess* with access methods to the **Author** mode data model. For example, the value of the *location* attribute is used from the *ref* element and resolved relatively to the XML base URL of the node.

```
public String getReferenceSystemID(AuthorNode node,
                                   AuthorAccess authorAccess) {
  String systemID = null;
  if (node.getType() == AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT) {
```

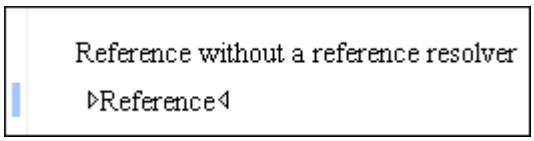
```
    AuthorElement element = (AuthorElement) node;
    if ("ref".equals(element.getLocalName())) {
      AttrValue attrValue = element.getAttribute("location");
      if (attrValue != null) {
        String attrStringVal = attrValue.getValue();
        try {
          URL absoluteUrl = new URL(node.getXMLBaseURL(),
              authorAccess.getUtilAccess().correctURL(attrStringVal));
          systemID = absoluteUrl.toString();
        } catch (MalformedURLException e) {
          logger.error(e, e);
        }
      }
    }
  }
  return systemID;
}
```

In the listing below, the XML document contains the **ref** element:

```
<ref location="referenced.xml">Reference</ref>
```

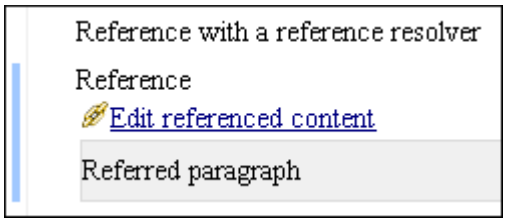
When no reference resolver is specified, the reference has the following layout:

Figure 300. Reference with no specified reference resolver



When the above implementation is configured, the reference has the expected layout:

Figure 301. Reference with reference resolver



Note:
The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

Configuring a State Listener for Author Mode

The *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorExtensionStateListener* implementation is notified when the **Author** mode extension (where the listener is defined) is activated or deactivated in the document type detection process.

```
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorExtensionStateListener;


public class SDFAuthorExtensionStateListener implements
  AuthorExtensionStateListener {
  private AuthorListener sdfAuthorDocumentListener;
  private AuthorMouseListener sdfMouseListener;
  private AuthorCaretListener sdfCaretListener;
  private OptionListener sdfOptionListener;
```

When the association rules of the *framework (on page 2231)* (document type) configuration match that of a document open in the **Author** editing mode, the *activation* event received by this listener should be used to perform custom initializations and to register listeners such as *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorListener*, *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorMouseListener*, or *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorCaretListener*.

```
public void activated(AuthorAccess authorAccess) {
  // Get the value of the option.
  String option = authorAccess.getOptionsStorage().getOption(
              "sdf.custom.option.key", "");
  // Use the option for some initializations...


  // Add an OptionListener.
  authorAccess.getOptionsStorage().addOptionListener(sdfOptionListener);


  // Add author DocumentListeners.
  sdfAuthorDocumentListener = new SDFAuthorListener();
  authorAccess.getDocumentController().addAuthorListener(
              sdfAuthorDocumentListener);


  // Add MouseListener.
  sdfMouseListener = new SDFAuthorMouseListener();
  authorAccess.getEditorAccess().addAuthorMouseListener(sdfMouseListener);


  // Add CaretListener.
  sdfCaretListener = new SDFAuthorCaretListener();
  authorAccess.getEditorAccess().addAuthorCaretListener(sdfCaretListener);


  // Other custom initializations...
```

```
}
```

The `authorAccess` parameter received by the *activated* method can be used to gain access to specific **Author** mode actions and informations related to components such as the editor, document, workspace, tables, or the *change tracking* manager.

If options specific to the custom developed *Author Extension* need to be stored or retrieved, a reference to the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.OptionsStorage* can be obtained by calling the *getOptionsStorage* method from the **authorAccess**. The same object can be used to register *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.OptionListener* listeners. An option listener is registered in relation with an option **key** and will be notified about the value changes of that option.

An *AuthorListener* can be used if events related to the **Author** mode document modifications are of interest. The listener can be added to the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorDocumentController*. A reference to the document controller is returned by the *getDocumentController* method from the **authorAccess**. The document controller can also be used to perform operations involving document modifications.

To provide access to the **Author** mode component-related functionality and information, the **authorAccess** has a reference to the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.access.AuthorEditorAccess* that can be obtained when calling the *getEditorAccess* method. At this level, *AuthorMouseListener* and *AuthorCaretListener* can be added to provide notification of mouse and cursor events that occur in the **Author** editor mode.

The *deactivation* event is received when another *framework* is activated for the same document, the user switches to another editor mode or the editor is closed. The *deactivate* method is typically used to unregister the listeners previously added on the *activate* method and to perform other actions. For example, options related to the deactivated *Author Extension* can be saved at this point.

```
public void deactivated(AuthorAccess authorAccess) {
  // Store the option.
  authorAccess.getOptionsStorage().setOption(
              "sdf.custom.option.key", optionValue);

  // Remove the OptionListener.
  authorAccess.getOptionsStorage().removeOptionListener(sdfOptionListener);

  // Remove DocumentListeners.
  authorAccess.getDocumentController().removeAuthorListener(
              sdfAuthorDocumentListener);

  // Remove MouseListener.
  authorAccess.getEditorAccess().removeAuthorMouseListener(sdfMouseListener);

  // Remove CaretListener.
  authorAccess.getEditorAccess().removeAuthorCaretListener(sdfCaretListener);
```

```
  // Other actions...

}
```

Note:

The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

Configuring Tables

There are standard CSS properties used to indicate what elements are tables, table rows and table cells. What CSS is missing is the possibility to indicate the cell spanning, row separators or the column widths. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers support for adding extensions to solve these problems.

The table in this example is a simple one. The header must be formatted in a different way than the ordinary rows, so it will have a background color.

```
table{
    display:table;
    border:1px solid navy;
    margin:1em;
    max-width:1000px;
    min-width:150px;
}

table[width]{
  width:attr(width, length);
}

tr, header{
    display:table-row;
}

header{
    background-color: silver;
    color:inherit
}

td{
  display:table-cell;
  border:1px solid navy;
```

```
  padding:1em;
}
```

Suppose that in the schema, the `<td>` tag has the attributes `@row_span` and `@column_span` that are not automatically recognized by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, a Java extension will be implemented that will provide information about the cell spanning. See the section Configuring a Table Cell Span Provider *(on page 1658)*.

Suppose the column widths are specified by the `@width` attribute of the `<customcol>` elements that are not automatically recognized by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. It is necessary to implement a Java extension that will provide information about the column widths. For more information, see Configuring a Table Column Width Provider *(on page 1652)*.

The table from the example does not make use of the attributes `@colsep` and `@rowsep` (which are automatically recognized) but if you want the rows to be separated by horizontal lines, it is necessary to implement a Java extension that will provide information about the row and column separators. For more information, see Configuring a Table Cell Row and Column Separator Provider *(on page 1661)*.

Configuring a Table Column Width Provider

In a custom *framework (on page 2231)*, the `<table>` element as well as the table columns can have specified widths. For these widths to be considered by **Author** mode, you need to provide the means for determining them. As explained in Configuring Tables *(on page 1651)*, if you use the table element attribute **width** Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can determine the table width automatically. In this example the table has `<col>` elements with `@width` attributes that are not recognized by default. You will need to implement a Java extension class to determine the column widths.

1. Create the class *simple.documentation.framework.TableColumnWidthProvider*. This class must implement the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider* interface.

   ```
   import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess;
   import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperationException;
   import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider;
   import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.WidthRepresentation;
   import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement;


   public class TableColumnWidthProvider
         implements AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider {
   ```

2. Method *init* is taking as argument an *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement* that represents the XML `<table>` element. In our case the column widths are specified in `<col>` elements from the `<table>` element. In such cases you must collect the span information by analyzing the `<table>` element.

   ```
   public void init(AuthorElement tableElement) {
     this.tableElement = tableElement;
     AuthorElement[] colChildren = tableElement.getElementsByLocalName("customcol");
   ```

```
  if (colChildren != null && colChildren.length > 0) {
    for (int i = 0; i < colChildren.length; i++) {
      AuthorElement colChild = colChildren[i];
      if (i == 0) {
        colsStartOffset = colChild.getStartOffset();
      }
      if (i == colChildren.length - 1) {
        colsEndOffset = colChild.getEndOffset();
      }
      // Determine the 'width' for this col.
      AttrValue colWidthAttribute = colChild.getAttribute("width");
      String colWidth = null;
      if (colWidthAttribute != null) {
        colWidth = colWidthAttribute.getValue();
        // Add WidthRepresentation objects for the columns this 'customcol'
        //  specification spans over.
        colWidthSpecs.add(new WidthRepresentation(colWidth, true));
      }
    }
  }
}
```

3. The method *isTableAcceptingWidth* should check if the table cells are a `<td>` element.

```
public boolean isTableAcceptingWidth(String tableCellsTagName) {
  return "td".equals(tableCellsTagName);
}
```

4. The method *isTableAndColumnsResizable* should check if the table cells are a `<td>` element. This method determines if the table and its columns can be resized by dragging the edge of a column.

```
public boolean isTableAndColumnsResizable(String tableCellsTagName) {
  return "td".equals(tableCellsTagName);
}
```

5. Methods *getTableWidth* and *getCellWidth* are used to determine the table and column width. The table layout engine will ask this *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableColumnWidthProvider* implementation what is the table width for each table element and the cell width for each cell element from the table that was marked as cell in the CSS using the property `display:table-cell`. The implementation is simple and just parses the value of the **width** attribute. The methods must return `null` for the tables / cells that do not have a specified width.

```
public WidthRepresentation getTableWidth(String tableCellsTagName) {
  WidthRepresentation toReturn = null;
  if (tableElement != null && "td".equals(tableCellsTagName)) {
```

```
  AttrValue widthAttr = tableElement.getAttribute("width");
    if (widthAttr != null) {
      String width = widthAttr.getValue();
      if (width != null) {
        toReturn = new WidthRepresentation(width, true);
      }
    }
  }
  return toReturn;
}
```

```
public List<WidthRepresentation>
getCellWidth(AuthorElement cellElement, int colNumberStart,
  int colSpan) {
  List<WidthRepresentation> toReturn = null;
  int size = colWidthSpecs.size();
  if (size >= colNumberStart && size >= colNumberStart + colSpan) {
    toReturn = new ArrayList<WidthRepresentation>(colSpan);
    for (int i = colNumberStart; i < colNumberStart + colSpan; i ++) {
      // Add the column widths
      toReturn.add(colWidthSpecs.get(i));
    }
  }
  return toReturn;
}
```

6. Methods *commitTableWidthModification* and *commitColumnWidthModifications* are used to commit changes made to the width of the table or its columns when using the mouse drag gestures.

```
public void commitTableWidthModification
(AuthorDocumentController authorDocumentController,
  int newTableWidth, String tableCellsTagName) throws AuthorOperationException {
  if ("td".equals(tableCellsTagName)) {
    if (newTableWidth > 0) {
      if (tableElement != null) {
        String newWidth = String.valueOf(newTableWidth);
        authorDocumentController.setAttribute("width", new AttrValue(newWidth),
                                              tableElement);
      } else {
        throw new AuthorOperationException("Cannot find the table element.");
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```
public void commitColumnWidthModifications
  (AuthorDocumentController authorDocumentController,
  WidthRepresentation[] colWidths, String tableCellsTagName)
  throws AuthorOperationException {
  if ("td".equals(tableCellsTagName)) {
    if (colWidths != null && tableElement != null) {
      if (colsStartOffset >= 0 && colsEndOffset >= 0
&& colsStartOffset < colsEndOffset) {
        authorDocumentController.delete(colsStartOffset, colsEndOffset);
      }
      String xmlFragment = createXMLFragment(colWidths);
      int offset = -1;
      AuthorElement[] header = tableElement.getElementsByLocalName("header");
      if (header != null && header.length > 0) {
        // Insert the cols elements before the 'header' element
        offset = header[0].getStartOffset();
      }
      if (offset == -1) {
        throw new AuthorOperationException(
          "No valid offset to insert column width");
      }
      authorDocumentController.insertXMLFragment(xmlFragment, offset);
    }
  }
}


private String createXMLFragment(WidthRepresentation[] widthRepresentations) {
  StringBuffer fragment = new StringBuffer();
  String ns = tableElement.getNamespace();
  for (int i = 0; i < widthRepresentations.length; i++) {
    WidthRepresentation width = widthRepresentations[i];
    fragment.append("<customcol");
    String strRepresentation = width.getWidthRepresentation();
    if (strRepresentation != null) {
      fragment.append(" width=\"" + width.getWidthRepresentation() + "\"");
    }
    if (ns != null && ns.length() > 0) {
      fragment.append(" xmlns=\"" + ns + "\"");
    }
    fragment.append("/>");
  }
```

```
  return fragment.toString();
}
```

7. The following three methods are used to determine what type of column width specifications the table column width provider support. In our case all types of specifications are allowed:

```
public boolean isAcceptingFixedColumnWidths(String tableCellsTagName) {
  return true;
}

public boolean isAcceptingPercentageColumnWidths(String tableCellsTagName) {
  return true;
}

public boolean isAcceptingProportionalColumnWidths(String tableCellsTagName) {
  return true;
}
```

Note:

The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

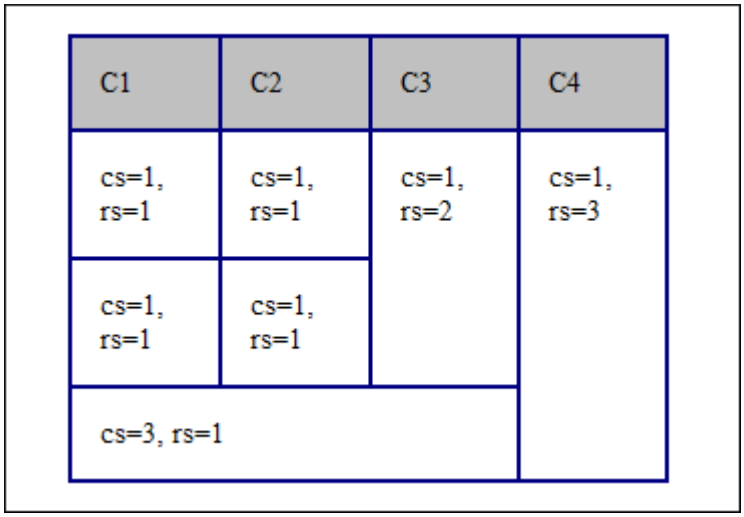
In the listing below, the XML document contains the table element:

```
<table width="300">
    <customcol width="50.0px"/>
    <customcol width="1*"/>
    <customcol width="2*"/>
    <customcol width="20%"/>
    <header>
        <td>C1</td>
        <td>C2</td>
        <td>C3</td>
        <td>C4</td>
    </header>
    <tr>
        <td>cs=1, rs=1</td>
        <td>cs=1, rs=1</td>
        <td row_span="2">cs=1, rs=2</td>
        <td row_span="3">cs=1, rs=3</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
        <td>cs=1, rs=1</td>
```

```
        <td>cs=1, rs=1</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
        <td column_span="3">cs=3, rs=1</td>
    </tr>
</table>
```

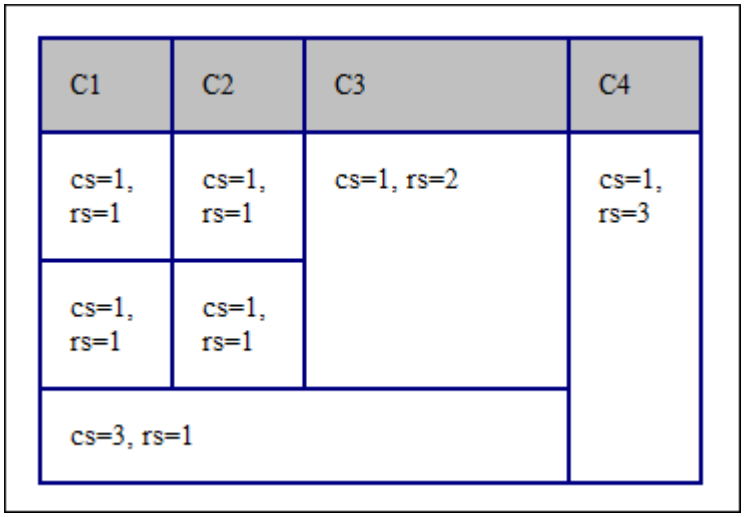
When no table column width provider is specified, the table has the following layout:

Figure 302. Table layout when no column width provider is specified



When the above implementation is configured, the table has the correct layout:

Figure 303. Columns with custom widths



Note:

The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

Configuring a Table Cell Span Provider

In a custom *framework (on page 2231)*, the `<table>` element can have cells that span over multiple columns and rows. As explained in Configuring Tables *(on page 1651)*, you need to indicate Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin a method to determine the cell spanning. If you use the `@rowspan` and `@colspan` attributes, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can determine the cell spanning automatically. In the following example, the `<td>` element uses the `@row_span` and `@column_span` attributes that are not recognized by default. You will need to implement a Java extension class for defining the cell spanning.

1. Create the class *simple.documentation.framework.TableCellSpanProvider*. This class must implement the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableCellSpanProvider* interface.

```
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableCellSpanProvider;

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AttrValue;

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement;


public class TableCellSpanProvider

      implements AuthorTableCellSpanProvider {
```

2. The *init* method takes *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement* that represents the XML `<table>` element as its argument. In this example, the cell span is specified for each of the cells so you leave this method empty. However, there are cases (such as the CALS table model) when the cell spanning is specified in the `<table>` element. In such cases, you must collect the span information by analyzing the `<table>` element.

```
public void init(AuthorElement table) {

}
```

3. The *getColSpan* method is taking as argument the table cell. The table layout engine will ask this *AuthorTableSpanSupport* implementation what is the column span and the row span for each XML element from the table that was marked as cell in the CSS using the property `display:table-cell`. The implementation is simple and just parses the value of **column_span** attribute. The method must return `null` for all the cells that do not change the span specification.

```
public Integer getColSpan(AuthorElement cell) {
  Integer colSpan = null;


  AttrValue attrValue = cell.getAttribute("column_span");
  if(attrValue != null) {
    // The attribute was found.
    String cs = attrValue.getValue();
    if(cs != null) {
      try {
        colSpan = new Integer(cs);
      } catch (NumberFormatException ex) {
        // The attribute value was not a number.
```

```
      }
    }
  }
  return colSpan;
}
```

4. The row span is determined in a similar manner:

```
public Integer getRowSpan(AuthorElement cell) {
  Integer rowSpan = null;


  AttrValue attrValue = cell.getAttribute("row_span");
  if(attrValue != null) {
    // The attribute was found.
    String rs = attrValue.getValue();
    if(rs != null) {
      try {
        rowSpan = new Integer(rs);
      } catch (NumberFormatException ex) {
        // The attribute value was not a number.
      }
    }
  }
  return rowSpan;
}
```

5. The method *hasColumnSpecifications* always returns `true` considering column specifications always available.

```
public boolean hasColumnSpecifications(AuthorElement tableElement) {
  return true;
}
```

Note:
The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

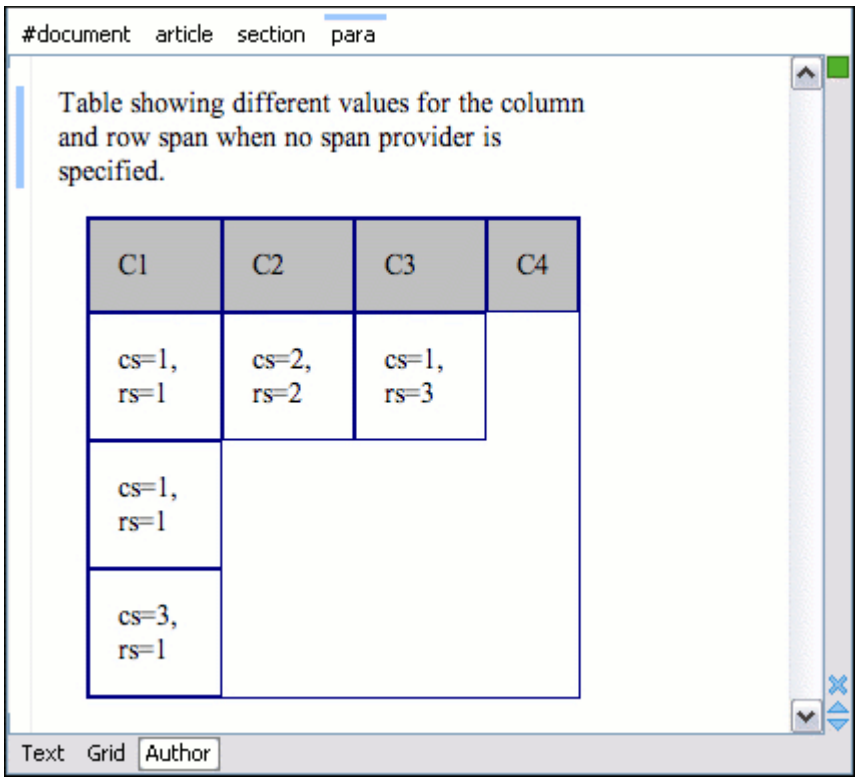
6. In the listing below, the XML document contains the table element:

```
<table>
    <header>
        <td>C1</td>
        <td>C2</td>
```

```
        <td>C3</td>
        <td>C4</td>
    </header>
    <tr>
        <td>cs=1, rs=1</td>
        <td column_span="2" row_span="2">cs=2, rs=2</td>
        <td row_span="3">cs=1, rs=3</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
        <td>cs=1, rs=1</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
        <td column_span="3">cs=3, rs=1</td>
    </tr>
</table>
```

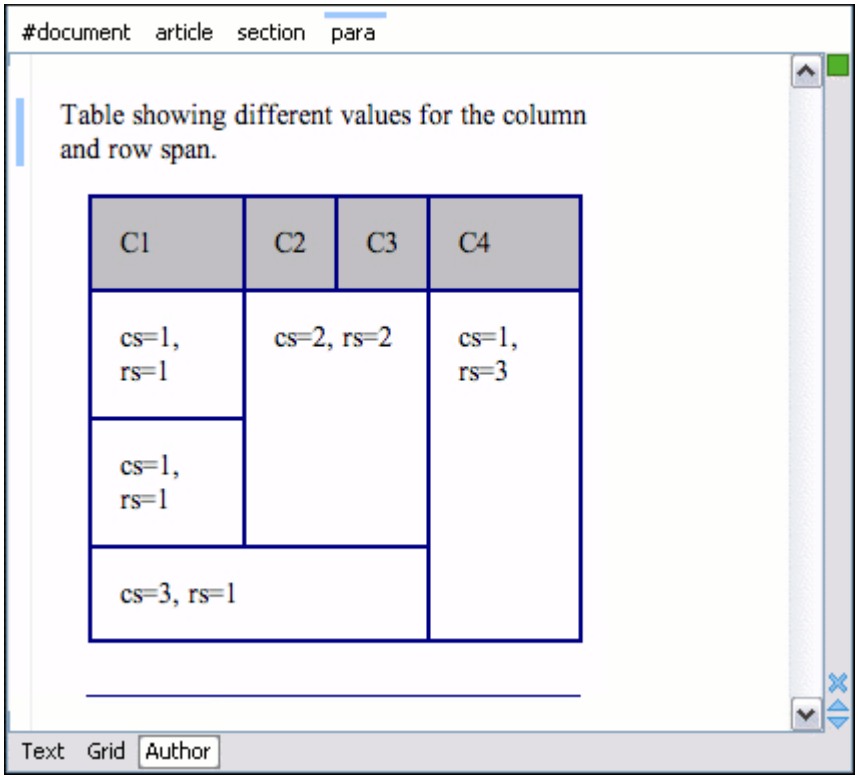
When no table cell span provider is specified, the table has the following layout:

Figure 304. Table layout when no cell span provider is specified



When the above implementation is configured, the table has the correct layout:

Figure 305. Cells spanning multiple rows and columns.



Note:
The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

Configuring a Table Cell Row and Column Separator Provider

In a custom *framework (on page 2231)*, the `<table>` element has separators between rows. As explained in Configuring Tables *(on page 1651)*, you need to indicate a method to determine the way rows and columns are separated. If you use the `@rowsep` and `@colsep` cell element attributes, or your table is conforming to the CALS table model, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can determine the cell separators. Even if there are no attributes that define the separators, you can still force a separator between rows by implementing a Java extension.

1. Create the class *simple.documentation.framework.TableCellSepProvider*. This class must implement the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableCellSepProvider* interface.

```
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorTableCellSepProvider;

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement;


public class TableCellSepProvider implements AuthorTableCellSepProvider{
```

2. The *init* method takes the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement* interface that represents the XML `<table>` element as its argument. If the separator information is implicit, it does not depend on

the current table, so you leave this method empty. However, there are cases (such as the CALS table model) when the cell separators are specified in the `<table>` element. In such cases, you should initialize your provider based on the given argument.

```
public void init(AuthorElement table) {

}
```

3. The *getColSep* method takes the table cell as its argument. The table layout engine will ask this *AuthorTableCellSepProvider* implementation if there is a column separator for each XML element from the table that was marked as cell in the CSS using the property `display:table-cell`. The following example returns **false**, meaning there will not be column separators.

```
/**
 * @return false - No column separator at the right of the cell.
 */
@Override
public boolean getColSep(AuthorElement cellElement, int columnIndex) {
  return false;
}
```

4. The row separators are determined in a similar manner. This time the example returns **true**, forcing a separator between the rows.

```
/**
 * @return true - A row separator below each cell.
 */
@Override
public boolean getRowSep(AuthorElement cellElement, int columnIndex) {
  return true;
}
```

Note:
The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

5. In the example below, the XML document contains the table element:

```
<table>
     <header>
       <td>H1</td>
       <td>H2</td>
       <td>H3</td>
       <td>H4</td>
     </header>
```

```
    <tr>
      <td>C11</td>
      <td>C12</td>
      <td>C13</td>
      <td>C14</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
      <td>C21</td>
      <td>C22</td>
      <td>C23</td>
      <td>C24</td>
    </tr>
    <tr>
      <td>C31</td>
      <td>C32</td>
      <td>C33</td>
      <td>C34</td>
    </tr>
  </table>
```

When the borders for the `<td>` element are removed from the CSS, the row separators become visible:

Figure 306. Row separators provided by the Java implementation.

H1	H2	H3	H4
C11	C12	C13	C14
C21	C22	C23	C24
C31	C32	C33	C34

Note:
The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

Customizing Attribute Value Editors

The *CustomAttributeValueEditor* extension point allows you customize the attribute value editing mechanisms in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. It changes the **Browse** button found in the attribute editors to an **Edit** button. When a user clicks that **Edit** button, your custom attribute value editor will be presented.

The **Edit** button can be accessed in the following attribute editors:

- The **Attributes** view in **Author** mode *(on page 381)* (when the **Expand** button is used to reveal an expanded panel).
- The **Attributes** view in **Text** mode *(on page 305)* (when the **Expand** button is used to reveal an expanded panel).
- The **In-place Attributes Editor** *(on page 383)* when invoked in **Author** mode.
- The **In-place Attributes Editor** invoked in the **Outline** view *(on page 301)*.

How to Implement a *CustomAttributeValueEditor*

To implement your own *CustomAttributeValueEditor*, follow this procedure:

1. Extend the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.CustomAttributeValueEditor* abstract class.
2. To instruct Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to use this newly created implementation, use either of the following methods:
    a. If you have configured an extensions bundle *(on page 1635)*, you can return the *CustomAttributeValueEditor* implementation using the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ExtensionsBundle.createCustomAttributeValueEditor()* method.
    b. Specify the *CustomAttributeValueEditor* in the **Author custom attribute value editor** individual extension in the **Extensions** tab *(on page 110)* of the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* for your particular document type.

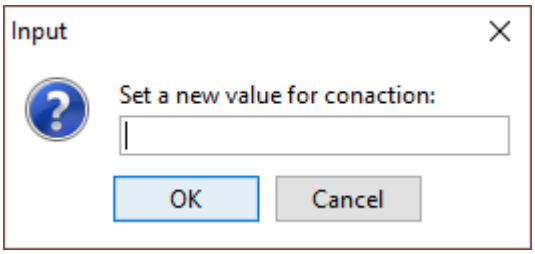
Example

The following example creates a very simple custom attribute value editor:

```
/**
 * A custom attribute value editor.
 */
public class MyCustomAttributeValueEditor extends CustomAttributeValueEditor {


  /**
   * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.Extension#getDescription()
   */
  @Override
  public String getDescription() {
    return "My custom attribute value editor";
  }
```

```
  /**
   * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.CustomAttributeValueEditor#getAttributeValue
             (ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.EditedAttribute, java.lang.Object)
   */
  @Override
  public String getAttributeValue(EditedAttribute attribute, Object parentComponent)
      throws CancelledByUserException {
    // Show an input dialog for collecting the new value
    return JOptionPane.showInputDialog
                    ("Set a new value for " + attribute.getAttributeQName() + ":");
  }

  /**
   * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.CustomAttributeValueEditor#shouldHandleAttribute
                     (ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.EditedAttribute)
   */
  @Override
  public boolean shouldHandleAttribute(EditedAttribute attribute) {
    // Handle all attributes
    return true;
  }
}
```

Example result: If a user were to click the **Edit** button in any of the attribute editors, the following dialog box would be displayed that allows the user to insert a value for the particular attribute:



Customizing the CSS Styles Filter

You can modify the CSS styles for each *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorNode* rendered in the **Author** mode using an implementation of *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.StylesFilter*. You can implement the various callbacks of the interface either by returning the default value given by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin or by contributing to the value. The received styles *ro.sync.ecss.css.Styles* can be processed and values can be overwritten with your own. For example, you can override the `KEY_BACKGROUND_COLOR` style to return your own implementation of *ro.sync.exml.view.graphics.Color* or override the `KEY_FONT` style to return your own implementation of *ro.sync.exml.view.graphics.Font*.

For instance, in this simple document example, the filter can change the value of the `KEY_FONT` property for the `<table>` element:

```
package simple.documentation.framework;

import ro.sync.ecss.css.Styles;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.StylesFilter;
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorNode;
import ro.sync.exml.view.graphics.Font;

public class SDFStylesFilter implements StylesFilter {

    public Styles filter(Styles styles, AuthorNode authorNode) {
        if (AuthorNode.NODE_TYPE_ELEMENT == authorNode.getType()
          && "table".equals(authorNode.getName())) {
          styles.setProperty(Styles.KEY_FONT, new Font(null, Font.BOLD, 12));
        }
        return styles;
    }
}
```

Note:
The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

Customizing Elements that Wrap Profiled Content

For each *framework (on page 2231)* (document type), you can configure the phrase-type elements that wrap the profiled content by setting a custom *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ProfilingConditionalTextProvider*. This configuration is set by default for DITA and DocBook *frameworks*.

Customizing the Link Target Reference Finder

The link target reference finder represents the support for finding references from links that indicate specific elements inside an XML document. This support will only be available if a schema is associated with the document type.

If you do not define a custom link target reference finder, the `DefaultElementLocatorProvider` implementation *(on page 1667)* will be used by default. The interface that should be implemented for a custom link target reference finder is `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocatorProvider`. As an alternative, the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.commons.DefaultElementLocatorProvider` implementation can also be extended.

The used `ElementLocatorProvider` will be queried for an `ElementLocator` when a link location must be determined (when a link is clicked). Then, to find the corresponding (linked) element, the obtained `ElementLocator` will be queried for each element from the document.

Note:
The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

Creating a Custom Link Target Reference Finder

If you need to create a custom link target reference finder you can do so by creating the class that will implement the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocatorProvider` interface. As an alternative, your class could extend `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.commons.DefaultElementLocatorProvider`, the default implementation.

Note:
The complete source code of the `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.commons.DefaultElementLocatorProvider`, `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.commons.IDElementLocator` or `ro.sync.ecss.extensions.commons.XPointerElementLocator` can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** project.

Default Link Target Reference Finder

The *DefaultElementLocatorProvider* implementation is used by default to find link target references. It offers support for the most common types of links:

- Links based on ID attribute values *(on page 1668)*.
- XPointer element() scheme *(on page 1669)*.

The method *getElementLocator* determines what *ElementLocator* should be used. In the default implementation, it checks if the link is an XPointer element() scheme. Otherwise, it assumes it is an ID. A non-null *IDTypeVerifier* will always be provided if a schema is associated with the document type.

The `link` string argument is the *anchor (on page 2228)* part of the of the URL that is composed from the value of the link property specified for the link element in the CSS.

```
public ElementLocator getElementLocator(IDTypeVerifier idVerifier,
              String link) {
  ElementLocator elementLocator = null;
  try {
    if(link.startsWith("element(")){
      // xpointer element() scheme
      elementLocator = new XPointerElementLocator(idVerifier, link);
```

```
    } else {
      // Locate link element by ID
      elementLocator = new IDElementLocator(idVerifier, link);
    }
  } catch (ElementLocatorException e) {
    logger.warn("Exception when create element locator for link: "
        + link + ". Cause: " + e, e);
  }
  return elementLocator;
}
```

ID Element Locator

The *IDElementLocator* is an implementation of the abstract class *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocator* for links that use an **ID**.

The constructor only assigns field values and the method *endElement* is empty for this implementation.

The method *startElement* checks each of the element's attribute values and when one matches the link, it considers the element found if one of the following conditions is satisfied:

- The qualified name of the attribute is `xml:id`.
- The attribute type is ID.

The attribute type is checked with the help of the method *IDTypeVerifier.hasIDType*.

```
public boolean startElement(String uri, String localName,
        String name, Attr[] atts) {
  boolean elementFound = false;
  for (int i = 0; i < atts.length; i++) {
    if (link.equals(atts[i].getValue())) {
      if("xml:id".equals(atts[i].getQName())) {
        // xml:id attribute
        elementFound = true;
      } else {
        // check if attribute has ID type
        String attrLocalName =
          ExtensionUtil.getLocalName(atts[i].getQName());
        String attrUri = atts[i].getNamespace();
        if (idVerifier.hasIDType(localName, uri, attrLocalName, attrUri)) {
          elementFound = true;
        }
      }
    }
  }
```

```
  return elementFound;
}
```

XPointer Element Locator

XPointerElementLocator is an implementation of the abstract class *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.link.ElementLocator* for links that have one of the following XPointer element() scheme patterns:

element (*elementID*)

Locate the element with the specified ID.

element (*/1/2/3*)

A child sequence appearing alone identifies an element by means of stepwise navigation, which is directed by a sequence of integers separated by slashes (/). Each integer n locates the nth child element of the previously located element.

element (*elementID/3/4*)

A child sequence appearing after a *NCName* identifies an element by means of stepwise navigation, starting from the element located by the given name.

The constructor separates the ID/integers, which are delimited by slashes(/) into a sequence of identifiers (an XPointer path). It will also check that the link has one of the supported patterns of the XPointer element() scheme.

```
public XPointerElementLocator(IDTypeVerifier idVerifier, String link)
                      throws ElementLocatorException {
  super(link);
  this.idVerifier = idVerifier;

  link = link.substring("element(".length(), link.length() - 1);

  StringTokenizer stringTokenizer = new StringTokenizer(link, "/", false);
  xpointerPath = new String[stringTokenizer.countTokens()];
  int i = 0;
  while (stringTokenizer.hasMoreTokens()) {
    xpointerPath[i] = stringTokenizer.nextToken();
    boolean invalidFormat = false;

    // Empty xpointer component is not supported
    if(xpointerPath[i].length() == 0){
      invalidFormat = true;
    }
```

```
    if(i > 0){
      try {
        Integer.parseInt(xpointerPath[i]);
      } catch (NumberFormatException e) {
        invalidFormat = true;
      }
    }

    if(invalidFormat){
      throw new ElementLocatorException(
        "Only the element() scheme is supported when locating XPointer links."
        + "Supported formats: element(elementID), element(/1/2/3),
              element(elemID/2/3/4).");
    }
    i++;
  }

  if(Character.isDigit(xpointerPath[0].charAt(0))){
    // This is the case when xpointer have the following pattern /1/5/7
    xpointerPathDepth = xpointerPath.length;
  } else {
    // This is the case when xpointer starts with an element ID
    xpointerPathDepth = -1;
    startWithElementID  = true;
  }
}
```

The method *startElement* will be invoked at the beginning of every element in the XML document(even when the element is empty). The arguments it takes are

uri

The namespace URI, or the empty string if the element has no namespace URI or if namespace processing is disabled.

localName

Local name of the element.

qName

Qualified name of the element.

atts

Attributes attached to the element. If there are no attributes, this argument will be empty.

The method returns `true` if the processed element is found to be the one indicated by the link.

The *XPointerElementLocator* implementation of the *startElement* will update the depth of the current element and keep the index of the element in its parent. If the `xpointerPath` starts with an element ID then the current element ID is verified to match the specified ID. If this is the case the depth of the XPointer is updated taking into account the depth of the current element.

If the XPointer path depth is the same as the current element depth then the kept indices of the current element path are compared to the indices in the XPointer path. If all of them match then the element has been found.

```
public boolean startElement(String uri, String localName,
       String name, Attr[] atts) {
  boolean linkLocated = false;
  // Increase current element document depth
  startElementDepth ++;

  if (endElementDepth != startElementDepth) {
    // The current element is the first child of the parent
    currentElementIndexStack.push(new Integer(1));
  } else {
    // Another element in the parent element
    currentElementIndexStack.push(new Integer(lastIndexInParent + 1));
  }

  if (startWithElementID) {
    // This the case when xpointer path starts with an element ID.
    String xpointerElement = xpointerPath[0];
    for (int i = 0; i < atts.length; i++) {
      if(xpointerElement.equals(atts[i].getValue())){
        if(idVerifier.hasIDType(
            localName, uri, atts[i].getQName(), atts[i].getNamespace())){
          xpointerPathDepth = startElementDepth + xpointerPath.length - 1;
          break;
        }
      }
    }
  }

  if (xpointerPathDepth == startElementDepth){
    // check if xpointer path matches with the current element path
    linkLocated = true;
    try {
      int xpointerIdx = xpointerPath.length - 1;
```

```
      int stackIdx = currentElementIndexStack.size() - 1;
      int stopIdx = startWithElementID ? 1 : 0;
      while (xpointerIdx >= stopIdx && stackIdx >= 0) {
        int xpointerIndex = Integer.parseInt(xpointerPath[xpointerIdx]);
        int currentElementIndex =
          ((Integer)currentElementIndexStack.get(stackIdx)).intValue();
        if(xpointerIndex != currentElementIndex) {
          linkLocated = false;
          break;
        }

        xpointerIdx--;
        stackIdx--;
      }

    } catch (NumberFormatException e) {
      logger.warn(e,e);
    }
  }
  return linkLocated;
}
```

The method *endElement* will be invoked at the end of every element in the XML document (even when the element is empty).

The *XPointerElementLocator* implementation of the *endElement* updates the depth of the current element path and the index of the element in its parent.

```
public void endElement(String uri, String localName, String name) {
  endElementDepth = startElementDepth;
  startElementDepth --;
  lastIndexInParent = ((Integer)currentElementIndexStack.pop()).intValue();
}
```

Customizing XML Node Rendering

You can use this API extension to customize the way an XML node is rendered in the **Outline** view *(on page 301)* in **Author** mode, breadcrumb navigation bar *(on page 355)* in **Author** mode, **Outline** view *(on page 301)* in **Text** mode, *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* window, or **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*.

Note:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses *XMLNodeRendererCustomizer* implementations for the following *frameworks (on page 2231)*: DITA, DITA Map, DocBook 4, DocBook 5, TEI, XHTML, XSLT, and XML Schema.

There are two methods to provide an implementation of *ro.sync.exml.workspace.api.node.customizer.XMLNodeRendererCustomizer*:

- As a part of a bundle, returning it from the *createXMLNodeCustomizer()* method of the *ExtensionsBundle* associated with your document type in the **Document type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* (**Extensions bundle** field in the **Extensions** tab).
- As an individual extension, associated with your document type in the **Document type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* (**XML node renderer customizer** field in the **Individual extensions** section of the **Extensions** tab).

Support for Retina/HiDPI Displays

To support Retina or HiDPI displays, the icons provided by the *XMLNodeRendererCustomizer* should be backed up by a copy of larger size using the proper Retina/HiDPI naming convention *(on page 473)*.

For example, for the `<title>` element, if the *XMLNodeRendererCustomizer* returns the path `${framework}/images/myImg.png`, then to support Retina images with a scaling factor of 2, an extra file (`myImg@2x.png`)should be added to the same images directory (`${framework}/images/myImg@2x.png`). If the higher resolution icon (the *@2x* file) does not exist, the *normal* icon is scaled and used instead.

For more information about using Retina/HiDPI images, refer to the Using Retina/HiDPI Images in Author Mode *(on page 472)* section.

Note:
The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

Related Information:
Customizing the Rendering of Elements *(on page 1611)*
Using Retina/HiDPI Icons for the Actions from a Framework *(on page 1585)*

Customizing Author Operations

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Author** mode has a built-in set of operations covering the insertion of text and XML fragments (see the Author Default Operations *(on page 1554)*) and the execution of XPath

expressions on the current document edited in **Author** mode. However, there are situations where you need to extend this set. The following examples are just a few of the possible situations:

- You need to enter an element whose attributes will be edited by the user through a graphical user interface.
- The user must send selected element content (or the whole document) to a+ server for some kind of processing.
- Content authors need to extract pieces of information from a server and insert it directly into the edited XML document.
- You need to apply an XPath expression on the current document and process the nodes of the resulting node set.

To extend the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Author** mode functionality through Java, you will need the Oxygen SDK available on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website. It includes the source code of the **Author** mode operations in the built-in document types and the full documentation (in Javadoc format) of the public API available for **Author** mode custom actions.

The subsequent Java examples make use of AWT classes. If you are developing extensions for the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin XML Editor plugin for Eclipse, you will have to use their SWT counterparts.

Attention:
Make sure the Java classes of your custom **Author** mode operations are compiled with the same Java version used by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. Otherwise, the classes may not be loaded by the Java virtual machine. For example, if you run a version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin with a Java 11 virtual machine but the Java classes of your custom **Author** mode operations are compiled with a Java 12 or later virtual machine, then the custom operations cannot be loaded and used by the Java 11 virtual machine.

Important:
From a legal standpoint, you can freely develop and share extensions using the **Oxygen SDK** ONLY if you have a legal, active license to use Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and ONLY if such extensions are used from inside Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To use such extensions outside of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (for example, a 3rd-party application that has Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin built in to it), an additional license must be purchased to use the SDK according the **Oxygen XML SDK Licensing Policy** .

Related Information:
https://www.oxygenxml.com/InstData/Editor/SDK/javadoc/ro/sync/ecss/extensions/api/AuthorOperation.html

Example 1 - Simple Use of a Dialog Box from an Author Mode Operation

In this example, functionality is added for inserting images in a custom *framework (on page 2231)*. The images are represented by the `<image>` element. The location of the image file is represented by the value of the `@href` attribute. In the Java implementation, a dialog box will be displayed with a text field where the user can enter a full URL or browse for a local file.

1. Set up a sample project following this set of instructions. The *framework* project is **oxygen-sample-framework**.
2. Modify the *simple.documentation.framework.InsertImageOperation* class that implements the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperation* interface. This interface defines three methods: *doOperation*, *getArguments* and *getDescription*

   A short description of these methods follows:

   - The *doOperation* method is invoked when the action is performed either by pressing the toolbar button, by selecting the menu item or by pressing the shortcut key. The arguments taken by this method can be one of the following combinations:
     - An object of type *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess* and a map.
     - Argument names and values.
   - The *getArguments* method is used by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin when the action is configured. It returns the list of arguments (name and type) that are accepted by the operation.
   - The *getDescription* method is used by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin when the operation is configured. It returns a description of the operation.

   Example:

   Here is the implementation of these three methods:

```
/**
 * Performs the operation.
 */
public void doOperation(
          AuthorAccess authorAccess,
          ArgumentsMap arguments)
    throws IllegalArgumentException,
           AuthorOperationException {


JFrame oxygenFrame = (JFrame) authorAccess.getWorkspaceAccess().getParentFrame()
;
    String href = displayURLDialog(oxygenFrame);
    if (href.length() != 0) {
       // Creates the image XML fragment.
       String imageFragment =
         "<image xmlns='http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation' href='"
```

```
            + href + "'/>";


        // Inserts this fragment at the cursor position.
        int caretPosition = authorAccess.getEditorAccess().getCaretOffset();
        authorAccess.getDocumentController().insertXMLFragment
(imageFragment, caretPosition);
    }
}


/**
 * Has no arguments.
 *
 * @return null.
 */
public ArgumentDescriptor[] getArguments() {
  return null;
}


/**
 * @return A description of the operation.
 */
public String getDescription() {
  return "Inserts an image element. Asks the user for a URL reference.";
}
```

Note:
The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

Important:

Make sure you always specify the namespace of the inserted fragments.

```
<image xmlns='http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation'
  href='path/to/image.png'/>
```

3. Package the compiled class into a *JAR (on page 2231)* file. An example of an Ant script that packages the `classes` folder content into a *JAR* archive named `sdf.jar` is listed below:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<project name="project" default="dist">
    <target name="dist">
```

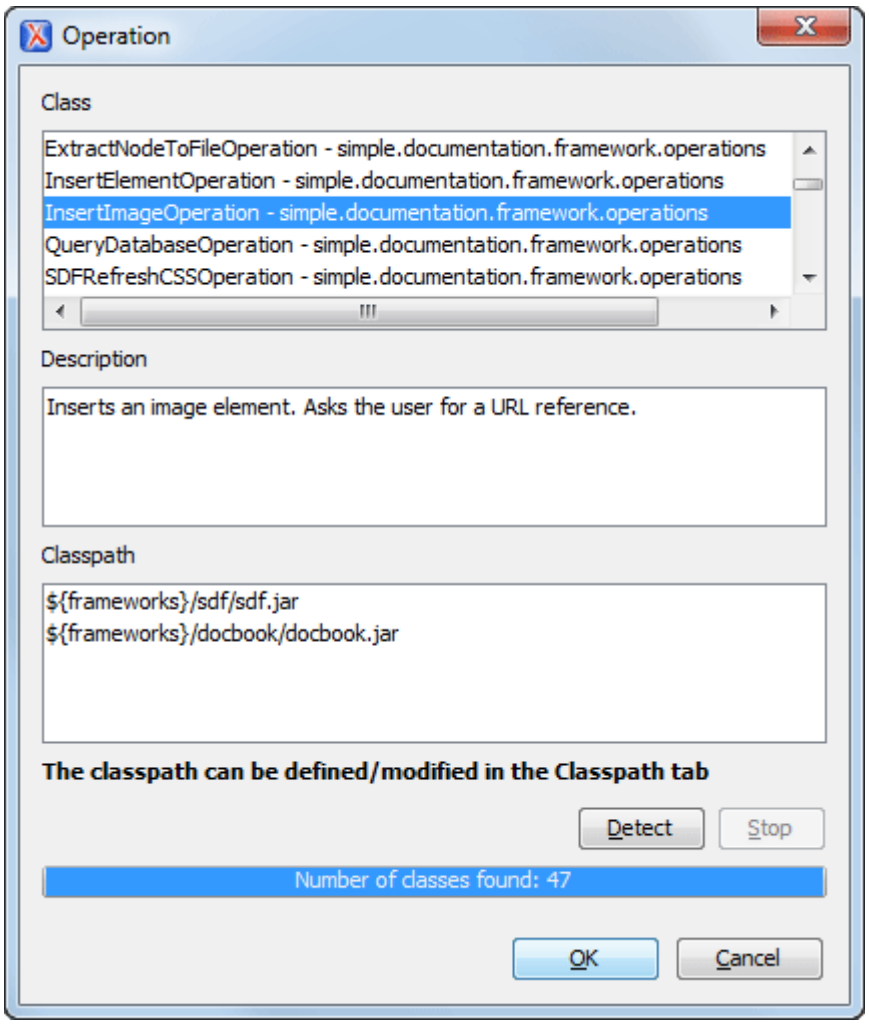
```
      <jar destfile="sdf.jar" basedir="classes">
        <fileset dir="classes">
          <include name="**/*"/>
        </fileset>
      </jar>
    </target>
</project>
```

4. Copy the `sdf.jar` file into your custom *framework* directory (*[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`\frameworks\[CUSTOM_FRAMEWORK_DIR]`).
5. Add the `sdf.jar` to the class path. To do this, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, select **SDF**, and click the **Edit** button.
6. Select the **Classpath** tab in the lower part of the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* and click the **Add** button. In the displayed dialog box, enter the location of the *JAR* file, relative to the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin `frameworks` folder.
7. Next, create the action that will use the defined operation. Go to the **Actions** subtab. Copy the icon files for the menu item and for the toolbar in your custom *framework* directory (*[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`\frameworks\[CUSTOM_FRAMEWORK_DIR]`).
8. Define the action's properties:
   - Set **ID** to **insert_image**.
   - Set **Name** to **Insert image**.
   - Set **Menu access key** to letter **i**.
   - Set **Toolbar action** to **${framework}/toolbarImage.png**.
   - Set **Menu icon** to **${framework}/menuImage.png**.
   - Set **Shortcut key** to **Ctrl (Meta on macOS)+Shift+i**.
9. Next, set up the operation. You want to add images only if the current element is a `<section>`, `<book>` or `<article>`.
   - Set the value of **XPath expression** to

     ```
     local-name()='section' or local-name()='book'
      or local-name()='article'
     ```

   - Set the **Invoke operation** field to *simple.documentation.framework.InsertImageOperation*.

Figure 307. Selecting the Operation



10. Add the action to the toolbar, using the **Toolbar** panel.

To test the action, open or create an XML file and place the cursor at a valid location. Then click the button associated with the action from the toolbar. In the dialog box, select an image URL and click **OK**. The image is inserted into the document.

Example 2 - Operations with Arguments - Report from Database Operation

In this example, an operation is created that connects to a relational database and executes an SQL statement. The result should be inserted in the edited XML document as a table. To make the operation fully configurable, it will have arguments for the *database connection string*, the *user name*, the *password* and the *SQL expression*.

1. Set up a sample project following this set of instructions. The *framework* project is **oxygen-sample-framework**.
2. Create the class `simple.documentation.framework.QueryDatabaseOperation`. This class must implement the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperation* interface.

```
import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ArgumentDescriptor;

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ArgumentsMap;

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess;

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperation;

import ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperationException;


public class QueryDatabaseOperation implements AuthorOperation{
```

3. Now define the operation's arguments. For each of them, you will use a `String` constant representing the argument name:

```
private static final String ARG_JDBC_DRIVER ="jdbc_driver";

private static final String ARG_USER ="user";

private static final String ARG_PASSWORD ="password";

private static final String ARG_SQL ="sql";

private static final String ARG_CONNECTION ="connection";
```

4. You must describe the argument name and type. To do this, implement the `getArguments` method that will return an array of argument descriptors:

```
public ArgumentDescriptor[] getArguments() {
  ArgumentDescriptor args[] = new ArgumentDescriptor[] {
    new ArgumentDescriptor(
      ARG_JDBC_DRIVER,
      ArgumentDescriptor.TYPE_STRING,
      "The name of the Java class that is the JDBC driver."),
    new ArgumentDescriptor(
      ARG_CONNECTION,
      ArgumentDescriptor.TYPE_STRING,
      "The database URL connection string."),
    new ArgumentDescriptor(
      ARG_USER,
      ArgumentDescriptor.TYPE_STRING,
      "The name of the database user."),
    new ArgumentDescriptor(
      ARG_PASSWORD,
      ArgumentDescriptor.TYPE_STRING,
      "The database password."),
   new ArgumentDescriptor(
     ARG_SQL,
     ArgumentDescriptor.TYPE_STRING,
     "The SQL statement to be executed.")
  };
```

```
  return args;
}
```

These names, types and descriptions will be listed in the **Arguments** table when the operation is configured.

5. When the operation is invoked, the implementation of the `doOperation` method extracts the arguments, forwards them to the method that connects to the database and generates the XML fragment. The XML fragment is then inserted at the cursor position.

```
public void doOperation(AuthorAccess authorAccess, ArgumentsMap map)
  throws IllegalArgumentException, AuthorOperationException {


  // Collects the arguments.
  String jdbcDriver = (String)map.getArgumentValue(ARG_JDBC_DRIVER);
  String connection = (String)map.getArgumentValue(ARG_CONNECTION);
  String user = (String)map.getArgumentValue(ARG_USER);
  String password = (String)map.getArgumentValue(ARG_PASSWORD);
  String sql = (String)map.getArgumentValue(ARG_SQL);


  int caretPosition = authorAccess.getCaretOffset();
  try {
    authorAccess.getDocumentController().insertXMLFragment(
      getFragment(jdbcDriver, connection, user, password, sql), caretPosition);
  } catch (SQLException e) {
    throw new AuthorOperationException(
      "The operation failed due to the following database error: "
      + e.getMessage(), e);
  } catch (ClassNotFoundException e) {
    throw new AuthorOperationException(
      "The JDBC database driver was not found. Tried to load ' "
      + jdbcDriver + "'", e);
  }
}
```

6. The `getFragment` method loads the JDBC driver, connects to the database and extracts the data. The result is a `<table>` element from the `http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation` namespace. The `<header>` element contains the names of the SQL columns. All the text from the XML fragment is escaped. This means that the '<' and '&' characters are replaced with the '<' and '&' character entities to ensure that the fragment is well-formed.

```
private String getFragment(String jdbcDriver, String connectionURL, String user,
  String password, String sql) throws SQLException, ClassNotFoundException {


    Properties pr = new Properties();
```

```
    pr.put("characterEncoding", "UTF8");
    pr.put("useUnicode", "TRUE");
    pr.put("user", user);
    pr.put("password", password);

    // Loads the database driver.
    Class.forName(jdbcDriver);
    // Opens the connection
    Connection connection = DriverManager.getConnection(connectionURL, pr);
    java.sql.Statement statement = connection.createStatement();
    ResultSet resultSet = statement.executeQuery(sql);

    StringBuffer fragmentBuffer = new StringBuffer();
    fragmentBuffer.append(
      "<table xmlns=" +
      "'http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation'>");

    //
    // Creates the table header.
    //
    fragmentBuffer.append("<header>");
    ResultSetMetaData metaData = resultSet.getMetaData();
    int columnCount = metaData.getColumnCount();
    for (int i = 1; i <= columnCount; i++) {
        fragmentBuffer.append("<td>");
        fragmentBuffer.append(xmlEscape(metaData.getColumnName(i)));
        fragmentBuffer.append("</td>");
    }
    fragmentBuffer.append("</header>");

    //
    // Creates the table content.
    //
    while (resultSet.next()) {
        fragmentBuffer.append("<tr>");
        for (int i = 1; i <= columnCount; i++) {
            fragmentBuffer.append("<td>");
            fragmentBuffer.append(xmlEscape(resultSet.getObject(i)));
            fragmentBuffer.append("</td>");
        }
        fragmentBuffer.append("</tr>");
    }
```

```
        fragmentBuffer.append("</table>");

        // Cleanup
        resultSet.close();
        statement.close();
        connection.close();
        return fragmentBuffer.toString();
    }
```

Note:
The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

7. Package the compiled class into a *JAR (on page 2231)* file.
8. Copy the *JAR* file and the JDBC driver files into your custom *framework* directory (`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]\frameworks\[CUSTOM_FRAMEWORK_DIR]`).
9. Add the *JARS* to the class path. To do this, open the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 81)*, select **SDF** and click the **Edit** button. Select the **Classpath** tab in the lower part of the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* and click the **Add** button. In the displayed dialog box, enter the location of the *JAR* file, relative to the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin `frameworks` folder.
10. Go to the **Actions** subtab. The action properties are:
    - Set **ID** to **clients_report**.
    - Set **Name** to **Clients Report**.
    - Set **Menu access key** to letter **r**.
    - Set **Description** to **Connects to the database and collects the list of clients**.
    - Set **Toolbar icon** to **${framework}/TableDB20.png** (the `TableDB20.png` icon is stored in the `frameworks/sdf` folder).
    - Leave empty the **Menu icon**.
    - Set **shortcut key** to **Ctrl + Shift + C (Command + Shift + C on macOS)**.
11. The action will work only if the current element is a **section**. Set up the operation as follows:
    - Set **XPath expression** to:

      ```
      local-name()='section'
      ```

    - Use the Java operation defined earlier to set the **Invoke operation** field. Click the **Choose** button, then select `simple.documentation.framework.QueryDatabaseOperation`. Once selected, the list of arguments is displayed. In the figure below the first argument, *jdbc_driver*, represents

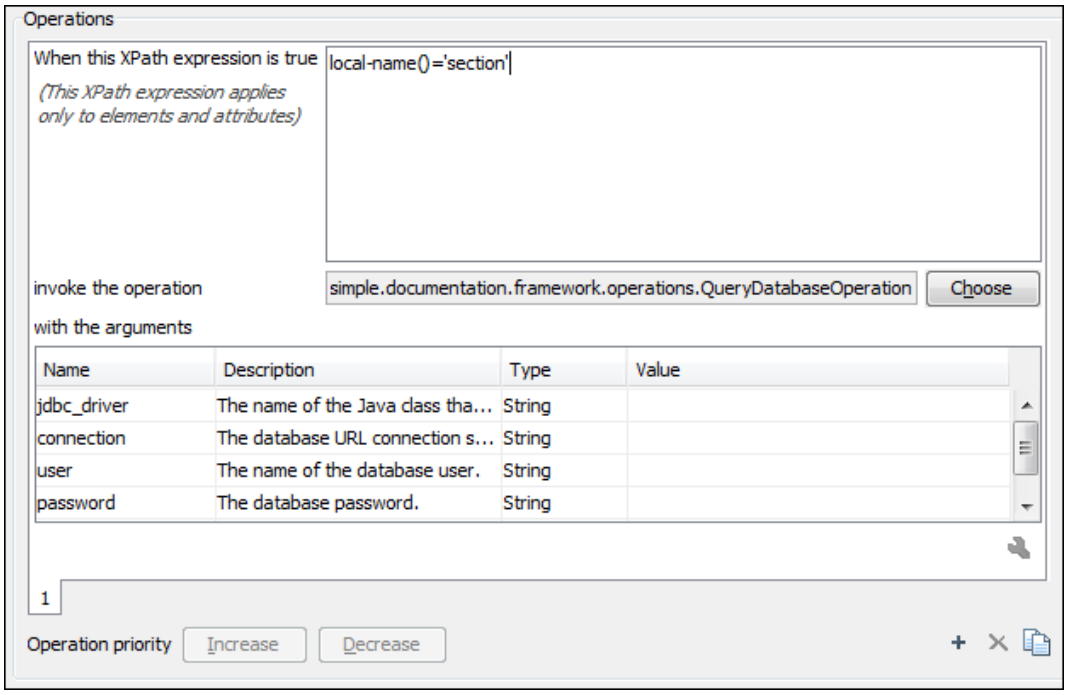
the class name of the MySQL JDBC driver. The connection string has the URL syntax: *jdbc://<database_host>:<database_port>/<database_name>*.

The SQL expression used in the example follows, but it can be any valid SELECT expression that can be applied to the database:

```
SELECT userID, email FROM users
```

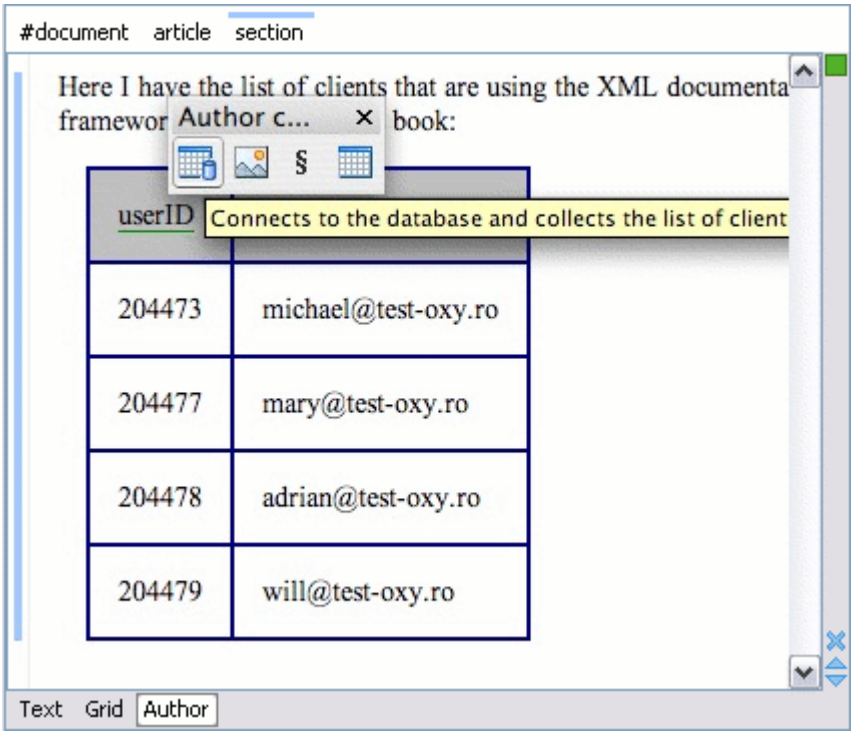
12. Add the action to the toolbar, using the **Toolbar** panel.

Figure 308. Java Operation Arguments Setup



To test the action, open or create an XML file and place the cursor at a valid location. Then click the **Create Report** button from the toolbar. You can see below the toolbar with the action button and sample table inserted by the **Clients Report** action.

Figure 309. Table Content Extracted from the Database



Handling Author Mode Action Events

The *AuthorActionEventHandler* extension point allows you to handle certain **Author** mode actions in a special way. For example, a specific use-case would be if you want to insert new lines when you press **Enter** instead of it opening the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

How to Implement an *AuthorActionEventHandler*

To implement your own *AuthorActionEventHandler*, follow this procedure:

1. Implement the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorActionEventHandler* interface.
2. To instruct Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to use this newly created implementation, use either of the following methods:
    a. If you have configured an extensions bundle *(on page 1635)*, you can return the *AuthorActionEventHandler* implementation using the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ExtensionsBundle.getAuthorActionEventHandler()* method.
    b. Specify the *AuthorActionEventHandler* in the **Author action event handler** individual extension in the **Extensions** tab *(on page 110)* of the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* for your particular document type.

Example

The following example illustrates the use-case mentioned in the introduction, that is an implementation for inserting a new line when the user presses **Enter** in **Author** mode. It uses the *canHandleEvent* method to make sure the insertion will be performed in an element that will preserve the `new-line` character. Then the *handleEvent* method inserts the new line at the current cursor position.

```
public class CustomAuthorActionEventHandler implements AuthorActionEventHandler
{


 /**
  * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorActionEventHandler#canHandleEvent
(AuthorAccess, AuthorActionEventType)
  */
  @Override
  public boolean canHandleEvent(AuthorAccess authorAccess,
AuthorActionEventType type) {
    boolean canHandle = false;


    if (type == AuthorActionEventType.ENTER) {
      AuthorDocumentController documentController =
authorAccess.getDocumentController();
    int caretOffset = authorAccess.getEditorAccess().getCaretOffset();
    try {
      AuthorNode nodeAtOffset = documentController.getNodeAtOffset(caretOffset);
      if (nodeAtOffset instanceof AuthorElement) {
        AuthorElement elementAtOffset = (AuthorElement) nodeAtOffset;
        AttrValue xmlSpace = elementAtOffset.getAttribute("xml:space");
        if (xmlSpace != null && xmlSpace.getValue().equals("preserve")) {
          canHandle = true;
        }
      }
    } catch (BadLocationException ex) {
        if (logger.isDebugEnabled()) {
          logger.error(ex.getMessage(), ex);
        }
      }
    }


    return canHandle;
  }


 /**
  * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorActionEventHandler#handleEvent
(ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess,
ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorActionEventHandler.AuthorActionEventType)
  */
  @Override
  public boolean handleEvent(AuthorAccess authorAccess,
```

```
AuthorActionEventType eventType) {
    int caretOffset = authorAccess.getEditorAccess().getCaretOffset();
    // Insert a new line
    authorAccess.getDocumentController().insertText(caretOffset, "\n");
    return true;
  }

  /**
   * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.Extension#getDescription()
   */
  @Override
  public String getDescription() {
    return "Insert a new line";
  }
}
```

Handling Schema-Aware Editing Events

The *AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandlerAdapter* extension point allows you to handle certain **Author** mode actions in various ways. For example, implementing the `AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandlerAdapter` makes it possible to handle events such as typing, the keyboard delete event at a given offset (using Delete or Backspace keys), delete element tags, delete selection, join elements, or paste fragment. It also makes it possible to improve solutions that are proposed by the paste mechanism in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin when pasting content (through the use of some specific methods *(on page 1687)*).

How to Implement an *AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandlerAdapter*

For this handler to be called, the **Schema-Aware Editing** option *(on page 145)* must be set to **On** or **Custom** in the **Schema-Aware** preferences page *(on page 145)*. The handler can either resolve a specific case, let the default implementation take place, or reject the edit entirely by throwing an `InvalidEditException`.

To implement your own *AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandlerAdapter*, follow this procedure:

1. Implement the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandlerAdapter* extension.
2. To instruct Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to use this newly created implementation, configure an extensions bundle *(on page 1635)* and return the *AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandlerAdapter* implementation using the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ExtensionsBundle.getAuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandlerAdapter()* method.

Example

Typing events can be handled using the *handleTyping* method. For example, the `AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler` checks if the schema is not a learned one, was loaded successfully, and if

the **Smart paste and drag and drop** option *(on page 146)* is selected. If these conditions are met, the event will be handled.

```
public class AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandlerAdapter
              extends AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler {


/**
 * @see AuthorSchemaAwareEditingHandler#handleTyping
(int, char, ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess)
 */
public boolean handleTyping(int offset, char ch, AuthorAccess authorAccess)
throws InvalidEditException {
  boolean handleTyping = false;
  AuthorSchemaManager authorSchemaManager =
authorAccess.getDocumentController().getAuthorSchemaManager();
  if (!authorSchemaManager.isLearnSchema() &&
      !authorSchemaManager.hasLoadingErrors() &&
      authorSchemaManager.getAuthorSchemaAwareOptions().isEnableSmartTyping()) {
    try {
      AuthorDocumentFragment characterFragment =
authorAccess.getDocumentController().createNewDocumentTextFragment
(String.valueOf(ch));
      handleTyping = handleInsertionEvent
(offset, new AuthorDocumentFragment[] {characterFragment}, authorAccess);
    } catch (AuthorOperationException e) {
      throw new InvalidEditException
(e.getMessage(), "Invalid typing event: " + e.getMessage(), e, false);
    }
  }
  return handleTyping;
}
```

Note:
The complete source code for *framework* customization examples can be found in the **oxygen-sample-framework** module of the Oxygen SDK, available as a Maven archetype on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin website.

Methods for Improving the Paste Mechanism

getAncestorDetectionOptions

When pasting content in **Author** mode, if the result causes the document to become invalid, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will propose solutions to make it valid. As a possible solution, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin might surround the pasted content in a sequence of ancestor

elements. This *getAncestorDetectionOptions* method allows you to choose which parent elements might be a possible solution.

canBeReplaced

Allows you to improve solutions that might be proposed by the paste mechanism when pasting content in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. For example, when pasting an element inside an empty element with the same name, this *canBeReplaced* method allows Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to replace the empty node rather than pasting it after or before the empty node. The callback could also reject this behavior if, for instance, the replacement node contains attributes.

Related Information:
AuthorDocumentFragment Class

Handling When URLs or XHTML Fragments are Dropped or Pasted in Author Mode

The ***AuthorExternalObjectInsertionHandler*** extension can be used to configure how URLs or XHTML fragments from external applications are handled when they are dropped or pasted in **Author** mode.

How to Implement an *AuthorExternalObjectInsertionHandler*

To implement your own *AuthorExternalObjectInsertionHandler*, follow this procedure:

1. Implement the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorExternalObjectInsertionHandler* interface.
2. To instruct Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to use this newly created implementation, use either of the following methods:
   a. If your framework is an extension of DITA, DocBook, TEI, or XHTML, you can specify the *AuthorExternalObjectInsertionHandler* in the **Author extern object Insertion handler** individual extension in the **Extensions** tab *(on page 110)* of the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* for your particular document type.
   b. Otherwise, you can configure an extensions bundle *(on page 1635)*, then return the *AuthorExternalObjectInsertionHandler* implementation using the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ExtensionsBundle.createAuthorExternalObjectInsertionHandler()* method.
3. You can use a stylesheet to convert the pasted XHTML to your own XML vocabulary by overwriting the following method:

   ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorExternalObjectInsertionHandler.getImporterStylesheetFileName(AuthorAccess)

   and return the file name of the stylesheet that will be applied. The path to the importer stylesheet must also be added in the **Classpath** tab *(on page 88)* in the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* for your particular document type.

Example

The following example illustrates an implementation for the DITA framework:

```
/**
 * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ExtensionsBundle#
createExternalObjectInsertionHandler()
 */
@Override
public AuthorExternalObjectInsertionHandler createExternalObjectInsertionHandler() {
  return new DITAExternalObjectInsertionHandler();
}
```

```
/**
 * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorExternalObjectInsertionHandler#
getImporterStylesheetFileName(ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess)
 */
@Override
protected String getImporterStylesheetFileName(AuthorAccess authorAccess) {
  return "xhtml2ditaDriver.xsl";
}
```

Tip:
For XHTML fragments, there is another method that you could use to configure how they are handled when they are pasted in **Author** mode. For more information, see Customizing Smart Paste Support *(on page 1593)*.

Presenting an Edit Properties Dialog Box for Actions in Author Mode

The *EditPropertiesHandler* extension point allows you to present a specialized dialog box when the action of double-clicking an element tag is intercepted in **Author** mode. For example, you could use it to present a dialog box that allows the user to editing the properties of an image.

How to Implement an *EditPropertiesHandler*

To implement your own *EditPropertiesHandler*, follow this procedure:

1. Implement the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.EditPropertiesHandler* interface.
2. To instruct Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to use this newly created implementation, use either of the following methods:

a. If you have configured an extensions bundle *(on page 1635)*, you can return the *EditPropertiesHandler* implementation using the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.ExtensionsBundle.createEditPropertiesHandler()* method.
b. Specify the *EditPropertiesHandler* in the **Author edit properties handler** individual extension in the **Extensions** tab *(on page 110)* of the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* for your particular document type.

Example

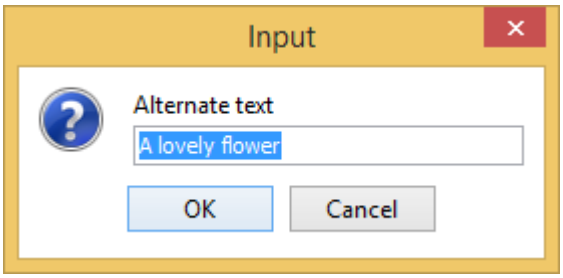
The following example illustrates an implementation for presenting a simple properties editing dialog box when a user double-clicks an `<image>` tag in **Author** mode (with tags displayed from the **Tags display mode** drop-down menu):

```
public class CustomEditPropertiesHandler implements EditPropertiesHandler {


  /**
   * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.Extension#getDescription()
   */
  @Override
  public String getDescription() {
    return "Sample implementation that handles properties for a table element.";
  }


  /**
   * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.EditPropertiesHandler#canEditProperties
(ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorNode)
   */
  @Override
  public boolean canEditProperties(AuthorNode authorNode) {
    // If this node is an image element we can edit its properties.
    return "image".equals(authorNode.getDisplayName());
  }


  /**
   * @see ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.EditPropertiesHandler#editProperties
(ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorNode,
 ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess)
   */
  @Override
  public void editProperties(AuthorNode authorNode, AuthorAccess authorAccess) {
    // If we receive this call then it surely an image.
    AuthorElement imageElement = (AuthorElement) authorNode;
    String currentValue = "";
    AttrValue altValue = imageElement.getAttribute("alt");
```

```
    if (altValue != null) {
      currentValue = altValue.getValue();
    }
    String newValue = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(
        (Component) authorAccess.getWorkspaceAccess().getParentFrame(),
        "Alternate text",
        currentValue);

    if (newValue != null) {
      authorAccess.getDocumentController().setAttribute
("alt", new AttrValue(newValue), imageElement);
    }
  }
}
```

Example result: If a user were to double-click an `<image>` tag icon (

) in **Author** mode, the following dialog box would be displayed that allows the user to edit the *alternate text* property for the image:



Sharing a Framework

You can create a custom *framework* by extending a built-in document type *(on page 1533)* (such as DITA or DocBook) using the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 81)*, make modifications to it, and then share the extension with your team.

Sharing the Extended Framework

There are several ways that you can share the extended custom *framework (on page 1533)* with others:

- Distribute the extended *framework* along with a project by following these steps:
    1. In a location where you have full write access, create a folder for your project.
    2. Go to the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and create a project. Save it in the folder you created in step 1.
    3. Create a custom framework by extending an existing one *(on page 1533)*, if you have not already done so, and copy the custom framework directory to the folder you created in step 1. Make sure your custom framework directory includes any resources that are referenced in your framework (CSS files, new document templates, schemas used for validation, catalogs, etc.).
    4. Go to **Options > Preferences > Document Type Association > Locations** *(on page 83)*.

5. In the **Additional frameworks directories** list, add an entry using the **${pd}** editor variable *(on page 208)* like this: `${pd}/custom_frameworks`.
6. You can then share the new project directory with other users. For example, you can commit it to your version control system and have them update their working copy. When they open the customized project file in their **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*, the new *framework* becomes available in the list of document types.

- Distribute the directory of the extended *framework (on page 1533)* to the other members of your team. They will simply copy that directory to their `/frameworks` directory. The new *framework* will be available in their list of document types when Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin starts.

To test the extended *framework*, the other members of your team can check the list of document types in the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 81)* to see if the *framework* is present and if it appears before the built-in *frameworks* (meaning that it has higher priority).

Making Changes to an Existing Framework (Document Type)

It is possible to make minor changes to an existing framework (document type) configuration, instead of creating a new one.

The following procedure exemplifies how to achieve this for a specific use-case where an existing DITA framework is being changed so that the **Insert Image** Author mode action is available inside the `<fig>` element:

1. If you do not already know the name of the framework, open a document from that framework, go to **Window > Show View** and select **Properties**. The name of the framework is listed in the **Document Type** entry.
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 81)*, and locate your framework (for example, **DITA - Extension**).
3. If it is a built-in framework that has not already been extended/edited, it is recommended to use the **Extend** button to create an extension for it. If it has already been extended (for example, a document type with the name **DITA - Extension** has been extended), you can use the **Edit** button.

   Step Result: This opens the **Document Type** Configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* where you can define the set of rules and settings for your custom framework.
4. Configure the extension using the tabs on the bottom half of the dialog box. For our example of making the **Insert Image** Author mode action available inside the `<fig>` element:
   a. Go to the **Author** tab and then the **Actions** subtab.
   b. Locate the action named **insert.image** and edit it.
   c. Change the **Activation XPath** field to make the action available in contexts where the `<fig>` element is available:

   ```
   oxy:allows-child-element("", "class", " topic/image ") or oxy:allows-child-element("", "class", " topic/fig
    ")
   ```
5. Click **OK** to close the configuration dialog box and then **OK** or **Apply** to save your changes.

Basic Framework Customization Tutorial

This section contains topics meant to provide a general tutorial for customizing a *framework (on page 2231)*. It includes information about creating a basic document type association, some basic customizations, testing the configuration, packaging and deploying the custom framework, and more.

Tip:
A sample framework customization package is available that you can dabble with and use to help you get started. It can be downloaded from: https://www.oxygenxml.com/maven/com/oxygenxml/samples/oxygen-sample-framework/24.0.0.0/oxygen-sample-framework-24.0.0.0-package.zip. The package includes a sample CSS file, XSL file, schema files, document templates, an XML catalog file, custom icons, and other resources.

Framework Customization Overview

The most important elements of a document type customization are represented by an XML Schema to define the XML structure, the CSS to render the information and the XML instance template that links the first two together.

XML Grammar

To provide as-you-type validation and to compute valid insertion proposals, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin needs an XML grammar (XML Schema, DTD, or Relax NG) associated to the XML. The grammar specifies how the internal structure of the XML is defined. For information about associating a schema and how Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects the schema, see Associating a Schema to XML Documents *(on page 563)*.

Consider a use-case where several users are testing a system and must send report results to a content management system. The customization should provide a visual editor for this type of document. The following XML Schema, `test_report.xsd` defines a report with results of a testing session. The report consists of a title, few lines describing the test suite that was run, and a list of test results (each with a name and a boolean value indicating if the test passed or failed).

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xs:schema xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
    <xs:element name="report">
        <xs:complexType>
            <xs:sequence>
                <xs:element ref="title"/>
                <xs:element ref="description"/>
                <xs:element ref="results"/>
            </xs:sequence>
        </xs:complexType>
    </xs:element>
    <xs:element name="title" type="xs:string"/>
```

```
    <xs:element name="description">
        <xs:complexType>
            <xs:sequence maxOccurs="unbounded">
                <xs:element name="line">
                    <xs:complexType mixed="true">
                        <xs:sequence minOccurs="0"
                            maxOccurs="unbounded">
                            <xs:element name="important"
                              type="xs:string"/>
                        </xs:sequence>
                    </xs:complexType>
                </xs:element>
            </xs:sequence>
        </xs:complexType>
    </xs:element>

    <xs:element name="results">
        <xs:complexType>
            <xs:sequence maxOccurs="unbounded">
                <xs:element name="entry">
                    <xs:complexType>
                        <xs:sequence>
                            <xs:element name="test_name"
                              type="xs:string"/>
                            <xs:element name="passed"
                               type="xs:boolean"/>
                        </xs:sequence>
                    </xs:complexType>
                </xs:element>
            </xs:sequence>
        </xs:complexType>
    </xs:element>
</xs:schema>
```

CSS Stylesheet

A set of rules must be defined for describing how the XML document is to be rendered in **Author** mode. This is done using Cascading Style Sheets (CSS). CSS is a language used to describe how an HTML or XML document should be formatted by a browser. CSS is widely used in the majority of websites.

The elements from an XML document are displayed in the layout as a series of boxes. Some of the boxes contain text and may flow one after the other, from left to right. These are called inline boxes. There are also other types of boxes that flow one below the other (such as paragraphs). These are called block boxes.

For example, consider the way a traditional text editor arranges the text. A paragraph is a block, because it contains a vertical list of lines. The lines are also blocks. However, blocks that contain inline boxes arrange its children in a horizontal flow. That is why the paragraph lines are also blocks, while the traditional "bold" and "italic" sections are represented as inline boxes.

The CSS allows us to specify that some elements are displayed as tables. In CSS, a table is a complex structure and consists of rows and cells. The `table` element must have children that have a *table-row* style. Similarly, the `row` elements must contain elements with a *table-cell* style.

To make it easy to understand, the following section describes how each element from a schema is formatted using a CSS file. Note that this is just one of infinite possibilities for formatting the content.

report

The root of a report document. It should be rendered as a box that contains all other elements. To achieve this, the display type is set to **block**. Additionally, some margins are set for it. The CSS rule that matches this element is:

```
report{
    display:block;
    margin:1em;
}
```

title

The title of the report. Usually titles have a large font. The **block** display is used so that the subsequent elements will be placed below it, and its font is changed to double the size of the normal text.

```
title {
    display:block;
    font-size:2em;
}
```

description

Contains several lines of text describing the report. The lines of text are displayed one below the other, so the description has the **block** display. Also, the background color is changed to make it standout.

```
description {
    display:block;
    background-color:#EEEEFF;
    color:black;
}
```

line

A line of text in the description. A specific aspect is not defined and it just indicates that the display should be **block** style.

```
line {
    display:block;
}
```

important

Defines important text from the description. Since it can be mixed with text, its display property must be set to **inline**. Also, the text is emphasized with **bold**to make it easier to spot.

```
important {
    display:inline;
    font-weight:bold;
}
```

results

Displays the list of *test_names* and the results for each one. To make it easier to read, it is displayed as a **table**, with a green border and margins.

```
results{
    display:table;
    margin:2em;
    border:1px solid green;
}
```

entry

The results are displayed as a table so the entry is a row in the table. Thus, the display is **table-row**.

```
entry {
    display:table-row;
}
```

test_name, passed

The name of the individual test, and its result. They are cells in the results table with the display set to **table-cell**. Padding and a border are added to emphasize the table grid.

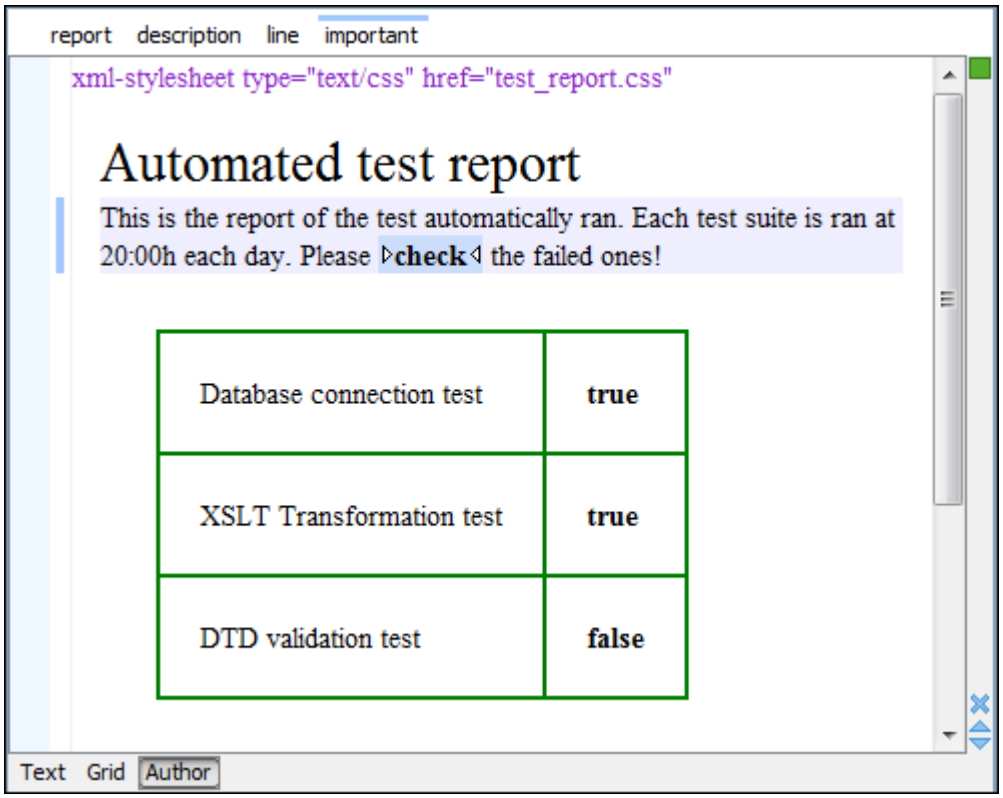
```
test_name, passed{
    display:table-cell;
    border:1px solid green;
    padding:20px;
}

passed{
    font-weight:bold;
}
```

The full content of the CSS file `test_report.css` is:

```
report {
    display:block;
    margin:1em;
}

description {
    display:block;
    background-color:#EEEEFF;
    color:black;
}

line {
    display:block;
}

important {
    display:inline;
    font-weight:bold;
}

title {
    display:block;
    font-size:2em;
}

results{
    display:table;
    margin:2em;
    border:1px solid green;
}

entry {
    display:table-row;
}

test_name, passed{
    display:table-cell;
    border:1px solid green;
    padding:20px;
}
```

```
passed{
    font-weight:bold;
}
```

Figure 310. Report Rendered in Author Mode



Note:
You can edit attributes in-place in the **Author** mode using form-based controls *(on page 362)*.

XML Instance Template

Based on the XML Schema and CSS file Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can help the content author in loading, editing, and validating the test reports. An XML document template must be created as a kind of skeleton that the users can use as a starting point for creating new test reports. The template must be generic enough and reference the XML Schema file and the CSS stylesheet.

This is an example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<?xml-stylesheet type="text/css" href="test_report.css"?>
<report xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="test_report.xsd">
  <title>Automated test report</title>
  <description>
    <line>This is the report of the test automatically ran.
      Each test suite is ran at 20:00h each day.
```

```
      Please <important>check</important> the failed ones!</line>
  </description>
  <results>
    <entry>
      <test_name>Database connection test</test_name>
      <passed>true</passed>
    </entry>
    <entry>
      <test_name>XSLT Transformation test</test_name>
      <passed>true</passed>
    </entry>
    <entry>
      <test_name>DTD validation test</test_name>
      <passed>false</passed>
    </entry>
  </results>
</report>
```

The processing instruction `xml-stylesheet` associates the CSS stylesheet to the XML file. The `href` pseudo attribute contains the URI reference to the stylesheet file. In the example, the CSS is in the same directory as the XML file.

The next step is to place the XSD file and the CSS file on a web server and modify the template to use the HTTP URLs, like this:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<?xml-stylesheet type="text/css"
        href="http://www.mysite.com/reports/test_report.css"?>
<report xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
        xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation=
        "http://www.mysite.com/reports/test_report.xsd">
    <title>Test report title</title>
    <description>
.......
```

If you want to share the files with other team members, you could create an archive containing the *`test_report.xml`*, *`test_report.css`*, and *`test_report.xsd`* and send it to the other users.

Creating and Configuring a Custom Framework

This basic tutorial is meant to provide an example of creating and configuring a custom document type (*framework (on page 2231)*). This basic tutorial offers examples for creating a custom schema, adjusting the authoring experience through custom CSS styling, and creating a custom action.

Step 1: Organize Framework Files

First, create a new folder for your customized *framework (on page 2231)*. This folder will be used to store all files related to the documentation *framework*. The folder structure will look something like this:

```
oxygen
  frameworks
     sdf
       schema
       css
```

The `frameworks` directory is the container where all the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *framework* customizations are located. Each subdirectory contains files related to a specific type of XML documents (schemas, catalogs, stylesheets, CSS stylesheets, etc.) Distributing a *framework* means delivering a *framework* directory.

It is assumed that you have the right to create files and folders inside the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation directory. If you do not have this right, you will have to install another copy of the program in a folder you have access to, the home directory for instance, or your desktop.

To test your *framework* distribution, copy it in the `frameworks` directory of the newly installed application and start Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin by running the provided start-up script files.

You should copy the created schema files `abs.xsd` and `sdf.xsd`, `sdf.xsd` being the main schema, to the `schema` directory and the CSS file `sdf.css` to the `css` directory.

Step 2: Extend an Existing Framework

The easiest way to create a custom *framework (on page 2231)* (document type) is by extending an existing built-in framework, such as DITA or DocBook, and then making modifications to it.

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association > Locations** *(on page 83)*. Add the path to your custom framework directory in the **Additional frameworks directories** list and click **OK** or **Apply** to save your changes.
2. Go to the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 81)* and select an existing *framework* configuration (for example, **DocBook**) and use the **Extend** button to create an extension for it.

   Step Result: This opens the **Document Type** Configuration dialog box *(on page 83)* where you can define the set of rules and settings for your custom framework.
3. Give the extension an appropriate name, select **External** for the **Storage** option, click the browsing button ( ) to specify the location of your custom framework directory.
4. Click **OK** to close the configuration dialog box and then **OK** or **Apply** to save your changes.

Results: You now have a fully functional *framework* that you can continue to customize.

Step 3: Create a Custom XML Schema

To illustrate an example of creating an XML Schema for a custom DocBook *framework (on page 2231)*, suppose the documents are either *articles* or *books*, and composed of *sections*. The *sections* may contain `<title>`, `<para>`, `<figure>`, `<table>`, and other `<section>` elements. To complete the picture, each section includes a `<def>` element from another namespace.

The first schema file:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xs:schema xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    targetNamespace="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation"
    xmlns:doc="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation"
    xmlns:abs="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts"
    elementFormDefault="qualified">

    <xs:import namespace=
    "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts"
     schemaLocation=
    "abs.xsd"/>
```

The namespace of the documents will be `http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation`. The namespace of the `<def>` element is `http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts`.

Next, the structure of the sections is defined. They all start with a `<title>`, then have the optional `<def>` element then either a sequence of other sections, or a mixture of paragraphs, images, and tables.

```
<xs:element name="book" type="doc:sectionType"/>
<xs:element name="article" type="doc:sectionType"/>
<xs:element name="section" type="doc:sectionType"/>

<xs:complexType name="sectionType">
    <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name="title" type="xs:string"/>
        <xs:element ref="abs:def" minOccurs="0"/>
        <xs:choice>
            <xs:sequence>
                <xs:element ref="doc:section" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
            </xs:sequence>
            <xs:choice maxOccurs="unbounded">
                <xs:element ref="doc:para"/>
                <xs:element ref="doc:image"/>
                <xs:element ref="doc:table"/>
            </xs:choice>
```

```
        </xs:choice>
    </xs:sequence>
</xs:complexType>
```

The paragraph contains text and other custom styling markup, such as bold (`<b>`) and italic (`<i>`) elements.

```
<xs:element name="para" type="doc:paragraphType"/>


<xs:complexType name="paragraphType" mixed="true">
    <xs:choice minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xs:element name="emphasis"/>
        <xs:element name="i"/>
    </xs:choice>
</xs:complexType>
```

The `<image>` element has an attribute with a reference to the file containing image data.

```
<xs:element name="image">
    <xs:complexType>
        <xs:attribute name="href" type="xs:anyURI" use="required"/>
    </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>
```

The `<table>` element contains a header row and then a sequence of rows (`<tr>` elements) each of them containing the cells. Each cell has the same content as the paragraphs.

```
 <xs:element name="table">
    <xs:complexType>
      <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name="header">
            <xs:complexType>
               <xs:sequence>
                   <xs:element name="td" maxOccurs="unbounded"
                        type="doc:paragraphType"/>
               </xs:sequence>
            </xs:complexType>
        </xs:element>
        <xs:element name="tr" maxOccurs="unbounded">
            <xs:complexType>
               <xs:sequence>
                   <xs:element name="td" type="doc:tdType"
                         maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
                </xs:sequence>
           </xs:complexType>
        </xs:element>
```

```
      </xs:sequence>
    </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>


<xs:complexType name="tdType">
    <xs:complexContent>
        <xs:extension base="doc:paragraphType">
            <xs:attribute name="row_span" type="xs:integer"/>
            <xs:attribute name="column_span" type="xs:integer"/>
        </xs:extension>
    </xs:complexContent>
</xs:complexType>
```

The `<def>` element is defined as a text only element in the imported schema `abs.xsd`:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<xs:schema xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
    targetNamespace=
     "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts">
    <xs:element name="def" type="xs:string"/>
</xs:schema>
```

Now the XML data structure will be styled.

Step 4: Associate the Schema to the Framework

In the bottom section of the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*, there are a series of tabs. The **Schema** tab refers to the schema that is used for validation of the documents that match the defined association rules.

Important:
If the document references a schema directly (for example, using a `DOCTYPE` declaration, `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute, or a Relax NG `xml-model` processing instruction), the schema defined in this **Schema** tab is not used for validation or content completion.

Schema Type

Select from the combo box the value **XML Schema**.

Schema URI

Enter the value of the schema location (for example, `${framework}/schema/sdf.xsd`). Use the **${frameworks}** editor variable *(on page 207)* in the schema URI path instead of a full path to be valid for multiple Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installations.

Important:
The **${frameworks}** variable is expanded at the time of validation into the absolute location of the directory containing the *framework (on page 2231)*.

Step 5: Create a Custom CSS

If you read the Framework Customization Overview *(on page 1693)* then you already have some basic knowledge about creating simple styles. The example document contains elements from various namespaces, so you need to use CSS Level 3 extensions (supported by the **Author** mode layout engine) to associate specific properties with that element.

Defining the General Layout

Now the basic layout of the rendered documents is created.

Elements that are stacked one on top of the other are: `book`, `article`, `section`, `title`, `figure`, `table`, `image`. These elements are marked as having `block` style for display. Elements that are placed one after the other in a flowing sequence are: `b`, `i`. These will have `inline` display.

```
/* Vertical flow */
book,
section,
para,
title,
image,
ref {
    display:block;
}

/* Horizontal flow */
b,i {
    display:inline;
}
```

Important:
Having `block` display children in an `inline` display parent results in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin changing the style of the parent to `block` display.

Styling an Element

The title of any section must be bold and smaller than the title of the parent section. To create this effect, a sequence of CSS rules must be created. The `*` operator matches any element, it can be used to match titles having progressive depths in the document.

```
title{
    font-size: 2.4em;
    font-weight:bold;
}
* * title{
    font-size: 2.0em;
}
* * * title{
    font-size: 1.6em;
}
* * * * title{
    font-size: 1.2em;
}
```

It is useful to have before the title a constant text, indicating that it refers to a section. This text can include also the current section number. The `:before` and `:after` pseudo-elements will be used, plus the CSS counters.

First declare a counter named `sect` for each `book` or `article`. The counter is set to zero at the beginning of each such element:

```
book,
article{
    counter-reset:sect;
}
```

The `sect` counter is incremented with each `section`, that is a direct child of a `book` or an `article` element.

```
book > section,
article > section{
    counter-increment:sect;
}
```

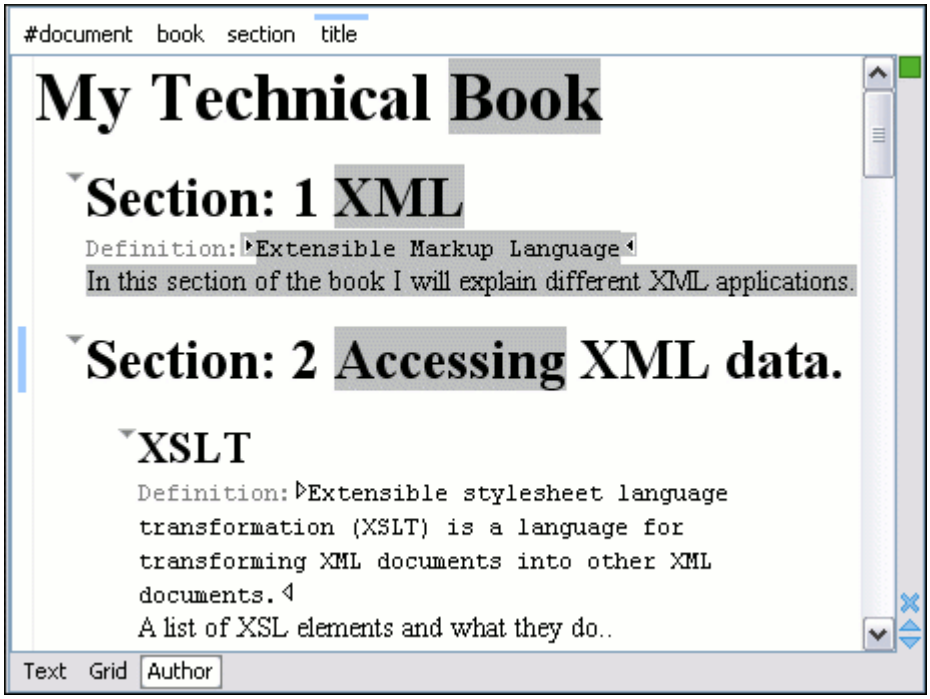
The "static" text that will prefix the section title is composed of the constant "Section ", followed by the decimal value of the `sect` counter and a dot.

```
book > section > title:before,
article > section > title:before{
    content: "Section " counter(sect) ". ";
}
```

To make the documents easy to read, you add a margin to the sections. In this way the higher nesting level, the larger the left side indent. The margin is expressed relatively to the parent bounds:

```
section{
    margin-left:1em;
    margin-top:1em;
}
```

Figure 311. A sample of nested sections and their titles.



In the above screenshot you can see a sample XML document rendered by the CSS stylesheet. The selection "avoids" the text that is generated by the CSS "content" property. This happens because the CSS generated text is not present in the XML document and is just a visual aid.

Styling Inline Elements

The "bold" style is obtained by using the `font-weight` CSS property with the value `bold`, while the "italic" style is specified by the `font-style` property:

```
b {
    font-weight:bold;
}

i {
    font-style:italic;
}
```

Styling Images

The CSS 2.1 does not specify how an element can be rendered as an image. To overpass this limitation, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports a CSS Level 3 extension allowing to load image data from a

URL. The URL of the image must be specified by one of the element attributes and it is resolved through the catalogs specified in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

```
image{
    display:block;
    content: attr(href, url);
    margin-left:2em;
}
```

The `image` element has the required `@href` attribute of type `xs:anyURI`. The `@href` attribute contains an image location so the rendered content is obtained by using the function:

```
attr(href, url)
```

The first argument is the name of the attribute pointing to the image file. The second argument of the `attr` function specifies the type of the content. If the type has the `url` value, then Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin identifies the content as being an image. If the type is missing, then the content will be the text representing the attribute value.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin handles both absolute and relative specified URLs. If the image has an *absolute* URL location (for example: "http://www.oasis-open.org/images/standards/oasis_standard.jpg") then it is loaded directly from this location. If the image URL is *relative* specified to the XML document (for example: "images/my_screenshot.jpg") then the location is obtained by adding this value to the location of the edited XML document.

An image can also be referenced by the name of a DTD entity that specifies the location of the image file. For example, if the document declares an entity **graphic** that points to a JPEG image file:

```
<!ENTITY graphic SYSTEM "depo/keyboard_shortcut.jpg" NDATA JPEG>
```

and the image is referenced in the XML document by specifying the name of the entity as the value of an attribute:

```
<mediaobject>
    <imageobject>
        <imagedata entityref="graphic" scale="50"/>
    </imageobject>
</mediaobject>
```

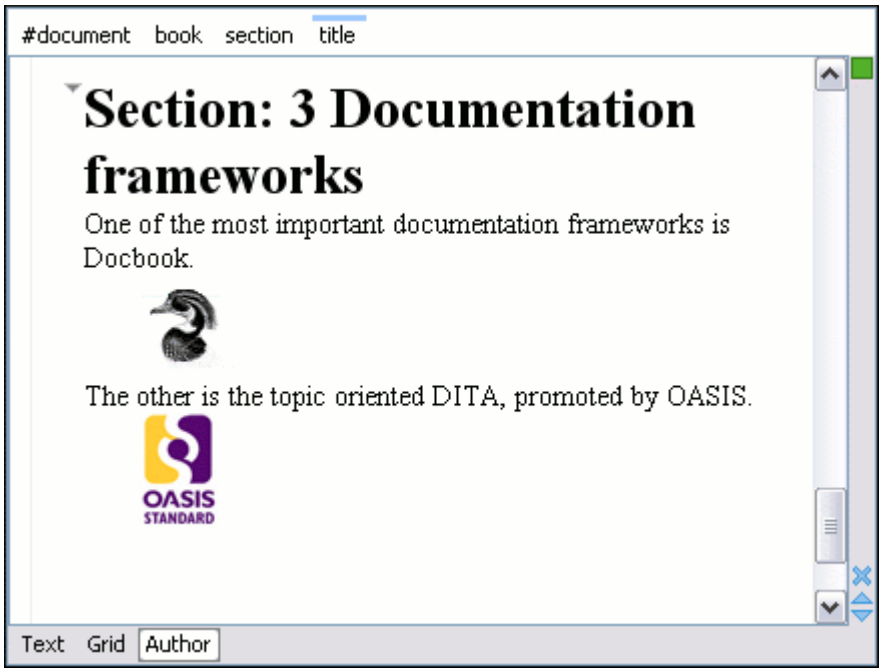
The CSS should use the functions `url`, `attr` and `unparsed-entity-uri` for displaying the image in the **Author** mode:

```
imagedata[entityref]{
    content: url(unparsed-entity-uri(attr(entityref)));
}
```

To take into account the value of the `@width` attribute of the `imagedata` and use it for resizing the image, the CSS can define the following rule:

```
imagedata[width]{
  width:attr(width, length);
}
```

Figure 312. Samples of images in Author



Step 6: Associate the Custom CSS to the Framework

Once you have customized your framework through CSS styling rules, you then need to associate the custom CSS file *(on page 89)*.

Step 7: Testing the Framework Customization

To test the new *framework (on page 2231)* customization, create an XML instance that conforms with the association rules that you specified in your *framework* customization. You will not specify an XML Schema location directly in the document, using an `xsi:schemaLocation` attribute. Instead, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will detect its associated document type and use the specified schema.

```
<book xmlns="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation"
      xmlns:abs="http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts">

    <title>My Technical Book</title>
    <section>
        <title>XML</title>
        <abs:def>Extensible Markup Language</abs:def>
        <para>In this section of the book I will
           explain different XML applications.</para>
```

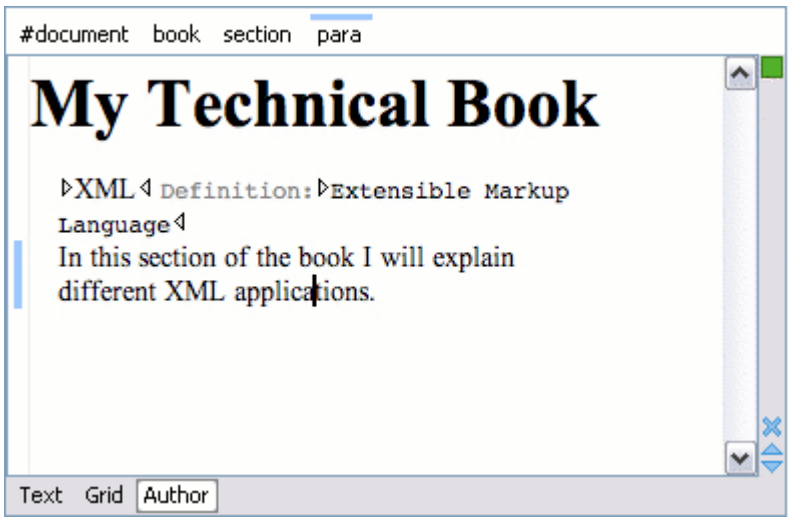
```
    </section>
</book>
```

When trying to validate the document there should be no errors. Now modify the `title` to `title2`. Validate again. This time there should be as error.

```
Invalid content was found starting with element
'title2'. One of '{"http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation":title}'
is expected.
```

Undo the tag name change, go to **Author** mode, and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin should load the CSS from the *document type association (on page 2229)* and create a layout similar to this:

Figure 313. Example: Testing a Framework Customization



CSS Support in Author Mode

The visual **Author** editing mode can be customized by creating CSS files to define styles for the XML elements and other components. The **Author** editing mode supports most CSS 2.1 selectors, numerous CSS 2.1 properties, and some CSS 3 selectors. Also, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has added some custom functions and properties that extend the W3C CSS specification and are useful for a wide range of use-cases for developers who customize **Author** mode through custom *frameworks (on page 1533)*.

Resources

To see a visual demonstration of various advanced customization possibilities (including ideas for tailoring the editing experience using CSS), watch our Webinar: **Working with DITA in Oxygen - Customizing the Editing Experience**.

Associating a CSS with an XML Document

Associating a Stylesheet with an XML Document

The rendering of an XML document in the **Author** mode is driven by a CSS stylesheet that conforms to the version 2.1 of the CSS specification from the W3C consortium. Some CSS 3 features, such as namespaces and custom extensions, of the CSS specification are also supported.

There are several methods for associating a stylesheet (CSS) with an XML document:

- Insert the `xml-stylesheet` processing instruction with the `@type` attribute at the beginning of the XML document. The easiest way to do this is by using the **Associate XSLT/CSS Stylesheet** action that is available on the toolbar or in the **XML** menu.

  CSS example:

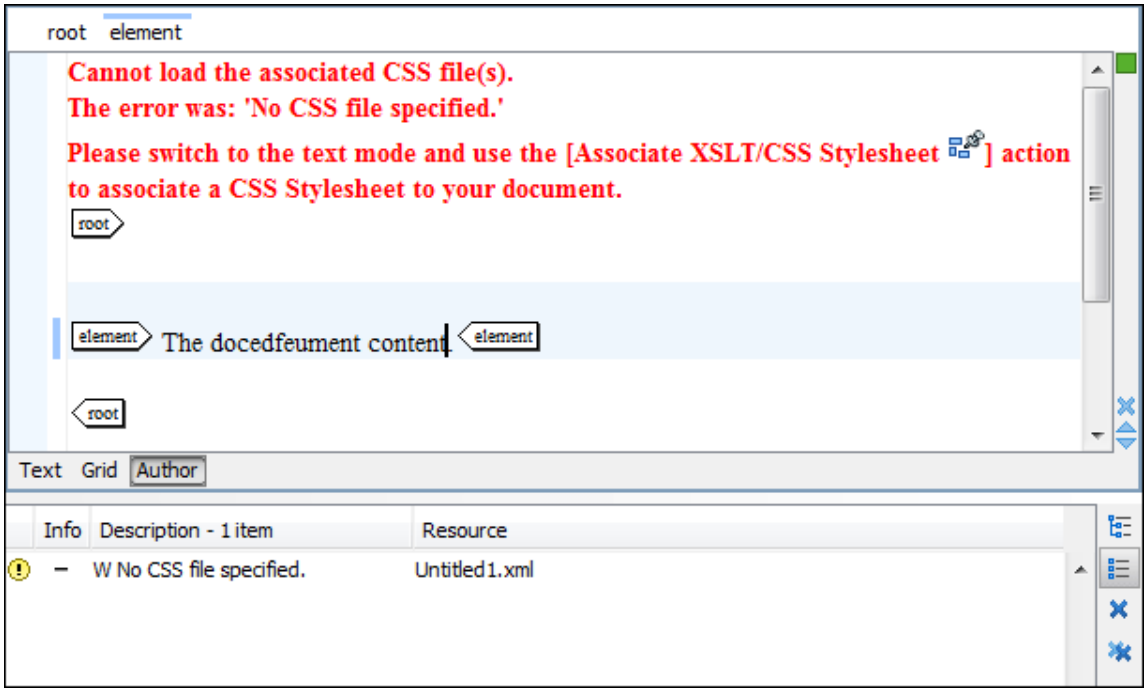
  ```
  <?xml-stylesheet type="text/css" href="test.css"?>
  ```

- Add a new CSS file to a *framework (on page 2231)* (document type). To do so, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association**. Edit the appropriate *framework*, open the **Author** tab, then the **CSS** subtab. Click the **New** button to add a new CSS file.

  Note:
  The built-in *frameworks* are read-only, so you need to **Extend** *(on page 82)* or **Duplicate** *(on page 82)* them to configure them as custom *frameworks*.

If a document has no CSS association or the referenced stylesheet files cannot be loaded, a default one is used. A warning message is also displayed at the beginning of the document, presenting the reason why the CSS cannot be loaded.

Figure 314. Document with no CSS association default rendering



For information about associating a CSS to a *framework* (document type), see Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*.

Handling CSS Imports

When a CSS document contains imports to other CSS documents, the references are also passed through the *XML Catalog (on page 2235)* URI mappings to determine an indirect CSS referenced location.

Example: CSS Import

For example, if you can have a CSS import, such as:

```
@import "http://host/path/to/location/custom.css";
```

and then add your own *XML Catalog (on page 2235)* file that maps the location to a custom CSS in the **XML Catalog** preferences page *(on page 175)*:

```
<uri name="http://host/path/to/location/custom.css"
     uri="path/to/custom.css"/>
```

Adding a Custom Default CSS for Every XML Document

To add a custom CSS that is applied to every XML document, add a mapping in your *XML Catalog (on page 2235)* file that looks like this:

```
<uri name="http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author/css/userCustom.css"
     uri="path/to/custom.css"/>
```

This extra mapped CSS location will be parsed every time the application processes the CSS stylesheets used to render the opened XML document in the visual **Author** editing mode. This allows your custom CSS to be used without the need to modify all other CSS stylesheets contributed in the document type configuration.

Editor Variables in CSS Imports

You can use various editor variables *(on page 199)* in CSS imports. When editing an XML document with an associated CSS in **Author** mode, the editor variables will be expanded and resolved.

Example: Editor Variable in a CSS Import

For example, the following editor variable:

```
@import "${framework(DITA)}/custom.css";
```

is resolved in the DITA *framework (on page 2231)* folder where the `custom.css` is placed. In the Document Type Association preferences page *(on page 81)*, you can see a list of document type. The name for your particular document type needs to be passed as a parameter to the `framework()` function.

Note:
If you use editor variables like `${cfdu}` (Current File Directory URL), it will be expanded to the URL of the current CSS document that contains the imports rather than the XML document that references the CSS.

Displaying Processing Instructions from Other XML Editors

By default, some external processing instructions are hidden (for example, certain processing instructions used to store metadata in other XML editors). If you want them to be displayed (for example, to edit them), they must be associated with the current document using a CSS *(on page 1710)* like this:

```
@namespace oxy "http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author";

oxy|processing-instruction[Pub],

oxy|processing-instruction[PubTbl],

oxy|processing-instruction[xm-replace_text],

oxy|processing-instruction[xm-deletion_mark],

oxy|processing-instruction[xm-insertion_mark_start],

oxy|processing-instruction[xm-insertion_mark_end]

{

    display:block !important;

}
```

Specifying Media Types in the CSS

The CSS stylesheets can specify how a document is presented on different types of media (on the screen, paper, etc.) You can specify that some of the selectors from your CSS should be taken into account only in the

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Author** mode and ignored in other media types. This can be accomplished by using the `oxygen` media type.

Example: *oxygen* Media Type

```
b{
 font-weight:bold;
 display:inline;
}

@media oxygen{
 b{
  text-decoration:underline;
 }
}
```

This example results in the text being bold if the document is opened in a web browser that does not recognize `@media oxygen`, while the text is bold and underlined when opened in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Author** mode.

You can also use the `oxygen` media type to specify CSS selectors to be applied in certain operating systems or platforms by using the `os` and `platform` properties. For example, you can specify one set of style rules for displaying Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin in Windows, and another set of style rules for macOS. The supported properties are as follows:

- **os** - The possible values are: `win`, `linux`, or `mac`.
- **platform** - The possible values are: `standalone`, `eclipse`, or `webapp`.

Example: *os* and *platform* Properties

```
@media oxygen AND (os:"win") AND (platform:"standalone") {
    p{
        content:"PPP";
    }
}
```

Related information

@media Rule *(on page 1714)*

CSS At-Rules

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports some of the standard at-rules specified by CSS Level 2.1 and 3. The `@media` rule also include support for some style rules that are specific to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

@font-face At-Rule

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to use custom fonts in the **Author** mode by specifying them in the CSS using the `@font-face` media type. Only the `src` and `font-family` CSS properties can be used for this media type.

Example: *@font-face* Rule

```
@font-face{
    font-family:"Baroque Script";
    /*The location of the loaded TTF font must be relative to the CSS*/
    src:url("BaroqueScript.ttf");
}
```

The specified `font-family` must match the name of the font declared in the `.ttf` file.

@media Rule

The *@media* rule allows you to set different style rules for multiple types of media in the same stylesheet. For example, you can set the font size to be different on the screen than on paper. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports several media types, allowing you to set the style rules for presenting a document on various media (on screen, paper, etc.)

Supported Media Types

- **screen** - The styles marked with this media type are used only for rendering a document on screen.
- **print** - The styles marked with this media type are used only for printing a document.
- **all** - The styles marked with this media type are used for rendering a document in all supported types of media.
- **oxygen** - The styles marked with this media type are used only for rendering a document in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Author** mode. For more information, see Specifying Media Types in the CSS *(on page 1712)*.
- **oxygen-dark-theme** - The styles marked with this media type are used only for rendering a document in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Author** mode when a dark theme is used (for example, *Graphite*).
- **oxygen-high-contrast-black** - The styles marked with this media type are used only for rendering a document in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Author** mode on a Windows High Contrast Theme with a black background.
- **oxygen-high-contrast-white** - The styles marked with this media type are used only for rendering a document in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Author** mode on a Windows High Contrast Theme with a white background.

Example: *@media* Rule

```
@media oxygen{
 b{
```

```
  text-decoration:underline;
 }
}
@media oxygen-high-contrast-white{
 b{
  font-weight:bold;
 }
}
```

Supported Properties

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also supports a few properties to set specific style rules that depend upon the size of the visible area in **Author** mode. These supported properties are as follows:

- **min-width** - The styles selected in this property are applied if the visible area in **Author** mode is equal to or greater than the specified value.
- **max-width** - The styles selected in this property are applied if the visible area in **Author** mode is less than or equal to the specified value.

Example: *min-width* and *max-width* Properties

```
@media (min-width:500px){
 p{
    content:'XXX';
 }
}
@media (max-width:700px){
 p:after{
    content:'yyy';
 }
}
```

Related information

Specifying Media Types in the CSS *(on page 1712)*

Standard W3C CSS Supported Features

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports most of the CSS Level 3 selectors and most of the CSS Level 2.1 properties

Supported CSS Selectors

Tip:
CSS rules that match attributes are always more specific than element selectors. For more information, see https://drafts.csswg.org/selectors-3/#specificity.

The following table lists the CSS selectors that are supported in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:

Expression	Name	CSS Level	Description / Example
`*`	Universal selector	CSS Level 2	Matches any element
`E`	Type selector	CSS Level 2	Matches any `E` element (i. e. an element with the local name `E`)
`E F`	Descendant selector	CSS Level 2	Matches any `F` element that is a descendant of an `E` element.
`E > F`	Child selectors	CSS Level 2	Matches any `F` element that is a child of an element `E`.
`E:lang(c)`	Language pseudo-class	CSS Level 2	Matches element of type `E` if it is in (human) language `c` (the document language specifies how language is determined).
`E + F`	Adjacent selector	CSS Level 2	Matches any `F` element immediately preceded by a sibling element `E`.
`E ~ F`	General sibling selector	CSS Level 3	Matches any `F` element preceded by a sibling element `E`.
`E[foo]`	Attribute selector	CSS Level 2	Matches any `E` element with the `"foo"` attribute set (whatever the value).
`E[foo="warning"]`	Attribute selector with value	CSS Level 2	Matches any `E` element whose `"foo"` attribute value is exactly equal to `"warning"`.
`E[foo~="warning"]`	Attribute selector containing value	CSS Level 2	Matches any `E` element whose `"foo"` attribute value is a list of space-separated values, one of which is exactly equal to `"warning"`.
`E[lang|="en"]`	Attribute selector containing hyphen separated values	CSS Level 2	Matches any `E` element whose `"lang"` attribute has a hyphen-separated list of values beginning (from the left) with `"en"`.

Expression	Name	CSS Level	Description / Example
`E:before and E:after`	Pseudo-elements	CSS Level 2	The `':before'` and `':after'` pseudo-elements can be used to insert generated content before or after an element's content.
`E:first-child`	The first-child pseudo-class	CSS Level 2	Matches element `E` when `E` is the first child of its parent.
`E:not(s)`	Negation pseudo-class	CSS Level 2	An E element that does not match simple selector s.
`E:has`	Relational pseudo-class	CSS Level 4	The `:has()` relational pseudo-class is a functional pseudo-class that takes a relative selector as an argument. For more information, see :has Relational Pseudo-Class *(on page 1722)*.
`E:hover`	The hover pseudo-class	CSS Level 2	The `:hover` pseudo-class applies while the user designates an element with a pointing device, but does not necessarily activate it. When moving the pointing device over an element, all the parent elements up to the root are taken into account.
`E:focus`	The focus pseudo-class	CSS Level 2	The `:focus` pseudo-class applies while an element has the focus (accepts keyboard input).
`E:focus-within`	The generalized input focus pseudo-class	CSS Level 4	The `:focus-within` pseudo-class applies to elements that will have the `:focus` pseudo-class applied. Additionally, the ancestors of an element that matches `:focus-within` also match.
`E:marker`	The marker pseudo-class	CSS Level 4	The `::marker` pseudo-element represents the automatically generated marker box of a list item.

Expression	Name	CSS Level	Description / Example
`E#myid`	The ID selector	CSS Level 2	Matches any E element with ID equal to "myid". **Important:** Limitation: In Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin the match is performed only taking into account the attributes with the exact name: *"id"*.
`E[att^="val"]`	Substring matching attribute selector	CSS Level 3	An E element whose `att` attribute value begins exactly with the string `val`.
`E[att$="val"]`	Substring matching attribute selector	CSS Level 3	An E element whose `att` attribute value ends exactly with the string `val`.
`E[att*="val"]`	Substring matching attribute selector	CSS Level 3	An E element whose `att` attribute value contains the substring `val`.
`E:root`	Root pseudo-class	CSS Level 3	Matches the root element of the document. In HTML, the root element is always the HTML element.
`E:empty`	Empty pseudo-class	CSS Level 3	An E element that has no text or child elements.
`E:nth-child(n)`	The nth-child pseudo-class	CSS Level 3	An E element, the nth child of its parent.
`E:nth-last-child(n)`	The nth-last-child pseudo-class	CSS Level 3	An E element, the nth child of its parent, counting from the last one.
`E:nth-of-type(n)`	The nth-of-type pseudo-class	CSS Level 3	An E element, the nth sibling of its type.
`E:nth-last-of-type(n)`	The nth-last-of-type pseudo-class	CSS Level 3	An E element, the nth sibling of its type, counting from the last one.
`E:last-child`	The last-child pseudo-class	CSS Level 3	An E element, last child of its parent.
`E:first-of-type`	The first-of-type pseudo-class	CSS Level 3	An E element, first sibling of its type.

Expression	Name	CSS Level	Description / Example
`E:last-of-type`	The last-of-type pseudo-class	CSS Level 3	An E element, last sibling of its type.
`E:only-child`	The only-child pseudo-class	CSS Level 3	An E element, only child of its parent.
`E:only-of-type`	The only-of-type pseudo-class	CSS Level 3	An E element, only sibling of its type.
`ns|E`	Element namespace selector	CSS Level 3	An element that has the local name E and the namespace given by the prefix `ns`. The namespace prefix can be bound to a URI by the at-rule: `@namespace ns "http://some_namespace_uri";` See Namespace Selector *(on page 1719)*.
`E!>F`	The subject selector	CSS Level 4 (experimental)	An element that has the local name E and has a child F. See Subject Selector *(on page 1720)*.

Namespace Selector

In the CSS 2.1 standard, the element selectors ignore the namespaces of the elements they are matching. Only the local name of the elements are considered in the selector matching process.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses a different approach that is similar to the CSS Level 3 specification. If the element name from the CSS selector is not preceded by a namespace prefix it is considered to match an element with the same local name as the selector value and ANY namespace. Otherwise, the element must match both the local name and the namespace.

In CSS up to version 2.1, the name tokens from selectors match all elements from ANY namespace that have the same local name. Example:

```
<x:b xmlns:x="ns_x"/>
<y:b xmlns:y="ns_y"/>
```

Are both matched by the rule:

```
b {font-weight:bold}
```

Starting with CSS Level 3, you can create selectors that are namespace aware.

Example: Defining prefixed and default namespaces

Given the namespace declarations:

```
@namespace sync "http://sync.example.org";

@namespace "http://example.com/foo";
```

Then:

sync|A

Represents the name A in the `http://sync.example.org` namespace.

***|B**

Represents the name B in ANY namespace, including NO NAMESPACE.

C

Represents the name C in ANY namespace, including NO NAMESPACE.

Example: Defining prefixed namespaces combined with pseudo-elements

To match the `<def>` element its namespace declares, bind it to the *abs* prefix and then write a CSS rule:

```
@namespace abs "http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts";
```

Then:

abs|def

Represents the name "def" in the `http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts` namespace.

abs|def:before

Represents the :before pseudo-element of the "def" element from the `http://www.oxygenxml.com/sample/documentation/abstracts` namespace.

Subject Selector

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports the subject selector described in CSS Level 4 (currently a working draft at W3C http://www.w3.org/TR/selectors4/). This selector matches a structure of the document, but unlike a compound selector, the styling properties are applied to the subject element (the one marked with "!") instead of the last element from the path.

The subject of the selector can be explicitly identified by appending an exclamation mark (!) to one of the compound selectors in a selector. Although the element structure that the selector represents is the same with or without the exclamation mark, indicating the subject in this way can change which compound selector represents the subject in that structure.

Example:

```
table! > caption {
  border: 1px solid red;
}
```

A border will be drawn to the table elements that contain a caption, as direct child.

This is different from:

```
table > caption {
  border: 1px solid red;
}
```

This draws a border around the caption.

Taking Processing Instructions into Account in CSS Subject Selectors

You can test for the existence of specific processing instructions (`PI`) in the child hierarchy of a subject selector.

For example:

```
@namespace oxy "http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author";


chapter! > oxy|processing-instruction[important][level="high"]{
  color:red;
}
```

This would change the color of a DocBook chapter to red if it contains the `important` processing instruction:

```
<chapter>
   <title>A title</title>
   <?important level='high'?>
</chapter>
```

Descendant Selectors Limitation

Important:

The current implementation has a known limitation. The general descendant selectors are taken into account as direct child selectors. For example, the following two CSS selectors are considered equivalent:

```
a:has(b c)
```

and:

```
a:has(b>c)
```

Related information

:has Relational Pseudo-Class *(on page 1722)*

:has Relational Pseudo-Class

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports the CSS Level 4 subject selector (currently a working draft at W3C http://www.w3.org/TR/selectors4/), as described in Subject Selector *(on page 1720)*. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also supports the `:has` relational pseudo-class that has similar functionality and it can match an element by taking its child elements into account. For more information, see https://drafts.csswg.org/selectors-4/#relational.

You can create conditions that take into account the structure of the matching element.

Example: *has* Pseudo Class

```
table:has( tbody > thead){
 border: 1px solid red;
}
```

This example will result in a border being drawn for the table elements that contain at least a `<thead>` element in the `<tbody>` element.

Taking Processing Instructions into Account in CSS Subject Selectors

You can test for the existence of specific processing instructions (`PI`) in the child hierarchy of a subject selector.

For example:

```
@namespace oxy "http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author";


chapter! > oxy|processing-instruction[important][level="high"]{
  color:red;
}
```

This would change the color of a DocBook chapter to red if it contains the `important` processing instruction:

```
<chapter>
   <title>A title</title>
   <?important level='high'?>
</chapter>
```

Descendant Selectors Limitation

Important:
The current implementation has a known limitation. The general descendant selectors are taken into account as direct child selectors. For example, the following two CSS selectors are considered equivalent:

```
a:has(b c)
```

and:

```
a:has(b>c)
```

Supported CSS Properties

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin validates all CSS 2.1 properties, but does not render *aural* and *paged* categories properties in **Author** mode, as well as some of the values of the *visual* category that are listed below under the **Ignored Values** column. For the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin-specific (extension) CSS properties, see CSS Extensions *(on page 1736)*.

Name	Rendered Values	Ignored Values
background	background-color | background-image | background-position | background-repeat | inherit | initial | unset	
background-attachment	NONE	
background-color	<color> | inherit | initial | unset	transparent
background-image	<uri> | none | inherit | initial | unset	
background-position	top | right | bottom | left | center | initial | unset	<percentage> | <length> *(on page 1728)*
background-repeat	repeat | repeat-x | repeat-y | no-repeat | inherit | initial | unset	
border	[<border-width> || <border-style> || <border-color>] | inherit | initial | unset Not yet supported on table row or table row groups.	
border-collapse	NONE	
border-color	<color> | inherit | initial | unset	transparent

Name	Rendered Values	Ignored Values
border-radius	<length> *(on page 1728)* | <percentage> Works only for border-type 'solid', 'dashed', 'dotted', 'wave'. Does not work when background-image is specified. Percent values are not fully supported.	
border-spacing	NONE	
border-style	<border-style> | inherit | initial | unset	
border-top / border-right / border-bottom / border-left	[<border-width> || <border-style> || <border-color>] | inherit | initial | unset	
border-top-color / border-right-color / border-bottom-color / border-left-color	<color> | inherit | initial | unset	transparent
border-top-left-radius / border-top-right-radius / border-bottom-left-radius / border-bottom-right-radius	<length> *(on page 1728)* | <percentage> Works only for border-type 'solid', 'dashed', 'dotted', 'wave'. Does not work when background-image is specified.	
border-top-style / border-right-style / border-bottom-style / border-left-style	<border-style> | inherit | initial | unset	
border-top-width / border-right-width / border-bottom-width / border-left-width	<border-width> | inherit | initial | unset	
border-width	<border-width> | inherit | initial | unset	
bottom	<length> *(on page 1728)* | <percentage> | inherit | initial | unset	auto
caption-side	NONE	
clear	NONE	

Name	Rendered Values	Ignored Values
clip	NONE	
color	<color> | inherit | initial | unset	
content	normal | none | [<string> | <URI> | <counter> | attr(<identifier>) | open-quote | close-quote]+ | inherit | initial | unset **Tip:** Also see CSS Level 3 target-counter() and target-counters() Functions *(on page 1732)*	no-open-quote | no-close-quote
counter-increment	[<identifier> <integer> ?]+ | none | inherit | initial | unset	
counter-reset	[<identifier> <integer> ?]+ | none | inherit | initial | unset	
cursor	NONE	
direction	ltr| rtl | inherit | initial | unset	
display	inline | block | list-item | table | table-row-group | table-header-group | table-footer-group | table-row | table-column-group | table-column | table-cell | table-caption | none | inherit | initial | unset	grid | run-in | inline-block | inline-table - considered block
empty-cells	show | hide | inherit | initial | unset	
float	NONE	
font	[['font-style' || 'font-weight']? 'font-size' [/ 'line-height']? 'font-family'] | inherit | initial | unset	'font-variant' 'line-height' caption | icon | menu | message-box | small-caption | status-bar
font-family	[[<family-name> | <generic-family>] [, <family-name> | <generic-family>]*] | inherit | initial | unset	

Name	Rendered Values	Ignored Values
font-size	<absolute-size> | <relative-size> | <length> *(on page 1728)* | <percentage> | inherit | initial | unset	
font-style	normal | italic | oblique | inherit | initial | unset	
font-variant	NONE	
font-weight	normal | bold | bolder | lighter | 100 | 200 | 300 | 400 | 500 | 600 | 700 | 800 | 900 | inherit | initial | unset	
height	NONE	
left	<length> *(on page 1728)* | <percentage> | inherit | initial | unset	auto
letter-spacing	NONE	
line-height	normal | <number> | <length> *(on page 1728)* | <percentage> | inherit | initial | unset	
list-style	['list-style-type'] | inherit | initial | unset	'list-style-position' || 'list-style-image'
list-style-image	NONE	
list-style-position	NONE	
list-style-type	disc | circle | square | decimal | lower-roman | upper-roman | lower-latin | upper-latin | lower-alpha | upper-alpha | -oxy-lower-cyrillic-ru | -oxy-lower-cyrillic-uk | -oxy-upper-cyrillic-ru | -oxy-upper-cyrillic-uk | box | diamond | check | hyphen | none | inherit | initial | unset	lower-greek | armenian | georgian
margin	<margin-width> | inherit | initial | unset | auto	
margin-right / margin-left	<margin-width> | inherit | initial | unset | auto	
margin-top / margin-bottom	<margin-width> | inherit | initial | unset	

Name	Rendered Values	Ignored Values
max-height	NONE	
max-width	<length> *(on page 1728)* | <percentage> | none | inherit - supported for *inline*, *block-level*, and replaced elements (such as images, tables, table cells) | initial | unset	
min-height	Absolute values, such as `230px`, `1in`, `7pt`, `12em` | initial | unset	Values proportional to the parent element height, such as `30%`
min-width	<length> *(on page 1728)* | <percentage> | inherit - supported for *inline*, *block-level*, and replaced elements (such as images, tables, table cells) | initial | unset	
outline	[<outline-width> || <outline-style> || <outline-color>] | inherit | initial | unset	
outline-color	[<color> | invert | inherit | initial | unset	
outline-style	[<border-style> | inherit | initial | unset	
outline-width	[<border-width> | inherit | initial | unset	
overflow	NONE	
padding	<padding-width> | inherit | initial | unset	
padding-top / padding-right / padding-bottom / padding-left	<padding-width> | inherit | initial | unset	
position	absolute | fixed (supported for block display elements) | relative (supported for *block* and *inline* display elements)	absolute | fixed not supported for *inline* display elements
quotes	NONE	
right	<length> *(on page 1728)* | <percentage> | inherit | initial | unset	auto

Name	Rendered Values	Ignored Values
table-layout	auto | initial | unset	fixed | inherit
text-align	left | right | center | inherit | initial | unset	justify
text-decoration	none | [underline || overline || line-through] | inherit | initial | unset	blink
text-decoration-style	solid | double | dotted | dashed | wavy | inherit | initial | unset	
text-indent	<length> *(on page 1728)* | <percentage> | inherit | initial | unset	
text-transform	none | capitalize | uppercase | lowercase | inherit | initial | unset	
top	<length> *(on page 1728)* | <percentage> | inherit | initial | unset	auto
unicode-bidi	bidi-override| normal| embed| inherit | initial | unset	
vertical-align	baseline | sub | super | top | text-top | middle | bottom | text-bottom | inherit | initial | unset	<percentage> | <length> *(on page 1728)*
visibility	visible | hidden | inherit | initial | unset | -oxy-collapse-text	collapse
white-space	normal | pre | nowrap | pre-wrap | pre-line | initial | unset	
width	<length> *(on page 1728)* | <percentage> | auto | inherit - supported for *inline*, *block-level*, and replaced elements (such as images, tables, table cells) | initial | unset	
word-spacing	NONE	
z-index	NONE	

<length> - Refers to distance measurements and is expressed in units such as `mm`, `cm`, `in`, `em`, `rem`, `ex`, `pc`, `pt`, `px`. For more information, see the W3 CSS Level 3 length type specifications.

Related Information:

CSS Extensions *(on page 1736)*

Transparent Colors

CSS3 supports RGBA colors. The RGBA declaration allows you to set opacity (via the Alpha channel) as part of the color value. A value of `0` corresponds to a completely transparent color, while a value of `1` corresponds to a completely opaque color. To specify a value, you can use either a *real* number between `0` and `1`, or a percent.

Example: RGBA Color

```
personnel:before {
    display:block;
    padding: 1em;
    font-size: 1.8em;
    content: "Employees";
    font-weight: bold;
    color:#EEEEEE;
    background-color: rgba(50, 50, 50, 0.6);
}
```

attr() Function: Properties Values Collected from the Edited Document

In CSS Level 2.1 you may collect attribute values and use them as content *only* for the pseudo-elements. For instance, the `:before` pseudo-element can be used to insert some content before an element. This is valid in CSS 2.1:

```
title:before{
  content: "[Audience Level: " attr(audience) "]";
}
```

If the `<title>` element from the XML document is:

```
<title audience="Expert">Changing the Timing Belt</title>
```

Then the title will be displayed as:

```
[Audience Level: Expert] Changing the Timimg Belt
```

In Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, the use of `attr()` function is available not only for the `content` property, but also for any other property. This is similar to the CSS Level 3 working draft: http://www.w3.org/TR/2006/WD-css3-values-20060919/#functional. The arguments of the function are:

```
attr ( attribute_name , attribute_type , default_value )
```

attribute_name

The attribute name. This argument is required.

attribute_type

The attribute type. This argument is optional. If it is missing, argument's type is considered `string`. This argument indicates what is the meaning of the attribute value and helps to perform conversions of this value. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin accepts one of the following types:

color

The value represents a color. The attribute may specify a color in various formats. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports colors specified either by name (`red`, `blue`, `green`, etc.) or as an RGB hexadecimal value `#FFEEFF`.

url

The value is a URL pointing to a media object. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports only images. The attribute value can be a complete URL, or a relative one to the XML document. Note that this URL is also resolved through the catalog resolver.

integer

The value must be interpreted as an integer.

number

The value must be interpreted as a float number.

length

The value must be interpreted as an integer.

percentage

The value must be interpreted relative to another value (length, size) expressed in percents.

em

The value must be interpreted as a size. 1 em is equal to the *font-size* of the relevant font.

ex

The value must be interpreted as a size. 1 ex is equal to the *height* of the **x** character of the relevant font.

px

The value must be interpreted as a size expressed in pixels relative to the viewing device.

mm

The value must be interpreted as a size expressed in millimeters.

cm

The value must be interpreted as a size expressed in centimeters.

in

The value must be interpreted as a size expressed in inches. 1 inch is equal to 2.54 centimeters.

pt

The value must be interpreted as a size expressed in points. The points used by CSS2 are equal to 1/72th of an inch.

pc

The value must be interpreted as a size expressed in picas. 1 pica is equal to 12 points.

default_value

This argument specifies a value that is used by default if the attribute value is missing. This argument is optional.

Example: *attr* Function

Consider the following XML instance:

```
<sample>
   <para bg_color="#AAAAFF">Blue paragraph.</para>
   <para bg_color="red">Red paragraph.</para>
   <para bg_color="red" font_size="2">Red paragraph with large font.</para>
   <para bg_color="#00AA00" font_size="0.8" space="4">
        Green paragraph with small font and margin.</para>
</sample>
```

The `<para>` elements have `@bg_color` attributes with RGB color values (such as `#AAAAFF`). You can use the `attr()` function to change the elements appearance in the editor based on the value of this attribute:

```
background-color:attr(bg_color, color);
```

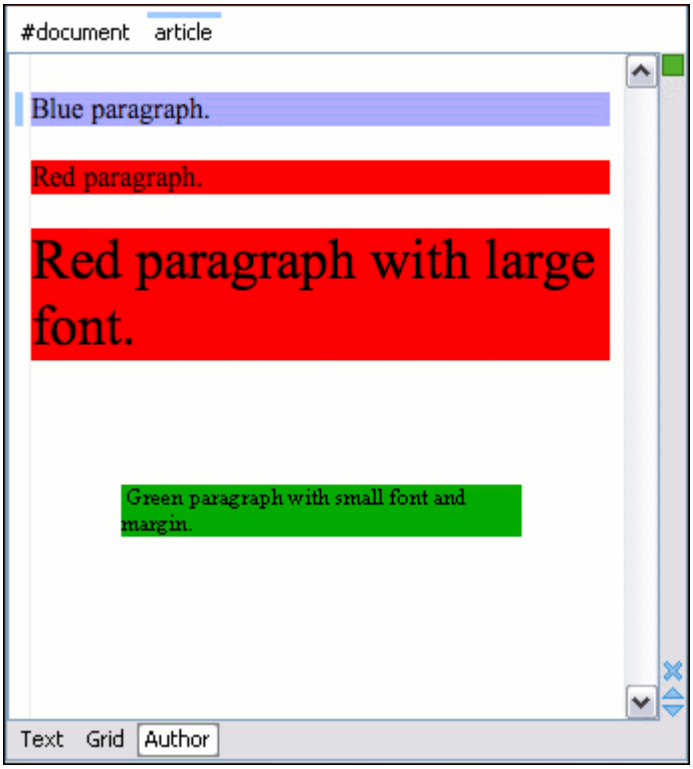
The `font_size` represents the font size in *em* units. You can use this value to change the style of the element:

```
font-size:attr(font_size, em);
```

The complete CSS rule is:

```
para{
 display:block;
 background-color:attr(bg_color, color);
 font-size:attr(font_size, em);
 margin:attr(space, em);
}
```

The document is rendered as:



CSS Level 3 target-counter() and target-counters() Functions

The CSS Level 3 functions *target-counter* and *target-counters* can be used as values for the `content` property to retrieve counter values and display information obtained from a target at the end of a link.

The *target-counter* Function

This function retrieves the value of the innermost counter with a given name.

```
target-counter ( <fragment> , <counter-name> [ , <counter-style> ] ? )
```

fragment

The URI fragment pointing to the ID of the target element.

counter-name

The name of the counter. This argument is required.

counter-style

This optional argument can be used to format the result.

Example:

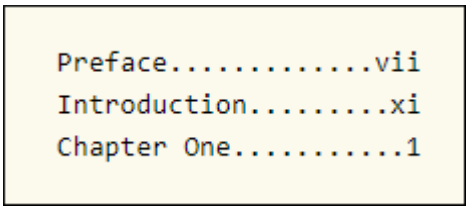
HTML:

```
<nav>
  <ol>
    <li class="frontmatter"><a href="#pref_01">Preface</a></li>
    <li class="frontmatter"><a href="#intr_01">Introduction</a></li>
    <li class="bodymatter"><a href="#chap_01">Chapter One</a></li>
  </ol>
</nav>
```

CSS:

```
.frontmatter a::after { content: leader('.') target-counter(attr(href), page, lower-roman) }
.bodymatter a::after { content: leader('.') target-counter(attr(href), page, decimal) }
```

Result:



The *target-counters* Function

This function fetches the value of all counters of a given name from the end of a link and formats them by inserting a given string between the value of each nested counter.

```
target-counter ( <fragment> , <counter-name> , <delimiter> [ , <counter-style> ] ? )
```

fragment

The URI fragment pointing to the ID of the target element.

counter-name

The name of the counter. This argument is required.

delimiter

The string to be inserted between the value of each nested counter. This argument is required.

counter-style

This optional argument can be used to format the result.

Related information

https://www.w3.org/TR/css-gcpm-3/#target-counter

https://www.w3.org/TR/css-gcpm-3/#target-counters

calc() Function

The `calc()` function allows mathematical expressions with addition (+), subtraction (-), multiplication (*), division (/) to be used as component values. Percentages are solved relative to the dimensions of the containing parent block. It can be used when length values are accepted:

```
elem {
 width: calc(100% - 1em);
}
```

For more information, see: https://drafts.csswg.org/css-values-3/#calc-notation

Custom CSS Properties (CSS Variables)

Custom properties (also referred to as *CSS variables*) are properties defined by CSS authors that contain specific values to be reused throughout a document.

Complex websites have many CSS rules, often with a lot of repeated values. For example, the same color might be used in dozens of different places, requiring a global search-and-replace operation if that color needs to be changed. Custom properties allow a value to be stored in one place, then referenced in multiple other places. An additional benefit is semantic identifiers. For example, `--main-text-color` is easier to understand than `#00ff00`, especially if this same color is also used in other contexts.

Custom properties follow the same rules as other CSS properties, so you are able to define and use them at multiple levels, following standard CSS cascading and specificity rules.

Usage

A custom property name begins with a double hyphen (`--`) and its value that can be any valid CSS value. You use the custom property value by specifying your custom property name inside the *var()* function, in place of a regular property value:

Defining a Custom Property

```
element {
  --main-bg-color: brown;
  background-color: var(--main-bg-color);
}
```

Note:
Custom property names are case sensitive: *--my-color* will be treated as a separate custom property from *--My-color*.

Inheritance of Custom Properties

If you define a custom property on an element, you will be able to access it on all of its descendents.

Inheritance

```
<one>
  <two>
    <three/>
    <four/>
  </two>
</one>
```

```
one {
  --color:green;
}

three {
  --color:red;
}

* {
  color: var(--color);
}
```

Result:

- `<one>` has the color green.
- `<two>` has the color green.
- `<three>` has the color red.
- `<four>` has the color green.

Custom Properties Fallback Values

The *var()* function has two arguments. The first argument is the name of the custom property to be substituted. The second argument (optional) is a fallback value, which is used as the substitution value when the referenced custom property is invalid or undefined.

Specifying a Fallback Value

```
one {
  color: var(--color, blue);
}

one {
  color: var(--color, var(--fallback-color, red));
}
```

Dependencies

A custom property can reference the value of another custom property through the *var()* function.

A Custom Property Safely Using a Variable

```
:root {
  --border-color: red;
  --main-border: 1px solid var(--border-color, green);
}

p {
  border: var(--main-border);
}
```

Combining Custom Variables with `calc()`

```
:root {
  --foo: 10px;
  --bar: calc(var(--foo) + 10px);
}

p {
  font-size: var(--bar);
}
```

CAUTION:
This can create cyclic dependencies where two or more custom properties each attempt to reference each other.

An Invalid Situation of Variables Depending on Each Other

```
:root {
  --color:    var(--bg-color);
  --bg-color: var(--color);
}
```

CSS Extensions

CSS stylesheets provide support for displaying documents. When editing non-standard documents, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin CSS extensions are useful.

Examples of how they can be used:

- Property for marking *foldable elements (on page 2230)* in large files.
- Enforcing a display mode for the XML tags, regardless of the current mode selected by the user.

- Constructing a URL from a relative path location.
- String processing functions.

Built-in CSS Selectors

When Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin renders content in the **Author** mode, it adds built-in CSS selectors (in addition to the CSS stylesheets linked in the XML or specified in the document type associated to the XML document). These built-in CSS selectors are processed before all other CSS content, but they can be overwritten if the CSS developer wants to modify a default behavior.

List of CSS Selector Contributed by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

```
@namespace oxy "http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author";
@namespace xi "http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude";
@namespace xlink "http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink";
@namespace svg "http://www.w3.org/2000/svg";
@namespace mml "http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML";


oxy|document {
    display:block !important;
}


oxy|cdata {
    display:-oxy-morph !important;
    white-space:pre-wrap !important;
    border-width:0px !important;
    margin:0px !important;
    padding: 0px !important;
}


oxy|processing-instruction {
    display:-oxy-morph !important;
    color: rgb(139, 38, 201) !important;
    white-space:pre-wrap !important;
    border-width:0px !important;
    margin:0px !important;
    padding: 0px !important;
}


/*EXM-33415 Avoid showing other editors PIs in content, not
useful when editing in Oxygen*/
oxy|processing-instruction[Pub],
oxy|processing-instruction[PubTbl],
oxy|processing-instruction[xm-replace_text],
```

```
oxy|processing-instruction[xm-deletion_mark],

oxy|processing-instruction[xm-insertion_mark_start],

oxy|processing-instruction[xm-insertion_mark_end],

oxy|processing-instruction[xml-model],

oxy|processing-instruction[xml-stylesheet],

oxy|processing-instruction[fontoxml-text-placeholder]

{

    display:none !important;

}


oxy|comment {

    display:-oxy-morph !important;

    background-color:#f7f7f7;

    color: #707070 !important;

    white-space:pre-wrap !important;

    border-width:0px !important;

    margin:0px !important;

    padding: 0px !important;

}


oxy|reference:before,

oxy|entity[href]:before{

  -oxy-link: attr(href) !important;

  text-decoration: underline !important;

  color: navy !important;


  margin: 2px !important;

  padding: 0px !important;

  margin-right:0px !important;

  padding-right:2px !important;

}


oxy|reference:before {

  display: -oxy-morph !important;

  content: url(../images/EditContent16.png) !important;

}


oxy|entity[href]:before{

  display: -oxy-morph !important;

  content: url(../images/EditContent16.png) !important;

}
```

```
oxy|reference,

oxy|entity {

    -oxy-editable:false !important;

    background-color: rgb(240, 240, 240) !important;

    margin:0px !important;

    padding: 0px !important;


}


oxy|reference[editable='true'] {

    -oxy-editable:true !important;

}


oxy|reference {

    display:-oxy-morph !important;

    /*EXM-28674 No need to present tags for these artificial references.*/

    -oxy-display-tags: none;

}


/*EXM-16109 Support for expand references on demand*/

*:-oxy-lazy-expand-ref:not(:-oxy-ref-expanded):before(2000) {

  content: oxy_button(transparent, true, enableInReadOnlyContext, true, action, oxy_action(

          name, '${i18n(Expand_reference)}',

          icon, url('/images/ExpandRef.png'),

          operation, 'SetPseudoClassOperation',

          arg-name, '-oxy-ref-expanded'

));

}

*:-oxy-lazy-expand-ref:not(:-oxy-ref-expanded) {

    -oxy-foldable:false;

    -oxy-placeholder-content:"";

}


oxy|entity {

    display:-oxy-morph !important;

}


oxy|entity[name='amp'],

oxy|entity[name='lt'],

oxy|entity[name='gt'],

oxy|entity[name='quot'],

oxy|entity[name='apos']{
```

```
    /*EXM-32236, EXM-37026 Do not present tags for simple character entity references.*/
    -oxy-display-tags: none;
}

oxy|entity[href] {
  border: 1px solid rgb(175, 175, 175) !important;
  padding: 0.2em !important;
}
/*Wraps multiple fallback elements*/
oxy|include-wrapper {
    display:-oxy-morph !important;
}

xi|include {
    display:-oxy-morph !important;
    margin-bottom: 0.5em !important;
    padding: 2px !important;
}
xi|include:before,
xi|include:after{
    display:inline !important;
    background-color:inherit !important;
    color:#444444 !important;
    font-weight:bold !important;
}

xi|include:before {
    content:url(../images/link.png) attr(href)  !important;
    -oxy-link: attr(href) !important;
}
xi|include[parse="text"]:before {
    content:url(../images/link.png) !important;
}
xi|include[xpointer]:before {
    content:url(../images/link.png) attr(href) " " attr(xpointer) !important;
    -oxy-link: oxy_concat(attr(href), "#", attr(xpointer)) !important;
}

xi|fallback {
    display:-oxy-morph !important;
    margin: 2px !important;
    border: 1px solid #CB0039 !important;
```

```
}

xi|fallback:before {
    display:-oxy-morph !important;
    content:"XInclude fallback: " !important;
    color:#CB0039 !important;
}

oxy|doctype {
    display:block !important;
    background-color: transparent !important;
    color:blue !important;
    border-width:0px !important;
    margin:0px !important;
    padding: 2px !important;
}

@media oxygen-high-contrast-black, oxygen-dark-theme{
    oxy|doctype {
        color:#D0E2F4 !important;
    }
}

oxy|error {
    display:-oxy-morph !important;
    -oxy-editable:false !important;
    white-space:pre !important;
    font-weight:bold !important;
    color: rgb(178, 0, 0) !important;
    -oxy-display-tags: none;
}

oxy|error:before {
    content:url(../images/ReferenceError12.png) "[" !important;
    color: rgb(178, 0, 0) !important;
}
oxy|error[level='warn']:before {
    content:url(../images/ReferenceWarn12.png) "[" !important;
    color: rgb(200, 185, 0) !important;
}

oxy|error[level='warn'] {
```

```
    color: rgb(200, 185, 0) !important;
}


oxy|error:after {
    content:"]" !important;
}



*[xlink|href]:before {
    content:url(../images/link.png);
    -oxy-link: attr(xlink|href) !important;
}



/*No direct display of the MathML and SVG images.*/
svg|svg{
    display:inline !important;
    white-space: -oxy-trim-when-ws-only !important;
}
/*EXM-28827 SVG can contain more than one namespace in it*/
svg|svg * {
    display:none !important;
    white-space:normal !important;
}


mml|math{
    display:inline !important;
    white-space: -oxy-trim-when-ws-only !important;
}
mml|math mml|*{
    display:none !important;
    white-space: normal !important;
}


/*Text direction attributes*/
*[dir='rtl'] { direction:rtl; unicode-bidi:embed; }
*[dir='rlo'] { direction:rtl; unicode-bidi:bidi-override; }


*[dir='ltr'] { direction:ltr; unicode-bidi:embed; }
*[dir='lro'] { direction:ltr; unicode-bidi:bidi-override; }


@media oxygen-high-contrast-black, oxygen-dark-theme{
```

```
    xi|include:before,
    xi|include:after{
        color:#808080 !important;
    }
}


/*
 * EXM-40349
 *
 * In DIFF these place holder PIs are not handled so we treat them as normal PIs with a bit of styling.
 *
 */
oxy|processing-instruction[oxy-placeholder] {
    visibility:-oxy-collapse-text;
    -oxy-display-tags:none;
}


oxy|processing-instruction[oxy-placeholder]:before {
    background-color: rgba(192, 192, 192, 0.2) !important;
    color: rgba(0, 0, 0, 0.6) !important;
    font-weight:bold;
    /* When there isn't an associated CSS the NO_CSS rules hide the PIs. @see AuthorViewport.CSS_ERROR_END */
    display:-oxy-morph;
    content: attr(content) !important;
}


@media oxygen-high-contrast-black, oxygen-dark-theme{
   oxy|processing-instruction[oxy-placeholder]:before {
    background-color: rgba(0, 0, 0, 0.15) !important;
    color: rgb(156, 156, 156) !important;
    }
    /* ==================================
    *
    * built-in oXygen elements
    *
    */
    oxy|comment {
        color: #a2a2a2 !important;
        background-color: transparent !important;
    }
    oxy|reference,
    oxy|entity {
```

```
        background-color: rgb(100, 100, 100) !important;
    }
}
```

Example:

To show all entities in the **Author** mode as transparent, without a gray background, first define in your CSS after all imports the namespace:

```
@namespace oxy "http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author";
```

and then add the following selector:

```
oxy|entity {
    background-color: inherit !important;
}
```

Additional CSS Selectors

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for selecting additional types of nodes. These custom selectors apply to: *document*, *doctype*, *processing-instruction*, *comment*, *CDATA sections*, *entities*, and *reference sections*. *Processing-instructions* are not displayed by default. To display them, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Editor > Author**, and select **Show processing instructions**.

Note:
The custom selectors are presented in the default CSS for **Author** mode and all of their properties are marked with the *!important* flag. For this reason, you have to set the *!important* flag on each property of the custom selectors from your CSS to be applicable.

For the custom selectors to work in your CSS stylesheets, declare the **Author** mode extensions namespace at the beginning of the stylesheet documents:

```
@namespace oxy url('http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author');
```

- **oxy|document** - The `oxy|document` selector matches the entire document:

  ```
  oxy|document {
      display:block !important;
  }
  ```

- **oxy|doctype** - The following example changes the rendering of `doctype` sections:

  ```
  oxy|doctype {
      display:block !important;
      color:blue !important;
      background-color:transparent !important;
  }
  ```

- **oxy|processing-instruction** - To match the processing instructions, you can use the `oxy|processing-instruction` selector:

```
oxy|processing-instruction {
    display:block !important;
    color:purple !important;
    background-color:transparent !important;
}
```

A processing instruction usually has a target and one or more pseudo attributes:

```
<?target_name data="b"?>
```

You can match a processing instruction with a particular target from the CSS using the following construct:

```
oxy|processing-instruction[target_name]
```

You can also match the processing instructions having a certain target and pseudo attribute value, such as:

```
oxy|processing-instruction[target_name][data="b"]
```

- **oxy|comment** - The XML comments displayed in **Author** mode can be changed using the `oxy|comment` selector:

```
oxy|comment {
    display:block !important;
    color:green !important;
    background-color:transparent !important;
}
```

- **oxy|cdata** - The `oxy|cdata` selector matches `CDATA` sections:

```
oxy|cdata{
    display:block !important;
    color:gray !important;
    background-color:transparent !important;
}
```

- **oxy|entity** - The `oxy|entity` selector matches the entity content:

```
oxy|entity {
    display:morph !important;
    editable:false !important;
    color:orange !important;
    background-color:transparent !important;
}
```

To match particular entities, use the `oxy|entity` selector in expressions such as:

```
oxy|entity[name='amp'],
oxy|entity[name='lt'],
oxy|entity[name='gt'],
oxy|entity[name='quot'],
oxy|entity[name='apos'],
oxy|entity[name^='#']{
    -oxy-display-tags: none;
}
```

- **oxy|reference** - The *references to entities*, *XInclude*, and DITA `@conref` and `@conkeyref` attributes are expanded by default in **Author** mode and the referenced content is displayed. The referenced resources are displayed inside the element or entity that references them.

  You can use the `reference` property to customize the way these references are rendered in **Author** mode:

  ```
  oxy|reference {
    border:1px solid gray !important;
  }
  ```

  In the **Author** mode, content is highlighted when text contains comments *(on page 393)* and changes (if *Track Changes (on page 393)* was active when the content was modified).

  If this content is referenced, the **Author** mode does not display the highlighted areas in the new context. If you want to mark the existence of the comments and changes, you can use the `oxy|reference[comments]`, `oxy|reference[changeTracking]`, and `oxy|reference[changeTracking][comments]` selectors.

  Note:
  Two artificial attributes (`comments` and `changeTracking`) are set on the reference node, containing information about the number of comments and tracked changes in the content.

  - The following example represents the customization of the reference fragments that contain comments:

    ```
    oxy|reference[comments]:before {
      content: "Comments: " attr(comments) !important;
    }
    ```

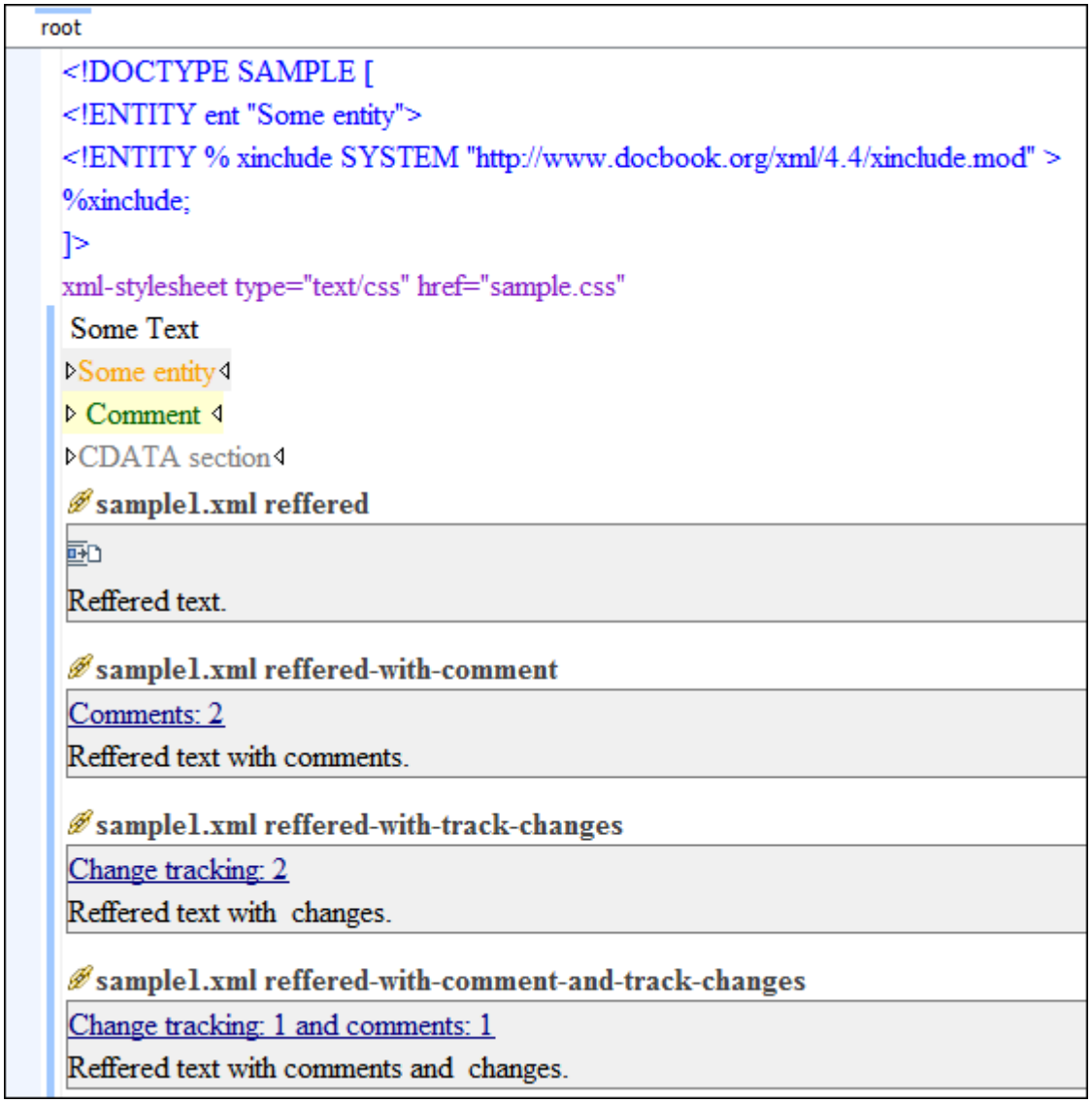
  - To match reference fragments based on the fact that they contain tracked changes inside, use the `oxy|reference[changeTracking]` selector:

    ```
    oxy|reference[changeTracking]:before {
      content: "Change tracking: " attr(changeTracking) !important;
    }
    ```

- Here is an example of how you can set a custom color for the reference containing both tracked changes and comments:

```
oxy|reference[changeTracking][comments]:before {
  content: "Change tracking: " attr(changeTracking)
           " and comments: " attr(comments) !important;
}
```

Figure 315. Example: A Document Rendered Using these Rules



Additional CSS Properties

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides various additional CSS properties to extend the standard CSS properties.

Append Content Properties: -oxy-append-content / -oxy-prepend-content

Used to append specified content.

`-oxy-append-content` Property

This property appends the specified content to the content generated by other matching CSS rules of lesser specificity. Unlike the `content` property, where only the value from the rule with the greatest specificity is taken into account, the `-oxy-append-content` property adds content to that generated by the lesser specificity rules into a new compound content.

Example:

```
element:before{
    content: "Hello";
}
element:before{
    -oxy-append-content: " World!";
}
```

The content shown before the `element` will be `Hello World!`.

`-oxy-prepend-content` Property

Prepends the specified content to the content generated by other matching CSS rules of lesser specificity. Unlike the `content` property, where only the value from the rule with the greatest specificity is taken into account, the `-oxy-prepend-content` prepends content to that generated by the lesser specificity rules into a new compound content.

Example:

```
element:before{
    content: "Hello!";
}
element:before{
    -oxy-prepend-content: "said: ";
}
element:before{
    -oxy-prepend-content: "I ";
}
```

The content shown before the `element` will be `I said: Hello!`.

Collapse Text: -oxy-collapse-text Property Value

Used to collapse the content of an element.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to set the value of the `visibility` property to `-oxy-collapse-text`, meaning that the content of that element is not rendered. If an element is marked as `-oxy-collapse-text` you are not able to position the cursor inside it and edit it. The purpose of `-oxy-collapse-text` is to make the text value of an element editable only through a form control.

Example: *visibility* Property

The text value of an XML element will be edited using a text field form control. In this case, the text content is not directly present in the **Author** visual editing mode:

```
title{
 content: oxy_textfield(edit, '#text', columns, 40);
 visibility:-oxy-collapse-text;
}
```

Cyrillic Counters: -oxy-lower-cyrillic Property Values

Used to style lists with Cyrillic counters.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to set the value of the `list-style-type` property to Cyrillic counters. For example, `-oxy-lower-cyrillic-ru`, `-oxy-lower-cyrillic-uk`, `-oxy-upper-cyrillic-ru` or `-oxy-upper-cyrillic-uk`, meaning that you can have Russian and Ukrainian counters.

Example: Cyrillic Counters

Counting list items with Cyrillic symbols:

```
li{
  display:list-item;
  list-style-type:-oxy-lower-cyrillic-ru;
}
```

Display Tag Markers: -oxy-display-tags Property

Used to specify whether or not tag markers are displayed.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to choose whether tag markers of an element should never be presented or the current display mode should be respected. This is especially useful when working with `:before` and `:after` pseudo-elements, in which case the element range is already visually defined so the tag markers are redundant.

The property is named `-oxy-display-tags`, with the following possible values:

- **none** - Tags markers will not be presented regardless of the current display mode *(on page 348)*.
- **default** - The tag markers will be created depending on the current display mode *(on page 348)*.
- **inherit** - The value of the property is inherited from an ancestor element.

```
-oxy-display-tags
    Value: none | default | inherit
    Initial: default
    Applies to: all nodes(comments, elements, CDATA, etc.)
    Inherited: false
    Media: all
```

Example: *-oxy-display-tags* Property

In this example, the **para** element from DocBook uses a `:before` and `:after` element and its tag markers will not be visible.

```
para:before{
    content: "{";
}

para:after{
    content: "}";
}

para{
    -oxy-display-tags: none;
    display:block;
    margin: 0.5em 0;
}
```

Editable: -oxy-editable Property

Used to inhibit editing the content of a particular element.

If you want to inhibit the editing of the content of a certain element, you can set the `-oxy-editable` CSS property to `false` (the deprecated `editable` property is also supported).

Floating Toolbar: -oxy-floating-toolbar Property

Used to display a configured floating toolbar in **Author** mode.

The `-oxy-floating-toolbar` property is used to configure and display a floating toolbar in **Author** mode. It accepts a space-separated list of the following functions:

- `oxy_button`
- `oxy_buttonGroup`
- `oxy_textfield`
- `oxy_combobox`
- `oxy_label`

Note:
The `"|"` text value can be used to add a separator between elements of the toolbar.

It must be used in conjunction with the `-oxy-selected` and `-oxy-selection-inside` pseudo-classes. The `-oxy-selected` pseudo-class is automatically set on an element that is fully selected and the `-oxy-selection-inside` pseudo-class is automatically set on an element that has a selection inside.

Example 1:

```
p:-oxy-selection-inside {
    -oxy-floating-toolbar:
        oxy_button(actionID, 'bold')
        oxy_button(actionID, 'italic')
        oxy_button(actionID, 'underline')
}
```

This results in a floating toolbar that contains bold, italic, and underline actions presented in **Author** mode every time text inside a paragraph element is selected.

Example 2:

```
p:-oxy-selected {
    -oxy-floating-toolbar:
        oxy_label(text, "Platform: ")
        oxy_combobox(
            edit, '@platform',
            editable, false,
            values, 'windows, mac, linux',
            labels, 'Windows, MacOS, Linux'
            )
}
```

This results in a floating toolbar that contains a *Platform:* label and a drop-down menu used to change the value of the `@platform` profiling attribute. This is presented in **Author** mode every time a paragraph element is fully selected.

Example 3:

```
[conref]:-oxy-selected, [conkeyref]:-oxy-selected {
    -oxy-floating-toolbar:
        oxy_button(actionID, 'add_edit_content_reference')
        oxy_button(actionID, 'remove_content_reference')
        "|"
        oxy_button(actionID, 'conref.replace')
}
```

This results in a floating toolbar that contains **Edit Content Reference**, **Remove Content Reference**, and **Replace Reference with Content** actions presented in **Author** mode every time an element with a `@conref` or `@conkeyref` attribute is fully selected.

Folding Elements: -oxy-foldable / -oxy-folded / -oxy-not-foldable-child

Used to configure whether or not the content of an element can be expanded or collapsed.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to declare some elements to be *foldable* *(on page 2230)*. This is especially useful when working with large documents organized in logical blocks, editing a large DocBook article or book, for instance. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin marks the *foldable* content with a small blue triangle. When you hover with your mouse pointer over this marker, a dotted line borders the collapsible content. The following actions are available in the **Folding** submenu of the contextual menu:

Toggle Fold

Toggles the state of the current fold.

Collapse Other Folds

Folds all the elements except the current element.

Collapse Child Folds

Folds the elements indented with one level inside the current element.

Expand Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad+ (Command + NumPad+ on macOS))

Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

Expand All

Unfolds all elements in the current document.

`-oxy-foldable` Property

This property defines whether or not the content for an element can be *folded* by the user. To define that an element's content can be *folded*, use the `-oxy-foldable:true` property.

`-oxy-folded` Property

This property is used in conjunction with the `-oxy-foldable` property and it defines the elements that are *folded* by default. To define an element to be *folded* by default, use the `-oxy-folded:true` property.

Note:
Since the `-oxy-folded` property works in conjunction with the `-oxy-foldable` property, the `-oxy-folded` property is ignored if the `-oxy-foldable` property is not set on the same element.

`-oxy-not-foldable-child` Property

When collapsing an element, it is useful to keep some of its content visible (for example, a short description of the collapsed region). The `-oxy-not-foldable-child` property is used to identify the child element that is kept visible. As its value, it accepts an element name or a list of comma-separated element names. The first occurrence of each child element specified in the list of element names will be identified as the *not-foldable* child and displayed. If the element is marked as *foldable* (`-oxy-foldable:true;`) but it does not have the `-oxy-not-foldable-child` property or none of the specified *non-foldable* children exist, then the element is still *foldable*. In this case, the element kept visible when *folded* will be the `before` pseudo-element.

Example: Folding DocBook Elements

All the elements below can have a `<title>` child element and are considered to be logical sections. You mark them as being *foldable* leaving the `<title>` element visible.

```
set,
book,
part,
reference,
chapter,
preface,
article,
sect1,
sect2,
sect3,
sect4,
section,
appendix,
figure,
example,
table {
    -oxy-foldable:true;
    -oxy-not-foldable-child: title;
}
```

Note:
The `foldable`, `folded`, and `not-foldable-child` properties are deprecated and the equivalent with the `-oxy` prefix should be used instead.

Links: -oxy-link Property

Used to specify that a particular element should be considered a link.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to declare some elements to be *links*. This is especially useful when working with many documents that reference each other. The links allow for an easy way to get from one document to another. Clicking the link marker will open the referenced resource in an editor.

To define the element that should be considered a link, you must use the `-oxy-link` property on the `:before` or `:after` pseudo-element. The value of the property indicates the location of the linked resource. Since links are usually indicated by the value of an attribute in most cases it will have a value similar to `attr(href)`

Example: DocBook Link Elements

The following elements are defined to be links on the `:before` pseudo-element and their values are defined by the value of an attribute.

```
*[href]:before{
    -oxy-link:attr(href);
    content: "Click " attr(href) " for opening" ;
}

ulink[url]:before{
    -oxy-link:attr(url);
    content: "Click to open: " attr(url);
}

olink[targetdoc]:before{
    -oxy-link: attr(targetdoc);
    content: "Click to open: " attr(targetdoc);
}
```

Link Navigation: -oxy-link-activation-trigger Property

Used to specify how hyperlinks are handled in **Author** mode.

The `-oxy-link-activation-trigger` property is used to specify when hyperlinks are clickable in **Author** mode. This is helpful for those who are used to the hyperlink activation procedure in other applications (for example, apps that use **Ctrl+Click** (**Command+Click** on macOS) to activate hyperlinks.

The possible values are:

- **click** - Hyperlinks are opened when a user mouse-clicks the link icon or text.
- **modifier-click** - Hyperlinks are opened when a user holds down **Ctrl** (**Command** on macOS) and mouse-clicks the link icon or text.
- **auto** - The hyperlink strategy is determined automatically, depending on the context.
- **inherit** - The value is inherited from the parent element.

Morph Elements: -oxy-morph Property Value

Used to specify that an element should be displayed inline.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to specify that an element has an `-oxy-morph` display type (deprecated `morph` property is also supported), meaning that the element is *inline (on page 2231)* if all its children are *inline*.

Example: *-oxy-morph* Property Value

Suppose you have a *wrapper* XML element that allows users to set a number of attributes on all sub-elements. This element should have an *inline (on page 2231)* or *block (on page 2228)* behavior, depending on the behavior of its child elements:

```
wrapper{
 display:-oxy-morph;
}
```

Placeholders for Empty Elements: -oxy-placeholder-content Property

Used to configure placeholders for empty elements.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the element name as pseudo-content for empty elements if the **Show placeholders for empty elements** option *(on page 128)* is selected in the **Author** preferences page and there is no *before* or *after* content set in the CSS for this type of element. There are two CSS properties that can be used to control the placeholders (`-oxy-placeholder-content` and `-oxy-show-placeholder`).

`-oxy-placeholder-content` CSS Property

To control the displayed pseudo-content for empty elements, you can use the `-oxy-placeholder-content` CSS property.

The following example would change the `<keyword>` element to be displayed as `key`:

```
keyword{
    -oxy-placeholder-content:"key";
}
```

Note:
This CSS property accepts the **${i18n(key)}** *(on page 207)* localization editor variable, as in the following example:

```
-oxy-placeholder-content:"${i18n(id)}";
```

`-oxy-show-placeholder` CSS Property

The `-oxy-show-placeholder` property allows you to decide whether or not the placeholder will be shown. The possible values are:

- **always** - Always display placeholders.
- **default** - Always display placeholders if *before* or *after* content is not set in the CSS.
- **inherit** - The placeholders are displayed according to the **Show placeholders for empty elements** option *(on page 128)* (if *before* and *after* content is not declared).
- **no** - Never display placeholders.

Note:
Deprecated properties `show-placeholder` and `placeholder-content` are also supported.

Related information

Using Placeholders in Document Templates *(on page 231)*

Style Elements: -oxy-style Property

Used to configure the style of particular elements.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to specify the style for an XML element. This is helpful if you want to embed CSS styling to XML elements directly in the XML file you are editing without having to edit the CSS files that are normally attached to the XML files. The property should have an XPath function for the value.

Example: *-oxy-style* Property

The following code snippet should be added in the CSS file that renders the files for your framework customization:

```
*{
   -oxy-style:attr(style);
}
```

Suppose you want to display the `<title>` elements in your XML document in the color red. You could add the following snippet directly in the XML document:

```
<title style="color:red;">My Memoirs</title>
```

Tip:
The `@style` attribute is supported by default in HTML5 documents.

Tags Color: -oxy-tags-color Property

Used to configure the background or foreground colors of tags.

By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin does not display element tags. You can use the **Partial Tags** button from the **Author** toolbar to control the amount of displayed markup *(on page 348)*.

To configure the default background and foreground colors of the tags, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author**, and set the desired colors in the **Tags background color** *(on page 130)* and **Tags foreground color** *(on page 130)* options.

If you want to be more specific and configure the colors using a CSS, the `-oxy-tags-background-color` and `-oxy-tags-color` properties allow you to control the background and foreground colors for any particular XML element.

Example:

```
para {
    -oxy-tags-color:white;
    -oxy-tags-background-color:green;
}
title {
    -oxy-tags-color:yellow;
    -oxy-tags-background-color:black;
}
```

Custom CSS Functions

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a wide range of custom CSS extension functions that can be used to customize the visual **Author** editing mode.

Arithmetic Functions

Arithmetic Functions that are supported.

You can use any of the arithmetic functions implemented in the *java.lang.Math* class (https://docs.oracle.com/en/java/javase/17/docs/api/java.base/java/lang/Math.html).

In addition, the following functions are available:

Syntax	Details
oxy_add (*param1*, ... , *paramN*, *'returnType'*)	Adds the values of all parameters from *param1* to *paramN*.
oxy_subtract (*param1*, *param2*, ... , *paramN*, *'returnType'*)	Subtracts the values of parameters *param2* to *paramN* from *param1*.
oxy_multiply (*param1*, ... , *paramN*, *'return-Type'*)	Multiplies the values of parameters from *param1* to *paramN*.
oxy_divide (*param1*, *param2*, *'returnType'*)	Performs the division of *param1* to *param2*.
oxy_modulo (*param1*, *param2*, *'returnType'*)	Returns the reminder of the division of *param1* to *param2*.

Note:
The *returnType* can be *'integer'*, *'number'*, or any of the supported CSS measuring types.

Example: *oxy_multiply* Function

If you have an image with **width** and **height** specified on it, this will compute the number of pixels on it:

```
image:before{
 content: "Number of pixels: " oxy_multiply(attr(width), attr(height), "px");
}
```

Actions: oxy_action() Function

This function allows you to define actions directly in the CSS, rather than referencing them from the associated framework.

The `oxy_action()` function is frequently used from the *oxy_button()* function *(on page 1782)* that provides a graphical button for invoking a custom action. The action is normally defined in the associated Document Type (*framework* configuration) but the `oxy_action()` function allows you to define it directly in the CSS instead of the *framework* configuration.

The arguments received by the `oxy_action()` function are a list of properties that define an action. The following properties are supported:

- **name** - The name of the action. It will be displayed as the label for the button or menu item.
- **description** (optional) - A short description with details about the result of the action.
- **icon** (optional) - A path relative to the CSS pointing to an image (the icon for the action). The path can point to resources that are packed in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (`oxygen.jar`) by starting its value with `/` (for example, `/images/Remove16.png`). It can also be expressed using an *editor variable (on page 199)*.
- **operation** - The name of the Java class implementing the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperation* interface. There is also a variety of predefined operations *(on page 1554)* that can be used.

  Note:
  If the name of the operation specified in the CSS is not qualified (has no Java package name), then it is considered to be one of the built-in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin operations *(on page 1554)*. If the class is not found in this package, then it will be loaded using the specified name.

- **arg-<string>** - All arguments with the `arg-` prefix are passed to the operation (the string that follows the `arg-` prefix is passed). The argument value supports editor variables *(on page 199)*.
- **ID** - (optional) - The ID of the action from the *framework*. If this is specified, all others parameters are disregarded.

Example: *oxy_action* function inside an *oxy_button* form control *(on page 1782)*:

```
oxy_button(
   action, oxy_action(
            name, 'Insert',
            description, 'Insert an element after the current one',
            icon, url('insert.png'),
            operation,
             'InsertFragmentOperation',
            arg-fragment, '<element>${caret}</element>',
            arg-insertLocation, '.',
```

```
            arg-insertPosition, 'After'),
            showIcon, true)
```

Example: *oxy_action* Function

You can also create a button form control directly from an `oxy_action` function:

```
oxy_action(
            name, 'Insert',
            description, 'Insert an element after the current one',
            operation, 'InsertFragmentOperation',
            arg-fragment, '<element>${caret}</element>',
            arg-insertLocation, '.',
            arg-insertPosition, 'After')
```

Tip:
A code template is available to make it easy to add the `oxy_action` function with the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_action` code template.

Related information
Button Form Control *(on page 1782)*

Action Lists: oxy_action_list() Function

This function allows you to define a sequential list of actions directly in the CSS, rather than referencing them from the associated framework.

The `oxy_action_list()` function is used from the *oxy_buttonGroup()* function *(on page 1785)* that provides a graphical group of buttons with multiple custom actions. These actions are normally defined in the associated Document Type (*framework* configuration) but the `oxy_action_list()` function allows you to define the actions directly in the CSS instead of the *framework* configuration.

The arguments received by the `oxy_action_list()` function are a list of actions (executed sequentially) that are defined with the *oxy_action()* function *(on page 1758)*. The following properties are supported in the `oxy_action()` function:

- **name** - The name of the action. The name of the first defined action will be displayed as the label for the button or menu item.
- **description** (optional) - A short description with details about the result of the action. The description of the first defined action will be displayed in a tooltip.
- **icon** (optional) - A path relative to the CSS pointing to an image (the icon for the action). The path can point to resources that are packed in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (`oxygen.jar`) by starting its value with `/` (for example, `/images/Remove16.png`). It can also be expressed using an *editor variable (on page 199)*.

- **operation** - The name of the Java class implementing the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorOperation* interface. There is also a variety of predefined operations *(on page 1554)* that can be used.

  > **Note:**
  > If the name of the operation specified in the CSS is not qualified (has no Java package name), then it is considered to be one of the built-in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin operations *(on page 1554)*. If the class is not found in this package, then it will be loaded using the specified name.

- **arg-<string>** - All arguments with the `arg-` prefix are passed to the operation (the string that follows the `arg-` prefix is passed). The argument value supports editor variables *(on page 199)*.
- **ID** - (optional) - The ID of the action from the *framework*. If this is specified, all others parameters are disregarded.

Example: *oxy_action_list* Function

```
p:after {
    content: oxy_buttonGroup(
    label, 'A group of actions',
    icon, url('http://www.oxygenxml.com/img/icn_oxy20.png'),
    actions,
      oxy_action_list(
          oxy_action(
                name, 'Insert a new paragraph',
                description, 'Insert an element after the current one',
                operation, 'InsertFragmentOperation',
                arg-fragment, '<p></p>',
                arg-insertLocation, '.',
                arg-insertPosition, 'After'
          ),
          oxy_action(
                name, 'Delete',
                description, 'Deletes the current element',
                operation, 'DeleteElementOperation'
          )
      )
  )
}
```

Tip:
A code template is available to make it easy to add the `oxy_action_list` function with the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_action_list` code template.

Related information

Actions: oxy_action() Function *(on page 1758)*
Button Group Form Control *(on page 1785)*

Attributes Concatenation: oxy_attributes() Function

This function concatenates the attributes for an element and returns the serialization.

Syntax:

```
oxy_attributes ( )
```

Example: *oxy_attributes* Function

```
element{
  content:oxy_attributes();
}
```

For instance, if you have the following XML fragment: `<element att1="x" xmlns:a="2" x="""/>`, the CSS function will display:

```
att1="x" xmlns:a="2" x="""
```

Base URL: oxy_base-uri() Function

This function evaluates the base URL in the context of the current node.

It does not have any arguments and takes into account the `xml:base` context of the current node. See the XML Base specification for more details.

Example: *oxy_base-uri* Function

Suppose you have some image references but you want to see other thumbnail images that reside in the same folder (in **Author** mode):

```
image[href]{
 content:oxy_url(oxy_base-uri(), oxy_replace(attr(href),
    '.jpeg', 'Thumbnail.jpeg'));
}
```

Capitalization: oxy_capitalize() Function

This function capitalizes the first letter of the text received as argument.

Syntax:

```
oxy_capitalize ( text )
```

text

The text in which the first letter will be capitalized.

Example: *oxy_capitalize* Function

```
*:before{

  content: oxy_capitalize(oxy_name()) ": ";

}
```

This would insert the capitalized qualified name as static text content before the element.

Compound Actions: oxy_compound_action() Function

This function allows you to define multiple actions that will be executed sequentially.

The `oxy_compound_action()` function is used from the *oxy_button()* form control function *(on page 1782)* or the *oxy_buttonGroup()* form control function *(on page 1785)*.

The arguments received by the `oxy_compound_action()` function are a list of actions (executed sequentially) that are defined with the *oxy_action()* function *(on page 1758)*.

You can use three optional properties (`name`, `description`, `icon`) in the `oxy_compound_action()` function to provide labels for the compound action. If you do not specify these three properties, those same properties defined in the first *oxy_action* function will be used for the labels.

- **name** - The name of the action. It will be displayed as the label for the action. If you want to reuse the name of an action already defined in your framework, you can use the *oxy_getActionName* function.
- **description** - A short description with details about the result of the action. It will be displayed in a tooltip when hovering over the button linked to this action. If you want to reuse the description of an action already defined in your framework, you can use the *oxy_getActionDescription* function.
- **icon** - A path relative to the CSS pointing to an image (the icon for the action). The path can point to resources that are packed in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (`oxygen.jar`) by starting its value with `/` (for example, `/images/Remove16.png`). It can also be expressed as an *editor variable (on page 199)*. If you want to reuse the icon of an action already defined in your framework, you can use the *oxy_getActionIcon* function.

The *oxy_getActionName*, *oxy_getActionDescription*, and *oxy_getActionIcon* functions accept the following 2 parameters:

- **framework.defined.action.id** (required) - The ID of an action defined in the current framework that gets the name, description, or icon for that action.
- **fallback** (optional) - A fallback value in case the ID value provided in the `framework.defined.action.id` parameter is not found.

Example: *oxy_compound_action* Function

```
oxy_button(
    action,
        oxy_compound_action(
        name, oxy_getActionName('framework.id', 'Fallback'),
        description, 'Inserts a paragraph and uses form controls to edit its @audience attribute',
        icon, url('http://www.oxygenxml.com/img/icn_oxy20.png'),
        oxy_action(
            name, 'Insert',
            description, 'Insert an element after the current one',
            operation, 'ro.sync.ecss.extensions.commons.operations.InsertFragmentOperation',
            icon, url('insert.png'),
            arg-fragment, "<p audience=''></p>",
            arg-insertLocation, '.',
            arg-insertPosition, 'After'
        ),
        oxy_action(
            name, 'Activate edit mode',
            description, 'Sets a pseudo class that will activate a CSS rule that will present a text field form control for
 the @audience attribute',
            operation, 'SetPseudoClassOperation',
            arg-name, 'edit-mode-on',
            arg-elementLocation, '.'
        )
        )
, showIcon, true)
```

Tip:
A code template is available to make it easy to add the `oxy_compound_action` function with the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_action_list` code template.

Related information

Actions: oxy_action() Function *(on page 1758)*
Button Form Control *(on page 1782)*

Concatenation: oxy_concat() Function

This function concatenates the received string arguments.

Syntax:

```
oxy_concat ( str_1 , str_2 )
```

str_1 ... str_n

The string arguments to be concatenated.

Example: *oxy_concat* Function

If an XML element has a `@padding-left` attribute:

```
<p padding-left="20">...
```

and you want to add a padding before it with that specific amount specified in the attribute value:

```
*[padding-left]{
 padding-left:oxy_concat(attr(padding-left), "px");
}
```

Get Text: oxy_getSomeText(text, length) Function

This function allows you to truncate a long string and to set a maximum number of displayed characters.

Syntax:

```
oxy_getSomeText ( text , length , endsWithPoints )
```

text

Displays the actual text.

length

Sets the maximum number of characters that are displayed.

endsWithPoints

Specifies if the truncated text ends with ellipsis.

Example: *oxy_getSomeText* Function

If an attribute value is very large, you can trim its content before it is displayed as static content:

```
*[longdesc]:before{
  content: oxy_getSomeText(attr(longdesc), 200);
}
```

Indexing: oxy_indexof() Function

This function is used to define searches.

The `oxy_indexof()` function has two signatures:

Syntax 1:

```
oxy_indexof ( text , toFind )
```

Returns the index within **text** string of the first occurrence of the **toFind** substring.

text

Text to search in.

toFind

The searched substring.

Syntax 2:

```
oxy_indexof ( text , toFind , fromOffset )
```

Returns the index within **text** string of the first occurrence of the **toFind** substring. The search starts from **fromOffset** index.

text

Text to search in.

toFind

The searched substring.

fromOffset

The index to start the search from.

Example: *oxy_indexof* Function

`oxy_indexof('abcd', 'bc')` returns 1.

`oxy_indexof('abcdbc', 'bc', 2)` returns 4.

If you only want to display part of an attribute value, for instance the part that comes before an **Appendix** string:

```
image[longdesc]{

 content: oxy_substring(attr(longdesc), 0,

          oxy_indexof(attr(longdesc), "Appendix"));

}
```

Label: oxy_label() Function

This function can be used in conjunction with the CSS `content` property to change the style of generated text.

The arguments of the function are *property name - property value* pairs. The following properties are supported:

- **text** - This property specifies the built-in form control you are using.
- **width** - Specifies the width of the content area using relative (`em`, `ex`), absolute (`in`, `cm`, `mm`, `pt`, `pc`, `px`), and percentage (followed by the `%` character) length units. The `width` property takes precedence over the `columns` property (if the two are used together).
- **color** - Specifies the foreground color of the form control. If the value of the `color` property is `inherit`, the form control has the same color as the element that was used to insert it.
- **background-color** - Specifies the background color of the form control. If the value of the `background-color` property is `inherit`, the form control has the same color as the element that was used to insert it.
- **styles** - Specifies styles for the form control. The values of this property are a set of CSS properties:
  - **font-weight**, **font-size**, **font-style**, **font**
  - **text-align**, **text-decoration**
  - **width**
  - **color**, **background-color**
  - **link** - For more information about this property, see the *link* property section *(on page 1753)*.

```
element{
    content: oxy_label(text, "Label Text", styles,
      "font-size:2em;color:red;link:attr(href);");
}
```

Instead of using the values of the `styles` property individually, you can define them in a CSS file as in the following example:

```
* {
    width: 40%;
    text-align:center;
}
```

Then refer that file with an `@import` directive, as follows:

```
elem {
  content: oxy_label(text, 'my_label', styles, "@import 'labels.css';")
}
```

CAUTION:
Extensive use of the `styles` property may lead to performance issues.

If the text from an `oxy_label()` function contains new lines, for example `oxy_label(text, 'LINE1\A LINE2', width, 100px)`, the text is split in two. Each of the two new lines has the specified width of 100 pixels.

Note:
The text is split after `\A`, which represents a new line character.

You can use the `oxy_label()` function together with a built-in form control *(on page 1777)* function to create a form control based layouts.

Example: *oxy_label* Function

An example of a use case is if you have multiple attributes on a single element and you want use form controls on separate lines and style them differently. Consider the following CSS rule:

```
person:before {
  content: "Name:*" oxy_textfield(edit, '@name', columns, 20)
    "\A Address:" oxy_textfield(edit, '@address', columns, 20)
}
```

Suppose you only want the **Name** label to be set to **bold**, while you want both labels aligned to look like a table (the first column with labels and the second with a text field). To achieve this, you can use the `oxy_label()` to style each label differently.

```
person:before {
 content: oxy_label(text, "Name:*", styles, "font-weight:bold;width:200px")
          oxy_textfield(edit, '@name', columns, 20) "\A "
          oxy_label(text, "Address:", styles, "width:200px")
          oxy_textfield(edit, '@address', columns, 20)
}
```

Tip:
A code template is available to make it easy to add the `oxy_label` function with the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_label` code template.

Last Occurrence: oxy_lastindexof() Function

This function is used to define last occurrence searches.

The `oxy_lastindexof()` function has two signatures:

Syntax 1:

```
oxy_lastindexof ( text , toFind )
```

Returns the index within **text** string of the rightmost occurrence of the **toFind** substring.

text

Text to search in.

toFind

The searched substring.

Syntax 2:

```
oxy_lastindexof ( text , toFind , fromOffset )
```

The search starts from **fromOffset** index. Returns the index within **text** string of the last occurrence of the **toFind** substring, searching backwards starting from the **fromOffset** index.

text

Text to search in.

toFind

The searched substring.

fromOffset

The index to start the search backwards from.

Example: *oxy_lastindexof* Function

`oxy_lastindexof('abcdbc', 'bc')` returns 4.

`oxy_lastindexof('abcdbccdbc', 'bc', 2)` returns 1.

If you only want to display part of an attribute value, for instance the part that comes before an **Appendix** string:

```
image[longdesc]{
 content: oxy_substring(attr(longdesc), 0,
          oxy_lastindexof(attr(longdesc), "Appendix"));
}
```

Link Text: oxy_link-text() Function

You can use this function on the CSS `content` property to obtain a text description from the source of a reference.

By default, the `oxy_link-text()` function resolves DITA and DocBook references. For further details about how you can also extend this functionality to other *frameworks (on page 2231)*, go to Configuring an Extensions Bundle *(on page 1635)*.

DITA Support

For DITA, the `oxy_link-text()` function resolves the `<xref>` element and the elements that have a `@keyref` attribute. The text description is the same as the one presented in the final output for those elements. If you

use this function for a `<topicref>` element that has the `@navtitle` and `@locktitle` attributes set, the function returns the value of the `@navtitle` attribute.

DocBook Support

For DocBook, the `oxy_link-text()` function resolves the `<xref>` element that defines a link in the same document. The text description is the same as the one presented in the final output for those elements.

Example: *oxy_link-text* Function

For the following XML and associated CSS fragments the `oxy_link-text()` function is resolved to the value of the `@xreflabel` attribute.

```
<para><code id="para.id" xreflabel="The reference label">my code</code>
      </para>
<para><xref linkend="para.id"/></para>
```

```
xref {
    content: oxy_link-text();
}
```

If the text from the target cannot be extracted (for instance, if the `@href` is not valid), you can use an optional argument to display fallback text.

```
*[class~="map/topicref"]:before{
    content: oxy_link-text("Cannot find the topic reference");
    link:attr(href);
}
```

Local Name: oxy_local-name() Function

This function evaluates the local name of the current node.

It does not have any arguments.

Example: *oxy_local-name* Function

To insert the local name as static text content before the element, use this CSS selector:

```
*:before{
  content: oxy_local-name() ": ";
}
```

Lowercase: oxy_lowercase() Function

This function transforms the text received as argument to lower case.

Syntax:

```
oxy_lowercase ( text )
```

text

The text to be lower cased.

Example: *oxy_lowercase* Function

To insert a lower-cased qualified name as static text content before the element, use this CSS selector:

```
*:before{
  content: oxy_lowercase(oxy_name()) ": ";
}
```

Name: oxy_name() Function

This function evaluates the qualified name of the current node.

It does not have any arguments.

Example: *oxy_name* Function

To insert a qualified name as static text content before the element, use this CSS selector:

```
*:before{
  content: oxy_name() ": ";
}
```

Parent URL: oxy_parent-url() Function

This function evaluates the parent URL of a URL received as string.

Syntax:

```
oxy_parent-url ( URL )
```

URL

The URL as string.

Replace: oxy_replace() Function

This function is used to replace a string of text.

The `oxy_replace()` function has two signatures:

Syntax 1:

```
oxy_replace ( text , target , replacement )
```

This function replaces each substring of the text that matches the literal target string with the specified literal replacement string.

text

The text in which the replace will occur.

target

The target string to be replaced.

replacement

The string replacement.

Example: Suppose that you have image references but you want to see other thumbnail images that reside in the same folder in the visual **Author** editing mode:

```
image[href]{
 content:oxy_url(oxy_base-uri(), oxy_replace(attr(href),
    '.jpeg', 'Thumbnail.jpeg'));
}
```

Syntax 2:

```
oxy_replace ( text , target , replacement , isRegExp )
```

This function replaces each substring of the text that matches the target string with the specified replacement string.

text

The text in which the replace will occur.

target

The target string to be replaced.

replacement

The string replacement.

isRegExp

If *true* the target and replacement arguments are considered regular expressions, if *false* they are considered literal strings.

Example: Suppose that you want to use a regular expression to replace all space sequences with an underscore:

```
image[title]{
 content:oxy_replace(attr(title), "\\s+", "_", true)
}
```

Substring of Text: oxy_substring() Function

This function is used to return a string of text.

The `oxy_substring()` function has two signatures:

Syntax 1:

```
oxy_substring ( text , startOffset )
```

Returns a new string that is a substring of the original **text** string. It begins with the character at the specified index and extends to the end of **text** string.

text

The original string.

startOffset

The beginning index, inclusive

Syntax 2:

```
substring ( text , startOffset , endOffset )
```

Returns a new string that is a substring of the original **text** string. The substring begins at the specified **startOffset** and extends to the character at index **endOffset** - 1.

text

The original string.

startOffset

The beginning index, inclusive.

endOffset

The ending index, exclusive.

Example: *oxy_substring* Function

`oxy_substring('abcd', 1)` returns the string `'bcd'`.

`oxy_substring('abcd', 4)` returns an empty string.

`oxy_substring('abcd', 1, 3)` returns the string `'bc'`.

If you only want to display part of an attribute value, for instance the part that comes before an **Appendix** string:

```
image[longdesc]{
 content: oxy_substring(attr(longdesc), 0,
          oxy_indexof(attr(longdesc), "Appendix"));
}
```

Unescape URL Value: oxy_unescapeURLValue(string) Function

This function returns the unescaped value of a URL-like string given as a parameter.

For example, if the value contains `%20` it will be converted to a simple space character.

Example: *oxy_unescapeURLValue* Function

`oxy_unescapeURLValue("http://www.example.com/a%20simple%20example.html")` returns the following value:

```
http://www.example.com/a simple example.html
```

Unparsed Entity URI: oxy_unparsed-entity-uri() Function

This function returns the URI value of an unparsed entity name.

Syntax:

```
oxy_unparsed-entity-uri ( unparsedEntityName )
```

unparsedEntityName

The name of an unparsed entity defined in the DTD.

This function can be useful to display images that are referenced with unparsed entity names.

Example: *oxy_unparsed-entity-uri* Function

CSS for displaying the image in Author for an *imagedata* with *entityref* to an unparsed entity:

```
imagedata[entityref]{
content: oxy_url(oxy_unparsed-entity-uri(attr(entityref)));
}
```

Uppercase: oxy_uppercase() Function

This function transforms the text received as argument to upper case.

Syntax:

```
oxy_uppercase ( text )
```

text

The text to be capitalized.

Example: *oxy_uppercase* Function

To insert the upper-cased qualified name as static text content before the element, use this CSS selector:

```
*:before{

  content: oxy_uppercase(oxy_name()) ": ";

}
```

URL: oxy_url() Function

This function extends the standard CSS `url()` function by allowing you to specify additional relative path components (parameters `loc_1` to `loc_n`).

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses all these parameters to construct an absolute location. Note that any of the parameters that are passed to the function can be either relative or absolute locations. These locations can be expressed as String objects, functions, or editor variables *(on page 199)* (built-in or custom).

Syntax:

```
oxy_url ( base_location , loc_1 , loc_2 )
```

base_location

String representing the base location. If not absolute, will be solved relative to the CSS file URL.

loc_1 ... loc_n (optional)

Strings representing relative location path components.

Examples: *oxy_url* Function

The following function receives String objects as input parameters:

```
oxy_url('http://www.oxygenxml.com/css/test.css', '../dir1/',

        'dir2/dir3/', '../../dir4/dir5/test.xml')
```

and returns:

```
'http://www.oxygenxml.com/dir1/dir4/dir5/test.xml'
```

The following function receives the result of the evaluation of two other functions as parameters (for instance, this is useful if you have image references and you want to see thumbnail images stored in the same folder):

```
image[href]{

 content:oxy_url(oxy_base-uri(), oxy_replace(attr(href),

    '.jpeg', 'Thumbnail.jpeg'));

}
```

The following function uses an editor variable *(on page 199)* as the first parameter to point to the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation location:

```
image[href] {

    content: oxy_url('${oxygenHome}', 'logo.png');

}
```

Related information

Editor Variables *(on page 199)*

XPath: oxy_xpath() Function

This function is used to evaluate XPath expressions.

Syntax:

```
oxy_xpath ( XPathExpression [, processChangeMarkers , value ] [, evaluate , value ])
```

It evaluates the given XPath 3.1 expression using the latest Saxon XSLT processor bundled with the application and returns the result. XPath expressions that depend on the cursor location can be successfully evaluated only when the cursor is located in the actual XML content.

The parameters of the function are as follows:

- A required `expression` parameter, which is the XPath expression to be evaluated.
- An optional `processChangeMarkers` parameter, followed by its value, which can be either `true` or `false` (default value). When you set the parameter to `true`, the function returns the resulting text with all the change markers accepted (*delete* changes are removed and *insert* changes are preserved).
- An optional `evaluate` parameter, followed by its value, which can be one of the following:
  - **dynamic** - Evaluates the XPath each time there is a change in the document. This is the default evaluation value.

    Important:
    If the edited XML document is large, using dynamic XPath evaluation may induce performance issues while editing the content.

  - **dynamic-once** - Separately evaluates the XPath for each node that matches the CSS selector. It will not re-evaluate the expression when changes are made to other nodes in the document. This will lead to improved performance, but the displayed content may not be updated to reflect the actual document content.
  - **static** - If the same XPath is evaluated on several nodes, the result for the first evaluation will be used for all other matches. Use this only if the XPath does not contain a relationship with the node on which the CSS property is evaluated. This will lead to improved performance, but the static displayed content may not be updated to reflect the actual document content.

When XPath expressions are evaluated, the entities and `<xi:include>` elements are replaced with the actual content that is referenced. For example, consider the following code snippet:

```
<article>
  <xi:include href="section1.xml" xmlns:xi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XInclude"/>
</article>
```

where `section1.xml` contains the following content:

```
<section>
  <p>Referenced content</p>
</section>
```

The XPath expression will be executed over the actual content in the `section1.xml` file.

Example: *oxy_xpath* Function

The following example counts the number of words from a paragraph (including *tracked changes (on page 2234)*) and displays the result in front of it:

```
para:before{
  content:
   concat("|Number of words:",
    oxy_xpath(
        "count(tokenize(normalize-space(string-join(text(), '')), ' '))",
        processChangeMarkers,
       true),
    "| ");
}
```

The `oxy_xpath()` function supports *editor variables (on page 199)*, as in the following example:

```
* {
    content:
    oxy_concat("Result: ",
        oxy_xpath('count(collection("${cfdu}/?select=*.xml"))')
    );
}
```

You can split the XPath expression on multiple lines by adding a backslash before each new line:

```
* {
    content: oxy_xpath('count(\
                    collection(\
                       "${cfdu}/?select=*.xml"))')
}
```

Form Controls

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a variety of built-in form controls that allow users to interact with documents with familiar user interface objects. These form controls are defined in CSS stylesheets that are used to render **Author** mode. For customization purposes, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also supports custom form controls in Java *(on page 1808)*.

How to Add a Built-in Form Control in Author Mode

Form controls can be added by defining them in the CSS associated with the XML document.

1. Create a custom CSS file.
2. Define the form control in the CSS using its dedicated CSS function. For example, to add a date picker form control *(on page 1793)*, its dedicated function is `oxy_datePicker`.
3. Associate the CSS file with the XML document in one of the following ways:
   - If you have a framework (document type) already created for this XML vocabulary, create a CSS in the framework directory and associate the CSS with the framework *(on page 1547)*. This approach is recommended if you intend on sharing the customization with others.
   - If you do not have a framework, you can associate the CSS to the XML document through a Processing Instruction *(on page 1710)*.

Resources

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Audio File Player Form Control

The `oxy_audio` built-in form control is used for providing a mechanism to play audio clips.

The `oxy_audio` form control supports the following properties:

- **href** - The absolute or relative location of a resource. This property is mandatory. Relative values are resolved relative to the CSS. If you have media resources relative to the XML document, you can specify their paths like this:

  ```
  oxy_audio(href, oxy_url(oxy_base-uri(), 'ex.mp3')), width, 400px)
  ```

- **width** - Specifies the width of the content area using relative (`em`, `ex`), absolute (`in`, `cm`, `mm`, `pt`, `pc`, `px`), and percentage (followed by the `%` character) length units.

Example: *oxy_audio* Form Control

```
object {

    content:

        oxy_audio(

            href, 'resources/audio.mp3',
```

```
            width, 200px),
}
```

Tip:

To insert a sample of the `oxy_audio` form control in a CSS file , invoke the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_audio` code template.

To see more detailed examples and more information about how form controls work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the sample files in the following directory: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/samples/form-controls`.

Resources

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Related information

Custom CSS Functions *(on page 1757)*

URL: oxy_url() Function *(on page 1774)*

Browser Form Control

The `oxy_browser` built-in form control is used for providing a mechanism to integrate HTML frames or interact with SVG documents directly in the **Author** mode editor. It can also be used to load HTML that executes JavaScript and from that JavaScript you can access the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin workspace.

The `oxy_browser` form control supports the following properties:

- **href** - The absolute or relative location of a resource. This property is mandatory. Relative values are resolved relative to the CSS. If you have media resources relative to the XML document, you can specify their paths like this:

  ```
  oxy_browser(href, oxy_url(oxy_base-uri(), 'ex.svg')), width, 50%, height, 50%)
  ```

- **width** - Specifies the width of the content area using relative (`em`, `ex`), absolute (`in`, `cm`, `mm`, `pt`, `pc`, `px`), and percentage (followed by the `%` character) length units.
- **height** - Specifies the height of the form control area using relative (`em`, `ex`), absolute (`in`, `cm`, `mm`, `pt`, `pc`, `px`), and percentage (followed by the `%` character) length units.

Example: *oxy_browser* Form Control

```
object {
  content:
    oxy_browser(
      href, 'http://example.page',
```

```
      width, 600px,
      height, 400px);
}
```

Tip:
To insert a sample of the `oxy_browser` form control in a CSS file , invoke the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_browser` code template.

To see more detailed examples and more information about how form controls work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the sample files in the following directory: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/samples/form-controls`.

Interacting with the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Workspace

The `oxy_browser` form control also provides the possibility of creating custom form control without having to use the Java-based API. You can use the `oxy_browser` form control to load HTML that executes JavaScript. In the JavaScript, you can use some predefined global variables that provide a gateway between the JavaScript and the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Java API. This allows you to perform changes in the document, open resources, and more, solely from the JavaScript.

Important:
This will only work if the loaded HTML is located inside a framework or plugin directory *(on page 83)*, such as: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/` or *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/plugins/`.

The following global variables can be used:

- **authorAccess** - This object is an instance of *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorAccess*.
- **contextElement** - An instance of ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorNode. The form control is added over this node.
- **pluginWorkspace** - An instance of ro.sync.exml.workspace.api.standalone.StandalonePluginWorkspace.
- **fcArguments** - A `java.util.Map` implementation with the properties (name and value pairs) passed on the form control function.

- **apiHelper** - A helper object for creating Java objects. It allows you to create Java objects from within the JavaScript code. These objects can then be passed to the Java methods as in the following example:

```
var newAttrValue = apiHelper.newInstance(
          "ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AttrValue",
          ["normalizedValue", "rawValue", true]);
authorAccess.getDocumentController().setAttribute(
       "counter", newAttrValue, contextElement);
...
```

You can also specify the constructor signature:

```
var newAttrValue = apiHelper.newInstance(
        "ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AttrValue
        (java.lang.String, java.lang.String, boolean)",
        ["normalizedValue", "rawValue", true]);
authorAccess.getDocumentController().setAttribute(
        "counter", newAttrValue, contextElement);
...
```

For more information, open the `form-controls.xml` file in the ***[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*/samples/form-controls** directory and go to section **11.1 - Interacting with the Oxygen Workspace**.

Warning:
On macOS, you need to use asynchronous calls to the API, due to the following JDK bug: https://bugs.openjdk.java.net/browse/JDK-8087465. By default, the API is called synchronously, but you can change this behavior for each API object by calling two methods: `sync()` and `async()`.

```
// By default, the methods are invoke synchronously.
var ctrl = authorAccess.getDocumentController();
try {
  // On Mac, methods that change the document must be executed asynchronously.
  ctrl.async();
  ctrl.setAttribute("counter", newAttrValue, contextElement);
} finally {
  ctrl.sync();
}
```

Listening for Changes in the Document

If the form control presents some information from the document (for example, the value of an attribute), then it needs to be notified on changes in the document so that it can update that information. To do this, follow these steps:

1. In the JavaScript, the `bridgeReady()` method is invoked as soon as the form control is loaded and the API bridge is installed. This is where you can add a listener:

```
function bridgeReady () {
  // We declare a member function for each method of the
  // ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorListener interface (same function signature)
  var handler = {
    attributeChanged : function(event) {
      var node = event.getOwnerAuthorNode();
      var attrName = event.getAttributeName();
```

```
      if (node.equals(contextElement) && attrName === "counter") {
        init();
      }
    },
    contentDeleted : function(event) {},
    contentInserted : function(event) {}
  };

  // We create a proxy over an ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorListener that will
  // delegate its methods to the JS object's functions.
  // We assign the listener to a global variable so that we can remove it later on,
  // on the dispose() method.
  authorDocumentListener = apiHelper.createProxyListener(
      "ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorListener", handler);

  var ctrl = authorAccess.getDocumentController();

  // Add the proxy listener.
  ctrl.addAuthorListener(authorDocumentListener);
}
```

2. Since a listener was added on the document, it is important to remove it once the form control is not used anymore. When a form control is discarded, the `dispose()` JavaScript function is invoked, so if you have any cleanup to do, make sure you define a function with this name and remove any previously created listeners in it.

```
/**
 * The form control will not be used anymore. Clean up.
 */
function dispose() {
  // Dispose all added listeners.
  var ctrl = authorAccess.getDocumentController();
  ctrl.removeAuthorListener(authorDocumentListener);
}
```

Debugging JavaScript Used for Custom Form Controls

If you encounter unexpected results when using the method described above *(on page 1779)*, you can debug the script by using the following guidelines:

- Calls to `alert("message.to.present")` or `console.log("message.to.present")` will be presented in the Results panel *(on page 310)*.
- You can install the **Firebug** extension by executing the following script:

```
{code:javascript}
function installFB() {
  if (!document.getElementById('FirebugLite')) {
    E = document['createElement' + 'NS'] && document.documentElement.namespaceURI;
    E = E ? document['createElement' + 'NS'](E, 'script')
          : document['createElement']('script');
    E['setAttribute']('id', 'FirebugLite');
    E['setAttribute']('src',
                      'https://getfirebug.com/' + 'firebug-lite.js' + '#startOpened');
    E['setAttribute']('FirebugLite', '4');
    (document['getElementsByTagName']('head')[0]
          || document['getElementsByTagName']('body')[0]).appendChild(E);
    E = new Image;
    E['setAttribute']('src', 'https://getfirebug.com/' + '#startOpened');
  }
}
{code}
```

Note:
To force the *Browser Form Control* to reload after making changes to the JavaScript file, you need to use the **Reload page** action from the form control's contextual menu.

Resources

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Related information
Custom CSS Functions *(on page 1757)*
URL: oxy_url() Function *(on page 1774)*

Button Form Control

The `oxy_button` built-in form control is used for graphical user interface objects that invoke a custom **Author** mode action (defined in the associated Document Type) referencing it by its ID, or directly in the CSS.

The `oxy_button` form control supports the following properties:

- **fontInherit** - This value specifies whether or not the form control inherits its font from its parent element. The values of this property can be `true` or `false` (default value). To make the form control inherit its font from its parent element, set the `fontInherit` property to `true`.
- **color** - Specifies the foreground color of the form control. If the value of the `color` property is `inherit`, the form control has the same color as the element that was used to insert it.
- **visible** - Specifies whether or not the form control is visible. The possible values of this property are `true` (default value) and `false`.
- **transparent** - Flattens the aspect of the button form control, removing its border and background. The values of this property can be `true` or `false` (default value).
- **showText** - Specifies if the action text should be displayed on the button form control. If this property is missing then the button displays the icon only if it is available, or the text if the icon is not available. The values of this property can be `true` or `false`.

```
element {
  content: oxy_button(actionID, 'remove.attribute', showText, true);
}
```

- **showIcon** - Specifies if the action icon should be displayed on the button form control. If this property is missing then the button displays the icon only if it is available, or the text if the icon is not available. The values of this property can be `true` or `false`.

```
element {
  content: oxy_button(actionID, 'remove.attribute', showIcon, true);
}
```

- **enableInReadOnlyContext** - To enable button form controls *(on page 1782)* or groups of buttons form controls *(on page 1785)*, this property needs to be set to `true`. This property can be used to specify areas as *read-only* (by setting the `-oxy-editable` property to `false`). This is useful when you want to use an action that does not modify the context.
- **hoverPseudoclassName** - Allows you to change the way an element is rendered when you hover over a form control. The value is the name of a CSS pseudo-class. When you hover over the form control, the specified pseudo-class will be set on the element that contains the form control.

```
p:before {
  content: oxy_button(hoverPseudoclassName, 'showBorder')
}
p:showBorder {
  border: 1px solid red;
}
```

- **actionContext** - Specifies the context that the action associated with the form control is executed. Its possible values are `element` (default value) and `caret`. If you select the `element` value, the context is the element that holds the form control. If you select the `caret` value, the action is invoked at the cursor location. If the cursor is not inside the element that holds the form control, the `element` value is selected automatically.

- **actionID** - The ID of the action, specified in the *document type association (on page 91)*, that is invoked when you click the button.

  > **Note:**
  > The element that contains the form control represents the context where the action is invoked.

- **action** - Defines an action directly, rather than using the `actionID` parameter to reference an action from the *document type association (on page 91)*. This property is defined using the *oxy_action* function *(on page 1758)*.

  > **Tip:**
  > You can also create a button form control directly from an *oxy_action* function *(on page 1759)*.

```
oxy_button(action, oxy_action(
          name, 'Insert',
          description, 'Insert an element after the current one',
          icon, url('insert.png'),
          operation, 'InsertFragmentOperation',
          arg-fragment, '<element>${caret}</element>',
          arg-insertLocation, '.',
          arg-insertPosition, 'After'
))
```

  > **Tip:**
  > To execute multiple actions sequentially, you can use the *oxy_compound_action* function *(on page 1762)*.

Example: *oxy_button* Form Control

```
button:before {
  content: "Label:"
     oxy_button(
         /* This action is declared in the document type
            associated with the XML document. */
         actionID, "insert.popupWithMultipleSelection");
}
```

> **Tip:**
> To insert a sample of the `oxy_button` form control in a CSS file , invoke the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_button` code template. Also, an `oxy_button_in_place_action` code template is available that inserts an `oxy_button` function that includes an `action` parameter.

To see more detailed examples and more information about how form controls work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the sample files in the following directory: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/samples/form-controls`.

Resources

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Related information

Custom CSS Functions *(on page 1757)*
Actions: oxy_action() Function *(on page 1758)*

Button Group Form Control

The `oxy_buttonGroup` built-in form control is used for a graphical user interface group of buttons that invokes one of several custom **Author** mode actions (defined in the associated Document Type) referencing it by its ID, or directly in the CSS.

The `oxy_buttonGroup` form control supports the following properties:

- **label** - Specifies the label to be displayed on the button. This label can be translated using the *${i18n()}* editor variable *(on page 207)*.
- **icon** - The path to the icon to be displayed on the button.
- **visible** - Specifies whether or not the form control is visible. The possible values of this property are `true` (default value) and `false`.
- **tooltip** - Specifies a tooltip to be displayed when you hover over the form control.
- **transparent** - Makes the button transparent without any borders or background colors. The values of this property can be `true` or `false`.
- **fontInherit** - This value specifies whether or not the form control inherits its font from its parent element. The values of this property can be `true` or `false` (default value). To make the form control inherit its font from its parent element, set the `fontInherit` property to `true`.
- **enableInReadOnlyContext** - To enable button form controls *(on page 1782)* or groups of buttons form controls *(on page 1785)*, this property needs to be set to `true`. This property can be used to specify areas as *read-only* (by setting the `-oxy-editable` property to `false`). This is useful when you want to use an action that does not modify the context.
- **hoverPseudoclassName** - Allows you to change the way an element is rendered when you hover over a form control. The value is the name of a CSS pseudo-class. When you hover over the form control, the specified pseudo-class will be set on the element that contains the form control.

```
p:before {

  content: oxy_buttonGroup(hoverPseudoclassName, 'showBorder')

}
```

```
p:showBorder {
  border: 1px solid red;
}
```

- **actionIDs** - The IDs of the actions that will be presented in the group of buttons.
- **actionID** - The ID of the action, specified in the *document type association (on page 91)*, that is invoked when you click the button.

> **Note:**
> The element that contains the form control represents the context where the action is invoked.

- **actions** - Defines a sequential list of actions directly, rather than using the `actionID` parameter to reference actions from the *document type association (on page 91)*. This property is defined using the *oxy_action_list* function *(on page 1759)*.

```
oxy_buttonGroup(
    label, 'A group of actions',
    icon, url('http://www.oxygenxml.com/img/icn_oxy20.png'),
    actions,
      oxy_action_list(
          oxy_action(
                name, 'Insert',
                description, 'Insert an element after the current one',
                operation, 'InsertFragmentOperation',
                arg-fragment, '<element></element>',
                arg-insertLocation, '.',
                arg-insertPosition, 'After'
          ),
          oxy_action(
                name, 'Delete',
                description, 'Deletes the current element',
                operation, 'DeleteElementOperation'
          )
      )
  )
```

> **Tip:**
> To execute multiple actions sequentially, you can use the *oxy_compound_action* function *(on page 1762)* in the `oxy_action_list` function *(on page 1759)*.
>
> ```
> p:before {
> content:
>   oxy_buttonGroup(
>    label, 'A group of actions',
> ```

```
    icon, url('http://www.oxygenxml.com/img/icn_oxy20.png'),
    actions,
      oxy_action_list(
            oxy_compound_action(
                  name, oxy_getActionName('framework.id', 'Fallback'),
                  description, 'Inserts a paragraph and uses form controls to edit its @audience attribute',
                  icon, url('http://www.oxygenxml.com/img/icn_oxy20.png'),
                  oxy_action(
                    name, 'Insert',
                    description, 'Insert an element after the current one',
                    operation, 'ro.sync.ecss.extensions.commons.operations.InsertFragmentOperation',
                    icon, url('insert.png'),
                    arg-fragment, "<p audience=''></p>",
                    arg-insertLocation, '.',
                    arg-insertPosition, 'After'
                  ),
                  oxy_action(
                    name, 'Activate edit mode',
                    description, 'Sets a pseudo class that will activate a CSS rule that will present a text
field form control for the @audience attribute',
                    operation, 'SetPseudoClassOperation',
                    arg-name, 'edit-mode-on',
                    arg-elementLocation , '.'
                  )
        ),
          oxy_action(
                name, 'Delete',
                description, 'Deletes the current element',
                operation, 'DeleteElementOperation'
          )
      )
  )
}
```

- **actionContext** - Specifies the context that the action associated with the form control is executed. Its possible values are `element` (default value) and `caret`. If you select the `element` value, the context is the element that holds the form control. If you select the `caret` value, the action is invoked at the cursor location. If the cursor is not inside the element that holds the form control, the `element` value is selected automatically.
- **actionStyle** - Specifies what to display for an action in the form control. The values of this property can be `text` (default value), `icon`, or `both`.

Example: *oxy_buttonGroup* Form Control

```
buttongroup:before {
  content:
    oxy_label(text, "Button Group:", width, 150px, text-align, left)
    oxy_buttonGroup(
       label, 'A group of actions',
       /* The action IDs are declared in the document type
          associated with the XML document. */
       actionIDs,
          "insert.popupWithMultipleSelection,insert.popupWithSingleSelection",
       actionStyle, "both");
}
```

Tip:
To insert a sample of the `oxy_buttonGroup` form control in a CSS file , invoke the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_buttonGroup` code template. Also, an `oxy_buttonGroup_in_place_action` code template is available that inserts an `oxy_buttonGroup` function that includes an `oxy_action_list` function.

To see more detailed examples and more information about how form controls work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the sample files in the following directory: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/samples/form-controls`.

Resources

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Related information

Custom CSS Functions *(on page 1757)*
Actions: oxy_action() Function *(on page 1758)*
Action Lists: oxy_action_list() Function *(on page 1759)*
Compound Actions: oxy_compound_action() Function *(on page 1762)*
Label: oxy_label() Function *(on page 1766)*

Checkbox Form Control

The `oxy_checkbox` built-in form control is used for a graphical user interface box that you can click to enable or disable an option. A single checkbox or multiple checkboxes can be used to present and edit the value on an attribute or element.

The `oxy_checkbox` form control supports the following properties:

- **edit** - Lets you edit the value of an attribute, the text content of an element, or Processing Instructions (PI). This property can have the following values:
  - **@attribute_name** - The name of the attribute whose value is being edited. If the attribute is in a namespace, the value of the property must be a *QName (on page 2233)* and the CSS must have a namespace declaration for the prefix.
  - **#text** - Specifies that the presented/edited value is the simple text value of an element.

    Note:
    You can set the value of the `visibility` property to `-oxy-collapse-text` *(on page 1748)* to render the text only in the form control that the `oxy_editor` function specifies.

- **resultSeparator** - If multiple check-boxes are used, the separator is used to compose the final result. If not specified, the *space* character is used.
- **tooltips** - Associates tooltips to each value in the `values` property. The value of this property is a list of tooltip messages separated by commas. If you want the tooltip to display a comma, use the `${comma}` variable *(on page 206)*.
- **visible** - Specifies whether or not the form control is visible. The possible values of this property are `true` (default value) and `false`.
- **values** - Specifies the values that are committed when the check-boxes are selected. If these values are not specified in the CSS, they are collected from the associated XML Schema.

  Note:
  Typically, when you use a comma in the values of a form control, the content that follows a comma is considered a new value. If you want to include a comma in the values, precede the comma with two backslashes. For example, `(values, '1\\, 2\\, 3, 4')` will display a form control that has **1, 2, 3** for the first value and **4** for the second value.

- **fontInherit** - This value specifies whether or not the form control inherits its font from its parent element. The values of this property can be `true` or `false` (default value). To make the form control inherit its font from its parent element, set the `fontInherit` property to `true`..
- **uncheckedValues** - Specifies the values that are committed when check-boxes are not selected.
- **labels** - This property must have the same number of items as the `values` property. Each item provides a literal description of the items listed in the `values` property. These labels can be translated using the *${i18n()}* editor variable *(on page 207)*.. If this property is not specified, the `values` property is used as the label.
- **columns** - Controls the layout of the form control. The check boxes will be grouped in a number of columns equal to the given value.
- **hoverPseudoclassName** - Allows you to change the way an element is rendered when you hover over a form control. The value is the name of a CSS pseudo-class. When you hover over the form control, the specified pseudo-class will be set on the element that contains the form control.

```
p:before {

  content: oxy_checkbox(hoverPseudoclassName, 'showBorder')
```

```
}
p:showBorder {
  border: 1px solid red;
}
```

Example: Single *oxy_checkbox* Form Control

```
checkBox[attribute]:before {
    content: "A check box editor that edits a two valued attribute (On/Off)
              The values are specified in the CSS:"
        oxy_checkbox(
        edit, "@attribute",
        values, "On",
        uncheckedValues, "Off",
        labels, "On/Off");
}
```

Example: Multiple *oxy_checkbox* Form Controls

```
multipleCheckBox[attribute]:before {
    content: "Multiple checkboxes editor that edits an attribute value.
              Depending whether the check-box is selected,
              a different value is committed:"
        oxy_checkbox(
        edit, "@attribute",
        values, "true, yes, on",
        uncheckedValues, "false, no, off",
        resultSeparator, ","
        labels, "Present, Working, Started");
}
```

Tip:

To insert a sample of the `oxy_checkbox` form control in a CSS file , invoke the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_checkbox` code template.

To see more detailed examples and more information about how form controls work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the sample files in the following directory: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/samples/form-controls`.

Resources

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Related information

Custom CSS Functions *(on page 1757)*

Collapse Text: -oxy-collapse-text Property Value *(on page 1748)*

Combo Box Form Control

The `oxy_combobox` built-in form control is used for providing a graphical user interface object that is a drop-down menu of proposed values. This form control can also be used for a combination of a drop-down menu and an editable single-line text field.

The `oxy_combobox` form control supports the following properties:

- **edit** - Lets you edit the value of an attribute, the text content of an element, or Processing Instructions (PI). This property can have the following values:
  - **@attribute_name** - The name of the attribute whose value is being edited. If the attribute is in a namespace, the value of the property must be a *QName (on page 2233)* and the CSS must have a namespace declaration for the prefix.
  - **#text** - Specifies that the presented/edited value is the simple text value of an element.

  Note:
  You can set the value of the `visibility` property to `-oxy-collapse-text` *(on page 1748)* to render the text only in the form control that the `oxy_editor` function specifies.
- **columns** - Controls the width of the form control. The unit size is the width of the **w** character.
- **width** - Specifies the width of the content area using relative (`em`, `ex`), absolute (`in`, `cm`, `mm`, `pt`, `pc`, `px`), and percentage (followed by the `%` character) length units. The `width` property takes precedence over the `columns` property (if the two are used together).
- **visible** - Specifies whether or not the form control is visible. The possible values of this property are `true` (default value) and `false`.
- **editable** - This property accepts the **true** and **false** values. In addition to a drop-down menu, the **true** value also generates an editable text field box that allows you to insert other values than the proposed ones. The **false** value generates a drop-down menu that only accepts the proposed values.
- **tooltips** - Associates tooltips to each value in the `values` property. The value of this property is a list of tooltip messages separated by commas. If you want the tooltip to display a comma, use the `${comma}` variable *(on page 206)*.
- **values** - Specifies the values that populate the list of proposals. If these values are not specified in the CSS, they are collected from the associated XML Schema..

  Note:
  Typically, when you use a comma in the values of a form control, the content that follows a comma is considered a new value. If you want to include a comma in the values, precede the

comma with two backslashes. For example, `(values, '1\\, 2\\, 3, 4')` will display a form control that has **1, 2, 3** for the first value and **4** for the second value.

- **fontInherit** - This value specifies whether or not the form control inherits its font from its parent element. The values of this property can be `true` or `false` (default value). To make the form control inherit its font from its parent element, set the `fontInherit` property to `true`.
- **labels** - This property must have the same number of items as the `values` property. Each item provides a literal description of the items listed in the `values` property. These labels can be translated using the *${i18n()}* editor variable *(on page 207)*.

  Note:
  This property is only available for read-only combo boxes (the `editable` property is set to `false`).

- **color** - Specifies the foreground color of the form control. If the value of the `color` property is `inherit`, the form control has the same color as the element that was used to insert it.
- **hoverPseudoclassName** - Allows you to change the way an element is rendered when you hover over a form control. The value is the name of a CSS pseudo-class. When you hover over the form control, the specified pseudo-class will be set on the element that contains the form control.

```
p:before {
  content: oxy_combobox(hoverPseudoclassName, 'showBorder')
}
p:showBorder {
  border: 1px solid red;
}
```

- **canRemoveValue** - If the value is set to `true` and the combo box is not editable, then a new `<Empty>` value is added in that combo box. This clears or removes the value being edited, depending on if it edits an element or attribute.
- **onChange** - Can be used to invoke an action when the value of the combo box changes. The action can be created in the CSS using the `oxy_action()` function *(on page 1758)* or referenced from the *framework (on page 2231)* by its ID. After the action is executed, the cursor remains in the combo box. Note that this property does not support actions defined by JavaScript code.
- **spell-check** - Set to **true** to enable automatic spell checking for text inside the component. The automatic spell checking also needs to be enabled in the application. The general configured spell checker language is used if an `@xml:lang` attribute is not specified explicitly on an ancestor element.

Example: *oxy_combobox* Form Control

This example uses a combo box form control to edit an attribute value. Each time the value changes, it triggers an action that inserts an element into the attribute's parent element.

```
comboBox:before {
    content: "A combo box that edits an attribute value.
```

```
                The possible values are provided from CSS:"

        oxy_combobox(

            edit, "@attribute",

            editable, false,

            values, "value1, value2, value3",

            labels, "Value no1, Value no2, Value no3",

            onChange, oxy_action(

                name, 'Insert',

                operation, 'XQueryUpdateOperation',

                arg-script, 'insert node <product>{xs:string(@attribute)}</product>

                          as last into .'));

}
```

Tip:

To insert a sample of the `oxy_combobox` form control in a CSS file , invoke the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_combobox` code template.

To see more detailed examples and more information about how form controls work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the sample files in the following directory: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/samples/form-controls`.

Resources

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Related information

Custom CSS Functions *(on page 1757)*

Actions: oxy_action() Function *(on page 1758)*

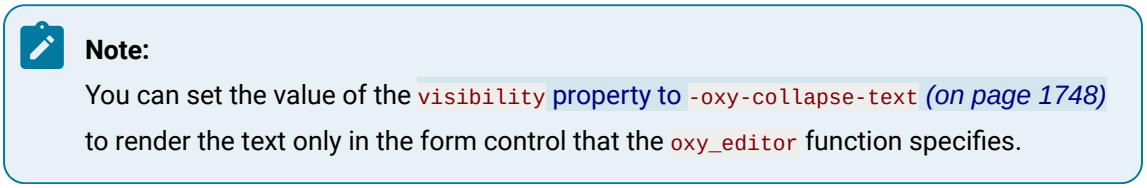
Collapse Text: -oxy-collapse-text Property Value *(on page 1748)*

Date Picker Form Control

The `oxy_datePicker` built-in form control is used for offering a text field with a calendar browser that allows the user to choose a certain date in a specified format.

The `oxy_datePicker` form control supports the following properties:

- **edit** - Lets you edit the value of an attribute, the text content of an element, or Processing Instructions (PI). This property can have the following values:
  - **@attribute_name** - The name of the attribute whose value is being edited. If the attribute is in a namespace, the value of the property must be a *QName (on page 2233)* and the CSS must have a namespace declaration for the prefix.
  - **#text** - Specifies that the presented/edited value is the simple text value of an element.

  
  Note:
  You can set the value of the `visibility` property to `-oxy-collapse-text` *(on page 1748)* to render the text only in the form control that the `oxy_editor` function specifies.

- **columns** - Controls the width of the form control. The unit size is the width of the **w** character.
- **width** - Specifies the width of the content area using relative (`em`, `ex`), absolute (`in`, `cm`, `mm`, `pt`, `pc`, `px`), and percentage (followed by the `%` character) length units. The `width` property takes precedence over the `columns` property (if the two are used together).
- **color** - Specifies the foreground color of the form control. If the value of the `color` property is `inherit`, the form control has the same color as the element that was used to insert it.
- **fontInherit** - This value specifies whether or not the form control inherits its font from its parent element. The values of this property can be `true` or `false` (default value). To make the form control inherit its font from its parent element, set the `fontInherit` property to `true`.
- **format** - This property specifies the format of the inserted date, if a specific format is not detected from the associated document schema. The pattern value must be a valid Java date (or date-time) format. If this property is missing, the format of the date is determined from the associated schema.
- **visible** - Specifies whether or not the form control is visible. The possible values of this property are `true` (default value) and `false`.
- **validateInput** - Specifies if the form control is validated. If you introduce a date that does not respect the format, the `datePicker` form control is rendered with a red foreground. By default, the input is validated. To disable the validation, set this property to `false`.
- **hoverPseudoclassName** - Allows you to change the way an element is rendered when you hover over a form control. The value is the name of a CSS pseudo-class. When you hover over the form control, the specified pseudo-class will be set on the element that contains the form control.

```
p:before {
  content: oxy_datePicker(edit, "@attribute", hoverPseudoclassName, 'showBorder')
}
p:showBorder {
  border: 1px solid red;
}
```

Example: *oxy_datePicker* Form Control

```
date {
    content:
        oxy_label(text, "Date time attribute with
```

```
                    format defined in CSS: ", width, 300px)

        oxy_datePicker(

            columns, 16,

            edit, "@attribute",

            format, "yyyy-MM-dd");

}
```

Tip:

To insert a sample of the `oxy_datePicker` form control in a CSS file , invoke the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_datePicker` code template.

To see more detailed examples and more information about how form controls work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the sample files in the following directory: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/samples/form-controls`.

Resources

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Related information

Custom CSS Functions *(on page 1757)*

Label: oxy_label() Function *(on page 1766)*

HTML Content Form Control

The `oxy_htmlContent` built-in form control is used for rendering HTML content. This HTML content is displayed as a graphical element shaped as a box. The shape of the box is determined by a given width and the height is computed based upon the length of the text.

The `oxy_htmlContent` form control supports the following properties:

- **href** - The absolute or relative location of a resource. The resource needs to be a well-formed HTML file.
- **id** - The unique identifier of an item. This is a `<div>` element that has a unique `@id` and is a child of the `<body>` element. The `<div>` element is the container of the HTML content to be rendered by the form control.
- **content** - An alternative to the `@href` and `@id` pair of elements. It provides the HTML content that will be displayed in the form control.
- **width** - Specifies the width of the content area using relative (`em`, `ex`), absolute (`in`, `cm`, `mm`, `pt`, `pc`, `px`), and percentage (followed by the `%` character) length units. The `width` property takes precedence over the `columns` property (if the two are used together).

- **hoverPseudoclassName** - Allows you to change the way an element is rendered when you hover over a form control. The value is the name of a CSS pseudo-class. When you hover over the form control, the specified pseudo-class will be set on the element that contains the form control.

```
p:before {
  content: oxy_htmlContent(hoverPseudoclassName, 'showBorder')
}
p:showBorder {
  border: 1px solid red;
}
```

You can customize the style of the content using CSS that is either referenced by the file identified by the `href` property or is defined inline. If you change the HTML content or CSS and you want your changes to be reflected in the XML that renders the form control, then you need to refresh the XML file. If the HTML does not have an associated style, then a default text and background color will be applied.

Example: *oxy_htmlContent* Form Control

In the following example, the form control collects the content from the `p_description` `<div>` element found in the `descriptions.html` file. The box is 400 pixels wide and is displayed before a paragraph identified by the `@intro_id` attribute value.

```
p#intro_id:before {
    content:
        oxy_htmlContent(
            href, "descriptions.html",
            id, "p_description",
            width, 400px);
}
```

An alternative example, using the `content` property:

```
p#intro_id:before {
    content:
        oxy_htmlContent(
            content, "<div style='font-weight:bold;'>My content</div>",
            width, 400px);
}
```

Note:
Anchor HTML elements are displayed but the links are inactive.

Tip:
To insert a sample of the `oxy_htmlContent` form control in a CSS file , invoke the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_htmlContent` code template.

To see more detailed examples and more information about how form controls work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the sample files in the following directory: `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/samples/form-controls`.

Resources

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Related information

Custom CSS Functions *(on page 1757)*

Pop-up Form Control

The `oxy_popup` built-in form control is used to offer a contextual menu that provides quick access to various actions. A pop-up form control can display single or multiple selections.

The `oxy_popup` form control supports the following properties:

- **color** - Specifies the foreground color of the form control. If the value of the `color` property is `inherit`, the form control has the same color as the element that was used to insert it.

  Note:
  This property is used for rendering in the **Author** mode.

- **columns** - Controls the width of the form control. The unit size is the width of the **w** character. This property is used for the visual representation of the form control.
- **edit** - Lets you edit the value of an attribute, the text content of an element, or Processing Instructions (PI). This property can have the following values:
  - **@attribute_name** - The name of the attribute whose value is being edited. If the attribute is in a namespace, the value of the property must be a *QName (on page 2233)* and the CSS must have a namespace declaration for the prefix.
  - **#text** - Specifies that the presented/edited value is the simple text value of an element.

    Note:
    You can set the value of the `visibility` property to `-oxy-collapse-text` *(on page 1748)* to render the text only in the form control that the `oxy_editor` function specifies.

- **editorSort** - Specifies the sorting of the values displayed after clicking the popup control (for example, clicking a drop-down arrow button). The possible values of this property are `ascending` and `descending`.

- **fontInherit** - This value specifies whether or not the form control inherits its font from its parent element. The values of this property can be `true` or `false` (default value). To make the form control inherit its font from its parent element, set the `fontInherit` property to `true`.
- **hoverPseudoclassName** - Allows you to change the way an element is rendered when you hover over a form control. The value is the name of a CSS pseudo-class. When you hover over the form control, the specified pseudo-class will be set on the element that contains the form control.

```
p:before {
  content: oxy_popup(hoverPseudoclassName, 'showBorder')
}
p:showBorder {
  border: 1px solid red;
}
```

- **labels** - Specifies the label associated with each entry used for presentation. If this property is not specified, the **values** property is used instead.
- **rendererSeparator** - Defines a separator used when multiple values are rendered. If not specified, the value of the `resultSeparator` property is used.
- **rendererSort** - Specifies the sorting of the values (labels) displayed on the form control before clicking the popup control. The possible values of this property are `ascending` and `descending`.
- **resultSeparator** - If multiple check-boxes are used, the separator is used to compose the final result. If not specified, the *space* character is used.

> **Note:**
> The value of the `resultSeparator` property cannot exceed one character.

- **rows** - This property specifies the number of rows that the form control presents.

> **Note:**
> If the value of the **rows** property is not specified, the default value of **12** is used.

- **selectionMode** - Specifies whether the form control allows the selection of a single value or multiple values. The predefined values of this property are `single` (default value) and `multiple`.
- **sort** - Specifies the default sorting of the form control values (the values displayed before and after clicking the popup control). However, the `editorSort` and `rendererSort` properties have a higher priority. The possible values of this property are `ascending` and `descending`.
- **tooltip** - Specifies a tooltip to be displayed when you hover over the form control.
- **tooltips** - Associates tooltips to each value in the `values` property. The value of this property is a list of tooltip messages separated by commas. If you want the tooltip to display a comma, use the `${comma}` variable *(on page 206)*.

  Example:

```
link:before{
 content: oxy_popup(
         edit, '@href',
         values, "Spring, Summer, Autumn, Winter",
         tooltips, "Iris${comma}Snowdrop, Gardenia${comma}Liliac,
             Chrysanthemum${comma}Salvia, Gerbera",
        selectionMode, single);
}
```

- **values** - Specifies the values that populate the list of proposals. If these values are not specified in the CSS, they are collected from the associated XML Schema.

Note:
Typically, when you use a comma in the values of a form control, the content that follows a comma is considered a new value. If you want to include a comma in the values, precede the comma with two backslashes. For example, `(values, '1\\, 2\\, 3, 4')` will display a form control that has **1, 2, 3** for the first value and **4** for the second value.

- **visible** - Specifies whether or not the form control is visible. The possible values of this property are `true` (default value) and `false`.
- **width** - Specifies the width of the content area using relative (`em`, `ex`), absolute (`in`, `cm`, `mm`, `pt`, `pc`, `px`), and percentage (followed by the `%` character) length units. The `width` property takes precedence over the `columns` property (if the two are used together).

Example: *oxy_popup* Form Control

```
popupWithMultipleSelection:before {
    content: " This editor edits an attribute value.
                The possible values are specified
    inside the CSS: "
        oxy_popup(
            edit, "@attribute",
            values, "value1, value2, value3, value4, value5",
            labels, "Value no1, Value no2, Value no3, Value no4, Value no5",
            resultSeparator, "|",
            columns, 10,
            selectionMode, "multiple",
            color, "blue",
            fontInherit, true);
    font-size:30px;
}
```

Tip:
To insert a sample of the `oxy_popup` form control in a CSS file , invoke the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_popup` code template.

To see more detailed examples and more information about how form controls work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the sample files in the following directory: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/samples/form-controls`.

Resources

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Related information
Custom CSS Functions *(on page 1757)*
Collapse Text: -oxy-collapse-text Property Value *(on page 1748)*

Text Area Form Control

The `oxy_textArea` built-in form control is used for entering multiple lines of text in a graphical user interface box. A text area may include optional syntax highlight capabilities to present the form control.

The `oxy_textArea` form control supports the following properties:

- **edit** - Lets you edit the value of an attribute, the text content of an element, or Processing Instructions (PI). This property can have the following values:
  - **@attribute_name** - The name of the attribute whose value is being edited. If the attribute is in a namespace, the value of the property must be a *QName (on page 2233)* and the CSS must have a namespace declaration for the prefix.
  - **#text** - Specifies that the presented/edited value is the simple text value of an element.

    Note:
    You can set the value of the `visibility` property to `-oxy-collapse-text` *(on page 1748)* to render the text only in the form control that the `oxy_editor` function specifies.

  - **#content** - This parameter is useful when an element has mixed or element-only content and you want to edit its content inside a text area form control.

    For example, if you have the following XML content:

    ```
    <codeblock outputclass="language-xml">START_TEXT<ph>phase</ph>
              <apiname><text>API</text></apiname></codeblock>
    ```

    and your CSS includes the following snippet:

```
codeblock:before{
content:
    oxy_textArea(
      edit, '#content',
      contentType, 'text/xml');
}
```

then the text area form control will edit the following fragment:

```
START_TEXT<ph>phase</ph><apiname><text>API</text></apiname>
```

Note:
When the value of the `edit` property is `#content`, the text area form control will also offer content completion proposals

- **columns** - Controls the width of the form control. The unit size is the width of the **w** character.
- **width** - Specifies the width of the content area using relative (`em`, `ex`), absolute (`in`, `cm`, `mm`, `pt`, `pc`, `px`), and percentage (followed by the `%` character) length units. The `width` property takes precedence over the `columns` property (if the two are used together).
- **fontInherit** - This value specifies whether or not the form control inherits its font from its parent element. The values of this property can be `true` or `false` (default value). To make the form control inherit its font from its parent element, set the `fontInherit` property to `true`.
- **visible** - Specifies whether or not the form control is visible. The possible values of this property are `true` (default value) and `false`.
- **rows** - This property specifies the number of rows that the form control presents. If the form control has more lines, you can scroll and see them all.
- **contentType** - Specifies the type of content that the form control will format with syntax highlighting. The following values are supported: `text/batch; text/c; text/cc; text/css; text/dtd; text/html; text/java; text/javascript; text/json; text/markdown; text/nvdl; text/perl; text/plain; text/php; text/properties; text/python; text/rnc; text/rng; text/sch; text/shell; text/sql; text/wsdl; text/xml; text/xpath; text/xproc; text/xquery; text/xsd; text/xsl; text/yaml.`
- **indentOnTab** - Specifies the behavior of the **Tab** key. If the value of this property is set to `true` (default value), the **Tab** key inserts characters. If it is set to `false`, **Tab** is used for navigation, jumping to the next editable position in the document.
- **white-space** - CSS property that influences the value that you edit, as well as the form control size:
  - **pre** - The whitespaces and new lines of the value are preserved and edited. If the `rows` and `columns` properties are not specifies, the form control calculates its size on its own so that all the text is visible.
  - **pre-wrap** - The long lines are wrapped to avoid horizontal scrolling.

> **Note:**
> The `rows` and `columns` properties must be specified. If these are not specified, the form control considers the value to be `pre`.

    - **normal** - The white spaces and new lines are normalized.
- **hoverPseudoclassName** - Allows you to change the way an element is rendered when you hover over a form control. The value is the name of a CSS pseudo-class. When you hover over the form control, the specified pseudo-class will be set on the element that contains the form control.

```
p:before {
  content: oxy_textArea(hoverPseudoclassName, 'showBorder')
}
p:showBorder {
  border: 1px solid red;
}
```

- **spell-check** - Set to **true** to enable automatic spell checking for text inside the component. The automatic spell checking also needs to be enabled in the application. The general configured spell checker language is used if an `@xml:lang` attribute is not specified explicitly on an ancestor element.

Example: *oxy_textArea* Form Control

The following example presents a text area with CSS syntax highlighting that calculates its own dimension, and a second one with XML syntax highlighting with defined dimension.

```
textArea {
    visibility: -oxy-collapse-text;
    white-space: pre;
}


textArea[language="CSS"]:before {
    content: oxy_textArea(
      edit, '#text',
      contentType, 'text/css');
}


textArea[language="XML"]:before {
    content: oxy_textArea(
      edit, '#text',
      contentType, 'text/xml',
      rows, 10,
      columns, 30);
}
```

Tip:
To insert a sample of the `oxy_textArea` form control in a CSS file , invoke the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_textArea` code template.

To see more detailed examples and more information about how form controls work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the sample files in the following directory: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/samples/form-controls`.

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Related information
Custom CSS Functions *(on page 1757)*
Collapse Text: -oxy-collapse-text Property Value *(on page 1748)*

Text Field Form Control

The `oxy_textfield` built-in form control is used for entering a single line of text in a graphical user interface box. A text field may include optional content completion capabilities, used to present and edit the value of an attribute or an element.

The `oxy_textfield` form control supports the following properties:

- **edit** - Lets you edit the value of an attribute, the text content of an element, or Processing Instructions (PI). This property can have the following values:
  - **@attribute_name** - The name of the attribute whose value is being edited. If the attribute is in a namespace, the value of the property must be a *QName (on page 2233)* and the CSS must have a namespace declaration for the prefix.
  - **#text** - Specifies that the presented/edited value is the simple text value of an element.

    Note:
    You can set the value of the `visibility` property to `-oxy-collapse-text` *(on page 1748)* to render the text only in the form control that the `oxy_editor` function specifies.
- **columns** - Controls the width of the form control. The unit size is the width of the **w** character.
- **width** - Specifies the width of the content area using relative (`em`, `ex`), absolute (`in`, `cm`, `mm`, `pt`, `pc`, `px`), and percentage (followed by the `%` character) length units. The `width` property takes precedence over the `columns` property (if the two are used together).
- **fontInherit** - This value specifies whether or not the form control inherits its font from its parent element. The values of this property can be `true` or `false` (default value). To make the form control inherit its font from its parent element, set the `fontInherit` property to `true`.
- **visible** - Specifies whether or not the form control is visible. The possible values of this property are `true` (default value) and `false`.

- **values** - Specifies the values that populate the list of proposals. If these values are not specified in the CSS, they are collected from the associated XML Schema.
- **tooltips** - Associates tooltips to each value in the `values` property. The value of this property is a list of tooltip messages separated by commas. If you want the tooltip to display a comma, use the `${comma}` variable *(on page 206)*.
- **tooltip** - Specifies a tooltip to be displayed when you hover over the form control.
- **color** - Specifies the foreground color of the form control. If the value of the `color` property is `inherit`, the form control has the same color as the element that was used to insert it.
- **hasMultipleValues** - Specifies if the text field allows multiple values separated by spaces or just a single value.

  Note:
  If the value is `false`, the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* considers the entire text as the prefix for its proposals. If the value is `true` (the default value), the space is the delimiter for the values and thus it is not included in the prefix (the prefix will be whatever comes after the space).

  For example, suppose the possible values for your text field are: `value a`, `value b`, and `other values`. If the `hasMultipleValues` property is set to `true` and the user enters `"value "` (notice the space character after 'value') in the text field, the *Content Completion Assistant* will suggest all three values because the prefix is whatever comes after the space, and in this case the user did not enter anything after the space. If the `hasMultipleValues` property was set to `false`, the *Content Completion Assistant* would only suggest `value a` and `value b` because the space is considered part of the prefix.

- **hoverPseudoclassName** - Allows you to change the way an element is rendered when you hover over a form control. The value is the name of a CSS pseudo-class. When you hover over the form control, the specified pseudo-class will be set on the element that contains the form control.

```
p:before {
  content: oxy_textfield(hoverPseudoclassName, 'showBorder')
}
p:showBorder {
  border: 1px solid red;
}
```

- **spell-check** - Set to **true** to enable automatic spell checking for text inside the component. The automatic spell checking also needs to be enabled in the application. The general configured spell checker language is used if an `@xml:lang` attribute is not specified explicitly on an ancestor element.

Example: *oxy_textfield* Form Control

```
element {
    content: "Label: "
        oxy_textfield(
```

```
            edit, "@my_attr",
            values, "value1, value2",
            color, "red",
            columns, 40);
}
```

Tip:
To insert a sample of the `oxy_textfield` form control in a CSS file , invoke the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_textfield` code template.

To see more detailed examples and more information about how form controls work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the sample files in the following directory: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/samples/form-controls`.

Resources

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Related information
Custom CSS Functions *(on page 1757)*
Collapse Text: -oxy-collapse-text Property Value *(on page 1748)*

URL Chooser Form Control

The `oxy_urlChooser` built-in form control is used for a dialog box that allows you to select the location of local or remote resources. The inserted reference is made relative to the URL of the currently open editor.

The `oxy_urlChooser` editor supports the following properties:

- **edit** - Lets you edit the value of an attribute, the text content of an element, or Processing Instructions (PI). This property can have the following values:
  - **@attribute_name** - The name of the attribute whose value is being edited. If the attribute is in a namespace, the value of the property must be a *QName (on page 2233)* and the CSS must have a namespace declaration for the prefix.
  - **#text** - Specifies that the presented/edited value is the simple text value of an element.

    Note:
    You can set the value of the `visibility` property to `-oxy-collapse-text` *(on page 1748)* to render the text only in the form control that the `oxy_editor` function specifies.
- **columns** - Controls the width of the form control. The unit size is the width of the **w** character.

- **width** - Specifies the width of the content area using relative (`em`, `ex`), absolute (`in`, `cm`, `mm`, `pt`, `pc`, `px`), and percentage (followed by the `%` character) length units. The `width` property takes precedence over the `columns` property (if the two are used together).
- **color** - Specifies the foreground color of the form control. If the value of the `color` property is `inherit`, the form control has the same color as the element that was used to insert it.
- **visible** - Specifies whether or not the form control is visible. The possible values of this property are `true` (default value) and `false`.
- **fontInherit** - This value specifies whether or not the form control inherits its font from its parent element. The values of this property can be `true` or `false` (default value). To make the form control inherit its font from its parent element, set the `fontInherit` property to `true`.
- **fileFilter** - string value that holds comma-separated file extensions. The URL chooser uses these extensions to filter the displayed files. A value such as `"jpg,png,gif"` is mapped to three filters that will display all `jpg`, `png`, and `gif` files respectively.
- **hoverPseudoclassName** - Allows you to change the way an element is rendered when you hover over a form control. The value is the name of a CSS pseudo-class. When you hover over the form control, the specified pseudo-class will be set on the element that contains the form control.

```
p:before {
  content: oxy_urlChooser(hoverPseudoclassName, 'showBorder')
}
p:showBorder {
  border: 1px solid red;
}
```

Example: *oxy_urlChooser* Form Control

```
urlChooser[file]:before {
    content: "A URL chooser editor that allows browsing for a URL.
          The selected URL is made relative to the currently edited file:"
        oxy_urlChooser(
        edit, "@file",
        columns 25);
}
```

Tip:
To insert a sample of the `oxy_urlChooser` form control in a CSS file , invoke the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_urlChooser` code template.

To see more detailed examples and more information about how form controls work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the sample files in the following directory: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/samples/form-controls`.

Resources

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Related information

Custom CSS Functions *(on page 1757)*
Collapse Text: -oxy-collapse-text Property Value *(on page 1748)*

Video Player Form Control

The `oxy_video` built-in form control is used for providing a mechanism to play videos.

The `oxy_video` form control supports the following properties:

- **href** - The absolute or relative location of a resource. This property is mandatory. Relative values are resolved relative to the CSS. If you have media resources relative to the XML document, you can specify their paths like this:

  ```
  oxy_video(href, oxy_url(oxy_base-uri(), 'ex.mp4')), width, 400px, height, 300px)
  ```

- **width** - Specifies the width of the content area using relative (`em`, `ex`), absolute (`in`, `cm`, `mm`, `pt`, `pc`, `px`), and percentage (followed by the `%` character) length units.
- **height** - Specifies the height of the form control area using relative (`em`, `ex`), absolute (`in`, `cm`, `mm`, `pt`, `pc`, `px`), and percentage (followed by the `%` character) length units.

Example: *oxy_video* Form Control

```
object {
    content:
        oxy_video(
            href, 'resources/video.mp4',
            width, 400px,
            height, 300px),
}
```

Tip:
To insert a sample of the `oxy_video` form control in a CSS file , invoke the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* by pressing **Ctrl + Space** and select the `oxy_video` code template.

To see more detailed examples and more information about how form controls work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the sample files in the following directory: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/samples/form-controls`.

Resources

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Related information

Custom CSS Functions *(on page 1757)*
URL: oxy_url() Function *(on page 1774)*

Implementing Custom Form Controls

If the built-in form controls are not sufficient for your needs, you can implement custom form controls in Java.

Custom Form Controls Implementation

You can specify custom form controls using the following properties:

- **rendererClassName** - The name of the class that draws the edited value. It must be an implementation of *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.editor.InplaceRenderer*. The renderer has to be a **SWING** implementation and can be used both in the standalone and Eclipse distributions.
- **swingEditorClassName** - You can use this property for the standalone (**Swing**-based) distribution to specify the name of the class used for editing. It is a **Swing** implementation of *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.editor.InplaceEditor*.
- **swtEditorClassName** - You can use this property for the Eclipse plugin distribution to specify the name of the class used for editing. It is a **SWT** implementation of the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.editor.InplaceEditor*.

  Note:
  If the custom form control is intended to work in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin standalone distribution, the declaration of **swtEditorClassName** is not required. The **renderer** (the class that draws the value) has different properties from the **editor** (the class that edits the value) because you can present a value in one way and edit it in another.

- **classpath** - You can use this property to specify the location of the classes used for a custom form control. The value of the **classpath** property is an enumeration of URLs separated by comma.
- **edit** - If your form control edits the value of an attribute or the text value of an element, you can use the `@attribute_name` and `#text` predefined values and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will perform the commit logic by itself. You can use the `custom` value to perform the commit logic yourself.
- **ecHeavyFormControlClassName** - This type of form control is effectively present at all times at its allocated bounds. This is useful if you need a form control that renders dynamic or interactive SVG documents (for example, if you have an SVG document that displays tooltips when hovering over certain areas).

The value of this property is a class name that must implement the *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.editor.InplaceHeavyEditor* method. The *JAR (on page 2231)* that contains this implementation can either be added in the **Classpath** tab in the **Document Type Configuration** dialog box *(on page 88)* for your particular *framework (on page 2231)* or specified with the `classpath` property *(on page 1808)*.

Example: Java Code

The SDK contains a sample of a `SimpleURLChooserEditor` form control implementation.

The custom form controls can use any of the predefined properties of the built-in form controls *(on page 1777)*, as well as specified custom properties.

Example: CSS

The following is an example of how to specify a custom form control in the CSS:

```
myElement {
    content: oxy_editor(
        rendererClassName, "com.custom.editors.CustomRenderer",
        swingEditorClassName, "com.custom.editors.SwingCustomEditor",
        swtEditorClassName, "com.custom.editors.SwtCustomEditor",
        edit, "@my_attr",
        customProperty1, "customValue1",
        customProperty2, "customValue2"
    )
}
```

How to Implement Custom Form Controls

To implement a custom form control, follow these steps:

1. Download the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin SDK at: https://www.oxygenxml.com/oxygen_sdk.html.
2. Implement the custom form control by extending *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.editor.InplaceEditorRendererAdapter*. You could also use *ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.editor.AbstractInplaceEditor*, which offers some default implementations and listeners management.
3. Pack the previous implementation in a Java *JAR (on page 2231)* library.
4. Copy the *JAR* library to the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/frameworks/[FRAMEWORK_DIR]* directory.
5. In Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Document Type Association**, edit the appropriate *framework*, and add the *JAR* library in the **Classpath** tab.
6. Specify the custom form control in your CSS, as described above.

Tip:
To see more detailed examples and more information about how form controls work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see the sample files in the following directory: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/samples/form-controls`.

Resources

For more information about form controls, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/-WY3wzkMSLM

Editing Processing Instructions Using a Form Control

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to edit *processing instructions*, *comments*, and *CDATA* by using CSS extensions.

Note:
You can edit both the content and the attribute value from a *processing instruction*.

Example: Editing an Attribute from a Processing Instruction

PI content:

```
<?pi_target attr="val"?>
```

CSS:

```
@namespace oxy "http://www.oxygenxml.com/extensions/author";


oxy|processing-instruction:before {
    display:inline;
    content:
        "EDIT attribute: " oxy_textfield(edit, '@attr', columns, 15);
    visibility:visible;
}
oxy|processing-instruction{
    visibility:-oxy-collapse-text;
}
```

Related information

Text Field Form Control *(on page 1803)*
Collapse Text: -oxy-collapse-text Property Value *(on page 1748)*
Displaying Processing Instructions from Other XML Editors *(on page 1712)*

Custom CSS Pseudo-classes

You can set your custom CSS pseudo-classes on the nodes from the *AuthorDocument* model. These are similar to the normal XML attributes, with the important difference that they are not serialized, and by changing them, the document does not create undo and redo edits (the document is considered unmodified). You can use custom pseudo-classes for changing the style of an element (and its children) without altering the document.

In Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin they are used to hide/show the `colspec` elements from CALS tables. To take a look at the implementation, see:

1. *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`/frameworks/docbook/css/cals_table.css` (Search for `-oxy-visible-colspecs`)
2. The definition of action `table.toggle.colspec` from the DocBook *framework (on page 2231)* makes use of the pre-defined *TogglePseudoClassOperation* **Author** mode operation.

Here are some examples:

Example: Controlling the visibility of a section using a pseudo-class

You can use a non standard (custom) pseudo-class to impose a style change on a specific element. For instance, you can have CSS styles matching the custom pseudo-class `access-control-user`, like the one below:

```
section {
  display:none;
}

section:access-control-user {
  display:block;
}
```

By setting the pseudo-class `access-control-user`, the element section will become visible by matching the second CSS selector.

Example: Coloring the elements at the current cursor location

You could create an *AuthorCaretListener* that sets the `caret-visited` pseudo-class to the element at the cursor location. The effect will be that all the elements traversed by the cursor become red.

```
*:caret-visited {
  color:red;
}
```

The API that you can use from the *CaretListener*:

ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorDocumentController#setPseudoClass(java.lang.String, ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement)

ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.AuthorDocumentController#removePseudoClass(java.lang.String, ro.sync.ecss.extensions.api.node.AuthorElement)

Predefined Pseudo-Class Author Mode Operations

Pre-defined **Author** mode operations can be used directly in your *framework* to work with custom pseudo-classes:

1. *TogglePseudoClassOperation*
2. *SetPseudoClassOperation*
3. *RemovePseudoClassOperation*

Using the :before(n) and :after(n) CSS Pseudo-Elements

Although not standard, this extension may be useful if you want to style sections by adding multiple levels of static content. To add static content to an element, you would normally use a `:before` or `:after` pseudo-element.

This example adds static text before the title ("Chapter 1", "Chapter 2", etc.):

```
h1:before {
  content: "Chapter " counter(chapter) ".";
  color: blue;
}
```

All of this is styled with the same color (blue in this example). Using standard CSS, it is impossible to style specific aspects of it (for example, just the chapter number with a larger font and with red). However, you can do it using multiple `before(n)` or `after(n)` pseudo-elements:

```
h1:before(3) {
  content: "Chapter ";
  color: blue;
}
h1:before(2) {
  content: counter(chapter);
  color: red;
  font-size: large;
}
h1:before(1) {
  content: ".";
  color: blue;
}
```

Notes:

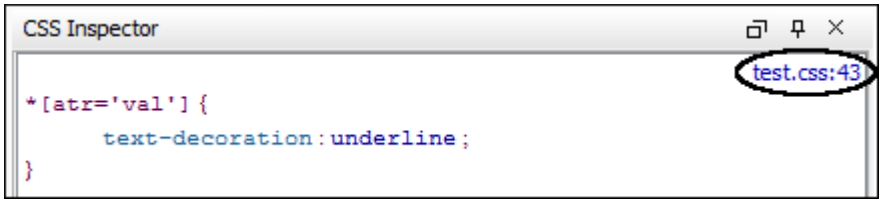
- The bigger the level, the more distant the pseudo-element is.
- Level 1 corresponds to normal `:before` or `:after` pseudo-elements.

Debugging CSS Stylesheets

To assist you with debugging and customizing CSS stylesheets the **Author** mode includes a **CSS Inspector** view *(on page 391)* to examine the CSS rules that match the currently selected element.

This tool is similar to the Inspect Element development tool that is found in most browsers. The **CSS Inspector** view allows you to see how the CSS rules are applied and the properties defined. Each rule that is displayed in this view includes a link to the line in the CSS file that defines the styles for the element that matches the rule. You can use the link to open the appropriate CSS file and edit the style rules. Once you have found the rule you want to edit, you can click the link in the top-right corner of that rule to open the CSS file in the editor.

Figure 316. CSS Inspector View



There are two ways to open the CSS Inspector view:

1. Select **CSS Inspector** from the **Window > Show View** menu.
2. Select the **Inspect Styles** action from the contextual menu in **Author** mode.

Related Information:

CSS Inspector View *(on page 391)*

17.

Extension Points for the Oxygen Eclipse Plugin

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a number of *extension (on page 2232)* points, which can be implemented by other Eclipse *plugins (on page 2232)* that depend on it. All of them are listed in the `plugin.xml` file, along with samples of usage code. The following is a list with short descriptions for some of the most useful extension points:

Extension point: *ditaKeyDefinitionManager*

It can be used to provide an external keys manager, responsible of providing DITA keys that are then used for editing and resolving referenced content. Its `EXSD` schema can be found in: `OXYGEN_PLUGIN_DIR/exsd-schema/ditaKeyDefinitionManager.exsd`.

Extension point: *actionBarContributorCustomizer*

A very useful extension point that can add or remove actions from various menus, contextual menus, and toolbars that are contributed by the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. Its `EXSD` schema can be found in: `OXYGEN_PLUGIN_DIR/exsd-schema/actionBarContributorCustomizer.exsd`.

Extension point: *customEditorInputCreator*

Use this extension point to create your custom editor input for a certain resource that will be opened by the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin when clicking links. Its `EXSD` schema can be found in: `OXYGEN_PLUGIN_DIR/exsd-schema/customEditorInputCreator.exsd`.

Extension point: *editorAdapterContributor*

When an adapter is requested to the open XML editor you can provide your custom adapter from your external *plugin*. Its `EXSD` schema can be found in: `OXYGEN_PLUGIN_DIR/exsd-schema/editorAdapterContributor.exsd`.

Extension point: *extensionsBundleContributor*

Use this extension point to provide your own *ExtensionsBundle* implementation for a certain open XML resource. Its `EXSD` schema can be found in: `OXYGEN_PLUGIN_DIR/exsd-schema/extensionsBundleContributor.exsd`.

Extension point: *stylesFilterContributor*

Use this extension point to provide your own *StylesFilter* implementation for special visual rendering when an XML resource is opened in the **Author** editing mode. Its `EXSD` schema can be found in: `OXYGEN_PLUGIN_DIR/exsd-schema/stylesFilterContributor.exsd`.

Extension point: *XMLRefactoringContributor*

Contributes a folder that contains the additional XML Refactoring operation descriptor files and XQuery scripts that can be used by the batch XML refactoring actions. Its EXSD schema can be found in: `OXYGEN_PLUGIN_DIR/exsd-schema/xmlRefactoringContributor.exsd`.

Extension point: *workspaceAccessPlugin*

Use this extension point to be notified when Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has started.
Its EXSD schema can be found in: `OXYGEN_PLUGIN_DIR/exsd-schema/exsd-schema/workspaceAccessExtension.exsd`.

Extension point: *AuthorStylesheet*

Use this extension point to provide a stylesheet layer that will be used when rendering any XML document in **Author** mode. Its EXSD schema can be found in: `OXYGEN_PLUGIN_DIR/exsd-schema/authorStylesheetContributor.exsd`.

How to Use a Custom View with the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Distribution

Question

Is it possible to create a custom view in Eclipse that can insert certain XML fragments in the documents opened with the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin?

Answer

Here you can find more information about the Eclipse part of the *Oxygen SDK*:

https://www.oxygenxml.com/oxygen_sdk.html#oXygen_Eclipse_plugin

Use the provided Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin sample project as a starting point.
From any custom view/component you can have singleton access to the using the `ro.sync.exml.workspace.api.PluginWorkspaceProvider.getPluginWorkspace()` API.

The Java code for inserting a certain XML fragment in the currently open editor (either in the **Text** or **Author** editing modes) would look like this:

```
    WSEditor currentEditorAccess = PluginWorkspaceProvider.getPluginWorkspace().
getCurrentEditorAccess(PluginWorkspace.MAIN_EDITING_AREA);
    if(currentEditorAccess.getCurrentPage() instanceof WSXMLTextEditorPage) {
      //Editor opened in Text page
      WSXMLTextEditorPage tp =
(WSXMLTextEditorPage) currentEditorAccess.getCurrentPage();


      //You can access an API to insert text in the XML content
//      tp.getDocument().insertString(tp.getCaretOffset(), "<testTag/>", null);
```

```
      //This is the internal StyledText implementation
//      tp.getTextComponent()
      //You can use this XPath API to find the range of an XML element.
//      tp.findElementsByXPath(xpathExpression)
 } else if(currentEditorAccess.getCurrentPage() instanceof WSAuthorEditorPage) {
      //Editor opened in Author page
//      try {
        WSAuthorEditorPage authPage = (WSAuthorEditorPage)
currentEditorAccess.getCurrentPage();


        //Then you can do stuff like this to insert XML at the cursor position
//        authPage.getDocumentController().insertXMLFragment("<testTag/>",
authPage.getCaretOffset());
//      } catch (AuthorOperationException e) {
//        // TODO Auto-generated catch block
//        e.printStackTrace();
//      }
    }
```

18.

Plugins

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports certain plugins that can be added in the `dropins` folder within the Eclipse installation directory.

19.
Tools

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a variety of helpful tools to help you accomplish XML-related tasks. This section presents many of those tools.

Refactoring XML Documents

In the life cycle of XML documents there are instances when the XML structure needs to be changed to accommodate various needs. For example, when an associated schema is updated, an attribute may have been removed, or a new element added to the structure.

These types of situations cannot be resolved with a traditional *Find/Replace* tool, even if the tool accepts regular expressions. The problem becomes even more complicated if an XML document is computed or referenced from multiple modules, since multiple resources need to be changed.

To assist you with these types of refactoring tasks, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a specialized **XML Refactoring** tool that helps you manage the structure of your XML documents.

XML Refactoring Tool

The **XML Refactoring** tool is presented in the form of an easy to use wizard that is designed to reduce the time and effort required to perform various structure management tasks. For example, you can insert, delete, or rename an attribute in all instances of a particular element that is found in all documents within your project.

To access the tool, select the **XML Refactoring** action from one of the following locations:

- The **XML** menu.
- The **Refactoring** submenu from the contextual menu in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*.
- The **Refactoring** submenu from the contextual menu in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*.

Note:
The built-in refactoring operations are also available from the **Refactoring** submenu in the contextual menu of **Author** or **Text** mode. This is useful because by selecting the operations from the contextual menu, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin considers the editing context to skip directly to the wizard page of the appropriate operation and to help you by preconfiguring some of the parameter values. For your convenience, the last 5 operations that were finished *(on page 1821)* or previewed *(on page 1821)* also appear in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu in the **DITA Maps Manager**.

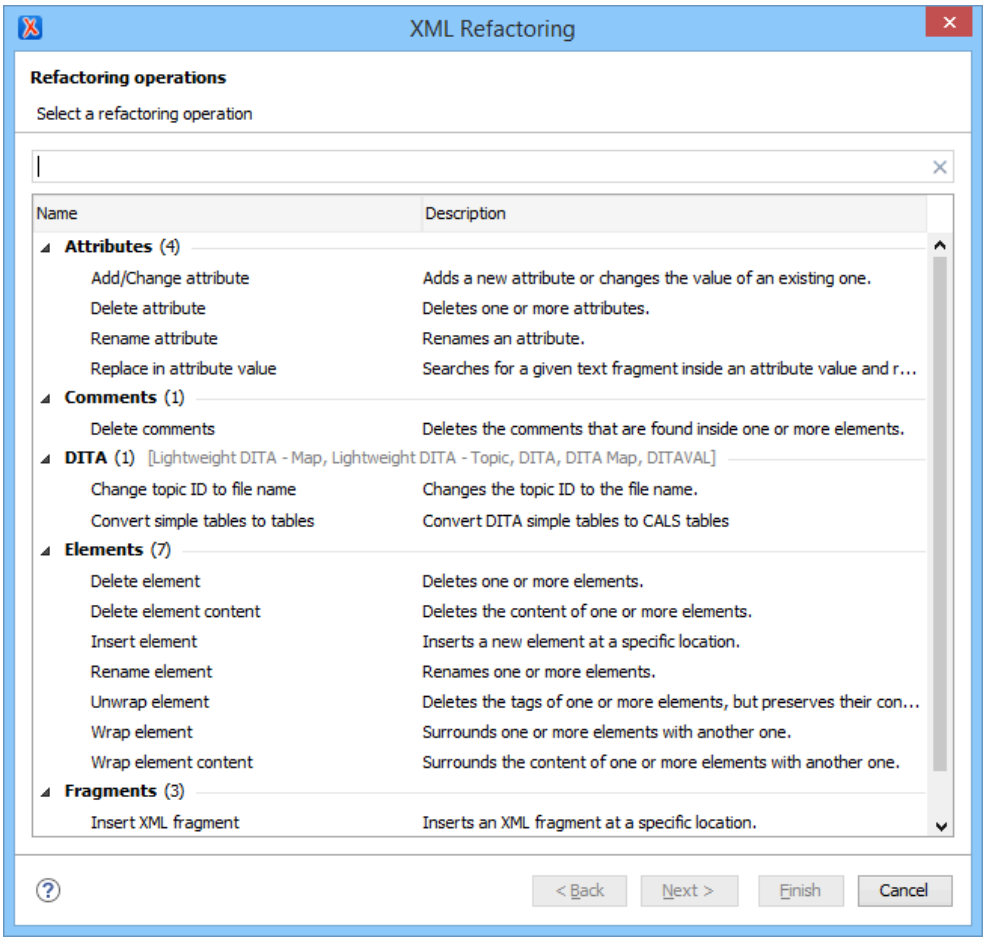
XML Refactoring Wizard

The XML Refactoring tool includes the following wizard pages:

Refactoring operations

The first wizard page presents the available operations, grouped by category. To search for an operation, you can use the filter text box at the top of the page.

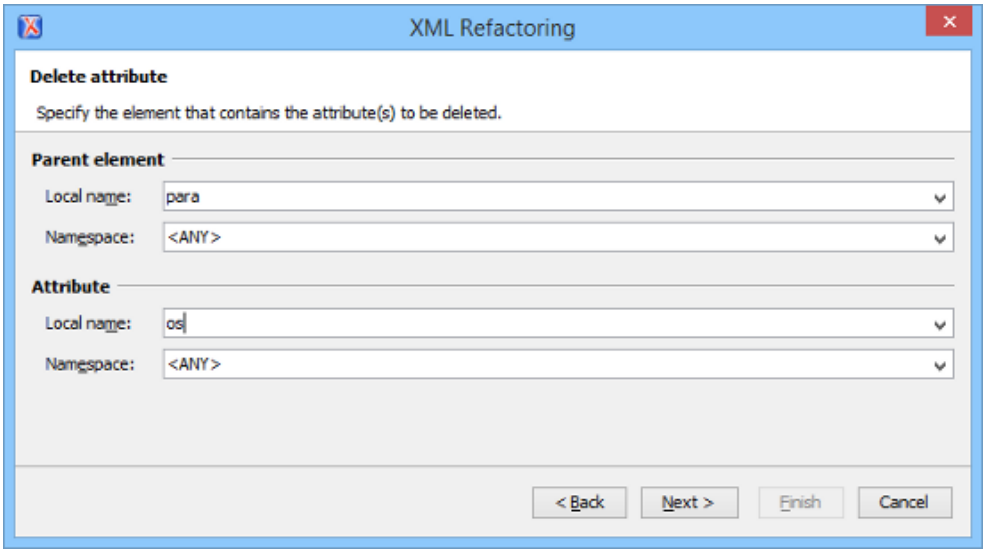
Figure 317. XML Refactoring Wizard



Configure Operation Parameters

The next wizard page allows you to specify the parameters for the refactoring operation.
The parameters are specific to the type of refactoring operation that is being performed. For example, to delete an attribute you need to specify the parent element and the qualified name of the attribute to be removed.

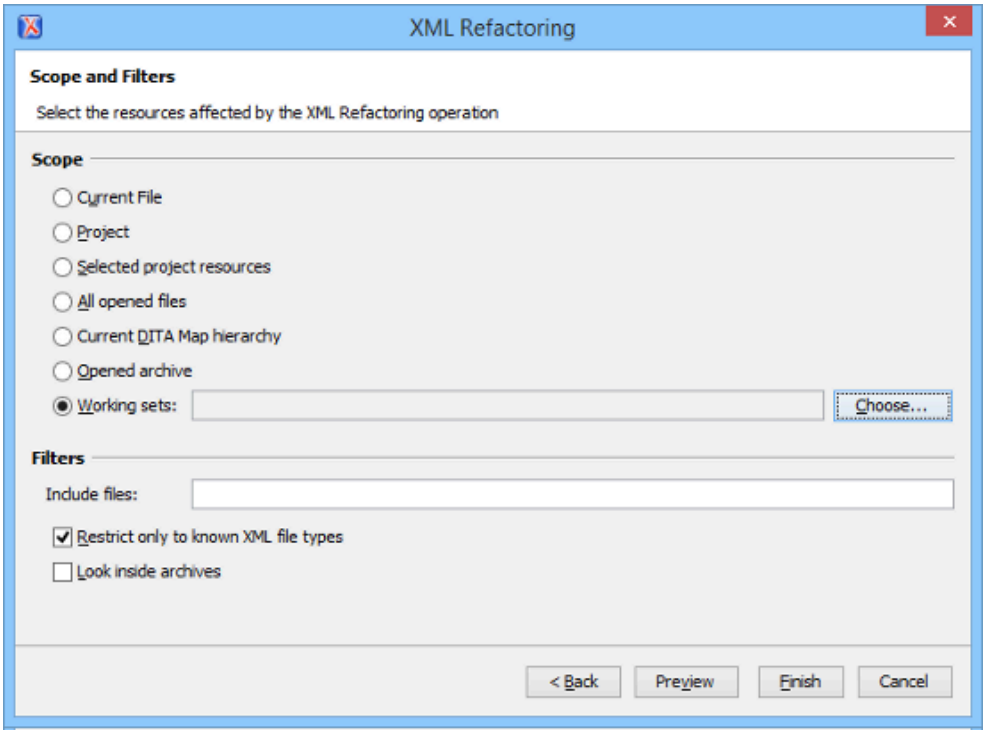
Figure 318. XML Refactoring 2nd Wizard Page (Delete Attribute Operation)



Scope and Filters

The last wizard page allows you to select the set of files that represent the input of the operation.

Figure 319. XML Refactoring - Scope and Filters Wizard Page



Scope section

You can specify the scope for the operation by selecting from predefined resource sets or you can define your own set of resources by creating a *working set (on page 2235)* (select **Working sets** and click the **Choose** button to the right). If you select **Project**, all files attached to the current project will be used for the scope of the operation. If you select **Current DITA Map hierarchy**, the current DITA map

that is open in the DITA Maps Manager along with all of its referenced topics and submaps (and topics referenced in those submaps) are used for the scope.

Filters

The **Filters** section includes the following options:

- **Include files** - Allows you to filter the selected resources by using a file pattern. For example, to restrict the operation to only analyze build files you could use `build*.xml` for the file pattern.
- **Restrict only to known XML file types** - When selected, only resources with a known XML file type will be affected by the operation.

Preview

You can use the **Preview** button to open a comparison panel where you can review all the changes that will be made by the refactoring operation before applying the changes.

Finish

After clicking the **Finish** button, the operation will be processed and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides no automatic means for reverting the operations. Any **Undo** action will only revert changes on the current document.

Troubleshooting:
If an operation fails, a notification will be displayed in the **Results** panel with some information about the error. For example, if the operation was invoked on a read-only resource, the error will indicate that a read-only file cannot be converted.

Tip:
If an operation takes longer than expected you can use the **Stop** button in the progress bar to cancel the operation.

Restriction:
XML refactoring operations cannot preserve CDATA sections. If your document contains XML CDATA sections, the refactoring operations will convert them to plain text nodes.

Built-in Refactoring Operations

The XML Refactoring tool includes a variety of built-in operations that can be used for common refactoring tasks. They are grouped by category in the **Refactoring operations** wizard page. You can also access the operations from the **Refactoring** submenu in the contextual menu of **Author** or **Text** mode. The operations are also grouped by category in this submenu. When selecting the operations from the contextual menu, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin considers the editing context to get the names and namespaces of the current

element or attribute, and uses this information to preconfigure some of the parameter values for the selected refactoring operation.

Tip:
Each operation includes a link in the lower part of the wizard that opens the **XML / XSLT-XQuery / XPath** preferences page where you can configure XPath options and declare namespace prefixes.

The following built-in operations are available:

Refactoring Operations for *Attributes*

Add/Change attribute

Use this operation to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Parent element section

Element

The parent element of the attribute to be changed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Attribute section

Local name

The local name of the affected attribute.

Namespace

The namespace of the affected attribute.

Value

The value for the affected attribute.

Options section

You can choose between one of the following options for the **Operation mode**:

Add the attribute in the parent elements where it is missing

Adds the attribute to all instances of the specified parent element.

Change the value in the parent elements where the attribute already exists

Replaces the value of the already existing attribute in all instance of the specified parent element.

Both

Adds the attributes to the instances where it is missing and replaces the value in instances where the attribute already exists.

Convert attribute to element

Use this operation to convert a specified attribute to an element. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Parent element section

Element

The parent element of the attribute to be converted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Attribute section

Local name

The local name of the affected attribute.

Namespace

The namespace of the affected attribute.

New element section

Local name

The local name of the new element.

Namespace

The namespace of the new element.

Delete attribute

Use this operation to remove one or more attributes. This operation requires you to specify the following parameters:

Element

The parent element of the attribute to be deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Attribute

The name of the attribute to be deleted.

Rename attribute

Use this operation to rename an attribute. This operation requires you to specify the following parameters:

Element

The parent element of the attribute to be renamed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Attribute

The name of the attribute to be renamed.

New local name

The new local name of the attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Use this operation to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Target attribute section

Element

The parent element of the attribute to be modified, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Attribute

The name of the attribute to be modified.

Find / Replace section

Find

The text fragments to find. You can use Perl-like regular expressions.

Replace with

The text fragment to replace the target with. This parameter can bind regular expression capturing groups (`$1`, `$2`, etc.) from the find pattern.

Refactoring Operations for *Comments*

Delete comments

Use this operation to delete comments from one or more elements. This operation requires you specify the following parameter:

Element

The target element (or elements) that will have comments deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Note:
Comments that are outside the root element will not be deleted because the *serializer* preserves the content before and after the root.

Refactoring Operations for *DITA* Topics

Change topic ID to file name

Use this operation to change the ID of a topic to be the same as its file name.

Convert CALS tables to simple tables

Use this operation to convert DITA CALS tables to simple tables.

Convert DITA 1.3 Maps and Topics to DITA 2.0

Use this operation to convert topics and maps that adhere to the DITA 1.3 standard to the DITA 2.0 standard.

- Changes DOCTYPE declarations and XML Schema/Relax NG schema references.
- DITA Map changes:
  - Removes the `@lockmeta` attribute.
  - Removes the `<topicset>` and `<topicsetref>` elements.
  - Removes the `<anchor>` and `<anchorref>` elements and the `@anchorref` attribute.
  - Migrates the `@navtitle` attribute as a `<navtitle>` element.
  - Migrates the `@title` attribute as a `<title>` element.
  - Converts the `@copy-to` attribute to a `<resourceid>` element.
  - Replaces the `@print` attribute with an `@deliveryTarget` attribute.
  - Convert topicmeta `<linktext>` to `<linktitle>`.
  - Removed `<hasInstance>`, `<hasKind>`, `<hasNarrower>`, `<hasPart>`, `<hasRelated>`, and `<relatedSubjects>` from subject scheme relationship tables in subject scheme, including `<subjectRelTable>`, `<subjectRelHeader>`, `<subjectRel>`, and `<subjectRole>`.
- DITA task changes:
  - Converts the `<substep>` element to a `<step>` element.
  - Converts the `<substeps>` element to a `<steps>` element.
- DITA topic changes:
  - Removes the `@type` attribute with the value `fastpath`.
  - Converts the `@alt` attribute to an `<alt>` element.
  - Replaces the `<index-sort-as>` element with a `<sort-as>` element.
  - Removes the `<itemgroup>` element.
  - Moves the contents of the `<titlealts>` element inside the `<prolog>`.
  - Removes the `@domains` attribute.
  - Renames `<sectiondiv>` to `<div>`.
  - Remove `@query` attribute from `<link>` element.
  - Remove `@specentry` attribute from `<stentry>` element.

    Remove the `@spectitle` attribute.

Convert conrefs to conkeyrefs

Use this operation to convert `@conref` attributes to `@conkeyref` attributes. For more information and instructions for using this operation, see Converting Conrefs to Conkeyrefs *(on page 2031)*.

Convert Nested Topics to New Topics (Available from the contextual menu of editable maps/nodes in the DITA Maps Manager *(on page 1880)*)

Use this operation on topics that contain nested `<topic>` elements to convert each nested topic to a new topic. Also, the new topics are added in the **DITA Maps Manager** as the first child topics of the original topic.

Convert Sections to New Topics (Available from the contextual menu of editable maps/nodes in the DITA Maps Manager *(on page 1880)*)

Use this operation on topics that contain multiple sections to convert each section to a new topic. Also, the new topics are added in the **DITA Maps Manager** as the first child topics of the original topic.

Convert simple tables to CALS tables

Use this operation to convert DITA simple tables to CALS tables.

Convert to Concept

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Concept topic type (for example, Topic to Concept). For more information, see Converting DITA Topics to Another Type *(on page 1955)*.

Convert to General Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA General Task topic type (for example, Task to General Task). For more information, see Converting DITA Topics to Another Type *(on page 1955)*.

Convert to Reference

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Reference topic type (for example, Topic to Reference). For more information, see Converting DITA Topics to Another Type *(on page 1955)*.

Convert to Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Task topic type (for example, Topic to Task). For more information, see Converting DITA Topics to Another Type *(on page 1955)*.

Convert to Topic

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Topic (for example, Task to Topic). For more information, see Converting DITA Topics to Another Type *(on page 1955)*.

Convert to Troubleshooting

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Troubleshooting topic type (for example, Topic to Troubleshooting). For more information, see Converting DITA Topics to Another Type *(on page 1955)*.

Rename Key

Use this operation to rename a key. It also updates all references to it.

Note:
It does not work on DITA 1.3 key scopes.

Generate IDs

Use this operation to automatically generate unique IDs for elements.

Scope and Filters:

All of the DITA refactoring actions allow you to choose a scope for the operation and some filters:

Scope

Select from a variety of options to define the scope that will have resources affected by the operation. For example, you can choose to affect all resources in the **Project**, **All opened files**, **Entire DITA map hierarchy**, or just the **Current file**.

Filters section

Include files

Specifies files to be excluded from the operation. You can specify multiple files by separating them with commas and the patterns can include wildcards (such as ***** or **?**).

Restrict to known XML file types only

Excludes non-XML file types from the operation.

Refactoring Operations for *DITA* Maps

Convert DITA Bookmap to Map

Convert a DITA bookmap to a DITA map.

Convert DITA Map to Bookmap

Convert a DITA map to a DITA bookmap.

Change or remove profiling attribute value

Change or remove a value from a DITA profiling attribute. A profiling attribute can have multiple values, separated by spaces (e.g. for `platform="windows redhat"`, you can change the current `redhat` value to `linux`). Select the name of the profiling attribute, the current value to replace, and the new value. If the new value is left empty, the current value is removed from the profiling attribute. The new value is modified and reflected in DITA maps, DITA topics, and DITAVAL files.

Define keys for all topic references

This refactoring action is useful for converting links inside a DITA project from direct to indirect key-based addressing. When applied on DITA resources from your project (DITA maps and

topics), this refactoring action defines keys for all of a DITA map's topic references based on the referenced file name and converts each direct reference to a key reference in each DITA topic. If a topic references already has keys defined, the action does not define new ones. Inside the DITA topics, whenever there is a link element (`<xref>` or `<link>`) with a direct reference to another DITA topic or an element with a `@conref`, the action attempts to convert them to indirect key-based addressing. The refactoring action may introduce linking errors or create duplicate keys so it is advised to run the **Validate and check for completeness** action from the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar to manually fix those problems. You can enable the **Report duplicate keys** checkbox to also report any keys that are defined more than once.

Scope and Filters:

All of the DITA refactoring actions allow you to choose a scope for the operation and some filters:

Scope

Select from a variety of options to define the scope that will have resources affected by the operation. For example, you can choose to affect all resources in the **Project**, **All opened files**, **Entire DITA map hierarchy**, or just the **Current file**.

Filters section

Include files

Specifies files to be excluded from the operation. You can specify multiple files by separating them with commas and the patterns can include wildcards (such as ***** or **?**).

Restrict to known XML file types only

Excludes non-XML file types from the operation.

Refactoring Operations for *Elements*

Delete element

Use this operation to delete elements. This operation requires you to specify the following parameter:

Element

The target element to be deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Delete element content

Use this operation to delete the content of elements. This operation requires you to specify the following parameter:

Element

The target element whose content is to be deleted, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or an XPath expression.

Insert element

Use this operation to insert new elements. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Element section

Local name

The local name of the element to be inserted.

Namespace

The namespace of the element to be inserted.

Location section

XPath

An XPath expression that identifies an existing element to which the new element is relative, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

Position

The position where the new element will be inserted, in relation to the specified existing element. The possible selections in the drop-down menu are: **After**, **Before**, **First child**, or **Last child**.

Rename element

Use this operation to rename elements. This operation requires you to specify the following parameters:

Target elements (XPath)

The target elements to be renamed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

New local name

The new local name of the element.

Unwrap element

Use this operation to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged. This operation requires you to specify the following parameter:

Target elements (XPath)

The target elements whose surrounding tags will be removed, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

Wrap element

Use this operation to surround elements with element tags. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Target elements (XPath)

The target elements to be surrounded with tags, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

Wrapper element section

Local name

The local name of the *Wrapper element*.

Namespace

The namespace of the *Wrapper element*.

Wrap element content

Use this operation to surround the content of elements with element tags. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Target elements (XPath)

The target elements whose content will be surrounded with tags, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

Wrapper element section

Local name

The local name of the *Wrapper element* that will surround the content of the target.

Namespace

The namespace of the *Wrapper element* that will surround the content of the target.

Refactoring Operations for *Fragments*

Insert XML fragment

Use this operation to insert an XML fragment. This operation allows you to specify the following:

XML Fragment

The XML fragment to be inserted.

Location section

XPath

An XPath expression that identifies an existing element to which the inserted fragment is relative, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

Position

The position where the fragment will be inserted, in relation to the specified existing element. The possible selections in the drop-down menu are: **After**, **Before**, **First child**, or **Last child**.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Use this operation to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Target elements (XPath)

The target elements whose content will be replaced, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

XML Fragment

The XML fragment with which to replace the content of the target element.

Replace element with XML fragment

Use this operation to replace elements with an XML fragment. This operation allows you to specify the following parameters:

Target elements (XPath)

The target elements to be replaced, in the form of a local name from any namespace, a local name with a namespace prefix, or other XPath expressions.

XML Fragment

The XML fragment with which to replace the target element.

Refactoring Operations for *JATSKit*

Add BITS DOCTYPE - NLM/NCBI Book Interchange 2.0

Use this operation to add an NLM 'BITS' 2.0 DOCTYPE declaration.

Add Blue DOCTYPE - NISO JATS Publishing 1.1

Use this operation to add a JATS 'Blue' 1.1 DOCTYPE declaration.

Normalize IDs

Use this operation to normalize assigned IDs and assigned IDs to elements that are missing them.

All of these *JATSKit* refactoring actions allow you to choose a scope for the operation and some filters:

Scope

Select from a variety of options to define the scope for the resources that will be affected by the operation. For example, you can choose to affect all resources in the **Project**, **All opened files**, or just the **Current file**.

Filters section

Include files

Specifies files to be excluded from the operation. You can specify multiple files by separating them with commas and the patterns can include wildcards (such as ***** or **?**).

Restrict to known XML file types only

Excludes non-XML file types from the operation.

Refactoring Operations for *Processing Instructions*

Accept all tracked changes, remove all Oxygen-specific comments and highlights

Use this operation to accept all application-specific tracked changes (from elements and attributes) or remove all application-specific comments or highlights. There are several options to choose from:

Accept all tracked changes

Accepts all application-specific tracked changes (from elements and attributes).

Remove comments

Removes all application-specific comments.

Remove highlights

Removes all application-specific highlights.

Delete processing instructions

Use this operation to delete all processing instructions that have a certain target name from the processed documents. This operation requires you to specify the following parameter:

Processing instruction target

The target name of the processing instructions to delete.

Note:
Processing instructions that are outside the root element are not deleted because the *serializer* preserves the content before and after the root.

Refactoring Operations for *Publishing Template*

These operations are for those who use *Oxygen Publishing Templates* for WebHelp Responsive output customization.

Migrate HTML Page Layout Files to v21

Use this operation to convert custom HTML page layout files *(on page 1010)* that are included in a custom Publishing Template that was created in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 20.0 or 20.1 so that they will be compatible with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 21.0.

Migrate HTML Page Layout Files to v22

Use this operation to convert custom HTML page layout files *(on page 1010)* that are included in a custom Publishing Template that was created in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin versions 20.0 - 21.1 so that they will be compatible with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version 22.0.

Update HTML Pages

Attention:
This operation is only used by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and should not be used manually.

Additional Notes:

- There are some operations that allow `<ANY>` for the **local name** and **namespace** parameters. This value can be used to select an element or attribute regardless of its local name or namespace. Also, the `<NO_NAMESPACE>` value can be used to select nodes that do not belong to a namespace.
- Some operations have parameters that accept XPath expressions to match elements or attributes. In these XPath expressions you can only use the prefixes declared in the **Options > Preferences > XML > XSLT-XQUERY > XPath** *(on page 187)* page. This preferences page can be easily opened by clicking the link in the note (**Each prefix used in an XPath expression must be declared in the Default prefix-namespace mappings section**) at the bottom of the **Configure Operation Parameters** wizard page.

Storing and Sharing Refactoring Operations

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin scans the following locations when looking for XML Refactoring operations to provide flexibility:

- A folder named `refactoring`, created inside the folder of the *framework* you are customizing. In the **Classpath** tab of the **Document type** configuration dialog box *(on page 88)*, you need to add a reference to the `refactoring` folder specific for the framework.
- A folder that you specify in the **Load additional refactoring operations from** text box *(on page 182)* in the **XML Refactoring** preferences page *(on page 182)*.
- The `refactoring` folder from the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation directory (*`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/refactoring/`*).

Sharing Refactoring Operations

The purpose of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin scanning multiple locations for the XML Refactoring operations is to provide more flexibility for developers who want to share the refactoring operations with the other team members. Depending on your particular use case, you can attach the refactoring operations to other resources, such as *framework (on page 2231)* or projects.

After storing operations, you can share them with other users by sharing the resources.

Localizing XML Refactoring Operations

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes localization support for the XML refactoring operations.

The translation keys for the built-in refactoring operations are located in *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/refactoring/i18n/translation.xml`*.

Applying All Default Quick Fix Proposals

The **Apply all default quick fix proposals** tool can be used to apply quick fix proposals for all reported validation errors in one or more documents when one or more quick fix proposals have been detected for reported validation errors. If multiple quick fixes are available for the same validation error, the default quick fix defined in the Schematron validation schema using the `sqf:default-fix` attribute is automatically selected to be applied. If no default quick fix is explicitly specified, the first quick fix proposal in the list is considered. All quick fix proposals are then automatically executed in bulk, one after the other.

Important Notes to Consider:

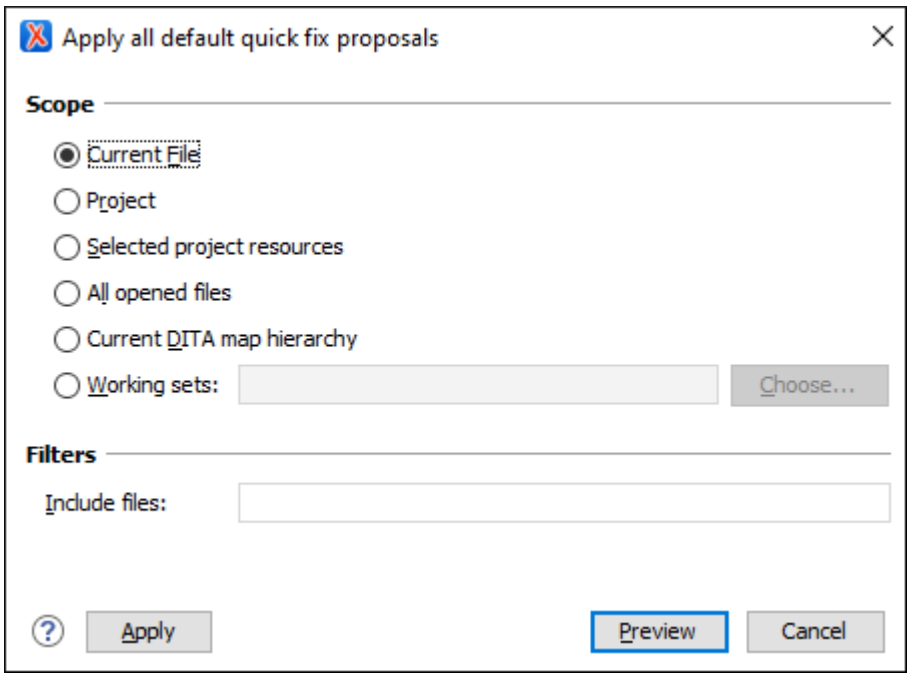
- To maintain the accuracy of the initially calculated error validation ranges, the quick fix proposals are applied in the reverse order of their selection.
- If two or more quick fixes act on the same "area" within the document, only one is applied (no changes can be made to changes already made).
- Quick fixes that involve "user-entered values" that normally present a dialog box to facilitate data entry will not be executed (the automatic process of applying all selected quick fixes cannot be interrupted by the presence of the respective dialog boxes).

The **Apply all default quick fix proposals** tool can be accessed from the following interface locations:

- **[Single Document]** The contextual menu when you right-click anywhere in **Text** mode *(on page 322)* or **Author** mode *(on page 509)* when there is a detected quick fix proposal in the current document.
- **[One or More Documents]** The **Tools** menu.
- **[One or More Documents]** The **Refactoring** submenu when you right-click one or more files in the **Project** view *(on page 245)*.
- **[One or More Documents]** The **Refactoring** submenu when you right-click one or more files in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*.

Invoking the tool opens the **Apply all default quick fix proposals** dialog box where you can choose the scope for the operation and optionally specify a filter to narrow the scope.

Figure 320. Apply All Default Quick Fix Proposals Dialog Box



The **Scope** section allows you to choose from the following scopes:

- **Current File** - The quick fix proposals are applied on the current file only.
- **Project** - The quick fix proposals are applied on the current project.
- **Selected project resources** - The quick fix proposals are applied on the selected files from the current project.
- **All opened files** - The quick fix proposals are applied on all opened files.
- **Entire DITA map hierarchy** (for DITA documents) - The quick fix proposals are applied on current DITA map along with all of its referenced topics and submaps (and topics referenced in those submaps).
- **Working sets** - The quick fix proposals are applied on a user-defined set of resources, referred to as a *working set (on page 2235)*.

The **Include files** option in the **Filters** section can be used to narrow the scope of the operation by filtering the selected resources using a file pattern. For example, to restrict the operation to only parse and update XML documents from the selected files, you could use `{*}.xml` for the file pattern.

You can click the **Preview** button to see a comparison preview that provides an overview of the content changes that will be made, according to the quick fixes that will be applied. You can preview the changes in **Text** or **Author** mode. The comparison panel also informs you of any problems encountered. While previewing the changes, you can also choose to exclude certain files from having the quick fixes be applied if you do not agree with the changes for the particular files. If you agree with the changes presented, click **Apply** to trigger the quick fixes and update the content.

Troubleshooting:
If a quick fix did not apply, a notification with some information about the error will be displayed in the **Results** view at the bottom of the application.

Tip:
If the operation takes longer than expected, you can use the **Stop** button in the progress bar to cancel the operation.

Resources

For more information about the **Apply all default quick fix proposals** tool, see our video: Introducing the Apply All Default Quick Fix Proposals Tool.

Canonicalizing Files

You can select the *canonicalization (on page 2229)* algorithm to be used for a document from the dialog box that is displayed by using the **Canonicalize** action that is available from the **Source** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in **Text** mode.

The **Canonicalize** dialog box allows you to set the following options:

- **Exclusive** - If selected, the exclusive (uncommented) *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.

  Note:
  Exclusive Canonicalization just copies the namespaces you are actually using (the ones that are a part of the XML syntax). It does not look into attribute values or element content, so the namespace declarations required to process these are not copied. This is useful if you have a signed XML document that you want to insert into other XML documents (or you need self-signed structures that support placement within various XML contexts), as it will ensure the signature is verified correctly each time.

- **Exclusive with comments** - If selected, the exclusive with comments *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.
- **Inclusive** - If selected, the inclusive (uncommented) *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.

Note:
Inclusive Canonicalization copies all the declarations, even if they are defined outside of the scope of the signature, and all the declarations you might use will be unambiguously specified. Inclusive *Canonicalization* is useful when it is less likely that the signed data will be inserted in other XML document and it is the safer method from the security standpoint because it requires no knowledge of the data that are to be secured to safely sign them. A problem may occur if the signed document is moved into another XML document that has other declarations because the Inclusive *Canonicalization* will copy them and the signature will be invalid.

- **Inclusive with comments** - If selected, the inclusive with comments *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.
- **XPath** - The XPath expression provides the fragments of the XML document to be signed.

Related Information:
Digital Signatures Overview *(on page 605)*

Signing Files

You can select the type of signature to be used for documents from a signature settings dialog box. To open this dialog box, select the **Sign** action from the **Source** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in **Text** mode.

The following options are available:

Note:
If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin could not find a valid certificate, a link is provided at the top of the dialog box that opens the XML Signing Certificates preferences page *(on page 183)* where you can configure a valid certificate.

- **Transformation Options** - See the Digital Signature Overview *(on page 605)* section for more information about these options.
  - **None** - If selected, no *canonicalization (on page 2229)* algorithm is used.
  - **Exclusive** - If selected, the exclusive (uncommented) *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.

> **Note:**
> *Exclusive Canonicalization* just copies the namespaces you are actually using (the ones that are a part of the XML syntax). It does not look into attribute values or element content, so the namespace declarations required to process these are not copied. This is useful if you have a signed XML document that you want to insert into other XML documents (or you need self-signed structures that support placement within various XML contexts), as it will ensure the signature is verified correctly each time.

  - **Exclusive with comments** - If selected, the exclusive with comments *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.
  - **Inclusive** - If selected, the inclusive (uncommented) *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.

> **Note:**
> *Inclusive Canonicalization* copies all the declarations, even if they are defined outside of the scope of the signature, and all the declarations you might use will be unambiguously specified. Inclusive *Canonicalization* is useful when it is less likely that the signed data will be inserted in other XML document and it is the safer method from the security standpoint because it requires no knowledge of the data that are to be secured to safely sign them. A problem may occur if the signed document is moved into another XML document that has other declarations because the Inclusive *Canonicalization* will copy them and the signature will be invalid.

  - **Inclusive with comments** - If selected, the inclusive with comments *canonicalization (on page 2229)* method is used.

- **XPath** - The XPath expression provides the fragments of the XML document to be signed.
- **ID** - Provides ID of the XML element to be signed.
- **Envelope** - If selected, the *enveloped* signature is used. See the Digital Signature Overview *(on page 605)* for more information.
- **Detached** - If selected, the *detached* signature is used. See the Digital Signature Overview *(on page 605)* for more information.
- **Append KeyInfo** - If this option is selected, the `<ds:KeyInfo>` element will be added in the signed document.
- **Signature algorithm** - The algorithm used for signing the document. The following options are available: **RSA with SHA1**, **RSA with SHA256**, **RSA with SHA384**, **RSA with SHA512**, **ECDSA with SHA1**, **ECDSA with SHA256**, **ECDSA with SHA384**, and **ECDSA with SHA512**.

Related Information:

Digital Signatures Overview *(on page 605)*
Verifying Signature *(on page 611)*
Example of How to Digitally Sign XML Files or Content *(on page 611)*

Verifying Signature

You can verify the signature of a file by selecting the **Verify Signature** action from the **Source** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in **Text** mode. The **Verify Signature** dialog box then allows you to specify the location of the file whose signature is verified.

If the signature is valid, a dialog box displays the name of the signer. Otherwise, an error shows details about the problem.

Related Information:
Digital Signatures Overview *(on page 605)*
Signing Files *(on page 609)*
Example of How to Digitally Sign XML Files or Content *(on page 611)*

Comparison Tools

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes some useful tools for comparing files and directories. These tools are found in the **Comparison Tools** submenu within the **Tools** menu.

File Comparison Tool

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a file comparison tool that provides a mechanism for comparing two XML-related resources, as well as the possibility for a three-way comparison. You can compare files in a visual comparison mode or in a text-based comparison mode. The supported XML file types include XSL, XSD, DTD, XProc, WSDL, RNG, and XSpec, as well as HTML documents.

How to Start a File Comparison

There are various ways to automatically start the file comparison, but the most common ways are:

- You can select two files (or three file if one of them is a common ancestor) in the **Project Explorer** view, right-click, and select one of the options in the **Compare With** menu (e.g. **Compare With > Each Other** to compare the selected files).
- If you use a versioning system, you can compare files directly from the **Synchronize** view (e.g. double-click a file or right-click selected files and choose **Open In Compare Editor**) or the **History** view.

Visual Author Comparison Mode

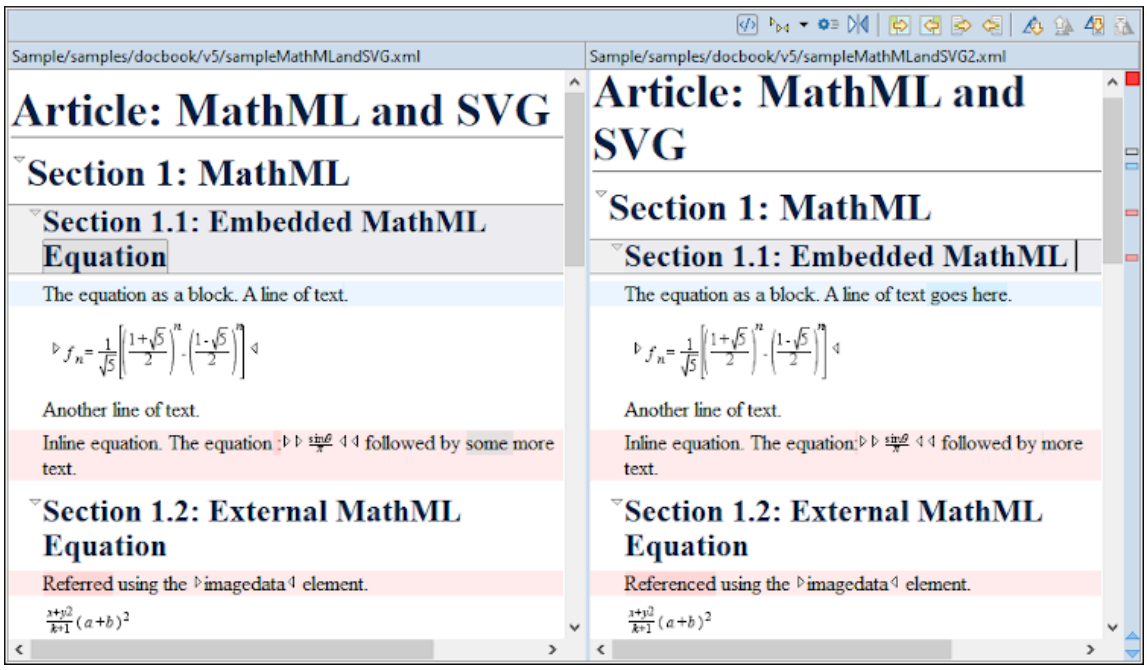
The visual **Author** file comparison mode makes it easier to see how the compared changes will look in the final output. It includes unique features such as actions to control the tags display mode, the ability to do second-level comparisons, and it presents differences made with *Change Tracking* enabled.

If there is a CSS associated with the documents (either directly in the document or in the framework definition), the visual comparison tool is presented automatically when you compare XML files in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. If the comparison is automatically started in the text-based mode, you can switch to the visual comparison mode by clicking the **Switch to Author Mode** toolbar button.

Attention:
If the documents do not have an associated CSS, the visual comparison mode cannot render the document properly, so the text-based mode is used in this situation.

You can compare versions in the Workbench with versions in the repository, or with the local edit history. You can also compare three files if a common ancestor exists. The two editors are constantly synchronized and the differences are refreshed when you save the modified document.

Figure 321. Visual File Comparison Tool



Text-based Comparison Mode

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes a text-based comparison mode. When in the **Author** comparison mode, you can switch to the text-based mode by clicking the **Switch to Text Mode** toolbar button.

Most of the options, features, and actions that are available for the visual-based comparison mode are also available in the **Text** comparison mode, although more algorithms *(on page 1843)* are available in **Text** mode.

Highlight Colors

The differences are also highlighted in several colors, depending on the type of change. The highlighting colors can be customized in the **Diff > Appearance** preferences page *(on page 74)*. The default colors and their shades mean the following:

- **Pink** - Identifies modifications on either side. For 3-way comparisons, it identifies blocks of changes that include conflicts.
- **Gray** - Identifies an addition of a node in the left side (your outgoing changes). For 3-way comparisons, it identifies your outgoing changes that do not include conflicts.

- **Blue** - Identifies an addition of a node in the right side (incoming changes). For 3-way comparisons, it identifies incoming changes that do not include conflicts.
- **Lighter Shade** - Identifies blocks of changes that can be merged in their entirety.
- **Darker Shade** - Identifies specific changes within the blocks that can be merged more precisely.

Navigating Differences

To navigate through differences, do one of the following:

- Use the navigation buttons on the toolbar.
- Select a block of differences by clicking its small colored marker in the overview ruler located in the right-most part of the window. At the top of the overview ruler there is a success indicator that turns green where there are no differences, or red if differences are found.

Toolbar Actions

A variety of actions are available on the toolbar:

Switch to Text Mode (Not available in Author comparison mode)

Switches to the text-based file comparison mode.

Switch to Author Mode (Only available in Text mode)

Switches to the visual **Author** file comparison mode.

Tags Display Mode (Only available in Author comparison mode)

Allows you to select the amount of markup to be displayed in the editors. You can choose between: **Full Tags with Attributes**, **Full Tags**, **Block Tags**, **Block Tags without Element Names**, **Inline Tags**, **Partial Tags**, or **No Tags**.

Diff Options

Opens the **Diff** preferences page *(on page 73)* where you can configure various options.

Algorithm Drop-down menu (Only available in Text mode)

This drop-down menu allows you to select a diff algorithm *(on page 1843)* to use for the comparison (depending on whether it is a two-way or three-way comparison).

Swap Left and Right View

Swaps the file in the left pane with the one in the right pane.

Copy All Non-Conflicting Changes from Left to Right

Copies all non-conflicting changes from the file in the left pane to the file in the right pane.

Copy All Non-Conflicting Changes from Right to Left

Copies all non-conflicting changes from the file in the right pane to the file in the left pane.

Copy Current Change from Left to Right

Copies the current change from the file in the left pane to the file in the right pane.

Copy Current Change from Right to Left

Copies the current change from the file in the right pane to the file in the left pane.

Next Difference

Navigates to the next block of changes. This action is not available when the cursor is positioned on the last change block or when there are no changes.

> **Note:**
> A change block groups one or more consecutive lines that contain at least one change.

Previous Difference

Jumps to the previous block of changes. This action is not available when the cursor is positioned on the first change block or when there are no changes.

Next Change

Jumps to the next change from the current block of changes. When the last change from the current block of changes is reached, it highlights the next block of changes. This action is not available when the cursor is positioned on the last change or when there are no changes.

Previous Change

Jumps to the previous change from the current block of changes. When the first change from the current block of changes is reached, it highlights the previous block of changes. This action is not available when the cursor is positioned on the first change or when there are no changes.

Contextual Menu Actions

The following contextual menu actions are available in each editor pane:

Undo

Undo changes in the currently focused editor pane.

Redo

Redo changes in the currently focused editor pane.

Cut

Cut the selection from the currently focused editor pane to the clipboard.

Copy

Copy the selection from the currently focused editor pane to the clipboard.

Paste

Paste content from the clipboard into the currently focused editor pane.

Select all

Selects all content in the currently focused editor pane.

Find/Replace

Performs a *find/replace* operation in the currently focused editor pane.

Algorithms

In **Text** mode, you can select the diff algorithm to use for the comparison using the **Algorithm Drop-down menu** that is available on the toolbar. The following diff algorithms are available (depending on whether it is a two-way or three-way comparison):

- **Auto (only available for two-way comparisons)** - Selects the most appropriate algorithm, based on the compared content and its size (selected by default).
- **Characters (only available for two-way comparisons)** - Computes the differences at character level, meaning that it compares two files or fragments looking for identical characters.
- **Words (only available for two-way comparisons)** - Computes the differences at word level, meaning that it compares two files or fragments looking for identical words.
- **Lines** - Computes the differences at line level, meaning that it compares two files or fragments looking for identical lines of text.
- **Syntax Aware (only available for two-way comparisons)** - Computes differences for the file types or fragments known by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, taking the syntax (the specific types of tokens) into consideration.
- **XML Fast** - Comparison that works well on large files or fragments, but it is less precise than **XML Accurate**.
- **XML Accurate** - Comparison that is more precise than **XML Fast**, at the expense of speed. It compares two XML files or fragments looking for identical XML nodes.

In **Author** mode, only the **Auto**, **XML Fast**, and **XML Accurate** algorithms are available and you can select them from the **Diff** preferences page *(on page 73)* (easily accessible by clicking the **Diff Options** toolbar button).

Second-Level Comparisons

The comparison tool automatically performs a second-level comparison for the **XML Fast** and **XML Accurate** algorithms. After the first comparison is finished, the second-level comparisons is processed on text nodes using a word-level comparison, meaning that it looks for identical words. This second-level comparison makes it easier to spot precise differences and you can merge or reject the precise modifications.

Resources

For more information about the visual editing support for JSON, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/hkInwKhtqvQ

AI Positron Overview

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offers an **Oxygen AI Positron** add-on that provides an advanced solution for using AI assistance to enhance the documentation content creation process. By leveraging the power of AI platforms, the **AI Positron** streamlines and enhances the writing experience by providing a variety of useful AI based actions and features, the possibility to chat and refine responses, and lots of customization possibilities for defining new custom AI actions and behaviors.

The add-on contributes an **AI Positron** side-view. To initiate the installation process for the add-on, select **AI Positron** from the **Tools** menu. Once installed, selecting the action opens the **AI Positron** view.

For information about the **Oxygen AI Positron** and its features, see the Oxygen AI Positron for Eclipse user guide.

20.
Troubleshooting

This section provides a collection of common performance and other types of problems that might be encountered when using Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, along with their possible solutions.

Getting Help

If you run into specific problems while using Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin you can take advantage of a variety of support related resources. Those resources include the following:

- The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Support Section of the Website
- The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Forum
- The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Video Tutorials
- The Common Problems and Solutions Section of the User Manual *(on page 1845)*
- The Online Technical Support Form

The application also includes various specific help-related resources in the **Help** menu.

Help Menu

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Help** menu provides various resources to assist you with your tasks.

This menu includes the following actions or options:

Welcome

This option opens the **Welcome** screen that includes some resources to assist you with using Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Help Contents

Use this action to open a dialog box that presents Eclipse help topics and it includes a section that is specific to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. Also, you can use the **F1** key to open a **Help** view that presents a section in the User Manual that is appropriate for the context of the current cursor position.

Report Oxygen problem

You can use this option to open a dialog box that allows you to write the description of a problem that was encountered while using the application. You can also select additional information to be sent to the technical support team in the five tabs:

- **General info** - You can edit your contact details in case you want to be contacted for further details or to be notified of a resolution.
- **Class Loader URLs** - You can choose whether or not to include the listed *Class Loader URLs* with your report.
- **System properties** - You can choose whether or not to include the listed system property details with your report.

> **Tip:**
> You are able to change the URL where the reported problem is sent by using the `com.oxygenxml.report.problems.url` system property. The report is sent in XML format through the `report` parameter of the POST HTTP method.

- **Plugins** - You can choose whether or not to include details about your installed *plugins (on page 2232)* with your report.
- **Frameworks** - You can choose whether or not to include details about your installed *frameworks (on page 2231)* with your report.

Support Tools > Randomize XML text content

Use this action when you need to send samples to the *Oxygen* support team and you want to keep the text content confidential. It opens a dialog box that allows you to select the resources that will have the text content randomized. You can then save the resources and send them to the *Oxygen* support team without fear of compromising sensitive or private data. For more information, see Randomize XML Text Content *(on page 1846)*.

> **Warning:**
> Before using this action, it is highly recommended that you copy the XML resources to be processed, save them in a separate folder, and then process this operation on the copies instead of the original files. Otherwise, you may lose your original content.

About Eclipse

Use this option and then click the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin icon to open a dialog box that contains information about Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and the installed version.

Related information
Details to Submit in a Request for Technical Support Using the Online Form *(on page 1853)*

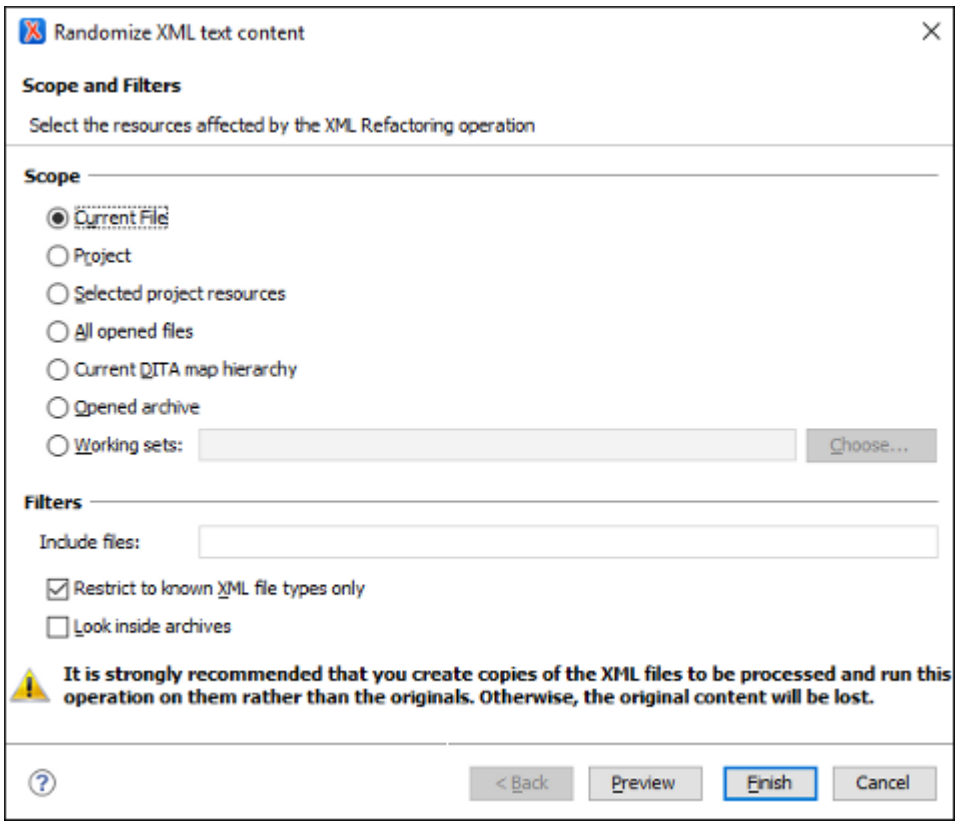
Randomize XML Text Content

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an action that randomizes the text content of an XML document. This action is available in the **Help > Support Tools** menu. It is helpful if you need to send XML samples to the *Oxygen* support team and you want to keep the text content confidential. It opens a dialog box that allows you

to select the resources that will have the text content randomized. You can then save the resources and send them to the *Oxygen* support team without fear of compromising sensitive or private data.

Warning:
Before using this action, it is highly recommended that you copy the XML resources to be processed, save them in a separate folder, and then perform this operation on the copies instead of the original files. Otherwise, you may lose your original content.

Figure 322. Randomize XML Text Content Dialog Box



The **Randomize XML Text Content** dialog box includes the following options:

Scope

Allows you to select the set of files whose text content will be randomized by the operation. You can select from predefined resource sets (such as the current file, your whole project, the current *DITA map (on page 2230)* hierarchy for DITA projects, etc.) or you can define your own set of resources by creating a *working set (on page 2235)*.

Filters

This section includes the following options:

- **Include files** - Allows you to filter the selected resources by using a file pattern. For example, to restrict the operation to only analyze build files you could use `build*.xml` for the file pattern.
- **Restrict only to known XML file types** - When selected, only resources with a known XML file type will be affected by the operation.

Performance Problems and Solutions

This section contains solutions for some common performance problems that may appear when running Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Out of Memory on External Processes

Problem

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin throws an *Out Of Memory* error when trying to generate PDF output with the built-in Apache FOP processor.

Cause

The amount of allocated memory might be insufficient.

Solutions

- Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **XML > PDF Output > FO Processors**, and increase the value of the **Memory available to the Apache FOP** option *(on page 171)*.
- For external XSL-FO processors, XSLT processors, and external tools, the maximum value of the allocated memory is set in the command line of the tool using the **-Xmx** parameter set to the Java virtual machine.

Related Information:
FO Processors Preferences *(on page 171)*
Custom Engines Preferences *(on page 185)*
How to Enable Debugging for FO Processor Transformations *(on page 903)*

Performance Issues with Large Documents

Problem

The performance of the application slows down considerably over time when working with large documents.

Cause

A possible cause is that the application needs more memory to run properly.

Solutions

- You can increase the maximum amount of memory available to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin by setting the `-vmargs` and `-Xmx` parameters in the command used to launch the Eclipse platform.

  Attention:
  The maximum amount of memory should be less than 75% of the physical amount of memory available on the machine. Otherwise, the operating system and other applications will have no memory available.

- **Note:**

Misc Problems and Solutions

This chapter presents common problems that may appear when running the application along with solutions for these problems.

Address Family Not Supported by Protocol Family

Problem

I have experienced the following error: *"Address Family Not Supported by Protocol Family; Connect"*. How do I solve it?

Cause

This seems to be an IPv6 connectivity problem. By default, the Java runtime used by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin prefers to create connections via IPv6, if the support is available. However, even though it is available in appearance, IPv6 sometimes happens to be configured incorrectly on some systems.

Solution

A quick solution for this problem is to set the `java.net.preferIPv4Stack` Java property to `true` (`java.net.preferIPv4Stack=true`), by following this procedure:

1. Create a file named `custom_commons.vmoptions` and on a single line, add `-Djava.net.preferIPv4Stack=true`. Then save the file and copy it to the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation folder (may need admin access).
2. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
3. Make sure the procedure was successful by going to **Help > About > System properties** and check that the value of the `java.net.preferIPv4Stack` property is `true`.

Application Takes Several Minutes to Start

Problem

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin seems to take an abnormally long amount of time to start.

Cause 1

Some anti-virus software can cause Java applications, including Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, to start very slowly due to scanning compressed archives (such as the *JAR* libraries that all Java applications use). During the process, various files would be accessed by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (including installed plugins) files from its installation folder, its user home folder (e.g. `C:\Users\<username>\AppData\Roaming\com.oxygenxml`), its project folder, or local files from the Git projects (if the Git Client is used).

Solution

A possible solution is to add the aforementioned folders to the list of exceptions in the anti-virus software settings.

Cause 2

If files/folders from the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation folder, its user home folder (e.g. `C:\Users\<username>\AppData\Roaming\com.oxygenxml`), its project folder, or local files from the Git projects (if the Git Client is used), project, Git projects) are located remotely, it sometimes slows down the process. For example, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (or Java) may wait until these connections time out before proceeding.

Solution 2

Keep a copy of those files/folders locally, rather than using them from the remote location.

Cause 3

The built-in file browser may be slow to open if it is trying to access shortcuts to inaccessible network shares or drives on the Windows desktop.

Solution 3

Remove the shortcuts to inaccessible network shares or drives.

Blank Window is Shown When Starting the App Over an RDP Connection on Linux

Problem

When starting Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin or its installer on *Linux*, a blank window is displayed when started over an RDP connection.

Cause

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and its installer are Java Swing apps that require a 24 bit color depth from the X server.

Solution

1. If you are using *xrdp*, find the `/etc/xrdp/xrdp.ini` file.
2. Uncomment the `xserverbpp=24` line.
3. Save your files and close all the apps (the subsequent step will terminate your remote session so you could lose your progress if you do not save your files first).
4. Restart the *xrdp* service:

```
sudo systemctl restart xrdp.service
```

Note:
Alternatively, you can try setting `max_bpp=24` in the same `/etc/xrdp/xrdp.ini` file.

Cannot Open Files from Desktop/Downloads/OneDrive on macOS

Problem

When using Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin on *macOS*, the application cannot open files from Desktop/Downloads/OneDrive.

Cause

Sometimes, macOS shows a popup about allowing the application access to some special folders (e.g. Downloads or Desktop), and unless you explicitly agree, it will leave it unchecked (the app does not allowed access). The popup can go unnoticed and disappears after a while, so it is easy to overlook it and the application will not have access to that folder.

Solution

Go to the macOS **System preferences > Security & Privacey > Privacy tab > Files and Folders**. You should find *Oxygen* in that list and the folders you were prompted to access. Check the box for the folder (i.e. Downloads or Desktop), if there is one unchecked.

Note:
If that does not work, look at "Full Disk Access" from the same Privacy tab. Add *Oxygen* there so that it has full access. However, only use this method as a last resort.

Compatibility Issue Between Java and Certain Graphics Card Drivers

Problem

Under certain settings, a compatibility issues can appear between Java and some graphics card drivers, which results in the text from the editor (in **Author** or **Text** mode) being displayed garbled.

Solution

If you encounter this problem, update your graphics card driver.

Damaged File Associations on macOS

Problem

After upgrading macOS and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, it is no longer associated to the appropriate file types (such as XML, XSL, XSD). How can I re-create the file associations?

Cause

The upgrade damaged the file associations in the LaunchService Database on your macOS machine.

Solution

You can rebuild the LaunchService Database with the following procedure. This will reset all file associations and rescan the entire file system searching for applications that declare file associations and collect them in a database used by Finder.

1. Find all the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installations on your hard drive.
2. Delete them by dragging them to the Trash.
3. Clear the Trash.
4. Unpack the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation kit on your desktop.
5. Copy the contents of the archive into the folder `/Applications/Oxygen`.
6. Run the following command in a Terminal:

   ```
   /System/Library/Frameworks/CoreServices.framework/Versions/A/Frameworks/
   LaunchServices.framework/Versions/A/Support/lsregister -kill -r -domain local -domain system
   -domain user
   ```

7. Restart Finder with the following command:

   ```
   killall Finder
   ```

8. Create an XML or XSD file on your desktop. It should have the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin icon.
9. Double-click the file.
10. Accept the confirmation.

Result: When you start Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, the file associations should work correctly.

Details to Submit in a Request for Technical Support Using the Online Form

Problem

What details should I add to my request for technical support on the online form in the product website?

Solution

When completing a request for Technical Support using the online form, include as many details as possible about your problem. For problems where a simple explanation may not be enough for the Technical Support team to reproduce or address the issue (such as server connection errors, unexpected delays while editing a document, an application crash, etc.), you should generate log files and attach them to the problem report. In the case of a crash, you should also attach the crash report file generated by your operating system.

If the text content of an XML document you want to send to the support team contains sensitive or private information, you can use the **Randomize XML text content** action *(on page 1846)* to create filler content. Before using this action, you need to copy the initial XML resources and save them in a separate folder. Otherwise, you might lose your original information.

To generate the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin log files, follow these steps:

1. Create a text file called `logback.xml` in the `lib` folder of the installed *plugin* folder, with the following content:

```
<configuration>

    <appender name="R2" class="ch.qos.logback.core.rolling.RollingFileAppender">

        <file>${user.home}/Desktop/oxygenLog/oxygen.log</file>

        <rollingPolicy class="ch.qos.logback.core.rolling.FixedWindowRollingPolicy">

            <fileNamePattern>${user.home}/Desktop/oxygenLog/oxygen%i.log.gz</fileNamePattern>

            <minIndex>1</minIndex>

            <maxIndex>20</maxIndex>

        </rollingPolicy>

        <triggeringPolicy class="ch.qos.logback.core.rolling.SizeBasedTriggeringPolicy">

            <maxFileSize>12MB</maxFileSize>

        </triggeringPolicy>

        <encoder>

            <pattern>%r %marker %p [ %t ] %c - %m%n</pattern>

        </encoder>

    </appender>


    <root level="debug">

        <appender-ref ref="R2" />

    </root>

</configuration>
```

2. Restart the application.

3. Reproduce the error.
4. Close the application.
5. Delete the `logback.xml` file because it might cause performance issues if you leave it in the `lib` folder.

> **Important:**
> The logging mode may severely decrease the performance of the application. Therefore, do not forget to delete the `logback.xml` file when you are done with the procedure.

Result: The resulting log files are named `oxygen.log` and `oxygen#.log.qz` (for example, `oxygen.log`, `oxygen1.log.gz`, `oxygen2.log.gz`, etc.) and are located in the `Desktop\oxygenLog` folder.

Dialog Boxes Cannot Be Resized on Mac

Problem

When using Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin on *macOS Big Sur*, dialog boxes (for example the **Find/Replace** or **Preferences** dialog box) cannot be resized.

Cause

This is caused by an issue with resizing dialog boxes in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin on *macOS Big Sur* (and possibly later versions) causing crashes if the main application is in full screen mode.

Solution

Until this limitation is resolved in a future Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin version, dialog boxes cannot be maximized or resized on *macOS Big Sur*.

DITA Map Transformation Fails (Cannot Connect to External Location)

Problem

DITA map (on page 2230) transformation fails because it cannot connect to an external location.

Solution

The transformation is run as an external Ant process so you can continue using the application as the transformation unfolds. All output from the process appears in the **DITA Transformation** tab.

The HTTP proxy settings are used for the Ant transformation, so if the transformation fails because it cannot connect to an external location, you can check the Network Connections.

DITA Map WebHelp Transformation Fails (Duplicate Topic References Found)

Problem

DITA Map WebHelp transformation fails with a message that indicates duplicate topic references were found.

Cause

By default the WebHelp transformation uses the `force-unique` parameter set to **true** to force the transformation to create unique output files for each instance of a resource when a map contains multiple references to a single topic. However, there are cases when this feature does not work as expected and the duplicate topic references are not handled properly.

Solution

To solve this issue, you should manually set a unique `@copy-to` attribute on any duplicate topic reference that was not handled automatically by DITA-OT:

```
<map>
...
  <topicref href="../topics/MyTopic.dita"/>
...
  <topicref href="../topics/MyTopic.dita" copy-to="../topics/MyTopic-2.dita"/>
</map>
```

DITA-OT Transformation Takes a Long Time to Process

Problem

A DITA transformation takes an extremely long time to process (over an hour, for example).

Cause

Large delays in DITA-OT processing are usually caused by intensive disk operations, CPU usage, or connections to remote websites. The DITA-OT processing is very disk-intensive, each stage takes the entire content from the transformation temporary files folder, reads it, modifies it, and then writes it back.

Solution

There are several things you can try to troubleshoot this problem:

- If you are using a shared or remote drive, it is recommended to specify a local drive for the output and temporary files directory (edit the transformation scenario and in the **Output** tab, select a local directory for **Temporary files directory** and **Output directory**).
- If you want to test if the publishing has a problem downloading remote resources, you could disable the network adapter on the computer and then try to publish. The purpose is to see if the publishing finishes without any reported error about obtaining a certain HTTP resource.

- Using DTDs instead of XML Schemas is faster. This is because of a default transformation parameter called `args.grammar.cache` that only works for DTD-based DITA topics.
- You can increase the memory available to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *(on page 1848)*. Sometimes, just increasing the amount of memory available to the DITA-OT process may be enough to lower the time necessary for the publishing to run.
- You can enable some logging to help you determine which stage in the process is taking a long time. Edit the transformation scenario and in the **Advanced** tab, enter **logger org.apache.tools.ant.listener.ProfileLogger** in the **Additional arguments** field. Then go to **Options > Preferences > DITA > Logging** and select **Always** for the **Show console output** option.
- You could try disabling antivirus applications since the publishing process is very disk intensive and certain antivirus application might slow down the process.
- If the published DITA map is part of a larger DITA project with lots of maps and topics, references from topics in the current map to topics in other sub-projects might result in problems resolving those references. You could look in the output folder to see if the number of HTML documents match the number of DITA topics in your map.

DITA PDF Transformation Fails

Problem

The DITA to PDF transformation fails.

Cause

To generate the PDF output, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the DITA Open Toolkit. This process sometimes results in errors. For information about some of the most common errors, see DITA PDF Processing Common Errors *(on page 2122)*.

Solution

If your transformation fails, you can detect some of the problems that caused the errors by running the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)*. Depending on the options you select when you run it, this action reports errors such as topics referenced in other topics but not in the *DITA map (on page 2230)*, broken links, and missing external resources.

You can analyze the **Results** tab of the DITA transformation and search for messages that contain text similar to `[fop] [ERROR]`. If you encounter this type of error message, edit the transformation scenario you are using and set the **clean.temp** parameter to **no** and the **retain.topic.fo** parameter to **yes**. Run the transformation, go to the temporary directory of the transformation, open the `topic.fo` file and go to the line indicated by the error. Depending on the XSL FO context try to find the DITA topic that contains the text that generates the error.

If none of the above methods helps you, go to **Help > About > Components > Frameworks** and check what version of the DITA Open Toolkit you are using. Copy the whole output from the DITA-OT console output and either report the problem on the DITA User List or send it to support@oxygenxml.com.

Related Information:

How to Enable Debugging for FO Processor Transformations *(on page 903)*

DITA PDF Processing Common Errors

There are cases when the PDF processing fails when trying to publish DITA content to a PDF file. This topic lists some of the common problems and possible solutions.

Problem: Cannot Save PDF

The FO processor cannot save the PDF at the specified target. The console output contains messages like this:

```
[fop] [ERROR] Anttask - Error rendering fo file:
C:\samples\dita\temp\pdf\oxygen_dita_temp\topic.fo
<Failed to open C:\samples\dita\out\pdf\test.pdf>
Failed to open samples\dita\out\pdf\test.pdf
.............
[fop] Caused by: java.io.FileNotFoundException:
C:\Users\default\Desktop\bev\out\pdf\test.pdf
(The process cannot access the file because it is being used by another process)
```

Solution: Cannot Save PDF

Such an error message usually means that the PDF file is already opened in a PDF reader application. The solution is to close the open PDF before running the transformation.

Problem: Table Contains More Cells Than Defined in Colspec

One of the DITA tables contains more cells in a table row than the defined number of `<colspec>` elements. The console output contains messages like this:

```
[fop] [ERROR] Anttask - Error rendering fo file:
D:\projects\eXml\samples\dita\flowers\temp\pdf\oxygen_dita_temp\topic.fo
<net.sf.saxon.trans.XPathException: org.apache.fop.fo.ValidationException:
The column-number or number of cells in the row overflows the number of
fo:table-columns specified for the table.
(See position 179:-1)>net.sf.saxon.trans.XPathException:
org.apache.fop.fo.ValidationException: The column-number or number of cells
in the row overflows the number of fo:table-columns specified for the table.
(See position 179:-1)
[fop]     at org.apache.fop.tools.anttasks.FOPTaskStarter.renderInputHandler
(Fop.java:657)
[fop]     at net.sf.saxon.event.ContentHandlerProxy.startContent
(ContentHandlerProxy.java:375)
............
```

```
[fop] D:\projects\samples\dita\flowers\temp\pdf\oxygen_dita_temp\topic.fo ->

D:\projects\samples\dita\flowers\out\pdf\flowers.pdf
```

Solution: Table Contains More Cells Than Defined in Colspec

To resolve this issue, correct the `@colspec` attribute on the table that caused the issue. To locate the table that caused the issue:

1. Edit the transformation scenario and set the parameter `clean.temp` to `no`.
2. Run the transformation, open the `topic.fo` file in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, and look in it at the line specified in the error message `(See position 179:-1)`.
3. Look around that line in the `XSL-FO` file to find relevant text content that you can use (for example, with the **Find/Replace in Files** action in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*) to find the original DITA topic where the table was generated.

Problem: Broken Link

There is a broken link in the generated `XSL-FO` file. The PDF is generated but contains a link that is not working. The console output contains messages like this:

```
[fop] 1248 WARN [ main ] org.apache.fop.apps.FOUserAgent -

Page 6: Unresolved ID reference "unique_4_Connect_42_wrongID" found.
```

Solution: Broken Link

To resolve this issue:

1. Use the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action available in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* to find such problems.
2. If you publish to PDF using a *DITAVAL* filter, select the same DITAVAL file in the **DITA Map Completeness Check** dialog box.
3. If the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action does not discover any issues, edit the transformation scenario and set the `clean.temp` parameter to `no`.
4. Run the transformation, open the `topic.fo` file in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, and search for the *unresolved ID references* (for example: `unique_4_Connect_42_wrongID`).
5. Look in the `XSL-FO` file to find relevant text content that you can use (for example, with the **Find/Replace in Files** action in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*) to find the original DITA topic where the table was generated.

Related Information:

How to Enable Debugging for FO Processor Transformations *(on page 903)*

DITA PDF CSS-based Processing Common Errors

For information about possible common errors that could be encountered when processing CSS-based DITA to PDF output, see the Troubleshooting section in the CSS-based PDF Customization guide *(on page 1431)*.

DITA to CHM Transformation Fails - Cannot Open File

Problem

The DITA to CHM transformation fails with the following error: `[exec] HHC5010: Error: Cannot open "fileName.chm". Compilation stopped.`

Cause

This error occurs when the CHM output file is opened and the transformation scenario cannot rewrite its content.

Solution

To solve this issue, close the CHM help file and run the transformation scenario again.

Tip:
It is a good practice to validate the *DITA map (on page 2230)* before executing the transformation scenario. To do so, run the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)*. Depending on the selected options, it will report detected errors, such as topics referenced in other topics (but not in the *DITA map*), broken links, and missing external resources.

Related Information:
DITA Map CHM (Compiled HTML Help) Transformation *(on page 2090)*

DITA to CHM Transformation Fails - Compilation Failed

Problem

The DITA to CHM transformation fails with the following error: `[exec] HHC5003: Error: Compilation failed while compiling fileName`.

Cause 1

One possible cause for this error is that the processed file does not exist.

Solution 1

To solve this issue, fix the file reference before executing the transformation scenario again.

Cause 2

Another possible cause for this error is that the processed file has a name that contains space characters.

Solution 2

To solve the issue, remove any spacing from the file name and run the transformation scenario again.

Tip:
It is a good practice to validate the *DITA map (on page 2230)* before executing the transformation scenario. To do so, run the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)*. Depending on the selected options, it will report detected errors, such as topics referenced in other topics (but not in the *DITA map*), broken links, and missing external resources.

Related Information:
DITA Map CHM (Compiled HTML Help) Transformation *(on page 2090)*

Eclipse Error Messages

Problem

When using the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, I receive unusual error messages or warnings that seem to be originating from Eclipse (as opposed to the usual messages that come from **Oxygen**).

Cause

This problem could be caused by the *Language Servers* support in Eclipse. Certain enabled language servers could send unexpected errors or warnings to the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Solution

Go to **Preferences > Language Servers** and disable the language servers that could be sending the errors.

Error After Switching Oxygen Products in Eclipse

Problem

On an Eclipse deployment, after installing and using the **Editor** product, I later decided to uninstall it and use **Author** or **Developer** instead. After installing the new product, I received an error that looked like this:

```
java.lang.Exception
      at org.eclipse.ui.internal.ViewReference.createErrorPart(ViewReference.java:112)
      at org.eclipse.ui.internal.ViewReference.createPart(ViewReference.java:98)
      at org.eclipse.ui.internal.e4.compatibility.CompatibilityPart.createPart
                                                    (CompatibilityPart.java:279)
      at org.eclipse.ui.internal.e4.compatibility.CompatibilityPart.create
                                                    (CompatibilityPart.java:317)
```

```
      at sun.reflect.NativeMethodAccessorImpl.invoke0(Native Method)
      at sun.reflect.NativeMethodAccessorImpl.invoke(NativeMethodAccessorImpl.java:62)
      at sun.reflect.DelegatingMethodAccessorImpl.invoke
                                              (DelegatingMethodAccessorImpl.java:43)
      at java.lang.reflect.Method.invoke(Method.java:498)
...
```

Solution

You need to manually delete the perspective for the product you uninstalled by following this procedure:

1. Go to **Window > Preferences > General > Perspectives**.
2. Select the perspective for the product you uninstalled (for example, **<oXygen/> XML**) and click **Delete**.
3. Restart Eclipse.
4. Go to **Window > Open Perspective** and select the perspective for the new product (for example, **<oXygen/> XML Author**).

Format and Indent Fails

Problem

When I use the **Format and Indent** function, I get an error message that indicates the *Format and Indent failed*.

Cause

This happens because the application tries to limit the exposure to XXE attacks so the parser blocks the expansion of system entities (the ones that are loaded from disk or from remote sources).

Solution

If you are in complete control of the XML documents (you manage or trust those who are creating and editing the documents), you can disable this particular check by selecting the **Enable system parameter entity expansion in other entity definitions** option *(on page 177)* in the **XML Parser** preferences page.

Hunspell Spell Checker is Unusable on Your Platform Error

Problem

When trying to use the **Check Spelling** option, I receive the error **Hunspell spell checker is unusable on your platform. It has crashed the application in a previous session**.

Cause

There are instances where Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin determines that an internal component (such as the spell checker) has crashed the application and disables that component from running in the future (to prevent a possible future crash).

Solution

To re-enable the spell checker component, follow these steps:

1. Close Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
2. Open the `%APPDATA%\com.oxygenxml` folder and look for a file called something like **HunspellCrashGuard*.txt**. Delete that file.
3. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

High Resolution Scaling Issues

Problem

I encounter scaling detection issues in a high resolution display (for example, some GUI components are too small).

Cause

This sometimes happens when using multiple displays with different resolutions because the application cannot detect the correct scaling setting.

Solution

You can use the `sun.java2d.uiScale` Java system property to instruct Java to use a particular scaling factor:

```
-Dsun.java2d.uiScale=1.5
```

Images Appear Stretched Out in the PDF Output

Problem

When publishing XML content (DITA, DocBook, etc.), images are sometimes scaled up in the PDF outputs but are displayed perfectly in the HTML (or WebHelp) output.

Solution

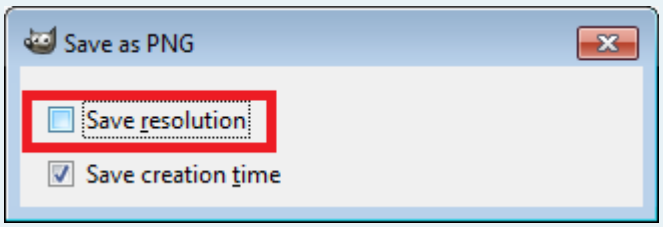
PDF output from XML content is obtained by first obtaining an intermediary XML format called XSL-FO and then applying an XSL-FO processor to it to obtain the PDF. This stretching problem is caused by the fact that all XSL-FO processors take into account the DPI (dots-per-inch) resolution when computing the size of the rendered image.

The PDF processor that comes out of the box with the application is the open-source Apache FOP processor. Here is what Apache FOP does when deciding the image size:

1. If the XSL-FO output contains width, height or a scale specified for the image `<external-graphic>` tag, then these dimensions are used. This means that if in the XML (DITA, DocBook, etc.) you set explicit dimensions to the image they will be used as such in the PDF output.
2. If there are no sizes (width, height or scale) specified on the image XML element, the processor looks at the image resolution information available in the image content. If the image has such a resolution saved in it, the resolution will be used and combined with the image width and height to obtain the rendered image dimensions.
3. If the image does not contain resolution information inside, Apache FOP will look at the FOP configuration file for a default resolution. The FOP configuration file for XSLT transformations that output PDF is located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/lib/fop.xconf`. DITA publishing uses the DITA Open Toolkit that has the Apache FOP configuration file located in [*DITA-OT-DIR*`/plugins/org.dita.pdf2.fop/fop/conf/fop.xconf`. The configuration file contains two XML elements called `<source-resolution>` and `<target-resolution>`. The values set to those elements can be increased (usually a DPI value of 110 or 120 should render the image in PDF the same as in the HTML output).

The commercial **RenderX XEP** XSL-FO processor behaves similarly but as a fallback it uses 120 as the DPI value instead of using a configuration file.

Tip:
It is best to save your images without any DPI resolution information. For example, when saving a PNG image in the open-source GIMP image editor, you do not want to save the resolution.



This allows you to control the image resolution from the configuration file for all referenced images.

Increasing the Memory for the Ant Process

Problem

The Ant build process runs out of memory.

Solution

For details about setting custom JVM arguments to the Ant build process, see JVM Arguments *(on page 2109)*.

JPEG CMYK Color Space Issues

Problem

JPEG images with the CMYK color profile and have the color profiles embedded in the image aren't rendered in the **Author** mode.

Solution

If the color profile information is missing from the JPEG image but you have the ICC file available, you can copy the `profileFileName.icc` to the *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`\lib` directory.

If the color space profile is missing, JPEG images that have the CMYK color space are rendered without taking the color profile into account. The **Unsupported Image Type** message is displayed above the image.

Mac Touch Bar Function Keys Do Not Work

Problem

I am using a Mac that has a Touch Bar but its function keys do not work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Causes

By default, the Touch Bar function keys are not enabled for Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Solution

To enable the Touch Bar function keys for Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, follow these steps:

1. Go to **System Preferences** and select **Keyboard**.
2. Click **Shortcuts**.
3. From the left sidebar, select **Function Keys**.
4. Click the **+** symbol, select **Oxygen** from the list of apps, and click **Add**.

Server Signature Mismatch Error

Problem

I receive an error indicating that *the current license was already activated on a License Server* or that the *License Server's Signature does not match*.

During the license activation process, the license key becomes bound to a particular license server deployment. This means that a code that uniquely identifies your license server deployment (called *Server Signature*) is sent to the **Oxygen** servers, which in turn will sign the license key. The *Server Signature* is computed from the list of network interfaces of the server where you deployed the license.

When starting the license server, if you receive an error stating that your *Server Signature* does not match, there are several possible causes:

Possible Cause 1

The license key was moved to a new server that hosts your license server.

Solution

Revert to your previous configuration.

Possible Cause 2

A new network interface was changed, added, or activated in the server that hosts your license server.

Note:
A specific example of when this could happen is if the Bluetooth or the WiFi module is activated/deactivated.

Solution

If reverting is not possible, contact the Oxygen support team.

Possible Cause 3

The license server was restarted from a different location as the previous restart. For example, some server configurations will have the Apache Tomcat server installed in a versioned folder (`/usr/local/apache-tomcat-V.V.V`) with a symbolic link to the typical folder (`/usr/local/tomcat`). The server can be restarted from either location, but it is recommended to always restart from the typical folder (`/usr/local/tomcat`) and always restart from the same location.

Solution

The server simply needs to always be restarted from the same location.

Navigation to a Web Page is Canceled when Viewing CHM on a Network Drive

Problem

When viewing a CHM on a network drive, I only see the TOC and an empty page that displays the message: **Navigation to the web page was canceled**.

Cause

This is actually normal behavior. The Microsoft viewer for CHM does not display the topics for a CHM open on a network drive.

Solution

As a workaround, copy the CHM file on your local system and view it there.

References Outside the Main DITA Map Folder

Problem

A reference to a DITA topic, *map*, or binary resource (for example, an image) that is located outside of the folder where the main *DITA map (on page 2230)* is located leads to problems when publishing the content using the DITA Open Toolkit.

Cause

DITA-OT often has trouble resolving references that are outside the directory where the published *DITA map* is found. By default, it does not even copy the referenced topics to the output directory.

Solution

To solve this, try one of the following solutions:

- Create another *DITA map* that is located in a folder path above all referenced folders and reference the original *DITA map* from this new map. Then transform this *DITA map* instead.
- Edit the transformation scenario and in the **Parameters** tab, change the value of the **fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml** parameter to `true`. This parameter is used to specify whether or not the application tries to fix such references in a temporary files folder before the DITA Open Toolkit is invoked on the fixed references. The fix has no impact on your edited DITA content.

  Important:
  The **fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml** parameter is only supported when the DITA-OT transformation process is started from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin or using the `transform` script.

- Edit the transformation scenario and in the **Parameters** tab, set the value of the **generate.copy.outer** parameter to `3`. This parameter specifies whether to generate output files for content that is not located in or beneath the directory containing the DITA map file. By setting the value of this parameter to `3`, the transformation scenario shifts the output directory so that it contains all output for the publication.

  Important:
  This method is recommended for transformation scenarios that use an external DITA-OT.

Syntax Highlights Not Available in Eclipse Plugin

Problem

I associated the `.ext` extension with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin in Eclipse but an `.ext` file opened with the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin plugin does not have syntax highlights.

Solution

Associate an extension with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin in Eclipse versions 4.5-4.39 by following these steps:

1. Associate the `.ext` extension with the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin plugin:
    a. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **General > Editors > File Associations**.
    b. Add `*.ext` to the list of file types.
    c. Select `*.ext` in the list by clicking it.
    d. Add Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to the list of **Associated editors** and make it the default editor.
2. Associate the `.ext` extension with the **Oxygen XML** content type:
    a. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **General > Content Types**.
    b. Add `*.ext` to the **File associations** list for the **Text > XML > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin** content type.
3. Click the **OK** button in the Eclipse preferences dialog box.

Result: Now when an `*.ext` file is opened, the icon and the syntax highlights should be the same as for XML files opened with the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin plugin.

TocJS Transformation Does not Generate All Files for a Tree-Like TOC

Problem

The *TocJS* transformation of a *DITA map (on page 2230)* does not generate all the files needed to display the tree-like table of contents.

Solution

To get a complete set of output files, follow these steps:

1. Run the *XHTML* transformation on the same *DITA map*. Make sure the output gets generated in the same output folder as for the *TocJS* transformation.
2. Copy the content of the *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/com.sophos.tocjs/basefiles` folder to the transformation output folder.
3. Copy the *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/com.sophos.tocjs/sample/basefiles/frameset.html` file to the transformation output folder.
4. Edit `frameset.html` file.
5. Locate element `<frame name="contentwin" src="concepts/about.html">`.
6. Replace `"concepts/about.html"` with `"index.html"`.

Text Rendering Issues on macOS

Problem

On macOS, I sometimes encounter issues there text is not rendered properly. For example, when tags are displayed in **Author** mode, sometimes the tag icon is rendered over the top of text (hiding the text) and sometimes text flows outside of code blocks.

Cause

This is an uncommon error that cannot be fixed in current versions.

Solution

Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author**, and deselect the **Fast text layout** option *(on page 128)*.

21.
DITA Authoring

DITA is an XML standard, an architectural approach, and a writing methodology, developed by technical communicators for technical communicators. It provides a standardised architectural *framework (on page 2231)* for a common structure for content that promotes the consistent creation, sharing, and re-use of content.

Some of the benefits of using DITA include the following:

- **Flexibility** - DITA is a topic-based architecture and it offers flexibility in content organization.
- **Modularity** - DITA allows for content reuse that saves time and reduces the number of modifications.
- **Structured Authoring** - DITA offers a standardized, methodological approach that helps to reduce authoring time and improve consistency.
- **Single-Source Publishing** - DITA provides the ability to change content in one place and have the change propagate everywhere.
- **Multiple Output Formats** - DITA supports multiple types of output.
- **Inheritance** - The DITA inheritance model makes it easy to specialize topics or elements within topics and you only have to define how the element is different from its immediate ancestor.
- **Process Automation** - DITA offers various ways to automate processes, such as with index or glossary production, output delivery, validation, and more.
- **Specialization** - DITA allows you to define your own information types and semantic elements/ attributes to suit the needs of your particular content model.
- **Multi-Lingual** - DITA is a translation-friendly structure that supports numerous languages and text encodings.
- **Conditional Profiling** - DITA supports conditional text processing and profiling to filter content in the publishing stage.

This chapter is designed to be a guide to help content authors who use DITA. It also presents the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin features that are specific to working with DITA documents and concepts.

DITA Resources

For more information and technical details about working with DITA, refer to the following resources:

- The DITA Specifications.
- The DITA Style Guide Best Practices for Authors.
- Various sample DITA topics and maps can be found in the `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/samples/dita` folder.
- Webinar: **Getting Started with DITA Using Oxygen**
- Webinar: **DITA Project Management, Validation, and Translation in a Docs as Code Environment**

Related information

DITA Topics Document Type (Framework) *(on page 699)*

DITA Map Document Type (Framework) *(on page 724)*

Getting Started with DITA

The information in this topic is meant to be a very basic starting point for those who are just getting started using DITA in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin makes it easy to create, edit, manage, and publish DITA content, but it requires at least some basic DITA knowledge. To truly get the most out of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and all of its DITA-related features, you should explore resources in the online DITA community to acquire knowledge of its concepts and uses.

Understanding DITA Topics

It is important to understand the role that a DITA topic plays in a DITA project. A DITA topic is not associated with a single published document. It is a separate entity that can potentially be included in many different books, help systems, or websites. Therefore, when you write a DITA topic you are not writing a book, a help system, or a website. You are writing an individual piece of content. This affects how you approach the writing task and how Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin works to support you as you write.

Most of your topics are actually related to other topics, and those relationships can affect how you write and handle things such as links and content reuse. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin helps you manage those relationships. Depending on how your topics are related, you can use the tools provided in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, along with the features of DITA, in a variety of ways.

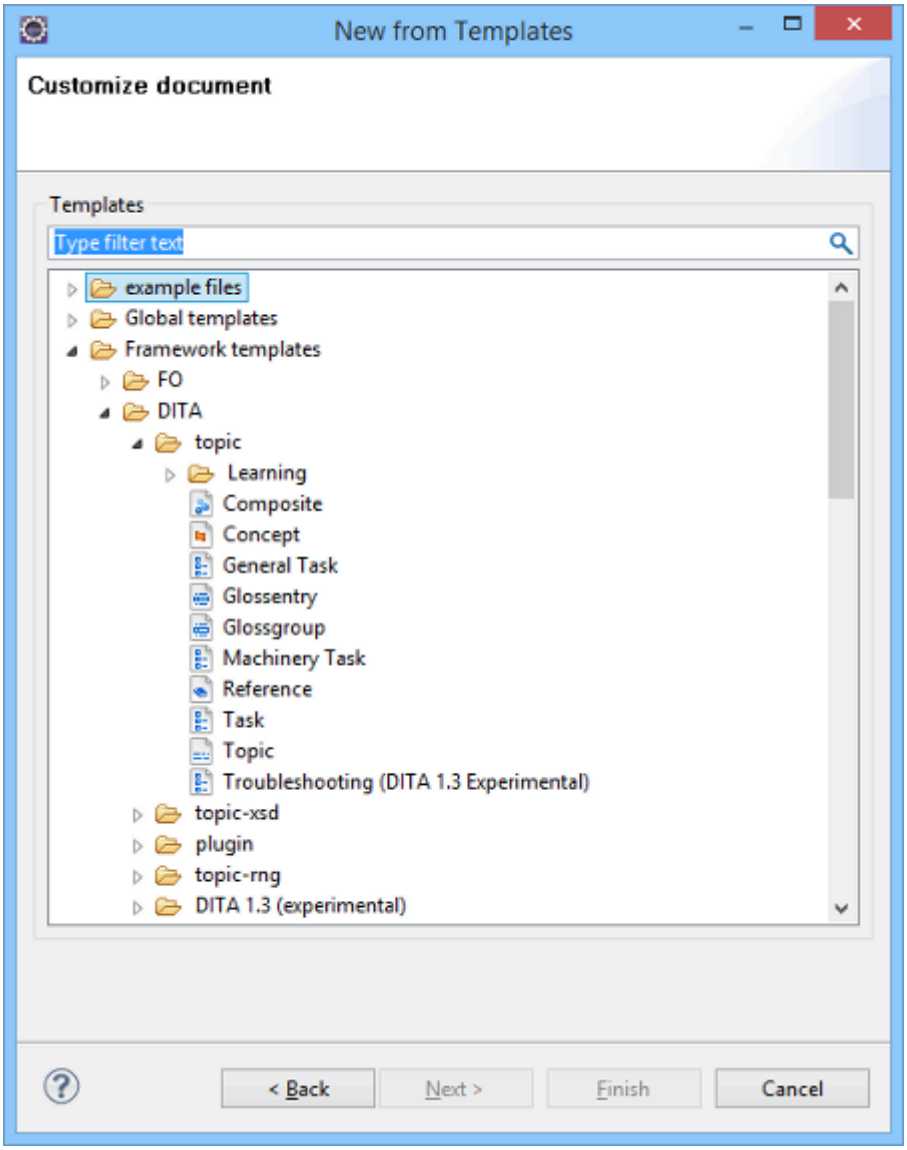
Creating a DITA Topic in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

To create a DITA topic *(on page 1946)*:

1. Select **File > New > Other > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin**, or click the **New** button on the toolbar, and select **New from Templates**.

   Step Result: The **New from Templates Wizard** *(on page 222)* is displayed:

Figure 323. New DITA Document from Templates Wizard



2. Go to **Framework templates > DITA > topic** and select the type of topic that you want to create, then click **Next**.

> **Note:**
> If your organization has created DITA customizations, the appropriate template files may be in another location, and various types of topics may be provided for your use. Check with the person who manages your DITA system to see if you should be using templates from another directory.

3. Select a file path where it will be saved.
4. Click **Finish**.

Result: Your document is opened in the editor. Eventually, you will need to add a reference to it in your DITA map *(on page 1873)*.

Your DITA topic is an XML document, thus all the editing features that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides for editing XML documents *(on page 21)* also apply to DITA topics. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also provides additional specific DITA-related support for working with DITA topics *(on page 1944)*, their associated *DITA maps (on page 1878)*, and for creating DITA output *(on page 2070)*.

Role of Maps

The basic method that DITA uses to express the relationship between topics is through a *DITA map (on page 2230)*. Other relationships between topics, such as cross references, generally need to be made between topics in the same root map. DITA uses maps to determine which topics are part of any output that you create. While customized DITA solutions can use other mechanisms, generally DITA is not used as a way to publish individual topics. Output is created from a map and includes all the topics referenced by the map.

A publication is not always represented by a single map. For instance, if you are writing a book, you might use a submap to create each chapter and then organize the chapters in a main root map to create the book. This helps you to manage your content, offers the possibility of reusing submaps, and segregates content to support multiple people working on the same project.

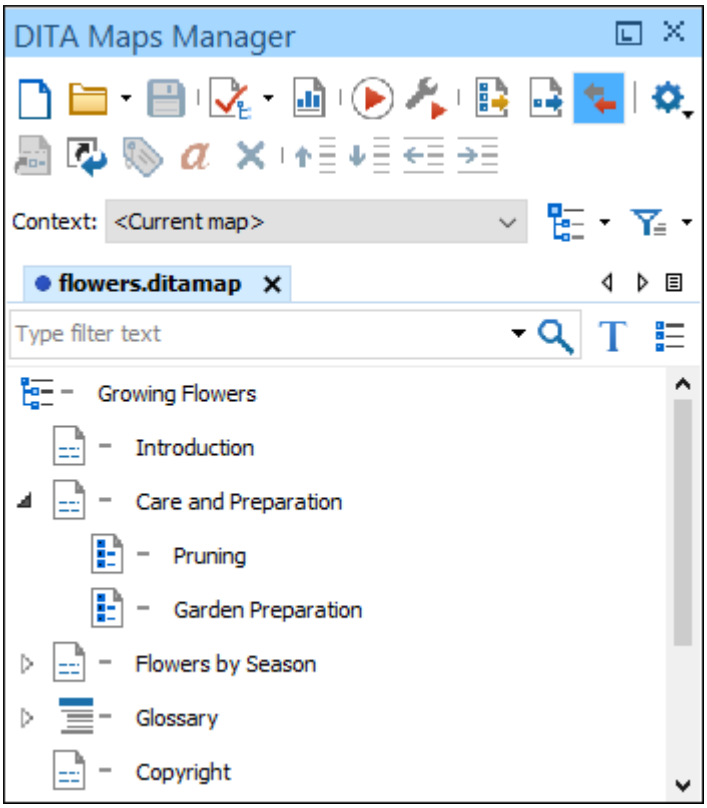
Creating a Map in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

To create a map *(on page 1897)*:

1. Select **File > New > Other > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin**, or click the **New** button on the toolbar, and select **New from Templates**.
2. Go to **Framework templates > DITA Map > map** and select the type of map you want to create.

3. Choose whether you want to open the map in the **Editor** or in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*. Usually, opening it in the **DITA Maps Manager** is the best choice. The **DITA Maps Manager** presents a view of the *DITA map* that is similar to a table of contents.

Figure 324. DITA Maps Manager View



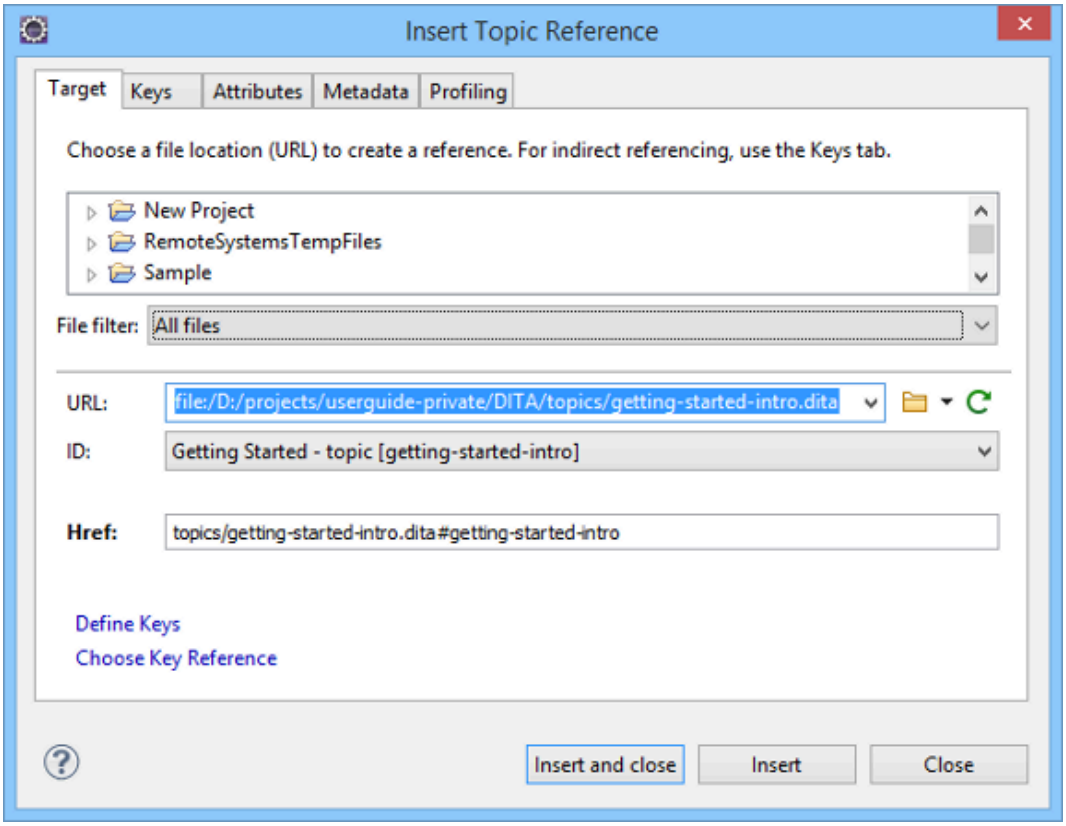
Adding Existing Topics to a Map in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

There are several ways to add a topic reference to a map *(on page 1901)*. Perhaps the easiest method is to add a reference to a topic that is already open in the editor:

1. Open the DITA topic in the main editing window.
2. Right-click the *DITA map* in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* and choose **Reference to the currently edited file** from the **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, or **Insert After** submenu.

   Step Result: This opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* with all of the required fields already filled in for you.

Figure 325. Insert Reference Dialog Box



3. You can fill in additional information in the various tabs in this dialog box or add it to the map later.
4. Select **Insert and close** to add a reference to your topic in the map.
5. Save the *DITA map*.

Adding New Topics to a Map in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

As you add topics to your map, you may want to create a new topic as a child or sibling of another topic. This is usually done at the map level.

To add a new topic to a map *(on page 1901)*, follow these steps:

1. In the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, right-click the node in the current map where you want to add the new topic.
2. Select one of the following actions:
   - **Append Child > New** - Select this action to insert the new topic as a child of the selected node. This action opens a **New** file dialog box *(on page 1947)* that allows you to select the type of document and assists you with naming it. After you have configured your new topic, click **Create**.
   - **Insert Before > New** - Select this action to insert the new topic as a sibling to the current node, before it. This action opens a **New** file dialog box *(on page 1947)* that allows you to select the type of document and assists you with naming it. After you have configured your new topic, click **Create**.

- **Insert After > New** - Select this action to insert the new topic as a sibling to the current node, after it. This action opens a **New** file dialog box *(on page 1947)* that allows you to select the type of document and assists you with naming it. After you have configured your new topic, click **Create**.
- **Duplicate** - Select this action to create a copy of the selected topic and insert it as a sibling. This action opens a dialog box that allows you to choose the file name and location for the newly created copy of the topic. After you have selected the name and path for your new topic, click **OK**.

Note:
The value of the root ID is generated taking the *Use the file name as the value of the root ID attribute* option from the **DITA > Topics** preferences page *(on page 79)* into account. When the option is deselected, a unique ID is generated.

Step Result: The new topic is now referenced (as a `<topicref>`) in the *DITA map* at the location where you inserted it and the new topic is opened in the editor.

3. Save the *DITA map*.

You can also change the order and nesting of topics in the **DITA Maps Manager** view by doing either of the following:

- Select the topic to move while holding down the **Alt** key and use the arrow keys to move it around.
- Use the mouse to drag and drop the topic to the desired location.

The way your parent and child topics are organized in any particular output depends on both the configuration of those topics in the map and the rules of the output transformation that is applied to them. Do not assume that your topics must have the same organization for all output types. The map defines the organization of the topics, not the topics themselves. It is possible to create a variety of maps, each with different organization and configuration options to produce a variety of outputs.

Adding Submaps in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

If you have a large set of information, such as a long book or extensive help system, a single map can become long and difficult to manage. To make it easier to manage, you can break up the content into smaller submaps *(on page 1898)*. A submap might represent a chapter of a book, a section of a user manual, or a page on a website. To build a publication out of these smaller maps, you must add them to a map that represents the overall publication.

To add a child map to the current map *(on page 1898)*:

1. Right-click the parent *DITA map* in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* and choose **Append child > Map reference**.

   Step Result: This opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* with all of the required fields already filled in for you.
2. You can fill in additional information in the various tabs in this dialog box or add it to the map later.
3. Select **Insert and close** to add a reference to your submap in the main map.
4. Save the main *DITA map*.

Validating a Map in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

Just as it is with your individual topics, it is important to validate your maps *(on page 1926)*. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a validation function for *DITA maps* that does more than simply validating that the XML is well-formed. It also does the following:

- Validates all of the relationships defined in the maps.
- Validates all of the files that are included in the map.
- Validates all of the links that are expressed in the files.

Validating the map that describes your entire publication validates all the files that make up the publication and all of the relationships between them.

To validate a map:

1. Click the **Validate and Check for Completeness** button in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*.

   Step Result: This opens the **DITA Map Completeness Check** dialog box *(on page 1927)*.
2. Select any of the various options you want to check.
3. Click **Check** to run the validation process.

Publishing Your Topics in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

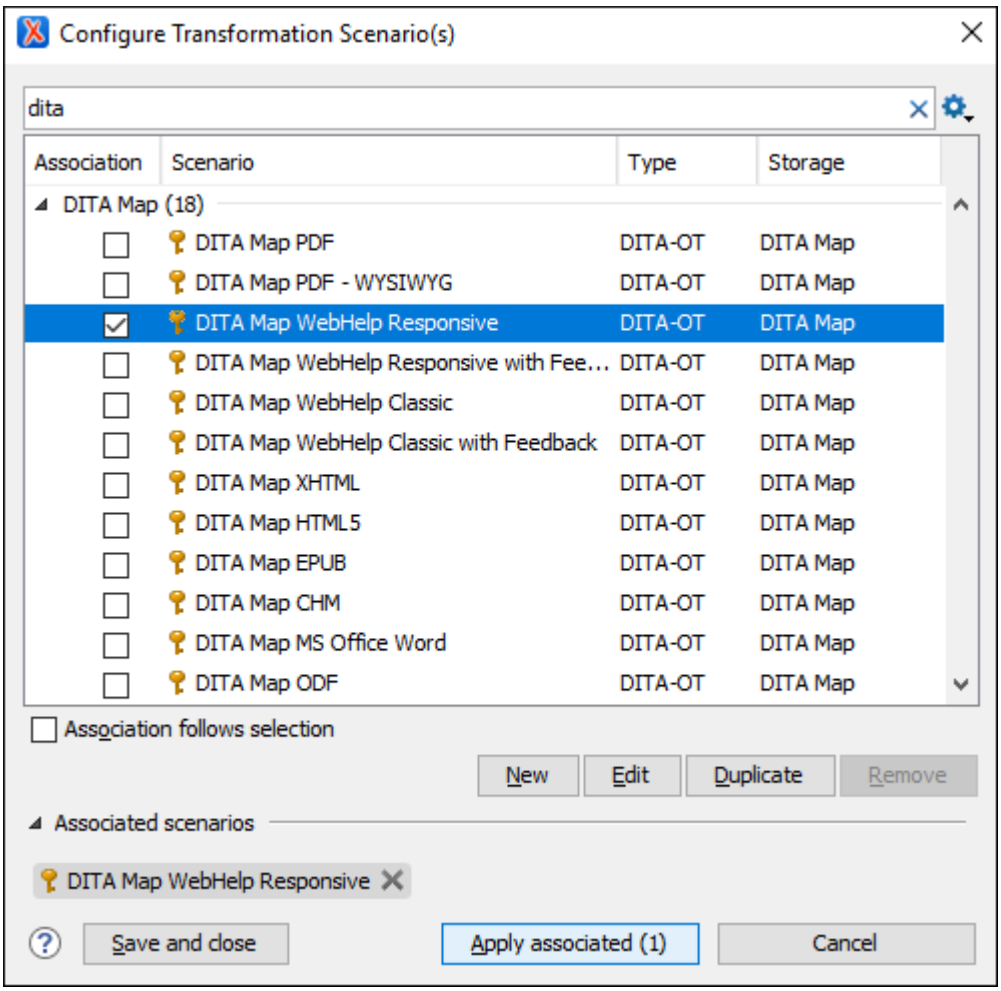
As noted previously, in DITA standards you usually do not publish output from an individual topic. Instead, you create published output *(on page 2070)* by running a DITA transformation on a map. This collects all the topics that are referenced in the map, organizes them, and produces output in a particular format. By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the transformations provided by the **DITA Open Toolkit** for publishing to various output formats (such as PDF, WebHelp or EPUB). Your organization may have created various custom transformations or modified the built-in **DITA Open Toolkit** transformations. In either case, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin manages them by using transformation scenarios.

To publish output for a map:

1. Click the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** button in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*.

   Step Result: This opens the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

   Figure 326. Configure Transformation Scenarios Dialog Box



2. Select the appropriate transformation depending on the type of output you desire.
3. To change or view the configuration or storage options for a transformation scenario, select the transformation and click **Edit**.
4. Click **Apply associated**.

Result: Depending on the configuration of the transformation scenario, when the transformation is finished, your output may automatically be opened in the appropriate application.

Resources

For more information about getting started with DITA and how to work with DITA in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see our compiled collection of DITA-related webinars that are meant to help you with your journey into working with DITA: Webinars: Working with DITA in Oxygen.

Related information

DITA Authoring *(on page 1869)*

Editing XML Documents in Author Mode *(on page 343)*

https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/

Webinars: Working with DITA in Oxygen

Doctales - DITA Introduction

Working with Projects in DITA

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides the ability to organize your DITA resources in projects, the same as with other files. Projects help you manage and organize your files and allow you to perform batch operations (such as validations and transformations) over multiple files or to use Main Files support to rename or move DITA resources *(on page 2174)* while updating the references to them.

To learn how to create a new project and how add resources and manage it, see Creating a New Project *(on page 243)*.

To help you get more familiar with how to use projects in DITA, there are two DITA-specific sample project templates available when using the **New Project** action (available, for example, from the **Project** menu):

- **DITA Project With Editing Customizations** - This sample DITA project imposes custom general settings and an editing behavior using a DITA framework extension. More details can be found in the project's `Readme.html` file.
- **Sample DITA Project** - This sample DITA project is a best practice example that shows how DITA content can be organized to provide a scalable and flexible project structure. More details can be found in the project's `Readme.html` file.

Resources

For more information about working with DITA projects, see our webinar: Working with DITA in Oxygen - Quick Start with the DITA Startup Project.

Related information

Using Projects to Group Documents *(on page 243)*

Working with DITA Maps

In the DITA standard architecture you create documents by collecting topics into maps.

DITA Maps

A *DITA map (on page 2230)* organizes a set of topics into a hierarchy. In most output formats, the structure of the map becomes the structure of the table of contents. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for creating *(on page 1897)* and managing *DITA maps (on page 1900)* through the **DITA Maps**

Manager *(on page 1880)*. There are also specialized types of *DITA maps*, such as a *bookmap (on page 2228)*, which is intended for creating the structure of a book.

Submaps

You do not have to create an entire publication using a single map. It is generally good practice to break up a large publication into several smaller submaps *(on page 1898)* that are easier to manage. You can reuse submaps in multiple publications by including them in each of the main maps. The **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* provides support for easily creating and managing submaps.

Opening a DITA Map

There are several ways to open a *DITA map* and you can choose to open it in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* or in the XML Editor. Use any of the following methods to open a map:

- To open a submap in its own tab in the **DITA Maps Manager**, simply double-click it (or right-click it and select **Open**).
- To open a map in the XML editor from the **DITA Maps Manager**, right-click it and select **Open Map in Editor**.
- Drag a *DITA map* file from your system browser and drop it in the XML editor. This will open the map in the editor.
- To open a map in the **DITA Maps Manager**, you can right-click a map file in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and select **Open in DITA Maps Manager**.

Chunking DITA Maps

By default, many output types place a single topic on each output page. In some cases you may want to output multiple topics as a single output page (also known as chunking) *(on page 1926)*. To support this, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides an **Edit Properties** dialog box *(on page 1916)* that allows you to easily configure the attributes of a topic to control how your table of contents and topics are rendered in the output.

Validating a Map

You should validate your maps *(on page 1926)* to make sure that the individual topics are valid and that the relationships between them are working. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a validation function for *DITA maps* that performs a comprehensive validation of a map and its topics.

Resources

For more information about getting started with DITA and how to work with DITA in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see our compiled collection of DITA-related webinars that are meant to help you with your journey into working with DITA: Webinars: Working with DITA in Oxygen.

Related information

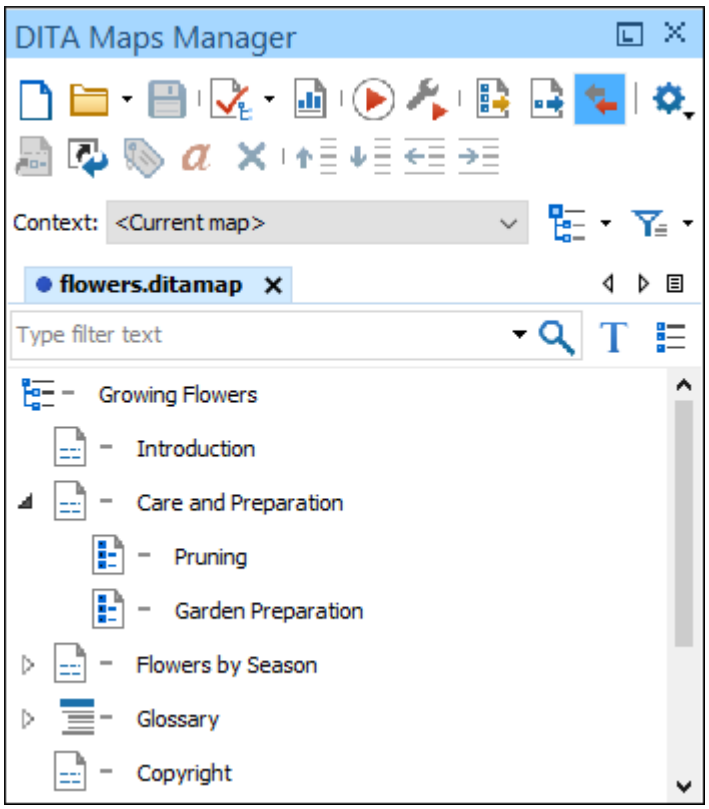
DITA Map Document Type (Framework) *(on page 724)*
DITA Map Author Mode Actions *(on page 1932)*

DITA Maps Manager

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a view for managing and editing *DITA maps*. The **DITA Maps Manager** view presents a *DITA map* as a tree or table of contents. It allows you to navigate the topics and maps, make changes, and apply transformation scenarios to obtain various output formats. By default, it is located to the left of the main editor. If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from the **Window > Show View** menu.

The **DITA Maps Manager** includes a variety of useful actions to help you edit and organize the structure of your *DITA maps* and topics. The actions that are available and their functions depend on the type of nodes that are selected in the **DITA Maps Manager**. If you select multiple sibling nodes, the result of the actions will be applied to all the selected nodes. If you select multiple nodes that are not on the same hierarchical level, the actions will be applied to the parent node and the child nodes will inherit certain attributes from the parent node.

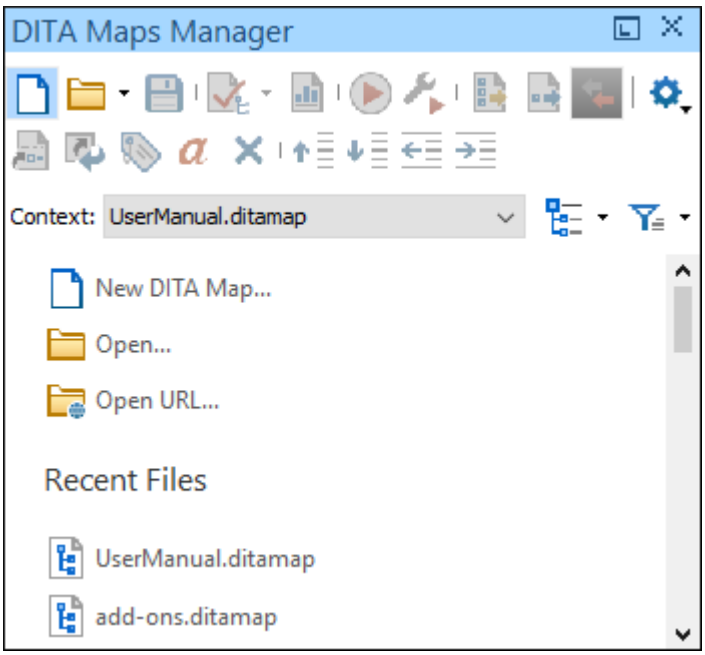
Figure 327. DITA Maps Manager View



An icon that represents its type of DITA resource is displayed on the left side of each node. For example, a DITA **Map** is displayed with the icon, a DITA **Topic** is displayed with , a DITA **Task** is displayed with , etc. Any node that has `processing-role="resource-only"` set in its properties is displayed with a gray dot in the bottom-right corner of the icon ( ).

The title of the DITA resource is also displayed for each node. The displayed title depends on how the referenced resource is configured within the DITA structure. For example, the title could be resolved as the text value inside the referenced topic's `<title>` element or the value of the `@navtitle` attribute specified within the DITA map. For non-DITA resources that are referenced in a DITA map, the file name of the resource is usually displayed for the title. However, it is possible to obtain the title from the referenced non-DITA documents by dynamically converting them using the process described in: Dynamic Word, Excel, OpenAPI, HTML, Markdown to DITA Conversion *(on page 2118)*. In this case, the document title obtained from the conversion process is displayed as the resource title in the **DITA Maps Manager**.

If there are no DITA maps opened in the **DITA Maps Manager** view, the main area contains actions to quickly create or open a DITA map, as well as a list of recent DITA map files that you can click to open in the view.



Opening Maps in the DITA Maps Manager

The **DITA Maps Manager** view supports opening multiple maps at the same time, with each one presented in its own tab. To open a *DITA map* in the **DITA Maps Manager**, use any of the following methods:

- To open a submap in its own tab, simply double-click it (or right-click it and select **Open**).
- Right-click a map file in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and select **Open in DITA Maps Manager**.

Quick Find Filter

When a DITA map is open in the **DITA Maps Manager** view, there is a search field and some filtering options at the top of the view to help you locate particular referenced resources. The filter uses the indexer in **Oxygen** to locate topics that match the entered text that are referenced in the DITA map.

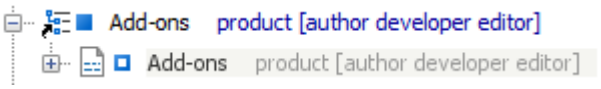
The **Search only in titles** option can be toggled on to filter it to only perform the search within titles, or off to search all content.

The **Display results as a flat list** option can be toggled on to display the results in a list, or off to display the results in the tree. When the results are displayed as a list, you can double-click a resource (or right-click and choose **Locate in DITA map**) to locate the corresponding reference in the DITA map.

Submap Nodes

If your *root map (on page 2234)* (*main DITA map*) references other maps (submaps), they can be expanded and you can navigate their content in the **DITA Maps Manager**.

References within those submaps are not editable, by default, unless you open the submap separately in its own tab. If you want to be able to edit submaps when the main (root/parent) map is open in the **DITA Maps Manager**, go to **Options > Preferences > DITA > Maps** and select the **Allow referenced submaps to be edited** option *(on page 77)*. The references within submap nodes are shown with a gray background if they are not editable.



Moving Nodes in the DITA Maps Manager

You can move topics or nodes within the same map, or other maps, by dragging and dropping them into the desired position. You can arrange the nodes by dragging and dropping one or more nodes at a time. You can arrange multiple topics by dragging them while pressing the **Ctrl** or **Shift** key. Drop operations can be performed before, after, or as child of the targeted node.

Operations include:

Copy

Select the nodes you want to copy and start dragging them. Before dropping them in the appropriate place, press and hold the **Ctrl** key. The mouse pointer changes to a symbol to indicate that a copy operation is being performed.

Move

Select the nodes you want to move and drag and drop them in the appropriate place.

Promote (Alt + LeftArrow) /Demote (Alt + RightArrow)

You can move nodes between child and parent nodes by using the **Promote** (**Alt + LeftArrow**) and **Demote** (**Alt + RightArrow**) operations.

DITA Maps Manager Toolbar

The toolbar includes the following actions (also available in the **DITA Maps** menu) and their availability depend on the nodes that are selected:

New DITA Map

Opens the **New Document** wizard *(on page 222)* that you can use to create a new DITA map document.

Open Drop-down Menu

You can use this drop-down menu to open new *DITA maps* or to reopen recently viewed maps. The drop-down menu contains the following:

- List of recently viewed *DITA maps* that can be selected to reopen them.
- **Clear history** - Clears the history list of the recently viewed *DITA maps*.
- **Open** - Allows you to open the map in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*. You can also open a map by dragging it from the file system explorer and dropping it into the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*.
- **Browse workspace** - Opens a file browser dialog box allowing you to select a file from the local workspace.
- **Open URL** - Displays the **Choose DITA Map** dialog box where you can specify a URL (defined by a protocol, host, resource path, and an optional port) or use the browsing actions in the **Browse for remote file** drop-down menu.

Save (Ctrl + S (Meta + S on macOS))

Saves the current *DITA map*.

Validate and Check for Completeness

Opens the **DITA Map Completeness Check** dialog box where you can configure options for checking the validity and integrity *(on page 1926)* of the map.

Generate Metrics Report

Generate a report that contains statistics *(on page 2091)* about the entire DITA map in HTML format.

Apply Transformation Scenario(s)

Applies the DITA Map transformation scenario *(on page 797)* that is associated with the current map.

Configure Transformation Scenario(s)

Opens the **Configure Transformation Scenarios(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)* where you can edit or create transformation scenarios or associate a DITA Map transformation scenario *(on page 854)* with the current map.

Open Map in Editor with Resolved Topics

Opens the *DITA map* in the main editor area with content from all topic references expanded in-place. Referenced content is presented as read-only by default. To edit it, you must use the **Edit Reference** contextual menu action to open the source topic that contains the referenced content.

If you want to edit the referenced topics directly without having to open the source document, go to **Options > Preferences > Editor > Edit Modes > Author** and select the **Allow referenced content to be edited** option *(on page 130)*. Since a single topic may be referenced in multiple places in the DITA map, be careful not to make conflicting changes to that topic.

> **Tip:**
> If you want to print the expanded content, you should consider changing selecting **+ Print ready** from the **Styles** drop-down menu on the toolbar.

Open Map in Editor

For complex operations that cannot be performed in the simplified **DITA Maps Manager** view (for instance, editing a relationship table) you can open the map in the main editing area.

> **Note:**
> You can also use this action to open referenced *DITA maps* in the **Editor**.

Link with Editor

Toggles the synchronization between the file path of the current editor and the selected topic reference in the **DITA Maps Manager** view. If enabled, it results in the following types of synchronizations:

- If you select a topic tab in the main editing area and it is referenced in the map currently opened in the **DITA Maps Manager**, the reference to that topic is selected in the **DITA Maps Manager**.
- If you have a map opened in both the **DITA Maps Manager** and the main editor, selecting the map tab in the main editing area opens that map in the **DITA Maps Manager**.
- If you have a map opened in both the **DITA Maps Manager** and the main editor (**Author** mode), selecting one or more *topicrefs* in the **DITA Maps Manager** will also select the same *topicrefs* in the main editor.
- If you have a map opened in both the **DITA Maps Manager** and the main editor (**Author** mode), selecting one or more *topicrefs* in the main editor will also select the same *topicrefs* in the **DITA Maps Manager**.

Settings

Show extended toolbar

Toggles whether or not the extended toolbar will be displayed in the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar.

Show context toolbar

Toggles whether or not the **Context** option *(on page 1885)* will be displayed in the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar.

Show topic titles

Toggles how topics are presented in the **DITA Maps Manager**. If selected, the title of each topic is shown. Otherwise, the file path (value of the `@href` attribute) for each topic is shown.

Show key reference values

Toggles how key references are presented in the **DITA Maps Manager**. If selected, the value of the `@keyref` attribute for each key reference is shown.

Context Root Map Drop-down menu

The drop-down menu displayed after **Context** can be used to specify the *DITA root map (on page 2234)*) that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses to define a hierarchical structure of submaps and to establish a *key space (on page 2231)* that defines the keys that are propagated throughout the entire map structure. For more information, see Selecting a Root Map *(on page 1897)*.

Choose context root map browsing/search menu

You can use this drop-down menu to browse or search for *root maps* with the following choices:

- **Browse for local file** - Opens a local file browser dialog box, allowing you to select a local *root map*.
- **Browse workspace** - Allows you to select a *root map* from the local workspace.
- **Browse for remote file** - Displays the **Open using SFTP** dialog box *(on page 237)* that allows you to select a remotely stored *root map*.
- **Browse for archived file** - Displays the **Archive Browser** *(on page 1458)* that allows you to browse the content of an archive and choose a *root map*.
- **Browse Data Source Explorer** - Opens the **Data Source Explorer** *(on page 1464)* that allows you to browse the data sources defined in the Data Sources preferences page *(on page 67)*.

> **Tip:**
> You can open the **Data Sources** preferences page by using the **Configure Database Sources** shortcut from the **Open URL** dialog box.

- **Search for file** - Displays the **Find Resource** dialog box to search for a *root map*.
- **Choose context from main files** - Allows you to choose a context root map from the DITA maps and the DITA-OT project files that are set in the Main Files *(on page 2174)* folder.

Profiling/Conditional Text Drop-down Menu

You can use this drop-down menu to select and apply a defined profiling condition set *(on page 2134)* to filter the content based on that condition set. The drop-down menu also contains the following other options:

- **Show Profiling Colors and Styles** - Select this option to turn on conditional styling. To configure the colors and styles open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author > Profiling/Conditional Text > Colors and Styles**.
- **Show Profiling Attributes** - Select this option to display the values of the profiling attributes at the end of the titles of topic references. When selected, the values of the profiling attributes are displayed in both the **DITA Maps Manager** view and in the **Author** view.
- **Show Excluded Content** - Controls if the content filtered out by a particular condition set is hidden or grayed-out in the editor area and in the **Outline** *(on page 301)* and **DITA Maps Manager** views. When this option is selected, the content filtered by the currently applied condition set is grayed-out. To show only the content that matches the currently applied condition set, deselect this option.
- **Profiling Settings** - Opens the preferences page for adding and editing the profiling conditions that you can apply in the **DITA Maps Manager** view and the **Author** mode editing pane. When a profiling condition set *(on page 425)* is applied, the keys that are defined in the *DITA map* are gathered by filtering out the excluded content.

Insert Topic Reference

Opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* that allows you to insert references to targets such as topics, maps, topic sets, or key definitions.

Refresh References

You can use this action to manually trigger a refresh and update of all referenced documents. This action is useful when the referenced documents are modified externally. When they are modified and saved from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, the *DITA map* is updated automatically.

Edit Properties

Opens the **Edit Properties** dialog box that allows you to configure the properties of a selected node. For more details about this dialog box, see Edit Properties Dialog Box *(on page 1916)*.

Edit Attributes

Opens a small in-place editor that allows you to edit the attributes of a selected node. You can find more details about this action in the Attributes View in Author Mode *(on page 381)* topic.

Delete

Deletes the selected node.

Move Up

Moves the selected node up within the *DITA map* tree.

Move Down

Moves the selected node down within the *DITA map* tree.

Promote

Moves the selected node up one level to the level of its parent node.

Demote

Moves the selected node down one level to the level of its child nodes.

Contextual Menu of the DITA Maps Manager

Root Map

The following actions can be invoked from the contextual menu on the *root map (on page 2234)* of an opened *DITA map* (many of them are also available in the**DITA Maps** menu):

Open Map in Editor

For complex operations that cannot be performed in the simplified **DITA Maps Manager** view (for instance, editing a relationship table) you can open the map in the main editing area.

Open Map in Editor with Resolved Topics

Opens the *DITA map* in the main editor area with content from all topic references, expanded in-place. Content from the referenced topics is presented as read-only and you have to use the contextual menu action **Edit Reference** to open the topic for editing.

Export DITA Map

Opens a dialog box that allows you to choose a destination for exporting the *DITA map*. It also includes an **Export as Zip archive** option that allows you to package the *DITA map* as a zip archive. The result will contain all directly and indirectly referenced topics from the DITA Map.

Find Unreferenced Resources

Allows you to search for orphaned resources that are not referenced in the *DITA maps*.

Edit Properties

Opens the **Edit Properties** dialog box that allows you to configure the properties of a selected node. For more details about this dialog box, see Edit Properties Dialog Box *(on page 1916)*.

Fast Create Topics

Opens the **Fast Create Topics** dialog box *(on page 1949)* that allows you to quickly create multiple skeleton topics at once and you can specify their hierarchical structure within the *DITA map (on page 2230)*.

Append Child submenu

Container sub-menu for a number of actions that create a map node as a child of the currently selected node:

- **New** - Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure some options for inserting a new topic *(on page 1946)*.
- **Reference** - Inserts a reference to a topic file. You can find more details about this action in the Inserting References *(on page 1906)* topic.
- **Reference to the currently edited file** - Inserts a reference to the currently edited file. You can find more details about this action in the Inserting References *(on page 1906)* topic.
- **Key Reference** - Opens an **Insert Key Definition** dialog box that allows you to insert a *targeted key definition (on page 1916)* (for example, to target a resource such as an image or external link).
- **Key Reference with Keyword** - Opens an **Insert Key Definition** dialog box that allows you to define a key and a value inside a *keyword (on page 1915)*.
- A set of actions that open the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* that allows you to insert various reference specializations (such as **Anchor Reference**, **Glossary Reference**, **Map Reference**, **Navigation Reference**, **Topic Group**, **Topic Head**, **Topic Reference**, **Topic Set**, **Topic Set Reference**).

Search References

Searches all references to the current topic in the entire *DITA map (on page 2230)*. It also reports references that are defined as related links in relationship tables. If you have enabled Main Files support *(on page 2174)*, it also searches for references in the DITA maps added to the Main Files folder.

Refactoring submenu

The following actions are available from this submenu when invoked from a root map:

Rename resource

Allows you to change the name of a resource linked in the edited *DITA map (on page 1903)* and you have the option of updating all the references to the renamed DITA resource. If you have enabled Main Files support *(on page 2174)*, it also searches for references in the DITA maps added to the Main Files folder and it provides the option of updating all the references even for non-DITA resources.

Move resource

Allows you to change the location on disk of a resource linked in the edited *DITA map (on page 1903)* and you have the option of

updating all the references to the moved DITA resources. If you have enabled Main Files support *(on page 2174)*, it also searches for references in the DITA maps added to the Main Files folder and it provides the option of updating all the references even for non-DITA resources.

Rename Key

Use this operation to rename a key. It also updates all references to it. Note that it does not work on DITA 1.3 key scopes.

Convert to Concept

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Concept topic type (for example, Topic to Concept).

Convert to General Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA General Task topic type (for example, Task to General Task). A DITA *General Task* is a less restrictive alternative to the *Strict Task* information type.

Convert to Reference

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Reference topic type (for example, Topic to Reference).

Convert to Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Task topic type (for example, Topic to Task).

Convert to Topic

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Topic (for example, Task to Topic).

Convert to Troubleshooting

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Troubleshooting topic type (for example, Topic to Troubleshooting).

Generate IDs

Use this operation to automatically generate unique IDs for elements.

Other XML Refactoring Actions

For your convenience, the last 5 XML Refactoring tool operations *(on page 587)* that were finished or previewed will also appear in this submenu.

XML Refactoring

Opens the XML Refactoring tool wizard *(on page 587)* that presents refactoring operations to assist you with managing the structure of your XML documents.

Check Spelling in Files

Allows you to spell check multiple files *(on page 270)*.

Paste

Allows you to paste content from the clipboard into the *DITA map*.

Paste Before

Pastes the content of the clipboard (only if it is a part of the *DITA map*) before the currently selected *DITA map* node.

Paste After

Pastes the content of the clipboard (only if it is a part of the *DITA map*) after the currently selected *DITA map* node.

Show Feedback Comments Manager

Opens the **Feedback Comments Manager** view. This view is for those who use **Oxygen Feedback** to provide a commenting component in WebHelp output. This view makes it possible to see all the comments added by users in WebHelp output directly in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Expand All

Allows you to expand the entire *DITA map* structure.

Collapse All

Allows you to collapse the entire *DITA map* structure.

Editable Child Nodes

The following actions are available when the contextual menu is invoked on an editable child node of a *DITA map*:

Note:
If multiple nodes are selected, the availability of the actions depends on the nodes that are selected.

Note:
Topic references inside submaps are not editable by default. If you want to be able to edit submaps when the main (root/parent) map is open in the **DITA Maps Manager**, go to **Options > Preferences > DITA > Maps** and select the **Allow referenced submaps to be edited** option *(on page 77)*.

Open

Opens the selected resource in the editor.

Edit Properties

Opens the **Edit Properties** dialog box that allows you to configure the properties of a selected node. For more details about this dialog box, see Edit Properties Dialog Box *(on page 1916)*.

Fast Create Topics

Opens the **Fast Create Topics** dialog box *(on page 1949)* that allows you to quickly create multiple skeleton topics at once and you can specify their hierarchical structure within the *DITA map (on page 2230)*.

Append Child submenu

Container sub-menu for a number of actions that create a map node as a child of the currently selected node:

- **New** - Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure some options for inserting a new topic *(on page 1946)*.
- **Reference** - Inserts a reference to a topic file. You can find more details about this action in the Inserting References *(on page 1906)* topic.
- **Reference to the currently edited file** - Inserts a reference to the currently edited file. You can find more details about this action in the Inserting References *(on page 1906)* topic.
- **Key Reference** - Opens an **Insert Key Definition** dialog box that allows you to insert a *targeted key definition (on page 1916)* (for example, to target a resource such as an image or external link).
- **Key Reference with Keyword** - Opens an **Insert Key Definition** dialog box that allows you to define a key and a value inside a *keyword (on page 1915)*.
- A set of actions that open the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* that allows you to insert various reference specializations (such as **Anchor Reference**, **Glossary Reference**, **Map Reference**, **Navigation Reference**, **Topic Group**, **Topic Head**, **Topic Reference**, **Topic Set**, **Topic Set Reference**).

Insert Before submenu

Container sub-menus for a number of actions that create a map node as a sibling of the currently selected node, above the current node in the map:

- **New** - Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure some options for inserting a new topic *(on page 1946)*.
- **Reference** - Inserts a reference to a topic file. You can find more details about this action in the Inserting References *(on page 1906)* topic.

- **Reference to the currently edited file** - Inserts a reference to the currently edited file. You can find more details about this action in the Inserting References *(on page 1906)* topic.
- **Key Reference** - Opens an **Insert Key Definition** dialog box that allows you to insert a *targeted key definition (on page 1916)* (for example, to target a resource such as an image or external link).
- **Key Reference with Keyword** - Opens an **Insert Key Definition** dialog box that allows you to define a key and a value inside a *keyword (on page 1915)*.
- A set of actions that open the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* that allows you to insert various reference specializations (such as **Anchor Reference**, **Glossary Reference**, **Map Reference**, **Navigation Reference**, **Topic Group**, **Topic Head**, **Topic Reference**, **Topic Set**, **Topic Set Reference**).

Insert After submenu

Container sub-menus for a number of actions that create a map node as a sibling of the currently selected node, below the current node in the map:

- **New** - Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure some options for inserting a new topic *(on page 1946)*.
- **Reference** - Inserts a reference to a topic file. You can find more details about this action in the Inserting References *(on page 1906)* topic.
- **Reference to the currently edited file** - Inserts a reference to the currently edited file. You can find more details about this action in the Inserting References *(on page 1906)* topic.
- **Key Reference** - Opens an **Insert Key Definition** dialog box that allows you to insert a *targeted key definition (on page 1916)* (for example, to target a resource such as an image or external link).
- **Key Reference with Keyword** - Opens an **Insert Key Definition** dialog box that allows you to define a key and a value inside a *keyword (on page 1915)*.
- A set of actions that open the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* that allows you to insert various reference specializations (such as **Anchor Reference**, **Glossary Reference**, **Map Reference**, **Navigation Reference**, **Topic Group**, **Topic Head**, **Topic Reference**, **Topic Set**, **Topic Set Reference**).

Search References

Searches all references to the current topic in the entire *DITA map (on page 2230)*. It also reports references that are defined as related links in relationship tables. If you have enabled Main Files support *(on page 2174)*, it also searches for references in the DITA maps added to the Main Files folder.

Refactoring submenu

The following actions are available from this submenu:

Convert Markdown to DITA Topic (Available for Markdown documents)

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure options for converting the Markdown document into a DITA topic *(on page 2013)*.

Rename resource

Allows you to change the name of a resource linked in the edited *DITA map (on page 1903)* and you have the option of updating all the references to the renamed DITA resource. If you have enabled Main Files support *(on page 2174)*, it also searches for references in the DITA maps added to the Main Files folder and it provides the option of updating all the references even for non-DITA resources.

Move resource

Allows you to change the location on disk of a resource linked in the edited *DITA map (on page 1903)* and you have the option of updating all the references to the moved DITA resources. If you have enabled Main Files support *(on page 2174)*, it also searches for references in the DITA maps added to the Main Files folder and it provides the option of updating all the references even for non-DITA resources.

Extract to New DITA Map

Use this operation to extract editable topics into a new *DITA map*. The operation will open a map creation dialog box where you can select the type of map and configure the title or file name. Click **Create** to complete the operation and a new DITA map will be inserted at the location where the action was invoked with the selected topic references moved into the new map.

Rename Key

Use this operation to rename a key. It also updates all references to it. Note that it does not work on DITA 1.3 key scopes.

Convert Nested Topics to New Topics (Available from the contextual menu of editable maps/nodes in the DITA Maps Manager *(on page 1880)*)

Use this operation on topics that contain nested `<topic>` elements to convert each nested topic to a new topic. Also, the new topics are added in the **DITA Maps Manager** as the first child topics of the original topic.

Convert Sections to New Topics (Available from the contextual menu of editable maps/nodes in the DITA Maps Manager *(on page 1880)*)

Use this operation on topics that contain multiple sections to convert each section to a new topic. Also, the new topics are added in the **DITA Maps Manager** as the first child topics of the original topic.

Note:
As long as the DITA topic is of the type *topic*, *concept*, or *reference*, the new topics that will be created from the inner sections will retain the same topic type as the original topic.

Convert to Concept

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Concept topic type (for example, Topic to Concept).

Convert to General Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA General Task topic type (for example, Task to General Task). A DITA *General Task* is a less restrictive alternative to the *Strict Task* information type.

Convert to Reference

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Reference topic type (for example, Topic to Reference).

Convert to Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Task topic type (for example, Topic to Task).

Convert to Topic

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Topic (for example, Task to Topic).

Convert to Troubleshooting

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Troubleshooting topic type (for example, Topic to Troubleshooting).

Generate IDs

Use this operation to automatically generate unique IDs for elements.

Other XML Refactoring Actions

For your convenience, the last 5 XML Refactoring tool operations *(on page 587)* that were finished or previewed will also appear in this submenu.

XML Refactoring

Opens the XML Refactoring tool wizard *(on page 587)* that presents refactoring operations to assist you with managing the structure of your XML documents.

Apply all default quick fix proposals

Opens the **Apply all default quick fix proposals** tool *(on page 603)* that can be used to apply quick fix proposals for all reported validation errors in the selected documents when one or more quick fix proposals have been detected for reported validation errors.

Check Spelling in Files

Allows you to spell check multiple files *(on page 270)*.

Cut

Deletes the currently selected node and copies it to the clipboard.

Copy

Copies the currently selected node to the clipboard.

Paste

Allows you to paste content from the clipboard into the *DITA map*.

Paste Before

Pastes the content of the clipboard (only if it is a part of the *DITA map*) before the currently selected *DITA map* node.

Paste After

Pastes the content of the clipboard (only if it is a part of the *DITA map*) after the currently selected *DITA map* node.

Delete

Deletes the currently selected node from the *DITA map*.

Remove from Disk

This action can be used to remove the selected resource(s) from disk. Selecting this action will open a confirmation dialog box where you can also choose to remove the descendants by selecting the **Also remove all descendants** option. If you proceed, a search for references is triggered. If multiple references are detected for any of the selected resources, you will have the option to review them since this would lead to broken links. If you have enabled Main Files support *(on page 2174)*, it also searches for references in the DITA maps added to the Main Files folder.

Organize

Allows you to organize the *DITA map* with the several submenu actions:

- **Move Up** - Moves the selected node up within the *DITA map* tree.
- **Move Down** - Moves the selected node down within the *DITA map* tree.
- **Promote** - Moves the selected node up one level to the level of its parent node.
- **Demote** - Moves the selected node down one level to the level of its child nodes.

Expand All

Allows you to expand the entire *DITA map* structure.

Collapse All

Allows you to collapse the entire *DITA map* structure.

Other Nodes

The following additional actions are available when the contextual menu is invoked from other nodes, such as a *submap* node or a relationship table:

Open Map in Editor (available when invoking on a submap)

Opens the currently selected *DITA map* in the editor.

Open parent DITA map (available when invoking on a read-only topic reference or a submap reference)

Opens the parent *DITA map* of the currently selected reference in the **DITA Maps Manager**.

Edit Attributes (only available for relationship table nodes)

Opens a small in-place editor that allows you to edit the attributes of a selected node. You can find more details about this action in the Attributes View in Author Mode *(on page 381)* topic.

Edit Profiling Attributes (only available for relationship table nodes)

Allows you to change the profiling attributes *(on page 419)* defined on the selected node.

Resources

For more information about the **DITA Maps Manager** view and many of its features, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/ozFZz6YZMCY

Related information

DITA Map Validation and Completeness Check *(on page 1926)*
DITA Map Author Mode Actions *(on page 1932)*

Creating a Map

To create a *DITA map (on page 2230)*, *subject scheme map (on page 2234)*, *bookmap (on page 2228)*, or other types of *DITA maps*, follow these steps:

1. Use the **New Document** wizard *(on page 222)* to start creating your map.

   > **Tip:**
   > If you want the *map* to be a submap, you can create it the same way by right-clicking the place in the current map where you want to add it (in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*) and selecting **New** from the **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, or **Insert After** submenu.

2. Select one of the **DITA Map** templates from the **Framework templates** folder.
3. Click the **Next** button.
4. Select a parent folder and the file name and click **Finish**.
5. Save the map after opening it in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* or the Editor.

Related Information:
Customizing Profiling Values with a Subject Scheme Map *(on page 2143)*
Managing DITA Maps *(on page 1900)*

Selecting a Root Map

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to select a *root map (on page 2234)* (a main *DITA map (on page 2230)*) that defines a hierarchical structure of submaps and establishes a *key space (on page 2231)* that defines the keys used in all the other *DITA maps* and topics in the project. Specifying the correct *root map* helps to prevent validation problems when you work with *keyrefs* and also acts as the foundation for content completion. All the *keys* that are defined in a *root map* are available in the submaps that are contained within the *root map*.

There are several ways to select or change the *root map*:

- The easiest method is to use the **Context** drop-down menu *(on page 1885)* on the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar to select the appropriate *context root map* that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses to define a hierarchical structure of submaps and to establish a *key space (on page 2231)* that defines the keys that are propagated throughout the entire map structure.
- You can use the **Choose context root map** drop-down on the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar to browse or search for *root maps* with the following choices:
  - **Browse for local file** - Opens a local file browser dialog box, allowing you to select a local *root map*.
  - **Browse workspace** - Allows you to select a *root map* from the local workspace.

- **Browse for remote file** - Displays the **Open using SFTP** dialog box *(on page 237)* that allows you to select a remotely stored *root map*.
- **Browse for archived file** - Displays the **Archive Browser** *(on page 1458)* that allows you to browse the content of an archive and choose a *root map*.
- **Browse Data Source Explorer** - Opens the **Data Source Explorer** *(on page 1464)* that allows you to browse the data sources defined in the Data Sources preferences page *(on page 67)*.

  > **Tip:**
  > You can open the **Data Sources** preferences page by using the **Configure Database Sources** shortcut from the **Open URL** dialog box.

- **Search for file** - Displays the **Find Resource** dialog box to search for a *root map*.
- **Choose context from main files** - Allows you to choose a context root map from the DITA maps and the DITA-OT project files that are set in the Main Files *(on page 2174)* folder.

- If you insert a *key reference* using the **Cross Reference** action from the **Link** drop-down menu (from the toolbar or **Link** submenu of the contextual menu) and keys are not gathered from the expected *DITA map*, you can change the *root map* by using the **Change Root Map** link in the **Choose Key** dialog box that is opened when you click the **Choose Key Reference** button.
- If you insert a *content key reference* or *key reference* using the **Reuse Content** action (from the toolbar, **DITA** menu, or **Reuse** submenu of the contextual menu) and keys are not gathered from the expected *DITA map*, you can change the *root map* by using the **Change Root Map** link in the **Choose Key** dialog box that is opened when you click the **Choose Key Reference** button.

Creating DITA Submaps

You can break up a large *DITA map (on page 2230)* into more manageable pieces by creating submaps. A submap is simply a *DITA map* that is included by another *DITA map*. There is no separate markup for a submap.

For example, if you are creating a book, you might use one submap for each chapter of the book. If you are reusing a set of topics in multiple publications, you might collect them into a map and reuse the map as a submap in multiple other maps, rather than referencing the topics individually from the new maps.

You add a submap to a map the same way that you would add a new topic or insert an existing topic into a map *(on page 1901)*, except you choose a map rather than a topic to create or add. When adding a submap to a map make sure that you use a `<mapref>` element or a `<topicref>` element with the `@format` attribute set to `ditamap`. In most cases, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin takes care of this for you.

Adding a Submap to a Map

To add a submap to a map:

1. Right-click the place in the current map where you want to add the new submap.
2. To insert the submap as a child of the selected node, select **Append Child > New**. To insert the submap as a sibling to the current node, select **Insert After > New** or **Insert Before > New**.

   Step Result: This opens a **New** DITA file dialog box *(on page 1946)* that allows you to select the type of document and assists you with naming it.
3. Select the type of map in one of the folders inside the **DITA Map** folder and give it a name (the file should have a `.ditamap` file extension).
4. Click **Create** to insert the submap.

You can manage and move submaps the same as you would with topics. They can also be expanded and you can navigate their content in the **DITA Maps Manager** when the root (main) DITA map is open, but the references within those submaps are not editable, by default, unless you open the submap separately in its own tab.

Tip:
If you want to be able to edit submaps when the main (root/parent) map is open in the **DITA Maps Manager**, go to **Options > Preferences > DITA > Maps** and select the **Allow referenced submaps to be edited** option *(on page 77)*.

Related Information:
Managing DITA Maps *(on page 1900)*

Creating a Bookmap in DITA

If you want to create a traditional book in DITA, you can use a *bookmap (on page 2228)* to organize your topics into a book. A DITA *bookmap* is a specialized type of map, intended for creating output that is structured like a book. A *bookmap* allows you to add book-specific elements such as `<frontmatter>`, `<part>`, `<chapter>`, `<appendix>`, and `<backmatter>` to the map. How these book-specific elements are processed for publication is up to the processing script for each media. See the DITA documentation for details.

You can find additional support for creating books in DITA in the DITA for Publishers plugin, which is included with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

To create a book in DITA using a *bookmap*, follow these steps:

1. Create a new *bookmap (on page 1899)* (**File > New > Framework templates > DITA Map > map > Bookmap**). If you want the *bookmap* to be a submap, you can create it the same way by right-clicking the place in the current map where you want to add it (in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*) and selecting **New** from the **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, or **Insert After** submenus.
2. Create the structure of your book by adding the appropriate book sections and defining containers for chapters and any appendices. To add sections to a *bookmap*, or children to a section, right-click the *bookmap* or section icon and choose any of the reference actions in the **Append child** menu. The

selections offered in the menu will adjust depending on the element they are applied to. Consult the DITA documentation to fully understand the structure of a DITA *bookmap* and where to create each element.

3. Create special elements such as an index *(on page 1924)* and table of contents *(on page 1923)*. The index and table of contents will be generated by the build process, based on the content of the map and the topics it points to.
4. Add topics *(on page 1901)* to your chapters to add content to your book. You may find it easier to manage if you use submaps *(on page 1898)* to create the content of your chapters. This keeps your *bookmap* from becoming long and difficult to manage.

Managing DITA Maps

This section includes various topics that describe how you can manage *DITA maps* and resources. You may want to manage your *DITA maps (on page 2230)* in a variety of ways, including:

- Change the order and nesting of topics in a map.
- Add topics to a map.
- Insert various types of references in a map.
- Find, move, or rename resources in a map.
- Change other properties of the items in a map.
- Use the Edit Properties dialog box to manage attributes, keys, metadata, or add profiling to any section of a map.

Resources

For more information about the **DITA Maps Manager** view and many of its features, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/ozFZz6YZMCY

Change the Order of Topics in DITA Maps

You can change the order and nesting of the topics in a map in several ways:

- By dragging and dropping topics within the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*.
- By showing the extended **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar (click the **Settings** icon on the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar and select the extended toolbar) and then using the node moving buttons ( ) on the toolbar to move topics around in the map.

To understand how to organize topics in a *DITA map* using the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, you can examine and experiment with the sample map called `flowers.ditamap`, located in the `[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]/samples/dita` folder.

Adding Topics to a DITA Map

When you are working in DITA, there are several approaches that you can use to create topics and maps. You can start by first creating topics and then assembling your finished topics into one or more documents by creating one or more maps, or you can start by creating a map and then adding new topics to it as you work.

The topics-first approach is generally more appropriate if you intend to do a lot of content reuse, as it encourages you to think of each topic as an independent unit that can be combined with other topics in various ways. The map-first approach will be more familiar to you if you are used to creating books or manuals as a whole. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin supports both approaches.

A *DITA map (on page 2230)* organizes content hierarchically, so you can add a topic as a child of the map root element or as a child or sibling of any item already in the map. Therefore, the first step to adding a topic to a map is always to choose the place it will be inserted into the map.

Adding Existing Topics to a Map

At the XML-level, a topic is added to a map by adding a reference to the map that points to the topic. There are a variety of reference types that you can use. The default type is the `<topicref>` element. See the DITA documentation for the full range of reference elements and their uses. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides several tools for inserting reference elements into a map:

Using the Insert Reference Dialog Box

The **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* allows you to create various reference types and configure the most commonly used attributes. You can open the **Insert Reference** dialog box with any of the following methods:

- Right-click an item in the current map where you want to add the reference, select **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, or **Insert After** and select the type of reference to enter.
- If the topic you want to add is currently open in the editor, you can right-click an item in the current map where you want to add the reference and select **Reference to the currently edited file**.
- Selecting an item in the map and click the **Insert Reference** button from the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar.
- Select **Insert Reference** from the **DITA Maps** menu.

Dragging and Dropping a File into the DITA Maps Manager

You can add a topic to a *DITA map* by dragging and dropping the file into the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*. You can drag and drop files from any of the following:

- Your OS file system explorer.
- The **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*.

Adding topics this way will not open the **Insert Reference** dialog box, but you can adjust all the same properties by invoking the contextual menu from the topic and selecting **Edit Properties**.

Adding a New Topic to a Map

To add a new topic to a map, follow these steps:

1. In the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, right-click the node in the current map where you want to add the new topic.
2. Select one of the following actions:
   - **Append Child > New** - Select this action to insert the new topic as a child of the selected node. This action opens a **New** file dialog box *(on page 1947)* that allows you to select the type of document and assists you with naming it. After you have configured your new topic, click **Create**.
   - **Insert Before > New** - Select this action to insert the new topic as a sibling to the current node, before it. This action opens a **New** file dialog box *(on page 1947)* that allows you to select the type of document and assists you with naming it. After you have configured your new topic, click **Create**.
   - **Insert After > New** - Select this action to insert the new topic as a sibling to the current node, after it. This action opens a **New** file dialog box *(on page 1947)* that allows you to select the type of document and assists you with naming it. After you have configured your new topic, click **Create**.
   - **Duplicate** - Select this action to create a copy of the selected topic and insert it as a sibling. This action opens a dialog box that allows you to choose the file name and location for the newly created copy of the topic. After you have selected the name and path for your new topic, click **OK**.

     Note:
     The value of the root ID is generated taking the *Use the file name as the value of the root ID attribute* option from the **DITA > Topics** preferences page *(on page 79)* into account. When the option is deselected, a unique ID is generated.

   Step Result: The new topic is now referenced (as a `<topicref>`) in the *DITA map* at the location where you inserted it and the new topic is opened in the editor.
3. Save the *DITA map*.

Adding Multiple Skeleton Topics at Once

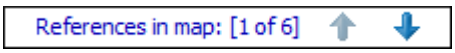
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a feature in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* that allows you to quickly create multiple skeleton topics at once and you can specify their hierarchical structure within the *DITA map (on page 2230)*.

To access this feature, right-click a node in the **DITA Maps Manager** where you want the new topics to be inserted and select **Fast Create Topics**. This opens the **Fast Create Topics** dialog box where you can configure the structure for the new topics.

For more information, see Fast Create Multiple DITA Topics *(on page 1949)*.

Adding Multiple References to the Same Topic in a Map

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to reuse entire topics by adding multiple references to the same topic in a *DITA map*. Whenever multiple references to the same topic are detected in the context of the current map in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, an indicator will appear in the top-right corner of the **Author** mode editor that shows the number of times the topic is referenced in the *DITA map*. It also includes navigation arrows that allow you to jump to the next or previous reference.



Remove Topics from a Map

You can remove topics from a map in a number of ways. Some ways to remove a topic from a map include:

- Highlight the topic and press the **Delete** key on your keyboard.
- Highlight the topic and click the **Delete** button on the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* extended toolbar.

Related Information:
Fast Create Multiple DITA Topics *(on page 1949)*

Moving and Renaming Resources

You can move or rename resources referenced in your DITA project on disk directly from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and you have the option of updating all the references to the moved or renamed resources. If the resources are referenced in the DITA map, you can do this from the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*. You can also move and rename resources (DITA topics, maps, or other resources such as folders, images, HTML files, audio, video, text files, Markdown documents) from the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*. If you have enabled Main Files support *(on page 2174)*, you will also have the option to update all the references to the moved or renamed resource.

Moving or Renaming DITA Resources (Topics or Maps)

To move or rename resources (such as topics, maps, or other referenced non-DITA resources) referenced directly in the DITA map, use one of the following actions available in the **Refactoring** submenu of the contextual menu when invoked on the resource in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*:

Refactoring > Move resource

This action allows you to change the location of a resource linked in the edited *DITA map* using the **Move resource** dialog box. This dialog box contains the following options:

- **Destination** - Specifies the target location of the edited resource.
- **File name** - Allows you to change the name of the edited resource.
- **Preview** - Select this button to display a preview of the changes Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is about to make.

- **Move** - Moves the edited resource in the target location on disk.
- **Cancel** - Cancels the **Move resource** operation. No changes are applied.

Refactoring > Rename resource

This action allows you to change the name of a resource linked in the edited *DITA map (on page 2230)* using the **Rename resource** dialog box. This dialog box contains the following options:

- **New name** - Presents the current name and allows you to change it.
- **Preview** - Select this button to display a preview of the changes Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is about to make.
- **Rename** - Executes the **Rename resource** operation.
- **Cancel** - Cancels the **Rename resource** operation. No changes are applied.

Note:
If a *root DITA map (on page 2234)* is not defined, the move and rename actions are executed in the context of the current *DITA map*.

Moving or Renaming Resources and Updating the References to Them Using the Project View

To move or rename DITA (topics, maps) or non-DITA resources (such as folders, images, HTML files, audio, video, text files, Markdown documents), you can simply follow the procedures described in Moving/Renaming Resources in the Project Explorer View *(on page 251)*. However, this approach will not give you the option to update the references to the moved or renamed resources.

To perform move or rename operation on resources while also updating all the references to them, use the following sets of procedures:

1. Enable *Main Files* support and add your *root DITA map (on page 2234)* to the *Main Files* folder by following the procedure found here: How to Enable Main Files Support in DITA *(on page 2174)*.
2. Move or rename resources and update the references to them by following the procedure found here: Moving or Renaming Non-DITA Resources and Updating the References to Them *(on page 2175)*.

Related Information:
Main Files Support in DITA *(on page 2174)*
Finding Resources Not Referenced in DITA Maps *(on page 1904)*

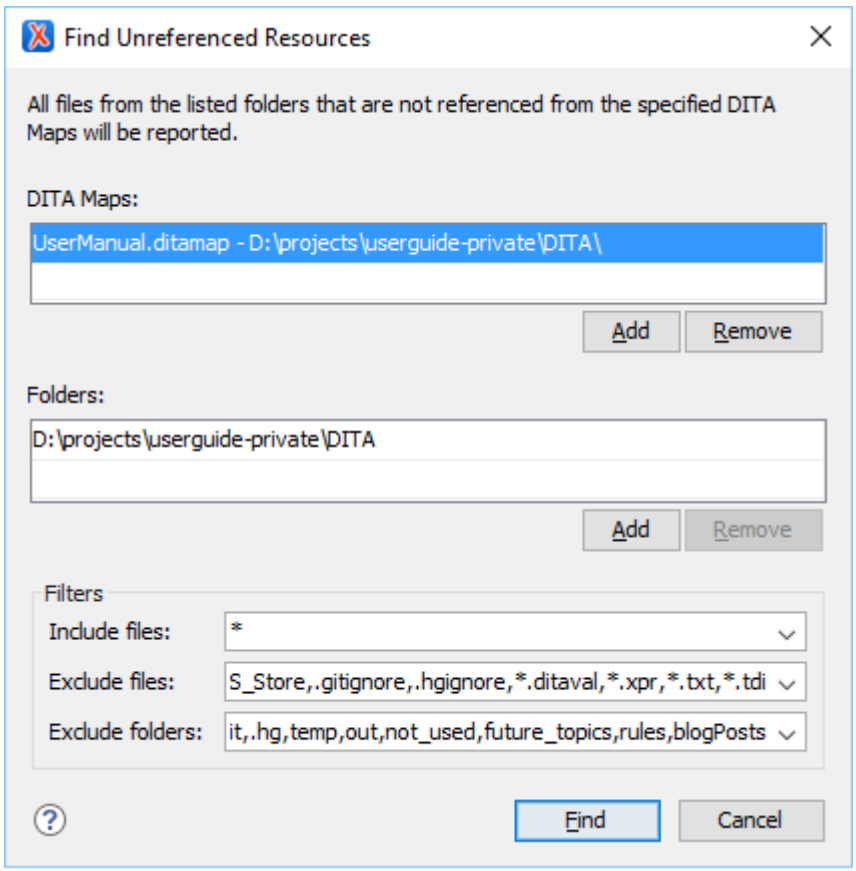
Finding Resources Not Referenced in DITA Maps

Over the course of time, large projects can accumulate a vast amount of resources from a variety of sources. Especially in organizations with a large number of content authors or complex project structures, organizing the project resources can become a challenge. Over time a variety of actions can cause resources to become

orphaned from *DITA maps (on page 2230)*. To assist you with organizing project resources, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes the **Find Unreferenced Resources** action, that searches for such resources.

To perform this search, open the *DITA map* in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, invoke the contextual menu on the *map*, and select the **Find Unreferenced Resources** action. This action opens the **Find Unreferenced Resources** dialog box, shown below.

Figure 328. Find Unreferenced Resources Dialog Box



The **Find Unreferenced Resources** dialog box includes the following options:

- **DITA Maps** - Provides a list of *DITA maps* to be included in the search and allows you to **Add** maps to the list or **Remove** them.
- **Folders** - Provides a list of folders to be included in the search and allows you to **Add** or **Remove** specific folders. All files from this list of folders that are not referenced from the maps specified in the **DITA Maps** list will be reported.
- **Filters** - Provides three combo boxes that allow you to filter the search to include or exclude certain files or folders:
  - **Include files** - Allows you to filter specific files to include in the search.
  - **Exclude files** - Allows you to filter specific files to exclude from the search.

- **Exclude folders** - Allows you to filter specific folders to exclude from the search.

> **Note:**
> In any of the filter combo boxes you can enter multiple filters by separating them with a comma and you can use the *?* and * wildcards. Use the drop-down arrow to select a previously used filter pattern.

When you click the **Find** button, if the search operation finds unreferenced resources, they are displayed in the **Results** panel at the bottom of the editor. If you want to delete an unreferenced resource, you can right-click its result and select **Remove from Disk**. If you want to see the resource before deciding what to do with it, you can right-click its result and select **Show in Explorer**.

Inserting References in DITA Maps

A *DITA map (on page 2230)* may contain various types of references. The targets of the references can be a variety of references, such as chapters, maps, topics, topic sets, or key definitions. You can insert references to such targets with the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)*.

This section explains how to insert and configure references (such as topic references, topic groups, topic headings, and key definitions) in a *DITA map*.

Insert Reference Dialog Box

The **Insert Reference** dialog box allows you to insert and configure references in *DITA maps (on page 2230)*. There are numerous types of references that can be inserted into maps. They include references to topics, other maps, glossary terms, and keys. You can also use this dialog box to configure the attributes of a reference, add profiling or metadata, and define keys.

To open the **Insert Reference** dialog box, use one of the following methods:

- Select **Reference**, **Reference to the currently edited file**, or any of the other specific reference actions that are available from the **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, and **Insert After** submenus when invoking the contextual menu in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*.
  - To insert the reference as a child of the current node, select the reference from the **Append Child** submenu.
  - To insert the reference as a sibling of the current node, below the current node in the map, select the reference from the **Insert After** submenu.
  - To insert the reference as a sibling of the current node, above the current node in the map, select the reference from the **Insert Before** submenu.

> **Note:**
> The content of these submenus depends on the node that is selected in the *DITA map* tree when the contextual menu is invoked. For example, if the selected node is a topic reference

(`<topicref>`), its possible child nodes include the following elements: `<anchorref>`, `<chapter>`, `<keydef>`, `<mapref>`, `<topicgroup>`, `<topichead>`, `<topicref>`, `<topicset>`, and `<topicsetref>`.

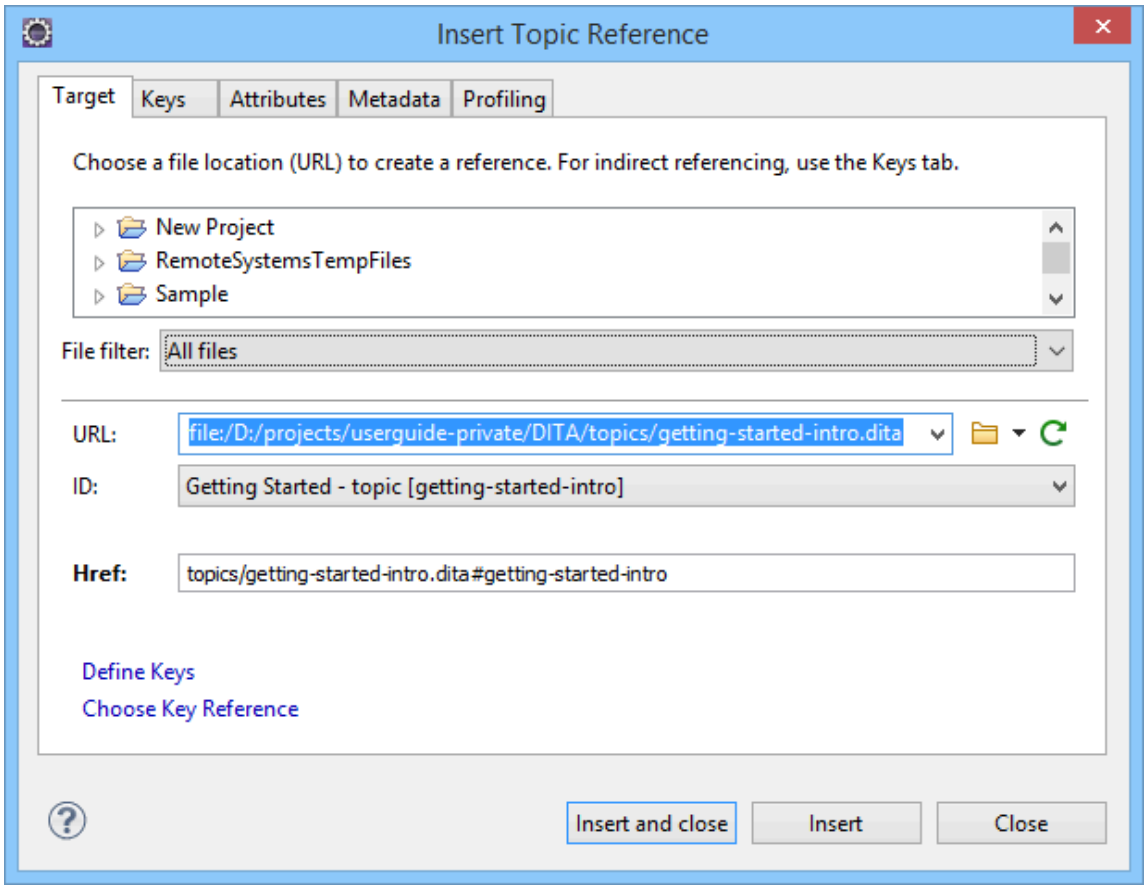
- Click the **Insert Reference** button on the **DITA Maps Manager** extended toolbar. This action will insert the reference as a sibling of the current node (below the current node in the map).
- Select **Insert Reference** from the **DITA Maps** menu. This action will insert the reference as a sibling of the current node (below the current node in the map).

For the **Reference** or **Reference to the currently edited file** actions, a **Reference type** drop-down list is displayed at the top of the **Insert Reference** dialog box and you can select the type of reference you want to insert. Depending on the place where the reference will be inserted, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will propose only valid reference types. When you change the reference type, the fields in the various tabs of the dialog box are reconfigured depending upon the availability of the associated attributes. For the other reference actions in the **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, and **Insert After** submenus, the reference type is automatically chosen based upon the invoked action and you cannot change it.

The main section of the dialog box includes the following tabs: **Target**, **Keys**, **Attributes**, **Metadata**, and **Profiling**.

Target Tab

Figure 329. Insert Reference Dialog Box - Target Tab



The **Target** tab of the **Insert Reference** dialog box allows you to specify information about the target reference. It includes the following sections and fields:

Choose a file location section

You can browse for and select the source target file by using the file window in this section. You can use the **File filter** drop-down menu to narrow the list of possible file types that will be displayed.

URL

Displays the path to the target and allows you to select or change it by using the combo box or browsing buttons.

ID

The drop-down list displays all of the target elements that are available for the selected target URL.

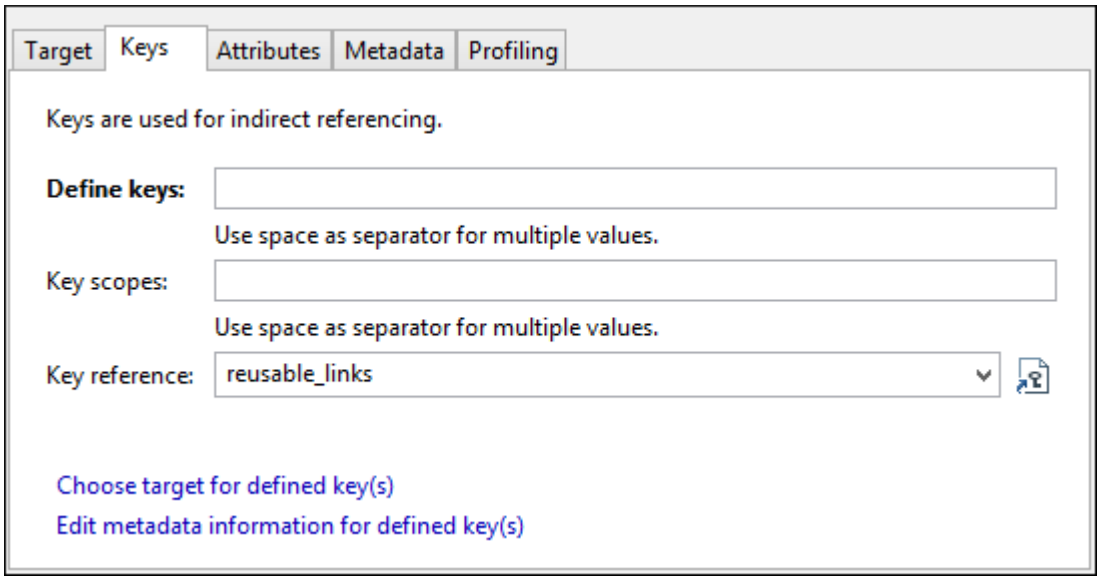
Href

The selected target automatically modifies this value to point to the corresponding `@href` attribute of the target element.

Note:
If the **Reference type** is a **Navigation Reference**, the **Href** field is changed to **Mapref**, since a `<navref>` element requires a `@mapref` attribute instead.

Keys Tab

Figure 330. Insert Reference Dialog Box - Keys Tab



The **Keys** tab allows you to use and define keys *(on page 1914)* for indirect referencing. For more information, see Working with Keys in DITA *(on page 2016)*. This tab includes the following:

Define keys

Use this text field to define the `@keys` attribute for the target.

Key scopes

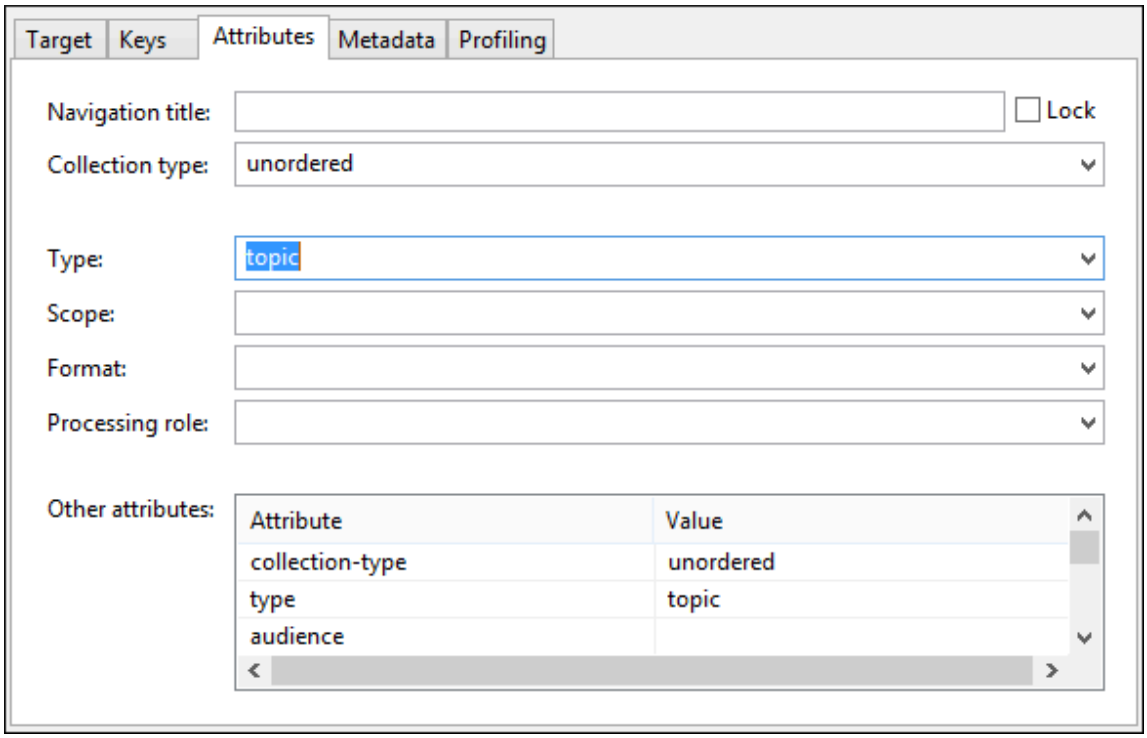
Use this text field to define or edit the value of a `@keyscope` attribute. *Key scopes* allow you to specify different sets of key definitions for different map branches.

Key reference

Instead of using the **Target** tab to select a file that contains the target reference, you can reference a key definition by using this text field. Use the **Choose key reference** button to access the list of keys that are already defined in the current *root map (on page 2234)*.

Attributes Tab

Figure 331. Insert Reference Dialog Box - Attributes Tab



The **Attributes** tab of the **Insert Reference** dialog box allows you to insert and edit attribute values for the target reference. This tab includes the following sections and actions:

Navigation title

This text field allows you to specify a custom navigation title for the target reference. If you want this attribute to always be populated with a detected value (based on the specifications for the target file), select the **Navigation title** checkbox for the **Always fill values for attributes** option in the **DITA** preferences page *(on page 77)*. For references to DITA resources, you can enforce the use of the specified title by selecting the **Lock** checkbox (otherwise, the topic `<title>` takes precedence).

Collection type

This drop-down list allows you to select the `@collection-type` attribute to create hierarchical linking between topics in a *DITA map* (for example, `unordered`, `sequence`, `choice`, `family`, `-dita-use-conref-target`).

Type

Allows you to select a `@type` attribute (such as `topic`, `task`, `concept`, etc.) for the target element. If you want this attribute to always be populated with a detected value (based on the specifications for the target file), select the **Type** checkbox for the **Always fill values for attributes** option in the **DITA** preferences page *(on page 77)*.

Scope

This property corresponds to the `@scope` attribute of the target element. It is populated automatically, based on the selected file type, unless its value for the selected target file is the same as the default attribute value. If you want this attribute to always be populated with a detected value based on the specifications (regardless of the default value), select the **Scope** checkbox for the **Always fill values for attributes** option in the **DITA** preferences page *(on page 77)*.

Format

This property corresponds to the `@format` attribute of the target element. It is populated automatically, based on the selected file type, unless its value for the selected target file is the same as the default attribute value. If you want this attribute to always be populated with a detected value based on the specifications (regardless of the default value), select the **Format** checkbox for the **Always fill values for attributes** option in the **DITA** preferences page *(on page 77)*.

Processing Role

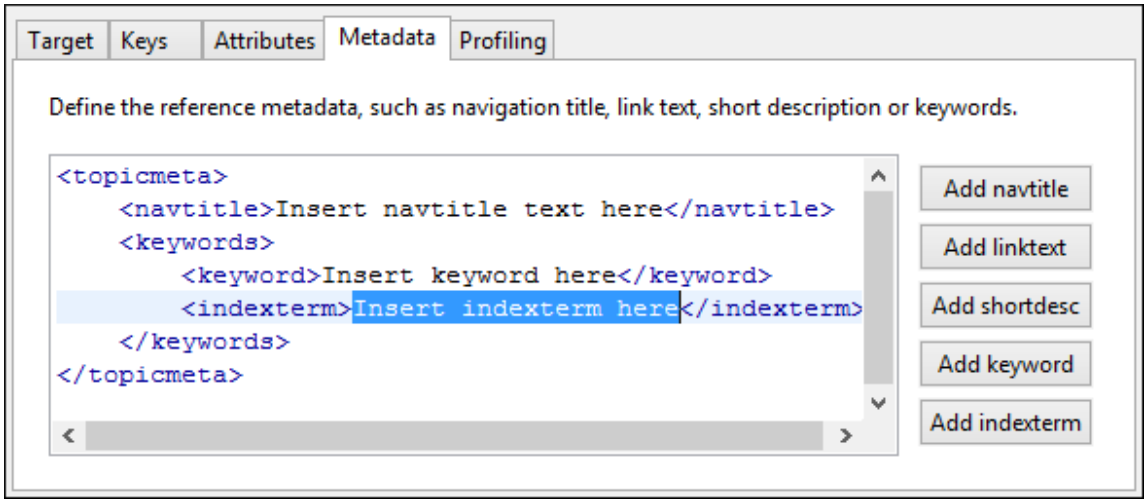
This drop-down list allows you to set the `@processing-role` attribute to one of the allowed values for DITA reference elements (for example, `resource-only`, `normal`, `-dita-use-conref-target`).

Other attributes table

This table contains the attributes that are available for the selected reference. You can use this table to insert or edit the values of any of the listed attributes. Clicking a cell in the **Value** column allows you to use the combo box to enter, edit, or select attribute values.

Metadata Tab

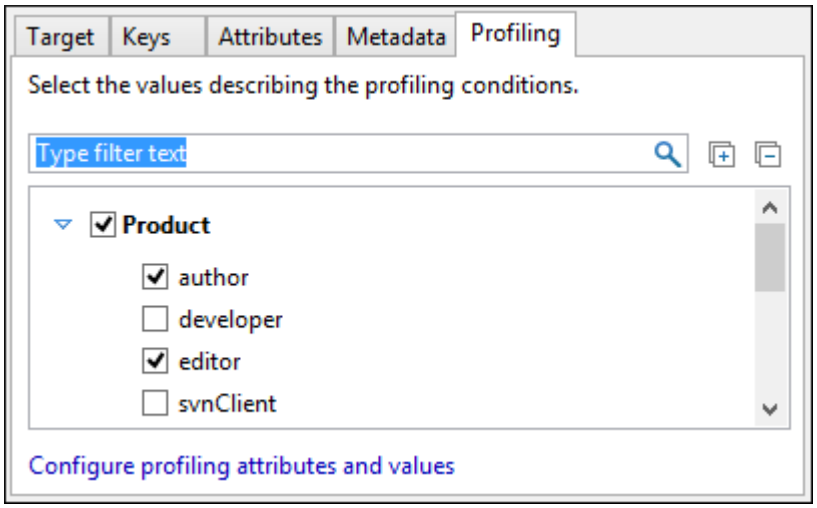
Figure 332. Insert Reference Dialog Box - Metadata Tab



The **Metadata** tab allows you to add metadata elements to the target reference. Use the buttons on the right side of the tab to insert specific metadata elements (you can add the following metadata elements: `<navtitle>`, `<linktext>`, `<shortdesc>`, `<keyword>`, `<indexterm>`). The metadata elements are inserted inside a `<topicmeta>` element. The editing window allows you to easily insert and modify the content of the metadata that will be inserted.

Profiling Tab

Figure 333. Insert Reference Dialog Box - Profiling Tab



The **Profiling** tab allows you to select or change profiling attributes for the selected reference. This tab displays profiling attributes and their values as determined by the following:

- If your *root map (on page 2234)* references a DITA *subject scheme map (on page 2234)* that defines values for the profiling attributes, those values are used.
- Otherwise, a basic default set of profiling attributes and values are used.

When you modify a selection of values in this tab, the change will also automatically be reflected in the **Attributes** tab. For more information, see DITA Profiling / Conditional Text *(on page 2126)*.

Finalizing Your Insert Reference Configuration

Once you click **Insert** or **Insert and close**, the configured reference is added in the map.

> **Tip:**
> You can easily insert multiple references by keeping the **Insert Reference** dialog box opened, using the **Insert** button.

Related Information:
DITA Profiling / Conditional Text *(on page 2126)*
Working with Keys in DITA *(on page 2016)*

Inserting Topic Headings

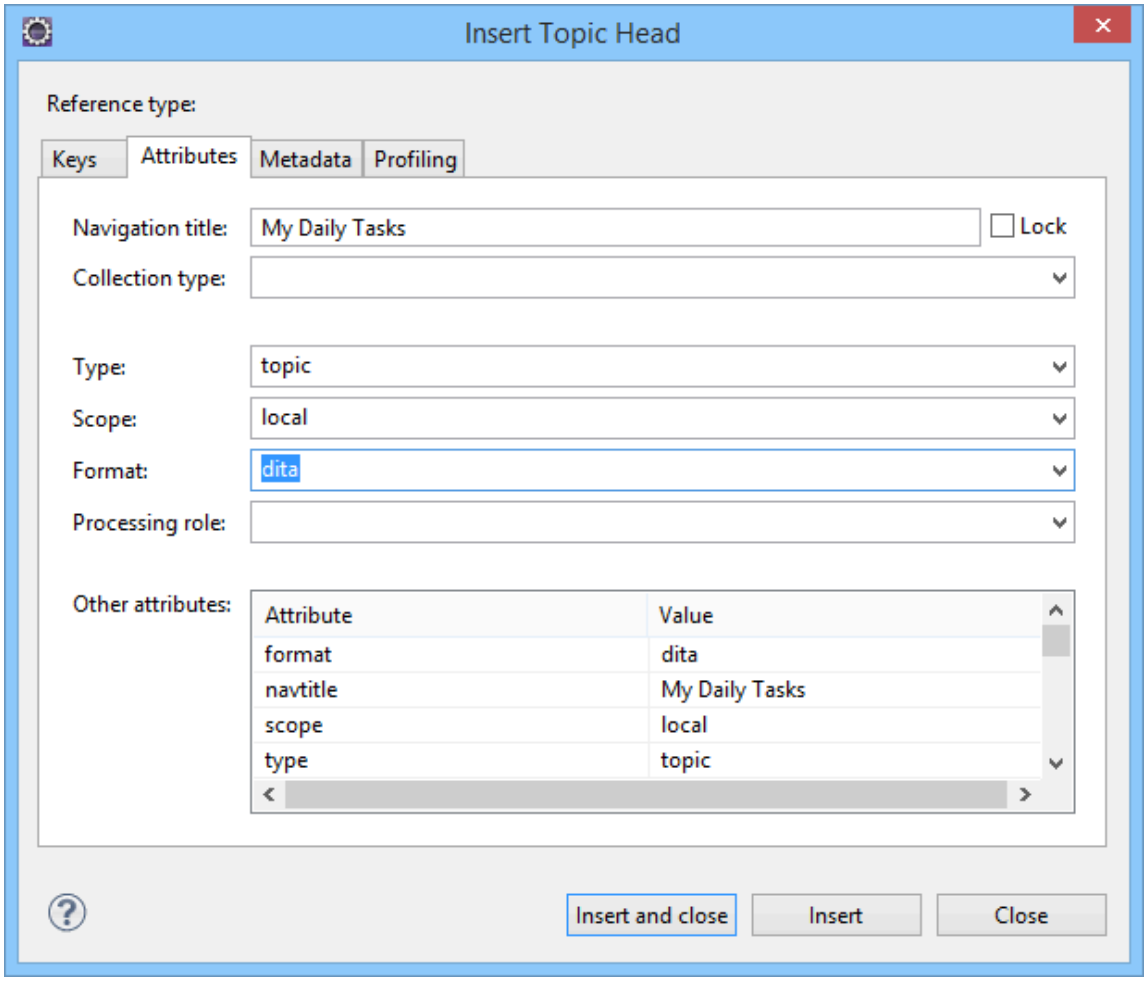
The `<topichead>` element provides a title-only entry in a navigation map, as an alternative to the fully-linked title provided by the `<topicref>` element.

You can insert a topic heading by doing the following:

- Select **Topic Head** from the **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, or **Insert After** submenus when invoking the contextual menu in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*.
- Open the *DITA map* in the XML editor *(on page 1879)* and select the **Insert Topic Heading** action from the main toolbar (or from the **Insert** submenu of the contextual menu).

Those actions open the **Insert Topic Head** dialog box *(on page 1906)* that allows you to easily insert a `<topichead>` element. A **Navigation title** (`@navtitle` attribute) is required but other attributes can also be specified from this dialog box (such as **Type**, **Scope**, **Format**, etc.)

Figure 334. Insert Topic Heading Using the Insert Reference Dialog Box



Related Information:

Insert Reference Dialog Box *(on page 1906)*

Inserting Topic Groups

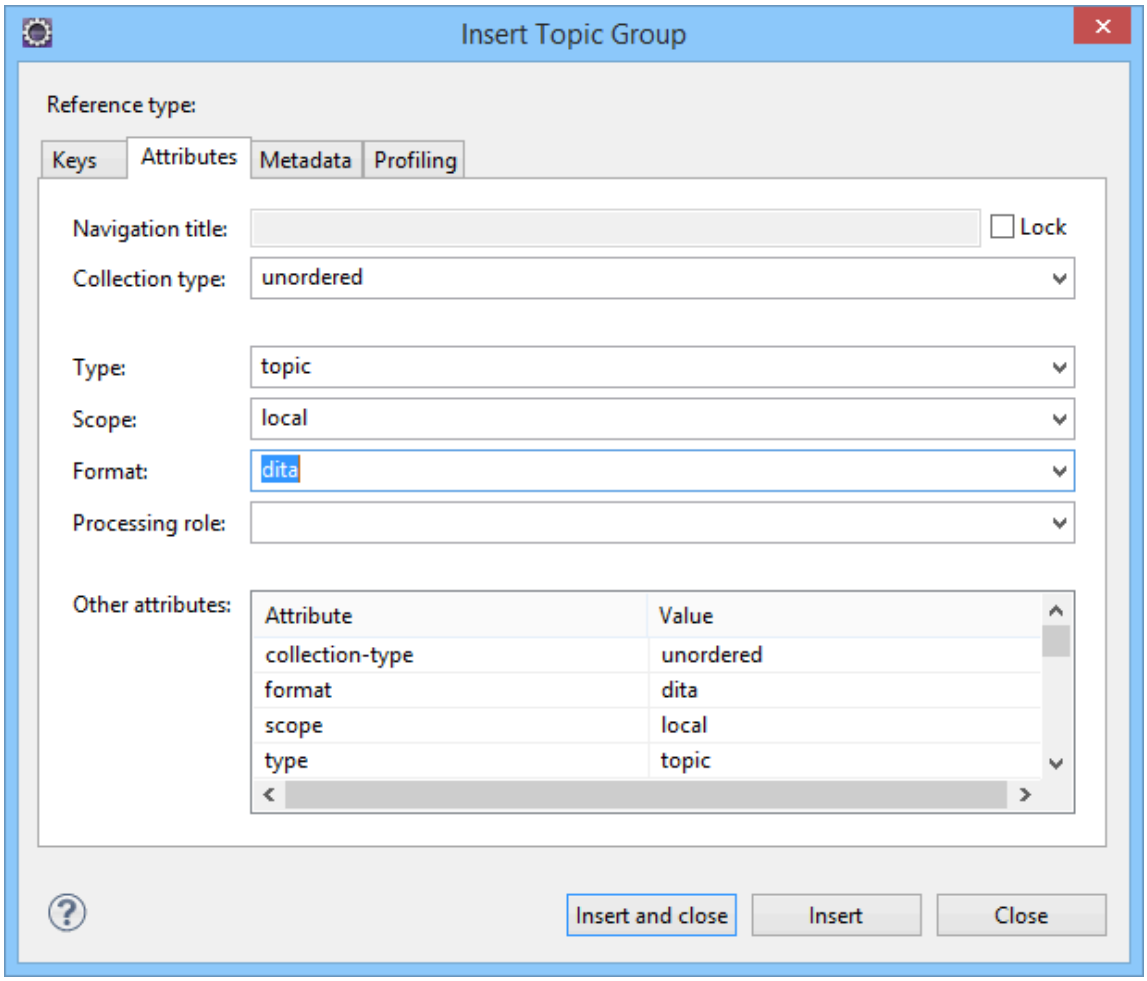
The `<topicgroup>` element identifies a group of topics (such as a concepts, tasks, or references) or other resources. A `<topicgroup>` can contain other `<topicgroup>` elements, allowing you to express navigation or table-of-contents hierarchies, as well as implying relationships between the containing `<topicgroup>` and its children. You can set the collection-type of a container `<topicgroup>` to determine how its children are related to each other. Relationships end up expressed as links in the output (with each participant in a relationship having links to the other participants by default).

You can insert a topic group by doing the following:

- Select **Topic Group** from the **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, or **Insert After** submenus when invoking the contextual menu in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*.
- Open the *DITA map* in the XML editor *(on page 1879)* and select the **Insert Topic Group** action from the main toolbar (or from the **Insert** submenu of the contextual menu).

Those actions open the **Insert Topic Group** dialog box *(on page 1906)* that allows you to easily insert a `<topicgroup>` element and various attributes can be specified (such as **Collection type**, **Type**, **Scope**, **Format**, etc.)

Figure 335. Insert Topic Group Using the Insert Reference Dialog Box



Related Information:
Insert Reference Dialog Box *(on page 1906)*

Defining Keys in DITA Maps

DITA uses keys *(on page 2016)* to insert content that may have different values in various circumstances. Keys provide the means for indirect referencing in DITA. This can make it easier to manage and to reuse content. In DITA, keys are defined in maps and can then be reused and referenced throughout the whole structure of the map. It is considered best practice to create a separate submap that contains all of the key definitions and reference that submap in the *main (root) map (on page 2234)*. This makes it easier to manage since they're all in one location.

There are two types of key definitions that can be created in a map.

- Key with a value inside a *keyword*.
- Key with a target (for example, to target a resource such as an image or external link).

The following example is a *DITA map (on page 2230)* (a *key definition submap*) that contains some key definitions with various values for the *product* key and some targets to external URLs:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE map PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DITA Map//EN" "map.dtd">
<map id="keydefs">
  <!-- product name -->
  <title>Key Definitions</title>
  <keydef keys="product" product="basic">
    <topicmeta>
      <keywords>
        <keyword>Basic Widget</keyword>
      </keywords>
    </topicmeta>
  </keydef>
  <keydef keys="product" product="pro">
    <topicmeta>
      <keywords>
        <keyword>Professional Widget</keyword>
      </keywords>
    </topicmeta>
  </keydef>
  <keydef keys="url_eula" href="https://www.example.com/eula.html" format="html"
     scope="external"/>
  <keydef keys="url_eula2" href="https://www.example.com/eula2.html" format="html"
     scope="external"/>
</map>
```

Note:
The profiling of the names is now contained in the map, where it only has to occur once to reuse throughout the whole map structure.

Key Definition with a Keyword Value

To define a key with a value inside a *keyword*, follow these steps:

1. **[Optional but Recommended]** Create a submap *(on page 1898)* that will contain all of your key definitions and reference the submap in your *main (root) map* (if you don't already have one created).
2. Open that map in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*.

3. Right-click the map or an item in the map where you want to add the reference and select **Key Definition with Keyword** from the **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, or **Insert After** submenu (depending on where you want to insert the *key definition*). This opens an **Insert Key Definition** dialog box.
4. Enter the name of the key in the **Key** field.
5. Enter the key's value in the **Keyword** field.
6. Click **Insert and close**.

> **Tip:**
> If you need to profile the key or add other attributes, you can right-click the key definition in the **DITA Maps Manager**, select **Edit properties**, and configure them in the **Profiling** tab or **Attributes** tab, respectively.

Key Definition with a Target

To insert a *targeted key definition* (for example, to target a resource such as an image or external link), follow these steps:

1. **[Optional but Recommended]** Create a submap *(on page 1898)* that will contain all of your key definitions and reference the submap in your *main (root) map* (if you don't already have one created).
2. Open that map in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*.
3. Right-click the map or an item in the map where you want to add the reference and select **Key Definition** from the **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, or **Insert After** submenu (depending on where you want to insert the *key definition* in the *DITA map*). This opens an **Insert Key Definition** dialog box.
4. Go to the **Keys** tab and enter the name of the key in the **Define keys** field.
5. Go to the **Target** tab and select a target resource (such as an image or external link).

> **Tip:**
> You can profile the key by using the **Profiling** tab and other attributes can also be defined in the **Attributes** tab.

6. Once you are done configuring the *targeted key definition*, click **Insert and close**.

Related Information:
Working with Variable Text in DITA *(on page 2047)*
Working with Keys in DITA *(on page 2016)*
DITA 1.3 Specification: Indirect Key-based Addressing

Edit Properties Dialog Box

The **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* includes a feature that allows you to view and edit the properties of a selected node. The **Edit properties** action is available on both the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar and in the contextual menu. This action is also available in the contextual menu when you edit a

DITA map (on page 2230) document in **Author** mode. The action opens the **Edit Properties** dialog box and it includes several tabs with various functions and fields that are initialized with values based upon the node where the action was invoked.

Note:

If you select multiple sibling nodes and invoke the **Edit properties** action, only the **Profiling** tab will be available and your modifications in that tab will be applied to all the selected nodes. If you select multiple nodes that are not on the same hierarchical level, the other tabs will also be available and your modifications will be applied to the parent node (the child nodes will inherit the attributes of the parent node).

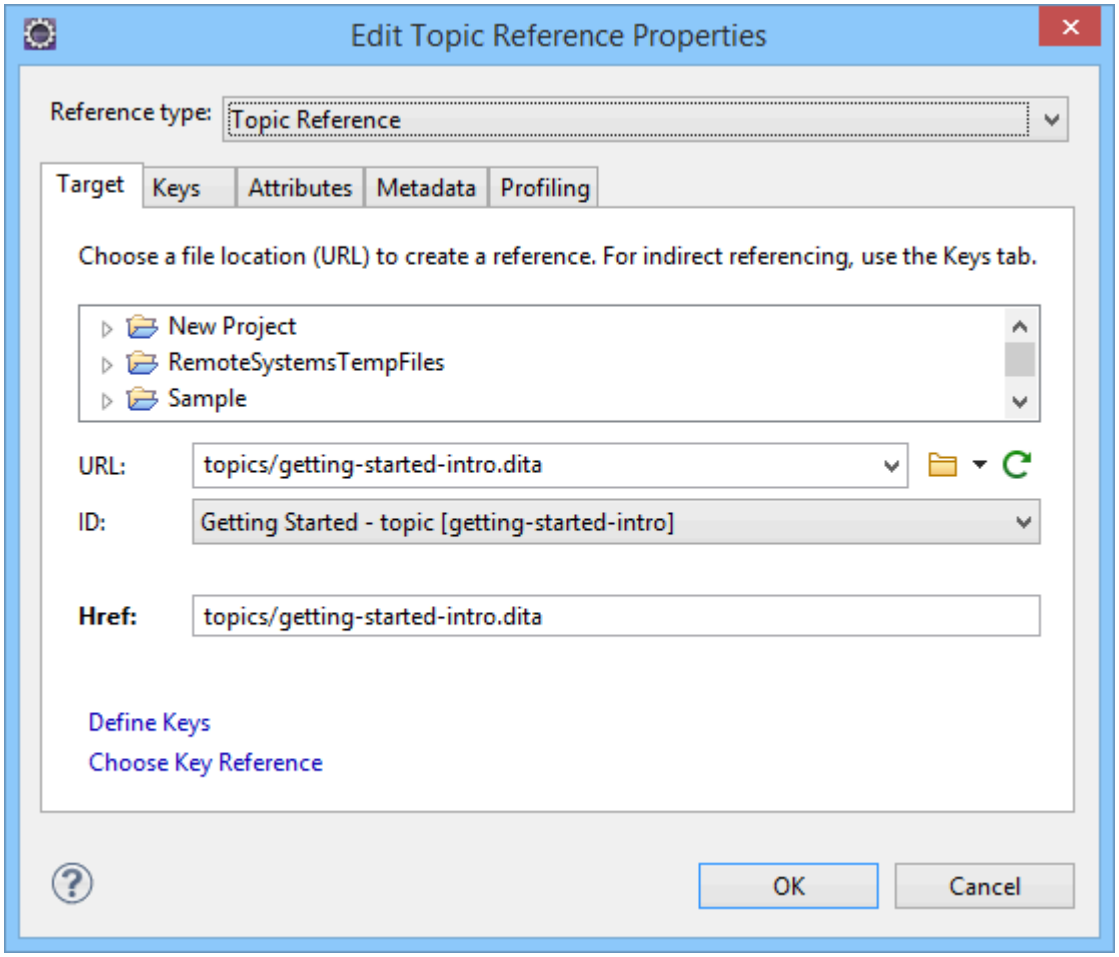
You can use the **Edit Properties** dialog box to modify or define attributes, metadata, profiling, or keys in *DITA maps* or topics. You can also use it to modify the title of *root maps (on page 2234)*.

At the top of the **Edit Properties** dialog box, the **Reference type** drop-down list displays the type of the selected node and it depends on the node where the action was invoked.

The main section of the dialog box includes the following tabs: **Target**, **Keys**, **Attributes**, **Metadata**, and **Profiling**. The availability of the tabs and their functions depend on the selected node. For example, if you invoke the action on a *root map (on page 2234)*, only the **Attributes**, **Metadata**, and **Profiling** tabs are accessible and the **Title** property can be configured. Also, if you select multiple nodes, only the **Profiling** tab is available.

Target Tab

Figure 336. Edit Properties Dialog Box - Target Tab



The **Target** tab of the **Edit Properties** dialog box displays information about the target node on which the action was invoked and allows you to change the target. It includes the following sections and fields:

Choose a file location section

You can browse for and select the source target file by using the file window in this section. You can use the **File filter** drop-down menu to narrow the list of possible file types that will be displayed.

URL

Displays the path to the target and allows you to select or change it by using the combo box or browsing buttons.

ID

The drop-down list displays all of the target elements that are available for the selected target URL.

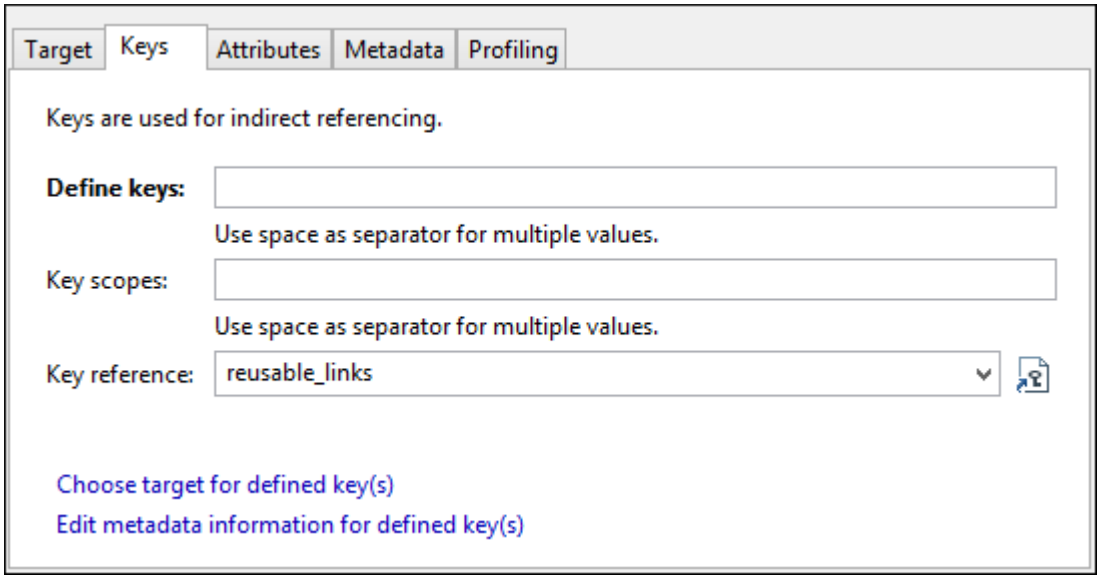
Href

The selected target automatically modifies this value to point to the corresponding `@href` attribute of the target element.

Note:
If the **Reference type** is a **Navigation Reference**, the **Href** field is changed to **Mapref**, since a `<navref>` element requires a `@mapref` attribute instead.

Keys Tab

Figure 337. Edit Properties Dialog Box - Keys Tab



The **Keys** tab allows you to use and define keys *(on page 1914)* for indirect referencing. For more information, see Working with Keys in DITA *(on page 2016)*. This tab includes the following:

Define keys

Use this text field to define the `@keys` attribute for the target.

Key scopes

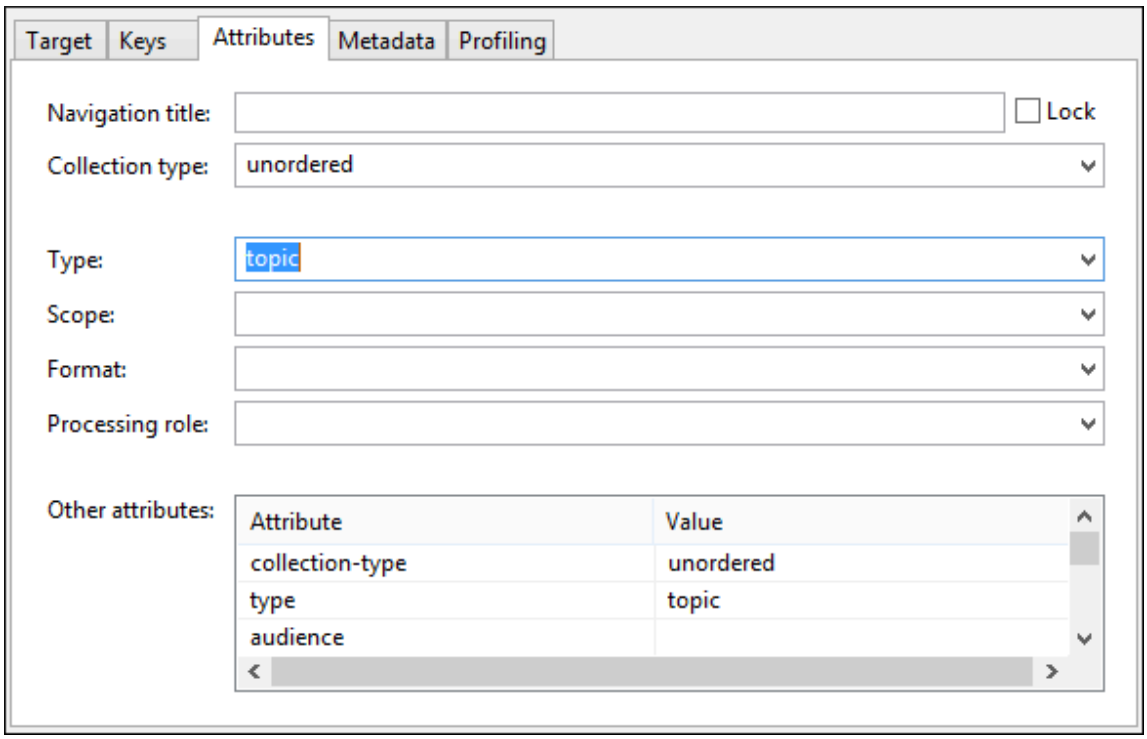
Use this text field to define or edit the value of a `@keyscope` attribute. *Key scopes* allow you to specify different sets of key definitions for different map branches.

Key reference

Use this combo box (or the **Choose key reference** button) to select a key that is already defined in the *root map (on page 2234)*.

Attributes Tab

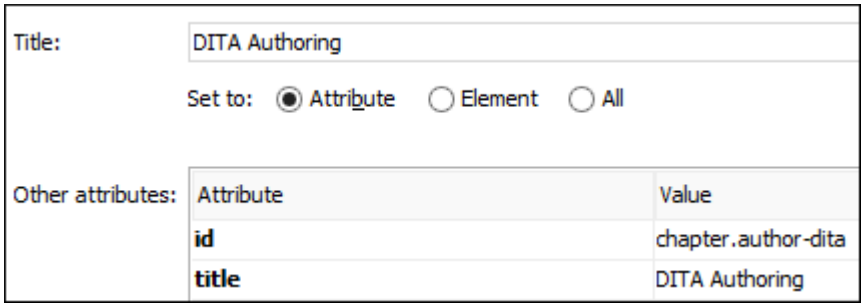
Figure 338. Edit Properties Dialog Box - Attributes Tab



The **Attributes** tab of the **Edit Properties** dialog box allows you to insert and edit attribute values for the target node where the action was invoked.

If the target is a *root map (on page 2234)*, the tab displays the title of the map. You can change it in the **Title** text field and assign it to an **Attribute**, **Element**, or **All**. However, if the title of the map contains elements other than plain text, the title is not editable and cannot be changed using this dialog box (you would need to open the DITA map in the main editor to edit the title).

Figure 339. Attributes Tab for a Root Map



For other types of targets, the tab includes the following sections and fields that can be used to edit the attributes of the target:

Navigation title

This text field allows you to specify a custom navigation title for the target reference. If you want this attribute to always be populated with a detected value (based on the specifications for the target file), select the **Navigation title** checkbox for the **Always fill values for attributes** option in the **DITA** preferences page *(on page 77)*. For references to DITA resources, you can enforce

the use of the specified title by selecting the **Lock** checkbox (otherwise, the topic `<title>` takes precedence).

> **Tip:**
> You can also select the **Prefer navigation title for topicref rendering** option in the **DITA** preferences page *(on page 77)* to always enforce the use of the `@navtitle` value rather than selecting this **Lock** option on individual topics.

Collection type

This drop-down list allows you to select the `@collection-type` attribute to create hierarchical linking between topics in a *DITA map* (for example, `unordered`, `sequence`, `choice`, `family`, `-dita-use-conref-target`).

Type

Allows you to select a `@type` attribute (such as `topic`, `task`, `concept`, etc.) for the target element. If you want this attribute to always be populated with a detected value (based on the specifications for the target file), select the **Type** checkbox for the **Always fill values for attributes** option in the **DITA** preferences page *(on page 77)*.

Scope

This property corresponds to the `@scope` attribute of the target element. It is populated automatically, based on the selected file type, unless its value for the selected target file is the same as the default attribute value. If you want this attribute to always be populated with a detected value based on the specifications (regardless of the default value), select the **Scope** checkbox for the **Always fill values for attributes** option in the **DITA** preferences page *(on page 77)*.

Format

This property corresponds to the `@format` attribute of the target element. It is populated automatically, based on the selected file type, unless its value for the selected target file is the same as the default attribute value. If you want this attribute to always be populated with a detected value based on the specifications (regardless of the default value), select the **Format** checkbox for the **Always fill values for attributes** option in the **DITA** preferences page *(on page 77)*.

Processing Role

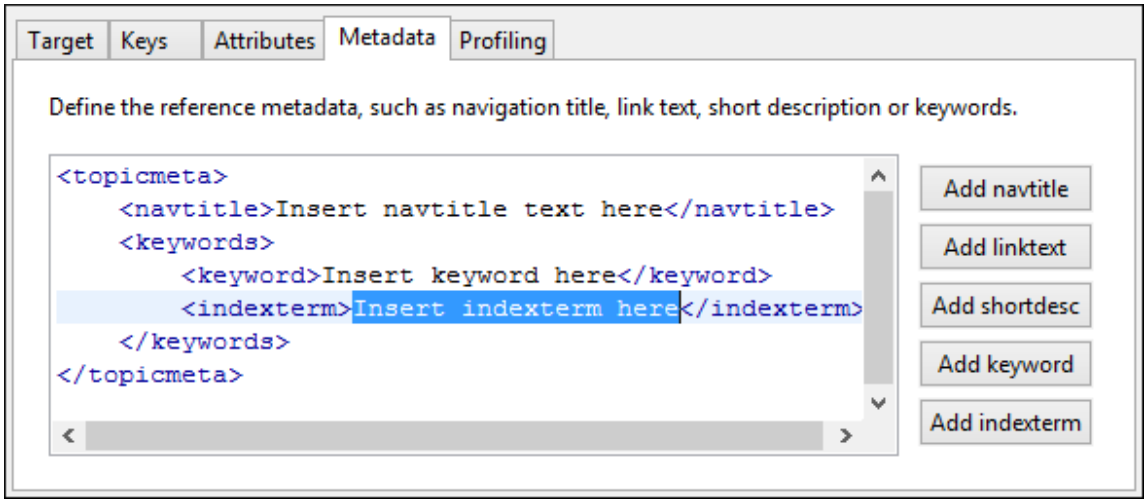
This drop-down list allows you to set the `@processing-role` attribute to one of the allowed values for DITA reference elements (for example, `resource-only`, `normal`, `-dita-use-conref-target`).

Other attributes table

This table contains the attributes that are available for the selected reference. You can use this table to insert or edit the values of any of the listed attributes. Clicking a cell in the **Value** column allows you to use the combo box to enter, edit, or select attribute values.

Metadata Tab

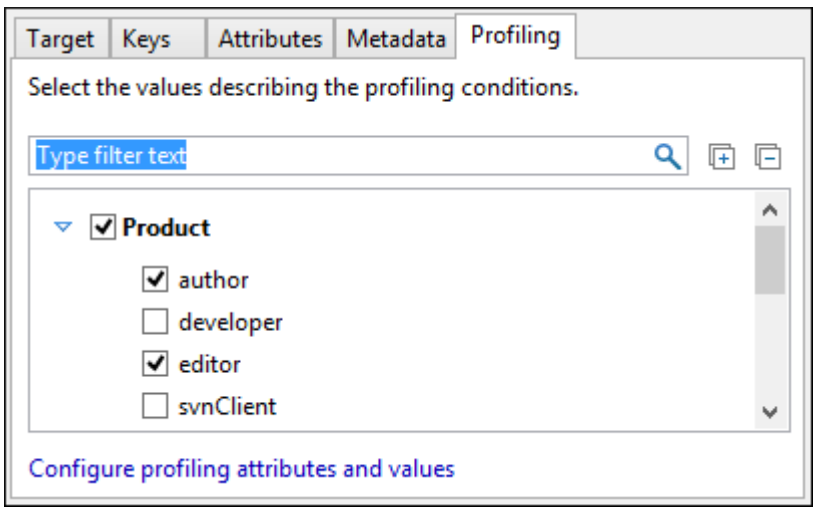
Figure 340. Edit Properties Dialog Box - Metadata Tab



The **Metadata** tab allows you to add metadata elements to the target node. Use the buttons on the right side of the tab to insert specific metadata elements (you can add the following metadata elements: `<navtitle>`, `<linktext>`, `<shortdesc>`, `<keyword>`, `<indexterm>`). The metadata elements are inserted inside a `<topicmeta>` element. The editing window allows you to easily insert and modify the content of the metadata that will be inserted.

Profiling Tab

Figure 341. Edit Properties Dialog Box - Profiling Tab



The **Profiling** tab allows you to select or change profiling attributes for the selected target nodes. This tab displays profiling attributes and their values as determined by the following:

- If your *root map (on page 2234)* references a DITA *subject scheme map (on page 2234)* that defines values for the profiling attributes, those values are used.
- Otherwise, a basic default set of profiling attributes and values are used.

If you have a large list of profiling attributes, you can use the text filter field to search for attributes or values, and you can expand or collapse attributes by using the **Expand All**/**Collapse All** buttons to the right of the text filter or the arrow button to the left of the profiling attribute name.

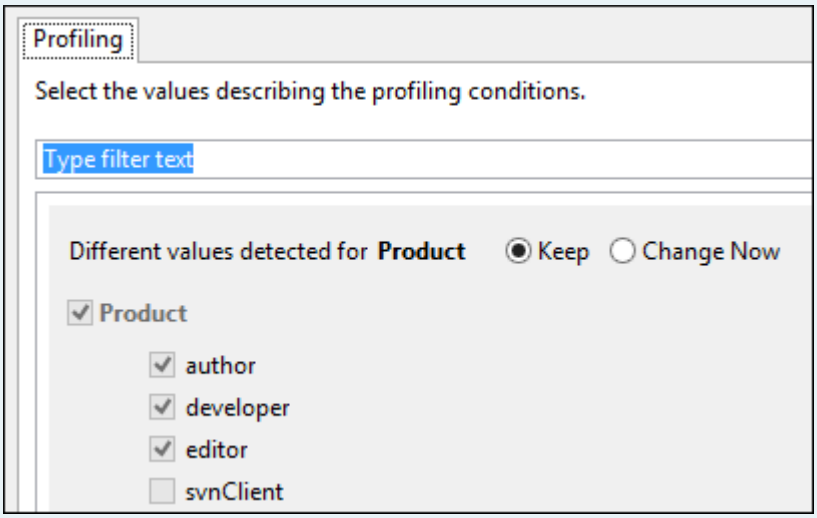
When you modify a selection of values in this tab, the change will also automatically be reflected in the **Attributes** tab. For more information, see DITA Profiling / Conditional Text *(on page 2126)*.

Note:

If you invoke the **Edit properties** action on a selection of multiple nodes that have different values for the same profiling attribute, a conflict panel will be displayed in the **Profiling** tab and you can choose between the following actions for resolving it:

- **Keep** - Preserves the current attribute values.
- **Change Now** - Allows you to edit the selection of values in this **Profiling** tab and the changes will be applied to all the selected nodes.

Figure 342. Profiling Conflict Panel



Finalizing Your Modifications

Once you click **OK**, all your changes are applied to the target node.

Related Information:

DITA Profiling / Conditional Text *(on page 2126)*
Working with Keys in DITA *(on page 2016)*

Generating a Table of Contents in DITA

In DITA, the order and hierarchy of the table of contents of a document is based directly on the *DITA map that defines the document (on page 1878)*. In most cases, the processor generates a table of contents (TOC)

based on the hierarchy of the topics in a DITA map. By default, each `<topicref>` element in a map represents a node in the TOC.

It is also possible to instruct DITA where the table of contents should occur (or other content lists, such as a list of figures or tables). If you want to instruct the processor to generate a table of contents at a particular location within your DITA map structure, you can use the `<toc>` element in a *bookmap (on page 1899)* (as in the example below). For more information about the `<toc>` element, see https://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.2/os/spec/langref/toc.html.

Example:

```
<bookmap>
.....
  <frontmatter>
    <booklists>
      <toc href="chapter1.dita"/>
    </booklists>
  </frontmatter>
.....
```

Creating an Index in DITA

In DITA, indexes are created from `<indexterm>` elements. You can insert index term elements in the following:

- **The header of a topic:** In paginated media, such as a printed book or a PDF, this results in an index entry that points to the page where the topic starts, even if it is not the page in which the indexed term occurs.
- **In the `<topicref>` element in a map that references the topic:** This applies those index terms to that topic only when used in that map, allowing you to index topics differently in various publications. In paginated media, index entries point to the page where the topic starts.
- **In the body of a topic:** In paginated media, this results in an index entry that points to the page where the `<indexterm>` element occurs, even if that is not the page where the topic starts.

To add index terms to the text of a topic of the topic header, create the elements as you normally would in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *(on page 1952)*. To add index terms to a map, open the map in the editor and add the elements, as you normally would, in a topic.

In some media, indexes will be generated automatically when index entries are found in the source. For other media, such as books, you may need to tell DITA where to place the index. For instance, to add an index to a *bookmap (on page 2228)*, you need to add an `<indexlist>` element to the `<backmatter>` of the book.

1. Open your *bookmap (on page 1899)* in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*.
2. Right-click the *bookmap* and select **Append Child > Backmatter**.
   The **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* appears.

3. Click **Insert and Close** to insert the `<backmatter>` element.
4. Right-click the `<backmatter>` element and create a `<booklists>` element using **Append Child > Book Lists**.
5. Use the same steps to create an `<indexlist>` element.

CAUTION:
Adding *index* entries and an `<indexlist>` to your project creates an instruction to the DITA publishing routines to create an index. There is no guarantee that all DITA output types or third-party customizations obey that instruction or create the index the way you want it. Modifying the output may be necessary to get the result you want.

Resolving Topic References Through an XML Catalog

There are situations where you want to resolve references with an *XML Catalog (on page 2235)*:

- You customized your *DITA map (on page 2230)* to reference topics using URIs instead of local paths.
- You have URI content references in your DITA topic files and you want to map them to local files when the map is transformed.

In such situations, you have to add the catalog to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. The **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* will solve the displayed topic refs through the added *XML catalog* URI mappings. The resolution through the XML catalog URI mappings are done only for reference values starting with the `urn:` prefix.

To add an *XML catalog* to the DITA *framework (on page 2231)*, follow these steps:

1. Create an *XML catalog* using the guidelines described in Working with XML Catalogs *(on page 573)*.
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Document Type Association**.
3. Select the **DITA** document type and use the **Edit**, **Duplicate**, or **Extend** button to open a **Document type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*.
4. Go to the **Catalogs** tab *(on page 107)*.
5. Click on the **Add** button to open a dialog box that allows you to add your created *XML Catalog* to the list.
6. After adding your catalog, click **OK**. You may need to reopen any currently edited files that use the new catalog or run a manual **Validate** action *(on page 525)* for the changes to take effect.

Note:
You could also add your created catalog to the list of global catalogs in the **XML Catalog** preferences *(on page 175)* page.

Adding a Custom URI Resolver to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

You can use the `XMLUtilAccess.addPriorityURIResolver(URIResolver)` API to add your own priority URI resolver from a `Workspace Access plugin extension`, allowing you to take control over how topic references in a DITA map are located or how references in DITA topics are resolved.

Publishing a DITA Map with References Resolved Through the XML Catalog

If you are publishing a DITA map that contains references to topics that need to be resolved through the XML catalog support in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, you must enable the **fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml** parameter in the **Parameters** tab of the transformation scenario configuration dialog box.

Chunking DITA Topics

By default, when a *DITA map (on page 2230)* is published to an online format, each topic becomes a separate page in the output. In some cases, you may want to combine multiple source topics into one output page. For instance, you may want to combine several types of information into a single page, or you may have chosen to create many small DITA topics for reuse purposes but feel they are too small to be useful to a reader by themselves. This is referred to as *chunking*.

To chunk DITA topics, you set the chunking attribute on the `<topicref>` that contains the sub-topics in a *DITA map*. There are several values that you can set on the chunking attribute (for example, `by-topic` or `to-content`). See the DITA documentation for full details. To achieve the effects you want in your topics and table of contents, you may also need to set the `@toc` and `@collection-type` attributes on the sub-topics or container topic to suitable values. See the DITA documentation for details.

You can set the `@collection-type` attribute on your topics using the **Edit Properties** action in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*. To set the `@toc` and `@chunk` attributes, you must open the map file in the editor and add or edit the attributes directly (double-click the map icon in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* to open the map in the editor).

DITA Map Validation and Completeness Check

You should validate your *DITA maps (on page 2230)* regularly to make sure that your maps and topics are valid, and all of the relationships between them are working. Changing one topic, image, or piece of metadata may create errors in references that rely on them. You may not discover these problems all at once. Validate your map to catch all of these kinds of problems. The longer you wait between validating your maps, the more difficult it may be to detect and correct any errors you find.

Validating a DITA Map

To validate a DITA, follow these steps:

1. In the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*, make sure that the tab that holds your *root map (on page 2234)* is selected and that the **Context** selection is set either to the name of your *root map* or to `<current map>`.
2. It is a good practice to refresh your *DITA map* before running the validation process. To do so, select the *DITA map* in the **DITA Maps Manager** view and click **File > Refresh (F5)**.
3. Click the **Validate and Check for Completeness** buttonon the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar to open the **DITA Map Completeness Check** dialog box *(on page 1927)*.
4. If you are using profiling, check the **Use DITAVAL filters** box and select the appropriate option.
5. Select any other options you want to check.
6. Click **Check** to run the validation process.

Result: The progress of the operation is shown as a task in the **Progress** view and the operation can be stopped from there.

Validation Process

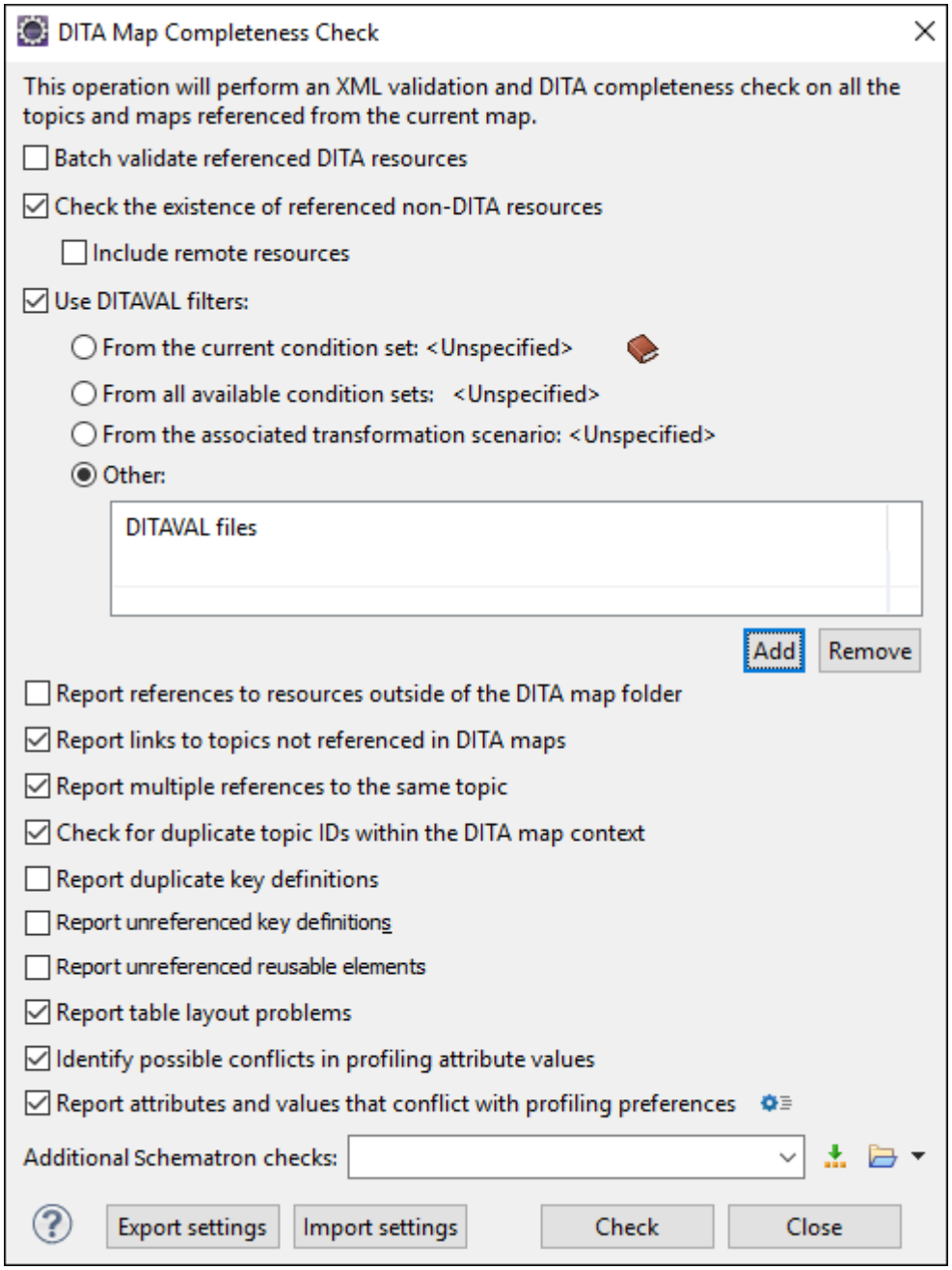
The validation process of a *DITA map* includes the following:

- Verifies that the file paths of the topic references are valid. For example, if an `@href` attribute points to an invalid file path, it is reported as an error in the message panel at the bottom of the editor.
- Validates each referenced topic and map. Each topic file is opened and validated against the appropriate DITA DTD. If another *DITA map* is referenced in the main one, the referenced *DITA map* is verified recursively, applying the same algorithm as for the main map.
- If errors or warnings are found, they are displayed in a separate message pane at the bottom of the editor and clicking them takes you to the location of the error or warning in the file where it was found.

DITA Map Completeness Check Dialog Box

The **DITA Map Completeness Check** dialog box allows you to configure the *DITA map* validation.

Figure 343. DITA Map Completeness Check Dialog Box



You can configure the validation process with the following options that are available in the **DITA Map Completeness Check** dialog box:

Batch validate referenced DITA resources

This option specifies the level of validation that applies to referenced DITA files:

- If the checkbox is left unchecked (default setting), the DITA files will be validated using the rules defined in the DTD or XML Schema declared in the document.
- If the checkbox is selected, the DITA files will be validated using rules defined in their associated validation scenario *(on page 536)*.

Check the existence of non-DITA references resources

Extends the validation of referenced resources to non-DITA files.

Include remote resources

Select this option if you want to check that remote referenced binary resources (such as images, movie clips, ZIP archives) exist at the specified location.

Use DITAVAL filters

The content of the map is filtered by applying a profiling condition set *(on page 2126)* before validation.

> **Note:**
> The validation process also takes branch filtering `<ditavalref>` elements into account as long as they appear before the referenced topics.

You can choose between the following options:

- **From the current condition set** - The map is filtered using the condition set currently applied in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*. Clicking the **Details** icon opens a topic in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin User Guide that explains how to create a profiling condition set.
- **From all available condition sets** - For each available condition set, the map content is filtered using that set before validation.
- **From the associated transformation scenario** - The filtering condition set is specified explicitly as a DITAVAL file in the current transformation scenario associated with the *DITA map*.
- **Other DITAVAL files** - For each DITAVAL file from this list, the map content is filtered using the DITAVAL file before validation. Use the **Add** or **Remove** buttons to configure the list. The **Add** button opens a dialog box that allows you to select a local or remote path to a DITAVAL file. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Report references to resources outside of the DITA map folder

If selected, it will report any references to DITA resources that are located outside the *main DITA map (on page 2234)* folder.

Report links to topics not referenced in DITA maps

Checks that all the topics referenced by other topics are also linked in the *DITA map*. Also reports related links defined in relationship tables whose target topics are not referenced in the DITA Map.

Report multiple references to the same topic

If selected, it will report warnings when a topic is referenced multiple times in the *DITA map*, unless a unique `@copy-to` attribute is used on the `<topicref>` element for any topic that is referenced multiple times.

For example, it will **not** report a warning if there is a topic referenced twice, but the second `<topicref>` has a `@copy-to` attribute set:

```
<topicref href="topic.dita"/>
.....
 <topicref href="topic.dita" copy-to="topic2.dita"/>
```

On the other hand, it **will** report a warning if there is a topic referenced twice and none of the reference-type elements has a `@copy-to` attribute set or both of them have the `@copy-to` attribute set to the same value:

```
<topicref href="topic.dita" copy-to="topic2.dita"/>
......
 <topicref href="topic.dita" copy-to="topic2.dita"/>
```

Check for duplicate topic IDs within the DITA map context

Checks for multiple topics with the same ID in the context of the entire map.

Report duplicate key definitions

Checks the *DITA map* for multiple key references with the same key defined for them. This is helpful because if you have two different resources with the same value for the `@keys` attribute, all references will point to the first one encountered and the other will be ignored.

Note:
This option takes *key scopes (on page 2049)* into account. For example, if you have something like this:

```
<topicref href="t2.dita" keys="k2"/>
    <topicgroup keyscope="ks">
        <topicref href="t2.dita" keys="k2"/>
    </topicgroup>
```

it will not report the "k2" key as a duplicate because it is defined in a *key scope (on page 2049)* on the second occurrence.

Report unreferenced key definitions

Checks the entire *DITA map* and reports any key definitions that are not referenced anywhere. Note that if the **Use DITAVAL filters** option is selected, this check will search for unreferenced key definitions based upon your selected filter.

Report unreferenced reusable elements

Checks the entire *DITA map* and reports any detected reusable elements that are not referenced anywhere. It looks for elements that have an *ID* specified in the following types of topic references:

- Any `<topicref>` that contains a `@processing-role` attribute set to **resource-only**.
- Any other referenced topic that contains elements that are reused elsewhere through a `@conref` or `@conkeyref`.

Report table layout problems

Looks for table layout problems. The types of errors that may be reported include:

- If a row has fewer cells than the number of columns detected.
- For a *CALS* table, if a cell has a vertical span greater than the available rows count.
- For a *CALS* table, if the number of `<colspecs>` is different than the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute.
- For a *CALS* table, if the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute is different than the number of columns detected in the table structure.
- For a *CALS* table, if the value of the `@cols`, `@rowsep`, or `@colsep` attributes are not numeric.
- For a *CALS* table, if the `@namest`, `@nameend`, or `@colname` attributes point to an incorrect column name.

Identify possible conflicts in profile attribute values

When the profiling attributes of a topic contain values that are not found in parent topic profiling attributes, the content of the topic is overshadowed when generating profiled output. This option reports these possible conflicts.

Report attributes and values that conflict with profiling preferences

Looks for profiling attributes and values that are not defined in the **Profiling / Conditional Text** preferences page *(on page 136)* (you can click the **Profiling Preferences** button to open this preferences page). It also checks if profiling attributes defined as *single-value* have multiple values set in the searched topics.

Additional Schematron checks

Allows you to select a Schematron file that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will use for the validation of DITA resources. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Advanced Tip:
Some APIs are available that retrieve information about DITA keys that are referenced within a topic. The APIs can be called from XSLT Stylesheets (including XML Refactoring operations) or Schematron schemas. For details, see API Documentation: DITAXSLTExtensionFunctionUtil.

Export settings

Allows you to export the settings assigned in this dialog box to an XML file that you can share with other users or use on other systems.

Import settings

Allows you to import settings for this dialog box from an XML file that was created by the **Export settings** action.

Check

Use the **Check** button to begin the validation process. The options that you choose in this dialog box are preserved between sessions.

Tip:
This function can be executed from an automated command-line script, for more details, see Scripting Oxygen *(on page 2188)*.

Related information
DITA Maps Manager *(on page 1880)*

DITA Map Author Mode Actions

A variety of actions are available for DITA map documents that can be found in **DITA** menu, toolbar, contextual menu, and the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

DITA Map Toolbar and Menu Actions

When a *DITA map* is opened in **Author** mode, the following default actions are available on the DITA Map toolbar (by default, they are also available in the **DITA** menu and in various submenus of the contextual menu):

Insert New DITA Resource

Opens a **New** DITA file dialog box *(on page 1946)* where you can choose the type of DITA document to create and inserts a reference to it at the current position within the map.

Insert Topic Reference

Opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* where you can configure a topic reference and inserts it at the current position within the map.

Insert Key Definition with Keyword

Opens a dialog box where you can choose the name of a key and its keyword value and inserts the key definition at the current position within the map.

Reuse Content

Opens the **Reuse Content** dialog box *(on page 2033)* that allows you to insert and configure a content reference (`@conref`), or a content key reference (`@conkeyref`) at the cursor position.

Insert Topic Heading

Opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* that allows you to insert a topic heading at the cursor position.

Insert Topic Group

Opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* that allows you to insert a topic group at the cursor position.

Insert Relationship Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure the relationship table to be inserted. The dialog box allows you to configure the number of rows and columns of the relationship table, if the header will be generated and if the title will be added.

Relationship Table Properties

Allows you to change the properties of rows in relationship tables.

Insert Relationship Row

Inserts a new table row with empty cells. The action is available when the cursor position is inside a table.

Insert Relationship Column

Inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. The action is available when the cursor position is inside a table.

Delete Relationship Column

Deletes the table column where the cursor is located.

Delete Relationship Row

Deletes the table row where the cursor is located.

Move Up

Moves the selected node up one position on its same level.

Move Down

Moves the selected node down one position on its same level.

Promote

Moves the selected node up one level to the level of its parent node.

Demote

Moves the selected node down one level to the level of its child nodes.

DITA Map Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available in the contextual menu when editing in **Author** mode (most of them are also available in the **DITA** menu at the top of the interface):

Edit Properties

Opens the **Edit Properties** dialog box that allows you to configure the properties of a selected node. For more details about this dialog box, see Edit Properties Dialog Box *(on page 1916)*.

Cut (Ctrl + X (Command + X on macOS))

Removes the currently selected content from the document and places it in the clipboard.

Copy (Ctrl + C (Command + C on macOS))

Places a copy of the currently selected content in the clipboard.

The clipboard contains the precise node structure that is preserved when pasting to another location within the same document or to another document opened in the **Author** mode. The copied content contains an HTML flavor that attempts to convert the copied structure to plain HTML, which can be useful for preserving the styles when pasting into editors such as MS Word.

Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on macOS))

Inserts the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.

Paste special submenu

This submenu includes the following special paste actions that are specific to the DITA *framework*:

Paste as content reference

Inserts a content reference (a DITA element with a `@conref` attribute) to the DITA XML element from the clipboard. An entire DITA XML element with an ID attribute must be present in the clipboard when the action is invoked. The `conref` attribute will point to this ID value.

Paste as content key reference

Allows you to indirectly reference content using the `@conkeyref` attribute. When the DITA content is processed, the key references are resolved using key definitions from *DITA maps (on page 2230)*. To use this action, you must first do the following:

1. Make sure the DITA element that contains the copied content has an ID attribute assigned to it.
2. In the **DITA Maps Manager** view, make sure that the **Context** combo box points to the correct map that stores the keys.
3. Make sure the topic that contains the content you want to reference has a key assigned to it. To assign a key, right-click the topic with its parent map opened in the **DITA Maps Manager**, select **Edit Properties**, and enter a value in the **Keys** field.

Paste as link

Looks for the first element with an ID value in the clipboard and inserts an `<xref>` that points to that element. If no elements with an ID value are found, a message will appear that informs you that to use this action, the clipboard contents must include at least one element with a declared ID.

Paste as link (keyref)

Inserts a link to the element that you want to reference. To use this action, you must first do the following:

1. Make sure the DITA element that contains the copied content has an ID attribute assigned to it.
2. In the **DITA Maps Manager** view, make sure that the **Context** combo box points to the correct map that stores the keys.
3. Make sure the topic that contains the content you want to reference has a key assigned to it. To assign a key, right-click the topic with its parent map opened in the **DITA Maps Manager**, select **Edit Properties**, and enter a value in the **Keys** field.

Insert submenu

This submenu includes the following insert actions that are specific to the DITA Map *framework*:

Insert New DITA Resource

Opens a **New** DITA file dialog box *(on page 1946)* where you can choose the type of DITA document to create and inserts a reference to it at the current position within the map.

Insert Topic Reference

Opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* where you can configure a topic reference and inserts it at the current position within the map.

Insert Key Definition with Keyword

Opens a dialog box where you can choose the name of a key and its keyword value and inserts the key definition at the current position within the map.

Reuse Content

Opens the **Reuse Content** dialog box *(on page 2033)* that allows you to insert and configure a content reference (`@conref`), or a content key reference (`@conkeyref`) at the cursor position.

Insert Topic Heading

Opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* that allows you to insert a topic heading at the cursor position.

Insert Topic Group

Opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)* that allows you to insert a topic group at the cursor position.

Insert Entity

Allows you to insert a predefined entity or character entity. Surrogate character entities (range #x10000 to #x10FFFF) are also accepted. Character entities can be entered in one of the following forms:

- #<*decimal value*> - e.g. #65
- &#<*decimal value*> - e.g. &#65
- #x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. #x41
- &#x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. &#x41

Relationship Table > Insert Relationship Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure the relationship table to be inserted. The dialog box allows you to configure the number of rows and columns of the relationship table, if the header will be generated and if the title will be added.

Generate IDs

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin generates unique IDs for the current element (or elements), depending on how the action is invoked:

- When invoked on a single selection, an ID is generated for the selected element at the cursor position.
- When invoked on a block of selected content, IDs are generated for all top-level elements and elements listed in the **ID Options** dialog box that are found in the current selection.

Note:
The **Generate IDs** action does not overwrite existing ID values. It only affects elements that do not already have an `@id` attribute.

Search References

Finds the references to the `@href` or `@keys` attribute value of the topic/map reference element at the current cursor position, in all the topics from the current *DITA map* (opened in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*). The current topic/map reference element must have an `@href` or `@keys` attribute defined to complete the search.

Show Key Definition

Available for elements that have a `@conkeyref` or `@keyref` attribute set (or elements with an ancestor element that has a `@conkeyref` or `@keyref` attribute). It computes the key name and opens the *DITA map (on page 2230)* that contains the definition of the key with the element that defines that key selected.

Select submenu

This submenu allows you to select the following:

Element

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

Content

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

Parent

Selects the entire parent element at the current cursor position.

Text submenu

This submenu contains the following actions:

To Lower Case

Converts the selected content to lower case characters.

To Upper Case

Converts the selected content to upper case characters.

Capitalize Sentences

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected sentence.

Capitalize Words

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected word.

Count Words

Counts the number of words and characters (no spaces) in the entire document or in the selection for regular content and read-only content.

Note:
The content marked as deleted with *change tracking (on page 2234)* is ignored when counting words.

Convert Hexadecimal Sequence to Character (Ctrl + Shift + H (Command + Shift + H on macOS))

Converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character *(on page 274)*. The action can be invoked if there is a selection containing a valid hexadecimal sequence or if the cursor is placed at the right side of a valid hexadecimal sequence. A valid hexadecimal sequence can be composed of 2 to 4 hexadecimal characters and may or may not be preceded by the `0x` or `0X` prefix. Examples of valid sequences and the characters they will be converted to:

- `0x0045` will be converted to `E`
- `0X0125` to `ĥ`
- `265` to `ɩ`
- `2190` to `←`

> **Note:**
> For more information about finding the hexadecimal value of a character, see Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent *(on page 276)*.

Refactoring submenu

Contains a series of actions designed to alter the XML structure of the document:

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected text in a comment, or removes the comment if it is commented.

Move Up (Alt + UpArrow (Option + UpArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes in front of the previous node.

Move Down (Alt + DownArrow (Option + DownArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes after the subsequent node.

Split Element

Splits the content of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. Thus, if the cursor is positioned at the beginning or at the end of the element, the newly created sibling will be empty.

Join Elements

Joins two adjacent *block elements (on page 2228)* that have the same name. The action is available only when the cursor position is between the two adjacent *block elements*. Also, joining two *block elements* can be done by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys and the cursor is positioned between the boundaries of these two elements.

Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)

Allows you to choose a tag to enclose a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Rename Element

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

Delete Element Tags

Deletes the tags of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. This operation is also executed if the start or end tags of an element are deleted by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys.

Remove All Markup

Removes all the XML markup inside the selected block of content and keeps only the text content.

Remove Text

Removes the text content of the selected block of content and keeps the markup intact with empty elements.

Attributes Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add/Change attribute

Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

Convert attribute to element

Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

Delete attribute

Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

Rename attribute

Allows you to rename an attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

Comments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete comments

Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

Elements Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete element

Allows you to delete elements.

Delete element content

Allows you to delete the content of elements.

Insert element

Allows you to insert new elements.

Rename element

Allows you to rename elements.

Unwrap element

Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

Wrap element

Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

Wrap element content

Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

Fragments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Insert XML fragment

Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

Replace element with XML fragment

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

Review submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Track Changes

Enables or disables the *Track Changes (on page 2234)* support for the current document.

Accept Change(s) and Move to Next

Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is accepted.

Accept All Changes

Accepts all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Reject Change(s) and Move to Next

Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is rejected.

Reject All Changes

Rejects all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Highlight

Enables the highlighting tool that allows you to mark text in your document.

Colors

Allows you to select the color for highlighting text.

Stop highlighting

Use this action to deactivate the highlighting tool.

Remove highlight(s)

Use this action to remove highlighting from the document.

Add Comment

Inserts a comment at the cursor position. The comment appears in a callout box and a tooltip (when hovering over the change).

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Manage Reviews

Opens the **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Folding submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Toggle Fold

Toggles the state of the current fold.

Collapse Other Folds

Folds all the elements except the current element.

Collapse Child Folds

Folds the elements indented with one level inside the current element.

Expand Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad+ (Command + NumPad+ on macOS))

Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

Expand All

Unfolds all elements in the current document.

About Element > Go to Definition

Moves the cursor to the definition of the current element.

Inspect Styles

Opens the **CSS Inspector** view *(on page 391)* that allows you to examine the CSS rules that match the currently selected element.

Options

Opens the Author mode preferences page *(on page 127)* where you can configure various options with regard to the **Author** editing mode.

Floating Contextual Toolbar for DITA

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a dynamic feature where certain editing contexts will trigger a floating toolbar with common actions that are available in the current editing context.

The *floating contextual toolbar* is automatically displayed when editing DITA map documents when a `<topicref>` element is selected and it includes actions for moving the topic reference node up or down (or promoting/demoting the node).

DITA Map Drag/Drop Actions

Dragging a file from the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* or **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* and dropping it into a *DITA map* document that is edited in **Author** mode creates a link to the dragged file (a `<topicref>` element, `<chapter>`, `<part>`, etc.) at the drop location.

Opening a Topic from a DITA Map in Author Mode

If a *DITA map* is open in the **Author** visual editing mode, you can open a referenced topic by clicking the icon to the left of the particular topic. The source topic is opened in a new tab in the main editor.

Tip:
For information about customizing **Author** mode actions for a particular *framework (on page 2231)* (document type), see the Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)* section.

Related Information:
Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)*

Opening a DITA Map With Topic Content Resolved

It is possible to open a DITA map in the main editor with all the content from the referenced topics resolved and presented in one document. To do this, select the DITA map in the **DITA Maps Manager** view and click the **Open Map in Editor with Resolved Topics** toolbar button. This opens the *DITA map* in the main editor area with content from all topic references expanded in-place. Topic references to non-DITA resources (e.g. Markdown files), which are interpreted dynamically as DITA XML at publishing time, are also expanded and shown converted to DITA XML.

If the **Display referenced content** setting in the Author Preferences *(on page 127)* page is not selected, references to maps, topics, and content references can be expanded on demand by clicking the small **Expand Reference** expansion button located next to each element that contains a reference.

Content from the resolved topics that is referenced using a `@conref` or `@conkeyref` attribute is presented as read-only by default. To edit it, you must use the **Edit Reference** contextual menu action to open the source topic that contains the referenced content.

Editing Referenced Content Directly

If you want to edit the referenced content directly without having to open the source document, go to **Options > Preferences > Editor > Edit Modes > Author** and select the **Allow referenced content to be edited** option *(on page 130)*. The referenced content becomes editable in-place and saving the document will save all other modified topics.

Things to be Aware of When Enabling This Option:

- The references become editable only if the referenced topics are the root elements. If, for example, in the DITA map, there are references directly to subtopics embedded in a larger topic, those references will not be editable.
- If the content is stored in a CMS, you need to deselect the **Local files only** option *(on page 130)* to edit such remote referenced topics directly but this feature might not function properly with remote resources (it depends on the capabilities of the CMS connector).
- Since a single topic may be referenced in multiple places in the DITA map, be careful not to make conflicting changes to that topic.
- When modified topics are saved, the **Only modified content** option in the **Options > Preferences > Editor > Edit Modes > Author > Serialization** page *(on page 148)* is ignored.
- The toolbar has two DITA map-specific actions for inserting topic references and all DITA topic-specific actions that can be used to make changes in the referenced DITA topics.
- The content completion and schema-aware insertion strategies work in each referenced topic according to their respective schema.
- The contextual menu presents the relevant actions in each referenced topic.
- Validation works for each individual referenced topic but only if it contains modifications.

Working with DITA Topics

DITA is a structured writing format. Structure can have several meanings, all of which are relevant to DITA. This section includes information about working with DITA topics and the structure.

Information Types

The structure of a piece of content refers to how the words and images are selected and organized to convey information. One approach to structured writing is to divide content into discrete blocks that contain various types of information, and then to combine those blocks to form publications. DITA is based on this approach, and encourages the author to write in discrete blocks called topics. DITA provides three base topic types (concept, task, and reference), a number of extended topic types, and the capability to create new topic types through specialization.

Text Structure

Every piece of text is made up of certain text structures, such as paragraphs, lists, and tables. DITA supports text structures through XML elements such as `<p>`, `<ol>`, and `<simpletable>`. The DITA markup specifies the text

structures, but not how they will be published in various types of media. The formatting of text structures is determined by the output transformations and may be customized to meet the needs of various organizations and type of media.

Semantic Structure

Semantic structure is structure that shows the meaning of things. For example:

- A `<task>` element specifies that a block of content contains the description of a task.
- A `<codeblock>` element specifies that a block of text consists of programming code.
- A `<uicontrol>` element specifies that a word is the name of a control in a computer GUI.
- The `@platform` profiling attribute specifies that a particular piece of content applies only to certain computing platforms.

Semantic structure is important in a structured writing system because it allows both authors and readers to find content, and it allows processing scripts to process various pieces of content differently, based on their role or meaning. This can be used to do things such as filtering content related to a specific product so that you can produce documentation on many products from the same source.

There can be many forms of semantics captured in a document set. DITA captures some of these in topics and some of them in maps. If you are using a CMS, it may capture additional semantics.

Document Semantics

Documents consist of elements that may be made up of the same basic text structures as the rest of the text, but have a special function within the structure of the document. For instance, both tables of contents and indexes are lists, but they play a special role in the document. Chapters and sections are just sequences of paragraphs and other text structures, yet they are meaningful in the structure of the document. In some cases, such as indexes and tables of contents, these structures can be generated from semantic information embedded in the source. For instance, a table of contents can be built by reading the titles of chapters and sections. DITA provides elements to describe common document semantics.

Subject Matter Semantics

In some cases, the semantics of the content relate directly to the subject matter that the content describes. For instance, DITA supports tags that allow you to mark a piece of text as the name of a window in a software application (`<wintitle>`), or to mark a piece of text as applying only to a particular product.

Audience Semantics

In some cases, the semantics of the content relate to the audience that it is addressed to. For instance, a topic might be addressed to a particular role, or to a person with a particular level of experience. DITA provides an `<audience>` element to capture audience metadata.

Creating Topic Structures

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a number of tools to help you create topic structures:

- *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* - Shows you which elements can be created at the current position.
- **Model** view *(on page 307)* - Shows you the complete structure supported by the current element.
- **Outline** view *(on page 301)* - Shows you the current structure of your document.
- **DITA** toolbar - Helps you to easily insert many common structures.

Resources

For more information about getting started with DITA and how to work with DITA in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see our compiled collection of DITA-related webinars that are meant to help you with your journey into working with DITA: Webinars: Working with DITA in Oxygen.

Related information
Getting Started with DITA *(on page 1870)*
DITA Topics Document Type (Framework) *(on page 699)*

Creating a New DITA Topic

The basic building block for DITA information is the DITA topic. DITA provides a variety of specialized topic types, the most common of which are:

- *Topic* - The base topic type from which all other topic types are specialized. Typically, it is used when a more specialized topic type is inappropriate.
- *Task* - For procedural information such as how to use a dialog box.
- *Concept* - For general, conceptual information such as a description of a product or feature.
- *Reference* - For reference information.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also supports numerous other specialized topic types that you will find templates for in the various folders in the **New** DITA file dialog box *(on page 1947)*. They include DITA 1.3 specializations, Lightweight DITA templates, MathML composites, Markdown documents, and other DITA specialized topic and *DITA map (on page 2230)* types such as *Glossentry*, *Troubleshooting*, *Questions and Answers*, *Bookmap (on page 2228)*, and *Subject Scheme Map (on page 2234)*.

To create a new DITA topic and add a reference to it in your *DITA map (on page 2230)*, follow these steps:

1. In the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, right-click the node in the current map where you want to add the new topic.
2. Select one of the following actions:
   - **Append Child > New** - Select this action to insert the new topic as a child of the selected node. This action opens a **New** file dialog box *(on page 1947)* that allows you to select the type of document and assists you with naming it. After you have configured your new topic, click **Create**.
   - **Insert Before > New** - Select this action to insert the new topic as a sibling to the current node, before it. This action opens a **New** file dialog box *(on page 1947)* that allows you to select the

type of document and assists you with naming it. After you have configured your new topic, click **Create**.

- **Insert After > New** - Select this action to insert the new topic as a sibling to the current node, after it. This action opens a **New** file dialog box *(on page 1947)* that allows you to select the type of document and assists you with naming it. After you have configured your new topic, click **Create**.
- **Duplicate** - Select this action to create a copy of the selected topic and insert it as a sibling. This action opens a dialog box that allows you to choose the file name and location for the newly created copy of the topic. After you have selected the name and path for your new topic, click **OK**.

> **Note:**
> The value of the root ID is generated taking the *Use the file name as the value of the root ID attribute* option from the **DITA > Topics** preferences page *(on page 79)* into account. When the option is deselected, a unique ID is generated.

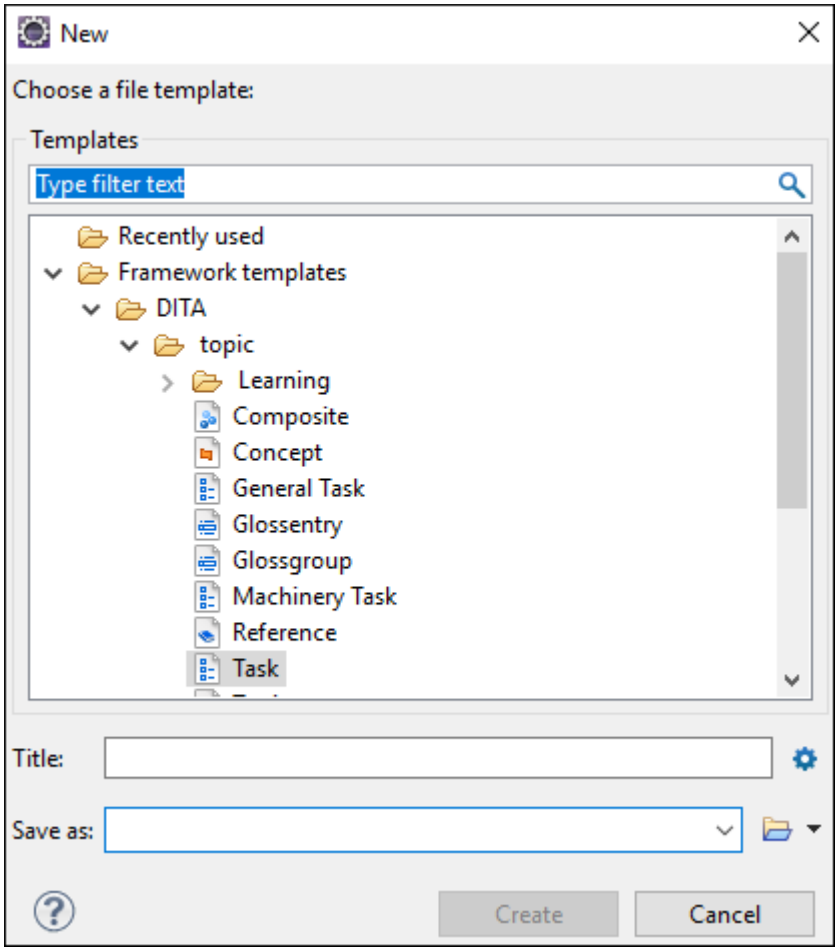
Step Result: The new topic is now referenced (as a `<topicref>`) in the *DITA map* at the location where you inserted it and the new topic is opened in the editor.

3. Save the *DITA map*.

Creating a New DITA Topic Using the New File Wizard

The **New** DITA file dialog box allows you to create a new DITA topic using various types of DITA file templates and provides some options that help you to configure the new topic.

Figure 344. New DITA File Dialog Box



Note:
The templates that appear in this dialog box include all templates that have an associated `.properties` file and the `type` property is set to **dita**, as well as templates that do not have an associated properties file or the `type` property is not defined. It will also include custom templates that you create using the procedures presented in Creating New Document Templates *(on page 229)*.

The **New** DITA file dialog box includes the following features and options:

Choose a file template

Use the template preview pane to select the appropriate type of DITA file you want to create. Once you select a template, the other options will appear below the preview pane.

Tip:
You can use the text filter field at the top of the dialog box to search for a specific template.

Title

Depending on the selected file template, the value of the **Title** field is set in:

- The `<title>` element of a DITA topic file. The `<title>` element needs to be the first child of the root element.
- The `<glossterm>` element of a *Glossentry* file.

New Topics Preferences

Pressing this button opens the DITA New Topics preference page *(on page 79)*.

Save as

Use this option to specify a file name and path for the new file. You can specify the path by using the text field, the history drop-down, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down menu.

Create

When you click this button, a reference (`<topicref>`) to the new topic is added to the current *DITA map* and the new topic is opened in the editor.

Other Ways to Create a New DITA Topic

In addition to the methods described above, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also provides other ways to create DITA topics, including the following:

- **Fast Create Topics** - You can use the **Fast Create Topics** feature *(on page 1949)* to quickly create multiple skeleton topics at once and you can specify their hierarchical structure within the *DITA map*.
- **Extract Topic From Selection** - When editing a DITA topic in **Author** mode, an **Extract Topic From Selection** action is available in the contextual menu (and the **DITA** menu). It creates a new DITA topic from a selection of content in the current topic.

Related Information:
Getting Started with DITA *(on page 1870)*
Adding Topics to a DITA Map *(on page 1901)*
Working with Markdown Documents in DITA *(on page 2012)*
Fast Create Multiple DITA Topics *(on page 1949)*

Fast Create Multiple DITA Topics

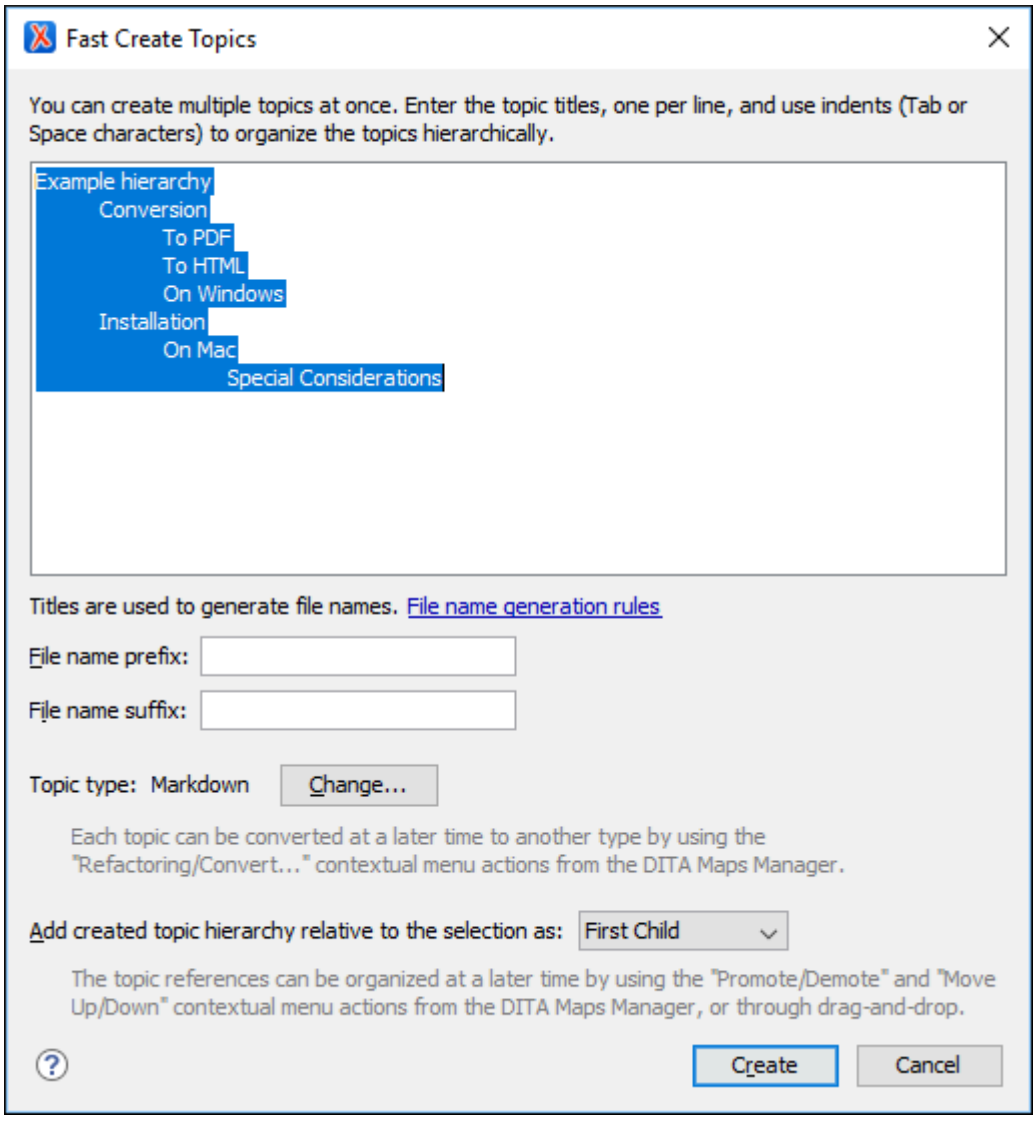
The **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* includes a feature that allows you to quickly create multiple skeleton topics at once and you can specify their hierarchical structure within the *DITA map (on page 2230)*. A common use-case for using this feature is when you need to insert a new chapter or section that will include multiple topics and you have the structure and titles planned out in advance.

Note:
The **Fast Create Topics** feature works for the following types of local and remote resource protocols: *file*, *http*, *https ftps*.

To access this feature, right-click a node in the **DITA Maps Manager** where you want the new topics to be inserted and select **Fast Create Topics**. This opens the **Fast Create Topics** dialog box where you can configure the structure for the new topics.

Tip:
If the **Oxygen AI Positron** add-on (version 8.0 or later) is installed, an **AI prompt** input box appears in the **Fast Create Topics** dialog box, where you can provide instructions or additional information for the AI. You can also paste snippets of content and attach documents (text, Markdown, Word, PDF) or images by using the **Attach** button (or by using copy/paste or drag/drop). In the **Topic type** area, the AI Positron also contributes an **Allow AI to choose a more suitable topic type** option that can be selected to have the AI determine the most suitable DITA topic type. The topic type you select is used as the default if the AI cannot find a more suitable one.

Figure 345. Fast Create Topics Dialog Box



The **Fast Create Topics** dialog box includes the following features and options:

Hierarchy Text Pane

Use this text area to enter the titles for your new topics, one per line, and specify the hierarchy by using indents (**Tab** or **Space**). Topic references will be created in the *DITA map* according to the hierarchy you enter in this section.

File name generation rules

The titles that you enter in the text pane will not only be used for the topic titles but also to generate their file names and you can click the **File name generation rules** link to configure the rules *(on page 79)* for how those file names will be generated.

> **Tip:**
> If you have added a file name prefix or suffix to the properties file *(on page 232)* for DITA document templates, the generated file name will include that prefix or suffix.

File name prefix

Use this option to add a specified prefix to the file name. If you have added a file name prefix to the properties file *(on page 232)* for DITA document templates, the prefix you enter here will override the one from the properties file.

File name suffix

Use this option to add a specified suffix to the end of the file name. If you have added a file name suffix to the properties file *(on page 232)* for DITA document templates, the suffix you enter here will override the one from the properties file.

Topic type

All of the topics that will be created will have the same DITA topic type, which is detected from the most recently created topic. You can click the **Change** button to select a different type from a list of possible DITA templates.

> **Tip:**
> You can convert any of these new files to a different DITA topic type at a later time by using another feature that allows you to easily convert DITA documents to other types *(on page 1955)*.

Add created topic hierarchy relative to the selection as

By default, the hierarchy of topics will be added to the *DITA map* as the **First Child** of the node where the action was invoked. You can change this to **Last Child**, **Preceding Sibling**, or **Following Sibling** if the selected node allows topics to be inserted as such.

Create

When you click **Create**, the specified hierarchy is added as topic references in the *DITA map*. The new documents are created as bare skeleton topics with only the topic title and possibly the root ID populated.

> **Tip:**
> You can easily change the order of the topics in the *DITA map (on page 1900)* at a later time,

Related Information:
Adding Topics to a DITA Map *(on page 1901)*
Converting DITA Topics to Another Type *(on page 1955)*

Editing DITA Topics

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a number of features to help you edit DITA topics. A DITA topic is an XML document, thus all the editing features that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides for editing XML documents also apply to DITA topics. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also provides extensive additional support specifically for DITA.

Opening a DITA Topic

There are several ways to open a DITA topic in the XML editor. Use any of the following methods to open a topic:

- Double-click the topic in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* (or right-click the topic and select **Open**).
- Double-click the file in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* (or right-click the file and select **Open**).
- If you have a *DITA map (on page 2230)* opened in the XML editor, you can click the icon to the left of the topic.
- Drag a DITA file from your system browser and drop it in the XML editor.

Visual Editing in Author Mode

DITA is an XML format *(on page 21)*, although you do not have to write raw XML to create and edit DITA topics. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a graphical view of your topics in **Author** mode *(on page 221)*. Your topics will likely open in **Author** mode by default, so this is the first view you will see when you open or edit a DITA topic. If your topic does not open in **Author** mode, just click **Author** at the bottom left of the editor window to switch to this mode.

Author mode presents a graphical view of the document you are editing, similar to the view you would see in a word processor. However, there are some differences, including:

- **Author** mode is not a **WYSIWYG** view. It does not show you exactly what your content will look like when printed or displayed on-screen. The appearance of your output is determined by the DITA publishing process, and your organization may have modified that process to change how the output is displayed. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has no way of determining what your final output will look like or where line breaks or page breaks will fall. Treat **Author** mode as a friendly visual editing environment, not a faithful preview of your output.

- Your document is still an XML document. **Author** mode creates a visual representation of your document by applying a CSS stylesheet to the XML. You can see the XML at any time by switching to **Text** mode *(on page 220)*. You, or someone in your organization, can change how the **Author** view looks by changing the CSS stylesheet or providing an alternate stylesheet.
- Your aim in editing a DITA document is not to make it look right, but to create a complete and correct DITA XML document. **Author** mode keeps you informed of the correctness of your content by highlighting XML errors in the text and showing you the current status in a box at the top right of the editor window. Green means that your document is valid, yellow means valid with warnings, and red means invalid. Warnings and errors are displayed when you place the cursor on the error location.
- Your XML elements may have attributes set on them. Conventionally, attributes are used to contain metadata that is not displayed to the reader. By default, attributes are not displayed in the **Author** view (though there are some exceptions) and cannot be edited directly in the **Author** view (though in some cases the CSS that drives the display may use form controls to let you edit attributes directly). To edit the attributes of an element, place your cursor on the element and press **Alt+Enter** to bring up the attribute editor. Alternatively, you can use the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)* to edit attributes.

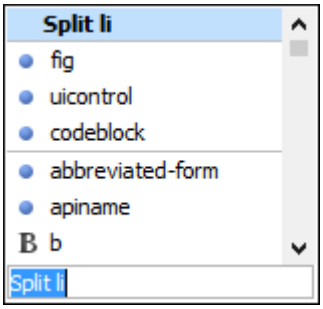
Tip:
You can select **Hints** from the **Styles** drop-down menu (available on the **Author Styles** toolbar) to display tooltips throughout the DITA document that offers additional information to help you with the DITA structure. For more information, see the Selecting and Combining Multiple CSS Styles *(on page 1547)* section.

Content Completion Assistance

Since it is a structured format, DITA only allows certain elements in certain places. The set of elements allowed differs from one DITA topic type to another (this is what makes one topic type different from another). To help you figure out which elements you can add in any given place and help you understand what they mean, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has a number of *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* features.

- **The Enter key:** In **Author** mode, the **Enter** key does not create line breaks, it brings up the *Content Completion Assistant* to help you enter a new element. In XML, you do not use line breaks to separate paragraphs. You create paragraphs by creating paragraph elements (element `<p>` in DITA) and tools insert the line breaks in the output and on-screen.

Figure 346. Content Completion Assistant



The *Content Completion Assistant* not only suggests new elements you can add. If you press **Enter** at the end of a *block element (on page 2228)* (such as a paragraph) it suggests creating a new element of the same type. If you press **Enter** in the middle of a *block element*, it suggests splitting that element into two elements.

A useful consequence of this behavior is that you can create a new paragraph simply by hitting **Enter** twice (just as you might in a text editor).

As you highlight an element name, a basic description of the element is displayed. Select the desired element and press **Enter** to create it.

To wrap an element around an existing element or piece of text, simply select it and press **Enter** and use the *Content Completion Assistant* to choose the wrapper element.

- **The Model view:** You can see the entire model of the current element by opening the **Model** view *(on page 307)* (**Window > Show View > Model**, if the view is not already open). The **Model** view shows you what type of content the current element can contain, all the child elements it can contain, all its permitted attributes, and their types.

Tip:
You can also select **Inline actions** from the **Styles** drop-down menu (available on the **Author Styles** toolbar) to display possible elements that are allowed to be inserted at various locations throughout the DITA document. For more information, see the Selecting and Combining Multiple CSS Styles *(on page 1547)* section.

DITA Editing Actions

A variety of actions are available in the DITA *framework (on page 2231)* to specifically assist you with editing DITA documents. These various actions are available in the contextual menu, the **DITA** menu, the **DITA (Author Custom Actions)** toolbar, or the *Content Completion Assistant*.

The **DITA** toolbar contains buttons for inserting a number of common DITA elements (elements that are found in most DITA topic types).

If the **DITA** toolbar is not displayed, right-click anywhere on the toolbar area, select **Configure Toolbars**, and select it from the displayed dialog box.

Note:
The **DITA** toolbar contains a list of the most common elements and actions for DITA, such as inserting an image, creating a link, inserting a content reference, or creating a table. It does not contain a button for inserting every possible DITA element. For a complete list of elements that you

can insert at the current location in your document, press **Enter** to open the *Content Completion Assistant*.

Whenever the current document in the editor is a DITA document, the **DITA** menu is displayed in the menu bar. It contains a large number of actions for inserting elements, creating content references and keys, editing DITA documents, and controlling the display. These actions are specific to DITA and supplement the general editing commands available for all document types. Many of these actions are also conveniently available in the contextual menu. In addition to the DITA *framework*-specific actions *(on page 1989)*, the contextual menu also includes various *general* **Author** mode contextual menu actions *(on page 509)*.

Related Information:

Getting Started with DITA *(on page 1870)*

DITA Topic Author Mode Actions *(on page 1989)*

Converting DITA Topics to Another Type

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a feature that allows you to convert an existing DITA document to a different topic type. For example, if you want to convert a DITA Task to a DITA Topic, or vice versa. There are several ways to access these refactoring actions and you can choose a scope for the operation and some filtering options.

DITA Conversion Refactoring Operations for *DITA*

The following conversion operations are available:

Convert Nested Topics to New Topics (Available from the contextual menu of editable maps/nodes in the DITA Maps Manager *(on page 1880)*)

Use this operation on topics that contain nested `<topic>` elements to convert each nested topic to a new topic. Also, the new topics are added in the **DITA Maps Manager** as the first child topics of the original topic.

Convert Sections to New Topics (Available from the contextual menu of editable maps/nodes in the DITA Maps Manager *(on page 1880)*)

Use this operation on topics that contain multiple sections to convert each section to a new topic. Also, the new topics are added in the **DITA Maps Manager** as the first child topics of the original topic.

Note:
As long as the DITA topic is of the type *topic*, *concept*, or *reference*, the new topics that will be created from the inner sections will retain the same topic type as the original topic.

Convert to Concept

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Concept topic type (for example, Topic to Concept).

Convert to General Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA General Task topic type (for example, Task to General Task). A DITA *General Task* is a less restrictive alternative to the *Strict Task* information type.

Convert to Reference

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Reference topic type (for example, Topic to Reference).

Convert to Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Task topic type (for example, Topic to Task).

Convert to Topic

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Topic (for example, Task to Topic).

Convert to Troubleshooting

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Troubleshooting topic type (for example, Topic to Troubleshooting).

Methods for Accessing the DITA Conversion Refactoring Operations

To access the conversion operations, use one of the following methods:

Single Document Method

With the document opened in the editor, right-click anywhere in the main editing pane (or right-click the topic reference in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*), go to the **Refactoring** submenu, and choose whichever operation is appropriate for your needs.

Multiple Documents At Once Method

Select **XML Refactoring** from the **XML** menu (or from the **Refactoring** submenu when you right-click one or more documents in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*or the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*). Then select whichever operation is appropriate for your needs.

XML Refactoring Wizard Dialog Box

When you select any of the operations, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin proceeds to the **XML Refactoring Wizard**. If you used the **Multiple Documents At Once Method** *(on page 1956)*, the wizard page allows you to choose a scope for the operation and some filtering options:

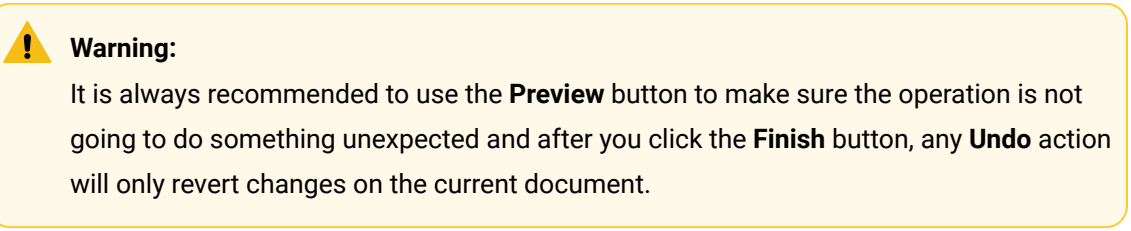
- **Scope** - Select from a variety of options to define the scope that will have resources affected by the operation. For example, you can choose to affect all resources in the **Project**, **All opened files**, **Entire DITA map hierarchy**, **Selected references**, **Selected DITA map references**, and others depending on the context.
- **Filters** section
  - **Include files** - Specifies files to be excluded from the operation. You can specify multiple files by separating them with commas and the patterns can include wildcards (such as ***** or **?**).
  - **Restrict to known XML file types only** - Excludes non-XML file types from the operation.

If you used the **Single Document Method** *(on page 1956)*, the scope will be the current file so the scope and filtering options are not displayed.

You can then use one of the following buttons to proceed with the operation:

Preview

You can use the **Preview** button to open a comparison panel where you can review all the changes that will be made by the refactoring operation before applying the changes.



Finish

When you use the **Finish** button, behind the scenes Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin maps the structure of the previous DITA document type to a structure that fits the new type. In some cases, especially when the previous structure was very complex, the conversion might result in an invalid structure and some manual adjustments might be required.

Handling Special Characters When Generating New File Names

For refactoring operations that generate a new file, if special characters are detected in an element that will be used to generate the new file name, the special characters will automatically be replaced with their ASCII equivalents (for example, **Ä** is changed to **AE**). If an ASCII equivalent does not exist, it will be replaced with an underline character (_). The purpose of this functionality is to avoid generating invalid file names.

It is possible to customize the list of replaceable symbols by editing the following XSLT character map file:

[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`/frameworks/dita/refactoring/utils/character-map.xsl`.

Converting To and From DITA Specialization Document Types

If you use your own DITA specialization document type *(on page 2169)*, you can modify mappings for the predefined conversion operations to work with your specialization.

To use the conversion operations with your DITA specialization, follow these steps:

1. Locate the conversion stylesheets in the following directory (and its subdirectories): *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/dita/refactoring/`.

   > **Note:**
   > The stylesheets for converting entire files (from one type to another) are located in the `dita-files-conversion-stylesheets` folder. Each of these conversion operations has a stylesheet with the word **entrypoint** at the end of its name. Edit the appropriate `*-entrypoint.xsl` file (for example, to modify the **Convert to Task** operation, edit the `convert-resource-to-task-entrypoint.xsl` file).

2. Depending on whether you use a DTD, XML Schema, or Relax NG-based specialization, you can:
   a. Modify the values of the declared **root-element**, **public-literal-target**, and **system-literal-target** variables to match your specialization's DTD information.
   b. Modify the value of the declared **schema-location** variable to match the location of your specialization's XML schema.
   c. Modify the value of the declared **xml-model-location** variable to match your Relax NG specialization.
3. For the **Convert Nested Topics to New Topics** and **Convert Sections to New Topics** operations, if your DITA specialization uses your own custom URN or DOCTYPE, you can replace the default mappings in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/dita/refactoring/utils/dita-formats.xsl` stylesheet with your own values for the `DOCTYPE` or `xml-model`.
4. If you want to change the name of the operation that will be displayed in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, follow these substeps:
   a. Locate the resource XML file for the same conversion operation in the following directory: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/dita/refactoring/` (for example, for the **Convert to Task** operation, it is `convertResource2Task.xml`).
   b. Edit that XML file and change the **name** attribute to match whatever you want to be displayed for that operation (for example, `name="Convert to My DocType"`).
5. Save your changes to all modified files.
6. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

Result: You should now see your changes when accessing the conversion operations *(on page 1956)*.

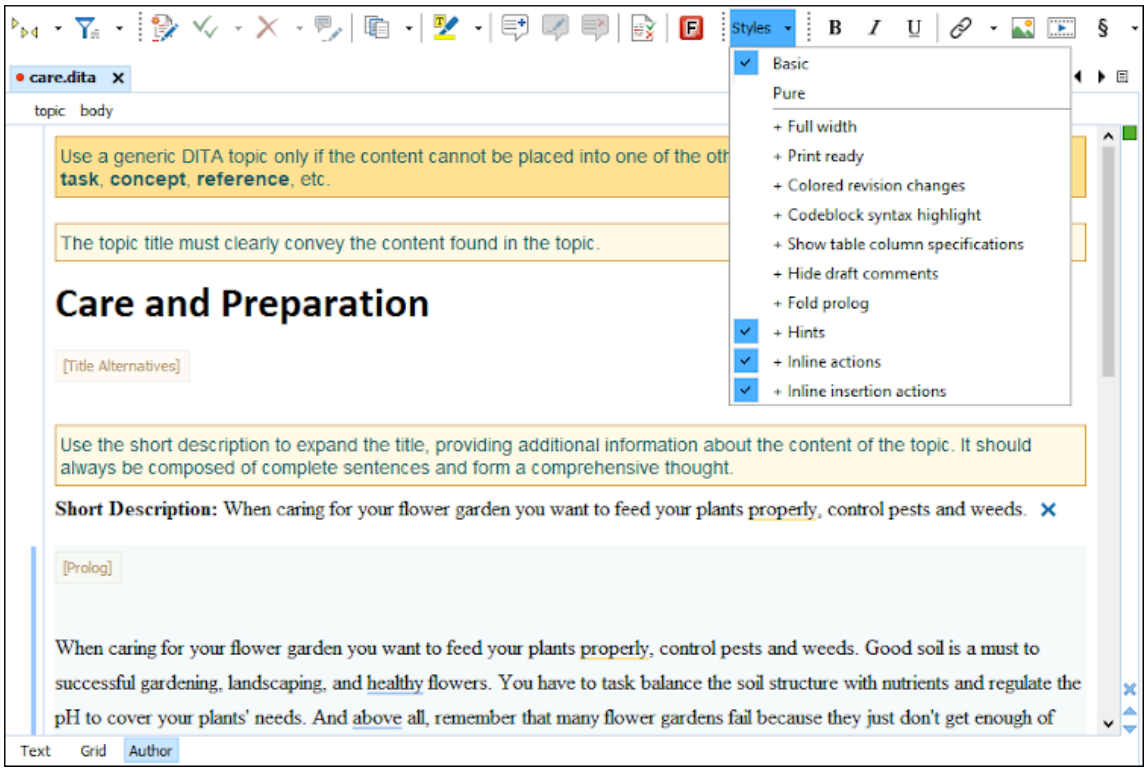
Related Information:
Editing DITA Topics *(on page 1952)*
Refactoring XML Documents *(on page 587)*

Changing the Look of DITA Documents in Author Mode Using the Styles Menu

The **Author** mode renders the content of the DITA documents visually, based on CSS stylesheets associated with the document.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a **Styles** drop-down menu on the toolbar that allows you to select one *main (non-alternate) CSS style (on page 2231)* and multiple *alternate CSS styles (on page 2228)*. This makes it easy to change the look of the document as it appears in **Author** mode.

Figure 347. Styles Drop-down Menu in a DITA Document



You can use the **Styles** drop-down menu to select a *main css style (on page 2231)* that applies to the whole document and then select one or more *alternate css styles (on page 2228)* that behave like layers and are merged sequentially with the *main style*. Each of the styles that are listed in this drop-down menu have a corresponding CSS file that defines how your documents are rendered in **Author** mode and in the output. Also, the selections from this drop-down menu are persistent, meaning that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin remembers them when subsequent documents are opened.

Unique CSS Styles for DITA

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes with a set of built-in CSS layer stylesheets for DITA documents (as well as some that are specifically for *DITA maps (on page 2230)*).

Some of these unique alternate styles for DITA documents include:

- **Hints** - Displays tooltips throughout DITA documents that offer additional information to help you with the DITA structure.
- **Inline actions** - Displays possible elements that are allowed to be inserted at various locations throughout DITA documents.
- **Inline insertion actions** - Displays a widget (⊕) near each empty paragraph that makes it easy to insert DITA elements (for example, to insert lists, notes, or tables).

Tip:
For information about configuring the **Styles** drop-down menu, see Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*.

Working with Images in DITA Topics

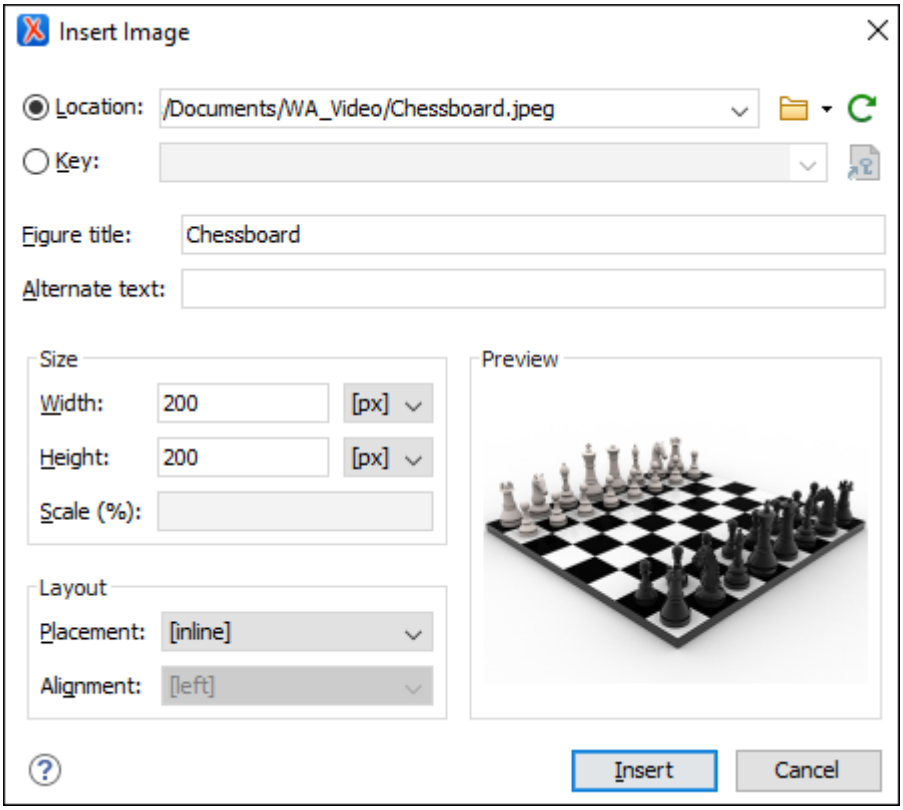
There are several ways to add images to a DITA topic, depending on if you want to create a figure element (with a title and caption), just insert an image inline, or if you want to use multiple versions of a graphic depending on the situation. For instance, you might want to use a specific image for each different product version or output media.

Adding an Image Inline with the Insert Image Dialog Box

Use the following procedure to add an image inline:

1. Place the cursor in the position you want the graphic to be inserted.
2. Select the **Insert Image** action. The **Insert Image** dialog box appears.

Figure 348. Insert Image Dialog Box



3. Configure the options in this dialog box and click **Insert**.

   The **Insert Image** dialog box includes the following options and features for inserting images into a DITA document:

   Location

Use this option to specify a URL for the image as the value of an `@href` attribute inside the `<image>` element. You can type the URL of the image you want to insert or use browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down menu (there is also a history drop-down).

Key

Use this option to insert the selected key as the value of a `@keyref` attribute inside the `<image>` element. All keys that are presented in the dialog box are gathered from the *root map (on page 2234)* of the current *DITA map*. You can use the **Choose Key Reference** button to open the **Choose Key** dialog box that presents the list of keys available in the selected *root map*.

> **Note:**
> If your defined keys are not listed in this dialog box, it is most likely trying to gather keys from the wrong *root map*. You can change the *root map* by using the **Change Root Map** link in the **Choose Key** dialog box or change it in the **Context** option in the toolbar of the **DITA Maps Manager**.

Figure title

Use this text box to insert a `<title>` and `<image>` element inside a `<fig>`.

Alternate text

Use this text box to insert an `<alt>` element inside the `<image>`.

Size

Use this section to configure the **Width** and **Height** of the image, or **Scale** the image. Specifying a value in these options inserts a `@width`, `@height`, and `@scale` attribute, respectively.

Layout

Use the options in this section to insert `@placement` and `@align` attributes into the `<image>` element.

Preview

The **Preview** box shows a thumbnail of the selected image so that you can see a preview of the image before clicking **Insert**.

Adding an Image Inline with Drag/Drop (or Copy/Paste) Actions

You can drag images from your system explorer or the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and drop them into a DITA document (or copy and paste). This will insert the path of the image file as the value of the `@href` attribute in a DITA `<image>` element:

```
<image href="../images/image_file.png"/>
```

Tip:
To replace an image, just drag and drop a new image over the existing one. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will automatically update the reference to the new image.

Adding an Image in a Figure Element

To add an image in a figure:

1. Add a `<fig>` element to your document at the appropriate place.
2. Add a `<title>` and/or `<desc>` element to `<fig>`, according to your needs.
3. Add an `<image>` element *(on page 1960)* to the `<fig>` element.

Note:
The `<fig>` element has a number of other child elements that may be appropriate to your content. See the DITA documentation for complete information about `<fig>`.

Note:
The order that the content of the `<image>`, `<title>`, and `<desc>` elements will appear in the output is determined by the output transformation. If you want to change how they appear, you may have to modify the output transformation, rather than your source content.

Floating Images in DITA Topics for PDF or XHTML Output

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides the possibility of floating an image to the left or right of blocks of content in DITA topics, for both PDF and XHTML output.

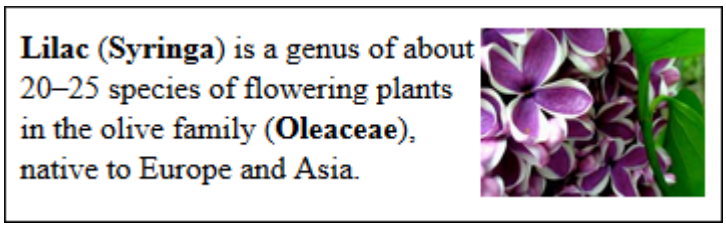
To float an image, you simply need to set the `@outputclass` attribute on the `<image>` element. The possible values are:

- **float-left**
- **float-right**

For example, the following DITA structure will present the image to the right of the paragraph content in the output:

```
<p><image href="../../images/Lilac.jpg" scale="45" outputclass="float-right"/>
  <b>Lilac</b> (<b>Syringa</b>) is a genus of about 20–25 species of flowering plants
  in the olive family (<b>Oleaceae</b>), native to Europe and Asia.
</p>
```

Figure 349. Image Floated to the Right



Searching for References to Images

You can search for all references to an image by selecting **Search References** from the contextual menu. The result depends on how the image is defined, as follows:

- If the action is invoked on an `<image>` element that contains an `@href` attribute but does not include an `@id` attribute, all direct references to the image are reported. If the `<image>` element does have an `@id` attribute, all links to the specified *ID* are also reported.
- If the action is invoked on an `<image>` element that contains a `@keyref` attribute but does not include an `@id` attribute, all direct references to the image are reported along with all instances where the key is used. If the `<image>` element does have an `@id` attribute, all links to the specified *ID* are also reported.

Related information

Working with Image Maps in DITA *(on page 1967)*

Short Video Clip: Learn DITA Editing with Oxygen - Various Ways to Insert Image References

Adding Video, Audio, and Embedded HTML Resources in DITA Topics

You can insert references to media resources (such as videos, audio clips, or embedded HTML frames) in your DITA topics. The media resources can be played directly in **Author** mode and in all HTML5-based outputs. There is a toolbar button ( ) that allows you to insert and configure a reference to the media resource. You can also drag media files from your system explorer or the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and drop them into your documents (or copy and paste them).

Table 15. Supported Media Types

Media	Description	Type	Supported Size Properties
mp3	Moving Picture Experts Group Layer-3 Audio	audio	Width
wav	Windows Wave	audio	Width
pcm	Pulse Code Modulation	audio	Width

Table 15. Supported Media Types (continued)

Media	Description	Type	Supported Size Properties
m4a	Moving Picture Experts Group Layer-4 Audio	audio	Width
aif	Audio Interchange Format	audio	Width
mp4	Moving Picture Experts Group Layer-4 Video	video	Width & Height
m4v	Itunes Video File	video	Width & Height
avi	Audio Video Interleaved	video	Width & Height
embedded video (such as *YouTube*, *Vimeo*, or *Vidyard*)	Embedded Iframe Code	iframe	Width & Height

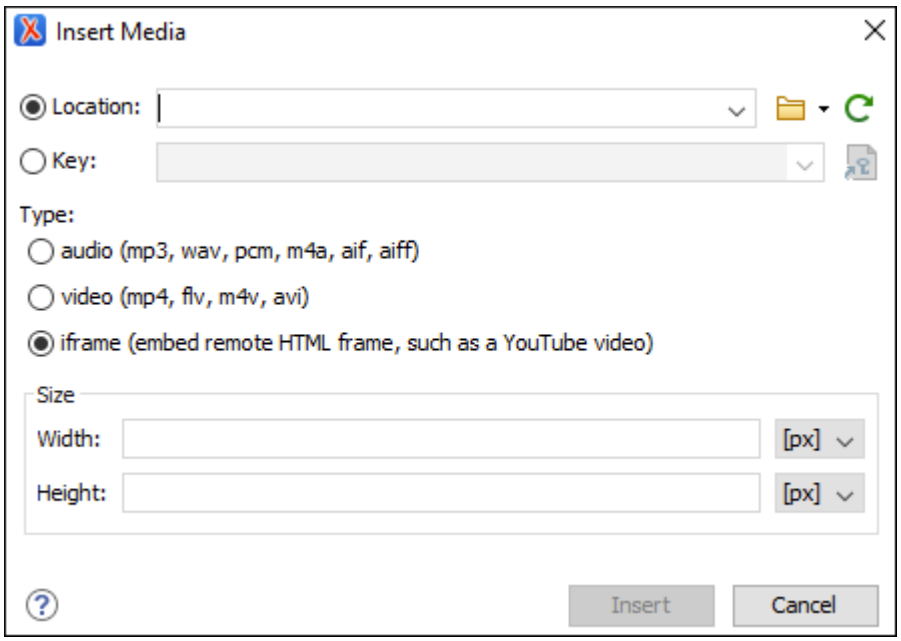
Adding a Media Resource

To insert a media resource in a DITA document, use the following procedure:

1. Place the cursor at the location where you want the media resource.
2. Select the **Insert Media Resource** action from the toolbar. The **Insert Media** dialog box appears.

Note:
You can also drag media files from your system explorer or the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and drop them into your documents (or copy and paste them). Note that this method will bypass the **Insert Media** dialog box, so if you need to adjust the size you will need to adjust the `@width` or `@height` attributes manually.

Figure 350. Insert Media Dialog Box



3. Configure the options in this dialog box and click **Insert**.

The **Insert Media** dialog box includes the following options:

Location

Use this option to specify a URL for the media resource as the value of a `@data` attribute inside the `<object>` element. You can type the URL of the resource you want to insert or use browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down menu (there is also a history drop-down).

Key

Use this option to insert the selected key as the value of a `@datakeyref` attribute inside the `<object>` element. All keys that are presented in the dialog box are gathered from the *root map (on page 2234)* of the current *DITA map*. You can use the **Choose Key Reference** button to open the **Choose Key** dialog box that presents the list of keys available in the selected *root map*.

Note:
If your defined keys are not listed in this dialog box, it is most likely trying to gather keys from the wrong *root map*. You can change the *root map* by using the **Change Root Map** link in the **Choose Key** dialog box or change it in the **Context** option in the toolbar of the **DITA Maps Manager**.

Type

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects and automatically selects the media type based upon the specified resource in the URL field *(on page 1965)*. You can manually

change the type, but keep in mind that in the publishing stage the *object* element is converted to an HTML5 element *(on page 1966)* based upon the type selected here. You can choose between: **audio**, **video**, or **iframe**.

Size

Use this section to configure the **Width** and **Height** of the frame for the media resource. Specifying a value in these options inserts a `@width` and `@height` attribute, respectively. For audio clips, only the **Width** can be adjusted.

Result in Author Mode: A reference to the specified video, audio, or embedded HTML frame is inserted in an `<object>` element and it is rendered in **Author** mode so that it can be played directly from there.

Attention:

- On Ubuntu 17.10, if you receive an error when trying to play videos in **Author** mode, you need to install the `libavformat57` library.

Result in Output: In the publishing stage, the `<object>` element is converted to an HTML5 element so that it can be rendered properly and played in all HTML5-based outputs.

- **Videos** - The `<object>` element is converted to an HTML5 `<video>` element.
- **Audio Clips** - The `<object>` element is converted to an HTML5 `<audio>` element.
- **Embedded HTML Frames** - The `<object>` element is converted to an HTML5 `<iframe>` element.

Tip:
There is an even faster way of inserting an embedded video (such as a YouTube, Vimeo, or Vidyard). If you copy the embed code from the source (for example, you can right-click on a YouTube video and select **Copy embed code**), you can then paste the contents of the clipboard in the **URL** field *(on page 1965)* and the **Type** *(on page 1965)* will automatically be set on **iframe**, while the **Width** and **Height** *(on page 1966)* will be populated according to the detected size, and an `allowfullscreen` parameter will automatically be added (set the value of this parameter to **true** to allow videos to play in full screen mode once the document is converted to XHTML output).

Inserting Media in HTML Outputs That Do Not Support Embedded Media

For certain types of HTML output (for example, CHM) that do not support embedded media (such as videos or audio files), Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a parameter that can be set in the transformation scenario to present the media object as a plain link in the output.

This can be achieved by following these steps:

1. Edit the DITA transformation scenario *(on page 2097)* for the output type that does not support embedded objects (for example, **DITA Map CHM**).
2. Go to the **Parameters** tab *(on page 2104)* and click the **New** button to add a new parameter.
3. For the **Name**, enter: **com.oxygenxml.xhtml.linkToMediaResources**.
4. For the **Value**, enter: **true**.
5. Click **OK** and run the transformation.

Result: The media object will appear in the output as a plain link instead of an embedded object.

Resources

For more information, see the following video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/llX11gS4WaU

Related Information:
Working with Images in DITA Topics *(on page 1960)*
How to Add Video and Audio Objects in DITA WebHelp Output *(on page 1076)*

Working with Image Maps in DITA

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for **image maps** in DITA documents through the use of the `<imagemap>` element. This feature provides an easy way to create hyperlinks in various areas within an image without having to divide the image into separate image files. The visual **Author** editing mode includes an **Image Map Editor** that helps you to easily create and configure image maps.

Figure 351. Image Map Editor in DITA

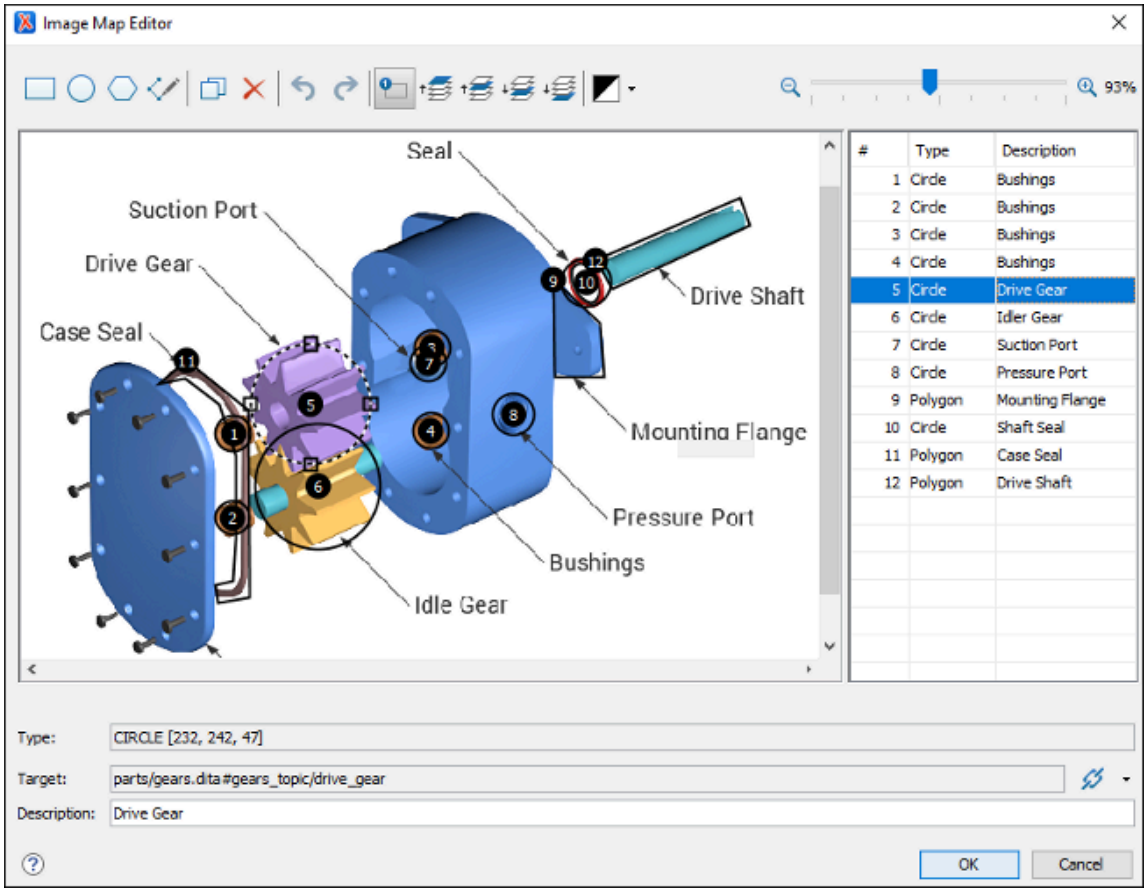


Image Map Editor Interface in DITA

The interface of the **Image Map Editor** consists of the following sections and actions:

Toolbar

New Rectangle

Use this button to draw a rectangular shape over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size and shape of the rectangle.

New Circle

Use this button to draw a circle over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size of the circle.

New Polygon

Use this button to draw a polygon shape over an area in the image. This action opens a dialog box that allows you to select the number of points for the polygon. You can drag any of the points to adjust the size and shape of the polygon.

New Free Form Shape

Use this button to draw a free form shape over an area in the image. After selecting this button, left-click anywhere in the image to place the first point of your shape.

Then move the cursor to the location of the next desired point and left-click to place the next point, and so on. To complete the shape (area), click the first point again and a line will automatically be added from the last point that was added, or simply double-click the last point to automatically add the line from the last point back to the first.

Duplicate

Use this button to create a duplicate of the currently selected shape.

Delete

Use this button to delete the currently selected shape.

Undo

Use this button to undo the last action.

Redo

Use this button to redo the last action that was undone.

Show/Hide Numbers

Use this button to toggle between showing or hiding the numbers for the shapes.

Bring Shape to Front

Use this button to bring the currently selected shape forward to the top layer.

Bring Shape Forward

Use this button to bring the currently selected shape forward one layer.

Send Shape Backward

Use this button to send the currently selected shape back one layer.

Send Shape to Back

Use this button to send the currently selected shape back to the bottom layer.

Color Chooser

Use this drop-down menu to select a color scheme for the lines and numbers of the shapes.

Zoom Slider

Use this slider to zoom the image in or out in the main image pane.

Image Pane

This main Image Pane is where you work with shapes to add hyperlinks to multiple areas within an image. The editing mechanisms that are supported in the Image Pane include the following:

Mouse Controls and Keyboard Shortcuts

- Use the mouse to select and move shapes around in the image pane. It is easy to see which shape is selected in this image pane because the border of the selected shape changes from a solid line to a dotted one.
- You can also drag any of the points of a selected shape to adjust its size and shape.
- You can hold down the **Ctrl** key to select multiple shapes and then move them simultaneously.
- You can also move shapes by using the arrow keys on your keyboard. In addition, you can hold down **Shift** while using the arrow keys to move the shape further or **Alt** to move it 1 pixel at a time.
- To zoom in or out, you can use the **NumPad +** or **NumPad -** keys respectively. Use **Ctrl + NumPad 0** to reset the zoom level to its default value.
- You can use **Ctrl + Z** to undo an action or **Ctrl + Y** to redo the last action that was undone.

Contextual Menu Actions Available in the Image Pane

You can right-click the shapes, points, or anywhere in the Image Pane to invoke the contextual menu where the following actions are available:

Add Point

Adds a point to *Polygon* or *Free Form* shapes.

Remove Point

Removes the current point from *Polygon* or *Free Form* shapes.

Duplicate

Create a duplicate of the currently selected shape.

Delete

Delete the currently selected shape.

New Rectangle

Creates a rectangular shape over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size and shape of the rectangle.

New Circle

Creates a circle over an area in the image. You can drag any of the four points to adjust the size of the circle.

New Polygon

Creates a polygon shape over an area in the image. This action opens a dialog box that allows you to select the number of points for the polygon. You can drag any of the points to adjust the size and shape of the polygon.

Undo

Use this action to undo the last action.

Redo

Use this action to redo the last action that was undone.

Shape Table

The table at the right of the *Image Pane* is a sequential list of all the areas (shapes) that have been added in the image. It shows their number, type, and description (if one has been added). If you select one of the entries in the table, the corresponding shape will be selected in the *Image Pane*.

Properties

Type

Displays information about the selected coordinate.

Target

Allows you to choose the target resource that you want the selected area (shape) to be linked to. Select a target by using the **Link** drop-down menu to the right of the text field. You can choose between the following types of links: **Cross Reference**, **File Reference**, or **Web Link**. All three types will open a dialog box that allows you to define the target resource. This linking process is similar to the normal process of inserting links in DITA *(on page 2061)* by using the identical **Link** drop-down menu from the main toolbar.

When you click **OK** to finalize your changes in the **Image Map Editor**, an `<xref>` element will be inserted with either an `@href` attribute or a `@keyref` attribute. Additional attributes may also be inserted and their values depend on the target and the type of link. For details about the three types of links and their dialog boxes, see Inserting a Link in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *(on page 2061)*.

Description

You can enter an optional description for the selected area (shape) that will be displayed in the **Image Map Details** section *(on page 1972)* in **Author** mode and as a tooltip message when the end-user hovers over the hyperlink in the output.

How to Create an Image Map in DITA

To create an image map on an existing image in a DITA document, follow these steps:

1. Right-click the image and select **Image Map Editor**.

   Step Result: This action will apply an *image map* to the current image and open the **Image Map Editor** dialog box.

2. Add hyperlinks to the image by selecting one of the shape buttons (**New Rectangle**, **New Circle**, or **New Polygon**).
3. Move the shape to the desired area in the image and drag any of the points on the shape to adjust its size or form. You can use the other buttons on the toolbar *(on page 1968)* to adjust its layer and color, or to perform other editing actions.

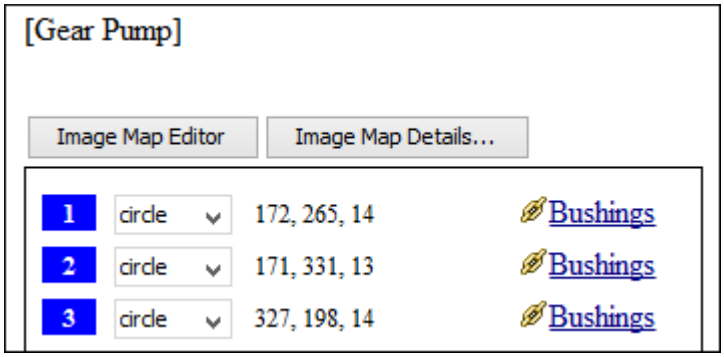
   > **Tip:**
   > You can right-click any of the points, shapes, or anywhere in the Image Pane to access various helpful contextual menu actions *(on page 1970)*. For example, the easiest way to remove a point is to right-click the point and select **Remove Point**.

4. With the shape selected, use one of the linking options *(on page 1971)* in the **Link** drop-down menu to select a target resource (or enter its path in the **Target** *(on page 1971)* text field).
5. (Optional) Enter a **Description** *(on page 1971)* for the selected area (shape).
6. If you want to add more hyperlinks to the image, select a shape button again and repeat the appropriate steps.
7. When you are finished creating hyperlinks, click **OK** to process your changes.

Result: The *image map* is applied on the image and the appropriate elements and attributes are automatically added. In **Author** mode, the image map is now rendered over the image. If the image includes an `<alt>` element, its value will be displayed under the image. The following two buttons will also now be available under the image in **Author** mode:

- **Image Map Editor** - Click this button to open the **Image Map Editor**.
- **Image Map Details** - Click this button to expand a section that displays the details of the image map and allows you to change the shape and coordinates of the hyperlinked areas. Keep in mind that if you change the shape in this section, you also need to add or remove coordinates to match the requirements of the new shape.

Figure 352. Image Map Details



How to Edit an Existing Image Map in DITA

To edit an existing image map, use any of the following methods:

- Simply double-click the image.
- Right-click the image and select **Image Map Editor**.
- Click the **Image Map Editor** button below the image.

All three methods open the **Image Map Editor** where you can make changes to the image map using the various features described above. You can also make changes to the XML structure of the image map in the **Text** editing mode.

You can also click the **Image Map Details** button below the image to expand a section that displays the details of the image map and allows you to change the shape and coordinates of the hyperlinked areas. Keep in mind that if you change the shape in this section, you also need to add or remove coordinates to match the requirements of the new shape.

Overlapping Areas

If shapes overlap one another in the **Image Map Editor**, the one on the top layer takes precedence. The number shown inside each shape represents its layer (if the numbers are not displayed, click the **Show/Hide Numbers** button on the **Image Map Editor** toolbar *(on page 1968)*). To change the layer order for a shape, use the layer buttons on the **Image Map Editor** toolbar *(on page 1968)* (, , ,).

If you insert a shape and all of its coordinates are completely inside another shape, the **Image Map Editor** will display a warning to let you know that the shape is entirely covered by a bigger shape. Keep in mind that if a shape is completely inside another shape, its hyperlink will only be accessible if its layer is on top of the bigger shape.

Related Information:
DITA '*imagemap*' Element Specifications
Working with Images in DITA Topics *(on page 1960)*

Adding Tables in DITA Topics

You can use the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or from the contextual menu to add a table in a DITA topic. By default, DITA supports four types of tables:

- DITA *Simple* table model *(on page 1974)* - This is the most commonly used model for basic tables.
- CALS table model (OASIS Exchange Table Model) *(on page 1975)* - This is used for more advanced functionality.
- DITA *Choice* table model *(on page 1978)* - This is used within a `<step>` element in a DITA Task document to describe a series of optional choices that a user must make before proceeding.
- DITA *Properties* table model *(on page 1980)* - This is used in DITA Reference documents to describe a property (for example, its type, value, and description).

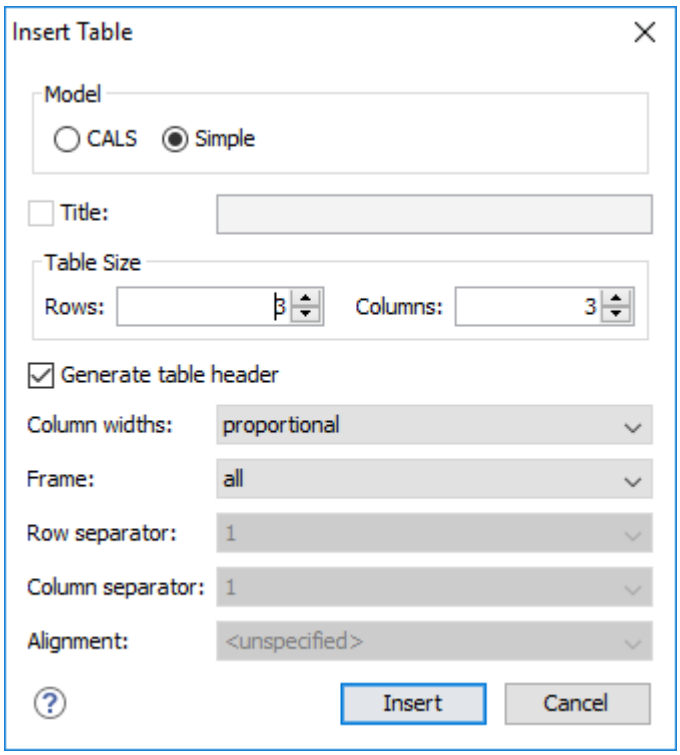
If you are using a specialized DITA vocabulary, it may contain specialized versions of these table models.

Since DITA is a structured format, you can only insert a table in places in the structure of a topic where tables are allowed. The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin toolbar provides support for entering and editing tables. It also helps to indicate where you are allowed to insert a table or its components by disabling the appropriate buttons.

Inserting a Simple Table Model

To insert a **Simple** DITA table, select the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or from the contextual menu (or the **Table** submenu from the **DITA** menu). The **Insert Table** dialog box appears. Select **Simple** for the table **Model**.

Figure 353. Insert Table Dialog Box - Simple Model



The dialog box allows you to configure the following options when you select the **Simple** table model:

Title

If this checkbox is selected, you can specify a title for your table in the adjacent text box.

Generate table header

If selected, an extra row will be inserted at the top of the table to be used as the table header.

Column widths

Allows you to specify the type of properties for column widths (`@colwidth` attribute). You can choose one of the following properties for the column width:

- **proportional** - The width is specified in proportional (relative) units of measure. The proportion of the column is specified in a `@relcolwidth` attribute with the values listed as the number of shares followed by an asterisk. The value of the shares is totaled and rendered as a percent. For example, `relcolwidth="1* 2* 3*"` causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%. When entering content into a cell in one column, the width proportions of the other columns are maintained. If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, the values of the `@relcolwidth` attribute are automatically changed accordingly. By default, when you insert, drag and drop, or copy/paste a column, the value of the `@relcolwidth` attribute is `1*`.
- **dynamic** - If you choose this option, the columns are created without a specified width. Entering content into a cell changes the rendered width dynamically. If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, a dialog box will be displayed that asks you if you want to switch to proportional or fixed column widths.

Frame

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. The allowed values are as follows:

- **none** - No border will be added.
- **all** - A border will be added to all frames.
- **top** - A border will be added to the top frame.
- **topbot** - A border will be added to the top and bottom frames.
- **bottom** - A border will be added to the bottom frame.
- **sides** - A border will be added to the side frames.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

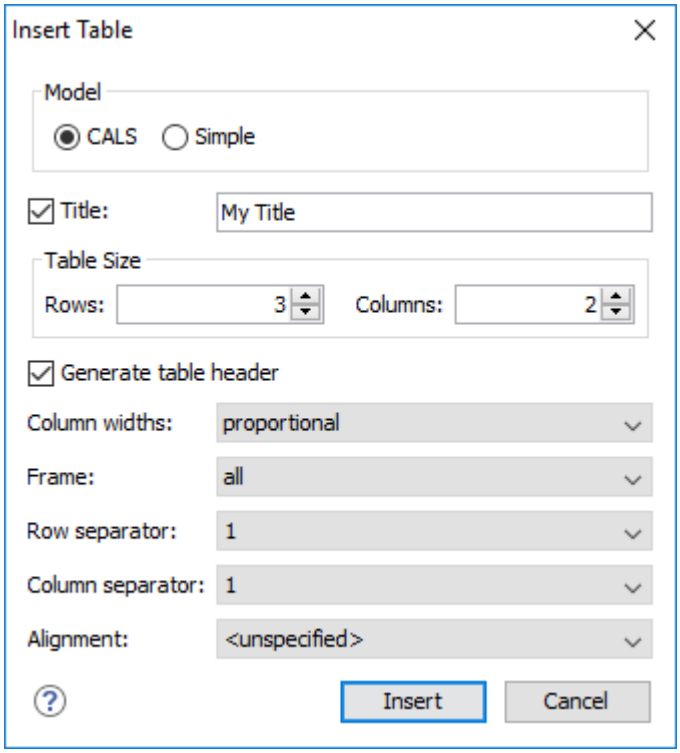
Note:
The options in the **Insert Table** dialog box for DITA documents are persistent, so changes made in one session will carry over to another.

When you click **Insert**, a simple table is inserted into your document at the current cursor position.

Inserting a CALS Table Model (OASIS Exchange Table)

To insert an OASIS Exchange Table (**CALS**), select the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or from the contextual menu (or the **Table** submenu from the **DITA** menu). The **Insert Table** dialog box appears. Select **CALS** for the table **Model**. This model allows you to configure more properties than the *Simple* model.

Figure 354. Insert Table Dialog Box - CALS Model



The dialog box allows you to configure the following options when you select the **CALS** table model:

Title

If this checkbox is selected, you can specify a title for your table in the adjacent text box.

Table Size

Allows you to choose the number of **Rows** and **Columns** for the table.

Generate table header

If selected, an extra row will be inserted at the top of the table to be used as the table header.

Column widths

Allows you to specify the type of properties for column widths (`@colwidth` attribute). You can choose one of the following properties for the column width:

- **proportional** - The width is specified in proportional (relative) units of measure. The proportion of the column is specified in a `@colwidth` attribute with the values listed as the number of shares followed by an asterisk. The value of the shares is totaled and rendered as a percent. For example, `colwidth="1* 2* 3*"` causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%. When entering content into a cell in one column, the width proportions of the other columns are maintained. If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, the values of the `@colwidth` attribute are automatically changed accordingly. By default, when you insert, drag and drop, or copy/paste a column, the value of the `@colwidth` attribute is `1*`.
- **dynamic** - If you choose this option, the columns are created without a specified width (`@colwidth` attribute). Entering content into a cell changes the rendered width dynamically.

If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, a dialog box will be displayed that asks you if you want to switch to proportional or fixed column widths.

- **fixed** - The width is specified in fixed units. By default, the `pt` unit is inserted, but you can change the units in the **colspecs** (column specifications) section above the table or in **Text** mode. The following units are allowed: `pt` (points), `cm` (centimeters), `mm` (millimeters), `pi` (picas), `in` (inches).

Frame

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. The allowed values are as follows:

- **none** - No border will be added.
- **all** - A border will be added to all frames.
- **top** - A border will be added to the top frame.
- **topbot** - A border will be added to the top and bottom frames.
- **bottom** - A border will be added to the bottom frame.
- **sides** - A border will be added to the side frames.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

Row separator

Specifies whether or not to include row separators (`@rowsep` attribute). The allowed values are: `0` (no separator) and `1` (include separators).

Column separator

Specifies whether or not to include column separators (`@colsep` attribute). The allowed values are: `0` (no separator) and `1` (include separators).

Alignment

Specifies the alignment of the text within the table (`@align` attribute). The allowed values are:

- **left** - Aligns the text to a left position.
- **right** - Aligns the text to a right position.
- **center** - Aligns the text to a centered position.
- **justify** - Stretches the line of text so that it has equal width.

Note:
The `justify` value cannot be rendered in **Author** mode, so you will only see it in the output.

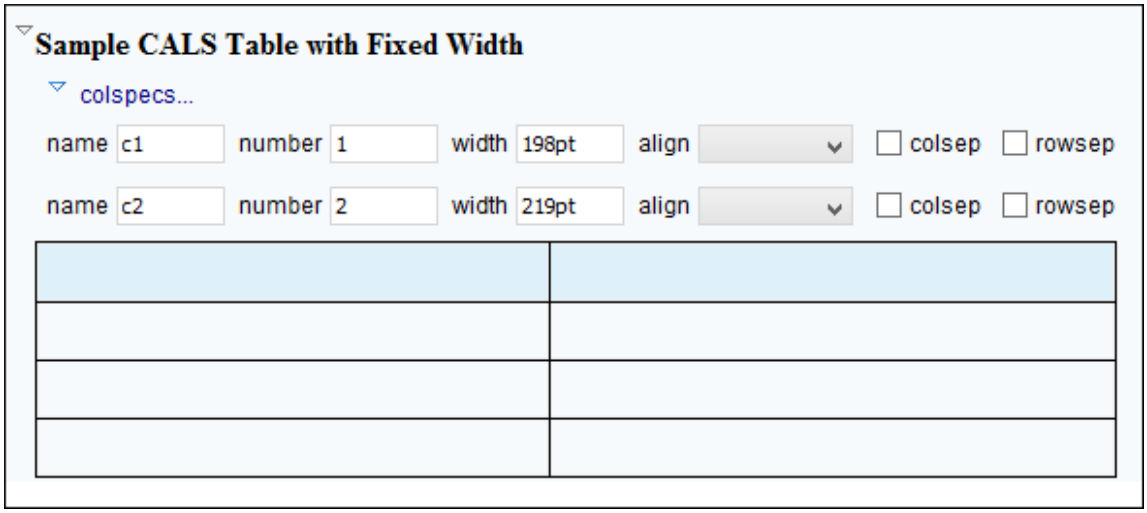
- **char** - Aligns text to the leftmost occurrence of the value specified on the `@char` attribute for alignment.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

Note:
The options in the **Insert Table** dialog box for DITA documents are persistent, so changes made in one session will carry over to another.

When you click **Insert**, a CALS table is inserted into your document at the current cursor position.

When you insert a CALS table, you see a link for setting the *colspecs* (column specifications) of your table. Click the link to open the controls that allow you to adjust various column properties. Although they appear as part of the **Author** mode *(on page 221)*, the *colspecs* link and its controls will not appear in your output. They are just there to make it easier to adjust how the columns of your table are formatted.

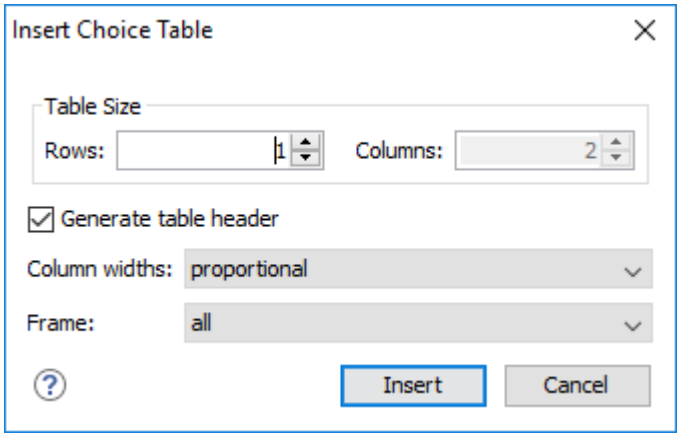
Figure 355. CALS Table in DITA



Inserting a Choice Table Model

To insert a **Choice** table within a `<step>` element in a DITA Task document, select the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or in the **Insert** submenu from the contextual menu (or the **Table** submenu from the **DITA** menu), or select **choicetable** from the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*. The **Insert Table** dialog box appears. Select **Simple** for the table **Model**.

Figure 356. Insert Table Dialog Box - Choice Model



The dialog box allows you to configure the following options when you insert a *Choice* table model within a DITA Task:

Table Size

Allows you to choose the number of **Rows** and **Columns** for the table.

Generate table header

If selected, an extra row will be inserted at the top of the table to be used as the table header.

Column widths

Allows you to specify the type of properties for column widths (`@colwidth` attribute). You can choose one of the following properties for the column width:

- **proportional** - The width is specified in proportional (relative) units of measure. The proportion of the column is specified in a `@relcolwidth` attribute with the values listed as the number of shares followed by an asterisk. The value of the shares is totaled and rendered as a percent. For example, `relcolwidth="1* 2* 3*"` causes widths of 16.7%, 33.3%, and 66.7%. When entering content into a cell in one column, the width proportions of the other columns are maintained. If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, the values of the `@relcolwidth` attribute are automatically changed accordingly. By default, when you insert, drag and drop, or copy/paste a column, the value of the `@relcolwidth` attribute is `1*`.
- **dynamic** - If you choose this option, the columns are created without a specified width. Entering content into a cell changes the rendered width dynamically. If you change the width by dragging a column in **Author** mode, a dialog box will be displayed that asks you if you want to switch to proportional or fixed column widths.

Frame

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. The allowed values are as follows:

- **none** - No border will be added.
- **all** - A border will be added to all frames.

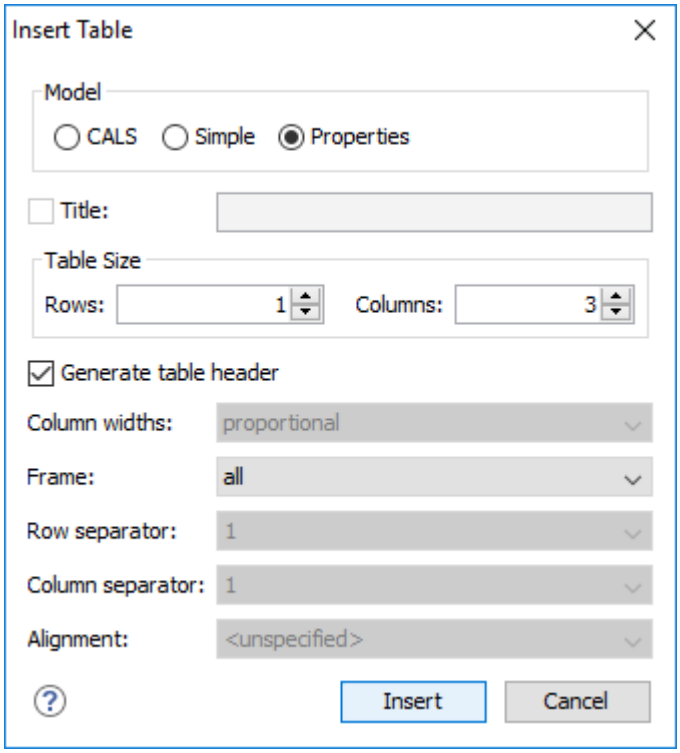
- **top** - A border will be added to the top frame.
- **topbot** - A border will be added to the top and bottom frames.
- **bottom** - A border will be added to the bottom frame.
- **sides** - A border will be added to the side frames.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

When you click **Insert**, a *Choice* table is inserted into your DITA Task document at the current cursor position (within a `<step>` element).

Inserting a Properties Table Model

To insert a **Properties** table within a `<refbody>` element in a DITA Reference document, select the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or in the **Insert** submenu from the contextual menu (or the **Table** submenu from the **DITA** menu), or select **properties(wizard)** from the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*. The **Insert Table** dialog box appears. Select **Properties** for the table **Model**.

Figure 357. Insert Table Dialog Box - Properties Model



The dialog box allows you to configure the following options when you insert a *Properties* table model within a DITA Reference:

Table Size

Allows you to choose the number of **Rows** and **Columns** for the table.

Generate table header

If selected, an extra row will be inserted at the top of the table to be used as the table header.

Frame

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. The allowed values are as follows:

- **none** - No border will be added.
- **all** - A border will be added to all frames.
- **top** - A border will be added to the top frame.
- **topbot** - A border will be added to the top and bottom frames.
- **bottom** - A border will be added to the bottom frame.
- **sides** - A border will be added to the side frames.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

When you click **Insert**, a *Properties* table is inserted into your DITA Reference document at the current cursor position (within a `<refbody>` element).

Editing an Existing Table

You can edit the structure of an existing table using the table buttons on the toolbar (or in the contextual menu) to add or remove cells, rows, or columns, and to set basic table properties. Additional attributes can be used to fine-tune the formatting of your tables by using the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)* (**Window > Show View > Attributes**). See the DITA documentation for a full explanation of these attributes.

You can also use the **Table Properties (Ctrl + T (Command + T on macOS))** *(on page 1984)* action from the toolbar or contextual menu (or **DITA** menu) to modify many of the properties of the table *(on page 1984)*.

Also, remember that underneath the visual representation, both table models are really just XML. If necessary, you can edit the XML directly by switching to **Text** mode *(on page 220)*.

You can use normal copy/paste shortcuts to move content between cells. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a *Smart Paste* feature *(on page 366)* that preserves certain style and structure information when pasting content.

Tip:
When copying a multiple selection of table cells and pasting them outside the table, a new table will be created. When pasting into space-preserved elements, the cell content will be pasted as plain text.

Related Information:
Editing Tables in Author Mode *(on page 433)*

DITA Table Layouts

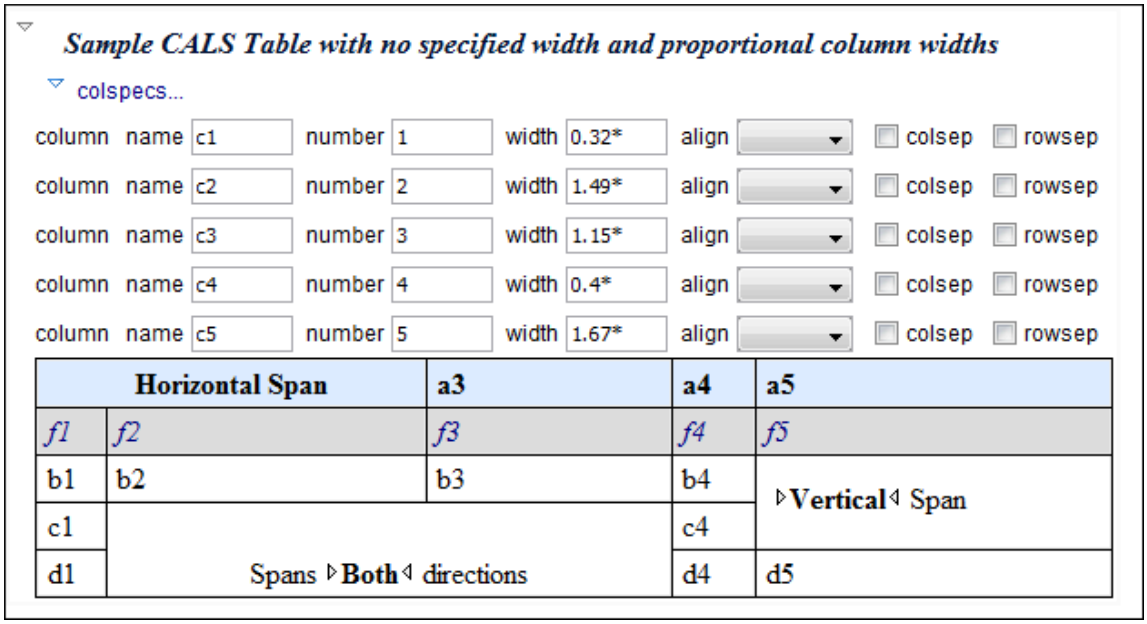
Depending on the context, DITA accepts the following table layouts:

- *CALS* table model *(on page 1982)*
- *Simple* table model *(on page 1982)*
- *Choice* table model *(on page 1983)*
- *Properties* table model *(on page 1983)*

CALS Table Model Layout

The **CALS** table model allows for more flexibility and table customization than other models. When choosing a **CALS** table model from the **Insert Table** dialog box, you have access to more configurable properties. The layout of a **CALS** table includes a **colspecs** section that allows you to easily configure some properties without opening the **Table Properties** dialog box. For example, you can change the value of column widths (`@colwidth` attribute) or the text alignment (`@align` attribute). Although they appear as part of the **Author** mode *(on page 221)*, the *colspecs* link and its controls will not appear in your output. They are just there to make it easier to adjust how the columns of your table are formatted.

Figure 358. CALS Table in DITA



Tip:
A sample plugin is available that can be used as inspiration to add support for CALS tables in any XML document: Sample Plugin: Add CALS Support for any XML Document.

Simple Table Model Layout

When choosing a **Simple** table model from the **Insert Table** dialog box, you only have access to configure a few properties. For example, you can choose the number of rows and columns, specify values for frames, and

choose from a few types of properties for the column width. The layout of this type of table is very simple, as the name suggests.

Figure 359. DITA Simple Table

Header 1	Header 2
Column 1	Column 2

Choice Table Model Layout

A **Choice** table model is used within a `<step>` element in a DITA Task document to describe a series of optional choices that a user must make before proceeding. The `<choicetable>` element is a useful device for documenting options within a single step of a task. You can insert *Choice* tables in DITA Task documents either by selecting **choicetable** from the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* (within a `<step>` element) or by using the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar or from the contextual menu). The options and layout of a *Choice* table is similar to the *Simple* table model.

Figure 360. DITA Choice Table

Option	Description
Opt A	
Opt B	
Opt C	

Properties Table Model Layout

A **Properties** table model is used within a `<refbody>` element in a DITA Reference document to describe a property (for example, its type, value, and description). You can insert *Properties* tables in DITA Reference documents either by selecting **properties(wizard)** from the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* (within a `<refbody>` element) or by using the **Insert Table** action on the toolbar (or from the contextual menu) and selecting **Properties** for the **Model**. The layout of a *Properties* table is very simple. It allows for a maximum of 3 columns (typically for property type, value, and description) and the only options available are for whether or not you want a header row and for specifying frames (borders).

Figure 361. DITA Properties Table

Property Type	Property Value	Property Description
A	B	C

Table Validation in DITA

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin reports table layout problems that are detected in manual or automatic validations. When you validate a *DITA map (on page 2230)* with the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action, if the **Report table layout problems** option *(on page 1931)* is selected in the **DITA Map Completeness**

Check dialog box, table layout problems will be reported in the validation results. The types of errors that may be reported for DITA table layout problems include:

CALS Tables

- A row has fewer cells than the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute.
- A row has more cells than the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute.
- A cell has a vertical span greater than the available rows count.
- The number of `<colspecs>` is different than the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute.
- The number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute is different than the number of columns detected in the table structure.
- The value of the `@cols`, `@rowsep`, or `@colsep` attributes are not numeric.
- The `@namest`, `@nameend`, or `@colname` attributes point to an incorrect column name.

Simple or Choice Tables

A row has fewer cells than the number of table columns.

Editing Table Properties in DITA

To customize the look of a table in DITA, place the cursor anywhere in a table and invoke the **Table Properties (Ctrl + T (Command + T on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **Table** submenu of the contextual menu (or **DITA** menu). This opens the **Table properties** dialog box.

The **Table properties** dialog box allows you to set specific properties to the table elements. The options that are available depend on the context and location within the table where the action was invoked.

Note:
Some properties allow the following special values, depending on the context and the current properties or values:

- **<not set>** - Use this value if you want to remove a property.
- **<preserve>** - If you select multiple elements that have the same property set to different values, you can choose this value to keep the values that are already set. In some cases it can also be used to keep the current non-standard value for a particular property.

Edit Table Properties for a CALS Table Model

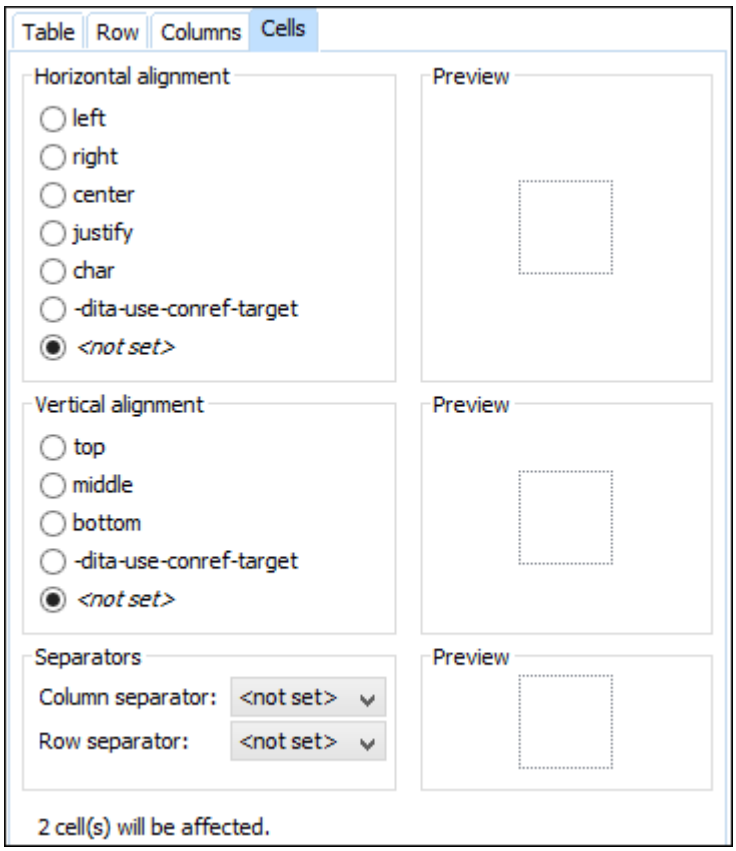
For a **CALS** table model, the **Table properties** dialog box includes four tabs of options:

- **Table** tab - The options in this tab apply to the entire table.
- **Row** tab - The options in this tab apply to the current row or selection of multiple rows. A message at the bottom of the tab tells you how many rows will be affected.

- **Column** tab - The options in this tab apply to the current column or selection of multiple columns. A message at the bottom of the tab tells you how many columns will be affected.
- **Cell** tab - The options in this tab apply to the current cell or selection of multiple cells. A message at the bottom of the tab tells you how many cells will be affected.

The options in four tabs include a **Preview** pane that shows a representation of the modification.

Figure 362. Table Properties Dialog Box with Cell Tab Selected (DITA CALS Table Model)



The options in the four tabs include the following:

Horizontal alignment (Available in the Table, Column, and Cell tabs)

Specifies the horizontal alignment of text within the current table/column/cell or selection of multiple columns/cells (`@align` attribute). The allowed values are as follows:

- **left** - Aligns the text to a left position.
- **right** - Aligns the text to a right position.
- **center** - Aligns the text to a centered position.
- **justify** - Stretches the line of text so that it has equal width.

> **Note:**
> The `justify` value cannot be rendered in **Author** mode, so you will only see it in the output.

- **char** - Aligns text to the leftmost occurrence of the value specified on the `@char` attribute for alignment.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

Vertical alignment (Available in the Row and Cell tabs)

Specifies the vertical alignment of text within the current row/cell or selection of multiple rows/cells (`@valign` attribute). The allowed values are as follows:

- **top** - Aligns the text at the top of the cell.
- **middle** - Aligns the text in a vertically centered position.
- **bottom** - Aligns the text at the bottom of the cell.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

Column separator (Available in the Table, Column, and Cell tabs)

Specifies whether or not to include column separators (borders/grid lines) in the form of the `@colsep` attribute. The allowed values are: `0` (no separator) and `1` (include separators).

Row separator (Available in all four tabs)

Specifies whether or not to include row separators (borders/grid lines) in the form of the `@rowsep` attribute. The allowed values are: `0` (no separator) and `1` (include separators).

Frame (Available only in the Table tab)

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. The allowed values are as follows:

- **none** - No border will be added.
- **all** - A border will be added to all frames.
- **top** - A border will be added to the top frame.
- **topbot** - A border will be added to the top and bottom frames.
- **bottom** - A border will be added to the bottom frame.
- **sides** - A border will be added to the side frames.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

Edit Table Properties for a Simple, Choice, or Properties Table Model

For a *Simple*, *Choice*, *Properties* table model, the **Table properties** dialog box only allows you to edit a few options.

Table tab

Frame

Allows you to specify a value for the `@frame` attribute. It is used to specify where a border should appear in the table. The allowed values are as follows:

- **none** - No border will be added.
- **all** - A border will be added to all frames.
- **top** - A border will be added to the top frame.
- **topbot** - A border will be added to the top and bottom frames.
- **bottom** - A border will be added to the bottom frame.
- **sides** - A border will be added to the side frames.
- **-dita-use-conref-target** - Normally, when using a `@conref`, the values of attributes specified locally are preserved. You can choose this option to override this behavior and pull the value of this particular attribute from the `@conref` target. For more information, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/ditauseconreftarget.html.

Row tab (not available for *Properties* tables)

Row type

Allows you change the row to a body or header type of row.

Related Information:
Adding Tables in DITA Topics *(on page 1973)*
Editing Tables in Author Mode *(on page 433)*

Adding MathML Equations in DITA Topics

You can add MathML equations in a DITA document open in the **Author** visual editing mode using one of the following methods:

- Embed MathML directly into a DITA topic. You can use **Insert >** Σ **Insert Equation** from the contextual menu or the main menu **DITA > Insert > Insert Equation** action to insert a MathML equation. Clicking on the equation will open a **MathML Editor** where you can edit the code.
- Reference an external MathML file as an image, using the **Insert Image** action that is available on the DITA toolbar (or from the **DITA > Insert** menu).

Publishing Notes:

- MathML equations contained in DITA topics can be published out-of-the-box in PDF using the **DITA PDF** transformation scenario.
- The **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario *(on page 1162)* support MathML equations *(on page 1343)*.
- For details about HTML output, see How to View MathML Equations in HTML Output *(on page 1126)*.
- For other publishing formats, you might need to employ additional customizations for handling MathML content.

Adding LaTeX Equations in DITA Topics

LaTeX is a high-quality typesetting system that includes features designed for the production of technical and scientific documentation. LaTeX can also be used to express mathematical formulas in a textual format. By default, web browsers and PDF readers do not have support to show mathematical equations written in LaTeX, but there are open-source projects that can read LaTeX and convert it to other image types.

Adding support for writing LaTeX equations in a DITA topic implies three stages:

1. Find a way to write the equation in the DITA XML content. You can either create a DITA DTD specialization and add a new element (for example, called `<latex>` and it extends the DITA `<foreign>` element). Alternatively, you can directly use the DITA `<foreign>` element with a specific `@outputclass` attribute value:

```
<!DOCTYPE topic PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DITA Topic//EN" "topic.dtd">
<topic id="testEquation">
  <title>Test equation</title>
  <body>
    <p><foreign outputclass="embed-latex">L' = {L}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}}}</foreign></p>
  </body>
</topic>
```

2. If you want Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to properly present the LaTeX equation when editing in the **Author** visual mode, you need a plugin that converts the equation content to an image. There is a sample plugin that does that here: https://github.com/oxygenxml/wsaccess-javascript-sample-plugins/tree/master/latex-images-support. You can download and copy the plugin folder **latex-images-support** to the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **plugins** folder, then restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
3. The final stage would be to publish the content to HTML-based or PDF output. The following DITA Open Toolkit plugin automatically converts LaTeX images to SVG when publishing: https://github.com/oxygenxml/dita-latex.

DITA Questions and Answers Topic Type

You can create a new DITA *Questions and Answers* topic using the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **File > New** file wizard. It is found in the **Framework templates > DITA > Topics > RNG** folder (or you can search for it using the search filter at the top of the dialog box).

This type of topic groups together multiple question/answer sections and can be used to create a frequently asked questions document (for example).

There is an **Insert Question/Answer Group** action that is available on the toolbar and in the **DITA Q/A** main menu that can be used to insert multiple question/answer groups. You can also define multiple questions in the same group, all paired to the same answer.

When producing WebHelp output from DITA content, Q/A-specific **Google Structured Data** in the HTML files is generated from these Questions and Answers DITA topic types.

Related information

How to Generate Google Structured Data *(on page 1134)*

DITA Topic Author Mode Actions

A variety of actions are available for DITA documents that can be found in **DITA** menu, toolbar, contextual menu, and the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

DITA Toolbar Actions

The following default actions are available on the DITA toolbar when editing in **Author** mode (by default, most of them are also available in the **DITA** menu and in various submenus of the contextual menu):

Bold

Surrounds the selected text with a `<b>` tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Italic

Surrounds the selected text with an `<i>` tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Underline

Surrounds the selected text with a `<u>` tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Link Actions Drop-Down Menu

The following link actions are available from this menu:

Cross Reference

Opens the **Cross Reference (xref)** dialog box *(on page 2061)* that allows you to insert a link to a target DITA resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map (on page 2230)* structure. Once the target resource has been selected, you can also target specific elements within that resource. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

File Reference

Opens the **File Reference** dialog box *(on page 2062)* that allows you to insert a link to a target non-DITA file resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Web Link

Opens the **Web Link** dialog box *(on page 2062)* that allows you to insert a link to a target web-related resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be a URL or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Related Link to Topic

Opens the **Cross Reference (xref)** dialog box *(on page 2062)* that allows you to insert a link to a target DITA resource in a related links section at the bottom of the current document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. Once the target resource has been selected, you can also target specific elements within that resource. If a related links section does not already exist, this action creates one. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Tip:
You can use the **Find Similar Topics** action (available in the contextual menu or **DITA** menu) to quickly find related topics that can be added as related links. It opens the **Open/Find Resource** view and performs a search using text content from the `<title>`, `<shortdesc>`, `<keyword>`, and `<indexterm>` elements.

Related Link to File

Opens the **File Reference** dialog box *(on page 2063)* that allows you to insert a link to a target non-DITA file resource in a related links section at the bottom of the current document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. If a related links section does not already exist, this action creates one. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Related Link to Web Page

Opens the **Web Link** dialog box *(on page 2063)* that allows you to insert a link to a target web-related resource in a related links section at the bottom of the current document. The target resource can be a URL or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. If a related links section does not already exist, this action creates one. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Insert Image

Opens the **Insert Image** dialog box *(on page 1960)* that allows you to configure the properties of an image to be inserted into a DITA document at the cursor position.

Insert Media Resource

Opens the **Insert Media** dialog box *(on page 1963)* that allows you to select and configure the properties of a media object to be inserted into a DITA document at the cursor position. The result will be that a reference to the specified video, audio, or embedded HTML frame is inserted in an `<object>` element and it is rendered in **Author** mode so that it can be played directly from there.

Insert Section Drop-Down Menu

The following insert actions are available from this menu:

Insert Section

Inserts a new `<section>` element in the document, depending on the current context.

Insert Concept

Inserts a new `<concept>` element, depending on the current context. Concepts provide background information that users must know before they can successfully work with a product or interface.

Insert Task

Inserts a new `<task>` element, depending on the current context. Tasks are the main building blocks for task-oriented user assistance. They generally provide step-by-step instructions that will help a user to perform a task.

Insert Topic

Inserts a new `<topic>` element, depending on the current context. Topics are the basic units of DITA content and are usually organized around a single subject.

Insert Reference

Inserts a new `<reference>` element, depending on the current context. A reference is a top-level container for a reference topic.

Insert Note

Inserts a new `<note>` element, depending on the current context.

Insert Codeblock

Inserts a new `<codeblock>` element, depending on the current context.

Insert Intent Question

Inserts a new special `<data>` element that contains a question or intent. The intent can be used to generate Google Structured data *(on page 1134)* content in WebHelp Responsive output.

Insert Paragraph

Inserts a new paragraph at current cursor position.

Reuse Content

This action provides a mechanism for reusing content fragments. It opens the **Reuse Content** dialog box *(on page 2033)* that allows you to insert several types of references to reusable content at the cursor position. The types of references that you can insert using this dialog box include content references (`@conref`) *(on page 2034)*, content key references (`@conkeyref`) *(on page 2036)*, or key references to metadata (`@keyref`) *(on page 2039)*.

Insert step or list item

Inserts a new list or step item in the current list type.

Insert Unordered List

Inserts an unordered list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an unordered list.

Insert Ordered List

Inserts an ordered list at the cursor position. A child list item is also automatically inserted by default. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs or other types of lists to an ordered list.

Sort

Sorts cells or list items in a table.

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs, lists, and inline content (mixed content, text plus markup, that is rendered inside a *block element (on page 2228)*) into a table, with the selected content inserted in the first column, starting from the first row after the header (if a header is inserted).

> **Note:**
> If the selection contains a mixture of elements that cannot be converted, you will receive an error message saying that **Only lists, paragraphs, or inline content can be converted to tables**.

Insert Row

Inserts a new table row with empty cells below the current row. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Delete Row(s)

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Insert Column

Inserts a new table column with empty cells after the current column. This action is available when the cursor is positioned inside a table.

Delete Column(s)

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Table Properties

Opens the **Table properties** dialog box that allows you to configure properties of a table (such as frame borders).

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

DITA Contextual Menu Actions

The following actions are available in the contextual menu when editing in **Author** mode (most of them are also available in the **DITA** menu at the top of the interface):

Edit Attributes

Displays an in-place attributes editor *(on page 383)* that allows you to manage the attributes of an element.

Edit Profiling Attributes

Allows you to change the profiling attributes *(on page 419)* defined on all selected elements.

Cut (Ctrl + X (Command + X on macOS))

Removes the currently selected content from the document and places it in the clipboard.

Copy (Ctrl + C (Command + C on macOS))

Places a copy of the currently selected content in the clipboard.

The clipboard contains the precise node structure that is preserved when pasting to another location within the same document or to another document opened in the **Author** mode. The copied content contains an HTML flavor that attempts to convert the copied structure to plain HTML, which can be useful for preserving the styles when pasting into editors such as MS Word.

Copy as XML

Copies the selection as a string that contains the structured XML content.

Copy as Markdown

Copies the selection as a string that contains its Markdown-converted equivalent.

Paste (Ctrl + V (Command + V on macOS))

Inserts the current clipboard content into the document at the cursor position.

Paste special submenu

This submenu includes the following special paste actions that are specific to the DITA *framework*:

Paste as content reference

Inserts a content reference (a DITA element with a `@conref` attribute) to the DITA XML element from the clipboard. An entire DITA XML element with an ID attribute must be present in the clipboard when the action is invoked. The `conref` attribute will point to this ID value.

Paste as content key reference

Allows you to indirectly reference content using the `@conkeyref` attribute. When the DITA content is processed, the key references are resolved using key definitions from *DITA maps (on page 2230)*. To use this action, you must first do the following:

1. Make sure the DITA element that contains the copied content has an ID attribute assigned to it.
2. In the **DITA Maps Manager** view, make sure that the **Context** combo box points to the correct map that stores the keys.
3. Make sure the topic that contains the content you want to reference has a key assigned to it. To assign a key, right-click the topic with its parent map opened in the **DITA Maps Manager**, select **Edit Properties**, and enter a value in the **Keys** field.

Paste as link

Looks for the first element with an ID value in the clipboard and inserts an `<xref>` that points to that element. If no elements with an ID value are found, a message will appear that informs you that to use this action, the clipboard contents must include at least one element with a declared ID.

Paste as link (keyref)

Inserts a link to the element that you want to reference. To use this action, you must first do the following:

1. Make sure the DITA element that contains the copied content has an ID attribute assigned to it.
2. In the **DITA Maps Manager** view, make sure that the **Context** combo box points to the correct map that stores the keys.
3. Make sure the topic that contains the content you want to reference has a key assigned to it. To assign a key, right-click the topic with its parent map opened in the **DITA Maps Manager**, select **Edit Properties**, and enter a value in the **Keys** field.

Insert submenu

This submenu includes the following insert actions that are specific to the DITA *framework*:

Insert Table

Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table and decide how the table is framed. You can also use this action to convert selected paragraphs, lists, and inline content (mixed content, text plus markup, that is rendered inside a *block element (on page 2228)*) into a table, with the selected content inserted in the first column, starting from the first row after the header (if a header is inserted).

Note:
If the selection contains a mixture of elements that cannot be converted, you will receive an error message saying that **Only lists, paragraphs, or inline content can be converted to tables**.

Insert Image

Inserts an image reference *(on page 468)* at the cursor position. Depending on the current location, an image-type element is inserted.

Insert Media Resource

Opens a **Choose Media** dialog box *(on page 496)* that allows you to select the URL of a media object to be inserted into a document at the cursor position. The result

will be that a reference to the specified video, audio, or embedded HTML frame is inserted and rendered in **Author** mode so that it can be played directly from there.

Insert Equation

Opens the **XML Fragment Editor** that allows you to insert and edit MathML notations *(on page 498)*.

Insert Note

Inserts a new `<note>` element at the current cursor position.

Insert Code Block

Inserts a new `<codeblock>` element at current cursor position.

Insert Menu Cascade

Inserts a new `<menucascade>` element at current cursor position.

Insert Label

Inserts a special label keyword in the prolog. The label is helpful for searching WebHelp Responsive output for similar topics with the same label.

Insert Paragraph

Inserts a new `<p>` (paragraph) element at current cursor position.

Insert Section

Inserts a new `<section>` element in the document, depending on the current context.

Insert Topic

Inserts a new `<topic>` element, depending on the current context. Topics are the basic units of DITA content and are usually organized around a single subject.

Insert Entity

Allows you to insert a predefined entity or character entity. Surrogate character entities (range #x10000 to #x10FFFF) are also accepted. Character entities can be entered in one of the following forms:

- #<*decimal value*> - e.g. #65
- &#<*decimal value*> - e.g. &#65
- #x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. #x41
- &#x<*hexadecimal value*> - e.g. &#x41

Style submenu

This submenu includes the following text styling actions:

Bold

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with a `<b>` (bold) tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Italic

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with an `<i>` (italic) tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Underline

Emphasizes the selected text by surrounding it with a `<u>` (*underline*) tag. You can use this action on multiple non-contiguous selections.

Subscript

Surrounds the selected text with a `<sub>` (subscript) tag, used for inserting a character (number, letter, or symbol) that will appear slightly below the baseline and slightly smaller than the rest of the text.

Superscript

Surrounds the selected text with a `<sup>` (superscript) tag, used for inserting a character (number, letter, or symbol) that will appear slightly above the baseline and slightly smaller than the rest of the text.

Code

Surrounds the selected text with a `<codeph>` tag.

UI Control

Surrounds the selected text with a `<uicontrol>` tag, used to mark up names of buttons, entry fields, menu items, or other interface objects.

Filepath

Surrounds the selected text with a `<filepath>` tag, used to indicate the name, and optionally the location of a referenced file. You can specify the directory that contains the file and other directories that may precede it in the system hierarchy.

Image Map Editor

This action is available in the contextual menu when it is invoked on an image. This action applies an *image map* to the current image (if one does not already exist) and opens the **Image Map Editor** dialog box. This feature allows you to create hyperlinks in specific areas of an image that will link to various destinations.

Table Actions

A variety of table editing actions are available in the contextual menu when it is invoked on a table (depending on the context, the table-related actions are promoted to the top level of the contextual menu and the **Other Actions** submenu provides access to the other actions):

Insert Rows

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert any number of rows and specify the position where they will be inserted (**Above** or **Below** the current row).

Delete Row(s)

Deletes the table row located at the cursor position or multiple rows in a selection.

Insert Columns

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert any number of columns and specify the position where they will be inserted (**Above** or **Below** the current column).

Delete Column(s)

Deletes the table column located at the cursor position or multiple columns in a selection.

Join Cells

Joins the content of the selected cells (both horizontally and vertically).

Split Cell

Splits the cell at the cursor location. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects more than one option to split the cell, a dialog box will be displayed that allows you to select the number of rows or columns to split the cell into.

Sort

Sorts cells or list items in a table.

Table Properties

Opens the **Table properties** dialog box that allows you to configure properties of a table (such as frame borders).

Other Actions submenu

This submenu give you access to all the usual contextual menu actions.

Link submenu

The following link actions are available from this submenu:

Cross Reference

Opens the **Cross Reference (xref)** dialog box *(on page 2061)* that allows you to insert a link to a target DITA resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map (on page 2230)* structure. Once the target resource has been selected, you can also target specific elements within that resource. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

File Reference

Opens the **File Reference** dialog box *(on page 2062)* that allows you to insert a link to a target non-DITA file resource at the current location within a document.

The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Web Link

Opens the **Web Link** dialog box *(on page 2062)* that allows you to insert a link to a target web-related resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be a URL or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Related Link to Topic

Opens the **Cross Reference (xref)** dialog box *(on page 2062)* that allows you to insert a link to a target DITA resource in a related links section at the bottom of the current document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. Once the target resource has been selected, you can also target specific elements within that resource. If a related links section does not already exist, this action creates one. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Tip:
You can use the **Find Similar Topics** action (available in the contextual menu or **DITA** menu) to quickly find related topics that can be added as related links. It opens the **Open/Find Resource** view and performs a search using text content from the `<title>`, `<shortdesc>`, `<keyword>`, and `<indexterm>` elements.

Related Link to File

Opens the **File Reference** dialog box *(on page 2063)* that allows you to insert a link to a target non-DITA file resource in a related links section at the bottom of the current document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. If a related links section does not already exist, this action creates one. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Related Link to Web Page

Opens the **Web Link** dialog box *(on page 2063)* that allows you to insert a link to a target web-related resource in a related links section at the bottom of the current document. The target resource can be a URL or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. If a related links section does not already exist, this action creates one. For more information, see Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*.

Sort

Available when invoked on a list, it opens a dialog box where you can configure a sorting operation for an entire list or a selection of list items.

Generate IDs

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin generates unique IDs for the current element (or elements), depending on how the action is invoked:

- When invoked on a single selection, an ID is generated for the selected element at the cursor position.
- When invoked on a block of selected content, IDs are generated for all top-level elements and elements listed in the **ID Options** dialog box that are found in the current selection.

Note:
The **Generate IDs** action does not overwrite existing ID values. It only affects elements that do not already have an `@id` attribute.

Reuse submenu

This submenu includes the following actions regarding reusing content in DITA:

Reuse Content

This action provides a mechanism for reusing content fragments. It opens the **Reuse Content** dialog box *(on page 2033)* that allows you to insert several types of references to reusable content at the cursor position. The types of references that you can insert using this dialog box include content references (`@conref`) *(on page 2034)*, content key references (`@conkeyref`) *(on page 2036)*, or key references to metadata (`@keyref`) *(on page 2039)*.

Push Current Element

Opens the **Push current element** dialog box *(on page 2042)* that allows content from a source topic to be inserted into another topic without any special coding in the topic where the content will be re-used.

Edit Content Reference

This action is available for elements with a `@conref` or `@conkeyref` attribute. It opens the **Edit Content Reference** dialog box that allows you to edit the source location (or key) and source element of a content reference (or content key reference), and the reference details (`@conref`/`@conkeyref` and `@conrefend` attributes). For more information, see Reuse Content Dialog Box *(on page 2033)*.

Replace Reference with Content

Replaces the referenced fragment (`@conref` or `@conkeyref`) at the cursor position with its content from it source. This action is useful if you want to make changes to the content in the currently edited document without changing the referenced

fragment in its source location. If the source content includes references to other topics/resources (*hrefs*), the operation also resolves those references relative to the new location. Attributes are preserved according to the following priority:

1. Attributes from the elements in the current document that reference other content are preserved except for attributes with a `-dita-use-conref-target` value.
2. Attributes from the referenced content are brought into the replaced elements in the current document except for `@id` attributes.

Replace All References with Content

Replaces all referenced fragments (`@keyref`, `@conref`, or `@conkeyref`) in the current document with the content. Attributes are preserved according to the following priority:

1. Attributes from the elements in the current document that reference other content are preserved except for attributes with a `-dita-use-conref-target` value.
2. Attributes from the referenced content are brought into the replaced elements in the current document except for `@id` attributes.

For *keyrefs* inside `<xref>` or `<link>` elements, the `@keyref` attribute is changed to an `@href` attribute, while the rest of the content for the *keyref* is replaced with its source content.

If the source content includes references to other topics/resources (*hrefs*), the operation also resolves those references relative to the new location.

Remove Content Reference

Removes the content reference (`@conref` or `@conkeyref`) inside the element at the cursor position.

Create Reusable Component

Opens a dialog box that helps you to create a reusable component from the current element or selection of elements. If the **Replace selection with content reference** option is selected in the dialog box, the selection will be replaced with a content reference (`@conref`). If multiple elements are selected (for example, multiple steps or list items), the selection will be replaced with a content reference range (`@conref` and `@conrefend`). For more information, see Creating a Reusable Content Component *(on page 2045)*.

Insert Reusable Component

Inserts a reusable component at cursor location. For more information, see Inserting a Reusable Content Component *(on page 2046)*.

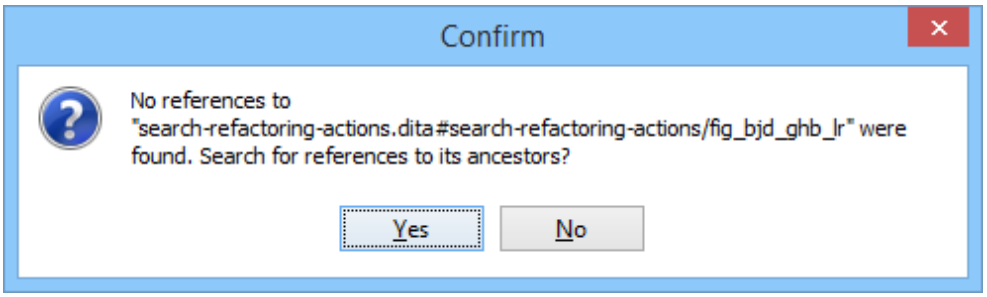
Extract Topic From Selection

Creates a new DITA topic from a selection of content in the current topic.

Search References (Ctrl + Shift + G (Command + Shift + G on macOS))

Finds the references to the `@id` attribute value for the element at the current cursor position, in all the topics contained in the current *DITA map (on page 2230)* (opened in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*). If no references are found for the current element, a dialog box will be displayed that offers you the option of searching for references to its ancestor elements.

Figure 363. Search References to Ancestors Dialog Box



Tip:
If you are invoking the action on an image, see Searching for References to Images *(on page 1963)* for details about what will be reported.

Find Similar Topics

Opens the **Open/Find Resource** view and performs a search using text content from the `<title>`, `<shortdesc>`, `<keyword>`, and `<indexterm>` elements. It is helpful for quickly finding related topics that can be added as related links.

Show Key Definition

Available for elements that have a `@conkeyref` or `@keyref` attribute set (or elements with an ancestor element that has a `@conkeyref` or `@keyref` attribute). It computes the key name and opens the *DITA map (on page 2230)* that contains the definition of the key with the element that defines that key selected.

About Element submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Style Guide

Opens the **DITA Style Guide Best Practices for Authors** in your browser and displays a topic that is relevant to the element at the cursor position. When editing DITA documents, this action is available in the contextual menu of the editing area (under the **About Element** sub-menu), in the **DITA** menu, and in some of the documentation tips that are displayed by the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

Browse reference manual

Opens a reference to the documentation of the XML element closest to the cursor position in a web browser.

Go to Definition

Moves the cursor to the definition of the current element.

Select submenu

This submenu allows you to select the following:

Element

Selects the entire element at the current cursor position.

Content

Selects the entire content of the element at the current cursor position, excluding the start and end tag. Performing this action repeatedly will result in the selection of the content of the ancestor of the currently selected element content.

Parent

Selects the entire parent element at the current cursor position.

Text submenu

This submenu contains the following actions:

To Lower Case

Converts the selected content to lower case characters.

To Upper Case

Converts the selected content to upper case characters.

Capitalize Sentences

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected sentence.

Capitalize Words

Converts to upper case the first character of every selected word.

Count Words

Counts the number of words and characters (no spaces) in the entire document or in the selection for regular content and read-only content.

Note:
The content marked as deleted with *change tracking (on page 2234)* is ignored when counting words.

Convert Hexadecimal Sequence to Character (Ctrl + Shift + H (Command + Shift + H on macOS))

Converts a sequence of hexadecimal characters to the corresponding Unicode character *(on page 274)*. The action can be invoked if there is a selection containing a valid hexadecimal sequence or if the cursor is placed at the right side of a valid hexadecimal sequence. A valid hexadecimal sequence can be composed of 2 to 4 hexadecimal characters and may or may not be preceded by the `0x` or `0X` prefix. Examples of valid sequences and the characters they will be converted to:

- `0x0045` will be converted to `E`
- `0X0125` to `ĥ`
- `265` to `ŉ`
- `2190` to `←`

> **Note:**
> For more information about finding the hexadecimal value of a character, see Finding the Decimal, Hexadecimal, or Character Entity Equivalent *(on page 276)*.

Refactoring submenu

Contains a series of actions designed to alter the XML structure of the document:

Toggle Comment

Encloses the currently selected text in a comment, or removes the comment if it is commented.

Move Up (Alt + UpArrow (Option + UpArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes in front of the previous node.

Move Down (Alt + DownArrow (Option + DownArrow on macOS))

Moves the current node or selected nodes after the subsequent node.

Split Element

Splits the content of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. Thus, if the cursor is positioned at the beginning or at the end of the element, the newly created sibling will be empty.

Join Elements

Joins two adjacent *block elements (on page 2228)* that have the same name. The action is available only when the cursor position is between the two adjacent *block elements*. Also, joining two *block elements* can be done by pressing the **Delete** or

Backspace keys and the cursor is positioned between the boundaries of these two elements.

Surround with Tags (Alt + Shift + E)

Allows you to choose a tag to enclose a selected portion of content. If there is no selection, the start and end tags are inserted at the cursor position.

- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed between the start and end tag.
- If the **Position cursor between tags** option *(on page 113)* is not selected in the **Content Completion** preferences page, the cursor is placed at the end of the start tag, in an insert-attribute position.

Surround with '[tag]' (Alt + Shift + ForwardSlash)

Surround the selected content with the last tag used.

Rename Element

The element from the cursor position, and any elements with the same name, can be renamed according with the options from the **Rename** dialog box.

Delete Element Tags

Deletes the tags of the closest element that contains the position of the cursor. This operation is also executed if the start or end tags of an element are deleted by pressing the **Delete** or **Backspace** keys.

Remove All Markup

Removes all the XML markup inside the selected block of content and keeps only the text content.

Remove Text

Removes the text content of the selected block of content and keeps the markup intact with empty elements.

DITA-related Refactoring Actions

A variety of built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to DITA documents with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Change Topic ID to File Name

Use this operation to change the ID of a topic to be the same as its file name.

Convert CALS Tables to Simple Tables

Use this operation to convert DITA CALS tables to simple tables. If you invoke this operation from a nested table (a table inside a table),

only the nested table will be affected. If it is invoked on a parent table that contains nested tables, all of the contained tables will be converted.

Convert conrefs to conkeyrefs

Use this operation to convert `@conref` attributes to `@conkeyref` attributes.

Convert Simple Tables to CALS Tables

Use this operation to convert DITA simple tables to CALS tables. If you invoke this operation from a nested table (a table inside a table), only the nested table will be affected. If it is invoked on a parent table that contains nested tables, all of the contained tables will be converted.

Convert to Concept

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Concept topic type (for example, Topic to Concept).

Convert to General Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA General Task topic type (for example, Task to General Task). A DITA *General Task* is a less restrictive alternative to the *Strict Task* information type.

Convert to Reference

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Reference topic type (for example, Topic to Reference).

Convert to Task

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Task topic type (for example, Topic to Task).

Convert to Topic

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Topic (for example, Task to Topic).

Convert to Troubleshooting

Use this operation to convert a DITA topic (of any type) to a DITA Troubleshooting topic type (for example, Topic to Troubleshooting).

Rename Key

Available when invoked on a key, and can be used to quickly rename a key. It also updates all references to it. Note that it does not work on DITA 1.3 key scopes.

Generate IDs

Use this operation to automatically generate unique IDs for elements.

Attributes Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to attributes with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Add/Change attribute

Allows you to change the value of an attribute or insert a new one.

Convert attribute to element

Allows you to change an attribute into an element.

Delete attribute

Allows you to remove one or more attributes.

Rename attribute

Allows you to rename an attribute.

Replace in attribute value

Allows you to search for a text fragment inside an attribute value and change the fragment to a new value.

Comments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to comments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete comments

Allows you to delete comments found inside one or more elements.

Elements Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to elements with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Delete element

Allows you to delete elements.

Delete element content

Allows you to delete the content of elements.

Insert element

Allows you to insert new elements.

Rename element

Allows you to rename elements.

Unwrap element

Allows you to remove the surrounding tags of elements, while keeping the content unchanged.

Wrap element

Allows you to surround elements with element tags.

Wrap element content

Allows you to surround the content of elements with element tags.

Fragments Refactoring Actions

Contains built-in XML refactoring operations that pertain to XML fragments with some of the information preconfigured based upon the current context.

Insert XML fragment

Allows you to insert an XML fragment.

Replace element content with XML fragment

Allows you to replace the content of elements with an XML fragment.

Replace element with XML fragment

Allows you to replace elements with an XML fragment.

Review submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Track Changes

Enables or disables the *Track Changes (on page 2234)* support for the current document.

Accept Change(s) and Move to Next

Accepts the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is accepted.

Accept All Changes

Accepts all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Reject Change(s) and Move to Next

Rejects the *Tracked Change (on page 2234)* located at the cursor position or all of the changes in a selection and then moves to the next change. If you select a part of a *deletion* or *insertion* change, only the selected content is rejected.

Reject All Changes

Rejects all *Tracked Changes (on page 2234)* in the current document.

Comment Change

Opens a dialog box that allows you to add a comment to an existing *Tracked Change (on page 2234)*. The comment will appear in a callout and a tooltip when hovering over the change. If the action is selected on an existing commented change, the dialog box will allow you to edit the comment.

Highlight

Enables the highlighting tool that allows you to mark text in your document.

Colors

Allows you to select the color for highlighting text.

Stop highlighting

Use this action to deactivate the highlighting tool.

Remove highlight(s)

Use this action to remove highlighting from the document.

Add Comment

Inserts a comment at the cursor position. The comment appears in a callout box and a tooltip (when hovering over the change).

Show/Edit Comment

Opens a dialog box that displays the discussion thread and allows the current user to edit comments that do not have replies. If you are not the author who inserted the original comment, the dialog box just displays the comment without the possibility of editing it.

Remove Comment

Removes a selected comment. If you remove a comment that contains replies, all of the replies will also be removed.

Manage Reviews

Opens the **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

Manage IDs submenu

This submenu is available for topics that have an associated DTD or schema. It includes the following actions:

Rename in

Renames the ID and all its occurrences. Selecting this action opens the **Rename XML ID** dialog box. This dialog box lets you insert the new ID value and choose the scope of the rename operation.

Search References

Searches for the references of the ID. By default, the scope of this action is the current project. If you configure a scope using the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 579)* dialog box, this scope will be used instead.

Search References in

Searches for the references of the ID. Selecting this action opens the **Select the scope for the Search and Refactor operations** *(on page 579)*.

Search Occurrences in file

Searches for the occurrences of the ID in the current document.

Folding submenu

This submenu includes the following actions:

Toggle Fold

Toggles the state of the current fold.

Collapse Other Folds

Folds all the elements except the current element.

Collapse Child Folds

Folds the elements indented with one level inside the current element.

Expand Child Folds (Ctrl + NumPad+ (Command + NumPad+ on macOS))

Unfolds all child elements of the currently selected element.

Expand All

Unfolds all elements in the current document.

Inspect Styles

Opens the **CSS Inspector** view *(on page 391)* that allows you to examine the CSS rules that match the currently selected element.

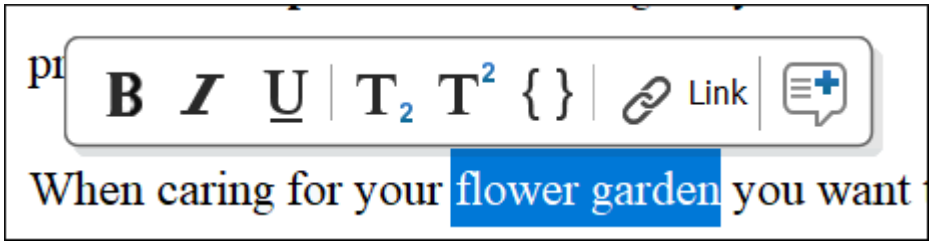
Options

Opens the Author mode preferences page *(on page 127)* where you can configure various options with regard to the **Author** editing mode.

Floating Contextual Toolbar for DITA

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a dynamic feature where certain editing contexts will trigger a floating toolbar with common actions that are available in the current editing context.

Figure 364. DITA Floating Contextual Toolbar



The *floating contextual toolbar* is automatically displayed when editing DITA documents in various situations, including:

- When a `<p>`, `<li>`, or `<shortdesc>` element has a selection inside, the floating toolbar includes actions such as **Bold**, **Italic**, **Underline**, a **Link** submenu, and more.
- When an `<image>` or `<xref>` element is selected:
  - If the element has an `@href` attribute, the floating toolbar includes a URL chooser where you can select the appropriate target.
  - If the element has a `@keyref` attribute, the floating toolbar includes a drop-down control where you can select the appropriate target key reference.
- When an `<object>` element is selected:
  - If the element has a `@data` attribute, the floating toolbar includes a URL chooser where you can select the appropriate target.
  - If the element has a `@datakeyref` attribute, the floating toolbar includes a drop-down control where you can select the appropriate target key reference.
- When an element with a `@conref` attribute is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for editing, removing, or replacing content references.
- When a `<codeblock>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes a drop-down control where you can select the value of the `@outputclass` attribute.
- When a `<ul>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for converting it to an ordered list or sorting the list.
- When an `<ol>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for converting it to an unordered list or sorting the list.
- When an `<li>` or `<step>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for moving the item up or down in the list/procedure.
- When a `<row>` or `<strow>` element is selected in a table, the floating toolbar includes various table-related actions (such as actions for editing table properties, inserting rows, or deleting rows).
- When an `<entry>` or `<stentry>` element is selected in a table, the floating toolbar includes various table-related actions (such as actions for editing table properties, inserting/deleting rows, or inserting/deleting columns).
- When a `<table>` or `<simpletable>` element is selected, the floating toolbar includes actions for editing table properties or sorting the table.
- In all cases, the **Add Comment** action is in the floating toolbar, allowing you to easily add comments to selected content.

DITA Drag/Drop (or Copy/Paste) Actions

Dragging a file from the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* or **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* and dropping it into a DITA document that is edited in **Author** mode, creates a link to the dragged file (the `<xref>` DITA element with the `@href` attribute) at the drop location. Copy and paste actions work the same.

You can also drag images or media files from your system explorer or the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and drop them into a DITA document (or copy and paste). This will insert the appropriate element at the drop or paste location (for example, dropping/pasting an image will insert the DITA `<image>` element with an `@href` attribute).

Tip:
For information about customizing **Author** mode actions for a particular *framework (on page 2231)* (document type), see the Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)* section.

Related Information:
Customizing the Author Mode Editing Experience for a Framework *(on page 1547)*

Working with Markdown Documents in DITA

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has special features that make it easy to incorporate Markdown documents into a DITA project. This is particularly useful for teams with members who are familiar with Markdown syntax but want to generate their output from DITA projects. The integration between the Markdown editor and DITA includes options to export or convert Markdown documents into DITA topics, as well as a live preview of the edited Markdown content.

Preview

The changes made to the Markdown content can be previewed live in three separate tabs: **DITA**, **XDITA**, and **HTML**.

The **DITA** tab in the *Preview* pane shows how an equivalent DITA topic will look after conversion. Similarly, the **XDITA** tab shows how a Lightweight DITA topic will look after conversion. The **HTML** tab shows a previous of the HTML equivalent.

Keys that are defined in the root map are also resolved in the *Preview* pane in the **XDITA** and **DITA** tabs.

Note:

To make the content generated for preview in the **DITA** and **XDITA** preview tabs more readable and to improve the conversion of Markdown to DITA in the editor, you can add an XML catalog to the XML catalogs *(on page 573)* list. This XML catalog will help with post-processing before the content is displayed. Here is an example of an XML catalog that you can use:

```
<catalog
  xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:entity:xmlns:xml:catalog">
  <uri
  name="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/preview/postprocess/dita" uri="postProcessDITA.xsl"/>
  <uri
  name="http://www.oxygenxml.com/ns/preview/postprocess/lwdita" uri="postProcessLWDITA.xsl"/>
</catalog>
```

Export Markdown as a DITA Topic

The Markdown editor includes an option to quickly convert the current Markdown document into a DITA topic. The **Export as DITA Topic** action is available in the contextual menu.

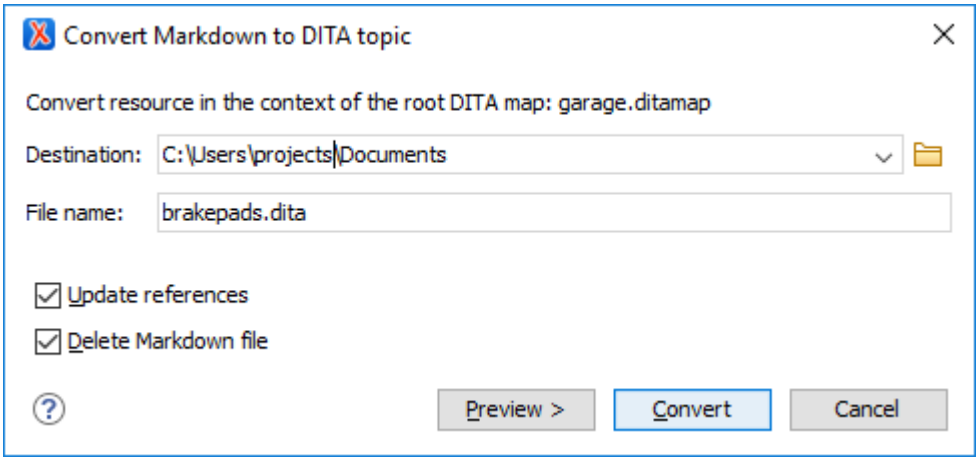
The conversion creates a new XML file that is defined as a DITA topic and opens it in the **Text** editing mode. You can then work with the document as you would with any other DITA topic, although you may need to manually correct some issues where the parser could not properly map Markdown syntax to DITA markup.

Working with Markdown Documents in the DITA Maps Manager

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has some specialized features that allow you to integrate Markdown documents directly into your DITA project using the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*. The following features are available for Markdown documents in the **DITA Maps Manager** view:

- **Insert Reference to Markdown Document** - You can use the **New**, **Reference**, and **Reference to the currently edited file** actions from the **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, or **Insert After** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in the **DITA Maps Manager** to insert a reference to a Markdown document at the selected location in the map. Markdown documents will be inserted as a topic reference (`topicref` element) with the `format` attribute set to `markdown`.
- **Validate Markdown Documents in DITA Maps** - When you use the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action from the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar to check the integrity of the structure of a *DITA map*, Markdown documents that are referenced in the *DITA map* will be converted to DITA topics in the background and validated the same as any other DITA topic.
- **Transforming DITA Maps with Markdown Documents** - When transforming *DITA maps* that have Markdown documents referenced, the transformation will convert the Markdown documents to normal DITA output without you needing to manually convert the Markdown documents to DITA topics.
- **Manually Convert Markdown Documents to DITA Topics** - If you need to use DITA semantics that are not possible in Markdown syntax (such as content references, related links, and other DITA-specific syntax), you can manually convert the Markdown document into a DITA topic. To do so, right-click the Markdown document in the **DITA Maps Manager** and select **Refactoring > Convert Markdown to DITA Topic**. This will open a dialog box that allows you to configure options for converting the document to an XML file that is defined as a DITA topic.

Figure 365. Convert Markdown to DITA Topic Dialog Box



This dialog box includes the following options:

Destination

The destination path for the new DITA topic.

File Name

Presents the current name and allows you to change it.

Update references

Select this option to update all references of the file in the *DITA map* and in the files referenced from the *DITA map*.

Delete Markdown file

If selected, the Markdown version of the file is deleted when the document is converted into a DITA file. If deselected (default value), when the document is converted into a DITA file, the original Markdown file is also preserved in its current location.

Preview

Select this button to display a preview of the changes Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is about to make.

Convert

Select this button to perform the conversion. If the Markdown file has `format="markdown"`, it will be converted to a DITA topic. If it has `format="mdita"`, it will be converted to a LightWeight DITA topic.

Tip:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes with a sample ditamap project for converting Markdown to DITA. Go to the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*, open the `sample.xpr` project, and navigate to the `dita/markdown-dita` folder.

DITA-Related Markdown Syntax

For a list of Markdown rules and syntax examples that are specific to DITA, see the Markdown DITA Syntax Reference.

Related information

Markdown Editor *(on page 629)*
Actions Available in the Markdown Editor *(on page 632)*
Markdown Editor Syntax Rules and Specifications *(on page 639)*
Automatic Validation in Markdown Documents *(on page 636)*
Markdown DITA Syntax Reference

Working with DITA-Compatible Documents

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes powerful dynamic publishing features *(on page 2118)* that allow you to easily integrate **Word, Excel, OpenAPI, HTML, Markdown** documents into a DITA project and have them automatically converted to DITA at the time of publishing. This is especially helpful for teams that have contributors who work with non-DITA documents but want their output to be generated from DITA projects.

Attention:
These features are available with no restrictions when the publishing process is done using the default publishing engine that is bundled in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin or if you have integrated the DITA-OT dynamic converter plugin into a custom DITA-OT distribution.

Working with DITA-Compatible Documents in the DITA Maps Manager

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has some specialized features that allow you to integrate DITA-compatible documents directly into your DITA project using the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*. The following features are available in the **DITA Maps Manager** view:

- **Insert References to DITA-Compatible Documents** - You can use the **New**, **Reference**, and **Reference to the currently edited file** actions from the **Append Child**, **Insert Before**, or **Insert After** submenu when invoking the contextual menu in the **DITA Maps Manager** to insert a reference to a **Word, Excel, OpenAPI, HTML or Markdown** document at the selected location in the map. A topic reference (`<topicref>`) element with the appropriate `@format` attribute value will be inserted.
- **Title of Referenced Resources is Displayed** - The title of each referenced DITA-compatible resource is presented in the **DITA Maps Manager** view.
- **Validate DITA-Compatible Documents in DITA Maps** - When you use the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action from the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar to check the integrity of the structure of a *DITA map*, DITA-compatible documents that are referenced in the *DITA map* are converted to DITA topics in the background and validated the same as any other DITA topic.

- **IDs Presented When Inserting References** - When inserting topic references, cross references, or content references to content inside DITA-compatible documents, the application presents a list of DITA-specific IDs from the target document.
- **Transform DITA Maps with DITA-Compatible Documents** - When transforming *DITA maps* that have DITA-compatible documents referenced, the transformation converts the documents to normal DITA output without you needing to manually convert the documents to DITA topics.

Resources

For more information about working with DITA-compatible resources, see the following resources:

- Video: **Integrating REST-API Content into DITA Documentation in Oxygen**
- Webinar: **Integrating Various Document Formats (OpenAPI, Word, Markdown, HTML, Excel) into DITA Documentation**

Related information

Dynamic Word, Excel, OpenAPI, HTML, Markdown to DITA Conversion *(on page 2118)*

Working with Keys in DITA

DITA uses keys to insert content that may have different values in particular circumstances. Keys provide a way to reference something indirectly. This can make it easier to manage and to reuse content in a various ways.

You can think of keys as like renting a post office box. Instead of the mail going directly from the sender to your house, it now goes to the post office box. You then go to the post office box and bring the mail back to your house. If you move to a new house, your mail still gets to you because it comes to the same post office box. You do not have to send change of address cards to all the people who send you mail. Your mailbox address is the key that makes sure your mail always reaches you, even if you move.

Similarly, if you use keys in your content to reference other content, you do not have to update the source content to change the value of the key or what it points to. You just change the definition of the key.

Defining Keys in DITA Maps

Keys are defined in maps and can then be reused and referenced throughout the whole structure of the map. It is considered best practice to create a separate submap that contains all of the key definitions and reference that submap in the *main (root) map (on page 2234)*. This makes it easier to manage since they're all in one location.

There are two types of key definitions that can be created in a map:

- Key with a value inside a `<keyword>`. To define this type of key, follow these instructions: Key Definition with a Keyword Value *(on page 1915)*.
- Key with a target (for example, to target a resource such as an image or external link). To define this type of key, follow these instructions: Key Definition with a Target *(on page 1916)*.

Using Keys for Values

You can use keys to represent values that may vary depending on the type of output. For instance, you may have several products that share a common feature. When you want to describe that feature, you need a way to insert the name of the product, even though that name is different depending on which product the feature description is being used for. For more information, see Working with Variable Text in DITA *(on page 2047)*.

Assigning Keys to Topics

You can assign a key to a topic and use that key to reference that topic for various purposes, such as reuse or linking. As always, keys are defined in maps, so the key definition is done using the keys attribute of the `<topicref>` element:

```
<topicref href="quick-heat.dita" keys="feature.quick-heat"/>
```

The easiest way to assign keys to a topic (and insert the `<topicref>` element in its *DITA map (on page 2230)*) is to use the **Keys** tab in the **Edit Properties** dialog box *(on page 1919)*. In the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, invoke the contextual menu on the topic that will have the key assigned and select **Edit Properties**. Go to the **Keys** tab and enter the name of the key in the **Define keys** field.

Once a key is assigned to a topic, you can use it to reference that topic for various purposes:

- You can create a link *(on page 2061)* to it using `<xref keyref="feature.quick-heat">`. This allows you to change the target of the link by changing the topic that is pointed to by the key (for example, by profiling).
- You can use it in a map to create a reference to a topic *(on page 1901)* by key: `<topicref keyref="feature.quick-heat">`. This allows you to change which topic is inserted in the map by the build, by changing the topic that is pointed to by the key.
- You can use it to insert a content reference *(on page 2028)*. In this case, the content reference uses the key to locate the topic to pull content from. It uses a `@conkeyref` attribute: `<procedure conkeyref="feature.quick-heat/preheat-procedure">`. In this example, `feature.quick-heat` is the key, and `preheat-procedure` is the ID of a procedure within the topic for that key. Using this mechanism, you could have multiple versions of the preheat procedure in various topics and control which one is inserted by changing the topic that is pointed to by the key.

Assigning Keys to Graphics

You can assign a key to an image (using a map to point to the image file *(on page 1916)*) and then insert the image using the key *(on page 1960)*.

Example of a key definition for a targeted image file:

```
<map id="keydefs">
  <!-- product name -->
  <title>Key Definitions</title>
  <keydef keys="image1" href="../img/image1.png" format="png"/>
</map>
```

Related information

Defining Keys in DITA Maps *(on page 1914)*
Creating a DITA Content Key Reference *(on page 2028)*
Reuse Content Dialog Box *(on page 2033)*
DITA Reusable Components View *(on page 2051)*
DITA 1.3 Specification: Indirect Key-based Addressing
Short Video Clip: Learn DITA Editing with Oxygen - Define a Key for a Product Name and Use It
Short Video Clip: Learn DITA Editing with Oxygen - Use an Already Defined Key for a Product Name
Doctales - Key Reference (keyref)

Working with a Glossary of Terms in DITA

There are several ways to manage a Glossary of Terms in DITA, but it is considered best practices to create a separate submap for the glossary and embed that glossary map in the *main (root) map (on page 2234)*. The actual glossary terms are small *glossary entry* topics that are referenced in the glossary map. You can add links to the glossary terms *(on page 2019)* in the output and you can even define abbreviated forms *(on page 2020)* for terms that have an acronym or some other type of abbreviation.

How to Create a Glossary of Terms in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

Even though there are several ways to create a glossary and reference the glossary terms, the following is the recommended approach:

1. Create a new submap *(on page 1898)* for your glossary and embed it in your main map.
2. Create a glossary entry topic (`<glossentry>`) for each glossary term. The `<glossentry>` element may contain numerous optional glossentry elements, but every glossentry topic must contain a `<glossterm>` and `<glossdef>` element. The `<glossterm>` is the name of the term while the `<glossdef>` is its definition.

   Here is an simple example:

   ```
   <glossentry id="ddl">
       <glossterm>Data Definition Language</glossterm>
       <glossdef>A language used for defining database schemas.</glossdef>
   </glossentry>
   ```

   The easiest way to create a glossentry topic in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:

a. Click the **New** file wizard button on the toolbar.
b. Type *glossentry* in the search field at the top of the dialog box.
c. Select the **Glossentry** DITA topic type, configure the name and optionally the title, and click **Create**.

3. Reference each glossary entry topic in your glossary submap using the `<glossref>` element. This element requires a `@keys` attribute. Please make sure the `@print` attribute is set to `yes` to show the glossary also in the PDF output.

```
<glossref keys="gloss_ddl" href="ddl.dita" print="yes"/>
```

The easiest way to reference a glossentry in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:

a. With the glossary entry topic opened in the main editor, open the glossary submap in the **DITA Maps Manager**, right-click the map node and select **Append Child > Reference to the currently edited file** (if you already have existing glossentry topics, you can right-click the glossentry where you want to insert the new one and select **Insert After > Reference to the currently edited file**).

Step Result: This opens the **Insert Reference** dialog box *(on page 1906)*.

b. Go to the **Keys** tab and enter a name in the **Define keys** field.
c. Select **Glossary Reference** from the **Reference type** drop-down list at the top of the dialog box.
d. Click **Insert and Close**.

Tip:
You could also group multiple glossentry topics into a single collection by using the `<glossgroup>` element.

How to Create Links to Glossary Terms

To specify that a link is generated in the output from the glossary term to its definition, use the `<term>` element (or `<abbreviated-form>` element as described in the next section *(on page 2020)*) with a `@keyref` attribute that references the corresponding key specified in the `<glossref>`. Of course, the `<glossref>` points to the `<glossentry>` topic where the glossary term is defined.

```
<term keyref="gloss_ddl"/>
```

In the output, the text specified in the `<glossterm>` element is displayed for the glossary term with a link to its glossentry topic that contains its definition.

The easiest way to add a `<term>` element and reference the glossary term in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:

1. Place the cursor at the location where you want to insert a link to the glossary term.
2. In the **DITA Reusable Componts** view *(on page 2051)*, go to the **Keys** tab and use the search filter field at the top of the view to find the key for the particular glossary term.
3. Right-click the key and select **Insert as Keyref > More > Term**.

Using Abbreviated Forms (Acronyms) with Glossary Terms

The `<abbreviated-form>` element can be used for glossary terms that you want to appear in an abbreviated form (such as an acronym). Abbreviated forms are expanded to their full form the first time that they appear in a document, and then all subsequent instances will display the short form (or acronym). You would need to define the long and short forms in the `<glossentry>` and then reference it with the `<abbreviated-form>` element (instead of the `<term>` element).

The recommended best practices for defining the long and short forms would be to use a structure similar to this:

```
<glossentry id="ddl">
  <glossterm>Data Definition Language</glossterm>
  <glossBody>
    <glossSurfaceForm>Data Definition Language (DDL)</glossSurfaceForm>
    <glossAlt>
      <glossAcronym>DDL</glossAcronym>
    </glossAlt>
  </glossBody>
</glossentry>
```

The long form is declared using the `<glossSurfaceForm>` element while the short form is declared using the `<glossAcronym>` element.

Then you need to reference the glossentry that contains the long and short forms using the `<abbreviated-form>` element:

```
<abbreviated-form keyref="gloss_ddl"/>
```

For more information about the recommended best practices for using abbreviations, including information about using multiple languages, see: http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/download.php/29734/AcronymBestPractice_08112008.doc.

Related information

https://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.2/os/spec/langref/glossentry.html

https://docs.oasis-open.org/dita/v1.2/os/spec/langref/abbreviated-form.html

Reusing DITA Content

Reusing content is one of the key features of DITA and DITA provides several methods for reusing content. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for each of these methods.

Reusing Topics in DITA Maps

A DITA topic does not belong to any one publication. You add a DITA topic to a publication by referencing it in a map. You can reference the same topic in multiple maps *(on page 2023)*.

Reusing Content with References and Keys

DITA allows you to reuse content by referencing it in another topic. DITA provides several mechanisms for including content by reference *(on page 2025)* (*conref*, *conkeyref*, *coderef*). A `conref` (content reference) *(on page 2026)* creates a direct reference to a specific element of another topic. A `conkeyref` (content key reference) *(on page 2028)* creates a reference to a key, which then points to a specific element in another topic. The advantage of using a *conkeyref* is that you can change the element that is included by changing the key reference. For example, since keys are defined in maps, if you include a topic in multiple maps, you can use a different key reference in each map. A *coderef* references an external file that contains literal code.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for all of these mechanisms.

While the *conref* and *conkeyref* mechanisms can be used to reference any content element, it is considered best practice to only *conref* or *conkeyref* content that is specifically set and managed as reusable content. This practice helps reduce expensive errors, such as an author accidentally deleting the source element that other topics are including by the reference. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can help you create a reusable component from your current content.

Reusing Content with Reusable Components

DITA allows you to select content in a topic, create a reusable component *(on page 2044)* from it and reference that component in other locations. Each reusable component is created as a separate file. Anytime the content needs to be edited, you only need to update it in the component file and all the locations in your topics that reference it will also be updated. This can help you to maintain continuity and accuracy throughout your documents.

Reusing Content with Variables

DITA allows you to replace the content of certain elements with a value that is pointed to by a key. This mechanism effectively means that you can create variables in your content *(on page 2047)*, which you can then create multiple outputs by changing the value that the key points to. This is done by profiling the definition of the key value, or by substituting another map with a different key value.

Reusing Content with DITA 1.3 Concepts

DITA 1.3 allows you to use some advanced concepts to expand content reuse possibilities even further. *Key Scopes* (or scoped keys) *(on page 2049)* allow you to reuse topics with variable content depending on the particular context and it maximizes reuse possibilities for keys. *Branch Filtering (on page 2050)* allows you to reuse the same content that is profiled in multiple ways within the same publication, each time using a different filter.

DITA Reusable Components View

If you use a large amount of keys or reusable components in your DITA project, the **DITA Reusable Components** view *(on page 2051)* can be quite helpful. It collects all of the keys and reusable components that are defined in the *root map (on page 2234)* and presents them in a dynamic table where you can easily locate and insert references to them.

Reuse Actions in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes some actions that are specifically designed for DITA reusable content. These actions are available in the contextual menu, the **DITA** menu, and some are available on the toolbar.

Reuse Content

This action provides a mechanism for reusing content fragments. It opens the **Reuse Content** dialog box *(on page 2033)* that allows you to insert several types of references to reusable content at the cursor position. The types of references that you can insert using this dialog box include content references (`@conref`) *(on page 2034)*, content key references (`@conkeyref`) *(on page 2036)*, or key references to metadata (`@keyref`) *(on page 2039)*.

Push Current Element

Opens the **Push current element** dialog box *(on page 2042)* that allows content from a source topic to be inserted into another topic without any special coding in the topic where the content will be re-used.

Edit Content Reference

This action is available for elements with a `@conref` or `@conkeyref` attribute. It opens the **Edit Content Reference** dialog box that allows you to edit the source location (or key) and source element of a content reference (or content key reference), and the reference details (`@conref`/`@conkeyref` and `@conrefend` attributes). For more information, see Reuse Content Dialog Box *(on page 2033)*.

Replace Reference with Content

Replaces the referenced fragment (`@conref` or `@conkeyref`) at the cursor position with its content from it source. This action is useful if you want to make changes to the content in the currently edited document without changing the referenced fragment in its source location. If the source content includes references to other topics/resources (*hrefs*), the operation also resolves those references relative to the new location. Attributes are preserved according to the following priority:

1. Attributes from the elements in the current document that reference other content are preserved except for attributes with a `-dita-use-conref-target` value.
2. Attributes from the referenced content are brought into the replaced elements in the current document except for `@id` attributes.

Replace All References with Content

Replaces all referenced fragments (`@keyref`, `@conref`, or `@conkeyref`) in the current document with the content. Attributes are preserved according to the following priority:

1. Attributes from the elements in the current document that reference other content are preserved except for attributes with a `-dita-use-conref-target` value.
2. Attributes from the referenced content are brought into the replaced elements in the current document except for `@id` attributes.

For *keyrefs* inside `<xref>` or `<link>` elements, the `@keyref` attribute is changed to an `@href` attribute, while the rest of the content for the *keyref* is replaced with its source content.

If the source content includes references to other topics/resources (*hrefs*), the operation also resolves those references relative to the new location.

Remove Content Reference

Removes the content reference (`@conref` or `@conkeyref`) inside the element at the cursor position.

Create Reusable Component

Opens a dialog box that helps you to create a reusable component from the current element or selection of elements. If the **Replace selection with content reference** option is selected in the dialog box, the selection will be replaced with a content reference (`@conref`). If multiple elements are selected (for example, multiple steps or list items), the selection will be replaced with a content reference range (`@conref` and `@conrefend`). For more information, see Creating a Reusable Content Component *(on page 2045)*.

Insert Reusable Component

Inserts a reusable component at cursor location. For more information, see Inserting a Reusable Content Component *(on page 2046)*.

Resources

For more information about reusing strategies in DITA, see the following resources:

- **Webinar: Working with DITA in Oxygen - Basic Profiling and Reuse Strategies**
- **Webinar: Working with DITA in Oxygen - Advanced Profiling and Reuse Strategies**

Related information

Working with Keys in DITA *(on page 2016)*

Reusing DITA Topics in Multiple Maps

You can reuse an entire DITA topic simply by referencing it in multiple maps (or multiple locations within the same *map (on page 1903)*) using one of the following procedures:

Reuse Topics Using the DITA Maps Manager

1. Make sure the *DITA map (on page 2230)* is opened in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*.
2. Add a reference to an existing topic by using one of the following methods (depending on your particular situation):

a. If the topic already exists in this *DITA map*, do one of the following:
   - Simply drag the topic and press **Ctrl** (or **Alt** on macOS) at the new location within the map (or use the **Copy** and **Paste** contextual menu actions).
   - If the topic is the currently open document in the main editor, determine the new location in the map (in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*), right-click a parent or sibling topic, and select **Append Child > Reference to the currently edited file** or **Insert After > Reference to the currently edited file**.

b. If the topic already exists in another *DITA map*, do one of the following:
   - Open the other map in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, right-click the topic, select **Copy**, switch back to the original *DITA map* in the **DITA Maps Manager**, determine the new location in the map, right-click a parent or sibling topic, and use one of the **Paste** contextual menu actions (**Paste**, **Paste Before**, or **Paste After**).
   - If the topic is the currently open document in the main editor, determine the new location in the map (in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*), right-click a parent or sibling topic, and select **Append Child > Reference to the currently edited file** or **Insert After > Reference to the currently edited file**.

c. If the topic exists in the project, but has not yet been added to a *DITA map*, do one of the following:
   - Right-click the topic in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* (or the file system), select **Copy**, switch to the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* view, determine the new location in the map, right-click a parent or sibling topic, and use one of the **Paste** contextual menu actions (**Paste**, **Paste Before**, or **Paste After**).
   - If the topic is the currently open document in the main editor, determine the new location in the map (in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*), right-click a parent or sibling topic, and select **Append Child > Reference to the currently edited file** or **Insert After > Reference to the currently edited file**.

3. If your topic uses a key reference *(on page 2016)*, set up the appropriate key definition in your map *(on page 1914)*.
4. If you want to define relationships between topics, other than those defined in the topics themselves, you can add a relationship table to your map *(on page 2067)*.
5. When you have finished adding topics, check that your map is complete and that all topic links and keys resolve correctly. To do this validation, click the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)* on the toolbar in the **DITA Maps Manager**.

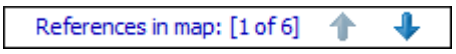
Reuse Topics Using Author Mode Editor

1. Open the *DITA map (on page 1879)* in the **Author** mode editor.
2. Add a reference to an existing topic by dragging it from the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* (or the file system) and dropping it in the desired location in the *DITA map* opened in **Author** mode. You can also accomplish the same thing by using the **Copy** and **Paste** contextual menu actions.
3. If your topic uses a key reference *(on page 2016)*, set up the appropriate key definition in your map *(on page 1914)*.

4. If you want to define relationships between topics, other than those defined in the topics themselves, you can add a relationship table to your map *(on page 2067)*.
5. When you have finished adding topics, check that your map is complete and that all topic links and keys resolve correctly. To do this validation, click the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)* on the toolbar in the **DITA Maps Manager**.

Displaying Multiple References to the Same Topics

Whenever multiple references to the same topic are detected in the context of the current map in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, an indicator will appear in the top-right corner of the **Author** mode editor that shows the number of times the current topic is referenced in the *DITA map*. It also includes navigation arrows that allow you to jump to the next or previous reference in the **DITA Maps Manager**.



Working with Content References

The DITA *content reference* feature lets you insert a piece of source content by referencing it from its source. When you need to update that content, you only need to do it in one place. The source content can be referenced using the DITA `@conref` or `@conkeyref` attributes.

There are several strategies for managing content references:

- *Reusable components* - With this strategy, you create a new file for each piece of content that you want to reuse and you insert references from the content of the reusable component files. For example, suppose that you have a disclaimer that needs to be included in certain sections of your documentation. You can create a reusable component that contains your disclaimer and reuse it as often as you need to. If the disclaimer ever needed to be updated, you only have to edit it in one file.
- *Single-source content references* - You may prefer to keep many pieces of reusable content in one file. For example, you might want to create a single file that contains all the actions that are available in various menus or toolbars for your software application. Then, wherever you need to describe or display an action in your documentation, you can reuse content from that single file by inserting content references. This strategy requires more setup than reusable components, but might make it easier to centrally managing the reused content and it allows for more flexibility in the XML structure of the reusable content.
- *Arbitrary content references* - Although it is not recommended, you can create content references among topics without storing the reusable content in components or a single file. This strategy might make it difficult to manage content that is reused and to maintain continuity and accuracy, since you may not have any indication that content you are editing is reused elsewhere.

A reference to the external content is created by adding a `@conref` or `@conkeyref` attribute to an element in the local document. The `@conref` or `@conkeyref` attribute defines a link to the referenced content, made up of a path to the file and the topic ID within the file. The path may also reference a specific element ID within the topic. Referenced content is not physically copied to the referencing file. However, by default, Oxygen XML

Author Eclipse plugin displays it in **Author** mode as if it is there in the referencing file. If you want to expand referenced content on demand (rather than having it be automatically expanded), open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)*, go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author**, and deselect the **Display referenced content** option *(on page 130)*.

Note:
A reference also displays *tracked changes (on page 2234)* and comments that are included in the source fragment. To edit these comments (or accept/reject changes) right-click the comment or tracked change and select **Edit Reference**.

Tip:
To search for references made through a direct content reference, use the **Search References** action from the contextual menu.

Related information
Working with Reusable Components *(on page 2044)*
Working with Keys in DITA *(on page 2016)*
Working with the Conref Push Mechanism *(on page 2042)*
DITA Reusable Components View *(on page 2051)*
Short Video Clip: Learn DITA Editing with Oxygen - Add a Content Reference to a Reusable Note
Short Video Clip: Learn DITA Editing with Oxygen - Add a Content Reference Using Copy/Paste
Doctales - Content Reference
Doctales - Content Key Reference

Creating a DITA Content Reference

DITA Content Reference

A DITA content reference, or `conref`, is one of the main content *reuse* features of DITA *(on page 2020)*. It is a mechanism for re-using the same content in multiple topics (or even in multiple locations within the same topic).

For a `conref` to be created, the source content must have an `id` attribute that the `conref` can reference. Therefore, creating a `conref` requires that you add an `id` to the content to be reused before inserting a `conref` into the topic that reuses the referenced content.

Assigning an *ID* to the Referenced Content

To add an `id` to a DITA element in a topic, place the cursor on the element and select **Edit Attributes** from the contextual menu to open the in-place attribute editor *(on page 383)*. Enter `id` as the **Name** of the attribute and a value of your choice in the **Value** field. You can also use the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)* to enter a value in the **id** attribute.

Note:
The element may already have an `id`, since in some cases, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically generates an *ID* value when the `id` attribute is created.

Creating a Content Reference

To create a content reference (`conref`), follow these steps:

1. Make sure the element you want to reference has an *ID* assigned to it *(on page 2026)*.
2. In **Author** mode *(on page 221)*, place the cursor at the location where you want the reused content to be inserted.
3. Select the **Reuse Content** action on the main toolbar (or from the **DITA** menu or **Reuse** submenu of the contextual menu). The **Reuse Content** dialog box *(on page 2033)* is displayed.
4. In the **Location** field of the **Reuse Content** dialog box, select the topic that contains the element you want to reference. The elements that you can reference are presented in a table.
5. Select the **Target ID** of the element (or elements) to have their content inserted, and verify the content in the **Preview** pane. The `id` value of the element that you select is automatically added to the **Reference to (conref)** field.
6. Make any other selections you need in the **Reuse Content** dialog box *(on page 2033)*. If you select multiple elements, the **Expand to (conrefend)** field is automatically filled with the `id` value of the last element in your selection.
7. Click **Insert** or **Insert and close** to create the content reference.

Using Copy/Paste Actions to Create a Content Reference

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes support for creating content references with simple copy/paste actions. The copied content must be an entire DITA XML element with an ID attribute. Also, the location in the document where you paste the element must be valid, although as long as the **Smart paste and drag and drop** option *(on page 146)* is selected in the **Schema-Aware** preferences page, if you try to paste it in an invalid location, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will attempt to place it in a valid location, and may prompt you with one or more choices for where to place it.

To create a content reference (`conref`) using copy/paste actions, follow these steps:

1. Copy an entire DITA element that has an ID attribute assigned to it.
2. Place the cursor at a location where the copied element will be valid.
3. Select the **Paste as Content Reference** action from the **Paste Special** submenu from the contextual menu.

Other Ways to Reuse Content

- You can use the **Components** tab in the **DITA Reusable Components** view *(on page 2056)* to easily insert content references.
- An alternate way to reuse content is to use the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Create Reusable Component** *(on page 2045)* and **Insert Reusable Component** *(on page 2046)* actions (available in the **DITA** menu and the **Reuse** submenu of the contextual menu). They handle the details of creating an *ID* and *conref* and create reusable component files, separate from your normal content files. This can help you manage your reusable content more effectively.
- You can also insert reusable content using content key references *(on page 2028)*. This may also make reusable content easier to manage, depending on your particular situation and needs.
- Other topics in this section include information about more specialized or advanced ways or reusing content, such as *code references (on page 2041)*, the *conref push mechanism (on page 2042)*, *variable text (on page 2047)*, *key scopes (on page 2049)*, and *branch filtering (on page 2050)*.

Related Information:

Reuse Content Dialog Box *(on page 2033)*
DITA Reusable Components View *(on page 2051)*
Creating a DITA Content Key Reference *(on page 2028)*
Editing DITA Content References *(on page 2030)*
Working with Reusable Components *(on page 2044)*
Working with Content References *(on page 2025)*

Creating a DITA Content Key Reference

DITA Content Key Reference

A DITA content key reference, or `@conkeyref`, is a mechanism for inserting a piece of content from one topic into another. It is a version of the DITA content reference mechanism *(on page 2026)* that uses keys *(on page 2016)* to locate the content to reuse rather than direct references to topics that contain reused content.

As with a *conref*, a *conkeyref* requires that the element to be reused has an `@id` attribute. It also requires the topic that contains the reusable content to be assigned a key *(on page 2016)* in a map. As with all uses of keys, you can substitute multiple maps or use profiling *(on page 2126)* to create multiple definitions of keys in a single map. This allows the same `@conkeyref` to pull in content from various sources, depending on how your build is configured. This can make it easier to create and manage sophisticated content reuse scenarios.

Creating a Content Key Reference

To create a content key reference (`@conkeyref`), follow these steps:

1. Make sure the topic that contains the reusable content is assigned a key in the *DITA map* and the element you want to reference has an *ID* assigned to it.
2. In **Author** mode *(on page 221)*, place the cursor at the location where you want the reused content to be inserted.
3. Select **Reuse Content** on the main toolbar (or from the **DITA** menu or **Reuse** submenu of the contextual menu). The **Reuse Content** dialog box *(on page 2033)* is displayed.
4. Select the **Key** radio button for the content source and use the **Choose Key Reference** button to select the key for the topic that contains the reusable content (you can also select one from the drop-down list in the **Key** field). The elements that you can reference from the source are presented in the table in the middle of the **Reuse Content** dialog box.
5. Select the **Target ID** of the element (or elements) that you want to insert, and verify the content in the **Preview** pane. The `@id` value of the element that you select is automatically added to the **Reference to (conkeyref)** field.
6. Make any other selections you need in the **Reuse Content** dialog box *(on page 2036)*. If you select multiple elements, the **Expand to (conrefend)** field is automatically filled with the `@id` value of the last element in your selection.
7. Click **Insert** or **Insert and close** to create the content reference.

Note:
If you are using **Text** mode *(on page 220)*, when you insert a `@conkeyref` attribute, after you enter the first quote (`conkeyref="`), the **Content Completion Assistant** will list all the defined keys that you can select from. Also, after you select the key, the **Content Completion Assistant** will then list the element IDs from the referenced topic, allowing you to insert an anchor. Note that this only works for local files.

Using Copy/Paste Actions to Create a Content Key Reference

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes support for creating content key references with simple copy/paste actions. When the DITA content is processed, the key references are resolved using key definitions from *DITA maps*. The copied content must be an entire DITA XML element with an ID attribute and the topic that contains the reusable content must have a key assigned in a *DITA map*. Also, the location in the document where you paste the element must be valid, although as long as the **Smart paste and drag and drop** option *(on page 146)* is selected in the **Schema-Aware** preferences page, if you try to paste it in an invalid location, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will attempt to place it in a valid location, and may prompt you with one or more choices for where to place it.

To create a content key reference (`@conkeyref`) using copy/paste actions, follow these steps:

1. In the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*, make sure that the **Context** combo box *(on page 1885)* points to the correct map that stores the keys.
2. Make sure the topic that contains the content you want to reference has a key assigned to it. To assign a key, right-click the topic with its parent map opened in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, select **Edit Properties**, and enter a value in the **Keys** field.
3. In a topic with an assigned key, copy an entire DITA element that has an ID attribute assigned to it.
4. Place the cursor at a location where the copied element will be valid.
5. Select the **Paste as Content Key Reference** action from the **Paste Special** submenu from the contextual menu.

Other Ways to Reuse Content

- You can use the **Components** tab in the **DITA Reusable Components** view *(on page 2056)* to easily insert content key references.
- You can also insert reusable content using content references (*conref) (on page 2026)*.
- Other topics in this section include information about more specialized or advanced ways or reusing content, such as *code references (on page 2041)*, the *conref push mechanism (on page 2042)*, *variable text (on page 2047)*, *key scopes (on page 2049)*, and *branch filtering (on page 2050)*.

Related Information:
Reuse Content Dialog Box *(on page 2033)*
DITA Reusable Components View *(on page 2051)*
Creating a DITA Content Reference *(on page 2026)*
Editing DITA Content References *(on page 2030)*
Working with Reusable Components *(on page 2044)*
Working with Content References *(on page 2025)*

Editing DITA Content References

When you reference reusable content using a `@conref` or `@conkeyref` attribute, by default, the content is grayed out in the document and can only be edited from the source document. To edit the source of the referenced content, click the icon at the beginning of the inserted content. This will open the source document where you can edit the referenced content.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes some actions that allow you to quickly edit existing content references. When the element that contains a content reference (`@conref` or `@conkeyref`) is selected, the following actions are available in the **DITA** menu and the **Reuse** submenu of the contextual menu:

Edit Content Reference

This action is available for elements with a `@conref` or `@conkeyref` attribute. It opens the **Edit Content Reference** dialog box that allows you to edit the source location (or key) and source element of a content reference (or content key reference), and the reference details (`@conref`/`@conkeyref` and `@conrefend` attributes). For more information, see Reuse Content Dialog Box *(on page 2033)*.

Replace Reference with Content

Replaces the referenced fragment (`@conref` or `@conkeyref`) at the cursor position with its content from it source. This action is useful if you want to make changes to the content in the currently edited document without changing the referenced fragment in its source location. If the source content includes references to other topics/resources (*hrefs*), the operation also resolves those references relative to the new location. Attributes are preserved according to the following priority:

1. Attributes from the elements in the current document that reference other content are preserved except for attributes with a `-dita-use-conref-target` value.
2. Attributes from the referenced content are brought into the replaced elements in the current document except for `@id` attributes.

Replace All References with Content

Replaces all referenced fragments (`@keyref`, `@conref`, or `@conkeyref`) in the current document with the content. Attributes are preserved according to the following priority:

1. Attributes from the elements in the current document that reference other content are preserved except for attributes with a `-dita-use-conref-target` value.
2. Attributes from the referenced content are brought into the replaced elements in the current document except for `@id` attributes.

For *keyrefs* inside `<xref>` or `<link>` elements, the `@keyref` attribute is changed to an `@href` attribute, while the rest of the content for the *keyref* is replaced with its source content.

If the source content includes references to other topics/resources (*hrefs*), the operation also resolves those references relative to the new location.

Remove Content Reference

Removes the content reference (`@conref` or `@conkeyref`) inside the element at the cursor position.

Converting Conrefs to Conkeyrefs

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a DITA refactoring operation called **Convert conrefs to conkeyrefs** that will find all *content references* (that reference content outside the current document) and convert them to *content key references*. You can also use it to quickly convert all *content references* in the current document or multiple documents at once.

To access the **Convert conrefs to conkeyrefs** operation, use one of the following methods:

Single Document Method

With the document opened in the editor, right-click anywhere in the main editing pane (or right-click the topic reference in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*), go to the **Refactoring** submenu, and choose **Convert conrefs to conkeyrefs**.

Multiple Documents At Once Method

Select **XML Refactoring** from the **XML** menu (or from the **Refactoring** submenu when you right-click a document in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*or the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*). Then select **Convert conrefs to conkeyrefs** from the **DITA** section and click **Next**.

Either method will proceed to the **XML Refactoring Wizard**. If you used the **Multiple Documents At Once Method** *(on page 2032)*, the wizard page allows you to choose a scope for the operation and some filtering options:

- **Scope** - Select from a variety of options to define the scope that will have resources affected by the operation. For example, you can choose to affect all resources in the **Project**, **All opened files**, **Entire DITA map hierarchy**, or just the **Current file**.
- **Filters** section
  - **Include files** - Specifies files to be excluded from the operation. You can specify multiple files by separating them with commas and the patterns can include wildcards (such as ***** or **?**).
  - **Restrict to known XML file types only** - Excludes non-XML file types from the operation.

If you used the **Single Document Method** *(on page 2031)*, the scope will be the current file so the scope and filtering options are not displayed.

You can then use one of the following buttons to proceed with the operation:

Preview

You can use the **Preview** button to open a comparison panel where you can review all the changes that will be made by the refactoring operation before applying the changes.

> **Warning:**
> It is always recommended to use the **Preview** button to make sure the operation is not going to do something unexpected and after you click the **Finish** button, any **Undo** action will only revert changes on the current document.

Finish

When you use the **Finish** button, the operation will be processed and all *content references* will be converted to *content key references* (either all *content references* in the current document or all *content references* in all of the documents specified in the scope). The file name for each converted document is used as the value for its new key. However, the operation does NOT automatically add the key to the *DITA Map (on page 2230)*, so you still need to manually define each key in your *DITA map (on page 1914)*.

Related Information:

Creating a DITA Content Reference *(on page 2026)*

Creating a DITA Content Key Reference *(on page 2028)*

Defining Keys in DITA Maps *(on page 1914)*

Reuse Content Dialog Box

The **Reuse Content** dialog box provides a mechanism for reusing content fragments. DITA `@conref`, `@conkeyref`, and `@keyref` attributes can be used to insert references to reusable content. The `@conref` attribute stores a reference to another element and is processed to replace the referencing element with the referenced element. The `@conkeyref` attribute uses keys *(on page 2016)* to locate the content to reuse rather than direct references to the topic that contains the reusable content. The `@keyref` attribute also uses keys *(on page 2016)* and can be used to indirectly reference metadata that may have different values in various circumstances.

Note:
For a *conref* or *conkeyref*, to reference the content inside a DITA element, the source element must have an `@id` attribute assigned to it. The element containing the content reference acts as a placeholder for the referenced element. For more details about DITA `@conref` and `@conkeyref` attributes, go to https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/archSpec/base/conref.html.

Note:
For the purposes of using a `@keyref`, keys are defined at map level and referenced afterward. For more information about the DITA `@keyref` attribute, go to https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/langRef/attributes/thekeyrefattribute.html.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the referenced content *(on page 349)* of a DITA content reference if it can resolve it to a valid resource. If you use URIs instead of local paths in your XML documents and your DITA-OT transformation needs an *XML Catalog (on page 2235)* to map the URIs to local paths, you need to add the catalog in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *(on page 573)*. If the URIs can be resolved, the referenced content is displayed in **Author** mode and in the transformation output.

In **Author** mode, a reference to reusable content (`@conref`, `@conkeyref`, or `@keyref`) can easily be inserted at the cursor position by using the **Reuse Content** dialog box. It can be opened with any of the following methods:

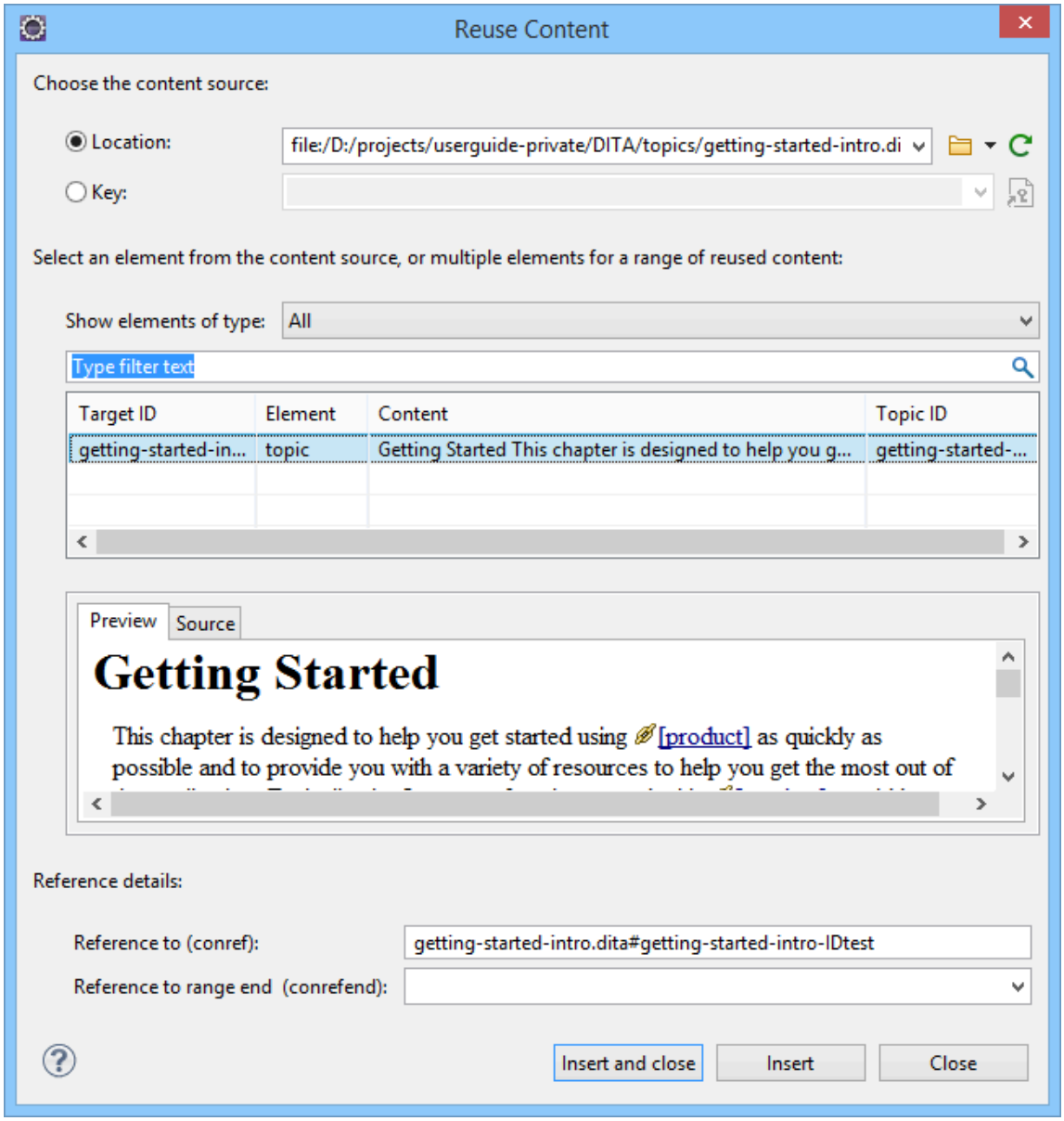
- Click the **Reuse Content** action on the main toolbar.
- In the contextual menu of the editing area, go to **Reuse >** **Reuse Content**.
- Go to **DITA >** **Reuse Content**.

Your selection at the top of the dialog box for choosing the content source determines whether Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will insert a `@conref`, `@conkeyref`, or `@keyref`.

If you select **Location** for the content source, a *content reference* (`@conref`) will be inserted. If you select **Key** for the content source, keys will be used to insert a *content key reference* (`@conkeyref`) or a *key reference* (`@keyref`).

Content Reference (`@conref`) Options Using the Reuse Content Dialog Box

Figure 366. Reuse Content Dialog Box (with the Default Insert Content Reference Options Displayed)



Choose the content source Section

When **Location** is selected for the content source, a *content reference* (`@conref`) will be inserted. Here you can specify the path of the topic that contains the content you want to reference.

The dialog box offers the following options:

Select an element from the content source Section

Show elements of type

You can use this drop-down list to select specific types of elements to be displayed in the subsequent table. This can help you narrow down the list of possible source elements that you can select.

Text Filter Field

You can also use the text filter field to narrow down the list of possible source elements to be displayed in the subsequent table.

Element Table

Presents all the element IDs defined in the source topic. Use this table to select the **Target ID** of the element that you want to reference. You can select multiple contiguous elements to reference a block of content.

Preview Pane

Displays the content that will be references. If you select multiple elements in the element table, the content from all the selected elements is displayed.

Source Pane

Displays the source code of the element to be referenced.

Reference details Section

Reference to (conref)

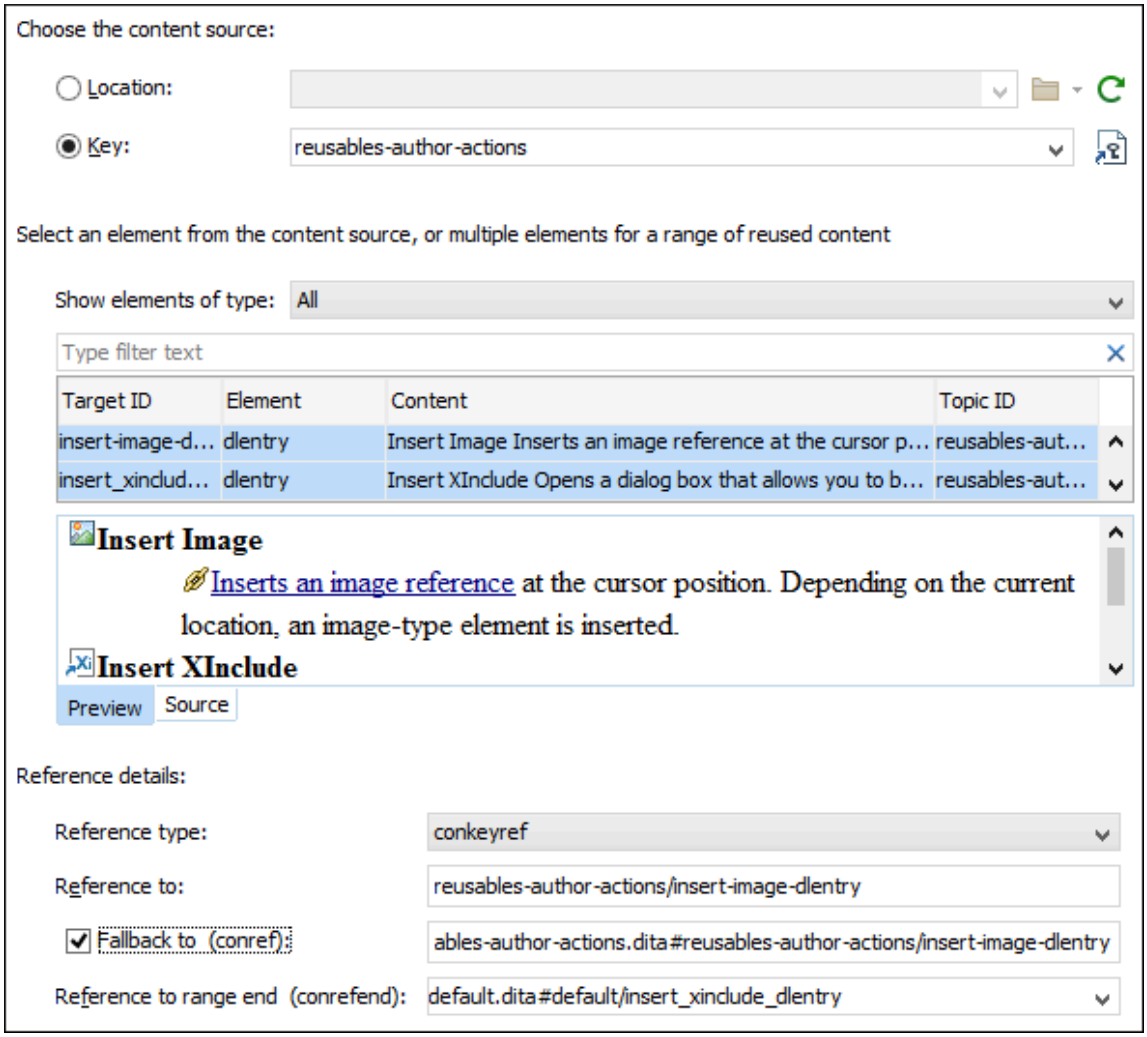
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically fills this text field with the value of the `@conref` attribute to be inserted. However, you can edit this value if need be.

Reference to range end (conrefend)

If you select multiple elements (of the same type) in the element table, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically fills this text field with the `@id` value of the last element in your selection. This value will be inserted as a `@conrefend` attribute, defining the end of the *conref* range.

Content Key Reference (`@conkeyref`) Options Using the Reuse Content Dialog Box

Figure 367. Insert Content Key Reference Options



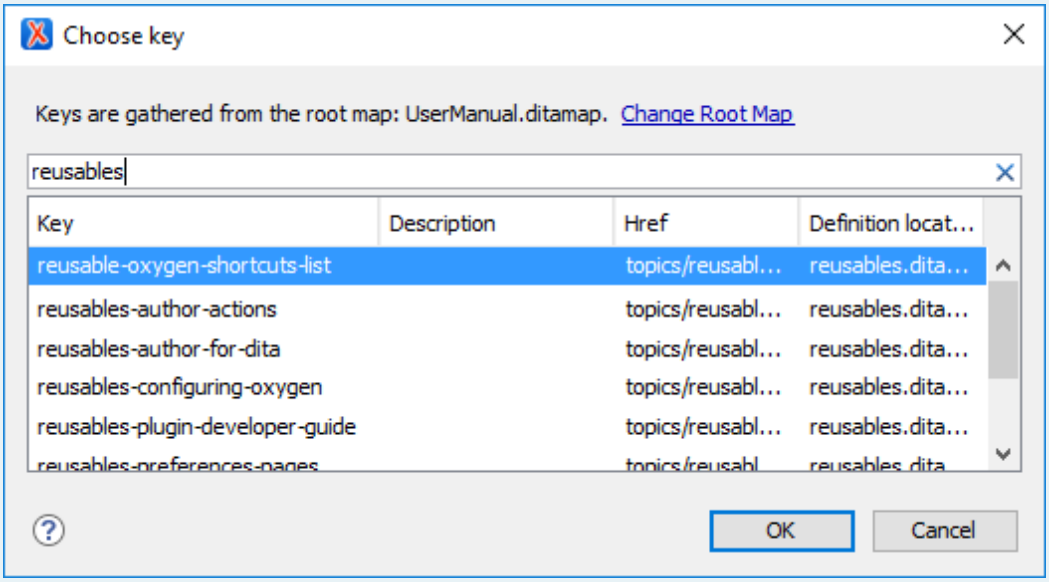
Choose the content source Section

When **Key** is selected for the content source, you can use keys to reference content. You can use the **Choose Key Reference** button to open the **Choose Key** dialog box that allows you to select one from a list of all the keys that are gathered from the *root map (on page 2234)* (you can also select one from the drop-down list in the **Key** field).

Note:
If the current *DITA map* is not selected as the *root map*, no keys will be listed.

Tip:
You can also use the **DITA Reusable Components** view *(on page 2051)* for similar purposes.

Figure 368. Choose Key Dialog Box



The **Choose Key** dialog box includes the following:

- **Change Root Map** - Opens a small dialog box that allows you to select a *root map (on page 1897)*.
- **Search Filter** - You can enter text in the filter field at the top of the dialog box to filter the list and search for a specific key.
- **Sortable Columns** - The dialog box includes the following columns that can be sorted by clicking on the heading:
  - **Key** - The name of the key (the value of the `@keys` attribute).
  - **Description** - The description of the key that is obtained from its definition. Keys that are defined with a text value in the `<navtitle>` or `<keyword>` element have that value listed in this column.
  - **Href** - Keys that are defined with a value in an *href* attribute have that href value listed in this column.
  - **Definition Location** - The name of the *DITA map (on page 2230)* where the key is defined.
- **Group by Definition Location** - A contextual menu action that can be used to group (and sort) all the keys based upon the value in the **Definition Location** column.

To insert a *content key reference* (`@conkeyref`), select the key that contains the content you want to reference. Notice that the file path is shown in the **Href** column. Keys that do not have a value in the **Href** column are for referencing metadata with a `@keyref` attribute. Therefore, to insert a `@conkeyref`, you need to select a key that does have a value (file path) in the **Href** column.

After you select a key, click **OK** to return to the **Reuse Content** dialog box.

When a key that is defined as a *content key reference* has been selected, the **Reuse Content** dialog box offers the following additional options for inserting a `@conkeyref`:

Select an element from the content source Section

Show elements of type

You can use this drop-down list to select specific types of elements to be displayed in the subsequent table. This can help you narrow down the list of possible source elements that you can select.

Text Filter Field

You can also use the text filter field to narrow down the list of possible source elements to be displayed in the subsequent table.

Element Table

Presents all the element IDs defined in the source topic. Use this table to select the **Target ID** of the element that you want to reference. You can select multiple contiguous elements to reference a block of content.

Preview Pane

Displays the content that will be references. If you select multiple elements in the element table, the content from all the selected elements is displayed.

Source Pane

Displays the source code of the element to be referenced.

Reference details Section

Reference type

The type of reference that will be inserted. If you selected a key that references a DITA resource, you will notice that **conkeyref** value is automatically selected.

Reference to

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically fills this text field with the value of the `@conkeyref` attribute to be inserted. However, you can edit this value if need be.

Fallback to (conref)

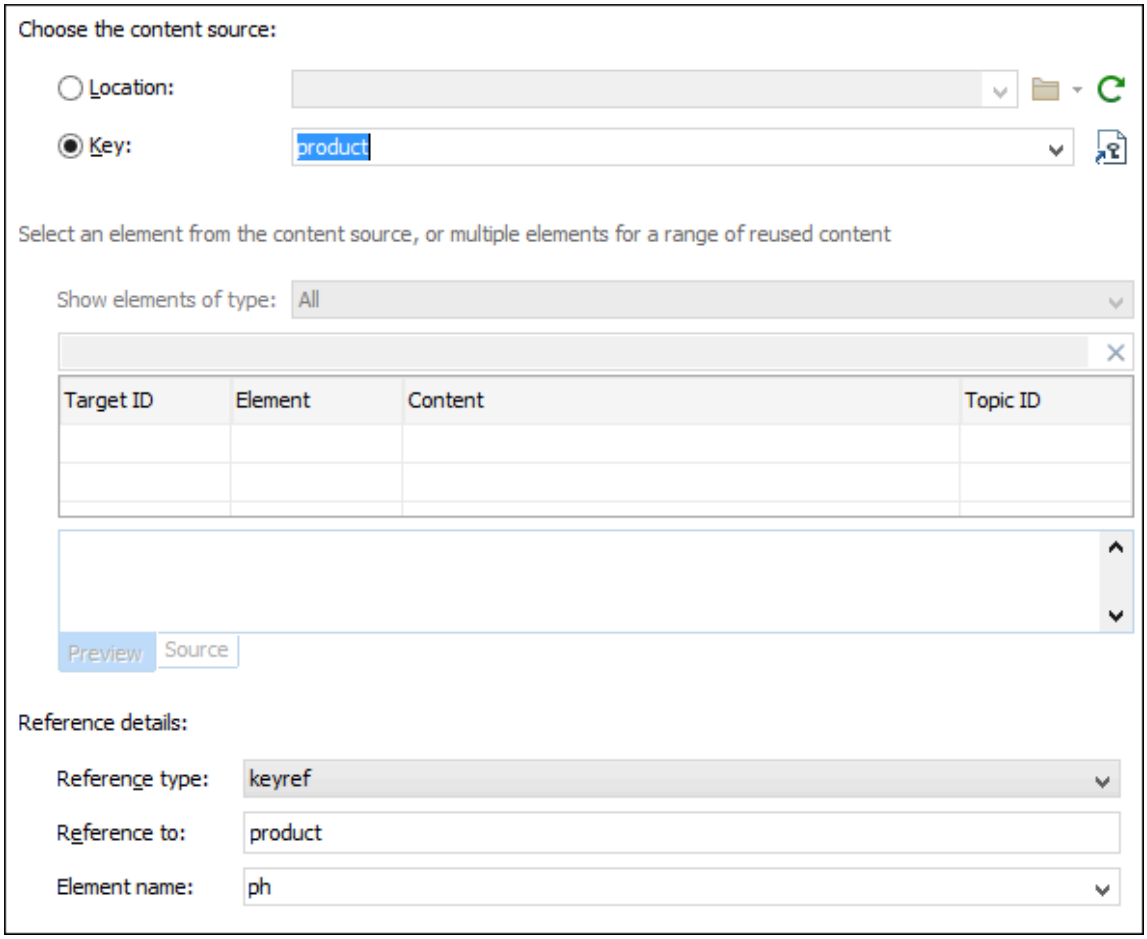
You can select this option to define a `@conref` attribute to be used as a fallback to determine the content reference relationship if the specified *conkeyref* cannot be resolved.

Reference to range end (conrefend)

If you select multiple elements (of the same type) in the element table, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically fills this text field with the `@id` value of the last element in your selection. This value will be inserted as a `@conrefend` attribute, defining the end of the *conkeyref* range.

Key Reference to Metadata (`@keyref`) Options Using the Reuse Content Dialog Box

Figure 369. Insert Key Reference Options



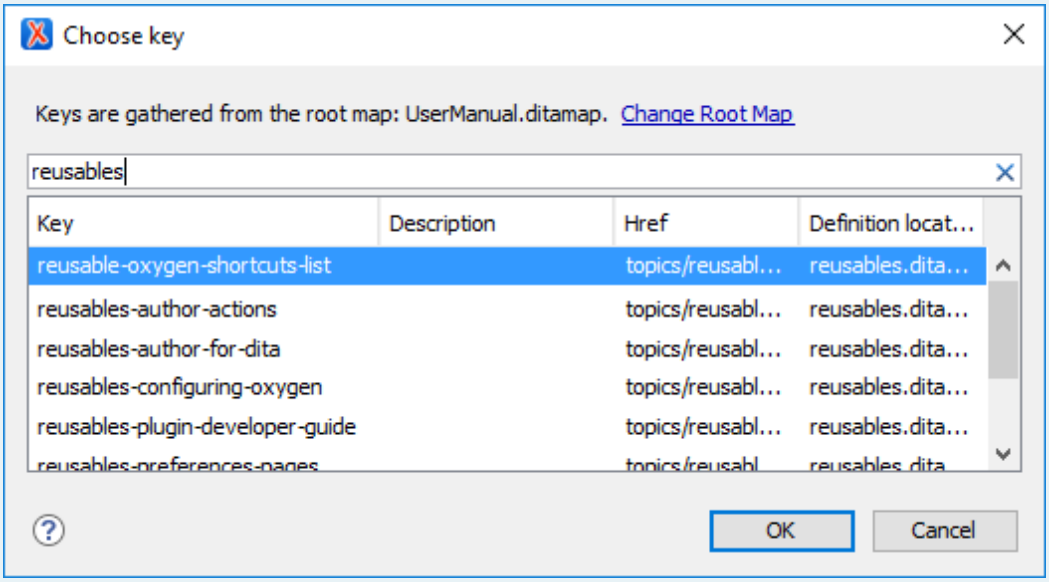
Choose the content source Section

When **Key** is selected for the content source, you can use keys to reference content. You can use the **Choose Key Reference** button to open the **Choose Key** dialog box that allows you to select one from a list of all the keys that are gathered from the *root map (on page 2234)* (you can also select one from the drop-down list in the **Key** field).

Note:
If the current *DITA map* is not selected as the *root map*, no keys will be listed.

Tip:
You can also use the **DITA Reusable Components** view *(on page 2051)* for similar purposes.

Figure 370. Choose Key Dialog Box



The **Choose Key** dialog box includes the following:

- **Change Root Map** - Opens a small dialog box that allows you to select a *root map (on page 1897)*.
- **Search Filter** - You can enter text in the filter field at the top of the dialog box to filter the list and search for a specific key.
- **Sortable Columns** - The dialog box includes the following columns that can be sorted by clicking on the heading:
  - **Key** - The name of the key (the value of the `@keys` attribute).
  - **Description** - The description of the key that is obtained from its definition. Keys that are defined with a text value in the `<navtitle>` or `<keyword>` element have that value listed in this column.
  - **Href** - Keys that are defined with a value in an *href* attribute have that href value listed in this column.
  - **Definition Location** - The name of the *DITA map (on page 2230)* where the key is defined.
- **Group by Definition Location** - A contextual menu action that can be used to group (and sort) all the keys based upon the value in the **Definition Location** column.

To insert a *key reference* to metadata (`@keyref`), select the key you want to reference. Keys that do not have a value in the **Href** column are for referencing metadata with a `@keyref` attribute. Therefore, to insert a `@keyref`, you need to select a key that does not have a value (file path) in the **Href** column.

After you select a key, click **OK** to return to the **Reuse Content** dialog box.

When a key that references metadata has been selected, the **Reuse Content** dialog box offers the following additional options for inserting a `@keyref`:

Select an element from the content source Section

This section is not used when referencing metadata.

Reference details Section

Reference type

The type of reference that will be inserted. If you selected a key that does not reference a DITA resource, you will notice that **keyref** value is automatically selected.

Reference to

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically fills this text field with the value of the `@keyref` attribute to be inserted.

Element name

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically selects the element that is most commonly used for the selected type of key reference, but you can use the drop-down list to choose another element to use for the reference.

Finalizing Your Content Reference Configuration

Once you click **Insert** or **Insert and close**, the configured content reference is inserted into your document.

Tip:
You can easily insert multiple content references by keeping the **Reuse Content** dialog box opened, using the **Insert** button.

Related Information:
DITA Reusable Components View *(on page 2051)*
Working with Content References *(on page 2025)*

Working with Code References

Code References

The DITA `<coderef>` element can be used to reference an external file that contains literal code. This is especially useful if you need to reference code from an external source that may occasionally change. Another advantage is that you don't have to convert illegal characters into their character equivalents. When the `<coderef>` is processed, the referenced code file is imported and delimiting characters (such as `<` or `&`) are displayed as standard text, rather than treated as XML markup.

For more information about code references, see DITA 1.3 Specification: Coderef.

Example of using a Coderef

```
<p>This code is an example of how to use a coderef.</p>

  <codeblock><coderef href="MyExternalCode.xsl"/></codeblock>
```

Defining Line Ranges

DITA-OT provides additional code reference processing support that allows you to define line ranges in case you only want to reference certain parts of the external file, rather than the whole file.

For information and examples of how to define line ranges, see DITA Open Toolkit Documentation: Extended Code Reference Processing.

Working with the Conref Push Mechanism

Content Reference Push Mechanism

The usual method of using content references pulls element content from a source element and inserts it in the current topic. DITA 1.2 introduced an alternative method of content referencing, allowing element content to be pushed, or injected, from a source topic to another topic without any special coding in the topic where the content will be re-used. This technique is known as a content reference *push* mechanism (*conref push*).

The *conref push* mechanism requires elements in the target topic (the topic where the content is to be pushed) to have ID elements, as the push mechanism inserts elements *before* or *after* a named element, or *replaces* the named element. Assuming the source topic is included in the *DITA map (on page 2230)*, the *conref push* will be processed during the publishing stage for the *DITA map*.

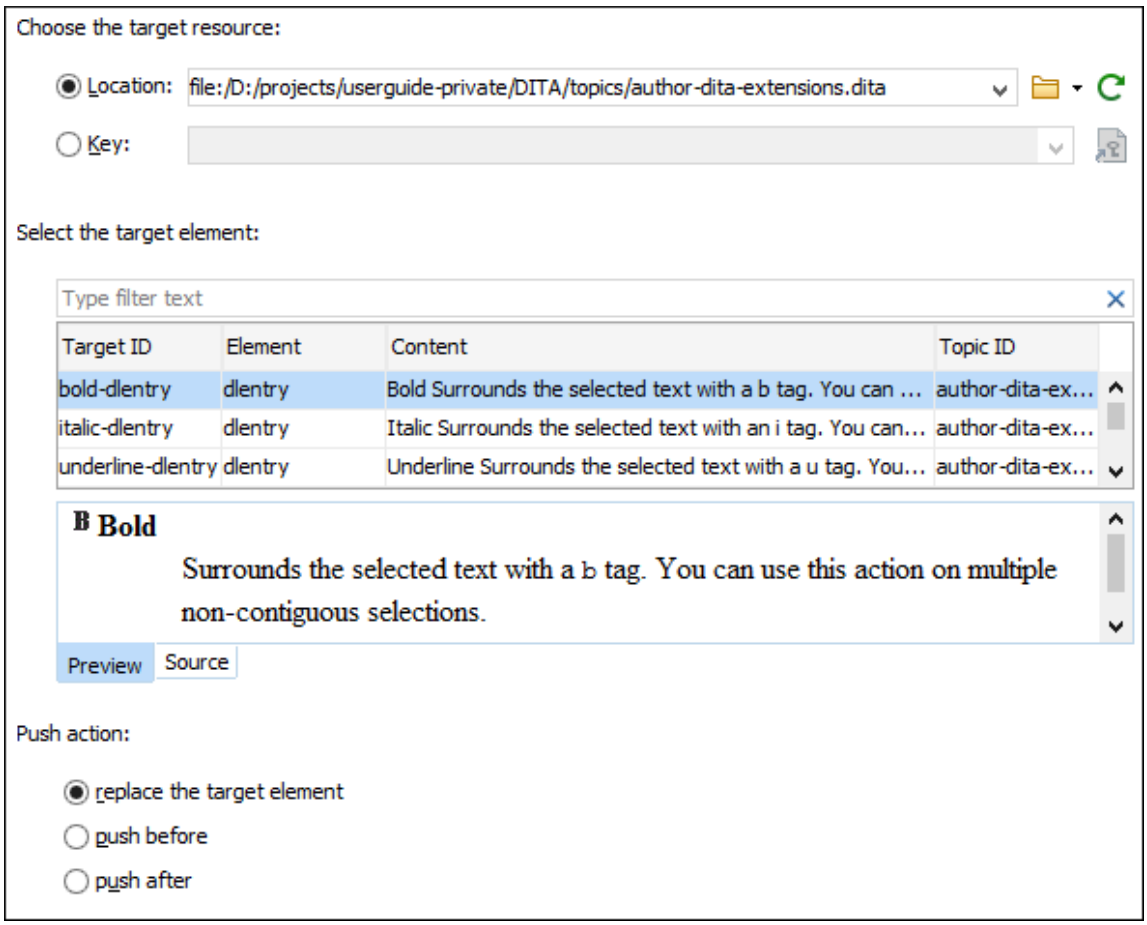
Example of a Conref Push Scenario

An example of a scenario where a *conref push* would be useful is where a car manufacturer produces driver manuals that are distributed to various regions with their own specific regulations and certain sections need to be customized by the local car dealers before publishing. The local dealer could use a *conref push* technique to insert specific content without modifying the manufacturer-supplied content.

Push Current Element Action

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an action that allows you to easily reference content with a *conref push* mechanism. The **Push Current Element** action is available in the **DITA** menu and in the **Reuse** subfolder of the contextual menu when editing in **Author** mode. Selecting this action opens the **Push current element** dialog box that allows you to select a target resource and element, and where to insert the current element content.

Figure 371. Push Current Element Dialog Box



This dialog box allows you to configure the following options for the *conref push* action:

Choose the target resource

Allows you to select a **Location** URL or a **Key** for the target resource and the table in the next section of the dialog box will be populated using the information from the specified resource.

Select the target element

The table in this section contains the available elements (identified by their ID) that can be replaced by, or pushed before/after, the current element, according to the push action.

Push action

Allows you to choose one of the following options for where you want to insert the current element content:

replace the target element

The target element will be replaced with the current element content.

On the technical side, the value of the `@conaction` attribute in the current element will be set to `push replace` and the `@conref` or `@conkeyref` attribute will be set to the specified reference.

push before

The current element content will be inserted before the specified target element in the target resource.

On the technical side, the value of the `@conaction` attribute in the current element will be set to `pushbefore`. Another element with the same name and class as the target element will be inserted in the document after the current element. The new element will have the `@conaction` attribute set to `mark` and the `@conref` or `@conkeyref` attribute will be set to the specified reference.

push after

The current element content will be inserted after the specified target element in the target resource.

On the technical side, the value of the `@conaction` attribute in the current element will be set to `pushafter`. Another element with the same name and class as the target element will be inserted in the document before the current element. The new element will have the `@conaction` attribute set to `mark` and the `@conref` or `@conkeyref` attribute will be set to the specified reference.

You can also use the **Preview** panel to view the content that will be pushed and the **Source** panel to see the XML code for the content to be pushed. After you click **OK**, the *conref push* mechanism is inserted in the current document. The changes in the target resource will be processed when you transform the *DITA map*.

Resources

For more information about the conref push mechanism and other advanced DITA profiling concepts, watch our Webinar: **Working with DITA in Oxygen - Advanced Profiling and Reuse Strategies**.

Related information

The DITA Style Guide Best Practices for Authors: The Conref Push Technique

Doctales - Content Reference Push

Working with Reusable Components

In DITA, the content of almost any element can be made reusable simply by adding an `@id` attribute to the element. The DITA content reference mechanism can reuse any element with an *ID*. However, it is not considered best practice to arbitrarily reuse pieces of text from random topics due to the difficulties this creates in trying to manage it. It also creates the possibility of authors deleting or changing content that is reused in other topics without being aware that the content is reused.

To prevent these types of problems, you can create reusable components to manage a separate set of topics that contain topics designed specifically for reuse. Then, all of your reusable content can be referenced from the reusable components and if the content needs to be updated you only need to edit it in one place.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to select content in a topic, create a reusable component from it and reference that component in other locations by using the **Create Reusable Component** *(on page 2045)* and **Insert Reusable Component** *(on page 2046)* actions.

Related Information:
DITA Reusable Components View *(on page 2051)*

Creating a Reusable Content Component

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin makes it easy to create a reusable component from existing topic content.

Note:
To ensure that the topic file that contains the reusable component is a valid container for the reusable content component, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin attempts to use the same schema information in the current topic for the file that contains the reused component. If it cannot create a valid instance of the reused content file with this approach, the application creates a specialized topic type automatically. This specialization is designed to make sure that the content is compatible with the topic type that it is created from. You can make changes to the configuration file (`OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\frameworks\dita\reuse\reuse_configuration.properties`) or override it from a framework extension to control if the created reusable component file should be based on the currently edited topic or it should be an automatically created DITA specialization topic.

Follow these steps to create a reusable component:

1. In **Author** mode, select the content you want to make into a reusable component (or place the cursor inside an element you want to reuse).
2. Select the **Create Reusable Component** action that is available in the **DITA** menu or the **Reuse** submenu of the contextual menu.
   The **Create Reusable Component** dialog box is displayed.
3. Use the **Reuse Content** drop-down list to select the scope of the content to be made reusable. It allows you to select how much of the current content you want to make reusable. The choices presented include the element at the current cursor position and its ancestor elements.
4. Add a description. This is used as a description for the reusable component, but is not part of the reused content. It is just to help you identify the reusable content and will not become part of your output.
5. If the **Replace selection with content reference** option is selected, the selection in the current topic will be replaced with a content reference (`@conref`) that points to the new reusable component. If multiple

elements are selected (for example, multiple steps or list items), the selection is replaced with a content reference range (`@conref` and `@conrefend`).

6. Select a file name and location to save the topic containing the reusable component and click **Save**. It is considered best practice to save or store reusable components in an area set aside for that purpose.

A file is created that contains **one** reusable component. You can reference the reused content in other topics by using a content reference *(on page 2026)* or content key reference *(on page 2028)*. Also, if the **Replace selection with content reference** option was selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin replaces the selected content with a content reference that will be displayed in your current topic with a gray background and it can only be edited in the source file (the new reusable component). To edit the source file, click the **Edit Content** icon at the beginning of the content reference.

Inserting a Reusable Content Component

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an **Insert Reusable Content** action that allows you to easily insert a reusable content component that you created using the **Create Reusable Component** action *(on page 2045)*.

CAUTION:
This action is only designed to insert reusable components created using the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Create Reusable Component** action. It assumes certain things about the structure of the reusable content file that may not be true of reusable content created by other methods and it may not provide the expected results if used with content that does not have the same structure.

The **Insert Reusable Content** action creates a DITA `@conref` to insert the content, and creates a parent element for the `@conref` attribute based on the type of the reusable element in the reusable component file. This action ensures that the correct element is used to create the `@conref`. However, that element must still be inserted at a point in the current topic where that element type is permitted.

To insert a reusable component that was created using the **Create Reusable Component** action, follow these steps:

1. Place the cursor at the insertion point where you want the reusable component to be inserted.
2. Select the **Insert Reusable Component** action that is available in the **DITA** menu or the **Reuse** submenu of the contextual menu.
   The **Insert Reusable Component** dialog box is displayed.
3. Locate the reusable content file that you want to insert its content.
4. If you select **Content reference** in the **Insert as** drop-down list, the action will add a `@conref` attribute to the DITA element at the current location. If you select **Copy** in the drop-down list, the content of the

reusable component file will simply be pasted at the current location (assuming the content is valid at the current location).

5. Click **Insert** to perform the action.

Working with Variable Text in DITA

You may often find that you want a certain piece of text in a topic to have a different value in various circumstances. For example, if you are reusing a topic about a feature that is shared between several products, you might want to make the name of the product a variable so that the correct product name is used in the manual for each product.

For example, you might have a sentence like this:

```
The quick-heat feature allows [product-name] to come up to temperature quickly.
```

You need a way to substitute the correct product name for each product.

One way to do this would be to use conditional profiling to provide conditional values using the `@product` profiling attribute, as in the following example:

```
<p>The quick-heat feature allows
    <ph product="basic">Basic Widget</ph>
    <ph product="pro">Pro Widget</ph>
to come up to temperature quickly.</p>
```

However, this approach means that you are repeating the product names over and over again everywhere the product name is mentioned. This is time consuming for authors and will create a maintenance problem if the product names change.

The alternative is to use a key reference, as in the following example:

```
<p>The quick-heat feature allows <ph keyref="product"/>
   to come up to temperature quickly.</p>
```

The definition of the key reference determines the name of the product:

```
<keydef keys="product" product="basic">
    <topicmeta>
      <keywords>
        <keyword>Basic Widget</keyword>
      </keywords>
    </topicmeta>
  </keydef>
  <keydef keys="product" product="pro">
    <topicmeta>
      <keywords>
        <keyword>Pro Widget</keyword>
```

```
    </keywords>
  </topicmeta>
</keydef>
```

When the content is published, the value defined in the *product* key will be inserted for each product.

Inserting a Keyref

To insert a defined key reference *(on page 1914)* into a document in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin **Author** mode, use one of the following methods (the method you choose simply depends on which Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin feature you prefer):

- **DITA Reusable Components View Method**

  Use the **DITA Reusable Components** view *(on page 2051)* to insert a *variable reference* to the defined key *(on page 1914)*. For example, in the **Keys** tab, find a key defined as a variable and double-click it. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will insert the variable as a `<ph>` element with a `@keyref` attribute that references the specified key

- **Code Template Method**

  Add the source code pattern of the defined key *(on page 1914)* to a code template *(on page 115)* so that it appears in the list of proposals in the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*. For example, the code pattern could be something like `<ph keyref="product">` for defined *product* key.

- **Reuse Content Dialog Box Method**

  Use the **Reuse Content** action on the main toolbar to open the **Reuse Content** dialog box *(on page 2033)*. Use the **Key** option to select a key that is defined as a variable (key reference to metadata) *(on page 2039)* and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will insert the variable as a `<ph>` element with a `@keyref` attribute that references the specified key.

- **Manual Method**

  Manually insert the `@keyref` attribute using the attributes editor as follows:
  1. Press **Enter** and select a DITA element (for example, `<ph>`) that supports the `@keyref` attribute.
  2. Select **Edit Attributes** from the contextual menu to bring up the attributes editor *(on page 383)*.
  3. In the **Name** field, select **keyref**.
  4. In the **Value** field, select or enter the name of the defined key *(on page 1914)*.

Related Information:

DITA Reusable Components View *(on page 2051)*

Defining Keys in DITA Maps *(on page 1914)*

Doctales - Key Reference (keyref)

Working with DITA 1.3 Key Scopes

DITA 1.3 includes the possibility of using a concept called *Key Scopes* (or scoped keys). It allows you to reuse a topic in multiple places within the same *DITA map (on page 2230)*, but with slightly different content in each instance.

Key Scopes Use-Case

Suppose that you develop a software product and you have a topic in your user guide that explains how to install your product on a Windows operating system. Suppose that the steps are exactly the same for installing it on Linux and the only difference is the name of the operating system. Therefore, it would be helpful if you could reuse the exact same content in two different topics, but with the name of the operating system different in each instance. In DITA 1.2, this is not possible since keys can only be resolved to a single value. However, with the DITA 1.3 *Key Scopes* mechanism, you can define multiple values for the same key depending on the context.

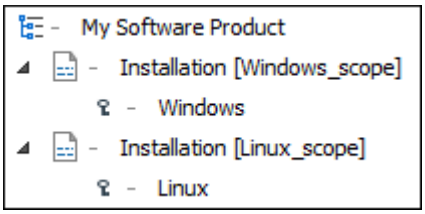
How to Use Key Scopes in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

To use DITA 1.3 key scopes in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, follow these steps:

1. Define the keys *(on page 2016)* to be used in multiple places within your *DITA map*.
2. For each particular topic that contains the keys, define the key scopes:
    a. Right-click the topic in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* and select **Edit properties**.
    b. In the **Keys** tab *(on page 1919)*, enter a value (or multiple values) in the **Key scopes** field.
    c. Click **OK** to save your changes.
3. Save the *DITA map*.

Result: In the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, you can now see the key scopes in brackets and when you open each topic reference.

Figure 372. Key Scopes in DITA Maps Manager



The content will also be expanded in **Author** mode according to the context of the key scope you defined for that particular topic. Also, when you transform the *DITA map*, the scoped keys will be reflected in the published content.

Resources

- You can find a more detailed example and download samples for reuse possibilities based on key scopes in the *DITA 1.3 Key Scopes - Next Generation of Reuse* blog post.
- You can also watch our DITA 1.3 video tutorial to see how key scopes can be used in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
- For more information about key scopes and other advanced DITA reuse concepts, watch our Webinar: **Working with DITA in Oxygen - Advanced Profiling and Reuse Strategies**.

Related information

Working with DITA 1.3 Branch Filtering *(on page 2050)*

Oxygen XML Blog: DITA 1.3 Key Scopes - Next Generation of Reuse

Oxygen Video Tutorial: DITA 1.3 (Key Scopes, Branch Filtering)

Doctales - Key Scopes

Working with DITA 1.3 Branch Filtering

DITA 1.3 allows you to use a mechanism called *Branch Filtering* that enables you to set filtering conditions for specific branches of a *DITA map (on page 2230)*. This makes it possible for multiple conditional profiles to be applied within a single publication, each time with a different filter.

Branch Filtering Use-Case

Suppose that you sell two models of a mobile phone and you need to create a brochure for each model. You want both brochures to have the same structure and most of the content is the same for both brochures. The only differences are in the values for certain details (for example, the model name, size dimensions, battery life, etc.) Therefore, it would be helpful if you could use the same topic and reference it twice in the same map, with each reference using different filtering conditions. In DITA 1.2, this is not possible since you can only apply one DITAVAL filter to a map. However, with the DITA 1.3 *Branch Filtering* mechanism, you can reuse content multiple times within the same map, each time using different filters.

How to Use Branch Filtering in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

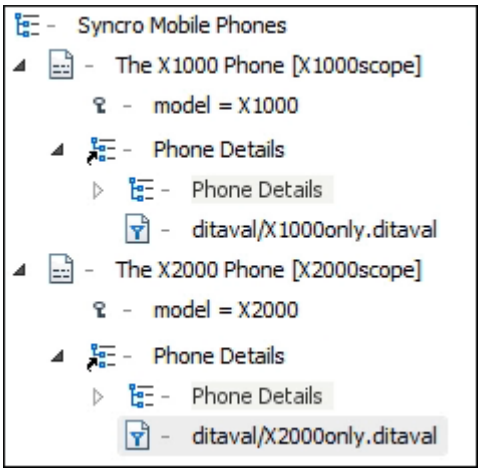
To use DITA 1.3 branch filtering in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, follow these steps:

1. The support for DITA 1.3 must be enabled in the DITA preferences page *(on page 75)*.
2. Assuming you have already defined your profiling attributes *(on page 420)*, create a DITAVAL filter file *(on page 2149)*.
3. Insert a reference to the DITAVAL filter file in the *DITA map*:
    a. Right-click the *DITA map* reference in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* and select **Append Child > DITAVAL Reference**.
    b. Select the DITAVAL file.
    c. Click **Insert and Close**.

4. Save the *DITA map*.

   Result: You can now see the **ditaval** files referenced in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* and when you transform the *DITA map*, filtered content will be reflected in the published output.

   Figure 373. Branch Filtering in DITA Maps Manager



Resources

- You can find a more detailed example and download samples for reuse possibilities based on key scopes in the *DITA 1.3 Branch Filtering - Next Generation of Reuse* blog post.
- You can also watch our DITA 1.3 video tutorial to see how branch filtering can be used in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
- For more information about branch filtering and other advanced DITA reuse concepts, watch our Webinar: **Working with DITA in Oxygen - Advanced Profiling and Reuse Strategies**.

Related information

Working with DITA 1.3 Key Scopes *(on page 2049)*

Oxygen XML Blog: DITA 1.3 Branch Filtering - Next Generation of Reuse

Oxygen Video Tutorial: DITA 1.3 (Key Scopes, Branch Filtering)

DITA Reusable Components View

The **DITA Reusable Components** view is helpful if you use a large number of keys or reusable components in your DITA project. It collects all of the keys and reusable components that are defined in the *root map (on page 2234)* and presents them in a side view where you can easily locate and insert references to them. It recollects the keys anytime the *root map* is changed *(on page 1897)* or you switch the editor focus to a different file.

If the view is not displayed, it can be opened by selecting it from **Window > Show View > Other**. By default, it appears in the bottom-right section of the editor.

It includes the following tabs:

- **Keys** *(on page 2052)* - Displays all the *keys* that are defined in the *root map (on page 2234)* and provides ways to easily insert references to them as cross reference links, key references, or variables. It includes a search field, some filtering and sorting options to help you find particular keys, and some contextual menu actions. It also supports drag and drop actions and double-clicking a key is the fastest way to insert a reference.

  > **Note:**
  > If the keys are gathered from peer DITA maps (used in cross publication references), the keys that define variables are not presented.

- **Components** *(on page 2056)* - Displays all the *reusable components* found in the *root map (on page 2234)* and provides ways to easily insert them as content references or content key references. To determine which components to display in this tab, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin looks for any *topicref* in the *root map (on page 2234)* that is marked as *resource-only* and then looks for elements with an assigned `@id` attribute value. This tab includes a search field, some filtering options, and some simple links and contextual menu actions to quickly insert references or open their source file. It also supports drag and drop and double-clicking actions.

Keys Tab

The **DITA Reusable Components** view collects all the *keys* that are defined in the current *root map (on page 2234)* and displays them in the **Keys** tab. This tab has two view modes. The default *tiles* style view mode and a *table* style view mode.

Tiles Mode

The default *tiles* mode displays the keys as blocks (cards). The advantage of this display mode is that more information about each particular key can be seen even when the view is sized with a small width. Each block (card) displays the name of the key (the value of the `@keys` attribute), followed by its description and/or `@href` value, then followed by the name of the DITA map file where the key is defined.

Figure 374. DITA Reusable Components View - Keys Tab (Default tiles mode)

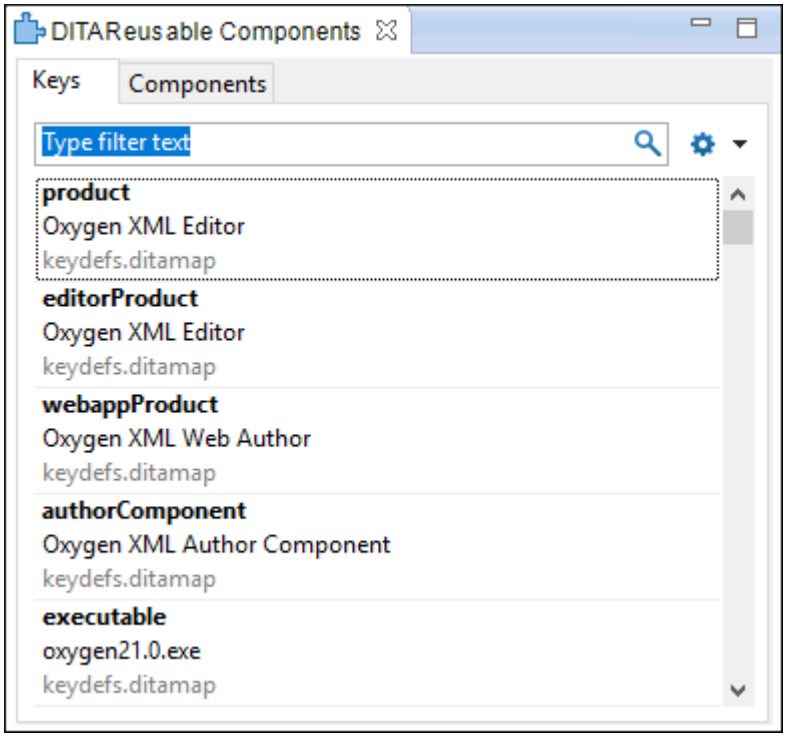
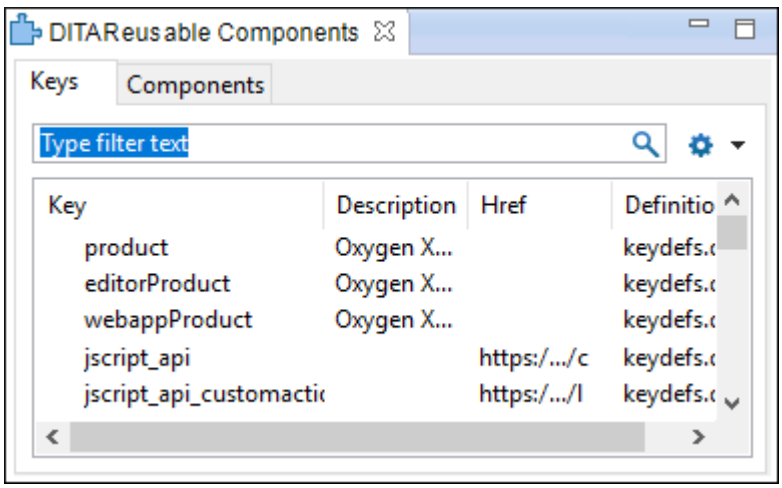


Table Mode

You can switch to a *table* style display mode by selecting the **Table mode** toggle action from the **Settings** menu. The advantage of this display mode is that more keys can be listed at once. In this mode, keys that are defined with a text value in the `<navtitle>` or `<keyword>` element have that value listed in the **Description** column, while keys that are defined with a value in an `@href` attribute have that href value listed in the **Href** column.

Figure 375. DITA Reusable Components View - Keys Tab (Table mode)



Both display modes in the **Keys** tab include a variety of features and options:

Search Filter

You can enter text in the filter field at the top of this tab to filter the list and search for specific keys.

Sorting

Tiles Mode: In the default *tiles* display mode, to sort the keys alphabetically in ascending order, select **Sort by key name** from the **Settings** menu.

Table Mode: In the *table* display mode, the following columns can be sorted by clicking the heading:

- **Key** - The name of the key (the value of the `@keys` attribute).
- **Description** - The description of the key that is obtained from its definition. Keys that are defined with a text value in the `<navtitle>` or `<keyword>` element have that value listed in this column.
- **Href** - Keys that are defined with a value in an `@href` attribute have that href value listed in this column.
- **Definition Location** - The name of the *DITA map (on page 2230)* where the key is defined.

Double-Click Mechanism

You can double-click any key listed in this tab to insert a key reference at the current cursor position or surrounding the current selection.

- If the selected key points to an `@href` value, it is inserted as a cross reference link (*xref*) *(on page 2061)*.
- If the selected key is a reference to an image, it is inserted as an `<image>` element.
- If the selected key does not have an associated `@href`, it is inserted as a variable reference (*ph*) *(on page 2047)*.

Drag and Drop Mechanism

You can drag a key from this tab and drop it in the main editor to insert a key reference at the current cursor position.

- If the selected key points to an `@href` value, it is inserted as a cross reference link (*xref*) *(on page 2061)*.
- If the selected key is a reference to an image, it is inserted as an `<image>` element.
- If the selected key does not have an associated `@href`, it is inserted as a variable reference (*ph*) *(on page 2047)*.

Contextual Menu Actions

Insert as Link

Inserts a cross reference link (*xref*) *(on page 2061)* to the selected key at the current cursor position or surrounding the current selection.

Insert as Variable

Inserts a variable reference (*ph*) *(on page 2047)* to the selected key at the current cursor position or surrounding the current selection. However, if the selected key is a reference to an image, this action inserts the key reference in an `<image>` element.

Insert as Keyref

Presents a submenu with all the elements that can be inserted at the current cursor position. Selecting an element will insert that element at the current cursor position or surrounding the current selection with a `@keyref` attribute and its value set to the selected key.

Insert as Figure

Available if the selection is an image, it inserts the image inside a figure element (`<fig>`). Note that the `<title>` element of the inserted figure will be empty.

Rename Key

Opens a refactoring wizard *(on page 590)* where you can easily rename the key and define the scope of the operation. It also updates all references to it.

Notes:

- This action does not work on DITA 1.3 key scopes.
- This action is only available if the DITA map opened in the **DITA Maps Manager** is also selected as the **Root map**.

Go to Definition

Opens the DITA map where the key is defined.

Search References

Searches for all references to the selected key in the entire DITA map structure.

Group by Definition Location (Available in Table mode only)

A toggle action that can be used to group (and sort) all the keys based on the value in the **Definition Location** column.

Settings Menu

This menu includes the following options:

Filtering Options

- **Show all** - Shows all defined keys found in the current *root map (on page 2234)*.
- **Show only variables** - Filters the keys to show only those defined as variable references *(on page 2047)*.

- **Show only maps and topics** - Filters the keys to show only those that reference DITA maps or topics.
- **Show only multimedia resources** - Filters the keys to show only those that reference multimedia resources (such as images).
- **Show only external resources** - Filters the keys to show only those that reference external resources (such as web links).

Sort by key name (Available in Tiles mode only)

Sorts the keys alphabetically in ascending order.

Table mode

A toggle action that switches between the *table* and *tiles* display modes.

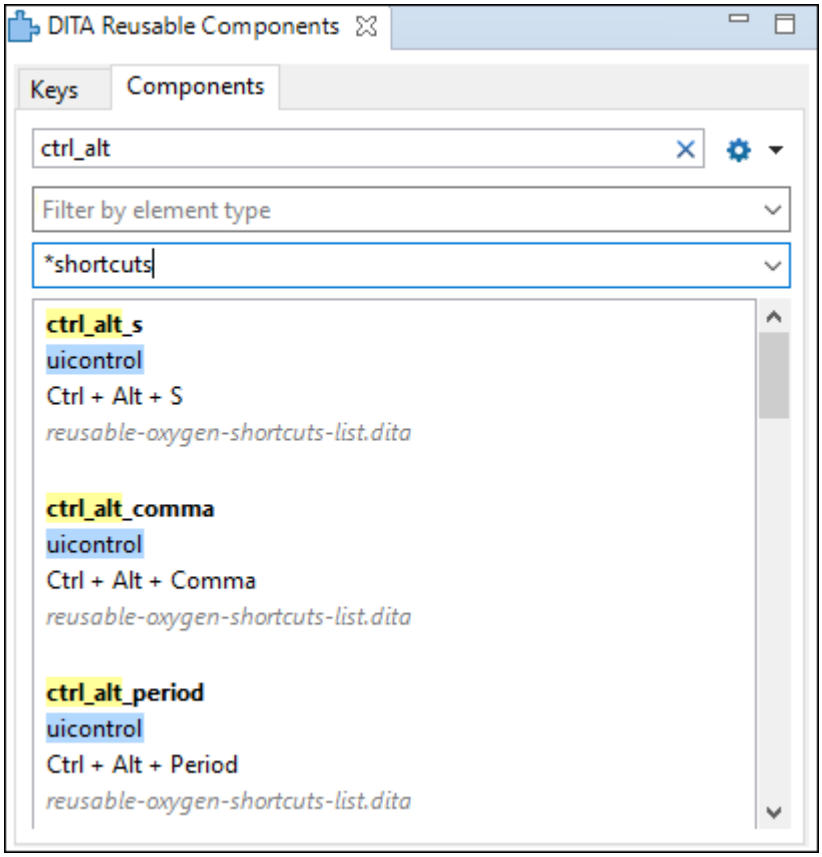
Components Tab

The **DITA Reusable Components** view collects all the topics from the current *root map (on page 2234)* that are marked as *resource-only*, then collects the reusable components from those topics, and displays them in the **Components** tab. To set a topic as *resource-only*, the `<topicref>` in the DITA map file must have a `@processing-role` attribute set like this:

```
<topicref href="topics/randomize-xml-content.dita" processing-role="resource-only"/>
```

The **DITA Reusable Components** view considers topic references that contain `processing-role="resource-only"` to be candidates to contain reusable components. The reusable components inside these topics are collected from all elements that have an *ID* specified. These reusable components are displayed in the **Components** tab along with the file name and the specific names of the elements that contain an *ID* attribute.

Figure 376. DITA Reusable Components View - Components Tab



The **Components** tab includes the following features and options:

Search Filter

You can enter text in the filter field at the top of this tab to filter the list and search for specific content inside the list of reusable components. This field supports many of the Lucene-based search patterns, such as wildcards (`*` or `?`), boolean operators (`AND`, `OR`, `NOT`), fuzzy searches (`~`), boosting searches (`^`), and more.

Settings Menu

This menu includes the following options:

Compact Mode

You can use this toggle action to switch the display for the **Components** tab to a compact visualization mode. When switched to **Compact mode**, fewer details are shown for each component, but more components are displayed in the view.

Reindex

You can use this action force a re-indexing of the reusable components.

Show Elements of Type

You can use this drop-down list to select specific types of elements to be displayed in the list of components. This can help you narrow down the list of possible source elements that you can select.

Source File(s)

You can use this combo box to search for specific source files (the topics that contain reusable components) or select a file from its drop-down list. You can also use wildcards (such as `*` or `?`) in this field.

Double-Click Mechanism

You can double-click any reusable component listed in preview window in this tab to insert it as a content reference or content key reference at the current cursor position or replace the current selection.

- If the parent topic of the selected component has a key defined, it is inserted as a content key reference (*conkeyref*) *(on page 2028)*.
- If the parent topic of the selected component does not have a key defined, it is inserted as a content reference (*conref*) *(on page 2026)*.

Drag and Drop Mechanism

You can drag a reusable component from the preview window in this tab and drop it in the main editor to insert a content reference or content key reference at the current cursor position.

- If the parent topic of the selected component has a key defined, it is inserted as a content key reference (*conkeyref*) *(on page 2028)*.
- If the parent topic of the selected component does not have a key defined, it is inserted as a content reference (*conref*) *(on page 2026)*.

Hover and Click Actions

If you hover over a component shown in the preview window, you have access to the following link actions:

Insert

Inserts the component as a content reference or content key reference at the current cursor position or replaces the current selection. If the parent topic has a key defined, it is inserted as a content key reference (*conkeyref*) *(on page 2028)*. Otherwise, it is inserted as a content reference (*conref*) *(on page 2026)*.

Open

Opens the source file that contains the reusable component.

Contextual Menu Actions

Insert Content Reference

Inserts the component as a content reference (*conref*) *(on page 2026)* at the current cursor position or replaces the current selection.

Insert Content Key Reference

Inserts the component as a content key reference (*conkeyref*) *(on page 2028)* at the current cursor position or replaces the current selection. This action is only available if the parent topic has a key defined.

Go to Definition

Opens the source file that contains the reusable component.

Search References

Searches for all references to the selected component in the entire *DITA map (on page 2230)* structure.

Related information

Working with Reusable Components *(on page 2044)*
Linking in DITA Topics *(on page 2061)*
Working with Variable Text in DITA *(on page 2047)*
Working with Keys in DITA *(on page 2016)*
Creating a DITA Content Reference *(on page 2026)*
Creating a DITA Content Key Reference *(on page 2028)*
Working with Content References *(on page 2025)*
Short Video Clip: Learn DITA Editing with Oxygen - Add a Content Reference Using the DITA Reusable Components View

Linking in DITA

DITA provides support for various types of linking between topics, some of which is automated, while others are specified by the author. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides support for all forms of linking in DITA.

Linking Between Parent, Child, and Sibling Topics

A *DITA map (on page 2230)* creates a hierarchical relationship between topics. That relationship map expresses a narrative flow from one topic to another, or it may be used as a classification system to help the reader find topics based on their classification, without creating a narrative flow. Since there may be various types of relationships between topics in a hierarchy, you may want to create links between topics in a variety of ways. For instance, if your topics are supposed to be organized into a narrative flow, you may want to have links to the next and previous topics in that flow. If your topics are part of a hierarchical classification, you may want links from parent to child topics, and vice versa, but not to the next and previous topics.

Parent, child, and sibling links are created automatically by the DITA output transformations (and may differ between various output formats). The kinds of links that are created are determined by the DITA *collection-type* attribute *(on page 1921)*.

In-Line Linking in the Content of a Topic

DITA supports linking within the text of a topic using the `<xref>` element. The destination of the link can be expressed directly using the `@href` attribute or indirectly using the `@keyref` attribute. If you use the `@keyref`

attribute, you link to a key rather than directly to a topic. That key is then assigned to a topic in a map that includes that topic. This means that you can change the destination that a key points to by editing the key definition in the map or by substituting another map in the build.

Linking Between Related Topics

In addition to the relationships between topics that expressed by their place in the hierarchy of a map, a topic may be related to other topics in various ways. For instance, a task topic may be related to a concept topic that gives the background of the task, or to a reference topic that provides data needed to complete the task. Task topics may also be related to other tasks in a related area, or concepts to related concepts.

Typically, they are grouped in a list at the end of the topic, although this depends on the behavior of the output transformation. DITA provides two mechanisms for expressing relationships between topics at the topic level: the **Related Links** section of a topic and relationship tables in maps. To add related links, select **Related Link to Topic**, **Related Link to File**, or **Related Link to Web Page** from the **Link** drop-down menu from the toolbar (or the **Link** submenu in the contextual menu or **DITA** menu).

Tip:
You can use the **Find Similar Topics** action (available in the contextual menu or **DITA** menu) to quickly find related topics that can be added as related links. It opens the **Open/Find Resource** view and performs a search using text content from the `<title>`, `<shortdesc>`, `<keyword>`, and `<indexterm>` elements.

Managing Links

Links can break for a variety of reasons. The topic that a link points to may be renamed or removed. A topic may be used in a map that does not include a linked topic. A topic or a key may not exist in a map when a particular profile is applied. The **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* provides a way to validate all the links in the documents that are included in the map *(on page 1926)*. This can include validating all the profiling conditions that are applied.

Related information
Short Video Clip: Learn DITA Editing with Oxygen - Various Ways to Insert Links

Hierarchical Linking in DITA Maps

To create hierarchical linking between the topics in a *DITA map (on page 2230)*, you set the appropriate value of the `@collection-type` attribute on the map. See the DITA documentation for the meaning of each of the values of the `@collection-type` attribute.

Note:
Publishing scripts determine when and how to create hierarchical links. The `@collection-type` attribute does not force a particular style of linking. Instead, it declares what the nature of the relationship is between the topics. The publishing scripts use that information to determine how to link topics.

Scripts for different types of media might make the determination depending on what is appropriate for the particular type of media. You can provide additional instructions to the scripts using the `@linking` attribute.

To add the `@collection-type` to an item in a map:

1. Right-click the topic and choose **Edit Properties**. The **Edit Properties** dialog box is displayed.
2. In the **Attributes** tab, select the appropriate value from the **Collection type** drop-down list.
3. You can use the **Other attributes** table to add a value to the `@linking` attribute.

Linking in DITA Topics

Direct Links

Inline links can be created DITA topics using the `<xref>` element. The destination of the link can be expressed directly by using the `@href` attribute and the target can be another topic or a specific element within the other topic, another location within the same topic, a file, or a web link. You can also create direct *related links* to topics, files, or websites in a DITA topic using the `<related-links>` element.

Indirect Links Using Keys

The destination of the link can also be expressed indirectly by using keys *(on page 2016)* to create either inline links or *related links* (with the `@keyref` attribute). By using keys, you avoid creating a direct dependency between topics. This makes links easier to manage and can make it easier to reuse topics in various publications. It can also be helpful in verifying the completeness of a publication, by ensuring that a publication map provides a key definition for every key reference used in the content.

Links based on keys require two pieces:

- Key Definition - Assigns a key to a topic so that other topics can link to it. For more information, see Defining Keys in DITA Maps *(on page 1914)*.
- Key Reference - Created in an `<xref>` element and specifies the key to link to.

The key reference points to a key definition, and the key definition points to a topic. Key definitions are created in maps, as an element on the `<topicref>` element that points to a topic. This allows you to assign a particular key to one topic in one map and to another topic in another map. When a topic that links to that key is used in each of these maps, the links work correctly in both maps.

Inserting a Link in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

To insert a link in **Author** mode *(on page 221)*, use the actions available in the **Link** drop-down menu from the toolbar (or the **Link** submenu in the contextual menu or **DITA** menu). You can choose between the following types of inline links:

Cross Reference

Opens the **Cross Reference (xref)** dialog box *(on page 2063)* that allows you to insert a cross reference link to a target DITA resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your DITA map structure. Once the target resource has been selected, you can also target specific elements within that resource. Depending on the context where it is invoked, the action inserts one of the following two elements:

- `<xref>` - Used to link to other topics or another location within the same topic and points to the target using the `@href` or `@keyref` attribute.
- `<fragref>` - A logical reference to a fragment element within a syntax diagram and points to the target using the `@href` or `@keyref` attribute.

File Reference

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert a link to a target non-DITA file resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. It inserts an `<xref>` element with either an `@href` attribute or a `@keyref` attribute. If you select **Location** for the target, the link is expressed in an `@href` attribute. If you select **Key** for the target, keys will be used to express the link in a `@keyref` attribute. You can select a key from the drop-down list or click the **Choose Key Reference** button to use the **Choose Key** dialog box *(on page 2064)*.

Web Link

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert a link to a target web-related resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be a URL or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. It inserts an `<xref>` element with either an `@href` attribute or a `@keyref` attribute. If you select **URL** for the target resource, the link is expressed in an `@href` attribute. If you select **Key** for the target, keys will be used to express the link in a `@keyref` attribute. You can select a key from the drop-down list or click the **Choose Key Reference** button to use the **Choose Key** dialog box *(on page 2064)*.

Related Link to Topic

Opens the **Cross Reference (xref)** dialog box *(on page 2063)* that allows you to insert a link to a target DITA resource in a related links section that is typically at the bottom of your topic (although this depends on the behavior of the output transformation). The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. Once the target resource has been selected, you can also target specific elements within that resource. If a related links section does not already exist, this action creates one. Specifically, it inserts a `<link>` element inside a *related-links* element.

Tip:
You can use the **Find Similar Topics** action (available in the contextual menu or **DITA** menu) to quickly find related topics that can be added as related links. It opens the

Open/Find Resource view and performs a search using text content from the `<title>`, `<shortdesc>`, `<keyword>`, and `<indexterm>` elements.

Related Link to File

Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert a link to a target non-DITA file resource in a related links section that is typically at the bottom of your topic (although this depends on the behavior of the output transformation). The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. If a related links section does not already exist, this action creates one. Specifically, it inserts a `<link>` element inside a *related-links* element. If you select **Location** for the target, the link is expressed in an `@href` attribute. If you select **Key** for the target, keys will be used to express the link in a `@keyref` attribute. You can select a key from the drop-down list or click the **Choose Key Reference** button to use the **Choose Key** dialog box *(on page 2064)*.

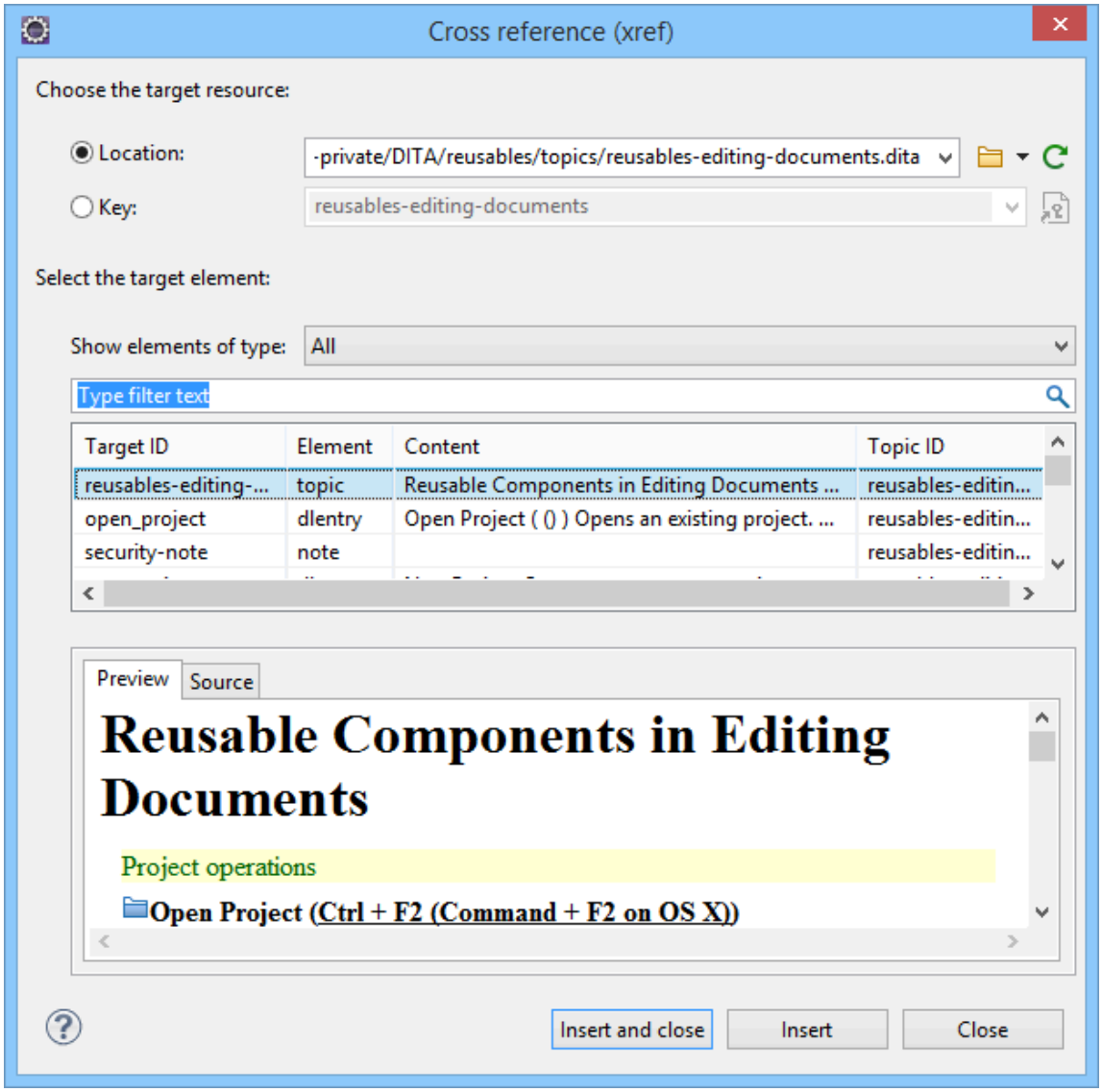
Related Link to Web Page

Opens the **Web Link** dialog box that allows you to insert a link to a target web-related resource in a related links section that is typically at the bottom of your topic (although this depends on the behavior of the output transformation). The target resource can be a URL or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. If a related links section does not already exist, this action creates one. Specifically, it inserts a `<link>` element inside a *related-links* element. If you select **URL** for the target resource, the link is expressed in an `@href` attribute. If you select **Key** for the target, keys will be used to express the link in a `@keyref` attribute. You can select a key from the drop-down list or click the **Choose Key Reference** button to use the **Choose Key** dialog box *(on page 2064)*.

Cross Reference (xref) Dialog Box

The **Cross Reference (xref)** dialog box is displayed when you insert a **Cross Reference** or **Related Link to Topic** (from the **Link** drop-down menu). It allows you to insert a link to a target resource at the current location within a document (for a **Cross Reference** link) or in a related links section (for a **Related Link to Topic**). The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your *DITA map* structure. Once the target resource has been selected, you can also target specific elements within that resource.

Figure 377. Cross Reference (xref) Dialog Box



This dialog box includes the following sections and fields:

Choose the Target Resource Section

Location

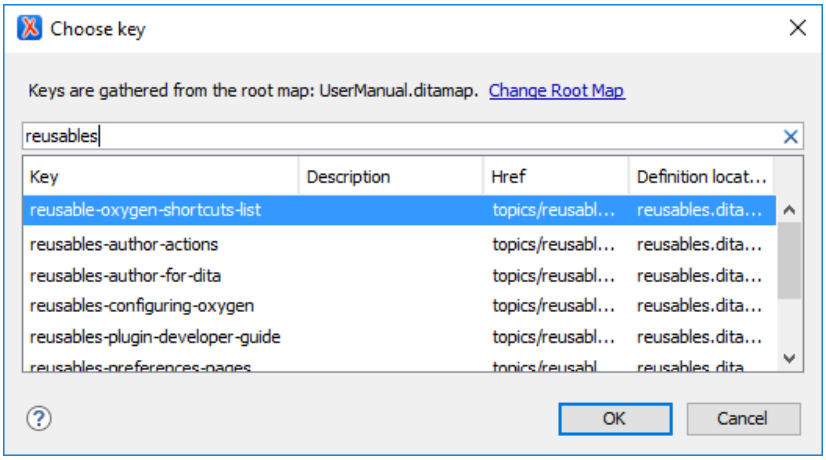
If you select **Location** for the target, the link is expressed in an `@href` attribute.

Key

If you select **Key** for the target, keys will be used to express the link in a `@keyref` attribute. You can use the **Choose Key Reference** button to open the **Choose Key** dialog box that allows you to select one from a list of all the keys that are gathered from the *root map (on page 2234)* (you can also select one from the drop-down list in the **Key** field).

Tip:
You can also use the **DITA Reusable Components** view *(on page 2051)* for similar purposes.

Figure 378. Choose Key Dialog Box



The **Choose Key** dialog box includes the following:

- **Change Root Map** - Opens a small dialog box that allows you to select a *root map (on page 1897)*.
- **Search Filter** - You can enter text in the filter field at the top of the dialog box to filter the list and search for specific keys.
- **Sortable Columns** - The dialog box includes the following columns that can be sorted by clicking on the heading:
  - **Key** - The name of the key (the value of the `@keys` attribute).
  - **Description** - The description of the key that is obtained from its definition. Keys that are defined with a text value in the `<navtitle>` or `<keyword>` element have that value listed in this column.
  - **Href** - Keys that are defined with a value in an `@href` attribute have that href value listed in this column.
  - **Definition Location** - The name of the *DITA map (on page 2230)* where the key is defined.
- **Group by Definition Location** - A contextual menu action that can be used to group (and sort) all the keys based upon the value in the **Definition Location** column.

Select the Target Element Section

This section can be used to target a specific element inside the target resource.

Show elements of type

You can use this drop-down list to select specific types of elements to be displayed in the subsequent table. This can help you narrow down the list of possible source elements that you can select.

Text Filter Field

You can also use the text filter field to narrow down the list of possible source elements to be displayed in the subsequent table.

Element Table

Presents all the element IDs defined in the source topic. Use this table to select the **Target ID** of the element that you want to reference.

Preview Pane

Displays the content that will be references.

Source Pane

Displays the XML source code of the element to be referenced.

Once you click **Insert** or **Insert and close**, the configured cross reference is inserted into your document.

Tip:
You can easily insert multiple cross references by keeping the dialog box opened, using the **Insert** button.

Using Copy/Paste or Drag/Drop Actions to Insert a Cross Reference

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes support for inserting cross reference links with simple copy/paste or drag/drop actions (additionally, you can insert them using the **Paste as Link** or **Paste as Link (keyref)** actions found in the **Paste Special** submenu from the contextual menu). The copied/dragged content must be an entire DITA XML element with an `@id` attribute or a `<topicref>`. Also, the location in the document where you paste or drop the link must be valid, although as long as the **Smart paste and drag and drop** option *(on page 146)* is selected in the **Schema-Aware** preferences page, if you try to paste it in an invalid location, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will attempt to place it in a valid location, and may prompt you with one or more choices for where to place it.

When the link is inserted, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically tries to populate certain attributes based on detected values. The `@format`, `@scope`, and `@type` attributes are populated if their corresponding options are selected in the **Inserting Links** section of the DITA Topics preferences page *(on page 80)*. Even if their corresponding options are not selected, the `@format` and `@scope` attributes are populated if their detected values are different than the default values.

Note:
For the sake of performance, the `@type` attribute is never automatically computed in the following cases:

- When using drag/drop or copy/paste actions from the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* or from the **Keys** tab of the **DITA Reusable Components** view *(on page 2051)*.
- When using the **Paste as Link** or **Paste as Link (keyref)** actions to paste a topic reference that was copied from the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* and its `<topicref>` elements do not have the `@type` attribute defined.

Typically, cross reference links are inserted with an `@href` attribute, but it is also possible to insert them with a `@keyref` attribute using the **Paste as Link (keyref)** contextual menu action or copy/paste or drag/drop actions. For the latter method, follow these steps :

1. In the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*, make sure that the **Context** combo box *(on page 1885)* points to the correct map that stores the keys.
2. Make sure the topic that contains the content you want to reference has a key assigned to it. To assign a key, right-click the topic with its parent map opened in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, select **Edit Properties**, and enter a value in the **Keys** field.
3. Copy an entire DITA element that has an ID attribute assigned to it from a topic with an assigned key, or a `<topicref>` from a *DITA map*.
4. Place the cursor at a location, where you want to insert the link.
5. Select the **Paste as Link (keyref)** action from the **Paste Special** submenu from the contextual menu.

Related information

Defining Keys in DITA Maps *(on page 1914)*
DITA Reusable Components View *(on page 2051)*
Short Video Clip: Learn DITA Editing with Oxygen - Various Ways to Insert Links

Linking with Relationship Tables in DITA

A relationship table is used to express relationships between topics outside of the topics themselves. The DITA publishing scripts can then create links between related topics when the content is published.

The reason for using a relationship table is to help make topics easier to reuse. If a topic links directly to another topic, this creates a dependency between the topics. If one topic is reused in a publication where the other is not used, the link is broken. By defining relationships between topics in a relationship table, you avoid creating this dependency.

To create an appropriate set of links between topics in multiple publications, you can create a separate relationship table for each publication. If you are creating multiple publications by applying profiling conditions to a single map, you can also profile your relationship table.

To create a relationship table, follow these steps:

1. If the map is currently open in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, double-click the map icon ( ) to open the map in **Author** mode. If it opens in **Text** mode, click **Author** at the bottom left to switch to **Author** mode.

2. Move the insertion point inside the *map* root element (usually `<map>`, but it might be `<bookmap>`, or another specialization of the `<map>` element). The easiest way to do this is to click below the title of the map in the editor and then press the up arrow once. Confirm that you are inside the *map* root element by checking the breadcrumbs at the top left of the editor window. You should only see the name of the *map* root element.

3. Select the **Insert Relationship Table** action on the toolbar or from the **Relationship Table** submenu of the contextual menu.
   The **Insert Relationship Table** dialog box is displayed.

4. Set the number of rows, the number of columns, a table title (optional), and select whether or not you want a table header. Click **Insert**.

5. Enter the type of the topics in the header of each column.
   The header of the table (the `<relheader>` element) already contains a `<relcolspec>` element for each table column. You should set the value of the `@type` attribute of each `<relcolspec>` element to a value such as *concept*, *task*, or *reference*. When you click in the header cell of a column (that is a `<relcolspec>` element), you can see all the attributes of that `<relcolspec>` element, including the `@type` attribute in the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)*. You can edit the attribute type in this view.

6. To insert a topic reference in a cell, place the cursor in a table cell and select **Insert Reference** *(on page 1946)* from the contextual menu or the **DITA Map** toolbar.

7. To add a new row to the table or remove an existing row use **Insert Relationship Row**/**Delete Relationship Row** from the contextual menu or the **DITA Map** toolbar.

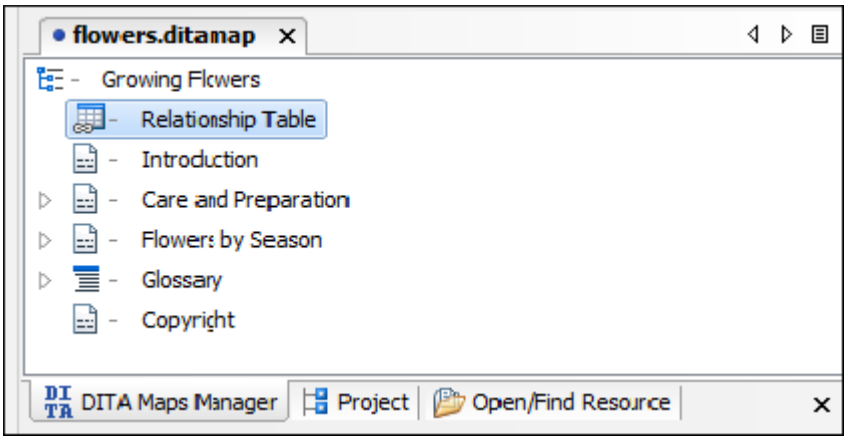
8. To add a new column to the table or remove an existing column, use **Insert Relationship Column**/**Delete Relationship Column** contextual menu or the **DITA Map** toolbar. If you double-click the relationship table (or select it and press **Enter**, or choose **Open** from the contextual menu) the *DITA map* is opened in the editor with the cursor positioned inside the corresponding relationship table.

9. To add topic references to your relationship table, drag and drop topics from the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* or the **Project Explorer** *(on page 245)* view into the appropriate cell in the relationship table.
   See the DITA documentation for a full explanation of the relationship table format and its options. Note that you can change all the selections that you make here later by using the actions on the toolbar (or in the **Relationship Table** submenu of the contextual menu) or by editing the underlying XML in **Text** mode.

10. Save the *DITA map*.

Relationship tables are also displayed in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*, along with the other elements in its *DITA map*.

Figure 379. Relationship Table



You can open the DITA map to edit the relationship table by doing one of the following:

- Double-click the appropriate relationship table in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*.
- Select the relationship table in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* and press **Enter**.
- Select **Open** from the contextual menu of the relationship table in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*.

Content Completion in DITA

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes an intelligent *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)* that offers proposals for inserting structured language elements, attributes, and attribute values that are valid in the current editing context. The functionality of the feature is slightly difference for each editing mode:

- For detailed information about using the feature in **Text** mode, see: Content Completion Assistant in Text Mode *(on page 294)*.
- For detailed information about using the feature in **Author** mode, see: Content Completion Assistant in Author Mode *(on page 369)*.

In addition to the general functionality and types of proposals that are offered in the *Content Completion Assistant* (as described in the two topics listed above), some DITA-specific actions are offered as proposals in the content completion when using the feature in DITA documents. These actions include:

- **keyref** - Opens a pop-up window that allows you to choose a key from a list all the keys that are gathered from the context DITA map (except for those that point to *resource-only* topics). If the chosen key defines a keyword, the `@keyref` attribute is inserted inside a `<ph>` element, while if the chosen key points to a resource, the `@keyref` attribute is inserted inside an `<xref>` element.
- **conref** - Opens a pop-up window that allows you to choose reusable content from a list all the reusable components (elements with IDs in topics that are referenced as *resource-only* in the context DITA map). For each element, a preview of the content is shown in the documentation panel to the right of

the pop-up. Once an element is chosen, a `@conref` or `@conkeyref` is inserted, depending on the defined component.

- **xref (cross reference)** - Opens the dialog box that allows you to insert a link to a specified target DITA resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be the location of a file or a key that is already defined in your DITA map structure. Once the target resource has been selected, you can also target specific elements within that resource. The action inserts an `<xref>` element with an `@href` or `@keyref` attribute that points to the target.
- **xref (web link)** - Opens a dialog box that allows you to insert a link to a target web-related resource at the current location within a document. The target resource can be a URL or a key that is already defined in your DITA map structure. It inserts an `<xref>` element with either an `@href` attribute or a `@keyref` attribute.
- **simpletable** - Opens a dialog box that allows you to configure and insert a table. You can generate a header and footer, set the number of rows and columns of the table, and decide how the table is framed.

Related information

Content Completion Assistant in Author Mode *(on page 369)*
Content Completion Assistant in Text Mode *(on page 294)*

Publishing DITA Output

As a structured writing format, DITA produces structured content (content that is annotated with specific structural and semantic information rather than with formatting information). To create a publication, your *DITA map (on page 2230)* and its associated topics must be processed by a transformation script. That script is responsible for how the structural and semantic information in the DITA files is converted into formatting information for display.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin publishes DITA content to various output sources using a bundled version of the DITA Open Toolkit. The DITA-OT is an open-source publishing engine that can publish DITA content to various output sources such as **XHTML**, **PDF**, or **Windows Help (CHM)**. Since it has a plugin-based architecture, it can be extended with extra plugins that either define new formats for conversion or customize an existing conversion format. You can run the DITA-OT from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin using a transformation scenario or you can run it directly from a command line: http://www.dita-ot.org/dev/topics/building-output.html.

The DITA-OT that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin contains more plugins than the standard DITA-OT that can be downloaded from their official website. For example, it contains pre-installed plugins for converting DITA content to Word, EPUB, WebHelp, or to publish to PDF using CSS to customize the output.

You can download and install extra publishing plugins either from the DITA Open Toolkit registry or from the list of free plugins *(on page 2160)* on the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin GitHub account.

Warning:
Keep in mind that there could be instances where there are differences between what you see in **Author** mode and what you see in the published output. This is typically due to certain limitations in the publishing engine, especially when the source documents contain advanced constructs such as key scopes, branch filtering, chunking, or reusing content through direct references between topics marked for publishing.

DITA Map Transformation Scenarios

Built-in transformation scenarios allow you to transform *DITA maps (on page 2230)* to a variety of outputs, such as WebHelp, PDF, ODF, XHTML, EPUB, CHM, Kindle, and MS Word. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes a special **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** *(on page 822)* that can be used to integrate a DITA-OT plugin and a **DITA Map Metrics Report** transformation that generates a statistics report for your DITA map. All of them are listed in the **DITA Map** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

A variety of transformations scenarios are available for *DITA maps (on page 2230)*:

- Built-in transformation scenarios allow you to transform a *DITA map* to a variety of outputs, such as WebHelp, PDF, ODF, XHTML, EPUB, CHM, Metrics Report, and MS Word.
- **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** *(on page 822)* - Use this transformation scenario if you want to integrate a DITA-OT plugin *(on page 2157)*. This scenario runs an Ant task that integrates all the plugins from the DITA-OT/plugins directory.

Related Information:
Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*
Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios *(on page 933)*
DITA Topic Transformation Scenarios *(on page 2095)*

DITA Map WebHelp Responsive Transformation

DITA content can be transformed into several types of WebHelp Responsive systems (with or without a feedback section). The WebHelp Responsive layout and features *(on page 944)* are designed to adapt to any device and screen size to provide an optimal viewing and interaction experience. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also provides numerous possibilities for customizing the WebHelp Responsive output *(on page 1031)*.

WebHelp Responsive Transformation Scenario

To publish a *DITA map (on page 2230)* as **WebHelp Responsive** output, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** action from the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar.
2. Select the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** scenario from the **DITA Map** section.

3. If you want to configure the transformation, click the **Edit** button.

   Step Result: This opens an **Edit scenario** configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in the following tabs:
   - Templates Tab *(on page 2098)* - This tab contains a set of built-in publishing templates *(on page 990)* that you can use for the layout of your WebHelp system output. You can also create your own publishing templates or edit existing ones *(on page 1031)*.
   - Parameters Tab *(on page 2104)* - This tab includes numerous parameters that can be set to customize your WebHelp system output. See the Parameters section *(on page 800)* below for details about the most commonly used parameters for WebHelp Responsive transformations.
   - Feedback Tab *(on page 2105)* - This tab is for those who want to add the **Oxygen Feedback** comments component at the bottom of each WebHelp page so that you can interact with your readers.
   - Filters Tab *(on page 2106)* - This tab allows you to filter certain content elements from the generated output.
   - Advanced Tab *(on page 2107)* - This tab allows you to specify some advanced options for the transformation scenario.
   - Output Tab *(on page 2110)* - This tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.
4. Click **Apply associated** to process the transformation.

Result: When the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation is complete, the output is automatically opened in your default browser.

General Parameters for Customizing WebHelp Responsive Output

To customize a transformation scenario, you can edit various parameters, including the following most commonly used ones:

default.language

This parameter is used if the language is not detected in the *DITA map*. The default value is `en-us`.

clean.output

Deletes all files from the output folder before the transformation is performed (only `no` and `yes` values are valid and the default value is `no`).

editlink.remote.ditamap.url

Use this parameter in conjunction with `editlink.web.author.url` to add an *Edit* link next to the topic title in the WebHelp output. When a user clicks the link, the topic is opened in Oxygen XML Web Author where they can make changes that can be saved to a file server. The value should be set as the custom URL of the *main DITA map*. For example, a GitHub custom URL might look like this: `https://getFileContent/oxyengxml/userguide/master/UserGuide.ditamap`.

editlink.web.author.url

This parameter needs to be used in conjunction with `editlink.remote.ditamap.url` to add an *Edit* link next to the topic title in the WebHelp output. When a user clicks the link, the topic is opened in Oxygen XML Web Author where they can make changes that can be saved to a file server. The value should be set as the URL of the Web Author installation. For example: `https://www.oxygenxml.com/oxygen-xml-web-author/`.

editlink.present.only.path.to.topic

When this parameter is set to "true", the DITA topic path is displayed to the right of each topic title in the WebHelp Responsive output. Also, when this parameter is used, the **editlink.ditamap.edit.url**, **editlink.remote.ditamap.url**, and **editlink.web.author.url** parameters are ignored.

fix.external.refs.com.oxygenxml (Only supported when the DITA-OT transformation process is started from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin)

The DITA Open Toolkit usually has problems processing references that point to locations outside of the directory of the processed *DITA map*. This parameter is used to specify whether or not the application should try to fix such references in a temporary files folder before the DITA Open Toolkit is invoked on the fixed references. The fix has no impact on your edited DITA content. Allowed values: `true` or `false` (default).

force.unique

When set to `true` (default value), the transformation will be forced to create unique output files for each instance of a resource when a map contains multiple references to a single topic.

use.stemming

Controls whether or not you want to include stemming search algorithms into the published output (default setting is `false`).

webhelp.csh.disable.topicID.fallback

Specifies whether or not topic ID *fallbacks* are enabled when computing the mapping of context sensitive help and `resourceid` information is not available. Possible values are **false** (default) and **true**.

webhelp.custom.resources

The file path to a directory that contains resources files. All files from this directory will be copied to the root of the WebHelp output.

webhelp.favicon

The file path that points to an image to be used as a *favicon* in the WebHelp output.

webhelp.reload.stylesheet

Set this parameter to `true` if you have out of memory problems when generating WebHelp. It will increase processing time but decrease the memory footprint. The default value is `false`.

webhelp.search.custom.excludes.file

The path of the file that contains name patterns for HTML files that should not be indexed by the WebHelp search engine. Each exclude pattern must be on a new line. The patterns are considered to be relative to the output directory, and they accept wildcards such as `'*'` (matches zero or more characters) or `'?'` (matches one character). For more information about the patterns, see https://ant.apache.org/manual/dirtasks.html#patterns.

webhelp.search.japanese.dictionary

The file path of the dictionary that will be used by the *Kuromoji* morphological engine for indexing Japanese content in the WebHelp pages. The encoding for the dictionary must be **UTF8**.

webhelp.search.enable.pagination

Specifies whether or not search results will be displayed on multiple pages. Allowed values are `yes` or `no`.

webhelp.search.index.elements.to.exclude

Specifies a list of HTML elements that will not be indexed by the search engine. The value of the `@class` attribute can be used to exclude specific HTML elements from indexing. For example, the **div.not-indexed** value will not index all `<div>` elements that have a `@class` attribute with the value of **not-indexed**. Use a comma separator to specify more than one element.

webhelp.search.page.numberOfItems

Specifies the number of search results items displayed on each page. This parameter is only used when the **webhelp.search.enable.pagination** parameter is enabled.

webhelp.search.ranking

If this parameter is set to `false` then the 5-star rating mechanism is no longer included in the search results that are displayed on the **Search** tab (default setting is `true`).

webhelp.search.stop.words.include

Specifies a list of words that will be ignored by the search engine. Use a comma separator to specify more than one word.

webhelp.show.changes.and.comments

When set to `yes`, user comments, replies to comments, and tracked changes are published in the WebHelp output. The default value is `no`.

webhelp.sitemap.base.url

Base URL for all the `<loc>` elements in the generated `sitemap.xml` file. If this parameter is specified, the **loc** element will contain the value of this parameter plus the relative path to the page. If this parameter is not specified, the **loc** element will only contain the relative path of the page (the relative file path from the `@href` attribute of a `<topicref>` element from the *DITA map*, appended to this base URL value).

webhelp.sitemap.change.frequency

The value of the `<changefreq>` element in the generated `sitemap.xml` file. The `<changefreq>` element is optional in `sitemap.xml`. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the `<changefreq>` element is not added in `sitemap.xml`. Allowed values: <empty string> (default), `always`, `hourly`, `daily`, `weekly`, `monthly`, `yearly`, `never`.

webhelp.sitemap.priority

The value of the `<priority>` element in the generated `sitemap.xml` file. It can be set to any fractional number between 0.0 (least important priority) and 1.0 (most important priority). For example, 0.3, 0.5, or 0.8. The `<priority>` element is optional in `sitemap.xml`. If you leave this parameter set to its default empty value, then the `<priority>` element is not added in `sitemap.xml`.

Parameters Specific to Oxygen WebHelp Responsive

webhelp.fragment.feedback

You can integrate **Oxygen Feedback** with your WebHelp Responsive output to provide a comments area at the bottom of each page where readers can offer feedback. When you create an **Oxygen Feedback** site configuration, an HTML fragment is generated during the final step of the creation process and that fragment should be set as the value for this parameter.

webhelp.default.collection.type.sequence

Specifies if the **sequence** value will be used by default when the `@collection-type` attribute is not specified. This option is helpful if you want to have *Next* and *Previous* navigational buttons generated for all HTML pages. Allowed values are **no** (default) and **yes**.

webhelp.enable.search.autocomplete

Specifies if the *Autocomplete* feature is enabled in the WebHelp search text field. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.enable.html.fragments.cleanup

Enables or disables the automatic conversion of HTML fragments to well-formed XML. If set to **true** (default), the transformation automatically converts non-well-formed HTML content to a well-formed XML equivalent. If set to **false**, the transformation will fail if at least one HTML fragment is not well-formed.

webhelp.enable.scroll.to.search.term

Specifies whether or not the page should scroll to the first search term when opening the search results page. Possible values are **no** (default) and **true**.

webhelp.fragment.after.body

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the body in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.body.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the body in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.body.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the body in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.body.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the body in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.body.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the body in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.logo_and_title

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the logo and title in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.main.page.search (deprecated)

This parameter is deprecated. Use `webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.main.page` instead.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.toc_or_tiles

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the table of contents or tiles in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.top_menu

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the top menu in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.body

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the page body in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.body.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the page body in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.body.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the page body in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.body.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the page body in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.body.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the page body in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.logo_and_title

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the logo and title. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.page.search (deprecated)

This parameter is deprecated. Use `webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.main.page` instead.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.toc_or_tiles

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the table of contents or tiles in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.top_menu

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the top menu in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.footer

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment as the page footer in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

Important:
This parameter should only be used if you are using a valid, purchased license of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (do not use it with a trial license).

webhelp.fragment.head

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment in the header section in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.head.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment in the header section in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.head.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment in the header section in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.head.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment in the header section in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.head.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment in the header section in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.welcome

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment as a welcome message (or title). The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.header

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the header section in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.header.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the header section in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.header.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the header section in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.header.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the header section in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.header.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the header section in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.search.input

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the search field in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.search.input

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the search field in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the main content section in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the main content section in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the main content section in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.search.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the main content section in the search results page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.main.content.area.terms.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the main content section in the index terms page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.main.content.area

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the main content section in all types of pages. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.main.content.area.main.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the main content section in the main page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.main.content.area.topic.page

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the main content section in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.topic.toolbar

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the toolbar buttons above the topic content in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.topic.toolbar

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the toolbar buttons above the topic content in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.topic.breadcrumb

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the breadcrumb component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.topic.breadcrumb

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the breadcrumb component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.publication.toc

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the publication's table of contents component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.publication.toc

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the publication's table of contents component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.topic.content

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the topic's content in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.topic.content

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the topic's content in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.feedback

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the **Oxygen Feedback** commenting component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.feedback

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the **Oxygen Feedback** commenting component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.before.topic.toc

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment before the topic's table of contents component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.after.topic.toc

This parameter can be used to display a given XHTML fragment after the topic's table of contents component in the topic page. The value of the parameter can be either a **well-formed** XHTML fragment or a path to a file that contains a **well-formed** XHTML fragment.

webhelp.fragment.custom.search.engine.results

This parameter can be used to replace the search results area with custom XHTML content. The value of the parameter is the path to an XHTML file that contains your custom content.

webhelp.fragment.custom.search.engine.script

This parameter can be used to replace WebHelp's built-in search engine with your own custom search engine. The value of the parameter is the path to an XHTML file that contains the scripts required for your custom search engine to run.

webhelp.labels.generation.mode

Controls whether or not labels are generated in the output. These labels are useful because users can easily search for topics with the same label by simply clicking on the label presented in the output. Possible values are:

- **keywords-label** - Generates labels for each defined `<keyword>` element that has the `@outputclass` attribute value set to **label**.
- **keywords** - Generates labels for each defined `<keyword>` element. If the topic contains `<keyword>` elements with the `@outputclass` attribute value set to **label**, then only these elements will have labels generated for them in the output.
- **disable** - Disables the generation of labels in the Webhelp Responsive output.

webhelp.merge.nested.topics.related.links

Specifies if the related links from nested topics will be merged with the links in the parent topic. Thus the links will be moved from the topic content to the related links component and all of the links from the same group (for example, *Related Tasks*, *Related References*, *Related Information*) are merged into a single group. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.publication.toc.hide.chunked.topics

Specifies if the table of contents will contain links for *chunked* topics. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.publication.toc.links

Specifies which links will be included in the table of contents. The possible values are:

- **chapter** (default) - The TOC will include links for the current topic, its children, its siblings, and its direct ancestor (including the direct ancestor's siblings), and the parent chapter.
- **topic** - The TOC will only include links for the current topic and its direct children.
- **all** - The TOC will include all links.

webhelp.publication.toc.tooltip.position

By default, if a topic contains a `<shortdesc>` element, its content is displayed in a tooltip when the user hovers over its link in the table of contents. This parameter controls whether or not this tooltip is displayed and its position relative to the link. The possible values are:

- **left**
- **right** (default)
- **top**
- **bottom**
- **hidden** - The tooltip will not be displayed.

webhelp.search.default.operator

Makes it possible to change the default operator for the search engine. Possible values are `and`, `or` (default). If set to `and` while the search query is WORD1 WORD2, the search engine only returns results for topics that contain both WORD1 and WORD2. If set to `or` and the search query is WORD1 WORD2, the search engine returns results for topics that contain either WORD1 or WORD2.

webhelp.search.stop.words.exclude

Specifies a list of words that will be excluded from the default list of *stop words* that are filtered out before the search processing. Use comma separators to specify more than one word (for example: `if,for,is`).

webhelp.show.breadcrumb

Specifies if the breadcrumb component will be presented in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.child.links

Specifies if child links will be generated in the output for all topics that have subtopics. The default value is `no`.

webhelp.show.indexterms.link

Specifies if an icon that links to the index terms page will be displayed in the output. The default value is `yes` (meaning the index terms icon is displayed). If set to `false`, the index terms icon is not displayed in the output and the index terms page is not generated.

webhelp.show.main.page.tiles

Specifies if the tiles component will be presented in the main page of the output. For a *tree* style layout, this parameter should be set to `no`.

webhelp.show.main.page.toc

Specifies if the table of contents will be presented in the main page of the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.expand.collapse.sections

Specifies if links to collapse sections will be presented within each topic in the output. Collapsing sections will collapse all collapsible elements (nested topics with titles, sections with titles, or tables with titles). The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.navigation.links

Specifies if navigation links will be presented in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.print.link

Specifies if a print link or icon will be presented within each topic in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.related.links

Specifies if the related links component will be presented in the WebHelp Responsive output. The default value is `yes`. The `webhelp.merge.nested.topics.related.links` parameter can be used in conjunction with this one to merge the related links from nested topics into the links in the parent topic.

webhelp.show.publication.toc

Specifies if a table of contents will be presented on the left side of each topic in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.topic.toc

Specifies if a topic table of contents will be presented on the right side of each topic in the output. This table of contents contains links to each `<section>` within the current topic that contains an `@id` attribute and the section corresponding to the current scroll position is highlighted. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.show.top.menu

Specifies if a menu will be presented at the topic of the main page in the output. The default value is `yes`.

webhelp.skip.main.page.generation

If set to `true`, the default main page is not generated in the output. The default value is `false`.

webhelp.top.menu.activated.on.click

When this parameter is activated (set to `yes`), clicking an item in the top menu will expand the submenu (if available). You can then click on a submenu item to open the item (topic). You can click outside the menu or press **ESC** to hide the menu. When set to `no` (default), hovering over a menu item displays the menu content.

webhelp.top.menu.depth

Specifies the maximum depth level of the topics that will be included in the top menu. The default value is `3`. A value of `0` means that the menu has unlimited depth.

webhelp.topic.collapsible.elements.initial.state

Specifies the initial state of collapsible elements (nested topics with titles, sections with titles, tables with titles or index term groups). The possible values are `collapsed` or `expanded` (default value).

Parameters for Adding a Link to PDF Documentation in WebHelp Responsive Output

The following transformation parameters can be used to generate a PDF link component in the WebHelp Responsive output (for example, it could link to the PDF equivalent of the documentation):

webhelp.pdf.link.url

Specifies the target URL for the PDF link component.

webhelp.pdf.link.text

Specifies the text for the PDF link component.

webhelp.pdf.link.icon.path

Specifies the path or URL of the image icon to be used for the PDF link component. If not specified, a default icon is used.

webhelp.show.pdf.link

Specifies whether or not the PDF link component is shown in the WebHelp Responsive output. Allowed values are: **yes** (default) and **no**.

webhelp.pdf.link.anchor.enabled

Specifies whether or not the current topic ID should be appended as the name destination at the end of the PDF link. Allowed values are: **yes** (default) and **no**.

Related information

Customizing WebHelp Responsive Output *(on page 1031)*
Layout and Features *(on page 944)*

DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS Transformation

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario based on a *DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing plugin* that converts DITA maps to PDF using a CSS-based processing engine and an HTML5 intermediate format. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with a built-in CSS-based PDF processing engine called **Oxygen PDF Chemistry**. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also supports some third-party processors.

For those who are familiar with CSS, this makes it very easy to style and customize the PDF output of your DITA projects without having to work with *xsl:fo* customizations. This transformation also includes some built-in publishing templates that you can use for the layout of your PDF output and you can create your own templates or edit existing ones.

The following CSS-based PDF processors can be used:

- **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** - A built-in processor that is bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. For more information, see the Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide. This is the supported processor.
- **Prince Print with CSS** (not included in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation kit) - A third-party component that needs to be purchased from http://www.princexml.com.
- **Antenna House Formatter** (not included in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation kit) - A third-party component that needs to be purchased from http://www.antennahouse.com/antenna1/formatter/.

How to Create the Transformation Scenario

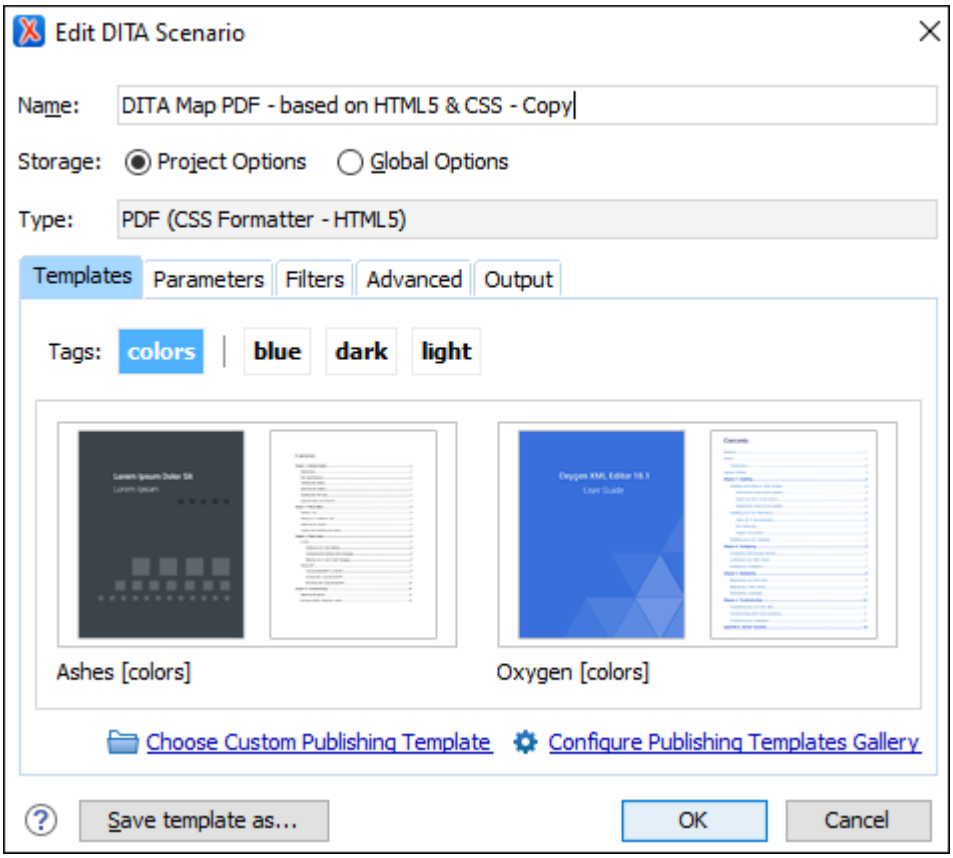
To create a **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Click the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** button from the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar.
2. Select the **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformation scenario.
3. If you want to configure the transformation, click the **Edit** button.

   Step Result: This opens an **Edit scenario** configuration dialog box that allows you to configure various options in the following tabs:

- **Templates** Tab *(on page 2098)* - This tab contains a set of built-in publishing templates that you can use for the layout of your WebHelp system output. You can also create your own publishing templates by saving one from the gallery and changing it.

Figure 380. DITA Map to PDF Templates



- **Parameters** Tab *(on page 2104)* - This tab includes numerous parameters that can be set to customize the transformation.
- **Filters** Tab *(on page 2106)* - This tab allows you to filter certain content elements from the generated output.
- **Advanced** Tab *(on page 2107)* - This tab allows you to specify some advanced options for the transformation scenario.
- **Output** Tab *(on page 2110)* - This tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

4. In the **Parameters** tab, configure any of the following parameters (if applicable):
   - **args.css** - Specifies a path to a custom CSS to be used in addition to those specified in the publishing template. The files must have URL syntax and be separated using semicolons.
   - **css.processor.type**- This is where you choose the processor type. You can select between **Oxygen PDF Chemistry**, **Prince XML**, or **Antenna House**.
   - **css.processor.path.chemistry** (if you are using the **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** processor) - Specifies the path to the **Oxygen PDF Chemistry** executable file that will be run to generate the PDF. If this parameter is not set, the transformation will use the processor specified in the **CSS-based Processors** preferences page *(on page 174)*.

- **css.processor.path.prince** (if you are using the **Prince Print with CSS** processor) - Specifies the path to the Prince executable file that will be run to produce the PDF. If you installed Prince using its default settings, you can leave this blank.
- **css.processor.path.antenna-house** (if you are using the **Antenna House Formatter** processor) - Specifies the path to the Antenna House executable file that will be run to produce the PDF. If you installed Antenna House using its default settings, you can leave this blank.
- **show.changes.and.comments** - When set to `yes`, user comments, replies to comments, and *tracked changes* are published in the PDF output. The default value is `no`.
- **figure.title.placement** - Controls the position of the figure title relative to the image. Allowed values are "top" and "bottom", "top" is the default

5. Click **OK** and run the transformation scenario.

Customizing the Output

For information about customizing the output, see CSS-based DITA to PDF Customization *(on page 1162)*.

Related Information:

Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*
Oxygen PDF Chemistry User Guide
CSS-based DITA to PDF Customization *(on page 1162)*

DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO Transformation

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with the DITA Open Toolkit that provides a mechanism for converting *DITA maps (on page 2230)* to PDF output.

Creating a DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO Transformation Scenario

To create a *DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO* transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Click the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** button from the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar.
2. Select **DITA Map PDF - based on XSL-FO** and click the **Edit** button (or use the **Duplicate** button if your *framework (on page 2231)* is read-only).
3. Use the various tabs to configure the transformation scenario. In the **Parameters** tab, you can use a variety of parameters to customize the output. For example, the following parameters are just a few of the most commonly used ones:
   - `show.changes.and.comments` - If set to `yes`, user comments, replies to comments, and *tracked changes* are published in the PDF output.
   - `customization.dir` - Specifies the path to a customization directory.
   - `editlink.present.only.path.to.topic` - When this parameter is set to "true", the DITA topic path is displayed to the right of each topic title in the PDF output.
4. Click **OK** and then the **Apply Associated** button to run the transformation scenario.

Related Information:
XSL FO-based DITA to PDF Customization *(on page 1437)*

DITA Map MS Office Word Transformation

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with a transformation scenario that allows you to convert *DITA maps (on page 2230)* to Microsoft Office Word documents. It utilizes the **DITA to Word plugin** created by Jarno Elovirta. This *plugin* contains a Word document named **Normal.docx** (located in: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/dita/`*DITA-OT*`/plugins/com.elovirta.ooxml/resources`) that is used by the transformation scenario as a template to generate the final Word document.

Tip:
You can make general modifications to the **Normal.docx** template file to alter the published output. The Word application used to edit the **Normal.docx** should be configured with English locale as the style names for each Word element must be in English.

Configuring the Transformation Scenario

To configure a **DITA Map to MS Office Word** transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Open the DITA map in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*.
2. Click the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** button from the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar.
3. Select **DITA Map MS Office Word**.
4. For advanced customizations, in the **Parameters** tab you can use any of the following parameters that are unique to this transformation scenario to specify paths to files that affect the output in various ways:
   - **dotx.file** - Specifies the path to a Word template file (`.docx`) that will be used in the transformation to generate the final Word document. Set this parameter if you want to use a different template file other than the **Normal.docx** file that is used by default.
   - **document.flat.xsl** - Specifies the path to a pre-process clean-up stylesheet.
   - **core.xsl** - Specifies the path to a core metadata stylesheet.
   - **custom.xsl** - Specifies the path to a custom metadata stylesheet.
   - **document.xsl** - Specifies the path to a main document stylesheet.
   - **comments.xsl** - Specifies the path to a comments stylesheet.
   - **numbering.xsl** - Specifies the path to a list and title numbering stylesheet.
   - **footnotes.xsl** - Specifies the path to a footnote stylesheet.
   - **document.xml.xsl** - Specifies the path to a document relations metadata stylesheet.
   - **inkscape.exec** - Specifies the path to an Inkscape (open-source vector graphics editor) executable file.
5. Click **OK** and run the transformation scenario.

Result: The result of the transformation will automatically be opened in your system's default word processing application (such as Microsoft Word).

Related Information:

Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*
Migrating MS Office Documents to DITA *(on page 2180)*

DITA Map CHM (Compiled HTML Help) Transformation

To perform a *Compiled HTML Help (CHM)* transformation, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin needs `Microsoft HTML Help Workshop` to be installed on your computer. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically detects if `HTML Help Workshop` is installed and uses it.

Note:
`HTML Help Workshop` might fail if the files used for transformation contain accents in their names, due to different encodings used when writing the *.hhp* and *.hhc* files. If the transformation fails to produce the CHM output but the *.hhp* (HTML Help Project) file is already generated, you can manually try to build the CHM output using `HTML Help Workshop`.

Changing the Output Encoding

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the `htmlhelp.locale` parameter to correctly display specific characters of different languages in the output of the *Compiled HTML Help (CHM)* transformation. By default, the **DITA Map CHM** transformation scenario that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has the `htmlhelp.locale` parameter set to `en-US`.

To customize this parameter, follow this procedure:

1. Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the toolbar or the **XML** menu.
2. Select the **DITA Map CHM** transformation scenario and click the **Edit** button.
3. In the **Parameter** tab, search for the `htmlhelp.locale` parameter and change its value to the desired language tag.

   Note:
   The format of the `htmlhelp.locale` parameter is `LL-CC`, where `LL` represents the language code (`en`, for example) and `CC` represents the country code (`US`, for example). The language codes are contained in the `ISO 639-1` standard and the country codes are contained in the `ISO 3166-1` standard. For further details about language tags, go to http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/rfc5646.txt.

Customizing the CHM Output

There are several possibilities available for customizing the CHM output:

- You can use a custom CSS stylesheet to customize how the HTML content is rendered in the output:
  1. Create the custom CSS.
  2. Select the **DITA Map CHM** transformation scenario and click the **Edit** button.
  3. In the **Parameter** tab, set the `args.css` parameter to point to the location of your custom CSS and make sure the `args.copy.css` parameter is set to **yes** to instruct the transformation to copy the custom CSS to the output folder.
  4. Run the transformation.
- If you are familiar with XSLT, there are two XSLT stylesheets that are used in the transformation to compile various settings and components in the CHM output. They are found in the following directory: `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/frameworks/dita/DITA-OT/plugins/org.dita.htmlhelp/xsl/map2htmlhelp`. The files are as follows:
  - **map2hhcImpl.xsl** - This file is used to compile the table of contents.
  - **map2hhpImpl.xsl** - This file contains information for compiling the CHM and various settings that are read by the *HTML Help Workshop* when creating the output.

DITA Map Metrics Report Transformation

A **DITA Map Metrics Report** action is available on the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar and in the **DITA Maps** main menu. It generates an overview report that contains useful statistics for a DITA map.

As an alternate approach, to create a metrics report from a *DITA map (on page 2230)* using a transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** action from the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar.
2. Select the **DITA Map Metrics Report** scenario from the **DITA Map** section.
3. Run the transformation.

The generated HTML report contains information such as:

- The number of processed maps and topics.
- The number of `map/bookmap/topic/task/concept/reference` types in the DITA map.
- Content reuse percentage.
- Number of elements and attributes of different types used in the entire *DITA map* structure.
- Number of words and characters used in the entire *DITA map* structure.
- DITA conditional processing attributes used in the *DITA maps*.
- Processing instructions.
- External links.
- All `@outputclass` attribute values gathered from the DITA project.

Important:
If you have cross references that point to content outside the scope of the DITA map, that referenced content is not counted. For example, if you have links to topics that are not included in the DITA map hierarchy, the content in those topics is ignored when generating the statistics.

The metrics report can also be obtained in XML format, making it possible to construct a metrics report evolution between multiple versions of the same DITA project.

DITA Map Zendesk Publishing

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a built-in transformation scenario that provides the ability to publish DITA topics to XHTML output and upload them directly as articles to the *Zendesk* Help Center.

Attention:
This feature is only available in the **Enterprise** edition of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

To run the transformation, follow these steps:

1. Start Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and open a *DITA map* in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*.
2. Click the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** button.
3. Create a new **DITA-OT** transformation scenario and choose the **Zendesk Help Center** transformation type.
4. Go to **Parameters** tab and set the following parameters:

   Host

   The URL reference to the *Zendesk Help Center* (for example, `https://your-domain.zendesk.com`).

   Username

   The username (e-mail address) for the account used to upload the content.

   API Token

   An API token, generated in the *Zendesk* admin pages, necessary for authentication to the server: https://support.zendesk.com/hc/en-us/articles/226022787-Generating-a-new-API-token-.

   Article category

   The name of the category where the articles are uploaded. The category needs to be created in the *Zendesk* admin pages: https://support.zendesk.com/hc/en-us/articles/218222877-Organizing-knowledge-base-content-in-categories-and-sections#topic_hjs_tl4_kk.

   Article section

The name of the section (inside the parent category) where articles are uploaded. The section needs to be created in the *Zendesk* admin pages: https://support.zendesk.com/hc/en-us/articles/218222877-Organizing-knowledge-base-content-in-categories-and-sections#topic_ysj_wtt_zz.

Note:
When publishing to a subsection, a path of section names separated by '///' can be passed (for example: `Main section///Subsection 1///Subsection 1.1`).

Create article draft

This setting controls whether the articles should be published (if the value is `false`) or saved as drafts (if the value is `true`). The default value is `false`.

Visible to

The name of the user segment that can view the articles.

Permission group name

The name of the Zendesk permission group that controls who edits and publishes articles: https://support.zendesk.com/hc/en-us/articles/203661966-Creating-managing-and-using-groups.

Create table of contents

When the `zendesk.create.toc` parameter is set to `true` (default value), a table of contents is published as the first article in the Zendesk section and this initial article references all other articles. The title of the TOC article is the title of the DITA map.

Specify a prefix title for the table of contents

Set the `zendesk.toc.title.prefix` parameter to specify a prefix to use for the title of the table of contents article.

Specify a suffix title for the table of contents

Set the `zendesk.toc.title.suffix` parameter to specify a suffix to use for the title of the table of contents article.

5. Save the changes and run the transformation.

Important:

There may be cases when the publishing breaks, presenting an error related to **HTTPS** certificates, similar to this one:

```
Error: org.zendesk.client.v2.ZendeskException: java.net.ConnectException: PKIX path building failed:
sun.security.provider.certpath.SunCertPathBuilderException: unable to find valid certification path
to requested target
```

This usually occurs if an HTTPS proxy server is installed in your company's network. In this case, if running on Windows, you can edit the transformation scenario you are using to publish **DITA** to **Zendesk** and in the **Advanced** tab, go to the **JVM Arguments** field and set this value:

```
-Djavax.net.ssl.trustStoreType=Windows-ROOT -Djavax.net.ssl.trustStore=C:\\Windows\\win.ini
```

Resources

For more information about publishing content to the Zendesk Help Center, watch the following video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/QZ_9Fk_LOk8

Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins Transformation

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with a transformation scenario designed to integrate DITA-OT plugins *(on page 2232)*. These DITA-OT *plugins* are used for various customizations. It is called **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** and is found in the **DITA Map** section of the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

Attention:
The integration will be performed on the DITA-OT version specified in the **DITA Open Toolkit** section of the **DITA** preferences page *(on page 74)*.

CAUTION:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin support engineers do not officially offer support and troubleshooting assistance for custom DITA-OT distributions or custom installed DITA-OT plugins. If you discover any issues or inconsistent behavior while using a custom DITA-OT or a DITA-OT that contains custom DITA-OT plugins, you should revert to the default built-in DITA-OT.

Running the Transformation Scenario

To integrate a DITA-OT *plugin*, follow these steps:

1. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin was installed in the default location, you may need to restart and run it as an administrator.
2. Select the **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** or **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** *(on page 934)* action from the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar (you could also use the same action on the main toolbar or open the **Transformation Scenarios** view *(on page 940)*).
3. Select the **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** transformation scenario. If the *integrator* is not visible, select the **Show all scenarios** action that is available in the **Settings** drop-down menu.
4. Apply the scenario *(on page 933)*.

5. Check the **Results** panel at the bottom of the application to make sure the build was successful.
6. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin with your normal permissions.

Related Information:

Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*

Installing a DITA-OT Plugin *(on page 2157)*

Integrating a DITA Specialization *(on page 2169)*

DITA Topic Transformation Scenarios

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes built-in transformation scenarios for transforming individual DITA Topics to HTML5, XHTML, or PDF output. They can be found in the **DITA** section in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

The available transformations scenarios for individual DITA topics include:

- **DITA HTML5** - This DITA-OT transformation scenario generates HTML5 output from a single DITA topic.
- **DITA XHTML** - This DITA-OT transformation scenario generates XHTML output from a single DITA topic. This was the first transformation scenario created for the DITA Open Toolkit and it originally served as the basis for all HTML-based transformations.
- **DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** - This transformation scenario converts individual DITA topics to PDF using a CSS-based processing engine and an HTML5 intermediate format. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with a built-in CSS-based PDF processing engine called **Oxygen PDF Chemistry**. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also supports some third-party processors.

  For those who are familiar with CSS, this makes it very easy to style and customize the PDF output of your DITA projects without having to work with *xsl:fo* customizations. Another advantage of this transformation scenario is that you can use the same customization CSS *(on page 1193)* or publishing template *(on page 1181)* that you use for converting entire DITA maps.

  The transformation scenario automatically detects the currently selected context DITA map (root map) *(on page 1885)* so that keys and references are properly resolved (the detected context map is set as the value of the `args.root.map` parameter (this can be changed in the **Parameters** tab). It also automatically detects the currently applied profiling condition set *(on page 2134)* to be used as the default filtering option in the transformation scenario (this can be changed in the **Filters** tab).

  The transformation scenario also supports a parameter named `args.enable.root.map.key.processing` that can be used to specify whether or not the values for `@keyref` and `@conkeyref` attributes within the transformed topics are resolved. The possible values are:
  - **no** - This means that the values for all `@keyref` and `@conkeyref` attributes are ignored in the transformation. This results in lower processing times.
  - **yes** - This means that the values for any `@keyref` and `@conkeyref` attributes found in the transformed topic are processed and resolved using the value of the `args.root.map` parameter.

    - **auto** - This means that the process will search for any `@keyref` and `@conkeyref` attributes within the transformed topic and if any are found, the values will be processed and resolved using the value of the `args.root.map` parameter. If none are found, the `@keyref` and `@conkeyref` attributes are ignored.
- **DITA PDF - based on XSL-FO** - This DITA-OT transformation scenario converts individual DITA topics to PDF using an *xsl:fo* processor.

Related Information:
Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Configure Transformation Scenario(s) Dialog Box *(on page 934)*
Applying Associated Transformation Scenarios *(on page 933)*
DITA Map Transformation Scenarios *(on page 2071)*

Running a DITA Transformation Scenario

To select and run a transformation scenario on your *DITA map*, follow these steps:

1. Click the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** button on the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar *(on page 1882)*. The **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)* appears. This dialog box lists all the transformation scenarios that have been configured in your project. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides a default set of transformation scenarios, but the people in charge of your DITA system may have provided others that are specifically configured for your needs.
2. Select the transformation scenario you want to run and click **Apply Associated**. The transformation scenario runs in the background. You can continue to work in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin while the transformation is running. If there are errors or warnings, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays them when the transformation is complete. If the transformation is successful, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin opens the output in the appropriate application.
3. To rerun the same scenario again, click the **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** button.

Creating or Editing a DITA-OT Transformation

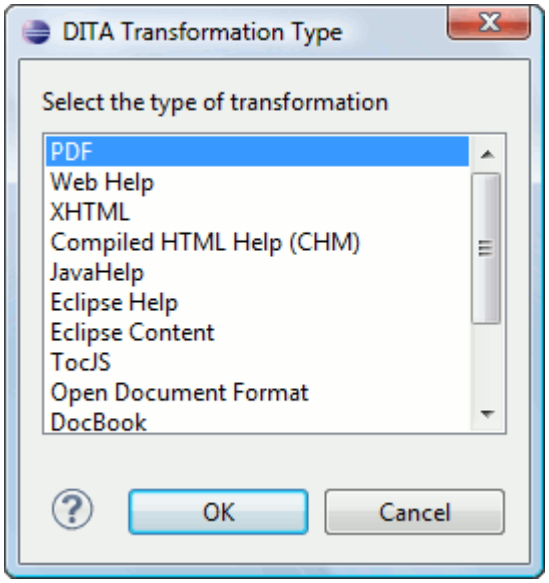
Creating a DITA-OT Transformation Scenario

To create a **DITA-OT Transformation** scenario, use one of the following methods:

- Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** (**Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS)**) action from the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar, main toolbar, or the **XML** menu. Then click the **New** button and select **DITA-OT Transformation**.
- Go to **Window > Show View** and select **Transformation Scenarios** to display this view. Click the **New Scenario** drop-down menu button and select **DITA-OT Transformation**.

Both methods open the **DITA Transformation Type** dialog box that presents the list of possible outputs.

Figure 381. DITA Transformation Type Dialog Box



Select the desired type of output and click **OK**. This opens the **New Scenario** dialog box.

The upper part of the dialog box allows you to specify the **Name** of the transformation scenario.

The lower part of the dialog box contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

Editing a DITA-OT Transformation Scenario

Editing a transformation scenario is useful if you need to configure some of its parameters.

To configure an existing transformation scenario, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s) (Alt + Shift + T, C (Command + Option + T, C on macOS))** action from the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar, main toolbar, or the **XML** menu.

   Step Result: The **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)* is opened.

2. Select the particular transformation scenario and click the **Edit** button at the bottom of the dialog box or from the contextual menu.

   > **Note:**
   > Since transformation scenarios that are associated with built-in *frameworks (on page 2231)* are read-only, these scenarios will prompt you to use the **Duplicate** button and then edit the duplicated scenario *(on page 933)*.

Result: This will open an **Edit scenario** configuration dialog box *(on page 931)* that contains several tabs that allow you to configure the options that control the transformation.

Related Information:

Creating a DITA-OT Plugin *(on page 2153)*

Installing a DITA-OT Plugin *(on page 2157)*

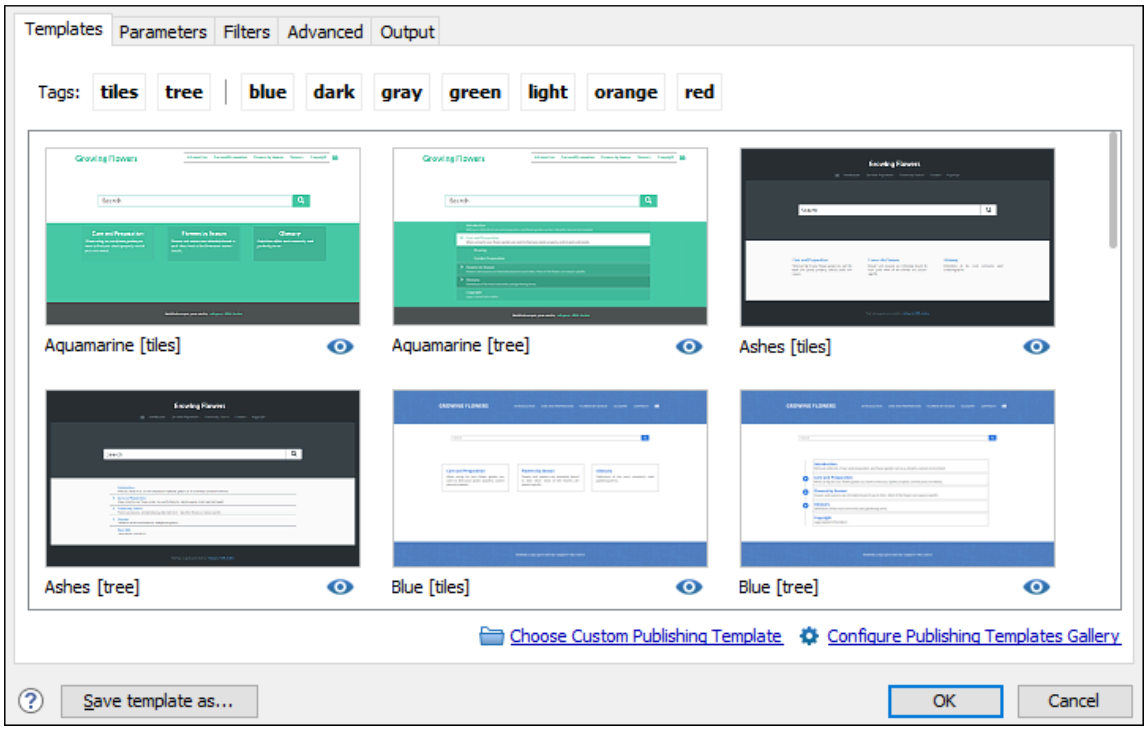
DITA Open Toolkit Documentation

Templates Tab (DITA-OT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Templates** tab is available for DITA-OT transformations with **WebHelp Responsive** or **PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** output types and it provides a set of built-in publishing templates *(on page 990)*. You can use one of them to publish your documentation or as a starting point for a new publishing template.

Figure 382. Templates Tab



Filtering and Previewing Templates

You can click on the tags at the top of the pane to filter the templates and narrow your search. Each built-in template also includes an **Online preview** icon in the bottom-right corner that opens a webpage in your default browser providing a sample of how the main page will look when that particular template is used to generate the output.

Built-in Templates Locations

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin scans the following locations to find the built-in templates to display in the dialog box:

- **WebHelp Responsive Templates** - All built-in WebHelp Responsive publishing templates are stored in the following directory: *DITA-OT-DIR*`/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/templates`.
- **PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** - All built-in PDF publishing templates are stored in the following directories:
  - *DITA-OT-DIR*`/plugins/com.oxygenxml.pdf.css/templates`
  - *DITA-OT-DIR*`/plugins/com.oxygenxml.webhelp.responsive/templates`

Custom Templates Locations

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin scans the locations specified in the **DITA > Publishing** preferences page *(on page 79)* to find custom templates to display in the dialog box. You can access that preferences page directly from the **Template** tab by clicking on the **Configure Publishing Templates Gallery** link.

Selecting Custom Templates

Once you are finished configuring your template, you can click the **Choose Custom Publishing Template** link to select your template.

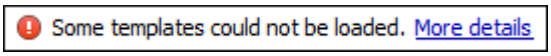
You can also add your custom templates *(on page 1047)* to the list of templates displayed in the **Templates** tab. To do this, store them in a directory, then click the **Configure Publishing Templates Gallery** link to open the **DITA > Publishing** preferences page *(on page 79)* where you can add that directory to the list. All the templates contained in your template directory will be displayed in the preview pane along with all the built-in templates.

Save Template As Button

You can use the **Save template as** button (at the bottom-left of the transformation dialog box) to export the currently selected template into a new template package that can be used as a starting point to create your own custom template *(on page 1188)*. Clicking this button will open a template package configuration dialog box *(on page 2100)* that contains some options and displays the parameters that will be exported to your template package.

Template Errors

When the **Templates** tab is opened, all templates (built-in and custom) are loaded and validated. Specifically, certain elements in the template descriptor file are checked for validity. If errors are encountered that prevents the template from loading, the following message will be displayed toward the bottom of the dialog box:



If you click the **More details** link, a window will open with more information about the encountered error. For example, it might offer a hint that the element is missing from the expected descriptor file structure.

Also, if a template could be loaded, but certain elements could not be found in the descriptor file, a warning icon (⚠) will be displayed on the template's image (in the **Templates** tab of the transformation dialog box). For example, this happens if a valid preview-image element cannot be found.

Sharing Publishing Template

To share a publishing template with others, following these steps:

1. Copy your template in a new folder.
2. Go to **Options > Preferences > DITA > Publishing** *(on page 79)* and add that new folder to the list.
3. Switch the option as the bottom of that preferences page to **Project Options**.
4. Share your project file (`.xpr`).

Resources

For more information about customizing publishing templates, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/zNmXfKWXwO8

Related Information:
Publishing Templates *(on page 990)*
Publishing Template Package Contents for PDF Customizations *(on page 1183)*
Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations *(on page 994)*

Template Package Configuration Dialog Box

The **Save template as** button (at the bottom-left of the transformation dialog box for **WebHelp Responsive** or **PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** transformations) can be used to export the currently selected template into a new template package that can be used as a starting point to create your own custom template *(on page 1188)*. The result will be a ZIP archive that contains a template descriptor file and other resources (such as CSS files) that were attached to the selected template.

Clicking the **Save template as** button opens a template package configuration dialog box contains the following options and components:

Name

Required field used to specify the name for the new template. This will become the text value of the `<name>` element in the template descriptor file. This information is displayed as the name of the template in the transformation scenario dialog box.

Description

Optional field used to specify a template description. This will become the text value of the `<description>` element in the template descriptor file. This information is displayed when the user hovers over the template in the transformation scenario dialog box.

Parameter Table

This table displays the parameters that will be exported. Only certain relevant parameters are exported. The parameters and their values will be inserted in the `<parameters>` section of the template descriptor file. If any of the parameter values point to a file path that references a template resource (such as CSS files, custom HTML fragments, images), those resources will automatically be copied to the new template package and their references will be changed accordingly.

Note:
Additional resources that are referenced in CSS files or other resources will not be copied to the new template package, so you will need to copy them manually and update their references in the template descriptor file.

Include WebHelp Customization

The same publishing template package can contain both a WebHelp Responsive and PDF customization and you can use the same template in both types of transformations (**DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** *(on page 799)* or **DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** *(on page 813)*). This option specifies that the custom template will include a WebHelp Responsive customization.

Include HTML Page Layout Files

For **WebHelp Responsive** customizations, select this option if you want to copy the default *HTML Page Layout Files (on page 1010)* into your template package. They are helpful if you want to change the structure of the generated HTML pages.

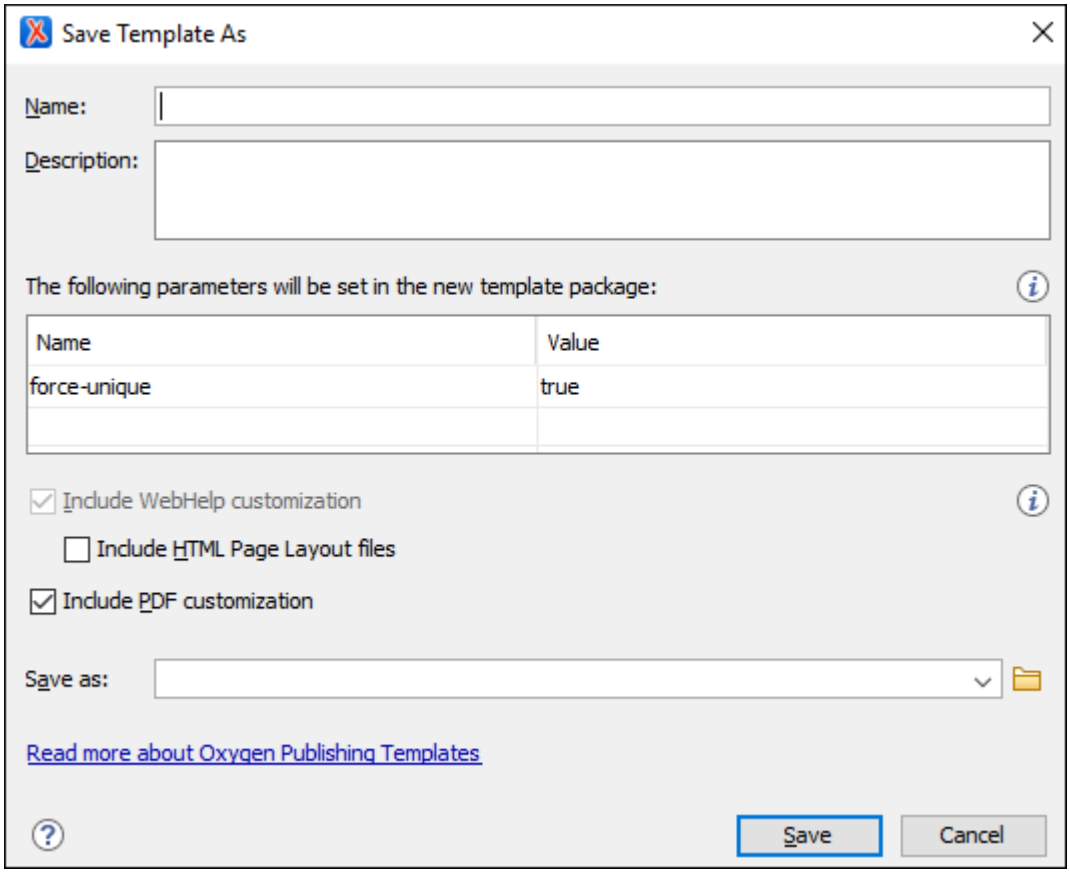
Include PDF Customization

The same publishing template package can contain both a WebHelp Responsive and PDF customization and you can use the same template in both types of transformations (**DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** *(on page 799)* or **DITA Map to PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** *(on page 813)*). This option specifies that the custom template will include a PDF customization.

Save as

Use this field to specify the name and path of the ZIP file where the template will be saved.

Figure 383. Template Package Configuration Dialog Box



Related Information:

Publishing Templates *(on page 990)*

Publishing Template Package Contents for PDF Customizations *(on page 1183)*

Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations *(on page 994)*

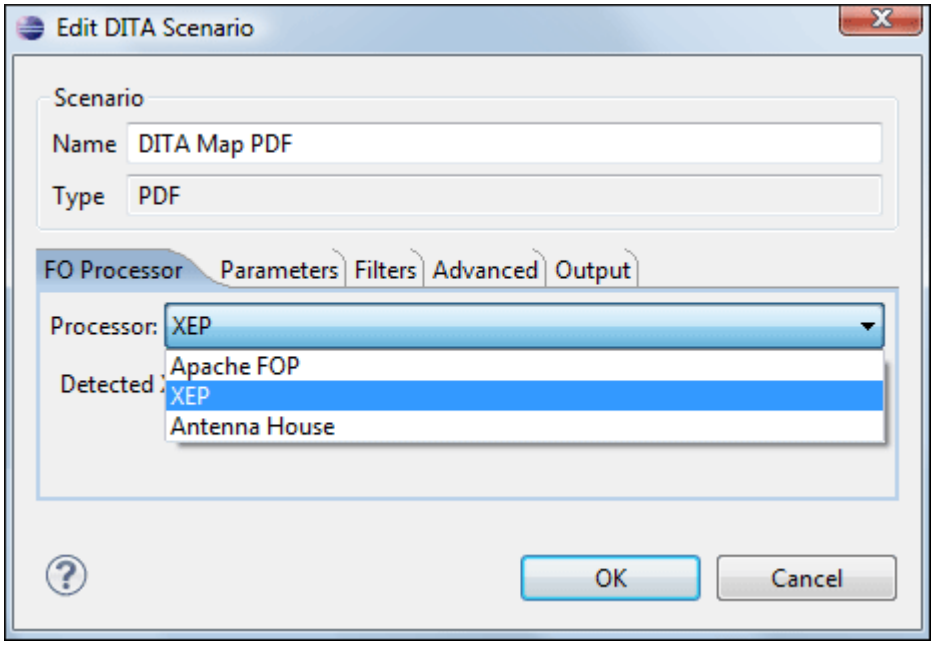
FO Processor Tab (DITA-OT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **FO Processor** tab is available for DITA-OT transformations with a **PDF** output type.

This tab allows you to select an FO Processor to be used for the transformation.

Figure 384. FO Processor Configuration Tab



You can choose one of the following processors:

Apache FOP

The default processor that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

XEP

The RenderX XEP processor. If XEP is already installed, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the detected installation path under the drop-down menu. XEP is considered installed if it was detected in one of the following sources:

- XEP was configured as an external FO Processor in the **FO Processors** option page *(on page 171)*.
- The system property *com.oxygenxml.xep.location* was set to point to the XEP executable file for the platform (for example: `xep.bat` on Windows).
- XEP was installed in the *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/lib` directory of the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation directory.

Antenna House

The Antenna House (AH Formatter) processor. If Antenna House is already installed, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin displays the detected installation path under the drop-down menu. Antenna House is considered installed if it was detected in one of the following sources:

- Environment variable set by Antenna House installation (the newest installation version will be used).
- Antenna House was added as an external FO Processor in the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin preferences pages.

To further customize the PDF output obtained from the Antenna House processor, follow these steps:

1. **Edit** the transformation scenario.
2. Open the **Parameters** tab *(on page 2104)*.
3. Add the `env.AXF_OPT` parameter and point to the Antenna House configuration file.

Related information

FO Processors Preferences *(on page 171)*

XSL-FO (Apache FOP) Processor for Generating PDF Output *(on page 899)*

Parameters Tab (DITA-OT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Parameters** tab allows you to configure the parameters sent to the DITA-OT build file.

The table in this tab displays all the parameters that the DITA-OT documentation specifies as available for each chosen type of transformation (for example, XHTML or PDF), along with their description and current values. You can find more information about each parameter in the DITA-OT Documentation. You can also add, edit, and remove parameters, and you can use the text box to filter or search for a specific term in the entire parameters collection. Note that edited parameters are displayed with their name in bold.

Depending on the type of a parameter, its value can be one of the following:

- A simple text field for simple parameter values.
- A combo box with some predefined values.
- A file chooser and an editor variable *(on page 199)* selector to simplify setting a file path as the value of a parameter.

Note:
To input parameter values at runtime, use the *ask* editor variable *(on page 201)* in the **Value** column.

Below the table, the following actions are available for managing parameters:

New

Opens the **Add Parameter** dialog box that allows you to add a new parameter to the list. You can specify the **Value** of the parameter by using the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button or the **Browse** button.

Unset

Resets the selected parameter to its default value. Available only for edited parameters with set values.

Edit

Opens the **Edit Parameter** dialog box that allows you to change the value of the selected parameter or its description.

Delete

Removes the selected parameter from the list. It is available only for new parameters that have been added to the list.

Parameters Contributed by an Oxygen Publishing Template

Transformation parameters that are defined in an *Oxygen Publishing Template (on page 1181)* descriptor file are displayed in italics. After creating a publishing template *(on page 1188)* and adding it to the templates gallery *(on page 1047)*, when you select the template in the **Templates** tab *(on page 2098)*, the **Parameters** tab will automatically be updated to include the parameters defined in the template descriptor file.

Related Information:
DITA Open Toolkit Documentation

Feedback Tab (DITA-OT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Feedback** tab is for those who want to provide a way for users to offer feedback and ask questions in the published output and it is available for the **DITA Map WebHelp Responsive** transformation type. To add a comments component in the output, you need to use **Oxygen Feedback** to create a site configuration for the website where your WebHelp output is published and use this **Feedback** tab to instruct the transformation to install the comments component at the bottom of each WebHelp page.

When you create a site configuration in the **Oxygen Feedback** administration interface, an HTML fragment is generated during the final step of the creation process. You need to click the **Edit** button at the bottom-right of this tab to open a dialog box where you will paste the generated HTML fragment. The HTML fragment can also be set in an **Oxygen Publishing Template** *(on page 1181)*, either as an HTML fragment extension point *(on page 1001)* or as a transformation parameter *(on page 999)* (the `webhelp.fragment.feedback` parameter). If the fragment is specified in multiple places, the order of precedence (from highest to lowest) is:

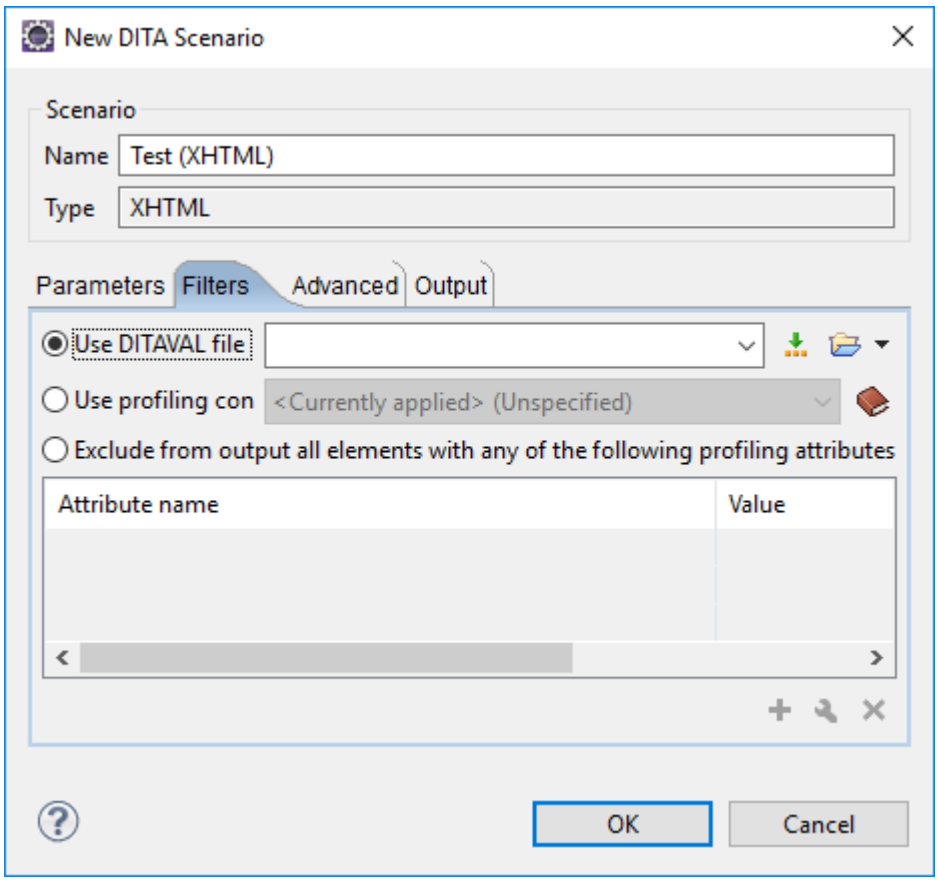
- The fragment specified directly in the **Feedback** tab.
- The fragment specified in a publishing template as an HTML fragment extension point.
- The fragment specified in a publishing template as a transformation parameter.

Filters Tab (DITA Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Filters** tab allows you to add filters to remove certain content elements from the generated output.

Figure 385. Edit Filters Tab



You can choose one of the following options to define filters:

Use DITAVAL file

If you already have a *DITAVAL* file associated with the *DITA map (on page 2230)*, you can specify the file to be used when filtering content. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list. You can find out more about constructing a *DITAVAL* file in the DITA Documentation.

Note:
If a filter file is specified in the `args.filter` parameter (in the **Parameters** tab *(on page 2104)*), the filters are combined (neither file takes precedence over the other).

Use profiling condition set

Sets the profiling condition set *(on page 2134)* that will be applied to your transformation.

Exclude from output all elements with any of the following attributes

By using the **New**, **Edit**, or **Delete** buttons at the bottom of the pane, you can configure a list of attributes (name and value) to exclude all elements that contain any of these attributes from the output.

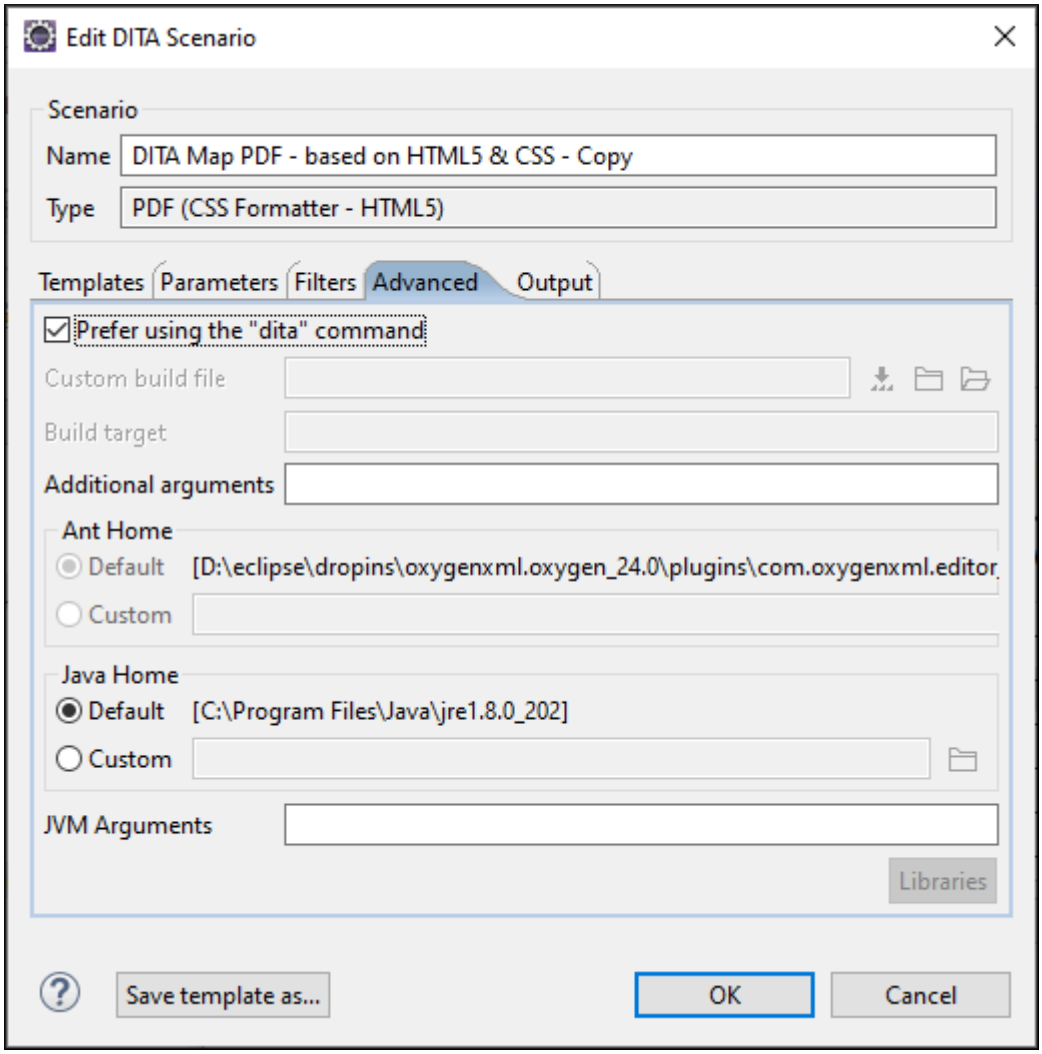
Note:
The colors and styles of the profiled content *(on page 2139)* settings are used for rendering it in **Author** mode but are not applied in the output.

Advanced Tab (DITA-OT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Advanced** tab allows you to specify advanced options for the transformation scenario.

Figure 386. Advanced Settings Tab



You can specify the following options:

Prefer using the "dita" command

When selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will attempt to use the `dita.bat` executable script (`dita.sh` for macOS and Linux) that is bundled with DITA-OT to run the transformation. If not selected, the transformation will run as an ANT process. Also, when this option is selected, other options (**Custom build file**, **Build target**, **Ant Home**) become unavailable. This setting is checked by default in newly created DITA-OT transformation scenario.

Note:
Even when this option is selected, the `dita.bat` (`dita` for macOS and Linux) executable cannot be used in some cases. For example, if the DITA Map is published from a remote location or if the `fix.external.refs` parameter is enabled in the **Parameters** tab, the transformation is started as an ANT process instead of using the executable.

Custom build file

If you use a custom DITA-OT build file, you can specify the path to the customized build file. If empty, the `build.xml` file from the `dita.dir` parameter that is configured in the **Parameters** tab *(on page 2104)* is used. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Build target

Optionally, you can specify a build target for the build file. If no target is specified, the default `init` target is used.

Additional Ant arguments

You can specify additional Ant-specific command-line arguments (such as `-diagnostics`).

Ant Home

You can choose between the default or custom Ant installation to run the transformation.

Java Home

You can choose between the default or custom Java installation to run the transformation. The default path is the Java installation that is used by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Note:
It may be possible that the used Java version is incompatible with the DITA Open Toolkit engine. If you encounter related errors running the transformation, consider installing a Java VM that is supported by the DITA-OT publishing engine and using it in the **Java Home** text field.

JVM Arguments

This parameter allows you to set specific parameters for the Java Virtual Machine used by Ant. When performing a large transformation, you may want to increase the memory allocated to the Java Virtual Machine. This will help avoid *Out of Memory* error messages (**OutOfMemoryError**). For example, if it is set to **-Xmx2g**, the transformation process is allowed to use a maximum 2 gigabytes of memory. If you do not specify an **-Xmx** value in this field, by default, the application will use a maximum of about a quarter of the total memory available on the machine.

Libraries

By default, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin adds libraries (as high priority) that are not transformation-dependent and also patches for certain DITA Open Toolkit bugs. You can use this button to specify additional libraries (*JAR (on page 2231)* files or additional class paths) to be used by the transformer.

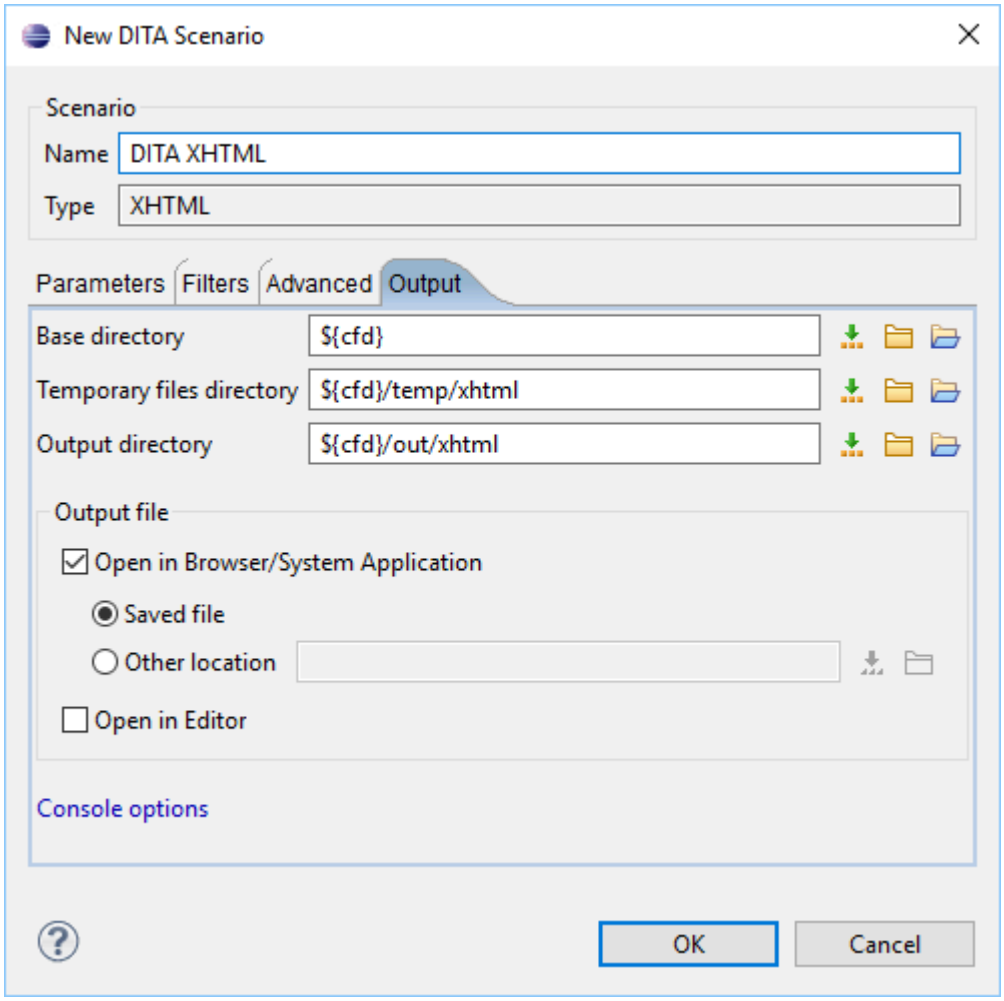
Tip:
You can specify the path to the additional libraries using wildcards (for example, `${oxygenHome}/lib/*.jar`).

Output Tab (DITA-OT Transformations)

When you create a new transformation scenario *(on page 828)* or edit an existing one *(on page 931)*, a configuration dialog box is displayed that allows you to customize the transformation with various options in several tabs.

The **Output** tab allows you to configure options that are related to the location where the output is generated.

Figure 387. Output Settings Tab



You can specify the following parameters:

Base directory

All the relative paths that appear as values in parameters are considered relative to the base directory. The default value is the directory where the transformed map is located. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Temporary files directory

This directory is used to store pre-processed temporary files until the final output is obtained. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Output directory

The folder where the content of the final output is stored. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

> **Note:**
> If the *DITA map (on page 2230)* or topic is opened from a remote location or a ZIP file, the parameters must specify absolute paths.

Open in Browser/System Application

If selected, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin automatically opens the result of the transformation in a system application associated with the file type of the result (for example, in Windows *PDF* files are often opened in *Acrobat Reader*).

> **Note:**
> To set the web browser that is used for displaying HTML/XHTML pages, go to **Window > Preferences > General > Web Browser** and specify it there.
>
> - **Output file** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this button to automatically open the default output file at the end of the transformation.
> - **Other location** - When **Open in Browser/System Application** is selected, you can use this option to open the file specified in this field at the end of the transformation. You can specify the path by using the text field, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the **Browse** button.

Open in editor

When this is option is selected, at the end of the transformation, the default output file is opened in a new editor panel with the appropriate built-in editor type (for example, if the result is an XML file it is opened in the built-in XML editor, or if it is an XSL-FO file it is opened with the built-in FO editor).

Customizing DITA Transformations

You can customize the appearance of any of the output types by customizing the output transformations. There are several ways to do this:

- Most transformations are configurable by passing parameters to the transformation script. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to set parameters *(on page 2104)* on a transformation scenario and you can save and share them with others *(on page 940)*. You can also use the **${ask}** editor variable *(on page 201)* in the **Parameters** tab to instruct Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to prompt you for a particular parameter whenever a transformation scenario is run. You can set up multiple transformation scenarios for a given output type, allowing you to maintain several customized transformation scenarios for multiple types of output configurations.
- If you want to customize an output in a way not supported by the built-in customization options, you can create a modified version of the transformation code and execute it using a custom build file *(on page 2113)*. Sometimes the transformation code exports specific forms of extensions or customizations. You should consult the DITA Open Toolkit for the transformation type that you are interested in to see what customization options are supported.
- You can also write your own transformation code (and execute it using a custom build file *(on page 2113)*) to produce a type of output not supported by the DITA Open Toolkit. You can create Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin transformation scenarios to run these scripts once they are complete.

There are also many other ways to customize specific types of output generated from DITA transformations:

- **WebHelp** - For information about customizing WebHelp output, see the WebHelp Output section *(on page 944)*.
- **PDF** - For information about customizing PDF output generated from DITA content, see XSL FO-based DITA to PDF Customization *(on page 1437)*.

Publishing Customizations

Some customizations (usually for HTML-based output), can be made simply by creating a custom CSS and they do not involve modifying the DITA-OT engine in any way. Instead, most customizations involve adding a new plugin to the DITA-OT. Here are some best practices to follow before beginning your customization:

1. Copy the bundled DITA-OT folder (usually `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR\frameworks\dita\DITA-OT`) to a location where you have full write access so that you have the ability to install new DITA-OT plugins *(on page 2157)*.
2. Go to **Options > Preferences > DITA**, select **Custom** for the **DITA Open Toolkit** option and set the **Location** to be the path to the location where you copied the bundled DITA-OT folder. This will allow you to upgrade the version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin at anytime without affecting the publishing system.
3. Share that external DITA-OT folder with the rest of the team. If you are using a repository (such as Subversion or Git), you can commit the entire modified DITA-OT publishing engine as part of your project. This will allow everyone in your team to use the official changes that you made. This will also allow you to set up some kind of automatic publishing system using an open-source integration server (such as Travis CI or Jenkins).

Customizing XHTML-based Output

XHTML-based output can be modified by using a custom CSS stylesheet to override various styles. If you edit an XHTML transformation scenario *(on page 2096)*, there is a parameter called **args.css** that can be set to point to your custom CSS and a parameter called **args.copy.css** that as long as it is set to **yes**, the CSS is copied to the output folder.

You can also create plugins to customize the XHTML-based output by adding an extra XSLT stylesheet. For for information, see: https://blog.oxygenxml.com/topics/creating-simple-dita-open-toolkit.html. A list with all DITA-OT XSLT extension points can be found here: http://www.dita-ot.org/dev/extension-points/plugin-extension-points-xslt-import.html.

Customizing WebHelp-based Output

The **DITA-OT** that comes bundled in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes specific plugins that provide the ability to publish DITA content to **WebHelp Responsive** *(on page 944)* output.

For information about customizing **WebHelp Responsive** output, see Customizing WebHelp Responsive Output *(on page 1031)*.

Customizing PDF-based Output

DITA to PDF output can be customized either by creating a PDF customization folder (in this case, the DITA-OT folder will not be modified at all) or by creating a PDF customization plugin. For information about customizing DITA to PDF output, see XSL FO-based DITA to PDF Customization *(on page 1437)*.

There is also a book called DITA For Print that contains details about how to customize various aspects.

Customizing PDF Output with CSS

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also includes a transformation scenario called **DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS** *(on page 2086)* that is based on a *DITA-OT CSS-based PDF Publishing plugin* that allows you to convert *DITA maps (on page 2230)* to PDF using a CSS layout processor. For those who are familiar with CSS, this makes it very easy to style and customize the PDF output of your DITA projects without having to work with *xsl:fo* customizations. For more information about customizing PDF output using this transformation scenario, see Customization CSS *(on page 1193)*.

Related Information:
DITA Open Toolkit Documentation

Using a Custom Build File

You can use a *Custom Build File* to customize transformation scenarios.

To use a custom build file in a DITA-OT transformation, follow these steps:

1. Use the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** action to open the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.
2. Select the transformation scenario and click **Edit**.
3. Go to the **Advanced** *(on page 2107)* tab and change the **Custom build file** path to point to the custom build file.

As an example, if you want to call a custom script before running the DITA-OT, your custom build file would have the following content:

```
<project basedir="." default="dist">
<!--The DITA-OT default build file-->
 <import file="build.xml"/>
 <target name="dist">
  <!-- You could run your script here -->
  <!--<exec></exec>-->
   <!--Call the DITA-OT default target-->
   <antcall target="init"/>
 </target>
</project>
```

Note:
If you use the built-in Ant 1.10.9 build tool that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, it is located in the *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/tools/ant` directory. Any additional libraries for Ant must be copied to the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin Ant `lib` directory.

Adding a Watermark in DITA Map to XHTML Output

To add a watermark to the XHTML output of a *DITA map (on page 2230)* transformation, follow these steps:

1. Create a custom CSS stylesheet that includes the watermark image, as in the following example:

   ```
   body {
    background-image: url(MyWatermarkImage.png);
   }
   ```

2. Edit a **DITA Map XHTML** transformation scenario and in the **Parameters** tab set the value of the `args.css` parameter as the path to your watermark image.
3. Set the value of the `args.copycss` parameter to **yes**.
4. Apply the transformation scenario.
5. Copy the watermark image in the output directory of the transformation scenario, next to the CSS file created in step 1.

Related Information:
Adding a Watermark to PDF Output *(on page 1441)*

How to Add Syntax Highlights for Codeblocks in the Output

Syntax Highlighting makes it easier to read the semantics of the structured content by displaying each type of code (language) in different colors and fonts. The application provides the ability to add syntax highlights in codeblocks for DITA to PDF or HTML-based output through the use of the `@outputclass` attribute and a variety of predefined values are available.

To provide syntax highlighting in the codeblocks that appear in the output, add the `@outputclass` attribute on the `<codeblock>` element and set its value to one of the predefined language values. The **Content Completion Assistant** offers a list of the possible values when adding the `@outputclass` attribute in **Text** mode but there are also two simple ways to set the value in **Author** mode:

- Select the `<codeblock>` element in the editor and in the **Attributes** view, click on the **Value** cell for the `@outputclass` attribute and select one of the predefined values (for example, `language-xml`).
- Select the `<codeblock>` element in the editor and use the **Alt + Enter** keyboard shortcut to open the in-place attributes editor window. Then select one of the predefined values from the **Value** drop-down menu.

The predefined values that can be selected are:

- language-json
- language-yaml
- language-xml
- language-bourne
- language-c
- language-cmd
- language-cpp
- language-csharp
- language-css
- language-dtd
- language-ini
- language-java
- language-javascript
- language-lua
- language-perl
- language-powershell
- language-php
- language-python
- language-ruby

- language-sql
- language-xquery

Attention:
It is recommended that you do not add inline elements in the codeblocks when using this `@outputclass` attribute, as it may lead to improper highlighting.

Tip:
Starting with version 24.0, the language values can also be set without using the `language-` prefix.

Example:

The following codeblock with the `@outputclass` set as `language-css`:

```
<codeblock outputclass="language-css" id="codeblock_1">@page preface-page {
 background-color:silver;
 @top-center{
  content: "Custom Preface Header";
 }
}
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][@topicrefclass ~= "bookmap/preface"] {
 page: preface-page;
}</codeblock>
```

would like this in WebHelp output:

```
@page preface-page {
 background-color:silver;
 @top-center{
  content: "Custom Preface Header";
 }
}
*[class ~= "topic/topic"][@topicrefclass ~= "bookmap/preface"] {
 page: preface-page;
}
```

Publishing with a DITA-OT Project File

The *DITA Open Toolkit* project file allows you to define all your DITA map input and filter pairs and to produce the desired output formats by applying the publishing engine over this single project file: https://www.dita-ot.org/dev/topics/using-project-files.html.

Once a DITA-OT project file is opened in the application, two predefined publishing scenarios become available in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*:

- **Publish DITA-OT Project (all deliverables)** - Runs the publishing engine and produces output for all deliverables defined in the project file.
- **Publish DITA-OT Project (select deliverable)** - Runs the publishing engine and produces output for only one deliverable specified by the end-user.

Some of the allowed transformation parameters that are relevant to the DITA-OT project file include:

- **project.file** - Specifies the path to the project file.
- **dita-ot.dir** - Specifies the directory where DITA-OT, used in transformation is installed.
- **additional.args** - Specifies the additional arguments used in transformation.
- **deliverable.id** - Specifies the id of the deliverable. This parameter is only available in the **Publish DITA-OT Project (select deliverable)** transformation.
- **jvm.args** - Specifies the JVM arguments used by the transformation for each deliverable. This can be used to increase the memory allocation used by the transformation.

  Example: To set the JVM memory allocation to 5 GB for publishing deliverables, append the following value to the existing ones:

  ```
  -Xmx5G
  ```

  If the "pdf-css-html5" (based on Chemistry PDF CSS processor) deliverable publication fails with an Out Of Memory Error, try appending the `baseJVMArgLine` parameter to the "jvm.args" parameter value. For example:

  ```
  -DbaseJVMArgLine=-Xmx5G
  ```

Tip:

When a DITA-OT project file is open in **Author** mode, there is a play button ( ) next to the project file name. You can use this button to publish all deliverables specified in the file. While the transformation is running, the button turns into a stop button in case you need to terminate the process.

During the publishing processing, whenever **WebHelp** and **PDF** final outputs are generated, the generated documents are opened in the corresponding application (e.g. web browser, PDF reader). This feature can be inhibited by editing the transformation scenario and deselecting the **In System Application** checkbox in the **Output** tab.

Related Information:

DITA Open Toolkit Project *(on page 2163)*

Dynamic Word, Excel, OpenAPI, HTML, Markdown to DITA Conversion

The publishing engine has support to dynamically convert various types of non-DITA resources to DITA while publishing. This support also enables the dynamically converted document titles for the non-DITA resources that are referenced in a DITA map to be displayed as the title of the resource in the **DITA Maps Manager**.

Attention:
These features are available with no restrictions when the publishing process is done using the default publishing engine that is bundled in **Oxygen XML Editor/Author** or if you have integrated the DITA-OT dynamic converter plugin into a custom DITA-OT distribution. However, if the publishing process is done from a command line, this feature requires an **Oxygen Publishing Engine** license.

To enable this support for a particular resource that is referenced in a DITA map, you must specify one of the following values for the `@format` attribute on the `<topicref>` element:

Word to DITA (`word-to-dita`)

Microsoft Word documents that are referenced in the DITA map using the `word-to-dita` value for the `@format` attribute get dynamically converted to DITA topics during publishing. Image references and internal links are preserved.

Example:

```
<topicref href="sample.docx" format="word-to-dita"/>
```

Excel to DITA (`excel-to-dita`)

Microsoft Excel documents that are referenced in the DITA map using the `excel-to-dita` value for the `@format` attribute get dynamically converted to DITA topics that contain one or more tables during publishing.

Example:

```
<topicref href="sample.xlsx" format="excel-to-dita"/>
```

OpenAPI to DITA (`openapi-to-dita`)

OpenAPI documents (versions 2.0, 3.0, or 3.1) in JSON or YAML format that are referenced in the DITA map using the `openapi-to-dita` value for the `@format` attribute get dynamically converted to DITA topics during publishing.

Example:

```
<topicref href="openapi.json" format="openapi-to-dita"/>
<topicref href="openapi.yaml" format="openapi-to-dita"/>
```

HTML to DITA (`html-to-dita`)

HTML documents that are referenced in the DITA map using the `html-to-dita` value for the `@format` attribute get dynamically converted to DITA topics during publishing.

Example:

```
<topicref href="sample.html" format="html-to-dita"/>
```

Markdown to DITA (`markdown`)

Markdown documents that are referenced in the DITA map using the `markdown` value for the `@format` attribute get dynamically converted to DITA topics during publishing using the support for Markdown bundled with the publishing engine by default.

Example:

```
<topicref href="sample.md" format="markdown"/>
```

Markdown to DITA (`markdown-to-dita`)

Markdown documents that are referenced in the DITA map using the `markdown-to-dita` value for the `@format` attribute get dynamically converted to DITA topics during publishing using the special conversion plugin provided by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. The `markdown-to-dita` format conversion is more flexible that the built-in `markdown` conversion, allowing the conversion of Markdown documents that do not have consistent heading levels.

Example:

```
<topicref href="sample.md" format="markdown-to-dita"/>
```

Resources

For more information about working with DITA-compatible resources, see the following resources:

- Video: **Integrating REST-API Content into DITA Documentation in Oxygen**
- Webinar: **Integrating Various Document Formats (OpenAPI, Word, Markdown, HTML, Excel) into DITA Documentation**

Troubleshooting DITA Transformation Problems

This section contains some topics to help you troubleshoot DITA transformation issues.

DITA Map Transformation Fails (Cannot Connect to External Location)

Problem

DITA map (on page 2230) transformation fails because it cannot connect to an external location.

Solution

The transformation is run as an external Ant process so you can continue using the application as the transformation unfolds. All output from the process appears in the **DITA Transformation** tab.

The HTTP proxy settings are used for the Ant transformation, so if the transformation fails because it cannot connect to an external location, you can check the Network Connections.

DITA Map WebHelp Transformation Fails (Duplicate Topic References Found)

Problem

DITA Map WebHelp transformation fails with a message that indicates duplicate topic references were found.

Cause

By default the WebHelp transformation uses the `force-unique` parameter set to **true** to force the transformation to create unique output files for each instance of a resource when a map contains multiple references to a single topic. However, there are cases when this feature does not work as expected and the duplicate topic references are not handled properly.

Solution

To solve this issue, you should manually set a unique `@copy-to` attribute on any duplicate topic reference that was not handled automatically by DITA-OT:

```
<map>
...
  <topicref href="../topics/MyTopic.dita"/>
...
  <topicref href="../topics/MyTopic.dita" copy-to="../topics/MyTopic-2.dita"/>
</map>
```

DITA-OT Transformation Takes a Long Time to Process

Problem

A DITA transformation takes an extremely long time to process (over an hour, for example).

Cause

Large delays in DITA-OT processing are usually caused by intensive disk operations, CPU usage, or connections to remote websites. The DITA-OT processing is very disk-intensive, each stage takes the entire content from the transformation temporary files folder, reads it, modifies it, and then writes it back.

Solution

There are several things you can try to troubleshoot this problem:

- If you are using a shared or remote drive, it is recommended to specify a local drive for the output and temporary files directory (edit the transformation scenario and in the **Output** tab, select a local directory for **Temporary files directory** and **Output directory**).
- If you want to test if the publishing has a problem downloading remote resources, you could disable the network adapter on the computer and then try to publish. The purpose is to see if the publishing finishes without any reported error about obtaining a certain HTTP resource.

- Using DTDs instead of XML Schemas is faster. This is because of a default transformation parameter called `args.grammar.cache` that only works for DTD-based DITA topics.
- You can increase the memory available to Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *(on page 1848)*. Sometimes, just increasing the amount of memory available to the DITA-OT process may be enough to lower the time necessary for the publishing to run.
- You can enable some logging to help you determine which stage in the process is taking a long time. Edit the transformation scenario and in the **Advanced** tab, enter **logger org.apache.tools.ant.listener.ProfileLogger** in the **Additional arguments** field. Then go to **Options > Preferences > DITA > Logging** and select **Always** for the **Show console output** option.
- You could try disabling antivirus applications since the publishing process is very disk intensive and certain antivirus application might slow down the process.
- If the published DITA map is part of a larger DITA project with lots of maps and topics, references from topics in the current map to topics in other sub-projects might result in problems resolving those references. You could look in the output folder to see if the number of HTML documents match the number of DITA topics in your map.

DITA PDF Transformation Fails

Problem

The DITA to PDF transformation fails.

Cause

To generate the PDF output, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses the DITA Open Toolkit. This process sometimes results in errors. For information about some of the most common errors, see DITA PDF Processing Common Errors *(on page 2122)*.

Solution

If your transformation fails, you can detect some of the problems that caused the errors by running the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)*. Depending on the options you select when you run it, this action reports errors such as topics referenced in other topics but not in the *DITA map (on page 2230)*, broken links, and missing external resources.

You can analyze the **Results** tab of the DITA transformation and search for messages that contain text similar to `[fop] [ERROR]`. If you encounter this type of error message, edit the transformation scenario you are using and set the **clean.temp** parameter to **no** and the **retain.topic.fo** parameter to **yes**. Run the transformation, go to the temporary directory of the transformation, open the `topic.fo` file and go to the line indicated by the error. Depending on the XSL FO context try to find the DITA topic that contains the text that generates the error.

If none of the above methods helps you, go to **Help > About > Components > Frameworks** and check what version of the DITA Open Toolkit you are using. Copy the whole output from the DITA-OT console output and either report the problem on the DITA User List or send it to support@oxygenxml.com.

Related Information:

How to Enable Debugging for FO Processor Transformations *(on page 903)*

DITA PDF Processing Common Errors

There are cases when the PDF processing fails when trying to publish DITA content to a PDF file. This topic lists some of the common problems and possible solutions.

Problem: Cannot Save PDF

The FO processor cannot save the PDF at the specified target. The console output contains messages like this:

```
[fop] [ERROR] Anttask - Error rendering fo file:
C:\samples\dita\temp\pdf\oxygen_dita_temp\topic.fo
<Failed to open C:\samples\dita\out\pdf\test.pdf>
Failed to open samples\dita\out\pdf\test.pdf
.............
[fop] Caused by: java.io.FileNotFoundException:
C:\Users\default\Desktop\bev\out\pdf\test.pdf
(The process cannot access the file because it is being used by another process)
```

Solution: Cannot Save PDF

Such an error message usually means that the PDF file is already opened in a PDF reader application. The solution is to close the open PDF before running the transformation.

Problem: Table Contains More Cells Than Defined in Colspec

One of the DITA tables contains more cells in a table row than the defined number of `<colspec>` elements. The console output contains messages like this:

```
[fop] [ERROR] Anttask - Error rendering fo file:
D:\projects\eXml\samples\dita\flowers\temp\pdf\oxygen_dita_temp\topic.fo
<net.sf.saxon.trans.XPathException: org.apache.fop.fo.ValidationException:
The column-number or number of cells in the row overflows the number of
fo:table-columns specified for the table.
(See position 179:-1)>net.sf.saxon.trans.XPathException:
org.apache.fop.fo.ValidationException: The column-number or number of cells
in the row overflows the number of fo:table-columns specified for the table.
(See position 179:-1)
[fop]     at org.apache.fop.tools.anttasks.FOPTaskStarter.renderInputHandler
(Fop.java:657)
[fop]     at net.sf.saxon.event.ContentHandlerProxy.startContent
(ContentHandlerProxy.java:375)
............
```

```
[fop] D:\projects\samples\dita\flowers\temp\pdf\oxygen_dita_temp\topic.fo ->

D:\projects\samples\dita\flowers\out\pdf\flowers.pdf
```

Solution: Table Contains More Cells Than Defined in Colspec

To resolve this issue, correct the `@colspec` attribute on the table that caused the issue. To locate the table that caused the issue:

1. Edit the transformation scenario and set the parameter `clean.temp` to `no`.
2. Run the transformation, open the `topic.fo` file in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, and look in it at the line specified in the error message `(See position 179:-1)`.
3. Look around that line in the `XSL-FO` file to find relevant text content that you can use (for example, with the **Find/Replace in Files** action in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*) to find the original DITA topic where the table was generated.

Problem: Broken Link

There is a broken link in the generated `XSL-FO` file. The PDF is generated but contains a link that is not working. The console output contains messages like this:

```
[fop] 1248 WARN [ main ] org.apache.fop.apps.FOUserAgent -

Page 6: Unresolved ID reference "unique_4_Connect_42_wrongID" found.
```

Solution: Broken Link

To resolve this issue:

1. Use the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action available in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* to find such problems.
2. If you publish to PDF using a *DITAVAL* filter, select the same DITAVAL file in the **DITA Map Completeness Check** dialog box.
3. If the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action does not discover any issues, edit the transformation scenario and set the `clean.temp` parameter to `no`.
4. Run the transformation, open the `topic.fo` file in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, and search for the *unresolved ID references* (for example: `unique_4_Connect_42_wrongID`).
5. Look in the `XSL-FO` file to find relevant text content that you can use (for example, with the **Find/Replace in Files** action in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*) to find the original DITA topic where the table was generated.

Related Information:

How to Enable Debugging for FO Processor Transformations *(on page 903)*

DITA to CHM Transformation Fails - Cannot Open File

Problem

The DITA to CHM transformation fails with the following error: `[exec] HHC5010: Error: Cannot open "fileName.chm". Compilation stopped.`

Cause

This error occurs when the CHM output file is opened and the transformation scenario cannot rewrite its content.

Solution

To solve this issue, close the CHM help file and run the transformation scenario again.

Tip:
It is a good practice to validate the *DITA map (on page 2230)* before executing the transformation scenario. To do so, run the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)*. Depending on the selected options, it will report detected errors, such as topics referenced in other topics (but not in the *DITA map*), broken links, and missing external resources.

Related Information:
DITA Map CHM (Compiled HTML Help) Transformation *(on page 2090)*

DITA to CHM Transformation Fails - Compilation Failed

Problem

The DITA to CHM transformation fails with the following error: `[exec] HHC5003: Error: Compilation failed while compiling fileName`.

Cause 1

One possible cause for this error is that the processed file does not exist.

Solution 1

To solve this issue, fix the file reference before executing the transformation scenario again.

Cause 2

Another possible cause for this error is that the processed file has a name that contains space characters.

Solution 2

To solve the issue, remove any spacing from the file name and run the transformation scenario again.

Tip:
It is a good practice to validate the *DITA map (on page 2230)* before executing the transformation scenario. To do so, run the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action *(on page 1926)*. Depending on the selected options, it will report detected errors, such as topics referenced in other topics (but not in the *DITA map*), broken links, and missing external resources.

Related Information:
DITA Map CHM (Compiled HTML Help) Transformation *(on page 2090)*

Solving DITA Transformation Errors

If a DITA transformation results in errors or warnings, the information is displayed in the message panel at the bottom of the editor. The information includes the severity, description of the problem, the name of the resource, and the path of the resource.

To help prevent and solve DITA transformation problems, follow these steps:

1. Validate the *DITA map (on page 1926)* by using the **Validate and Check for Completeness** action that is available on the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar and in the **DITA Maps** menu.
2. If this action results in validation errors, solve them prior to executing the transformation. Also, you should pay attention to the warning messages because they may identify problems in the transformation.
3. Run the DITA transformation scenario *(on page 854)*.
4. If the transformation results in errors or warnings, they are displayed in the **Results** panel *(on page 310)* at the bottom of the editor. The following information is presented to help you troubleshoot the problems:
    - **Severity** - The first column displays the following icons that indicate the severity of the problem:
        - **Informational** - The transformation encountered a condition of which you should be aware.
        - **Warning** - The transformation encountered a problem that should be corrected.
        - **Error** - The transformation encountered a more severe problem, and the output is affected or cannot be generated.
    - **Info** - Click the **See More** icon to open a web page that contains more details about DITA-OT error messages.
    - **Description** - A description of the problem.
    - **Resource** - The name of the transformation resource.
    - **System ID** - The path of the transformation resource.
5. Use this information or other resources from the online DITA-OT community to solve the transformation problems before re-executing the transformation scenario.
6. If you need to contact the *Oxygen* technical support team, they will need you to send the entire transformation scenario execution log. To obtain it:

a. Go to the **Options > Preferences > DITA** preferences page and set the **Show console output** option to **Always**.
b. Execute the transformation scenario again. The console output messages are displayed in the **DITA-OT** view.
c. Copy the entire log, save it in a text file, then send it to the *Oxygen* technical support team.
d. After your issue has been solved, go back to the **Options > Preferences > DITA** preferences page and set the **Show console output** option to **When build fails**.

Related Information:
Troubleshooting DITA Transformation Problems *(on page 2119)*

DITA Profiling / Conditional Text

DITA offers support for conditionally profiling content by using profiling attributes. With Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, you can define values for the DITA profiling attributes and they can be easily managed to filter content in the published output. You can switch between profile sets to see how the edited content looks like before publishing.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a **Attributes and Condition Sets** preferences page *(on page 137)* where you can create and manage profiling attributes and condition sets. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also offers convenient support for customizing and controlling profiling attribute values with a subject scheme *(on page 2143)* or DITAVAL file *(on page 2148)*.

Profiling Attributes

You can profile content elements or map elements by adding one or more of the default DITA profiling attributes (`@product`, `@platform`, `@audience`, `@rev`, `@props`, and `@otherprops`). You can also create your own custom profiling attributes and profiling condition sets. The profiling attributes may contain one or more tokens that represent conditions to be applied to the content when a publication is built.

For example, you could define a section of a topic that would only be included for a publication related to the Windows platform by adding the `@platform` profiling attribute:

```
<section platform="windows">
```

For information about creating and editing profiling attributes, see Creating and Editing Profiling Attributes in DITA *(on page 2127)*.

If you want to filter content based on other DITA XML attributes like `@xml:lang`, `@importance` or `@status`, using a DITAVAL filter file does not work by default to filter or flag content based on these non-profiling attributes but the publishing engine has a special configuration file where changes can be made to accommodate this.

Example of a line added in the `configuration.properties` file that adds support to filter based on the `@xml:lang`, `@importance` and `@status` attributes:

```
filter-attributes = {http://www.w3.org/XML/1998/namespace}lang, importance, status
```

Profiling Conditions

DITA allows you to conditionally profile parts of a topic so that certain parts of the topic are displayed when certain profiling conditions are set. Profiling conditions can be set both within topics and in maps. When set in a topic, they allow you to suppress an element (such as paragraph), step in a procedure, item in a list, or even a phrase within a sentence. When set in a map, they allow you to suppress an entire topic or group of topics. You can then create a variety of publications from a single map by applying profiling conditions to the build.

For information about creating and editing condition sets, see Creating and Editing Profiling Condition Sets in DITA *(on page 2132)* .

Resources

For more information about DITA profiling, see the following resources:

- **Webinar: Working with DITA in Oxygen - Basic Profiling and Reuse Strategies**
- **Webinar: Working with DITA in Oxygen - Advanced Profiling and Reuse Strategies**

Creating and Editing Profiling Attributes in DITA

You can filter DITA content or the structure of a document by using profiling attributes or profiling conditions sets *(on page 2132)*.

Defining Profiling Attributes for DITA Content

To create or edit profiling attributes for filtering DITA content, follow these steps:

1. If you are creating a new attribute, make sure the attribute is already defined in the document DTD or schema before continuing with the procedure.

   > **Tip:**
   > For less technical users who do not want to create attribute specializations in DTD/XML Schema, you may want to use profiling attribute groups *(on page 2141)* instead (use an existing profiling attribute with sub-attributes).

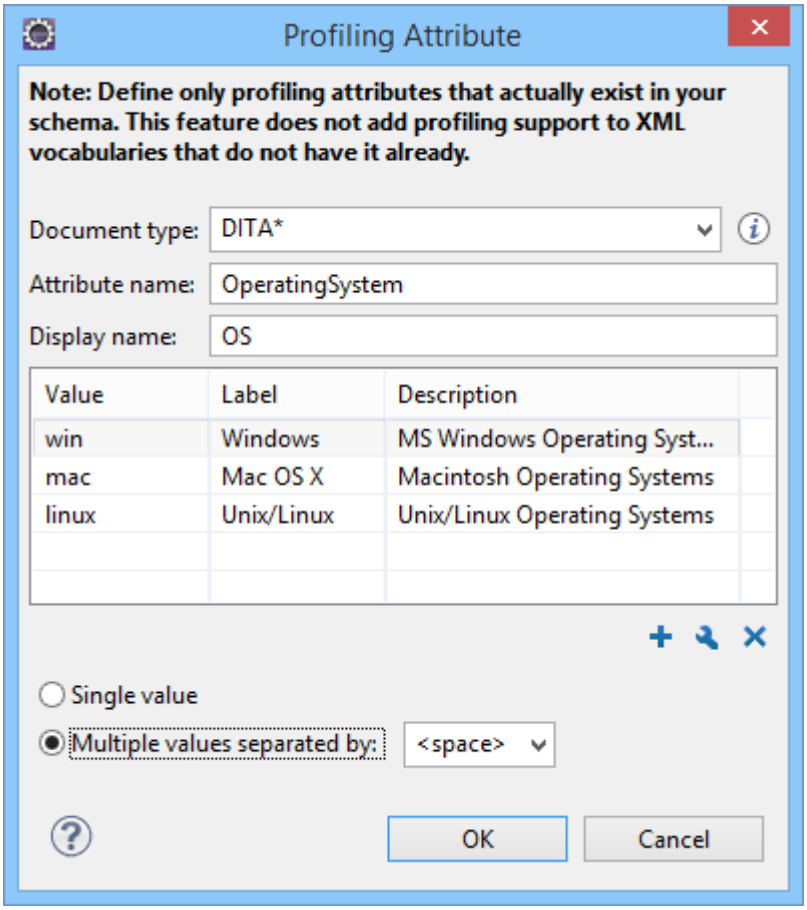
2. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author > Profiling / Conditional Text > Attributes and Condition Sets**.

   > **Information:**
   > The **Profiling Attributes** section *(on page 138)* is used to define the attributes and their values. For DITA documents, the default attributes are included (`@audience`, `@platform`, `@product`, `@props`, `@otherprops`, and `@rev`), but if a *Subject Scheme Map (on page 2143)* is used for profiling your content, you will see the attributes defined in your *subject scheme map* instead.

3. To add new attributes and values, click the **New** button at the bottom of the **Profiling Attributes** table. To customize existing attributes and their values, select an attribute and click the **Edit** button.

   Step Result: In either case, this opens a **Profiling Attribute** configuration dialog box where you can define attributes that exist in your schema.

Figure 388. Profiling Attribute Dialog Box



The following options are available in this dialog box:

Document type

Select the document type (*framework (on page 2231)*).

> **Tip:**
> You can use the `*` or `?` wildcards in this combo box. For example, `DITA*` would match any document type that starts with *"DITA"*. You can also specify multiple document types by using commas to separate them.

Attribute name

The name of the profiling attribute.

Display name

This optional field is used for descriptive rendering in profiling dialog boxes.

Attribute Values Table

This table displays information about the values for the profiling attribute. You can configure them by using the buttons at the bottom of the table (**New**, **Edit**, **Delete**).

The columns are as follows:

- **Value** - The attribute value. You can also define profiling attribute groups using the following format: `ParentAttrValue(SubAttrValue1 SubAttrValue2)`. For more information, see Conditional Profiling Attribute Groups *(on page 2141)*.
- **Label** - You can specify a label for the attribute value that will be rendered as its name in various components in **Author** mode (**Edit Profiling Attributes** dialog box *(on page 2130)*, **Condition Set** dialog box *(on page 2132)*, **Profiling** tab in the **Edit Properties** dialog box *(on page 1922)*, **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*). If the **Label** is not specified, the **Value** will be used as its rendered name.
- **Description** - A description for the attribute value that will be displayed in this table.

Single value

Select this option if you want the attribute to only accept a single value.

Multiple values separated by

Select this option if you want the attribute to accept multiple values, and you can choose the type of delimiter to use. You can choose between *space*, *comma*, and *semicolon*, or you can enter a custom delimiter in the text field. A custom delimiter must be supported by the specified document type. For example, the DITA document type only accepts spaces as delimiters for attribute values.

4. After defining or configuring the attributes and their values according to your needs, click **OK** to confirm your selections and close the **Profiling Attributes** configuration dialog box.
5. Click **Apply** to save the changes.

Result: You should see your changes in the **Profiling Attribute** table.

You can also use the **Profiling Condition Sets** section to apply more complex filters on your DITA content.

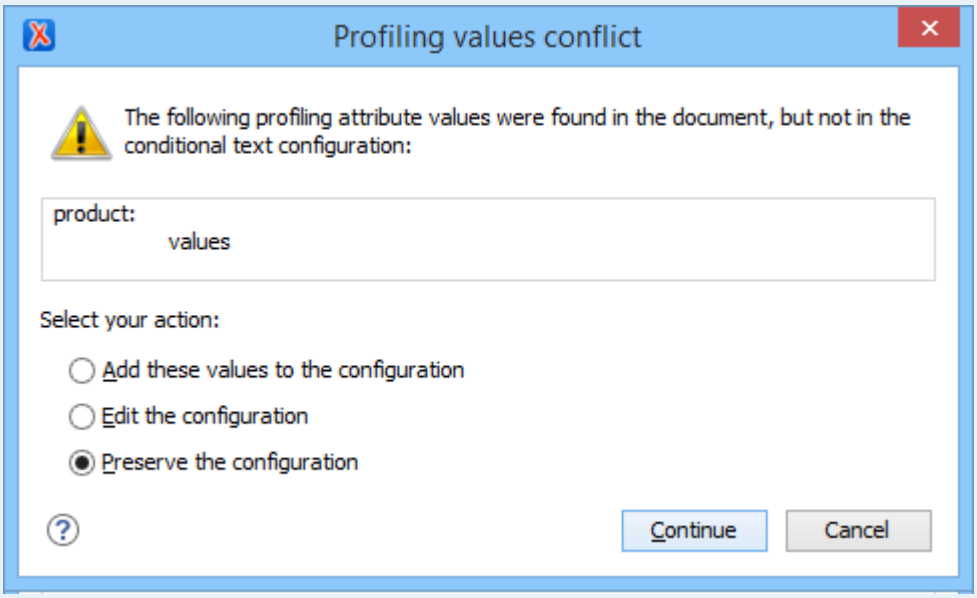
Adding Profiling Attribute Values Directly in a Document

You can add values directly to the existing profiling attributes in a document using the In-Place Attributes Editor *(on page 362)* in **Author** mode, the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)*, or in the source code in **Text** mode. However, this just adds them to the document and does not change the conditional text configuration. If you invoke the **Edit Profiling Attributes** action (from the contextual menu in **Author** mode) on the new value, the **Profiling Values Conflict** dialog box will appear and it includes an **Add these values to the configuration** action that will automatically add the new value to the particular profiling attribute. It also includes an **Edit the configuration** action that opens the **Attributes and Condition Sets** preferences page *(on page 137)* where you can edit the profiling configuration.

Note:

If the **Allow contributing extra profiling attribute values** option *(on page 138)* is not selected in the **Attributes and Condition Sets** preferences page, the **Profiling Values Conflict** dialog box will never appear, so this automatically adding value not be possible.

Figure 389. Profiling Values Conflict Dialog Box



Related Information:

Applying Profiling Attributes in DITA *(on page 2130)*
Creating and Editing Profiling Condition Sets in DITA *(on page 2132)*
Applying Profiling Condition Sets in DITA *(on page 2134)*
Showing and Filtering Profiled Content in DITA *(on page 2136)*
Customizing Colors and Styles for Rendering Profiling in Author Mode *(on page 2139)*
Conditional Profiling Attribute Groups *(on page 2141)*
Filtering Profiling Values with a DITAVAL File *(on page 2148)*

Applying Profiling Attributes in DITA

Profiling attributes are applied on element nodes. You can apply profiling attributes on a text fragment (it will automatically be wrapped into a phrase-type element), on a single element, or on multiple elements at the same time. If there is no selection in your document, the profiling attributes are applied on the element at the cursor position.

You can apply defined DITA profiling attributes *(on page 2127)* as follows:

DITA Topics

To profile DITA topics, right-click a topic reference in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, select **Edit Properties** from the contextual menu, go to the **Profiling** tab, and select the appropriate values.

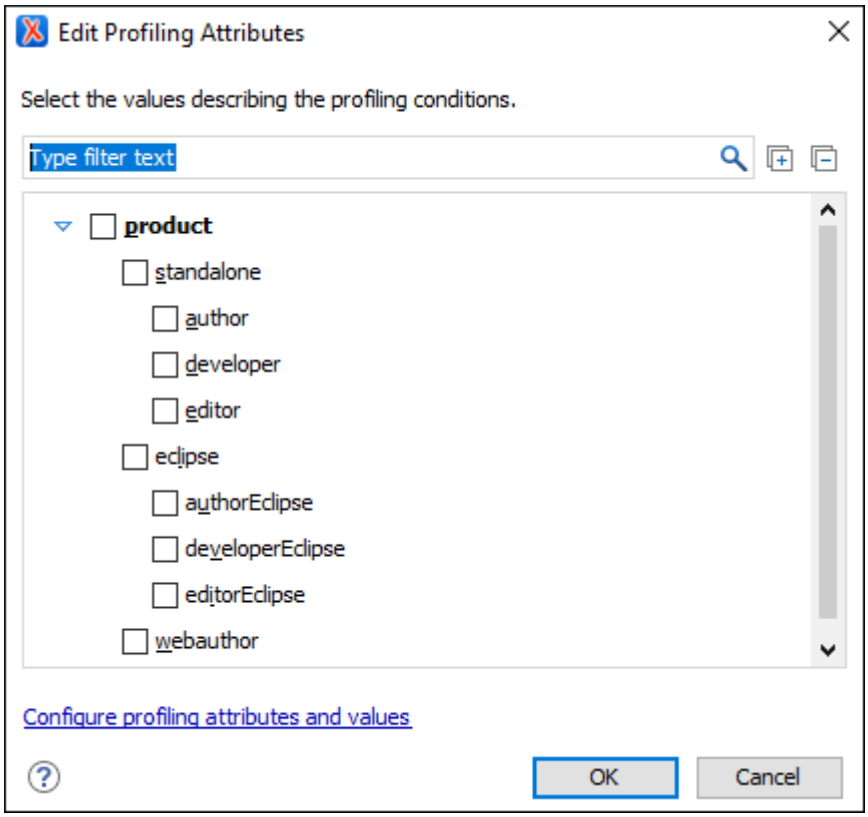
DITA Content

To profile DITA content in **Author** mode, highlight the content and select **Edit Profiling Attributes** from the contextual menu and select the appropriate values in the **Edit Profiling Attributes** dialog box.

DITA Elements

To profile specific XML elements in **Author** mode, position the cursor inside the element, right-click, select **Edit Profiling Attributes** (you can also right-click the element in the *breadcrumb (on page 355)* or **Outline** *(on page 301)* view), and select the appropriate values in the **Edit Profiling Attributes** dialog box. You can also use the **Attributes** view *(on page 381)* to set the profiling attributes on the element at the current cursor position.

Figure 390. Edit Profiling Attributes Dialog Box



The profiling attributes, and their potential values, that appear in this dialog box depend on what has been configured in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. If you have a large list of profiling attributes, you can use the text filter field to search for attributes or values, and you can expand or collapse attributes by using the **Expand All**/**Collapse All** buttons to the right of the text filter or the arrow button to the left of the profiling attribute name.

The attributes and values that appear in the dialog box are determined as follows:

- If your *root map (on page 2234)* references a DITA *subject scheme map (on page 2234)* that defines values for the profiling attributes *(on page 2143)*, those values are used. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin collects all the profiling values from the *subject scheme map* that is referenced in the map that is currently opened in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* (or set as the *root map (on page 1897)*).

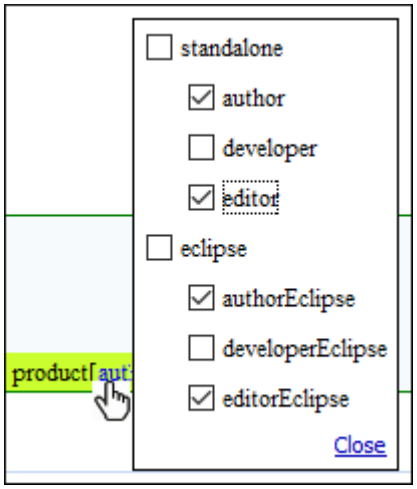
In the image above *(on page 2131)* (taken from the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin documentation project), you see values for eight products. They are the only values that are defined in the *subject scheme map* and thus, are the only ones that appear in the dialog box.

- If you have defined profiling attribute values *(on page 2127)* for the DITA document type in the **Attributes and Condition Sets** preferences page *(on page 137)*, those values are displayed in the dialog box.
- Otherwise, a generic default set of profiling attributes and values are available.

The attribute names and values selected in the **Edit Profiling Attributes** dialog box are set on the elements contained in the profiled fragment. If you only select a fragment of content (rather than the entire element), this fragment is wrapped in phrase-type elements where the profiling attributes are set.

If the **Show Profiling Attributes** option *(on page 429)* (available in the **Profiling / Conditional Text** toolbar menu) is selected, a green border is painted around profiled text in the **Author** mode and all profiling attributes set on the current element are listed at the end of the highlighted block. To edit the attributes of a profiled fragment, click one of the listed attribute values. A form control pops up and allows you to add or remove attribute values.

Figure 391. Profiling Attribute Value Form Control Pop Up



Related Information:

Creating and Editing Profiling Attributes in DITA *(on page 2127)*
Creating and Editing Profiling Condition Sets in DITA *(on page 2132)*
Applying Profiling Condition Sets in DITA *(on page 2134)*
Showing and Filtering Profiled Content in DITA *(on page 2136)*
Customizing Colors and Styles for Rendering Profiling in Author Mode *(on page 2139)*

Creating and Editing Profiling Condition Sets in DITA

Multiple profiling attributes can be aggregated into a profiling condition set that allows you to apply more complex filters on the document content. In DITA, profiling conditions can be set within both topics and in maps. When set in a topic, you can filter an element (such as paragraph), step in a procedure, item in a list, or even a phrase within a sentence. When set in a map, you can filter an entire topic or group of topics.

Creating Profiling Condition Sets

To create a new profiling condition set, follow these steps:

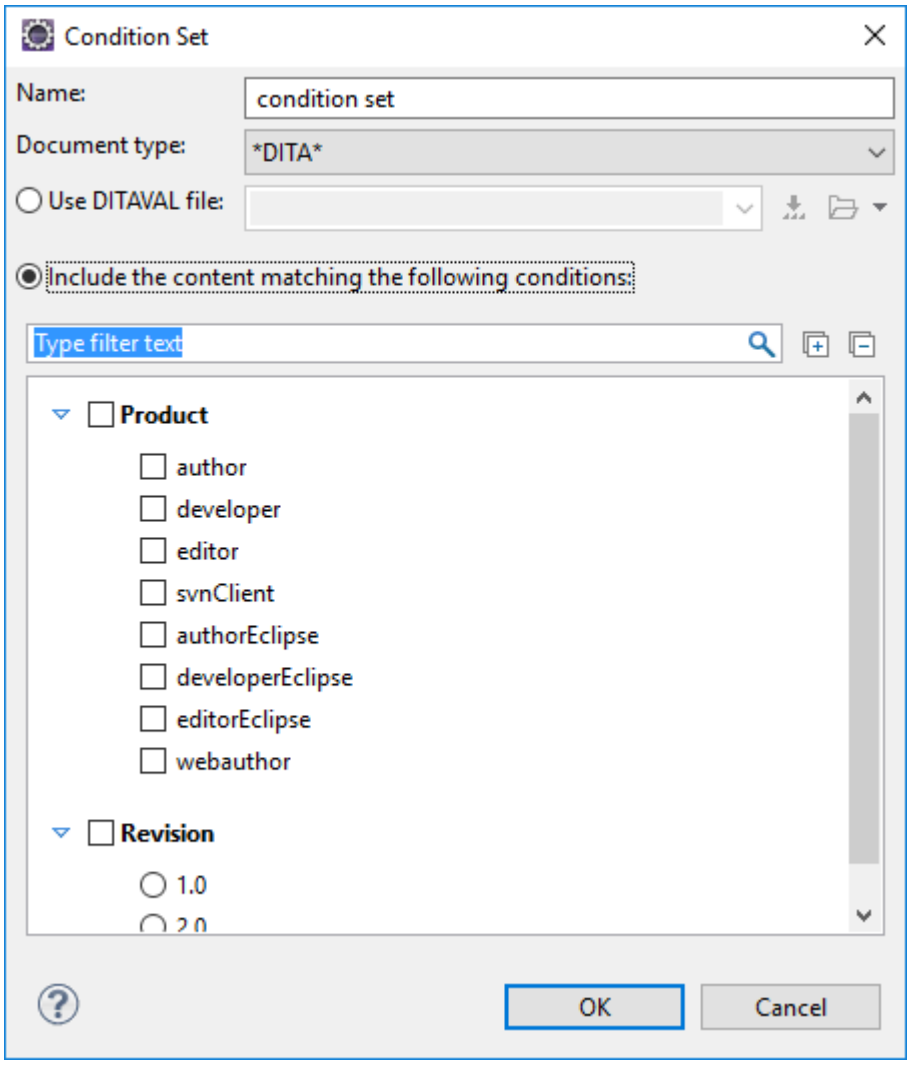
1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author > Profiling/ Conditional Text > Attributes and Condition Sets**.

   > **Information:**
   > The **Profiling Condition Sets** section *(on page 139)* is used to define condition sets.

2. To add new condition set, click the **New** button at the bottom of the **Profiling Condition Sets** table. To customize existing condition sets, select an existing condition set and click the **Edit** button.

   Step Result: In either case, this opens a **Condition Set** configuration dialog box where you can define attributes that exist in your schema.

   Figure 392. Condition Set Configuration Dialog Box

   The following options are available in this dialog box:

   Name

The name of the new condition set.

Document type

Select the document type (*framework (on page 2231)*) that has profiling attributes defined.

Use DITAVAL file

For DITA projects, select this option if you want the *Profiling Condition Set* to reference a DITAVAL file *(on page 2148)*. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Include the content matching the following conditions

You can select this option to define the combination of attribute values for your condition set by selecting the appropriate checkboxes for the values you want to be included in this particular condition set. If you have defined a lot of profiling attributes, you can use the **filter** text field to search for specific conditions.

3. After defining or configuring the condition sets according to your needs, click **OK** to confirm your selections and close the **Condition Set** configuration dialog box.
4. Click **Apply** to save the condition set.

Related Information:

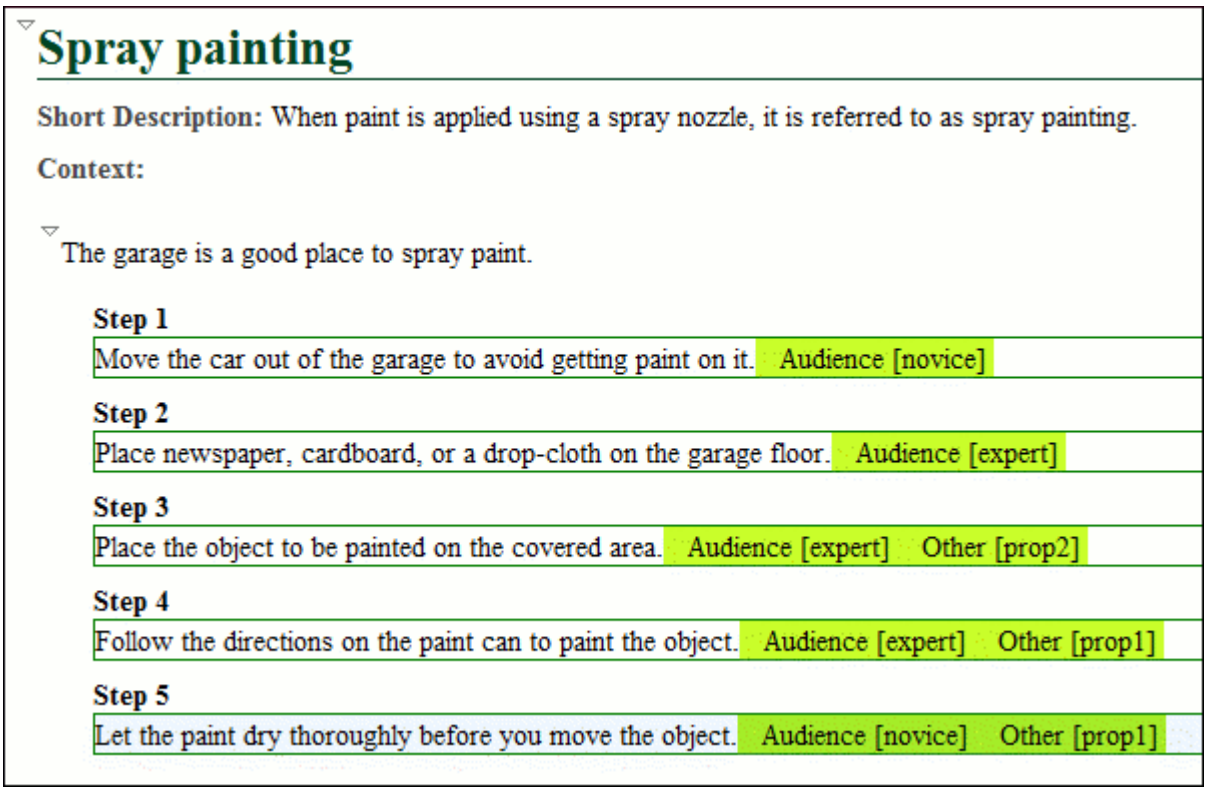
Applying Profiling Condition Sets in DITA *(on page 2134)*
Creating and Editing Profiling Attributes in DITA *(on page 2127)*
Applying Profiling Attributes in DITA *(on page 2130)*
Showing and Filtering Profiled Content in DITA *(on page 2136)*
Customizing Colors and Styles for Rendering Profiling in Author Mode *(on page 2139)*

Applying Profiling Condition Sets in DITA

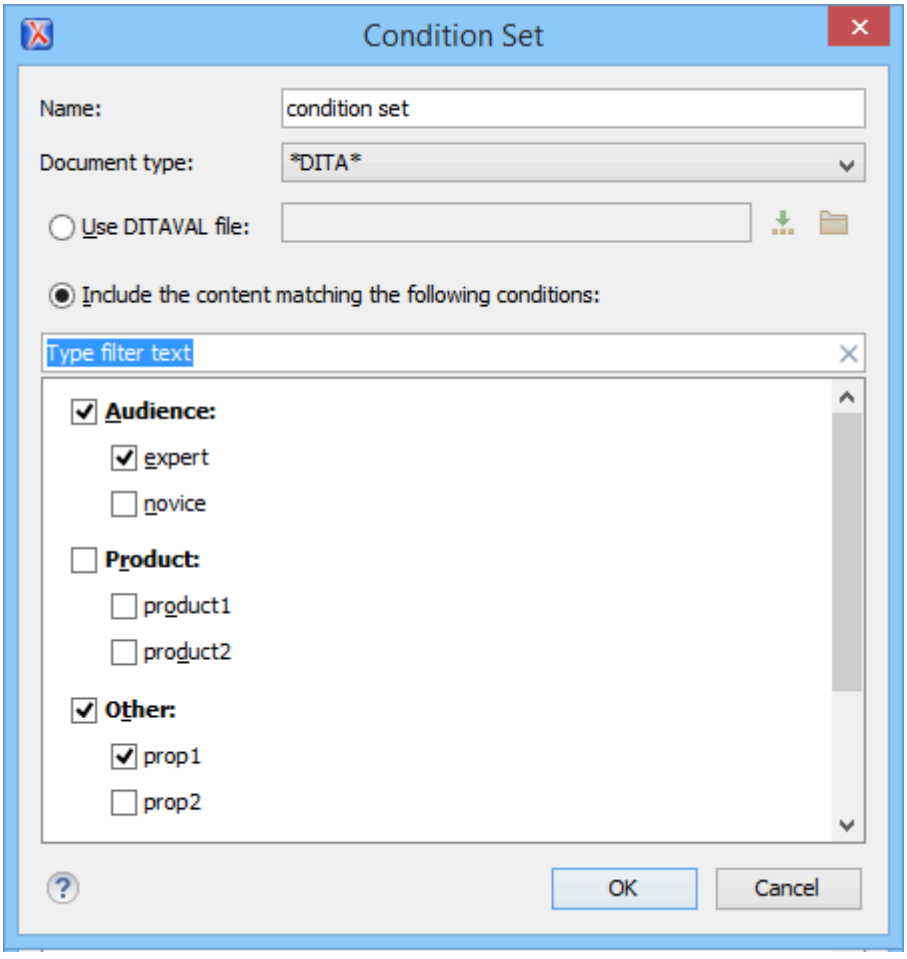
All defined Profiling Condition Sets *(on page 2132)* are available as shortcuts in the **Profiling / Conditional Text** toolbar menu *(on page 429)*. Select a menu entry to apply the condition set. The filtered content is then grayed-out in the **Author** mode, **Outline** view *(on page 301)*, and **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*. Your selection will also be used as the default condition set *(on page 2151)* in transformation scenarios (this can be changed in the **Filters** tab). An element is filtered-out when one of its attributes is part of the condition set and its value does not match any of the values covered by the condition set.

EXAMPLE:

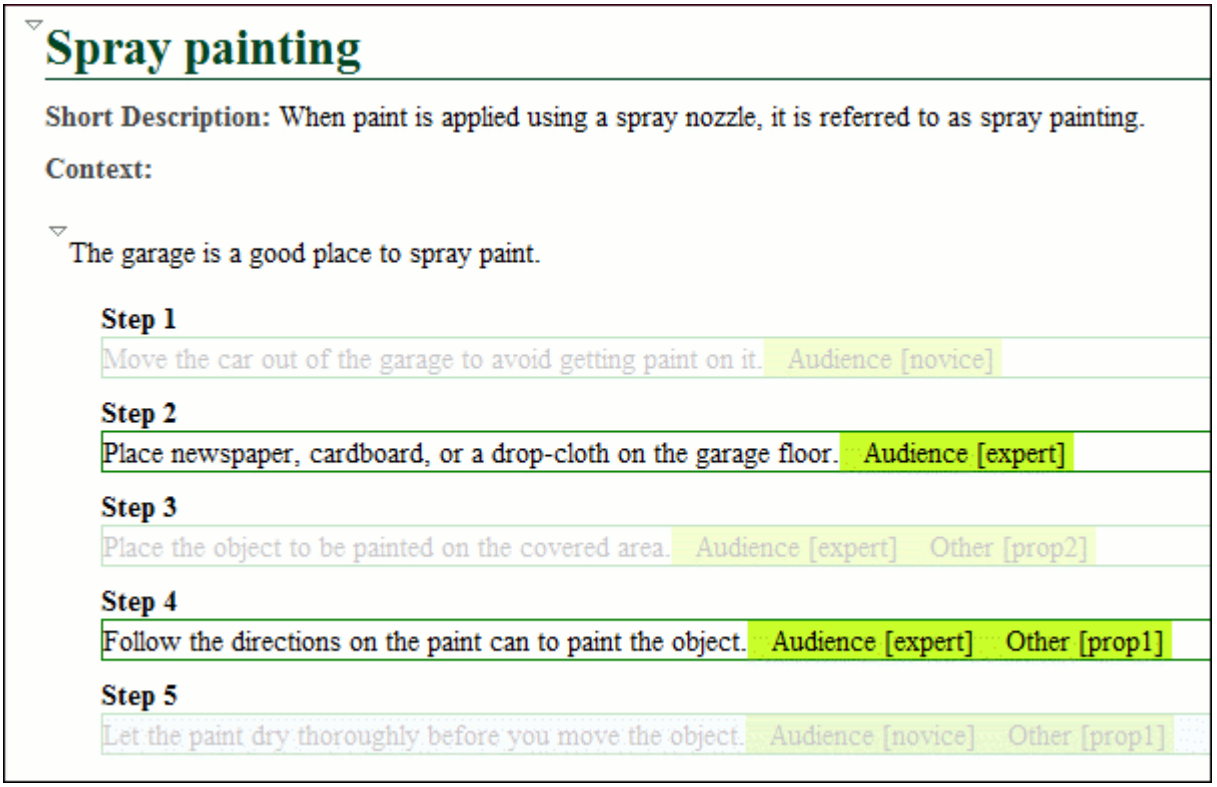
Suppose that you have the following document:



If you apply the following condition set, it means that you want to filter out the content to only include content profiled with the `expert` value for the `@audience` attribute and content that has the *prop1* value for the `@other` attribute.



This is how the document looks in **Author** mode after you apply the condition set:



Related Information:

Creating and Editing Profiling Condition Sets in DITA *(on page 2132)*

Creating and Editing Profiling Attributes in DITA *(on page 2127)*

Applying Profiling Attributes in DITA *(on page 2130)*

Showing and Filtering Profiled Content in DITA *(on page 2136)*

Customizing Colors and Styles for Rendering Profiling in Author Mode *(on page 2139)*

Showing and Filtering Profiled Content in DITA

You can visualize the effect of profiling content by using the profiling tools in the **Profiling/Conditional Text** drop-down menu that is located on the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* toolbar and on the main toolbar. This drop-down menu includes the following filtering options:

Show Profiling Colors and Styles

Select this option to show colors and styles for profiled content in **Author** mode and the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*. You can configure the colors and styles or specify whether or not this option is selected by default in the **Profiling/Conditional Text > Colors and Styles** preferences page *(on page 139)*.

Show Profiling Attributes

Select this option to display the values of the profiling attributes at the end of profiled content in **Author** mode and next to the nodes in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*. You can specify

whether or not this option is selected by default in the **Profiling/Conditional Text** preferences page *(on page 137)*.

Show Excluded Content

Controls whether the content filtered out by a particular condition set is hidden or grayed-out in **Author** mode, the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, and the **Outline** *(on page 301)* view. When this option is selected and a condition set is selected in this drop-down menu *(on page 2137)*, the filtered content is grayed-out. If this option is not selected and a condition set is selected in this drop-down menu *(on page 2137)*, the filtered content is hidden. You can specify whether or not this option is selected by default in the **Profiling/Conditional Text** preferences page *(on page 137)*.

Choose Condition Set (Available if more than 15 condition sets are defined)

This option is available if you have more than 15 conditions sets defined. It opens a dialog box that makes it easier to find and select condition sets that are not displayed in this drop-down menu.

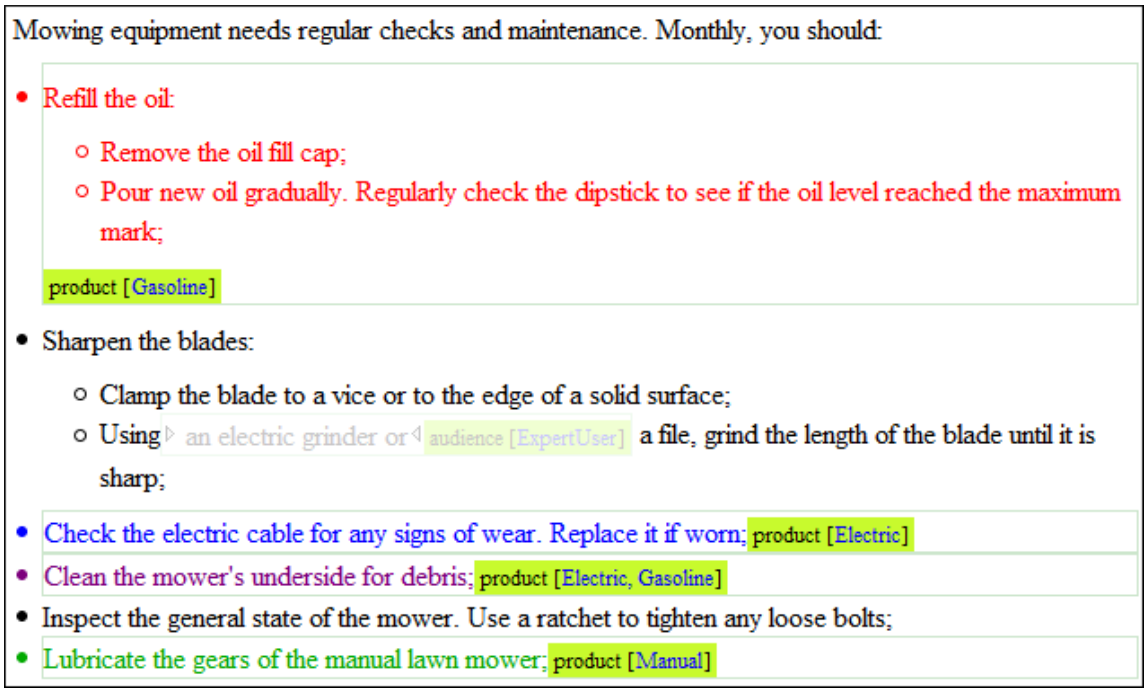
List of Defined Condition Sets

Up to 15 defined condition sets are listed and you can toggle each one of them on to filter the content in **Author** mode and the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* to only show content that will appear in the output for that particular condition set. If there are more than 15 defined condition sets, the rest of them can be accessed in the **More** submenu or by using the **Choose Condition Set** option *(on page 2137)* to access a dialog box that presents all of them.

Profiling Settings

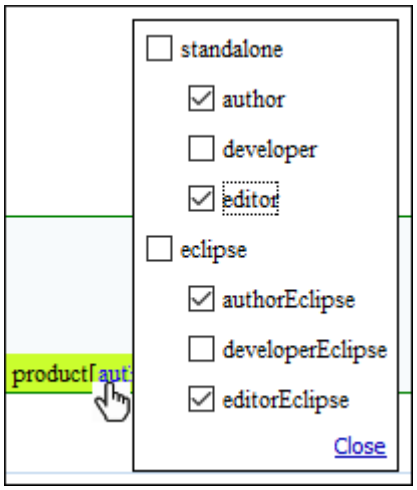
Opens the **Attributes and Condition Sets** preferences page *(on page 137)* where you can add and edit profiling attributes and condition sets.

Figure 393. Example: Profiling Controls in Author Mode



If the **Show Profiling Attributes** option is selected, a green border is painted around profiled text in the **Author** mode. Also, all profiling attributes set on the current element are listed at the end of the highlighted block and in its tooltip message. To edit the attributes of a profiled fragment, click one of the listed attribute values. A form control pops up and allows you to add or remove attribute values.

Figure 394. Profiling Attribute Value Form Control Pop Up

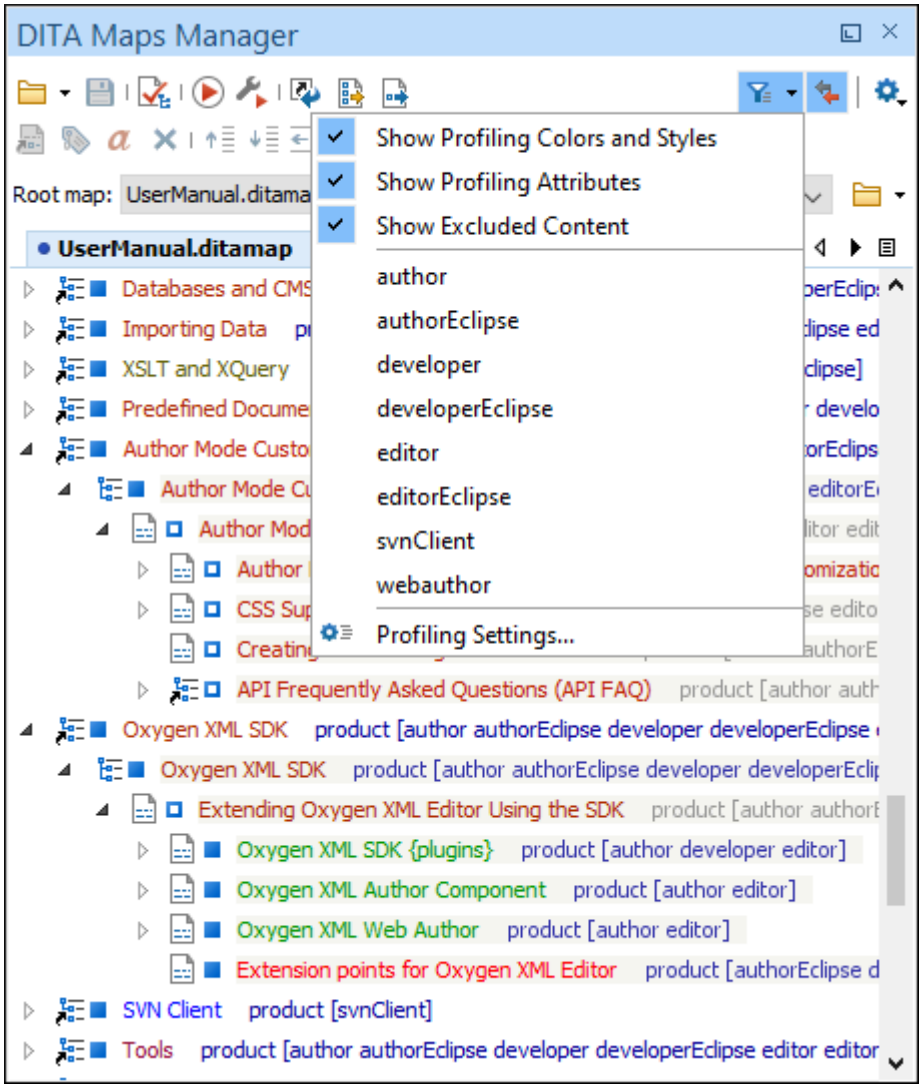


Profiling Attribute Icons in the DITA Maps Manager

The following icons are used to mark profiled and non-profiled topics in the **DITA Maps Manager**:

- ■ - The topic reference contains profiling attributes.
- □ - The topic reference inherits profiling attributes from an ancestor.
- ◪ - The topic reference contains a profiling attribute and inherits profiling from an ancestor.
- – (hyphen) - The topic reference neither contains nor inherits profiling attributes.

Figure 395. Rendering Profiled Topics in DITA Maps Manager



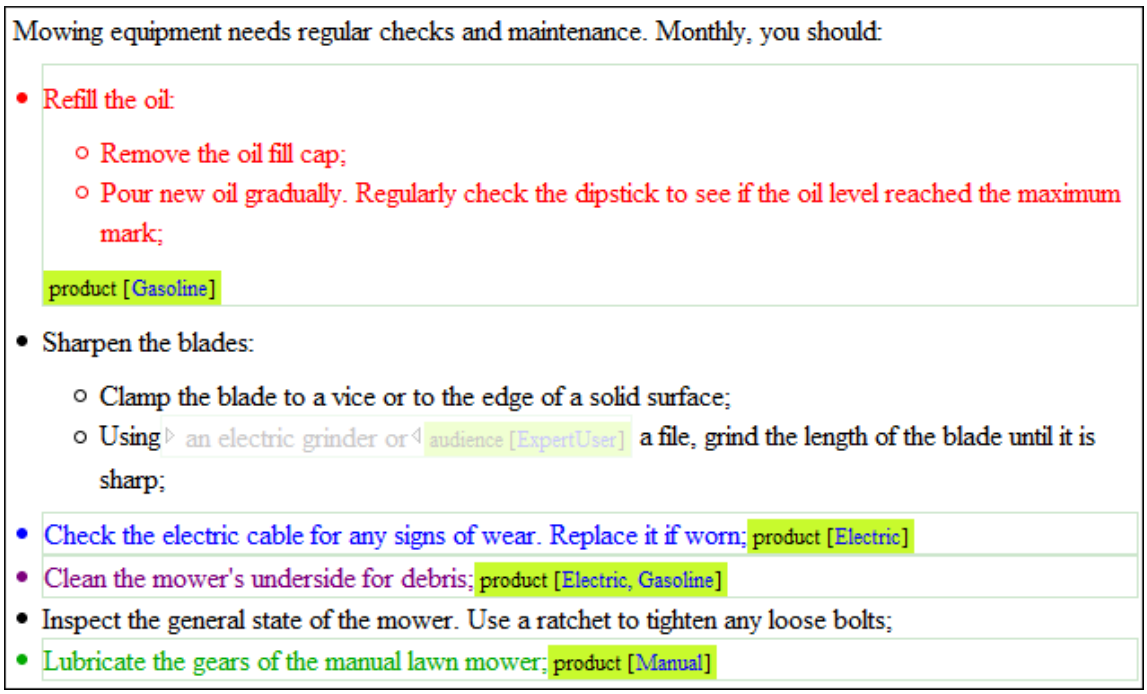
Related Information:

Creating and Editing Profiling Condition Sets in DITA *(on page 2132)*
Applying Profiling Attributes in DITA *(on page 2130)*
Creating and Editing Profiling Attributes in DITA *(on page 2127)*
Applying Profiling Condition Sets in DITA *(on page 2134)*
Customizing Colors and Styles for Rendering Profiling in Author Mode *(on page 2139)*

Customizing Colors and Styles for Rendering Profiling in Author Mode

By applying profiling colors and styles, you can mark profiled content in **Author** mode and the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* so that you can instantly spot differences between multiple variants of the output. This allows you to preview the content that will go into the published output. The excluded text is grayed-out or hidden in **Author** mode and excluded nodes are grayed-out or hidden in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*.

Figure 396. Example: Profiling Colors and Styles in Author Mode



Choosing the right style for a specific profiling attribute is a matter of personal taste, but be aware of the following:

- If the same block of text is profiled with two or more profiling attributes, their associated styles combine. Depending on the styling, this might result in an excessively styled content that may prove difficult to read or work with.
- It is recommended that you only profile the differences. There is no need to profile common content, since excessive profiling can visually pollute the document.
- A mnemonic associated with a style will help you instantly spot differences in the types of content.

Styling Profiling Attribute Values

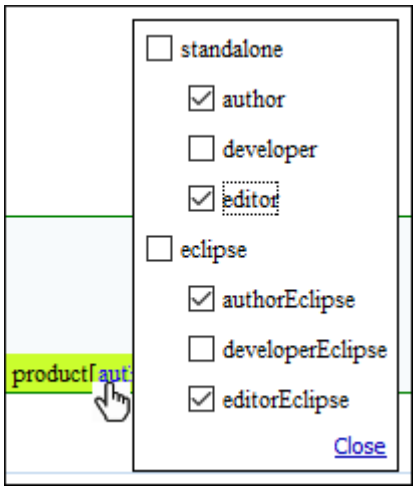
To set colors and styles for profiling attribute values, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Show Profiling Colors and Styles** option *(on page 429)* from the **Profiling / Conditional Text** toolbar drop-down menu.
2. Select **Profiling Settings** *(on page 430)* from the **Profiling / Conditional Text** toolbar drop-down menu. This is a shortcut to the **Attributes and Condition Sets** preferences page *(on page 137)*.
3. Go to the **Colors and Styles** preferences page *(on page 139)* to configure the colors and styling for the profiling attributes.
4. Go to the **Attributes** preferences page *(on page 141)* to configure how you want the profiling attributes to appear in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Result: The styling is now applied in the **Author** editing mode, the **Outline** view *(on page 301)*, and in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)*. Also, to help you more easily identify the profiling you want to apply in

the current context, the styling is applied in the **Edit Profiling Attributes** dialog box *(on page 420)* and in the inline form control pop-up that allows you to quickly set the profiling attributes.

Figure 397. Profiling Attribute Value Form Control Pop Up



Alternate Method with a DITAVAL File: If you are using a DITAVAL filter file to control the filtering of profiled content in DITA topics, you can use a flag filter to define the colors and styles that will be used when rendering the profiling. For detailed information about this alternate method, see the procedure in the Styling the Rendering of Profiled Content Using a DITAVAL File *(on page 2150)* topic.

Related Information:

Creating and Editing Profiling Condition Sets in DITA *(on page 2132)*
Applying Profiling Attributes in DITA *(on page 2130)*
Creating and Editing Profiling Attributes in DITA *(on page 2127)*
Applying Profiling Condition Sets in DITA *(on page 2134)*
Showing and Filtering Profiled Content in DITA *(on page 2136)*

Conditional Profiling Attribute Groups

Overview

Conditional processing attributes can be specified using grouped values. Groups organize the attributes into subcategories. This is intended to support situations where an attribute applies to multiple specialized subcategories. For example, suppose a company needs to filter content for several internal teams (*operations* and *support*) and they use the `@audience` attribute with the values `ops` and `support`, but the Support team has several levels of personnel (L1, L2, and L3). They could use a group to define the levels (*L1*, *L2*, and *L3*) as subcategories for the `support` value. Using groups for these subcategories allows each category to be processed independently.

A major advantage is that you do not need to add new profiling attributes using a DTD specialization. You can re-use existing DITA profiling attributes (such as `@product`, `@audience`, `@otherprops`) and specify multiple attribute subcategories.

Creating a Conditional Profiling Attribute Group

To create a group in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:

1. Open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to **Editor > Edit modes > Author > Profiling / Conditional Text > Attributes and Condition sets**.
2. To add new attributes and values, click the **New** button at the bottom of the **Profiling Attributes** table. To customize existing attributes and their values, select an attribute and click the **Edit** button.

   Step Result: In either case, this opens a **Profiling Attribute** configuration dialog box where you can define attributes that exist in your schema.
3. Specify the appropriate values for the **Document type**, **Attribute name**, and **Display name**.

   For information about the **Profiling Attribute** configuration dialog box, see Defining Profiling Attributes for DITA Content *(on page 2127)*.
4. Click the **New** button at the bottom of the attribute values table.
5. In the **Value** field of the resulting dialog box, define groups using the following format: `ParentAttrValue(SubAttrValue1 SubAttrValue2)`. For example:

   ```
   support(L1 L2 L3)
   ```
6. Click **OK** and **Apply** to save and apply the changes.

Using Conditional Profiling Attribute Groups in Conjunction with a DITAVAL File

You can use groups to customize a hierarchy of profiling attribute values and then use it in conjunction with a DITAVAL file to filter or flag *(on page 2148)* the values. For example, suppose the company described in the example in the Overview section *(on page 2141)* needed to generate content for the Support team, but only for L1 and L2 support personnel. The DITAVAL file could look like this:

```
<val>
    <prop action="include" att="support" val="L1"/>
    <prop action="include" att="support" val="L2"/>
    <prop action="exclude" att="support" val="L3"/>
</val>
```

That DITAVAL file could then be used for a condition set *(on page 2132)* to filter content in **Author** mode or during the transformation stage to filter content in the output *(on page 2151)* and content profiled with the `L1` and `L2` values would be included while content with the `L3` value would be excluded.

This example company could also have another DITAVAL file for filtering out all content profiled for any of the three subcategories (`L1`, `L2`, `L3`) by simply excluding the `support` value (since `L1`, `L2`, and `L3` are subcategories of it).

```
<val>
    <prop action="exclude" att="support"/>
</val>
```

Defining Conditional Profiling Attribute Groups in a Subject Scheme Map

You can define conditional profiling attribute groups in a subject scheme map *(on page 2143)* as in the following example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!DOCTYPE subjectScheme PUBLIC "-//OASIS//DTD DITA Subject Scheme Map//EN" "subjectScheme.dtd">
  <subjectScheme>
    <enumerationdef>
        <attributedef name="product"/>
        <subjectdef keys="productKeys">
            <subjectdef keys="myGroup1(gr1v1)"/>
            <subjectdef keys="myGroup1(gr1v2)"/>
            <subjectdef keys="product1"/>
        </subjectdef>
    </enumerationdef>
  </subjectScheme>
```

In the above example, **myGroup1** is the profiling attribute group for the `@product` attribute and **gr1v1** and **gr1v2** in parentheses are the values.

Resources

For more information about advanced DITA profiling concepts, watch our Webinar: **Working with DITA in Oxygen - Advanced Profiling and Reuse Strategies**.

Related information

DITA 1.3 Specifications: Conditional Processing Values and Groups

Customizing Profiling Values with a Subject Scheme Map

Overview

A *subject scheme map (on page 2234)* allows you to create and manage custom profiling values in DITA documents without having to write a DITA specialization. Ultimately, this allows you to filter and flag content in **Author** mode or in transformed output.

Subject scheme maps use key definitions to define a collection of profiling values. You can also use *subject scheme maps* to filter out (reject) the values for certain attributes so that you only see the attributes or values that you want to use in **Author** mode or the transformed output.

The highest level of map (*main DITA map (on page 2234)*) that uses the set of profiling values must reference the *subject scheme map* where the profiling values are defined and the `@type` attribute needs to be set to `subjectScheme` for the reference, as in the following example:

```
<topicref href="test.ditamap" format="ditamap" type="subjectScheme"/>
```

Advantages of Using a Subject Scheme Map

The advantages of using a subject scheme to control profiling attribute values include:

- You can create a hierarchy of profiling attribute values and use a DITAVAL file to filter or flag the tree of values.
- You can share the subject scheme files with others without having to share preferences or the entire project.
- The subject scheme offers validation support so you are notified if an undefined value is used.

Creating a Subject Scheme Map

To create and configure a *subject scheme map*, follow this procedure:

1. Use the **New Document** wizard *(on page 222)* to create a new **Subject Scheme** document (**New from Templates > Framework templates > DITA Map > map >** **Subject Scheme**).
2. Use the controls in **Author** mode to define the hierarchical tree of values for your *subject scheme* (see the Author mode example below *(on page 2146)*) or switch to **Text** mode and define it there if you prefer (see the Text mode example below *(on page 2146)*).

   Note:
   The pre-defined subject scheme template includes Navigation Titles (`<navtitle>` element). This element is not required, but if you use it, the text that you enter for the `<navtitle>` will be used (instead of the name of the value) in the various places where profiling attributes are presented in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *(on page 2147)*. An example of when this might be helpful is if you want to use abbreviations for the name of a value, but you want to see its full name in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

3. Bind the particular attribute to the key you define for the tree of values using the `<attributedef>` and `<subjectdef>` elements inside the `<enumerationdef>` element. Notice that in the examples below *(on page 2146)*, the *audience* attribute is bound to the *audienceKey* value.

   Tip:
   By default, attributes can accept multiple values, but you can use `outputclass="single_value"` to specify that a certain attribute only accepts a single value at a time and the attribute will be presented in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin with radio buttons instead of checkboxes. For example:

```
<enumerationdef outputclass="single_value">
  <attributedef name="audience"/>
  <subjectdef keyref="audienceKey"/>
</enumerationdef>
```

You can also define a specific set of possible attribute values for a specific attribute name that is set on a specific element name. For example, you can define a specific set of `@outputclass` attribute values only for the `<image>` element:

```
<enumerationdef>
   <elementdef name="image"/>
   <attributedef name="outputclass"/>
   <subjectdef keyref="imgOutputClassValuesKey"/>
</enumerationdef>
```

4. If you want to filter out (reject) values for certain attributes, bind the attributes to a blank value (as you see for the `props` and `otherprops` attributes in the examples below *(on page 2146)*). This means that those attributes will not appear in the various places where profiling attributes are presented in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *(on page 2147)*.
5. Save your *subject scheme* file.
6. Reference your *subject scheme* in the highest level of map (*main DITA map (on page 2234)*) that will use the set of profiling values and set its type to `subjectScheme`. The easiest way to do this is:
    a. With your *subject scheme* file opened in the editor, go to the **DITA Maps Manager** view, right-click the *main DITA map*, and select **Append Child > Reference to the currently edited file**.
    b. In the **Insert Topic Reference** dialog box, go to the **Attributes** tab and in the **Type** field, enter or select **subjectScheme**.
    c. Click the **Insert and Close** button and save your main DITA map.

Using a Subject Scheme in Conjunction with a DITAVAL File

You can use a subject scheme to customize a hierarchy of profiling attribute values and then use it in conjunction with a DITAVAL file to filter or flag *(on page 2148)* the entire tree of values. For example, suppose one of the values for the `audience` attribute in a hierarchical subject scheme is `surgeon` and it has two subordinate values of `neuro-surgeon` and `plastic-surgeon` (see the examples below *(on page 2146)*). You could create a DITAVAL file with the following content:

```
<val>
    <prop action="exclude" att="audience" val="surgeon"/>
</val>
```

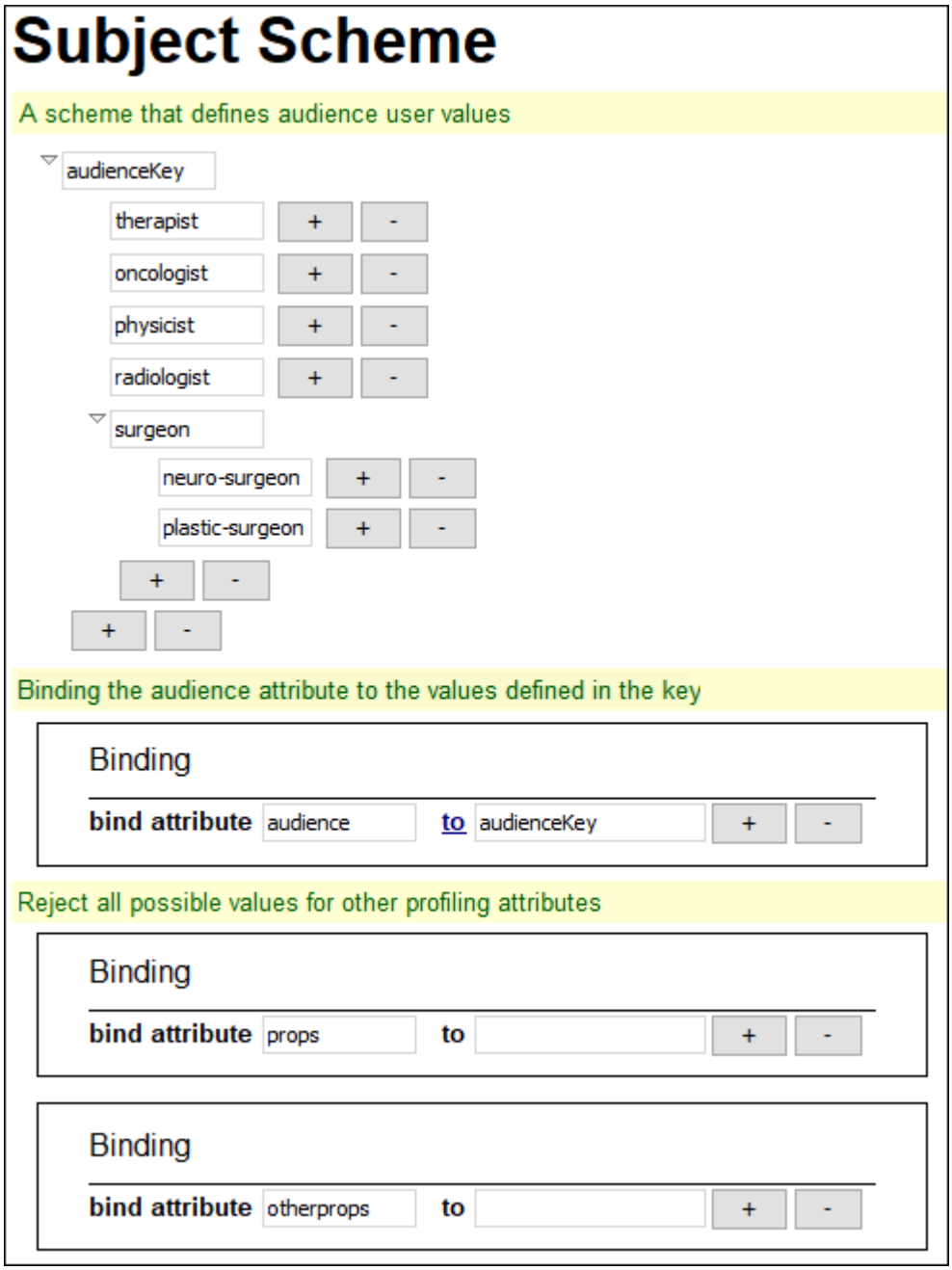
That DITAVAL file could then be used for a condition set *(on page 2132)* to filter content in **Author** mode or during the transformation stage to filter content in the output *(on page 2151)* and the `neuro-surgeon` and `plastic-surgeon` values would be excluded by the filter since the subject scheme defines them as subordinate values of the `surgeon` value.

Example: Subject Scheme Map that Defines Custom Values for the Audience Attribute

This example uses typical audience values for medical personnel (`therapist`, `oncologist`, `physicist`, `radiologist`, `surgeon`, and so on). The `audience` attribute is bound to the `audienceKey` value (which defines the tree of values). You can also see that it filters out all possible values for other attributes (`props` and `otherprops`) so that they won't be available in the various places where profiling attributes are presented in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin *(on page 2147)*.

Example using Author mode controls:

Figure 398. Subject Scheme Author Mode Controls



Example code in Text mode:

```
<subjectScheme>
  <!-- A scheme that defines audience user values -->
  <subjectdef keys="audienceKey">
    <subjectdef keys="therapist"/>
    <subjectdef keys="oncologist"/>
    <subjectdef keys="physicist"/>
    <subjectdef keys="radiologist"/>
    <subjectdef keys="surgeon">
      <subjectdef keys="neuro-surgeon"/>
      <subjectdef keys="plastic-surgeon"/>
    </subjectdef>
  </subjectdef>
  <!-- Binding the audience attribute to the values defined in the key -->
  <enumerationdef>
    <attributedef name="audience"/>
    <subjectdef keyref="audienceKey"/>
  </enumerationdef>

  <!--Reject all possible values for other profiling attributes-->
  <enumerationdef>
    <attributedef name="props"/>
    <subjectdef/>
  </enumerationdef>
  <enumerationdef>
    <attributedef name="otherprops"/>
    <subjectdef/>
  </enumerationdef>
</subjectScheme>
```

Where the Profiling Attributes are Available in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

When you edit a DITA topic in the **Text** or **Author** mode, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin collects all the profiling values from the *subject scheme map (on page 2234)* that is referenced in the map that is currently opened in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* (or set as the *root map (on page 1897)*). The values of profiling attributes defined in a *Subject Scheme Map* are available in the following places in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (regardless of their mapping in the **Profiling/Conditional Text** preferences page *(on page 136)*):

- The **Profiling** tab of the **Edit Properties** dialog box *(on page 1922)*.
- The **Edit Profiling Attribute** dialog box *(on page 2131)*.
- The inline profiling controls in **Author** mode *(on page 2137)*.
- The proposals for the attribute values in the *Content Completion Assistant (on page 2229)*.

Resources

For more information about using a DITA subject scheme map, watch our video demonstration:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/RgkVRg6k6zo

Related Information:
Filtering Profiling Values with a DITAVAL File *(on page 2148)*
DITA 1.3 Specifications: Subject Scheme Maps

Filtering Profiling Values with a DITAVAL File

You can use a DITAVAL filter file to control the filtering or flagging of profiled content or to identify which values are to be used for conditional processing during a particular output.

DITAVAL Filtering Use-Case

Suppose that a medical publication uses the *audience* profiling attribute to profile the content for the following types of users: *therapist*, *physician*, and *surgeon*. Suppose that in the output, you want to exclude any content that is profiled as `surgeon` value for the `@audience` attribute.

You could use a DITAVAL filter file to exclude anything that is profiled as `surgeon`:

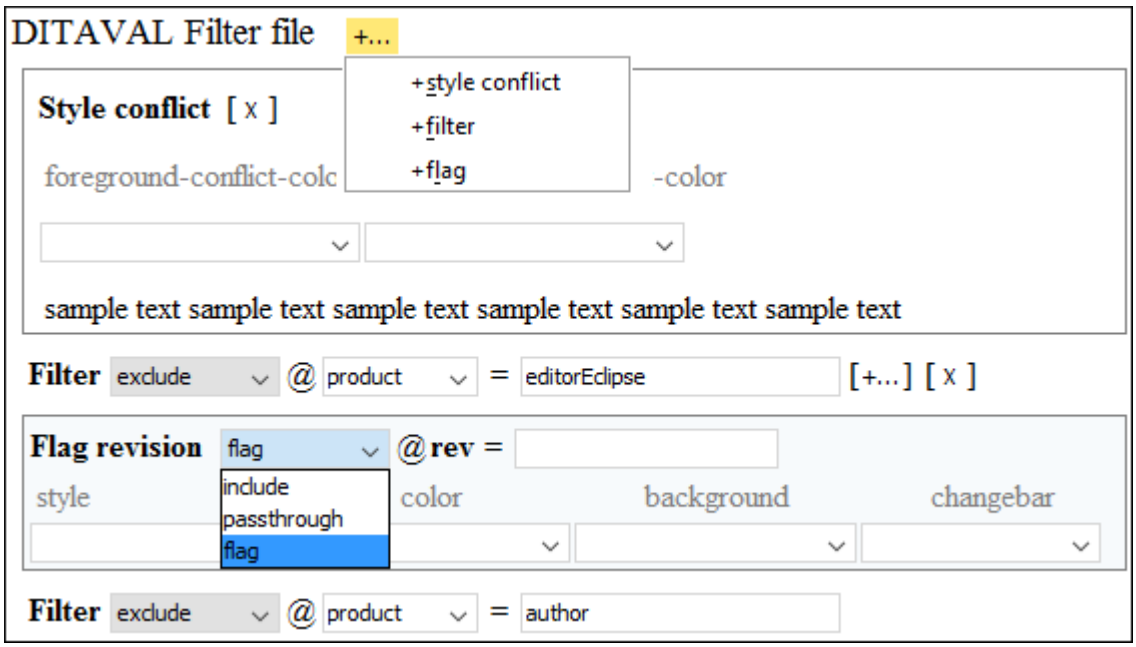
```
<val>
    <prop action="exclude" att="audience" val="surgeon"/>
</val>
```

If you then transform the main *DITA map (on page 2230)* and specify the DITAVAL filter file in the transformation scenario, the output will exclude anything that is profiled as `surgeon`).

DITAVAL Filter File Editor in Author Mode

The **Author** editing mode in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin offer a simple and intuitive editor for creating or modifying DITAVAL files. It provides a series of drop-down menus and text fields that allow you to easily define the filters.

Figure 399. DITAVAL File Editor in Author Mode



Use the **+...** button to display a drop-down list that contains elements that you can add at that particular location in the DITAVAL file. Clicking this button at the top (next to the **DITAVAL FILTER File** title, allows you to insert the following elements:

- **Style Conflict** - Inserts a `<style-conflict>` element that declares behavior to be used when one or more flagging methods collide on a single content element. You can use the simple drop-down menus to select values for the `@foreground-conflict-color` and `@background-conflict-color` attributes.
- **Filter** - Inserts a `<prop>` element that identifies an attribute to apply a filtering action on. The possible actions that you can select are **include**, **exclude**, **passthrough**, and **flag**. If you select the **flag** action, you can use the drop-down menus to select values for the `@style`, `@color`, and `@background` attributes.
- **Flag** - Inserts a `<revprop>` element that Identifies a value in the `@rev` attribute that should be flagged in some manner. The allowed actions are **include**, **passthrough**, and **flag**. If you select the **flag** action, you can use the drop-down menus to select values for the `@style` (italic, bold, underline, overline), `@color`, `@background` (color), and `@changebar` attributes.

See the DITAVAL Element Specifications for more details about the allowed filters and flags.

How to Create a DITAVAL Filter File

To create a DITAVAL filter file, follow these steps:

1. Go to **File > New**.
2. Scroll to the **Framework templates > DITA** folder.
3. Select the **Filter** template file and click **Create**.
4. Define your filters in the DITAVAL file (in **Text** or **Author** mode).
5. Save the DITAVAL file.

Result: The DITAVAL filter file can now be used for all of the following:

- To apply a reference to the DITAVAL file in a *Profiling Condition Set* using the **Use DITAVAL File** option in the **Condition Set** configuration dialog box *(on page 2132)*.
- You can use the **Import from DITAVAL** option in the **Attributes and Condition Sets** preferences page *(on page 137)* to use the DITAVAL file to define profiling attributes.
- You can use the DITAVAL file to apply the filters to the output by specifying the DITAVAL file in the transformation scenario *(on page 2106)*.
- You can use the filter file in the **DITA Map Completeness Check** dialog box *(on page 1927)* when validating your *DITA map (on page 2230)*.
- DITAVAL files are also used when working with the DITA 1.3 *Branch Filtering* mechanism. For more details, see: Working with DITA 1.3 Branch Filtering *(on page 2050)*.
- You can define the colors and styles to be used for rendering profiled condition sets *(on page 2150)* in **Author** mode and the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* view by using a **Flag** filter in the DITAVAL file.

Related information

DITAVAL Element Specifications
Working with DITA 1.3 Branch Filtering *(on page 2050)*
Customizing Profiling Values with a Subject Scheme Map *(on page 2143)*
Styling the Rendering of Profiled Content Using a DITAVAL File *(on page 2150)*
Conditional Profiling Attribute Groups *(on page 2141)*

Styling the Rendering of Profiled Content Using a DITAVAL File

If you are using a DITAVAL filter file to control the filtering of profiled content, you can define the colors and styles to be used for rendering profiled condition sets in **Author** mode and the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* by defining the styles in a flag filter that is set in a DITAVAL filter file.

How to Define a Flag for a Condition Set in a DITAVAL Filter File

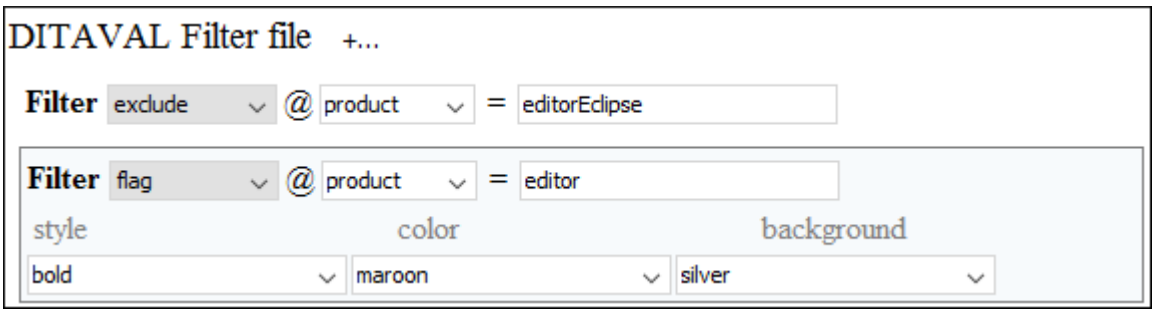
To define the colors and styles to be used for rendering profiled condition sets by using a flag filter in a DITAVAL filter file, follow these steps:

1. Create or edit your DITAVAL file *(on page 2149)* to define your profiling condition set *(on page 2132)*.
2. In **Author** mode, define the filters for your condition set *(on page 2148)*.
3. Select **Flag** from the drop-down menu on a particular **Filter** or **Flag Revision** to present additional drop-down menus that allow you to configure the colors and styles for the particular condition set.
4. Save the DITAVAL file.

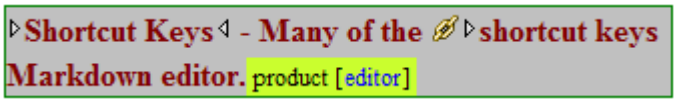
Result: Test your changes by opening profiled content in **Author** mode or the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)* and use the options in the **Profiling / Conditional Text** drop-down menu to see how the changes in your DITAVAL flag are rendered.

EXAMPLE:

Using a **Flag** on a **Filter** to define the styling for a condition set like this:



will render the styling of the profiled content in **Author** mode to look like this:



and will render the styling in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* to look like this:

Related Information:

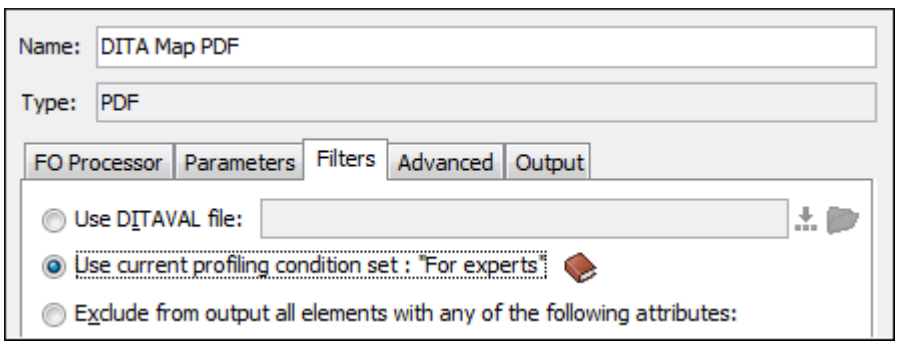
Filtering Profiling Values with a DITAVAL File *(on page 2148)*

Publishing Profiled DITA Content

You can create a variety of publications or versions of your documentation from a single map by applying profiling conditions to the build.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes preconfigured transformation scenarios for DITA. By default, these scenarios take the current profiling condition set *(on page 2134)* into account during the transformation, as defined in the **Filters** tab *(on page 2106)* when creating a DITA transformation *(on page 854)*. You can also specify a DITAVAL file *(on page 2148)* that defines filters for your profiled content.

Figure 400. Profiling Option in the Filters Tab (DITA-OT Transformations)



Conditional Processing to Generate Multiple Deliverables

By default, the content of most elements is included in all output media. Within maps and topics, elements can specify the delivery targets to which they apply.

Within maps, topic references can use the `@deliveryTarget` attribute to indicate the delivery targets to which they apply. Within topics, most elements can use the `@deliveryTarget` attribute to indicate the delivery targets.

If a referenced topic should be excluded from all output formats, set the `@processing-role` attribute to **resource-only** instead of using the `@deliveryTarget` attribute. Content within that topic can still be referenced for display in other locations.

`@deliveryTarget`

The intended delivery target of the content, for example **html**, **pdf**, or **epub**. This attribute is a replacement for the now deprecated `@print` attribute.

The `@deliveryTarget` attribute is specialized from the `@props` attribute. It is defined in the *deliveryTargetAttDomain*, which is integrated into all OASIS-provided document-type shells. If this domain is not integrated into a given document-type shell, the `@deliveryTarget` attribute will not be available.

The `@deliveryTarget` attribute is processed the same way as any other conditional processing attribute. For example, `<topicref deliveryTarget="html5 epub" href="example.dita"/>` uses two values for `@deliveryTarget`. A conditional processing profile can then set rules for `@deliveryTarget` that determine whether the topic is included or excluded when the map is rendered as HTML5 or EPUB.

DITA Open Toolkit Support

The *DITA Open Toolkit* is an open-source publishing engine that can generate various output formats (for example, HTML, PDF, CHM) from DITA content. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for the DITA Open Toolkit. This section includes information about how to install and create a DITA-OT *plugin (on page 2232)*, and how to use an external instance of the DITA Open Toolkit.

Related Information:
DITA Open Toolkit Documentation

DITA-OT Plugins

The architecture of the DITA Open Toolkit publishing engine is plugin-based. A plugin can add support for publishing DITA content as a new format or for customizing an existing output format. The DITA Open Toolkit bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin already has lots of plugins pre-installed but you can also install additional *plugins (on page 2232)* or create your own.

Creating a DITA-OT Plugin

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides the ability to install additional **DITA Open Toolkit** *plugins (on page 2157)* that can be found from various sources (for example, *Oxygen's* public GitHub repository includes some DITA-OT plugins). It is also possible to create your own *plugin*.

CAUTION:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin support engineers do not officially offer support and troubleshooting assistance for custom DITA-OT distributions or custom installed DITA-OT plugins. If you discover any issues or inconsistent behavior while using a custom DITA-OT or a DITA-OT that contains custom DITA-OT plugins, you should revert to the default built-in DITA-OT.

To create a DITA-OT *plugin*, follow these steps:

1. Create a new folder in the **plugins** folder located in your DITA-OT directory (for example, if you are using DITA 4.4.0, the path would look like this: *[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]*`/frameworks/dita/`*DITA-OT*`/plugins/MyNewPlugin`).
2. Create a **plugin.xml** file in that same folder. This file will contain the extension points for the *plugin*. For example, references to the XSLT stylesheets that will be used to style the output.

   Note:
   You can easily create this file by using the **DITA-OT Plugin** new document template that is included in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (from the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)* you can find this template in **Framework templates > DITA > plugin**.

   Example:

```
<plugin id="org.metadita.specialization.music">
  <feature extension="dita.specialization.catalog.relative"
           file="catalog-dita.xml"/>
  <feature extension="dita.xsl.xhtml" file="xsl/music2xhtml.xsl"/>
  <feature extension="dita.xsl.html5" file="xsl/music2xhtml.xsl"/>
</plugin>
```

   Tip:
   Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes special editing support when adding extension points in the **plugin.xml** file. If you place the cursor in the value of the `@extension` attribute and press **Ctrl+Space**, a list of possible extension points is presented with links to the DITA-OT documentation. For more information about extension points that are available to use in the *plugin.xml* file, see: http://www.dita-ot.org/dev/extension-points/extension-points-by-plugin.html.

3. Install the newly created DITA-OT *plugin (on page 2157)* by running the built-in transformation scenario called **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** *(on page 2094)* from the **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** *(on page 797)* or **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*.

   > **Note:**
   > If the *integrator* is not visible, select the **Show all scenarios** option in the **Settings** drop-down menu.

You can share your new plugin with other users who have the same DITA-OT distribution by sending them your newly created folder along with the installation instructions *(on page 2157)*.

Related Information:
DITA Open Toolkit Documentation
Defining the Transformation Type and Allowed Parameters in a DITA-OT Plugin *(on page 2158)*

Example: Creating a DITA-OT Plugin for Embedding Video Resources

To offer a detailed example of the steps required to create a new **DITA Open Toolkit** *plugin (on page 2232)*, this topic uses an example of creating an **XSLT** customization *plugin* that provides support for referencing video and audio content using the DITA `<object>` element and then publishing to **HTML** and **PDF** output formats. This *plugin* (**com.oxygenxml.media**) is available in the **DITA Open Toolkit** distribution that comes bundled with the latest version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, but these instructions show you how you could create it if it were not included.

The following procedure is meant to help you with creating the *plugin*:

1. Create a folder for your *plugin* in the DITA-OT **plugins** folder (*`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/`).
2. Create a **plugin.xml** file (in the same *plugin* folder) that contains the extension points of the *plugin*.

   > **Note:**
   > You can easily create this file by using the **DITA-OT Plugin** template that is included in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin (from the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)* you can find this template in **Framework templates > DITA > plugin**).

   Example: Media Plugin File

```
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.media">
  <feature extension="package.support.name" value="Oxygen XML Editor Support"/>
  <feature extension="package.support.email" value="support@oxygenxml.com"/>
  <feature extension="package.version" value="21.0"/>
  <feature extension="dita.xsl.xhtml" value="xhtmlMedia.xsl" type="file"/>
  <feature extension="dita.xsl.xslfo" value="pdfMedia.xsl" type="file"/>
</plugin>
```

The most important extensions in it are the references to the XSLT stylesheets that will be used to style the HTML and PDF outputs.

You can find other **DITA-OT** *plugin* extension points here: http://www.dita-ot.org/dev/extension-points/extension-points-by-plugin.html.

3. Create an XSLT stylesheet to customize the output types. In this example, to customize the HTML output, it is necessary to create an XSLT stylesheet called **xhtmlMedia.xsl** (in the same *plugin* folder).

   > **Tip:**
   > You can find an XSLT stylesheet with content that is similar to the desired output and use it as a template to overwrite parts of your stylesheet. For example, suppose you want to overwrite HTML content produced from a DITA **codeblock** element. Since a DITA `<object>` element has the `@class` attribute value `- topic/object` , you can take part of the class attribute value (**topic/object**) and search the **DITA-OT** resources for a similar stylesheet. The search might find the XSLT stylesheet *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/org.dita.xhtml/xsl/xslhtml/xsl/xslhtml/dita2htmlImpl.xsl`.

   You can use it as a starting point to overwrite the **xhtmlMedia.xsl** stylesheet. For example, the results might be:

   ```
   <xsl:template
      match="*[contains(@class, ' topic/object ')][contains(@outputclass, 'video')]">
    <video class="embed-responsive-item">
      <xsl:call-template name="commonattributes"/>
      <xsl:call-template name="setidaname"/>
      <xsl:call-template name="copySource"/>
    </video>
   </xsl:template>
   ```

4. Create additional XSLT stylesheets to customize all other desired output types. In this example, to customize the PDF output it is necessary to create an XSLT stylesheet called **pdfMedia.xsl** (in the same *plugin* folder).

   In this case, you might find an appropriate XSLT stylesheet called *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/xsl/fo/topic.xsl` to use as a starting point to overwrite the **pdfMedia.xsl** stylesheet, with results looking something like this:

   ```
   <!--Treat video, audio or iframe objects as links-->
   <xsl:template
              match="*[contains(@class,' topic/object ')][@outputclass = 'video']">
       <xsl:variable name="target" select="@data"/>
       <xsl:variable name="baseDir">
         <xsl:call-template name="substring-before-last">
          <xsl:with-param name="text" select="@xtrf"/>
   ```

```
      <xsl:with-param name="delim" select="'/'"/>
     </xsl:call-template>
    </xsl:variable>

    <fo:inline xsl:use-attribute-sets="object">
      <xsl:call-template name="commonattributes"/>
      <xsl:if test="exists($target)">
         <fo:basic-link external-destination="url({$target})"
                                    xsl:use-attribute-sets="xref">
           <xsl:value-of select="$target"/>
         </fo:basic-link>
      </xsl:if>
    </fo:inline>
</xsl:template>
```

5. To install the created *plugin* in the **DITA-OT**, run the built-in transformation scenario called **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** *(on page 2094)* by executing it from the **Apply Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 797)*. If the integrator is not visible, select the **Show all scenarios** option that is available in the **Settings** drop-down menu. For more information, see Installing a DITA-OT Plugin *(on page 2157)*.

   Results of running the integrator using the media plugin example:

   XSLT content is applied with priority when publishing to both HTML and PDF outputs.

   a. For the HTML output, in the XSLT stylesheet *DITA-OT-DIR*`/plugins/org.dita.xhtml/xsl/dita2html-base.xsl`, a new import automatically appeared:

      ```
      <xsl:import href="../plugins/com.oxygenxml.media/xhtmlMedia.xsl"/>
      ```

      This import is placed after all base imports and thus has a higher priority. For more information about imported template precedence, see: http://www.w3.org/TR/xslt#import.

   b. Likewise, for the PDF output, in the top-level stylesheet *DITA-OT-DIR*`/plugins/org.dita.pdf2/xsl/fo/topic2fo_shell_fop.xsl`, a new import statement appeared:

      ```
      <xsl:import href="../../../com.oxygenxml.media/pdfMedia.xsl"/>
      ```

Now, you can distribute your *plugin* folder to anyone that has a DITA-OT installation along with some simple installation notes. Your customization will work provided the templates you are overwriting have not changed from one DITA-OT distribution to the other.

Related Information:

DITA Open Toolkit Documentation

Installing a DITA-OT Plugin

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with various DITA-OT *plugins (on page 2232)*, but the architecture of the **DITA Open Toolkit** also allows you to install additional *plugins* that can be found from various sources (for example, *Oxygen's* public GitHub repository includes some DITA-OT plugins).

CAUTION:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin support engineers do not officially offer support and troubleshooting assistance for custom DITA-OT distributions or custom installed DITA-OT plugins. If you discover any issues or inconsistent behavior while using a custom DITA-OT or a DITA-OT that contains custom DITA-OT plugins, you should revert to the default built-in DITA-OT.

Installing a DITA-OT Plugin

To install a DITA-OT plugin, following this procedure:

1. Locate the DITA Open Toolkit `plugins` directory where the plugin will be installed.

   To avoid making changes inside the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation folder, it is **strongly recommended** to download the Oxygen Publishing Engine that corresponds to your version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, copy it somewhere on your disk where you have full write access, and reference it in the **Preferences > DITA** page *(on page 74)*.

   The default *DITA-OT-DIR* is bundled inside the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin installation folder. If you want to install it directly there, the folder where the **DITA-OT** is located needs to have full write access permissions set to it. For example, in **Windows**, if you are integrating *plugins* in the **DITA-OT** folder bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and your application is installed in the **Program Files** folder, you can start the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin main executable with administrative rights for the integrator process to be able to modify resources in the **DITA-OT** folder.
2. Copy the additional *plugin* to the location of the DITA-OT version you are using (by default, *`DITA-OT-DIR`*`\plugins` directory).
3. Select the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** *(on page 934)* action from the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar (you could also use the same action on the main toolbar or open the **Transformation Scenarios** view *(on page 940)*).
4. Select the **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** transformation scenario *(on page 2094)*. If the *integrator* is not visible, select the **Show all scenarios** option that is available in the **Settings** drop-down menu.
5. Apply the scenario *(on page 933)*.
6. Check the **Results** panel at the bottom of the application to make sure the build was successful.

After the installation, you can open a DITA map and use the **Configure Transformation Scenarios** dialog box to create a new **DITA-OT** transformation scenario. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects that transformation type declaration from the **DITA-OT** *plugin* and presents descriptions in the **DITA Transformation Type** dialog box *(on page 854)*. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin also shows the contributed parameters from the plugin in the transformation scenario's **Parameters** tab *(on page 2104)*.

Tip:
You can declare the transformation type and allowed parameters by following the procedure found in: Defining the Transformation Type and Allowed Parameters in a DITA-OT Plugin *(on page 2158)*.

Related Information:
Creating a DITA-OT Plugin *(on page 2153)*
DITA Open Toolkit Documentation
Defining the Transformation Type and Allowed Parameters in a DITA-OT Plugin *(on page 2158)*

Defining the Transformation Type and Allowed Parameters in a DITA-OT Plugin

Custom **DITA-OT** *plugins* may contribute new transformation types (transtypes) and each transtype may have a set of allowed configuration parameters. If a DITA-OT plugin declares a **transtype**, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects that transformation type declaration and presents descriptions in the **DITA Transformation Type** dialog box *(on page 854)* and the contributed parameters in the transformation scenario's **Parameters** tab *(on page 2104)*.

To define a transformation type and its contributed parameters in a DITA-OT plugin, follow this procedure:

1. If you have not already done so, create a DITA-OT **plugin.xml** file *(on page 2153)* (you can easily create this file by using the **DITA-OT Plugin** new document template in the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)*).
2. In the **plugin.xml** file, define the transformation type details by using the `<transtype>` element to specify a name, description, and the transtype it extends.

   ```
   <transtype name="xhtml" extends="base-html" desc="HTML">
   ```

3. Define allowed parameters by using the `<param>` element to specify the name, description, and information about the default and allowed set of values. For more information, see: https://www.dita-ot.org/3.1/topics/plugin-configfile.html.

   ```
   <param name="args.indexshow" desc="Specifies whether to show the index" type="enum">
     <val>yes</val>
     <val default="true">no</val>
   </param>
   ```

   Depending on the type declared for a parameter, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will help you pick values for each parameter edited in the **Parameters** tab of the transformation scenario configuration dialog box. For example, for parameters of type **"enum"**, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will present a combo box for choosing the proper value for the parameter.
4. You can also extend various extension points in your **plugin.xml**. For more information, see: https://www.dita-ot.org/3.1/extension-points/plugin-extension-points.html.

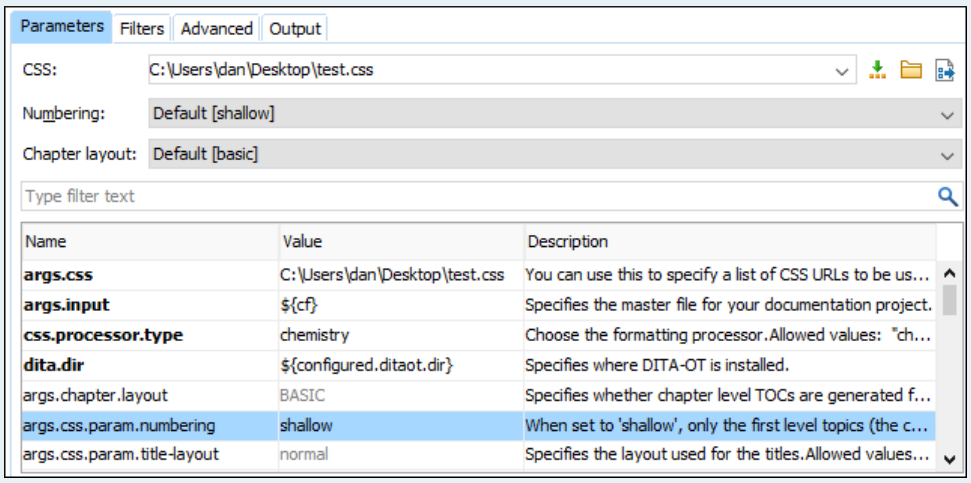
Plugin Extension Example - Promote Parameters:

It is possible to promote certain transformation parameters so that they appear above the table of allowed parameters and values in the **Parameters** tab of the transformation scenario configuration dialog box. To do this, you could create a `pluginExtension.xml` file in the root folder of the DITA-OT plugin and use the `<promotedParams>` element to define the promoted parameters. Here is an example:

```
<extensionPlugin>
    <transtype name="pdf-css-html5">
        <promotedParams>
            <param name="args.css" promotedName="CSS"/>
            <param name="args.css.param.numbering" promotedName="Numbering"/>
            <param name="args.chapter.layout" promotedName="Chapter layout"/>
        </promotedParams>
    </transtype>
</extensionPlugin>
```

The example above results in the **Parameters** tab looking like this:

Figure 401. Promoted Parameters



5. Install the plugin *(on page 2157)*.

Note:
If the plugin is installed using an external command line, you may need to restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin to properly re-detect the newly contributed transtypes and parameters.

Example of a *plugin.xml* File:

```
<plugin id="com.oxygenxml.pdf.prince">
  <!-- extensions -->
```

```
  <feature extension="dita.conductor.transtype.check" value="pdf-prince" type="txt"/>
  <feature extension="dita.conductor.target.relative" value="integrator.xml"
    type="file"/>
  <feature extension="dita.transtype.print" value="pdf-prince"/>
  <transtype name="pdf-prince" extends="commons" desc="PDF (Prince XML)">
    <param name="princeExecPath" type="file" desc="Path to the Prince executable"/>
  </transtype>
</plugin>
```

Resources

For more information, watch this DITA-OT Day 2015 presentation:

https://www.youtube.com/embed/LcrR0YUFlQ4

Built-in Third-Party DITA Open Toolkit Plugins

The DITA Open Toolkit 4.4.0 distribution that is bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes some pre-installed third-party open-source *plugins* *(on page 2232)* that add extra publishing formats and functionality.

The *plugins* that come bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin include:

- **DITA For Publishers** - These *plugins* allow DITA content to be published to additional formats, such as EPUB 2.0 and Kindle.
- **DITA to Word** - This *plugin* allows users to publish DITA content to MS Word.
- **DITA Community** - These *plugins* allow support for DITA 1.3 with embedded or referenced MathML and SVG images.

Extra Free Publishing Plugins

The DITA Open Toolkit publishing engine comes with support for predefined output formats such as HTM5, PDF, and Eclipse Help. Since the architecture of the publishing engine is plugin-based, over time, lots of useful plugins were developed in the **Oxygen XML GitHub** account that enhance the publishing and some of them are listed below. The plugins that are already installed within the DITA-OT engine that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin are listed with a **[Bundled]** marker.

Plugin that Converts DITA Maps to PDF Using CSS 3 [Bundled]

You can use this very popular plugin to publish DITA to PDF output using CSS. As the publishing engine, it can use the **Oxygen XML Chemistry** processor (freely bundled with **Oxygen XML Editor**), the Antenna House engine, or the Prince XML engine.

DITA Metrics Report [Bundled]

This is a very useful open-source plugin can be used to generate an HTML report from an existing DITA project and contains a lot of useful information, including:

- Total number of maps and topics that are part of the project.
- Total number of elements used in topics and maps along with a table presenting all element names and their usage counter.
- The used elements for each DITA domain.
- Total number of attributes used in topics and maps along with a table presenting all attribute names and their usage counter.
- Statistics about the conditional attributes used in the project.
- Information about content reuse.
- Text and content statistics, including both total words (word count) and unique words (vocabulary).
- List of largest and smallest topics and the number of words each one uses.
- Listing of all links to resources outside of the project.
- A metrics evolution report between different versions of your documentation.

Export DITA Map Plugin [Bundled]

You can use this free plugin to create a ZIP file from your entire DITA project. The plugin also takes filters/profiling into account when including topics.

Publish DITA Content with References to Video and Audio Resources. [Bundled]

A DITA Open Toolkit plugin can be used to convert the DITA `<object>` element to various HTML 5 structures (such as <`<video>`, `<audio>`, or `<iframe>`).

Show Consecutive *Codeblocks* in Multiple Tabs for WebHelp Output

This open-source plugin can be used to display consecutive DITA `<codeblock>` elements in separate tabs.

Add Edit Links in HTML or PDF-based Output [Bundled]

This plugin can be used to add edit links in HTML or PDF-based output that allows subject matter experts to offer feedback for the published content directly in the source using a DITA web editing tool (such as **Oxygen XML Web Author**).

Create a Single Merged XML Document From an Entire DITA Project [Bundled]

This plugin can be used to produce a merged output from the entire DITA map structure without further processing. It is useful if you want to further process the merged XML document for producing various reports.

Dynamically Publish Excel Content as DITA

A DITA Open Toolkit plugin that can be used to dynamically convert Excel files to DITA (Excel files referenced with `format="excel"` in DITA maps).

Dynamically Use JSON Content in DITA Topics

A DITA Open Toolkit plugin that can be used to dynamically convert JSON content to DITA (JSON files referenced with `format="json"` in DITA maps).

Dynamically Publish *ASCIIDoc* Content as DITA

A DITA Open Toolkit plugin that can be used to dynamically convert *ASCIIDoc* content to DITA (*ASCIIDoc* files referenced with `format="ant-parser"` in DITA maps).

Embed HTML Content in DITA Topics [Bundled]

A plugin that can be used to embed well-formed HTML content in a DITA topic inside a special element.

Embed *LateX* Equations in DITA Content

A DITA Open Toolkit plugin that can be used to publish embedded *LateX* mathematical equations to HTML and PDF.

Embed UML Diagrams in DITA Content

A DITA Open Toolkit plugin that can be used to publish embedded UML diagrams equations to HTML and PDF.

Float Images in HTML and PDF Outputs

A plugin that can be used to float an image referenced in a DITA topic left or right depending on the specified `@outputclass` attribute value.

Embed Referenced MathML and SVGZ Images in HTML Output

A DITA Open Toolkit plugin that can be used to embed referenced MathML and SVG images in the HTML5 and XHTML output.

Dynamically Convert DITA Tables to Graphs

A DITA Open Toolkit plugin that converts DITA tables having a certain structure to SVG graphs.

Show Oxygen Change Tracking Information in the PDF Output [Bundled]

This plugin can be used to display **Oxygen XML Editor** tracked changes (insertions, deletions, or comments) in the PDF output.

Sample Customization Plugin for Classic PDF (XSL-FO) Output

This sample DITA Open Toolkit PDF customization plugin is a good starting point if you want to:

- Customize fonts.
- Customize a cover page to provide custom logos and coloring.
- Customize page headers and footers.

PDF (XSL-FO) - Generate Numbers Before a Topic's Title

A DITA-OT PDF2 customization plugin that can be installed to generate numbers before each topic's title.

Presents Chapters With Landscape Orientation in PDF (XSL-FO) output

A PDF customization folder that can be used to define landscape orientation for a certain chapter.

Using an External DITA Open Toolkit in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin comes bundled with a DITA Open Toolkit, located in the *DITA-OT-DIR* directory. If you want to use an external DITA-OT for all transformations and validations, you can open the **Preferences** dialog box *(on page 63)* and go to the **DITA** page *(on page 74)*, where you can specify the DITA-OT to be used.

Related Information:
Editing a Transformation Scenario *(on page 931)*
Creating New Transformation Scenarios *(on page 828)*
DITA Open Toolkit Documentation

DITA Open Toolkit Project

The *DITA Open Toolkit* project file allows you to define all your DITA map input and filter pairs and to produce the desired output formats by applying the publishing engine over this single project file: https://www.dita-ot.org/dev/topics/using-project-files.html.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin has special support for creating, editing, validating, and publishing DITA Open Toolkit project files represented in XML format. It can also use such files to detect connections between DITA resources in the entire project and to apply root map and filter pairs when editing.

Editing DITA Open Toolkit Project Files

The **New Document** wizard *(on page 222)* includes a template to help you create DITA Open Toolkit project files (with an `.xml` file extension). The template is located in the **Framework templates > DITA-OT** folder. There is also a sample project file that can be found in the application samples folder: `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/samples/dita/mobile-phone/mobilePhoneProjectFile.xml`.

When working with a DITA-OT project file in the **Author** visual editing mode, you can see a compact representation of the file by default. You can switch to the **Edit** style in the **Styles** toolbar drop-down menu to edit the file using form controls and inline buttons. The additional **View as YAML** style can be selected to see a visual representation of the same document in YAML. Content for all additional project files included in

the current edited file will appear expanded in place. The included content is read-only by default but can be directly edited if the **Allow referenced content to be edited** checkbox is selected in the **Options > Preferences > Editor > Edit Modes > Author**preferences page.

DITA-OT Project File Content Completion

Content completion is available according to the associated schema and it is enhanced with proposals for ID references, available transformation types, parameter names, and values.

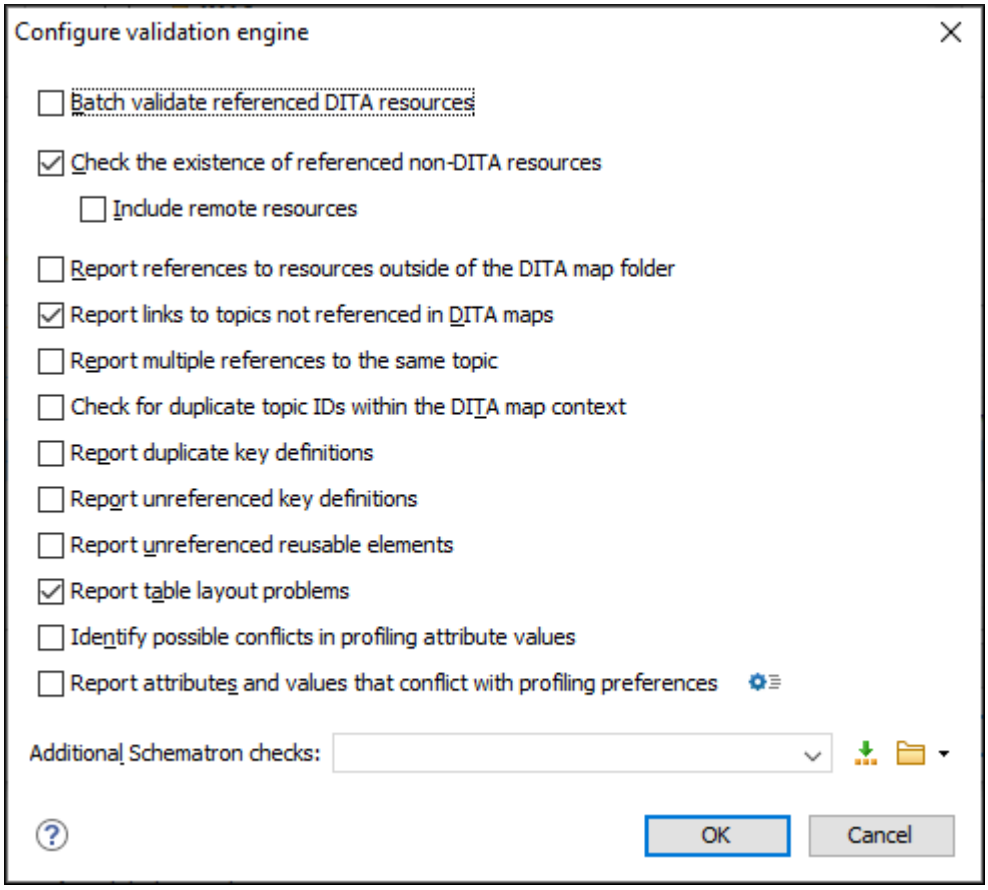
DITA-OT Project File Validation

The default automatic validation support for DITA-OT project files has enhanced Schematron rules that report invalid references to non-existing contexts. The default validation is based on a validation scenario named **DITA-OT Project** that in included in the DITA-OT project framework.

The DITA-OT Project framework also includes a *validation scenario* named **DITA-OT Project Validation and Completeness Check**. It contains validation units that automatically validate the project file based on the **DITA-OT Project** scenario and also a manual validation unit based on the **DITA-OT Project Validation and Completeness Check** *validation engine* that validates all contexts recursively.

When creating a validation scenario *(on page 537)*, or editing an existing scenario *(on page 547)* for a DITA-OT project file, you can select **DITA-OT Project Validation and Completeness Check** engine in the **Validation engine** column and clicking the **Settings** button for that engine opens the **Configure validation engine** dialog box where you can configure options for validating the DITA-OT project.

Figure 402. Configure Validation Engine Dialog Box for DITA-OT Project Validation



The options available in this dialog box include:

Batch validate referenced DITA resources

This option specifies the level of validation that applies to referenced DITA files:

- If the checkbox is left unchecked (default setting), the DITA files will be validated using the rules defined in the DTD or XML Schema declared in the document.
- If the checkbox is selected, the DITA files will be validated using rules defined in their associated validation scenario *(on page 536)*.

Check the existence of non-DITA references resources

Extends the validation of referenced resources to non-DITA files.

Include remote resources

Select this option if you want to check that remote referenced binary resources (such as images, movie clips, ZIP archives) exist at the specified location.

Report references to resources outside of the DITA map folder

If selected, it will report any references to DITA resources that are located outside the *main DITA map (on page 2234)* folder.

Report links to topics not referenced in DITA maps

Checks that all the topics referenced by other topics are also linked in the *DITA map*. Also reports related links defined in relationship tables whose target topics are not referenced in the DITA Map.

Report multiple references to the same topic

If selected, it will report warnings when a topic is referenced multiple times in the *DITA map*, unless a unique `@copy-to` attribute is used on the `<topicref>` element for any topic that is referenced multiple times.

For example, it will **not** report a warning if there is a topic referenced twice, but the second `<topicref>` has a `@copy-to` attribute set:

```
<topicref href="topic.dita"/>
.....
 <topicref href="topic.dita" copy-to="topic2.dita"/>
```

On the other hand, it **will** report a warning if there is a topic referenced twice and none of the reference-type elements has a `@copy-to` attribute set or both of them have the `@copy-to` attribute set to the same value:

```
<topicref href="topic.dita" copy-to="topic2.dita"/>
......
 <topicref href="topic.dita" copy-to="topic2.dita"/>
```

Check for duplicate topic IDs within the DITA map context

Checks for multiple topics with the same ID in the context of the entire map.

Report duplicate key definitions

Checks the *DITA map* for multiple key references with the same key defined for them. This is helpful because if you have two different resources with the same value for the `@keys` attribute, all references will point to the first one encountered and the other will be ignored.

Note:
This option takes *key scopes (on page 2049)* into account. For example, if you have something like this:

```
<topicref href="t2.dita" keys="k2"/>
    <topicgroup keyscope="ks">
        <topicref href="t2.dita" keys="k2"/>
    </topicgroup>
```

it will not report the "k2" key as a duplicate because it is defined in a *key scope (on page 2049)* on the second occurrence.

Report unreferenced key definitions

Checks the entire *DITA map* and reports any key definitions that are not referenced anywhere. Note that if the **Use DITAVAL filters** option is selected, this check will search for unreferenced key definitions based upon your selected filter.

Report unreferenced reusable elements

Checks the entire *DITA map* and reports any detected reusable elements that are not referenced anywhere. It looks for elements that have an *ID* specified in the following types of topic references:

- Any `<topicref>` that contains a `@processing-role` attribute set to **resource-only**.
- Any other referenced topic that contains elements that are reused elsewhere through a `@conref` or `@conkeyref`.

Report table layout problems

Looks for table layout problems. The types of errors that may be reported include:

- If a row has fewer cells than the number of columns detected.
- For a *CALS* table, if a cell has a vertical span greater than the available rows count.
- For a *CALS* table, if the number of `<colspecs>` is different than the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute.
- For a *CALS* table, if the number of columns detected from the table `@cols` attribute is different than the number of columns detected in the table structure.
- For a *CALS* table, if the value of the `@cols`, `@rowsep`, or `@colsep` attributes are not numeric.
- For a *CALS* table, if the `@namest`, `@nameend`, or `@colname` attributes point to an incorrect column name.

Identify possible conflicts in profile attribute values

When the profiling attributes of a topic contain values that are not found in parent topic profiling attributes, the content of the topic is overshadowed when generating profiled output. This option reports these possible conflicts.

Report attributes and values that conflict with profiling preferences

Looks for profiling attributes and values that are not defined in the **Profiling / Conditional Text** preferences page *(on page 136)* (you can click the **Profiling Preferences** button to open this preferences page). It also checks if profiling attributes defined as *single-value* have multiple values set in the searched topics.

Additional Schematron checks

Allows you to select a Schematron file that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will use for the validation of DITA resources. You can specify the path by using the text field, its history drop-down, the **Insert Editor Variables** *(on page 199)* button, or the browsing actions in the **Browse** drop-down list.

Advanced Tip:
Some APIs are available that retrieve information about DITA keys that are referenced within a topic. The APIs can be called from XSLT Stylesheets (including XML Refactoring operations) or Schematron schemas. For details, see API Documentation: DITAXSLTExtensionFunctionUtil.

Publishing DITA Open Toolkit Project Files

Once a DITA-OT project file is opened in the application, two predefined publishing scenarios become available in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** dialog box *(on page 934)*:

- **Publish DITA-OT Project (all deliverables)** - Runs the publishing engine and produces output for all deliverables defined in the project file.
- **Publish DITA-OT Project (select deliverable)** - Runs the publishing engine and produces output for only one deliverable specified by the end-user.

Some of the allowed transformation parameters that are relevant to the DITA-OT project file include:

- **project.file** - Specifies the path to the project file.
- **dita-ot.dir** - Specifies the directory where DITA-OT, used in transformation is installed.
- **additional.args** - Specifies the additional arguments used in transformation.
- **deliverable.id** - Specifies the id of the deliverable. This parameter is only available in the **Publish DITA-OT Project (select deliverable)** transformation.
- **jvm.args** - Specifies the JVM arguments used by the transformation for each deliverable. This can be used to increase the memory allocation used by the transformation.

  Example: To set the JVM memory allocation to 5 GB for publishing deliverables, append the following value to the existing ones:

  ```
  -Xmx5G
  ```

  If the "pdf-css-html5" (based on Chemistry PDF CSS processor) deliverable publication fails with an Out Of Memory Error, try appending the `baseJVMArgLine` parameter to the "jvm.args" parameter value. For example:

  ```
  -DbaseJVMArgLine=-Xmx5G
  ```

When editing DITA OT project files in the **Author** visual editing mode, each presented deliverable has an inline button that can be used to individually publish it.

Main Files Support for DITA Open Toolkit Project Files

If you enable main files support at project level *(on page 2174)*, you can choose to detect all top-level DITA Open Toolkit project files and to add them to the Main Files folder. You could also manually add the top-level

files for your DITA-OT project in the Main Files folder. The benefit of this is that whenever you rename or move files in the **Project Explorer** view, the references to those resources will automatically be updated.

Tip:
The Referenced/Dependent Resources view *(on page 2176)* also works for DITA-OT project files.

Editing Contexts Detected from DITA Open Toolkit Project Files

Once a DITA-OT project file is added to the Main Files folder, the **Context** drop-down menu on the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar will contain context DITA maps defined in the project file and the **Profiling/Conditional Text** menu will contain filter pairs gathered from the project file. When you select one of them in the drop-down menu, the application gathers the keys from the context DITA map and applies the filters specified in that context.

DITA Specialization Support

DITA is designed to let you design new markup and new document types that allow any general-purpose DITA processor to process documents that use the new markup. This in turn enables blind interchange of DITA documents from any source. In particular, in the context of a map, you can combine topics of any type and get usable results from any general-purpose DITA processor. Specialization is the one truly unique and distinguishing aspect of DITA. Even if you have no use for any aspect of DITA modularity or reuse, you still have a use for specialization simply because it enables reliable interchange in a way that no other XML application does.

For detailed information and step-by-step tutorials about DITA specializations, see DITA 4 Practitioners: DITA Configuration and Specialization Tutorials.

In addition, the topics in this section contain information about using DITA specializations in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Integrating a DITA Specialization

A DITA specialization can have its document type defined with any of the following::

- **DTD** - For configuration and specialization tutorials, see http://dita4practitioners.github.io/dita-specialization-tutorials/. A small sample plugin is also available here: https://github.com/oxygenxml-incubator/dita-ot-specialization-plugin-sample/.
- **XSD** - For configuration and specialization tutorials, see http://dita4practitioners.github.io/dita-specialization-tutorials/.
- **Relax NG** - For more information, see the following presentation: Creating DITA-OT Constraint/Specialization Plugins. For Relax NG coding requirements, see https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/archSpec/base/relax-ng-requirements.html.

A DITA specialization may optionally include specialized processing, that is new XSLT template rules that match the extension part of the `@class` attribute values of the new elements, and thus extend the default processing available in the DITA Open Toolkit.

To integrate a DITA specialization into Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, use one of the following methods:

DITA-OT Plugin Method

CAUTION:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin support engineers do not officially offer support and troubleshooting assistance for custom DITA-OT distributions or custom installed DITA-OT plugins. If you discover any issues or inconsistent behavior while using a custom DITA-OT or a DITA-OT that contains custom DITA-OT plugins, you should revert to the default built-in DITA-OT.

If the DITA specialization is available as a DITA Open Toolkit plugin, follow this procedure:

1. Copy the additional *plugin* to the location of the DITA-OT version you are using (by default, *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins` directory).

   Important:
   The application needs to have full write access permissions to the DITA-OT directory.

2. If Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin was installed in the default location, you may need to restart and run it as an administrator.
3. Select the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** *(on page 934)* action from the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar (you could also use the same action on the main toolbar or open the **Transformation Scenarios** view *(on page 940)*).
4. Select the **Integrate/Install DITA-OT Plugins** transformation scenario *(on page 2094)*.

   Tip:
   If you don't see that scenario in the **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)** *(on page 934)* dialog box or **Transformation Scenarios** view *(on page 940)*, click the **Settings** button and select the **Show all scenarios** option, but don't forget to change it back to **Show only the scenarios available for the editor** after you are finished with this procedure.

5. Apply the scenario *(on page 933)*.
6. Check the **Results** panel at the bottom of the application to make sure the build was successful.
7. Restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin with your normal permissions.

Tip:
Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin detects new document templates *(on page 229)* contributed by the DITA-OT plugin as long as you do the following:

1. Create a new folder called **template_folders** inside your DITA OT plugin's folder. For example: *DITA-OT-DIR*`\plugins\my_custom_plugin\template_folders`.
2. Create one or more subfolders inside the **template_folders** directory that contain the new document templates. The new document templates found in those subfolders will be available in the **New** document wizard.

Alternative Methods

If the DITA specialization is not available as a DITA-OT plugin, you have the following options:

- If the DTDs that define the extension elements are located in a folder outside the DITA Open Toolkit folder, add new rules to the DITA-OT catalog file. These rules are meant for resolving the DTD references from the DITA files that use the specialized elements to that folder. This allows for correct resolution of DTD references to your local DTD files and is needed for both validation and transformation of the *DITA maps* or topics. The DITA-OT catalog file is called `catalog-dita.xml` and is located in the root folder of the DITA Open Toolkit.
- If there is specialized processing provided by XSLT stylesheets that override the default stylesheets from DITA-OT, these new stylesheets must be called from the DITA-OT Ant build scripts.

  Important:
  If you are using DITA specialization elements in your DITA files, it is recommended that you activate the **Enable DTD/XML Schema processing in document type detection** option in the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 81)*.

- You could create your own document templates *(on page 229)*, store them in a custom directory, then add that directory to the list of template directories that Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses by adding the directory to the list in the Document Templates Preferences *(on page 80)* page.

Related Information:
DITA Configuration and Specialization Tutorials

Editing DITA Map Specializations

In addition to recognizing the default *DITA map (on page 2230)* formats (`<map>` and `<bookmap>`), the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* can also be used to open and edit specializations of *DITA maps*.

All advanced editing actions available for the map (such as insertion actions or editing properties) allow you to specify the element in an editable combo box. The elements that initially appear in the combo box are all the elements that are allowed to appear at the insert position for the given specialization.

The topic titles rendered in the **DITA Maps Manager** view *(on page 1880)* are collected from the target files by matching the `@class` attribute and not a specific element name.

When editing DITA specializations of maps in the main editor, the insertions of topic reference, topic heading, topic group and conref actions should work without modification. For the table actions, you have to modify each action manually to insert the correct element name at the cursor position. You can go to the **DITA Map** document type from the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 81)* and edit the table actions to insert the element names as specified in your specialization. See Creating a Framework Using the Configuration Dialog Box *(on page 1533)* for more details.

Related Information:
DITA Configuration and Specialization Tutorials
Integrating a DITA Specialization *(on page 2169)*

Editing DITA Topic Specializations

In addition to recognizing the default DITA topic formats, topic specializations can also be edited in **Author** mode.

The content completion should work without additional modifications and you can choose the tags that are allowed at the cursor position.

The CSS styles used for rendering the elements should also work on the specialized topics without additional modifications.

The toolbar/menu actions should be customized to insert the correct element names. You can go to the DITA document type from the **Document Type Association** preferences page *(on page 81)* and edit the actions to insert the element names, as specified in your specialization. See Creating a Framework Using the Configuration Dialog Box *(on page 1533)* for more details.

Related Information:
DITA Configuration and Specialization Tutorials
Integrating a DITA Specialization *(on page 2169)*

Translating DITA Projects Overview

This topic contains some general information about translating DITA content and is meant to help those who do not store their DITA projects through a **Content Management System (CMS)** or other type of service that already includes their own translation support.

Choosing a Translation Agency

To minimize translation costs, it is recommended to choose a translation agency that is able to handle DITA content directly, without requiring you to convert the content to some intermediary format. This means that you benefit from the DITA reusable content features *(on page 2020)*.

If you plan to translate your DITA project, it is also recommended that you contact a DITA-aware translation agency as early in your process as possible because translation agencies who translate DITA content directly usually need to have a preliminary discussion about how your project is structured, which terms need to be

skipped when translating, how various measuring units are translated, how content is reused, your metadata strategy, and how screenshots are handled. Those discussions may influence the way that you organize and write your DITA content.

Note:
If your translation agency does not directly handle DITA content, there are commercial tools that can be used to convert **DITA** to **XLIFF** (for example, https://www.maxprograms.com/products/fluenta.html).

Optimizing Content for Translation

In general, there are three main principles to take into account when writing DITA content that will be translated:

1. Use a controlled vocabulary (for example, the Simplified Technical English vocabulary).
2. Avoid reusing inline elements other than product names. The following *DITA Users List* discussion describes the reasons for this: https://lists.oasis-open.org/archives/dita/201301/msg00029.html.
3. Avoid profiling/filtering content at inline level, for similar reasons.

General DITA Project Structure

It is usually considered best practice to organize your DITA maps/topics in a separate folder for each language. One folder that contains the English version of all of your DITA resources and a separate folder for each of the other languages you will translate with equivalent DITA resources translated in that specific language.

General Translation Workflow

When translating DITA content, the most common workflow involves these steps:

1. Create your content in the primary language.
2. Before each release, you gather all the DITA files that have been changed and need to be translated.
3. Send a copy of the relevant DITA files to the translation agency (known also as "localization service provider").
4. Receive translated DITA content back from the translation agency and integrate it in each language-specific project folder *(on page 2173)*.

Publishing Translated Content

All of your translated DITA maps and topics should have the **xml:lang** attribute set with the appropriate value on the root element. Along with the actual translated content, the published output may also contain static text (such as the word **Table** followed by the table number, **Figure** following by the number, or **Note** appearing before the content of each DITA `<note>` element). The **DITA Open Toolkit** includes support for various languages for HTML-based output and PDF-based output. You can also add support for other languages:

Globalizing DITA Content: Customizing Generated Text. For information about how to add a new language to the **Oxygen WebHelp Responsive** output, see Adding a New Language *(on page 1098)*.

Liability

Translation agencies usually do not assume any liability for incorrectly translated content. If possible, it is recommended to have someone who is familiar with the particular language be responsible for reviewing and accepting the translated content. For example, if your company has regional headquarters located in various countries, perhaps someone from each headquarters could review the translated content.

Other Resources

Here are some links to other resources that might help you with translating DITA projects:

- DITA Translation: Organizing Your DITA Files
- DITA Translation: Using XLIFF to Translate DITA Projects
- WhP Localization Services Blog Page
- Webinar: **DITA Project Management, Validation, and Translation in a Docs as Code Environment**

Main Files Support in DITA

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a feature that allows you to define *Main Files (on page 2232)* at project level. This feature is typically used in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin for XML documents to determine the context for operations such as validation, content completion, refactoring, searches, or displaying components collected from various modules. For DITA projects, this feature has a more limited purpose in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin since it is mainly used to provide the means for updating references to moved or renamed resources.

Since you can move or rename DITA resources (such as topics and maps) in the **DITA Maps Manager** *(on page 1880)*, the *root map (on page 2234)* is used as the scope to update all the references to the moved or renamed resources. However, you do not have this option for non-DITA resources (such as folders, images, HTML files, audio, video, text files, Markdown documents) since they do not appear in the **DITA Maps Manager**. Also, when moving DITA resources in the **DITA Maps Manager**, you have to do it one at a time.

You can use the *Main Files* support in DITA to update all the references to moved or renamed resources in the scope of the *Main Files*, and since the *root map (on page 2234)* will be set as the *Main File*, you achieve the same result as if you were moving or renaming them in the **DITA Maps Manager**. It also allows you to move multiple DITA resources (or entire folders) at once in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*, instead of the **DITA Maps Manager**, while still giving you the option of updating all the references.

How to Enable Main Files Support in DITA

To use the *Main Files* support in DITA, follow these steps:

1. Go to the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and select **Enable Main Files Support** from the contextual menu of the project root folder.
2. Add the main DITA map (*root map*) *(on page 2234)* to the Main Files folder by doing one of the following:
   - Right-click the project root folder or the *Main Files* folder and select **Detect Main Files from Project**.
   - Manually add the *root map (on page 2234)* to the *Main Files* folder by right-clicking a file from your project and selecting **Add to Main Files** from the contextual menu (or simply drag and drop it into the *Main Files* folder).

   Tip:
   You can set multiple maps in the *Main Files* folder and all of them will automatically be added to the list of root maps you can select from the drop-down menu in the **DITA Maps Manager** toolbar *(on page 1885)*.
3. [Alternative] If you have a defined DITA Open Toolkit project XML file *(on page 2168)* you can add it to the *Main Files* folder. Once you do that the application will know the dependencies between all resources directly and indirectly referenced from the project file, including DITA maps, topics, binary resources and DITAVAL filter files.

Moving or Renaming Non-DITA Resources and Updating the References to Them

With the *Main Files* support enabled, you can move or rename non-DITA resources (such as folders, images, HTML files, audio, video, text files, Markdown documents) or move multiple normal DITA resources (or entire folders) in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin will offer the option of updating all the references to the moved or renamed resources in the scope of the *Main Files* (in this case, the *main DITA map (root map) (on page 2234)*).

To move or rename non-DITA resources (or move multiple DITA resources) and update the references to them, follow these steps:

1. Enable *Main Files* support and add your *root DITA map (on page 2234)* to the *Main Files* folder as described in the How to Enable Main Files Support in DITA *(on page 2174)* section above.
2. Go to the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*, and use one of the following methods to move or rename the resources:

   Moving Resources

   To move resources in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*, do one of the following:

- Simply drag and drop the resource to the new location in the tree structure.
- Use the **Move** action (or **Copy** and **Paste** actions) from the contextual menu.
- Right-click the resource and select **Refactoring > Move resource** action from the contextual menu. Note that this method also allows you to specify a new name and destination path in the **Move resource** dialog box.

Result: In all cases, a **Move resource** dialog box will be presented.

Renaming Resources

To rename resources in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*, do one of the following:

- Select the resource and press **F2**, or simply left-click again, until the in-place editor allows you to change the file name.
- Right-click the resource and select **Rename** or **Refactoring > Rename resource** .

Result: In all cases, a **Rename resource** dialog box will be presented.

3. Make sure the **Update references of the moved resource(s)** option is selected in the resulting **Move** or **Rename** dialog box and keep the scope as **main files** to make sure all the references to the moved or renamed resource are updated.

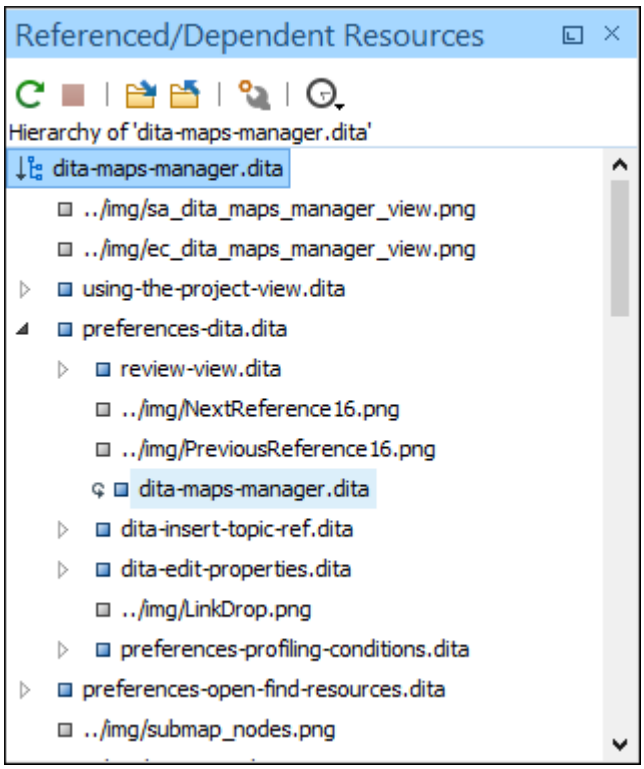
DITA Referenced/Dependent Resources View

The **Referenced/Dependent Resources** view displays the *hierarchy* or *dependencies* for resources included in an XML document. For DITA resources, it will only show direct references, so resources that are indirectly referenced through keys are not presented in the hierarchy or dependencies tree.

To see the references or dependencies for a DITA resource (maps or topics), right-click a resource in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* and either select **Show referenced resources** or **Show dependent resources**.

If you want to view the dependencies for a media resource (such as images) directly referenced in a DITA topic, click the **Show dependencies for** button on the toolbar of the **Referenced/Dependent Resources** view, select the **All files** filter in the file browser, find the particular resource, and double-click it.

Figure 403. Referenced/Dependent Resources View



The following actions are available on the toolbar of the **Referenced/Dependent Resources** view:

Refresh

Refreshes the hierarchical structure.

Stop

Stops the computing.

Show hierarchy for

Computes the hierarchical structure of the references for a resource.

Show dependencies for

Computes the structure of the dependencies for a resource.

Configure dependencies search scope

Allows you to configure a scope to compute the dependencies structure. You can restrict the scope to the current project or to one or multiple *working sets (on page 2235)*. If the **Use only Main Files, if enabled** checkbox is selected, the scope of the search is restricted to the **Main Files** directory *(on page 2174)*.

History

Provides access to the list of previously computed dependencies. Use the **Clear history** button to remove all items from this list.

The contextual menu for a resource listed in the **Referenced/Dependent Resources** view contains the following actions:

Open

Opens the resource. You can also double-click a resource in the hierarchical structure to open it.

Go to reference

Opens the source document where the resource is referenced.

Copy location

Copies the location of the resource.

Move resource

Opens the **Move resource** dialog box where the following fields are available:

- **Destination** - Presents the path to the current location of the resource you want to move and gives you the option to introduce a new location.
- **New name** - Presents the current name of the moved resource and gives you the option to change it.
- **Update references of the moved resource(s)** - As long as **Main Files** support is enabled *(on page 2174)*, you can select this option to update the references to the resource you are moving, in accordance with the new location and name. A **Preview** option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting **Move** to process the operation.

Rename resource

Opens the **Rename resource** dialog box where the following fields are available:

- **New name** - Presents the current name of the edited resource and allows you to modify it.
- **Update references of the renamed resource(s)** - As long as **Main Files** support is enabled *(on page 2174)*, you can select this option to update the references to the resource you are renaming. A **Preview** option is available that allows you to see what will be updated before selecting **Rename** to process the operation.

Show referenced resources

Shows the references for the selected resource.

Show dependent resources

Shows the dependencies for the selected resource.

Add to Main Files

Adds the currently selected resource in the **Main Files** directory.

Expand More

Expands more of the children of the selected resource from the structure.

Collapse All

Collapses all children of the selected resource from the structure.

Tip:
When a recursive reference is encountered in the view, the reference is marked with a special icon.

Search and Rename Actions for IDs in DITA

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin allows you to search references to ID attributes (either direct references using the `@href` and `@conref` attributes or indirect references using `@keyref` or `@conkeyref` attributes) or to rename the id attribute in all the declared and referenced locations. The main benefit of this feature is the fact that it allows you to rename `@id` attributes (or search for their references) in the scope of the entire project. It also works for IDs defined inside DITA maps and then referenced in maps and topics.

In **Author** mode, these operations are available for DITA documents in the contextual menu (grouped in the **Manage IDs** submenu). In **Text** mode, these actions are also available in the **Quick Assist** menu. To access it, place the cursor inside the value of an `@id` attribute and click the yellow light bulb icon.

The possible actions include:

Rename in

Renames the ID and all of its occurrences. Selecting this action opens a dialog box where you insert the new ID value and choose the scope of the rename operation. For a preview of the changes you are about to make, click **Preview**. This opens the **Preview** dialog box, which presents a list with the files that contain changes and a preview zone of these changes.

Rename in File (Available in the Text mode only)

Renames the ID you are editing and all its occurrences in the current file.

Search References

Searches for the references of the ID. By default, the scope of this action is the current project.

Search References in

Searches for the references of the ID and you can choose the scope of the operation or configure working sets to use for the scope.

Search Declarations (Available in the Text mode only)

Searches for the declaration of the ID reference. By default, the scope of this action is the current project.

Search Declarations in (Available in the Text mode only)

Searches for the declaration of the ID reference and you can choose the scope of the operation or configure working sets to use for the scope.

Search Occurrences in file

Searches for the declaration and references of the ID in the current document and presents the results in the message panel at the bottom of the application.

Change scope (Available in the Quick Assist menu in Text mode only)

Opens a dialog box where you can choose the scope of the operation or configure working sets to use for the scope.

Tip:
A quick way to go to the declaration of an ID in **Text** mode is to move the cursor over an ID reference and use the **Ctrl + Single-Click (Command + Single-Click on macOS)** navigation.

Selecting an ID that you use for search or refactor operations differs between the **Text** and **Author** modes. In the **Text** mode, you position the cursor inside the declaration or reference of an ID. In the **Author** mode, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin collects all the IDs by analyzing each element from the path to the root. If more IDs are available, you are prompted to choose one of them.

Related Information:
Main Files Support in DITA *(on page 2174)*

Metadata

Metadata is a broad concept that describes data that explains or identifies other data. Metadata can be used for many purposes, from driving automation of document builds to enabling authors and readers to find content more easily. DITA provides numerous types of metadata, each of which is used and created differently. Some of the most important forms of metadata in DITA are topic and taxonomy.

Topic Metadata

Topic metadata describes the topic and what it is about. Topic metadata can be inserted in the `<prolog>` element of a topic or inside the `<topicref>` element that points to a topic from a map. In other words, metadata about the topic can be asserted by the topic itself, or can be assigned to it by the map that includes it in the build. This allows multiple maps to assign different metadata to the same topic. This may be appropriate when you want to describe a topic differently in various documents.

Taxonomy and Subject Scheme

A taxonomy is a controlled vocabulary. It can be used to standardize how many things in your content and metadata are named. This consistency in naming can help ensure that automated processes work correctly, and that consistent terminology is used in content, and in metadata. In DITA, taxonomies are created using *subject scheme maps (on page 2234)*. When you are authoring, many of the values you choose from have been defined in *subject scheme maps*.

Migrating MS Office Documents to DITA

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin integrates the entire DITA for Publishers plugins suite and provides some possibilities for migrating content from Microsoft Office® (and other Office-type formats) to DITA. There are also possibilities for migrating various other types of formats. For more information, see Migrating Various Document Formats to and from DITA *(on page 2182)*.

Migration from Office-type formats to XML is rarely perfect and manual changes may need to be made to the converted content, but the methods described below should help you find the best approach for your particular case.

Smart Paste (Single Document)

1. Open the document in MS Office (or other similar application), select all the content, and copy it.
2. Open Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and create a new DITA topic.
3. Paste the selected content in **Author** mode. The *Smart Paste* functionality *(on page 366)* will attempt to convert the content to DITA structure.

HTML to DITA (Single Document)

1. Save your document as HTML.
2. Once you have converted it to HTML, you have several possibilities:
   - In Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, select **File > Import/Convert > HTML File to XHTML** to import it as XHTML. Then, open the XHTML in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and use one of the **XHTML to DITA** transformation scenarios *(on page 741)* to convert the content to DITA structure.
   - Open the HTML file in any web browser, select all of its content, and copy it. Then, open Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, create a new **DITA** topic, and paste the selected content in **Author** mode. The *Smart Paste* functionality *(on page 366)* will attempt to convert the HTML content to DITA structure.

Word to *LibreOffice* to DITA (Single Document)

1. Open the document in the *LibreOffice* application and save it as **DocBook**.
2. Open the **DocBook** document in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.
3. Run the built-in **DocBook to DITA** transformation scenario *(on page 825)*.
4. You may need to make some manual adjustments for elements that could not be mapped.

Word to DITA using DITA For Publishers (Single Document)

1. Save the document in the MS Word DOCX format.
2. Open it in the **Archive Browser** view *(on page 1458)* in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and then open the **document.xml** file contained in the archive.
3. Run the built-in **DOCX DITA** transformation scenario. This scenario runs a build file over the DOCX archive and should produce a DITA project that contains a *DITA map* and multiple topics.
4. You may need to do some manual reconfiguration to map DOCX styles to DITA content. The XSLT conversion is part of the **DITA For Publishers** plugin and there is documentation for it available here: http://www.dita4publishers.org/d4p-users-guide/user_docs/d4p-users-guide/word2dita/word2dita-intro.html.

Word to DocBook to DITA (Multiple Documents)

1. Use a tool to convert the documents to **DocBook**. For example, *Pandoc* is a free document converter engine that can convert **DOCX** documents to **DocBook** and according to *Pandoc's* manual, you can specify multiple input files and use wildcards in the commands.
2. Save the newly converted **DocBook** documents somewhere in your project.
3. Perform a batch transformation *(on page 939)* on all the newly converted **DocBook** documents:
    a. Select all the **DocBook** documents in the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)*.
    b. Right-click the selected files and choose **Transform >** **Configure Transformation Scenario(s)**.
    c. Apply the built-in **DocBook to DITA** transformation scenario *(on page 825)*.
4. You may need to make some manual adjustments in the resulting documents for elements that could not be mapped.

Migrating Excel and Other Types of Spreadsheets to DITA

It is possible to convert Microsoft Excel (or other similar types of documents) to DITA. To do this, copy the spreadsheet content and paste it in an open DITA topic in **Author** mode. The *Smart Paste* functionality *(on page 366)* will attempt to convert the content to DITA structure.

Resources

For more information about migrating to DITA, see the following resources:

- Webinar: Integrating Various Document Formats (OpenAPI, Word, Markdown, HTML, Excel) into DITA Documentation
- Webinar: Working with DITA in Oxygen - Migrating to DITA and Refactoring

Related information
Migrating Various Document Formats to and from DITA *(on page 2182)*
Smart Paste in Author Mode *(on page 366)*
Importing Data *(on page 1521)*
Working with Archives *(on page 1458)*

Migrating Various Document Formats to and from DITA

When organizations decide to use DITA for structuring, developing, managing, or publishing content, they usually already have content written in other formats and need to convert it to DITA. There are a variety of possibilities for a conversion to DITA, depending on the original format of the content.

Migration from other formats to DITA is rarely perfect and manual changes may need to be made to the converted content, but the methods described below should help you find the best approach for your particular case.

Migrating Microsoft Office and Other Similar Types of Documents to DITA

There are various possibilities for migrating content from Microsoft Office® (and other Office-type formats) to DITA. For details, see Migrating MS Office Documents to DITA *(on page 2180)*.

Migrating Google Docs to DITA

There are several possibilities to convert Google Docs to DITA:

- Copy the content from Google Docs and paste it in an open DITA topic in **Author** mode. The *Smart Paste* functionality *(on page 366)* will attempt to convert the content to DITA.
- Save the Google document as OpenDocumentFormat (**ODF**), then open it in the free *LibreOffice* application and save it as **DocBook**. Next, open the **DocBook** document in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and run the built-in transformation scenario called **DocBook to DITA** *(on page 825)*.

In all cases, you may need to make some manual adjustments in the resulting documents for elements that couldn't be mapped.

Migrating HTML Content to DITA

There are several possibilities to convert HTML content to DITA:

- Copy the HTML content and paste it in an open DITA topic in **Author** mode. The *Smart Paste* functionality *(on page 366)* will attempt to convert the content to DITA.
- Convert the HTML file to XHTML by selecting **File > Import/Convert > HTML File to XHTML**. Then, open the XHTML file and use one of the **XHTML to DITA** Transformation Scenarios *(on page 741)* to convert the content to DITA.

Migrating Unstructured FrameMaker to DITA

There is a blog post that details various possibilities for converting Unstructured FrameMaker content to DITA: Migrating Unstructured FrameMaker to DITA.

Migrating MadCap Content to DITA

This open-source project contains such a stylesheet that attempts to convert a Flare project to DITA XML along with instructions on how to use it. As an alternative, some recent MadCap versions seem to have facilities to export content directly to DITA.

Migrating Other Formats to DITA

You may find third-party applications (such as Pandoc) that can convert your content to HTML or to some kind of XML format like DocBook. Once you have HTML or DocBook content, you can convert them to DITA using one of the methods described above.

Migrate from DITA to Confluence and Other Formats

There are various possible methods available for converting DITA content to Confluence and other formats (such as Microsoft Word or HTML). For details and ideas for some of the possible methods, see the **DITA to Confluence** blog post.

Resources

For more information about migrating to DITA, see the following resources:

- Webinar: **Integrating Various Document Formats (OpenAPI, Word, Markdown, HTML, Excel) into DITA Documentation**
- Webinar: **Working with DITA in Oxygen - Migrating to DITA and Refactoring**
- Video: **Integrating REST-API Content into DITA Documentation in Oxygen**
- Blog post: **Migrating MS Word to DITA Using the Batch Documents Converter**

How to Count Words in DITA Topics or Maps

There are various ways to count words in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:

- Open a DITA topic in the **Author** visual editing mode, right-click anywhere in the editor, and select **Text > Count Words**.
- Open a DITA map in the **DITA Maps Manager** view. Click the **Open map in editor with resolved topics** toolbar button. In the newly opened DITA map, right-click anywhere in the editor and select **Text > Count Words**.
- Open a DITA map in the **DITA Maps Manager** view. Click the **Configure Transformation Scenarios** toolbar button and choose the **DITA Map Metrics Report** transformation scenario.

> **Tip:**
> Along with the word count, the DITA Map Metrics Report Transformation *(on page 2091)* provides additional information (such as the number of processed maps and topics, content reuse percentage, the number of elements, attributes, words, and characters used, and more).

DITA 1.3 Support

Starting with version 17.1, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for some DITA 1.3 features.

The Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin publication of the full DITA 1.3 specifications can be found at https://www.oxygenxml.com/dita/1.3/specs/index.html#introduction/dita-release-overview.html.

The following table is a list of DITA 1.3 features and their implementation status in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:

Table 16. DITA 1.3 Features Implementation Status

Feature	Editing	Publishing [DITA Open Toolkit 4.4.0 is used]
DITA 1.3 DTD, XML Schema, and Relax NG-based maps/topics/tasks/references, etc.	New DITA 1.3 document templates. By default, DITA topics and maps that do not specify version in the DOCTYPE declaration are also considered to be DITA 1.3 Specific annotations presented in the content completion assistance window and documentation tooltips for all new DITA 1.3 elements	N/A
Learning Object and Group maps	New document templates	No specific support implemented
Troubleshooting specialization	Create and edit new troubleshooting topics	No specific support implemented
XML markup domain	Validation and Content Completion	Special rendering in PDF and XHTML-based outputs
Equation and MathML domain	Validation and content completion Display and Insert equations	Special rendering in PDF and XHTML-based outputs
SVG domain	Validation and content completion Display referenced SVG content	Special rendering in PDF and XHTML-based outputs
Other new DITA 1.3 elements (**div**, **strike-through**, **overline**, etc.)	Validation and Content Completion	Special rendering in PDF and XHTML-based outputs
Release management domain	Validation and Content Completion	No specific support implemented
Scoped keys *(on page 2049)*	Define key scopes Validate and check for completeness Resolve **keyrefs** and **conkeyrefs** taking key scopes into account	Partially implemented (Various issues may still be encountered)

Table 16. DITA 1.3 Features Implementation Status (continued)

Feature	Editing	Publishing [DITA Open Toolkit 4.4.0 is used]
	Key scope information is displayed in a tooltip when hovering over an item in the **DITA Maps Manager**	
Branch filtering *(on page 2050)*	Display, create, and edit `<ditavalref>` elements	Partially implemented (Various issues may still be encountered)
Key-based cross deliverable addressing	Special display for references to *DITA maps* with `scope="peer"` and a defined *keyscope* Gather and present keys from peer maps	Not implemented.
Shorthand to address syntax that identifies elements in the same topic	Properly resolved for validation, links, and conrefs	Implemented
Various table attributes (**orientation**, **rotation**, **scope**, and **headers** on cells)	Not implemented in the Table Properties action support. However, attributes can be changed from the Attributes view	Not implemented
New Map **topicref** attributes (**cascade**, **deliveryTarget**)	Allow setting new attributes, propose proper values for them	Implemented

Related information

Watch our DITA 1.3 video tutorial for more information about key scopes and branch filtering.

DITA 2.0 Support

Starting with version 23, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes support for some DITA 2.0 features. To enable this support, go to the **Options > Preferences > DITA** page and select the **Enable DITA 2.0 Editing Support (Experimental)** checkbox. Enabling it results in DITA 2.0 topic and map templates being available in the **New from templates** wizard *(on page 229)*.

The following table is a list of DITA 2.0 features and their implementation status in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. The list of proposed DITA 2.0 changes is published here: https://www.oasis-open.org/committees/download.php/65626/DITA-2.0-proposals.pdf.

Table 17. DITA 2.0 Features Implementation Status

Feature	Editing	Publishing [DITA Open Toolkit 4.4.0 is used]
DITA 2.0 DTD, and Relax NG-based maps/topics/tasks/references, etc.	New DITA 2.0 document templates.	Also supported by the publishing engine.
Other new DITA 2.0 elements (include, etc.)	Validation and Content Completion.	Special rendering in PDF and XHTML-based outputs: https://www.dita-ot.org/dev/reference/dita-v2-0-support.html.
Profiling attributes defined using the new `@specializations` attribute.	Profiling attributes defined using the new `@specializations` attribute are recognized by the application.	Also supported by the publishing engine.

22.
Scripting Oxygen

Although Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is mostly intended to be a visual editing tool, the all platforms distribution is bundled with a `scripts` subfolder that contains scripts to automate and run various utilities from a command line.

To run any of these scripts, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license. Trial scripting licenses are also available, by request, for clients who are interested in testing the scripts for their particular workflows. Once you have a scripting license key available, you should copy the license key to a file named `scriptinglicensekey.txt` and save it in the main application directory (the parent directory of the "scripts" directory).

For more information about the **Oxygen Scripting** support, watch our Webinar: **Automate XML processing with Oxygen XML Scripting**.

DITA Validate and Check For Completeness

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

The **Validate and Check For Completeness** *(on page 1926)* action that is available on the toolbar of the **DITA Maps Manager** view provides the ability to validate a DITA map or a DITA Open Toolkit project file with a large array of settings. The settings dialog box has an **Export settings** option that can be used to export the settings to an XML configuration file. Once the settings are exported, you can use the `validateCheckDITA.sh` script (found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) to run a validation on a DITA map or DITA Open Toolkit project file and report the results in a separate XML document.

Sample Command-Line Arguments for the Validate and Check for Completeness Script:

```
sh scripts/validateCheckDITA.sh -i inputFile [-c contextId] [-s settingsFile] [-r reportFile]
```

A public example of using such a script as a GitHub action for reporting errors in pull requests on DITA project can be found here: https://github.com/oxygenxml/blog/blob/master/.github/workflows/validate-check-completion.yml. The GitHub action calls a Gradle script target named `runValidation`: https://github.com/oxygenxml/blog/blob/master/build/build.gradle.

Installing DITA OT Specialization Plugins

If you are using specialized DITA XML content, you must install extra plugins in the `DITA-OT` publishing engine bundled with the all-platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To do that, you can

copy your DITA-OT specialization plugins to the `OXYGEN_ALL_PLATFORMS_FOLDER/frameworks/dita/DITA-OT/plugins` folder, then open a command line console in the `DITA-OT/bin` folder, and execute the `dita --install` command to install the extra plugins in the DITA OT.

Using Schematron Rules For Validation

In the application's **DITA Maps Manager** view, you can configure the **Validate and Check For Completeness** dialog box's settings to reference a custom Schematron schema. The settings dialog box has an **Export settings** option that can be used to export the settings to an XML configuration file. Once you have this configuration file, you can provide it as a parameter in the validation script as exemplified above.

Transform

Attention:

- This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.
- To execute a scenario based on WebHelp using this script, in addition to the scripting commercial license, you are required to purchase an Oxygen XML WebHelp license or a Oxygen Publishing Engine license.
- To execute a scenario based on Chemistry using this script, in addition to the scripting commercial license, you are required to purchase an Oxygen PDF Chemistry license or a Oxygen Publishing Engine license.

The **Transform** script (`transform.sh`, found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) helps you to execute a transformation scenario. You can run the scenarios for the existing document types (frameworks) *(on page 2231)* without setting a scenarios file, but for others, you have to specify a specialized scenarios file or a project file that contains scenarios.

You can export transformation scenarios from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin into a specialized scenarios file by using the **Export selected scenarios** action from the **Transformation Scenarios** view or using the **Export Global Transformation Scenarios** action from the **Options** menu.

Arguments for the Transform Script

```
sh scripts/transform.sh -i inputFile -sn scenarioName [-s scenariosFile] [-v]
```

-i inputFile

The input file that the transformation scenario is applied to.

-sn scenarioName

The name of the transformation scenario to be executed.

-s scenariosFile

The name of a file that contains additional scenarios. It can be a specialized scenarios file or a project file that contains project transformation scenarios.

The scenarios from this file are merged with the scenarios from the document types (frameworks) *(on page 2231)*.

-v

This argument can be specified to activate verbose logging for DITA-OT and ANT scenarios. It is useful for debugging.

Tip:
For a GitHub use case sample of this script, see Oxygen Transformation Template.

Validate

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

All the validations possible in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin can also be performed from scripting. This includes validating various types of XML schemas, such as XSD, RNG, RNC, DTD, and NVDL, as well as JSON Schema, XProc, ANT, XSLT, XQuery, CSS, LESS, HTML, WSDL, OpenAPI, and of course, XML with XML schema, and JSON/YAML with JSON Schema.

The **Validate** script (`validate.sh`, found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) can be used to validate a file or a directory and get the validation results in various formats.

Arguments for the Transform Script

```
sh scripts/validate.sh fileOrDirPath [-s schemaFilePath | -sn scenarioName] [-sf scenariosFilePath] [-if includeFilesFilter]
 [-ef excludeFilesFilter] [-ed excludeSubdirsFilter] [-rf reportFile] [-rft reportFormat] [-v] [-help | --help | -h | --h]
```

fileOrDirPath

Mandatory argument that specifies the path of the file or directory to validate (it can also be provided as a URL, but if you are validating directories, the only protocol considered is `'file://'`).

-s schemaFilePath

Optional argument that specifies the file path of the schema to validate against (it can also be provided as a URL).

-sn scenarioName

Optional argument that specifies the name of the validation scenario to be applied.

-sf scenariosFilePath

Optional argument that specifies the path of the file that stores the validation scenarios (either an **Oxygen** scenarios file or an **Oxygen** project file). It can also be provided as a URL.

Notes:

- The file that stores the validation scenarios must have a similar format to that generated from **Oxygen** by invoking **Export Global Validation Scenarios** from the **Options** menu. This type of **Oxygen**-generated scenarios files has a `.scenarios` file extension by default and contains all the necessary information about custom validation scenarios created in **Oxygen**.
- **Oxygen** also saves the custom validation scenarios (as well as the scenario associations made explicitly for the files you work with) in special formatted **Oxygen** project files (usually with the `.xpr` file extension). Therefore, by using the arguments provided through **-sn** and **-sf** options, you can apply any scenario that was previously stored in either a scenarios file or an **Oxygen** project file.
- The **-s** and **-sn** options are mutually exclusive. Specifying both in the same command line is not allowed.

-if includeFilesFilter

Use this argument to only validate the files that match the specified pattern (e.g. `.xml,.json`). The default value is `*`.

-ef excludeFilesFilter

Excludes the files that match the specified pattern (e.g. `test.wsdl,draft.xsl`) from the validation.

-ed excludeSubdirsFilter

Excludes the sub-directories that match the specified pattern (e.g. `.svn,_svn,.git`).

-rf reportFile

Specifies the path for the report file to save the validation results, instead of presenting them in the console. The content of the report file is formatted according to the **-rft** argument. The report file path can also be provided as a URL.

-rft reportFormat

Specifies the format of the validation report. Possible values: `txt`, `text`, `xml`, `json`, `html`, `htm`. Default values: `txt`, `text`.

-v

Prints additional information to the console (Verbose mode).

-help | --help | -h | --h

Displays help text.

Additional Notes:

- Avoid activating the Verbose mode (**-v** option) when opting to redirect the console (and the validation report implicitly) to a specific file. That is done using the **>** operator instead of the **-rf** option. The additional information provided through verbose mode is also saved to the report file, making it to be reported as invalid when inspected in specialized editors. However, that information is placed at the beginning of the report, as plain text. If removed, the report should become valid.
- If the validation uses the **Saxon** engine and you do not have a commercial license, then the script automatically uses the **Saxon Home Edtion** distribution that does not require a license. However, if the validation involves specific **Saxon Personal / Enterprise Edition** advanced features, then the validation report clearly signals that an appropriate **Saxon** license was not found. Placing a valid **Saxon** license file in the `lib` directory from the **Oxygen** installation folder solves the problem and the validation operation works as expected.

Examples of the Validate Script

Example 1: Validate a File by Applying a Custom Validation Scenario

```
sh scripts/validate.sh "workspace/xmlFolder/xmlFile.xml" -sn "xmlValScn"
 -sf "workspace/scn/valScn.scenarios"
```

This command implies validating `xmlFile.xml` by applying the validation scenario named **xmlValScn**, described in the `valScn.scenarios` file. If you want to apply more than one validation scenario, you can use the `-sn scenarioName` construct multiple times.

Example 2: Validate a Directory by Applying an Oxygen Default Validation Scenario

```
sh scripts/validate.sh "workspace/DITAFolder" -sn "DITA"
```

A scenario name is provided, but without specifying a scenarios file. This command implies validating all files from `DITAFolder` by applying the **Oxygen** default validation scenario named **DITA** (in accordance with the association made in the **Document Type Configuration Dialog Box** *(on page 83)*).

Example 3: Validate a File by Applying Associated Scenarios Stored in an Oxygen Project File

```
sh scripts/validate.sh "workspace/mainFolder/main.xml" -sf "worksapce/proj/proj-1.xpr"
```

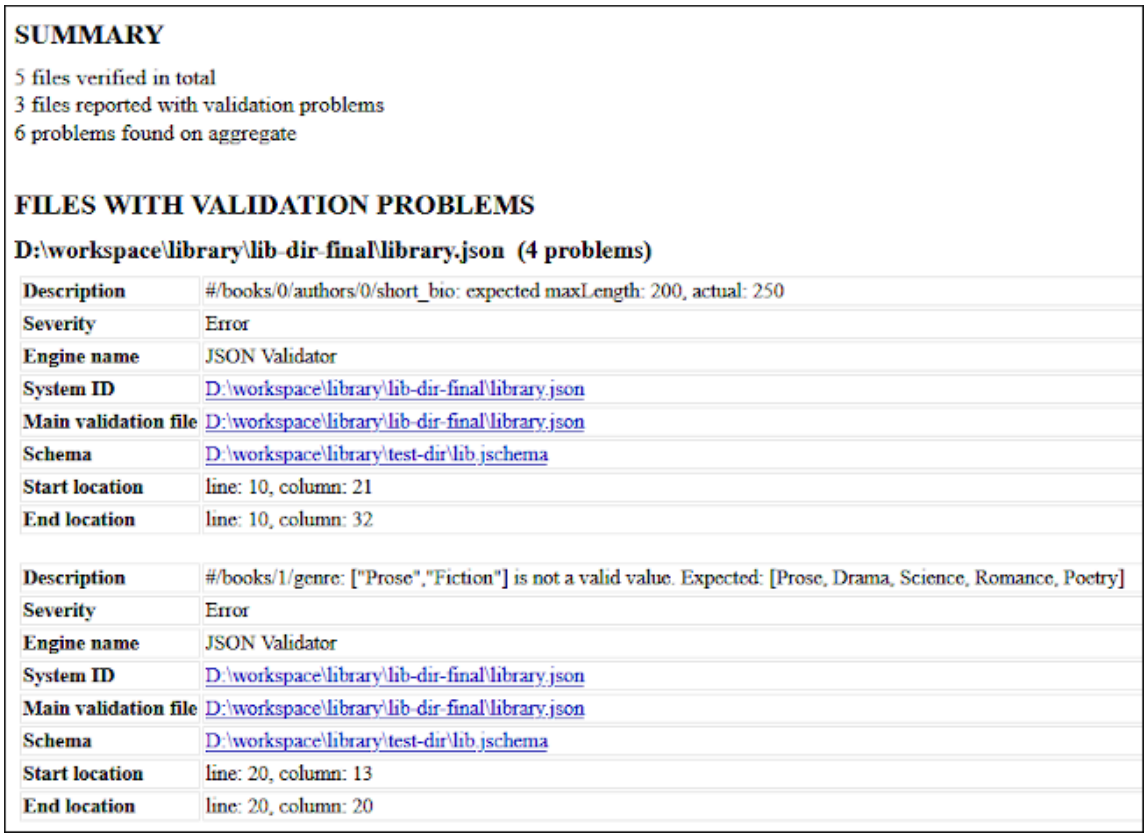
A scenarios file is provided, but without specifying a scenario name. In this case, the argument provided through the **-sf** option is assumed to be an **Oxygen** project file and it is used to search for validation scenario associations made for the `main.xml` file. This command line implies that if validation scenario associations for `main.xml` are found in `proj-1.xpr`, then those scenarios are identified and applied. Otherwise, the validation first considers the schema associations declared in `main.xml` (if any), or default **Oxygen** validation scenarios are applied in accordance with the type of the file to validate (e.g. XML in this example).

Example 4: Directory Default Validation and Custom Formatted Report Saved to a Specific Location

```
sh scripts/validate.sh ../important/xmlFolder -rft html -rf "../important/reports/validation rep.html"
```

No validation scenario name, no scenario file, and no schema provided. This command line involves validating all files from the `xmlFolder`. Each file is validated against the schema(s) internally associated (if any). Otherwise, the default **Oxygen** validation scenarios for the respective file type are applied. Also, the validation report is formatted in HTML and is saved to the `validation rep.html` file at the specified location.

Figure 404. Example of an HTML Validation Report



SUMMARY

5 files verified in total
3 files reported with validation problems
6 problems found on aggregate

FILES WITH VALIDATION PROBLEMS

D:\workspace\library\lib-dir-final\library.json (4 problems)

Description	#/books/0/authors/0/short_bio: expected maxLength: 200, actual: 250
Severity	Error
Engine name	JSON Validator
System ID	D:\workspace\library\lib-dir-final\library.json
Main validation file	D:\workspace\library\lib-dir-final\library.json
Schema	D:\workspace\library\test-dir\lib.jschema
Start location	line: 10, column: 21
End location	line: 10, column: 32

Description	#/books/1/genre: ["Prose","Fiction"] is not a valid value. Expected: [Prose, Drama, Science, Romance, Poetry]
Severity	Error
Engine name	JSON Validator
System ID	D:\workspace\library\lib-dir-final\library.json
Main validation file	D:\workspace\library\lib-dir-final\library.json
Schema	D:\workspace\library\test-dir\lib.jschema
Start location	line: 20, column: 13
End location	line: 20, column: 20

Resources

For more information about the validation script, see the following resources:

- Video: **Validating XML and JSON Using Oxygen Command Line Scripts**
- Webinar: **Validating XML and JSON Documents Using Oxygen Scripting**

Tip:
For some GitHub use case samples of this script, see Oxygen Validation Template and Oxygen Validation Action.

XML Refactoring

Attention:

- This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.
- To execute an XQuery refactoring operation using this script, in additional to the scripting commercial license, you are required to purchase a Saxon EE license.

The **XML Refactoring** script (`xmlRefactoring.sh`, found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) can be used to execute XML refactoring operations *(on page 587)*. You can run a refactoring operation by specifying the operation id of the operation. If, in addition to the refactoring operations provided by Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin in the `OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR/refactoring` folder and in framework configurations, you want to run a custom refactoring operation, you have to specify the directory that contains it, using the `od` (operations directory) argument.

Arguments for the XML Refactoring Script

```
sh scripts/xmlRefactoring.sh  -id operationId -i inputFilesOrDirectories [-f filesFilter]
[-od operationsDirectory] [-p param1=value1...] [-v]
```

-id operationId

The ID of the refactoring operation to be executed.

-i inputFilesOrDirectories

A list of space-separated input files or directories that the refactoring operation is applied to.

-f filesFilter

Specifies a filter for the input files by using a file pattern. For example, to restrict the operation to only analyze build files, you could use `build*.xml` for the file pattern.

-od operationsDirectory

A directory that contains additional refactoring operations.

-p param1=value1...

A list of space-separated pairs of a parameter's name and value used by the refactoring operation.

-v

This argument can be specified to activate verbose logging.

DITA Translation Package Builder

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

The **DITA Translation Package Builder** (`translationPackageBuilder.sh`, found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) script helps you to build a translation package for DITA files that can be sent to translators. You can also extract the changed files back into your project once you receive the package back from the translators.

This script requires the **DITA Translation Package Builder** add-on to be installed in the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To install it the add-on, follow these instructions:

1. Go on the **DITA Translation Package Builder** plugin **Releases** page and download the latest translation-package-builder-{version}-plugin.jar package.
2. Unzip it inside `{oxygenInstallDir}/plugins`.

   Note:
   Do not create any intermediate folders. Afterwards, the file system should look like this: `{oxygenInstallDir}/plugins/translation-package-builder-{version}/plugin.xml`

Examples for the DITA Translation Package Builder Script

Example: Generating a Milestone File

```
sh scripts/translationPackageBuilder.sh -gm -i ditamapFile [-m milestoneFile] [-verbose]
```

This action is the first one to use. It will generate a unique hash for each documentation resource. This information will be used by the second action to detect which files have been modified. A milestone file should be generated the first time you install this plugin and henceforth, after each package is sent to translators.

-gm

Requests the generation of a milestone file.

-i ditamapFile

The main DITA map file.

-m milestoneFile

The path to the milestone file. If missing, it is assumed that the milestone will be saved in the DITA map parent folder with the following name: `{ditamapName}_translation_milestone.xml`.

-verbose

Generates a console log about the performed steps. It is useful for debugging.

Example: Creating a Package with the Modified Files to Send to Translation

```
sh scripts/translationPackageBuilder.sh  -gp -i ditamapFile [-m milestoneFile] -p package.zip [-verbose]
```

This action detects which files have been changed since the last generated milestone. These files are packed inside a ZIP file that can be sent to translators. After doing this, you can also generate a new milestone so that the next package will only contain new changes.

-gp

Requests the generation of a package with the modified files.

-i ditamapFile

The main DITA map file.

-m milestoneFile

The path to the milestone file. If missing, it is assumed that the milestone will be located in the DITA map parent folder with the following name: `{ditamapName}_translation_milestone.xml`.

-p package.zip

The path to the zip archive where all the modified files are collected.

-verbose

Generates a console log about the performed steps. It is useful for debugging.

Example: Applying a Translation Package Over a DITA Map

```
sh scripts/translationPackageBuilder.sh -ap -i ditamapFile -p package.zip [-verbose]
```

When the translated files arrive from the translator, you should open the DITA map that corresponds to the received language (e.g. open **dita-map-french.ditamap** if the package contains the french translation). Invoking this action will extract the changed files inside the map's directory.

-ap

Requests the application of a translation package over a DITA map.

-i ditamapFile

The main DITA map file that matches the received package language. For example, if the package contains topics translated into French, then this map is the French version of your DITA map.

-p package.zip

The path to the archive with all the translated files.

-verbose

Generates a console log about the performed steps. It is useful for debugging.

Batch Converter

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

The **Batch Converter** script (`batchConverter.sh`, found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) helps you to convert between the following formats:

- HTML to XHTML
- HTML to DITA
- HTML to DocBook4 / DocBook5
- Markdown to XHTML
- Markdown to DITA
- Markdown to DocBook4 / DocBook5
- Word to XHTML
- Word to DITA
- Word to DocBook4 / DocBook5
- Excel to DITA
- Confluence to DITA
- DocBook to DITA
- OpenAPI to DITA
- JSON to XML
- JSON to YAML
- XML to JSON
- YAML to JSON

This script requires the **Oxygen Batch Documents Converter** add-on to be installed in the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

To install the add-on, follow these instructions:

1. Go on the **Oxygen Batch Documents Converter** plugin **Releases** page and download the latest oxygen-batch-converter-{version}-plugin.jar package.
2. Unzip it inside `{oxygenInstallDir}/plugins`.

   Note:
   Do not create any intermediate folders. Afterwards, the file system should look like this: `{oxygenInstallDir}/plugins/oxygen-batch-converter-{version}/plugin.xml`

Arguments for the Batch Converter Script

```
sh scripts/batchConverter.sh -i inputFiles -if inputFormat -o outputDirectory
-of outputFormat [-ss (true|false)] [-csd (true|false)] [-cs converterSettingsFile]
```

-i inputFiles

A list of space-separated input files or directories in file syntax form.

-if inputFormat

The format of the input files. The possible values are: **html**, **markdown**, **word**, **confluence**, **docbook**, **excel**, **openapi**, **json**, **yaml**, or **xml**.

-o outputDirectory

The output directory in file syntax form.

-of outputFormat

The format of the output files. The possible values are: **xhtml**, **dita**, **docbook4**, **docbook5**, **json**, **yaml**, or **xml**.

-ss (true|false) [only for Word to DITA, HTML to DITA, Markdown to DITA, DocBook to DITA, and OpenAPI to DITA conversions]

Splits sections marked by titles or headings to separate files and create a DITA map. The possible values are **true** or **false** (default).

-csd (true|false) [only for Markdown to DITA conversions]

Creates short description elements from the first paragraph before the headings. Possible values are **true** or **false** (default).

-cs converterSettingsFile

A file that contains the Batch Documents Converter add-on preferences settings. It can be an xpr file that contains project options or an xml file that contains global options. If not specified, the operation uses the application's default settings.

Confluence to DITA

The **Confluence to DITA** conversion processes the HTML content generated by the Confluence export process. For exporting, login to your Confluence account and navigate to the specific space that you want to export. Go to **Space Settings > Export space** and choose to export it as HTML. The `index.html` file resulting from this process has to be provided in the **inputFiles** argument.

Compile Framework Script

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

A custom *framework (on page 2231)* (document type) can be created using a special XML descriptor file *(on page 1534)*, either from scratch or by extending an existing built-in framework (such as DITA or DocBook) and then making modifications to it.

The **Compile Framework Script** (`compileFrameworkScript.sh`, found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) helps you to compile the script into the `*.framework` file that represents the framework configuration. Although Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin is now able to automatically compile and load scripts, you might want to compile it yourself to obtain the resulting `*.framework` file if your framework runs on a different version of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin.

Arguments for the Compile Framework Script

```
sh scripts/compileFrameworkScript.sh -i "script1.exf" "script2.exf" "frameworksDir"
```

-i inputFiles

A list of space-separated Framework Extension Script Files *(on page 1536)* (*.exf) or directories in file syntax form. If a directory is specified, the Framework Extension Script Files *(on page 1536)* are searched for inside it and in its child directories.

XSLT Stylesheets Documentation

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

You can generate documentation for XSLT Stylesheets from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin by using the **Tools > Generate Documentation > XSLT Stylesheet Documentation** main menu action. The settings dialog box has an **Export settings** option that can be used to export the settings to an XML configuration file. Once the settings are exported, you can use the `stylesheetDocumentation.sh` script (found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) to generate XSLT stylesheets documentation from the command line.

Sample Command-Line Arguments for the Generate XSLT Stylesheet Documentation Script

```
sh scripts/stylesheetDocumentation.sh xslFile [-cfg:configFile] | [-out:outputFile]
```

Tip:
For some GitHub use case samples of this script, see Oxygen Documentation Template and Oxygen Documentation Action.

Related information
XML Schema Documentation *(on page 2200)*
WSDL Documentation (Deprecated) *(on page 2204)*

XML Schema Documentation

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

You can generate documentation for XML Schemas from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin by using the **Tools > Generate Documentation > XML Schema Documentation** main menu action. The settings dialog box has an **Export settings** option that can be used to export the settings to an XML configuration file. Once the settings are exported, you can use the `schemaDocumentation.sh` script (found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) to generate XML Schema documentation from the command line.

Sample Command-Line Arguments for the Generate XML Schema Documentation Script

```
sh scripts/schemaDocumentation.sh  schemaFile [-cfg:configFile] [-out:outputFile]
[-format:<value>] [-xsl:xslFile] [-split:<value>] [-openInBrowser:<value>]
```

Tip:
For some GitHub use case samples of this script, see Oxygen Documentation Template and Oxygen Documentation Action.

Related information
XSLT Stylesheets Documentation *(on page 2199)*
WSDL Documentation (Deprecated) *(on page 2204)*

JSON Schema Documentation

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

You can generate documentation for a JSON Schema file from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin by using the **Tools > Generate Documentation > JSON Schema Documentation** main menu action. This tool requires an additional add-on to be installed, so the first time you invoke the action, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin presents a dialog box asking if you want to install it. Once installed, you need to restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and the **JSON Schema Documentation** action will invoke the tool.

You can use the `jsonSchemaDocGen.sh` script (found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) to generate documentation from a JSON schema file using the command line.

Tip:
For some GitHub use-case samples for this script, see Oxygen Documentation Template and Oxygen Documentation Action.

Arguments for the JSON Schema Documentation Script

```
sh scripts/jsonSchemaDocGen.sh filePath [-ofp outputFilePath] [-sb split by (location, components)] [-ea exclude
 annotations] [-ec exclude constraints] [-ep exclude properties] [-epp exclude pattern properties] [-ee exclude
 enumerations] [-es exclude source] [-eub exclude used by] [-ecp exclude compositions] [-ed exclude diagram] [-eim exclude
 image map] [-il include location] [-help | --help | -h | --h]
```

filePath

Mandatory argument specifying the path of the file that needs to generate documentation (it can also be provided as a URL).

-ofp output file path

Optional argument that specifies the path of the output file.

-sb split by (location, components)

Optional argument that specifies what type of split scenario is used (location, components). By default, one file scenario is used.

-ea exclude annotations

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema annotations should be present. Default value is true.

-ec exclude constraints

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema constraints should be present. Default value is true.

-ep exclude properties

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema properties should be present. Default value is true.

-epp exclude pattern properties

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema pattern properties should be present. Default value is true.

-ee exclude enumerations

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema enumerations should be present. Default value is true.

-es exclude source

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema source should be present. Default value is true.

-eub exclude used by

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema *used by* should be present. Default value is true.

-ecp exclude compositions

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema compositions should be present. Default value is true.

-ed exclude diagram

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema diagram should be present. Default value is true.

-eim exclude image map

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema image map should be present. Default value is true.

-il include location

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema location should be present. Default value is false.

-help | --help | -h | --h

Displays help text.

OpenAPI Documentation

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

You can generate documentation for an OpenAPI file from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin by using the **Tools > Generate Documentation > OpenAPI Documentation** main menu action. This tool requires an additional add-on to be installed, so the first time you invoke the action, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin presents a dialog box asking if you want to install it. Once installed, you need to restart Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin and the **OpenAPI Documentation** action will invoke the tool.

You can use the `openApiDocGen.sh` script (found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) to generate documentation from an OpenAPI file using the command line.

Tip:
For some GitHub use case samples of this script, see Oxygen Documentation Template and Oxygen Documentation Action.

Arguments for the OpenAPI Documentation Script

```
sh scripts/openApiDocGen.sh filePath [-ofp outputFilePath] [-sb split by (location, components)] [-ea exclude annotations]
 [-ec exclude constraints] [-ep exclude properties] [-epp exclude pattern properties] [-ee exclude enumerations] [-es
 exclude source] [-eub exclude used by] [-ecp exclude compositions] [-ed exclude diagram] [-eim exclude image map] [-il
 include location] [-help | --help | -h | --h]
```

filePath

Mandatory argument specifying the path of the file that needs to generate documentation (it can also be provided as a URL).

-ofp output file path

Optional argument that specifies the path of the output file.

-sb split by (location, components)

Optional argument that specifies what type of split scenario is used (location, components). By default, one file scenario is used.

-ea exclude annotations

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema annotations should be present. Default value is true.

-ec exclude constraints

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema constraints should be present. Default value is true.

-ep exclude properties

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema properties should be present. Default value is true.

-epp exclude pattern properties

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema pattern properties should be present. Default value is true.

-ee exclude enumerations

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema enumerations should be present. Default value is true.

-es exclude source

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema source should be present. Default value is true.

-eub exclude used by

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema *used by* should be present. Default value is true.

-ecp exclude compositions

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema compositions should be present. Default value is true.

-ed exclude diagram

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema diagram should be present. Default value is true.

-eim exclude image map

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema image map should be present. Default value is true.

-il include location

Optional argument that specifies if the JSON schema location should be present. Default value is false.

-help | --help | -h | --h

Displays help text.

WSDL Documentation (Deprecated)

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

You can generate documentation for WSDL documents from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin by using the **Tools > Generate Documentation > WSDL Documentation** main menu action. The settings dialog box has an **Export settings** option that can be used to export the settings to an XML configuration file. Once the settings are exported, you can use the `wsdlDocumentation.sh` script (found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) to generate XML Schema documentation from the command line.

Sample Command-Line Arguments for the Generate WSDL Documentation Script

```
sh scripts/wsdlDocumentation.sh wsdlFile [-cfg:configFile] | [-out:outputFile]
```

Tip:
For some GitHub use case samples of this script, see Oxygen Documentation Template and Oxygen Documentation Action.

Related information

XSLT Stylesheets Documentation *(on page 2199)*
XML Schema Documentation *(on page 2200)*

XML Instance Generator

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

You can generate multiple XML documents from an XML Schema from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin by using the **Tools > Generate Sample XML Files** main menu action. The settings dialog box has an **Export settings** option that can be used to export the settings to an XML configuration file. Once the settings are exported, you can use the `xmlGenerator.sh` script (found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) to generate multiple XML instance files from the command line.

Sample Command-Line Arguments for the Generate Sample XML Files Script

```
sh scripts/xmlGenerator.sh path/to/config/file [-verbose]
```

Extended Version of the Script and its Arguments

```
sh scripts/xmlGenerator.sh [[path_to_config_file] [-s XML_schema_path -r root [-n ns] [-o output_dir]
[-f instance_name] [-i num_of_instances]] [-verbose]]
```

path_to_config_file

The path to the file that contains the configuration to be used.

-s XML_schema_path

The path to the XML schema to be used for generating the XML file(s). This argument can also be provided as a URL.

-n ns

The namespace used for the XML namespace declaration.

-r root

The root element for the generated file(s).

-o output_dir

The output directory to be used for storing the generated file(s).

-f instance_name

The pattern name to be used for the generated file(s). It is usually the name plus extension.

-i num_of_instances

The number of XML files to be generated.

-verbose

This argument can be specified to activate verbose logging.

Note:
Any value specified by the **-s**, **-n**, **-r**, **-o**, **-f**, or **-i** arguments overrides the corresponding value from the configuration file, if that file is specified in the **path_to_config_file** argument.

Flatten XML Schema

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

You can flatten an XML schema that contains multiple includes and redefines to a single schema file from Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin by using the **Tools > Flatten Schema** main menu action. You can use the equivalent `flattenSchema.sh` script (found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) to flatten an XML schema from the command line.

Sample Command-Line Arguments for the Flatten Schema Script

```
sh scripts/flattenSchema.sh [-in:inputSchemaURL -outDir:outputDirectory
             [-flattenImports:<boolean_value>]
             | [-useCatalogs:<boolean_value>]
             [-flattenCatalogResolvedImports:<boolean_value>] [-verbose]]
```

Compare Directories

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

The **Compare Directories** script (`compareDirs.sh`/`compareDirs.bat`, found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) can be used to compare two directories and get the comparison results in various formats.

Arguments for the Compare Directories Script

There are 2 ways that the script's arguments/options can be retrieved (with slightly different command-line syntax), depending on whether or not a configuration file is specified for retrieving the arguments.

Syntax 1 (Using the Command Line to Specify Arguments)

```
sh scripts/compareDirs.sh firstDirPath [-a dirPathAlias] secondDirPath [-a dirPathAlias] [[baseDirPath [-a dirPathAlias]]
 [-sl suppressLinks] [-if includeFilesFilter] [-id includeSubdirsFilter] [-ia includeArchives] [-ef excludeFilesFilter]
 [-ed excludeSubdirsFilter] [-cm comparisonMode] [-alg comparisonAlg] [-als algStrength] [-iws ignoreWS] [-ipi ignorePI]
 [-icm ignoreComments] [-idt ignoreDocType] [-itn ignoreText] [-ins ignoreNS] [-ind ignoreNSDecl] [-inp ignorePrefixes]
```

```
[-iao ignoreAttrOrder] [-iee ignoreExpStateForEmptyElems] [-enx XPathExprToExcludeNodes] [-out outputFormat] [-outfile
outputFile] [-merge mergeOperation] [-mergeout outputDirPathForMerge]] [-help | --help | -h | --h]
```

firstDirPath

Mandatory argument that specifies the first directory path (it can also be provided as a URL using the 'file://' protocol).

secondDirPath

Mandatory argument that specifies the second directory path (it can also be provided as a URL using the 'file://' protocol).

baseDirPath

Optional argument that specifies the path of the base directory that the other two directories will be compared against in a 3-way comparison (it can also be provided as a URL). If present, it must appear immediately after the first two mandatory arguments.

-a dirPathAlias

Optional argument used as the directory path alias to be displayed in the HTML-formatted operation report instead of a long directory path. If present, it must appear immediately after a directory path.

Syntax 2 (Using a Configuration File to Provide Arguments)

```
sh scripts/compareDirs.sh -argsFile argsFilePath [[-fp firstDirPath] [-fpa dirPathAlias] [-sp secondDirPath] [-spa
dirPathAlias] [-bp baseDirPath] [-bpa dirPathAlias] [-sl suppressLinks] [-if includeFilesFilter] [-id includeSubdirsFilter]
[-ia includeArchives] [-ef excludeFilesFilter] [-ed excludeSubdirsFilter] [-cm comparisonMode] [-alg comparisonAlg]
[-als algStrength] [-iws ignoreWS] [-ipi ignorePI] [-icm ignoreComments] [-idt ignoreDocType] [-itn ignoreText]
[-ins ignoreNS] [-ind ignoreNSDecl] [-inp ignorePrefixes] [-iao ignoreAttrOrder] [-iee ignoreExpStateForEmptyElems]
[-enx XPathExprToExcludeNodes] [-out outputFormat] [-outfile outputFile] [-merge mergeOperation] [-mergeout
outputDirPathForMerge]] [-help | --help | -h | --h]
```

-argsFile argsFilePath

Mandatory argument (it must be the first one provided) that specifies the path of the file to retrieve the script arguments from. The file path can also be provided as a URL.

-fp firstDirPath

Optional argument that specifies the first directory path (it can also be provided as a URL using the 'file://' protocol).

-fpa dirPathAlias

Optional argument used as first directory path alias. Displayed in the HTML-formatted operation report instead of a long directory path.

-sp secondDirPath

Optional argument that specifies the second directory path (it can also be provided as a URL using the 'file://' protocol).

-spa dirPathAlias

Optional argument used as second directory path alias. Displayed in the HTML-formatted operation report instead of a long directory path.

-bp baseDirPath

Optional argument that specifies the path of the base directory that the other two directories will be compared against in a 3-way comparison (it can also be provided as a URL using the 'file://' protocol).

-bpa dirPathAlias

Optional argument used as base directory path alias. Displayed in the HTML formatted operation report instead of a long directory path.

Common Arguments for Both Syntaxes

-sl suppressLinks

Set this to **true** to suppress links to the compared directories and files shown in the HTML-formatted operation report. Default value = **false**.

-if includeFilesFilter

Use this argument to only include files that match the specified pattern in the comparison (e.g. `.xml`, `.json`). Default value = ***.

-id includeSubdirsFilter

Use this argument to only include sub-directories that match the specified pattern in the comparison (e.g. `recent,important/latest,reports*/json-rep*/new*`). Default value = ***.

-ia includeArchives

If set to **true**, files from archives are included in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-ef excludeFilesFilter

Use this argument to exclude files that match the specified pattern from the comparison (e.g. `*.jpg`).

-ed excludeSubdirsFilter

Use this argument to exclude sub-directories that match the specified pattern from the comparison (e.g. `.svn`, `_svn`, `.git`).

-cm comparisonMode

Specifies the comparison mode. There are three modes available: **content**, **binary**, and **timestamp**. Default value = **content**.

-alg comparisonAlg

Specifies the algorithm to be used for the comparison. Possible values: **auto**, **chars**, **words**, **lines**, **syntax_aware**, **xml_fast**, and **xml_accurate**. Default value = **auto**.

-als algStrength

Specifies the strength of the algorithm to be used for the comparison. Possible values: **low**, **medium**, **high**, and **very_high**. Default value = **medium**.

-iws ignoreWS

If set to **true**, whitespaces are ignored if differences consist only of whitespaces. Default value = **false**.

-ipi ignorePI (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, processing instructions are ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-icm ignoreComments (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, comments are ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-idt ignoreDocType (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, DOCTYPE sections are ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-itn ignoreText (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, text content is ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-ins ignoreNS (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, namespaces are ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-ind ignoreNSDecl (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, namespace declarations are ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-inp ignorePrefixes (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, prefixes are ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-iao ignoreAttrOrder (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, the order of attributes is ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-iee ignoreExpStateForEmptyElems (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, the expansion state for empty elements is ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-enx XPathExprToExcludeNodes

Specifies an XPath expression to exclude certain nodes from the comparison.

-merge mergeOperation

If set to **true**, a merge operation is invoked after the comparison. Default value = **false**.

Notes:

- This argument is considered only for 3-way comparisons (i.e. only if the `baseDirPath` argument is provided).
- The merge operation is similar to the same process in any versioning system. Following the comparison between the first and second directories (relative to the base folder), all the differences of the type **incoming** are considered and the content of the first directory is updated accordingly.
- Conflicting changes are not addressed.
- After the comparison, a report is created that provides details about the changes that were made.

-mergeout outputDirPathForMerge

Invokes a merge operation after the comparison and also allows you to specify the output directory path for the merge operation. For example, it allows you to specify a specific existing or new directory where the results of the merge operation is saved, other than the first directory path for the comparison (which is what happens when using only the `-merge` argument). The path of the directory can also be provided as a URL using `file://` protocol. This argument and the `-merge` argument are not dependent on each other.

-out outputFormat

Specifies the format of the output. Possible values: **yaml/grouped**, **yaml/raw**, **json/grouped**, **json/raw**, **xml/grouped**, **xml/raw**, **html**, **html/ifcr**, **htm**, or **htm/ifcr**. Default value = **yaml/grouped**.

Notes:

- If you choose to save/redirect the console output to a file, this argument establishes the type of the output file and its content is formatted accordingly. If you skip specifying the "**/grouped**" or the "**/raw**" qualifiers, "**/grouped**" takes precedence.
- If you choose the **html** or **htm** output format, it is recommended that you also choose to save/redirect the console to the specified HTML file to view the comparison result in your preferred browser.
- The "**/ifcr**" qualifier for the **html** or **htm** values is considered only if the `-outfile` argument is also present. *IFCR* is an acronym for *Include File Comparison Reports* and it means that, along with generating the directory comparison report, separate file comparison reports will be generated for all modified file pairs. These reports are available through links from the main report and are saved to a specific directory based on the value provided by the `outfile` argument. It will

have the same parent directory and the same name as the **outputFile** plus *-OXY-FC-REPORTS* added to the end of its name.
- The **html** value, as well as the **grouped**, **raw**, or **ifcr** qualifiers, are not considered if the `-merge` argument is present.

-outfile outputFile

Specifies the path for an output file to save the comparison results, instead of presenting them in the console. The content of the output file is formatted according to the `-out` argument. The output file path can also be provided as a URL using `file://` protocol.

-help | --help | -h | --h

Displays help text.

Notes:

- For boolean arguments, it is not necessary to provide the "true" value. Their presence in the argument list is equivalent to setting their value to "true" (and their absence from the argument list is equivalent to setting their value to "false"). However, constructs of the form `bool_option true|false` are accepted and interpreted accordingly.
- When using a configuration file, the only mandatory argument is **-argsFile argsFilePath**. All others are optional, but if used on the command line, they will take precedence and will overwrite the corresponding values in the config file. The arguments required to run the script can therefore be specified as a combination of what is provided in the config file and what is provided on the command line. For any missing options (not specified either in the file or on the command line), default values are used. However, at least 2 valid directory paths must always be provided in one way or another, otherwise the script execution will be aborted. For details about the structure of the configuration file (XML, JSON, or YAML), see: Providing Arguments to Comparison Scripts via a Configuration File *(on page 2218)*.
- File markers used in reports are as follows: M = modified, O1 = only found in 1st directory, O2 = only found in 2nd directory.

Examples of Compare Directories Script

Example 1: Compare Directories and Include Archives While Excluding JPEGs

The following command results in archives being included in the comparison, while JPEGs are excluded:

```
sh scripts/compareDirs.sh dir1 dir2 -ia true -ef *.jpg
```

Example 2: Compare Directories Only Including XML Files While Excluding Comments and the Attribute Order

The following command only includes XML files (even from archives) in the comparison, while ignoring the comments and attribute order:

```
sh scripts/compareDirs.sh dir1 dir2 -if *.xml -ia -iao -icm
```

Example 3: Compare Directories Only Including XML Files While Excluding Comments and the Attribute Order

The following command redirects the comparison results to a JSON file named "**results.json**", with "**raw**" mode formatting:

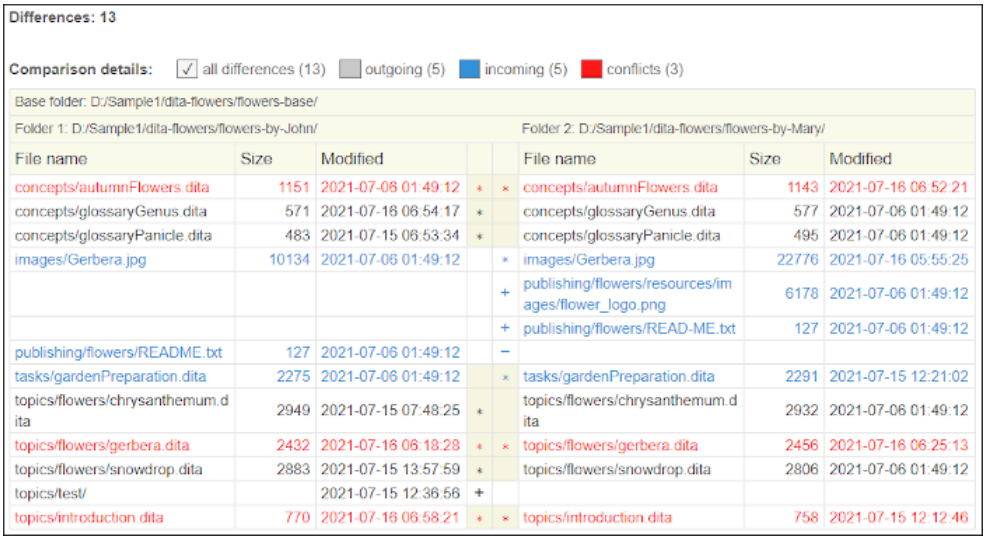
```
sh scripts/compareDirs.sh dir1 dir2 -out json/raw > results.json
```

Example 4: Compare Directories and Generate Comparison Report

It is possible to generate a report in the form of an HTML file that contains the results of the comparison. The following command compares the directories and redirects the console to the specified HTML file to view the comparison results:

```
sh scripts/compareDirs.sh dir1 dir2 -out html -outfile results.html
```

Figure 405. Example of an HTML Report for Directory Comparison



Differences: 13

Comparison details: ☑ all differences (13) ☐ outgoing (5) ☐ incoming (5) ☐ conflicts (3)

Base folder: D:/Sample1/dita-flowers/flowers-base/

Folder 1: D:/Sample1/dita-flowers/flowers-by-John/					Folder 2: D:/Sample1/dita-flowers/flowers-by-Mary/		
File name	Size	Modified			File name	Size	Modified
concepts/autumnFlowers.dita	1151	2021-07-08 01:49:12	*	*	concepts/autumnFlowers.dita	1143	2021-07-16 06:52:21
concepts/glossaryGenus.dita	571	2021-07-16 06:54:17	*		concepts/glossaryGenus.dita	577	2021-07-06 01:49:12
concepts/glossaryPanicle.dita	483	2021-07-15 06:53:34	*		concepts/glossaryPanicle.dita	495	2021-07-06 01:49:12
images/Gerbera.jpg	10134	2021-07-06 01:49:12		*	images/Gerbera.jpg	22776	2021-07-16 05:55:25
				+	publishing/flowers/resources/images/flower_logo.png	6178	2021-07-06 01:49:12
				+	publishing/flowers/READ-ME.txt	127	2021-07-06 01:49:12
publishing/flowers/README.txt	127	2021-07-06 01:49:12		−			
tasks/gardenPreparation.dita	2275	2021-07-06 01:49:12		*	tasks/gardenPreparation.dita	2291	2021-07-15 12:21:02
topics/flowers/chrysanthemum.dita	2949	2021-07-15 07:48:25	*		topics/flowers/chrysanthemum.dita	2932	2021-07-06 01:49:12
topics/flowers/gerbera.dita	2432	2021-07-16 06:18:28	*	*	topics/flowers/gerbera.dita	2456	2021-07-16 06:25:13
topics/flowers/snowdrop.dita	2883	2021-07-15 13:57:59	*		topics/flowers/snowdrop.dita	2806	2021-07-06 01:49:12
topics/test/		2021-07-15 12:36:56	+				
topics/introduction.dita	770	2021-07-16 06:58:21	*	*	topics/introduction.dita	758	2021-07-15 12:12:46

Example 5: Compare Directories by Getting Arguments from a Configuration File

The arguments are read from the **config.xml** file, including the mandatory **path** arguments. However, the values that correspond to the arguments with the IDs **-out** and **-outfile** are overwritten by the **yaml** and **anotherResults.yaml** values provided on the command line (even if specified in the **config.xml** file).

```
sh scripts/compareDirs.sh -argsFile config.xml -out yaml -outfile anotherResults.yaml
```

Resources

For more information about the file comparison script and how to generate comparison reports in various formats, see the following resources:

- Webinar: **The New Oxygen Compare and Merge Scripts**.
- Video: **Generating Directory Comparison Reports Using Command-Line Scripts**.

Tip:
For some GitHub use case samples of this script, see Oxygen Comparison Template and Oxygen Comparison Action.

Related information
Compare Files Script *(on page 2213)*

Compare Files

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

The **Compare Files** script (`compareFiles.sh`/`compareFiles.bat`, found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) can be used to compare files and get the comparison results in various formats.

Arguments for the Compare Files Script

There are 2 ways that the script's arguments/options can be retrieved (with slightly different command-line syntax), depending on whether or not a configuration file is specified for retrieving the arguments.

Syntax 1 (Using the Command Line to Specify Arguments)

```
sh scripts/compareFiles.sh firstFilePath secondFilePath [[baseFilePath] [-ct contentType] [-alg comparisonAlg]
 [-als algStrength] [-iws ignoreWS] [-ipi ignorePI] [-icm ignoreComments] [-icd ignoreCDATA] [-idt ignoreDocType]
 [-itn ignoreText] [-ins ignoreNS] [-ind ignoreNSDecl] [-inp ignorePrefixes] [-iao ignoreAttrOrder] [-iee
 ignoreExpStateForEmptyElems] [-enx XPathExprToExcludeNodes] [-out outputFormat]] [-help | --help | -h | --h]
```

firstFilePath

Mandatory argument that specifies the first file path (it can also be provided as a URL).

secondFilePath

Mandatory argument that specifies the second file path (it can also be provided as a URL).

baseFilePath

Optional argument that specifies the path of the base file that the other two files will be compared against in a 3-way comparison (it can also be provided as a URL).

Syntax 2 (Using a Configuration File to Provide Arguments)

```
sh scripts/compareFiles.sh -argsFile argsFilePath [[-fp firstFilePath] [-sp secondFilePath] [-bp baseFilePath] [-ct
 contentType] [-alg comparisonAlg] [-als algStrength] [-iws ignoreWS] [-ipi ignorePI] [-icm ignoreComments] [-icd
 ignoreCDATA] [-idt ignoreDocType] [-itn ignoreText] [-ins ignoreNS] [-ind ignoreNSDecl] [-inp ignorePrefixes] [-iao
 ignoreAttrOrder] [-iee ignoreExpStateForEmptyElems] [-enx XPathExprToExcludeNodes] [-out outputFormat] [-outfile
 outputFile] [-merge mergeOperation] [-mergeout outputDirPathForMerge]] [-help | --help | -h | --h]
```

-argsFile argsFilePath

Mandatory argument (it must be the first one provided) that specifies the path of the file to retrieve the script arguments from. The file path can also be provided as a URL.

-fp firstFilePath

Optional argument that specifies the first file path (it can also be provided as a URL).

-sp secondFilePath

Optional argument that specifies the second file path (it can also be provided as a URL).

-bp baseFilePath

Optional argument that specifies the path of the base file that the other two files will be compared against in a 3-way comparison (it can also be provided as a URL).

Common Arguments for Both Syntaxes

-ct contentType

Specifies the content type of the files to be compared. Possible values (based on known extensions of some of the most common file types): `.xml`, `.dtd`, `.css`, `.rnc`, `.xquery`, `.json`, `.yaml`, `.java`, `.js`, `.c`, `.cpp`, `.pl`, `.py`, `.php`, `.sql`, `.bat`, `.sh`, `.properties`, `.txt`. The option is used to force the file handling to the specific type of file. Otherwise, the file extension is auto-detected.

-alg comparisonAlg

Specifies the algorithm to be used for the comparison. Possible values: **auto**, **chars**, **words**, **lines**, **syntax_aware**, **xml_fast**, and **xml_accurate**. Default value = **auto**.

-als algStrength

Specifies the strength of the algorithm to be used for the comparison. Possible values: **low**, **medium**, **high**, and **very_high**. Default value = **medium**.

-iws ignoreWS

If set to **true**, whitespaces are ignored if differences consist only of whitespaces. Default value = **false**.

-ipi ignorePI (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, processing instructions are ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-icm ignoreComments (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, comments are ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-idt ignoreDocType (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, DOCTYPE sections are ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-itn ignoreText (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, text content is ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-ins ignoreNS (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, namespaces are ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-ind ignoreNSDecl (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, namespace declarations are ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-inp ignorePrefixes (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, prefixes are ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-iao ignoreAttrOrder (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, the order of attributes is ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-iee ignoreExpStateForEmptyElems (only for the XML-aware algorithms)

If set to **true**, the expansion state for empty elements is ignored in the comparison. Default value = **false**.

-enx XPathExprToExcludeNodes

Specifies an XPath expression to exclude certain nodes from the comparison.

-merge mergeOperation

If set to **true**, a merge operation is invoked after the comparison. Default value = **false**.

Notes:

- This argument is considered only for 3-way comparisons (i.e. only if the `baseFilePath` argument is provided).
- The merge operation is similar to the same process in any versioning system. Following the comparison between the first and second files (relative to the base file), all the differences of the type **incoming** are considered and the content of the first file is updated accordingly.
- If conflicting changes are detected, the merge operation is aborted and the first file remains unchanged.
- After the comparison and merge, a report is created that provides some details about the changes that were made.

-mergeout outputDirPathForMerge

Invokes a merge operation after the comparison and also allows you to specify the output directory path for the merged file. Instead of directly affecting the first compared file (which is

what happens when using only the `-merge` argument), a new file is created with the same name as the first file and it is saved in the specified directory. The path of the output directory can also be provided as a URL. This argument and the `-merge` argument are not dependent on each other.

-out outputFormat

Specifies the format of the output. Possible values: **yaml**, **json**, **xml**, **html**, **htm**, **html/inlineCSS**, or **htm/inlineCSS**. Default value = **yaml**.

Notes:

- If you choose to save/redirect the console output to a file, this argument establishes the type of the output file and its content is formatted accordingly.
- If you choose any of the **html**, **html/inlineCSS**, **htm**, or **htm/inlineCSS** output formats, it is recommended that you also choose to save/redirect the console to the specified HTML file to view the comparison result in your preferred browser.
- The **inlineCSS** qualifier for the **html** and **htm** values implies that the CSS-based generated HTML code is more suitable to be directly inserted in emails (as most email clients only accept inline CSS styling for HTML emails.
- The **html** and **htm** values (with or without the **inlineCSS** qualifier) are not considered if the `-merge` argument is present.

-outfile outputFile

Specifies the path for an output file to save the comparison results, instead of presenting them in the console. The content of the output file is formatted according to the `-out` argument. The output file path can also be provided as a URL.

-help | --help | -h | --h

Displays help text.

Note:
For boolean arguments, it is not necessary to provide the "true" value. Their presence in the argument list is equivalent to setting their value to "true" (and their absence from the argument list is equivalent to setting their value to "false"). However, constructs of the form `bool_option true|false` are accepted and interpreted accordingly.

Tip:
When using a configuration file, the only mandatory argument is **-argsFile argsFilePath**. All others are optional, but if used on the command line, they will take precedence and will overwrite the corresponding values in the config file. The arguments required to run the script can therefore be specified as a combination of what is provided in the config file and what is provided on the command line. For any missing options (not specified either in the file or on the command line) default values

are used. However, at least 2 valid paths must always be provided in one way or another, otherwise the script execution will be aborted. For details about the structure of the configuration file (XML, JSON, or YAML), see: Providing Arguments to Comparison Scripts via a Configuration File *(on page 2218)*.

Examples of Compare Files Script

Example 1: Compare Files and View Results in XML Format

The following command compares the files (ignoring the namespaces and prefixes) and redirects the console output to the `results.xml` file (XML-formatted):

```
sh scripts/compareFiles file1 file2 -ins -inp -ind -out xml > results.xml
```

Example 2: Compare Files with Line by Line Algorithm

The following command compares the files using the **lines** algorithm and ignores whitespaces:

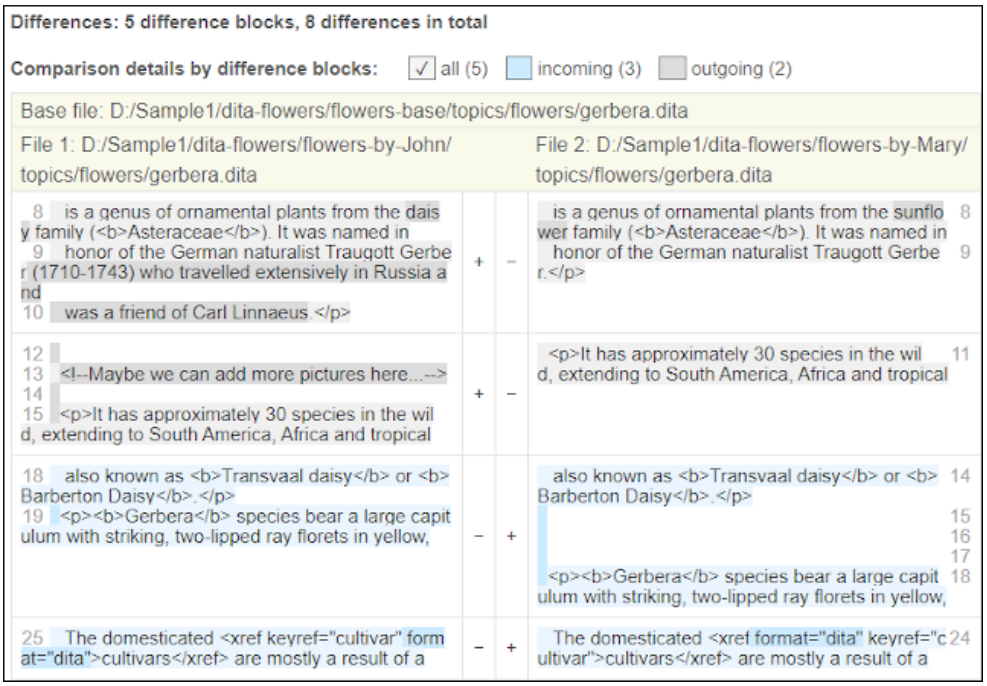
```
sh scripts/compareFiles.sh file1 file2 -alg lines -iws
```

Example 3: Compare Files and Generate Comparison Report

It is possible to generate a report in the form of an HTML file that contains the results of the comparison. The following command compares the files and redirects the console to the specified HTML file to view the comparison results:

```
sh scripts/compareFiles.sh file1 file2 -out html -outfile outFileName.html
```

Figure 406. Example of File Comparison Report in HTML Format



Example 4: Compare Files by Getting Arguments from a Configuration File

The arguments are read from the **config.xml** file, including the mandatory **file path** arguments. However, the values that correspond to the arguments with the IDs **-out** and **-outfile** are overwritten by the **yaml** and **anotherResults.yaml** values provided on the command line (even if specified in the **config.xml** file).

```
sh scripts/compareFiles.sh -argsFile config.xml -out yaml -outfile anotherResults.yaml
```

Resources

For more information about the file comparison script and how to generate comparison reports in various formats, see the following resources:

- Webinar: **The New Oxygen Compare and Merge Scripts**.
- Video: **Generating File Comparison Reports Using Command-Line Scripts**.

Related information

Compare Directories Script *(on page 2206)*

Providing Arguments to Comparison Scripts via a Configuration File

The arguments/options required to run comparison scripts (Compare Directories *(on page 2206)* and Compare Files *(on page 2213)*) can be provided through configuration files (argument files) if their structure follows a few simple rules, as detailed below:

- The basic format of the configuration file is XML, but JSON or YAML formatted files are also supported, being converted to XML.
- The name of the root does not matter.
- Any child of the root (also, the name of the child does not matter) is a candidate element for describing a script argument, if it meets the following 2 mandatory conditions:
  - It has a sub-element `<id>argument_id</id>` (`argument_id` must be present for it to be mapped to the `argument_value`).
  - It has a sub-element `<value>argument_value</value>` (if `argument_value` is missing, the mapping is completed programmatically to a default value based on `argument_id`).
- Additionally:
  - If `<id>` denotes an argument ID of the type 'file path' and an alias is also desired, then a sub-element `<alias>path_alias</alias>` must be added. However, an alias also makes sense as a distinct argument ID, meaning for example, the sub-element structure `<id>spa</`

`id><value>directory-2</value>` will correctly associate the alias directory-2 with `sp` ('*sp*' stands for 'second path', '*spa*' stands for 'second path alias').
    - An optional sub-element `<descr>argument_description</descr>` can be useful when editing/modifying the XML file, providing explanations about the ID of the current argument (which is most often quite cryptic).
- If there are non-mandatory script arguments without counterparts among the child elements of the root of the parsed XML file, default values associated with the IDs of the respective arguments are provided later programmatically.

Below are some examples of configuration files that can be used to read the script arguments from:

XML File

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<args>
    <arg>
        <id>fp</id>
        <value>D:/workspace/oxygen-blog/blog-branch-01</value>
        <alias>DIR-1</alias>
        <descr>1st path</descr>
    </arg>
    <arg>
        <id>sp</id>
        <value>D:/workspace/oxygen-blog/blog-branch-02</value>
        <alias>DIR-2</alias>
        <descr>2nd path</descr>
    </arg>
    <arg>
        <id>bp</id>
        <value>D:/workspace/oxygen-blog/blog-main</value>
        <descr>base path</descr>
    </arg>
    <arg>
 <descr>base path alias</descr>
        <id>bpa</id>
        <value>BASE</value>
    </arg>
    <arg>
        <id>ia</id>
        <value>false</value>
        <descr>look inside archives</descr>
    </arg>
    <arg>
        <id>ed</id>
```

```
        <value>git*</value>
        <descr>exclude folders filter</descr>
    </arg>

 ..................................

<args>
```

JSON File

```
{
    "options": {
        "option": [
            {
                "id": "fp",
                "value": "D:/workspace/oxygen-blog/blog-branch-01",
                "alias": "DIR-1",
  "descr": "first path"
            },
            {
                "id": "sp",
                "value": "D:/workspace/oxygen-blog/blog-branch-02",
                "alias": "DIR-2",
  "descr": "second path"
            },
     {
                "id": "ed",
                "descr": "exclude folders filter",
                "value": "git*"
            }
     {
                "id": "ia",
                "descr": "look inside archives",
                "value": false
            },

   ......................

 ]
    }
}
```

YAML File

```
---
arguments:
  argument:
  - id: fp
    descr: 1st path
    value: D:/workspace/oxygen-blog/blog-branch-01
    alias: DIR-1
  - id: sp
    descr: 2nd path
    value: D:/workspace/oxygen-blog/blog-branch-02
    alias: DIR-2
  - id: bp
    descr: base path
    value: D:/workspace/oxygen-blog/blog-main
    alias: BASE
  - id: ia
    value: false
    descr: include archives
  - id: ed
    value: git*
    descr: exclude folders filter


.....................................
```

Related information

Compare Directories Script *(on page 2206)*
Compare Files Script *(on page 2213)*

Merge Files with Change Tracking Highlights

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

The **Merge Files with Change Tracking Highlights** script (`mergeFilesTrackChanges.sh`, found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) can be used to merge 2 XML files (based on a 2-way comparison). The **Author** mode comparison results are saved as documents with highlighted tracked changes that can later be reviewed and accepted or rejected.

Notice:
This script is intended to be used for merging XML documents (Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin creates change tracking markers only for XML file types. Using this script for document types other

than XML, or for documents that are not XML well-formed, causes document parsing errors and the merge operation fails.

Arguments for the Merge Files with Change Tracking Highlights Script

```
sh mergeFilesTrackChanges.sh pathOfBaseFile pathOfFileToMergeWith [[pathOfOutFile] [-nb noBackupOfBaseFile]] [-help | --help | -h | --h]
```

pathOfBaseFile

Mandatory argument that specifies the path of the base file (it can also be provided as a URL).

pathOfFileToMergeWith

Mandatory argument that specifies the file to merge with (it can also be provided as a URL).

pathOfOutFile

Optional argument that specifies the path of the file where the merge operation results are saved to (it can also be provided as a URL). If present, it must appear immediately after the first two mandatory arguments. If absent, the merge results are saved to the base file, by overwriting it. You cannot choose the same file specified as the file to merge with as the output file (the merge process is aborted in this case). Also, if the output is a remote resource, its entire parent directory structure must already exist. Otherwise, an I/O exception is thrown and the merge results cannot be saved.

-nb noBackupOfBaseFile

Set to **true** if you do not want a backup copy of the base file on the hard disk. There are 2 situations when a backup of the base file is performed automatically and the backup operation must succeed to proceed with the merge. Otherwise, the merge process is aborted if the output file is not specified (i.e. the `pathOfOutFile` argument is not present) or the specified output file is the base file itself.

The backup copy will have the same parent directory as the base directory and its name will be the name of the base file suffixed by ".OXY.BAK". The default value is **false**, which means that for either of the 2 previously mentioned situations, a backup copy of the base file will be kept on the hard disk.

Note:
The backup copy can be deleted only if the base file and, implicitly, its backup copy are local resources (not remote).

-help | --help | -h | --h

Displays help text.

Note:
For boolean arguments, it is not necessary to provide the "true" value. Their presence in the argument list is equivalent to setting their value to "true" (and their absence from the argument list is equivalent to setting their value to "false"). However, constructs of the form `bool_option true|false` are accepted and interpreted accordingly

Examples of Compare Files Script

Example 1: Compare Files and View Results in XML Format

The following command results in merging `file1` and `file2` into `outfile` with changes highlighted:

```
sh scripts/mergeFilesTrackChanges.sh file1 file2 outfile
```

Example 2: Compare Files with Line by Line Algorithm

The following command results in merging `file1` and `file2` by overwriting `file1`. However, the `file1` is backed up first:

```
sh scripts/mergeFilesTrackChanges.sh file1 file2
```

Example 3: Compare Files and Generate Comparison Report

The following command results in merging `file1` and `file2` by overwriting `file1`. Although `file1` is initially backed up, the backup is eventually removed:

```
sh scripts/mergeFilesTrackChanges.sh file1 file2 -nb
```

Merge Directories with Change Tracking Highlights

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

The **Merge Directories with Change Tracking Highlights** script (`mergeDirsTrackChanges.sh`, found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) can be used to merge 2 directories (based on a 2-way comparison). All pairs of modified XML files involved in the process are merged by saving the **Author** mode comparison results as documents with highlighted tracked changes that can be later reviewed and accepted or rejected.

Arguments for the Merge Directories with Change Tracking Highlights Script

```
sh mergeDirsTrackChanges.sh pathOfBaseDir pathOfDirToMergeWith [[pathOfOutDir] [-nb noBackupOfBaseDir] [-nu
 noUpdateOfModifNonXMLFiles] [-na noAddingFilesOnlyPresentInDirToMergeWith] [-nd noDeletionOfFilesOnlyPresentInBaseDir] [-cm
 createChangeTrackingMarkersForAddedXMLFiles]] [-help | --help | -h | --h]
```

pathOfBaseDir

Mandatory argument that specifies the path of the base directory (it can also be provided as a URL using `file://` protocol).

pathOfDirToMergeWith

Mandatory argument that specifies the path of the directory to merge with (it can also be provided as a URL using `file://` protocol).

pathOfOutDir

Optional argument that specifies the path of the directory where the merge operation results are saved to (it can also be provided as a URL using `file://` protocol). If present, it must appear immediately after the first two mandatory arguments. If absent, the merge results are saved to the base directory, by overwriting it. You cannot choose the same directory specified as the directory to merge with as the output directory (the merge process is aborted in this case).

-nb noBackupOfBaseDir

Set to **true** if you do not want a backup copy of the base directory on the hard disk. There are 2 situations when a backup of the base directory is performed automatically and the backup operation must succeed to proceed with the merge. Otherwise, the merge process is aborted if the output directory is not specified (i.e. the `pathOfOutDir` argument is not present) or the specified output directory is the base directory itself.

The backup copy will have the same parent directory as the base directory and its name will be the name of the base directory suffixed by ".OXY.BAK". The default value is **false**, which means that for either of the 2 previously mentioned situations, a backup copy of the base directory will be kept on the hard disk.

-nu noUpdateOfModifNonXMLFiles

Set to **true** if you want to keep the non-XML files at their versions from the base directory. The default value is **false**, which means that all files in the output directory that are copies of non-XML files in the base directory will be replaced by their corresponding files in the directory to merge with.

-na noAddingFilesOnlyPresentInDirToMergeWith

Set to **true** if you want to skip adding the files that are only present in the directory to merge with to the output directory as well. The default value is **false**, which means that all files that are only present in the directory to merge with are also added to the output directory.

-nd noDeletionOfFilesOnlyPresentInBaseDir

Set to **true** if you want to preserve the files that are only present in the base directory. The default value is **false**, which means that all files that are only present in the base directory and initially copied to the output directory are deleted.

-cm createChangeTrackingMarkersForAddedXMLFiles

Set to **true** if you want to create change tracking markers for the XML files only present in the directory to merge with (that will be added to the output directory). Although these files have no counterparts in the base directory, change tracking markers of the type "entire content added/inserted" will be created. The option is not necessarily intended for the merge process itself, but it might prove a useful addition when you want to apply various *Oxygen* transformation scenarios to the resulting output directory. For example, if you merge 2 versions of a DITA project and then want a PDF to highlight the changes between those versions, you can apply a transformation on the resulting `ditamap` file. The `-am` option presents the new DITA files as "added content" in the resulting PDF. Note that the option is only considered if the `-na` argument is absent or is explicitly set to **false** (default value).

-help | --help | -h | --h

Displays help text.

Notes:

- The merge process has a preliminary phase where the entire structure and content of the base directory is copied to the output directory.
- For boolean arguments, it is not necessary to provide the "true" value. Their presence in the argument list is equivalent to setting their value to "true" (and their absence from the argument list is equivalent to setting their value to "false"). However, constructs of the form `bool_option true|false` are accepted and interpreted accordingly.
- Once the merge operation is complete, a report file is created and saved in the output directory (in a separate subdirectory named "._OXY_MERGE_REPORT"). Loading the report file in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin provides additional functionality. Aside from the fact that the report provides an overview of the merge process, it also provides links to all the files in the resulting output directory. You can use the respective links to load the XML files in the editor, then switch to **Author** mode to review the tracked changes and accept or reject them.

Examples of Compare Directories Script

Example 1: Compare Directories Without Updating non-XML Files

The following command results in merging `dir1` and `dir2` into `outdir`, but without updating the non-XML files in `dir1` detected with changes to their version in `dir2`:

```
sh scripts/mergeDirsTrackChanges.sh dir1 dir2 outdir -nu
```

Example 2: Compare Two Directories and Overwrite the First One

The following command results in merging `dir1` and `dir2` by overwriting `dir1`. However, the `dir1` is backed up first:

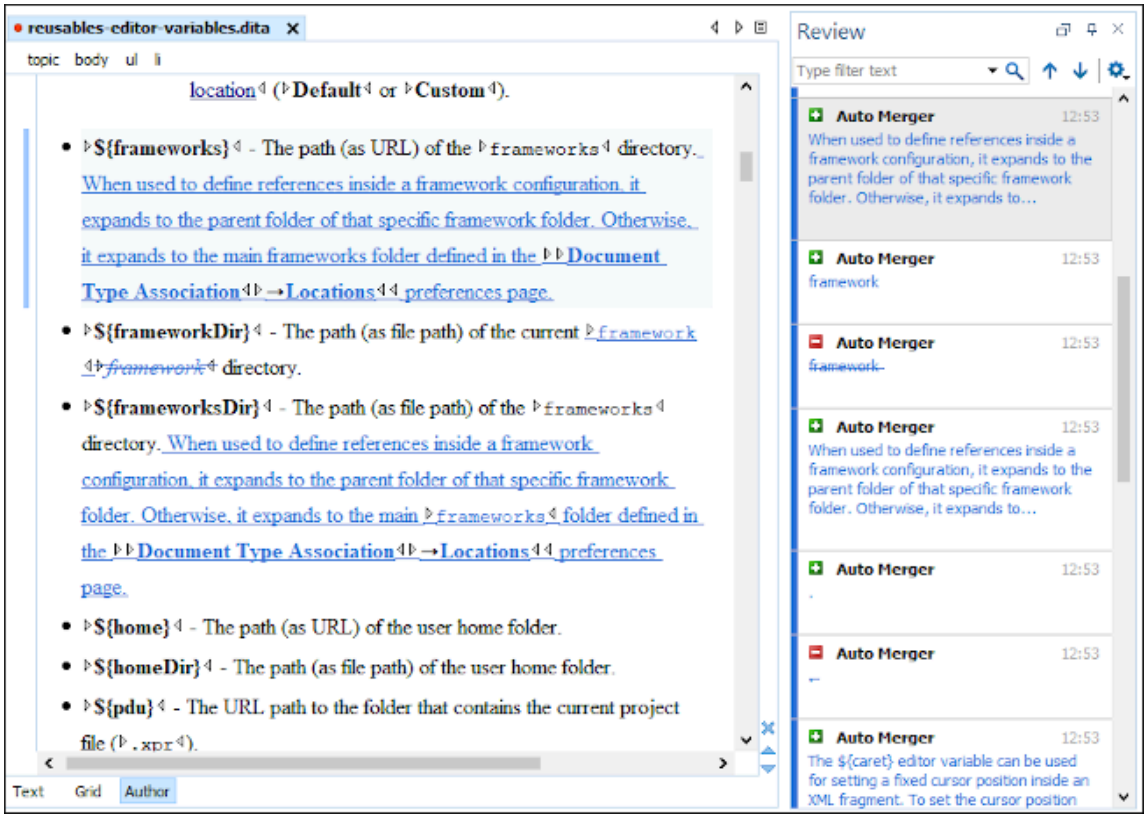
```
sh scripts/mergeDirsTrackChanges.sh dir1 dir2
```

Example 3: Compare Directories and Create Change Tracking Markers

The following command results in merging `dir1` and `dir2` into `outdir` and creating change tracking markers (of the type "entire content added/inserted") for all XML files that are only present in `dir2` (to be added to the `outdir`):

```
sh scripts/mergeDirsTrackChanges.sh dir1 dir2 outdir -cm
```

Figure 407. Example of a Merged File with Change Tracking Markers Opened in Author Mode



Format and Indent Files

Attention:
This script is bundled with the all platforms distribution of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. To run the script, you are required to purchase a special scripting commercial license.

The **Format and Indent Files** script (`batchFormatAndIndent.bat`/`batchFormatAndIndent.sh`, found in the `scripts` subfolder inside **Oxygen's** installation directory) can be used to format and indent multiple files at once.

Arguments for the Format and Indent Files Script

```
batchFormatAndIndent -i inputFilesAndDirs [-f filesFilter] [-s formattingSettingsFile] [-r] [-ih] [-v]
```

-i inputFilesAndDirs

The input files and directories.

-f filesFilter

A filter for the input files, specified by using a file pattern (e.g. `*.xml`, `t_*.dita`).

-s formattingSettingsFile

A file that contains formatting settings. It can be an `.xpr` file that contains project options or an `.xml` file that contains global options. If not specified, the operation uses the application's default settings.

-r

Use this argument if the operation should be performed recursively for the specified input directories.

-ih

Use this argument if you want the operation to also format and indent hidden files.

-v

Activates verbose logging. It is useful for debugging purposes.

23.
Glossary

Active Cell

Active cell refers to the selected cell where data is entered when you begin typing. Only one cell is active at a time. The *active cell* is bounded by a heavy border.

Alternate CSS Style

The ***Alternate CSS Style*** refers to the choices in the bottom half of **Styles** drop-down menu (on the toolbar) that makes it easy to apply style changes to your documents as they appear in **Author** mode and the output without having to edit the CSS stylesheets. By default, the *alternate styles* are applied like layers, they are merged sequentially with the *main CSS style (on page 2231)*, and you can activate any number of them. However, if you deselect the **Enable multiple selection of alternate CSSs** option *(on page 89)* in the **CSS** subtab of the **Document Type** configuration dialog box *(on page 83)*, the *alternate styles* are treated like *main CSS styles (on page 2231)* and you can only select one at a time.

For more information, see Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*.

Anchor

An ***Anchor*** is used in various types of links to take the user to a specific location within the target document. It is designated in a URL or in the value of the `@href` attribute with a # symbol followed by the anchor that is defined in a target ID (for example `href="MyTopic.dita#anchor`).

Apache Ant

Apache Ant (Another Neat Tool) is a software tool for automating software build processes.

Block Element

A ***block element*** is intended to be visually separated from its siblings, usually vertically. For instance, paragraphs and list items are *block elements*. It is distinct from a *inline element*, which has no such separation.

Bookmap

A ***bookmap*** is a specialized *DITA map* used for creating books. A *bookmap* supports book divisions such as chapters and book lists such as indexes.

Callout

A ***callout*** is a string of text inside a graphic and is connected to a specific location in a document by a line. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses callouts to present comments and other types of review modifications.

Canonicalize

To ***canonicalize*** something means to convert it to a standard format that everyone generally uses. When using the term with regard to XML, it refers to the process of converting data that has more than one possible representations into a standardization that conforms to the specification of an XML document or document subset. It is helpful for applications that require the ability to test whether or not the content of an XML document or subset has been changed.

Content Completion Assistant

The ***Content Completion Assistant*** refers to a very helpful mechanism in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin that offers a list of proposed items that could be inserted at the current location, depending on the current context, editing mode, and type of document. It also tries to determine the most logical choice in the current editing context and displays that proposal at the beginning of the list.

For more information about this feature and how to invoke it, depending on your editing context, see the following:

- Content Completion Assistant in Author Mode *(on page 369)*
- Content Completion Assistant in Text Mode *(on page 294)*
- Content Completion Assistant in Grid Mode *(on page 340)*
- Content Completion in CSS Stylesheets *(on page 613)*
- Content Completion in JavaScript Documents *(on page 619)*

Dockable

A ***Dockable*** window is one that can be moved and resized, and either floated or pinned to a location, allowing you to configure the workspace according to your preferences.

Document Fragment

A ***document fragment*** represents a portion of an XML document's tree of nodes or content.

Document Type Association

In general terms, a ***Document Type Association*** is a set of rules that associate a document type with a *framework (on page 2231)*. In Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, ***Document Type Association*** also specifically refers to a preferences page *(on page 81)* where you can create new custom *frameworks* or edit existing ones. Note that *frameworks* (document types) that come built-in with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin are read-only, but you can **Extend** *(on page 82)* or **Duplicate** *(on page 82)* them to configure them as custom *frameworks*.

DITA Map

A ***DITA map*** is a component of the DITA *framework (on page 2231)* that provides the means for a hierarchical collection of DITA topics that can be processed to form an output. Maps do not contain the content of topics, but only references to them. These are known as topic references. Usually, the maps are saved on disk or in a CMS with the extension `.ditamap`.

Maps can also contain relationship tables that establish relationships between the topics contained within the map. Relationship tables are also used to generate links in your published document.

You can use your map or *bookmap (on page 2228)* to generate a deliverable using an output type such as XHTML, PDF, HTML Help, or Eclipse Help.

DITA Open Toolkit

DITA Open Toolkit is an open-source publishing engine for content authored in the Darwin Information Typing Architecture. It is a vendor-independent, open-source implementation of the DITA standard, released under the Apache License, Version 2.0.

The toolkit supports all versions of the OASIS DITA specification, including 1.0, 1.1, 1.2, and 1.3.

DITA-OT

Related information
http://www.dita-ot.org/

DITA-OT-DIR

DITA_OT_DIR refers to the default directory that is specified for your DITA Open Toolkit distribution in the **Window > Preferences > Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin > DITA** preferences page *(on page 74)*.

For example, if you are using DITA-OT 4.4.0 that comes bundled with Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, the default directory is: *`[OXYGEN_INSTALL_DIR]`*`/frameworks/dita/`*`DITA-OT`*. You can also specify a custom directory.

Foldable Element

A ***foldable element*** refers to elements that can be collapsed and expanded in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin. *Foldable elements* are marked with a small triangle (/) on the left side of the editor panel and you can use that triangle to quickly collapse or expand them. This feature is helpful when you are working with large documents and you want to temporarily hide blocks of content. You can right-click the triangle to access additional collapse and expand actions (**Collapse Other Folds**, **Collapse Child Folds**, **Expand Child Folds**, **Expand All**).

Framework

A ***framework*** refers to a package that contains resources and configuration information to provide ready-to-use support for a vocabulary or document type. A *framework* is associated to a document type according to a set of rules. It also includes a variety of settings that improve editing capabilities for its particular file type. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes a **Document Type Configuration Dialog Box** *(on page 83)* that allows you to define the set of rules and customize various authoring mechanisms for new or existing *frameworks*.

For advanced details about customizing your own *framework*, see the Creating and Configuring Custom Frameworks *(on page 1533)* section.

IDML

IDML is an abbreviation for Adobe InDesign Markup files.

Inline Element

An ***inline element*** is intended to be displayed in the same line of text as its siblings or the surrounding text. For instance, strong and emphasis in HTML are *inline elements*. It is distinct from a *block element*, which is visually separated from its siblings.

Java Archive

Java Archive (JAR) is an archive file format. *JAR* files are built on the ZIP file format and have the `.jar` file extension. Computer users can create or extract *JAR* files using the `jar` command or an archive tool.

Key Space

The concept of a ***Key Space*** in DITA refers to a set of all possible keys that can be used in a *DITA map* structure. A ***Key Space*** is established when a *root map (on page 2234)* defines a set of effective key bindings. When Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin processes key references, it determines the effective binding of a given key to a resource in the context of the specified *root map (on page 1897)*.

Keystore

A ***Keystore*** is an encrypted file that contains private keys and certificates. There are two types of *keystores* that are supported in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin:

- **Java Key Store (JKS)**
- **Public-Key Cryptography Standards version 12 (PKCS-12)**

Main CSS Style

The ***Main CSS Style*** refers to the selection in the top half of the **Styles** drop-down menu (on the toolbar) that makes it easy to quickly change the look of your documents as they appear in **Author** mode and the

output without having to edit the CSS stylesheets. The *main CSS* applies to the whole document and you can also select one or more *alternate styles (on page 2228)* (listed in the bottom half of the drop-down menu) that behave like layers and are merged sequentially with the *main CSS style*.

For more information, see Configuring and Managing Multiple CSS Styles for a Framework *(on page 1547)*.

Main File

A ***Main File*** typically refers to the root of an imported or included tree of modules and this support helps you simplify the configuration and development of XML projects. For more information, see the Contextual Project Operations Using 'Main Files' Support *(on page 253)* section.

Oxygen Publishing Template

Oxygen Publishing Template defines all the aspects related with the **look and feel(layout and styles)** for the **WebHelp Responsive** output.

The template is self-contained and packed as a ZIP archive making it easy t share with others. It represents the main method for customizing the *WebHelp Responsive* output.

Related Information:
Publishing Template Package Contents for WebHelp Responsive Customizations *(on page 994)*

Perspective

In Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, a ***perspective*** refers to an interface layout geared towards a specific editing environment. Each *perspective* includes a unique set of interface objects, toolbars, views, and features. You can change the *perspective* by selecting the respective icon in the top-right corner of Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin or by selecting the *perspective* from the **Window > Perspective > Open Perspective** menu.

The *perspectives* that are available in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin are:

- **Editor** *(on page 215)* - The most commonly used *perspective* and it is used to edit XML documents.
- **Database** *(on page 217)* - Used to browse and manage databases.

Plugin

In Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, a ***plugin*** is a component that adds extended functionality using a series of extension points and can be installed as an *add-on*. For more information, along with a full list of *add-ons* that are officially supported for Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see Oxygen XML Add-on Repositories.

Pretty-Print

Pretty-print refers to formatting and indenting the source code in **Text** mode to make the content easier to view and analyze. The formatting actions that are available in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin include:

- **Format and Indent Element** - Available in the **Source** submenu of the contextual menu for the current element.
- **Format and Indent** - Available on the toolbar for the entire current document.
- **Format and Indent** - Available in the contextual menu of the **Text** view *(on page 840)* and applies to all the content in that view.
- **Format and Indent Files** - Available in the contextual menu of the **Project Explorer** view *(on page 245)* for one or more selected files.

QName

QName stands for "qualified name" and defines a valid identifier for elements and attributes. *QNames* are used as URI references to reference particular elements or attributes within XML documents.

Quick Fix/Assist

The ***Quick Fix/Assist*** feature gives you easy access to some of the most commonly used actions for the specific type of document you are editing. If one or more actions are available in the current context, they are accessible via a yellow bulb help ( ) placed at the current line in the stripe on the left side of the editor in **Text** mode. You can also invoke the quick assist menu by using the **Ctrl + 1** (**Meta 1** on macOS) keyboard shortcuts.

Quick Fix

The ***Quick Fix*** support in Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin helps you resolve errors that appear in an XML document by offering proposals to fix problems such as missing required attributes or invalid elements. *Quick Fixes* are available in **Text** mode and **Author** mode and they can be presented and activated in several ways.

- When hovering over an area of text where a validation error or warning occurs, the *Quick Fix* proposals can be presented as links in a tooltip pop-up window.
- When hovering over an error or warning in **Author** mode, the *Quick Fix* proposals are presented in a small drop-down menu.
- If you place the cursor in the highlighted area where a validation error or warning occurs, a *Quick Fix* icon ( ) is displayed in the stripe on the left side of the editor. Clicking that icon will allow you select from the available proposals.
- If you place the cursor in the highlighted area where a validation error or warning occurs, you can also access the *Quick Fix* menu by pressing **Ctrl + 1 (Command + 1 on macOS)** on your keyboard.
- The *Quick Fix* menu also contains the option to automatically fix all validation errors in the document where quick fix proposals were generated. By selecting **Apply all default quick fix**

proposals, each default quick fix proposal for each validation problem reported in the document will be applied (in bulk). The effect is similar to invoking the **Apply all default quick fix proposals** action from the contextual menu in Text mode *(on page 331)*, or the **Apply all default quick fix proposals** action from the context menu in Author mode *(on page 509)*.

Root Map

A ***Root Map*** (or main map) specifies a *DITA map (on page 2230)* that defines a hierarchical structure of submaps that are contained within the *root map*. Essentially, the *root map* defines a scope and provides the mechanism to allow your defined keys to be propagated throughout the entire map structure (this mechanism is also known as a *key space (on page 2231)*).

In Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, the **DITA Maps Manager** includes an option on its toolbar where you can easily specify the *root map (on page 1885)*, but there are also several other ways to select or change the *root map (on page 1897)*.

Space-Preserved Element

A ***spaced-preserved element*** refers to elements that require white spaces and line endings to be preserved (for example, DITA `<codeblock>` and `<pre>` elements).

Subject Scheme Map

A ***Subject Scheme Map*** allows you to create custom controlled attribute values and to manage metadata. *Subject scheme maps* use a key definition to define a collection of controlled values rather than a collection of topics. The highest level of map that uses the set of controlled values must reference the *subject scheme map* where those controlled values are defined.

A controlled value is a keyword that can be used as a value in a metadata attribute. For example, the `@audience` metadata attribute may take a value that identifies the user group associated with a particular content unit (for medical equipment, that might include *therapist*, *oncologist*, *surgeon*, *radiologist*, and so on). In a *subject scheme map*, you can define a list of these audience values and you can then use these values to profile your content. For more information, see Customizing Profiling Values with a Subject Scheme Map *(on page 2143)*.

.

Track Changes

The *Track Changes* feature allows you to review changes that you or other authors have made and then accept or reject them. You can also manage the visualization mode of the tracked changes, add comments to changes, and mark them as being done. These actions are easily accessible from contextual menus, the toolbar, or the **Review** view *(on page 415)*.

For more information about this feature, see Managing Tracked Changes *(on page 394)*.

WebHelp Output Directory

WebHelp_OUTPUT_DIR refers to the output directory where WebHelp transformation files will be generated.

The output directory can be specified using the **Output Directory** text field in the **Output** tab of the transformation scenario dialog box.

When running the WebHelp transformation from a command line, the output directory can be specified using the `-o` or `--output` option.

Working Set

A ***Working Set*** refers to a set of files that will be used for the scope of search and refactoring operations. Many of the search and refactoring wizards include a step where you can specify the scope for the operation and you can choose one or more *working sets* to restrict the scope to that specified set of files.

XML Catalog

An ***XML Catalog*** maps a system ID or a URI reference for a resource (stored either remotely or locally) to a local copy of the same resource. Whenever XML processing relies on external resources (such as referenced schemas and stylesheets), the use of an *XML Catalog* becomes a necessity when Internet access is not available or the connection is slow.

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin includes default global catalogs as well as default catalogs for each of the built-in *frameworks (on page 2231)*, and you can also create your own. Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin uses these *XML Catalogs* to resolve references for document validation and transformations. For more information, see Working with XML Catalogs *(on page 573)*.

Index

Special Characters

:after pseudo-element
1812
:before pseudo-element
1812

A

Add fonts to built-in FO processor
900, 901
Add hyphenation libraries to built-in DITA-OT FO processor
1447
Add hyphenation libraries to built-in FO processor
902
Add PDF image support to built-in DITA-OT FO processor
1447
Add PDF image support to built-in FO processor
902
Add-on
2232
Add-ons
2232
Adding media resources in Author Mode
496
AI image rendering in Author mode
471
Annotation preferences
114
Ant transformation scenario
868
Options tab
869
Output tab
871
Parameters tab
870
Apply all default quick fix proposals
603, 1834
Apply profiling attributes in Author Mode
423
Apply profiling condition sets in Author Mode
427
Archive preferences
64
Archives
1458
Browse
1458
Edit files
1462
EPUB
1460
File browser
1458
Migrate OOXML to DITA
1462
Migrate OOXML to TEI
1462
Modify
1458
ODF
1460
OOXML
1460
Associate schema directly in XML documents
570
Associate schema in a framework configuration
572
Associate schema in a validation scenario defined in framework
569
Associate schema through a validation scenario
565
Associate schema to an XML document
563
Attributes view in Author Mode
381
Attributes view in Text mode
305
Author Action dialog box

91
Author editing mode
221, 343
Adding media resources
496
Apply profiling attributes
423
Apply profiling condition sets
427
Attributes view
381
Bidirectional text
500
Content completion
369
Contextual menu actions
509
Create/Edit profiling attributes
420
Create/Edit profiling condition sets
425
Displaying referenced content
349
Displaying the markup
348
Drag and Drop
365
Editing attributes
362
Editing content
352
Editing XML markup
354
Elements view
386
Entities view
309, 387
Folding
364
Form Controls
507
Generating IDs
503
Handling whitespaces
351
Image Map Editor
473
DITA
474, 1967
DocBook
480
TEI
485
XHTML
491
Image rendering
469
AI images
471
CGM images
470
EPS images
471
JAI images
471
PSD images
470
Inserting images
468
MathML
498
MathML equations in HTML output
1126
Model view
307, 384
Navigation
346
Profiling
419
Profiling colors and styles
431
Profiling/Conditional Text menu
429
Refreshing content

503
Rendering documents
344
Review tools
393
Callouts
409
Comments
404
Highlights
408
Review view
415
Track Changes
394
Schema annotations
373
Selecting content
367
Set schema for content completion
372
Smart Paste
366
Special characters
500
Tables
433
DITA
445, 1973
DocBook
435
Editing features
433
JATS
463
Sorting a table
463
Sorting list items
466
Sorting selected table rows
465
Sorting tables with merged cells
466
TEI
462
XHTML
459
Tags Display Mode
348
Tooltips
350
User roles
344
Using Retina/HiDPI Images
472
Validation errors
530
Views
377
Visual hints
350
Author mode default operations
1554
Author mode preferences
127
Author mode serialization preferences
148
Author serialization
148
Auto generate IDs
503
AutoCorrect
270
Add dictionaries
272
AutoCorrect preferences
131
Automatic Spell Check
268
Automatic validation
525
Automatically correct misspelled words
270

B

BaseX database connection
1500
BaseX database contextual menu actions
1500
BaseX XQJ connection
1502
Batch transformation
939
Bidirectional text in Author mode
500
Bidirectional text in Grid mode
341
Built-in frameworks
DITA Map
724
DITA Topic
699
DocBook 4
654
DocBook 5
675
DocBook 5.1
675
DocBook Assembly
697
DocBook Targetset Map
699
DocBook Topic
698
EPUB
792
JATS
780
jTEI
779
S1000D
737
TEI ODD
767
TEI P5
754
XHTML
740
Built-in XML refactoring operations
590, 1821

C

Callout preferences
144
Callouts in Author Mode
409
Canonicalize files tool
608, 1836
Certificates preferences
183
CGM image rendering in Author mode
470
Change language for interface
214
Changing existing frameworks
1692
Changing the font size
352
Changing the font size in Text mode
285
Character Map dialog box
276
Check Spelling
259
Check Spelling in multiple Files
269
Check Well-Formedness action
523
CHM Error HHC5003: Compilation failed while compiling file
1859, 1859, 2124, 2124
CHM Error HHC5010: Cannot open file
1859, 1859, 2124, 2124
Close file
236
Code template preferences
115
Code templates
299, 375
Comments in Author Mode

404
Common problems and solutions
1849
Compare Files tool
1839
Condition set preferences
136
Configure Calabash with XEP
913
Configure the Application
scenarios management
167
Configure transformation scenario
931
Configure Transformation Scenario dialog box
934
Configuring content completion proposals
1598, 1606, 1611
Configuring options
196
Configuring Oxygen
63
Confluence
2182
Console view
279
Console view preferences
167
Content Completion Assistant in Grid Mode
340
Content completion configuration file
(cc_config.xml)
1598, 1606, 1611
Content completion helper views
299, 375
Content completion in Author Mode
369
Content completion in HTML
625
Content completion in Text Mode
294
Content completion preferences
112
Contextual menu actions in Author mode
509
Contextual menu actions in Text Mode
322
Contextual menu of current editor tab
241
Copy/Paste in Grid Mode
338
Create new transformation scenario
828
Create new validation scenario
537
Create profiling attributes in Author Mode
420
Create profiling condition sets in Author Mode
425
Creating frameworks
1533
Creating Markdown documents
631
Creating new documents
222
Creating publishing templates
1032, 1188
CSS :has relational pseudo class
1722
CSS @font-face rule
1714
CSS @media rule
1714
CSS attr() function
1729
CSS extensions
1736
Additional CSS properties
1747
-oxy-append-content CSS property
1747
-oxy-collapse-text property value
1748
-oxy-display-tags property

1749
-oxy-editable property
1750
-oxy-floating-toolbar CSS property
1750
-oxy-foldable property
1751
-oxy-folded property
1751
-oxy-link property
1753
-oxy-link-activation-trigger property
1754
-oxy-lower-cyrillic property values
1749
-oxy-morph property value
1754
-oxy-not-foldable-child property
1751
-oxy-placeholder-content property
1755
-oxy-prepend-content CSS property
1747
-oxy-show-placeholder property
1755
-oxy-style property
1756
-oxy-tags-background-color property
1756
-oxy-tags-color property
1756
display property
1754
list-style-type property
1749
visibility property
1748
Additional CSS selectors
1744
Built-in CSS selectors
1737
Custom CSS pseudo-classes
1811
Custom form controls
1808
Custom functions
1757
oxy_action
1758
oxy_action_list
1759
oxy_add
1757
oxy_attributes
1761
oxy_base-uri
1761
oxy_capitalize
1761
oxy_compound_action
1762
oxy_concat
1764
oxy_divide
1757
oxy_getSomeText
1764
oxy_indexof
1765
oxy_label
1766
oxy_lastindexof
1767
oxy_link-text
1768
oxy_local-name
1769
oxy_lowercase
1769
oxy_modulo
1757
oxy_multiply
1757
oxy_name

1770
oxy_parent-url
1770
oxy_replace
1770
oxy_substring
1771
oxy_subtract
1757
oxy_unescapeURLValue
1773
oxy_unparsed-entity-uri
1773
oxy_uppercase
1773
oxy_url
1774
oxy_xpath
1775
Form Controls
1777
Audio file player
1777
Browser
1778
Button
1782
Button group
1785
Checkbox
1788
Combo box
1791
Date picker
1793
Editing processing instructions
1810
HTML content
1795
Pop-up
1797
Text area
1800
Text field
1803
URL chooser
1805
Video player
1807
CSS Imports
1711
CSS Inspector view
1813
CSS Inspector View
391
CSS namespace selector
1719
CSS processors preferences
174
CSS properties
1723
CSS selectors
1716
CSS Styles
1547
CSS stylesheets
Content completion
613
Custom CSS properties
613
Editing features
612
Folding
615
Format and indent (pretty print)
615
Minifying
615
Outline view
614
Syntax highlighting
614
Validation
612

CSS subject selector
1720
CSS target-counter() function
1732
CSS target-counters() function
1732
CSS validation preferences
66
Current license was already activated
59, 1864
Cursor navigation preferences
134
Custom editor variables
66
Custom form controls
1808
Custom system properties
209
Custom validation engine preferences
124
Custom XSLT/XQuery transformation engine preferences
185
Customize document templates
231
Customizing annotations for the Content Completion Assistant
1615
Customizing default options
196
Customizing DITA transformations
2111

D

Data Source Explorer view
1464
Data Sources preferences page
67
Database connection preferences
67
Database drivers
72
Database perspective
217
Databases
1464
  Connections
  1468
    BaseX
    1500
      Contextual menu actions
      1500
      XQJ
      1502
    eXist
    1484
      Connection wizard
      1485
      Contextual menu actions
      1487
      Manual configuration
      1486
    Generic JDBC
    1497
    IBM DB2
    1504
      Contextual menu actions
      1508
    JDBC-ODBC
    1498
    MarkLogic
    1489
      Contextual menu actions
      1493
    Microsoft SQL Server
    1469
      Contextual menu actions
      1473
    MySQL
    1494
    Oracle
    1474
      Contextual menu actions
      1477
    PostgreSQL

1479
Contextual menu actions
1483
SharePoint
1514
Contextual menu actions
1518
WebDAV
1509
Contextual menu actions
1510
Data Source Explorer view
1464
SQL support
1512
Table Explorer view
1466
Debug PDF transformation
1448
Debugging CSS stylesheets
1813
Detect Main Files
254
Detect Main Files from Project
254
Diff appearance preferences
74
Diff Files tool
1839
DIFF preferences
73
Diff tool
1839
Digital Signature
Canonicalize files
608, 1836
Certificates
608
Sign files
609, 1837
Verify signature
611, 1839
Digital Signatures
605
Example of how to digitally sign XML content
611
Overview
605
Displaying markup in Author mode
348
Displaying referenced content in Author mode
349
DITA
Abbreviated form
2018
Coderef
2041
Conkeyref
2028
Conref
2026
Conref Push
2042
Content completion
2069
Content References
2025
Creating new projects
1878
Cross references
2061
DITA 1.3 support
2184
DITA 2.0 support
2186
DITA-OT Plugins
Create customization plugin
2153
Define allowed parameters
2158
Define transformation type
2158
Define transtype
2158

Install additional plugins
2157
Third-party plugins
2160
Filtering content
2126
Getting started
26, 1870
Glossary
2018
Glossary terms
2018
Image Map Editor
474, 1967
Index creation
1924
Keys
2016
Linking
2059
Cross reference
2061
File reference
2061
Hierarchical
2060
Related links
2061
Relationship tables
2067
Web link
2061
Main Files support
2174
Maps
1878
Add topics
1901
Change order of topics
1900
Chunking
1926
Create bookmap
1899
Create map
1897
Create subject scheme
1897
Create submap
1898
Create table of contents
1923
Define keys
1914
DITA Maps Manager
1880
Edit Properties dialog box
1916
Find unreferenced resources
1904
Insert Reference dialog box
1906
Insert references
1906
Insert topic groups
1913
Insert topic headings
1912
Managing maps
1900
Move resources
1903
Remove topics
1901
Rename resources
1903
Root map
1897
Validate and Check for Completeness
1926
XML catalogs
1925
Metadata
2180

Migrate Excel to DITA
2180
Migrate Office documents to DITA
2180
Migrate various formats to DITA
2182
Migrate Word to DITA
2180
Open Toolkit
2152
Output
2070
Customizing Transformations
2111
Custom build file
2113
DITA-OT Transformation Scenario
2096
Syntax highlights in codeblocks
1064, 2115
Profiling
2126
Applying profiling attributes
2130
Applying profiling condition sets
2134
Attribute groups
2141
Creating or editing profiling attributes
2127
Creating or editing profiling condition sets
2132
Customizing colors and styles for profiling attributes
2139
DITAVAL filter file
2148
Filtering attribute values
2148
Flagging content with DITAVAL file
2150
Publishing profiling
2151
Showing and filtering profiling attributes
2136
Using subject scheme map
2143
Projects
1878
Publishing
2070
Referenced/Dependent Resources view
2176
Relationship tables
2067
reltable
2067
Reusing content
2020
Branch Filtering
2050
Code References
2041
Conkeyref
2028
Conref
2026
Content Reference Push mechanism
2042
Content References
2025
DITA Reusable Components view
2051
Edit Content References
2030
Key Scopes
2049
Reference Topics in multiple maps
2023
Reusable components
2044
Create Reusable Component
2045
Insert Reusable Component

2046
Reuse Content dialog box
2033
Variable text
2047
Specialization
2169
Integration
2169
Maps
2171
Topics
2172
Topics
1944
Add images
1960
Add media resources
1963
Content completion
1952
Convert topic types
1955
Create new topic
1946
Edit topics
1952
Embed HTML Content
498
Fast Create multiple topics
1949
Image maps
474, 1967
LaTeX equations
1988
MathML equations
1987
Tables
445, 1973
Translations
2172
Use external DITA-OT
2163
Your first DITA document
26, 1870
DITA and Markdown documents
637, 2012
DITA Authoring and Publishing
1869
DITA Logging preferences
76
DITA Map document type
724
Author mode actions
725, 1932
Open DITA map with content resolved
1943
DITA Map menu actions
725, 1932
DITA Map Metrics Report transformation
819, 2091
DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS
813, 2086
Abbreviated-form element
1383
Accessibility
1323, 1323
Add
Strings
1428
Appendices
1311
Page breaks
1312
Archiving
1324, 1325
Back matter
1267
Style topics
1268
Bookmap
1386
Bookmarks
1299

Change labels
1299
Depth
1300
Initial state
1301
Remove numbering
1301
Sections display
1300
Changing the cover page
1386
Changing the page size
1386
Changing the title
1385
Changing the TOC depth
1385
Command Line
1179
Comments
1330
Styling
1334
Cover page
1235
Add empty pages
1244
Add second cover
1242
Add text
1241
Background image
1237
Copyright page
1245
Place cover on left side
1242
Place cover on right side
1242
Title styling
1240
Custom transformation parameters
1384
Customization CSS
1193
Customize
Strings
1427
Debugging
1195, 1207
XPath Expressions
Debug
1199
Write
1199
Deep numbering
1274
Double sided pagination
1295
Force even number of pages
1297
Force odd number of pages
1297
Start chapters on odd page
1296
Style blank pages
1296
Style first page
1297
Draft watermarks
1336
Conditional draft watermark
1337, 1337
Figures
Figure numbering
1358
Flagging content
1338
Fonts
1325
Asian languages
1328
Content

1326
Music
1329
Symbols
1327
Titles
1326
Footer
1209
Add copyright
1222
Add topics
1223
Chapter Number
1231
Page Number
1231
Footnotes
1312
Reset Counter
1314
Style Markers and Calls
1313
Front matter
1267
Page breaks
1268
Style topics
1268
Hazard
1379
Header
1209
Add background image
1216
Add links
1224
Change header at each chapter
1219, 1220
Change separators
1213
Changing the heading
1229
Language
1231
Only keep chapter title
1214
Style text
1215
Styling
1225
Underlined header
1228, 1294, 1295
XPath
1226
Header and Footer
Chapter first page
1211
Font
1210
Position
1212
Size
1210
Hyphenation
1318
Alter a dictionary
1320
Avoid line breaks at hyphens
1322
Define for a specific word
1322
Dictionaries
1319
Disable for an element
1321
Enable for an element
1321
Entire map
1321
Force line breaks at hyphens
1322
Install a dictionary
1319

i18n
1426
Images
1352
Borders
1357
Centering
1356
Control image size
1355, 1355
Resolution
1353
Rotate
1354
Side by side with text
1354, 1354
Size
1353
Wide
1354
Index
1302
Add a leader
1307
Change number format
1308
Change style and letters
1305
Inline Terms
1308
Style labels
1306
Table style layout
1309
Integration Server
Jenkins
1180
Links
1350
List of Figures
1293
List of Tables
1293
Localization
1426
Logging
1178
MathML equation customization
1343
MathML equation numbering
1344
Metadata
1253
Changing the keywords
1263
Changing the title property
1264
Cover page
1258
Custom
1257
Footer
1261
Header
1261
Index terms
1256
Key values
1265
Keywords
1256, 1263
Removing the title property
1264
Title property
1264, 1264
Use key value in CSS
1265
Modify
Strings
1427
Notes
1378
Numbering
1269, 1274

Reset page numbering
1279
Page breaks
1232
Add a blank page after a topic
1234
Avoid in lists and tables
1232
Enforce number of lines
1235
Force before or after topic
1233
Page size
Change setting for an element
1208
Changing
1207
Orientation
1208
Permissions
1429
Programming Elements
1373
Publication content
1386
Security
1429
Sign PDF
1430
Styling
1340
Table of contents
1280
Change header
1285
Display short description in TOC
1288
Display subtopics
1287
Display topic before TOC
1287
Increase depth
1283
Remove TOC entries
1287
Start on odd page
1286
Style
1284
Tables
1363
Centering
1366
Customize
Cells
1367
Columns
1367
Rows
1367
Layout
1363
Rotate
1364
Small images
1366
Split Cell
Borders
1369
Stripes
1369
Text bleeding
1365
Wide
1364
Zebra stripes
1369
Tasks
1382
Titles
Change prefix
1341
Layout
1340

Remove prefixes
1341
Separate page
1342
Tracked changes
1330
Style footnotes
1335
Styling
1334
Trademarks
1384
Translation
1426
Troubleshooting
Abbreviated-form
1434
Access Denied
1431
Cell borders missing
1433
Date formatting issues
1434
Disappearing lines
1433
Error Chunk Copy-To
1437
Error parsing
1432
Failed to run pipeline error
1433
Glossentry
1434
Glossgroup
1434
Glyph not available in font
1431
Highlights span off page
1436
I/O exception
1432
PDF file is damaged
1431
Unexpected Page Break
1436
Unknown host
1432
Videos
1362
Key Reference
1362
DITA Map to CHM (Compiled Help) transformation
818, 2090
DITA Map to MS Office Word transformation
817, 2089
DITA Map to PDF transformation
816, 2088
DITA Map to WebHelp Responsive transformation
799, 2071
DITA map to XHTML output customization
2114
DITA Map to Zendesk transformation
820, 2092
DITA Map toolbar actions
725, 1932
DITA Map transformations
798, 2071
DITA Maps
Transformation scenarios
798, 2071
DITA maps preferences
76
DITA new topics preferences
79
DITA PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS
Add
Strings
1428
Changing the cover page
1386
Changing the page size
1386
Changing the title
1385

Changing the TOC depth
1385
Command Line
1179
Comments
Styling
1334
Cover page
SVG templates
1247
Custom transformation parameters
1384
Customization CSS
1193
Customize
Strings
1427
Debugging
1195
Figures
Figure numbering
1358
i18n
1426
Integration Server
Jenkins
1180
Localization
1426
Modify
Strings
1427
Permissions
1429
Security
1429
Single topic
Cover page
1247
Tracked changes
Styling
1334
Translation
1426
DITA preferences
74
DITA publishing preferences
79
DITA tables in Author Mode
445, 1973
DITA to Confluence
2182
DITA to Word
817, 2089
DITA topic
Transformation scenarios
824, 2095
DITA Topic document type
699
Author mode actions
701, 1989
DITA Topic menu actions
701, 1989
DITA Topic toolbar actions
701, 1989
DITA topic transformations
824, 2095
DITA-OT preferences
74
DITA-OT transformation scenario
854
Advanced tab
864, 2107
Feedback tab
862, 2105
Filters tab
863, 2106
FO Processor tab
859, 2102
Output tab
867, 2110
Parameters tab
861, 2104
Templates tab

855, 2098
DITA-OT Transformation Scenario
2096
DocBook 4 document type
654
Author mode actions
656
DocBook 4 menu actions
656
DocBook 4 toolbar actions
656
DocBook 5 document type
675
Author mode actions
677
DocBook 5 menu actions
677
DocBook 5 toolbar actions
677
DocBook 5.1 document type
675
DocBook Assembly
697
DocBook olink
672, 693
DocBook tables in Author Mode
435
DocBook Targetset Map document type
699
DocBook to DITA
2182
DocBook to DITA transformation
825
DocBook to EPUB transformation
827
DocBook to PDF output customization
1449
DocBook to PDF transformation
826
DocBook Topic document type
698
DocBook transformations
825
Document template preferences
80
Document templates
Creating
229, 229
Customizing
231
Sharing
235
Document type association preferences
81
Document type configuration dialog box
83
Association rules tab
85
Author tab
89
Actions subtab
90
Content Completion subtab
103
Contextual Menu subtab
100
CSS subtab
89
Menu subtab
100
Toolbar subtab
102
Catalogs tab
107
Classpath tab
88
Extensions tab
110
Schema tab
87
Templates tab
106
Transformation tab
108

Validation tab
109
Document Types
654, 795
Drag and Drop in Author Mode
365
Drag and Drop in Grid Mode
338
Drag and Drop in Text Mode
293
DTD Entities
582, 582
Duplicate transformation scenario
933

E

Edit mode preferences
126
Edit profiling attributes in Author Mode
420
Edit profiling condition sets in Author Mode
425
Edit validation scenario
547
Editing actions in Grid Mode
335
Editing attributes in Author Mode
362
Editing content in Author Mode
352
Editing Modes
220
Author
221
Grid
220
Text
220
Editing publishing templates
1047, 1191
Editing XML markup in Author Mode
354
Editing XML markup in Text Mode
287
Editor perspective
215
Editor preferences
110
Editor variables
199
Custom editor variables
209
Elements view in Author Mode
386
Elements view in Text mode
308
Elements view preferences
167
Entities view
309, 387
EPS image rendering in Author mode
471
EPUB document type
792
Error: 1248 WARN
org.apache.fop.apps.FOUserAgent
1857, 2122
Error: Anttask - Error rendering fo file
1857, 2122
Error: java.io.FileNotFoundException
1857, 2122
Error: Navigation to the web page was canceled
1865
Error:
org.eclipse.ui.internal.ViewReference.createErrorPart
1860
Error: OutOfMemory
1848, 1848
Error: ViewReference.createErrorPart
1860
eXist database
Connection wizard
1485
Manual configuration
1486

eXist database connection
1484
eXist database contextual menu actions
1487
Export actions
90
Export Global Options
198
Export Global Transformation Scenarios
199
Export Global Validation Scenarios
199
Export to Excel
342
Exporting Markdown documents
629
Extending frameworks
1533
Extension points
1814

F

File properties
242
Filtering profiled content in Author mode
429
Find All Elements action
256
Find All Elements dialog box
256
Finding/Replacing text
  Find All Elements dialog box
  256
Floating license servers
  Server signature does not match
  59, 1864
FO processor preferences
171
Folding elements in Author Mode
364
Folding in Text Mode
291
Font preferences
164
Font size configuration
352
Font size configuration in Text mode
285
FOP Error
1856, 1857, 2121, 2122
Form Control
  Editing processing instructions
  1810
Form Controls
1777
  Audio file player
  1777
  Browser
  1778
  Button
  1782
  Button group
  1785
  Checkbox
  1788
  Combo box
  1791
  Date picker
  1793
  HTML content
  1795
  Pop-up
  1797
  Render HTML frames
  1778
  Render SVG
  1778
  Text area
  1800
  Text field
  1803
  URL chooser
  1805
  Video player
  1807

Form Controls in Author mode
507
Format and Indent Files tool
320
Format and Indent in Text Mode
314
Format/Indent multiple files
320
Formatting preferences
151
Framework customization
Changing existing frameworks
1692
Configuring an extensions bundle
1635
Configuring content completion proposals
1598, 1606, 1611
Configuring document templates
1630
Configuring transformation scenarios
1619
Configuring validation scenarios
1621
Configuring XML catalogs
1631
Creating
1533
Creating a basic document type association
1699
Customizing annotations for the Content Completion Assistant
1615
Customizing Smart Paste mapping
1593
Customizing the Content Completion Assistant
1595, 1596
Extending
1533
Extensions
1634
Author Action Event Handler
1684
Author Edit Properties Handler
1689
Author Extension State Listener
1649
Author Image Decorator
1639
Author Persistent Highlighter
1641
Author Reference Resolver
1645
Author Schema Aware Editing Handler
1686
Author Table Cell Separator Provider
1661
Author Table Cell Span Provider
1658
Author Table Column Width Provider
1652
Content Completion Handler
1642
CSS Styles Filter
1665
Custom Attribute Value Editor
1664
Custom Drag and Drop Listener
1644
Custom Object Insertion Handler
1688
Element Locator Provider
1666
Link Target Element Finder
1666
Profiling Conditional Text Provider
1666
Unique Attributes Recognizer
1641
XML Node Renderer Customizer
1672
Sharing
1691
Text to markup shortcut patterns
1591

Translating annotations for the Content Completion Assistant 1615
Framework directory locations 83
Frameworks 654, 795

G

Generate IDs in Author mode 503
Generic JDBC database connection 1497
Getting familiar with the interface 17
Getting Started 17
Getting Started with DITA 26, 1870
Getting Started with Oxygen
Help 1845
Interface 17
Resources to help you with Oxygen 19
Your first XML document 21
Google Docs to DITA 2182
Graphics and media 1073
Grid editing mode 220, 333
Bidirectional text 341
Content Completion Assistant 340
Copy/Paste 338
Drag and Drop 338
Editing actions 335
Export to Excel 342
Special characters 341
Grid editing modes
Layout 333
Navigation 334
Grid mode preferences 149

H

Help
Randomize XML text content 1846
Support related resources 1845
Using the Help menu 1845
Help resources 1163
Highlight ID occurrences in Text Mode 322
Highlights 279
Highlights in Author Mode 408
HTML documents
Content completion 625
Editing features 622
Folding 626
Minification 627
Minifying 627
Outline view 627
Syntax highlighting

626
Validation
624
HTML to DITA
2182
HTTP authentication schemes
241
HTTP connection settings
166
HTTP floating license server
Allowed users list
59
Replacing
57
Upgrading
58
HTTP license server
47
Management and Statistics
54
HTTPS troubleshooting
239

I

IBM DB2 database connection
1504
IBM DB2 database contextual menu actions
1508
ID generation
503
Image Map Editor in Author Mode
473
Image Map Editor in DITA
474, 1967
Image Map Editor in DocBook
480
Image Map Editor in TEI
485
Image Map Editor in XHTML
491
Image maps
1359
Image not found
1359
Image rendering in Author mode
469
Import data dynamically
1530
Import Global Options
198
Import Global Transformation Scenarios
199
Import Global Validation Scenarios
199
Import preferences
168
Import text files
1521
Importing data
1521
Importing data from a database
1526
Importing data from Excel
1523
Importing data from HTML files
1529
Importing Data from text files
1521
Increase memory
1167
Insert images in Author Mode
468
Install DITA-OT plugins
822, 2094
Installing license server all-platform distribution
50, 51
Installing license server on Windows
49
Installing multiple license server instances
53
Installing Oxygen
36
Group deployment
38
Transfer license key

42
Upgrading
60
Integrate DITA-OT plugins
822, 2094
Introduction
16

J

JAI images in Author mode
471
JATS document type
780
Author mode actions
781
JATS menu actions
781
JATS tables in Author Mode
463
JATS toolbar actions
781
Java system properties
209
JavaScript documents
617
Content Completion
619
Editing features
617
Outline view
621
Syntax highlighting
620
Validation
619
JCGM library
470
JDBC-ODBC database connection
1498
JSON transformation scenario
FO Processor tab
875, 907
Output tab
876, 907
XQuery tab
878, 923
XSLT tab
872, 904
JSON transformation with XQuery
878
JSON transformation with XSLT
872
jTEI
document type
779

L

License key configuration
64
License options
64
Licenses
40
Licensing
39, 40
Licensing Oxygen
Floating license
Reserve floating license
46
Floating licenses
44
Register floating licenses for multiple users
47
Release a floating license
45
Request a floating license
license server
44
Localizing frameworks
1632
Localizing the user interface
214
Localizing XML refactoring operations
603, 1834
Locking a floating license
46

M

Mac Function Keys
1864
Mac Touch Bar
1864
Main Files
253
Add files
255
Detecting
254
Enabling
254
Overview
254
Managing license server
54
Manual validation actions
525
Markdown documents
628
Actions in Markdown Editor
632
Creating Markdown documents
631
DITA
637, 2012
Markdown Editor
629
Rules and specifications
639
Syntax highlighting
635
Validation
636
Markdown Editor
629
Markdown preferences
165
Markdown to DITA
2182
MarkLogic database connection
1489
MarkLogic database contextual menu actions
1493
MathML equations in HTML output in Author mode
1126
MathML equations in WebHelp output
1078
MathML notations in Author mode
498
MathML preferences
135
Media query
1712
Memory issues
1167
Microsoft SQL Server database connection
1469
Microsoft SQL Server database contextual menu actions
1473
Model view
307, 384
Modular XML files
576
Move XML resources
581
MySQL database connection
1494

N

Named-User licenses
40
Navigating in Text Mode
282
Navigation in Author Mode
346
Network connection preferences
165
New DITA project
1878
New document from templates
229, 229

New Document Wizard
222
New from Templates Wizard
229, 229
New project
34, 243
NISO Journal Article Tag Suite document type
780
Non-XML files
242
NTLM
241

O

Olink element
672, 693
Open DITA map with content resolved
1943
Open file in system application
236
Open preferences
159
Open remote document
236
Open using SFTP/WebDAV dialog box
237
Opening file
235
Options Menu
  Preferences
  63
Oracle database connection
1474
Oracle database contextual menu actions
1477
Out of memory
1167
Out Of Memory error
171
Outline view
301, 377
Outline view preferences
195
OutOfMemory
1167
oxy:allows-child-element function
95
oxy:allows-global-element function
97
oxy:current-selected-element function
98
oxy:is-required-element function
99, 99
oxy:platform function
99
oxy:selected-elements function
99
Oxygen media type
1712
Oxygen Styles Basket
1032, 1188

P

PDF
  CSS
  1859
  Troubleshooting
  1859
PDF images
470
PDF output
1162
PDF Output Customization
  DocBook to PDF output
  1449
PDF output using Calabash XProc processor
913
PDF Processors
1164
Performance preferences
159
Perspective
  XML
  215
Perspectives
215

Database
217
Plugins
1817
PostgreSQL database connection
1479
PostgreSQL database contextual menu actions
1483
Preferences
63
Archive
64
Author mode
127
Author mode serialization
148
AutoCorrect
131
AutoCorrect Dictionaries
133
Callouts
144
Code Templates
115
Content Completion
112
Content Completion annotations
114
CSS formatting
154
CSS Processors
174
CSS Validator
66
Cursor Navigation
134
Custom Editor Variables
66
Custom Engines
185
Custom Validation Engines
124
Data Sources
67
DIFF
73
Diff Appearance
74
DITA
74
DITA Logging
76
DITA Maps
76
DITA New topics
79
DITA publishing
79
Document Templates
80
Document Type Association
81
Document type configuration dialog box
83
Document Type locations
83
Document Validation
123
Edit Modes
126
Editor
110
FO Processor
171
Fonts
164
Format
151
Grid mode
149
HTTP(S)/WebDAV
166
Import
168

JavaScript formatting
154
Markdown
165
MathML
135
Network Connection Settings
165
Open/Save
159
Profiling/Conditional Text
136
Relax NG parser
179
Review
141
Saxon-HE/PE/EE XQuery
189
Saxon-HE/PE/EE XQuery Advanced
190
Saxon-HE/PE/EE XSLT
191
Saxon-HE/PE/EE XSLT Advanced
194
Saxon6 XSLT
194
Schema-Aware
145
Schematron parser
179
SFTP
165
Spell Check
160
Spell Check Dictionaries
162
Syntax Highlight
163
View
167
Whitespaces
158
XML
168
XML Catalog
175
XML formatting
155
XML Parser
177
XML Refactoring
182
XML Schema parser
181
XML Signing Certificates
183
XML Structure Outline
195
XPath
187
XPath Content Completion
123
XProc
183
XQuery
188
XSLT
191
XSLT/XQuery
185
XSLTProc
194
Problems and solutions
1849
Process overview
1164
Profiling attribute preferences
136
Profiling colors and styles in Author Mode
431
Profiling content in Author Mode
419
Profiling/Conditional Text menu in Author mode
429

Project Explorer view
245
Project Explorer view preferences
167
Projects
243
Adding items to projects
34, 243
Creating new projects
34, 243
Main files
253
Add files
255
Detecting
254
Enabling
254
Overview
254
Managing resources
245
Move resources
251
Project Explorer view
245
Rename resources
251
Protect PDF
1429
PSD image rendering in Author mode
470
Publishing
796

Q

Quick Assist feature in Text Mode
321
Quick fix support in XML documents
560

R

Read-only files
279
Rectangular Selection feature
293
Refactoring XML Documents
587, 1818
Referenced/Dependent Resources view for DITA documents
2176
Referenced/Dependent Resources view for XML documents
579
Refreshing content in Author mode
503
Registering floating licenses for multiple users
47
Registering named-user license
40
Registering subscription license
42
Regular expressions syntax
258
Release a floating license
45
Rename XML resources
581
Rendering DITA documents in Author Mode
1958
Rendering documents in Author Mode
344
Request a floating license from a license server
44
Reserving a floating license
46
Reset Global Options
198
Resolve schemas through XML catalogs
576
Restrict access to PDF content
1429
Results view
310, 388
Retina/HiDPI Images in Author mode
472

Review preferences
141
Review tools in Author Mode
393
Review view
415

S

S1000D document type
737
Save file
236
Save preferences
159
Save remote document
236
Save template as button
857, 2100
Saxon 6 XSLT preferences
194
Saxon HE/PE/EE advanced XQuery preferences
190
Saxon HE/PE/EE advanced XSLT preferences
194
Saxon HE/PE/EE XQuery preferences
189
Saxon HE/PE/EE XSLT preferences
191
Schema annotations in Author Mode
373
Schema annotations in Text Mode
297
Schematron Quick Fixes
563
Schematron Schemas
Embedded
559
Search actions for IDs
577
Searching documents
256
Security permissions
1429
Selecting content in Author Mode
367
Selecting content in Text Mode
293
Server signature does not match
59, 1864
Set indent to zero in Text Mode
319
Set schema for content completion in Author Mode
372
SFTP connection settings
165
Share transformation scenarios
940
Share validation scenarios
557
SharePoint contextual menu actions
1518
SharePoint database connection
1514
Sharing document templates
235
Sharing frameworks
1691
Sharing publishing templates
1049, 1193
Sharing XML refactoring operations
603, 1833
Shortcut actions in Text Mode
285
Show change tracking/comments in DocBook PDF
827
Sign files tool
609, 1837
Signing XML document preferences
183
Simple text editor
242
Single sign-on
241
Smart Editing in Text Mode

284
Smart paste preferences
145
Smart Paste support in Author Mode
366
Sorting a table in Author Mode
463
Sorting list items in Author Mode
466
Sorting selected table rows in Author Mode
465
Sorting tables with merged cells in Author Mode
466
Special character preferences
159
Special characters
272
Character Map
276
Fallback Font Support
274
Inserting symbols
276
Unrecognized characters
274
Unsupported characters
274
Special characters in Author mode
500
Special characters in Grid mode
341
Spell check preferences
160
Spell checking
259
Add dictionaries
262
Add term lists
265
Custom list of terms
265
Customizing dictionaries and term lists
262
Dictionaries and term lists
261
Forbidden words
265
Ignored words
268
Learned words
267
Multiple files
269
Replace dictionaries
266
Spell Checking
Automatic spell check
268
SQF
563
SQL transformation scenario
930
StackOverflowException error
126
Status information
279
Storing XML refactoring operations
603, 1833
Styles menu
344, 1958
Subscription licenses
42
Supported document types
652
SVG
Syntax Diagrams
1361
Syntax highlight preferences
163
Syntax highlighting in Text Mode
313
Syntax highlights in codeblocks
1064, 2115
Syntax highlights in Text mode

314
System properties
209

T

Table editing features in Author Mode
433
Table Explorer view
1466
Tables in Author Mode
433
Tags Display Mode
348
Tags hide text
1868
TEI ODD document type
767
Author mode actions
768
TEI ODD menu actions
768
TEI ODD toolbar actions
768
TEI P5 document type
754
Author mode actions
755
TEI P5 menu actions
755
TEI P5 toolbar actions
755
TEI tables in Author Mode
462
Templates tab
855, 2098
Text editing mode
220, 282
Attributes view
305
Content completion
294
Contextual menu actions
322
Drag and Drop
293
Editing XML markup
287
Elements view
308
Entities view
309, 387
Folding
291
Format and indent
314
Format and indent multiple files
320
Highlight ID occurrences
322
Model view
307, 384
Navigation
282
Rectangular selection
293
Schema annotations
297
Selecting content
293
Set indent to zero
319
Shortcut actions
285
Smart Editing
284
Syntax highlighting
313
Syntax highlights
314
Validation errors
527
Views
301
Text flows out of code blocks
1868

Text rendering issues
1868
Text to markup shortcut patterns
1591
Three-way file comparison
1839
Touch Bar on Mac
1864
Track Changes feature in Author Mode
394
Transform DITA document to MS Word
817, 2089
Transformation parameters
1168
Transformation Scenarios
796
Ant
868
Apply transformation scenarios
933
Batch transformation
939
Built-in transformation scenarios
797
Configure
931
Configure Transformation Scenario dialog box
934
Configure XSLT processor extension paths
843, 899
Custom XSLT processor
843, 899
Debugging PDF transformations
1448
DITA map
798, 2071
DITA Map Metrics Report
819, 2091
DITA Map PDF - based on HTML5 & CSS
813, 2086
DITA Map to CHM (Compiled Help
818, 2090
DITA Map to MS Office Word
817, 2089
DITA Map to PDF
816, 2088
DITA Map to WebHelp Responsive
799, 2071
DITA Map to Zendesk
820, 2092
DITA topic
824, 2095
DITA-OT
854, 2096
DocBook
825
DocBook to DITA
825
DocBook to EPUB
827
DocBook to PDF
826
DOCX DITA
2180
Duplicate
933
Integrate DITA-OT plugins
822, 2094
Integrate external XProc engine
914
JSON with XQuery
878
JSON with XSLT
872
New
828
Sharing
940
Show Change Tracking and Comments
827
SQL
930
Supported XSLT processors
841, 896

XML to PDF with CSS
851
XML with XQuery
844
XML with XSLT
828
XProc
909
XQuery
915, 923
XSLT
885, 903
Transformation Scenarios view
940
Transformation types
931
Transforming Documents
796
Translating annotations for the Content Completion Assistant
1615
Translating DITA content
2172
Two-way file comparison
1839

U

Unicode support
274
Uninstalling Oxygen
62
Upgrading Oxygen
60
User roles in Author Mode
344
Using a floating license offline
46

V

Validating XML Documents
523
Against a schema
525
Against a schema with embedded Schematron
559
Author Mode
530
Automatic validation
525
Check Well-formedness
523
Create new validation scenarios
537
Custom validators
532
Customizing error messages
532
Edit validation scenarios
547
Manual validation
525
Resolving references to remote schemas
557
Sharing scenarios
557
Text Mode
527
Validation engine 'StackOverflowException' error
126
Validation errors in Author mode
530
Validation errors in Text mode
527
Validation preferences
123
Verify Signature tool
611, 1839
Visual hints in Author mode
350

W

WebDAV connection
1509
WebDAV connection settings
166
WebDAV contextual menu actions
1510

WebDAV over HTTPS
238
WebHelp feature matrix
944
WebHelp Responsive
944
Add link to PDF
1127
Adding audio objects
1076
Adding favicon
1075
Adding logo
1074
Adding publishing templates to gallery
1047
Adding videos
1076
Adding welcome message
1069
Built-in templates
992
Changing scoring values in search results
1078
Comments section
1029
Context-sensitive help
959
Converting old publishing templates
1050
Converting publishing templates to version 22
1053
Converting publishing templates to version 24
1053
Converting publishing templates to version 24.1
1052
Converting publishing templates to version 25
1051
Converting publishing templates to version 27.1
1051
Converting publishing templates to version 28
1050
Converting version 20 publishing templates to version 21
1054
Copy resources to output directory
1122
Creating publishing templates
1032, 1188
CSS styling
1035, 1055
Custom search engine
1092
Custom search filter
1080
Custom templates
992
Customizing main page layout
1067
Customizing output with CSS
1035, 1055
Customizing output with HTML content
1057
Customizing the footer
1070
Customizing the menu
1067
Customizing the tiles
1071
Dark mode
1035
Disable caching
1127
Edit link to launch Web Author
1123
Editing publishing templates
1047, 1191
Excluding topics from search results
1082
Facebook Like button
1099
Flagging DITA content
1124
Google Analytics

1103
Google Search
1086
Index terms layout page
955
Inserting HTML
1057
Local fonts
1138
Localizing interface
1096
Main layout page
946
Navigation links
1066
Optimizing Japanese content indexing
1079
Optimizing search results
1094
Ordered lists
layout
1062
styles
1062
PDF link
1127
Previous/Next arrows
1066
Publishing template descriptor file
994
Publishing template HTML fragments
1001
Publishing template HTML page layout files
1010
Publishing template package
994
Publishing template resources
997
Publishing template transformation parameters
999
Publishing template XSLT extensions
1000
Publishing templates could not be loaded
1049
Publishing templates troubleshooting
1049
Right-to-left languages
1099
Search features
956
Search layout page
952
Search rules
956
searchQuery parameter
1094
Sharing publishing templates
1049, 1193
Sharing templates
992
Tabs
1142
Topic layout page
949
Transformation parameters
1144
Tweet button
1101
Using publishing templates from a command line
1048
XSLT-Import extension point
1159
XSLT-import extension points
1107
XSLT-Parameter extension point
1159
WebHelp Responsive Templates tab
Save template as button
857, 2100
Whitespace handling in Author mode

351

X

XHTML document type
740
Author mode actions
742
XHTML documents
Validation
741
XHTML menu actions
742
XHTML tables in Author Mode
459
XHTML toolbar actions
742
XInclude
582, 583
XInclude 1.1 features
583
XLIFF documents
Editing features
616
XML catalog preferences
175
XML Catalogs
573
XML documents
281
Associate schema
563
Associate schema directly in XML documents
570
Associate schema in a framework configuration
572
Associate schema in a validation scenario defined in framework
569
Associate schema through a validation scenario
565
Author Mode editing
343
Adding media resources
496
Apply profiling attributes
423
Apply profiling condition sets
427
Attributes view
381
Content completion
369
Contextual menu actions
509
Create/Edit profiling attributes
420
Create/Edit profiling condition sets
425
Drag and Drop
365
Editing attributes
362
Editing content
352
Editing XML markup
354
Elements view
386
Entities view
309, 387
Folding
364
Form Controls
507
Generating IDs
503
Image Map Editor
473
DITA
474, 1967
DocBook
480
TEI
485
XHTML

491
Image rendering
469
AI images
471
CGM images
470
EPS images
471
JAI images
471
PSD images
470
Inserting images
468
MathML
498
MathML equations in HTML output
1126
Model view
307, 384
Navigation
346
Profiling
419
Profiling colors and styles
431
Profiling/Conditional Text menu
429
Refreshing content
503
Rendering documents
344
Review tools
393
Callouts
409
Comments
404
Highlights
408
Review view
415
Track Changes
394
Schema annotations
373
Selecting content
367
Set schema for content completion
372
Smart Paste
366
Tables
433
DITA
445, 1973
DocBook
435
Editing features
433
JATS
463
Sorting a table
463
Sorting list items
466
Sorting selected table rows
465
Sorting tables with merged cells
466
TEI
462
XHTML
459
User roles
344
Using Retina/HiDPI Images
472
Code templates
299, 375
DTD Entities
582, 582
Editing in Main Files context

576
Grid Mode editing
333
Content Completion Assistant
340
Copy/Paste
338
Drag and Drop
338
Editing actions
335
Export to Excel
342
Learn document structure
573
Moving resources
581
Outline view
301, 377
Quick Assist feature
321
Quick fix support
560
Refactoring
587, 1818
Built-in operations
590, 1821
Localizing operations
603, 1834
Sharing operations
603, 1833
Storing operations
603, 1833
Referenced/Dependent Resources view
579
Renaming resources
581
Resolve schemas through XML catalogs
576
Search actions for IDs
577
Text Mode editing
282
Attributes view
305
Content completion
294
Contextual menu actions
322
Drag and Drop
293
Editing XML markup
287
Elements view
308
Entities view
309, 387
Folding
291
Format and indent
314
Highlight ID occurrences
322
Model view
307, 384
Navigation
282
Rectangular selection
293
Schema annotations
297
Selecting content
293
Set indent to zero
319
Shortcut actions
285
Smart Editing
284
Syntax highlighting
313
Validation
523
Against a schema

525
Against a schema with embedded Schematron
559
Author Mode
530
Automatic validation
525
Check Well-formedness
523
Create new validation scenario
537
Custom validators
532
Customizing error messages
532
Edit validation scenario
547
Manual validation
525
Resolving references to remote schemas
557
Sharing scenarios
557
Text Mode
527
XInclude
582, 583
XML catalogs
573
XML documents without a schema
573
XML parser preferences
177
XML refactoring preferences
182
XML Refactoring tool
587, 1818
Built-in operations
590, 1821
Localizing operations
603, 1834
Sharing operations
603, 1833
Storing operations
603, 1833
XML to PDF with CSS transformation scenario
851
CSS tab
852
Output tab
853
XML transformation with XQuery
844
XML transformation with XSLT
828
XPath Expressions
1451
Catalogs
1456
Prefix mapping
1457
XPath Builder view
1451
XPath Results view
1455
XProc transformation scenario
909
Inputs tab
910
Options tab
913
Outputs tab
911
Parameters tab
911
XProc tab
910
XQuery preferences
188
XQuery transformation on JSON scenario
923
XQuery transformation scenario
915

FO Processor tab
849, 883, 921, 928
Output tab
850, 884, 921, 929
XQuery tab
844, 916
XSL-FO processor
899
XSLT preferences
191
XSLT transformation on JSON scenario
903
XSLT transformation on XML scenario
885
XSLT transformation scenario
FO Processor tab
837, 894
Output tab
838, 895
XSLT tab
828, 886
XSLTProc preferences
194

Y

Your first DITA document
26, 1870

Copyright

Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin User Manual

Syncro Soft SRL.

Copyright © 2002-2026 Syncro Soft SRL. All Rights Reserved.

All rights reserved: No parts of this work may be reproduced in any form or by any means - graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or information storage and retrieval systems - without the written permission of the publisher. Products that are referred to in this document may be either trademarks and/or registered trademarks of the respective owners. The publisher and the author make no claim to these trademarks.

Trademarks: Many of the designations used by manufacturers and sellers to distinguish their products are claimed as trademarks. Where those designations appear in this document, and Syncro Soft SRL was aware of a trademark claim, the designations have been rendered in caps or initial caps.

Notice: While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this document, the publisher and the author assume no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for damages resulting from the use of information contained in this document or from the use of programs and source code that may accompany it. In no event shall the publisher and the author be liable for any loss of profit or any other commercial damage caused or alleged to have been caused directly or indirectly by this document.

Link disclaimer: Syncro Soft SRL is not responsible for the contents or reliability of any linked Websites referenced elsewhere within this documentation, and Syncro Soft SRL does not necessarily endorse the products, services, or information described or offered within them. Syncro Soft cannot guarantee that these links will work all the time and has no control over the availability of the linked pages.

Warranty: Syncro Soft SRL provides a limited warranty on this product. Refer to your sales agreement to establish the terms of the limited warranty. In addition, Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin End-User License Agreement, as well as information regarding support for this product, while under warranty, is available through the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin End-User License Agreement.

Third-party components: Certain software programs or portions thereof included in the Product may contain software distributed under third-party agreements ("Third-Party Components"), which may contain terms that expand or limit rights to use certain portions of the Product ("Third-Party Terms"). Information identifying Third-Party Components and the Third-Party Terms that apply to them is available on the Third-party License Agreements webpage.

Terms and conditions: For the terms and conditions for using Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin, see Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin End-User License Agreement.

Documentation: For the most current versions of documentation, see the Oxygen XML Author Eclipse plugin User Manual.

Contact Syncro Soft SRL: Syncro Soft SRL provides telephone numbers and e-mail addresses for you to report problems or to ask questions about your product, see the Oxygen support webpage.